ESP32-S2

ESP-IDF Programming Guide

Release v4.4-dev-960-gcf457d4
Espressif Systems
Apr 16, 2021

Table of contents

Table of contents i

1 Get Started 3
- 1.1 Introduction . . . 3
- 1.2 What You Need . . . 3
- 1.3 Development Board Overviews . . . 4
  - 1.3.1 ESP32-S2-Saola-1 . . . 4
  - 1.3.2 ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) . . . 7
  - 1.3.3 ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3 . . . 12
- 1.4 Installation Step by Step . . . 46
  - 1.4.1 Setting up Development Environment . . . 46
  - 1.4.2 Creating Your First Project . . . 46
- 1.5 Step 1. Install prerequisites . . . 47
  - 1.5.1 Standard Setup of Toolchain for Windows . . . 47
  - 1.5.2 Standard Setup of Toolchain for Linux . . . 51
  - 1.5.3 Standard Setup of Toolchain for Mac OS . . . 52
- 1.6 Step 2. Get ESP-IDF . . . 53
  - 1.6.1 Linux and macOS . . . 53
  - 1.6.2 Windows . . . 53
- 1.7 Step 3. Set up the tools . . . 54
  - 1.7.1 Windows . . . 54
  - 1.7.2 Linux and macOS . . . 54
  - 1.7.3 Alternative File Downloads . . . 54
  - 1.7.4 Customizing the tools installation path . . . 55
- 1.8 Step 4. Set up the environment variables . . . 55
  - 1.8.1 Windows . . . 55
  - 1.8.2 Linux and macOS . . . 55
- 1.9 Step 5. Start a Project . . . 56
  - 1.9.1 Linux and macOS . . . 56
  - 1.9.2 Windows . . . 56
- 1.10 Step 6. Connect Your Device . . . 56
- 1.11 Step 7. Configure . . . 57
  - 1.11.1 Linux and macOS . . . 57
  - 1.11.2 Windows . . . 57
- 1.12 Step 8. Build the Project . . . 58
- 1.13 Step 9. Flash onto the Device . . . 58
  - 1.13.1 Encountered Issues While Flashing? . . . 59
  - 1.13.2 Normal Operation . . . 59
- 1.14 Step 10. Monitor . . . 60
- 1.15 Updating ESP-IDF . . . 61
- 1.16 Related Documents . . . 61
  - 1.16.1 Establish Serial Connection with ESP32-S2 . . . 61
  - 1.16.2 Build and Flash with Eclipse IDE . . . 67
  - 1.16.3 Getting Started with VS Code IDE . . . 68
  - 1.16.4 IDF Monitor . . . 68
  - 1.16.5 Customized Setup of Toolchain . . . 72

2 API Reference **79**
2.1 Networking APIs . . . 79
2.1.1 Wi-Fi . . . 79
2.1.2 Ethernet . . . 157
2.1.3 IP Network Layer . . . 178
2.1.4 Application Layer . . . 195
2.2 Peripherals API . . . 195
2.2.1 Analog to Digital Converter . . . 195
2.2.2 Digital To Analog Converter . . . 218
2.2.3 General Purpose Timer . . . 222
2.2.4 GPIO & RTC GPIO . . . 232
2.2.5 Dedicated GPIO . . . 249
2.2.6 HMAC . . . 254
2.2.7 Digital Signature . . . 258
2.2.8 I2C Driver . . . 262
2.2.9 I2S . . . 276
2.2.10 LED Control . . . 286
2.2.11 Pulse Counter . . . 298
2.2.12 RMT . . . 307
2.2.13 SD SPI Host Driver . . . 325
2.2.14 Sigma-delta Modulation . . . 329
2.2.15 SPI Master Driver . . . 332
2.2.16 SPI Slave Driver . . . 348
2.2.17 SPI Slave Half Duplex . . . 354
2.2.18 ESP32-S2 Temperature Sensor . . . 360
2.2.19 Touch Sensor . . . 362
2.2.20 Touch Element . . . 383
2.2.21 TWAI . . . 408
2.2.22 UART . . . 423
2.2.23 USB Driver . . . 445
2.3 Application Protocols . . . 452
2.3.1 ASIO port . . . 452
2.3.2 ESP-MQTT . . . 453
2.3.3 ESP-TLS . . . 463
2.3.4 OpenSSL-APIs . . . 474
2.3.5 ESP HTTP Client . . . 501
2.3.6 HTTP Server . . . 514
2.3.7 HTTPS server . . . 536
2.3.8 ICMP Echo . . . 538
2.3.9 ESP Local Control . . . 543
2.3.10 mDNS Service . . . 550
2.3.11 ESP-Modbus . . . 559
2.3.12 ESP WebSocket Client . . . 564
2.3.13 ESP Serial Slave Link . . . 571
2.3.14 ESP x509 Certificate Bundle . . . 581
2.3.15 IP Network Layer . . . 583
2.4 Provisioning API . . . 583
2.4.1 Protocol Communication . . . 583
2.4.2 Unified Provisioning . . . 593
2.4.3 Wi-Fi Provisioning . . . 597
2.5 Storage API . . . 613
2.5.1 FAT Filesystem Support . . . 613
2.5.2 Manufacturing Utility . . . 618
2.5.3 Non-volatile storage library . . . 623
2.5.4 NVS Partition Generator Utility . . . 643
2.5.5 SD/SDIO/MMC Driver . . . 650
2.5.6 SPI Flash API . . . 658
2.5.7 SPIFFS Filesystem . . . 680

2.5.8 Virtual filesystem component . . . 684
2.5.9 Wear Levelling API . . . 696
2.6 System API . . . 699
2.6.1 App Image Format . . . 699
2.6.2 Application Level Tracing . . . 704
2.6.3 The Async memcpy API . . . 709
2.6.4 Console . . . 712
2.6.5 eFuse Manager . . . 719
2.6.6 Error Codes and Helper Functions . . . 739
2.6.7 ESP HTTPS OTA . . . 741
2.6.8 ESP-pthread . . . 744
2.6.9 Event Loop Library . . . 746
2.6.10 FreeRTOS . . . 762
2.6.11 FreeRTOS Additions . . . 855
2.6.12 Heap Memory Allocation . . . 872
2.6.13 Heap Memory Debugging . . . 883
2.6.14 High Resolution Timer . . . 893
2.6.15 Call function with external stack . . . 898
2.6.16 Interrupt allocation . . . 899
2.6.17 Logging library . . . 905
2.6.18 Miscellaneous System APIs . . . 910
2.6.19 Over The Air Updates (OTA) . . . 915
2.6.20 Performance Monitor . . . 925
2.6.21 Power Management . . . 927
2.6.22 Sleep Modes . . . 933
2.6.23 Watchdogs . . . 941
2.6.24 System Time . . . 945
2.6.25 Internal and Unstable APIs . . . 949
2.7 Project Configuration . . . 949
2.7.1 Introduction . . . 949
2.7.2 Project Configuration Menu . . . 950
2.7.3 Using sdkconfig.defaults . . . 950
2.7.4 Kconfig Formatting Rules . . . 950
2.7.5 Backward Compatibility of Kconfig Options . . . 950
2.7.6 Configuration Options Reference . . . 951
2.7.7 Customisations . . . 1118
2.8 Error Codes Reference . . . 1118

3 ESP32-S2 Hardware Reference 1125
3.1 ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards . . . 1125
3.1.1 Modules . . . 1125
3.1.2 Development Boards . . . 1125
3.1.3 Related Documents . . . 1127
3.2 Previous Versions of ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards . . . 1127
3.2.1 Modules . . . 1127
3.2.2 Development Boards . . . 1127
3.2.3 Related Documents . . . 1127
3.3 Chip Series Comparison . . . 1127
3.3.1 Related Documents . . . 1131

4 API Guides 1133
4.1 Application Level Tracing library . . . 1133
4.1.1 Overview . . . 1133
4.1.2 Modes of Operation . . . 1133
4.1.3 Configuration Options and Dependencies . . . 1134
4.1.4 How to use this library . . . 1135
4.2 Application Startup Flow . . . 1143
4.2.1 First stage bootloader . . . 1143

4.2.2 Second stage bootloader . . . 1144
4.2.3 Application startup . . . 1144
4.3 Bootloader . . . 1146
4.3.1 Bootloader compatibility . . . 1146
4.3.2 Factory reset . . . 1146
4.3.3 Boot from test app partition . . . 1147
4.3.4 Fast boot from Deep Sleep . . . 1147
4.3.5 Custom bootloader . . . 1147
4.4 Build System . . . 1148
4.4.1 Overview . . . 1148
4.4.2 Using the Build System . . . 1148
4.4.3 Example Project . . . 1152
4.4.4 Project CMakeLists File . . . 1153
4.4.5 Component CMakeLists Files . . . 1154
4.4.6 Component Configuration . . . 1156
4.4.7 Preprocessor Definitions . . . 1157
4.4.8 Component Requirements . . . 1157
4.4.9 Overriding Parts of the Project . . . 1160
4.4.10 Configuration-Only Components . . . 1161
4.4.11 Debugging CMake . . . 1161
4.4.12 Example Component CMakeLists . . . 1161
4.4.13 Custom sdkconfig defaults . . . 1165
4.4.14 Flash arguments . . . 1166
4.4.15 Building the Bootloader . . . 1166
4.4.16 Selecting the Target . . . 1166
4.4.17 Writing Pure CMake Components . . . 1167
4.4.18 Using Third-Party CMake Projects with Components . . . 1167
4.4.19 Using Prebuilt Libraries with Components . . . 1168
4.4.20 Using ESP-IDF in Custom CMake Projects . . . 1168
4.4.21 ESP-IDF CMake Build System API . . . 1169
4.4.22 File Globbing & Incremental Builds . . . 1173
4.4.23 Build System Metadata . . . 1173
4.4.24 Build System Internals . . . 1174
4.4.25 Migrating from ESP-IDF GNU Make System . . . 1175
4.5 Deep Sleep Wake Stubs . . . 1177
4.5.1 Rules for Wake Stubs . . . 1177
4.5.2 Implementing A Stub . . . 1178
4.5.3 Loading Code Into RTC Memory . . . 1178
4.5.4 Loading Data Into RTC Memory . . . 1178
4.6 Device Firmware Upgrade through USB . . . 1179
4.6.1 Building the DFU Image . . . 1179
4.6.2 Flashing the Chip with the DFU Image . . . 1180
4.7 Error Handling . . . 1181
4.7.1 Overview . . . 1181
4.7.2 Error codes . . . 1181
4.7.3 Converting error codes to error messages . . . 1181
4.7.4 `ESP_ERROR_CHECK` macro . . . 1182
4.7.5 `ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT` macro . . . 1182
4.7.6 `ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR` macro . . . 1182
4.7.7 `ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR` macro . . . 1183
4.7.8 `ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE` macro . . . 1183
4.7.9 `ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE` macro . . . 1183
4.7.10 `CHECK MACROS Examples` . . . 1183
4.7.11 Error handling patterns . . . 1183
4.7.12 C++ Exceptions . . . 1184
4.8 ESP-MESH . . . 1184
4.8.1 Overview . . . 1185
4.8.2 Introduction . . . 1185

4.8.3 ESP-MESH Concepts . . . 1186
4.8.4 Building a Network . . . 1192
4.8.5 Managing a Network . . . 1197
4.8.6 Data Transmission . . . 1200
4.8.7 Channel Switching . . . 1202
4.8.8 Performance . . . 1205
4.8.9 Further Notes . . . 1206
4.9 Core Dump . . . 1206
4.9.1 Overview . . . 1206
4.9.2 Configuration . . . 1206
4.9.3 Save core dump to flash . . . 1207
4.9.4 Print core dump to UART . . . 1207
4.9.5 ROM Functions in Backtraces . . . 1207
4.9.6 Dumping variables on demand . . . 1208
4.9.7 Running 'espcoredump.py' . . . 1208
4.10 Event Handling . . . 1209
4.10.1 Wi-Fi, Ethernet, and IP Events . . . 1209
4.10.2 Mesh Events . . . 1210
4.10.3 Bluetooth Events . . . 1210
4.11 Support for external RAM . . . 1211
4.11.1 Introduction . . . 1211
4.11.2 Hardware . . . 1211
4.11.3 Configuring External RAM . . . 1211
4.11.4 Restrictions . . . 1212
4.11.5 Failure to initialize . . . 1213
4.12 Fatal Errors . . . 1213
4.12.1 Overview . . . 1213
4.12.2 Panic Handler . . . 1213
4.12.3 Register Dump and Backtrace . . . 1214
4.12.4 GDB Stub . . . 1216
4.12.5 Guru Meditation Errors . . . 1217
4.12.6 Other Fatal Errors . . . 1218
4.13 Flash Encryption . . . 1219
4.13.1 Introduction . . . 1219
4.13.2 Relevant eFuses . . . 1219
4.13.3 Flash Encryption Process . . . 1220
4.13.4 Flash Encryption Configuration . . . 1221
4.13.5 Possible Failures . . . 1227
4.13.6 ESP32-S2 Flash Encryption Status . . . 1229
4.13.7 Reading and Writing Data in Encrypted Flash . . . 1229
4.13.8 Updating Encrypted Flash . . . 1230
4.13.9 Disabling Flash Encryption . . . 1230
4.13.10 Key Points About Flash Encryption . . . 1230
4.13.11 Limitations of Flash Encryption . . . 1231
4.13.12 Flash Encryption and Secure Boot . . . 1231
4.13.13 Advanced Features . . . 1231
4.13.14 Technical Details . . . 1232
4.14 ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes . . . 1233
4.14.1 Overview . . . 1233
4.14.2 Tasks and Task Creation . . . 1233
4.14.3 Scheduling . . . 1234
4.14.4 Critical Sections & Disabling Interrupts . . . 1236
4.14.5 Task Deletion . . . 1237
4.14.6 Thread Local Storage Pointers & Deletion Callbacks . . . 1237
4.14.7 Configuring ESP-IDF FreeRTOS . . . 1237
4.15 Hardware Abstraction . . . 1238
4.15.1 Architecture . . . 1238
4.15.2 LL (Low Level) Layer . . . 1239

4.15.3 HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer) . . . 1240
4.16 High-Level Interrupts . . . 1241
4.16.1 Interrupt Levels . . . 1241
4.16.2 Notes . . . 1241
4.17 JTAG Debugging . . . 1242
4.17.1 Introduction . . . 1242
4.17.2 How it Works? . . . 1243
4.17.3 Selecting JTAG Adapter . . . 1243
4.17.4 Setup of OpenOCD . . . 1244
4.17.5 Configuring ESP32-S2 Target . . . 1244
4.17.6 Launching Debugger . . . 1249
4.17.7 Debugging Examples . . . 1249
4.17.8 Building OpenOCD from Sources . . . 1250
4.17.9 Tips and Quirks . . . 1254
4.17.10 Related Documents . . . 1258
4.18 Linker Script Generation . . . 1283
4.18.1 Overview . . . 1283
4.18.2 Quick Start . . . 1283
4.18.3 Linker Script Generation Internals . . . 1286
4.19 Memory Types . . . 1293
4.19.1 DRAM (Data RAM) . . . 1293
4.19.2 IRAM (Instruction RAM) . . . 1293
4.19.3 IROM (code executed from Flash) . . . 1294
4.19.4 RTC fast memory . . . 1294
4.19.5 DROM (data stored in Flash) . . . 1295
4.19.6 RTC slow memory . . . 1295
4.19.7 DMA Capable Requirement . . . 1295
4.19.8 DMA Buffer in the stack . . . 1296
4.20 lwIP . . . 1296
4.20.1 Supported APIs . . . 1296
4.20.2 BSD Sockets API . . . 1297
4.20.3 Netconn API . . . 1300
4.20.4 lwIP FreeRTOS Task . . . 1301
4.20.5 esp-lwip custom modifications . . . 1301
4.20.6 Performance Optimization . . . 1302
4.21 Partition Tables . . . 1303
4.21.1 Overview . . . 1303
4.21.2 Built-in Partition Tables . . . 1303
4.21.3 Creating Custom Tables . . . 1304
4.21.4 Generating Binary Partition Table . . . 1306
4.21.5 Flashing the partition table . . . 1307
4.21.6 Partition Tool (parttool.py) . . . 1307
4.22 Secure Boot V2 . . . 1308
4.22.1 Background . . . 1308
4.22.2 Advantages . . . 1309
4.22.3 Secure Boot V2 Process . . . 1309
4.22.4 Signature Block Format . . . 1309
4.22.5 Verifying the signature Block . . . 1310
4.22.6 Bootloader Size . . . 1310
4.22.7 eFuse usage . . . 1310
4.22.8 How To Enable Secure Boot V2 . . . 1311
4.22.9 Restrictions after Secure Boot is enabled . . . 1311
4.22.10 Generating Secure Boot Signing Key . . . 1312
4.22.11 Remote Signing of Images . . . 1312
4.22.12 Secure Boot Best Practices . . . 1312
4.22.13 Key Management . . . 1312
4.22.14 Multiple Keys . . . 1313
4.22.15 Key Revocation . . . 1313

4.22.16 Technical Details . . . 1313
4.22.17 Secure Boot & Flash Encryption . . . 1314
4.22.18 Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot . . . 1314
4.22.19 Advanced Features . . . 1314
4.23 Thread Local Storage . . . 1315
4.23.1 Overview . . . 1315
4.23.2 FreeRTOS Native API . . . 1315
4.23.3 Pthread API . . . 1315
4.23.4 C11 Standard . . . 1315
4.24 Tools . . . 1315
4.24.1 Downloadable Tools . . . 1316
4.24.2 IDF Docker Image . . . 1323
4.24.3 IDF Windows Installer . . . 1325
4.25 ULP Coprocessor programming . . . 1326
4.25.1 ESP32-S2 ULP coprocessor instruction set . . . 1326
4.25.2 Programming ULP coprocessor using C macros (legacy) . . . 1341
4.25.3 Installing the Toolchain . . . 1346
4.25.4 Compiling the ULP Code . . . 1346
4.25.5 Accessing the ULP Program Variables . . . 1347
4.25.6 Starting the ULP Program . . . 1348
4.25.7 ESP32-S2 ULP program flow . . . 1349
4.26 ULP-RISC-V Coprocessor programming . . . 1350
4.26.1 Installing the ULP-RISC-V Toolchain . . . 1350
4.26.2 Compiling the ULP-RISC-V Code . . . 1350
4.26.3 Accessing the ULP-RISC-V Program Variables . . . 1351
4.26.4 Starting the ULP-RISC-V Program . . . 1351
4.26.5 ULP-RISC-V Program Flow . . . 1352
4.27 Unit Testing in ESP32-S2 . . . 1352
4.27.1 Normal Test Cases . . . 1353
4.27.2 Multi-device Test Cases . . . 1353
4.27.3 Multi-stage Test Cases . . . 1354
4.27.4 Tests For Different Targets . . . 1355
4.27.5 Building Unit Test App . . . 1355
4.27.6 Running Unit Tests . . . 1356
4.27.7 Timing Code with Cache Compensated Timer . . . 1357
4.27.8 Mocks . . . 1358
4.28 USB Console . . . 1358
4.28.1 Hardware Requirements . . . 1358
4.28.2 Software Configuration . . . 1359
4.28.3 Uploading the Application . . . 1359
4.28.4 Limitations . . . 1360
4.29 Wi-Fi Driver . . . 1360
4.29.1 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Feature List . . . 1360
4.29.2 How To Write a Wi-Fi Application . . . 1361
4.29.3 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi API Error Code . . . 1361
4.29.4 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi API Parameter Initialization . . . 1362
4.29.5 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Programming Model . . . 1362
4.29.6 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Event Description . . . 1362
4.29.7 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station General Scenario . . . 1365
4.29.8 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi AP General Scenario . . . 1368
4.29.9 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Scan . . . 1368
4.29.10 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station Connecting Scenario . . . 1376
4.29.11 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station Connecting When Multiple APs Are Found . . . 1380
4.29.12 Wi-Fi Reconnect . . . 1380
4.29.13 Wi-Fi Beacon Timeout . . . 1380
4.29.14 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Configuration . . . 1380
4.29.15 Wi-Fi Security . . . 1386
4.29.16 Wi-Fi Location . . . 1387

4.29.17 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Power-saving Mode . . . 1387
4.29.18 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Throughput . . . 1388
4.29.19 Wi-Fi 80211 Packet Send . . . 1388
4.29.20 Wi-Fi Sniffer Mode . . . 1391
4.29.21 Wi-Fi Multiple Antennas . . . 1391
4.29.22 Wi-Fi Channel State Information . . . 1392
4.29.23 Wi-Fi Channel State Information Configure . . . 1393
4.29.24 Wi-Fi HT20/40 . . . 1394
4.29.25 Wi-Fi QoS . . . 1394
4.29.26 Wi-Fi AMSDU . . . 1395
4.29.27 Wi-Fi Fragment . . . 1395
4.29.28 WPS Enrollee . . . 1395
4.29.29 Wi-Fi Buffer Usage . . . 1395
4.29.30 How to improve Wi-Fi performance . . . 1396
4.29.31 Wi-Fi Menuconfig . . . 1399
4.29.32 Troubleshooting . . . 1402

5 Libraries and Frameworks 1409
5.1 Cloud Frameworks . . . 1409
5.1.1 AWS IoT . . . 1409
5.1.2 Azure IoT . . . 1409
5.1.3 Google IoT Core . . . 1409
5.1.4 Aliyun IoT . . . 1409
5.1.5 Joylink IoT . . . 1409
5.1.6 Tencent IoT . . . 1409
5.1.7 Tencentyun IoT . . . 1410
5.1.8 Baidu IoT . . . 1410

6 Contributions Guide 1411
6.1 How to Contribute . . . 1411
6.2 Before Contributing . . . 1411
6.3 Pull Request Process . . . 1411
6.4 Legal Part . . . 1412
6.5 Related Documents . . . 1412
6.5.1 Espressif IoT Development Framework Style Guide . . . 1412
6.5.2 Install pre-commit Hook for ESP-IDF Project . . . 1419
6.5.3 Documenting Code . . . 1419
6.5.4 Documentation Add-ons and Extensions Reference . . . 1429
6.5.5 Creating Examples . . . 1432
6.5.6 API Documentation Template . . . 1433
6.5.7 Contributor Agreement . . . 1435

7 ESP-IDF Versions 1439
7.1 Releases . . . 1439
7.2 Which Version Should I Start With? . . . 1439
7.3 Versioning Scheme . . . 1439
7.4 Support Periods . . . 1440
7.5 Checking the Current Version . . . 1441
7.6 Git Workflow . . . 1442
7.7 Updating ESP-IDF . . . 1442
7.7.1 Updating to Stable Release . . . 1443
7.7.2 Updating to a Pre-Release Version . . . 1443
7.7.3 Updating to Master Branch . . . 1443
7.7.4 Updating to a Release Branch . . . 1444

8 Resources 1445
8.1 PlatformIO . . . 1445
8.1.1 What is PlatformIO? . . . 1445
8.1.2 Installation . . . 1445

8.1.3 Configuration . . . 1446
8.1.4 Tutorials . . . 1446
8.1.5 Project Examples . . . 1446
8.1.6 Next Steps . . . 1446
8.2 Useful Links . . . 1446

9 Copyrights and Licenses **1447**
9.1 Software Copyrights . . . 1447
9.1.1 Firmware Components . . . 1447
9.1.2 Build Tools . . . 1448
9.1.3 Documentation . . . 1448
9.2 ROM Source Code Copyrights . . . 1448
9.3 Xtensa libhal MIT License . . . 1449
9.4 TinyBasic Plus MIT License . . . 1449
9.5 TJpgDec License . . . 1449

10 About **1451**

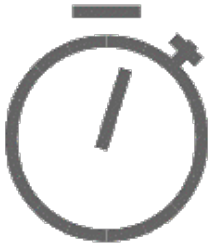
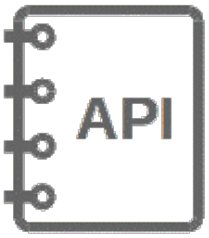
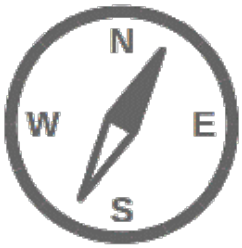
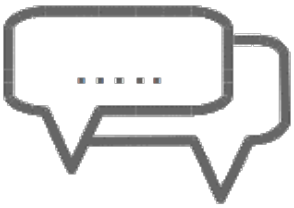
11 Switch Between Languages **1453**

Index **1455**

Index **1455**

This is the documentation for Espressif IoT Development Framework (esp-idf). ESP-IDF is the official development framework for the ESP32, ESP32-S and ESP32-C Series SoCs.

This document describes using ESP-IDF with the ESP32-S2 SoC.

<table>
<tr><td>  </td><td> 
</td><td>
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Get Started</td><td>API Reference</td><td>H/W Reference</td></tr>
<tr><td> 
</td><td> </td><td>  </td></tr>
<tr><td>API Guides</td><td>Contribute</td><td>Resources</td></tr>
</table>

Chapter 1

Get Started

This document is intended to help you set up the software development environment for the hardware based on the ESP32-S2 chip by Espressif.

After that, a simple example will show you how to use ESP-IDF (Espressif IoT Development Framework) for menu configuration, then for building and flashing firmware onto an ESP32-S2 board.

Note: This is documentation for the master branch (latest version) of ESP-IDF. This version is under continual development. Stable version documentation is available, as well as other *ESP-IDF Versions*.

1.1 Introduction

ESP32-S2 is a system on a chip that integrates the following features:

- Wi-Fi (2.4 GHz band)
- High performance single core Xtensa® 32-bit LX7 CPU
- Ultra Low Power co-processor running either RISC-V or FSM core
- Multiple peripherals
- Built-in security hardware
- USB OTG interface

Powered by 40 nm technology, ESP32-S2 provides a robust, highly integrated platform, which helps meet the continuous demands for efficient power usage, compact design, security, high performance, and reliability.

Espressif provides basic hardware and software resources to help application developers realize their ideas using the ESP32-S2 series hardware. The software development framework by Espressif is intended for development of Internet-of-Things (IoT) applications with Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, power management and several other system features.

1.2 What You Need

Hardware:

- An **ESP32-S2** board
- **USB cable** - USB A / micro USB B
- **Computer** running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Software:

You have a choice to either download and install the following software manually

- **Toolchain** to compile code for ESP32-S2
- **Build tools** - CMake and Ninja to build a full **Application** for ESP32-S2

- **ESP-IDF** that essentially contains API (software libraries and source code) for ESP32-S2 and scripts to operate the **Toolchain**

or get through the onboarding process using the following official plugins for integrated development environments (IDE) described in separate documents

- Eclipse Plugin (installation link)
- VS Code Extension (onboarding)

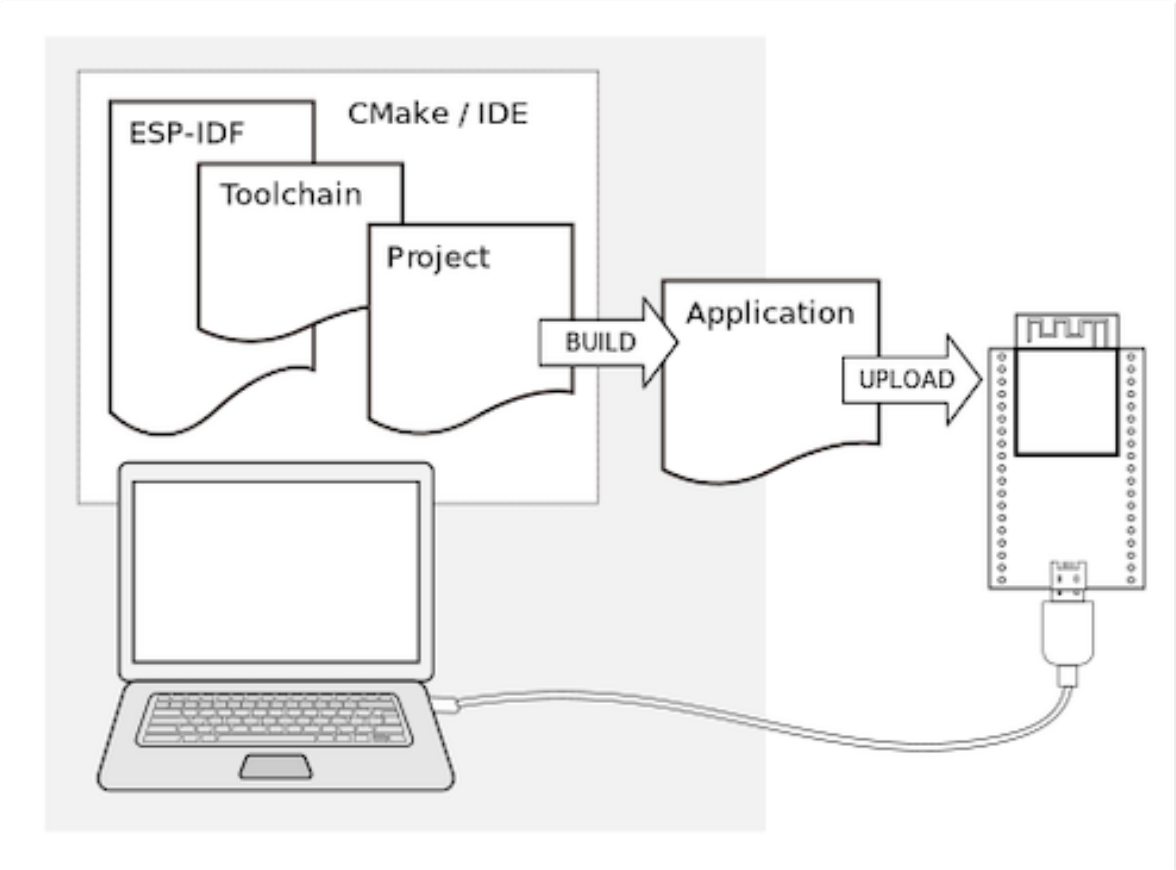


Fig. 1: Development of applications for ESP32-S2

1.3 Development Board Overviews

If you have one of ESP32-S2 development boards listed below, you can click on the link to learn more about its hardware.

1.3.1 ESP32-S2-Saola-1

This user guide provides information on ESP32-S2-Saola-1, a small-sized ESP32-S2 based development board produced by Espressif.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Getting started*: Provides an overview of the ESP32-S2-Saola-1 and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP32-S2-Saola-1 ' s hardware.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

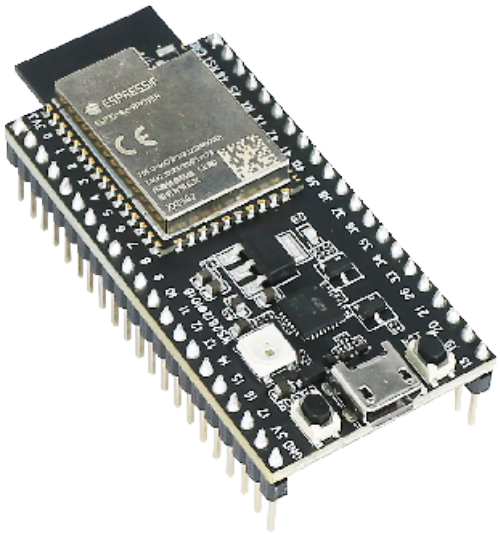


Fig. 2: ESP32-S2-Saola-1

Getting Started

This section describes how to get started with ESP32-S2-Saola-1. It begins with a few introductory sections about the ESP32-S2-Saola-1, then Section *Start Application Development* provides instructions on how to get the ESP32-S2-Saola-1 ready and flash firmware into it.

Overview ESP32-S2-Saola-1 is a small-sized ESP32-S2 based development board produced by Espressif. Most of the I/O pins are broken out to the pin headers on both sides for easy interfacing. Developers can either connect peripherals with jumper wires or mount ESP32-S2-Saola-1 on a breadboard.

To cover a wide range of users' needs, ESP32-S2-Saola-1 supports:

- ESP32-S2-WROVER
- ESP32-S2-WROVER-I
- ESP32-S2-WROOM
- ESP32-S2-WROOM-I

In this guide, we take ESP32-S2-Saola-1 equipped with ESP32-S2-WROVER as an example.

Contents and Packaging

Retail orders If you order a few samples, each ESP32-S2-Saola-1 comes in an individual package in either antistatic bag or any packaging depending on your retailer.

For retail orders, please go to https://www.espressif.com/en/company/contact/buy-a-sample.

Wholesale Orders If you order in bulk, the boards come in large cardboard boxes.

For wholesale orders, please check Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)

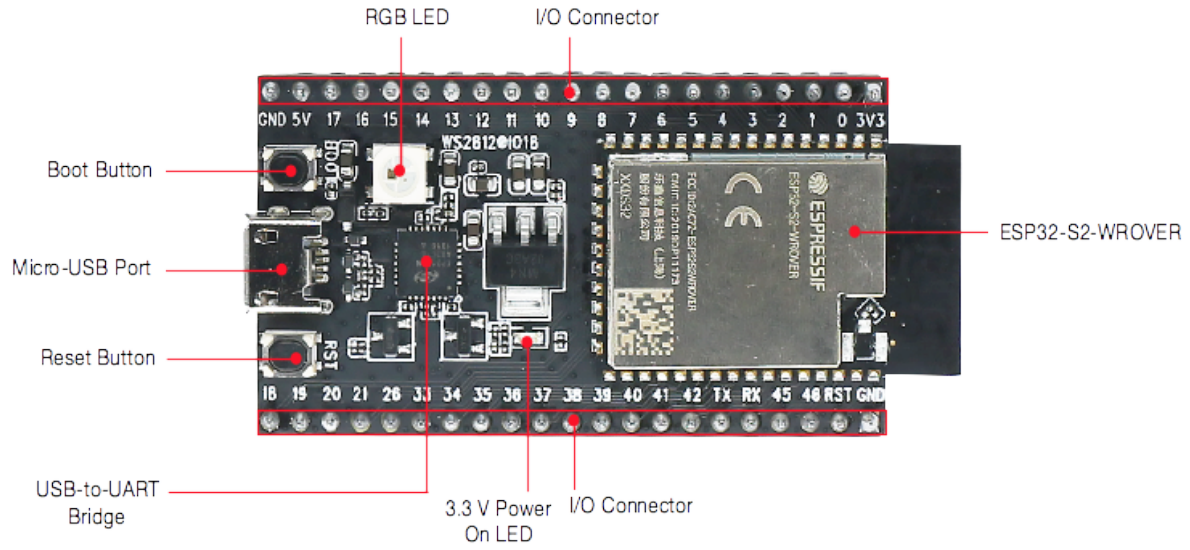


Fig. 3: ESP32-S2-Saola-1 - front

Description of Components

Key Component	Description
ESP32-S2-WROVER	ESP32-S2-WROVER is a powerful, generic Wi-Fi MCU module that integrates ESP32-S2. It has a PCB antenna, a 4 MB external SPI flash and an additional 2 MB PSRAM.
I/O Connector	All available GPIO pins (except for the SPI bus for flash and PSRAM) are broken out to the pin headers on the board. Users can program ESP32-S2 chip to enable multiple functions such as SPI, I2S, UART, I2C, touch sensors, PWM etc.
USB to UART Bridge	Single USB-UART bridge chip provides transfer rates up to 3 Mbps.
Boot Button	Download button. Holding down **Boot** and then pressing **Reset** initiates Firmware Download mode for downloading firmware through the serial port.
Reset Button	Reset button.
3.3 V Power On LED	Turns on when the USB power is connected to the board.
Micro-USB Port	USB interface. Power supply for the board as well as the communication interface between a computer and the ESP32-S2 chip.
RGB LED	Addressable RGB LED (WS2812), driven by GPIO18.

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP32-S2-Saola-1, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- ESP32-S2-Saola-1
- USB 2.0 cable (Standard-A to Micro-B)
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Software Setup Please proceed to *Get Started*, where Section *Installation Step by Step* will quickly help you set up the development environment and then flash an application example into your ESP32-S2-Saola-1.

Note: ESP32-S2 only supports ESP-IDF master or version v4.2 and higher.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of ESP32-S2-Saola-1 and their interconnections.

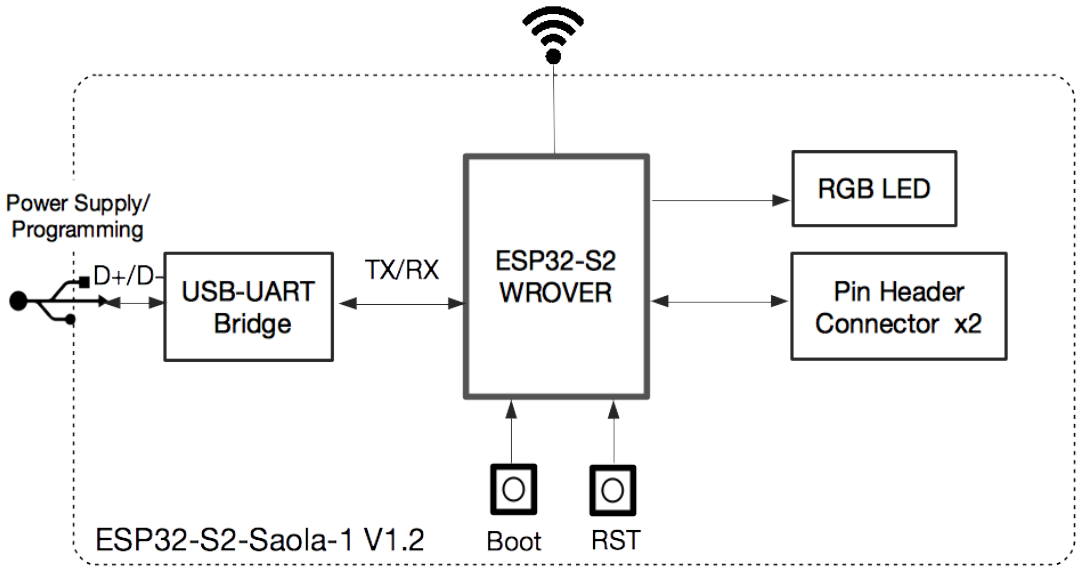


Fig. 4: ESP32-S2-Saola-1 (click to enlarge)

Power Supply Options There are three mutually exclusive ways to provide power to the board:

- Micro USB port, default power supply
- 5V and GND header pins
- 3V3 and GND header pins

Related Documents

- ESP32-S2-Saola-1 Schematics (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-Saola-1 Dimensions (PDF)
- ESP32-S2 Datasheet (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-WROVER & ESP32-S2-WROVER-I Datasheet (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-WROOM & ESP32-S2-WROOM-I Datasheet (PDF)
- Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)

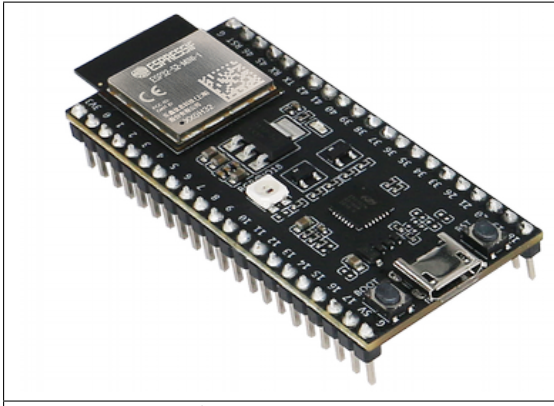
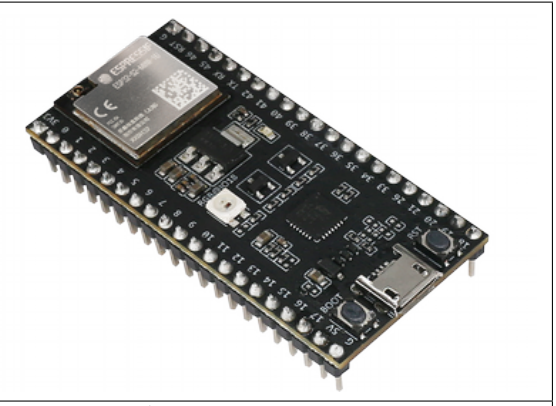
For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

1.3.2 ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U)

This user guide provides information on Espressif ' s small-sized development board ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U).

ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) is a general-purpose development board based on ESP32-S2FH4 chip, which falls into ESP32-S2 chip family. With a rich peripheral set and optimized pinout, this board allows rapid prototyping.

ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1 is embedded with ESP32-S2-MINI-1 module (on-board PCB antenna), while ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1U with ESP32-S2-MINI-1U module (U.FL connector to support external IPEX antenna).

	
ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1	ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1U

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Getting started*: Provides an overview of the ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U)' s hardware.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Getting Started

This section describes how to get started with ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U). It begins with a few introductory sections about the ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U), then Section *Start Application Development* provides instructions on how to get the ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) ready and flash firmware into it.

Overview ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) is entry-level development board equipped with either ESP32-S2-MINI-1 or ESP32-S2-MINI-1U module. Most of the I/O pins on the module are broken out to the pin headers on both sides for easy interfacing. Developers can either connect peripherals with jumper wires or mount ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) on a breadboard.

Contents and Packaging

Retail orders If you order a few samples, each ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) comes in an individual package in either antistatic bag or any packaging depending on your retailer.

For retail orders, please go to https://www.espressif.com/en/company/contact/buy-a-sample.

Wholesale Orders If you order in bulk, the boards come in large cardboard boxes.

For wholesale orders, please check Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF).

Description of Components

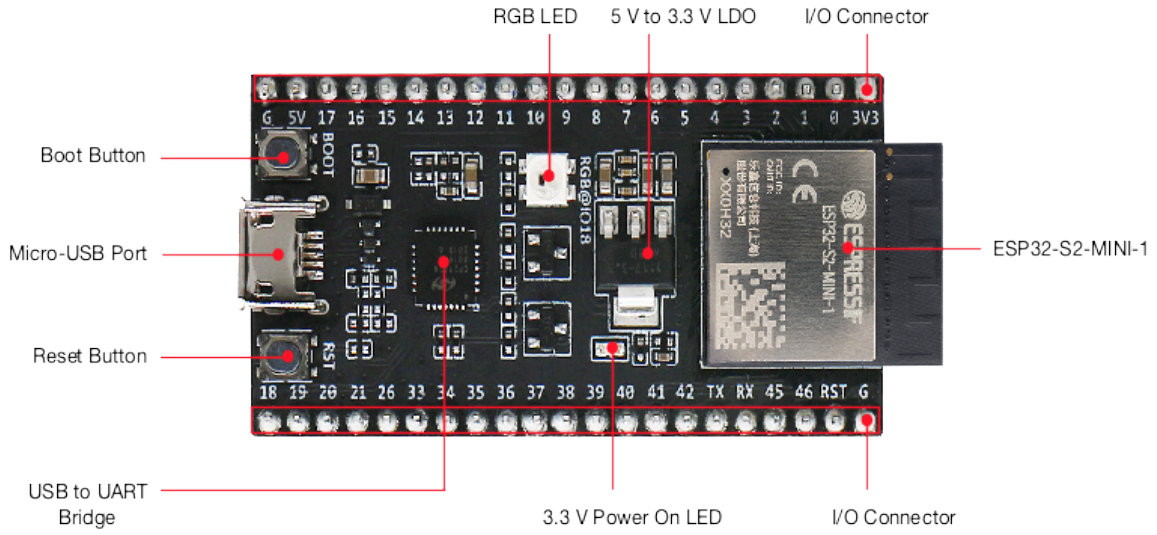


Fig. 5: ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1 - front

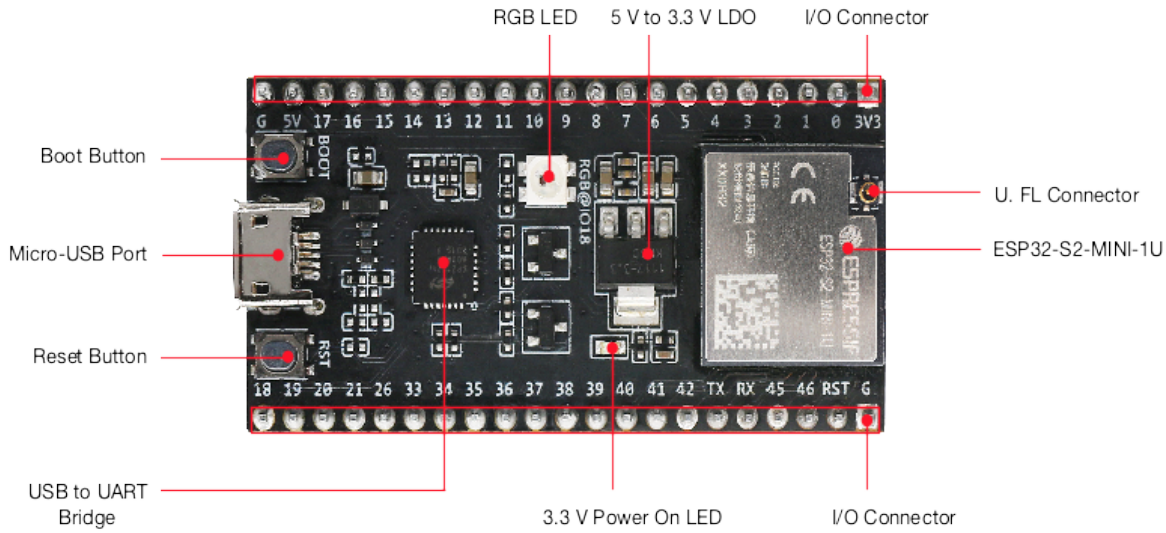


Fig. 6: ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1U - front

Key Component	Description
ESP32-S2-MINI-1 or ESP32-S2-MINI-1U	ESP32-S2-MINI-1 and ESP32-S2-MINI-1U are two powerful, generic Wi-Fi MCU modules that integrate ESP32-S2FH4 chip. ESP32-S2-MINI-1 comes with a PCB antenna, and ESP32-S2-MINI-1U with a U.FL connector for external IPEX antenna. They both feature a 4 MB external SPI flash.
3.3 V Power On LED	Turns on when the USB power is connected to the board.
USB to UART Bridge	Single USB-UART bridge chip provides transfer rates up to 3 Mbps.
I/O Connector	All available GPIO pins (except for the SPI bus for flash) are broken out to the pin headers on the board. Users can program ESP32-S2FH4 chip to enable multiple functions such as SPI, I2S, UART, I2C, touch sensors, PWM etc. For details, please see *Header Block*.
Reset Button	Reset button.
Micro-USB Port	USB interface. Power supply for the board as well as the communication interface between a computer and the ESP32-S2FH4 chip.
Boot Button	Download button. Holding down **Boot** and then pressing **Reset** initiates Firmware Download mode for downloading firmware through the serial port.
RGB LED	Addressable RGB LED (WS2812), driven by GPIO18.
5 V to 3.3 V LDO	Power regulator that converts a 5 V supply into a 3.3 V output.
U.FL Connector	On **ESP32-S2-MINI-1U** module only. Connects to an external IPEX antenna.

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U), please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U)
  - For ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1U, an IPEX antenna is also required.
- USB 2.0 cable (Standard-A to Micro-B)
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Software Setup Please proceed to *Get Started*, where Section *Installation Step by Step* will quickly help you set up the development environment and then flash an application example into your ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U).

Note: ESP32-S2 family chip only is only supported in ESP-IDF master or version v4.2 and higher.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1 and their interconnections.

Power Supply Options There are three mutually exclusive ways to provide power to the board:

- Micro USB port, default power supply
- 5V and GND header pins
- 3V3 and GND header pins

It is recommended to use the first option: micro USB port.

Header Block The two tables below provide the **Name** and **Function** of I/O header pins on both sides of the board, as shown in *ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1 - front*. The numbering and names are the same as in the ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) Schematics (PDF).

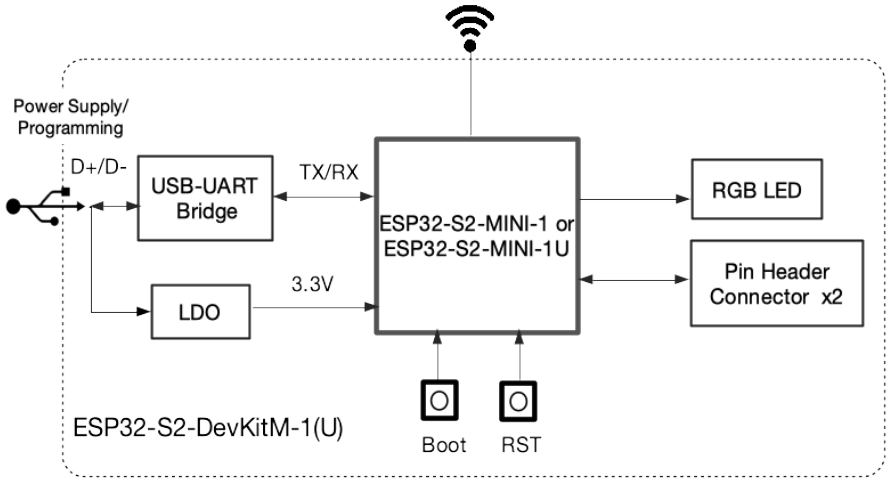


Fig. 7: ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) (click to enlarge)

J1

No.	Name	Type	Function
1	3V3	P	3.3 V power supply
2	0	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO0, GPIO0
3	1	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO1, GPIO1, TOUCH1, ADC1_CH0
4	2	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO2, GPIO2, TOUCH2, ADC1_CH1
5	3	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO3, GPIO3, TOUCH3, ADC1_CH2
6	4	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO4, GPIO4, TOUCH4, ADC1_CH3
7	5	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO5, GPIO5, TOUCH5, ADC1_CH4
8	6	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO6, GPIO6, TOUCH6, ADC1_CH5
9	7	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO7, GPIO7, TOUCH7, ADC1_CH6
10	8	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO8, GPIO8, TOUCH8, ADC1_CH7
11	9	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO9, GPIO9, TOUCH9, ADC1_CH8, FSPIHD
12	10	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO10, GPIO10, TOUCH10, ADC1_CH9, FSPICS0, FSPIIO4
13	11	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO11, GPIO11, TOUCH11, ADC2_CH0, FSPID, FSPIIO5
14	12	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO12, GPIO12, TOUCH12, ADC2_CH1, FSPICLK, FSPIIO6
15	13	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO13, GPIO13, TOUCH13, ADC2_CH2, FSPIQ, FSPIIO7
16	14	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO14, GPIO14, TOUCH14, ADC2_CH3, FSPIWP, FSPIDQS
17	15	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO15, GPIO15, U0RTS, ADC2_CH4, XTAL_32K_P
18	16	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO16, GPIO16, U0CTS, ADC2_CH5, XTAL_32K_N
19	17	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO17, GPIO17, U1TXD, ADC2_CH6, DAC_1
20	5V	P	5 V power supply
21	G	G	Ground

J3

No.	Name	Type	Function
1	G	G	Ground
2	RST	I	CHIP_PU
3	46	I	GPIO46
4	45	I/O/T	GPIO45
5	RX	I/O/T	U0RXD, GPIO44, CLK_OUT2
6	TX	I/O/T	U0TXD, GPIO43, CLK_OUT1
7	42	I/O/T	MTMS, GPIO42
8	41	I/O/T	MTDI, GPIO41, CLK_OUT1
9	40	I/O/T	MTDO, GPIO40, CLK_OUT2
10	39	I/O/T	MTCK, GPIO39, CLK_OUT3
11	38	I/O/T	GPIO38, FSPIWP
12	37	I/O/T	SPIDQS, GPIO37, FSPIQ
13	36	I/O/T	SPIIO7, GPIO36, FSPICLK
14	35	I/O/T	SPIIO6, GPIO35, FSPID
15	34	I/O/T	SPIIO5, GPIO34, FSPICS0
16	33	I/O/T	SPIIO4, GPIO33, FSPIHD
17	26	I/O/T	SPICS1, GPIO26
18	21	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO21, GPIO21
19	20	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO20, GPIO20, U1CTS, ADC2_CH9, CLK_OUT1, USB_D+
20	19	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO19, GPIO19, U1RTS, ADC2_CH8, CLK_OUT2, USB_D-
21	18	I/O/T	RTC_GPIO18, GPIO18, U1RXD, ADC2_CH7, DAC_2, CLK_OUT3

Related Documents

- ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) Schematics (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) PCB Layout (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-DevKitM-1(U) Dimensions (PDF)
- ESP32-S2 Family Datasheet (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-MINI-1 & ESP32-S2-MINI-1U Datasheet (PDF)
- Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

1.3.3 ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3

Older version: *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit v1.3 is a development kit by Espressif that is mainly created to:

- Demonstrate the ESP32-S2' s human-computer interaction functionalities
- Provide the users with the tools for development of human-computer interaction applications based on the ESP32-S2

There are many ways of how the ESP32-S2' s abundant functionalities can be used. For starters, the possible use cases may include:

- **Smart home**: From simplest smart lighting, smart door locks, smart sockets, to video streaming devices, security cameras, OTT devices, and home appliances
- **Battery-powered equipment**: Wi-Fi mesh sensor networks, Wi-Fi-networked toys, wearable devices, health management equipment
- **Industrial automation equipment**: Wireless control and robot technology, intelligent lighting, HVAC control equipment, etc.
- **Retail and catering industry**: POS machines and service robots

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit consists of the following boards:

- Main board: *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1*

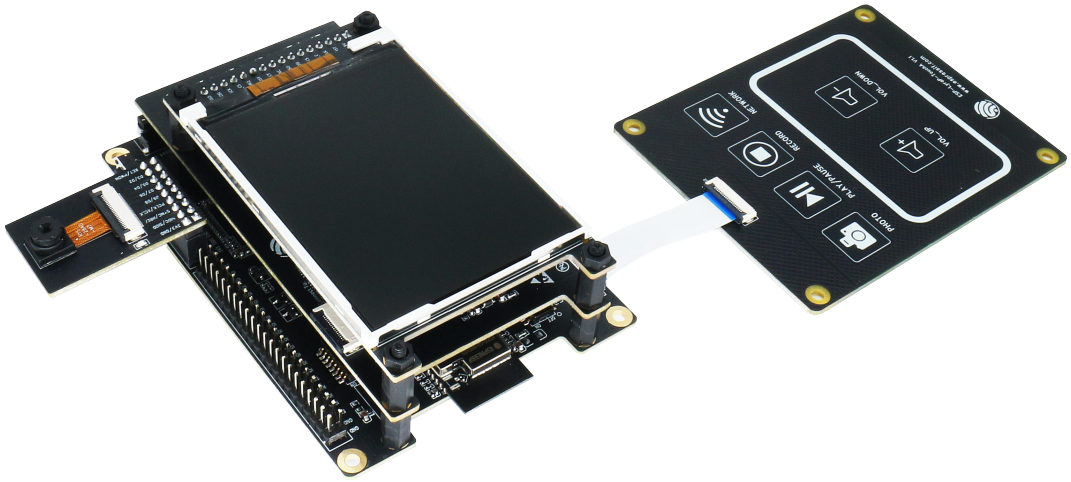


Fig. 8: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1-Kit Overview (click to enlarge)

- Extension boards:
  - *ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.3* - audio player
  - *ESP-LyraP-TouchA v1.1* - touch panel
  - *ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.2* - 3.2” LCD screen
  - *ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.1* - camera board

Due to the presence of multiplexed pins on ESP32-S2, certain extension board combinations have limited compatibility. For more details, please see *Compatibility of Extension Boards*.

This document is **mostly dedicated to the main board** and its interaction with the extension boards. For more detailed information on each extension board, click their respective links.

This guide covers:

- *Getting Started*: Provides an overview of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1’ s hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Getting Started

This section describes how to get started with the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1. It begins with a few introductory sections about the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, then Section *Start Application Development* provides instructions on how to do the initial hardware setup and then how to flash firmware onto the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1.

Overview The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 main board is the heart of the kit. It integrates the ESP32-S2-WROVER module and all the connectors for extension boards. This board is the key tool in prototyping human-computer interaction interfaces.

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 board has connectors for boards with:

- Extension header (ESP-LyraT-8311A, ESP-LyraP-LCD32)
- Camera header (ESP-LyraP-CAM)
- Touch FPC coneector (ESP-LyraP-TouchA)
- LCD FPC connector (no official extension boards yet)
- I2C FPC connector (no official extension boards yet)

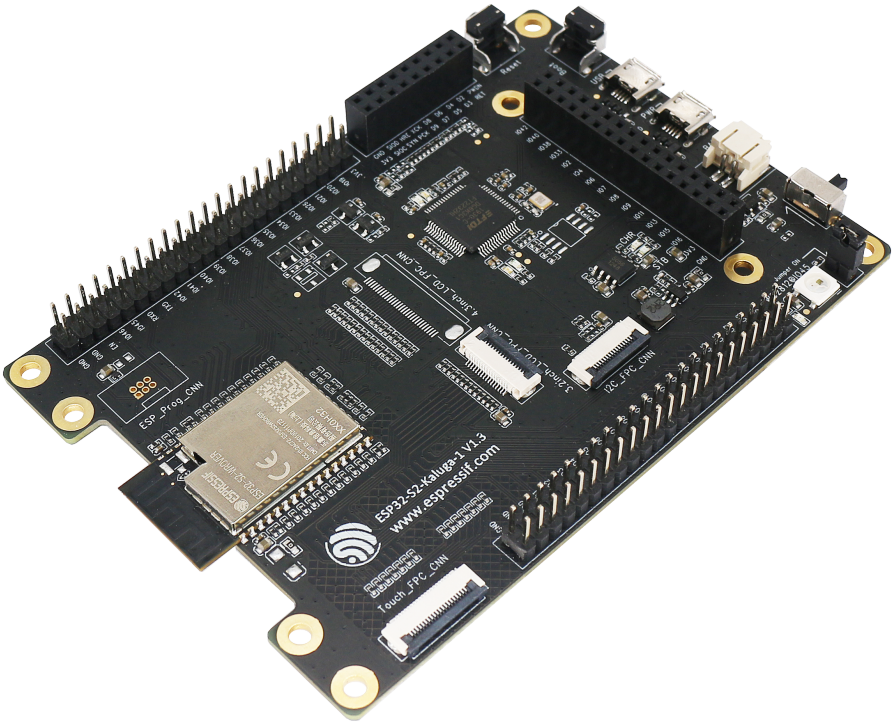


Fig. 9: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 (click to enlarge)

All the four extension boards are specially desgined to support the following features:

- **Touch panel control**
  - Six touch buttons
  - Supports acrylic panels up to 5 mm
  - Wet hand operation
  - Water rejection, ESP32-S2 can be configured to disable all touchpads automatically if multiple pads are simultaneously covered with water and to re-enable touchpads if the water is removed
- **Audio playback**
  - Connect speakers to play audio
  - Use together with the Touch panel to control audio playback and adjust volume
- **LCD display**
  - LCD interface (8-bit parallel RGB, 8080, and 6800 interface)
- **Camera image acquisition**
  - Supports OV2640 and OV3660 camera modules
  - 8-bit DVP image sensor interface (ESP32-S2 also supports 16-bit DVP image sensors, you can design it yourself)
  - Clock frequency up to 40 MHz
  - Optimized DMA transmission bandwidth for easier transmission of high-resolution images

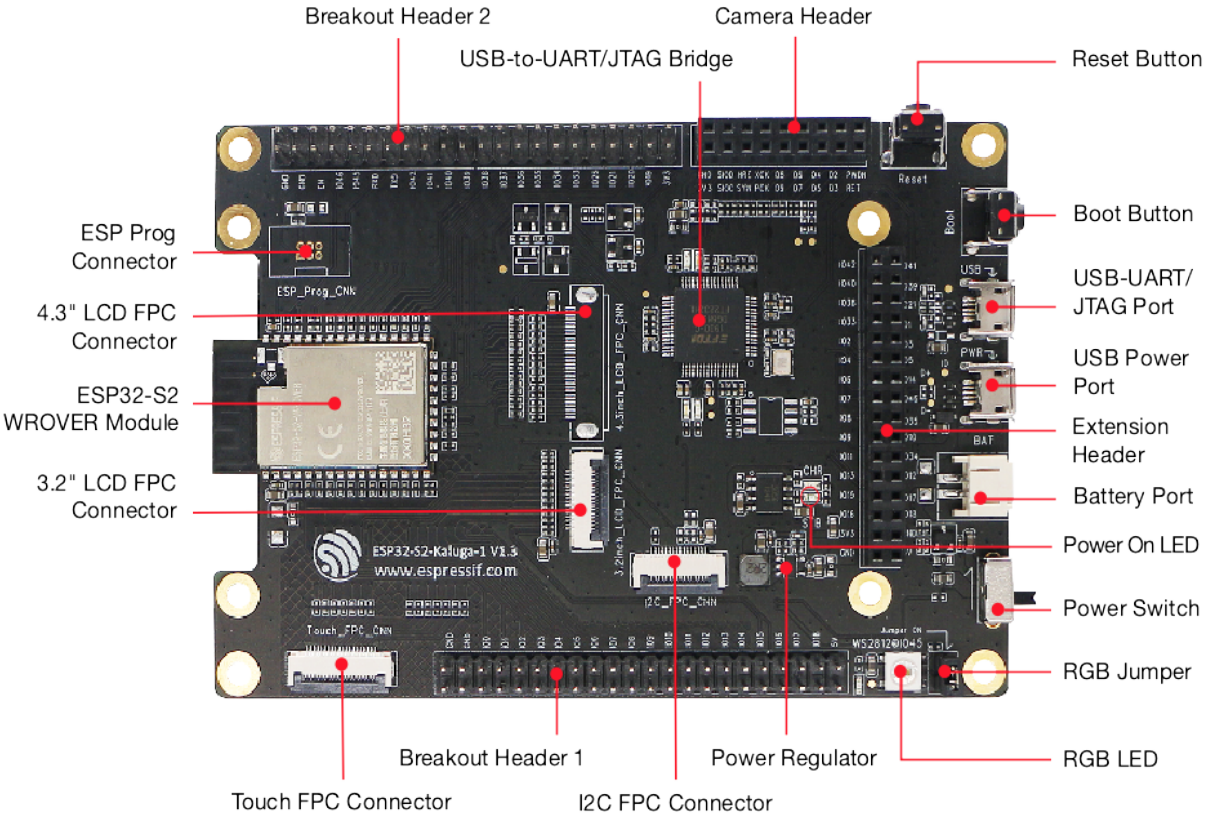


Fig. 10: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 - front (click to enlarge)

Description of Components The description of components starts from the ESP32-S2 module on the left side and then goes clockwise.

Reserved means that the functionality is available, but the current version of the kit does not use it.

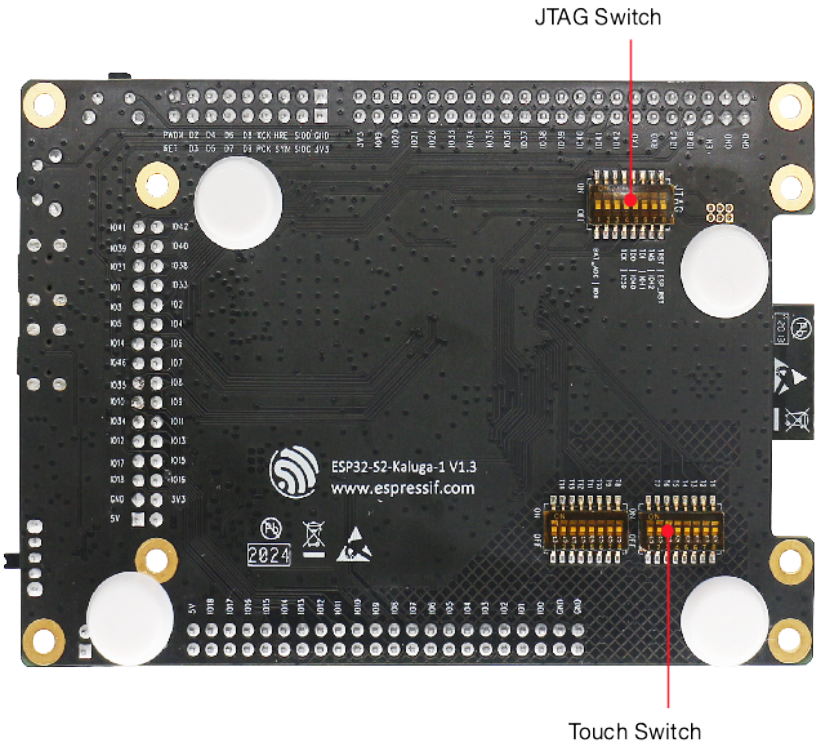


Fig. 11: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 - back (click to enlarge)

Key Component	Description
ESP32-S2-WROVER Module	Module integrating the ESP32-S2 chip that provides Wi-Fi connectivity, data processing power, and flexible data storage.
4.3” LCD FPC Connector	(Reserved) Connect to a 4.3” LCD extension board using the FPC cable.
ESP Prog Connector	(Reserved) Connection for Espressif ’ s download device (ESP-Prog) to flash ESP32-S2 system.
JTAG Switch	Switch to ON to enable connection between ESP32-S2 and FT2232; JTAG debugging will then be possible using USB-UART/JTAG Port. See also *JTAG Debugging*.
Breakout Header 2	Some GPIO pins of the ESP32-S2-WROVER module are broken out to this header, see labels on the board.
USB-to-UART/JTAG Bridge	FT2232 adapter board allowing for communication over USB port using UART/JTAG protocols.
Camera Header	Mount a camera extension board here (e.g., ESP-LyraP-CAM).
Extension Header	Mount the extension boards having such connectors here.
Reset Button	Press this button to restart the system
Boot Button	Holding down **Boot** and then pressing **Reset** initiates Firmware Download mode for downloading firmware through the serial port.
USB-UART/JTAG Port	Communication interface (UART or JTAG) between a PC and the ESP32-S2 module.
USB Power Port	Power supply for the board.
Battery Port	Connect an external battery to the 2-pin battery connector.
Power On LED	Turns on when the USB or an external power supply is connected to the board.
Power Switch	Switch to ON to power the system.
RGB Jumper	To have access to the RGB LED, place a jumper onto the pins.
RGB LED	Programmable RGB LED and controlled by GPIO45. Before using it, you need to put RGB Jumper ON.
Power Regulator	Regulator converts 5 V to 3.3 V.
I2C FPC Connector	(Reserved) Connect to other I2C extension boards using the FPC cable.
Breakout Header 1	Some GPIO pins of the ESP32-S2-WROVER module are broken out to this header, see labels on the board.
Touch FPC Connector	Connect the ESP-LyraP-TouchA extension board using the FPC cable.
Touch Switch	In ON position, GPIO1 to GPIO14 can be used for connection to touch sensors; switch to ON if you want to use them for other purposes.
3.2” LCD FPC connector	Connect a 3.2” LCD extension board (e.g., ESP-LyraP-LCD32) using the FPC

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1
- Two USB 2.0 cables (Standard-A to Micro-B)
  - For power supply
  - For UART/JTAG communication
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS
- Any extension boards of your choice

Hardware Setup

1. Connect the extension board(s) of your choice (go to their respective user guides if necessary)
2. Plug in both USB cables
3. Turn the **Power Switch** to ON - the Power On LED will light up

Software Setup Please proceed to *Get Started*, where Section *Installation Step by Step* will quickly help you set up the development environment.

The programming guide and application examples for your ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit can be found in esp-dev-kits repository on GitHub.

Contents and Packaging

Retail orders If you order one or several samples of the kit, each ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 development kit comes in an individual package.

The contents are as follows:

- **Main Board**
  - ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1
- **Extension Boards:**
  - ESP-LyraT-8311A
  - ESP-LyraP-CAM
  - ESP-LyraP-TouchA
  - ESP-LyraP-LCD32
- **Connectors**
  - 20-pin FPC cable (to connect ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 to ESP-LyraP-TouchA)
- **Fasteners**
  - Mounting bolts (x8)
  - Screws (x4)
  - Nuts (x4)

For retail orders, please go to https://www.espressif.com/en/company/contact/buy-a-sample.

Wholesale Orders If you order in bulk, the boards come in large cardboard boxes.

For wholesale orders, please check Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 and their interconnections.

Fig. 12: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 - package

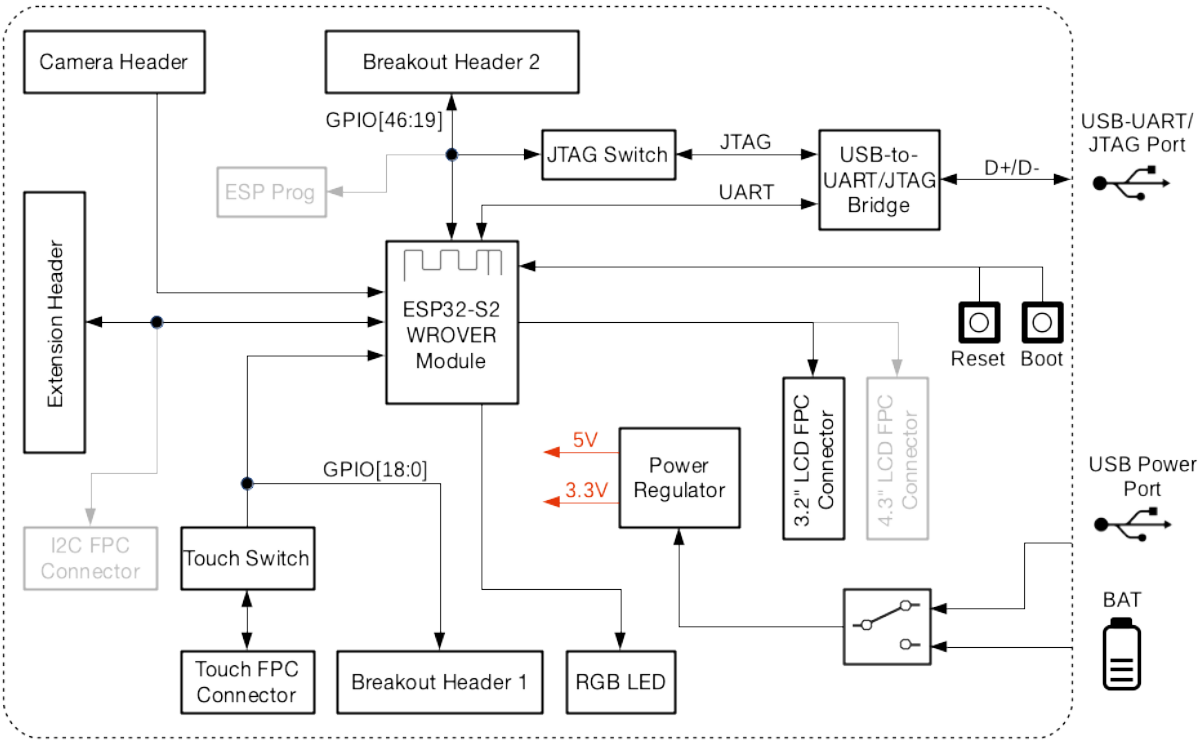


Fig. 13: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 block diagram

Power Supply Options There are four ways to provide power to the board:

- Micro USB port, default power supply
- External battery via the 2-pin battery connector
- 5V and GND header pins
- 3V3 and GND header pins

Compatibility of Extension Boards If you want to use more than one extension board at the same time, please check the table given below.

Boards Used	HW Conflict	Limitations	Solution
8311A v1.3 + CAM v1.1	I2S Controller	ESP32-S2 has only one I2S interface. But both extension boards require connection via the ESP32-S2's I2S interface (LyraT-8311A in Standard mode, ESP-LyraP-CAM in Camera mode).	Utilize time division multiple access, or use a different audio module that can be connected via other GPIOs or DAC.
TouchA v1.1 + LCD32 v1.2	IO11, IO6	Touch actions cannot be triggered because of the multiplexed pin IO11. ESP-LyraP-LCD32 will not be affected because its BLCT pin will be disconnected from IO6.	Do not initialize IO11 (NETWORK) for your ESP-LyraP-TouchA, or configure the BLCT pin to *-1* (= do not use BLCT) for your ESP-LyraP-LCD32.
8311A v1.3 + LCD32 v1.2	IO6	BLCT pin of ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 will be disconnected from IO6.	Configure the BK pin to *-1* (= do not use BLCT) for your ESP-LyraP-LCD32.
TouchA v1.1 + 8311A v1.3	Pin BT_ADC on ESP-LyraT-8311A	This pin is required for initialization of the six button on ESP-LyraT-8311A. At the same time, ESP-LyraP-TouchA needs this pin for its touch actions.	If you plan to use buttons on ESP-LyraT-8311A, do not initialize pin IO6 (PHOTO) for your ESP-LyraP-TouchA.
TouchA v1.1 + CAM v1.1	IO1, IO2, IO3	Cannot be used simultaneously because of the mentioned multiplexed pins.	For ESP-LyraP-TouchA, do not initialize IO1 (VOL_UP), IO2 (PLAY), and IO3 (VOL_DOWN).
TouchA v1.1 + LCD32 v1.2 + CAM v1.1	IO1, IO2, IO3, IO11	Conflicts on the mentioned multiplexed pins.	For ESP-LyraP-TouchA, do not initialize IO1 (VOL_UP), IO2 (PLAY), IO3 (VOL_DOWN), and IO11 (NETWORK).
TouchA v1.1 + LCD32 v1.2 + 8311A v1.3	IO6, IO11	If ESP-LyraT-8311A's pin BT_ADC is used to initialize the board's six buttons, IO6 and IO11 will not be available for the other boards.	Do not initialize IO11 (NETWORK) for your ESP-LyraP-TouchA. Also, if you need to use BT_ADC, do not initialize IO6 (PHOTO).

Hardware Revision Details

ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3

- The following pins re-assigned to fix the download issue
  - Camera D2: GPIO36
  - Camera D3: GPIO37
  - AU_I2S1_SDI: GPIO34
  - AU_WAKE_INT: GPIO46
- RGB pin header moved to the board's edge
- All dip switches moved to the flip side for convenient operation

ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2 *Initial release*

Related Documents

ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2 New version available: *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3*

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit v1.2 is a development kit by Espressif that is mainly created to:

- Demonstrate the ESP32-S2's human-computer interaction functionalities

- Provide the users with the tools for development of human-computer interaction applications based on the ESP32-S2

There are many ways of how the ESP32-S2' s abundant functionalities can be used. For starters, the possible use cases may include:

- **Smart home**: From simplest smart lighting, smart door locks, smart sockets, to video streaming devices, security cameras, OTT devices, and home appliances
- **Battery-powered equipment**: Wi-Fi mesh sensor networks, Wi-Fi-networked toys, wearable devices, health management equipment
- **Industrial automation equipment**: Wireless control and robot technology, intelligent lighting, HVAC control equipment, etc.
- **Retail and catering industry**: POS machines and service robots

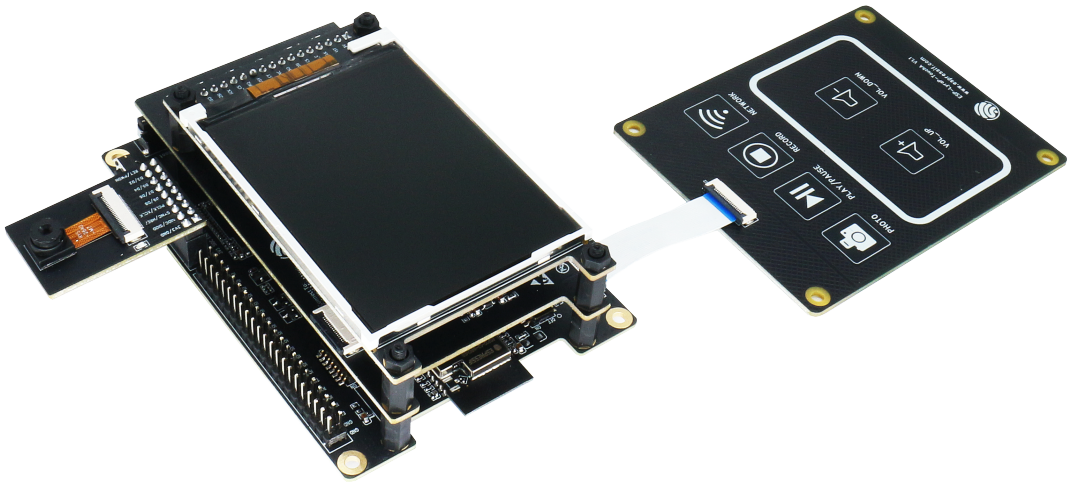


Fig. 14: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1-Kit Overview (click to enlarge)

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit consists of the following boards:

- Main board: *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1*
- Extension boards:
  - *ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.2* - audio player
  - *ESP-LyraP-TouchA v1.1* - touch panel
  - *ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.1* - 3.2" LCD screen
  - *ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.0* - camera board

Due to the presence of multiplexed pins on ESP32-S2, certain extension board combinations have limited compatibility. For more details, please see *Compatibility of Extension Boards*.

This document is **mostly dedicated to the main board** and its interaction with the extension boards. For more detailed information on each extension board, click their respective links.

This guide covers:

- *Getting Started*: Provides an overview of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1' s hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Getting Started This section describes how to get started with the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1. It begins with a few introductory sections about the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, then Section *Start Application Development* provides instructions on how to do the initial hardware setup and then how to flash firmware onto the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1.

Overview The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 main board is the heart of the kit. It integrates the ESP32-S2-WROVER module and all the connectors for extension boards. This board is the key tool in prototyping human-computer interaction interfaces.

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 board has connectors for boards with:

- Extension header (ESP-LyraT-8311A, ESP-LyraP-LCD32)
- Camera header (ESP-LyraP-CAM)
- Touch FPC connector (ESP-LyraP-TouchA)
- LCD FPC connector (no official extension boards yet)
- I2C FPC connector (no official extension boards yet)

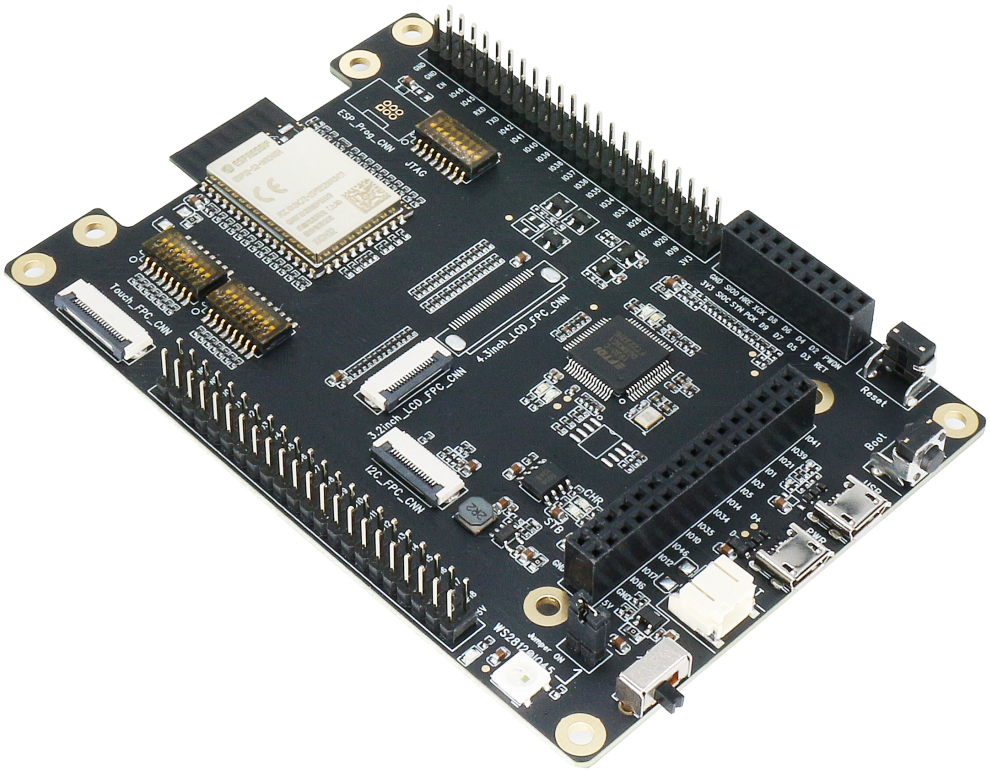


Fig. 15: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 (click to enlarge)

All the four extension boards are specially desgined to support the following features:

- **Touch panel control**
  - Six touch buttons
  - Supports acrylic panels up to 5 mm
  - Wet hand operation
  - Water rejection, ESP32-S2 can be configured to disable all touchpads automatically if multiple pads are simultaneously covered with water and to re-enable touchpads if the water is removed
- **Audio playback**
  - Connect speakers to play audio
  - Use together with the Touch panel to control audio playback and adjust volume
- **LCD display**
  - LCD interface (8-bit parallel RGB, 8080, and 6800 interface)
- **Camera image acquisition**
  - Supports OV2640 and OV3660 camera modules
  - 8-bit DVP image sensor interface (ESP32-S2 also supports 16-bit DVP image sensors, you can design it yourself)

- Clock frequency up to 40 MHz
- Optimized DMA transmission bandwidth for easier transmission of high-resolution images

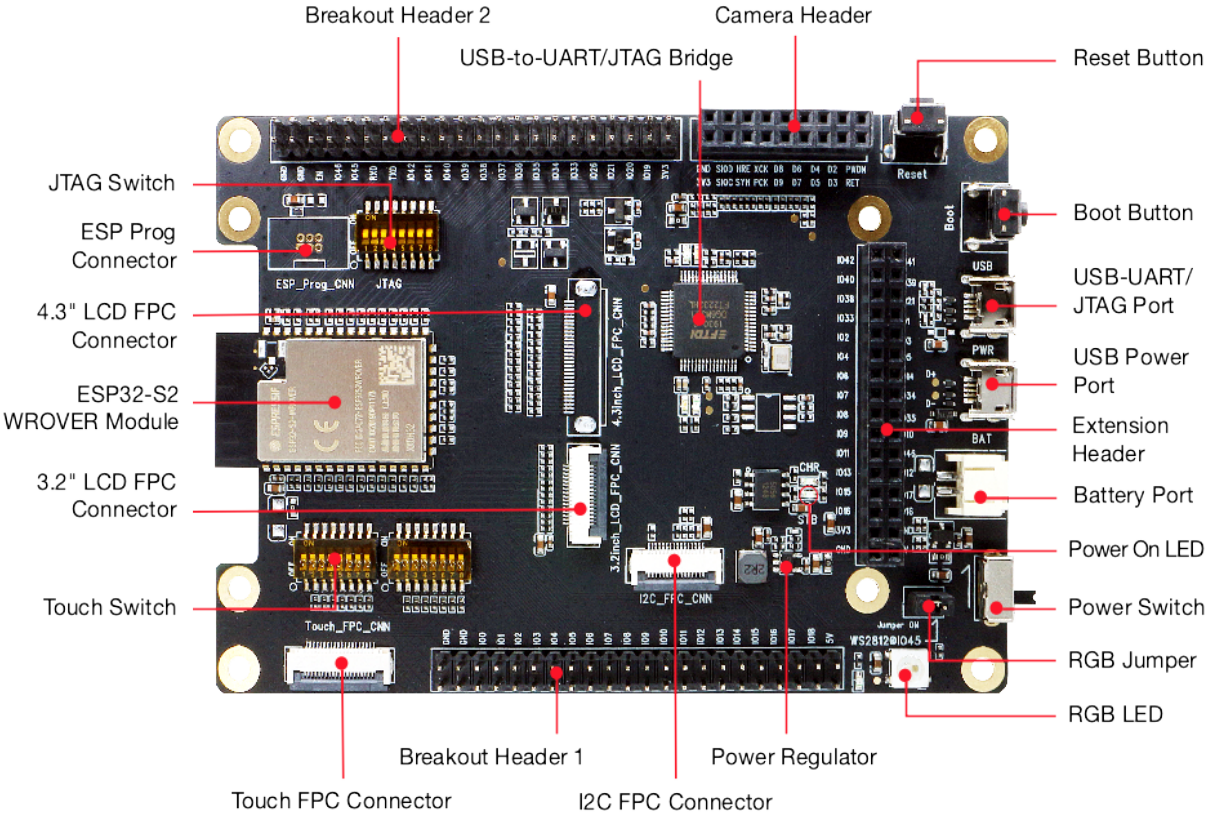


Fig. 16: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 - front (click to enlarge)

Description of Components The description of components starts from the ESP32-S2 module on the left side and then goes clockwise.

Reserved means that the functionality is available, but the current version of the kit does not use it.

Key Component	Description
ESP32-S2-WROVER Module	Module integrating the ESP32-S2 chip that provides Wi-Fi connectivity, data processing power, and flexible data storage.
4.3" LCD FPC Connector	(Reserved) Connect to a 4.3" LCD extension board using the FPC cable.
ESP Prog Connector	(Reserved) Connection for Espressif's download device (ESP-Prog) to flash ESP32-S2 system.
JTAG Switch	Switch to ON to enable connection between ESP32-S2 and FT2232; JTAG debugging will then be possible using USB-UART/JTAG Port. See also *JTAG Debugging*.
Breakout Header 2	Some GPIO pins of the ESP32-S2-WROVER module are broken out to this header, see labels on the board.
USB-to-UART/JTAG Bridge	FT2232 adapter board allowing for communication over USB port using UART/JTAG protocols.
Camera Header	Mount a camera extension board here (e.g., ESP-LyraP-CAM).
Extension Header	Mount the extension boards having such connectors here.
Reset Button	Press this button to restart the system.
Boot Button	Holding down **Boot** and then pressing **Reset** initiates Firmware Download mode for downloading firmware through the serial port.
USB-UART/JTAG Port	Communication interface (UART or JTAG) between a PC and the ESP32-S2 module.
USB Power Port	Power supply for the board.
Battery Port	Connect an external battery to the 2-pin battery connector.
Power On LED	Turns on when the USB or an external power supply is connected to the board.
Power Switch	Switch to ON to power the system.
RGB Jumper	To have access to the RGB LED, place a jumper onto the pins.
RGB LED	Programmable RGB LED and controlled by GPIO45. Before using it, you need to put RGB Jumper ON.
Power Regulator	Regulator converts 5 V to 3.3 V.
I2C FPC Connector	(Reserved) Connect to other I2C extension boards using the FPC cable.
Breakout Header 1	Some GPIO pins of the ESP32-S2-WROVER module are broken out to this header, see labels on the board.
Touch FPC Connector	Connect the ESP-LyraP-TouchA extension board using the FPC cable.
Touch Switch	In OFF position, GPIO1 to GPIO14 are used for connection to touch sensors; switch to ON if you want to use them for other purposes.
3.2" LCD FPC connector	Connect a 3.2" LCD extension board (e.g., ESP-LyraP-LCD32) using the FPC cable.

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1
- Two USB 2.0 cables (Standard-A to Micro-B)
  - For power supply
  - For UART/JTAG communication
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS
- Any extension boards of your choice

Hardware Setup

1. Connect the extension board(s) of your choice (go to their respective user guides if necessary)
2. Plug in both USB cables
3. Turn the **Power Switch** to ON - the Power On LED will light up

Software Setup Please proceed to *Get Started*, where Section *Installation Step by Step* will quickly help you set up the development environment.

The programming guide and application examples for your ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit can be found in esp-dev-kits repository on GitHub.

Contents and Packaging

Retail orders If you order one or several samples of the kit, each ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 development kit comes in an individual package containing:

- **Main Board**
  - ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1
- **Extension Boards:**
  - ESP-LyraT-8311A
  - ESP-LyraP-CAM
  - ESP-LyraP-TouchA
  - ESP-LyraP-LCD32
- **Connectors**
  - 20-pin FPC cable (to connect ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 to ESP-LyraP-TouchA)
- **Fasteners**
  - Mounting bolts (x8)
  - Screws (x4)
  - Nuts (x4)

For retail orders, please go to https://www.espressif.com/en/company/contact/buy-a-sample.

Wholesale Orders If you order in bulk, the boards come in large cardboard boxes.

For wholesale orders, please check Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 and their interconnections.

Power Supply Options There are four ways to provide power to the board:

- Micro USB port, default power supply
- External battery via the 2-pin battery connector
- 5V and GND header pins
- 3V3 and GND header pins

Compatibility of Extension Boards If you want to use more than one extension board at the same time, please check the table given below.

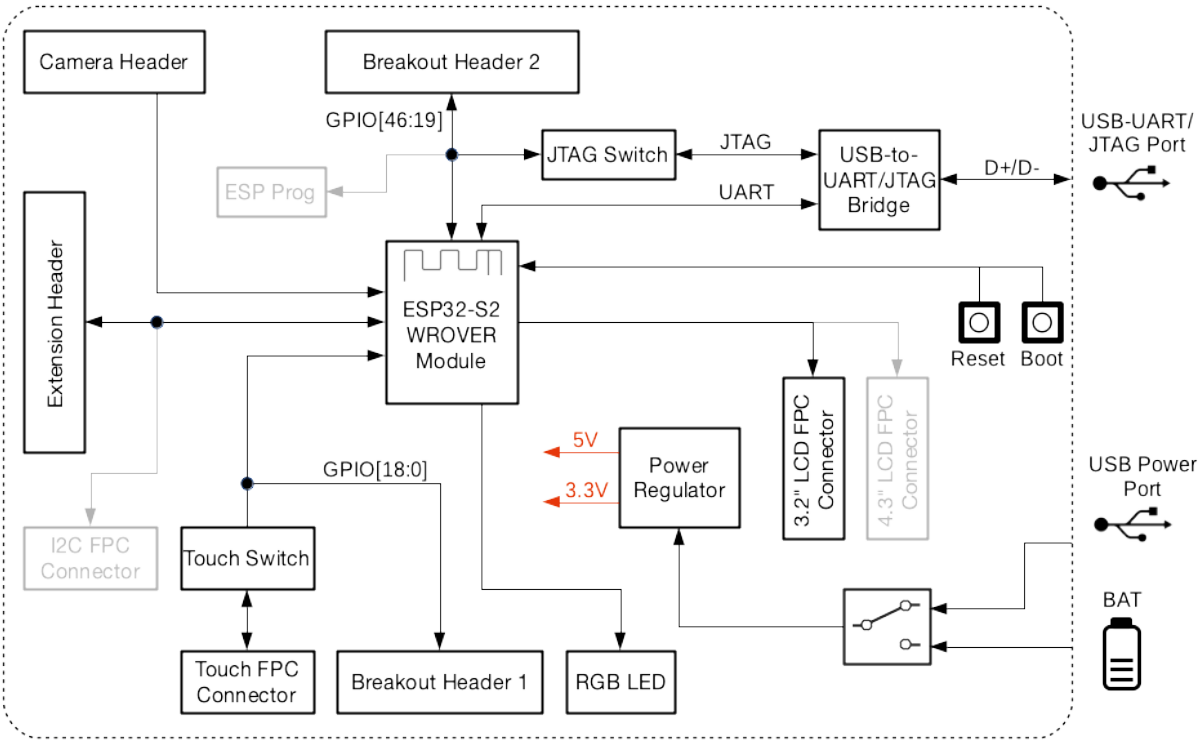


Fig. 17: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 block diagram

Boards Used	HW Conflict	Limitations	Solution
8311A v1.2 + CAM v1.0	I2S Controller, IO46	ESP32-S2 has only one I2S interface. But both extension boards require connection via the ESP32-S2' s I2S interface (ESP-LyraT-8311A in Standard mode, ESP-LyraP-CAM in Camera mode). If IO46 is used by both extension boards at the same time, ESP-LyraP-CAM experiences interferences when used.	No ready solution for now.
TouchA v1.1 + LCD32 v1.1	IO11, IO6	Touch actions cannot be triggered because of the multiplexed pin IO11. ESP-LyraP-LCD32 is also affected because its BK (BLCT) pin is connected to pin IO6.	Do not initialize IO11 (NETWORK) and IO6 (PHOTO) for your ESP-LyraP-TouchA.
8311A v1.2 + LCD32 v1.1	IO6	The two extension boards can be used at the same time. However, since the BK (BLCT) pin of ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 is connected to IO6, ESP-LyraT-8311A' s pin BT_ADC cannot be used and the board' s six buttons will not be available.	There is a solution that will allow you to use ESP-LyraT-8311A' s pin BT_ADC, but will stop you from controlling the display background brightness with software: on your ESP-LyraP-LCD32 board, remove R39, change R41 to 100 Ohm, switch BLCT_L to on.
TouchA v1.1 + 8311A v1.2	Pin BT_ADC on ESP-LyraT-8311A	The two extension boards can be used at the same time. However, ESP-LyraP-TouchA cannot be triggered if ESP-LyraT-8311A' s pin BT_ADC is used to initialize the board's six buttons	If you plan to use ESP-LyraT-8311A' s pin BT_ADC, do not initialize pin IO6 (PHOTO) for your ESP-LyraP-TouchA.
TouchA v1.1 + CAM v1.0	IO1, IO2, IO3	Cannot be used simultaneously because of the mentioned mul-	For ESP-LyraP-TouchA, do not initialize IO1 (VOL_UP), IO2 (PLAY), and IO3

Known issues

Hardware Issue	Description	Reason for Failure	Solution
ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.0, pin IO45, IO46	Flashing firmware might be impossible with the extension board connected to the main board.	Incorrect timing sequence is fed to strapping pins IO45 and IO46 when the board is powered on. It stops the board from booting successfully.	While flashing the main board, keep the extension board disconnected.
ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.0, pin IO45, IO46	Rebooting the board by pressing Reset might not lead to desired results.	Incorrect timing sequence is fed to strapping pins IO45 and IO46 when the board is powered on. It stops the board from booting successfully.	No ready solution for v1.2. This bug is fixed in ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 V1.3.
ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.2, pin IO46	Flashing firmware might be impossible with the extension board connected to the main board.	Incorrect timing sequence is fed to strapping pin IO46 when the board is powered on. It stops the board from booting successfully.	While flashing the main board, keep the extension board disconnected.
ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.2, pin IO46	Rebooting the board by pressing Reset might not lead to desired results.	Incorrect timing sequence is fed to strapping pin IO46 when the board is powered on. It stops the board from booting successfully.	No ready solution for v1.2. This bug is fixed in ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 V1.3.

Hardware Revision Details No previous versions available.

Related Documents

ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.0 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraP-CAM extension board.

This extension board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.0 is sold as part of the *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*.

The ESP-LyraP-CAM extends the functionality of your main board by adding a camera.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraP-CAM's hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraP-CAM.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview

This extension board adds a camera to your main board.

Description of Components

Key Component	Description
Main Board Camera Header	Mount onto main board's Camera Header
Power ON LED	Red LED is on if the power supply voltage is applied
Camera Module Connector	Supports OV2640 and OV3660 camera modules; this extension board is supplied with an OV2640 camera module
Power Regulators	LDO Regulators converting 3.3 V to 2.8 V and 1.5 V

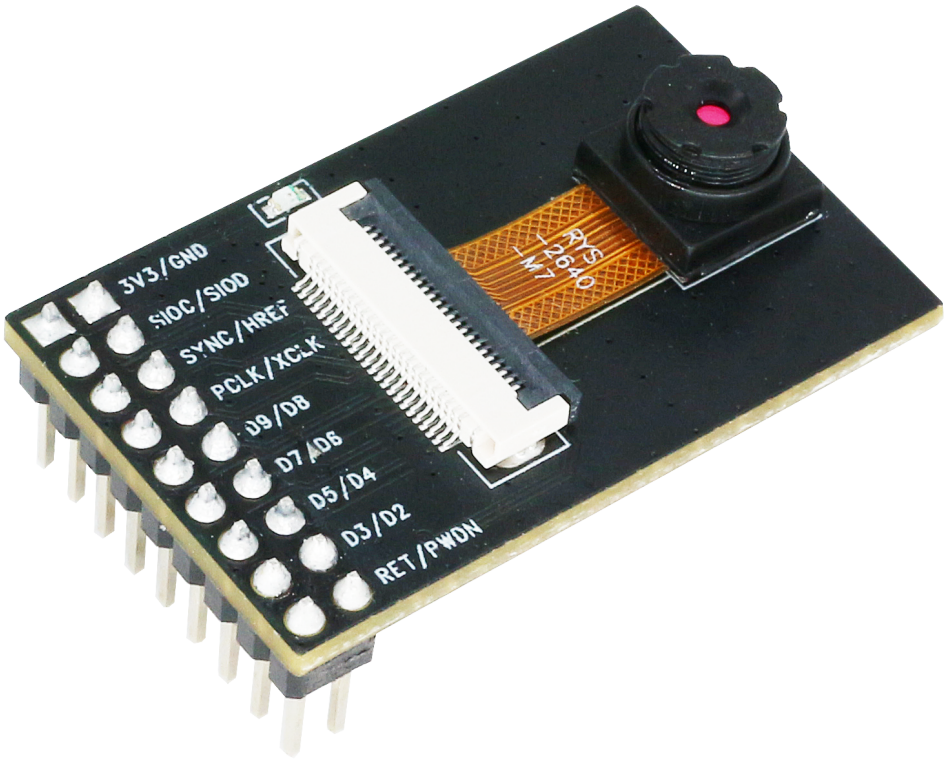


Fig. 18: ESP-LyraP-CAM

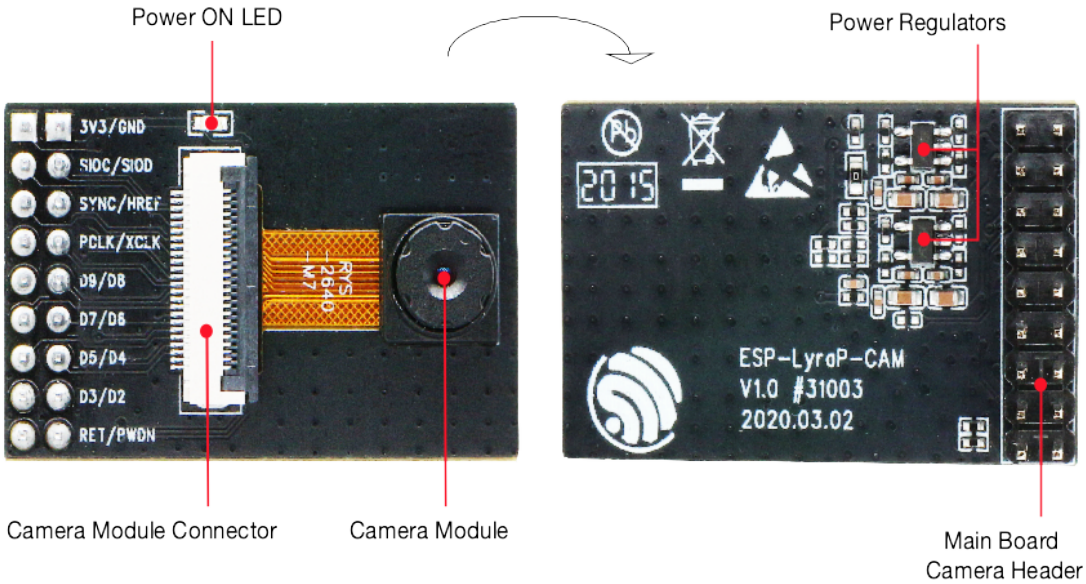


Fig. 19: ESP-LyraP-CAM - front and back

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraP-CAM, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- Board with a female Camera Header (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1)
- ESP-LyraP-CAM extension board
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup Insert the ESP-LyraP-CAM extension board into your board's female Camera Header.

Software Setup See Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of the ESP-LyraP-CAM and their interconnections.

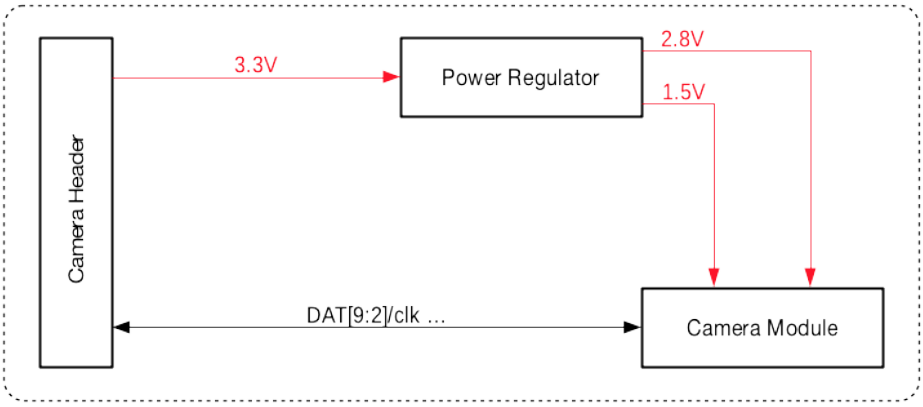


Fig. 20: ESP-LyraP-CAM block diagram

Hardware Revision Details No previous versions available.

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraP-CAM Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraP-CAM PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.1 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraP-LCD32 extension board.

This extension board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.1 is sold as part of the *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*.

The ESP-LyraP-LCD32 extends the functionality of your main board by adding an LCD graphic display.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraP-LCD32's hardware.

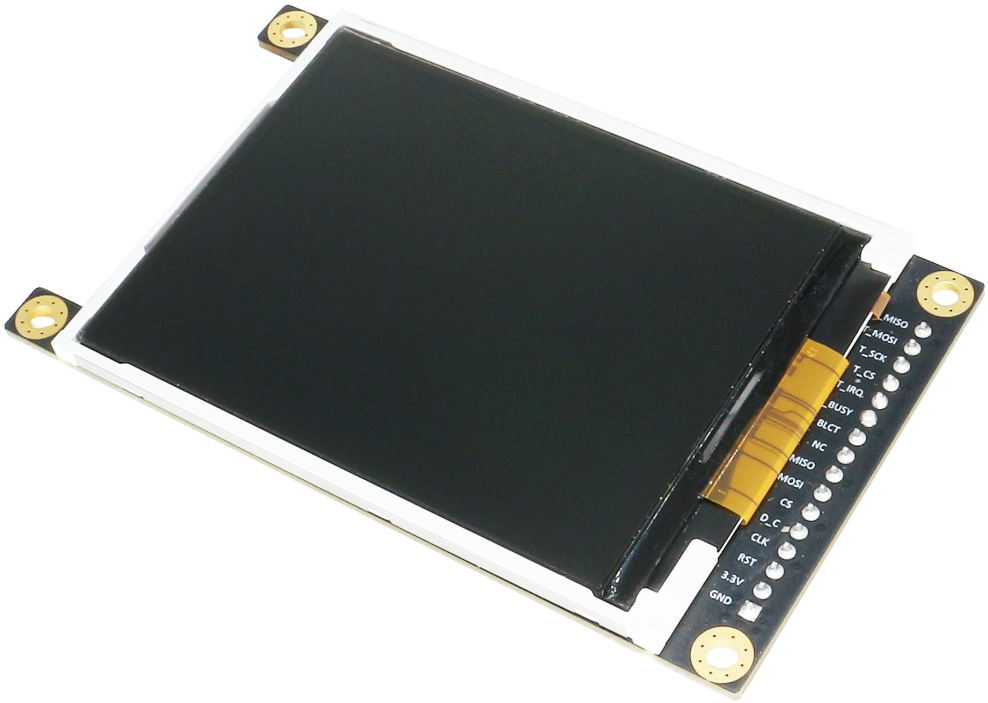


Fig. 21: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 (click to enlarge)

- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraP-LCD32.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview This extension board adds a 3.2" LCD graphic display with the resolution of 320x240. This display is connected to ESP32-S2 over the SPI bus.

Description of Components In the description of components below, **Reserved** means that the functionality is available, but the current version of the kit does not use it.

Key Component	Description
Extension Header	Male Extension Header for mounting onto a female Extension Header
LCD display	This version has a 3.2" 320x240 SPI LCD display module; the display driver/controller is Sitronix ST7789V
Touch Screen Switch	No support for touch screens, keep the switches to OFF to make the pins available for other uses
Main Board 3.2" LCD FPC Connector	(Reserved) Connect to main board's 3.2" LCD FPC connector
Control Switch	Switch to ON to set Reset/Backlight_control/CS to default high or low; switch to OFF to make the pins available for other uses

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraP-LCD32, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

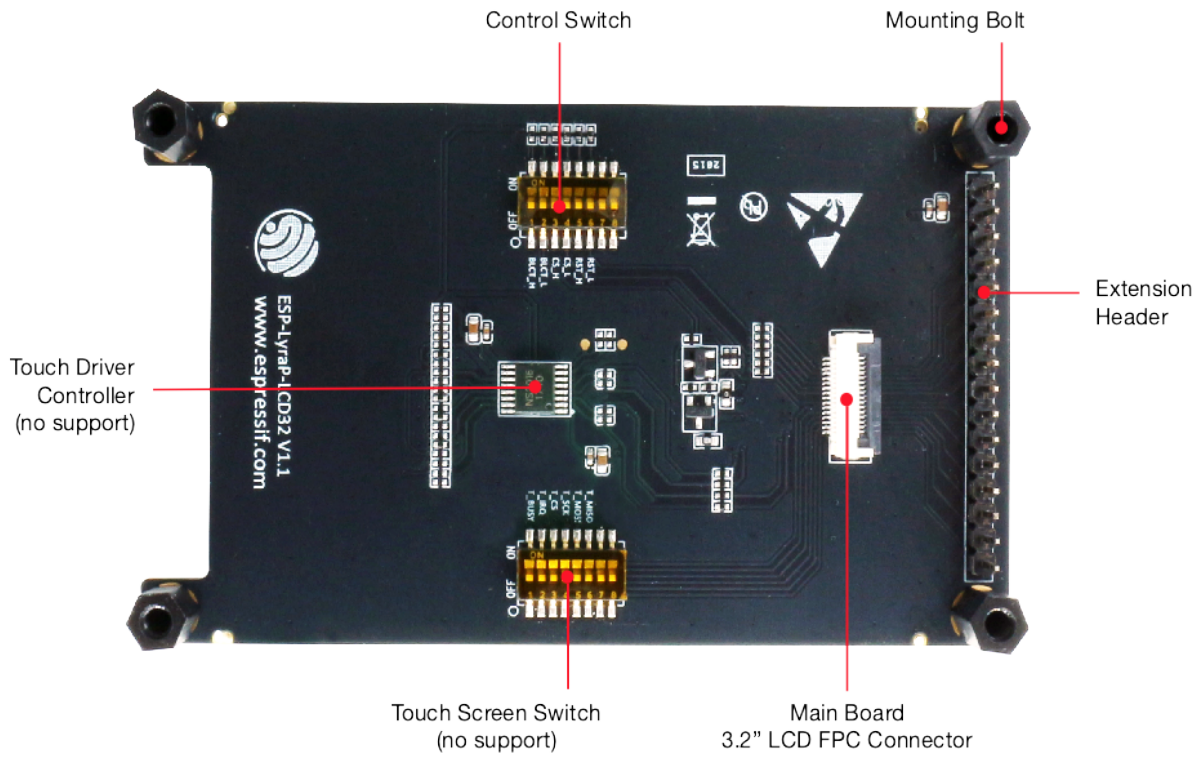


Fig. 22: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 - front (click to enlarge)

- Board with a female Extension Header (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, ESP-LyraT-8311A)
- ESP-LyraP-LCD32 extension board
- Four mounting bolts (for stable mounting)
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup To mount your ESP-LyraP-LCD32 onto the board with a female Extension Header:

1. Install the four mounting bolts onto the board with a female Extension Header
2. Align the ESP-LyraP-LCD32 with the bolts and Extension Header and insert it carefully

Software Setup See Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of the ESP-LyraP-LCD32 and their interconnections.

Hardware Revision Details No previous versions available.

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraP-LCD32 Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraP-LCD32 PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

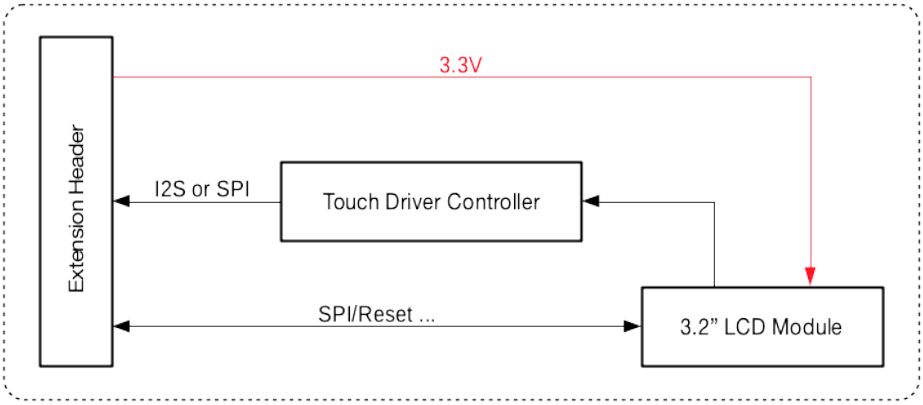


Fig. 23: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 block diagram

ESP-LyraP-TouchA v1.1 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraP-TouchA extension board.

This board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraP-TouchA v1.1 is sold as part of the following kits:

- *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3*
- *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*

The ESP-LyraP-TouchA extends the functionality of your main board by adding touch buttons.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware setup instructions.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraP-TouchA's hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraP-TouchA.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview The ESP-LyraP-TouchA has six touch buttons and is mainly designed for audio applications. However, the touch buttons can also be used for any other purposes.

Description of Components

Key Component	Description
Main Board Touch FPC Connector	Connect to main board's Touch FPC Connector.
Touchpad	Capacitive touch electrode.
Guard Ring	Connected to a touch sensor, the guard ring triggers an interrupt if wet (Water rejection). It indicates that the sensor array is also wet and most (if not all) touchpads are unusable due to the false detection of touches. After receiving this interrupt, the user might consider disabling all the touch sensors via software.

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraP-TouchA, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- Board with a Touch FPC connector (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1)

Fig. 24: ESP-LyraP-TouchA

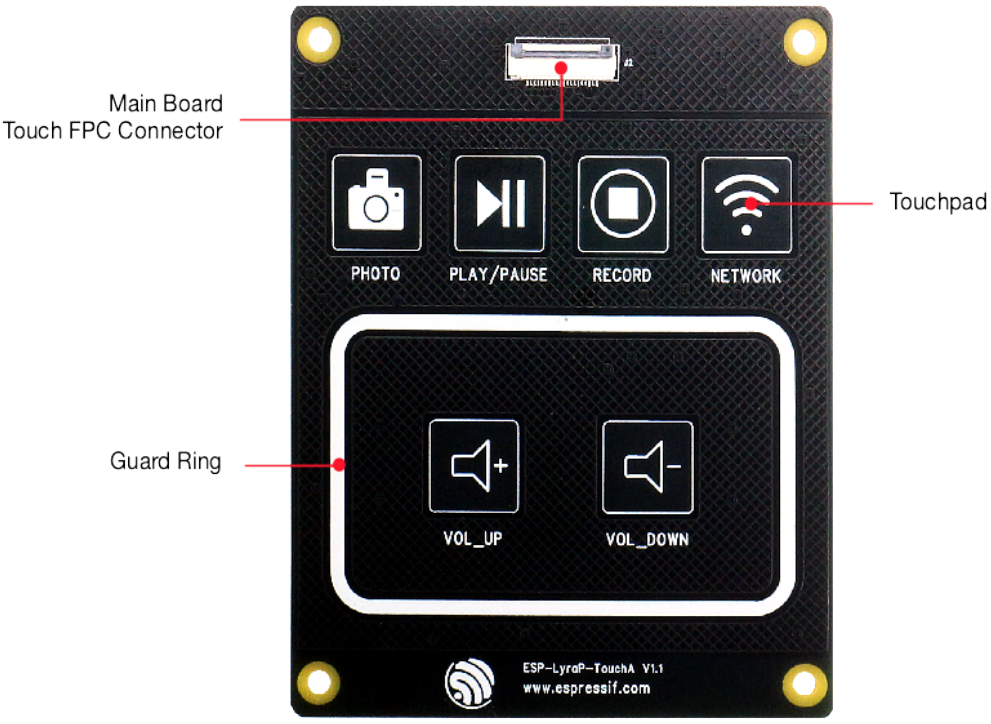


Fig. 25: ESP-LyraP-TouchA

- ESP-LyraP-TouchA extension board
- FPC cable
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup Connect the two FPC connectors with the FPC cable.

Software Setup See Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of ESP-LyraP-TouchA and their interconnections.

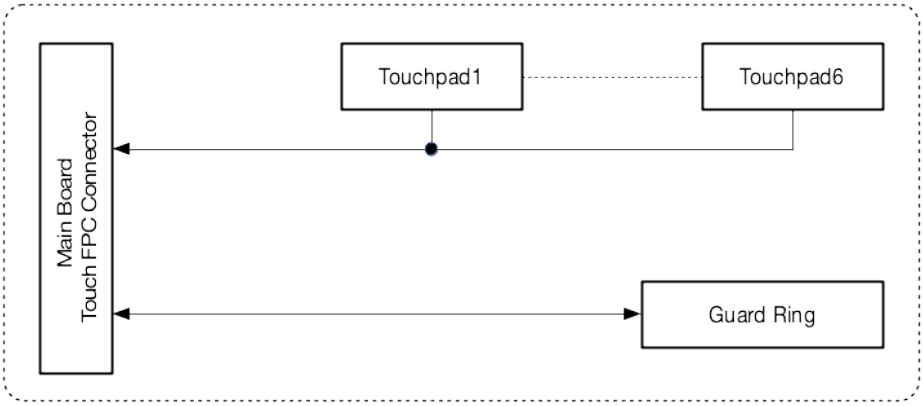


Fig. 26: ESP-LyraP-TouchA-v1.1 block diagram

Hardware Revision Details No previous versions available.

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraP-TouchA Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraP-TouchA PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.2 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraT-8311A extension board.

This board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.2 is sold as part of the *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*.

The ESP-LyraT-8311A extends the functionality of your main board by adding sound processing functionality:

- Audio playback/recording
- Processing of audio signals
- Programmable buttons for easy control

This extension board can be used in many ways. The applications might include voice user interface, voice control, voice authorization, recording and playback of sound, etc.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware setup instructions.

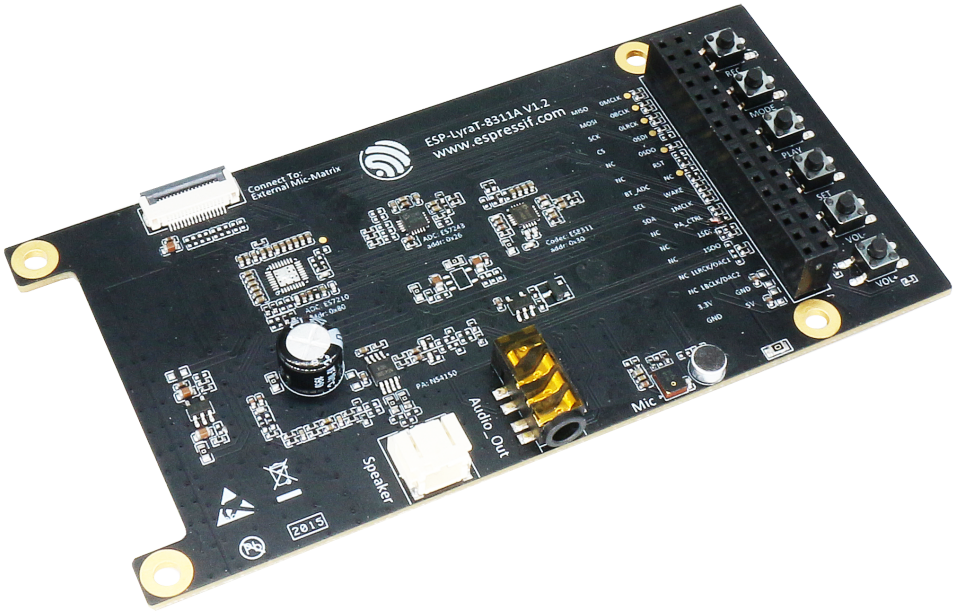


Fig. 27: ESP-LyraT-8311A (click to enlarge)

- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraT-8311A's hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraT-8311A.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview The ESP-LyraT-8311A is mainly designed for audio applications. However, you can use your creativity to come up with any other use cases.

Description of Components The description of components starts from the top right corner and then goes clockwise.

Reserved means that the functionality is available, but the current version of the kit does not use it.

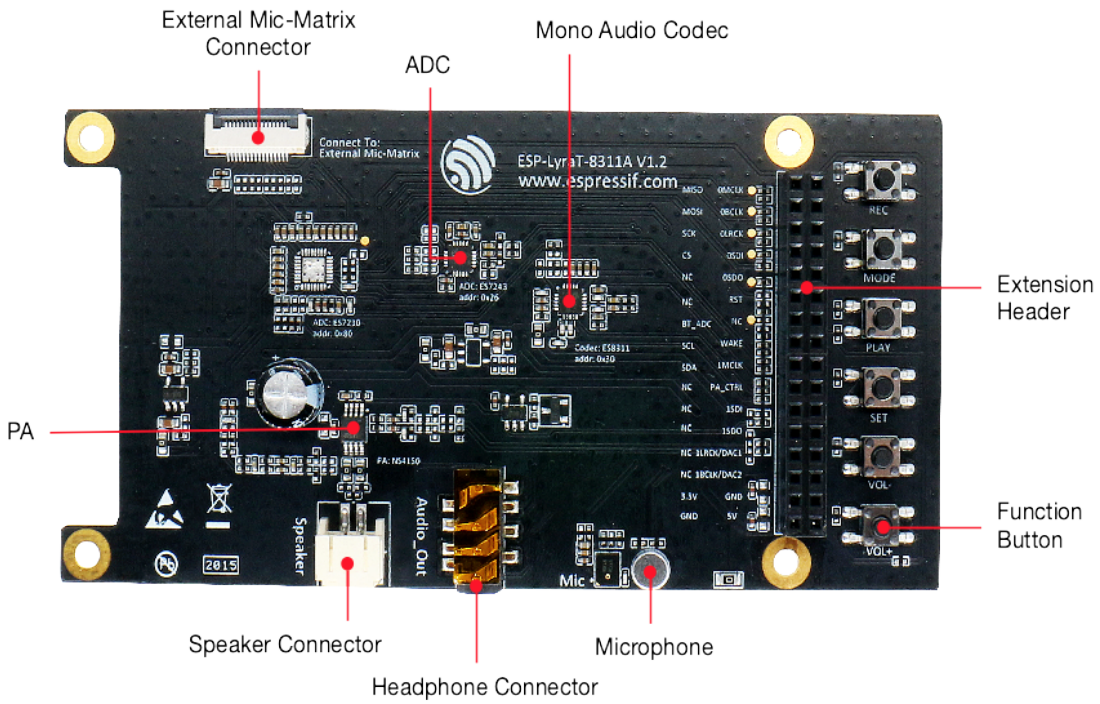


Fig. 28: ESP-LyraT-8311A - front (click to enlarge)

Key Component	Description
Extension Header	Male Extension Header on the flip side is for mounting onto main board' s Extension Header; Female Extension Header is for mounting other boards that have a Male Extension Header
Function Button	This board has six programmable buttons
Microphone	Supports Electret and MEMS microphones; this extension board is supplied with an electret microphone
Headphone Connector	6.3 mm (1/8") stereo headphone connector
Speaker Connector	Connect an external speaker to the 2-pin connector
PA	3 W Audio signal amplifier for the external speaker
External Mic-Matrix Connector	(Reserved) FPC connector for external Mic-Matrix (microphone boards)
ADC	(Reserved) high-performance ADC/ES7243: 1 channel for microphone, 1 channel for acoustic echo cancellation (AEC) function
Mono Audio Codec	ES8311 audio ADC and DAC; it can convert the analog signal picked up by the microphone or convert digital signal to play it back through a speaker or headphones

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraT-8311A, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- Board with a female Extension Header (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1)
- ESP-LyraT-8311A extension board
- Four mounting bolts (for stable mounting)
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup To mount your ESP-LyraT-8311A onto the board with a female Extension Header:

1. Install the four mounting bolts onto the board with a female Extension Header
2. Align the ESP-LyraT-8311A with the bolts and Extension Header and insert it carefully

Software Setup Depending on your application, see:

- ESP-ADF Getting Started Guide if you develop with ESP-ADF (Espressif Audio Development Framework).
- Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide if you develop directly with ESP-IDF (Espressif IOT Development Framework).

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of ESP-LyraT-8311A and their interconnections.

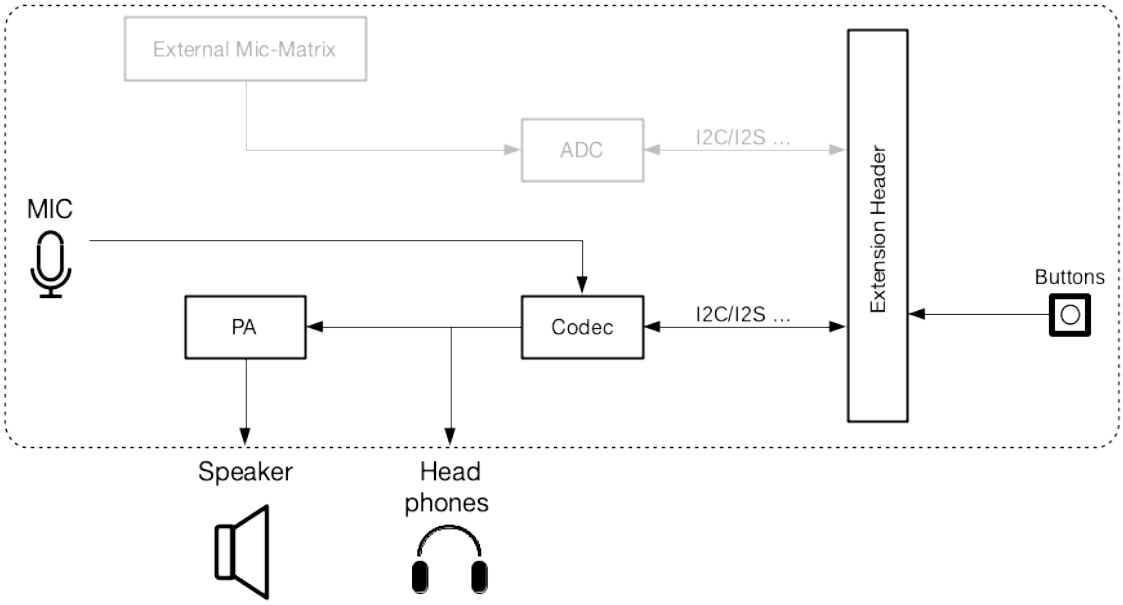


Fig. 29: ESP-LyraT-8311A block diagram

Hardware Revision Details No previous versions available.

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraT-8311A Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraT-8311A PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

- ESP32-S2-WROVER Datasheet (PDF)
- Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)
- *JTAG Debugging*
- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Schematic (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 PCB Layout (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Pin Mapping (Excel)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.1 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraP-CAM extension board.

This extension board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.1 is sold as part of the *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3*.

The ESP-LyraP-CAM extends the functionality of your main board by adding a camera.

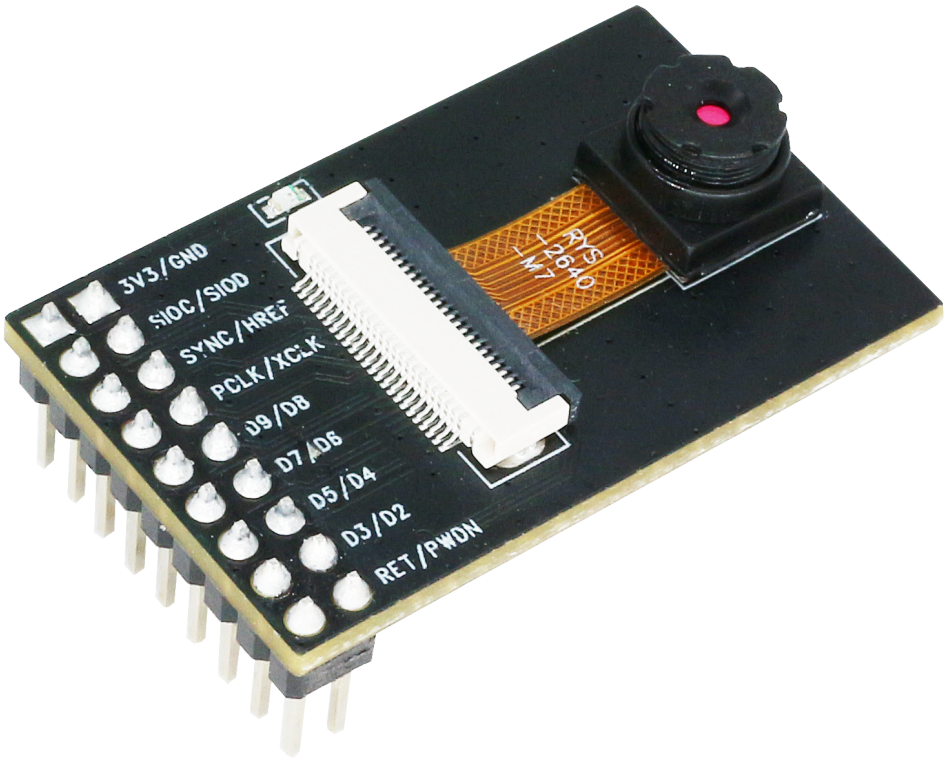


Fig. 30: ESP-LyraP-CAM

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraP-CAM's hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraP-CAM.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview This extension board adds a camera to your main board.

Description of Components

Key Component	Description
Main Board Camera Header	Mount onto main board's Camera Header
Power ON LED	Red LED is on if the power supply voltage is correct
Camera Module Connector	Supports OV2640 and OV3660 camera modules; this extension board is supplied with an OV2640 camera module
Power Regulators	LDO Regulators converting 3.3 V to 2.8 V and 1.5 V

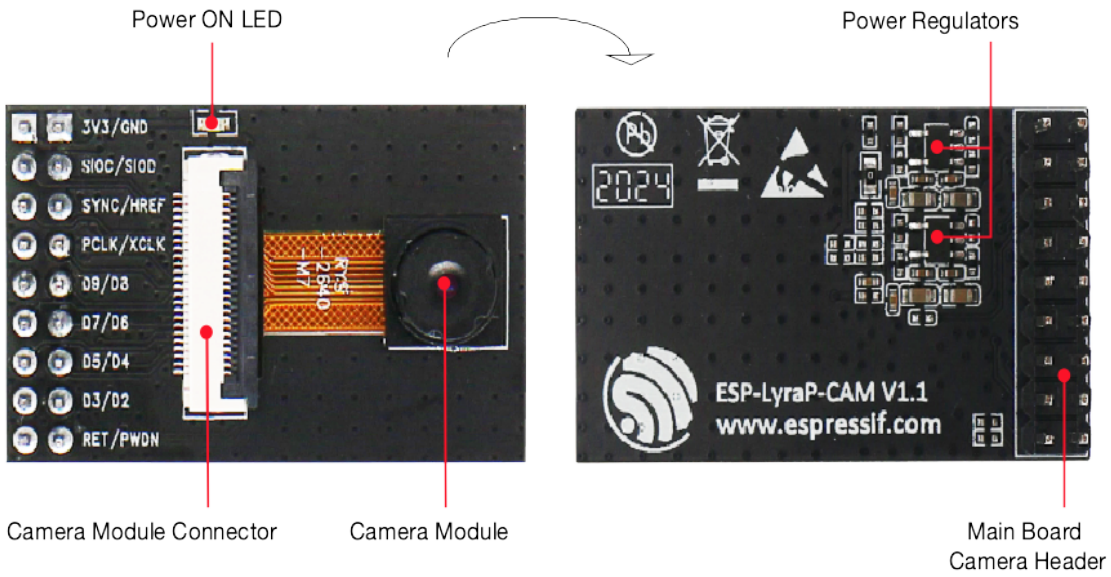


Fig. 31: ESP-LyraP-CAM - front and back

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraP-CAM, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- Board with a female Camera Header (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1)
- ESP-LyraP-CAM extension board
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup Insert the ESP-LyraP-CAM extension board into your board' s female Camera Header.

Software Setup See Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of the ESP-LyraP-CAM and their interconnections.

Hardware Revision Details

ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.1

- Silk screen updated
- No actual hardware updates

ESP-LyraP-CAM v1.0 *Initial release*

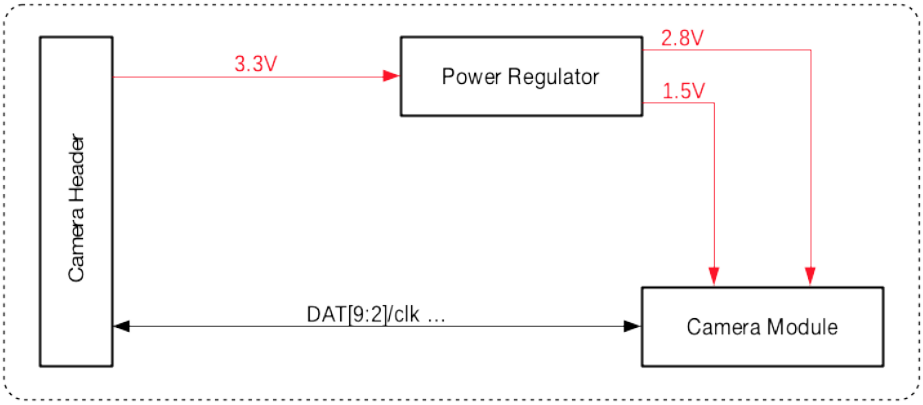


Fig. 32: ESP-LyraP-CAM block diagram

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraP-CAM Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraP-CAM PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.2 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraP-LCD32 extension board.

This extension board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.2 is sold as part of the *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3*.

The ESP-LyraP-LCD32 extends the functionality of your main board by adding an LCD graphic display.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware/software setup instructions to get started.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraP-LCD32's hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraP-LCD32.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview This extension board adds a 3.2" LCD graphic display with the resolution of 320x240. This display is connected to ESP32-S2 over the SPI bus.

Description of Components In the description of components below, **Reserved** means that the functionality is available, but the current version of the kit does not use it.

Key Component	Description
Extension Header	Male Extension Header for mounting onto a female Extension Header
LCD Display	This version has a 3.2" 320x240 SPI LCD display module; the display driver/controller is either Sitronix ST7789V or Ilitek ILI9341
Touch Screen Switch	No support for touch screens, keep the switches to OFF to make the pins available for other uses
Main Board 3.2" LCD FPC Connector	(Reserved) Connect to main board's 3.2" LCD FPC connector
Control Switch	Switch to ON to set Reset/Backlight_control/CS to default high or low; switch to OFF to make the pins available for other uses

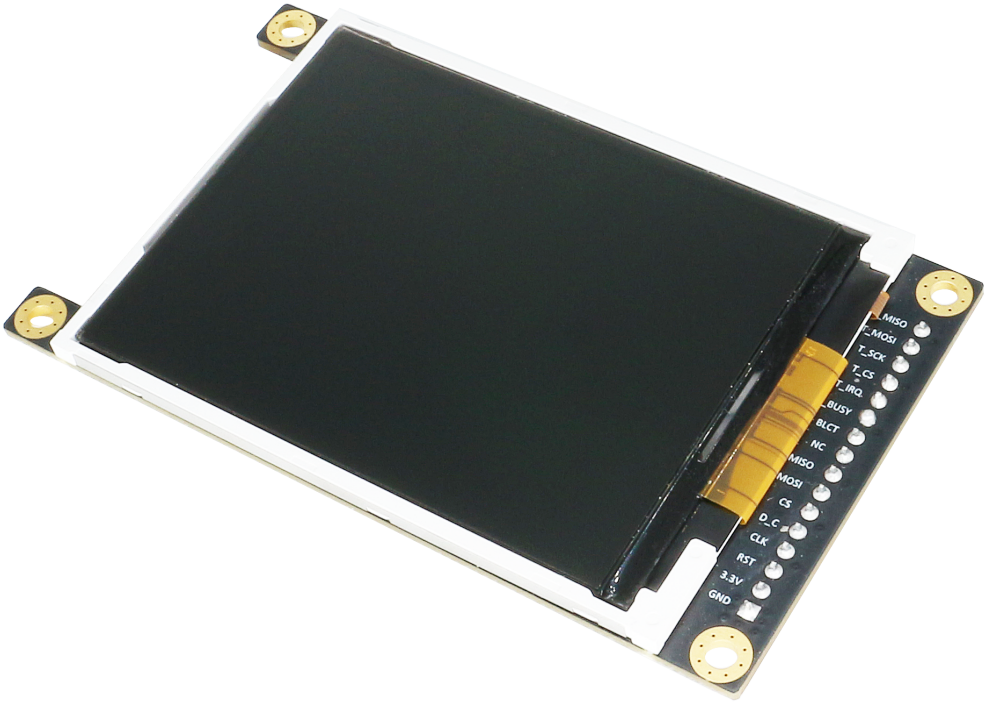


Fig. 33: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 (click to enlarge)

Fig. 34: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 - front (click to enlarge)

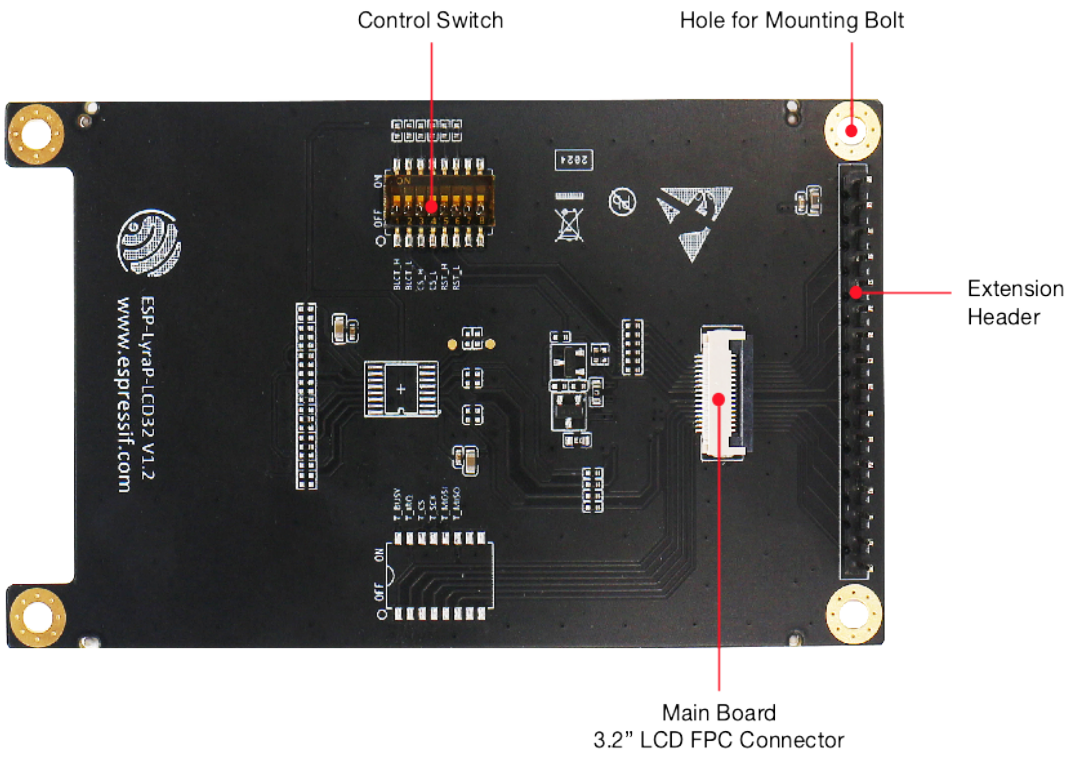


Fig. 35: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 - back (click to enlarge)

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraP-LCD32, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- Board with a female Extension Header (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, ESP-LyraT-8311A)
- ESP-LyraP-LCD32 extension board
- Four mounting bolts (for stable mounting)
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup To mount your ESP-LyraP-LCD32 onto the board with a female Extension Header:

1. Install the four mounting bolts onto the board with a female Extension Header
2. Align the ESP-LyraP-LCD32 with the bolts and Extension Header and insert it carefully

Software Setup See Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide.

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of the ESP-LyraP-LCD32 and their interconnections.

Hardware Revision Details

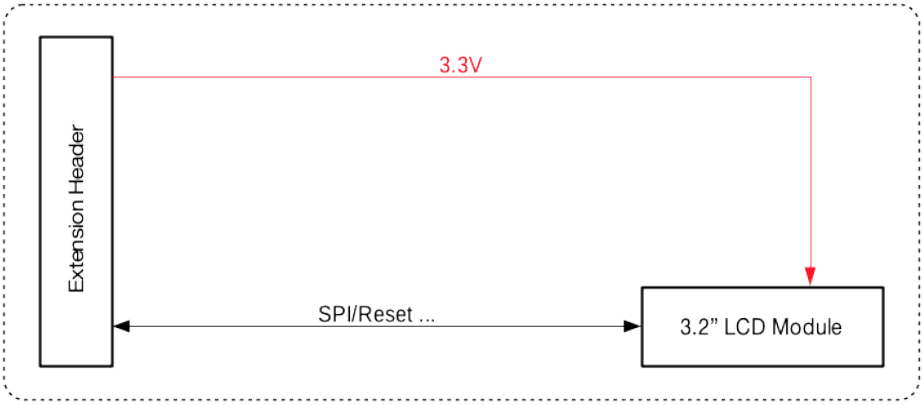


Fig. 36: ESP-LyraP-LCD32 block diagram

ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.2

- LCD backlight default ON, cannot be controlled by MCU
- Touch Driver and related switch removed for major limitations caused by multiplexed pins

ESP-LyraP-LCD32 v1.1 *Initial release*

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraP-LCD32 Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraP-LCD32 PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.3 This user guide provides information on the ESP-LyraT-8311A extension board.

This board cannot be bought separately and is usually sold together with other Espressif development boards (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1), which will be referred to as *main boards* below.

Currently, ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.3 is sold as part of the *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3*.

The ESP-LyraT-8311A extends the functionality of your main board by adding sound processing functionality:

- Audio playback/recording
- Processing of audio signals
- Programmable buttons for easy control

This extension board can be used in many ways. The applications might include voice user interface, voice control, voice authorization, recording and playback of sound, etc.

The document consists of the following major sections:

- *Overview*: Provides an overview and hardware setup instructions.
- *Hardware reference*: Provides more detailed information about the ESP-LyraT-8311A's hardware.
- *Hardware Revision Details*: Covers revision history, known issues, and links to user guides for previous versions of the ESP-LyraT-8311A.
- *Related Documents*: Gives links to related documentation.

Overview The ESP-LyraT-8311A is mainly designed for audio applications. However, you can use your creativity to come up with any other use cases.

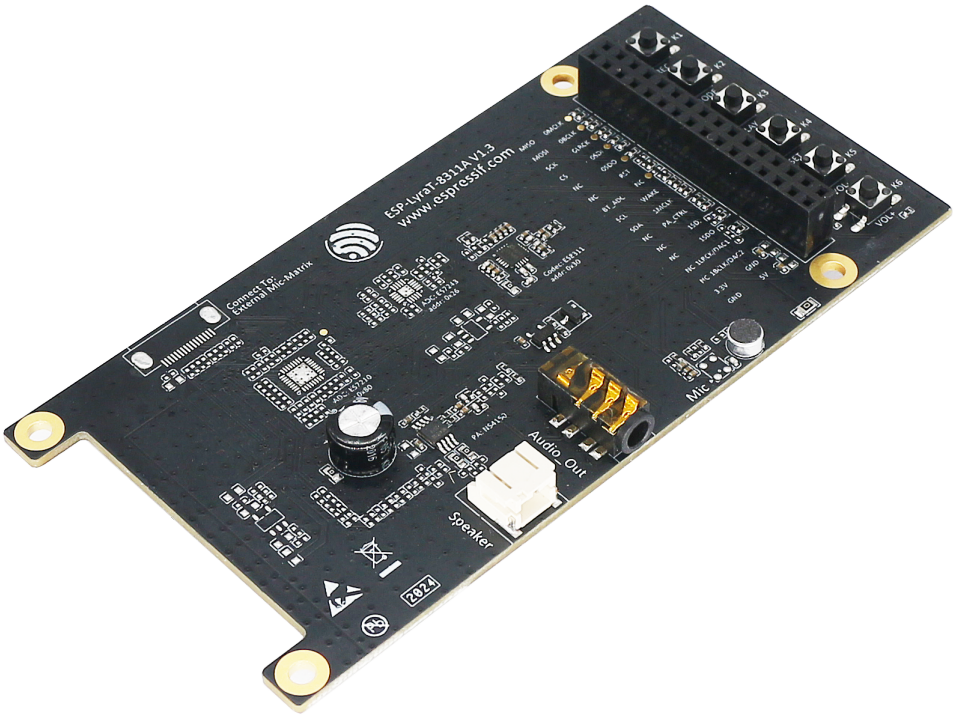


Fig. 37: ESP-LyraT-8311A (click to enlarge)

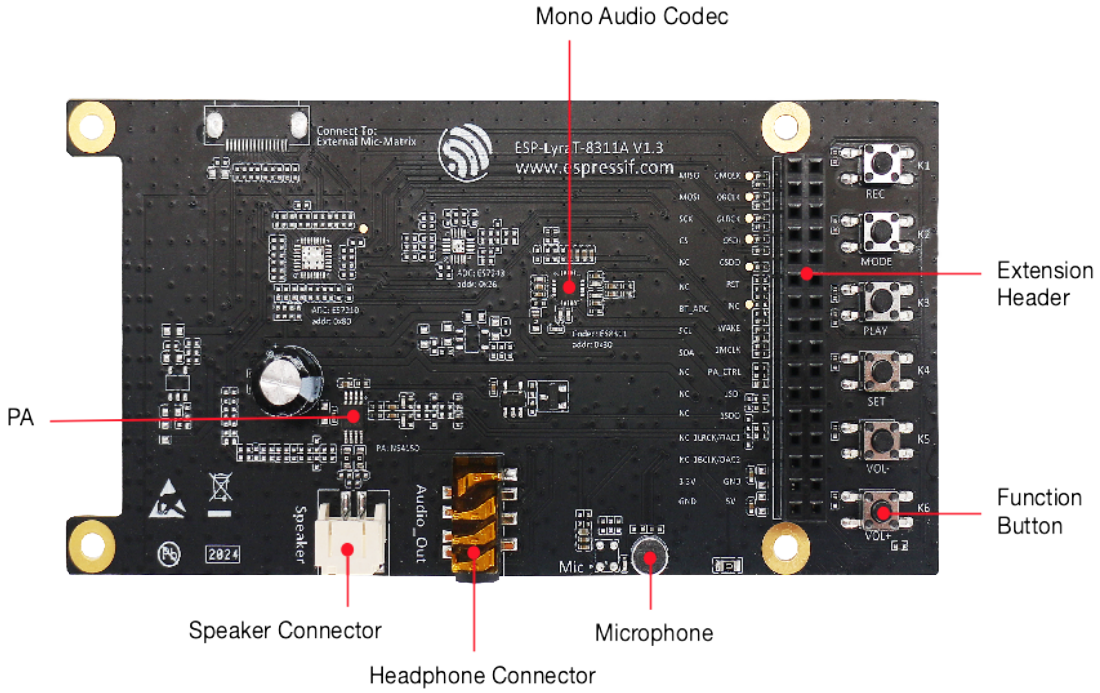


Fig. 38: ESP-LyraT-8311A - front (click to enlarge)

Description of Components The description of components starts from the top right corner and then goes clockwise.

Reserved means that the functionality is available, but the current version of the kit does not use it.

Key Component	Description
Extension Header	Male Extension Header on the flip side is for mounting onto main board' s Extension Header; Female Extension Header is for mounting other boards that have a Male Extension Header
Function Button	This board has six programmable buttons
Microphone	Supports Electret and MEMS microphones; this extension board is supplied with an electret microphone
Headphone Connector	6.3 mm (1/8") stereo headphone connector
Speaker Connector	Connect an external speaker to the 2-pin connector
PA	3 W Audio signal amplifier for the external speaker
External Mic-Matrix Connector	(Reserved) FPC connector for external Mic-Matrix (microphone boards)
ADC	(Reserved) high-performance ADC/ES7243: 1 channel for microphone, 1 channel for acoustic echo cancellation (AEC) function
Mono Audio Codec	ES8311 audio ADC and DAC; it can convert the analog signal picked up by the microphone or convert digital signal to play it back through a speaker or headphones

Start Application Development Before powering up your ESP-LyraT-8311A, please make sure that it is in good condition with no obvious signs of damage.

Required Hardware

- Board with a female Extension Header (e.g., ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1)
- ESP-LyraT-8311A extension board
- Four mounting bolts (for stable mounting)
- Computer running Windows, Linux, or macOS

Hardware Setup To mount your ESP-LyraT-8311A onto the board with a female Extension Header:

1. Install the four mounting bolts onto the board with a female Extension Header
2. Align the ESP-LyraT-8311A with the bolts and Extension Header and insert it carefully

Software Setup Depending on your application, see:

- ESP-ADF Getting Started Guide if you develop with ESP-ADF (Espressif Audio Development Framework).
- Section *Software Setup* of the ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit user guide if you develop directly with ESP-IDF (Espressif IOT Development Framework).

Hardware Reference

Block Diagram A block diagram below shows the components of ESP-LyraT-8311A and their interconnections.

Hardware Revision Details

ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.3

- ADC/ES7243 and ADC/ES7210 removed as the Mono Audio Codec chip provides all the needed functionality.

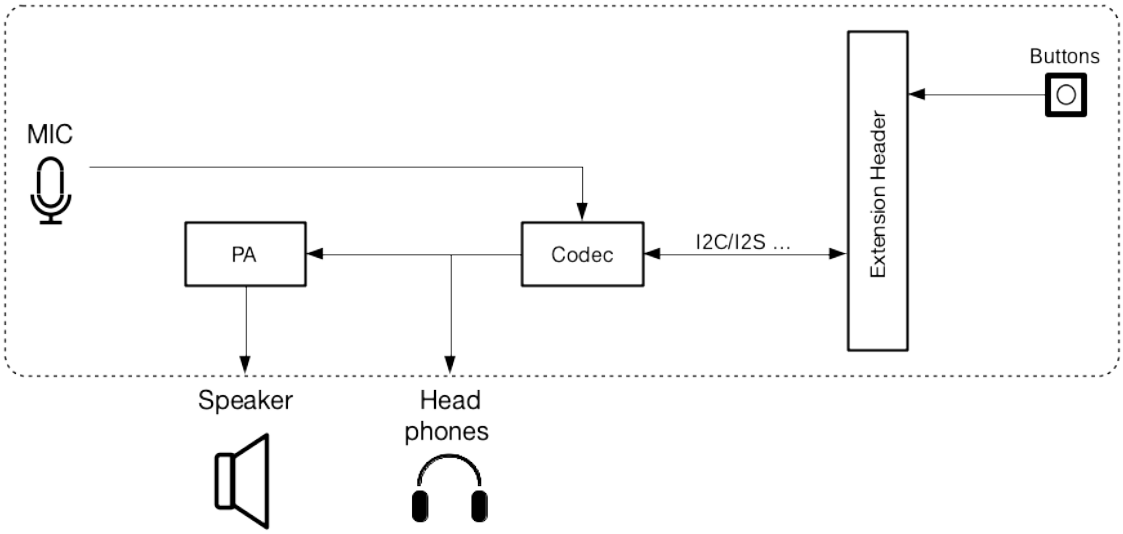


Fig. 39: ESP-LyraT-8311A block diagram

ESP-LyraT-8311A v1.2 *Initial release*

Related Documents

- ESP-LyraT-8311A Schematic (PDF)
- ESP-LyraT-8311A PCB Layout (PDF)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

- ESP32-S2-WROVER Datasheet (PDF)
- Espressif Product Ordering Information (PDF)
- *JTAG Debugging*
- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Schematic (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 PCB Layout (PDF)
- ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Pin Mapping (Excel)

For other design documentation for the board, please contact us at sales@espressif.com.

1.4 Installation Step by Step

This is a detailed roadmap to walk you through the installation process.

1.4.1 Setting up Development Environment

- *Step 1. Install prerequisites* for *Windows*, *Linux*, or *macOS*
- *Step 2. Get ESP-IDF*
- *Step 3. Set up the tools*
- *Step 4. Set up the environment variables*

1.4.2 Creating Your First Project

- *Step 5. Start a Project*
- *Step 6. Connect Your Device*
- *Step 7. Configure*

- *Step 8. Build the Project*
- *Step 9. Flash onto the Device*
- *Step 10. Monitor*

1.5 Step 1. Install prerequisites

Some tools need to be installed on the computer before proceeding to the next steps. Follow the links below for the instructions for your OS:

1.5.1 Standard Setup of Toolchain for Windows

Introduction

ESP-IDF requires some prerequisite tools to be installed so you can build firmware for supported chips. The prerequisite tools include Python, Git, cross-compilers, CMake and Ninja build tools.

For this Getting Started we're going to use the Command Prompt, but after ESP-IDF is installed you can use *Eclipse* or another graphical IDE with CMake support instead.

Note: Limitation: the installation path of Python or ESP-IDF must not contain white spaces or parentheses.

Limitation: the installation path of Python or ESP-IDF should not contain special characters (non-ASCII) unless the operating system is configured with "Unicode UTF-8" support. System Administrator can enable the support via Control Panel - Change date, time, or number formats - Administrative tab - Change system locale - check the option "Beta: Use Unicode UTF-8 for worldwide language support" - Ok and reboot the computer.

ESP-IDF Tools Installer

The easiest way to install ESP-IDF's prerequisites is to download one of ESP-IDF Tools Installers from this URL: https://dl.espressif.com/dl/esp-idf/?idf=4.4

What is the usecase for Online and Offline Installer Online Installer is very small and allows the installation of all available releases of ESP-IDF. The installer will download only necessary dependencies including Git For Windows during the installation process. The installer stores downloaded files in the cache directory `%userprofile%\.espressif`

Offline Installer does not require any network connection. The installer contains all required dependencies including Git For Windows . The installer allows the installation of ESP-IDF with the following tags: v4.2, v4.1.1.

Components of the installation The installer deploys the following components:

- Embedded Python
- Cross-compilers
- OpenOCD
- CMake and Ninja build tools
- ESP-IDF

The installer also allows reusing the existing directory with ESP-IDF. The recommended directory is `%userprofile%\Desktop\esp-idf` where `%userprofile%` is your home directory.

Launching ESP-IDF Environment At the end of the installation process you can check out option `Run ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment` or `Run ESP-IDF Command Prompt (cmd.exe)`. The installer will launch ESP-IDF environment in selected prompt.

`Run ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment`:

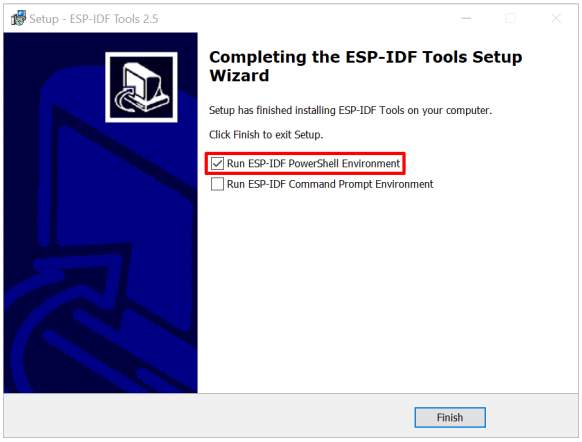


Fig. 40: Completing the ESP-IDF Tools Setup Wizard with Run ESP-IDF PowerShell Environment

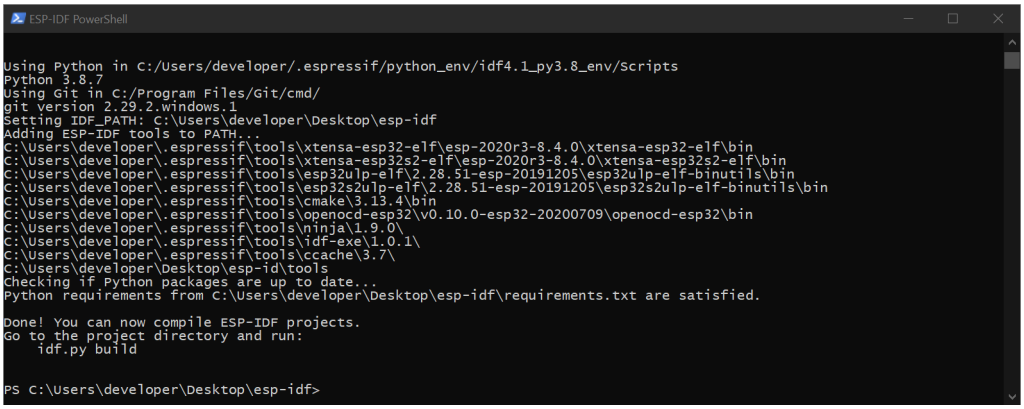


Fig. 41: ESP-IDF PowerShell

`Run ESP-IDF Command Prompt (cmd.exe)`:

Using the Command Prompt

For the remaining Getting Started steps, we're going to use the Windows Command Prompt.

ESP-IDF Tools Installer also creates a shortcut in the Start menu to launch the ESP-IDF Command Prompt. This shortcut launches the Command Prompt (cmd.exe) and runs `export.bat` script to set up the environment variables (`PATH`, `IDF_PATH` and others). Inside this command prompt, all the installed tools are available.

Note that this shortcut is specific to the ESP-IDF directory selected in the ESP-IDF Tools Installer. If you have multiple ESP-IDF directories on the computer (for example, to work with different versions of ESP-IDF), you have two options to use them:

1. Create a copy of the shortcut created by the ESP-IDF Tools Installer, and change the working directory of the new shortcut to the ESP-IDF directory you wish to use.
2. Alternatively, run `cmd.exe`, then change to the ESP-IDF directory you wish to use, and run `export.bat`. Note that unlike the previous option, this way requires Python and Git to be present in `PATH`. If you get errors related to Python or Git not being found, use the first option.

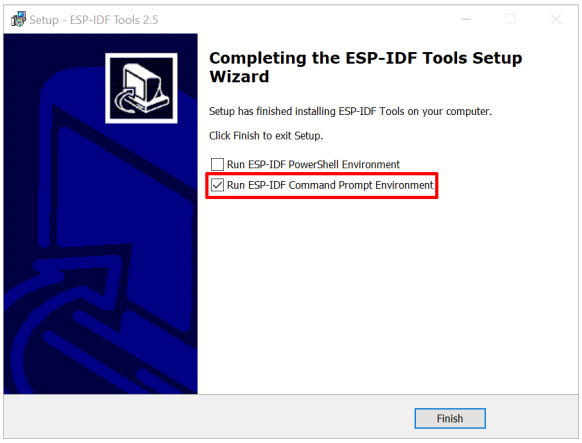


Fig. 42: Completing the ESP-IDF Tools Setup Wizard with Run ESP-IDF Command Prompt (cmd.exe)

Next Steps

If the ESP-IDF Tools Installer has finished successfully, then the development environment setup is complete. Proceed directly to *Step 5. Start a Project*.

Related Documents

For advanced users who want to customize the install process:

Updating ESP-IDF tools on Windows

Install ESP-IDF tools using a script From the Windows Command Prompt, change to the directory where ESP-IDF is installed. Then run:

```
install.bat
```

For Powershell, change to the directory where ESP-IDF is installed. Then run:

```
install.ps1
```

This will download and install the tools necessary to use ESP-IDF. If the specific version of the tool is already installed, no action will be taken. The tools are downloaded and installed into a directory specified during ESP-IDF Tools Installer process. By default, this is `C:\Users\username\.espressif`.

Add ESP-IDF tools to PATH using an export script ESP-IDF tools installer creates a Start menu shortcut for "ESP-IDF Command Prompt" . This shortcut opens a Command Prompt window where all the tools are already available.

In some cases, you may want to work with ESP-IDF in a Command Prompt window which wasn't started using that shortcut. If this is the case, follow the instructions below to add ESP-IDF tools to PATH.

In the command prompt where you need to use ESP-IDF, change to the directory where ESP-IDF is installed, then execute `export.bat`:

```
cd %userprofile%\esp\esp-idf
export.bat
```

Alternatively in the Powershell where you need to use ESP-IDF, change to the directory where ESP-IDF is installed, then execute `export.ps1`:

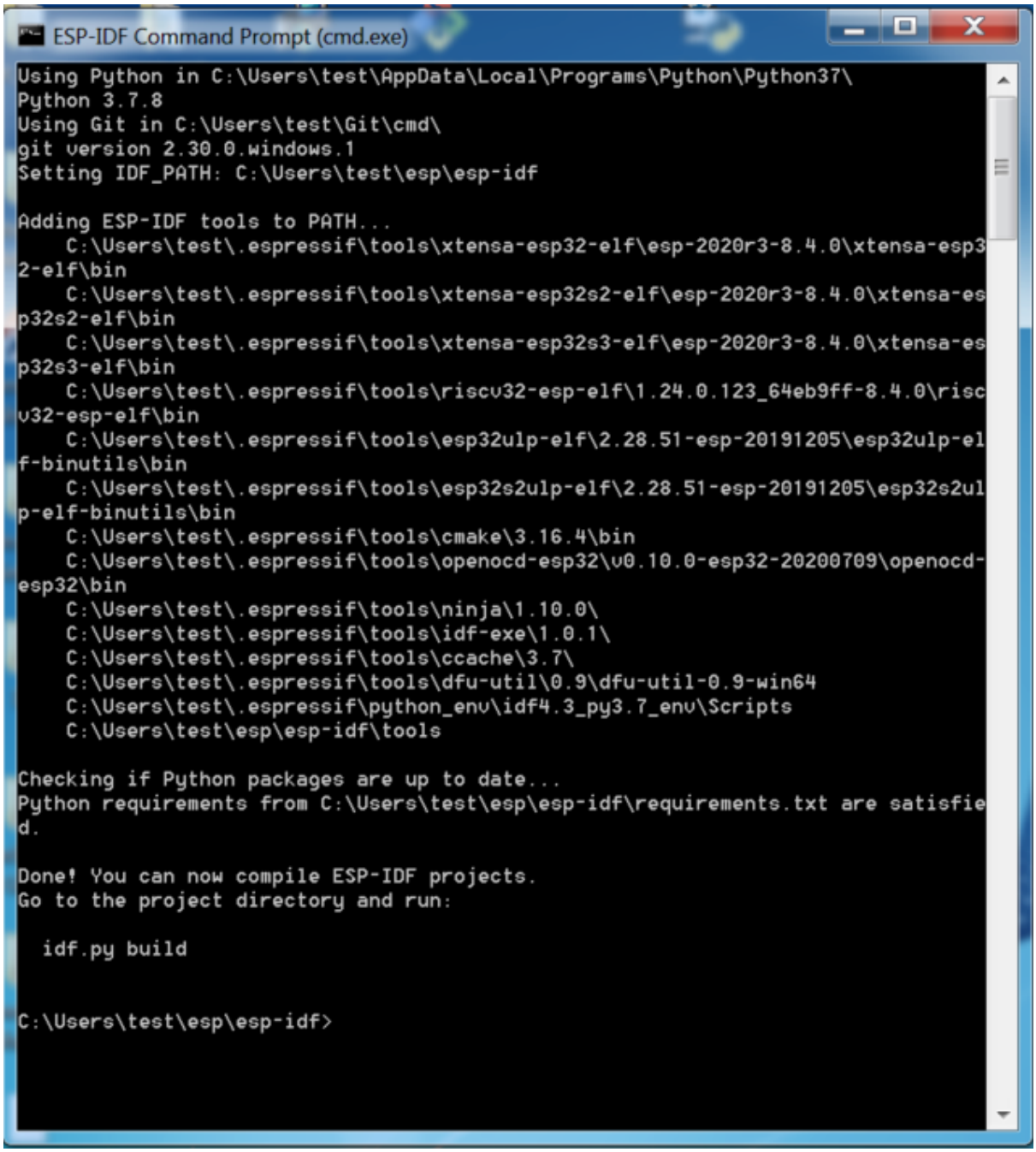


Fig. 43: ESP-IDF Command Prompt

```
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
export.ps1
```

When this is done, the tools will be available in this command prompt.

1.5.2 Standard Setup of Toolchain for Linux

Install Prerequisites

To compile with ESP-IDF you need to get the following packages. The command to run depends on which distribution of Linux you are using:

- Ubuntu and Debian:

```
sudo apt-get install git wget flex bison gperf python3 python3-pip python3-
↪setuptools cmake ninja-build ccache libffi-dev libssl-dev dfu-util libusb-1.
↪0-0
```

- CentOS 7 & 8:

```
sudo yum -y update && sudo yum install git wget flex bison gperf python3␣
↪python3-pip python3-setuptools cmake ninja-build ccache dfu-util libusbx
```

CentOS 7 is still supported but CentOS version 8 is recommended for a better user experience.

- Arch:

```
sudo pacman -S --needed gcc git make flex bison gperf python-pip cmake ninja␣
↪ccache dfu-util libusb
```

Note:

- CMake version 3.5 or newer is required for use with ESP-IDF. Older Linux distributions may require updating, enabling of a "backports" repository, or installing of a "cmake3" package rather than "cmake".
- If you do not see your Linux distribution in the above list then please check its documentation to find out which command to use for package installation.

Additional Tips

Permission issues /dev/ttyUSB0 With some Linux distributions you may get the `Failed to open port /dev/ttyUSB0` error message when flashing the ESP32-S2. *This can be solved by adding the current user to the dialout group*.

Fixing broken pip on Ubuntu 16.04

Package `python3-pip` could be broken without possibility to upgrade it. Package has to be removed and installed manually using script get-pip.py.:

```
apt remove python3-pip python3-virtualenv; rm -r ~/.local
rm -r ~/.espressif/python_env && python get-pip.py
```

Python 2 deprecation

Python 2 reached its end of life and support for it in ESP-IDF will be removed soon. Please install Python 3.6 or higher. Instructions for popular Linux distributions are listed above.

Next Steps

To carry on with development environment setup, proceed to *Step 2. Get ESP-IDF*.

1.5.3 Standard Setup of Toolchain for Mac OS

Install Prerequisites

ESP-IDF will use the version of Python installed by default on macOS.

- install pip:

```
sudo easy_install pip
```

- install CMake & Ninja build:
  - If you have HomeBrew, you can run:

```
brew install cmake ninja dfu-util
```

  - If you have MacPorts, you can run:

```
sudo port install cmake ninja dfu-util
```

  - Otherwise, consult the CMake and Ninja home pages for macOS installation downloads.
- It is strongly recommended to also install ccache for faster builds. If you have HomeBrew, this can be done via `brew install ccache` or `sudo port install ccache` on MacPorts.

Note: If an error like this is shown during any step:

```
xcrun: error: invalid active developer path (/Library/Developer/CommandLineTools),␣
↪missing xcrun at: /Library/Developer/CommandLineTools/usr/bin/xcrun
```

Then you will need to install the XCode command line tools to continue. You can install these by running `xcode-select --install`.

Installing Python 3 Basing on macOS Catalina 10.15 release notes, use of Python 2.7 is not recommended and Python 2.7 will not be included by default in future versions of macOS. Check what Python you currently have:

```
python --version
```

If the output is like `Python 2.7.17`, your default interpreter is Python 2.7. If so, also check if Python 3 isn't already installed on your computer:

```
python3 --version
```

If above command returns an error, it means Python 3 is not installed.

Below is an overview of steps to install Python 3.

- Installing with HomeBrew can be done as follows:

```
brew install python3
```

- If you have MacPorts, you can run:

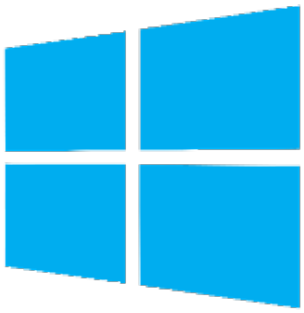
```
sudo port install python38
```

Python 2 deprecation

Python 2 reached its end of life and support for it in ESP-IDF will be removed soon. Please install Python 3.6 or higher. Instructions for macOS are listed above.

Next Steps

To carry on with development environment setup, proceed to *Step 2. Get ESP-IDF*.

		
Windows	Linux	Mac OS

Note: This guide uses the directory `~/esp` on Linux and macOS or `%userprofile%\esp` on Windows as an installation folder for ESP-IDF. You can use any directory, but you will need to adjust paths for the commands respectively. Keep in mind that ESP-IDF does not support spaces in paths.

1.6 Step 2. Get ESP-IDF

To build applications for the ESP32-S2, you need the software libraries provided by Espressif in ESP-IDF repository.

To get ESP-IDF, navigate to your installation directory and clone the repository with `git clone`, following instructions below specific to your operating system.

1.6.1 Linux and macOS

Open Terminal, and run the following commands:

```
mkdir -p ~/esp
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf.git
```

ESP-IDF will be downloaded into `~/esp/esp-idf`.

Consult *ESP-IDF Versions* for information about which ESP-IDF version to use in a given situation.

1.6.2 Windows

In addition to installing the tools, *ESP-IDF Tools Installer* for Windows introduced in Step 1 can also download a copy of ESP-IDF.

Consult *ESP-IDF Versions* for information about which ESP-IDF version to use in a given situation.

If you wish to download ESP-IDF without the help of ESP-IDF Tools Installer, refer to these *instructions*.

1.7 Step 3. Set up the tools

Aside from the ESP-IDF, you also need to install the tools used by ESP-IDF, such as the compiler, debugger, Python packages, etc.

1.7.1 Windows

ESP-IDF Tools Installer for Windows introduced in Step 1 installs all the required tools.

If you want to install the tools without the help of ESP-IDF Tools Installer, open the Command Prompt and follow these steps:

```
cd %userprofile%\esp\esp-idf
install.bat
```

or with Windows PowerShell

```
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
./install.ps1
```

1.7.2 Linux and macOS

```
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
./install.sh
```

1.7.3 Alternative File Downloads

The tools installer downloads a number of files attached to GitHub Releases. If accessing GitHub is slow then it is possible to set an environment variable to prefer Espressif's download server for GitHub asset downloads.

Note: This setting only controls individual tools downloaded from GitHub releases, it doesn't change the URLs used to access any Git repositories.

Windows

To prefer the Espressif download server when running the ESP-IDF Tools Installer check out the following option in the installer window: `Use Espressif download server instead of downloading tool packages from GitHub.`

Linux and macOS

To prefer the Espressif download server when installing tools, use the following sequence of commands when running `install.sh`:

```
cd ~/esp/esp-idf
export IDF_GITHUB_ASSETS="dl.espressif.com/github_assets"
./install.sh
```

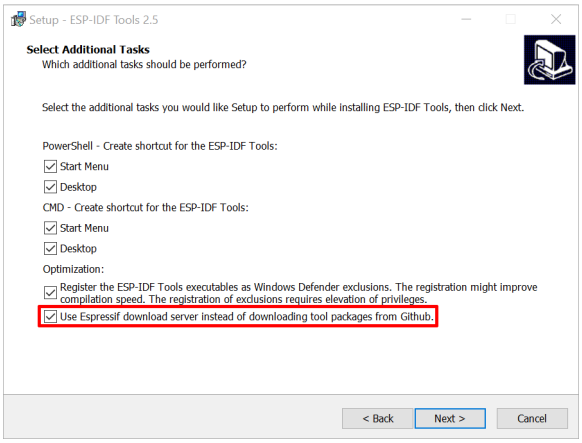


Fig. 44: Configuring the ESP-IDF Tools Setup Wizard Espressif download server

1.7.4 Customizing the tools installation path

The scripts introduced in this step install compilation tools required by ESP-IDF inside the user home directory: `$HOME/.espressif` on Linux and macOS, `%USERPROFILE%\.espressif` on Windows. If you wish to install the tools into a different directory, set the environment variable `IDF_TOOLS_PATH` before running the installation scripts. Make sure that your user account has sufficient permissions to read and write this path.

If changing the `IDF_TOOLS_PATH`, make sure it is set to the same value every time the Install script (`install.bat`, `install.ps1` or `install.sh`) and an Export script (`export.bat`, `export.ps1` or `export.sh`) are executed.

1.8 Step 4. Set up the environment variables

The installed tools are not yet added to the PATH environment variable. To make the tools usable from the command line, some environment variables must be set. ESP-IDF provides another script which does that.

1.8.1 Windows

ESP-IDF Tools Installer for Windows creates an "ESP-IDF Command Prompt" shortcut in the Start Menu. This shortcut opens the Command Prompt and sets up all the required environment variables. You can open this shortcut and proceed to the next step.

Alternatively, if you want to use ESP-IDF in an existing Command Prompt window, you can run:

```
%userprofile%\esp\esp-idf\export.bat
```

or with Windows PowerShell

```
.$HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.ps1
```

1.8.2 Linux and macOS

In the terminal where you are going to use ESP-IDF, run:

```
. $HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.sh
```

or for fish (supported only since fish version 3.0.0):

```
. $HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.fish
```

Note the space between the leading dot and the path!

If you plan to use esp-idf frequently, you can create an alias for executing `export.sh`:

1. Copy and paste the following command to your shell's profile (`.profile`, `.bashrc`, `.zprofile`, etc.)

   ```
   alias get_idf='. $HOME/esp/esp-idf/export.sh'
   ```

2. Refresh the configuration by restarting the terminal session or by running `source [path to profile]`, for example, `source ~/.bashrc`.

Now you can run `get_idf` to set up or refresh the esp-idf environment in any terminal session.

Technically, you can add `export.sh` to your shell's profile directly; however, it is not recommended. Doing so activates IDF virtual environment in every terminal session (including those where IDF is not needed), defeating the purpose of the virtual environment and likely affecting other software.

1.9 Step 5. Start a Project

Now you are ready to prepare your application for ESP32-S2. You can start with get-started/hello_world project from examples directory in IDF.

Copy the project get-started/hello_world to `~/esp` directory:

1.9.1 Linux and macOS

```
cd ~/esp
cp -r $IDF_PATH/examples/get-started/hello_world .
```

1.9.2 Windows

```
cd %userprofile%\esp
xcopy /e /i %IDF_PATH%\examples\get-started\hello_world hello_world
```

There is a range of example projects in the examples directory in ESP-IDF. You can copy any project in the same way as presented above and run it.

It is also possible to build examples in-place, without copying them first.

Important: The ESP-IDF build system does not support spaces in the paths to either ESP-IDF or to projects.

1.10 Step 6. Connect Your Device

Now connect your ESP32-S2 board to the computer and check under what serial port the board is visible.

Serial ports have the following patterns in their names:

- **Windows**: names like `COM1`
- **Linux**: starting with `/dev/tty`
- **macOS**: starting with `/dev/cu.`

If you are not sure how to check the serial port name, please refer to *Establish Serial Connection with ESP32-S2* for full details.

Note: Keep the port name handy as you will need it in the next steps.

1.11 Step 7. Configure

Navigate to your `hello_world` directory from *Step 5. Start a Project*, set ESP32-S2 chip as the target and run the project configuration utility `menuconfig`.

1.11.1 Linux and macOS

```
cd ~/esp/hello_world
idf.py set-target esp32s2
idf.py menuconfig
```

1.11.2 Windows

```
cd %userprofile%\esp\hello_world
idf.py set-target esp32s2
idf.py menuconfig
```

Setting the target with `idf.py set-target esp32s2` should be done once, after opening a new project. If the project contains some existing builds and configuration, they will be cleared and initialized. The target may be saved in environment variable to skip this step at all. See *Selecting the Target* for additional information.

If the previous steps have been done correctly, the following menu appears:

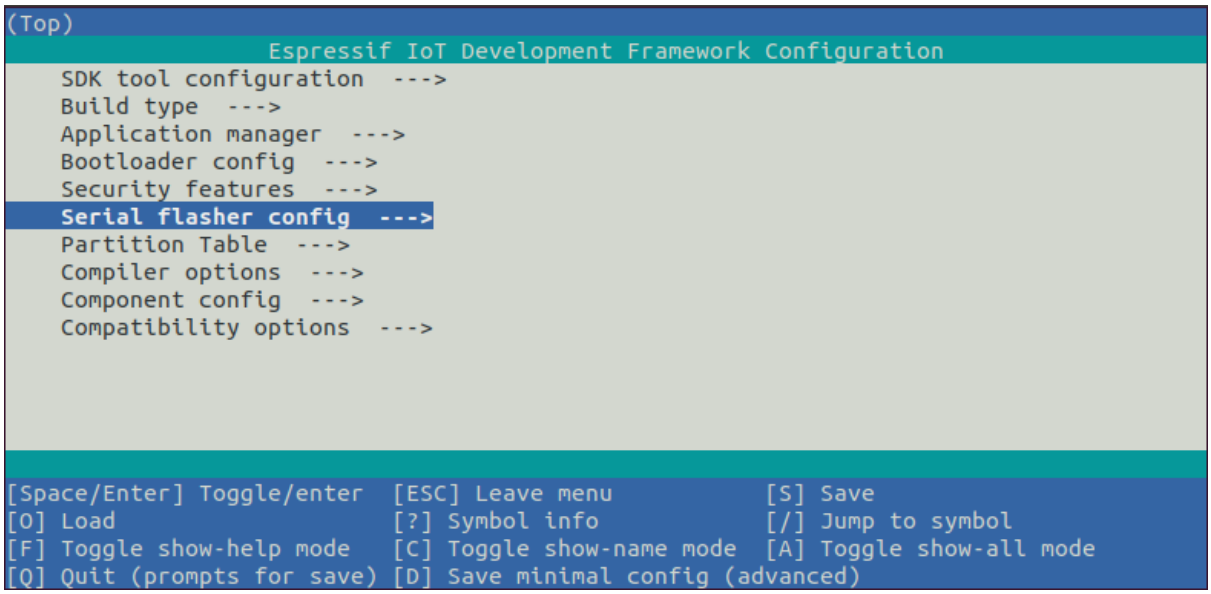


Fig. 45: Project configuration - Home window

You are using this menu to set up project specific variables, e.g. Wi-Fi network name and password, the processor speed, etc. Setting up the project with menuconfig may be skipped for "hello_word". This example will run with default configuration.

Note: The colors of the menu could be different in your terminal. You can change the appearance with the option `--style`. Please run `idf.py menuconfig --help` for further information.

1.12 Step 8. Build the Project

Build the project by running:

```
idf.py build
```

This command will compile the application and all ESP-IDF components, then it will generate the bootloader, partition table, and application binaries.

```
$ idf.py build
Running cmake in directory /path/to/hello_world/build
Executing "cmake -G Ninja --warn-uninitialized /path/to/hello_world"...
Warn about uninitialized values.
-- Found Git: /usr/bin/git (found version "2.17.0")
-- Building empty aws_iot component due to configuration
-- Component names: ...
-- Component paths: ...

... (more lines of build system output)

[527/527] Generating hello-world.bin
esptool.py v2.3.1

Project build complete. To flash, run this command:
../../../components/esptool_py/esptool/esptool.py -p (PORT) -b 921600 write_flash -
↪-flash_mode dio --flash_size detect --flash_freq 40m 0x10000 build/hello-world.
↪bin  build 0x1000 build/bootloader/bootloader.bin 0x8000 build/partition_table/
↪partition-table.bin
or run 'idf.py -p PORT flash'
```

If there are no errors, the build will finish by generating the firmware binary .bin files.

1.13 Step 9. Flash onto the Device

Flash the binaries that you just built (bootloader.bin, partition-table.bin and hello-world.bin) onto your ESP32-S2 board by running:

```
idf.py -p PORT [-b BAUD] flash
```

Replace PORT with your ESP32-S2 board's serial port name from *Step 6. Connect Your Device*.

You can also change the flasher baud rate by replacing BAUD with the baud rate you need. The default baud rate is `460800`.

For more information on idf.py arguments, see *idf.py*.

Note: The option `flash` automatically builds and flashes the project, so running `idf.py build` is not necessary.

1.13.1 Encountered Issues While Flashing?

If you run the given command and see errors such as "Failed to connect", there might be several reasons for this. One of the reasons might be issues encountered by `esptool.py`, the utility that is called by the build system to reset the chip, interact with the ROM bootloader, and flash firmware. One simple solution to try is manual reset described below, and if it does not help you can find more details about possible issues in Troubleshooting.

`esptool.py` resets ESP32-S2 automatically by asserting DTR and RTS control lines of the USB to serial converter chip, i.e., FTDI or CP210x (for more information, see *Establish Serial Connection with ESP32-S2*). The DTR and RTS control lines are in turn connected to `GPIO0` and `CHIP_PU` (EN) pins of ESP32-S2, thus changes in the voltage levels of DTR and RTS will boot ESP32-S2 into Firmware Download mode. As an example, check the schematic for the ESP32 DevKitC development board.

In general, you should have no problems with the official esp-idf development boards. However, `esptool.py` is not able to reset your hardware automatically in the following cases:

- Your hardware does not have the DTR and RTS lines connected to `GPIO0` and `CHIP_PU`
- The DTR and RTS lines are configured differently
- There are no such serial control lines at all

Depending on the kind of hardware you have, it may also be possible to manually put your ESP32-S2 board into Firmware Download mode (reset).

- For development boards produced by Espressif, this information can be found in the respective getting started guides or user guides. For example, to manually reset an esp-idf development board, hold down the **Boot** button (`GPIO0`) and press the **EN** button (`CHIP_PU`).
- For other types of hardware, try pulling `GPIO0` down.

1.13.2 Normal Operation

When flashing, you will see the output log similar to the following:

```
...
esptool.py --chip esp32s2 -p /dev/ttyUSB0 -b 460800 --before=default_reset --
↪after=hard_reset write_flash --flash_mode dio --flash_freq 40m --flash_size 2MB␣
↪0x8000 partition_table/partition-table.bin 0x1000 bootloader/bootloader.bin␣
↪0x10000 hello-world.bin
esptool.py v3.0-dev
Serial port /dev/ttyUSB0
Connecting....
Chip is ESP32-S2
Features: WiFi
Crystal is 40MHz
MAC: 18:fe:34:72:50:e3
Uploading stub...
Running stub...
Stub running...
Changing baud rate to 460800
Changed.
Configuring flash size...
Compressed 3072 bytes to 103...
Writing at 0x00008000... (100 %)
Wrote 3072 bytes (103 compressed) at 0x00008000 in 0.0 seconds (effective 3851.6␣
↪kbit/s)...
Hash of data verified.
Compressed 22592 bytes to 13483...
Writing at 0x00001000... (100 %)
Wrote 22592 bytes (13483 compressed) at 0x00001000 in 0.3 seconds (effective 595.1␣
↪kbit/s)...
Hash of data verified.
Compressed 140048 bytes to 70298...
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Writing at 0x00010000... (20 %)
Writing at 0x00014000... (40 %)
Writing at 0x00018000... (60 %)
Writing at 0x0001c000... (80 %)
Writing at 0x00020000... (100 %)
Wrote 140048 bytes (70298 compressed) at 0x00010000 in 1.7 seconds (effective 662.
↪5 kbit/s)...
Hash of data verified.

Leaving...
Hard resetting via RTS pin...
Done
```

If there are no issues by the end of the flash process, the board will reboot and start up the "hello_world" application.

If you'd like to use the Eclipse or VS Code IDE instead of running `idf.py`, check out the *Eclipse guide*, *VS Code guide*.

1.14 Step 10. Monitor

To check if "hello_world" is indeed running, type `idf.py -p PORT monitor` (Do not forget to replace PORT with your serial port name).

This command launches the *IDF Monitor* application:

```
$ idf.py -p /dev/ttyUSB0 monitor
Running idf_monitor in directory [...]/esp/hello_world/build
Executing "python [...]/esp-idf/tools/idf_monitor.py -b 115200 [...]/esp/hello_
↪world/build/hello-world.elf"...
--- idf_monitor on /dev/ttyUSB0 115200 ---
--- Quit: Ctrl+] | Menu: Ctrl+T | Help: Ctrl+T followed by Ctrl+H ---
ets Jun  8 2016 00:22:57

rst:0x1 (POWERON_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
ets Jun  8 2016 00:22:57
...
```

After startup and diagnostic logs scroll up, you should see "Hello world!" printed out by the application.

```
...
Hello world!
Restarting in 10 seconds...
This is esp32s2 chip with 1 CPU core(s), WiFi, silicon revision 0, 2MB external␣
↪flash
Minimum free heap size: 253900 bytes
Restarting in 9 seconds...
Restarting in 8 seconds...
Restarting in 7 seconds...
```

To exit IDF monitor use the shortcut `Ctrl+]`.

Note: You can combine building, flashing and monitoring into one step by running:

```
idf.py -p PORT flash monitor
```

See also:

- *IDF Monitor* for handy shortcuts and more details on using IDF monitor.
- *idf.py* for a full reference of `idf.py` commands and options.

That's all that you need to get started with ESP32-S2!

Now you are ready to try some other examples, or go straight to developing your own applications.

Important: Some of examples do not support ESP32-S2 because required hardware is not included in ESP32-S2 so it cannot be supported.

If building an example, please check the README file for the `Supported Targets` table. If this is present including ESP32-S2 target, or the table does not exist at all, the example will work on ESP32-S2.

1.15 Updating ESP-IDF

You should update ESP-IDF from time to time, as newer versions fix bugs and provide new features. The simplest way to do the update is to delete the existing `esp-idf` folder and clone it again, as if performing the initial installation described in *Step 2. Get ESP-IDF*.

Another solution is to update only what has changed. *The update procedure depends on the version of ESP-IDF you are using*.

After updating ESP-IDF, execute the Install script again, in case the new ESP-IDF version requires different versions of tools. See instructions at *Step 3. Set up the tools*.

Once the new tools are installed, update the environment using the Export script. See instructions at *Step 4. Set up the environment variables*.

1.16 Related Documents

1.16.1 Establish Serial Connection with ESP32-S2

This section provides guidance how to establish serial connection between ESP32-S2 and PC.

Connect ESP32-S2 to PC

Connect the ESP32-S2 board to the PC using the USB cable. If device driver does not install automatically, identify USB to serial converter chip on your ESP32-S2 board (or external converter dongle), search for drivers in internet and install them.

Below is the list of USB to serial converter chips installed on most of the ESP32-S2 boards produced by Espressif together with links to the drivers:

- CP210x: CP210x USB to UART Bridge VCP Drivers
- FTDI: FTDI Virtual COM Port Drivers

Please check the board user guide for specific USB to serial converter chip used. The drivers above are primarily for reference. Under normal circumstances, the drivers should be bundled with an operating system and automatically installed upon connecting the board to the PC.

Check port on Windows

Check the list of identified COM ports in the Windows Device Manager. Disconnect ESP32-S2 and connect it back, to verify which port disappears from the list and then shows back again.

Figures below show serial port for ESP32 DevKitC and ESP32 WROVER KIT

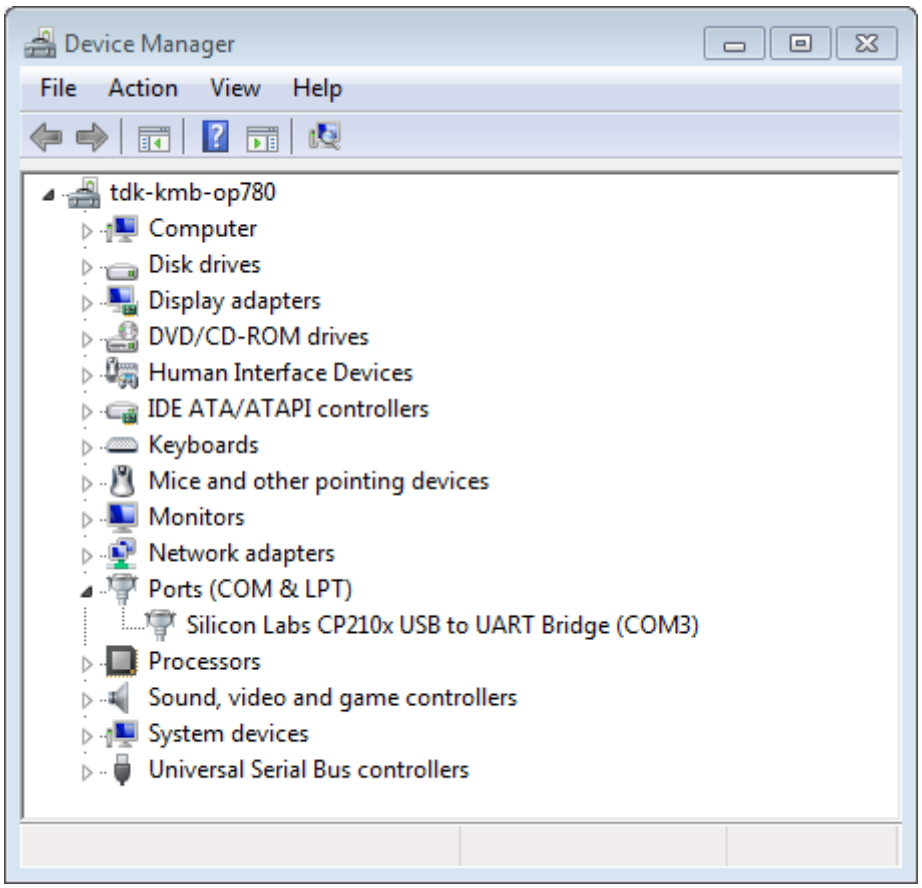


Fig. 46: USB to UART bridge of ESP32-DevKitC in Windows Device Manager

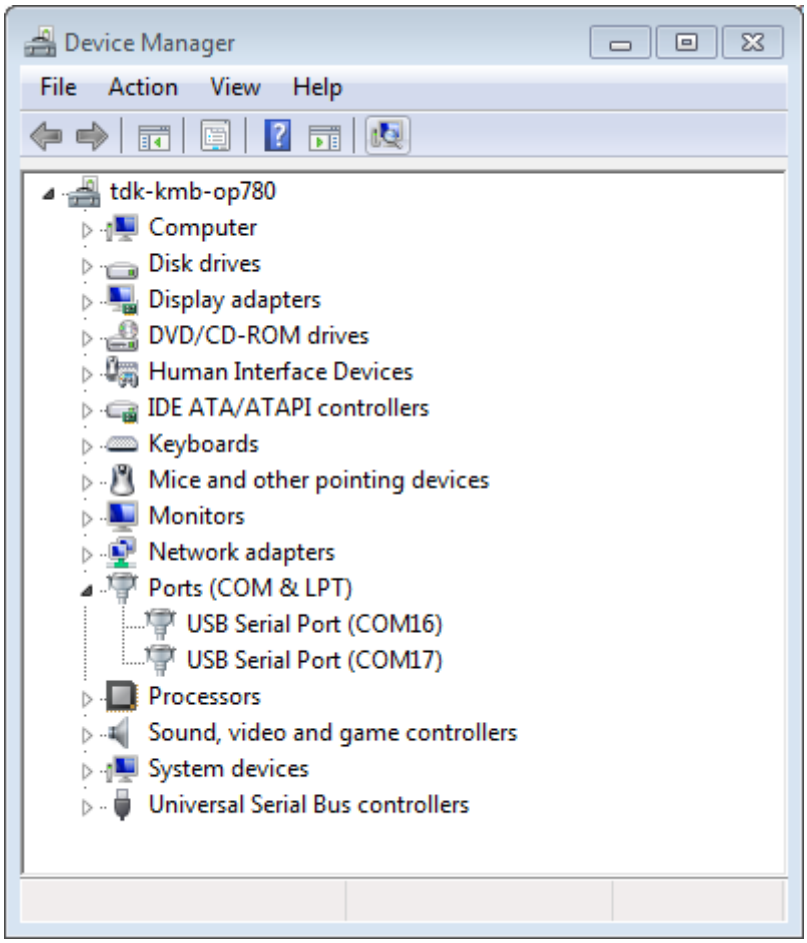


Fig. 47: Two USB Serial Ports of ESP-WROVER-KIT in Windows Device Manager

Check port on Linux and macOS

To check the device name for the serial port of your ESP32-S2 board (or external converter dongle), run this command two times, first with the board / dongle unplugged, then with plugged in. The port which appears the second time is the one you need:

Linux

```
ls /dev/tty*
```

macOS

```
ls /dev/cu.*
```

Note: macOS users: if you don't see the serial port then check you have the USB/serial drivers installed as shown in the Getting Started guide for your particular development board. For macOS High Sierra (10.13), you may also have to explicitly allow the drivers to load. Open System Preferences -> Security & Privacy -> General and check if there is a message shown here about "System Software from developer ..." where the developer name is Silicon Labs or FTDI.

Adding user to `dialout` on Linux

The currently logged user should have read and write access the serial port over USB. On most Linux distributions, this is done by adding the user to `dialout` group with the following command:

```
sudo usermod -a -G dialout $USER
```

on Arch Linux this is done by adding the user to `uucp` group with the following command:

```
sudo usermod -a -G uucp $USER
```

Make sure you re-login to enable read and write permissions for the serial port.

Verify serial connection

Now verify that the serial connection is operational. You can do this using a serial terminal program by checking if you get any output on the terminal after reseting ESP32-S2.

Windows and Linux In this example we will use PuTTY SSH Client that is available for both Windows and Linux. You can use other serial program and set communication parameters like below.

Run terminal, set identified serial port, baud rate = 115200, data bits = 8, stop bits = 1, and parity = N. Below are example screen shots of setting the port and such transmission parameters (in short described as 115200-8-1-N) on Windows and Linux. Remember to select exactly the same serial port you have identified in steps above.

Then open serial port in terminal and check, if you see any log printed out by ESP32-S2. The log contents will depend on application loaded to ESP32-S2, see *Example Output*.

Note: Close the serial terminal after verification that communication is working. If you keep the terminal session open, the serial port will be inaccessible for uploading firmware later.

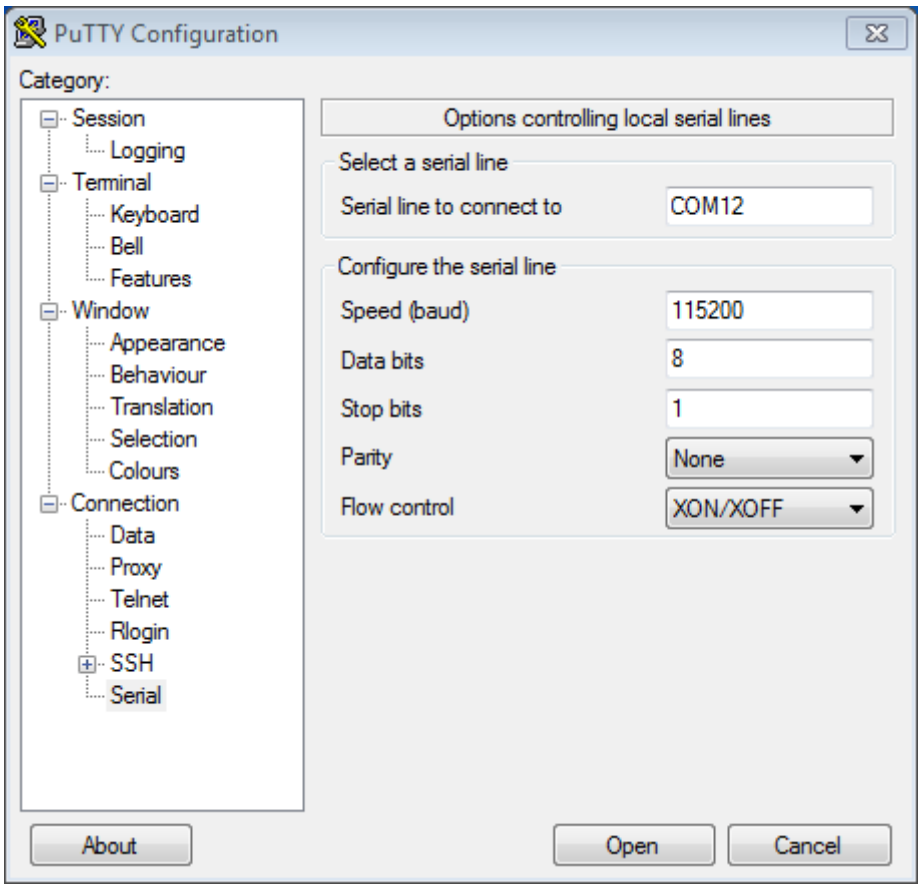


Fig. 48: Setting Serial Communication in PuTTY on Windows

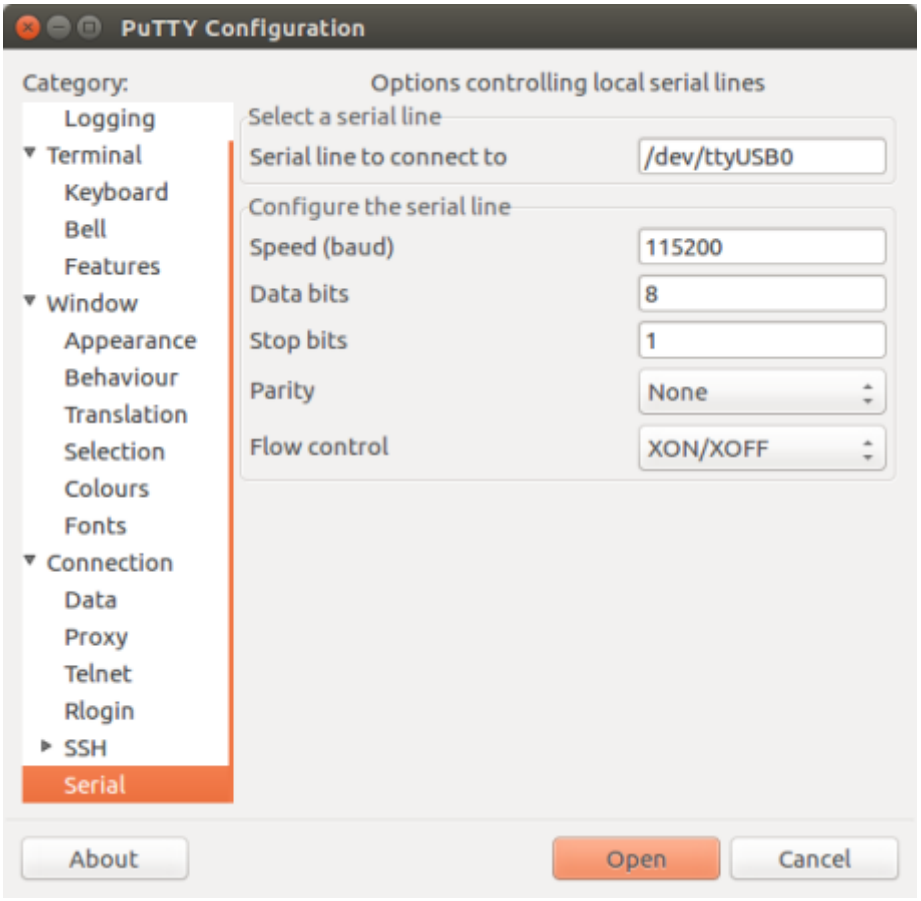


Fig. 49: Setting Serial Communication in PuTTY on Linux

macOS To spare you the trouble of installing a serial terminal program, macOS offers the **screen** command.

- As discussed in *Check port on Linux and macOS*, run:

```
ls /dev/cu.*
```

- You should see similar output:

```
/dev/cu.Bluetooth-Incoming-Port /dev/cu.SLAB_USBtoUART      /dev/cu.SLAB_
↪USBtoUART7
```

- The output will vary depending on the type and the number of boards connected to your PC. Then pick the device name of your board and run:

```
screen /dev/cu.device_name 115200
```

  Replace `device_name` with the name found running `ls /dev/cu.*`.
- What you are looking for is some log displayed by the **screen**. The log contents will depend on application loaded to ESP32-S2, see *Example Output*. To exit the **screen** session type Ctrl-A + \ .

Note: Do not forget to **exit the screen session** after verifying that the communication is working. If you fail to do it and just close the terminal window, the serial port will be inaccessible for uploading firmware later.

Example Output An example log by ESP32-S2 is shown below. Reset the board if you do not see anything.

```
ets Jun  8 2016 00:22:57

rst:0x5 (DEEPSLEEP_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
ets Jun  8 2016 00:22:57

rst:0x7 (TG0WDT_SYS_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configsip: 0, SPIWP:0x00
clk_drv:0x00,q_drv:0x00,d_drv:0x00,cs0_drv:0x00,hd_drv:0x00,wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0008,len:8
load:0x3fff0010,len:3464
load:0x40078000,len:7828
load:0x40080000,len:252
entry 0x40080034
I (44) boot: ESP-IDF v2.0-rc1-401-gf9fba35 2nd stage bootloader
I (45) boot: compile time 18:48:10

...
```

If you can see readable log output, it means serial connection is working and you are ready to proceed with installation and finally upload of application to ESP32-S2.

Note: For some serial port wiring configurations, the serial RTS & DTR pins need to be disabled in the terminal program before the ESP32-S2 will boot and produce serial output. This depends on the hardware itself, most development boards (including all Espressif boards) *do not* have this issue. The issue is present if RTS & DTR are wired directly to the EN & GPIO0 pins. See the esptool documentation for more details.

If you got here from *Step 6. Connect Your Device* when installing s/w for ESP32-S2 development, then you can continue with *Step 7. Configure*.

1.16.2 Build and Flash with Eclipse IDE

ESP-IDF V4.0 has a new CMake-based build system as the default build system.

There is a new ESP-IDF Eclipse Plugin that works with the CMake-based build system. Please refer to Espressif IDF Eclipse Plugins IDF for further instructions.

Note: In Espressif IDF Eclipse Plugins, though screenshots are captured from macOS, installation instructions are applicable for Windows, Linux and macOS.

1.16.3 Getting Started with VS Code IDE

We have official support for VS Code and we aim to provide complete end to end support for all actions related to ESP-IDF namely build, flash, monitor, debug, tracing, core-dump, System Trace Viewer, etc.

Quick Install Guide

Recommended way to install ESP-IDF Visual Studio Code Extension is by downloading it from VS Code Marketplace or following Quick Installation Guide.

Supported Features

- **Onboarding**, will help you to quickly install ESP-IDF and its relevant toolchain with just few clicks.
- **Build**, with one click build and multi target build, you can easily build and deploy your applications.
- **Flash**, with both UART and JTAG flash out of the box.
- **Monitoring** comes with inbuilt terminal where you can trigger IDF Monitor Commands from within VS Code as you are used to in traditional terminals.
- **Debugging**, with out of box hardware debugging and also support for postmortem debugging like core-dump, you can analyze the bugs with convenience.
- **GUI Menu Config**, provides with simplified UI for configuring your chip.
- **App & Heap Tracing**, provides support for collecting traces from your application and simplified UI for analyzing them.
- **System View Tracing Viewer**, aims to read and display the *.svdat* files into trace UI, we also support multiple core tracing views.
- **IDF Size Analysis Overview** presents an UI for binary size analysis.
- Rainmaker Cloud, we have inbuilt Rainmaker Cloud support where you can edit/read state of your connected IoT devices easily.
- **Code Coverage**, we have inbuilt code coverage support which shall highlight in color which line have been covered. We also render the existing HTML report directly inside the IDE.

Bugs & Feature Requests

If you face an issue with certain feature of VS Code or VS Code in general we recommend to ask your question in the forum, or open a github issue for our dev teams to review.

We also welcome new feature request, most of the features we have today is result of people asking it to implement, or improve certain aspect of the extension, raise your feature request on github.

1.16.4 IDF Monitor

The IDF monitor tool is mainly a serial terminal program which relays serial data to and from the target device's serial port. It also provides some IDF-specific features.

This tool can be launched from an IDF project by running `idf.py monitor`.

For the legacy GNU Make system, run `make monitor`.

Keyboard Shortcuts

For easy interaction with IDF Monitor, use the keyboard shortcuts given in the table.

Keyboard Shortcut	Action	Description
Ctrl+]	Exit the program	
Ctrl+T	Menu escape key	Press and follow it by one of the keys given below.
• Ctrl+T	Send the menu character itself to remote	
• Ctrl+]	Send the exit character itself to remote	
• Ctrl+P	Reset target into bootloader to pause app via RTS line	Resets the target, into bootloader via the RTS line (if connected), so that the board runs nothing. Useful when you need to wait for another device to startup.
• Ctrl+R	Reset target board via RTS	Resets the target board and re-starts the application via the RTS line (if connected).
• Ctrl+F	Build and flash the project	Pauses idf_monitor to run the project `flash` target, then resumes idf_monitor. Any changed source files are recompiled and then re-flashed. Target `encrypted-flash` is run if idf_monitor was started with argument `-E`.
• Ctrl+A (or A)	Build and flash the app only	Pauses idf_monitor to run the `app-flash` target, then resumes idf_monitor. Similar to the `flash` target, but only the main app is built and re-flashed. Target `encrypted-app-flash` is run if idf_monitor was started with argument `-E`.
• Ctrl+Y	Stop/resume log output printing on screen	Discards all incoming serial data while activated. Allows to quickly pause and examine log output without quitting the monitor.
• Ctrl+L	Stop/resume log output saved to file	Creates a file in the project directory and the output is written to that file until this is disabled with the same keyboard shortcut (or IDF Monitor exits).
• Ctrl+H (or H)	Display all keyboard shortcuts	
• Ctrl+X (or X)	Exit the program	

Any keys pressed, other than `Ctrl-]` and `Ctrl-T`, will be sent through the serial port.

IDF-specific features

Automatic Address Decoding Whenever ESP-IDF outputs a hexadecimal code address of the form `0x4_____`, IDF Monitor uses addr2line to look up the location in the source code and find the function name.

If an ESP-IDF app crashes and panics, a register dump and backtrace is produced, such as the following:

```
Guru Meditation Error of type StoreProhibited occurred on core  0. Exception was␣
↪unhandled.
Register dump:
PC      : 0x400f360d  PS      : 0x00060330  A0      : 0x800dbf56  A1      :␣
↪0x3ffb7e00
A2      : 0x3ffb136c  A3      : 0x00000005  A4      : 0x00000000  A5      :␣
↪0x00000000
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
A6      : 0x00000000  A7      : 0x00000080  A8      : 0x00000000  A9      :␣
↪0x3ffb7dd0
A10     : 0x00000003  A11     : 0x00060f23  A12     : 0x00060f20  A13     :␣
↪0x3ffba6d0
A14     : 0x00000047  A15     : 0x0000000f  SAR     : 0x00000019  EXCCAUSE:␣
↪0x0000001d
EXCVADDR: 0x00000000  LBEG    : 0x4000c46c  LEND    : 0x4000c477  LCOUNT  :␣
↪0x00000000

Backtrace: 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e00 0x400dbf56:0x3ffb7e20 0x400dbf5e:0x3ffb7e40␣
↪0x400dbf82:0x3ffb7e60 0x400d071d:0x3ffb7e90
```

IDF Monitor adds more details to the dump:

```
Guru Meditation Error of type StoreProhibited occurred on core  0. Exception was␣
↪unhandled.
Register dump:
PC      : 0x400f360d  PS      : 0x00060330  A0      : 0x800dbf56  A1      :␣
↪0x3ffb7e00
0x400f360d: do_something_to_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/
↪hello_world/main/./hello_world_main.c:57
(inlined by) inner_dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_
↪world/main/./hello_world_main.c:52
A2      : 0x3ffb136c  A3      : 0x00000005  A4      : 0x00000000  A5      :␣
↪0x00000000
A6      : 0x00000000  A7      : 0x00000080  A8      : 0x00000000  A9      :␣
↪0x3ffb7dd0
A10     : 0x00000003  A11     : 0x00060f23  A12     : 0x00060f20  A13     :␣
↪0x3ffba6d0
A14     : 0x00000047  A15     : 0x0000000f  SAR     : 0x00000019  EXCCAUSE:␣
↪0x0000001d
EXCVADDR: 0x00000000  LBEG    : 0x4000c46c  LEND    : 0x4000c477  LCOUNT  :␣
↪0x00000000

Backtrace: 0x400f360d:0x3ffb7e00 0x400dbf56:0x3ffb7e20 0x400dbf5e:0x3ffb7e40␣
↪0x400dbf82:0x3ffb7e60 0x400d071d:0x3ffb7e90
0x400f360d: do_something_to_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/
↪hello_world/main/./hello_world_main.c:57
(inlined by) inner_dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_
↪world/main/./hello_world_main.c:52
0x400dbf56: still_dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_
↪world/main/./hello_world_main.c:47
0x400dbf5e: dont_crash at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_world/
↪main/./hello_world_main.c:42
0x400dbf82: app_main at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/examples/get-started/hello_world/main/
↪./hello_world_main.c:33
0x400d071d: main_task at /home/gus/esp/32/idf/components/esp32s2/./cpu_start.c:254
```

To decode each address, IDF Monitor runs the following command in the background:

```
xtensa-esp32s2-elf-addr2line -pfiaC -e build/PROJECT.elf ADDRESS
```

Note: Set environment variable `ESP_MONITOR_DECODE` to `0` or call idf_monitor.py with specific command line option: `idf_monitor.py --disable-address-decoding` to disable address decoding.

Launching GDB with GDBStub By default, if esp-idf crashes, the panic handler prints relevant registers and the stack dump (similar to the ones above) over the serial port. Then it resets the board.

Optionally, the panic handler can be configured to run GDBStub, the tool which can communicate with GDB project

debugger. GDBStub allows to read memory, examine call stack frames and variables, etc. It is not as versatile as JTAG debugging, but this method does not require any special hardware.

To enable GDBStub, open the project configuration menu (`idf.py menuconfig`) and set *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC* to `Invoke GDBStub`.

In this case, if the panic handler is triggered, as soon as IDF Monitor sees that GDBStub has loaded, it automatically pauses serial monitoring and runs GDB with necessary arguments. After GDB exits, the board is reset via the RTS serial line. If this line is not connected, please reset the board manually by pressing its Reset button.

In the background, IDF Monitor runs the following command:

```
xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb -ex "set serial baud BAUD" -ex "target remote PORT" -ex␣
↪interrupt build/PROJECT.elf :idf_target:`Hello NAME chip`
```

Output Filtering IDF monitor can be invoked as `idf.py monitor --print-filter="xyz"`, where `--print-filter` is the parameter for output filtering. The default value is an empty string, which means that everything is printed.

Restrictions on what to print can be specified as a series of `<tag>:<log_level>` items where `<tag>` is the tag string and `<log_level>` is a character from the set `{N, E, W, I, D, V, *}` referring to a level for *logging*.

For example, `PRINT_FILTER="tag1:W"` matches and prints only the outputs written with `ESP_LOGW("tag1", ...)` or at lower verbosity level, i.e. `ESP_LOGE("tag1", ...)`. Not specifying a `<log_level>` or using `*` defaults to Verbose level.

Note: Use primary logging to disable at compilation the outputs you do not need through the *logging library*. Output filtering with IDF monitor is a secondary solution which can be useful for adjusting the filtering options without recompiling the application.

Your app tags must not contain spaces, asterisks `*`, or colons `:` to be compatible with the output filtering feature.

If the last line of the output in your app is not followed by a carriage return, the output filtering might get confused, i.e., the monitor starts to print the line and later finds out that the line should not have been written. This is a known issue and can be avoided by always adding a carriage return (especially when no output follows immediately afterwards).

Examples Of Filtering Rules:

- `*` can be used to match any tags. However, the string `PRINT_FILTER="*:I tag1:E"` with regards to `tag1` prints errors only, because the rule for `tag1` has a higher priority over the rule for `*`.
- The default (empty) rule is equivalent to `*:V` because matching every tag at the Verbose level or lower means matching everything.
- `"*:N"` suppresses not only the outputs from logging functions, but also the prints made by `printf`, etc. To avoid this, use `*:E` or a higher verbosity level.
- Rules `"tag1:V"`, `"tag1:v"`, `"tag1:"`, `"tag1:*"`, and `"tag1"` are equivalent.
- Rule `"tag1:W tag1:E"` is equivalent to `"tag1:E"` because any consequent occurrence of the same tag name overwrites the previous one.
- Rule `"tag1:I tag2:W"` only prints `tag1` at the Info verbosity level or lower and `tag2` at the Warning verbosity level or lower.
- Rule `"tag1:I tag2:W tag3:N"` is essentially equivalent to the previous one because `tag3:N` specifies that `tag3` should not be printed.
- `tag3:N` in the rule `"tag1:I tag2:W tag3:N *:V"` is more meaningful because without `tag3:N` the `tag3` messages could have been printed; the errors for `tag1` and `tag2` will be printed at the specified (or lower) verbosity level and everything else will be printed by default.

A More Complex Filtering Example The following log snippet was acquired without any filtering options:

```
load:0x40078000,len:13564
entry 0x40078d4c
E (31) esp_image: image at 0x30000 has invalid magic byte
W (31) esp_image: image at 0x30000 has invalid SPI mode 255
E (39) boot: Factory app partition is not bootable
I (568) cpu_start: Pro cpu up.
I (569) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation:
I (603) cpu_start: Pro cpu start user code
D (309) light_driver: [light_init, 74]:status: 1, mode: 2
D (318) vfs: esp_vfs_register_fd_range is successful for range <54; 64) and VFS ID␣
↪1
I (328) wifi: wifi driver task: 3ffdbf84, prio:23, stack:4096, core=0
```

The captured output for the filtering options `PRINT_FILTER="wifi esp_image:E light_driver:I"` is given below:

```
E (31) esp_image: image at 0x30000 has invalid magic byte
I (328) wifi: wifi driver task: 3ffdbf84, prio:23, stack:4096, core=0
```

`The options ``PRINT_FILTER="light_driver:D esp_image:N boot:N cpu_start:N vfs:N wifi:N *:V"` show the following output:

```
load:0x40078000,len:13564
entry 0x40078d4c
I (569) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation:
D (309) light_driver: [light_init, 74]:status: 1, mode: 2
```

Known Issues with IDF Monitor

Issues Observed on Windows

- If in the Windows environment you receive the error "winpty: command not found", fix it by running `pacman -S winpty`.
- Arrow keys, as well as some other keys, do not work in GDB due to Windows Console limitations.
- Occasionally, when "idf.py" or "make" exits, it might stall for up to 30 seconds before IDF Monitor resumes.
- When "gdb" is run, it might stall for a short time before it begins communicating with the GDBStub.

1.16.5 Customized Setup of Toolchain

Instead of downloading binary toolchain from Espressif website (see *Step 3. Set up the tools*) you may build the toolchain yourself.

If you can't think of a reason why you need to build it yourself, then probably it's better to stick with the binary version. However, here are some of the reasons why you might want to compile it from source:

- if you want to customize toolchain build configuration
- if you want to use a different GCC version (such as 4.8.5)
- if you want to hack gcc or newlib or libstdc++
- if you are curious and/or have time to spare
- if you don't trust binaries downloaded from the Internet

In any case, here are the instructions to compile the toolchain yourself.

Setup Windows Toolchain from Scratch

This is a step-by-step alternative to running the *ESP-IDF Tools Installer* for the CMake-based build system. Installing all of the tools by hand allows more control over the process, and also provides the information for advanced users to customize the install.

To quickly setup the toolchain and other tools in standard way, using the ESP-IDF Tools installer, proceed to section *Standard Setup of Toolchain for Windows*.

Note: The GNU Make based build system requires the MSYS2 Unix compatibility environment on Windows. The CMake-based build system does not require this environment.

Get ESP-IDF

Note: Previous versions of ESP-IDF used the **MSYS2 bash terminal** command line. The current cmake-based build system can run in the regular **Windows Command Prompt** which is used here.

If you use a bash-based terminal or PowerShell, please note that some command syntax will be different to what is shown below.

Open Command Prompt and run the following commands:

```
mkdir %userprofile%\esp
cd %userprofile%\esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf.git
```

ESP-IDF will be downloaded into `%userprofile%\esp\esp-idf`.

Consult *ESP-IDF Versions* for information about which ESP-IDF version to use in a given situation.

Note: This command will clone the master branch, which has the latest development ("bleeding edge") version of ESP-IDF. It is fully functional and updated on weekly basis with the most recent features and bugfixes.

Note: GitHub's "Download zip file" feature does not work with ESP-IDF, a `git clone` is required. As a fallback, Stable version can be installed without Git.

Note: Do not miss the `--recursive` option. If you have already cloned ESP-IDF without this option, run another command to get all the submodules:

```
cd esp-idf
git submodule update --init
```

Tools

CMake Download the latest stable release of CMake for Windows and run the installer.

When the installer asks for Install Options, choose either "Add CMake to the system PATH for all users" or "Add CMake to the system PATH for the current user" .

Ninja build

Note: Ninja currently only provides binaries for 64-bit Windows. It is possible to use CMake and `idf.py` with other build tools, such as mingw-make, on 32-bit windows. However this is currently undocumented.

Download the Ninja latest stable Windows release from the (download page).

The Ninja for Windows download is a .zip file containing a single `ninja.exe` file which needs to be unzipped to a directory which is then *added to your Path* (or you can choose a directory which is already on your Path).

Python Download the latest Python for Windows installer, and run it.

The "Customise" step of the Python installer gives a list of options. The last option is "Add python.exe to Path". Change this option to select "Will be installed".

Once Python is installed, open a Windows Command Prompt from the Start menu and run the following command:

```
pip install --user pyserial
```

Toolchain Setup Download the precompiled Windows toolchain:

https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win32.zip

Unzip the zip file to `C:\Program Files` (or some other location). The zip file contains a single directory `xtensa-esp32s2-elf`.

Next, the `bin` subdirectory of this directory must be *added to your Path*. For example, the directory to add may be `C:\Program Files\xtensa-esp32s2-elf\bin`.

Note: If you already have the MSYS2 environment (for use with the "GNU Make" build system) installed, you can skip the separate download and add the directory `C:\msys32\opt\xtensa-esp32s2-elf\bin` to the Path instead, as the toolchain is included in the MSYS2 environment.

Adding Directory to Path To add any new directory to your Windows Path environment variable:

Open the System control panel and navigate to the Environment Variables dialog. (On Windows 10, this is found under Advanced System Settings).

Double-click the `Path` variable (either User or System Path, depending if you want other users to have this directory on their path.) Go to the end of the value, and append `;<new value>`.

Next Steps To carry on with development environment setup, proceed to *Step 3. Set up the tools*.

Setup Linux Toolchain from Scratch

The following instructions are alternative to downloading binary toolchain from Espressif website. To quickly setup the binary toolchain, instead of compiling it yourself, backup and proceed to section *Standard Setup of Toolchain for Linux*.

Note: The reason you might need to build your own toolchain is to solve the Y2K38 problem (time_t expand to 64 bits instead of 32 bits).

Install Prerequisites To compile with ESP-IDF you need to get the following packages:

- CentOS 7:

```
sudo yum -y update && sudo yum install git wget ncurses-devel flex bison gperf␣
↪python3 python3-pip cmake ninja-build ccache dfu-util libusbx
```

CentOS 7 is still supported but CentOS version 8 is recommended for a better user experience.

- Ubuntu and Debian:

```
sudo apt-get install git wget libncurses-dev flex bison gperf python3 python3-
↪pip python3-setuptools python3-serial python3-cryptography python3-future␣
↪python3-pyparsing python3-pyelftools cmake ninja-build ccache libffi-dev␣
↪libssl-dev dfu-util libusb-1.0-0
```

- Arch:

```
sudo pacman -Sy --needed gcc git make ncurses flex bison gperf python-pyserial␣
↪python-cryptography python-future python-pyparsing python-pyelftools cmake␣
↪ninja ccache dfu-util libusb
```

Note: CMake version 3.5 or newer is required for use with ESP-IDF. Older Linux distributions may require updating, enabling of a "backports" repository, or installing of a "cmake3" package rather than "cmake".

Compile the Toolchain from Source

- Install dependencies:
  - CentOS 7:

```
sudo yum install gawk gperf grep gettext ncurses-devel python3 python3-
↪devel automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool make
```

  - Ubuntu pre-16.04:

```
sudo apt-get install gawk gperf grep gettext libncurses-dev python python-
↪dev automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool make
```

  - Ubuntu 16.04 or newer:

```
sudo apt-get install gawk gperf grep gettext python python-dev automake␣
↪bison flex texinfo help2man libtool libtool-bin make
```

  - Debian 9:

```
sudo apt-get install gawk gperf grep gettext libncurses-dev python python-
↪dev automake bison flex texinfo help2man libtool libtool-bin make
```

  - Arch:

```
sudo pacman -Sy --needed python-pip
```

Create the working directory and go into it:

```
mkdir -p ~/esp
cd ~/esp
```

Download `crosstool-NG` and build it:

```
git clone https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG.git
cd crosstool-NG
git checkout esp-2020r3
git submodule update --init
./bootstrap && ./configure --enable-local && make
```

Note: To create a toolchain with support for 64-bit time_t, you need to remove the `--enable-newlib-long-time_t` option from the `crosstool-NG/samples/xtensa-esp32-elf/crosstool.config` file in 33 and 43 lines.

Build the toolchain:

```
./ct-ng xtensa-esp32s2-elf
./ct-ng build
chmod -R u+w builds/xtensa-esp32s2-elf
```

Toolchain will be built in `~/esp/crosstool-NG/builds/xtensa-esp32s2-elf`.

Add Toolchain to PATH The custom toolchain needs to be copied to a binary directory and added to the `PATH`.

Choose a directory, for example `~/esp/xtensa-esp32s2-elf/`, and copy the build output to this directory.

To use it, you will need to update your `PATH` environment variable in `~/.profile` file. To make `xtensa-esp32s2-elf` available for all terminal sessions, add the following line to your `~/.profile` file:

```
export PATH="$HOME/esp/xtensa-esp32s2-elf/bin:$PATH"
```

Note: If you have `/bin/bash` set as login shell, and both `.bash_profile` and `.profile` exist, then update `.bash_profile` instead. In CentOS, `alias` should set in `.bashrc`.

Log off and log in back to make the `.profile` changes effective. Run the following command to verify if `PATH` is correctly set:

```
printenv PATH
```

You are looking for similar result containing toolchain's path at the beginning of displayed string:

```
$ printenv PATH
/home/user-name/esp/xtensa-esp32s2-elf/bin:/home/user-name/bin:/home/user-name/.
↪local/bin:/usr/local/sbin:/usr/local/bin:/usr/sbin:/usr/bin:/sbin:/bin:/usr/
↪games:/usr/local/games:/snap/bin
```

Instead of `/home/user-name` there should be a home path specific to your installation.

Python 2 deprecation Python 2 reached its end of life and support for it in ESP-IDF will be removed soon. Please install Python 3.6 or higher. Instructions for popular Linux distributions are listed above.

Next Steps To carry on with development environment setup, proceed to *Step 2. Get ESP-IDF*.

Setup Toolchain for Mac OS from Scratch

Package Manager To set up the toolchain from scratch, rather than *downloading a pre-compiled toolchain*, you will need to install either the MacPorts or Homebrew package manager.

MacPorts needs a full XCode installation, while Homebrew only needs XCode command line tools.

See *Customized Setup of Toolchain* section for some of the reasons why installing the toolchain from scratch may be necessary.

Install Prerequisites

- install pip:

  ```
  sudo easy_install pip
  ```

- install pyserial:

  ```
  pip install --user pyserial
  ```

- install CMake & Ninja build:
  - If you have Homebrew, you can run:

    ```
    brew install cmake ninja dfu-util
    ```

  - If you have MacPorts, you can run:

```
sudo port install cmake ninja dfu-util
```

Compile the Toolchain from Source

- Install dependencies:
  - with MacPorts:

```
sudo port install gsed gawk binutils gperf grep gettext wget libtool␣
↪autoconf automake make
```

  - with Homebrew:

```
brew install gnu-sed gawk binutils gperftools gettext wget help2man␣
↪libtool autoconf automake make
```

Create a case-sensitive filesystem image:

```
hdiutil create ~/esp/crosstool.dmg -volname "ctng" -size 10g -fs "Case-sensitive␣
↪HFS+"
```

Mount it:

```
hdiutil mount ~/esp/crosstool.dmg
```

Create a symlink to your work directory:

```
mkdir -p ~/esp
ln -s /Volumes/ctng ~/esp/ctng-volume
```

Go into the newly created directory:

```
cd ~/esp/ctng-volume
```

Download `crosstool-NG` and build it:

```
git clone https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG.git
cd crosstool-NG
git checkout esp-2020r3
git submodule update --init
./bootstrap && ./configure --enable-local && make
```

Build the toolchain:

```
./ct-ng xtensa-esp32s2-elf
./ct-ng build
chmod -R u+w builds/xtensa-esp32s2-elf
```

Toolchain will be built in `~/esp/ctng-volume/crosstool-NG/builds/xtensa-esp32s2-elf`. To use it, you need to add `~/esp/ctng-volume/crosstool-NG/builds/xtensa-esp32s2-elf/bin` to `PATH` environment variable.

Python 2 deprecation Python 2 reached its end of life and support for it in ESP-IDF will be removed soon. Please install Python 3.6 or higher. Instructions for macOS are listed above.

Next Steps To carry on with development environment setup, proceed to *Step 2. Get ESP-IDF*.

Chapter 2

API Reference

2.1 Networking APIs

2.1.1 Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi

Introduction The Wi-Fi libraries provide support for configuring and monitoring the ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi networking functionality. This includes configuration for:

- Station mode (aka STA mode or Wi-Fi client mode). ESP32-S2 connects to an access point.
- AP mode (aka Soft-AP mode or Access Point mode). Stations connect to the ESP32-S2.
- Combined AP-STA mode (ESP32-S2 is concurrently an access point and a station connected to another access point).
- Various security modes for the above (WPA, WPA2, WEP, etc.)
- Scanning for access points (active & passive scanning).
- Promiscuous mode for monitoring of IEEE802.11 Wi-Fi packets.

Application Examples The wifi directory of ESP-IDF examples contains the following applications:

Code examples for Wi-Fi are provided in the wifi directory of ESP-IDF examples.

In addition, there is a simple esp-idf-template application to demonstrate a minimal IDF project structure.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_wifi/include/esp_wifi.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_init**(**const** *wifi_init_config_t* **config*)

Init WiFi Alloc resource for WiFi driver, such as WiFi control structure, RX/TX buffer, WiFi NVS structure etc, this WiFi also start WiFi task.

Attention 1. This API must be called before all other WiFi API can be called

Attention 2. Always use WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT macro to init the config to default values, this can guarantee all the fields got correct value when more fields are added into *wifi_init_config_t* in future release. If you want to set your owner initial values, overwrite the default values which are set by WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT, please be notified that the field 'magic' of *wifi_init_config_t* should always be WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_MAGIC!

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory
- others: refer to error code esp_err.h

Parameters

- `config`: pointer to WiFi init configuration structure; can point to a temporary variable.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_deinit** (void)

Deinit WiFi Free all resource allocated in esp_wifi_init and stop WiFi task.

Attention 1. This API should be called if you want to remove WiFi driver from the system

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_mode** (*wifi_mode_t mode*)

Set the WiFi operating mode.

Set the WiFi operating mode as station, soft-AP or station+soft-AP, The default mode is soft-AP mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- others: refer to error code in esp_err.h

Parameters

- `mode`: WiFi operating mode

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_mode** (*wifi_mode_t *mode*)

Get current operating mode of WiFi.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `[out] mode`: store current WiFi mode

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_start** (void)

Start WiFi according to current configuration If mode is WIFI_MODE_STA, it create station control block and start station If mode is WIFI_MODE_AP, it create soft-AP control block and start soft-AP If mode is WIFI_MODE_APSTA, it create soft-AP and station control block and start soft-AP and station.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, station or soft-AP control block wrong
- ESP_FAIL: other WiFi internal errors

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_stop** (void)

Stop WiFi If mode is WIFI_MODE_STA, it stop station and free station control block If mode is WIFI_MODE_AP, it stop soft-AP and free soft-AP control block If mode is WIFI_MODE_APSTA, it stop station/soft-AP and free station/soft-AP control block.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_restore** (void)

Restore WiFi stack persistent settings to default values.

This function will reset settings made using the following APIs:

- esp_wifi_set_bandwidth,

- esp_wifi_set_protocol,
- esp_wifi_set_config related
- esp_wifi_set_mode

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_connect**(void)

Connect the ESP32 WiFi station to the AP.

Attention 1. This API only impact WIFI_MODE_STA or WIFI_MODE_APSTA mode

Attention 2. If the ESP32 is connected to an AP, call esp_wifi_disconnect to disconnect.

Attention 3. The scanning triggered by esp_wifi_start_scan() will not be effective until connection between ESP32 and the AP is established. If ESP32 is scanning and connecting at the same time, ESP32 will abort scanning and return a warning message and error number ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE. If you want to do reconnection after ESP32 received disconnect event, remember to add the maximum retry time, otherwise the called scan will not work. This is especially true when the AP doesn't exist, and you still try reconnection after ESP32 received disconnect event with the reason code WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, station or soft-AP control block wrong
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID: SSID of AP which station connects is invalid

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_disconnect**(void)

Disconnect the ESP32 WiFi station from the AP.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi was not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi was not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_FAIL: other WiFi internal errors

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_clear_fast_connect**(void)

Currently this API is just an stub API.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_deauth_sta**(uint16_t *aid*)

deauthenticate all stations or associated id equals to aid

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi was not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong

Parameters
- `aid`: when aid is 0, deauthenticate all stations, otherwise deauthenticate station whose associated id is aid

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_scan_start**(**const** *wifi_scan_config_t* **config*, bool *block*)

Scan all available APs.

Attention If this API is called, the found APs are stored in WiFi driver dynamic allocated memory and the will be freed in esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records, so generally, call esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records to cause the memory to be freed once the scan is done

Attention The values of maximum active scan time and passive scan time per channel are limited to 1500 milliseconds. Values above 1500ms may cause station to disconnect from AP and are not recommended.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi was not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT: blocking scan is timeout
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE: wifi still connecting when invoke esp_wifi_scan_start
- others: refer to error code in esp_err.h

Parameters

- `config`: configuration of scanning
- `block`: if block is true, this API will block the caller until the scan is done, otherwise it will return immediately

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_scan_stop**(void)

Stop the scan in process.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num**(uint16_t **number*)

Get number of APs found in last scan.

Attention This API can only be called when the scan is completed, otherwise it may get wrong value.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `[out] number`: store number of APIs found in last scan

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records**(uint16_t **number*, *wifi_ap_record_t* **ap_records*)

Get AP list found in last scan.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory

Parameters

- `[inout] number`: As input param, it stores max AP number ap_records can hold. As output param, it receives the actual AP number this API returns.
- `ap_records`: *wifi_ap_record_t* array to hold the found APs

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_sta_get_ap_info**(*wifi_ap_record_t* **ap_info*)

Get information of AP which the ESP32 station is associated with.

Attention When the obtained country information is empty, it means that the AP does not carry country information

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: The station interface don’ t initialized
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT: The station is in disconnect status

Parameters

- `ap_info`: the *wifi_ap_record_t* to hold AP information sta can get the connected ap’ s phy mode info through the struct member phy_11b, phy_11g, phy_11n, phy_lr in the *wifi_ap_record_t* struct. For example, phy_11b = 1 imply that ap support 802.11b mode

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_ps**(*wifi_ps_type_t type*)

Set current WiFi power save type.

Attention Default power save type is WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM.

Return ESP_OK: succeed

Parameters

- `type`: power save type

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_ps**(*wifi_ps_type_t *type*)

Get current WiFi power save type.

Attention Default power save type is WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM.

Return ESP_OK: succeed

Parameters

- `[out] type`: store current power save type

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_protocol**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, uint8_t *protocol_bitmap*)

Set protocol type of specified interface The default protocol is (WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G|WIFI_PROT

Attention Currently we only support 802.11b or 802.11bg or 802.11bgn mode

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

Parameters

- `ifx`: interfaces
- `protocol_bitmap`: WiFi protocol bitmap

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_protocol**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, uint8_t **protocol_bitmap*)

Get the current protocol bitmap of the specified interface.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

Parameters

- `ifx`: interface
- `[out] protocol_bitmap`: store current WiFi protocol bitmap of interface ifx

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_bandwidth**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, *wifi_bandwidth_t bw*)

Set the bandwidth of ESP32 specified interface.

Attention 1. API return false if try to configure an interface that is not enabled

Attention 2. WIFI_BW_HT40 is supported only when the interface support 11N

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

Parameters

- `ifx`: interface to be configured
- `bw`: bandwidth

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_bandwidth**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, *wifi_bandwidth_t *bw*)

Get the bandwidth of ESP32 specified interface.

Attention 1. API return false if try to get a interface that is not enable

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `ifx`: interface to be configured
- `[out] bw`: store bandwidth of interface ifx

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_channel**(uint8_t *primary*, *wifi_second_chan_t second*)

Set primary/secondary channel of ESP32.

Attention 1. This API should be called after esp_wifi_start()

Attention 2. When ESP32 is in STA mode, this API should not be called when STA is scanning or connecting to an external AP

Attention 3. When ESP32 is in softAP mode, this API should not be called when softAP has connected to external STAs

Attention 4. When ESP32 is in STA+softAP mode, this API should not be called when in the scenarios described above

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `primary`: for HT20, primary is the channel number, for HT40, primary is the primary channel
- `second`: for HT20, second is ignored, for HT40, second is the second channel

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_channel**(uint8_t **primary*, *wifi_second_chan_t* **second*)

Get the primary/secondary channel of ESP32.

Attention 1. API return false if try to get a interface that is not enable

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `primary`: store current primary channel
- `[out] second`: store current second channel

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_country**(**const** *wifi_country_t* **country*)

configure country info

Attention 1. The default country is {.cc="CN", .schan=1, .nchan=13, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO}

Attention 2. When the country policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO, the country info of the AP to which the station is connected is used. E.g. if the configured country info is {.cc="USA", .schan=1, .nchan=11} and the country info of the AP to which the station is connected is {.cc="JP", .schan=1, .nchan=14} then the country info that will be used is {.cc="JP", .schan=1, .nchan=14}. If the station disconnected from the AP the country info is set back back to the country info of the station automatically, {.cc="US", .schan=1, .nchan=11} in the example.

Attention 3. When the country policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL, always use the configured country info.

Attention 4. When the country info is changed because of configuration or because the station connects to a different external AP, the country IE in probe response/beacon of the soft-AP is changed also.

Attention 5. The country configuration is stored into flash.

Attention 6. This API doesn't validate the per-country rules, it's up to the user to fill in all fields according to local regulations.

Attention 7. When this API is called, the PHY init data will switch to the PHY init data type corresponding to the country info.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `country`: the configured country info

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_country**(*wifi_country_t* **country*)
get the current country info

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- `country`: country info

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_mac**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, **const** uint8_t *mac*[6])
Set MAC address of the ESP32 WiFi station or the soft-AP interface.

Attention 1. This API can only be called when the interface is disabled
Attention 2. ESP32 soft-AP and station have different MAC addresses, do not set them to be the same.
Attention 3. The bit 0 of the first byte of ESP32 MAC address can not be 1. For example, the MAC address can set to be "1a:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX", but can not be "15:XX:XX:XX:XX:XX".

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC: invalid mac address
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong
- others: refer to error codes in esp_err.h

Parameters
- `ifx`: interface
- `mac`: the MAC address

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_mac**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, uint8_t *mac*[6])
Get mac of specified interface.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface

Parameters
- `ifx`: interface
- `[out] mac`: store mac of the interface ifx

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_rx_cb**(*wifi_promiscuous_cb_t cb*)
Register the RX callback function in the promiscuous mode.

Each time a packet is received, the registered callback function will be called.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters
- `cb`: callback

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_promiscuous**(bool *en*)
Enable the promiscuous mode.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters
- `en`: false - disable, true - enable

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_promiscuous**(bool **en*)
Get the promiscuous mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `[out] en`: store the current status of promiscuous mode

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_filter**(**const** *wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter*)

Enable the promiscuous mode packet type filter.

Note The default filter is to filter all packets except WIFI_PKT_MISC

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters

- `filter`: the packet type filtered in promiscuous mode.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_promiscuous_filter**(*wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter*)

Get the promiscuous filter.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `[out] filter`: store the current status of promiscuous filter

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_ctrl_filter**(**const** *wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter*)

Enable subtype filter of the control packet in promiscuous mode.

Note The default filter is to filter none control packet.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters

- `filter`: the subtype of the control packet filtered in promiscuous mode.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_promiscuous_ctrl_filter**(*wifi_promiscuous_filter_t *filter*)

Get the subtype filter of the control packet in promiscuous mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `[out] filter`: store the current status of subtype filter of the control packet in promiscuous mode

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_config**(*wifi_interface_t interface*, *wifi_config_t *conf*)

Set the configuration of the ESP32 STA or AP.

Attention 1. This API can be called only when specified interface is enabled, otherwise, API fail

Attention 2. For station configuration, bssid_set needs to be 0; and it needs to be 1 only when users need to check the MAC address of the AP.

Attention 3. ESP32 is limited to only one channel, so when in the soft-AP+station mode, the soft-AP will adjust its channel automatically to be the same as the channel of the ESP32 station.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: invalid mode
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD: invalid password

- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NVS: WiFi internal NVS error
- others: refer to the erro code in esp_err.h

Parameters

- `interface`: interface
- `conf`: station or soft-AP configuration

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_config**(*wifi_interface_t interface*, *wifi_config_t *conf*)

Get configuration of specified interface.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: invalid interface

Parameters

- `interface`: interface
- `[out] conf`: station or soft-AP configuration

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_ap_get_sta_list**(*wifi_sta_list_t *sta*)

Get STAs associated with soft-AP.

Attention SSC only API

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, the station/soft-AP control block is invalid

Parameters

- `[out] sta`: station list ap can get the connected sta's phy mode info through the struct member phy_11b, phy_11g, phy_11n, phy_lr in the *wifi_sta_info_t* struct. For example, phy_11b = 1 imply that sta support 802.11b mode

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_ap_get_sta_aid**(**const** uint8_t *mac*[6], uint16_t *aid*)

Get AID of STA connected with soft-AP.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Requested resource not found
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE: WiFi mode is wrong
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN: WiFi internal error, the station/soft-AP control block is invalid

Parameters

- `mac`: STA's mac address
- `[out] aid`: Store the AID corresponding to STA mac

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_storage**(*wifi_storage_t storage*)

Set the WiFi API configuration storage type.

Attention 1. The default value is WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `storage`: : storage type

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie**(bool *enable*, *wifi_vendor_ie_type_t type*, *wifi_vendor_ie_id_t idx*, **const** void *vnd_ie*)

Set 802.11 Vendor-Specific Information Element.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init()
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument, including if first byte of vnd_ie is not WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID (0xDD) or second byte is an invalid length.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Out of memory

Parameters

- `enable`: If true, specified IE is enabled. If false, specified IE is removed.
- `type`: Information Element type. Determines the frame type to associate with the IE.
- `idx`: Index to set or clear. Each IE type can be associated with up to two elements (indices 0 & 1).
- `vnd_ie`: Pointer to vendor specific element data. First 6 bytes should be a header with fields matching *vendor_ie_data_t*. If enable is false, this argument is ignored and can be NULL. Data does not need to remain valid after the function returns.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb** (*esp_vendor_ie_cb_t cb*, void **ctx*)

Register Vendor-Specific Information Element monitoring callback.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters

- `cb`: Callback function
- `ctx`: Context argument, passed to callback function.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_max_tx_power** (int8_t *power*)

Set maximum transmitting power after WiFi start.

Attention 1. Maximum power before wifi startup is limited by PHY init data bin.

Attention 2. The value set by this API will be mapped to the max_tx_power of the structure *wifi_country_t* variable.

Attention 3. Mapping Table {Power, max_tx_power} = {{8, 2}, {20, 5}, {28, 7}, {34, 8}, {44, 11}, {52, 13}, {56, 14}, {60, 15}, {66, 16}, {72, 18}, {80, 20}}.

Attention 4. Param power unit is 0.25dBm, range is [8, 84] corresponding to 2dBm - 20dBm.

Attention 5. Relationship between set value and actual value. As follows: {set value range, actual value} = {{[8, 19],8}, {[20, 27],20}, {[28, 33],28}, {[34, 43],34}, {[44, 51],44}, {[52, 55],52}, {[56, 59],56}, {[60, 65],60}, {[66, 71],66}, {[72, 79],72}, {[80, 84],80}}.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, e.g. parameter is out of range

Parameters

- `power`: Maximum WiFi transmitting power.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_max_tx_power** (int8_t **power*)

Get maximum transmiting power after WiFi start.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `power`: Maximum WiFi transmitting power, unit is 0.25dBm.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_event_mask** (uint32_t *mask*)

Set mask to enable or disable some WiFi events.

Attention 1. Mask can be created by logical OR of various WIFI_EVENT_MASK_ constants. Events which have corresponding bit set in the mask will not be delivered to the system event handler.

Attention 2. Default WiFi event mask is WIFI_EVENT_MASK_AP_PROBEREQRECVED.

Attention 3. There may be lots of stations sending probe request data around. Don't unmask this event unless you need to receive probe request data.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters

- `mask`: WiFi event mask.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_event_mask**(uint32_t **mask*)

Get mask of WiFi events.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `mask`: WiFi event mask.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_80211_tx**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, **const** void **buffer*, int *len*, bool *en_sys_seq*)

Send raw ieee80211 data.

Attention Currently only support for sending beacon/probe request/probe response/action and non-QoS data frame

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF: Invalid interface
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid parameter
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NO_MEM: out of memory

Parameters

- `ifx`: interface if the Wi-Fi mode is Station, the ifx should be WIFI_IF_STA. If the Wi-Fi mode is SoftAP, the ifx should be WIFI_IF_AP. If the Wi-Fi mode is Station+SoftAP, the ifx should be WIFI_IF_STA or WIFI_IF_AP. If the ifx is wrong, the API returns ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF.
- `buffer`: raw ieee80211 buffer
- `len`: the length of raw buffer, the len must be <= 1500 Bytes and >= 24 Bytes
- `en_sys_seq`: indicate whether use the internal sequence number. If en_sys_seq is false, the sequence in raw buffer is unchanged, otherwise it will be overwritten by WiFi driver with the system sequence number. Generally, if esp_wifi_80211_tx is called before the Wi-Fi connection has been set up, both en_sys_seq==true and en_sys_seq==false are fine. However, if the API is called after the Wi-Fi connection has been set up, en_sys_seq must be true, otherwise ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG is returned.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb**(*wifi_csi_cb_t cb*, void **ctx*)

Register the RX callback function of CSI data.

Each time a CSI data is received, the callback function will be called.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init

Parameters

- `cb`: callback
- `ctx`: context argument, passed to callback function

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_csi_config**(**const** *wifi_csi_config_t* **config*)

Set CSI data configuration.

return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start or promiscuous mode is not enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `config`: configuration

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_csi**(bool *en*)
Enable or disable CSI.

return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_START: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start or promiscuous mode is not enabled
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters
- `en`: true - enable, false - disable

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_ant_gpio**(**const** *wifi_ant_gpio_config_t* **config*)
Set antenna GPIO configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: Invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL, invalid GPIO number etc

Parameters
- `config`: Antenna GPIO configuration.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_ant_gpio**(*wifi_ant_gpio_config_t* **config*)
Get current antenna GPIO configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL

Parameters
- `config`: Antenna GPIO configuration.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_ant**(**const** *wifi_ant_config_t* **config*)
Set antenna configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: Invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL, invalid antenna mode or invalid GPIO number

Parameters
- `config`: Antenna configuration.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_ant**(*wifi_ant_config_t* **config*)
Get current antenna configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, e.g. parameter is NULL

Parameters
- `config`: Antenna configuration.

int64_t **esp_wifi_get_tsf_time**(*wifi_interface_t interface*)
Get the TSF time In Station mode or SoftAP+Station mode if station is not connected or station doesn't receive at least one beacon after connected, will return 0.

Attention Enabling power save may cause the return value inaccurate, except WiFi modem sleep
Return 0 or the TSF time
Parameters
- `interface`: The interface whose tsf_time is to be retrieved.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_inactive_time** (*wifi_interface_t ifx*, uint16_t *sec*)

Set the inactive time of the ESP32 STA or AP.

Attention 1. For Station, If the station does not receive a beacon frame from the connected SoftAP during the inactive time, disconnect from SoftAP. Default 6s.

Attention 2. For SoftAP, If the softAP doesn't receive any data from the connected STA during inactive time, the softAP will force deauth the STA. Default is 300s.

Attention 3. The inactive time configuration is not stored into flash

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED: WiFi is not started by esp_wifi_start
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument, For Station, if sec is less than 3. For SoftAP, if sec is less than 10.

Parameters

- `ifx`: interface to be configured.
- `sec`: Inactive time. Unit seconds.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_get_inactive_time** (*wifi_interface_t ifx*, uint16_t **sec*)

Get inactive time of specified interface.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `ifx`: Interface to be configured.
- `sec`: Inactive time. Unit seconds.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_statis_dump** (uint32_t *modules*)

Dump WiFi statistics.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

Parameters

- `modules`: statistic modules to be dumped

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_rssi_threshold** (int32_t *rssi*)

Set RSSI threshold below which APP will get an event.

Attention This API needs to be called every time after WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW event is received.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT: WiFi is not initialized by esp_wifi_init
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG: invalid argument

Parameters

- `rssi`: threshold value in dbm between -100 to 0

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_ftm_initiate_session** (*wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t* **cfg*)

Start an FTM Initiator session by sending FTM request If successful, event WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT is generated with the result of the FTM procedure.

Attention Use this API only in Station mode

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

Parameters

- `cfg`: FTM Initiator session configuration

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_config_11b_rate** (*wifi_interface_t ifx*, bool *disable*)

Enable or disable 11b rate of specified interface.

Attention 1. This API should be called after esp_wifi_init() and before esp_wifi_start().
Attention 2. Only when really need to disable 11b rate call this API otherwise don't call this.
Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

Parameters
- `ifx`: Interface to be configured.
- `disable`: true means disable 11b rate while false means enable 11b rate.

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_config_espnow_rate**(*wifi_interface_t ifx*, *wifi_phy_rate_t rate*)
Config ESPNOW rate of specified interface.

Attention 1. This API should be called after esp_wifi_init() and before esp_wifi_start().
Return
- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: failed

Parameters
- `ifx`: Interface to be configured.
- `rate`: Only support 1M, 6M and MCS0_LGI

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_connectionless_wake_interval**(uint16_t *interval*)
Set interval for station to wake up periodically at disconnected.

Attention 1. Only when ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE is enabled, this configuration could work
Attention 2. This configuration only work for station mode and disconnected status
Attention 3. This configuration would influence nothing until some module configure wake_window
Attention 4. A sensible interval which is not too small is recommended (e.g. 100ms)
Parameters
- `interval`: how much micriosecond would the chip wake up, from 1 to 65535.

Structures

struct wifi_init_config_t
WiFi stack configuration parameters passed to esp_wifi_init call.

Public Members

system_event_handler_t **event_handler**
WiFi event handler

wifi_osi_funcs_t ***osi_funcs**
WiFi OS functions

wpa_crypto_funcs_t **wpa_crypto_funcs**
WiFi station crypto functions when connect

int **static_rx_buf_num**
WiFi static RX buffer number

int **dynamic_rx_buf_num**
WiFi dynamic RX buffer number

int **tx_buf_type**
WiFi TX buffer type

int **static_tx_buf_num**
WiFi static TX buffer number

int **dynamic_tx_buf_num**
WiFi dynamic TX buffer number

int **cache_tx_buf_num**
WiFi TX cache buffer number

int **csi_enable**
WiFi channel state information enable flag

int **ampdu_rx_enable**
WiFi AMPDU RX feature enable flag

int **ampdu_tx_enable**
WiFi AMPDU TX feature enable flag

int **amsdu_tx_enable**
WiFi AMSDU TX feature enable flag

int **nvs_enable**
WiFi NVS flash enable flag

int **nano_enable**
Nano option for printf/scan family enable flag

int **rx_ba_win**
WiFi Block Ack RX window size

int **wifi_task_core_id**
WiFi Task Core ID

int **beacon_max_len**
WiFi softAP maximum length of the beacon

int **mgmt_sbuf_num**
WiFi management short buffer number, the minimum value is 6, the maximum value is 32

uint64_t **feature_caps**
Enables additional WiFi features and capabilities

bool **sta_disconnected_pm**
WiFi Power Management for station at disconnected status

int **magic**
WiFi init magic number, it should be the last field

Macros

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
WiFi driver was not installed by esp_wifi_init

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED
WiFi driver was not started by esp_wifi_start

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STOPPED
WiFi driver was not stopped by esp_wifi_stop

ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF
WiFi interface error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE
WiFi mode error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE
WiFi internal state error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN
WiFi internal control block of station or soft-AP error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NVS
WiFi internal NVS module error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC
MAC address is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID
SSID is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD
Password is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT
Timeout error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WAKE_FAIL
WiFi is in sleep state(RF closed) and wakeup fail

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WOULD_BLOCK
The caller would block

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT
Station still in disconnect status

ESP_ERR_WIFI_POST
Failed to post the event to WiFi task

ESP_ERR_WIFI_INIT_STATE
Invalid WiFi state when init/deinit is called

ESP_ERR_WIFI_STOP_STATE
Returned when WiFi is stopping

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_ASSOC
The WiFi connection is not associated

ESP_ERR_WIFI_TX_DISALLOW
The WiFi TX is disallowed

WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM

WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM

WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM

WIFI_CSI_ENABLED

WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED

WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED

WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED

WIFI_NVS_ENABLED

WIFI_NANO_FORMAT_ENABLED

WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_MAGIC

WIFI_DEFAULT_RX_BA_WIN

WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID

WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN

WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM

WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLED

CONFIG_FEATURE_WPA3_SAE_BIT

CONFIG_FEATURE_CACHE_TX_BUF_BIT

CONFIG_FEATURE_FTM_INITIATOR_BIT

CONFIG_FEATURE_FTM_RESPONDER_BIT

WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

Type Definitions

typedef void (***wifi_promiscuous_cb_t**)(void *buf, *wifi_promiscuous_pkt_type_t* type)

The RX callback function in the promiscuous mode. Each time a packet is received, the callback function will be called.

Parameters

- `buf`: Data received. Type of data in buffer (*wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t* or *wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t*) indicated by 'type' parameter.
- `type`: promiscuous packet type.

typedef void (***esp_vendor_ie_cb_t**)(void *ctx, *wifi_vendor_ie_type_t* type, **const** uint8_t sa[6], **const** *vendor_ie_data_t* *vnd_ie, int rssi)

Function signature for received Vendor-Specific Information Element callback.

Parameters

- `ctx`: Context argument, as passed to esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb() when registering callback.
- `type`: Information element type, based on frame type received.
- `sa`: Source 802.11 address.
- `vnd_ie`: Pointer to the vendor specific element data received.
- `rssi`: Received signal strength indication.

typedef void (***wifi_csi_cb_t**)(void *ctx, *wifi_csi_info_t* *data)

The RX callback function of Channel State Information(CSI) data.

Each time a CSI data is received, the callback function will be called.

Parameters

- `ctx`: context argument, passed to esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb() when registering callback function.
- `data`: CSI data received. The memory that it points to will be deallocated after callback function returns.

Header File

- esp_wifi/include/esp_wifi_types.h

Unions

union wifi_config_t

#include <esp_wifi_types.h> Configuration data for ESP32 AP or STA.

The usage of this union (for ap or sta configuration) is determined by the accompanying interface argument passed to esp_wifi_set_config() or esp_wifi_get_config()

Public Members

wifi_ap_config_t **ap**

configuration of AP

wifi_sta_config_t **sta**

configuration of STA

Structures

struct wifi_country_t

Structure describing WiFi country-based regional restrictions.

Public Members

char **cc**[3]

country code string

uint8_t **schan**
start channel

uint8_t **nchan**
total channel number

int8_t **max_tx_power**
This field is used for getting WiFi maximum transmitting power, call esp_wifi_set_max_tx_power to set the maximum transmitting power.

wifi_country_policy_t **policy**
country policy

struct wifi_active_scan_time_t
Range of active scan times per channel.

Public Members

uint32_t **min**
minimum active scan time per channel, units: millisecond

uint32_t **max**
maximum active scan time per channel, units: millisecond, values above 1500ms may cause station to disconnect from AP and are not recommended.

struct wifi_scan_time_t
Aggregate of active & passive scan time per channel.

Public Members

wifi_active_scan_time_t **active**
active scan time per channel, units: millisecond.

uint32_t **passive**
passive scan time per channel, units: millisecond, values above 1500ms may cause station to disconnect from AP and are not recommended.

struct wifi_scan_config_t
Parameters for an SSID scan.

Public Members

uint8_t ***ssid**
SSID of AP

uint8_t ***bssid**
MAC address of AP

uint8_t **channel**
channel, scan the specific channel

bool **show_hidden**
enable to scan AP whose SSID is hidden

wifi_scan_type_t **scan_type**
scan type, active or passive

wifi_scan_time_t **scan_time**
scan time per channel

struct wifi_ap_record_t
Description of a WiFi AP.

Public Members

uint8_t **bssid**[6]
MAC address of AP

uint8_t **ssid**[33]
SSID of AP

uint8_t **primary**
channel of AP

wifi_second_chan_t **second**
secondary channel of AP

int8_t **rssi**
signal strength of AP

wifi_auth_mode_t **authmode**
authmode of AP

wifi_cipher_type_t **pairwise_cipher**
pairwise cipher of AP

wifi_cipher_type_t **group_cipher**
group cipher of AP

wifi_ant_t **ant**
antenna used to receive beacon from AP

uint32_t **phy_11b** : 1
bit: 0 flag to identify if 11b mode is enabled or not

uint32_t **phy_11g** : 1
bit: 1 flag to identify if 11g mode is enabled or not

uint32_t **phy_11n** : 1
bit: 2 flag to identify if 11n mode is enabled or not

uint32_t **phy_lr** : 1
bit: 3 flag to identify if low rate is enabled or not

uint32_t **wps** : 1
bit: 4 flag to identify if WPS is supported or not

uint32_t **ftm_responder** : 1
bit: 5 flag to identify if FTM is supported in responder mode

uint32_t **ftm_initiator** : 1
bit: 6 flag to identify if FTM is supported in initiator mode

uint32_t **reserved** : 25
bit: 7..31 reserved

wifi_country_t **country**
country information of AP

struct wifi_scan_threshold_t
Structure describing parameters for a WiFi fast scan.

Public Members

int8_t **rssi**
The minimum rssi to accept in the fast scan mode

wifi_auth_mode_t **authmode**
The weakest authmode to accept in the fast scan mode

struct wifi_pmf_config_t

Configuration structure for Protected Management Frame

Public Members

bool **capable**

Advertizes support for Protected Management Frame. Device will prefer to connect in PMF mode if other device also advertizes PMF capability.

bool **required**

Advertizes that Protected Management Frame is required. Device will not associate to non-PMF capable devices.

struct wifi_ap_config_t

Soft-AP configuration settings for the ESP32.

Public Members

uint8_t **ssid**[32]

SSID of ESP32 soft-AP. If ssid_len field is 0, this must be a Null terminated string. Otherwise, length is set according to ssid_len.

uint8_t **password**[64]

Password of ESP32 soft-AP.

uint8_t **ssid_len**

Optional length of SSID field.

uint8_t **channel**

Channel of ESP32 soft-AP

wifi_auth_mode_t **authmode**

Auth mode of ESP32 soft-AP. Do not support AUTH_WEP in soft-AP mode

uint8_t **ssid_hidden**

Broadcast SSID or not, default 0, broadcast the SSID

uint8_t **max_connection**

Max number of stations allowed to connect in, default 4, max 10

uint16_t **beacon_interval**

Beacon interval which should be multiples of 100. Unit: TU(time unit, 1 TU = 1024 us). Range: 100 ~ 60000. Default value: 100

wifi_cipher_type_t **pairwise_cipher**

pairwise cipher of SoftAP, group cipher will be derived using this. cipher values are valid starting from WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP, enum values before that will be considered as invalid and default cipher suites(TKIP+CCMP) will be used. Valid cipher suites in softAP mode are WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP, WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_CCMP and WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP_CCMP.

struct wifi_sta_config_t

STA configuration settings for the ESP32.

Public Members

uint8_t **ssid**[32]

SSID of target AP.

uint8_t **password**[64]

Password of target AP.

wifi_scan_method_t **scan_method**
do all channel scan or fast scan

bool **bssid_set**
whether set MAC address of target AP or not. Generally, station_config.bssid_set needs to be 0; and it needs to be 1 only when users need to check the MAC address of the AP.

uint8_t **bssid**[6]
MAC address of target AP

uint8_t **channel**
channel of target AP. Set to 1~13 to scan starting from the specified channel before connecting to AP. If the channel of AP is unknown, set it to 0.

uint16_t **listen_interval**
Listen interval for ESP32 station to receive beacon when WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM is set. Units: AP beacon intervals. Defaults to 3 if set to 0.

wifi_sort_method_t **sort_method**
sort the connect AP in the list by rssi or security mode

wifi_scan_threshold_t **threshold**
When sort_method is set, only APs which have an auth mode that is more secure than the selected auth mode and a signal stronger than the minimum RSSI will be used.

wifi_pmf_config_t **pmf_cfg**
Configuration for Protected Management Frame. Will be advertized in RSN Capabilities in RSN IE.

uint32_t **rm_enabled** : 1
Whether Radio Measurements are enabled for the connection

uint32_t **btm_enabled** : 1
Whether BSS Transition Management is enabled for the connection

uint32_t **reserved** : 30
Reserved for future feature set

struct wifi_sta_info_t
Description of STA associated with AP.

Public Members

uint8_t **mac**[6]
mac address

int8_t **rssi**
current average rssi of sta connected

uint32_t **phy_11b** : 1
bit: 0 flag to identify if 11b mode is enabled or not

uint32_t **phy_11g** : 1
bit: 1 flag to identify if 11g mode is enabled or not

uint32_t **phy_11n** : 1
bit: 2 flag to identify if 11n mode is enabled or not

uint32_t **phy_lr** : 1
bit: 3 flag to identify if low rate is enabled or not

uint32_t **reserved** : 28
bit: 4..31 reserved

struct wifi_sta_list_t
List of stations associated with the ESP32 Soft-AP.

Public Members

wifi_sta_info_t **sta**[**ESP_WIFI_MAX_CONN_NUM**]
station list

int **num**
number of stations in the list (other entries are invalid)

struct vendor_ie_data_t
Vendor Information Element header.

The first bytes of the Information Element will match this header. Payload follows.

Public Members

uint8_t **element_id**
Should be set to WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID (0xDD)

uint8_t **length**
Length of all bytes in the element data following this field. Minimum 4.

uint8_t **vendor_oui**[3]
Vendor identifier (OUI).

uint8_t **vendor_oui_type**
Vendor-specific OUI type.

uint8_t **payload**[0]
Payload. Length is equal to value in ‘length’ field, minus 4.

struct wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t
Received packet radio metadata header, this is the common header at the beginning of all promiscuous mode RX callback buffers.

Public Members

signed **rssi** : 8
Received Signal Strength Indicator(RSSI) of packet. unit: dBm

unsigned **rate** : 5
PHY rate encoding of the packet. Only valid for non HT(11bg) packet

unsigned **__pad0__** : 1
reserved

unsigned **sig_mode** : 2
0: non HT(11bg) packet; 1: HT(11n) packet; 3: VHT(11ac) packet

unsigned **__pad1__** : 16
reserved

unsigned **mcs** : 7
Modulation Coding Scheme. If is HT(11n) packet, shows the modulation, range from 0 to 76(MSC0 ~ MCS76)

unsigned **cwb** : 1
Channel Bandwidth of the packet. 0: 20MHz; 1: 40MHz

unsigned **__pad2__** : 16
reserved

unsigned **smoothing** : 1
reserved

unsigned **not_sounding** : 1
reserved

unsigned **__pad3__** : 1
reserved

unsigned **aggregation** : 1
Aggregation. 0: MPDU packet; 1: AMPDU packet

unsigned **stbc** : 2
Space Time Block Code(STBC). 0: non STBC packet; 1: STBC packet

unsigned **fec_coding** : 1
Flag is set for 11n packets which are LDPC

unsigned **sgi** : 1
Short Guide Interval(SGI). 0: Long GI; 1: Short GI

unsigned **__pad4__** : 8
reserved

unsigned **ampdu_cnt** : 8
ampdu cnt

unsigned **channel** : 4
primary channel on which this packet is received

unsigned **secondary_channel** : 4
secondary channel on which this packet is received. 0: none; 1: above; 2: below

unsigned **__pad5__** : 8
reserved

unsigned **timestamp** : 32
timestamp. The local time when this packet is received. It is precise only if modem sleep or light sleep is not enabled. unit: microsecond

unsigned **__pad6__** : 32
reserved

unsigned **__pad7__** : 32
reserved

unsigned **__pad8__** : 31
reserved

unsigned **ant** : 1
antenna number from which this packet is received. 0: WiFi antenna 0; 1: WiFi antenna 1

signed **noise_floor** : 8
noise floor of Radio Frequency Module(RF). unit: 0.25dBm

unsigned **__pad9__** : 24
reserved

unsigned **sig_len** : 12
length of packet including Frame Check Sequence(FCS)

unsigned **__pad10__** : 12
reserved

unsigned **rx_state** : 8
state of the packet. 0: no error; others: error numbers which are not public

struct wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t
Payload passed to ‘buf’ parameter of promiscuous mode RX callback.

Public Members

wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t **rx_ctrl**
metadata header

uint8_t **payload**[0]
Data or management payload. Length of payload is described by rx_ctrl.sig_len. Type of content determined by packet type argument of callback.

struct wifi_promiscuous_filter_t
Mask for filtering different packet types in promiscuous mode.

Public Members

uint32_t **filter_mask**
OR of one or more filter values WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_*

struct wifi_csi_config_t
Channel state information(CSI) configuration type.

Public Members

bool **lltf_en**
enable to receive legacy long training field(lltf) data. Default enabled

bool **htltf_en**
enable to receive HT long training field(htltf) data. Default enabled

bool **stbc_htltf2_en**
enable to receive space time block code HT long training field(stbc-htltf2) data. Default enabled

bool **ltf_merge_en**
enable to generate htlft data by averaging lltf and ht_ltf data when receiving HT packet. Otherwise, use ht_ltf data directly. Default enabled

bool **channel_filter_en**
enable to turn on channel filter to smooth adjacent sub-carrier. Disable it to keep independence of adjacent sub-carrier. Default enabled

bool **manu_scale**
manually scale the CSI data by left shifting or automatically scale the CSI data. If set true, please set the shift bits. false: automatically. true: manually. Default false

uint8_t **shift**
manually left shift bits of the scale of the CSI data. The range of the left shift bits is 0~15

struct wifi_csi_info_t
CSI data type.

Public Members

wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t **rx_ctrl**
received packet radio metadata header of the CSI data

uint8_t **mac**[6]
source MAC address of the CSI data

bool **first_word_invalid**
first four bytes of the CSI data is invalid or not

int8_t ***buf**
buffer of CSI data

uint16_t **len**
: length of CSI data

struct wifi_ant_gpio_t
WiFi GPIO configuration for antenna selection.

Public Members

uint8_t **gpio_select** : 1
: Whether this GPIO is connected to external antenna switch

uint8_t **gpio_num** : 7
: The GPIO number that connects to external antenna switch

struct wifi_ant_gpio_config_t
WiFi GPIOs configuration for antenna selection.

Public Members

wifi_ant_gpio_t **gpio_cfg**[4]
: The configurations of GPIOs that connect to external antenna switch

struct wifi_ant_config_t
WiFi antenna configuration.

Public Members

wifi_ant_mode_t **rx_ant_mode**
: WiFi antenna mode for receiving

wifi_ant_t **rx_ant_default**
: Default antenna mode for receiving, it’ s ignored if rx_ant_mode is not WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO

wifi_ant_mode_t **tx_ant_mode**
: WiFi antenna mode for transmission, it can be set to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO only if rx_ant_mode is set to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO

uint8_t **enabled_ant0** : 4
: Index (in antenna GPIO configuration) of enabled WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0

uint8_t **enabled_ant1** : 4
: Index (in antenna GPIO configuration) of enabled WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1

struct wifi_action_tx_req_t
Action Frame Tx Request.

Public Members

wifi_interface_t **ifx**
: WiFi interface to send request to

uint8_t **dest_mac**[6]
: Destination MAC address

bool **no_ack**
: Indicates no ack required

wifi_action_rx_cb_t **rx_cb**
: Rx Callback to receive any response

uint32_t **data_len**
: Length of the appended Data

uint8_t **data**[0]
Appended Data payload

struct wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t
FTM Initiator configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t **resp_mac**[6]
MAC address of the FTM Responder

uint8_t **channel**
Primary channel of the FTM Responder

uint8_t **frm_count**
No. of FTM frames requested in terms of 4 or 8 bursts (allowed values - 0(No pref), 16, 24, 32, 64)

uint16_t **burst_period**
Requested time period between consecutive FTM bursts in 100’ s of milliseconds (0 - No pref)

struct wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE event

Public Members

uint32_t **status**
status of scanning APs: 0 —success, 1 - failure

uint8_t **number**
number of scan results

uint8_t **scan_id**
scan sequence number, used for block scan

struct wifi_event_sta_connected_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED event

Public Members

uint8_t **ssid**[32]
SSID of connected AP

uint8_t **ssid_len**
SSID length of connected AP

uint8_t **bssid**[6]
BSSID of connected AP

uint8_t **channel**
channel of connected AP

wifi_auth_mode_t **authmode**
authentication mode used by AP

struct wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED event

Public Members

uint8_t **ssid**[32]
SSID of disconnected AP

uint8_t **ssid_len**
SSID length of disconnected AP

uint8_t **bssid**[6]
BSSID of disconnected AP

uint8_t **reason**
reason of disconnection

struct wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE event

Public Members

wifi_auth_mode_t **old_mode**
the old auth mode of AP

wifi_auth_mode_t **new_mode**
the new auth mode of AP

struct wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN event

Public Members

uint8_t **pin_code**[8]
PIN code of station in enrollee mode

struct wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS event

Public Members

uint8_t **ap_cred_cnt**
Number of AP credentials received

uint8_t **ssid**[**MAX_SSID_LEN**]
SSID of AP

uint8_t **passphrase**[**MAX_PASSPHRASE_LEN**]
Passphrase for the AP

struct *wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t*::**[anonymous]** **ap_cred**[**MAX_WPS_AP_CRED**]
All AP credentials received from WPS handshake

struct wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED event

Public Members

uint8_t **mac**[6]
MAC address of the station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

uint8_t **aid**
the aid that ESP32 soft-AP gives to the station connected to

struct wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED event

Public Members

uint8_t **mac**[6]
MAC address of the station disconnects to ESP32 soft-AP

uint8_t **aid**
the aid that ESP32 soft-AP gave to the station disconnects to

struct wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED event

Public Members

int **rssi**
Received probe request signal strength

uint8_t **mac**[6]
MAC address of the station which send probe request

struct wifi_event_bss_rssi_low_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW event

Public Members

int32_t **rssi**
RSSI value of bss

struct wifi_ftm_report_entry_t
Argument structure for

Public Members

uint8_t **dlog_token**
Dialog Token of the FTM frame

int8_t **rssi**
RSSI of the FTM frame received

uint32_t **rtt**
Round Trip Time in pSec with a peer

uint64_t **t1**
Time of departure of FTM frame from FTM Responder in pSec

uint64_t **t2**
Time of arrival of FTM frame at FTM Initiator in pSec

uint64_t **t3**
Time of departure of ACK from FTM Initiator in pSec

uint64_t **t4**
Time of arrival of ACK at FTM Responder in pSec

struct wifi_event_ftm_report_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT event

Public Members

uint8_t **peer_mac**[6]
MAC address of the FTM Peer

wifi_ftm_status_t **status**
Status of the FTM operation

uint32_t **rtt_raw**
Raw average Round-Trip-Time with peer in Nano-Seconds

uint32_t **rtt_est**
Estimated Round-Trip-Time with peer in Nano-Seconds

uint32_t **dist_est**
Estimated one-way distance in Centi-Meters

wifi_ftm_report_entry_t ***ftm_report_data**
Pointer to FTM Report with multiple entries, should be freed after use

uint8_t **ftm_report_num_entries**
Number of entries in the FTM Report data

struct wifi_event_action_tx_status_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS event

Public Members

wifi_interface_t **ifx**
WiFi interface to send request to

uint32_t **context**
Context to identify the request

uint8_t **da**[6]
Destination MAC address

uint8_t **status**
Status of the operation

struct wifi_event_roc_done_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_ROC_DONE event

Public Members

uint32_t **context**
Context to identify the request

Macros

WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_REQ
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_CANCEL

WIFI_ROC_REQ

WIFI_ROC_CANCEL

WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B

WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G

WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N

WIFI_PROTOCOL_LR

ESP_WIFI_MAX_CONN_NUM
max number of stations which can connect to ESP32 soft-AP

WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_ALL
filter all packets

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MGMT
filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_MGMT

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_CTRL
filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_CTRL

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA
filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_DATA

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MISC
filter the packets with type of WIFI_PKT_MISC

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_MPDU
filter the MPDU which is a kind of WIFI_PKT_DATA

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_AMPDU
filter the AMPDU which is a kind of WIFI_PKT_DATA

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_FCSFAIL
filter the FCS failed packets, do not open it in general

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ALL
filter all control packets

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_WRAPPER
filter the control packets with subtype of Control Wrapper

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BAR
filter the control packets with subtype of Block Ack Request

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BA
filter the control packets with subtype of Block Ack

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_PSPOLL
filter the control packets with subtype of PS-Poll

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_RTS
filter the control packets with subtype of RTS

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CTS
filter the control packets with subtype of CTS

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ACK
filter the control packets with subtype of ACK

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFEND
filter the control packets with subtype of CF-END

WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFENDACK
filter the control packets with subtype of CF-END+CF-ACK

WIFI_EVENT_MASK_ALL
mask all WiFi events

WIFI_EVENT_MASK_NONE
mask none of the WiFi events

WIFI_EVENT_MASK_AP_PROBEREQRECVED
mask SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED event

MAX_SSID_LEN

MAX_PASSPHRASE_LEN

MAX_WPS_AP_CRED

WIFI_STATIS_BUFFER

WIFI_STATIS_RXTX

WIFI_STATIS_HW

WIFI_STATIS_DIAG

WIFI_STATIS_PS

WIFI_STATIS_ALL

Type Definitions

typedef int (***wifi_action_rx_cb_t**)(uint8_t *hdr, uint8_t *payload, size_t len, uint8_t channel)

The Rx callback function of Action Tx operations.

Parameters

- `hdr`: pointer to the IEEE 802.11 Header structure
- `payload`: pointer to the Payload following 802.11 Header
- `len`: length of the Payload
- `channel`: channel number the frame is received on

Enumerations

enum wifi_mode_t

Values:

WIFI_MODE_NULL = 0
null mode

WIFI_MODE_STA
WiFi station mode

WIFI_MODE_AP
WiFi soft-AP mode

WIFI_MODE_APSTA
WiFi station + soft-AP mode

WIFI_MODE_MAX

enum wifi_interface_t

Values:

WIFI_IF_STA = ESP_IF_WIFI_STA

WIFI_IF_AP = ESP_IF_WIFI_AP

enum wifi_country_policy_t

Values:

WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO
Country policy is auto, use the country info of AP to which the station is connected

WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL
Country policy is manual, always use the configured country info

enum wifi_auth_mode_t

Values:

WIFI_AUTH_OPEN = 0
authenticate mode : open

WIFI_AUTH_WEP
authenticate mode : WEP

WIFI_AUTH_WPA_PSK
authenticate mode : WPA_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_PSK
authenticate mode : WPA2_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK
authenticate mode : WPA_WPA2_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_ENTERPRISE
authenticate mode : WPA2_ENTERPRISE

WIFI_AUTH_WPA3_PSK
authenticate mode : WPA3_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_WPA3_PSK
authenticate mode : WPA2_WPA3_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_WAPI_PSK
authenticate mode : WAPI_PSK

WIFI_AUTH_MAX

enum wifi_err_reason_t
Values:

WIFI_REASON_UNSPECIFIED = 1

WIFI_REASON_AUTH_EXPIRE = 2

WIFI_REASON_AUTH_LEAVE = 3

WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_EXPIRE = 4

WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_TOOMANY = 5

WIFI_REASON_NOT_AUTHED = 6

WIFI_REASON_NOT_ASSOCED = 7

WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_LEAVE = 8

WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_NOT_AUTHED = 9

WIFI_REASON_DISASSOC_PWRCAP_BAD = 10

WIFI_REASON_DISASSOC_SUPCHAN_BAD = 11

WIFI_REASON_IE_INVALID = 13

WIFI_REASON_MIC_FAILURE = 14

WIFI_REASON_4WAY_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT = 15

WIFI_REASON_GROUP_KEY_UPDATE_TIMEOUT = 16

WIFI_REASON_IE_IN_4WAY_DIFFERS = 17

WIFI_REASON_GROUP_CIPHER_INVALID = 18

WIFI_REASON_PAIRWISE_CIPHER_INVALID = 19

WIFI_REASON_AKMP_INVALID = 20

WIFI_REASON_UNSUPP_RSN_IE_VERSION = 21

WIFI_REASON_INVALID_RSN_IE_CAP = 22

WIFI_REASON_802_1X_AUTH_FAILED = 23

WIFI_REASON_CIPHER_SUITE_REJECTED = 24

WIFI_REASON_INVALID_PMKID = 53

WIFI_REASON_BEACON_TIMEOUT = 200

WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND = 201

WIFI_REASON_AUTH_FAIL = 202

WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_FAIL = 203

WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT = 204

WIFI_REASON_CONNECTION_FAIL = 205

WIFI_REASON_AP_TSF_RESET = 206

WIFI_REASON_ROAMING = 207

enum wifi_second_chan_t

Values:

WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_NONE = 0
the channel width is HT20

WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_ABOVE
the channel width is HT40 and the secondary channel is above the primary channel

WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_BELOW
the channel width is HT40 and the secondary channel is below the primary channel

enum wifi_scan_type_t

Values:

WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE = 0
active scan

WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_PASSIVE
passive scan

enum wifi_cipher_type_t

Values:

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_NONE = 0
the cipher type is none

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_WEP40
the cipher type is WEP40

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_WEP104
the cipher type is WEP104

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP
the cipher type is TKIP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_CCMP
the cipher type is CCMP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP_CCMP
the cipher type is TKIP and CCMP

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES_CMAC128
the cipher type is AES-CMAC-128

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_SMS4
the cipher type is SMS4

WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_UNKNOWN
the cipher type is unknown

enum wifi_ant_t

WiFi antenna.

Values:

WIFI_ANT_ANT0
WiFi antenna 0

WIFI_ANT_ANT1
WiFi antenna 1

WIFI_ANT_MAX
Invalid WiFi antenna

enum wifi_scan_method_t
Values:

WIFI_FAST_SCAN = 0
Do fast scan, scan will end after find SSID match AP

WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN
All channel scan, scan will end after scan all the channel

enum wifi_sort_method_t
Values:

WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SIGNAL = 0
Sort match AP in scan list by RSSI

WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SECURITY
Sort match AP in scan list by security mode

enum wifi_ps_type_t
Values:

WIFI_PS_NONE
No power save

WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM
Minimum modem power saving. In this mode, station wakes up to receive beacon every DTIM period

WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM
Maximum modem power saving. In this mode, interval to receive beacons is determined by the listen_interval parameter in *wifi_sta_config_t*

enum wifi_bandwidth_t
Values:

WIFI_BW_HT20 = 1

WIFI_BW_HT40

enum wifi_storage_t
Values:

WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH
all configuration will store in both memory and flash

WIFI_STORAGE_RAM
all configuration will only store in the memory

enum wifi_vendor_ie_type_t
Vendor Information Element type.

Determines the frame type that the IE will be associated with.

Values:

WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_BEACON

WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_REQ

WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_RESP

WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_REQ

WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_RESP

enum wifi_vendor_ie_id_t
Vendor Information Element index.

Each IE type can have up to two associated vendor ID elements.

Values:

WIFI_VND_IE_ID_0

WIFI_VND_IE_ID_1

enum wifi_promiscuous_pkt_type_t

Promiscuous frame type.

Passed to promiscuous mode RX callback to indicate the type of parameter in the buffer.

Values:

WIFI_PKT_MGMT
Management frame, indicates ‘buf’ argument is *wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t*

WIFI_PKT_CTRL
Control frame, indicates ‘buf’ argument is *wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t*

WIFI_PKT_DATA
Data frame, indiciates ‘buf’ argument is *wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t*

WIFI_PKT_MISC
Other type, such as MIMO etc. ‘buf’ argument is *wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t* but the payload is zero length.

enum wifi_ant_mode_t

WiFi antenna mode.

Values:

WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0
Enable WiFi antenna 0 only

WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1
Enable WiFi antenna 1 only

WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO
Enable WiFi antenna 0 and 1, automatically select an antenna

WIFI_ANT_MODE_MAX
Invalid WiFi enabled antenna

enum wifi_phy_rate_t

WiFi PHY rate encodings.

Values:

WIFI_PHY_RATE_1M_L = 0x00
1 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_L = 0x01
2 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_L = 0x02
5.5 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_L = 0x03
11 Mbps with long preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_S = 0x05
2 Mbps with short preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_S = 0x06
5.5 Mbps with short preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_S = 0x07
11 Mbps with short preamble

WIFI_PHY_RATE_48M = 0x08
48 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_24M = 0x09
24 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_12M = 0x0A
12 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_6M = 0x0B
6 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_54M = 0x0C
54 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_36M = 0x0D
36 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_18M = 0x0E
18 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_9M = 0x0F
9 Mbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_LGI = 0x10
MCS0 with long GI, 6.5 Mbps for 20MHz, 13.5 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_LGI = 0x11
MCS1 with long GI, 13 Mbps for 20MHz, 27 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_LGI = 0x12
MCS2 with long GI, 19.5 Mbps for 20MHz, 40.5 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_LGI = 0x13
MCS3 with long GI, 26 Mbps for 20MHz, 54 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_LGI = 0x14
MCS4 with long GI, 39 Mbps for 20MHz, 81 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_LGI = 0x15
MCS5 with long GI, 52 Mbps for 20MHz, 108 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_LGI = 0x16
MCS6 with long GI, 58.5 Mbps for 20MHz, 121.5 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_LGI = 0x17
MCS7 with long GI, 65 Mbps for 20MHz, 135 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_SGI = 0x18
MCS0 with short GI, 7.2 Mbps for 20MHz, 15 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_SGI = 0x19
MCS1 with short GI, 14.4 Mbps for 20MHz, 30 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_SGI = 0x1A
MCS2 with short GI, 21.7 Mbps for 20MHz, 45 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_SGI = 0x1B
MCS3 with short GI, 28.9 Mbps for 20MHz, 60 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_SGI = 0x1C
MCS4 with short GI, 43.3 Mbps for 20MHz, 90 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_SGI = 0x1D
MCS5 with short GI, 57.8 Mbps for 20MHz, 120 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_SGI = 0x1E
MCS6 with short GI, 65 Mbps for 20MHz, 135 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_SGI = 0x1F
MCS7 with short GI, 72.2 Mbps for 20MHz, 150 Mbps for 40MHz

WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_250K = 0x29
250 Kbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_500K = 0x2A
500 Kbps

WIFI_PHY_RATE_MAX

enum wifi_event_t
WiFi event declarations

Values:

WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY = 0
ESP32 WiFi ready

WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
ESP32 finish scanning AP

WIFI_EVENT_STA_START
ESP32 station start

WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP
ESP32 station stop

WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED
ESP32 station connected to AP

WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED
ESP32 station disconnected from AP

WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE
the auth mode of AP connected by ESP32 station changed

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS
ESP32 station wps succeeds in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED
ESP32 station wps fails in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station wps timeout in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN
ESP32 station wps pin code in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PBC_OVERLAP
ESP32 station wps overlap in enrollee mode

WIFI_EVENT_AP_START
ESP32 soft-AP start

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP
ESP32 soft-AP stop

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED
a station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED
a station disconnected from ESP32 soft-AP

WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED
Receive probe request packet in soft-AP interface

WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT
Receive report of FTM procedure

WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW
AP’ s RSSI crossed configured threshold

WIFI_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS
Status indication of Action Tx operation

WIFI_EVENT_ROC_DONE
Remain-on-Channel operation complete

WIFI_EVENT_STA_BEACON_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station beacon timeout

WIFI_EVENT_MAX
Invalid WiFi event ID

enum wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t
Argument structure for WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED event

Values:

WPS_FAIL_REASON_NORMAL = 0
ESP32 WPS normal fail reason

WPS_FAIL_REASON_RECV_M2D
ESP32 WPS receive M2D frame

WPS_FAIL_REASON_MAX

enum wifi_ftm_status_t
FTM operation status types.

Values:

FTM_STATUS_SUCCESS = 0
FTM exchange is successful

FTM_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED
Peer does not support FTM

FTM_STATUS_CONF_REJECTED
Peer rejected FTM configuration in FTM Request

FTM_STATUS_NO_RESPONSE
Peer did not respond to FTM Requests

FTM_STATUS_FAIL
Unknown error during FTM exchange

SmartConfig

The SmartConfig™ is a provisioning technology developed by TI to connect a new Wi-Fi device to a Wi-Fi network. It uses a mobile app to broadcast the network credentials from a smartphone, or a tablet, to an un-provisioned Wi-Fi device.

The advantage of this technology is that the device does not need to directly know SSID or password of an Access Point (AP). This information is provided using the smartphone. This is particularly important to headless device and systems, due to their lack of a user interface.

If you are looking for other options to provision your ESP32-S2 devices, check *Provisioning API*.

Application Example Connect ESP32-S2 to target AP using SmartConfig: wifi/smart_config.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_wifi/include/esp_smartconfig.h

Functions

const char ***esp_smartconfig_get_version**(void)

Get the version of SmartConfig.

Return

- SmartConfig version const char.

esp_err_t **esp_smartconfig_start**(**const** *smartconfig_start_config_t* **config*)

Start SmartConfig, config ESP device to connect AP. You need to broadcast information by phone APP. Device sniffer special packets from the air that containing SSID and password of target AP.

Attention 1. This API can be called in station or softAP-station mode.
Attention 2. Can not call esp_smartconfig_start twice before it finish, please call esp_smartconfig_stop first.
Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

Parameters

- `config`: pointer to smartconfig start configure structure

esp_err_t **esp_smartconfig_stop**(void)

Stop SmartConfig, free the buffer taken by esp_smartconfig_start.

Attention Whether connect to AP succeed or not, this API should be called to free memory taken by smartconfig_start.
Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

esp_err_t **esp_esptouch_set_timeout**(uint8_t *time_s*)

Set timeout of SmartConfig process.

Attention Timing starts from SC_STATUS_FIND_CHANNEL status. SmartConfig will restart if timeout.
Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

Parameters

- `time_s`: range 15s~255s, offset:45s.

esp_err_t **esp_smartconfig_set_type**(*smartconfig_type_t type*)

Set protocol type of SmartConfig.

Attention If users need to set the SmartConfig type, please set it before calling esp_smartconfig_start.
Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

Parameters

- `type`: Choose from the smartconfig_type_t.

esp_err_t **esp_smartconfig_fast_mode**(bool *enable*)

Set mode of SmartConfig. default normal mode.

Attention 1. Please call it before API esp_smartconfig_start.
Attention 2. Fast mode have corresponding APP(phone).
Attention 3. Two mode is compatible.
Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

Parameters

- `enable`: false-disable(default); true-enable;

esp_err_t **esp_smartconfig_get_rvd_data**(uint8_t **rvd_data*, uint8_t *len*)

Get reserved data of ESPTouch v2.

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed

- others: fail

Parameters

- `rvd_data`: reserved data
- `len`: length of reserved data

Structures

struct smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t

Argument structure for SC_EVENT_GOT_SSID_PSWD event

Public Members

uint8_t **ssid**[32]
: SSID of the AP. Null terminated string.

uint8_t **password**[64]
: Password of the AP. Null terminated string.

bool **bssid_set**
: whether set MAC address of target AP or not.

uint8_t **bssid**[6]
: MAC address of target AP.

smartconfig_type_t **type**
: Type of smartconfig(ESPTouch or AirKiss).

uint8_t **token**
: Token from cellphone which is used to send ACK to cellphone.

uint8_t **cellphone_ip**[4]
: IP address of cellphone.

struct smartconfig_start_config_t

Configure structure for esp_smartconfig_start

Public Members

bool **enable_log**
: Enable smartconfig logs.

bool **esp_touch_v2_enable_crypt**
: Enable ESPTouch v2 crypt.

char ***esp_touch_v2_key**
: ESPTouch v2 crypt key, len should be 16.

Macros

SMARTCONFIG_START_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

Enumerations

enum smartconfig_type_t

Values:

SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH = 0
: protocol: ESPTouch

SC_TYPE_AIRKISS
: protocol: AirKiss

SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH_AIRKISS
: protocol: ESPTouch and AirKiss

SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH_V2
protocol: ESPTouch v2

enum smartconfig_event_t
Smartconfig event declarations

Values:

SC_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
ESP32 station smartconfig has finished to scan for APs

SC_EVENT_FOUND_CHANNEL
ESP32 station smartconfig has found the channel of the target AP

SC_EVENT_GOT_SSID_PSWD
ESP32 station smartconfig got the SSID and password

SC_EVENT_SEND_ACK_DONE
ESP32 station smartconfig has sent ACK to cellphone

ESP-NOW

Overview ESP-NOW is a kind of connectionless Wi-Fi communication protocol that is defined by Espressif. In ESP-NOW, application data is encapsulated in a vendor-specific action frame and then transmitted from one Wi-Fi device to another without connection. CTR with CBC-MAC Protocol(CCMP) is used to protect the action frame for security. ESP-NOW is widely used in smart light, remote controlling, sensor, etc.

Frame Format ESP-NOW uses a vendor-specific action frame to transmit ESP-NOW data. The default ESP-NOW bit rate is 1 Mbps. The format of the vendor-specific action frame is as follows:

```
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------------------
| MAC Header | Category Code | Organization Identifier | Random Values | Vendor␣
↪Specific Content |   FCS   |
------------------------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------------------
  24 bytes         1 byte              3 bytes               4 bytes             7~
↪255 bytes        4 bytes
```

- Category Code: The Category Code field is set to the value(127) indicating the vendor-specific category.
- Organization Identifier: The Organization Identifier contains a unique identifier (0x18fe34), which is the first three bytes of MAC address applied by Espressif.
- Random Value: The Random Value filed is used to prevents relay attacks.
- Vendor Specific Content: The Vendor Specific Content contains vendor-specific fields as follows:

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
| Element ID | Length | Organization Identifier | Type | Version |    Body    |
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    1 byte     1 byte            3 bytes         1 byte   1 byte   0~250 bytes
```

- Element ID: The Element ID field is set to the value (221), indicating the vendor-specific element.
- Length: The length is the total length of Organization Identifier, Type, Version and Body.
- Organization Identifier: The Organization Identifier contains a unique identifier(0x18fe34), which is the first three bytes of MAC address applied by Espressif.
- Type: The Type field is set to the value (4) indicating ESP-NOW.
- Version: The Version field is set to the version of ESP-NOW.
- Body: The Body contains the ESP-NOW data.

As ESP-NOW is connectionless, the MAC header is a little different from that of standard frames. The FromDS and ToDS bits of FrameControl field are both 0. The first address field is set to the destination address. The second address field is set to the source address. The third address field is set to broadcast address (0xff:0xff:0xff:0xff:0xff:0xff).

Security

ESP-NOW uses the CCMP method, which is described in IEEE Std. 802.11-2012, to protect the vendor-specific action frame

- PMK is used to encrypt LMK with the AES-128 algorithm. Call `esp_now_set_pmk()` to set PMK. If PMK is not set, a default PMK will be used.
- LMK of the paired device is used to encrypt the vendor-specific action frame with the CCMP method. The maximum number of different LMKs is six. If the LMK of the paired device is not set, the vendor-specific action frame will not be encrypted.

Encrypting multicast vendor-specific action frame is not supported.

Initialization and De-initialization Call `esp_now_init()` to initialize ESP-NOW and `esp_now_deinit()` to de-initialize ESP-NOW. ESP-NOW data must be transmitted after Wi-Fi is started, so it is recommended to start Wi-Fi before initializing ESP-NOW and stop Wi-Fi after de-initializing ESP-NOW. When `esp_now_deinit()` is called, all of the information of paired devices will be deleted.

Add Paired Device Call `esp_now_add_peer()` to add the device to the paired device list before you send data to this device. The maximum number of paired devices is twenty. If security is enabled, the LMK must be set. You can send ESP-NOW data via both the Station and the SoftAP interface. Make sure that the interface is enabled before sending ESP-NOW data. A device with a broadcast MAC address must be added before sending broadcast data. The range of the channel of paired devices is from 0 to 14. If the channel is set to 0, data will be sent on the current channel. Otherwise, the channel must be set as the channel that the local device is on.

Send ESP-NOW Data Call `esp_now_send()` to send ESP-NOW data and `esp_now_register_send_cb` to register sending callback function. It will return *ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS* in sending callback function if the data is received successfully on the MAC layer. Otherwise, it will return *ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL*. Several reasons can lead to ESP-NOW fails to send data. For example, the destination device doesn't exist; the channels of the devices are not the same; the action frame is lost when transmitting on the air, etc. It is not guaranteed that application layer can receive the data. If necessary, send back ack data when receiving ESP-NOW data. If receiving ack data timeouts, retransmit the ESP-NOW data. A sequence number can also be assigned to ESP-NOW data to drop the duplicate data.

If there is a lot of ESP-NOW data to send, call `esp_now_send()` to send less than or equal to 250 bytes of data once a time. Note that too short interval between sending two ESP-NOW data may lead to disorder of sending callback function. So, it is recommended that sending the next ESP-NOW data after the sending callback function of the previous sending has returned. The sending callback function runs from a high-priority Wi-Fi task. So, do not do lengthy operations in the callback function. Instead, post the necessary data to a queue and handle it from a lower priority task.

Receiving ESP-NOW Data Call `esp_now_register_recv_cb` to register receiving callback function. Call the receiving callback function when receiving ESP-NOW. The receiving callback function also runs from the Wi-Fi task. So, do not do lengthy operations in the callback function. Instead, post the necessary data to a queue and handle it from a lower priority task.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_wifi/include/esp_now.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_now_init**(void)

Initialize ESPNOW function.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL : Internal error

esp_err_t **esp_now_deinit** (void)

De-initialize ESPNOW function.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed

esp_err_t **esp_now_get_version** (uint32_t **version*)

Get the version of ESPNOW.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument

Parameters

- `version`: ESPNOW version

esp_err_t **esp_now_register_recv_cb** (*esp_now_recv_cb_t cb*)

Register callback function of receiving ESPNOW data.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL : internal error

Parameters

- `cb`: callback function of receiving ESPNOW data

esp_err_t **esp_now_unregister_recv_cb** (void)

Unregister callback function of receiving ESPNOW data.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized

esp_err_t **esp_now_register_send_cb** (*esp_now_send_cb_t cb*)

Register callback function of sending ESPNOW data.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL : internal error

Parameters

- `cb`: callback function of sending ESPNOW data

esp_err_t **esp_now_unregister_send_cb** (void)

Unregister callback function of sending ESPNOW data.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized

esp_err_t **esp_now_send** (**const** uint8_t **peer_addr*, **const** uint8_t **data*, size_t *len*)

Send ESPNOW data.

Attention 1. If peer_addr is not NULL, send data to the peer whose MAC address matches peer_addr
Attention 2. If peer_addr is NULL, send data to all of the peers that are added to the peer list
Attention 3. The maximum length of data must be less than ESP_NOW_MAX_DATA_LEN
Attention 4. The buffer pointed to by data argument does not need to be valid after esp_now_send returns

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL : internal error
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM : out of memory
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND : peer is not found

- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF : current WiFi interface doesn't match that of peer

Parameters

- `peer_addr`: peer MAC address
- `data`: data to send
- `len`: length of data

esp_err_t **esp_now_add_peer**(**const** *esp_now_peer_info_t* **peer*)

Add a peer to peer list.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL : peer list is full
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM : out of memory
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST : peer has existed

Parameters

- `peer`: peer information

esp_err_t **esp_now_del_peer**(**const** uint8_t **peer_addr*)

Delete a peer from peer list.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND : peer is not found

Parameters

- `peer_addr`: peer MAC address

esp_err_t **esp_now_mod_peer**(**const** *esp_now_peer_info_t* **peer*)

Modify a peer.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL : peer list is full

Parameters

- `peer`: peer information

esp_err_t **esp_now_get_peer**(**const** uint8_t **peer_addr*, *esp_now_peer_info_t* **peer*)

Get a peer whose MAC address matches peer_addr from peer list.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND : peer is not found

Parameters

- `peer_addr`: peer MAC address
- `peer`: peer information

esp_err_t **esp_now_fetch_peer**(bool *from_head*, *esp_now_peer_info_t* **peer*)

Fetch a peer from peer list. Only return the peer which address is unicast, for the multicast/broadcast address, the function will ignore and try to find the next in the peer list.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND : peer is not found

Parameters

- `from_head`: fetch from head of list or not
- `peer`: peer information

bool **esp_now_is_peer_exist**(**const** uint8_t *_peer_addr_)

Peer exists or not.

Return

- true : peer exists
- false : peer not exists

Parameters

- `peer_addr`: peer MAC address

esp_err_t **esp_now_get_peer_num**(*esp_now_peer_num_t* *_num_)

Get the number of peers.

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument

Parameters

- `num`: number of peers

esp_err_t **esp_now_set_pmk**(**const** uint8_t *_pmk_)

Set the primary master key.

Attention 1. primary master key is used to encrypt local master key

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG : invalid argument

Parameters

- `pmk`: primary master key

esp_err_t **esp_now_set_wake_window**(uint16_t *window*)

Set esp_now wake window for sta_disconnected power management.

Attention 1. Only when ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE is enabled, this configuration could work

Attention 2. This configuration only work for station mode and disconnected status

Attention 3. If more than one module has configured its wake_window, chip would choose the largest one to stay waked

Attention 4. If the gap between interval and window is smaller than 5ms, the chip would keep waked all the time

Attention 5. If never configured wake_window, the chip would keep waked at disconnected once it uses esp_now

Return

- ESP_OK : succeed
- ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT : ESPNOW is not initialized

Parameters

- `window`: how much microsecond would the chip keep waked each interval, vary from 0 to 65535

Structures

struct esp_now_peer_info

ESPNOW peer information parameters.

Public Members

uint8_t **peer_addr**[**ESP_NOW_ETH_ALEN**]

ESPNOW peer MAC address that is also the MAC address of station or softap

uint8_t **lmk**[**ESP_NOW_KEY_LEN**]
ESPNOW peer local master key that is used to encrypt data

uint8_t **channel**
Wi-Fi channel that peer uses to send/receive ESPNOW data. If the value is 0, use the current channel which station or softap is on. Otherwise, it must be set as the channel that station or softap is on.

wifi_interface_t **ifidx**
Wi-Fi interface that peer uses to send/receive ESPNOW data

bool **encrypt**
ESPNOW data that this peer sends/receives is encrypted or not

void ***priv**
ESPNOW peer private data

struct esp_now_peer_num
Number of ESPNOW peers which exist currently.

Public Members

int **total_num**
Total number of ESPNOW peers, maximum value is ESP_NOW_MAX_TOTAL_PEER_NUM

int **encrypt_num**
Number of encrypted ESPNOW peers, maximum value is ESP_NOW_MAX_ENCRYPT_PEER_NUM

Macros

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_BASE
ESPNOW error number base.

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT
ESPNOW is not initialized.

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG
Invalid argument

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM
Out of memory

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL
ESPNOW peer list is full

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND
ESPNOW peer is not found

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL
Internal error

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST
ESPNOW peer has existed

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF
Interface error

ESP_NOW_ETH_ALEN
Length of ESPNOW peer MAC address

ESP_NOW_KEY_LEN
Length of ESPNOW peer local master key

ESP_NOW_MAX_TOTAL_PEER_NUM
Maximum number of ESPNOW total peers

ESP_NOW_MAX_ENCRYPT_PEER_NUM
Maximum number of ESPNOW encrypted peers

ESP_NOW_MAX_DATA_LEN
Maximum length of ESPNOW data which is sent very time

Type Definitions

typedef struct *esp_now_peer_info* **esp_now_peer_info_t**
ESPNOW peer information parameters.

typedef struct *esp_now_peer_num* **esp_now_peer_num_t**
Number of ESPNOW peers which exist currently.

typedef void (***esp_now_recv_cb_t**)(**const** uint8_t *mac_addr, **const** uint8_t *data, int data_len)
Callback function of receiving ESPNOW data.

Parameters
- `mac_addr`: peer MAC address
- `data`: received data
- `data_len`: length of received data

typedef void (***esp_now_send_cb_t**)(**const** uint8_t *mac_addr, *esp_now_send_status_t* status)
Callback function of sending ESPNOW data.

Parameters
- `mac_addr`: peer MAC address
- `status`: status of sending ESPNOW data (succeed or fail)

Enumerations

enum esp_now_send_status_t
Status of sending ESPNOW data .

Values:

ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS = 0
Send ESPNOW data successfully

ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL
Send ESPNOW data fail

ESP-MESH Programming Guide

This is a programming guide for ESP-MESH, including the API reference and coding examples. This guide is split into the following parts:

1. *ESP-MESH Programming Model*
2. *Writing an ESP-MESH Application*
3. *Self Organized Networking*
4. *Application Examples*
5. *API Reference*

For documentation regarding the ESP-MESH protocol, please see the *ESP-MESH API Guide*. For more information about ESP-MESH Development Framework, please see ESP-MESH Development Framework.

ESP-MESH Programming Model

Software Stack The ESP-MESH software stack is built atop the Wi-Fi Driver/FreeRTOS and may use the LwIP Stack in some instances (i.e. the root node). The following diagram illustrates the ESP-MESH software stack.

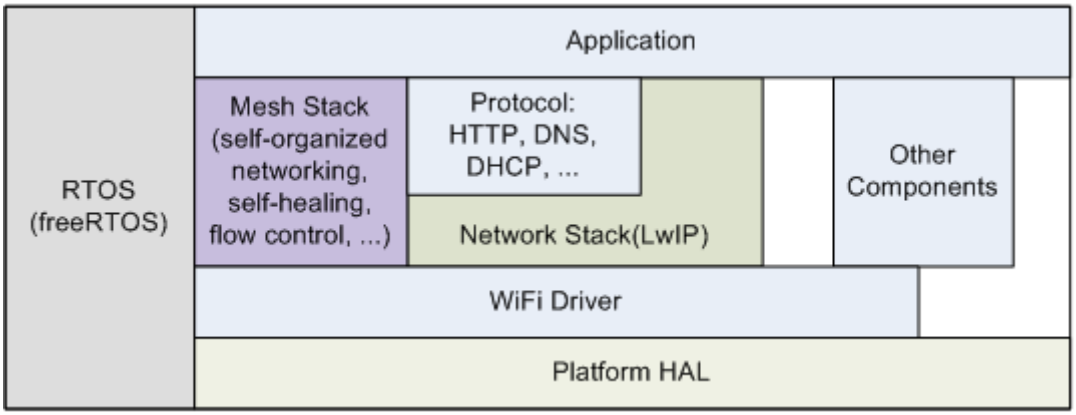


Fig. 1: ESP-MESH Software Stack

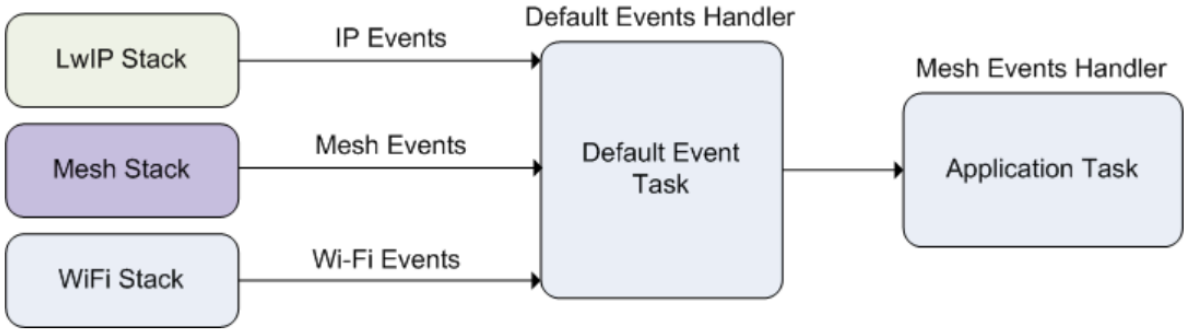


Fig. 2: ESP-MESH System Events Delivery

System Events An application interfaces with ESP-MESH via **ESP-MESH Events**. Since ESP-MESH is built atop the Wi-Fi stack, it is also possible for the application to interface with the Wi-Fi driver via the **Wi-Fi Event Task**. The following diagram illustrates the interfaces for the various System Events in an ESP-MESH application.

The *mesh_event_id_t* defines all possible ESP-MESH events and can indicate events such as the connection/disconnection of parent/child. Before ESP-MESH events can be used, the application must register a **Mesh Events handler** via *esp_event_handler_register()* to the default event task. The Mesh Events handler that is registered contain handlers for each ESP-MESH event relevant to the application.

Typical use cases of mesh events include using events such as *MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED* and *MESH_EVENT_CHILD_CONNECTED* to indicate when a node can begin transmitting data upstream and downstream respectively. Likewise, IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP and IP_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP can be used to indicate when the root node can and cannot transmit data to the external IP network.

Warning: When using ESP-MESH under self-organized mode, users must ensure that no calls to Wi-Fi API are made. This is due to the fact that the self-organizing mode will internally make Wi-Fi API calls to connect/disconnect/scan etc. **Any Wi-Fi calls from the application (including calls from callbacks and handlers of Wi-Fi events) may interfere with ESP-MESH' s self-organizing behavior**. Therefore, user' s should not call Wi-Fi APIs after *esp_mesh_start()* is called, and before *esp_mesh_stop()* is called.

LwIP & ESP-MESH The application can access the ESP-MESH stack directly without having to go through the LwIP stack. The LwIP stack is only required by the root node to transmit/receive data to/from an external IP network. However, since every node can potentially become the root node (due to automatic root node selection), each node must still initialize the LwIP stack.

Each node is required to initialize LwIP by calling tcpip_adapter_init(). In order to prevent non-root node access to LwIP, the application should stop the following services after LwIP initialization:

- DHCP server service on the softAP interface.
- DHCP client service on the station interface.

The following code snippet demonstrates how to initialize LwIP for ESP-MESH applications.

```
/*  tcpip initialization */
tcpip_adapter_init();
/*
 * for mesh
 * stop DHCP server on softAP interface by default
 * stop DHCP client on station interface by default
 */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(tcpip_adapter_dhcps_stop(TCPIP_ADAPTER_IF_AP));
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(tcpip_adapter_dhcpc_stop(TCPIP_ADAPTER_IF_STA));
```

Note: ESP-MESH requires a root node to be connected with a router. Therefore, in the event that a node becomes the root, **the corresponding handler must start the DHCP client service and immediately obtain an IP address**. Doing so will allow other nodes to begin transmitting/receiving packets to/from the external IP network. However, this step is unnecessary if static IP settings are used.

Writing an ESP-MESH Application The prerequisites for starting ESP-MESH is to initialize LwIP and Wi-Fi, The following code snippet demonstrates the necessary prerequisite steps before ESP-MESH itself can be initialized.

```
tcpip_adapter_init();
/*
 * for mesh
 * stop DHCP server on softAP interface by default
 * stop DHCP client on station interface by default
 */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(tcpip_adapter_dhcps_stop(TCPIP_ADAPTER_IF_AP));
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(tcpip_adapter_dhcpc_stop(TCPIP_ADAPTER_IF_STA));

/*  event initialization */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_event_loop_create_default());

/*  Wi-Fi initialization */
wifi_init_config_t config = WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT();
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_wifi_init(&config));
/*  register IP events handler */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_event_handler_register(IP_EVENT, IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP, &ip_
↪event_handler, NULL));
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_wifi_set_storage(WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH));
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_wifi_start());
```

After initializing LwIP and Wi-Fi, the process of getting an ESP-MESH network up and running can be summarized into the following three steps:

1. *Initialize Mesh*
2. *Configuring an ESP-MESH Network*
3. *Start Mesh*

Initialize Mesh The following code snippet demonstrates how to initialize ESP-MESH

```
/*  mesh initialization */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_mesh_init());
/*  register mesh events handler */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_event_handler_register(MESH_EVENT, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, &mesh_
↪event_handler, NULL));
```

Configuring an ESP-MESH Network ESP-MESH is configured via *esp_mesh_set_config()* which receives its arguments using the *mesh_cfg_t* structure. The structure contains the following parameters used to configure ESP-MESH:

Parameter	Description
Channel	Range from 1 to 14
Mesh ID	ID of ESP-MESH Network, see *mesh_addr_t*
Router	Router Configuration, see *mesh_router_t*
Mesh AP	Mesh AP Configuration, see *mesh_ap_cfg_t*
Crypto Functions	Crypto Functions for Mesh IE, see `mesh_crypto_funcs_t`

The following code snippet demonstrates how to configure ESP-MESH.

```
/* Enable the Mesh IE encryption by default */
mesh_cfg_t cfg = MESH_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT();
/* mesh ID */
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.mesh_id, MESH_ID, 6);
/* channel (must match the router's channel) */
cfg.channel = CONFIG_MESH_CHANNEL;
/* router */
cfg.router.ssid_len = strlen(CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_SSID);
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.router.ssid, CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_SSID, cfg.router.ssid_len);
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.router.password, CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_PASSWD,
       strlen(CONFIG_MESH_ROUTER_PASSWD));
/* mesh softAP */
cfg.mesh_ap.max_connection = CONFIG_MESH_AP_CONNECTIONS;
memcpy((uint8_t *) &cfg.mesh_ap.password, CONFIG_MESH_AP_PASSWD,
       strlen(CONFIG_MESH_AP_PASSWD));
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_mesh_set_config(&cfg));
```

Start Mesh The following code snippet demonstrates how to start ESP-MESH.

```
/* mesh start */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_mesh_start());
```

After starting ESP-MESH, the application should check for ESP-MESH events to determine when it has connected to the network. After connecting, the application can start transmitting and receiving packets over the ESP-MESH network using *esp_mesh_send()* and *esp_mesh_recv()*.

Self Organized Networking Self organized networking is a feature of ESP-MESH where nodes can autonomously scan/select/connect/reconnect to other nodes and routers. This feature allows an ESP-MESH network to operate with high degree of autonomy by making the network robust to dynamic network topologies and conditions. With self organized networking enabled, nodes in an ESP-MESH network are able to carry out the following actions without autonomously:

- Selection or election of the root node (see **Automatic Root Node Selection** in *Building a Network*)
- Selection of a preferred parent node (see **Parent Node Selection** in *Building a Network*)
- Automatic reconnection upon detecting a disconnection (see **Intermediate Parent Node Failure** in *Managing a Network*)

When self organized networking is enabled, the ESP-MESH stack will internally make calls to Wi-Fi APIs. Therefore, **the application layer should not make any calls to Wi-Fi APIs whilst self organized networking is enabled as doing so would risk interfering with ESP-MESH**.

Toggling Self Organized Networking Self organized networking can be enabled or disabled by the application at runtime by calling the *esp_mesh_set_self_organized()* function. The function has the two following parameters:

- `bool enable` specifies whether to enable or disable self organized networking.
- `bool select_parent` specifies whether a new parent node should be selected when enabling self organized networking. Selecting a new parent has different effects depending the node type and the node's current state. This parameter is unused when disabling self organized networking.

Disabling Self Organized Networking The following code snippet demonstrates how to disable self organized networking.

```
//Disable self organized networking
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(false, false);
```

ESP-MESH will attempt to maintain the node's current Wi-Fi state when disabling self organized networking.

- If the node was previously connected to other nodes, it will remain connected.
- If the node was previously disconnected and was scanning for a parent node or router, it will stop scanning.
- If the node was previously attempting to reconnect to a parent node or router, it will stop reconnecting.

Enabling Self Organized Networking ESP-MESH will attempt to maintain the node's current Wi-Fi state when enabling self organized networking. However, depending on the node type and whether a new parent is selected, the Wi-Fi state of the node can change. The following table shows effects of enabling self organized networking.

Select Parent	Is Root Node	Effects
N	N	• Nodes already connected to a parent node will remain connected. • Nodes previously scanning for a parent nodes will stop scanning. Call *esp_mesh_connect()* to restart.
	Y	• A root node already connected to router will stay connected. • A root node disconnected from router will need to call *esp_mesh_connect()* to reconnect.
Y	N	• Nodes without a parent node will automatically select a preferred parent and connect. • Nodes already connected to a parent node will disconnect, reselect a preferred parent node, and connect.
	Y	• For a root node to connect to a parent node, it must give up it's role as root. Therefore, a root node will disconnect from the router and all child nodes, select a preferred parent node, and connect.

The following code snipping demonstrates how to enable self organized networking.

```
//Enable self organized networking and select a new parent
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(true, true);

...

//Enable self organized networking and manually reconnect
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(true, false);
esp_mesh_connect();
```

Calling Wi-Fi API There can be instances in which an application may want to directly call Wi-Fi API whilst using ESP-MESH. For example, an application may want to manually scan for neighboring APs. However, **self organized networking must be disabled before the application calls any Wi-Fi APIs**. This will prevent the ESP-MESH stack from attempting to call any Wi-Fi APIs and potentially interfering with the application's calls.

Therefore, application calls to Wi-Fi APIs should be placed in between calls of *esp_mesh_set_self_organized()* which disable and enable self organized networking. The following code snippet demonstrates how an application can safely call *esp_wifi_scan_start()* whilst using ESP-MESH.

```
//Disable self organized networking
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(0, 0);

//Stop any scans already in progress
esp_wifi_scan_stop();
//Manually start scan. Will automatically stop when run to completion
esp_wifi_scan_start();

//Process scan results

...

//Re-enable self organized networking if still connected
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(1, 0);

...

//Re-enable self organized networking if non-root and disconnected
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(1, 1);

...

//Re-enable self organized networking if root and disconnected
esp_mesh_set_self_organized(1, 0);  //Don't select new parent
esp_mesh_connect();                 //Manually reconnect to router
```

Application Examples ESP-IDF contains these ESP-MESH example projects:

The Internal Communication Example demonstrates how to set up a ESP-MESH network and have the root node send a data packet to every node within the network.

The Manual Networking Example demonstrates how to use ESP-MESH without the self-organizing features. This example shows how to program a node to manually scan for a list of potential parent nodes and select a parent node based on custom criteria.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_wifi/include/esp_mesh.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_init**(void)

Mesh initialization.

- Check whether Wi-Fi is started.
- Initialize mesh global variables with default values.

Attention This API shall be called after Wi-Fi is started.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_deinit**(void)

Mesh de-initialization.

- Release resources and stop the mesh

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_start**(void)

Start mesh.

- Initialize mesh IE.
- Start mesh network management service.
- Create TX and RX queues according to the configuration.
- Register mesh packets receive callback.

Attention This API shall be called after mesh initialization and configuration.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_stop**(void)

Stop mesh.

- Deinitialize mesh IE.
- Disconnect with current parent.
- Disassociate all currently associated children.
- Stop mesh network management service.
- Unregister mesh packets receive callback.
- Delete TX and RX queues.
- Release resources.
- Restore Wi-Fi softAP to default settings if Wi-Fi dual mode is enabled.
- Set Wi-Fi Power Save type to WIFI_PS_NONE.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_send**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *to, **const** *mesh_data_t* *data, int *flag*, **const** *mesh_opt_t opt*[], int *opt_count*)

Send a packet over the mesh network.

- Send a packet to any device in the mesh network.
- Send a packet to external IP network.

Attention This API is not reentrant.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED
- ESP_ERR_MESH_OPT_UNKNOWN
- ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY
- ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD

Parameters

- `[in] to`: the address of the final destination of the packet
  - If the packet is to the root, set this parameter to NULL.
  - If the packet is to an external IP network, set this parameter to the IPv4:PORT combination. This packet will be delivered to the root firstly, then the root will forward this packet to the final IP server address.
- `[in] data`: pointer to a sending mesh packet
  - Field size should not exceed MESH_MPS. Note that the size of one mesh packet should not exceed MESH_MTU.
  - Field proto should be set to data protocol in use (default is MESH_PROTO_BIN for binary).
  - Field tos should be set to transmission tos (type of service) in use (default is MESH_TOS_P2P for point-to-point reliable).
- `[in] flag`: bitmap for data sent
  - Speed up the route search
    * If the packet is to the root and "to" parameter is NULL, set this parameter to 0.
    * If the packet is to an internal device, MESH_DATA_P2P should be set.
    * If the packet is to the root ("to" parameter isn' t NULL) or to external IP network, MESH_DATA_TODS should be set.
    * If the packet is from the root to an internal device, MESH_DATA_FROMDS should be set.
  - Specify whether this API is block or non-block, block by default
    * If needs non-block, MESH_DATA_NONBLOCK should be set.
  - In the situation of the root change, MESH_DATA_DROP identifies this packet can be dropped by the new root for upstream data to external IP network, we try our best to avoid data loss caused by the root change, but there is a risk that the new root is running out of memory because most of memory is occupied by the pending data which isn' t read out in time by esp_mesh_recv_toDS(). Generally, we suggest esp_mesh_recv_toDS() is called after a connection with IP network is created. Thus data outgoing to external IP network via socket is just from reading esp_mesh_recv_toDS() which avoids unnecessary memory copy.
- `[in] opt`: options
  - In case of sending a packet to a certain group, MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP is a good choice. In this option, the value field should be set to the target receiver addresses in this group.
  - Root sends a packet to an internal device, this packet is from external IP network in case the receiver device responds this packet, MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR is required to attach the target DS address.
- `[in] opt_count`: option count
  - Currently, this API only takes one option, so opt_count is only supported to be 1.

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_recv**(*mesh_addr_t* **from*, *mesh_data_t* **data*, int *timeout_ms*, int **flag*, *mesh_opt_t* *opt*[], int *opt_count*)

Receive a packet targeted to self over the mesh network.

flag could be MESH_DATA_FROMDS or MESH_DATA_TODS.

Attention Mesh RX queue should be checked regularly to avoid running out of memory.

- Use esp_mesh_get_rx_pending() to check the number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD

Parameters

- `[out] from`: the address of the original source of the packet
- `[out] data`: pointer to the received mesh packet
  - Field proto is the data protocol in use. Should follow it to parse the received data.
  - Field tos is the transmission tos (type of service) in use.
- `[in] timeout_ms`: wait time if a packet isn't immediately available (0:no wait, port-MAX_DELAY:wait forever)
- `[out] flag`: bitmap for data received
  - MESH_DATA_FROMDS represents data from external IP network
  - MESH_DATA_TODS represents data directed upward within the mesh network

Parameters

- `[out] opt`: options desired to receive
  - MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR attaches the DS address
- `[in] opt_count`: option count desired to receive
  - Currently, this API only takes one option, so opt_count is only supported to be 1.

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_recv_toDS**(*mesh_addr_t* **from*, *mesh_addr_t* **to*, *mesh_data_t* **data*, int *timeout_ms*, int **flag*, *mesh_opt_t* *opt*[], int *opt_count*)

Receive a packet targeted to external IP network.

- Root uses this API to receive packets destined to external IP network
- Root forwards the received packets to the final destination via socket.
- If no socket connection is ready to send out the received packets and this esp_mesh_recv_toDS() hasn't been called by applications, packets from the whole mesh network will be pending in toDS queue.

Use esp_mesh_get_rx_pending() to check the number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications in case of running out of memory in the root.

Using esp_mesh_set_xon_qsize() users may configure the RX queue size, default:32. If this size is too large, and esp_mesh_recv_toDS() isn't called in time, there is a risk that a great deal of memory is occupied by the pending packets. If this size is too small, it will impact the efficiency on upstream. How to decide this value depends on the specific application scenarios.

flag could be MESH_DATA_TODS.

Attention This API is only called by the root.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD
- ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE

Parameters

- `[out] from`: the address of the original source of the packet
- `[out] to`: the address contains remote IP address and port (IPv4:PORT)
- `[out] data`: pointer to the received packet
  - Contain the protocol and applications should follow it to parse the data.
- `[in] timeout_ms`: wait time if a packet isn't immediately available (0:no wait, port-MAX_DELAY:wait forever)
- `[out] flag`: bitmap for data received
  - MESH_DATA_TODS represents the received data target to external IP network. Root shall forward this data to external IP network via the association with router.

Parameters

- `[out] opt`: options desired to receive
- `[in] opt_count`: option count desired to receive

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_config**(**const** *mesh_cfg_t* **config*)
Set mesh stack configuration.

- Use MESH_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT() to initialize the default values, mesh IE is encrypted by default.
- Mesh network is established on a fixed channel (1-14).
- Mesh event callback is mandatory.
- Mesh ID is an identifier of an MBSS. Nodes with the same mesh ID can communicate with each other.
- Regarding to the router configuration, if the router is hidden, BSSID field is mandatory.

If BSSID field isn't set and there exists more than one router with same SSID, there is a risk that more roots than one connected with different BSSID will appear. It means more than one mesh network is established with the same mesh ID.

Root conflict function could eliminate redundant roots connected with the same BSSID, but couldn't handle roots connected with different BSSID. Because users might have such requirements of setting up routers with same SSID for the future replacement. But in that case, if the above situations happen, please make sure applications implement forward functions on the root to guarantee devices in different mesh networks can communicate with each other. max_connection of mesh softAP is limited by the max number of Wi-Fi softAP supported (max:10).

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started after mesh is initialized.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
- `[in] config`: pointer to mesh stack configuration

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_config**(*mesh_cfg_t* **config*)
Get mesh stack configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[out] config`: pointer to mesh stack configuration

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_router**(**const** *mesh_router_t* **router*)
Get router configuration.

Attention This API is used to dynamically modify the router configuration after mesh is configured.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[in] router`: pointer to router configuration

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_router**(*mesh_router_t* **router*)
Get router configuration.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[out] router`: pointer to router configuration

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_id**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* **id*)
Set mesh network ID.

Attention This API is used to dynamically modify the mesh network ID.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT: invalid argument

Parameters
- `[in] id`: pointer to mesh network ID

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_id**(*mesh_addr_t* **id*)
Get mesh network ID.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[out] id`: pointer to mesh network ID

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_type**(*mesh_type_t type*)
Designate device type over the mesh network.

- MESH_IDLE: designates a device as a self-organized node for a mesh network
- MESH_ROOT: designates the root node for a mesh network
- MESH_LEAF: designates a device as a standalone Wi-Fi station that connects to a parent
- MESH_STA: designates a device as a standalone Wi-Fi station that connects to a router

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
- `[in] type`: device type

mesh_type_t **esp_mesh_get_type**(void)
Get device type over mesh network.

Attention This API shall be called after having received the event MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED.

Return mesh type

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_max_layer**(int *max_layer*)
Set network max layer value.

- for tree topology, the max is 25.
- for chain topology, the max is 1000.
- Network max layer limits the max hop count.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
- `[in] max_layer`: max layer value

int **esp_mesh_get_max_layer**(void)
Get max layer value.

Return max layer value

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_ap_password**(**const** uint8_t **pwd*, int *len*)
Set mesh softAP password.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
- `[in] pwd`: pointer to the password
- `[in] len`: password length

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_ap_authmode**(*wifi_auth_mode_t authmode*)
Set mesh softAP authentication mode.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
- `[in] authmode`: authentication mode

wifi_auth_mode_t **esp_mesh_get_ap_authmode**(void)
Get mesh softAP authentication mode.

Return authentication mode

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_ap_connections**(int *connections*)
Set mesh softAP max connection value.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[in] connections`: the number of max connections

int **esp_mesh_get_ap_connections**(void)
Get mesh softAP max connection configuration.

Return the number of max connections

int **esp_mesh_get_layer**(void)
Get current layer value over the mesh network.

Attention This API shall be called after having received the event MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED.
Return layer value

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_parent_bssid**(*mesh_addr_t *bssid*)
Get the parent BSSID.

Attention This API shall be called after having received the event MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[out] bssid`: pointer to parent BSSID

bool **esp_mesh_is_root**(void)
Return whether the device is the root node of the network.

Return true/false

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_self_organized**(bool *enable*, bool *select_parent*)
Enable/disable self-organized networking.

- Self-organized networking has three main functions: select the root node; find a preferred parent; initiate reconnection if a disconnection is detected.
- Self-organized networking is enabled by default.
- If self-organized is disabled, users should set a parent for the device via esp_mesh_set_parent().

Attention This API is used to dynamically modify whether to enable the self organizing.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] enable`: enable or disable self-organized networking
- `[in] select_parent`: Only valid when self-organized networking is enabled.
  - if select_parent is set to true, the root will give up its mesh root status and search for a new parent like other non-root devices.

bool **esp_mesh_get_self_organized**(void)

Return whether enable self-organized networking or not.

Return true/false

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_waive_root**(**const** *mesh_vote_t* *vote, int *reason*)

Cause the root device to give up (waive) its mesh root status.

- A device is elected root primarily based on RSSI from the external router.
- If external router conditions change, users can call this API to perform a root switch.
- In this API, users could specify a desired root address to replace itself or specify an attempts value to ask current root to initiate a new round of voting. During the voting, a better root candidate would be expected to find to replace the current one.
- If no desired root candidate, the vote will try a specified number of attempts (at least 15). If no better root candidate is found, keep the current one. If a better candidate is found, the new better one will send a root switch request to the current root, current root will respond with a root switch acknowledgment.
- After that, the new candidate will connect to the router to be a new root, the previous root will disconnect with the router and choose another parent instead.

Root switch is completed with minimal disruption to the whole mesh network.

Attention This API is only called by the root.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL
- ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] vote`: vote configuration
  - If this parameter is set NULL, the vote will perform the default 15 times.
  - Field percentage threshold is 0.9 by default.
  - Field is_rc_specified shall be false.
  - Field attempts shall be at least 15 times.
- `[in] reason`: only accept MESH_VOTE_REASON_ROOT_INITIATED for now

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_vote_percentage**(float *percentage*)

Set vote percentage threshold for approval of being a root (default:0.9)

- During the networking, only obtaining vote percentage reaches this threshold, the device could be a root.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] percentage`: vote percentage threshold

float **esp_mesh_get_vote_percentage**(void)

Get vote percentage threshold for approval of being a root.

Return percentage threshold

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_ap_assoc_expire**(int *seconds*)

Set mesh softAP associate expired time (default:10 seconds)

- If mesh softAP hasn't received any data from an associated child within this time, mesh softAP will take this child inactive and disassociate it.
- If mesh softAP is encrypted, this value should be set a greater value, such as 30 seconds.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[in] seconds`: the expired time

int **esp_mesh_get_ap_assoc_expire**(void)
Get mesh softAP associate expired time.

Return seconds

int **esp_mesh_get_total_node_num**(void)
Get total number of devices in current network (including the root)

Attention The returned value might be incorrect when the network is changing.
Return total number of devices (including the root)

int **esp_mesh_get_routing_table_size**(void)
Get the number of devices in this device's sub-network (including self)

Return the number of devices over this device's sub-network (including self)

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_routing_table**(*mesh_addr_t* *mac, int *len*, int *size*)
Get routing table of this device's sub-network (including itself)

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[out] mac`: pointer to routing table
- `[in] len`: routing table size(in bytes)
- `[out] size`: pointer to the number of devices in routing table (including itself)

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_post_toDS_state**(bool *reachable*)
Post the toDS state to the mesh stack.

Attention This API is only for the root.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[in] reachable`: this state represents whether the root is able to access external IP network

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_tx_pending**(*mesh_tx_pending_t* *pending)
Return the number of packets pending in the queue waiting to be sent by the mesh stack.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[out] pending`: pointer to the TX pending

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_rx_pending**(*mesh_rx_pending_t* *pending)
Return the number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[out] pending`: pointer to the RX pending

int **esp_mesh_available_txupQ_num**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *addr, uint32_t *xseqno_in*)
Return the number of packets could be accepted from the specified address.

Return the number of upQ for a certain address
Parameters

- `[in] addr`: self address or an associate children address
- `[out] xseqno_in`: sequence number of the last received packet from the specified address

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_xon_qsize**(int *qsize*)
Set the number of queue.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[in] qsize`: default:32 (min:16)

int **esp_mesh_get_xon_qsize**(void)
Get queue size.

Return the number of queue

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_allow_root_conflicts**(bool *allowed*)
Set whether allow more than one root existing in one network.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_WIFI_ERR_NOT_INIT
- ESP_WIFI_ERR_NOT_START

Parameters
- `[in] allowed`: allow or not

bool **esp_mesh_is_root_conflicts_allowed**(void)
Check whether allow more than one root to exist in one network.

Return true/false

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_group_id**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *addr, int *num*)
Set group ID addresses.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[in] addr`: pointer to new group ID addresses
- `[in] num`: the number of group ID addresses

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_delete_group_id**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *addr, int *num*)
Delete group ID addresses.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[in] addr`: pointer to deleted group ID address
- `[in] num`: the number of group ID addresses

int **esp_mesh_get_group_num**(void)
Get the number of group ID addresses.

Return the number of group ID addresses

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_group_list**(*mesh_addr_t* *addr, int *num*)
Get group ID addresses.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[out] addr`: pointer to group ID addresses

- `[in] num`: the number of group ID addresses

bool **esp_mesh_is_my_group**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *addr)
Check whether the specified group address is my group.

Return true/false

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_capacity_num**(int *num*)
Set mesh network capacity (max:1000, default:300)

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[in] num`: mesh network capacity

int **esp_mesh_get_capacity_num**(void)
Get mesh network capacity.

Return mesh network capacity

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_ie_crypto_funcs**(**const** mesh_crypto_funcs_t *_crypto_funcs)
Set mesh IE crypto functions.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is initialized.
Return
- ESP_OK

Parameters
- `[in] crypto_funcs`: crypto functions for mesh IE
  - If crypto_funcs is set to NULL, mesh IE is no longer encrypted.

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_ie_crypto_key**(**const** char *_key, int _len)
Set mesh IE crypto key.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is initialized.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[in] key`: ASCII crypto key
- `[in] len`: length in bytes, range:8~64

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_ie_crypto_key**(char *_key, int _len)
Get mesh IE crypto key.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT

Parameters
- `[out] key`: ASCII crypto key
- `[in] len`: length in bytes, range:8~64

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_root_healing_delay**(int *delay_ms)
Set delay time before starting root healing.

Return
- ESP_OK

Parameters
- `[in] delay_ms`: delay time in milliseconds

int **esp_mesh_get_root_healing_delay**(void)
Get delay time before network starts root healing.

Return delay time in milliseconds

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_fix_root**(bool *enable*)
Enable network Fixed Root Setting.

- Enabling fixed root disables automatic election of the root node via voting.
- All devices in the network shall use the same Fixed Root Setting (enabled or disabled).
- If Fixed Root is enabled, users should make sure a root node is designated for the network.

Return
- ESP_OK

Parameters
- `[in] enable`: enable or not

bool **esp_mesh_is_root_fixed**(void)
Check whether network Fixed Root Setting is enabled.

- Enable/disable network Fixed Root Setting by API esp_mesh_fix_root().
- Network Fixed Root Setting also changes with the "flag" value in parent networking IE.

Return true/false

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_parent**(**const** *wifi_config_t* **parent*, **const** *mesh_addr_t* **parent_mesh_id*, *mesh_type_t* *my_type*, int *my_layer*)
Set a specified parent for the device.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is configured.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG

Parameters
- `[in] parent`: parent configuration, the SSID and the channel of the parent are mandatory.
  - If the BSSID is set, make sure that the SSID and BSSID represent the same parent, otherwise the device will never find this specified parent.
- `[in] parent_mesh_id`: parent mesh ID,
  - If this value is not set, the original mesh ID is used.
- `[in] my_type`: mesh type
  - MESH_STA is not supported.
  - If the parent set for the device is the same as the router in the network configuration, then my_type shall set MESH_ROOT and my_layer shall set MESH_ROOT_LAYER.
- `[in] my_layer`: mesh layer
  - my_layer of the device may change after joining the network.
  - If my_type is set MESH_NODE, my_layer shall be greater than MESH_ROOT_LAYER.
  - If my_type is set MESH_LEAF, the device becomes a standalone Wi-Fi station and no longer has the ability to extend the network.

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_scan_get_ap_ie_len**(int **len*)
Get mesh networking IE length of one AP.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_FAIL

Parameters
- `[out] len`: mesh networking IE length

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_scan_get_ap_record**(*wifi_ap_record_t* **ap_record*, void **buffer*)
Get AP record.

Attention Different from esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records(), this API only gets one of APs scanned each time. See "manual_networking" example.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT

- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_FAIL

Parameters

- `[out] ap_record`: pointer to one AP record
- `[out] buffer`: pointer to the mesh networking IE of this AP

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_flush_upstream_packets**(void)

Flush upstream packets pending in to_parent queue and to_parent_p2p queue.

Return

- ESP_OK

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_num**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *child_mac, int *nodes_num)

Get the number of nodes in the subnet of a specific child.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters

- `[in] child_mac`: an associated child address of this device
- `[out] nodes_num`: pointer to the number of nodes in the subnet of a specific child

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_list**(**const** *mesh_addr_t* *child_mac, *mesh_addr_t* *nodes, int *nodes_num*)

Get nodes in the subnet of a specific child.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
- ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT

Parameters

- `[in] child_mac`: an associated child address of this device
- `[out] nodes`: pointer to nodes in the subnet of a specific child
- `[in] nodes_num`: the number of nodes in the subnet of a specific child

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_disconnect**(void)

Disconnect from current parent.

Return

- ESP_OK

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_connect**(void)

Connect to current parent.

Return

- ESP_OK

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_flush_scan_result**(void)

Flush scan result.

Return

- ESP_OK

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_switch_channel**(**const** uint8_t *new_bssid, int csa_newchan, int csa_count)

Cause the root device to add Channel Switch Announcement Element (CSA IE) to beacon.

- Set the new channel
- Set how many beacons with CSA IE will be sent before changing a new channel
- Enable the channel switch function

Attention This API is only called by the root.

Return

- ESP_OK

Parameters

- `[in] new_bssid`: the new router BSSID if the router changes

- `[in] csa_newchan`: the new channel number to which the whole network is moving
- `[in] csa_count`: channel switch period(beacon count), unit is based on beacon interval of its softAP, the default value is 15.

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_router_bssid**(uint8_t **router_bssid*)
Get the router BSSID.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG

Parameters
- `[out] router_bssid`: pointer to the router BSSID

int64_t **esp_mesh_get_tsf_time**(void)
Get the TSF time.

Return the TSF time

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_topology**(*esp_mesh_topology_t topo*)
Set mesh topology. The default value is MESH_TOPO_TREE.

- MESH_TOPO_CHAIN supports up to 1000 layers

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_MESH_ERR_ARGUMENT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

Parameters
- `[in] topo`: MESH_TOPO_TREE or MESH_TOPO_CHAIN

esp_mesh_topology_t **esp_mesh_get_topology**(void)
Get mesh topology.

Return MESH_TOPO_TREE or MESH_TOPO_CHAIN

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_enable_ps**(void)
Enable mesh Power Save function.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_disable_ps**(void)
Disable mesh Power Save function.

Attention This API shall be called before mesh is started.
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT
- ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED

bool **esp_mesh_is_ps_enabled**(void)
Check whether the mesh Power Save function is enabled.

Return true/false

bool **esp_mesh_is_device_active**(void)
Check whether the device is in active state.

- If the device is not in active state, it will neither transmit nor receive frames.

Return true/false

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_active_duty_cycle** (int *dev_duty*, int *dev_duty_type*)

Set the device duty cycle and type.

- The range of dev_duty values is 1 to 100. The default value is 10.
- dev_duty = 100, the PS will be stopped.
- dev_duty is better to not less than 5.
- dev_duty_type could be MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST or MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND.
- If dev_duty_type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST, the device will use a nwk_duty provided by the network.
- If dev_duty_type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND, the device will use the specified dev_duty.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is started.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] dev_duty`: device duty cycle
- `[in] dev_duty_type`: device PS duty cycle type, not accept MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_MASTER

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_active_duty_cycle** (int **dev_duty*, int **dev_duty_type*)

Get device duty cycle and type.

Return

- ESP_OK

Parameters

- `[out] dev_duty`: device duty cycle
- `[out] dev_duty_type`: device PS duty cycle type

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_set_network_duty_cycle** (int *nwk_duty*, int *duration_mins*, int *applied_rule*)

Set the network duty cycle, duration and rule.

- The range of nwk_duty values is 1 to 100. The default value is 10.
- nwk_duty is the network duty cycle the entire network or the up-link path will use. A device that successfully sets the nwk_duty is known as a NWK-DUTY-MASTER.
- duration_mins specifies how long the specified nwk_duty will be used. Once duration_mins expires, the root will take over as the NWK-DUTY-MASTER. If an existing NWK-DUTY-MASTER leaves the network, the root will take over as the NWK-DUTY-MASTER again.
- duration_mins = (-1) represents nwk_duty will be used until a new NWK-DUTY-MASTER with a different nwk_duty appears.
- Only the root can set duration_mins to (-1).
- If applied_rule is set to MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE, the nwk_duty will be used by the entire network.
- If applied_rule is set to MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK, the nwk_duty will only be used by the up-link path nodes.
- The root does not accept MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK.
- A nwk_duty with duration_mins(-1) set by the root is the default network duty cycle used by the entire network.

Attention This API can be called at any time after mesh is started.

- In self-organized network, if this API is called before mesh is started in all devices, (1)nwk_duty shall be set to the same value for all devices; (2)duration_mins shall be set to (-1); (3)applied_rule shall be set to MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE; after the voted root appears, the root will become the NWK-DUTY-MASTER and broadcast the nwk_duty and its identity of NWK-DUTY-MASTER.
- If the root is specified (FIXED-ROOT), call this API in the root to provide a default nwk_duty for the entire network.
- After joins the network, any device can call this API to change the nwk_duty, duration_mins or applied_rule.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] nwk_duty`: network duty cycle
- `[in] duration_mins`: duration (unit: minutes)
- `[in] applied_rule`: only support MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_get_network_duty_cycle**(int **nwk_duty*, int **duration_mins*, int **dev_duty_type*, int **applied_rule*)

Get the network duty cycle, duration, type and rule.

Return

- ESP_OK

Parameters

- `[out] nwk_duty`: current network duty cycle
- `[out] duration_mins`: the duration of current nwk_duty
- `[out] dev_duty_type`: if it includes MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_MASTER, this device is the current NWK-DUTY-MASTER.
- `[out] applied_rule`: MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE

int **esp_mesh_get_running_active_duty_cycle**(void)

Get the running active duty cycle.

- The running active duty cycle of the root is 100.
- If duty type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST, the running active duty cycle is nwk_duty provided by the network.
- If duty type is set to MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND, the running active duty cycle is dev_duty specified by the users.
- In a mesh network, devices are typically working with a certain duty-cycle (transmitting, receiving and sleep) to reduce the power consumption. The running active duty cycle decides the amount of awake time within a beacon interval. At each start of beacon interval, all devices wake up, broadcast beacons, and transmit packets if they do have pending packets for their parents or for their children. Note that Low-duty-cycle means devices may not be active in most of the time, the latency of data transmission might be greater.

Return the running active duty cycle

esp_err_t **esp_mesh_ps_duty_signaling**(int *fwd_times*)

Duty signaling.

Return

- ESP_OK

Parameters

- `[in] fwd_times`: the times of forwarding duty signaling packets

Unions

union mesh_addr_t

#include <esp_mesh.h> Mesh address.

Public Members

uint8_t **addr**[6]

mac address

mip_t **mip**

mip address

union mesh_event_info_t

#include <esp_mesh.h> Mesh event information.

Public Members

mesh_event_channel_switch_t **channel_switch**
channel switch

mesh_event_child_connected_t **child_connected**
child connected

mesh_event_child_disconnected_t **child_disconnected**
child disconnected

mesh_event_routing_table_change_t **routing_table**
routing table change

mesh_event_connected_t **connected**
parent connected

mesh_event_disconnected_t **disconnected**
parent disconnected

mesh_event_no_parent_found_t **no_parent**
no parent found

mesh_event_layer_change_t **layer_change**
layer change

mesh_event_toDS_state_t **toDS_state**
toDS state, devices shall check this state firstly before trying to send packets to external IP network. This state indicates right now whether the root is capable of sending packets out. If not, devices had better to wait until this state changes to be MESH_TODS_REACHABLE.

mesh_event_vote_started_t **vote_started**
vote started

mesh_event_root_address_t **root_addr**
root address

mesh_event_root_switch_req_t **switch_req**
root switch request

mesh_event_root_conflict_t **root_conflict**
other powerful root

mesh_event_root_fixed_t **root_fixed**
fixed root

mesh_event_scan_done_t **scan_done**
scan done

mesh_event_network_state_t **network_state**
network state, such as whether current mesh network has a root.

mesh_event_find_network_t **find_network**
network found that can join

mesh_event_router_switch_t **router_switch**
new router information

mesh_event_ps_duty_t **ps_duty**
PS duty information

union mesh_rc_config_t
#include <esp_mesh.h> Vote address configuration.

Public Members

int **attempts**
max vote attempts before a new root is elected automatically by mesh network. (min:15, 15 by default)

mesh_addr_t **rc_addr**
a new root address specified by users for API esp_mesh_waive_root()

Structures

struct mip_t
IP address and port.

Public Members

ip4_addr_t **ip4**
IP address

uint16_t **port**
port

struct mesh_event_channel_switch_t
Channel switch information.

Public Members

uint8_t **channel**
new channel

struct mesh_event_connected_t
Parent connected information.

Public Members

wifi_event_sta_connected_t **connected**
parent information, same as Wi-Fi event SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED does

uint16_t **self_layer**
layer

uint8_t **duty**
parent duty

struct mesh_event_no_parent_found_t
No parent found information.

Public Members

int **scan_times**
scan times being through

struct mesh_event_layer_change_t
Layer change information.

Public Members

uint16_t **new_layer**
new layer

struct mesh_event_vote_started_t
vote started information

Public Members

int **reason**
vote reason, vote could be initiated by children or by the root itself

int **attempts**
max vote attempts before stopped

mesh_addr_t **rc_addr**
root address specified by users via API esp_mesh_waive_root()

struct mesh_event_find_network_t
find a mesh network that this device can join

Public Members

uint8_t **channel**
channel number of the new found network

uint8_t **router_bssid**[6]
router BSSID

struct mesh_event_root_switch_req_t
Root switch request information.

Public Members

int **reason**
root switch reason, generally root switch is initialized by users via API esp_mesh_waive_root()

mesh_addr_t **rc_addr**
the address of root switch requester

struct mesh_event_root_conflict_t
Other powerful root address.

Public Members

int8_t **rssi**
rssi with router

uint16_t **capacity**
the number of devices in current network

uint8_t **addr**[6]
other powerful root address

struct mesh_event_routing_table_change_t
Routing table change.

Public Members

uint16_t **rt_size_new**
the new value

uint16_t **rt_size_change**
the changed value

struct mesh_event_root_fixed_t
Root fixed.

Public Members

bool **is_fixed**
status

struct mesh_event_scan_done_t
Scan done event information.

Public Members

uint8_t **number**
the number of APs scanned

struct mesh_event_network_state_t
Network state information.

Public Members

bool **is_rootless**
whether current mesh network has a root

struct mesh_event_ps_duty_t
PS duty information.

Public Members

uint8_t **duty**
parent or child duty

mesh_event_child_connected_t **child_connected**
child info

struct mesh_opt_t
Mesh option.

Public Members

uint8_t **type**
option type

uint16_t **len**
option length

uint8_t ***val**
option value

struct mesh_data_t
Mesh data for esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()

Public Members

uint8_t ***data**
data

uint16_t **size**
data size

mesh_proto_t **proto**
data protocol

mesh_tos_t **tos**
data type of service

struct mesh_router_t
Router configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t **ssid**[32]
SSID

uint8_t **ssid_len**
length of SSID

uint8_t **bssid**[6]
BSSID, if this value is specified, users should also specify "allow_router_switch".

uint8_t **password**[64]
password

bool **allow_router_switch**
if the BSSID is specified and this value is also set, when the router of this specified BSSID fails to be found after "fail" (mesh_attempts_t) times, the whole network is allowed to switch to another router with the same SSID. The new router might also be on a different channel. The default value is false. There is a risk that if the password is different between the new switched router and the previous one, the mesh network could be established but the root will never connect to the new switched router.

struct mesh_ap_cfg_t
Mesh softAP configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t **password**[64]
mesh softAP password

uint8_t **max_connection**
max number of stations allowed to connect in, max 10

struct mesh_cfg_t
Mesh initialization configuration.

Public Members

uint8_t **channel**
channel, the mesh network on

bool **allow_channel_switch**
if this value is set, when "fail" (mesh_attempts_t) times is reached, device will change to a full channel scan for a network that could join. The default value is false.

mesh_addr_t **mesh_id**
mesh network identification

mesh_router_t **router**
router configuration

mesh_ap_cfg_t **mesh_ap**
mesh softAP configuration

const mesh_crypto_funcs_t ***crypto_funcs**
crypto functions

struct mesh_vote_t
Vote.

Public Members

float **percentage**
vote percentage threshold for approval of being a root

bool **is_rc_specified**
if true, rc_addr shall be specified (Unimplemented). if false, attempts value shall be specified to make network start root election.

mesh_rc_config_t **config**
vote address configuration

struct mesh_tx_pending_t
The number of packets pending in the queue waiting to be sent by the mesh stack.

Public Members

int **to_parent**
to parent queue

int **to_parent_p2p**
to parent (P2P) queue

int **to_child**
to child queue

int **to_child_p2p**
to child (P2P) queue

int **mgmt**
management queue

int **broadcast**
broadcast and multicast queue

struct mesh_rx_pending_t
The number of packets available in the queue waiting to be received by applications.

Public Members

int **toDS**
to external DS

int **toSelf**
to self

Macros

MESH_ROOT_LAYER
root layer value

MESH_MTU
max transmit unit(in bytes)

MESH_MPS
max payload size(in bytes)

ESP_ERR_MESH_WIFI_NOT_START
Mesh error code definition.

Wi-Fi isn’ t started

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT
mesh isn’ t initialized

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG
mesh isn’ t configured

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START
mesh isn’ t started

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_SUPPORT
not supported yet

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED
operation is not allowed

ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY
out of memory

ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT
illegal argument

ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU
packet size exceeds MTU

ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT
timeout

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED
disconnected with parent on station interface

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FAIL
queue fail

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL
queue full

ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_PARENT_FOUND
no parent found to join the mesh network

ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND
no route found to forward the packet

ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_NULL
no option found

ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_UNKNOWN
unknown option

ESP_ERR_MESH_XON_NO_WINDOW
no window for software flow control on upstream

ESP_ERR_MESH_INTERFACE
low-level Wi-Fi interface error

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD_DUPLICATE
discard the packet due to the duplicate sequence number

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD
discard the packet

ESP_ERR_MESH_VOTING
vote in progress

ESP_ERR_MESH_XMIT
XMIT

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_READ
error in reading queue

ESP_ERR_MESH_PS
mesh PS is not specified as enable or disable

ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE
release esp_mesh_recv_toDS

MESH_DATA_ENC
Flags bitmap for esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()

data encrypted (Unimplemented)

MESH_DATA_P2P
point-to-point delivery over the mesh network

MESH_DATA_FROMDS
receive from external IP network

MESH_DATA_TODS
identify this packet is target to external IP network

MESH_DATA_NONBLOCK
esp_mesh_send() non-block

MESH_DATA_DROP
in the situation of the root having been changed, identify this packet can be dropped by new root

MESH_DATA_GROUP
identify this packet is target to a group address

MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP
Option definitions for esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()

data transmission by group; used with esp_mesh_send() and shall have payload

MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR
return a remote IP address; used with esp_mesh_send() and esp_mesh_recv()

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_VOTE_IN_PROGRESS
Flag of mesh networking IE.

vote in progress

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_NETWORK_FREE
no root in current network

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_ROOTS_FOUND
root conflict is found

MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_ROOT_FIXED
fixed root

MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST
Mesh PS (Power Save) duty cycle type.

requests to join a network PS without specifying a device duty cycle. After the device joins the network, a network duty cycle will be provided by the network

MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND
requests to join a network PS and specifies a demanded device duty cycle

MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_MASTER
indicates the device is the NWK-DUTY-MASTER (network duty cycle master)

MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE
Mesh PS (Power Save) duty cycle applied rule.

MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK

MESH_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

Type Definitions

typedef *mesh_addr_t* **mesh_event_root_address_t**
Root address.

typedef *wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t* **mesh_event_disconnected_t**
Parent disconnected information.

typedef *wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t* **mesh_event_child_connected_t**
Child connected information.

typedef *wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t* **mesh_event_child_disconnected_t**
Child disconnected information.

typedef *wifi_event_sta_connected_t* **mesh_event_router_switch_t**
New router information.

Enumerations

enum mesh_event_id_t
Enumerated list of mesh event id.

Values:

MESH_EVENT_STARTED
mesh is started

MESH_EVENT_STOPPED
mesh is stopped

MESH_EVENT_CHANNEL_SWITCH
channel switch

MESH_EVENT_CHILD_CONNECTED
a child is connected on softAP interface

MESH_EVENT_CHILD_DISCONNECTED
a child is disconnected on softAP interface

MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_ADD
routing table is changed by adding newly joined children

MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_REMOVE
routing table is changed by removing leave children

MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED
parent is connected on station interface

MESH_EVENT_PARENT_DISCONNECTED
parent is disconnected on station interface

MESH_EVENT_NO_PARENT_FOUND
no parent found

MESH_EVENT_LAYER_CHANGE
layer changes over the mesh network

MESH_EVENT_TODS_STATE
state represents whether the root is able to access external IP network

MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STARTED
the process of voting a new root is started either by children or by the root

MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STOPPED
the process of voting a new root is stopped

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_ADDRESS
the root address is obtained. It is posted by mesh stack automatically.

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_REQ
root switch request sent from a new voted root candidate

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_ACK
root switch acknowledgment responds the above request sent from current root

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_ASKED_YIELD
the root is asked yield by a more powerful existing root. If self organized is disabled and this device is specified to be a root by users, users should set a new parent for this device. if self organized is enabled, this device will find a new parent by itself, users could ignore this event.

MESH_EVENT_ROOT_FIXED
when devices join a network, if the setting of Fixed Root for one device is different from that of its parent, the device will update the setting the same as its parent' s. Fixed Root Setting of each device is variable as that setting changes of the root.

MESH_EVENT_SCAN_DONE
if self-organized networking is disabled, user can call esp_wifi_scan_start() to trigger this event, and add the corresponding scan done handler in this event.

MESH_EVENT_NETWORK_STATE
network state, such as whether current mesh network has a root.

MESH_EVENT_STOP_RECONNECTION
the root stops reconnecting to the router and non-root devices stop reconnecting to their parents.

MESH_EVENT_FIND_NETWORK
when the channel field in mesh configuration is set to zero, mesh stack will perform a full channel scan to find a mesh network that can join, and return the channel value after finding it.

MESH_EVENT_ROUTER_SWITCH
if users specify BSSID of the router in mesh configuration, when the root connects to another router with the same SSID, this event will be posted and the new router information is attached.

MESH_EVENT_PS_PARENT_DUTY
parent duty

MESH_EVENT_PS_CHILD_DUTY
child duty

MESH_EVENT_PS_DEVICE_DUTY
device duty

MESH_EVENT_MAX

enum mesh_type_t
Device type.

Values:

MESH_IDLE
hasn' t joined the mesh network yet

MESH_ROOT
the only sink of the mesh network. Has the ability to access external IP network

MESH_NODE
intermediate device. Has the ability to forward packets over the mesh network

MESH_LEAF
has no forwarding ability

MESH_STA
connect to router with a standlone Wi-Fi station mode, no network expansion capability

enum mesh_proto_t
Protocol of transmitted application data.

Values:

MESH_PROTO_BIN
binary

MESH_PROTO_HTTP
HTTP protocol

MESH_PROTO_JSON
JSON format

MESH_PROTO_MQTT
MQTT protocol

MESH_PROTO_AP
IP network mesh communication of node’s AP interface

MESH_PROTO_STA
IP network mesh communication of node’s STA interface

enum mesh_tos_t
For reliable transmission, mesh stack provides three type of services.

Values:

MESH_TOS_P2P
provide P2P (point-to-point) retransmission on mesh stack by default

MESH_TOS_E2E
provide E2E (end-to-end) retransmission on mesh stack (Unimplemented)

MESH_TOS_DEF
no retransmission on mesh stack

enum mesh_vote_reason_t
Vote reason.

Values:

MESH_VOTE_REASON_ROOT_INITIATED = 1
vote is initiated by the root

MESH_VOTE_REASON_CHILD_INITIATED
vote is initiated by children

enum mesh_disconnect_reason_t
Mesh disconnect reason code.

Values:

MESH_REASON_CYCLIC = 100
cyclic is detected

MESH_REASON_PARENT_IDLE
parent is idle

MESH_REASON_LEAF
the connected device is changed to a leaf

MESH_REASON_DIFF_ID
in different mesh ID

MESH_REASON_ROOTS
root conflict is detected

MESH_REASON_PARENT_STOPPED
parent has stopped the mesh

MESH_REASON_SCAN_FAIL
scan fail

MESH_REASON_IE_UNKNOWN
unknown IE

MESH_REASON_WAIVE_ROOT
waive root

MESH_REASON_PARENT_WORSE
parent with very poor RSSI

MESH_REASON_EMPTY_PASSWORD
use an empty password to connect to an encrypted parent

MESH_REASON_PARENT_UNENCRYPTED
connect to an unencrypted parent/router

enum esp_mesh_topology_t
Mesh topology.

Values:

MESH_TOPO_TREE
tree topology

MESH_TOPO_CHAIN
chain topology

enum mesh_event_toDS_state_t
The reachability of the root to a DS (distribute system)

Values:

MESH_TODS_UNREACHABLE
the root isn't able to access external IP network

MESH_TODS_REACHABLE
the root is able to access external IP network

Code examples for the Wi-Fi API are provided in the wifi directory of ESP-IDF examples.

Code examples for ESP-MESH are provided in the mesh directory of ESP-IDF examples.

2.1.2 Ethernet

Ethernet

Overview ESP-IDF provides a set of consistent and flexible APIs to support both internal Ethernet MAC (EMAC) controller and external SPI-Ethernet modules.

This programming guide is split into the following sections:

1. *Basic Ethernet Concepts*
2. *Configure MAC and PHY*
3. *Connect Driver to TCP/IP Stack*
4. *Misc control of Ethernet driver*

Basic Ethernet Concepts Ethernet is an asynchronous Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detect (CSMA/CD) protocol/interface. It is generally not well suited for low power applications. However, with ubiquitous deployment, internet connectivity, high data rates and limitless rage expandability, Ethernet can accommodate nearly all wired communications.

Normal IEEE 802.3 compliant Ethernet frames are between 64 and 1518 bytes in length. They are made up of five or six different fields: a destination MAC address (DA), a source MAC address (SA), a type/length field, data payload, an optional padding field and a Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC). Additionally, when transmitted on the Ethernet medium, a 7-byte preamble field and Start-of-Frame (SOF) delimiter byte are appended to the beginning of the Ethernet packet.

Thus the traffic on the twist-pair cabling will appear as shown blow:

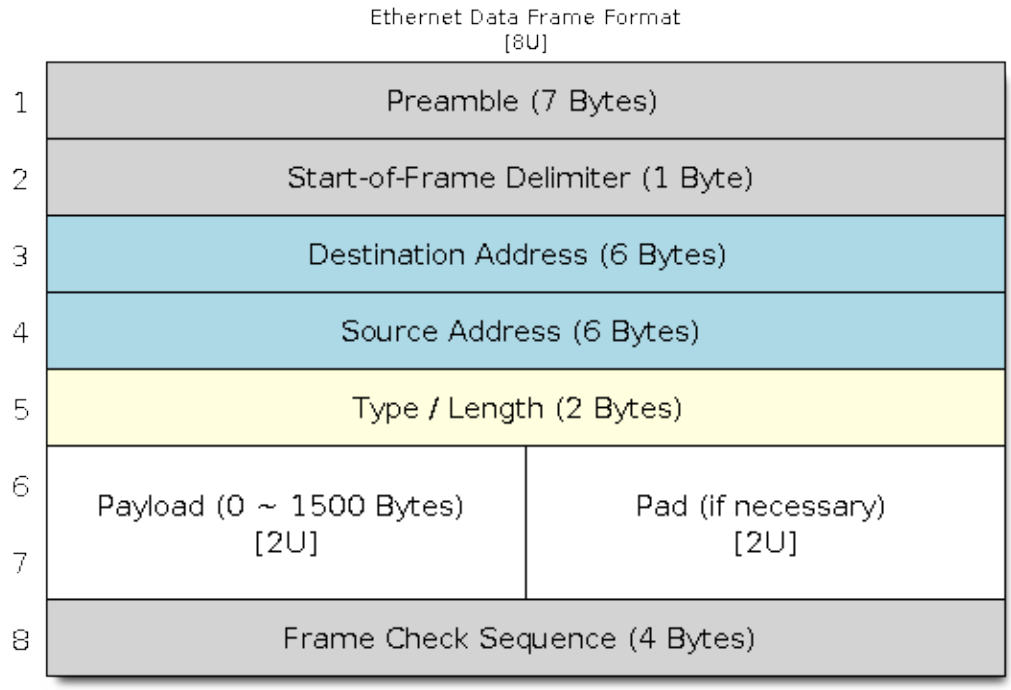


Fig. 3: Ethernet Data Frame Format

Preamble and Start-of-Frame Delimiter The preamble contains seven bytes of `55H`, it allows the receiver to lock onto the stream of data before the actual frame arrives. The Start-of-Frame Delimiter (SFD) is a binary sequence `10101011` (as seen on the physical medium). It is sometimes considered to be part of the preamble.

When transmitting and receiving data, the preamble and SFD bytes will automatically be generated or stripped from the packets.

Destination Address The destination address field contains a 6-byte length MAC address of the device that the packet is directed to. If the Least Significant bit in the first byte of the MAC address is set, the address is a multi-cast destination. For example, 01-00-00-00-F0-00 and 33-45-67-89-AB-CD are multi-cast addresses, while 00-00-00-00-F0-00 and 32-45-67-89-AB-CD are not. Packets with multi-cast destination addresses are designed to arrive and be important to a selected group of Ethernet nodes. If the destination address field is the reserved multi-cast address, i.e. FF-FF-FF-FF-FF-FF, the packet is a broadcast packet and it will be directed to everyone sharing the network. If the Least Significant bit in the first byte of the MAC address is clear, the address is a uni-cast address and will be designed for usage by only the addressed node.

Normally the EMAC controller incorporates receive filters which can be used to discard or accept packets with multi-cast, broadcast and/or uni-cast destination addresses. When transmitting packets, the host controller is responsible for writing the desired destination address into the transmit buffer.

Source Address The source address field contains a 6-byte length MAC address of the node which created the Ethernet packet. Users of Ethernet must generate a unique MAC address for each controller used. MAC addresses consist of two portions. The first three bytes are known as the Organizationally Unique Identifier (OUI). OUIs are distributed by the IEEE. The last three bytes are address bytes at the discretion of the company that purchased the OUI. More information about MAC Address used in ESP-IDF, please see *MAC Address Allocation*.

When transmitting packets, the assigned source MAC address must be written into the transmit buffer by the host controller.

Type / Length The type/length field is a 2-byte field, if the value in this field is <= 1500 (decimal), it is considered a length field and it specifies the amount of non-padding data which follows in the data field. If the value is >= 1536, it represents the protocol the following packet data belongs to. The following are the most common type values:

- IPv4 = 0800H
- IPv6 = 86DDH
- ARP = 0806H

Users implementing proprietary networks may choose to treat this field as a length field, while applications implementing protocols such as the Internet Protocol (IP) or Address Resolution Protocol (ARP), should program this field with the appropriate type defined by the protocol's specification when transmitting packets.

Payload The payload field is a variable length field, anywhere from 0 to 1500 bytes. Larger data packets will violate Ethernet standards and will be dropped by most Ethernet nodes. This field contains the client data, such as an IP datagram.

Padding and FCS The padding field is a variable length field added to meet IEEE 802.3 specification requirements when small data payloads are used. The DA, SA, type, payload and padding of an Ethernet packet must be no smaller than 60 bytes. Adding the required 4-byte FCS field, packets must be no smaller than 64 bytes. If the data field is less than 46 bytes long, a padding field is required.

The FCS field is a 4-byte field which contains an industry standard 32-bit CRC calculated with the data from the DA, SA, type, payload and padding fields. Given the complexity of calculating a CRC, the hardware normally will automatically generate a valid CRC and transmit it. Otherwise, the host controller must generate the CRC and place it in the transmit buffer.

Normally, the host controller does not need to concern itself with padding and the CRC which the hardware EMAC will also be able to automatically generate when transmitting and verify when receiving. However, the padding and CRC fields will be written into the receive buffer when packets arrive, so they may be evaluated by the host controller if needed.

Note: Besides the basic data frame described above, there're two other common frame types in 10/100 Mbps Ethernet: control frames and VLAN tagged frames. They're not supported in ESP-IDF.

Configure MAC and PHY Ethernet driver is composed of two parts: MAC and PHY. The communication between MAC and PHY can have diverse choices: **MII** (Media Independent Interface), **RMII** (Reduced Media Independent Interface) and etc.

We need to setup necessary parameters for MAC and PHY respectively based on your Ethernet board design and then combine the two together, completing the driver installation.

Configuration for MAC is described in `eth_mac_config_t`, including:

- `sw_reset_timeout_ms`: software reset timeout value, in milliseconds, typically MAC reset should be finished within 100ms.
- `rx_task_stack_size` and `rx_task_prio`: the MAC driver creates a dedicated task to process incoming packets, these two parameters are used to set the stack size and priority of the task.
- `smi_mdc_gpio_num` and `smi_mdio_gpio_num`: the GPIO number used to connect the SMI signals.

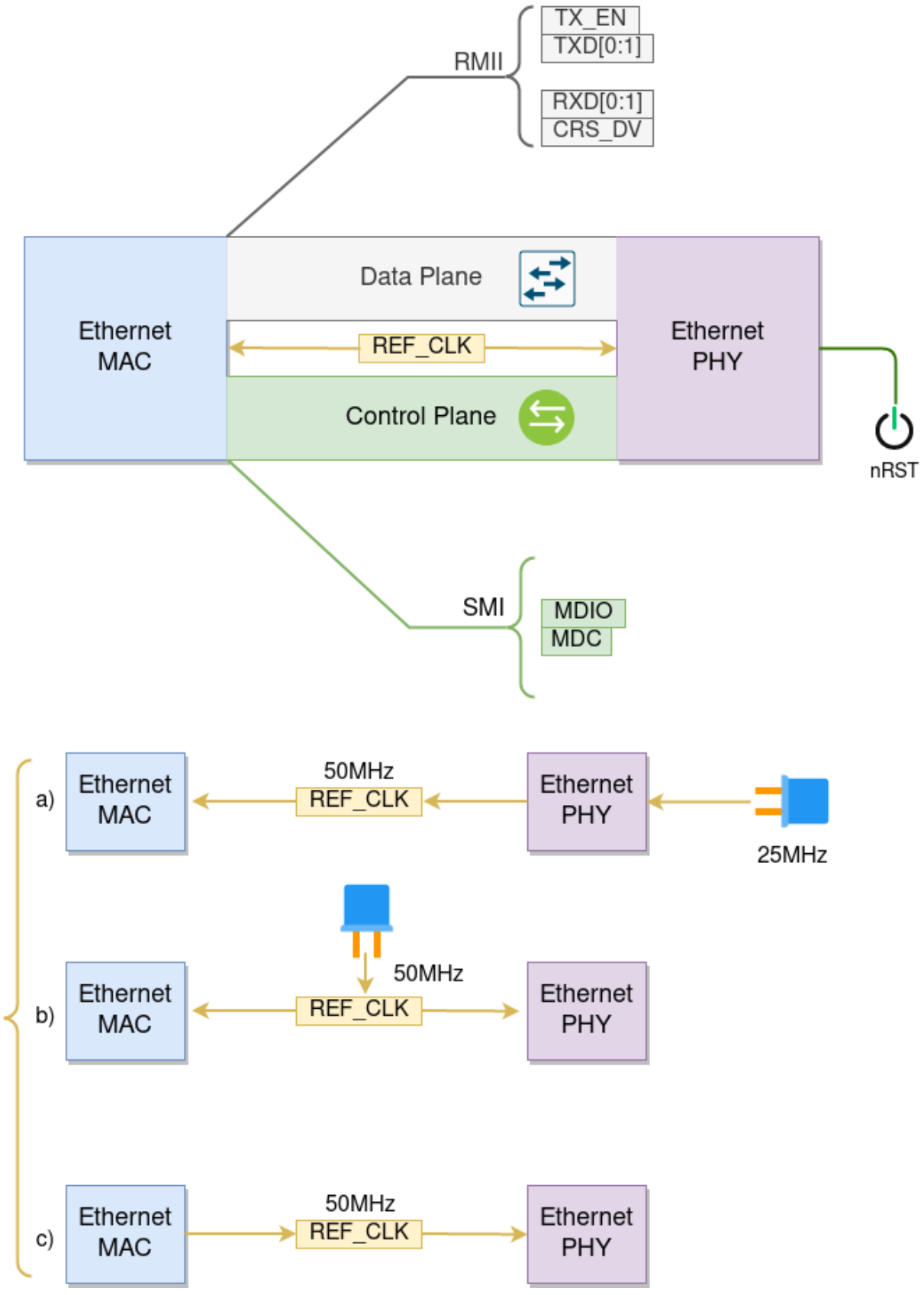


Fig. 4: Ethernet RMII Interface

- `flags`: specifying extra features that the MAC driver should have, it could be useful in some special situations. The value of this field can be OR'd with macros prefixed with `ETH_MAC_FLAG_`. For example, if the MAC driver should work when cache is disabled, then you should configure this field with *ETH_MAC_FLAG_WORK_WITH_CACHE_DISABLE*.

Configuration for PHY is described in *eth_phy_config_t*, including:

- `phy_addr`: multiple PHY device can share the same SMI bus, so each PHY needs a unique address. Usually this address is configured during hardware design by pulling up/down some PHY strapping pins. You can set the value from 0 to 15 based on your Ethernet board. Especially, if the SMI bus is shared by only one PHY device, setting this value to -1 can enable the driver to detect the PHY address automatically.
- `reset_timeout_ms`: reset timeout value, in milliseconds, typically PHY reset should be finished within 100ms.
- `autonego_timeout_ms`: auto-negotiation timeout value, in milliseconds. Ethernet driver will start negotiation with the peer Ethernet node automatically, to determine to duplex and speed mode. This value usually depends on the ability of the PHY device on your board.
- `reset_gpio_num`: if your board also connect the PHY reset pin to one of the GPIO, then set it here. Otherwise, set this field to -1.

ESP-IDF provides a default configuration for MAC and PHY in macro *ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG* and *ETH_PHY_DEFAULT_CONFIG*.

Create MAC and PHY Instance Ethernet driver is implemented in an Object-Oriented style. Any operation on MAC and PHY should be based on the instance of them two.

```
eth_mac_config_t mac_config = ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG();  // apply default MAC␣
↪configuration
mac_config.smi_mdc_gpio_num = 23;  // alter the GPIO used for MDC signal
mac_config.smi_mdio_gpio_num = 18; // alter the GPIO used for MDIO signal
esp_eth_mac_t *mac = esp_eth_mac_new_esp32(&mac_config); // create MAC instance

eth_phy_config_t phy_config = ETH_PHY_DEFAULT_CONFIG(); // apply default PHY␣
↪configuration
phy_config.phy_addr = 1;        // alter the PHY address according to your board␣
↪design
phy_config.reset_gpio_num = 5; // alter the GPIO used for PHY reset
esp_eth_phy_t *phy = esp_eth_phy_new_ip101(&phy_config); // create PHY instance
// ESP-IDF officially supports several different Ethernet PHY
// esp_eth_phy_t *phy = esp_eth_phy_new_rtl8201(&phy_config);
// esp_eth_phy_t *phy = esp_eth_phy_new_lan8720(&phy_config);
// esp_eth_phy_t *phy = esp_eth_phy_new_dp83848(&phy_config);
```

Note: Care should be taken, when creating MAC and PHY instance for SPI-Ethernet modules (e.g. DM9051), the constructor function must have the same suffix (e.g. *esp_eth_mac_new_dm9051* and *esp_eth_phy_new_dm9051*). This is because we don't have other choices but the integrated PHY. Besides that, we have to create an SPI device handle firstly and then pass it to the MAC constructor function. More instructions on creating SPI device handle, please refer to *SPI Master*.

Install Driver Ethernet driver also includes event-driven model, which will send useful and important event to user space. We need to initialize the event loop before installing the Ethernet driver. For more information about event-driven programming, please refer to *ESP Event*.

```
/** Event handler for Ethernet events */
static void eth_event_handler(void *arg, esp_event_base_t event_base,
                              int32_t event_id, void *event_data)
{
    uint8_t mac_addr[6] = {0};
    /* we can get the ethernet driver handle from event data */
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle = *(esp_eth_handle_t *)event_data;

    switch (event_id) {
    case ETHERNET_EVENT_CONNECTED:
        esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR, mac_addr);
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet Link Up");
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet HW Addr %02x:%02x:%02x:%02x:%02x:%02x",
                 mac_addr[0], mac_addr[1], mac_addr[2], mac_addr[3], mac_addr[4],␣
↪mac_addr[5]);
        break;
    case ETHERNET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED:
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet Link Down");
        break;
    case ETHERNET_EVENT_START:
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet Started");
        break;
    case ETHERNET_EVENT_STOP:
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet Stopped");
        break;
    default:
        break;
    }
}

esp_event_loop_create_default(); // create a default event loop that running in␣
↪background
esp_event_handler_register(ETH_EVENT, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, &eth_event_handler, NULL);␣
↪// register Ethernet event handler (to deal with user specific stuffs when event␣
↪like link up/down happened)
```

To install the Ethernet driver, we need to combine the instance of MAC and PHY and set some additional high-level configurations (i.e. not specific to either MAC or PHY) in *esp_eth_config_t*:

- `mac`: instance that created from MAC generator (e.g. `esp_eth_mac_new_esp32()`).
- `phy`: instance that created from PHY generator (e.g. *esp_eth_phy_new_ip101()*).
- `check_link_period_ms`: Ethernet driver starts an OS timer to check the link status periodically, this field is used to set the interval, in milliseconds.
- `stack_input`: In most of Ethernet IoT applications, any Ethernet frame that received by driver should be passed to upper layer (e.g. TCP/IP stack). This field is set to a function which is responsible to deal with the incoming frames. You can even update this field at runtime via function *esp_eth_update_input_path()* after driver installation.
- `on_lowlevel_init_done` and `on_lowlevel_deinit_done`: These two fields are used to specify the hooks which get invoked when low level hardware has been initialized or de-initialized.

ESP-IDF provides a default configuration for driver installation in macro *ETH_DEFAULT_CONFIG*.

```
esp_eth_config_t config = ETH_DEFAULT_CONFIG(mac, phy); // apply default driver␣
↪configuration
esp_eth_handle_t eth_handle = NULL; // after driver installed, we will get the␣
↪handle of the driver
esp_eth_driver_install(&config, &eth_handle); // install driver
```

Start Ethernet Driver After driver installation, we can start Ethernet immediately.

```
esp_eth_start(eth_handle); // start Ethernet driver state machine
```

Connect Driver to TCP/IP Stack Up until now, we have installed the Ethernet driver. From the view of OSI (Open System Interconnection), we're still on level 2 (i.e. Data Link Layer). We can detect link up and down event,

we can gain MAC address in user space, but we can't obtain IP address, let alone send HTTP request. The TCP/IP stack used in ESP-IDF is called LwIP, for more information about it, please refer to *LwIP*.

To connect Ethernet driver to TCP/IP stack, these three steps need to follow:

1. Create network interface for Ethernet driver
2. Register IP event handlers
3. Attach the network interface to Ethernet driver

More information about network interface, please refer to *Network Interface*.

```
/** Event handler for IP_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP */
static void got_ip_event_handler(void *arg, esp_event_base_t event_base,
                                 int32_t event_id, void *event_data)
{
    ip_event_got_ip_t *event = (ip_event_got_ip_t *) event_data;
    const esp_netif_ip_info_t *ip_info = &event->ip_info;

    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet Got IP Address");
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "~~~~~~~~~~~");
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "ETHIP:" IPSTR, IP2STR(&ip_info->ip));
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "ETHMASK:" IPSTR, IP2STR(&ip_info->netmask));
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "ETHGW:" IPSTR, IP2STR(&ip_info->gw));
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "~~~~~~~~~~~");
}

esp_netif_init()); // Initialize TCP/IP network interface (should be called only␣
↪once in application)
esp_netif_config_t cfg = ESP_NETIF_DEFAULT_ETH(); // apply default network␣
↪interface configuration for Ethernet
esp_netif_t *eth_netif = esp_netif_new(&cfg); // create network interface for␣
↪Ethernet driver
esp_eth_set_default_handlers(eth_netif); // set default handlers to process TCP/IP␣
↪stuffs
esp_event_handler_register(IP_EVENT, IP_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP, &got_ip_event_handler,␣
↪NULL); // register user defined IP event handlers

esp_netif_attach(eth_netif, esp_eth_new_netif_glue(eth_handle)); // attach␣
↪Ethernet driver to TCP/IP stack
esp_eth_start(eth_handle); // start Ethernet driver state machine
```

Misc control of Ethernet driver The following functions should only be invoked after the Ethernet driver has been installed.

- Stop Ethernet driver: *esp_eth_stop()*
- Update Ethernet data input path: *esp_eth_update_input_path()*
- Misc get/set of Ethernet driver attributes: *esp_eth_ioctl()*

```
/* get MAC address */
uint8_t mac_addr[6];
memset(mac_addr, 0, sizeof(mac_addr));
esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR, mac_addr);
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet MAC Address: %02x:%02x:%02x:%02x:%02x:%02x",
         mac_addr[0], mac_addr[1], mac_addr[2], mac_addr[3], mac_addr[4], mac_
↪addr[5]);

/* get PHY address */
int phy_addr = -1;
esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_G_PHY_ADDR, &phy_addr);
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Ethernet PHY Address: %d", phy_addr);
```

Flow control Ethernet on MCU usually has a limitation in the number of frames it can handle during network congestion, because of the limitation in RAM size. A sending station might be transmitting data faster than the peer end can accept it. Ethernet flow control mechanism allows the receiving node to signal the sender requesting suspension of transmissions until the receiver catches up. The magic behind that is the pause frame, which was defined in IEEE 802.3x.

Pause frame is a special Ethernet frame used to carry the pause command, whose EtherType field is 0x8808, with the Control opcode set to 0x0001. Only stations configured for full-duplex operation may send pause frames. When a station wishes to pause the other end of a link, it sends a pause frame to the 48-bit reserved multicast address of 01-80-C2-00-00-01. The pause frame also includes the period of pause time being requested, in the form of a two-byte integer, ranging from 0 to 65535.

After Ethernet driver installation, the flow control feature is disabled by default. You can enable it by invoking *esp_eth_ioctl(eth_handle, ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL, true);*. One thing should be kept in mind, is that the pause frame ability will be advertised to peer end by PHY during auto negotiation. Ethernet driver sends pause frame only when both sides of the link support it.

Application Example

- Ethernet basic example: ethernet/basic.
- Ethernet iperf example: ethernet/iperf.
- Ethernet to Wi-Fi AP "router": ethernet/eth2ap.
- Most of protocol examples should also work for Ethernet: protocols.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_eth/include/esp_eth.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_eth_driver_install**(**const** *esp_eth_config_t* **config*, *esp_eth_handle_t* **out_hdl*)

Install Ethernet driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: install esp_eth driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: install esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: install esp_eth driver failed because there's no memory for driver
- ESP_FAIL: install esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] config`: configuration of the Ethernet driver
- `[out] out_hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t **esp_eth_driver_uninstall**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*)

Uninstall Ethernet driver.

Note It's not recommended to uninstall Ethernet driver unless it won't get used any more in application code. To uninstall Ethernet driver, you have to make sure, all references to the driver are released. Ethernet driver can only be uninstalled successfully when reference counter equals to one.

Return

- ESP_OK: uninstall esp_eth driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: uninstall esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: uninstall esp_eth driver failed because it has more than one reference
- ESP_FAIL: uninstall esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t **esp_eth_start**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*)

Start Ethernet driver **ONLY** in standalone mode (i.e. without TCP/IP stack)

Note This API will start driver state machine and internal software timer (for checking link status).

Return

- ESP_OK: start esp_eth driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: start esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: start esp_eth driver failed because driver has started already
- ESP_FAIL: start esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t **esp_eth_stop**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*)

Stop Ethernet driver.

Note This function does the oppsite operation of `esp_eth_start`.

Return

- ESP_OK: stop esp_eth driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: stop esp_eth driver failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: stop esp_eth driver failed because driver has not started yet
- ESP_FAIL: stop esp_eth driver failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t **esp_eth_update_input_path**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*, *esp_err_t* (**stack_input*)) *esp_eth_handle_t* hdl, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length, void *priv , void **priv*Update Ethernet data input path (i.e. specify where to pass the input buffer)

Note After install driver, Ethernet still don't know where to deliver the input buffer. In fact, this API registers a callback function which get invoked when Ethernet received new packets.

Return

- ESP_OK: update input path successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: update input path failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: update input path failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver
- `[in] stack_input`: function pointer, which does the actual process on incoming packets
- `[in] priv`: private resource, which gets passed to `stack_input` callback without any modification

esp_err_t **esp_eth_transmit**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*, void **buf*, size_t *length*)

General Transmit.

Return

- ESP_OK: transmit frame buffer successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: transmit frame buffer failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: transmit frame buffer failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver
- `[in] buf`: buffer of the packet to transfer
- `[in] length`: length of the buffer to transfer

esp_err_t **esp_eth_receive**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*, uint8_t **buf*, uint32_t **length*)

General Receive is deprecated and shall not be accessed from app code, as polling is not supported by Ethernet.

Note Before this function got invoked, the value of "length" should set by user, equals the size of buffer. After the function returned, the value of "length" means the real length of received data.

Note This API was exposed by accident, users should not use this API in their applications. Ethernet driver is interrupt driven, and doesn't support polling mode. Instead, users should register input callback with `esp_eth_update_input_path`.

Return

- ESP_OK: receive frame buffer successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: receive frame buffer failed because of some invalid argument

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: input buffer size is not enough to hold the incoming data. in this case, value of returned "length" indicates the real size of incoming data.
- ESP_FAIL: receive frame buffer failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver
- `[out] buf`: buffer to preserve the received packet
- `[out] length`: length of the received packet

esp_err_t **esp_eth_ioctl**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*, *esp_eth_io_cmd_t cmd*, void **data*)

Misc IO function of Etherent driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: process io command successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: process io command failed because of some invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: process io command failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver
- `[in] cmd`: IO control command
- `[in] data`: specificed data for command

esp_err_t **esp_eth_increase_reference**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*)

Increase Ethernet driver reference.

Note Ethernet driver handle can be obtained by os timer, netif, etc. It's dangerous when thread A is using Ethernet but thread B uninstall the driver. Using reference counter can prevent such risk, but care should be taken, when you obtain Ethernet driver, this API must be invoked so that the driver won't be uninstalled during your using time.

Return

- ESP_OK: increase reference successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: increase reference failed because of some invalid argument

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t **esp_eth_decrease_reference**(*esp_eth_handle_t hdl*)

Decrease Ethernet driver reference.

Return

- ESP_OK: increase reference successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: increase reference failed because of some invalid argument

Parameters

- `[in] hdl`: handle of Ethernet driver

Structures

struct esp_eth_config_t

Configuration of Ethernet driver.

Public Members

esp_eth_mac_t ***mac**

Ethernet MAC object.

esp_eth_phy_t ***phy**

Ethernet PHY object.

uint32_t **check_link_period_ms**

Period time of checking Ethernet link status.

esp_err_t (***stack_input**)(*esp_eth_handle_t* eth_handle, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length, void *priv)

Input frame buffer to user's stack.

Return

- ESP_OK: input frame buffer to upper stack successfully
- ESP_FAIL: error occurred when inputting buffer to upper stack

Parameters

- `[in] eth_handle`: handle of Ethernet driver
- `[in] buffer`: frame buffer that will get input to upper stack
- `[in] length`: length of the frame buffer

esp_err_t (***on_lowlevel_init_done**) (*esp_eth_handle_t* eth_handle)

Callback function invoked when lowlevel initialization is finished.

Return

- ESP_OK: process extra lowlevel initialization successfully
- ESP_FAIL: error occurred when processing extra lowlevel initialization

Parameters

- `[in] eth_handle`: handle of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t (***on_lowlevel_deinit_done**) (*esp_eth_handle_t* eth_handle)

Callback function invoked when lowlevel deinitialization is finished.

Return

- ESP_OK: process extra lowlevel deinitialization successfully
- ESP_FAIL: error occurred when processing extra lowlevel deinitialization

Parameters

- `[in] eth_handle`: handle of Ethernet driver

Macros

ETH_DEFAULT_CONFIG (emac, ephy)

Default configuration for Ethernet driver.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***esp_eth_handle_t**

Handle of Ethernet driver.

Header File

- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_com.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_eth_detect_phy_addr** (*esp_eth_mediator_t* **eth*, int **detected_addr*)

Detect PHY address.

Return

- ESP_OK: detect phy address successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameter
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: can't detect any PHY device
- ESP_FAIL: detect phy address failed because some error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] eth`: mediator of Ethernet driver
- `[out] detected_addr`: a valid address after detection

Structures

struct esp_eth_mediator_s

Ethernet mediator.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***phy_reg_read**) (*esp_eth_mediator_t* *eth, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t *reg_value)

Read PHY register.

Return
- ESP_OK: read PHY register successfully
- ESP_FAIL: read PHY register failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] eth`: mediator of Ethernet driver
- `[in] phy_addr`: PHY Chip address (0~31)
- `[in] phy_reg`: PHY register index code
- `[out] reg_value`: PHY register value

esp_err_t (***phy_reg_write**) (*esp_eth_mediator_t* *eth, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t reg_value)

Write PHY register.

Return
- ESP_OK: write PHY register successfully
- ESP_FAIL: write PHY register failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] eth`: mediator of Ethernet driver
- `[in] phy_addr`: PHY Chip address (0~31)
- `[in] phy_reg`: PHY register index code
- `[in] reg_value`: PHY register value

esp_err_t (***stack_input**) (*esp_eth_mediator_t* *eth, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length)

Deliver packet to upper stack.

Return
- ESP_OK: deliver packet to upper stack successfully
- ESP_FAIL: deliver packet failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] eth`: mediator of Ethernet driver
- `[in] buffer`: packet buffer
- `[in] length`: length of the packet

esp_err_t (***on_state_changed**) (*esp_eth_mediator_t* *eth, *esp_eth_state_t* state, void *args)

Callback on Ethernet state changed.

Return
- ESP_OK: process the new state successfully
- ESP_FAIL: process the new state failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] eth`: mediator of Ethernet driver
- `[in] state`: new state
- `[in] args`: optional argument for the new state

Macros

ETH_MAX_PAYLOAD_LEN

Maximum Ethernet payload size.

ETH_MIN_PAYLOAD_LEN

Minimum Ethernet payload size.

ETH_HEADER_LEN

Ethernet frame header size: Dest addr(6 Bytes) + Src addr(6 Bytes) + length/type(2 Bytes)

ETH_CRC_LEN

Ethernet frame CRC length.

ETH_VLAN_TAG_LEN
Optional 802.1q VLAN Tag length.

ETH_JUMBO_FRAME_PAYLOAD_LEN
Jumbo frame payload size.

ETH_MAX_PACKET_SIZE
Maximum frame size (1522 Bytes)

ETH_MIN_PACKET_SIZE
Minimum frame size (64 Bytes)

Type Definitions

typedef struct *esp_eth_mediator_s* **esp_eth_mediator_t**
Ethernet mediator.

Enumerations

enum esp_eth_state_t
Ethernet driver state.

Values:

ETH_STATE_LLINIT
Lowlevel init done

ETH_STATE_DEINIT
Deinit done

ETH_STATE_LINK
Link status changed

ETH_STATE_SPEED
Speed updated

ETH_STATE_DUPLEX
Duplex updated

ETH_STATE_PAUSE
Pause ability updated

enum esp_eth_io_cmd_t
Command list for ioctl API.

Values:

ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR
Get MAC address

ETH_CMD_S_MAC_ADDR
Set MAC address

ETH_CMD_G_PHY_ADDR
Get PHY address

ETH_CMD_S_PHY_ADDR
Set PHY address

ETH_CMD_G_SPEED
Get Speed

ETH_CMD_S_PROMISCUOUS
Set promiscuous mode

ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL
Set flow control

ETH_CMD_G_DUPLEX_MODE
Get Duplex mode

enum eth_link_t
Ethernet link status.

Values:

ETH_LINK_UP
Ethernet link is up

ETH_LINK_DOWN
Ethernet link is down

enum eth_speed_t
Ethernet speed.

Values:

ETH_SPEED_10M
Ethernet speed is 10Mbps

ETH_SPEED_100M
Ethernet speed is 100Mbps

enum eth_duplex_t
Ethernet duplex mode.

Values:

ETH_DUPLEX_HALF
Ethernet is in half duplex

ETH_DUPLEX_FULL
Ethernet is in full duplex

enum eth_event_t
Ethernet event declarations.

Values:

ETHERNET_EVENT_START
Ethernet driver start

ETHERNET_EVENT_STOP
Ethernet driver stop

ETHERNET_EVENT_CONNECTED
Ethernet got a valid link

ETHERNET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED
Ethernet lost a valid link

Header File

- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_mac.h

Structures

struct esp_eth_mac_s
Ethernet MAC.

Public Members

esp_err_t (*__set_mediator__) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, *esp_eth_mediator_t* *eth)
Set mediator for Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: set mediator for Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set mediator for Ethernet MAC failed because of invalid argument

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] eth`: Ethernet mediator

esp_err_t (***init**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac)
Initialize Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: initialize Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: initialize Ethernet MAC failed because of timeout
- ESP_FAIL: initialize Ethernet MAC failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

esp_err_t (***deinit**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac)
Deinitialize Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: deinitialize Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_FAIL: deinitialize Ethernet MAC failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

esp_err_t (***start**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac)
Start Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: start Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_FAIL: start Ethernet MAC failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

esp_err_t (***stop**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac)
Stop Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: stop Ethernet MAC successfully
- ESP_FAIL: stop Ethernet MAC failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

esp_err_t (***transmit**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint8_t *buf, uint32_t length)
Transmit packet from Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: transmit packet successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: transmit packet failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: transmit packet failed because of wrong state of MAC
- ESP_FAIL: transmit packet failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] buf`: packet buffer to transmit
- `[in] length`: length of packet

esp_err_t (***receive**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint8_t *buf, uint32_t *length)
Receive packet from Ethernet MAC.

Note Memory of buf is allocated in the Layer2, make sure it get free after process.

Note Before this function got invoked, the value of "length" should set by user, equals the size of buffer. After the function returned, the value of "length" means the real length of received data.

Return

- ESP_OK: receive packet successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: receive packet failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: input buffer size is not enough to hold the incoming data. in this case, value of returned "length" indicates the real size of incoming data.
- ESP_FAIL: receive packet failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[out] buf`: packet buffer which will preserve the received frame
- `[out] length`: length of the received packet

esp_err_t (***read_phy_reg**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t *reg_value)

Read PHY register.

Return

- ESP_OK: read PHY register successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: read PHY register failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: read PHY register failed because of wrong state of MAC
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: read PHY register failed because of timeout
- ESP_FAIL: read PHY register failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] phy_addr`: PHY chip address (0~31)
- `[in] phy_reg`: PHY register index code
- `[out] reg_value`: PHY register value

esp_err_t (***write_phy_reg**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint32_t phy_addr, uint32_t phy_reg, uint32_t reg_value)

Write PHY register.

Return

- ESP_OK: write PHY register successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: write PHY register failed because of wrong state of MAC
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: write PHY register failed because of timeout
- ESP_FAIL: write PHY register failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] phy_addr`: PHY chip address (0~31)
- `[in] phy_reg`: PHY register index code
- `[in] reg_value`: PHY register value

esp_err_t (***set_addr**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint8_t *addr)

Set MAC address.

Return

- ESP_OK: set MAC address successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set MAC address failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set MAC address failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] addr`: MAC address

esp_err_t (***get_addr**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint8_t *addr)

Get MAC address.

Return

- ESP_OK: get MAC address successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: get MAC address failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: get MAC address failed because some other error occurred

Parameters

- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

- `[out] addr`: MAC address

esp_err_t (*`set_speed`) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, *eth_speed_t* speed)
Set speed of MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: set MAC speed successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set MAC speed failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set MAC speed failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] ma:c`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] speed`: MAC speed

esp_err_t (*`set_duplex`) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, *eth_duplex_t* duplex)
Set duplex mode of MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: set MAC duplex mode successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set MAC duplex failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set MAC duplex failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] duplex`: MAC duplex

esp_err_t (*`set_link`) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, *eth_link_t* link)
Set link status of MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: set link status successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set link status failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: set link status failed because some other error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] link`: Link status

esp_err_t (*`set_promiscuous`) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, bool enable)
Set promiscuous of MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: set promiscuous mode successfully
- ESP_FAIL: set promiscuous mode failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] enable`: set true to enable promiscuous mode; set false to disable promiscuous mode

esp_err_t (*`enable_flow_ctrl`) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, bool enable)
Enable flow control on MAC layer or not.

Return
- ESP_OK: set flow control successfully
- ESP_FAIL: set flow control failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance
- `[in] enable`: set true to enable flow control; set false to disable flow control

esp_err_t (*`set_peer_pause_ability`) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac, uint32_t ability)
Set the PAUSE ability of peer node.

Return
- ESP_OK: set peer pause ability successfully
- ESP_FAIL: set peer pause ability failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

- `[in] ability`: zero indicates that pause function is supported by link partner; non-zero indicates that pause function is not supported by link partner

esp_err_t (***del**) (*esp_eth_mac_t* *mac)
Free memory of Ethernet MAC.

Return
- ESP_OK: free Ethernet MAC instance successfully
- ESP_FAIL: free Ethernet MAC instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] mac`: Ethernet MAC instance

struct eth_mac_config_t
Configuration of Ethernet MAC object.

Public Members

uint32_t **sw_reset_timeout_ms**
Software reset timeout value (Unit: ms)

uint32_t **rx_task_stack_size**
Stack size of the receive task

uint32_t **rx_task_prio**
Priority of the receive task

int **smi_mdc_gpio_num**
SMI MDC GPIO number, set to -1 could bypass the SMI GPIO configuration

int **smi_mdio_gpio_num**
SMI MDIO GPIO number, set to -1 could bypass the SMI GPIO configuration

uint32_t **flags**
Flags that specify extra capability for mac driver

Macros

ETH_MAC_FLAG_WORK_WITH_CACHE_DISABLE
MAC driver can work when cache is disabled

ETH_MAC_FLAG_PIN_TO_CORE
Pin MAC task to the CPU core where driver installation happened

ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG()
Default configuration for Ethernet MAC object.

Type Definitions

typedef struct *esp_eth_mac_s* **esp_eth_mac_t**
Ethernet MAC.

Header File

- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_phy.h

Functions

esp_eth_phy_t ***esp_eth_phy_new_ip101**(**const** *eth_phy_config_t* **config*)
Create a PHY instance of IP101.

Return
- instance: create PHY instance successfully
- NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] config`: configuration of PHY

esp_eth_phy_t ***esp_eth_phy_new_rtl8201**(**const** *eth_phy_config_t* *config*)*
Create a PHY instance of RTL8201.

Return
- instance: create PHY instance successfully
- NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] config`: configuration of PHY

esp_eth_phy_t ***esp_eth_phy_new_lan8720**(**const** *eth_phy_config_t* *config*)*
Create a PHY instance of LAN8720.

Return
- instance: create PHY instance successfully
- NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] config`: configuration of PHY

esp_eth_phy_t ***esp_eth_phy_new_dp83848**(**const** *eth_phy_config_t* *config*)*
Create a PHY instance of DP83848.

Return
- instance: create PHY instance successfully
- NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] config`: configuration of PHY

esp_eth_phy_t ***esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8041**(**const** *eth_phy_config_t* *config*)*
Create a PHY instance of KSZ8041.

Return
- instance: create PHY instance successfully
- NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] config`: configuration of PHY

esp_eth_phy_t ***esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8081**(**const** *eth_phy_config_t* *config*)*
Create a PHY instance of KSZ8081.

Return
- instance: create PHY instance successfully
- NULL: create PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] config`: configuration of PHY

Structures

struct esp_eth_phy_s
Ethernet PHY.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***set_mediator**)(*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy, *esp_eth_mediator_t* *mediator)
Set mediator for PHY.

Return
- ESP_OK: set mediator for Ethernet PHY instance successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: set mediator for Ethernet PHY instance failed because of some invalid arguments

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance
- `[in] mediator`: mediator of Ethernet driver

esp_err_t (***reset**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Software Reset Ethernet PHY.

Return
- ESP_OK: reset Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: reset Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance

esp_err_t (***reset_hw**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Hardware Reset Ethernet PHY.

Note Hardware reset is mostly done by pull down and up PHY' s nRST pin

Return
- ESP_OK: reset Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: reset Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance

esp_err_t (***init**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Initialize Ethernet PHY.

Return
- ESP_OK: initialize Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: initialize Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance

esp_err_t (***deinit**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Deinitialize Ethernet PHY.

Return
- ESP_OK: deinitialize Ethernet PHY successfully
- ESP_FAIL: deinitialize Ethernet PHY failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phyL`: Ethernet PHY instance

esp_err_t (***negotiate**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Start auto negotiation.

Return
- ESP_OK: restart auto negotiation successfully
- ESP_FAIL: restart auto negotiation failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance

esp_err_t (***get_link**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Get Ethernet PHY link status.

Return
- ESP_OK: get Ethernet PHY link status successfully
- ESP_FAIL: get Ethernet PHY link status failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance

esp_err_t (***pwrctl**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy, bool enable)
Power control of Ethernet PHY.

Return
- ESP_OK: control Ethernet PHY power successfully
- ESP_FAIL: control Ethernet PHY power failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance
- `[in] enable`: set true to power on Ethernet PHY; ser false to power off Ethernet PHY

esp_err_t (***set_addr**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy, uint32_t addr)
Set PHY chip address.

Return
- ESP_OK: set Ethernet PHY address successfully
- ESP_FAIL: set Ethernet PHY address failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance
- `[in] addr`: PHY chip address

esp_err_t (***get_addr**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy, uint32_t *addr)
Get PHY chip address.

Return
- ESP_OK: get Ethernet PHY address successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: get Ethernet PHY address failed because of invalid argument

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance
- `[out] addr`: PHY chip address

esp_err_t (***advertise_pause_ability**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy, uint32_t ability)
Advertise pause function supported by MAC layer.

Return
- ESP_OK: Advertise pause ability successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Advertise pause ability failed because of invalid argument

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance
- `[out] addr`: Pause ability

esp_err_t (***del**) (*esp_eth_phy_t* *phy)
Free memory of Ethernet PHY instance.

Return
- ESP_OK: free PHY instance successfully
- ESP_FAIL: free PHY instance failed because some error occurred

Parameters
- `[in] phy`: Ethernet PHY instance

struct eth_phy_config_t
Ethernet PHY configuration.

Public Members

int32_t **phy_addr**
PHY address, set -1 to enable PHY address detection at initialization stage

uint32_t **reset_timeout_ms**
Reset timeout value (Unit: ms)

uint32_t **autonego_timeout_ms**
Auto-negotiation timeout value (Unit: ms)

int **reset_gpio_num**
Reset GPIO number, -1 means no hardware reset

Macros

ESP_ETH_PHY_ADDR_AUTO

ETH_PHY_DEFAULT_CONFIG()
Default configuration for Ethernet PHY object.

Type Definitions

typedef struct *esp_eth_phy_s* **esp_eth_phy_t**

Ethernet PHY.

Header File

- esp_eth/include/esp_eth_netif_glue.h

Functions

void ***esp_eth_new_netif_glue**(*esp_eth_handle_t eth_hdl*)

Create a netif glue for Ethernet driver.

Note netif glue is used to attach io driver to TCP/IP netif

Return glue object, which inherits esp_netif_driver_base_t

Parameters

- `eth_hdl`: Ethernet driver handle

esp_err_t **esp_eth_del_netif_glue**(void **glue*)

Delete netif glue of Ethernet driver.

Return -ESP_OK: delete netif glue successfully

Parameters

- `glue`: netif glue

esp_err_t **esp_eth_set_default_handlers**(void **esp_netif*)

Register default IP layer handlers for Ethernet.

Note : Ethernet handle might not yet properly initialized when setting up these default handlers

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameter (esp_netif is NULL)
- ESP_OK: set default IP layer handlers successfully
- others: other failure occurred during register esp_event handler

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: esp network interface handle created for Ethernet driver

esp_err_t **esp_eth_clear_default_handlers**(void **esp_netif*)

Unregister default IP layer handlers for Ethernet.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameter (esp_netif is NULL)
- ESP_OK: clear default IP layer handlers successfully
- others: other failure occurred during unregister esp_event handler

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: esp network interface handle created for Ethernet driver

Code examples for the Ethernet API are provided in the ethernet directory of ESP-IDF examples.

2.1.3 IP Network Layer

ESP-NETIF

The purpose of ESP-NETIF library is twofold:

- It provides an abstraction layer for the application on top of the TCP/IP stack. This will allow applications to choose between IP stacks in the future.
- The APIs it provides are thread safe, even if the underlying TCP/IP stack APIs are not.

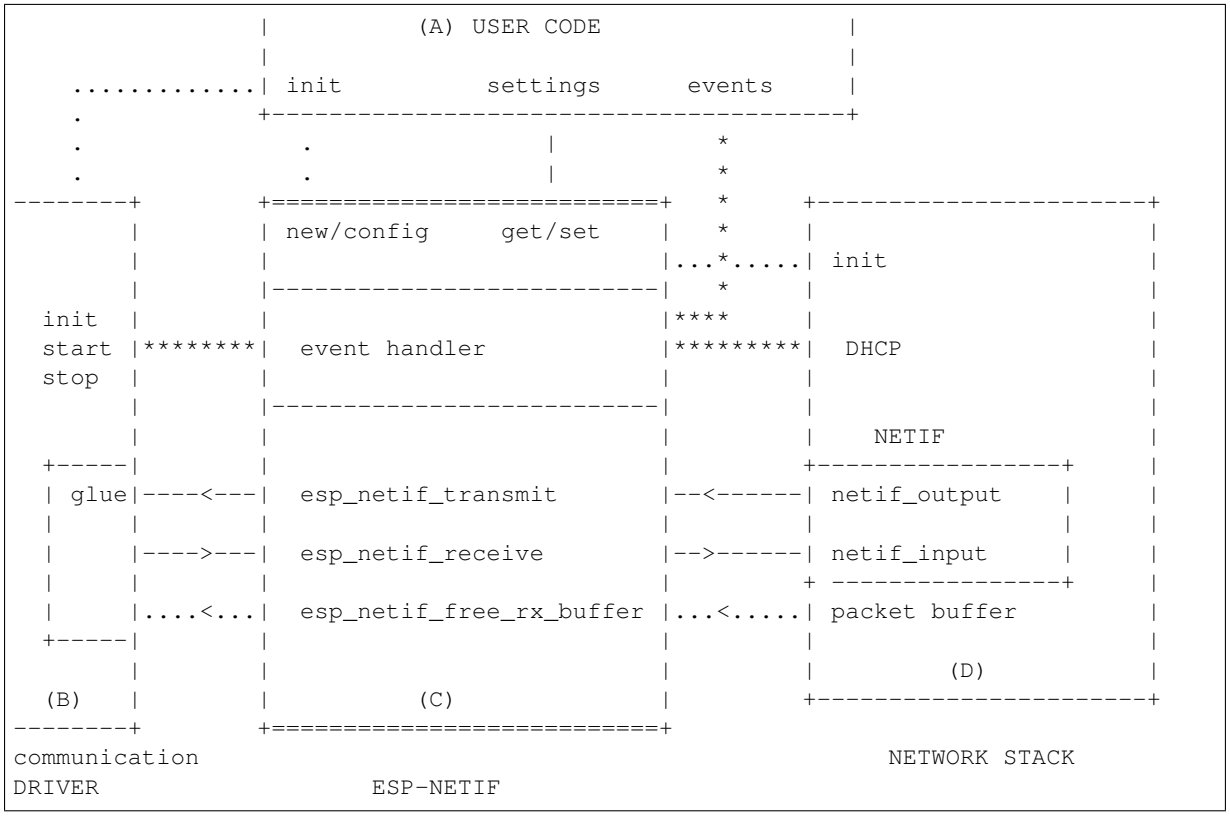
ESP-IDF currently implements ESP-NETIF for the lwIP TCP/IP stack only. However, the adapter itself is TCP/IP implementation agnostic and different implementations are possible.

Some ESP-NETIF API functions are intended to be called by application code, for example to get/set interface IP addresses, configure DHCP. Other functions are intended for internal ESP-IDF use by the network driver layer.

In many cases, applications do not need to call ESP-NETIF APIs directly as they are called from the default network event handlers.

ESP-NETIF component is a successor of the tcpip_adapter, former network interface abstraction, which has become deprecated since IDF v4.1. Please refer to the *TCP/IP Adapter Migration Guide* section in case existing applications to be ported to use the esp-netif API instead.

ESP-NETIF architecture



Data and event flow in the diagram

- `. . . . . .` Initialization line from user code to ESP-NETIF and communication driver
- `--<--->--` Data packets going from communication media to TCP/IP stack and back
- `********` Events aggregated in ESP-NETIF propagates to driver, user code and network stack
- `|` User settings and runtime configuration

ESP-NETIF interaction

A) User code, boiler plate Overall application interaction with a specific IO driver for communication media and configured TCP/IP network stack is abstracted using ESP-NETIF APIs and outlined as below:

A) Initialization code

1) Initializes IO driver
2) Creates a new instance of ESP-NETIF and configure with

- ESP-NETIF specific options (flags, behaviour, name)
- Network stack options (netif init and input functions, not publicly available)
- IO driver specific options (transmit, free rx buffer functions, IO driver handle)

3) Attaches the IO driver handle to the ESP-NETIF instance created in the above steps
4) Configures event handlers

- use default handlers for common interfaces defined in IO drivers; or define a specific handlers for customised behaviour/new interfaces
- register handlers for app related events (such as IP lost/acquired)

B) Interaction with network interfaces using ESP-NETIF API

- Getting and setting TCP/IP related parameters (DHCP, IP, etc)
- Receiving IP events (connect/disconnect)
- Controlling application lifecycle (set interface up/down)

B) Communication driver, IO driver, media driver Communication driver plays these two important roles in relation with ESP-NETIF:

1) Event handlers: Define behaviour patterns of interaction with ESP-NETIF (for example: ethernet link-up -> turn netif on)
2) Glue IO layer: Adapts the input/output functions to use ESP-NETIF transmit, receive and free receive buffer

- Installs driver_transmit to appropriate ESP-NETIF object, so that outgoing packets from network stack are passed to the IO driver
- Calls `esp_netif_receive()` to pass incoming data to network stack

C) ESP-NETIF, former tcpip_adapter ESP-NETIF is an intermediary between an IO driver and a network stack, connecting packet data path between these two. As that it provides a set of interfaces for attaching a driver to ESP-NETIF object (runtime) and configuring a network stack (compile time). In addition to that a set of API is provided to control network interface lifecycle and its TCP/IP properties. As an overview, the ESP-NETIF public interface could be divided into these 6 groups:

1) Initialization APIs (to create and configure ESP-NETIF instance)
2) Input/Output API (for passing data between IO driver and network stack)
3) Event or Action API

- Used for network interface lifecycle management
- ESP-NETIF provides building blocks for designing event handlers

4) Setters and Getters for basic network interface properties
5) Network stack abstraction: enabling user interaction with TCP/IP stack

- Set interface up or down
- DHCP server and client API
- DNS API

6) Driver conversion utilities

D) Network stack Network stack has no public interaction with application code with regard to public interfaces and shall be fully abstracted by ESP-NETIF API.

ESP-NETIF programmer's manual Please refer to the example section for basic initialization of default interfaces:

- WiFi Station: wifi/getting_started/station/main/station_example_main.c
- WiFi Access Point: wifi/getting_started/softAP/main/softap_example_main.c
- Ethernet: ethernet/basic/main/ethernet_example_main.c

For more specific cases please consult this guide: *ESP-NETIF Custom I/O Driver*.

WiFi default initialization The initialization code as well as registering event handlers for default interfaces, such as softAP and station, are provided in two separate APIs to facilitate simple startup code for most applications:

- `esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap()`
- `esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta()`

Please note that these functions return the `esp_netif` handle, i.e. a pointer to a network interface object allocated and configured with default settings, which as a consequence, means that:

- **The created object has to be destroyed if a network de-initialization is provided by an application. The de-initialization**
  - *esp_wifi_clear_default_wifi_driver_and_handlers()* –To unregister default wifi handlers and detach the created object from the wifi
  - *esp_netif_destroy()* –To destroy the `esp_netif` object.
- These *default* interfaces must not be created multiple times, unless the created handle is deleted using *esp_netif_destroy()*.
- When using Wifi in `AP+STA` mode, both these interfaces has to be created.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_netif/include/esp_netif.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_netif_init**(void)

Initialize the underlying TCP/IP stack.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if initializing failed

Note This function should be called exactly once from application code, when the application starts up.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_deinit**(void)

Deinitialize the esp-netif component (and the underlying TCP/IP stack)

Note: Deinitialization is not supported yet

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_netif not initialized
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED otherwise

esp_netif_t ***esp_netif_new**(**const** esp_netif_config_t **esp_netif_config*)

Creates an instance of new esp-netif object based on provided config.

Return
- pointer to esp-netif object on success
- NULL otherwise

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif_config`: pointer esp-netif configuration

void **esp_netif_destroy**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Destroys the esp_netif object.

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: pointer to the object to be deleted

esp_err_t **esp_netif_set_driver_config**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, **const** esp_netif_driver_ifconfig_t **driver_config*)

Configures driver related options of esp_netif object.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS if invalid parameters provided

Parameters
- `[inout] esp_netif`: pointer to the object to be configured
- `[in] driver_config`: pointer esp-netif io driver related configuration

esp_err_t **esp_netif_attach**(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_iodriver_handle *driver_handle*)
Attaches esp_netif instance to the io driver handle.

Calling this function enables connecting specific esp_netif object with already initialized io driver to update esp_netif object with driver specific configuration (i.e. calls post_attach callback, which typically sets io driver callbacks to esp_netif instance and starts the driver)

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DRIVER_ATTACH_FAILED if driver' s pot_attach callback failed

Parameters
- `[inout] esp_netif`: pointer to esp_netif object to be attached
- `[in] driver_handle`: pointer to the driver handle

esp_err_t **esp_netif_receive**(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, void *buffer, size_t *len*, void *eb)
Passes the raw packets from communication media to the appropriate TCP/IP stack.

This function is called from the configured (peripheral) driver layer. The data are then forwarded as frames to the TCP/IP stack.

Return
- ESP_OK

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] buffer`: Received data
- `[in] len`: Length of the data frame
- `[in] eb`: Pointer to internal buffer (used in Wi-Fi driver)

void **esp_netif_action_start**(void *esp_netif, *esp_event_base_t base*, int32_t *event_id*, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver start event Creates network interface, if AUTOUP enabled turns the interface on, if DHCPS enabled starts dhcp server.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `base`:
- `event_id`:
- `data`:

void **esp_netif_action_stop**(void *esp_netif, *esp_event_base_t base*, int32_t *event_id*, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver stop event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `base`:
- `event_id`:
- `data`:

void **esp_netif_action_connected**(void *esp_netif, *esp_event_base_t base*, int32_t *event_id*, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver connected event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `base`:
- `event_id`:
- `data`:

void **esp_netif_action_disconnected**(void *esp_netif, *esp_event_base_t base*, int32_t *event_id*, void *data)
Default building block for network interface action upon IO driver disconnected event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `base`:
- `event_id`:
- `data`:

void **esp_netif_action_got_ip**(void **esp_netif*, *esp_event_base_t base*, int32_t *event_id*, void **data*)

Default building block for network interface action upon network got IP event.

Note This API can be directly used as event handler

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `base`:
- `event_id`:
- `data`:

esp_err_t **esp_netif_set_mac**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, uint8_t *mac*[])

Set the mac address for the interface instance.

Return

- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - mac not supported on this interface

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] mac`: Desired mac address for the related network interface

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_mac**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, uint8_t *mac*[])

Get the mac address for the interface instance.

Return

- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - mac not supported on this interface

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] mac`: Resultant mac address for the related network interface

esp_err_t **esp_netif_set_hostname**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, **const** char **hostname*)

Set the hostname of an interface.

The configured hostname overrides the default configuration value CONFIG_LWIP_LOCAL_HOSTNAME. Please note that when the hostname is altered after interface started/connected the changes would only be reflected once the interface restarts/reconnects

Return

- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS - parameter error

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] hostname`: New hostname for the interface. Maximum length 32 bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_hostname**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, **const** char ***hostname*)

Get interface hostname.

Return

- ESP_OK - success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY - interface status error
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS - parameter error

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

- `[out] hostname`: Returns a pointer to the hostname. May be NULL if no hostname is set. If set non-NULL, pointer remains valid (and string may change if the hostname changes).

bool **esp_netif_is_netif_up**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_)

Test if supplied interface is up or down.

Return
- true - Interface is up
- false - Interface is down

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_ip_info**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, esp_netif_ip_info_t *_ip_info_)

Get interface's IP address information.

If the interface is up, IP information is read directly from the TCP/IP stack. If the interface is down, IP information is read from a copy kept in the ESP-NETIF instance

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] ip_info`: If successful, IP information will be returned in this argument.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_old_ip_info**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, esp_netif_ip_info_t *_ip_info_)

Get interface's old IP information.

Returns an "old" IP address previously stored for the interface when the valid IP changed.

If the IP lost timer has expired (meaning the interface was down for longer than the configured interval) then the old IP information will be zero.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] ip_info`: If successful, IP information will be returned in this argument.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_set_ip_info**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, **const** esp_netif_ip_info_t *_ip_info_)

Set interface's IP address information.

This function is mainly used to set a static IP on an interface.

If the interface is up, the new IP information is set directly in the TCP/IP stack.

The copy of IP information kept in the ESP-NETIF instance is also updated (this copy is returned if the IP is queried while the interface is still down.)

Note DHCP client/server must be stopped (if enabled for this interface) before setting new IP information.

Note Calling this interface for may generate a SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP or SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP event.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_NOT_STOPPED If DHCP server or client is still running

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] ip_info`: IP information to set on the specified interface

esp_err_t **esp_netif_set_old_ip_info**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, **const** esp_netif_ip_info_t *_ip_info_)

Set interface old IP information.

This function is called from the DHCP client (if enabled), before a new IP is set. It is also called from the default handlers for the SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED and SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED events.

Calling this function stores the previously configured IP, which can be used to determine if the IP changes in the future.

If the interface is disconnected or down for too long, the "IP lost timer" will expire (after the configured interval) and set the old IP information to zero.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] ip_info`: Store the old IP information for the specified interface

int **esp_netif_get_netif_impl_index**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_)

Get net interface index from network stack implementation.

Note This index could be used in `setsockopt()` to bind socket with multicast interface
Return implementation specific index of interface represented with supplied esp_netif
Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_netif_impl_name**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, char *_name_)

Get net interface name from network stack implementation.

Note This name could be used in `setsockopt()` to bind socket with appropriate interface
Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] name`: Interface name as specified in underlying TCP/IP stack. Note that the actual name will be copied to the specified buffer, which must be allocated to hold maximum interface name size (6 characters for lwIP)

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcps_option**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, esp_netif_dhcp_option_mode_t _opt_op_, esp_netif_dhcp_option_id_t _opt_id_, void *_opt_val_, uint32_t _opt_len_)

Set or Get DHCP server option.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] opt_op`: ESP_NETIF_OP_SET to set an option, ESP_NETIF_OP_GET to get an option.
- `[in] opt_id`: Option index to get or set, must be one of the supported enum values.
- `[inout] opt_val`: Pointer to the option parameter.
- `[in] opt_len`: Length of the option parameter.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcpc_option**(esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_, esp_netif_dhcp_option_mode_t _opt_op_, esp_netif_dhcp_option_id_t _opt_id_, void *_opt_val_, uint32_t _opt_len_)

Set or Get DHCP client option.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED

- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] opt_op`: ESP_NETIF_OP_SET to set an option, ESP_NETIF_OP_GET to get an option.
- `[in] opt_id`: Option index to get or set, must be one of the supported enum values.
- `[inout] opt_val`: Pointer to the option parameter.
- `[in] opt_len`: Length of the option parameter.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcpc_start** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Start DHCP client (only if enabled in interface object)

Note The default event handlers for the SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED and SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED events call this function.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPC_START_FAILED

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcpc_stop** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Stop DHCP client (only if enabled in interface object)

Note Calling action_netif_stop() will also stop the DHCP Client if it is running.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcpc_get_status** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_netif_dhcp_status_t **status*)

Get DHCP client status.

Return

- ESP_OK

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] status`: If successful, the status of DHCP client will be returned in this argument.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcps_get_status** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_netif_dhcp_status_t **status*)

Get DHCP Server status.

Return

- ESP_OK

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] status`: If successful, the status of the DHCP server will be returned in this argument.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcps_start** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Start DHCP server (only if enabled in interface object)

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_dhcps_stop** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Stop DHCP server (only if enabled in interface object)

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_set_dns_info**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_netif_dns_type_t *type*, esp_netif_dns_info_t **dns*)

Set DNS Server information.

This function behaves differently if DHCP server or client is enabled

If DHCP client is enabled, main and backup DNS servers will be updated automatically from the DHCP lease if the relevant DHCP options are set. Fallback DNS Server is never updated from the DHCP lease and is designed to be set via this API. If DHCP client is disabled, all DNS server types can be set via this API only.

If DHCP server is enabled, the Main DNS Server setting is used by the DHCP server to provide a DNS Server option to DHCP clients (Wi-Fi stations).

- The default Main DNS server is typically the IP of the Wi-Fi AP interface itself.
- This function can override it by setting server type ESP_NETIF_DNS_MAIN.
- Other DNS Server types are not supported for the Wi-Fi AP interface.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS invalid params

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] type`: Type of DNS Server to set: ESP_NETIF_DNS_MAIN, ESP_NETIF_DNS_BACKUP, ESP_NETIF_DNS_FALLBACK
- `[in] dns`: DNS Server address to set

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_dns_info**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_netif_dns_type_t *type*, esp_netif_dns_info_t **dns*)

Get DNS Server information.

Return the currently configured DNS Server address for the specified interface and Server type.

This may be result of a previous call to *esp_netif_set_dns_info()*. If the interface's DHCP client is enabled, the Main or Backup DNS Server may be set by the current DHCP lease.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS invalid params

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] type`: Type of DNS Server to get: ESP_NETIF_DNS_MAIN, ESP_NETIF_DNS_BACKUP, ESP_NETIF_DNS_FALLBACK
- `[out] dns`: DNS Server result is written here on success

esp_err_t **esp_netif_create_ip6_linklocal**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Create interface link-local IPv6 address.

Cause the TCP/IP stack to create a link-local IPv6 address for the specified interface.

This function also registers a callback for the specified interface, so that if the link-local address becomes verified as the preferred address then a SYSTEM_EVENT_GOT_IP6 event will be sent.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_ip6_linklocal** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_ip6_addr_t **if_ip6*)
Get interface link-local IPv6 address.

If the specified interface is up and a preferred link-local IPv6 address has been created for the interface, return a copy of it.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL If interface is down, does not have a link-local IPv6 address, or the link-local IPv6 address is not a preferred address.

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] if_ip6`: IPv6 information will be returned in this argument if successful.

esp_err_t **esp_netif_get_ip6_global** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_ip6_addr_t **if_ip6*)
Get interface global IPv6 address.

If the specified interface is up and a preferred global IPv6 address has been created for the interface, return a copy of it.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL If interface is down, does not have a global IPv6 address, or the global IPv6 address is not a preferred address.

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] if_ip6`: IPv6 information will be returned in this argument if successful.

int **esp_netif_get_all_ip6** (esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_ip6_addr_t *if_ip6*[])
Get all IPv6 addresses of the specified interface.

Return number of returned IPv6 addresses

Parameters
- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[out] if_ip6`: Array of IPv6 addresses will be copied to the argument

void **esp_netif_set_ip4_addr** (esp_ip4_addr_t **addr*, uint8_t *a*, uint8_t *b*, uint8_t *c*, uint8_t *d*)
Sets IPv4 address to the specified octets.

Parameters
- `[out] addr`: IP address to be set
- `a`: the first octet (127 for IP 127.0.0.1)
- `b`:
- `c`:
- `d`:

char ***esp_ip4addr_ntoa** (**const** esp_ip4_addr_t **addr*, char **buf*, int *buflen*)
Converts numeric IP address into decimal dotted ASCII representation.

Return either pointer to buf which now holds the ASCII representation of addr or NULL if buf was too small

Parameters
- `addr`: ip address in network order to convert
- `buf`: target buffer where the string is stored
- `buflen`: length of buf

uint32_t **esp_ip4addr_aton** (**const** char **addr*)
Ascii internet address interpretation routine The value returned is in network order.

Return ip address in network order

Parameters
- `addr`: IP address in ascii representation (e.g. “127.0.0.1”)

esp_err_t **esp_netif_str_to_ip4** (**const** char **src*, esp_ip4_addr_t **dst*)
Converts Ascii internet IPv4 address into esp_ip4_addr_t.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if conversion failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if invalid parameter is passed into

Parameters

- `[in] src`: IPv4 address in ascii representation (e.g. "127.0.0.1")
- `[out] dst`: Address of the target esp_ip4_addr_t structure to receive converted address

esp_err_t **esp_netif_str_to_ip6**(**const** char **src*, esp_ip6_addr_t **dst*)

Converts Ascii internet IPv6 address into esp_ip4_addr_t Zeros in the IP address can be stripped or completely ommited: "2001:db8:85a3:0:0:0:2:1" or "2001:db8::2:1")

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if conversion failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if invalid parameter is passed into

Parameters

- `[in] src`: IPv6 address in ascii representation (e.g. "2001:0db8:85a3:0000:0000:0000:0002:0001")
- `[out] dst`: Address of the target esp_ip6_addr_t structure to receive converted address

esp_netif_iodriver_handle **esp_netif_get_io_driver**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Gets media driver handle for this esp-netif instance.

Return opaque pointer of related IO driver

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_netif_t ***esp_netif_get_handle_from_ifkey**(**const** char **if_key*)

Searches over a list of created objects to find an instance with supplied if key.

Return Handle to esp-netif instance

Parameters

- `if_key`: Textual description of network interface

esp_netif_flags_t **esp_netif_get_flags**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Returns configured flags for this interface.

Return Configuration flags

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

const char ***esp_netif_get_ifkey**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Returns configured interface key for this esp-netif instance.

Return Textual description of related interface

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

const char ***esp_netif_get_desc**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Returns configured interface type for this esp-netif instance.

Return Enumerated type of this interface, such as station, AP, ethernet

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

int **esp_netif_get_route_prio**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*)

Returns configured routing priority number.

Return Integer representing the instance's route-prio, or -1 if invalid paramters

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

int32_t **esp_netif_get_event_id**(esp_netif_t **esp_netif*, esp_netif_ip_event_type_t *event_type*)

Returns configured event for this esp-netif instance and supplied event type.

Return specific event id which is configured to be raised if the interface lost or acquired IP address -1 if supplied event_type is not known

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `event_type`: (either get or lost IP)

esp_netif_t *__esp_netif_next__ (esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_)

Iterates over list of interfaces. Returns first netif if NULL given as parameter.

Return First netif from the list if supplied parameter is NULL, next one otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

size_t __esp_netif_get_nr_of_ifs__ (void)

Returns number of registered esp_netif objects.

Return Number of esp_netifs

void __esp_netif_netstack_buf_ref__ (void *_netstack_buf_)

increase the reference counter of net stack buffer

Parameters

- `[in] netstack_buf`: the net stack buffer

void __esp_netif_netstack_buf_free__ (void *_netstack_buf_)

free the netstack buffer

Parameters

- `[in] netstack_buf`: the net stack buffer

Macros

__ESP_NETIF_SUPPRESS_LEGACY_WARNING_

WiFi default API reference

Header File

- esp_wifi/include/esp_wifi_default.h

Functions

esp_err_t __esp_netif_attach_wifi_station__ (esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_)

Attaches wifi station interface to supplied netif.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if attach failed

Parameters

- `esp_netif`: instance to attach the wifi station to

esp_err_t __esp_netif_attach_wifi_ap__ (esp_netif_t *_esp_netif_)

Attaches wifi soft AP interface to supplied netif.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL if attach failed

Parameters

- `esp_netif`: instance to attach the wifi AP to

esp_err_t __esp_wifi_set_default_wifi_sta_handlers__ (void)

Sets default wifi event handlers for STA interface.

Return

- ESP_OK on success, error returned from esp_event_handler_register if failed

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_set_default_wifi_ap_handlers**(void)
Sets default wifi event handlers for STA interface.

Return
- ESP_OK on success, error returned from esp_event_handler_register if failed

esp_err_t **esp_wifi_clear_default_wifi_driver_and_handlers**(void **esp_netif*)
Clears default wifi event handlers for supplied network interface.

Return
- ESP_OK on success, error returned from esp_event_handler_register if failed

Parameters
- `esp_netif`: instance of corresponding if object

esp_netif_t ***esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap**(void)
Creates default WIFI AP. In case of any init error this API aborts.

Return pointer to esp-netif instance

esp_netif_t ***esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta**(void)
Creates default WIFI STA. In case of any init error this API aborts.

Return pointer to esp-netif instance

esp_netif_t ***esp_netif_create_wifi**(*wifi_interface_t* *wifi_if*, esp_netif_inherent_config_t **esp_netif_config*)
Creates esp_netif WiFi object based on the custom configuration.

Attention This API DOES NOT register default handlers!
Return pointer to esp-netif instance
Parameters
- `[in] wifi_if`: type of wifi interface
- `[in] esp_netif_config`: inherent esp-netif configuration pointer

esp_err_t **esp_netif_create_default_wifi_mesh_netifs**(esp_netif_t **p_netif_sta*, esp_netif_t **p_netif_ap*)
Creates default STA and AP network interfaces for esp-mesh.

Both netifs are almost identical to the default station and softAP, but with DHCP client and server disabled. Please note that the DHCP client is typically enabled only if the device is promoted to a root node.

Returns created interfaces which could be ignored setting parameters to NULL if an application code does not need to save the interface instances for further processing.

Return ESP_OK on success
Parameters
- `[out] p_netif_sta`: pointer where the resultant STA interface is saved (if non NULL)
- `[out] p_netif_ap`: pointer where the resultant AP interface is saved (if non NULL)

TCP/IP Adapter Migration Guide

TCP/IP Adapter is a network interface abstraction component used in IDF prior to v4.1. This page outlines migration from tcpip_adapter API to its successor *ESP-NETIF*.

Updating network connection code

Network stack initialization Simply replace `tcpip_adapter_init()` with `esp_netif_init()`. Please note that the *ESP-NETIF* initialization API returns standard error code and the `esp_netif_deinit()` for un-initialization is available.

Also replace `#include "tcpip_adapter.h"` with `#include "esp_netif.h"`.

Network interface creation TCP/IP Adapter defined these three interfaces statically:

- WiFi Station
- WiFi Access Point
- Ethernet

Network interface instance shall be explicitly constructed for the *ESP-NETIF* to enable its connection to the TCP/IP stack. For example initialization code for WiFi has to explicitly call `esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta();` or `esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap();` after the TCP/IP stack and the event loop have been initialized. Please consult an example initialization code for these three interfaces:

- WiFi Station: wifi/getting_started/station/main/station_example_main.c
- WiFi Access Point: wifi/getting_started/softAP/main/softap_example_main.c
- Ethernet: ethernet/basic/main/ethernet_example_main.c

Replacing other tcpip_adapter API All the tcpip_adapter functions have their esp-netif counter-part. Please refer to the esp_netif.h grouped into these sections:

- Setters/Getters
- DHCP
- DNS
- IP address

Default event handlers Event handlers are moved from tcpip_adapter to appropriate driver code. There is no change from application code perspective, all events shall be handled in the same way. Please note that within IP related event handlers, application code usually receives IP addresses in a form of esp-netif specific struct (not the LwIP structs, but binary compatible). This is the preferred way of printing the address:

```
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "got ip:" IPSTR "\n", IP2STR(&event->ip_info.ip));
```

Instead of

```
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "got ip:%s\n", ip4addr_ntoa(&event->ip_info.ip));
```

Since `ip4addr_ntoa()` is a LwIP API, the esp-netif provides `esp_ip4addr_ntoa()` as a replacement, but the above method is generally preferred.

IP addresses It is preferred to use esp-netif defined IP structures. Please note that the LwIP structs will still work when default compatibility enabled. * esp-netif IP address definitions

Next steps Additional step in porting an application to fully benefit from the *ESP-NETIF* is to disable the tcpip_adapter compatibility layer in the component configuration: `ESP NETIF Adapter` -> `Enable backward compatible tcpip_adapter interface` and check if the project compiles. TCP/IP adapter brings many include dependencies and this step might help in decoupling the application from using specific TCP/IP stack API directly.

ESP-NETIF Custom I/O Driver

This section outlines implementing a new I/O driver with esp-netif connection capabilities. By convention the I/O driver has to register itself as an esp-netif driver and thus holds a dependency on esp-netif component and is responsible for providing data path functions, post-attach callback and in most cases also default event handlers to define network interface actions based on driver's lifecycle transitions.

Packet input/output As shown in the diagram, the following three API functions for the packet data path must be defined for connecting with esp-netif:

- *esp_netif_transmit()*
- *esp_netif_free_rx_buffer()*
- *esp_netif_receive()*

The first two functions for transmitting and freeing the rx buffer are provided as callbacks, i.e. they get called from esp-netif (and its underlying TCP/IP stack) and I/O driver provides their implementation.

The receiving function on the other hand gets called from the I/O driver, so that the driver's code simply calls *esp_netif_receive()* on a new data received event.

Post attach callback A final part of the network interface initialization consists of attaching the esp-netif instance to the I/O driver, by means of calling the following API:

```
esp_err_t esp_netif_attach(esp_netif_t *esp_netif, esp_netif_iodriver_handle␣
↪driver_handle);
```

It is assumed that the `esp_netif_iodriver_handle` is a pointer to driver's object, a struct derived from `struct esp_netif_driver_base_s`, so that the first member of I/O driver structure must be this base structure with pointers to

- post-attach function callback
- related esp-netif instance

As a consequence the I/O driver has to create an instance of the struct per below:

```
typedef struct my_netif_driver_s {
        esp_netif_driver_base_t base;           /*!< base structure reserved as␣
↪esp-netif driver */
        driver_impl             *h;             /*!< handle of driver␣
↪implementation */
    } my_netif_driver_t;
```

with actual values of `my_netif_driver_t::base.post_attach` and the actual drivers handle `my_netif_driver_t::h`. So when the *esp_netif_attach()* gets called from the initialization code, the post-attach callback from I/O driver's code gets executed to mutually register callbacks between esp-netif and I/O driver instances. Typically the driver is started as well in the post-attach callback. An example of a simple post-attach callback is outlined below:

```
static esp_err_t my_post_attach_start(esp_netif_t * esp_netif, void * args)
{
    my_netif_driver_t *driver = args;
    const esp_netif_driver_ifconfig_t driver_ifconfig = {
            .driver_free_rx_buffer = my_free_rx_buf,
            .transmit = my_transmit,
            .handle = driver->driver_impl
    };
    driver->base.netif = esp_netif;
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_netif_set_driver_config(esp_netif, &driver_ifconfig));
    my_driver_start(driver->driver_impl);
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Default handlers I/O drivers also typically provide default definitions of lifecycle behaviour of related network interfaces based on state transitions of I/O drivers. For example *driver start -> network start*, etc. An example of such a default handler is provided below:

```
esp_err_t my_driver_netif_set_default_handlers(my_netif_driver_t *driver, esp_
↪netif_t * esp_netif)
{
    driver_set_event_handler(driver->driver_impl, esp_netif_action_start, MY_DRV_
↪EVENT_START, esp_netif);
    driver_set_event_handler(driver->driver_impl, esp_netif_action_stop, MY_DRV_
↪EVENT_STOP, esp_netif);
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Network stack connection The packet data path functions for transmitting and freeing the rx buffer (defined in the I/O driver) are called from the esp-netif, specifically from its TCP/IP stack connecting layer. The following API reference outlines these network stack interaction with the esp-netif.

Header File

- esp_netif/include/esp_netif_net_stack.h

Functions

esp_netif_t ***esp_netif_get_handle_from_netif_impl**(void *dev*)

Returns esp-netif handle.

Return handle to related esp-netif instance

Parameters

- `[in] dev`: opaque ptr to network interface of specific TCP/IP stack

void ***esp_netif_get_netif_impl**(esp_netif_t *esp_netif*)

Returns network stack specific implementation handle (if supported)

Note that it is not supported to acquire PPP netif impl pointer and this function will return NULL for esp_netif instances configured to PPP mode

Return handle to related network stack netif handle

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance

esp_err_t **esp_netif_transmit**(esp_netif_t *esp_netif*, void *data*, size_t *len*)

Outputs packets from the TCP/IP stack to the media to be transmitted.

This function gets called from network stack to output packets to IO driver.

Return ESP_OK on success, an error passed from the I/O driver otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] data`: Data to be transmitted
- `[in] len`: Length of the data frame

esp_err_t **esp_netif_transmit_wrap**(esp_netif_t *esp_netif*, void *data*, size_t *len*, void *netstack_buf*)

Outputs packets from the TCP/IP stack to the media to be transmitted.

This function gets called from network stack to output packets to IO driver.

Return ESP_OK on success, an error passed from the I/O driver otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] data`: Data to be transmitted
- `[in] len`: Length of the data frame
- `[in] netstack_buf`: net stack buffer

void **esp_netif_free_rx_buffer**(void *esp_netif*, void *buffer*)

Free the rx buffer allocated by the media driver.

This function gets called from network stack when the rx buffer to be freed in IO driver context, i.e. to deallocate a buffer owned by io driver (when data packets were passed to higher levels to avoid copying)

Parameters

- `[in] esp_netif`: Handle to esp-netif instance
- `[in] buffer`: Rx buffer pointer

Code examples for TCP/IP socket APIs are provided in the protocols/sockets directory of ESP-IDF examples.

The TCP/IP Adapter (legacy network interface library) has been deprecated, please consult the *TCP/IP Adapter Migration Guide* to update existing IDF applications.

2.1.4 Application Layer

Documentation for Application layer network protocols (above the IP Network layer) are provided in *Application Protocols*.

2.2 Peripherals API

2.2.1 Analog to Digital Converter

Overview

The ESP32-S2 integrates two 13-bit SAR (Successive Approximation Register) ADCs, supporting a total of 20 measurement channels (analog enabled pins).

The ADC driver API supports ADC1 (10 channels, attached to GPIOs 1 - 10), and ADC2 (10 channels, attached to GPIOs 11 - 20). However, the usage of ADC2 has some restrictions for the application:

1. Different from ADC1, the hardware arbiter function is added to ADC2, so when using the API of ADC2 to obtain the sampling voltage, you need to check whether the reading is successful.

Configuration and Reading ADC

Each ADC unit supports two work modes, ADC-RTC or ADC-DMA mode. ADC-RTC is controlled by the RTC controller and is suitable for low-frequency sampling operations. ADC-DMA is controlled by a digital controller and is suitable for high-frequency continuous sampling actions.

ADC-RTC mode The ADC should be configured before reading is taken.

- For ADC1, configure desired precision and attenuation by calling functions `adc1_config_width()` and `adc1_config_channel_atten()`.
- For ADC2, configure the attenuation by `adc2_config_channel_atten()`. The reading width of ADC2 is configured every time you take the reading.

Attenuation configuration is done per channel, see `adc1_channel_t` and `adc2_channel_t`, set as a parameter of above functions.

Then it is possible to read ADC conversion result with `adc1_get_raw()` and `adc2_get_raw()`. Reading width of ADC2 should be set as a parameter of `adc2_get_raw()` instead of in the configuration functions.

Note: Since the ADC2 is shared with the WIFI module, which has higher priority, reading operation of `adc2_get_raw()` will fail between `esp_wifi_start()` and `esp_wifi_stop()`. Use the return code to see whether the reading is successful.

This API provides convenient way to configure ADC1 for reading from *ULP*. To do so, call function `adc1_ulp_enable()` and then set precision and attenuation as discussed above.

There is another specific function *adc_vref_to_gpio()* used to route internal reference voltage to a GPIO pin. It comes handy to calibrate ADC reading and this is discussed in section *Minimizing Noise*.

Application Examples

Reading voltage on ADC1 channel 0 (GPIO 0):

```
#include <driver/adc.h>

...

    adc1_config_width(ADC_WIDTH_BIT_12);
    adc1_config_channel_atten(ADC1_CHANNEL_0,ADC_ATTEN_DB_0);
    int val = adc1_get_raw(ADC1_CHANNEL_0);
```

The input voltage in the above example is from 0 to 1.1 V (0 dB attenuation). The input range can be extended by setting a higher attenuation, see *adc_atten_t*. An example of using the ADC driver including calibration (discussed below) is available at esp-idf: peripherals/adc

Reading voltage on ADC2 channel 7 (GPIO 0):

```
#include <driver/adc.h>

...

    int read_raw;
    adc2_config_channel_atten( ADC2_CHANNEL_7, ADC_ATTEN_0db );

    esp_err_t r = adc2_get_raw( ADC2_CHANNEL_7, ADC_WIDTH_12Bit, &read_raw);
    if ( r == ESP_OK ) {
        printf("%d\n", read_raw );
    } else if ( r == ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT ) {
        printf("ADC2 used by Wi-Fi.\n");
    }
```

The reading may fail due to collision with Wi-Fi, should check it. An example using the ADC2 driver to read the output of DAC is available in esp-idf: peripherals/adc

The value read in both these examples is 13 bits wide (range 0-8191).

Minimizing Noise

The ESP32-S2 ADC can be sensitive to noise leading to large discrepancies in ADC readings. To minimize noise, users may connect a 0.1uF capacitor to the ADC input pad in use. Multisampling may also be used to further mitigate the effects of noise.

ADC Calibration

The esp_adc_cal/include/esp_adc_cal.h API provides functions to correct for differences in measured voltages caused by variation of ADC reference voltages (Vref) between chips. Per design the ADC reference voltage is 1100 mV, however the true reference voltage can range from 1000 mV to 1200 mV amongst different ESP32-S2s.

Correcting ADC readings using this API involves characterizing one of the ADCs at a given attenuation to obtain a characteristics curve (ADC-Voltage curve) that takes into account the difference in ADC reference voltage. The characteristics curve is in the form of `y = coeff_a * x + coeff_b` and is used to convert ADC readings to voltages in mV. Calculation of the characteristics curve is based on calibration values which can be stored in eFuse or provided by the user.

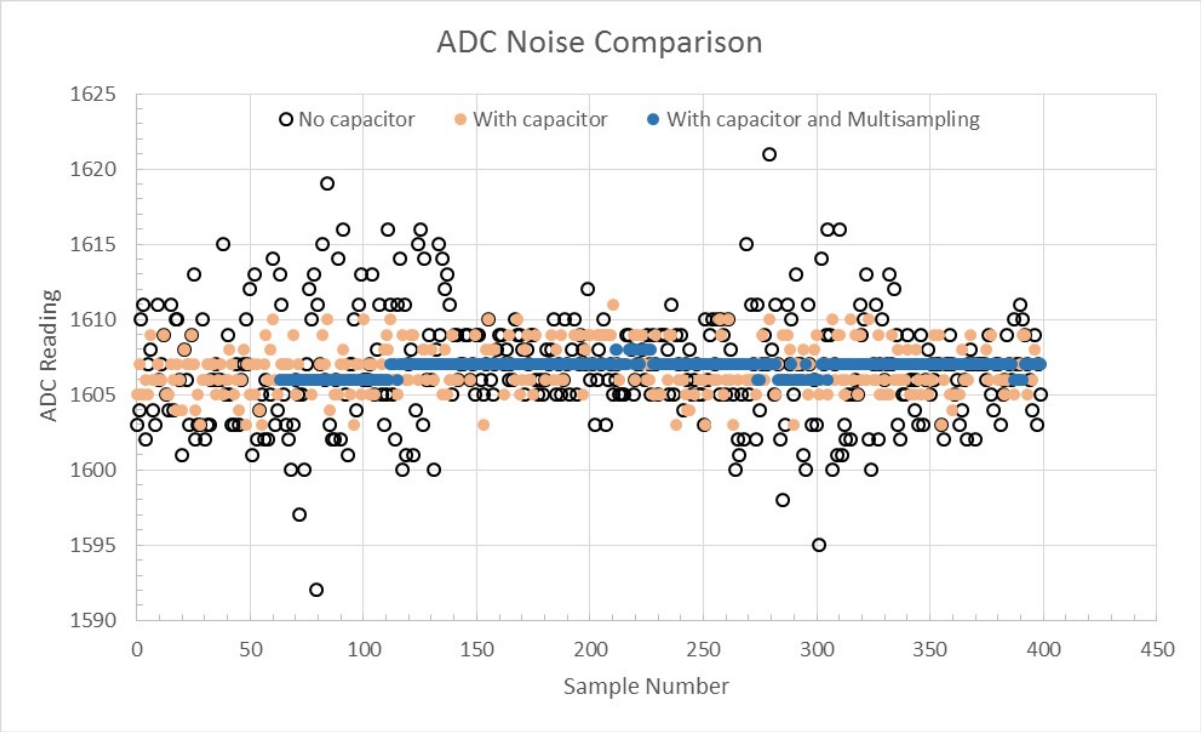


Fig. 5: Graph illustrating noise mitigation using capacitor and multisampling of 64 samples.

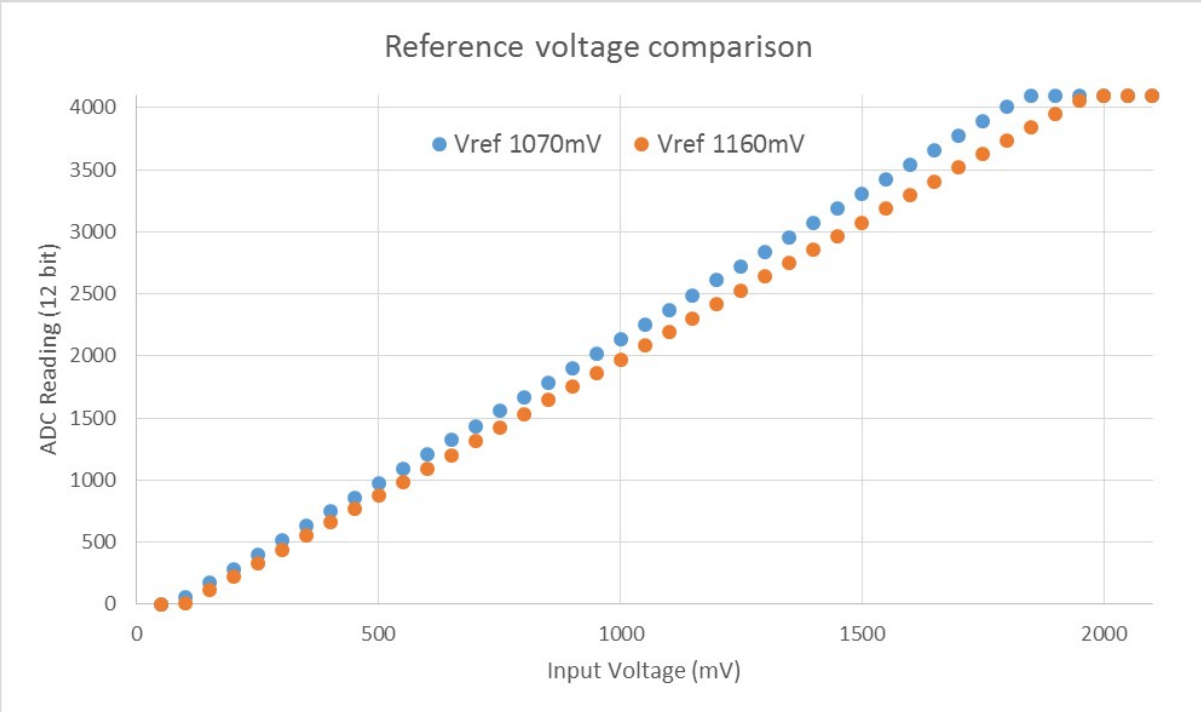


Fig. 6: Graph illustrating effect of differing reference voltages on the ADC voltage curve.

Calibration Values Calibration values are used to generate characteristic curves that account for the variation of ADC reference voltage of a particular ESP32-S2 chip. There are currently three sources of calibration values on ESP32, and one source on ESP32-S2. The availability of these calibration values will depend on the type and production date of the ESP32-S2 chip/module.

- **eFuse Two Point** values calibrates the ADC output at two different voltages. This value is measured and burned into eFuse `BLOCK0` during factory calibration on newly manufactured ESP32-S2 chips and modules. If you would like to purchase chips or modules with calibration, double check with distributor or Espressif directly.

You can verify if **eFuse Two Point** is present by running the espefuse.py tool with `adc_info` parameter

```
$IDF_PATH/components/esptool_py/esptool/espefuse.py --port /dev/ttyUSB0 adc_info
```

Replace `/dev/ttyUSB0` with ESP32-S2 board's port name.

Application Example For a full example see esp-idf: peripherals/adc

Characterizing an ADC at a particular attenuation:

```
#include "driver/adc.h"
#include "esp_adc_cal.h"

...

    //Characterize ADC at particular atten
    esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t *adc_chars = calloc(1, sizeof(esp_adc_cal_
↪characteristics_t));
    esp_adc_cal_value_t val_type = esp_adc_cal_characterize(unit, atten, ADC_WIDTH_
↪BIT_12, DEFAULT_VREF, adc_chars);
    //Check type of calibration value used to characterize ADC
    if (val_type == ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF) {
        printf("eFuse Vref");
    } else if (val_type == ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP) {
        printf("Two Point");
    } else {
        printf("Default");
    }
```

Reading an ADC then converting the reading to a voltage:

```
#include "driver/adc.h"
#include "esp_adc_cal.h"

...
    uint32_t reading =  adc1_get_raw(ADC1_CHANNEL_5);
    uint32_t voltage = esp_adc_cal_raw_to_voltage(reading, adc_chars);
```

Routing ADC reference voltage to GPIO, so it can be manually measured (for **Default Vref**):

```
#include "driver/adc.h"

...

    esp_err_t status = adc_vref_to_gpio(ADC_UNIT_1, GPIO_NUM_25);
    if (status == ESP_OK) {
        printf("v_ref routed to GPIO\n");
    } else {
        printf("failed to route v_ref\n");
    }
```

GPIO Lookup Macros

There are macros available to specify the GPIO number of a ADC channel, or vice versa. e.g.

1. `ADC1_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM` is the GPIO number of ADC1 channel 0 (36);
2. `ADC1_GPIO32_CHANNEL` is the ADC1 channel number of GPIO 32 (ADC1 channel 4).

API Reference

This reference covers three components:

- *ADC driver*
- *ADC Calibration*
- *GPIO Lookup Macros*

ADC driver

Header File

- driver/esp32s2/include/driver/adc.h

Functions

esp_err_t **adc_arbiter_config**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_arbiter_t *config*)

Config ADC module arbiter. The arbiter is to improve the use efficiency of ADC2. After the control right is robbed by the high priority, the low priority controller will read the invalid ADC2 data, and the validity of the data can be judged by the flag bit in the data.

Note Only ADC2 support arbiter.
Note Default priority: Wi-Fi > RTC > Digital;
Note In normal use, there is no need to call this interface to config arbiter.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED ADC unit not support arbiter.

Parameters
- `adc_unit`: ADC unit.
- `config`: Refer to *`adc_arbiter_t`*.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_start**(void)

Enable digital controller to trigger the measurement.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **adc_digi_stop**(void)

Disable digital controller to trigger the measurement.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **adc_digi_filter_reset**(*adc_digi_filter_idx_t idx*)

Reset adc digital controller filter.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `idx`: Filter index.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_filter_set_config**(*adc_digi_filter_idx_t idx*, *adc_digi_filter_t *config*)

Set adc digital controller filter configuration.

Note For ESP32S2, Filter IDX0/IDX1 can only be used to filter all enabled channels of ADC1/ADC2 unit at the same time.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `idx`: Filter index.
- `config`: See *adc_digi_filter_t*.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_filter_get_config**(*adc_digi_filter_idx_t idx*, *adc_digi_filter_t *config*)

Get adc digital controller filter configuration.

Note For ESP32S2, Filter IDX0/IDX1 can only be used to filter all enabled channels of ADC1/ADC2 unit at the same time.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `idx`: Filter index.
- `config`: See *adc_digi_filter_t*.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_filter_enable**(*adc_digi_filter_idx_t idx*, bool *enable*)

Enable/disable adc digital controller filter. Filtering the ADC data to obtain smooth data at higher sampling rates.

Note For ESP32S2, Filter IDX0/IDX1 can only be used to filter all enabled channels of ADC1/ADC2 unit at the same time.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `idx`: Filter index.
- `enable`: Enable/Disable filter.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_monitor_set_config**(*adc_digi_monitor_idx_t idx*, *adc_digi_monitor_t *config*)

Config monitor of adc digital controller.

Note For ESP32S2, The monitor will monitor all the enabled channel data of the each ADC unit at the same time.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `idx`: Monitor index.
- `config`: See *adc_digi_monitor_t*.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_monitor_enable**(*adc_digi_monitor_idx_t idx*, bool *enable*)

Enable/disable monitor of adc digital controller.

Note For ESP32S2, The monitor will monitor all the enabled channel data of the each ADC unit at the same time.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `idx`: Monitor index.
- `enable`: True or false enable monitor.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_intr_enable**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_digi_intr_t intr_mask*)

Enable interrupt of adc digital controller by bitmask.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `adc_unit`: ADC unit.
- `intr_mask`: Interrupt bitmask. See `adc_digi_intr_t`.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_intr_disable**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_digi_intr_t intr_mask*)

Disable interrupt of adc digital controller by bitmask.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `adc_unit`: ADC unit.
- `intr_mask`: Interrupt bitmask. See `adc_digi_intr_t`.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_intr_clear**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_digi_intr_t intr_mask*)

Clear interrupt of adc digital controller by bitmask.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `adc_unit`: ADC unit.
- `intr_mask`: Interrupt bitmask. See `adc_digi_intr_t`.

uint32_t **adc_digi_intr_get_status**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*)

Get interrupt status mask of adc digital controller.

Return

- intr Interrupt bitmask, See `adc_digi_intr_t`.

Parameters

- `adc_unit`: ADC unit.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_isr_register**(void (**fn*)) void *

, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*Register ADC interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Can not find the interrupt that matches the flags.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

Parameters

- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: Parameter for handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

esp_err_t **adc_digi_isr_deregister**(void)

Deregister ADC interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG hander error.
- ESP_FAIL ISR not be registered.

esp_err_t **adc_set_i2s_data_source**(*adc_i2s_source_t src*)

Set I2S data source.

Parameters

- `src`: I2S DMA data source, I2S DMA can get data from digital signals or from ADC.

Return

- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **adc_i2s_mode_init**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_channel_t channel*)

Initialize I2S ADC mode.

Parameters

- `adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `channel`: ADC channel index

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Header File

- hal/include/hal/adc_types.h

Structures

struct adc_digi_pattern_table_t

ADC digital controller (DMA mode) conversion rules setting.

Public Members

uint8_t **atten** : 2

ADC sampling voltage attenuation configuration. Modification of attenuation affects the range of measurements. 0: measurement range 0 - 800mV, 1: measurement range 0 - 1100mV, 2: measurement range 0 - 1350mV, 3: measurement range 0 - 2600mV.

uint8_t **reserved** : 2

reserved0

uint8_t **channel** : 4

ADC channel index.

uint8_t **val**

Raw data value

struct adc_digi_output_data_t

ADC digital controller (DMA mode) output data format. Used to analyze the acquired ADC (DMA) data.

Note ESP32-S2: Member `channel` can be used to judge the validity of the ADC data, because the role of the arbiter may get invalid ADC data.

Public Members

uint16_t **data** : 12

ADC real output data info. Resolution: 12 bit.

ADC real output data info. Resolution: 11 bit.

uint16_t **channel** : 4

ADC channel index info. For ESP32-S2: If (channel < ADC_CHANNEL_MAX), The data is valid. If (channel > ADC_CHANNEL_MAX), The data is invalid.

struct *adc_digi_output_data_t*::**[anonymous]**::**[anonymous] type1**

When the configured output format is 12bit. `ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_12BIT`

uint16_t **unit** : 1

ADC unit index info. 0: ADC1; 1: ADC2.

struct *adc_digi_output_data_t*::**[anonymous]**::**[anonymous] type2**

When the configured output format is 11bit. `ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_11BIT`

uint16_t **val**

Raw data value

struct adc_digi_clk_t

ADC digital controller (DMA mode) clock system setting. Calculation formula: controller_clk = (`APLL` or `APB`) / (div_num + div_a / div_b + 1).

Note : The clocks of the DAC digital controller use the ADC digital controller clock divider.

Public Members

bool **use_apll**
: true: use APLL clock; false: use APB clock.

uint32_t **div_num**
: Division factor. Range: 0 ~ 255. Note: When a higher frequency clock is used (the division factor is less than 9), the ADC reading value will be slightly offset.

uint32_t **div_b**
: Division factor. Range: 1 ~ 63.

uint32_t **div_a**
: Division factor. Range: 0 ~ 63.

struct adc_digi_config_t
: CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_ESP32.

ADC digital controller (DMA mode) configuration parameters.

Example setting: When using ADC1 channel0 to measure voltage, the sampling rate is required to be 1 kHz:

sample rate	1 kHz	1 kHz	1 kHz
conv_mode	single	both	alter
adc1_pattern_len	1	1	1
dig_clk.use_apll	0	0	0
dig_clk.div_num	99	99	99
dig_clk.div_b	0	0	0
dig_clk.div_a	0	0	0
interval	400	400	200
`trigger_meas_freq`	1 kHz	1 kHz	2 kHz

Explanation of the relationship between `conv_limit_num`, `dma_eof_num` and the number of DMA outputs:

conv_mode	single	both	alter
trigger meas times	1	1	1
conv_limit_num	+1	+1	+1
dma_eof_num	+1	+2	+1
dma output (byte)	+2	+4	+2

Public Members

bool **conv_limit_en**
: Enable the function of limiting ADC conversion times. If the number of ADC conversion trigger count is equal to the `limit_num`, the conversion is stopped.

uint32_t **conv_limit_num**
: Set the upper limit of the number of ADC conversion triggers. Range: 1 ~ 255.

uint32_t **adc1_pattern_len**
: Pattern table length for digital controller. Range: 0 ~ 16 (0: Don't change the pattern table setting). The pattern table that defines the conversion rules for each SAR ADC. Each table has 16 items, in which channel selection, resolution and attenuation are stored. When the conversion is started, the controller

reads conversion rules from the pattern table one by one. For each controller the scan sequence has at most 16 different rules before repeating itself.

uint32_t **adc2_pattern_len**
Refer to `adc1_pattern_len`

adc_digi_pattern_table_t ***adc1_pattern**
Pointer to pattern table for digital controller. The table size defined by `adc1_pattern_len`.

adc_digi_pattern_table_t ***adc2_pattern**
Refer to `adc1_pattern`

adc_digi_convert_mode_t **conv_mode**
ADC conversion mode for digital controller. See `adc_digi_convert_mode_t`.

adc_digi_output_format_t **format**
ADC output data format for digital controller. See `adc_digi_output_format_t`.

uint32_t **interval**
The number of interval clock cycles for the digital controller to trigger the measurement. The unit is the divided clock. Range: 40 ~ 4095. Expression: `trigger_meas_freq` = `controller_clk` / 2 / interval. Refer to *`adc_digi_clk_t`*. Note: The sampling rate of each channel is also related to the conversion mode (See `adc_digi_convert_mode_t`) and pattern table settings.

adc_digi_clk_t **dig_clk**
ADC digital controller clock divider settings. Refer to *`adc_digi_clk_t`*. Note: The clocks of the DAC digital controller use the ADC digital controller clock divider.

uint32_t **dma_eof_num**
DMA eof num of adc digital controller. If the number of measurements reaches `dma_eof_num`, then `dma_in_suc_eof` signal is generated in DMA. Note: The converted data in the DMA in link buffer will be multiple of two bytes.

struct adc_arbiter_t
ADC arbiter work mode and priority setting.

Note ESP32-S2: Only ADC2 support arbiter.

Public Members

adc_arbiter_mode_t **mode**
Refer to `adc_arbiter_mode_t`. Note: only support ADC2.

uint8_t **rtc_pri**
RTC controller priority. Range: 0 ~ 2.

uint8_t **dig_pri**
Digital controller priority. Range: 0 ~ 2.

uint8_t **pwdet_pri**
Wi-Fi controller priority. Range: 0 ~ 2.

struct adc_digi_filter_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) filter configuration.

Note For ESP32-S2, The filter object of the ADC is fixed.
Note For ESP32-S2, The filter object is always all enabled channels.

Public Members

adc_unit_t **adc_unit**
Set adc unit number for filter. For ESP32-S2, Filter IDX0/IDX1 can only be used to filter all enabled channels of ADC1/ADC2 unit at the same time.

adc_channel_t **channel**
Set adc channel number for filter. For ESP32-S2, it's always `ADC_CHANNEL_MAX`

adc_digi_filter_mode_t **mode**
Set adc filter mode for filter. See `adc_digi_filter_mode_t`.

struct adc_digi_monitor_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) monitor configuration.

Note For ESP32-S2, The monitor object of the ADC is fixed.
Note For ESP32-S2, The monitor object is always all enabled channels.

Public Members

adc_unit_t **adc_unit**
Set adc unit number for monitor. For ESP32-S2, monitor IDX0/IDX1 can only be used to monitor all enabled channels of ADC1/ADC2 unit at the same time.

adc_channel_t **channel**
Set adc channel number for monitor. For ESP32-S2, it's always `ADC_CHANNEL_MAX`

adc_digi_monitor_mode_t **mode**
Set adc monitor mode. See `adc_digi_monitor_mode_t`.

uint32_t **threshold**
Set monitor threshold of adc digital controller.

Macros

ADC_ARBITER_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
ADC arbiter default configuration.

Note ESP32S2: Only ADC2 supports (needs) an arbiter.

Enumerations

enum adc_unit_t
ADC unit enumeration.

Note For ADC digital controller (DMA mode), ESP32 doesn't support `ADC_UNIT_2`, `ADC_UNIT_BOTH`, `ADC_UNIT_ALTER`.

Values:

ADC_UNIT_1 = 1
SAR ADC 1.

ADC_UNIT_2 = 2
SAR ADC 2.

ADC_UNIT_BOTH = 3
SAR ADC 1 and 2.

ADC_UNIT_ALTER = 7
SAR ADC 1 and 2 alternative mode.

ADC_UNIT_MAX

enum adc_channel_t
ADC channels handle. See `adc1_channel_t`, `adc2_channel_t`.

Note For ESP32 ADC1, don't use `ADC_CHANNEL_8`, `ADC_CHANNEL_9`. See `adc1_channel_t`.

Values:

ADC_CHANNEL_0 = 0
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_1
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_2
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_3
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_4
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_5
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_6
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_7
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_8
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_9
ADC channel

ADC_CHANNEL_MAX

enum adc_atten_t
ADC attenuation parameter. Different parameters determine the range of the ADC. See `adc1_config_channel_atten`.

Values:

ADC_ATTEN_DB_0 = 0
No input attenumation, ADC can measure up to approx. 800 mV.

ADC_ATTEN_DB_2_5 = 1
The input voltage of ADC will be attenuated, extending the range of measurement to up to approx. 1100 mV.

ADC_ATTEN_DB_6 = 2
The input voltage of ADC will be attenuated, extending the range of measurement to up to approx. 1350 mV.

ADC_ATTEN_DB_11 = 3
The input voltage of ADC will be attenuated, extending the range of measurement to up to approx. 2600 mV.

ADC_ATTEN_MAX

enum adc_i2s_source_t
ESP32 ADC DMA source selection.

Values:

ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_IO_SIG = 0
I2S data from GPIO matrix signal

ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_ADC = 1
I2S data from ADC

ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_MAX

enum adc_bits_width_t
ADC resolution setting option.

Values:

ADC_WIDTH_BIT_13 = 4
ADC capture width is 13Bit.

ADC_WIDTH_MAX

enum adc_digi_convert_mode_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) work mode.

Note The conversion mode affects the sampling frequency: SINGLE_UNIT_1: When the measurement is triggered, only ADC1 is sampled once. SINGLE_UNIT_2: When the measurement is triggered, only ADC2 is sampled once. BOTH_UNIT : When the measurement is triggered, ADC1 and ADC2 are sampled at the same time. ALTER_UNIT : When the measurement is triggered, ADC1 or ADC2 samples alternately.

Values:

ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_1 = 1
SAR ADC 1.

ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_2 = 2
SAR ADC 2.

ADC_CONV_BOTH_UNIT = 3
SAR ADC 1 and 2.

ADC_CONV_ALTER_UNIT = 7
SAR ADC 1 and 2 alternative mode.

ADC_CONV_UNIT_MAX

enum adc_digi_output_format_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) output data format option.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_12BIT
ADC to DMA data format, [15:12]-channel, [11: 0]-12 bits ADC data (*adc_digi_output_data_t*). Note: For single convert mode.

ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_11BIT
ADC to DMA data format, [15]-adc unit, [14:11]-channel, [10: 0]-11 bits ADC data (*adc_digi_output_data_t*). Note: For multi or alter convert mode.

ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_MAX

enum adc_digi_intr_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) interrupt type options.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_INTR_MASK_MONITOR = 0x1

ADC_DIGI_INTR_MASK_MEAS_DONE = 0x2

ADC_DIGI_INTR_MASK_ALL = 0x3

enum adc_arbiter_mode_t
ADC arbiter work mode option.

Note ESP32-S2: Only ADC2 support arbiter.

Values:

ADC_ARB_MODE_SHIELD
Force shield arbiter, Select the highest priority controller to work.

ADC_ARB_MODE_FIX
Fixed priority switch controller mode.

ADC_ARB_MODE_LOOP
Loop priority switch controller mode. Each controller has the same priority, and the arbiter will switch to the next controller after the measurement is completed.

enum adc_digi_filter_idx_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) filter index options.

Note For ESP32-S2, The filter object of the ADC is fixed.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IDX0 = 0
The filter index 0. For ESP32-S2, It can only be used to filter all enabled channels of ADC1 unit at the same time.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IDX1
The filter index 1. For ESP32-S2, It can only be used to filter all enabled channels of ADC2 unit at the same time.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IDX_MAX

enum adc_digi_filter_mode_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) filter type options. Expression: filter_data = (k-1)/k * last_data + new_data / k.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_2 = 0
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 2.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_4
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 4.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_8
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 8.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_16
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 16.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_64
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 64.

ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_MAX

enum adc_digi_monitor_idx_t
ADC digital controller (DMA mode) monitor index options.

Note For ESP32-S2, The monitor object of the ADC is fixed.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_IDX0 = 0
The monitor index 0. For ESP32-S2, It can only be used to monitor all enabled channels of ADC1 unit at the same time.

ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_IDX1
The monitor index 1. For ESP32-S2, It can only be used to monitor all enabled channels of ADC2 unit at the same time.

ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_IDX_MAX

enum adc_digi_monitor_mode_t
Set monitor mode of adc digital controller. MONITOR_HIGH:If ADC_OUT > threshold, Generates monitor interrupt. MONITOR_LOW: If ADC_OUT < threshold, Generates monitor interrupt.

Values:

ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_HIGH = 0
If ADC_OUT > threshold, Generates monitor interrupt.

ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_LOW
If ADC_OUT < threshold, Generates monitor interrupt.

ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_MAX

Header File

- driver/include/driver/adc_common.h

Functions

void **adc_power_on**(void)
Enable ADC power.

void **adc_power_off**(void)
Power off SAR ADC.

void **adc_power_acquire**(void)
Increment the usage counter for ADC module. ADC will stay powered on while the counter is greater than 0. Call adc_power_release when done using the ADC.

void **adc_power_release**(void)
Decrement the usage counter for ADC module. ADC will stay powered on while the counter is greater than 0. Call this function when done using the ADC.

esp_err_t **adc_gpio_init**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_channel_t channel*)
Initialize ADC pad.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `channel`: ADC channel index

esp_err_t **adc1_pad_get_io_num**(*adc1_channel_t channel*, *gpio_num_t *gpio_num*)
Get the GPIO number of a specific ADC1 channel.

Return
- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if channel not valid

Parameters
- `channel`: Channel to get the GPIO number
- `gpio_num`: output buffer to hold the GPIO number

esp_err_t **adc1_config_channel_atten**(*adc1_channel_t channel*, *adc_atten_t atten*)
Set the attenuation of a particular channel on ADC1, and configure its associated GPIO pin mux.

The default ADC voltage is for attenuation 0 dB and listed in the table below. By setting higher attenuation it is possible to read higher voltages.

Due to ADC characteristics, most accurate results are obtained within the "suggested range" shown in the following table.

SoC	attenuation (dB)	suggested range (mV)
ESP32	0	100 ~ 950
	2.5	100 ~ 1250
	6	150 ~ 1750

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

ESP32-S2	11	150 ~ 2450
	0	0 ~ 750
	2.5	0 ~ 1050
	6	0 ~ 1300
	11	0 ~ 2500

For maximum accuracy, use the ADC calibration APIs and measure voltages within these recommended ranges.

Note For any given channel, this function must be called before the first time `adc1_get_raw()` is called for that channel.

Note This function can be called multiple times to configure multiple ADC channels simultaneously. You may call `adc1_get_raw()` only after configuring a channel.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `channel`: ADC1 channel to configure
- `atten`: Attenuation level

esp_err_t **adc1_config_width**(*adc_bits_width_t width_bit*)

Configure ADC1 capture width, meanwhile enable output invert for ADC1. The configuration is for all channels of ADC1.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `width_bit`: Bit capture width for ADC1

int **adc1_get_raw**(*adc1_channel_t channel*)

Take an ADC1 reading from a single channel.

Note ESP32: When the power switch of SARADC1, SARADC2, HALL sensor and AMP sensor is turned on, the input of GPIO36 and GPIO39 will be pulled down for about 80ns. When enabling power for any of these peripherals, ignore input from GPIO36 and GPIO39. Please refer to section 3.11 of 'ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32' for the description of this issue. As a workaround, call adc_power_acquire() in the app. This will result in higher power consumption (by ~1mA), but will remove the glitches on GPIO36 and GPIO39.

Note Call `adc1_config_width()` before the first time this function is called.

Note For any given channel, adc1_config_channel_atten(channel) must be called before the first time this function is called. Configuring a new channel does not prevent a previously configured channel from being read.

Return

- -1: Parameter error
- Other: ADC1 channel reading.

Parameters

- `channel`: ADC1 channel to read

esp_err_t **adc_set_data_inv**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, bool *inv_en*)

Set ADC data invert.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `inv_en`: whether enable data invert

esp_err_t **adc_set_clk_div**(uint8_t *clk_div*)

Set ADC source clock.

Return

- ESP_OK success

Parameters

- `clk_div`: ADC clock divider, ADC clock is divided from APB clock

esp_err_t **adc_set_data_width**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *adc_bits_width_t width_bit*)

Configure ADC capture width.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `width_bit`: Bit capture width for ADC unit.

void **adc1_ulp_enable**(void)

Configure ADC1 to be usable by the ULP.

This function reconfigures ADC1 to be controlled by the ULP. Effect of this function can be reverted using `adc1_get_raw()` function.

Note that adc1_config_channel_atten, `adc1_config_width()` functions need to be called to configure ADC1 channels, before ADC1 is used by the ULP.

esp_err_t **adc2_pad_get_io_num**(*adc2_channel_t channel*, *gpio_num_t *gpio_num*)

Get the GPIO number of a specific ADC2 channel.

Return

- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if channel not valid

Parameters

- `channel`: Channel to get the GPIO number
- `gpio_num`: output buffer to hold the GPIO number

esp_err_t **adc2_config_channel_atten**(*adc2_channel_t channel*, *adc_atten_t atten*)

Configure the ADC2 channel, including setting attenuation.

The default ADC voltage is for attenuation 0 dB and listed in the table below. By setting higher attenuation it is possible to read higher voltages.

Due to ADC characteristics, most accurate results are obtained within the "suggested range" shown in the following table.

SoC	attenuation (dB)	suggested range (mV)
ESP32	0	100 ~ 950
	2.5	100 ~ 1250
	6	150 ~ 1750
	11	150 ~ 2450
ESP32-S2	0	0 ~ 750
	2.5	0 ~ 1050

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
|           |       6      |       0 ~ 1300    |
|           +--------------+--------------------+
|           |      11      |       0 ~ 2500    |
+-----------+--------------+--------------------+
```

For maximum accuracy, use the ADC calibration APIs and measure voltages within these recommended ranges.

Note This function also configures the input GPIO pin mux to connect it to the ADC2 channel. It must be called before calling `adc2_get_raw()` for this channel.

Note For any given channel, this function must be called before the first time `adc2_get_raw()` is called for that channel.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `channel`: ADC2 channel to configure
- `atten`: Attenuation level

esp_err_t **adc2_get_raw**(*adc2_channel_t channel*, *adc_bits_width_t width_bit*, int **raw_out*)

Take an ADC2 reading on a single channel.

Note ESP32: When the power switch of SARADC1, SARADC2, HALL sensor and AMP sensor is turned on, the input of GPIO36 and GPIO39 will be pulled down for about 80ns. When enabling power for any of these peripherals, ignore input from GPIO36 and GPIO39. Please refer to section 3.11 of 'ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32' for the description of this issue. As a workaround, call adc_power_acquire() in the app. This will result in higher power consumption (by ~1mA), but will remove the glitches on GPIO36 and GPIO39.

Note ESP32: For a given channel, `adc2_config_channel_atten()` must be called before the first time this function is called. If Wi-Fi is started via `esp_wifi_start()`, this function will always fail with `ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT`.

Note ESP32-S2: ADC2 support hardware arbiter. The arbiter is to improve the use efficiency of ADC2. After the control right is robbed by the high priority, the low priority controller will read the invalid ADC2 data. Default priority: Wi-Fi > RTC > Digital;

Return

- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT ADC2 is being used by other controller and the request timed out.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE The controller status is invalid. Please try again.

Parameters

- `channel`: ADC2 channel to read
- `width_bit`: Bit capture width for ADC2
- `raw_out`: the variable to hold the output data.

esp_err_t **adc_vref_to_gpio**(*adc_unit_t adc_unit*, *gpio_num_t gpio*)

Output ADC1 or ADC2's reference voltage to `adc2_channe_t`'s IO.

This function routes the internal reference voltage of ADCn to one of ADC2's channels. This reference voltage can then be manually measured for calibration purposes.

Note ESP32 only supports output of ADC2's internal reference voltage.

Return

- ESP_OK: v_ref successfully routed to selected GPIO
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Unsupported GPIO

Parameters

- `[in] adc_unit`: ADC unit index
- `[in] gpio`: GPIO number (Only ADC2's channels IO are supported)

esp_err_t **adc2_vref_to_gpio**(*gpio_num_t gpio*)

Output ADC2 reference voltage to `adc2_channe_t`'s IO.

This function routes the internal reference voltage of ADCn to one of ADC2's channels. This reference

voltage can then be manually measured for calibration purposes.

Return
- ESP_OK: v_ref successfully routed to selected GPIO
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Unsupported GPIO

Parameters
- `[in] gpio`: GPIO number (ADC2' s channels are supported)

esp_err_t **adc_digi_init**(void)
ADC digital controller initialization.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **adc_digi_deinit**(void)
ADC digital controller deinitialization.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **adc_digi_controller_config**(**const** *adc_digi_config_t* **config*)
Setting the digital controller.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver state is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG If the combination of arguments is invalid.
- ESP_OK On success

Parameters
- `config`: Pointer to digital controller paramter. Refer to *adc_digi_config_t*.

Macros

ADC_ATTEN_0db
ADC rtc controller attenuation option.

Note This definitions are only for being back-compatible

ADC_ATTEN_2_5db

ADC_ATTEN_6db

ADC_ATTEN_11db

ADC_WIDTH_BIT_DEFAULT
The default (max) bit width of the ADC of current version. You can also get the maximum bitwidth by `SOC_ADC_MAX_BITWIDTH` defined in soc_caps.h.

ADC_WIDTH_9Bit

ADC_WIDTH_10Bit

ADC_WIDTH_11Bit

ADC_WIDTH_12Bit

Enumerations

enum adc1_channel_t
Values:

ADC1_CHANNEL_0 = 0
ADC1 channel 0 is GPIO1

ADC1_CHANNEL_1
ADC1 channel 1 is GPIO2

ADC1_CHANNEL_2
ADC1 channel 2 is GPIO3

ADC1_CHANNEL_3
ADC1 channel 3 is GPIO4

ADC1_CHANNEL_4
ADC1 channel 4 is GPIO5

ADC1_CHANNEL_5
ADC1 channel 5 is GPIO6

ADC1_CHANNEL_6
ADC1 channel 6 is GPIO7

ADC1_CHANNEL_7
ADC1 channel 7 is GPIO8

ADC1_CHANNEL_8
ADC1 channel 6 is GPIO9

ADC1_CHANNEL_9
ADC1 channel 7 is GPIO10

ADC1_CHANNEL_MAX

enum adc2_channel_t
Values:

ADC2_CHANNEL_0 = 0
ADC2 channel 0 is GPIO4 (ESP32), GPIO11 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_1
ADC2 channel 1 is GPIO0 (ESP32), GPIO12 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_2
ADC2 channel 2 is GPIO2 (ESP32), GPIO13 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_3
ADC2 channel 3 is GPIO15 (ESP32), GPIO14 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_4
ADC2 channel 4 is GPIO13 (ESP32), GPIO15 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_5
ADC2 channel 5 is GPIO12 (ESP32), GPIO16 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_6
ADC2 channel 6 is GPIO14 (ESP32), GPIO17 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_7
ADC2 channel 7 is GPIO27 (ESP32), GPIO18 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_8
ADC2 channel 8 is GPIO25 (ESP32), GPIO19 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_9
ADC2 channel 9 is GPIO26 (ESP32), GPIO20 (ESP32-S2)

ADC2_CHANNEL_MAX

enum adc_i2s_encode_t
ADC digital controller encode option.

Values:

ADC_ENCODE_12BIT
ADC to DMA data format, , [15:12]-channel [11:0]-12 bits ADC data

ADC_ENCODE_11BIT
ADC to DMA data format, [15]-unit, [14:11]-channel [10:0]-11 bits ADC data

ADC_ENCODE_MAX

ADC Calibration

Header File

- esp_adc_cal/include/esp_adc_cal.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_adc_cal_check_efuse**(*esp_adc_cal_value_t value_type*)

Checks if ADC calibration values are burned into eFuse.

This function checks if ADC reference voltage or Two Point values have been burned to the eFuse of the current ESP32

Note in ESP32S2, only ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP is supported. Some old ESP32S2s do not support this, either. In which case you have to calibrate it manually, possibly by performing your own two-point calibration on the chip.

Return

- ESP_OK: The calibration mode is supported in eFuse
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Error, eFuse values are not burned
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error, invalid argument (ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF)

Parameters

- `value_type`: Type of calibration value (ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF or ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP)

esp_adc_cal_value_t **esp_adc_cal_characterize**(*adc_unit_t adc_num*, *adc_atten_t atten*, *adc_bits_width_t bit_width*, uint32_t *default_vref*, *esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t* **chars*)

Characterize an ADC at a particular attenuation.

This function will characterize the ADC at a particular attenuation and generate the ADC-Voltage curve in the form of [y = coeff_a * x + coeff_b]. Characterization can be based on Two Point values, eFuse Vref, or default Vref and the calibration values will be prioritized in that order.

Note For ESP32, Two Point values and eFuse Vref calibration can be enabled/disabled using menuconfig. For ESP32s2, only Two Point values calibration and only ADC_WIDTH_BIT_13 is supported. The parameter default_vref is unused.

Return

- ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF: eFuse Vref used for characterization
- ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP: Two Point value used for characterization (only in Linear Mode)
- ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF: Default Vref used for characterization

Parameters

- `[in] adc_num`: ADC to characterize (ADC_UNIT_1 or ADC_UNIT_2)
- `[in] atten`: Attenuation to characterize
- `[in] bit_width`: Bit width configuration of ADC
- `[in] default_vref`: Default ADC reference voltage in mV (Only in ESP32, used if eFuse values is not available)
- `[out] chars`: Pointer to empty structure used to store ADC characteristics

uint32_t **esp_adc_cal_raw_to_voltage**(uint32_t *adc_reading*, **const** *esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t* **chars*)

Convert an ADC reading to voltage in mV.

This function converts an ADC reading to a voltage in mV based on the ADC' s characteristics.

Note Characteristics structure must be initialized before this function is called (call esp_adc_cal_characterize())

Return Voltage in mV

Parameters

- `[in] adc_reading`: ADC reading
- `[in] chars`: Pointer to initialized structure containing ADC characteristics

esp_err_t **esp_adc_cal_get_voltage**(*adc_channel_t channel*, **const** *esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t* *chars, uint32_t *voltage)

Reads an ADC and converts the reading to a voltage in mV.

This function reads an ADC then converts the raw reading to a voltage in mV based on the characteristics provided. The ADC that is read is also determined by the characteristics.

Note The Characteristics structure must be initialized before this function is called (call esp_adc_cal_characterize())

Return

- ESP_OK: ADC read and converted to mV
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Error, timed out attempting to read ADC
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error due to invalid arguments

Parameters

- `[in] channel`: ADC Channel to read
- `[in] chars`: Pointer to initialized ADC characteristics structure
- `[out] voltage`: Pointer to store converted voltage

Structures

struct esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t

Structure storing characteristics of an ADC.

Note Call esp_adc_cal_characterize() to initialize the structure

Public Members

adc_unit_t **adc_num**

ADC number

adc_atten_t **atten**

ADC attenuation

adc_bits_width_t **bit_width**

ADC bit width

uint32_t **coeff_a**

Gradient of ADC-Voltage curve

uint32_t **coeff_b**

Offset of ADC-Voltage curve

uint32_t **vref**

Vref used by lookup table

const uint32_t ***low_curve**

Pointer to low Vref curve of lookup table (NULL if unused)

const uint32_t ***high_curve**

Pointer to high Vref curve of lookup table (NULL if unused)

Enumerations

enum esp_adc_cal_value_t

Type of calibration value used in characterization.

Values:

ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF = 0

Characterization based on reference voltage stored in eFuse

ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP = 1

Characterization based on Two Point values stored in eFuse

ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF = 2
Characterization based on default reference voltage

ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_MAX

ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_NOT_SUPPORTED = *ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_MAX*

GPIO Lookup Macros

Header File

- soc/esp32s2/include/soc/adc_channel.h

Macros

ADC1_GPIO1_CHANNEL
ADC1_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO2_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO3_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO4_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO5_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO6_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO7_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO8_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO9_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_8_GPIO_NUM

ADC1_GPIO10_CHANNEL

ADC1_CHANNEL_9_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO11_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO12_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO13_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO14_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO15_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO16_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO17_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO18_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO19_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_8_GPIO_NUM

ADC2_GPIO20_CHANNEL

ADC2_CHANNEL_9_GPIO_NUM

2.2.2 Digital To Analog Converter

Overview

ESP32-S2 has two 8-bit DAC (digital to analog converter) channels, connected to GPIO17 (Channel 1) and GPIO18 (Channel 2).

The DAC driver allows these channels to be set to arbitrary voltages.

The DAC channels can also be driven with DMA-style written sample data by the digital controller, however the driver does not supported this yet.

For other analog output options, see the *Sigma-delta Modulation module* and the *LED Control module*. Both these modules produce high frequency PWM output, which can be hardware low-pass filtered in order to generate a lower frequency analog output.

Application Example

Setting DAC channel 1 (GPIO17) voltage to approx 0.78 of VDD_A voltage (VDD * 200 / 255). For VDD_A 3.3V, this is 2.59V:

```
#include <driver/dac.h>

...

    dac_output_enable(DAC_CHANNEL_1);
    dac_output_voltage(DAC_CHANNEL_1, 200);
```

API Reference

Header File

- driver/esp32s2/include/driver/dac.h

Functions

esp_err_t **dac_digi_init** (void)

DAC digital controller initialization.

Return

- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_digi_deinit**(void)
DAC digital controller deinitialization.

Return
- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_digi_controller_config**(**const** *dac_digi_config_t* *cfg)
Setting the DAC digital controller.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `cfg`: Pointer to digital controller paramter. See *dac_digi_config_t*.

esp_err_t **dac_digi_start**(void)
DAC digital controller start output voltage.

Return
- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_digi_stop**(void)
DAC digital controller stop output voltage.

Return
- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_digi_fifo_reset**(void)
Reset DAC digital controller FIFO.

Return
- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_digi_reset**(void)
Reset DAC digital controller.

Return
- ESP_OK success

Header File

- driver/include/driver/dac_common.h

Functions

esp_err_t **dac_pad_get_io_num**(*dac_channel_t channel*, *gpio_num_t* *gpio_num)
Get the GPIO number of a specific DAC channel.

Return
- ESP_OK if success

Parameters
- `channel`: Channel to get the gpio number
- `gpio_num`: output buffer to hold the gpio number

esp_err_t **dac_output_voltage**(*dac_channel_t channel*, uint8_t *dac_value*)
Set DAC output voltage. DAC output is 8-bit. Maximum (255) corresponds to VDD3P3_RTC.

Note Need to configure DAC pad before calling this function. DAC channel 1 is attached to GPIO25, DAC channel 2 is attached to GPIO26

Return
- ESP_OK success

Parameters
- `channel`: DAC channel
- `dac_value`: DAC output value

esp_err_t **dac_output_enable**(*dac_channel_t channel*)
DAC pad output enable.

Note DAC channel 1 is attached to GPIO25, DAC channel 2 is attached to GPIO26 I2S left channel will be mapped to DAC channel 2 I2S right channel will be mapped to DAC channel 1

Parameters
- `channel`: DAC channel

esp_err_t **dac_output_disable**(*dac_channel_t channel*)
DAC pad output disable.

Note DAC channel 1 is attached to GPIO25, DAC channel 2 is attached to GPIO26

Return
- ESP_OK success

Parameters
- `channel`: DAC channel

esp_err_t **dac_cw_generator_enable**(void)
Enable cosine wave generator output.

Return
- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_cw_generator_disable**(void)
Disable cosine wave generator output.

Return
- ESP_OK success

esp_err_t **dac_cw_generator_config**(*dac_cw_config_t* *cw)
Config the cosine wave generator function in DAC module.

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG The parameter is NULL.

Parameters
- `cw`: Configuration.

GPIO Lookup Macros Some useful macros can be used to specified the GPIO number of a DAC channel, or vice versa. e.g.

1. `DAC_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM` is the GPIO number of channel 1 (GPIO17);
2. `DAC_GPIO18_CHANNEL` is the channel number of GPIO 26 (channel 2).

Header File

- soc/esp32s2/include/soc/dac_channel.h

Macros

DAC_GPIO17_CHANNEL
DAC_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM

DAC_GPIO18_CHANNEL

DAC_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM

Header File

- hal/include/hal/dac_types.h

Structures

struct dac_cw_config_t

Config the cosine wave generator function in DAC module.

Public Members

dac_channel_t **en_ch**

Enable the cosine wave generator of DAC channel.

dac_cw_scale_t **scale**

Set the amplitude of the cosine wave generator output.

dac_cw_phase_t **phase**

Set the phase of the cosine wave generator output.

uint32_t **freq**

Set frequency of cosine wave generator output. Range: 130(130Hz) ~ 55000(100KHz).

int8_t **offset**

Set the voltage value of the DC component of the cosine wave generator output. Note: Unreasonable settings can cause waveform to be oversaturated. Range: -128 ~ 127.

struct dac_digi_config_t

DAC digital controller (DMA mode) configuration parameters.

Public Members

dac_digi_convert_mode_t **mode**

DAC digital controller (DMA mode) work mode. See `dac_digi_convert_mode_t`.

uint32_t **interval**

The number of interval clock cycles for the DAC digital controller to output voltage. The unit is the divided clock. Range: 1 ~ 4095. Expression: `dac_output_freq` = `controller_clk` / interval. Refer to *`adc_digi_clk_t`*. Note: The sampling rate of each channel is also related to the conversion mode (See `dac_digi_convert_mode_t`) and pattern table settings.

adc_digi_clk_t **dig_clk**

DAC digital controller clock divider settings. Refer to *`adc_digi_clk_t`*. Note: The clocks of the DAC digital controller use the ADC digital controller clock divider.

Enumerations

enum dac_channel_t

Values:

DAC_CHANNEL_1 = 0

DAC channel 1 is GPIO25(ESP32) / GPIO17(ESP32S2)

DAC_CHANNEL_2 = 1

DAC channel 2 is GPIO26(ESP32) / GPIO18(ESP32S2)

DAC_CHANNEL_MAX

enum dac_cw_scale_t

The multiple of the amplitude of the cosine wave generator. The max amplitude is VDD3P3_RTC.

Values:

DAC_CW_SCALE_1 = 0x0

1/1. Default.

DAC_CW_SCALE_2 = 0x1

1/2.

DAC_CW_SCALE_4 = 0x2
1/4.

DAC_CW_SCALE_8 = 0x3
1/8.

enum dac_cw_phase_t
Set the phase of the cosine wave generator output.

Values:

DAC_CW_PHASE_0 = 0x2
Phase shift +0°

DAC_CW_PHASE_180 = 0x3
Phase shift +180°

enum dac_digi_convert_mode_t
DAC digital controller (DMA mode) work mode.

Values:

DAC_CONV_NORMAL
The data in the DMA buffer is simultaneously output to the enable channel of the DAC.

DAC_CONV_ALTER
The data in the DMA buffer is alternately output to the enable channel of the DAC.

DAC_CONV_MAX

2.2.3 General Purpose Timer

Introduction

The ESP32-S2 chip contains two hardware timer groups. Each group has two general-purpose hardware timers. They are all 64-bit generic timers based on 16-bit pre-scalers and 64-bit up / down counters which are capable of being auto-reloaded.

Functional Overview

The following sections of this document cover the typical steps to configure and operate a timer:

- *Timer Initialization* - covers which parameters should be set up to get the timer working, and also what specific functionality is provided depending on the timer configuration.
- *Timer Control* - describes how to read a timer's value, pause or start a timer, and change how it operates.
- *Alarms* - shows how to set and use alarms.
- *Interrupts*- explains how to use interrupt callbacks.

Timer Initialization The two ESP32-S2 timer groups, with two timers in each, provide the total of four individual timers for use. An ESP32-S2 timer group should be identified using `timer_group_t`. An individual timer in a group should be identified with `timer_idx_t`.

First of all, the timer should be initialized by calling the function `timer_init()` and passing a structure `timer_config_t` to it to define how the timer should operate. In particular, the following timer parameters can be set:

- **Clock Source**: Select the clock source, which together with the **Divider** define the resolution of the working timer. By default the clock source is APB_CLK (typically 80 MHz).
- **Divider**: Sets how quickly the timer's counter is "ticking". The setting `divider` is used as a divisor of the clock source.
- **Mode**: Sets if the counter should be incrementing or decrementing. It can be defined using `counter_dir` by selecting one of the values from `timer_count_dir_t`.

- **Counter Enable**: If the counter is enabled, it will start incrementing / decrementing immediately after calling `timer_init()`. You can change the behavior with `counter_en` by selecting one of the values from `timer_start_t`.
- **Alarm Enable**: Can be set using `alarm_en`.
- **Auto Reload**: Sets if the counter should `auto_reload` the initial counter value on the timer's alarm or continue incrementing or decrementing.

To get the current values of the timer's settings, use the function `timer_get_config()`.

Timer Control Once the timer is enabled, its counter starts running. To enable the timer, call the function `timer_init()` with `counter_en` set to `true`, or call `timer_start()`. You can specify the timer's initial counter value by calling `timer_set_counter_value()`. To check the timer's current value, call `timer_get_counter_value()` or `timer_get_counter_time_sec()`.

To pause the timer at any time, call `timer_pause()`. To resume it, call `timer_start()`.

To reconfigure the timer, you can call `timer_init()`. This function is described in Section *Timer Initialization*.

You can also reconfigure the timer by using dedicated functions to change individual settings:

Setting	Dedicated Function	Description
Divider	`timer_set_divider()`	Change the rate of ticking. To avoid unpredictable results, the timer should be paused when changing the divider. If the timer is running, `timer_set_divider()` pauses it, change the setting, and start the timer again.
Mode	`timer_set_counter_mode()`	Set if the counter should be incrementing or decrementing
Auto Reload	`timer_set_auto_reload()`	Set if the initial counter value should be reloaded on the timer's alarm

Alarms To set an alarm, call the function `timer_set_alarm_value()` and then enable the alarm using `timer_set_alarm()`. The alarm can also be enabled during the timer initialization stage, when `timer_init()` is called.

After the alarm is enabled, and the timer reaches the alarm value, the following two actions can occur depending on the configuration:

- An interrupt will be triggered if previously configured. See Section *Interrupts* on how to configure interrupts.
- When `auto_reload` is enabled, the timer's counter will automatically be reloaded to start counting again from a previously configured value. This value should be set in advance with `timer_set_counter_value()`.

Note:

- If an alarm value is set and the timer has already reached this value, the alarm is triggered immediately.
- Once triggered, the alarm is disabled automatically and needs to be re-enabled to trigger again.

To check the specified alarm value, call `timer_get_alarm_value()`.

Interrupts Registration of an interrupt callback for a specific timer can be done by calling `timer_isr_callback_add()` and passing in the group ID, timer ID, callback handler and user data. The callback handler will be invoked in ISR context, so user shouldn't put any blocking API in the callback function. The benefit of using interrupt callback instead of precessing interrupt from scratch is, you don't have to deal with interrupt status check and clean stuffs, they are all addressed before the callback got run in driver's default interrupt handler.

For more information on how to use interrupts, please see the application example below.

Application Example

The 64-bit hardware timer example: peripherals/timer_group.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/timer.h

Functions

esp_err_t **timer_get_counter_value**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, uint64_t **timer_val*)

Read the counter value of hardware timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `timer_val`: Pointer to accept timer counter value.

esp_err_t **timer_get_counter_time_sec**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, double **time*)

Read the counter value of hardware timer, in unit of a given scale.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `time`: Pointer, type of double*, to accept timer counter value, in seconds.

esp_err_t **timer_set_counter_value**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, uint64_t *load_val*)

Set counter value to hardware timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `load_val`: Counter value to write to the hardware timer.

esp_err_t **timer_start**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)

Start the counter of hardware timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]

esp_err_t **timer_pause**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)

Pause the counter of hardware timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]

esp_err_t **timer_set_counter_mode**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, *timer_count_dir_t counter_dir*)

Set counting mode for hardware timer.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `counter_dir`: Counting direction of timer, count-up or count-down

esp_err_t **timer_set_auto_reload**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, *timer_autoreload_t reload*)

Enable or disable counter reload function when alarm event occurs.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `reload`: Counter reload mode.

esp_err_t **timer_set_divider**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, uint32_t *divider*)

Set hardware timer source clock divider. Timer groups clock are divider from APB clock.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `divider`: Timer clock divider value. The divider' s range is from from 2 to 65536.

esp_err_t **timer_set_alarm_value**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, uint64_t *alarm_value*)

Set timer alarm value.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `alarm_value`: A 64-bit value to set the alarm value.

esp_err_t **timer_get_alarm_value**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, uint64_t **alarm_value*)

Get timer alarm value.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `alarm_value`: Pointer of A 64-bit value to accept the alarm value.

esp_err_t **timer_set_alarm**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, *timer_alarm_t alarm_en*)

Enable or disable generation of timer alarm events.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `alarm_en`: To enable or disable timer alarm function.

esp_err_t **timer_isr_callback_add**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, *timer_isr_t isr_handler*, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*)

Add ISR handle callback for the corresponding timer.

The callback should return a bool value to determine whether need to do YIELD at the end of the ISR.

Note This ISR handler will be called from an ISR. This ISR handler do not need to handle interrupt status, and should be kept short. If you want to realize some specific applications or write the whole ISR, you can call timer_isr_register(⋯) to register ISR.

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number
- `timer_num`: Timer index of timer group
- `isr_handler`: Interrupt handler function, it is a callback function.
- `arg`: Parameter for handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

If the intr_alloc_flags value ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is set, the handler function must be declared with IRAM_ATTR attribute and can only call functions in IRAM or ROM. It cannot call other timer APIs.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

esp_err_t **timer_isr_callback_remove**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)

Remove ISR handle callback for the corresponding timer.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number
- `timer_num`: Timer index of timer group

esp_err_t **timer_isr_register**(*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, void (**fn*)) void *

, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *timer_isr_handle_t *handle*Register Timer interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

If the intr_alloc_flags value ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is set, the handler function must be declared with IRAM_ATTR attribute and can only call functions in IRAM or ROM. It cannot call other timer APIs. Use direct register access to configure timers from inside the ISR in this case.

Note If use this function to reigster ISR, you need to write the whole ISR. In the interrupt handler, you need to call timer_spinlock_take(..) before your handling, and call timer_spinlock_give(⋯) after your handling.

Parameters

- `group_num`: Timer group number
- `timer_num`: Timer index of timer group
- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: Parameter for handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

esp_err_t **timer_init** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, **const** *timer_config_t *config*)
Initializes and configure the timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `config`: Pointer to timer initialization parameters.

esp_err_t **timer_deinit** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Deinitializes the timer.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]

esp_err_t **timer_get_config** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, *timer_config_t *config*)
Get timer configure value.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index, 0 for hw_timer[0] & 1 for hw_timer[1]
- `config`: Pointer of struct to accept timer parameters.

esp_err_t **timer_group_intr_enable** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_intr_t intr_mask*)
Enable timer group interrupt, by enable mask.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `intr_mask`: Timer interrupt enable mask.
  - TIMER_INTR_T0: t0 interrupt
  - TIMER_INTR_T1: t1 interrupt
  - TIMER_INTR_WDT: watchdog interrupt

esp_err_t **timer_group_intr_disable** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_intr_t intr_mask*)
Disable timer group interrupt, by disable mask.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `intr_mask`: Timer interrupt disable mask.
  - TIMER_INTR_T0: t0 interrupt
  - TIMER_INTR_T1: t1 interrupt
  - TIMER_INTR_WDT: watchdog interrupt

esp_err_t **timer_enable_intr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Enable timer interrupt.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.

esp_err_t **timer_disable_intr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Disable timer interrupt.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.

void **timer_group_intr_clr_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Clear timer interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.

void **timer_group_clr_intr_status_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Clear timer interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.

void **timer_group_enable_alarm_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Enable alarm interrupt, just used in ISR.

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.

uint64_t **timer_group_get_counter_value_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)
Get the current counter value, just used in ISR.

Return
- Counter value

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.

void **timer_group_set_alarm_value_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, uint64_t *alarm_val*)
Set the alarm threshold for the timer, just used in ISR.

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index.
- `alarm_val`: Alarm threshold.

void **timer_group_set_counter_enable_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*, *timer_start_t counter_en*)
Enable/disable a counter, just used in ISR.

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

- `timer_num`: Timer index.
- `counter_en`: Enable/disable.

timer_intr_t **timer_group_intr_get_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*)

Get the masked interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Return
- Interrupt status

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

uint32_t **timer_group_get_intr_status_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*)

Get interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Return
- Interrupt status

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

void **timer_group_clr_intr_sta_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_intr_t intr_mask*)

Clear the masked interrupt status, just used in ISR.

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `intr_mask`: Masked interrupt.

bool **timer_group_get_auto_reload_in_isr** (*timer_group_t group_num*, *timer_idx_t timer_num*)

Get auto reload enable status, just used in ISR.

Return
- True Auto reload enabled
- False Auto reload disabled

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1
- `timer_num`: Timer index

esp_err_t **timer_spinlock_take** (*timer_group_t group_num*)

Take timer spinlock to enter critical protect.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

esp_err_t **timer_spinlock_give** (*timer_group_t group_num*)

Give timer spinlock to exit critical protect.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `group_num`: Timer group number, 0 for TIMERG0 or 1 for TIMERG1

Macros

TIMER_BASE_CLK

Frequency of the clock on the input of the timer groups

Type Definitions

typedef bool (***timer_isr_t**) (void *)

Interrupt handle callback function. User need to retrun a bool value in callback.

Return

- True Do task yield at the end of ISR
- False Not do task yield at the end of ISR

Note If you called FreeRTOS functions in callback, you need to return true or false based on the retrun value of argument `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`. For example, `xQueueSendFromISR` is called in callback, if the return value `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken` of any FreeRTOS calls is pdTRUE, return true; otherwise return false.

typedef *intr_handle_t* **timer_isr_handle_t**

Interrupt handle, used in order to free the isr after use. Aliases to an int handle for now.

Header File

- hal/include/hal/timer_types.h

Structures

struct timer_config_t

Data structure with timer's configuration settings.

Public Members

timer_alarm_t **alarm_en**

Timer alarm enable

timer_start_t **counter_en**

Counter enable

timer_intr_mode_t **intr_type**

Interrupt mode

timer_count_dir_t **counter_dir**

Counter direction

timer_autoreload_t **auto_reload**

Timer auto-reload

uint32_t **divider**

Counter clock divider. The divider's range is from from 2 to 65536.

timer_src_clk_t **clk_src**

Use XTAL as source clock.

Enumerations

enum timer_group_t

Selects a Timer-Group out of 2 available groups.

Values:

TIMER_GROUP_0 = 0

Hw timer group 0

TIMER_GROUP_1 = 1

Hw timer group 1

TIMER_GROUP_MAX

enum timer_idx_t

Select a hardware timer from timer groups.

Values:

TIMER_0 = 0

Select timer0 of GROUPx

TIMER_1 = 1
Select timer1 of GROUPx

TIMER_MAX

enum timer_count_dir_t
Decides the direction of counter.

Values:

TIMER_COUNT_DOWN = 0
Descending Count from cnt.high|cnt.low

TIMER_COUNT_UP = 1
Ascending Count from Zero

TIMER_COUNT_MAX

enum timer_start_t
Decides whether timer is on or paused.

Values:

TIMER_PAUSE = 0
Pause timer counter

TIMER_START = 1
Start timer counter

enum timer_intr_t
Interrupt types of the timer.

Values:

TIMER_INTR_T0 = BIT(0)
interrupt of timer 0

TIMER_INTR_T1 = BIT(1)
interrupt of timer 1

TIMER_INTR_WDT = BIT(2)
interrupt of watchdog

TIMER_INTR_NONE = 0

enum timer_alarm_t
Decides whether to enable alarm mode.

Values:

TIMER_ALARM_DIS = 0
Disable timer alarm

TIMER_ALARM_EN = 1
Enable timer alarm

TIMER_ALARM_MAX

enum timer_intr_mode_t
Select interrupt type if running in alarm mode.

Values:

TIMER_INTR_LEVEL = 0
Interrupt mode: level mode

TIMER_INTR_MAX

enum timer_autoreload_t
Select if Alarm needs to be loaded by software or automatically reload by hardware.

Values:

TIMER_AUTORELOAD_DIS = 0
Disable auto-reload: hardware will not load counter value after an alarm event

TIMER_AUTORELOAD_EN = 1
Enable auto-reload: hardware will load counter value after an alarm event

TIMER_AUTORELOAD_MAX

enum timer_src_clk_t
Select timer source clock.

Values:

TIMER_SRC_CLK_APB = 0
Select APB as the source clock

TIMER_SRC_CLK_XTAL = 1
Select XTAL as the source clock

2.2.4 GPIO & RTC GPIO

Overview

The ESP32-S2 chip features 43 physical GPIO pads. Some GPIO pads cannot be used or do not have the corresponding pin on the chip package. For more details, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *IO MUX and GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX)* [PDF]. Each pad can be used as a general purpose I/O or can be connected to an internal peripheral signal.

- Note that GPIO26-32 are usually used for SPI flash.
- GPIO46 is fixed to pull-down and is input only

There is also separate "RTC GPIO" support, which functions when GPIOs are routed to the "RTC" low-power and analog subsystem. These pin functions can be used when:

- In deep sleep
- The *Ultra Low Power co-processor* is running
- Analog functions such as ADC/DAC/etc are in use.

Application Example

GPIO output and input interrupt example: peripherals/gpio/generic_gpio.

API Reference - Normal GPIO

Header File

- driver/include/driver/gpio.h

Functions

esp_err_t **gpio_config**(**const** *gpio_config_t* **pGPIOConfig*)
GPIO common configuration.

Configure GPIO' s Mode,pull-up,PullDown,IntrType

Return
- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `pGPIOConfig`: Pointer to GPIO configure struct

esp_err_t **gpio_reset_pin**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Reset an gpio to default state (select gpio function, enable pullup and disable input and output).

Note This function also configures the IOMUX for this pin to the GPIO function, and disconnects any other peripheral output configured via GPIO Matrix.

Return Always return ESP_OK.

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number.

esp_err_t **gpio_set_intr_type** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_int_type_t intr_type*)

GPIO set interrupt trigger type.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to set the trigger type of e.g. of GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `intr_type`: Interrupt type, select from gpio_int_type_t

esp_err_t **gpio_intr_enable** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Enable GPIO module interrupt signal.

Note Please do not use the interrupt of GPIO36 and GPIO39 when using ADC or Wi-Fi with sleep mode enabled. Please refer to the comments of `adc1_get_raw`. Please refer to section 3.11 of 'ECO_and_Workarounds_for_Bugs_in_ESP32' for the description of this issue. As a workaround, call adc_power_acquire() in the app. This will result in higher power consumption (by ~1mA), but will remove the glitches on GPIO36 and GPIO39.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to enable an interrupt on e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);

esp_err_t **gpio_intr_disable** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Disable GPIO module interrupt signal.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to disable the interrupt of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);

esp_err_t **gpio_set_level** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, uint32_t *level*)

GPIO set output level.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO number error

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to set the output level of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `level`: Output level. 0: low ; 1: high

int **gpio_get_level** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

GPIO get input level.

Warning If the pad is not configured for input (or input and output) the returned value is always 0.

Return

- 0 the GPIO input level is 0
- 1 the GPIO input level is 1

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to get the logic level of e.g. pin GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);

esp_err_t **gpio_set_direction** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_mode_t mode*)
GPIO set direction.

Configure GPIO direction,such as output_only,input_only,output_and_input

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: Configure GPIO pins number, it should be GPIO number. If you want to set direction of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `mode`: GPIO direction

esp_err_t **gpio_set_pull_mode** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_pull_mode_t pull*)
Configure GPIO pull-up/pull-down resistors.

Only pins that support both input & output have integrated pull-up and pull-down resistors. Input-only GPIOs 34-39 do not.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to set pull up or down mode for e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `pull`: GPIO pull up/down mode.

esp_err_t **gpio_wakeup_enable** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_int_type_t intr_type*)
Enable GPIO wake-up function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number.
- `intr_type`: GPIO wake-up type. Only GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL or GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL can be used.

esp_err_t **gpio_wakeup_disable** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Disable GPIO wake-up function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **gpio_isr_register** (void (**fn*)) void *
, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *gpio_isr_handle_t* **handle*Register GPIO interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

This ISR function is called whenever any GPIO interrupt occurs. See the alternative gpio_install_isr_service() and gpio_isr_handler_add() API in order to have the driver support per-GPIO ISRs.

To disable or remove the ISR, pass the returned handle to the *interrupt allocation functions*.

Parameters
- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `arg`: Parameter for handler function
- `handle`: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

Return
- ESP_OK Success ;

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags

esp_err_t **gpio_pullup_en**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Enable pull-up on GPIO.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **gpio_pullup_dis**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Disable pull-up on GPIO.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **gpio_pulldown_en**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Enable pull-down on GPIO.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **gpio_pulldown_dis**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Disable pull-down on GPIO.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **gpio_install_isr_service**(int *intr_alloc_flags*)
Install the driver's GPIO ISR handler service, which allows per-pin GPIO interrupt handlers.

This function is incompatible with gpio_isr_register() - if that function is used, a single global ISR is registered for all GPIO interrupts. If this function is used, the ISR service provides a global GPIO ISR and individual pin handlers are registered via the gpio_isr_handler_add() function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory to install this service
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE ISR service already installed.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error

Parameters
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

void **gpio_uninstall_isr_service**(void)
Uninstall the driver's GPIO ISR service, freeing related resources.

esp_err_t **gpio_isr_handler_add**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_isr_t isr_handler*, void **args*)
Add ISR handler for the corresponding GPIO pin.

Call this function after using gpio_install_isr_service() to install the driver's GPIO ISR handler service.

The pin ISR handlers no longer need to be declared with IRAM_ATTR, unless you pass the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag when allocating the ISR in gpio_install_isr_service().

This ISR handler will be called from an ISR. So there is a stack size limit (configurable as "ISR stack size" in menuconfig). This limit is smaller compared to a global GPIO interrupt handler due to the additional level of indirection.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Wrong state, the ISR service has not been initialized.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number
- `isr_handler`: ISR handler function for the corresponding GPIO number.
- `args`: parameter for ISR handler.

esp_err_t **gpio_isr_handler_remove**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Remove ISR handler for the corresponding GPIO pin.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Wrong state, the ISR service has not been initialized.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **gpio_set_drive_capability**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_drive_cap_t strength*)

Set GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
- `strength`: Drive capability of the pad

esp_err_t **gpio_get_drive_capability**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_drive_cap_t *strength*)

Get GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
- `strength`: Pointer to accept drive capability of the pad

esp_err_t **gpio_hold_en**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Enable gpio pad hold function.

The gpio pad hold function works in both input and output modes, but must be output-capable gpios. If pad hold enabled: in output mode: the output level of the pad will be force locked and can not be changed. in input mode: the input value read will not change, regardless the changes of input signal.

The state of digital gpio cannot be held during Deep-sleep, and it will resume the hold function when the chip wakes up from Deep-sleep. If the digital gpio also needs to be held during Deep-sleep, `gpio_deep_sleep_hold_en` should also be called.

Power down or call gpio_hold_dis will disable this function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Not support pad hold function

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, only support output-capable GPIOs

esp_err_t **gpio_hold_dis**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Disable gpio pad hold function.

When the chip is woken up from Deep-sleep, the gpio will be set to the default mode, so, the gpio will output the default level if this function is called. If you don't want the level changes, the gpio should be configured to a known state before this function is called. e.g. If you hold gpio18 high during Deep-sleep, after the chip is woken up and `gpio_hold_dis` is called, gpio18 will output low level(because gpio18 is input mode by default). If you don't want this behavior, you should configure gpio18 as output mode and set it to hight level before calling `gpio_hold_dis`.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Not support pad hold function

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, only support output-capable GPIOs

void **gpio_deep_sleep_hold_en**(void)

Enable all digital gpio pad hold function during Deep-sleep.

When the chip is in Deep-sleep mode, all digital gpio will hold the state before sleep, and when the chip is woken up, the status of digital gpio will not be held. Note that the pad hold feature only works when the chip is in Deep-sleep mode, when not in sleep mode, the digital gpio state can be changed even you have called this function.

Power down or call gpio_hold_dis will disable this function, otherwise, the digital gpio hold feature works as long as the chip enter Deep-sleep.

void **gpio_deep_sleep_hold_dis**(void)

Disable all digital gpio pad hold function during Deep-sleep.

void **gpio_iomux_in**(uint32_t *gpio_num*, uint32_t *signal_idx*)

Set pad input to a peripheral signal through the IOMUX.

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number of the pad.
- `signal_idx`: Peripheral signal id to input. One of the `*_IN_IDX` signals in `soc/gpio_sig_map.h`.

void **gpio_iomux_out**(uint8_t *gpio_num*, int *func*, bool *oen_inv*)

Set peripheral output to an GPIO pad through the IOMUX.

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: gpio_num GPIO number of the pad.
- `func`: The function number of the peripheral pin to output pin. One of the `FUNC_X_*` of specified pin (X) in `soc/io_mux_reg.h`.
- `oen_inv`: True if the output enable needs to be inverted, otherwise False.

esp_err_t **gpio_force_hold_all**(void)

Force hold digital and rtc gpio pad.

Note GPIO force hold, whether the chip in sleep mode or wakeup mode.

esp_err_t **gpio_force_unhold_all**(void)

Force unhold digital and rtc gpio pad.

Note GPIO force unhold, whether the chip in sleep mode or wakeup mode.

esp_err_t **gpio_sleep_sel_en**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Enable SLP_SEL to change GPIO status automantically in lightsleep.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number of the pad.

esp_err_t **gpio_sleep_sel_dis**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Disable SLP_SEL to change GPIO status automantically in lightsleep.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number of the pad.

esp_err_t **gpio_sleep_set_direction**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_mode_t mode*)
GPIO set direction at sleep.

Configure GPIO direction,such as output_only,input_only,output_and_input

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: Configure GPIO pins number, it should be GPIO number. If you want to set direction of e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `mode`: GPIO direction

esp_err_t **gpio_sleep_set_pull_mode**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_pull_mode_t pull*)
Configure GPIO pull-up/pull-down resistors at sleep.

Only pins that support both input & output have integrated pull-up and pull-down resistors. Input-only GPIOs 34-39 do not.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number. If you want to set pull up or down mode for e.g. GPIO16, gpio_num should be GPIO_NUM_16 (16);
- `pull`: GPIO pull up/down mode.

Macros

GPIO_PIN_COUNT

GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO(gpio_num)
Check whether it is a valid GPIO number.

GPIO_IS_VALID_OUTPUT_GPIO(gpio_num)
Check whether it can be a valid GPIO number of output mode.

Type Definitions

typedef *intr_handle_t* **gpio_isr_handle_t**

Header File

- hal/include/hal/gpio_types.h

Structures

struct gpio_config_t
Configuration parameters of GPIO pad for gpio_config function.

Public Members

uint64_t **pin_bit_mask**
GPIO pin: set with bit mask, each bit maps to a GPIO

gpio_mode_t **mode**
GPIO mode: set input/output mode

gpio_pullup_t **pull_up_en**
GPIO pull-up

gpio_pulldown_t **pull_down_en**
GPIO pull-down

gpio_int_type_t **intr_type**
GPIO interrupt type

Macros

GPIO_SEL_0
Pin 0 selected

GPIO_SEL_1
Pin 1 selected

GPIO_SEL_2
Pin 2 selected

GPIO_SEL_3
Pin 3 selected

GPIO_SEL_4
Pin 4 selected

GPIO_SEL_5
Pin 5 selected

GPIO_SEL_6
Pin 6 selected

GPIO_SEL_7
Pin 7 selected

GPIO_SEL_8
Pin 8 selected

GPIO_SEL_9
Pin 9 selected

GPIO_SEL_10
Pin 10 selected

GPIO_SEL_11
Pin 11 selected

GPIO_SEL_12
Pin 12 selected

GPIO_SEL_13
Pin 13 selected

GPIO_SEL_14
Pin 14 selected

GPIO_SEL_15
Pin 15 selected

GPIO_SEL_16
Pin 16 selected

GPIO_SEL_17
Pin 17 selected

GPIO_SEL_18
Pin 18 selected

GPIO_SEL_19
Pin 19 selected

GPIO_SEL_20
Pin 20 selected

GPIO_SEL_21
Pin 21 selected

GPIO_SEL_26
Pin 26 selected

GPIO_SEL_27
Pin 27 selected

GPIO_SEL_28
Pin 28 selected

GPIO_SEL_29
Pin 29 selected

GPIO_SEL_30
Pin 30 selected

GPIO_SEL_31
Pin 31 selected

GPIO_SEL_32
Pin 32 selected

GPIO_SEL_33
Pin 33 selected

GPIO_SEL_34
Pin 34 selected

GPIO_SEL_35
Pin 35 selected

GPIO_SEL_36
Pin 36 selected

GPIO_SEL_37
Pin 37 selected

GPIO_SEL_38
Pin 38 selected

GPIO_SEL_39
Pin 39 selected

GPIO_SEL_40
Pin 40 selected

GPIO_SEL_41
Pin 41 selected

GPIO_SEL_42
Pin 42 selected

GPIO_SEL_43
Pin 43 selected

GPIO_SEL_44
Pin 44 selected

GPIO_SEL_45
Pin 45 selected

GPIO_SEL_46
Pin 46 selected

GPIO_PIN_REG_0

GPIO_PIN_REG_1

GPIO_PIN_REG_2

GPIO_PIN_REG_3

GPIO_PIN_REG_4

GPIO_PIN_REG_5

GPIO_PIN_REG_6

GPIO_PIN_REG_7

GPIO_PIN_REG_8

GPIO_PIN_REG_9

GPIO_PIN_REG_10

GPIO_PIN_REG_11

GPIO_PIN_REG_12

GPIO_PIN_REG_13

GPIO_PIN_REG_14

GPIO_PIN_REG_15

GPIO_PIN_REG_16

GPIO_PIN_REG_17

GPIO_PIN_REG_18

GPIO_PIN_REG_19

GPIO_PIN_REG_20

GPIO_PIN_REG_21

GPIO_PIN_REG_22

GPIO_PIN_REG_23

GPIO_PIN_REG_24

GPIO_PIN_REG_25

GPIO_PIN_REG_26

GPIO_PIN_REG_27

GPIO_PIN_REG_28

GPIO_PIN_REG_29

GPIO_PIN_REG_30

GPIO_PIN_REG_31

GPIO_PIN_REG_32

GPIO_PIN_REG_33

GPIO_PIN_REG_34

GPIO_PIN_REG_35

GPIO_PIN_REG_36

GPIO_PIN_REG_37

GPIO_PIN_REG_38

GPIO_PIN_REG_39

GPIO_PIN_REG_40

GPIO_PIN_REG_41

GPIO_PIN_REG_42

GPIO_PIN_REG_43

GPIO_PIN_REG_44

GPIO_PIN_REG_45

GPIO_PIN_REG_46

Type Definitions

typedef void (***gpio_isr_t**) (void *)

Enumerations

enum gpio_port_t

Values:

GPIO_PORT_0 = 0

GPIO_PORT_MAX

enum gpio_num_t

Values:

GPIO_NUM_NC = -1
Use to signal not connected to S/W

GPIO_NUM_0 = 0
GPIO0, input and output

GPIO_NUM_1 = 1
GPIO1, input and output

GPIO_NUM_2 = 2
GPIO2, input and output

GPIO_NUM_3 = 3
GPIO3, input and output

GPIO_NUM_4 = 4
GPIO4, input and output

GPIO_NUM_5 = 5
GPIO5, input and output

GPIO_NUM_6 = 6
GPIO6, input and output

GPIO_NUM_7 = 7
GPIO7, input and output

GPIO_NUM_8 = 8
GPIO8, input and output

GPIO_NUM_9 = 9
GPIO9, input and output

GPIO_NUM_10 = 10
GPIO10, input and output

GPIO_NUM_11 = 11
GPIO11, input and output

GPIO_NUM_12 = 12
GPIO12, input and output

GPIO_NUM_13 = 13
GPIO13, input and output

GPIO_NUM_14 = 14
GPIO14, input and output

GPIO_NUM_15 = 15
GPIO15, input and output

GPIO_NUM_16 = 16
GPIO16, input and output

GPIO_NUM_17 = 17
GPIO17, input and output

GPIO_NUM_18 = 18
GPIO18, input and output

GPIO_NUM_19 = 19
GPIO19, input and output

GPIO_NUM_20 = 20
GPIO20, input and output

GPIO_NUM_21 = 21
GPIO21, input and output

GPIO_NUM_26 = 26
GPIO26, input and output

GPIO_NUM_27 = 27
GPIO27, input and output

GPIO_NUM_28 = 28
GPIO28, input and output

GPIO_NUM_29 = 29
GPIO29, input and output

GPIO_NUM_30 = 30
GPIO30, input and output

GPIO_NUM_31 = 31
GPIO31, input and output

GPIO_NUM_32 = 32
GPIO32, input and output

GPIO_NUM_33 = 33
GPIO33, input and output

GPIO_NUM_34 = 34
GPIO34, input and output

GPIO_NUM_35 = 35
GPIO35, input and output

GPIO_NUM_36 = 36
GPIO36, input and output

GPIO_NUM_37 = 37
GPIO37, input and output

GPIO_NUM_38 = 38
GPIO38, input and output

GPIO_NUM_39 = 39
GPIO39, input and output

GPIO_NUM_40 = 40
GPIO40, input and output

GPIO_NUM_41 = 41
GPIO41, input and output

GPIO_NUM_42 = 42
GPIO42, input and output

GPIO_NUM_43 = 43
GPIO43, input and output

GPIO_NUM_44 = 44
GPIO44, input and output

GPIO_NUM_45 = 45
GPIO45, input and output

GPIO_NUM_46 = 46
GPIO46, input mode only

GPIO_NUM_MAX

enum gpio_int_type_t
Values:

GPIO_INTR_DISABLE = 0
Disable GPIO interrupt

GPIO_INTR_POSEDGE = 1
GPIO interrupt type : rising edge

GPIO_INTR_NEGEDGE = 2
GPIO interrupt type : falling edge

GPIO_INTR_ANYEDGE = 3
GPIO interrupt type : both rising and falling edge

GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL = 4
GPIO interrupt type : input low level trigger

GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL = 5
GPIO interrupt type : input high level trigger

GPIO_INTR_MAX

enum gpio_mode_t
Values:

GPIO_MODE_DISABLE = GPIO_MODE_DEF_DISABLE
GPIO mode : disable input and output

GPIO_MODE_INPUT = GPIO_MODE_DEF_INPUT
GPIO mode : input only

GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT = GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT
GPIO mode : output only mode

GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD = ((GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OD))
GPIO mode : output only with open-drain mode

GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD = ((GPIO_MODE_DEF_INPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_
GPIO mode : output and input with open-drain mode

GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT = ((GPIO_MODE_DEF_INPUT) | (GPIO_MODE_DEF_OUTPUT))
GPIO mode : output and input mode

enum gpio_pullup_t
Values:

GPIO_PULLUP_DISABLE = 0x0
Disable GPIO pull-up resistor

GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE = 0x1
Enable GPIO pull-up resistor

enum gpio_pulldown_t
Values:

GPIO_PULLDOWN_DISABLE = 0x0
Disable GPIO pull-down resistor

GPIO_PULLDOWN_ENABLE = 0x1
Enable GPIO pull-down resistor

enum gpio_pull_mode_t
Values:

GPIO_PULLUP_ONLY
Pad pull up

GPIO_PULLDOWN_ONLY
Pad pull down

GPIO_PULLUP_PULLDOWN
Pad pull up + pull down

GPIO_FLOATING
Pad floating

enum gpio_drive_cap_t
Values:

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_0 = 0
Pad drive capability: weak

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_1 = 1
Pad drive capability: stronger

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_2 = 2
Pad drive capability: medium

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_DEFAULT = 2
Pad drive capability: medium

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_3 = 3
Pad drive capability: strongest

GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_MAX

API Reference - RTC GPIO

Header File

- driver/include/driver/rtc_io.h

Functions

static bool **rtc_gpio_is_valid_gpio**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Determine if the specified GPIO is a valid RTC GPIO.

Return true if GPIO is valid for RTC GPIO use. false otherwise.
Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

static int **rtc_io_number_get**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
Get RTC IO index number by gpio number.

Return >=0: Index of rtcio. -1 : The gpio is not rtcio.

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_init** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Init a GPIO as RTC GPIO.

This function must be called when initializing a pad for an analog function.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_deinit** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Init a GPIO as digital GPIO.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

uint32_t **rtc_gpio_get_level** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Get the RTC IO input level.

Return

- 1 High level
- 0 Low level
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_set_level** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, uint32_t *level*)

Set the RTC IO output level.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
- `level`: output level

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_set_direction** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *rtc_gpio_mode_t mode*)

RTC GPIO set direction.

Configure RTC GPIO direction, such as output only, input only, output and input.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
- `mode`: GPIO direction

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_set_direction_in_sleep** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *rtc_gpio_mode_t mode*)

RTC GPIO set direction in deep sleep mode or disable sleep status (default). In some application scenarios, IO needs to have another states during deep sleep.

NOTE: ESP32 support INPUT_ONLY mode. ESP32S2 support INPUT_ONLY, OUTPUT_ONLY, INPUT_OUTPUT mode.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)
- `mode`: GPIO direction

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_pullup_en** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
RTC GPIO pullup enable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pullup_en, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_pulldown_en** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
RTC GPIO pulldown enable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pulldown_en, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_pullup_dis** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
RTC GPIO pullup disable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pullup_dis, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_pulldown_dis** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)
RTC GPIO pulldown disable.

This function only works for RTC IOs. In general, call gpio_pulldown_dis, which will work both for normal GPIOs and RTC IOs.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_set_drive_capability** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_drive_cap_t strength*)
Set RTC GPIO pad drive capability.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
- `strength`: Drive capability of the pad

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_get_drive_capability** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_drive_cap_t *strength*)
Get RTC GPIO pad drive capability.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, only support output GPIOs
- `strength`: Pointer to accept drive capability of the pad

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_hold_en** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Enable hold function on an RTC IO pad.

Enabling HOLD function will cause the pad to latch current values of input enable, output enable, output value, function, drive strength values. This function is useful when going into light or deep sleep mode to prevent the pin configuration from changing.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_hold_dis** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Disable hold function on an RTC IO pad.

Disabling hold function will allow the pad receive the values of input enable, output enable, output value, function, drive strength from RTC_IO peripheral.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_isolate** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Helper function to disconnect internal circuits from an RTC IO This function disables input, output, pullup, pulldown, and enables hold feature for an RTC IO. Use this function if an RTC IO needs to be disconnected from internal circuits in deep sleep, to minimize leakage current.

In particular, for ESP32-WROVER module, call rtc_gpio_isolate(GPIO_NUM_12) before entering deep sleep, to reduce deep sleep current.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if GPIO is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number (e.g. GPIO_NUM_12).

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_force_hold_all** (void)

Enable force hold signal for all RTC IOs.

Each RTC pad has a "force hold" input signal from the RTC controller. If this signal is set, pad latches current values of input enable, function, output enable, and other signals which come from the RTC mux. Force hold signal is enabled before going into deep sleep for pins which are used for EXT1 wakeup.

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_force_hold_dis_all** (void)

Disable force hold signal for all RTC IOs.

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_wakeup_enable** (*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, *gpio_int_type_t intr_type*)

Enable wakeup from sleep mode using specific GPIO.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if gpio_num is not an RTC IO, or intr_type is not one of GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL, GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL.

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

- `intr_type`: Wakeup on high level (GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL) or low level (GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL)

esp_err_t **rtc_gpio_wakeup_disable**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Disable wakeup from sleep mode using specific GPIO.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if gpio_num is not an RTC IO

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number

Macros

RTC_GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO(gpio_num)

Header File

- hal/include/hal/rtc_io_types.h

Enumerations

enum rtc_gpio_mode_t

RTCIO output/input mode type.

Values:

RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_ONLY

Pad input

RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_ONLY

Pad output

RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT

Pad input + output

RTC_GPIO_MODE_DISABLED

Pad (output + input) disable

RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD

Pad open-drain output

RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD

Pad input + open-drain output

2.2.5 Dedicated GPIO

Overview

The dedicated GPIO is designed for CPU interaction with GPIO matrix and IO MUX. Any GPIO that is configured as "dedicated" can be access by CPU instructions directly, which makes it easy to achieve a high GPIO flip speed, and simulate serial/parallel interface in a bit-banging way.

Create/Destroy GPIO Bundle

A GPIO bundle is a group of GPIOs, which can be manipulated at the same time in one CPU cycle. The maximal number of GPIOs that a bundle can contain is limited by each CPU. What's more, the GPIO bundle has a strong relevance to the CPU which it derives from. **Any operations on the GPIO bundle should be put inside a task which is running on the same CPU core to the GPIO bundle belongs to.** Likewise, only those ISRs who are installed on the same CPU core are allowed to do operations on that GPIO bundle.

Note: Dedicated GPIO is more of a CPU peripheral, so it has a strong relationship with CPU core. It's highly recommended to install and operate GPIO bundle in a pin-to-core task. For example, if GPIOA is connected to CPU0, and the dedicated GPIO instruction is issued from CPU1, then it's impossible to control GPIOA.

To install a GPIO bundle, one needs to call *dedic_gpio_new_bundle()* to allocate the software resources and connect the dedicated channels to user selected GPIOs. Configurations for a GPIO bundle are covered in *dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t* structure:

- `gpio_array`: An array that contains GPIO number.
- `array_size`: Element number of `gpio_array`.
- `flags`: Extra flags to control the behavior of GPIO Bundle.
  - `in_en` and `out_en` are used to select whether to enable the input and output function (note, they can be enabled together).
  - `in_invert` and `out_invert` are used to select whether to invert the GPIO signal.

The following code shows how to install a output only GPIO bundle:

```
// configure GPIO
const int bundleA_gpios[] = {0, 1};
gpio_config_t io_conf = {
    .mode = GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT,
};
for (int i = 0; i < sizeof(bundleA_gpios) / sizeof(bundleA_gpios[0]); i++) {
    io_conf.pin_bit_mask = 1ULL << bundleA_gpios[i];
    gpio_config(&io_conf);
}
// Create bundleA, output only
dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundleA = NULL;
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t bundleA_config = {
    .gpio_array = bundleA_gpios,
    .array_size = sizeof(bundleA_gpios) / sizeof(bundleA_gpios[0]),
    .flags = {
        .out_en = 1,
    },
};
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(dedic_gpio_new_bundle(&bundleA_config, &bundleA));
```

To uninstall the GPIO bundle, one needs to call *dedic_gpio_del_bundle()*.

Note: *dedic_gpio_new_bundle()* doesn't cover any GPIO pad configuration (e.g. pull up/down, drive ability, output/input enable), so before installing a dedicated GPIO bundle, you have to configure the GPIO separately using GPIO driver API (e.g. *gpio_config()*). For more information about GPIO driver, please refer to *GPIO API Reference*.

GPIO Bundle Operations

Operations	Functions
Write to GPIOs in the bundle by mask	*dedic_gpio_bundle_write()*
Read the value that input to bundle	*dedic_gpio_bundle_read_out()*
Read the value that output from bundle	*dedic_gpio_bundle_read_in()*

Note: The functions above just wrap the customized instructions defined for ESP32-S2, for the details of those instructions, please refer to *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *IO MUX and GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX)* [PDF].

Interrupt Handling

Dedicated GPIO can also trigger interrupt on specific input event. All supported events are defined in *dedic_gpio_intr_type_t*.

One can enable and register interrupt callback by calling *dedic_gpio_bundle_set_interrupt_and_callback()*. The prototype of the callback function is defined in *dedic_gpio_isr_callback_t*. Keep in mind, the callback should return true if there's some high priority task woken up.

```
// user defined ISR callback
IRAM_ATTR bool dedic_gpio_isr_callback(dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle, uint32_t␣
↪index, void *args)
{
    SemaphoreHandle_t sem = (SemaphoreHandle_t)args;
    BaseType_t high_task_wakeup = pdFALSE;
    xSemaphoreGiveFromISR(sem, &high_task_wakeup);
    return high_task_wakeup == pdTRUE;
}

// enable positive edge interrupt on the second GPIO in the bundle (i.e. index 1)
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(dedic_gpio_bundle_set_interrupt_and_callback(bundle, BIT(1), DEDIC_
↪GPIO_INTR_POS_EDGE, dedic_gpio_isr_callback, sem));

// wait for done semaphore
xSemaphoreTake(sem, portMAX_DELAY);
```

Manipulate GPIOs by Writing Assembly Code

For advanced users, they can always manipulate the GPIOs by writing assembly code or invoking CPU Low Level APIs. The usual procedure could be:

1. Allocate a GPIO bundle: *dedic_gpio_new_bundle()*
2. Query the mask occupied by that bundle: *dedic_gpio_get_out_mask()* or/and *dedic_gpio_get_in_mask()*
3. Call CPU LL apis (e.g. *cpu_ll_write_dedic_gpio_mask*) or write assembly code with that mask

For details of supported dedicated GPIO instructions, please refer to *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *IO MUX and GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX)* [PDF].

Note: Writing assembly code in application could make your code hard to port between targets, because those customized instructions are not guaranteed to remain the same format in different targets.

Application Example

Matrix keyboard example based on dedicated GPIO: peripherals/gpio/matrix_keyboard.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/dedic_gpio.h

Functions

esp_err_t **dedic_gpio_get_out_mask**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*, uint32_t **mask*)

Get allocated channel mask.

Return

- ESP_OK: Get channel mask successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Get channel mask failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: Get channel mask failed because of other error

Note Each bundle should have at least one mask (in or/and out), based on bundle configuration.

Note With the returned mask, user can directly invoke LL function like "cpu_ll_write_dedic_gpio_mask" or write assembly code with dedicated GPIO instructions, to get better performance on GPIO manipulation.

Parameters

- `[in] bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"
- `[out] mask`: Returned mask value for on specific direction (in or out)

esp_err_t **dedic_gpio_get_in_mask**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*, uint32_t **mask*)

esp_err_t **dedic_gpio_new_bundle**(**const** *dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t *config*, *dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t *ret_bundle*)

Create GPIO bundle and return the handle.

Return

- ESP_OK: Create GPIO bundle successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Create GPIO bundle failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Create GPIO bundle failed because of no capable memory
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Create GPIO bundle failed because of no enough continuous dedicated channels
- ESP_FAIL: Create GPIO bundle failed because of other error

Note One has to enable at least input or output mode in "config" parameter.

Parameters

- `[in] config`: Configuration of GPIO bundle
- `[out] ret_bundle`: Returned handle of the new created GPIO bundle

esp_err_t **dedic_gpio_del_bundle**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*)

Destory GPIO bundle.

Return

- ESP_OK: Destory GPIO bundle successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Destory GPIO bundle failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: Destory GPIO bundle failed because of other error

Parameters

- `[in] bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"

void **dedic_gpio_bundle_write**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*, uint32_t *mask*, uint32_t *value*)

Write value to GPIO bundle.

Note The mask is seen from the view of GPIO bundle. For example, bundleA contains [GPIO10, GPIO12, GPIO17], to set GPIO17 individually, the mask should be 0x04.

Note For performance reasons, this function doesn't check the validity of any parameters, and is placed in IRAM.

Parameters

- `[in] bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"
- `[in] mask`: Mask of the GPIOs to be written in the given bundle
- `[in] value`: Value to write to given GPIO bundle, low bit represents low member in the bundle

uint32_t **dedic_gpio_bundle_read_out**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*)

Read the value that output from the given GPIO bundle.

Return Value that output from the GPIO bundle, low bit represents low member in the bundle

Note For performance reasons, this function doesn't check the validity of any parameters, and is placed in IRAM.

Parameters

- `[in] bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"

uint32_t **dedic_gpio_bundle_read_in**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*)

Read the value that input to the given GPIO bundle.

Return Value that input to the GPIO bundle, low bit represents low member in the bundle

Note For performance reasons, this function doesn't check the validity of any parameters, and is placed in IRAM.

Parameters

- `[in] bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"

esp_err_t **dedic_gpio_bundle_set_interrupt_and_callback**(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t bundle*, uint32_t *mask*, *dedic_gpio_intr_type_t intr_type*, *dedic_gpio_isr_callback_t cb_isr*, void **cb_args*)

Set interrupt and callback function for GPIO bundle.

Note This function is only valid for bundle with input mode enabled. See "dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t"

Note The mask is seen from the view of GPIO Bundle. For example, bundleA contains [GPIO10, GPIO12, GPIO17], to set GPIO17 individually, the mask should be 0x04.

Return

- ESP_OK: Set GPIO interrupt and callback function successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Set GPIO interrupt and callback function failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: Set GPIO interrupt and callback function failed because of other error

Parameters

- `[in] bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"
- `[in] mask`: Mask of the GPIOs in the given bundle
- `[in] intr_type`: Interrupt type, set to DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_NONE can disable interrupt
- `[in] cb_isr`: Callback function, which got invoked in ISR context. A NULL pointer here will bypass the callback
- `[in] cb_args`: User defined argument to be passed to the callback function

Structures

struct dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t

Type of Dedicated GPIO bundle configuration.

Public Members

const int ***gpio_array**

Array of GPIO numbers, gpio_array[0] ~ gpio_array[size-1] <=> low_dedic_channel_num ~ high_dedic_channel_num

size_t **array_size**

Number of GPIOs in gpio_array

int **in_en** : 1

Enable input

int **in_invert** : 1

Invert input signal

int **out_en** : 1

Enable output

int **out_invert** : 1

Invert output signal

struct *dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t*::**[anonymous] flags**

Flags to control specific behaviour of GPIO bundle

Type Definitions

typedef struct dedic_gpio_bundle_t ***dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t**

Type of Dedicated GPIO bundle.

typedef bool (***dedic_gpio_isr_callback_t**)(*dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t* bundle, uint32_t index, void *args)

Type of dedicated GPIO ISR callback function.

Return If a high priority task is woken up by the callback function

Parameters

- `bundle`: Handle of GPIO bundle that returned from "dedic_gpio_new_bundle"
- `index`: Index of the GPIO in its corresponding bundle (count from 0)
- `args`: User defined arguments for the callback function. It's passed through `dedic_gpio_bundle_set_interrupt_and_callback`

Enumerations

enum dedic_gpio_intr_type_t

Supported type of dedicated GPIO interrupt.

Values:

DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_NONE
No interrupt

DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL = 2
Interrupt on low level

DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL
Interrupt on high level

DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_NEG_EDGE
Interrupt on negedge

DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_POS_EDGE
Interrupt on posedge

DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_BOTH_EDGE
Interrupt on both negedge and posedge

2.2.6 HMAC

The HMAC (Hash-based Message Authentication Code) module provides hardware acceleration for SHA256-HMAC generation using a key burned into an eFuse block. HMACs work with pre-shared secret keys and provide authenticity and integrity to a message.

For more detailed information on the application workflow and the HMAC calculation process, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual > HMAC Accelerator (HMAC)* [PDF].

Generalized Application Scheme

Let there be two parties, A and B. They want to verify the authenticity and integrity of messages sent between each other. Before they can start sending messages, they need to exchange the secret key via a secure channel. To verify A's messages, B can do the following:

- A calculates the HMAC of the message it wants to send.
- A sends the message and the HMAC to B.
- B calculates HMAC of the received message itself.
- B checks wether the received and calculated HMACs match. If they do match, the message is authentic.

However, the HMAC itself isn't bound to this use case. It can also be used for challenge-response protocols supporting HMAC or as a key input for further security modules (see below), etc.

HMAC on the ESP32-S2

On the ESP32-S2, the HMAC module works with a secret key burnt into the eFuses. This eFuse key can be made completely inaccessible for any resources outside the cryptographic modules, thus avoiding key leakage.

Furthermore, the ESP32-S2 has three different application scenarios for its HMAC module:

1. HMAC is generated for software use
2. HMAC is used as a key for the Digital Signature (DS) module
3. HMAC is used for enabling the soft-disabled JTAG interface

The first mode is also called *Upstream* mode, while the last two modes are also called *Downstream* modes.

eFuse Keys for HMAC Six physical eFuse blocks can be used as keys for the HMAC module: block 4 up to block 9. The enum `hmac_key_id_t` in the API maps them to *HMAC_KEY0* ⋯*HMAC_KEY5*. Each key has a corresponding eFuse parameter *key purpose* determining for which of the three HMAC application scenarios (see below) the key may be used:

Key Purpose	Application Scenario
8	HMAC generated for software use
7	HMAC used as a key for the Digital Signature (DS) module
6	HMAC used for enabling the soft-disabled JTAG interface
5	HMAC both as a key for the DS module and for enabling JTAG

This is to prevent the usage of a key for a different function than originally intended.

To calculate an HMAC, the software has to provide the ID of the key block containing the secret key as well as the *key purpose* (see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *eFuse Controller (eFuse)* [PDF]). Before the HMAC key calculation, the HMAC module looks up the purpose of the provided key block. The calculation only proceeds if the provided key purpose matches the purpose stored in the eFuses of the key block provided by the ID.

HMAC Generation for Software Key Purpose value: 8

In this case, the HMAC is given out to the software (e.g. to authenticate a message).

The API to calculate the HMAC is `esp_hmac_calculate()`. Only the message, message length and the eFuse key block ID have to be provided to that function. The rest, like setting the key purpose, is done automatically.

HMAC for Digital Signature Key Purpose values: 7, 5

The HMAC can be used as a key derivation function to decrypt private key parameters which are used by the Digital Signature module. A standard message is used by the hardware in that case. The user only needs to provide the eFuse key block and purpose on the HMAC side (additional parameters are required for the Digital Signature component in that case). Neither the key nor the actual HMAC are ever exposed to outside the HMAC module and DS component. The calculation of the HMAC and its hand-over to the DS component happen internally.

For more details, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Digital Signature (DS)* [PDF].

HMAC for Enabling JTAG Key Purpose values: 6, 5

The third application is using the HMAC as a key to enable JTAG if it was soft-disabled before. Following is the procedure to re-enable the JTAG

Setup

1. Generate a 256-bit HMAC secret key to use for JTAG re-enable.
2. Write the key to an eFuse block with key purpose HMAC_DOWN_ALL (5) or HMAC_DOWN_JTAG (6). This can be done using the ets_efuse_write_key() function in the firmware or using espefuse.py from the host.
3. Configure the eFuse key block to be read protected using the esp_efuse_set_read_protect(), so that software cannot read back the value.

4. Burn the "soft JTAG disable" bit by esp_efuse_write_field_bit(ESP_EFUSE_SOFT_DIS_JTAG). This will permanently disable JTAG unless the correct key value is provided by software.

JTAG enable

1. The key to re-enable JTAG is the output of the HMAC-SHA256 function using the secret key in eFuse and 32 0x00 bytes as the message.
2. Pass this key value when calling the `esp_hmac_jtag_enable()` function from the firmware.
3. To re-disable JTAG in the firmware, reset the system or call `esp_hmac_jtag_disable()`.

For more details, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *HMAC Accelerator (HMAC)* [PDF].

Application Outline

Following code is an outline of how to set an eFuse key and then use it to calculate an HMAC for software usage. We use *ets_efuse_write_key* to set physical key block 4 in the eFuse for the HMAC module together with its purpose. *ETS_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_UP* (8) means that this key can only be used for HMAC generation for software usage:

```
#include "esp32s2/rom/efuse.h"

const uint8_t key_data[32] = { ... };

int ets_status = ets_efuse_write_key(ETS_EFUSE_BLOCK_KEY4,
                    ETS_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_UP,
                    key_data, sizeof(key_data));

if (ets_status == ESP_OK) {
    // written key
} else {
    // writing key failed, maybe written already
}
```

Now we can use the saved key to calculate an HMAC for software usage.

```
#include "esp_hmac.h"

uint8_t hmac[32];

const char *message = "Hello, HMAC!";
const size_t msg_len = 12;

esp_err_t result = esp_hmac_calculate(HMAC_KEY4, message, msg_len, hmac);

if (result == ESP_OK) {
    // HMAC written to hmac now
} else {
    // failure calculating HMAC
}
```

API Reference

Header File

- esp32s2/include/esp_hmac.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_hmac_calculate**(*hmac_key_id_t key_id*, **const** void **message*, size_t *message_len*, uint8_t **hmac*)

Calculate the HMAC of a given message.

Calculate the HMAC `hmac` of a given message `message` with length `message_len`. SHA256 is used for the calculation (fixed on ESP32S2).

Note Uses the HMAC peripheral in "upstream" mode.

Return

- ESP_OK, if the calculation was successful,
- ESP_FAIL, if the hmac calculation failed

Parameters

- `key_id`: Determines which of the 6 key blocks in the efuses should be used for the HMAC calcuation. The corresponding purpose field of the key block in the efuse must be set to the HMAC upstream purpose value.
- `message`: the message for which to calculate the HMAC
- `message_len`: message length return ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if unsuccessful
- `[out] hmac`: the hmac result; the buffer behind the provided pointer must be 32 bytes long

esp_err_t **esp_hmac_jtag_enable**(*hmac_key_id_t key_id*, **const** uint8_t **token*)

Use HMAC peripheral in Downstream mode to re-enable the JTAG, if it is not permanently disable by HW. In downstream mode HMAC calculations perfomred by peripheral used internally and not provided back to user.

Return

- ESP_OK, if the calculation was successful, if the calculated HMAC value matches with provided token, JTAG will be re-enable otherwise JTAG will remain disabled. Return value does not indicate the JTAG status.
- ESP_FAIL, if the hmac calculation failed or JTAG is permanently disabled by EFUSE_HARD_DIS_JTAG eFuse parameter.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, invalid input arguments

Parameters

- `key_id`: Determines which of the 6 key blocks in the efuses should be used for the HMAC calculation. The corresponding purpose field of the key block in the efuse must be set to HMAC downstream purpose.
- `token`: Pre calculated HMAC value of the 32-byte 0x00 using SHA-256 and the known private HMAC key. The key is already programmed to a eFuse key block. The key block number is provided as the first parameter to this function.

esp_err_t **esp_hmac_jtag_disable**(void)

Disable the JTAG which might be enable using the HMAC downstream mode. This function just clear the result generated by JTAG key by calling esp_hmac_jtag_enable() API.

Return

- ESP_OK return ESP_OK after writing the HMAC_SET_INVALIDATE_JTAG_REG with value 1.

Enumerations

enum hmac_key_id_t

The possible efuse keys for the HMAC peripheral

Values:

HMAC_KEY0 = 0

HMAC_KEY1

HMAC_KEY2

HMAC_KEY3

HMAC_KEY4

HMAC_KEY5

HMAC_KEY_MAX

2.2.7 Digital Signature

The Digital Signature (DS) module provides hardware acceleration of signing messages based on RSA. It uses pre-encrypted parameters to calculate a signature. The parameters are encrypted using HMAC as a key-derivation function. In turn, the HMAC uses eFuses as input key. The whole process happens in hardware so that neither the decryption key for the RSA parameters nor the input key for the HMAC key derivation function can be seen by the software while calculating the signature.

For more detailed information on the hardware involved in signature calculation and the registers used, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Digital Signature (DS)* [PDF].

Private Key Parameters

The private key parameters for the RSA signature are stored in flash. To prevent unauthorized access, they are AES-encrypted. The HMAC module is used as a key-derivation function to calculate the AES encryption key for the private key parameters. In turn, the HMAC module uses a key from the eFuses key block which can be read-protected to prevent unauthorized access as well.

Upon signature calculation invocation, the software only specifies which eFuse key to use, the corresponding eFuse key purpose, the location of the encrypted RSA parameters and the message.

Key Generation

Both the HMAC key and the RSA private key have to be created and stored before the DS peripheral can be used. This needs to be done in software on the ESP32-S2 or alternatively on a host. For this context, the IDF provides `esp_efuse_write_block()` to set the HMAC key and `esp_hmac_calculate()` to encrypt the private RSA key parameters.

You can find instructions on how to calculate and assemble the private key parameters in *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Digital Signature (DS)* [PDF].

Signature Calculation with IDF

For more detailed information on the workflow and the registers used, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Digital Signature (DS)* [PDF].

Three parameters need to be prepared to calculate the digital signature:

1. the eFuse key block ID which is used as key for the HMAC,
2. the location of the encrypted private key parameters,
3. and the message to be signed.

Since the signature calculation takes some time, there are two possible API versions to use in IDF. The first one is `esp_ds_sign()` and simply blocks until the calculation is finished. If software needs to do something else during the calculation, `esp_ds_start_sign()` can be called, followed by periodic calls to `esp_ds_is_busy()` to check when the calculation has finished. Once the calculation has finished, `esp_ds_finish_sign()` can be called to get the resulting signature.

Note: Note that this is only the basic DS building block, the message length is fixed. To create signatures of arbitrary messages, the input is normally a hash of the actual message, padded up to the required length. An API to do this is planned in the future.

Configure the DS peripheral for a TLS connection

The DS peripheral on ESP32-S2 chip must be configured before it can be used for a TLS connection. The configuration involves the following steps -

1) Randomly generate a 256 bit value called the *Initialization Vector* (IV).
2) Randomly generate a 256 bit value called the *HMAC_KEY*.
3) Calculate the encrypted private key paramters from the client private key (RSA) and the parameters generated in the above steps.
4) Then burn the 256 bit *HMAC_KEY* on the efuse, which can only be read by the DS peripheral.

For more details, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Digital Signature (DS)* [PDF].

To configure the DS peripheral for development purposes, you can use the python script configure_ds.py. More details about the *configure_ds.py* script can be found at mqtt example README .

The encrypted private key parameters obtained after the DS peripheral configuration are then to be kept in flash. Furthermore, they are to be passed to the DS peripheral which makes use of those parameters for the Digital Signature operation. *Non Volatile Storage* can be used to store the encrypted private key parameters in flash. The script configure_ds.py creates an NVS partition for the encrypted private key parameters. Then the script flashes this partition onto the ESP32-S2. The application then needs to read the DS data from NVS, which can be done with the function *esp_read_ds_data_from_nvs* in file ssl_mutual_auth/main/app_main.c

The process of initializing the DS peripheral and then performing the Digital Signature operation is done internally with help of *ESP-TLS*. Please refer to *Digital Signature with ESP-TLS* in *ESP-TLS* for more details. As mentioned in the *ESP-TLS* documentation, the application only needs to provide the encrypted private key parameters to the esp_tls context (as *ds_data*), which internally performs all necessary operations for initializing the DS peripheral and then performing the DS operation.

Example for SSL Mutual Authentication using DS

The example ssl_ds shows how to use the DS peripheral for mutual authentication. The example uses *mqtt_client* (Implemented through *ESP-MQTT*) to connect to broker test.mosquitto.org using ssl transport with mutual authentication. The ssl part is internally performed with *ESP-TLS*. See example README for more details.

API Reference

Header File

- esp32s2/include/esp_ds.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_ds_sign**(**const** void **message*, **const** *esp_ds_data_t* **data*, *hmac_key_id_t* *key_id*, void **signature*)

Sign the message.

This function is a wrapper around `esp_ds_finish_sign()` and `esp_ds_start_sign()`, so do not use them in parallel. It blocks until the signing is finished and then returns the signature.

Note This function locks the HMAC, SHA, AES and RSA components during its entire execution time.

Return

- ESP_OK if successful, the signature was written to the parameter `signature`.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the parameters is NULL or data->rsa_length is too long or 0
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_HMAC_FAIL if there was an HMAC failure during retrieval of the decryption key
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if there hasn't been enough memory to allocate the context object
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_KEY if there's a problem with passing the HMAC key to the DS component
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_DIGEST if the message digest didn't match; the signature is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_PADDING if the message padding is incorrect, the signature can be read though since the message digest matches.

Parameters

- `message`: the message to be signed; its length is determined by data->rsa_length
- `data`: the encrypted signing key data (AES encrypted RSA key + IV)

- `key_id`: the HMAC key ID determining the HMAC key of the HMAC which will be used to decrypt the signing key data
- `signature`: the destination of the signature, should be (data->rsa_length + 1)*4 bytes long

esp_err_t **esp_ds_start_sign**(**const** void **message*, **const** *esp_ds_data_t* **data*, *hmac_key_id_t key_id*, *esp_ds_context_t* ***esp_ds_ctx*)

Start the signing process.

This function yields a context object which needs to be passed to `esp_ds_finish_sign()` to finish the signing process.

Note This function locks the HMAC, SHA, AES and RSA components, so the user has to ensure to call `esp_ds_finish_sign()` in a timely manner.

Return

- ESP_OK if successful, the ds operation was started now and has to be finished with `esp_ds_finish_sign()`
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the parameters is NULL or data->rsa_length is too long or 0
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_HMAC_FAIL if there was an HMAC failure during retrieval of the decryption key
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if there hasn't been enough memory to allocate the context object
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_KEY if there's a problem with passing the HMAC key to the DS component

Parameters

- `message`: the message to be signed; its length is determined by data->rsa_length
- `data`: the encrypted signing key data (AES encrypted RSA key + IV)
- `key_id`: the HMAC key ID determining the HMAC key of the HMAC which will be used to decrypt the signing key data
- `esp_ds_ctx`: the context object which is needed for finishing the signing process later

bool **esp_ds_is_busy**(void)

Return true if the DS peripheral is busy, otherwise false.

Note Only valid if `esp_ds_start_sign()` was called before.

esp_err_t **esp_ds_finish_sign**(void **signature*, *esp_ds_context_t* **esp_ds_ctx*)

Finish the signing process.

Return

- ESP_OK if successful, the ds operation has been finished and the result is written to signature.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the parameters is NULL
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_DIGEST if the message digest didn't match; the signature is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_PADDING if the message padding is incorrect, the signature can be read though since the message digest matches.

Parameters

- `signature`: the destination of the signature, should be (data->rsa_length + 1)*4 bytes long
- `esp_ds_ctx`: the context object retreived by `esp_ds_start_sign()`

esp_err_t **esp_ds_encrypt_params**(*esp_ds_data_t* **data*, **const** void **iv*, **const** *esp_ds_p_data_t* **p_data*, **const** void **key*)

Encrypt the private key parameters.

Return

- ESP_OK if successful, the ds operation has been finished and the result is written to signature.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the parameters is NULL or p_data->rsa_length is too long

Parameters

- `data`: Output buffer to store encrypted data, suitable for later use generating signatures. The allocated memory must be in internal memory and word aligned since it's filled by DMA. Both is asserted at run time.
- `iv`: Pointer to 16 byte IV buffer, will be copied into 'data'. Should be randomly generated bytes each time.
- `p_data`: Pointer to input plaintext key data. The expectation is this data will be deleted after this process is done and 'data' is stored.

- `key`: Pointer to 32 bytes of key data. Type determined by key_type parameter. The expectation is the corresponding HMAC key will be stored to efuse and then permanently erased.

Structures

struct esp_digital_signature_data

Encrypted private key data. Recommended to store in flash in this format.

Note This struct has to match to one from the ROM code! This documentation is mostly taken from there.

Public Members

esp_digital_signature_length_t **rsa_length**

RSA LENGTH register parameters (number of words in RSA key & operands, minus one).

Max value 127 (for RSA 4096).

This value must match the length field encrypted and stored in 'c', or invalid results will be returned. (The DS peripheral will always use the value in 'c', not this value, so an attacker can't alter the DS peripheral results this way, it will just truncate or extend the message and the resulting signature in software.)

Note In IDF, the enum type length is the same as of type unsigned, so they can be used interchangably. See the ROM code for the original declaration of struct `ets_ds_data_t`.

uint8_t **iv**[**ESP_DS_IV_LEN**]

IV value used to encrypt 'c'

uint8_t **c**[**ESP_DS_C_LEN**]

Encrypted Digital Signature parameters. Result of AES-CBC encryption of plaintext values. Includes an encrypted message digest.

struct esp_ds_p_data_t

Plaintext parameters used by Digital Signature.

Not used for signing with DS peripheral, but can be encrypted in-device by calling esp_ds_encrypt_params()

Note This documentation is mostly taken from the ROM code.

Public Members

uint32_t **Y**[4096 / 32]

RSA exponent.

uint32_t **M**[4096 / 32]

RSA modulus.

uint32_t **Rb**[4096 / 32]

RSA r inverse operand.

uint32_t **M_prime**

RSA M prime operand.

esp_digital_signature_length_t **length**

RSA length.

Macros

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_HMAC_FAIL

HMAC peripheral problem

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_KEY

given HMAC key isn't correct, HMAC peripheral problem

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_DIGEST

message digest check failed, result is invalid

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_PADDING
padding check failed, but result is produced anyway and can be read

ESP_DS_IV_LEN

ESP_DS_C_LEN

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_ds_context **esp_ds_context_t**
typedef struct *esp_digital_signature_data* **esp_ds_data_t**
Encrypted private key data. Recommended to store in flash in this format.

Note This struct has to match to one from the ROM code! This documentation is mostly taken from there.

Enumerations

enum esp_digital_signature_length_t
Values:

ESP_DS_RSA_1024 = (1024 / 32) - 1

ESP_DS_RSA_2048 = (2048 / 32) - 1

ESP_DS_RSA_3072 = (3072 / 32) - 1

ESP_DS_RSA_4096 = (4096 / 32) - 1

2.2.8 I2C Driver

Overview

I2C is a serial, synchronous, half-duplex communication protocol that allows co-existence of multiple masters and slaves on the same bus. The I2C bus consists of two lines: serial data line (SDA) and serial clock (SCL). Both lines require pull-up resistors.

With such advantages as simplicity and low manufacturing cost, I2C is mostly used for communication of low-speed peripheral devices over short distances (within one foot).

ESP32-S2 has two I2C controllers (also referred to as ports) which are responsible for handling communications on the I2C bus. Each I2C controller can operate as master or slave. As an example, one controller can act as a master and the other as a slave at the same time.

Driver Features

I2C driver governs communications of devices over the I2C bus. The driver supports the following features:

- Reading and writing bytes in Master mode
- Slave mode
- Reading and writing to registers which are in turn read/written by the master

Driver Usage

The following sections describe typical steps of configuring and operating the I2C driver:

1. *Configuration* - set the initialization parameters (master or slave mode, GPIO pins for SDA and SCL, clock speed, etc.)
2. *Install Driver*- activate the driver on one of the two I2C controllers as a master or slave
3. Depending on whether you configure the driver for a master or slave, choose the appropriate item
   a) *Communication as Master* - handle communications (master)
   b) *Communication as Slave* - respond to messages from the master (slave)
4. *Interrupt Handling* - configure and service I2C interrupts

5. *Customized Configuration* - adjust default I2C communication parameters (timings, bit order, etc.)
6. *Error Handling* - how to recognize and handle driver configuration and communication errors
7. *Delete Driver*- release resources used by the I2C driver when communication ends

Configuration To establish I2C communication, start by configuring the driver. This is done by setting the parameters of the structure `i2c_config_t`:

- Set I2C **mode of operation** - slave or master from `i2c_mode_t`
- Configure **communication pins**
  - Assign GPIO pins for SDA and SCL signals
  - Set whether to enable ESP32-S2' s internal pull-ups
- (Master only) Set I2C **clock speed**
- (Slave only) Configure the following
  - Whether to enable **10 bit address mode**
  - Define **slave address**

After that, initialize the configuration for a given I2C port. For this, call the function `i2c_param_config()` and pass to it the port number and the structure `i2c_config_t`.

Configuration example (master):

```
int i2c_master_port = 0;
i2c_config_t conf = {
    .mode = I2C_MODE_MASTER,
    .sda_io_num = I2C_MASTER_SDA_IO,          // select GPIO specific to your␣
↪project
    .sda_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .scl_io_num = I2C_MASTER_SCL_IO,          // select GPIO specific to your␣
↪project
    .scl_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .master.clk_speed = I2C_MASTER_FREQ_HZ,  // select frequency specific to your␣
↪project
    // .clk_flags = 0,          /*!< Optional, you can use I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_*␣
↪flags to choose i2c source clock here. */
};
```

Configuration example (slave):

```
int i2c_slave_port = I2C_SLAVE_NUM;
i2c_config_t conf_slave = {
    .sda_io_num = I2C_SLAVE_SDA_IO,          // select GPIO specific to your␣
↪project
    .sda_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .scl_io_num = I2C_SLAVE_SCL_IO,          // select GPIO specific to your␣
↪project
    .scl_pullup_en = GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE,
    .mode = I2C_MODE_SLAVE,
    .slave.addr_10bit_en = 0,
    .slave.slave_addr = ESP_SLAVE_ADDR,      // address of your project
};
```

At this stage, `i2c_param_config()` also sets a few other I2C configuration parameters to default values that are defined by the I2C specification. For more details on the values and how to modify them, see *Customized Configuration*.

Source Clock Configuration **Clock sources allocator** is added for supporting different clock sources (Master only). The clock allocator will choose one clock source that meets all the requirements of frequency and capability (as requested in `i2c_config_t::clk_flags`).

When `i2c_config_t::clk_flags` is 0, the clock allocator will select only according to the desired frequency. If no special capabilities are needed, such as APB, you can configure the clock allocator to select the source clock only

according to the desired frequency. For this, set `i2c_config_t::clk_flags` to 0. For clock characteristics, see the table below.

Note: A clock is not a valid option, if it doesn't meet the requested capabilities, i.e. any bit of requested capabilities (clk_flags) is 0 in the clock's capabilities.

Table 1: Characteristics of ESP32-S2 clock sources

Clock name	Clock frequency	MAX freq for SCL	Clock capabilities
APB clock	80 MHz	4 MHz	/
REF_TICK	1 MHz	50 KHz	`I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS`, `I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP`

Explanations for `i2c_config_t::clk_flags` are as follows: 1. `I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS`: Clock's baud rate will not change while APB clock is changing. 2. `I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP`: It supports Light-sleep mode, which APB clock cannot do.

Explanations for `i2c_config_t::clk_flags` are as follows:

1. `I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS`: Clock's baud rate will not change while APB clock is changing.
2. `I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP`: It supports Light-sleep mode, which APB clock cannot do.
3. Some flags may not be supported on ESP32-S2, reading technical reference manual before using it.

Note: The clock frequency of SCL in master mode should not be lager than max frequency for SCL mentioned in the table above.

Install Driver After the I2C driver is configured, install it by calling the function `i2c_driver_install()` with the following parameters:

- Port number, one of the two port numbers from `i2c_port_t`
- Master or slave, selected from `i2c_mode_t`
- (Slave only) Size of buffers to allocate for sending and receiving data. As I2C is a master-centric bus, data can only go from the slave to the master at the master's request. Therefore, the slave will usually have a send buffer where the slave application writes data. The data remains in the send buffer to be read by the master at the master's own discretion.
- Flags for allocating the interrupt (see ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values in esp_hw_support/include/esp_intr_alloc.h)

Communication as Master After installing the I2C driver, ESP32-S2 is ready to communicate with other I2C devices.

ESP32-S2's I2C controller operating as master is responsible for establishing communication with I2C slave devices and sending commands to trigger a slave to action, for example, to take a measurement and send the readings back to the master.

For better process organization, the driver provides a container, called a "command link", that should be populated with a sequence of commands and then passed to the I2C controller for execution.

Master Write The example below shows how to build a command link for an I2C master to send *n* bytes to a slave.

The following describes how a command link for a "master write" is set up and what comes inside:

1. Create a command link with `i2c_cmd_link_create()`.
   Then, populate it with the series of data to be sent to the slave:

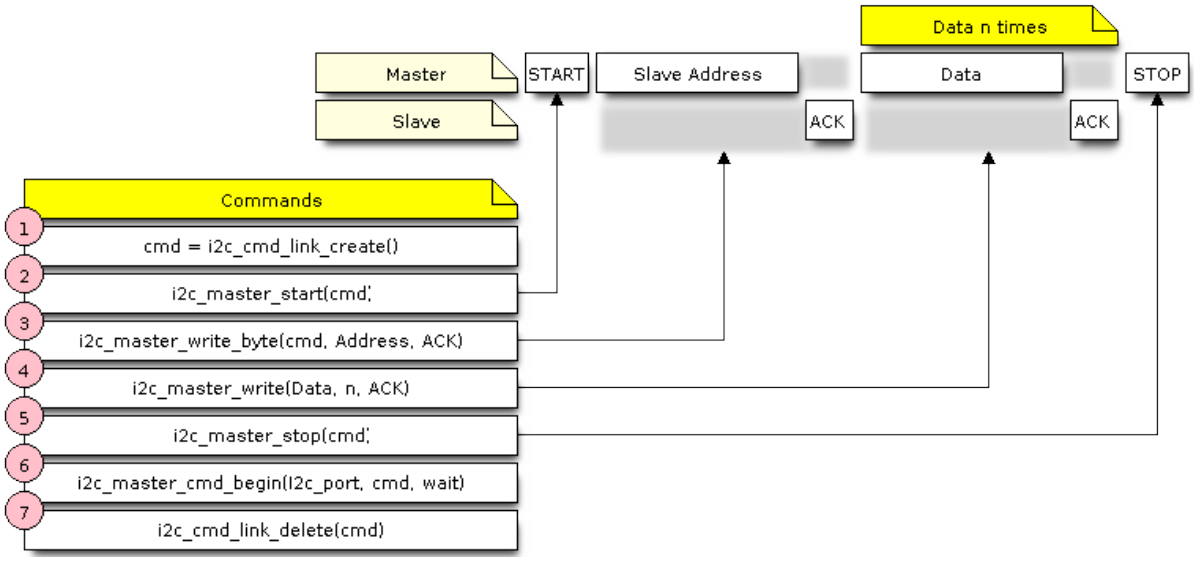


Fig. 7: I2C command link - master write example

a) **Start bit** - `i2c_master_start()`
b) **Slave address** - `i2c_master_write_byte()`. The single byte address is provided as an argument of this function call.
c) **Data** - One or more bytes as an argument of `i2c_master_write()`
d) **Stop bit** - `i2c_master_stop()`

Both functions `i2c_master_write_byte()` and `i2c_master_write()` have an additional argument specifying whether the master should ensure that it has received the ACK bit.

2. Trigger the execution of the command link by I2C controller by calling `i2c_master_cmd_begin()`. Once the execution is triggered, the command link cannot be modified.
3. After the commands are transmitted, release the resources used by the command link by calling `i2c_cmd_link_delete()`.

Master Read The example below shows how to build a command link for an I2C master to read *n* bytes from a slave.

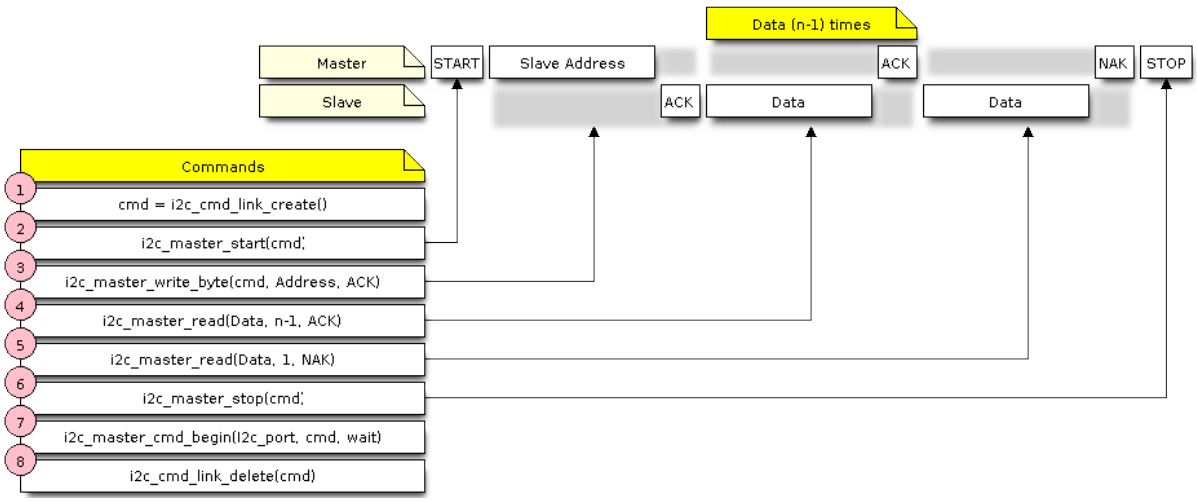


Fig. 8: I2C command link - master read example

Compared to writing data, the command link is populated in Step 4 not with `i2c_master_write...` functions but with `i2c_master_read_byte()` and / or `i2c_master_read()`. Also, the last read in Step 5 is configured so that the master does not provide the ACK bit.

Indicating Write or Read After sending a slave address (see Step 3 on both diagrams above), the master either writes or reads from the slave.

The information on what the master will actually do is hidden in the least significant bit of the slave's address.

For this reason, the command link sent by the master to write data to the slave contains the address `(ESP_SLAVE_ADDR << 1) | I2C_MASTER_WRITE` and looks as follows:

```
i2c_master_write_byte(cmd, (ESP_SLAVE_ADDR << 1) | I2C_MASTER_WRITE, ACK_EN);
```

Likewise, the command link to read from the slave looks as follows:

```
i2c_master_write_byte(cmd, (ESP_SLAVE_ADDR << 1) | I2C_MASTER_READ, ACK_EN);
```

Communication as Slave After installing the I2C driver, ESP32-S2 is ready to communicate with other I2C devices.

The API provides the following functions for slaves

- *`i2c_slave_read_buffer()`*
  Whenever the master writes data to the slave, the slave will automatically store it in the receive buffer. This allows the slave application to call the function *`i2c_slave_read_buffer()`* at its own discretion. This function also has a parameter to specify block time if no data is in the receive buffer. This will allow the slave application to wait with a specified timeout for data to arrive to the buffer.
- *`i2c_slave_write_buffer()`*
  The send buffer is used to store all the data that the slave wants to send to the master in FIFO order. The data stays there until the master requests for it. The function *`i2c_slave_write_buffer()`* has a parameter to specify block time if the send buffer is full. This will allow the slave application to wait with a specified timeout for the adequate amount of space to become available in the send buffer.

A code example showing how to use these functions can be found in peripherals/i2c.

Interrupt Handling During driver installation, an interrupt handler is installed by default. However, you can register your own interrupt handler instead of the default one by calling the function *`i2c_isr_register()`*. When implementing your own interrupt handler, refer to *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *I2C Controller (I2C)* > *Interrupts* [PDF] for the description of interrupts triggered by the I2C controller.

To delete an interrupt handler, call *`i2c_isr_free()`*.

Customized Configuration As mentioned at the end of Section *Configuration*, when the function *`i2c_param_config()`* initializes the driver configuration for an I2C port, it also sets several I2C communication parameters to default values defined in the I2C specification. Some other related parameters are pre-configured in registers of the I2C controller.

All these parameters can be changed to user-defined values by calling dedicated functions given in the table below. Please note that the timing values are defined in APB clock cycles. The frequency of APB is specified in `I2C_APB_CLK_FREQ`.

Table 2: Other Configurable I2C Communication Parameters

Parameters to Change	Function
High time and low time for SCL pulses	`i2c_set_period()`
SCL and SDA signal timing used during generation of **start** signals	`i2c_set_start_timing()`
SCL and SDA signal timing used during generation of **stop** signals	`i2c_set_stop_timing()`
Timing relationship between SCL and SDA signals when slave samples, as well as when master toggles	`i2c_set_data_timing()`
I2C timeout	`i2c_set_timeout()`
Choice between transmitting / receiving the LSB or MSB first, choose one of the modes defined in `i2c_trans_mode_t`	`i2c_set_data_mode()`

Each of the above functions has a *_get_* counterpart to check the currently set value. For example, to check the I2C timeout value, call `i2c_get_timeout()`.

To check the default parameter values which are set during the driver configuration process, please refer to the file driver/i2c.c and look for defines with the suffix `_DEFAULT`.

You can also select different pins for SDA and SCL signals and alter the configuration of pull-ups with the function `i2c_set_pin()`. If you want to modify already entered values, use the function `i2c_param_config()`.

Note: ESP32-S2' s internal pull-ups are in the range of tens of kOhm, which is, in most cases, insufficient for use as I2C pull-ups. Users are advised to use external pull-ups with values described in the I2C specification.

Error Handling The majority of I2C driver functions either return `ESP_OK` on successful completion or a specific error code on failure. It is a good practice to always check the returned values and implement error handling. The driver also prints out log messages that contain error details, e.g., when checking the validity of entered configuration. For details please refer to the file driver/i2c.c and look for defines with the suffix `_ERR_STR`.

Use dedicated interrupts to capture communication failures. For instance, if a slave stretches the clock for too long while preparing the data to send back to master, the interrupt `I2C_TIME_OUT_INT` will be triggered. For detailed information, see *Interrupt Handling*.

In case of a communication failure, you can reset the internal hardware buffers by calling the functions `i2c_reset_tx_fifo()` and `i2c_reset_rx_fifo()` for the send and receive buffers respectively.

Delete Driver When the I2C communication is established with the function `i2c_driver_install()` and is not required for some substantial amount of time, the driver may be deinitialized to release allocated resources by calling `i2c_driver_delete()`.

Application Example

I2C master and slave example: peripherals/i2c.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/i2c.h

Functions

esp_err_t **i2c_driver_install**(*i2c_port_t* *i2c_num*, *i2c_mode_t* *mode*, size_t *slv_rx_buf_len*, size_t *slv_tx_buf_len*, int *intr_alloc_flags*)

I2C driver install.

Note Only slave mode will use this value, driver will ignore this value in master mode.

Note Only slave mode will use this value, driver will ignore this value in master mode.

Note In master mode, if the cache is likely to be disabled(such as write flash) and the slave is time-sensitive, `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` is suggested to be used. In this case, please use the memory allocated from internal RAM in i2c read and write function, because we can not access the psram(if psram is enabled) in interrupt handle function when cache is disabled.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Driver install error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `mode`: I2C mode(master or slave)
- `slv_rx_buf_len`: receiving buffer size for slave mode

Parameters

- `slv_tx_buf_len`: sending buffer size for slave mode

Parameters

- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

esp_err_t **i2c_driver_delete**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*)

I2C driver delete.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

esp_err_t **i2c_param_config**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, **const** *i2c_config_t *i2c_conf*)

I2C parameter initialization.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `i2c_conf`: pointer to I2C parameter settings

esp_err_t **i2c_reset_tx_fifo**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*)

reset I2C tx hardware fifo

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

esp_err_t **i2c_reset_rx_fifo**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*)

reset I2C rx fifo

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

esp_err_t **i2c_isr_register**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, void (**fn*)) void *

, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *intr_handle_t *handle*I2C isr handler register.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

- `fn`: isr handler function
- `arg`: parameter for isr handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: handle return from esp_intr_alloc.

esp_err_t **i2c_isr_free**(*intr_handle_t handle*)

to delete and free I2C isr.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `handle`: handle of isr.

esp_err_t **i2c_set_pin**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int *sda_io_num*, int *scl_io_num*, bool *sda_pullup_en*, bool *scl_pullup_en*, *i2c_mode_t mode*)

Configure GPIO signal for I2C sck and sda.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `sda_io_num`: GPIO number for I2C sda signal
- `scl_io_num`: GPIO number for I2C scl signal
- `sda_pullup_en`: Whether to enable the internal pullup for sda pin
- `scl_pullup_en`: Whether to enable the internal pullup for scl pin
- `mode`: I2C mode

i2c_cmd_handle_t **i2c_cmd_link_create**(void)

Create and init I2C command link.

Note Before we build I2C command link, we need to call i2c_cmd_link_create() to create a command link. After we finish sending the commands, we need to call i2c_cmd_link_delete() to release and return the resources.

Return i2c command link handler

void **i2c_cmd_link_delete**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*)

Free I2C command link.

Note Before we build I2C command link, we need to call i2c_cmd_link_create() to create a command link. After we finish sending the commands, we need to call i2c_cmd_link_delete() to release and return the resources.

Parameters

- `cmd_handle`: I2C command handle

esp_err_t **i2c_master_start**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*)

Queue command for I2C master to generate a start signal.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `cmd_handle`: I2C cmd link

esp_err_t **i2c_master_write_byte**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*, uint8_t *data*, bool *ack_en*)

Queue command for I2C master to write one byte to I2C bus.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C cmd link
- `data`: I2C one byte command to write to bus
- `ack_en`: enable ack check for master

esp_err_t **i2c_master_write**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*, **const** uint8_t **data*, size_t *data_len*, bool *ack_en*)

Queue command for I2C master to write buffer to I2C bus.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands

Note If the psram is enabled and intr_flag is `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM`, please use the memory allocated from internal RAM.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C cmd link
- `data`: data to send

Parameters
- `data_len`: data length
- `ack_en`: enable ack check for master

esp_err_t **i2c_master_read_byte**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*, uint8_t **data*, *i2c_ack_type_t ack*)

Queue command for I2C master to read one byte from I2C bus.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands

Note If the psram is enabled and intr_flag is `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM`, please use the memory allocated from internal RAM.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C cmd link
- `data`: pointer accept the data byte

Parameters
- `ack`: ack value for read command

esp_err_t **i2c_master_read**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*, uint8_t **data*, size_t *data_len*, *i2c_ack_type_t ack*)

Queue command for I2C master to read data from I2C bus.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands

Note If the psram is enabled and intr_flag is `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM`, please use the memory allocated from internal RAM.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `cmd_handle`: I2C cmd link
- `data`: data buffer to accept the data from bus

Parameters
- `data_len`: read data length
- `ack`: ack value for read command

esp_err_t **i2c_master_stop**(*i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*)

Queue command for I2C master to generate a stop signal.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode Call i2c_master_cmd_begin() to send all queued commands

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `cmd_handle`: I2C cmd link

esp_err_t **i2c_master_cmd_begin**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, *i2c_cmd_handle_t cmd_handle*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

I2C master send queued commands. This function will trigger sending all queued commands. The task will be blocked until all the commands have been sent out. The I2C APIs are not thread-safe, if you want to use one I2C port in different tasks, you need to take care of the multi-thread issue.

Note Only call this function in I2C master mode

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Sending command error, slave doesn't ACK the transfer.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE I2C driver not installed or not in master mode.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Operation timeout because the bus is busy.

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `cmd_handle`: I2C command handler
- `ticks_to_wait`: maximum wait ticks.

int **i2c_slave_write_buffer**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, **const** uint8_t **data*, int *size*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

I2C slave write data to internal ringbuffer, when tx fifo empty, isr will fill the hardware fifo from the internal ringbuffer.

Note Only call this function in I2C slave mode

Return

- ESP_FAIL(-1) Parameter error
- Others(>=0) The number of data bytes that pushed to the I2C slave buffer.

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `data`: data pointer to write into internal buffer
- `size`: data size
- `ticks_to_wait`: Maximum waiting ticks

int **i2c_slave_read_buffer**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, uint8_t **data*, size_t *max_size*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

I2C slave read data from internal buffer. When I2C slave receive data, isr will copy received data from hardware rx fifo to internal ringbuffer. Then users can read from internal ringbuffer.

Note Only call this function in I2C slave mode

Return

- ESP_FAIL(-1) Parameter error
- Others(>=0) The number of data bytes that read from I2C slave buffer.

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `data`: data pointer to accept data from internal buffer
- `max_size`: Maximum data size to read
- `ticks_to_wait`: Maximum waiting ticks

esp_err_t **i2c_set_period**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int *high_period*, int *low_period*)

set I2C master clock period

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `high_period`: clock cycle number during SCL is high level, high_period is a 14 bit value
- `low_period`: clock cycle number during SCL is low level, low_period is a 14 bit value

esp_err_t **i2c_get_period**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int **high_period*, int **low_period*)

get I2C master clock period

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `high_period`: pointer to get clock cycle number during SCL is high level, will get a 14 bit value
- `low_period`: pointer to get clock cycle number during SCL is low level, will get a 14 bit value

esp_err_t **`i2c_filter_enable`**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, uint8_t *cyc_num*)

enable hardware filter on I2C bus Sometimes the I2C bus is disturbed by high frequency noise(about 20ns), or the rising edge of the SCL clock is very slow, these may cause the master state machine broken. enable hardware filter can filter out high frequency interference and make the master more stable.

Note Enable filter will slow the SCL clock.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `cyc_num`: the APB cycles need to be filtered(0<= cyc_num <=7). When the period of a pulse is less than cyc_num * APB_cycle, the I2C controller will ignore this pulse.

esp_err_t **`i2c_filter_disable`**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*)

disable filter on I2C bus

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

esp_err_t **`i2c_set_start_timing`**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int *setup_time*, int *hold_time*)

set I2C master start signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `setup_time`: clock number between the falling-edge of SDA and rising-edge of SCL for start mark, it’ s a 10-bit value.
- `hold_time`: clock num between the falling-edge of SDA and falling-edge of SCL for start mark, it’ s a 10-bit value.

esp_err_t **`i2c_get_start_timing`**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int **setup_time*, int **hold_time*)

get I2C master start signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `setup_time`: pointer to get setup time
- `hold_time`: pointer to get hold time

esp_err_t **`i2c_set_stop_timing`**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int *setup_time*, int *hold_time*)

set I2C master stop signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number

- `setup_time`: clock num between the rising-edge of SCL and the rising-edge of SDA, it's a 10-bit value.
- `hold_time`: clock number after the STOP bit's rising-edge, it's a 14-bit value.

esp_err_t **i2c_get_stop_timing**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int **setup_time*, int **hold_time*)

get I2C master stop signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `setup_time`: pointer to get setup time.
- `hold_time`: pointer to get hold time.

esp_err_t **i2c_set_data_timing**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int *sample_time*, int *hold_time*)

set I2C data signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `sample_time`: clock number I2C used to sample data on SDA after the rising-edge of SCL, it's a 10-bit value
- `hold_time`: clock number I2C used to hold the data after the falling-edge of SCL, it's a 10-bit value

esp_err_t **i2c_get_data_timing**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int **sample_time*, int **hold_time*)

get I2C data signal timing

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `sample_time`: pointer to get sample time
- `hold_time`: pointer to get hold time

esp_err_t **i2c_set_timeout**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int *timeout*)

set I2C timeout value

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `timeout`: timeout value for I2C bus (unit: APB 80Mhz clock cycle)

esp_err_t **i2c_get_timeout**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, int **timeout*)

get I2C timeout value

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `timeout`: pointer to get timeout value

esp_err_t **i2c_set_data_mode**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, *i2c_trans_mode_t tx_trans_mode*, *i2c_trans_mode_t rx_trans_mode*)

set I2C data transfer mode

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `tx_trans_mode`: I2C sending data mode
- `rx_trans_mode`: I2C receving data mode

esp_err_t **i2c_get_data_mode**(*i2c_port_t i2c_num*, *i2c_trans_mode_t *tx_trans_mode*, *i2c_trans_mode_t *rx_trans_mode*)

get I2C data transfer mode

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2c_num`: I2C port number
- `tx_trans_mode`: pointer to get I2C sending data mode
- `rx_trans_mode`: pointer to get I2C receiving data mode

Structures

struct i2c_config_t

I2C initialization parameters.

Public Members

i2c_mode_t **mode**

I2C mode

int **sda_io_num**

GPIO number for I2C sda signal

int **scl_io_num**

GPIO number for I2C scl signal

bool **sda_pullup_en**

Internal GPIO pull mode for I2C sda signal

bool **scl_pullup_en**

Internal GPIO pull mode for I2C scl signal

uint32_t **clk_speed**

I2C clock frequency for master mode, (no higher than 1MHz for now)

struct *i2c_config_t*::**[anonymous]**::**[anonymous]** **master**

I2C master config

uint8_t **addr_10bit_en**

I2C 10bit address mode enable for slave mode

uint16_t **slave_addr**

I2C address for slave mode

struct *i2c_config_t*::**[anonymous]**::**[anonymous]** **slave**

I2C slave config

uint32_t **clk_flags**

Bitwise of `I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_**FOR_DFS**` for clk source choice

Macros

I2C_APB_CLK_FREQ

I2C source clock is APB clock, 80MHz

I2C_NUM_MAX
I2C port max

I2C_NUM_0
I2C port 0

I2C_NUM_1
I2C port 1

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_FOR_NOMAL
Any one clock source that is available for the specified frequency may be choosen

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS
For REF tick clock, it won't change with APB.

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP
For light sleep mode.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***i2c_cmd_handle_t**
I2C command handle

Header File

- hal/include/hal/i2c_types.h

Macros

I2C_CLK_FREQ_MAX
Use the highest speed that is available for the clock source picked by clk_flags.

Type Definitions

typedef int **i2c_port_t**
I2C port number, can be I2C_NUM_0 ~ (I2C_NUM_MAX-1).

Enumerations

enum i2c_mode_t
Values:

I2C_MODE_SLAVE = 0
I2C slave mode

I2C_MODE_MASTER
I2C master mode

I2C_MODE_MAX

enum i2c_rw_t
Values:

I2C_MASTER_WRITE = 0
I2C write data

I2C_MASTER_READ
I2C read data

enum i2c_trans_mode_t
Values:

I2C_DATA_MODE_MSB_FIRST = 0
I2C data msb first

I2C_DATA_MODE_LSB_FIRST = 1
I2C data lsb first

I2C_DATA_MODE_MAX

enum i2c_addr_mode_t

Values:

I2C_ADDR_BIT_7 = 0
I2C 7bit address for slave mode

I2C_ADDR_BIT_10
I2C 10bit address for slave mode

I2C_ADDR_BIT_MAX

enum i2c_ack_type_t

Values:

I2C_MASTER_ACK = 0x0
I2C ack for each byte read

I2C_MASTER_NACK = 0x1
I2C nack for each byte read

I2C_MASTER_LAST_NACK = 0x2
I2C nack for the last byte

I2C_MASTER_ACK_MAX

enum i2c_sclk_t

I2C clock source, sorting from smallest to largest, place them in order. This can be expanded in the future use.

Values:

I2C_SCLK_DEFAULT = 0
I2C source clock not selected

I2C_SCLK_APB
I2C source clock from APB, 80M

I2C_SCLK_REF_TICK
I2C source clock from REF_TICK, 1M

I2C_SCLK_MAX

2.2.9 I2S

Overview

I2S (Inter-IC Sound) is a serial, synchronous communication protocol that is usually used for transmitting audio data between two digital audio devices.

ESP32-S2 contains one I2S peripheral. These peripherals can be configured to input and output sample data via the I2S driver.

An I2S bus consists of the following lines:

- Bit clock line
- Channel select line
- Serial data line

Each I2S controller has the following features that can be configured using the I2S driver:

- Operation as system master or slave
- Capable of acting as transmitter or receiver
- Dedicated DMA controller that allows for streaming sample data without requiring the CPU to copy each data sample

Each controller can operate in half-duplex communication mode. Thus, the two controllers can be combined to establish full-duplex communication.

I2S0 output can be routed directly to the digital-to-analog converter' s (DAC) output channels (GPIO 25 & GPIO 26) to produce direct analog output without involving any external I2S codecs. I2S0 can also be used for transmitting PDM (Pulse-density modulation) signals.

The I2S peripherals also support LCD mode for communicating data over a parallel bus, as used by some LCD displays and camera modules. LCD mode has the following operational modes:

- LCD master transmitting mode
- Camera slave receiving mode
- ADC/DAC mode

Note: For high accuracy clock applications, use the APLL_CLK clock source, which has the frequency range of 16 ~ 128 MHz. You can enable the APLL_CLK clock source by setting *i2s_config_t::use_apll* to TRUE.

If *i2s_config_t::use_apll* = TRUE and *i2s_config_t::fixed_mclk* > 0, then the master clock output frequency for I2S will be equal to the value of *i2s_config_t::fixed_mclk*, which means that the mclk frequency is provided by the user, instead of being calculated by the driver.

The clock rate of the word select line, which is called audio left-right clock rate (LRCK) here, is always the divisor of the master clock output frequency and for which the following is always true: 0 < MCLK/LRCK/channels/bits_per_sample < 64.

Functional Overview

Installing the Driver Install the I2S driver by calling the function :cpp:func`i2s_driver_install` and passing the following arguments:

- Port number
- The structure *i2s_config_t* with defined communication parameters
- Event queue size and handle

Configuration example:

```
static const int i2s_num = 0; // i2s port number

static const i2s_config_t i2s_config = {
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = 16,
    .channel_format = I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .intr_alloc_flags = 0, // default interrupt priority
    .dma_buf_count = 8,
    .dma_buf_len = 64,
    .use_apll = false
};

i2s_driver_install(I2S_NUM, &i2s_config, 0, NULL);
```

Setting Communication Pins Once the driver is installed, configure physical GPIO pins to which signals will be routed. For this, call the function :cpp:func`i2s_set_pin` and pass the following arguments to it:

- Port number
- The structure *i2s_pin_config_t* defining the GPIO pin numbers to which the driver should route the BCK, WS, DATA out, and DATA in signals. If you want to keep a currently allocated pin number for a specific signal, or if this signal is unused, then pass the macro *I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE*. See the example below.

```
static const i2s_pin_config_t pin_config = {
    .bck_io_num = 26,
    .ws_io_num = 25,
    .data_out_num = 22,
    .data_in_num = I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE
};

i2s_set_pin(i2s_num, &pin_config);
```

Running I2S Communication To perform a transmission:

- Prepare the data for sending
- Call the function *i2s_write()* and pass the data buffer address and data length to it

The function will write the data to the I2S DMA Tx buffer, and then the data will be transmitted automatically.

```
i2s_write(I2S_NUM, samples_data, ((bits+8)/16)*SAMPLE_PER_CYCLE*4, &i2s_bytes_
↪write, 100);
```

To retrieve received data, use the function *i2s_read()*. It will retrieve the data from the I2S DMA Rx buffer, once the data is received by the I2S controller.

You can temporarily stop the I2S driver by calling the function *i2s_stop()*, which will disable the I2S Tx/Rx units until the function *i2s_start()* is called. If the function :cpp:func`i2s_driver_install` is used, the driver will start up automatically eliminating the need to call *i2s_start()*.

Deleting the Driver If the established communication is no longer required, the driver can be removed to free allocated resources by calling *i2s_driver_uninstall()*.

Application Example

A code example for the I2S driver can be found in the directory peripherals/i2s.

In addition, there are two short configuration examples for the I2S driver.

I2S configuration

```
#include "driver/i2s.h"
#include "freertos/queue.h"

static const int i2s_num = 0; // i2s port number

static const i2s_config_t i2s_config = {
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = 16,
    .channel_format = I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT,
    .communication_format = I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S,
    .intr_alloc_flags = 0, // default interrupt priority
    .dma_buf_count = 8,
    .dma_buf_len = 64,
    .use_apll = false
};

static const i2s_pin_config_t pin_config = {
    .bck_io_num = 26,
    .ws_io_num = 25,
    .data_out_num = 22,
    .data_in_num = I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
};

...

    i2s_driver_install(i2s_num, &i2s_config, 0, NULL);   //install and start i2s␣
↪driver

    i2s_set_pin(i2s_num, &pin_config);

    i2s_set_sample_rates(i2s_num, 22050); //set sample rates

    i2s_driver_uninstall(i2s_num); //stop & destroy i2s driver
```

Configuring I2S to use internal DAC for analog output

```
#include "driver/i2s.h"
#include "freertos/queue.h"

static const int i2s_num = 0; // i2s port number

static const i2s_config_t i2s_config = {
    .mode = I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX | I2S_MODE_DAC_BUILT_IN,
    .sample_rate = 44100,
    .bits_per_sample = 16, /* the DAC module will only take the 8bits from MSB */
    .channel_format = I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT,
    .intr_alloc_flags = 0, // default interrupt priority
    .dma_buf_count = 8,
    .dma_buf_len = 64,
    .use_apll = false
};

...

    i2s_driver_install(i2s_num, &i2s_config, 0, NULL);   //install and start i2s␣
↪driver

    i2s_set_pin(i2s_num, NULL); //for internal DAC, this will enable both of the␣
↪internal channels

    //You can call i2s_set_dac_mode to set built-in DAC output mode.
    //i2s_set_dac_mode(I2S_DAC_CHANNEL_BOTH_EN);

    i2s_set_sample_rates(i2s_num, 22050); //set sample rates

    i2s_driver_uninstall(i2s_num); //stop & destroy i2s driver
```

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/i2s.h

Functions

esp_err_t **i2s_set_pin** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, **const** *i2s_pin_config_t *pin*)

Set I2S pin number.

Inside the pin configuration structure, set I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE for any pin where the current configuration should not be changed.

Note The I2S peripheral output signals can be connected to multiple GPIO pads. However, the I2S peripheral input signal can only be connected to one GPIO pad.

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0 or I2S_NUM_1
- `pin`: I2S Pin structure, or NULL to set 2-channel 8-bit internal DAC pin configuration (GPIO25 & GPIO26)

Note if *pin is set as NULL, this function will initialize both of the built-in DAC channels by default. if you don't want this to happen and you want to initialize only one of the DAC channels, you can call i2s_set_dac_mode instead.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL IO error

esp_err_t **i2s_driver_install** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, **const** *i2s_config_t* **i2s_config*, int *queue_size*, void **i2s_queue*)

Install and start I2S driver.

This function must be called before any I2S driver read/write operations.

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1
- `i2s_config`: I2S configurations - see *i2s_config_t* struct
- `queue_size`: I2S event queue size/depth.
- `i2s_queue`: I2S event queue handle, if set NULL, driver will not use an event queue.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

esp_err_t **i2s_driver_uninstall** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*)

Uninstall I2S driver.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1

esp_err_t **i2s_write** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*, size_t **bytes_written*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Write data to I2S DMA transmit buffer.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1
- `src`: Source address to write from
- `size`: Size of data in bytes
- `[out] bytes_written`: Number of bytes written, if timeout, the result will be less than the size passed in.
- `ticks_to_wait`: TX buffer wait timeout in RTOS ticks. If this many ticks pass without space becoming available in the DMA transmit buffer, then the function will return (note that if the data is written to the DMA buffer in pieces, the overall operation may still take longer than this timeout.) Pass portMAX_DELAY for no timeout.

esp_err_t **i2s_write_expand** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*, size_t *src_bits*, size_t *aim_bits*, size_t **bytes_written*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Write data to I2S DMA transmit buffer while expanding the number of bits per sample. For example, expanding 16-bit PCM to 32-bit PCM.

Format of the data in source buffer is determined by the I2S configuration (see *i2s_config_t*).

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1
- `src`: Source address to write from
- `size`: Size of data in bytes
- `src_bits`: Source audio bit
- `aim_bits`: Bit wanted, no more than 32, and must be greater than src_bits
- `[out] bytes_written`: Number of bytes written, if timeout, the result will be less than the size passed in.
- `ticks_to_wait`: TX buffer wait timeout in RTOS ticks. If this many ticks pass without space becoming available in the DMA transmit buffer, then the function will return (note that if the data is written to the DMA buffer in pieces, the overall operation may still take longer than this timeout.) Pass portMAX_DELAY for no timeout.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

esp_err_t **i2s_read**(*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, void **dest*, size_t *size*, size_t **bytes_read*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Read data from I2S DMA receive buffer.

Note If the built-in ADC mode is enabled, we should call i2s_adc_enable and i2s_adc_disable around the whole reading process, to prevent the data getting corrupted.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1
- `dest`: Destination address to read into
- `size`: Size of data in bytes
- `[out] bytes_read`: Number of bytes read, if timeout, bytes read will be less than the size passed in.
- `ticks_to_wait`: RX buffer wait timeout in RTOS ticks. If this many ticks pass without bytes becoming available in the DMA receive buffer, then the function will return (note that if data is read from the DMA buffer in pieces, the overall operation may still take longer than this timeout.) Pass portMAX_DELAY for no timeout.

esp_err_t **i2s_set_sample_rates**(*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, uint32_t *rate*)

Set sample rate used for I2S RX and TX.

The bit clock rate is determined by the sample rate and *i2s_config_t* configuration parameters (number of channels, bits_per_sample).

```
bit_clock = rate * (number of channels) * bits_per_sample
```

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1
- `rate`: I2S sample rate (ex: 8000, 44100···)

esp_err_t **i2s_stop**(*i2s_port_t i2s_num*)

Stop I2S driver.

There is no need to call i2s_stop() before calling i2s_driver_uninstall().

Disables I2S TX/RX, until i2s_start() is called.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1

esp_err_t **i2s_start** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*)
Start I2S driver.

It is not necessary to call this function after i2s_driver_install() (it is started automatically), however it is necessary to call it after i2s_stop().

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1

esp_err_t **i2s_zero_dma_buffer** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*)
Zero the contents of the TX DMA buffer.

Pushes zero-byte samples into the TX DMA buffer, until it is full.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1

esp_err_t **i2s_set_clk** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*, uint32_t *rate*, *i2s_bits_per_sample_t bits*, *i2s_channel_t ch*)
Set clock & bit width used for I2S RX and TX.

Similar to i2s_set_sample_rates(), but also sets bit width.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Out of memory

Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1
- `rate`: I2S sample rate (ex: 8000, 44100···)
- `bits`: I2S bit width (I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT, I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_24BIT, I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_32BIT)
- `ch`: I2S channel, (I2S_CHANNEL_MONO, I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO)

float **i2s_get_clk** (*i2s_port_t i2s_num*)
get clock set on particular port number.

Return
- actual clock set by i2s driver

Parameters
- `i2s_num`: I2S_NUM_0, I2S_NUM_1

Macros

I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE
Use in *i2s_pin_config_t* for pins which should not be changed

Type Definitions

typedef *intr_handle_t* **i2s_isr_handle_t**

Header File

- hal/include/hal/i2s_types.h

Structures

struct i2s_config_t

I2S configuration parameters for i2s_param_config function.

Public Members

i2s_mode_t **mode**

I2S work mode

int **sample_rate**

I2S sample rate

i2s_bits_per_sample_t **bits_per_sample**

I2S bits per sample

i2s_channel_fmt_t **channel_format**

I2S channel format

i2s_comm_format_t **communication_format**

I2S communication format

int **intr_alloc_flags**

Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info

int **dma_buf_count**

I2S DMA Buffer Count

int **dma_buf_len**

I2S DMA Buffer Length

bool **use_apll**

I2S using APLL as main I2S clock, enable it to get accurate clock

bool **tx_desc_auto_clear**

I2S auto clear tx descriptor if there is underflow condition (helps in avoiding noise in case of data unavailability)

int **fixed_mclk**

I2S using fixed MCLK output. If use_apll = true and fixed_mclk > 0, then the clock output for i2s is fixed and equal to the fixed_mclk value.

struct i2s_event_t

Event structure used in I2S event queue.

Public Members

i2s_event_type_t **type**

I2S event type

size_t **size**

I2S data size for I2S_DATA event

struct i2s_pin_config_t

I2S pin number for i2s_set_pin.

Public Members

int **bck_io_num**

BCK in out pin

int **ws_io_num**

WS in out pin

int **data_out_num**
DATA out pin

int **data_in_num**
DATA in pin

Enumerations

enum i2s_port_t
I2S port number, the max port number is (I2S_NUM_MAX -1).

Values:

I2S_NUM_0 = 0
I2S port 0

I2S_NUM_MAX
I2S port max

enum i2s_bits_per_sample_t
I2S bit width per sample.

Values:

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_8BIT = 8
I2S bits per sample: 8-bits

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT = 16
I2S bits per sample: 16-bits

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_24BIT = 24
I2S bits per sample: 24-bits

I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_32BIT = 32
I2S bits per sample: 32-bits

enum i2s_channel_t
I2S channel.

Values:

I2S_CHANNEL_MONO = 1
I2S 1 channel (mono)

I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO = 2
I2S 2 channel (stereo)

enum i2s_comm_format_t
I2S communication standard format.

Values:

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S = 0X01
I2S communication I2S Philips standard, data launch at second BCK

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MSB = 0X03
I2S communication MSB alignment standard, data launch at first BCK

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT = 0x04
PCM Short standard, also known as DSP mode. The period of synchronization signal (WS) is 1 bck cycle.

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_LONG = 0x0C
PCM Long standard. The period of synchronization signal (WS) is channel_bit*bck cycles.

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MAX
standard max

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S = 0x01
I2S communication format I2S, correspond to `I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S`

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_MSB = 0x01
I2S format MSB, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S |I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_MSB) correspond to `I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S`

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_LSB = 0x02
I2S format LSB, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S |I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_LSB) correspond to `I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MSB`

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM = 0x04
I2S communication format PCM, correspond to `I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT`

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_SHORT = 0x04
PCM Short, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM | I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_SHORT) correspond to `I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT`

I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_LONG = 0x08
PCM Long, (I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM | I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_LONG) correspond to `I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_LONG`

enum i2s_channel_fmt_t
I2S channel format type.

Values:

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT = 0x00

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ALL_RIGHT

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ALL_LEFT

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ONLY_RIGHT

I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ONLY_LEFT

enum i2s_mode_t
I2S Mode, defaut is I2S_MODE_MASTER | I2S_MODE_TX.

Note PDM and built-in DAC functions are only supported on I2S0 for current ESP32 chip.

Values:

I2S_MODE_MASTER = 1
Master mode

I2S_MODE_SLAVE = 2
Slave mode

I2S_MODE_TX = 4
TX mode

I2S_MODE_RX = 8
RX mode

enum i2s_clock_src_t
I2S source clock.

Values:

I2S_CLK_D2CLK = 0
Clock from PLL_D2_CLK(160M)

I2S_CLK_APLL
Clock from APLL

enum i2s_event_type_t
I2S event types.

Values:

I2S_EVENT_DMA_ERROR

I2S_EVENT_TX_DONE
I2S DMA finish sent 1 buffer

I2S_EVENT_RX_DONE
I2S DMA finish received 1 buffer

I2S_EVENT_MAX
I2S event max index

2.2.10 LED Control

Introduction

The LED control (LEDC) peripheral is primarily designed to control the intensity of LEDs, although it can also be used to generate PWM signals for other purposes. It has 8 channels which can generate independent waveforms that can be used, for example, to drive RGB LED devices.

The PWM controller can automatically increase or decrease the duty cycle gradually, allowing for fades without any processor interference.

Functionality Overview

Setting up a channel of the LEDC is done in three steps. Note that unlike ESP32, ESP32-S2 only supports configuring channels in "low speed" mode.

1. *Timer Configuration* by specifying the PWM signal's frequency and duty cycle resolution.
2. *Channel Configuration* by associating it with the timer and GPIO to output the PWM signal.
3. *Change PWM Signal* that drives the output in order to change LED's intensity. This can be done under the full control of software or with hardware fading functions.

As an optional step, it is also possible to set up an interrupt on fade end.

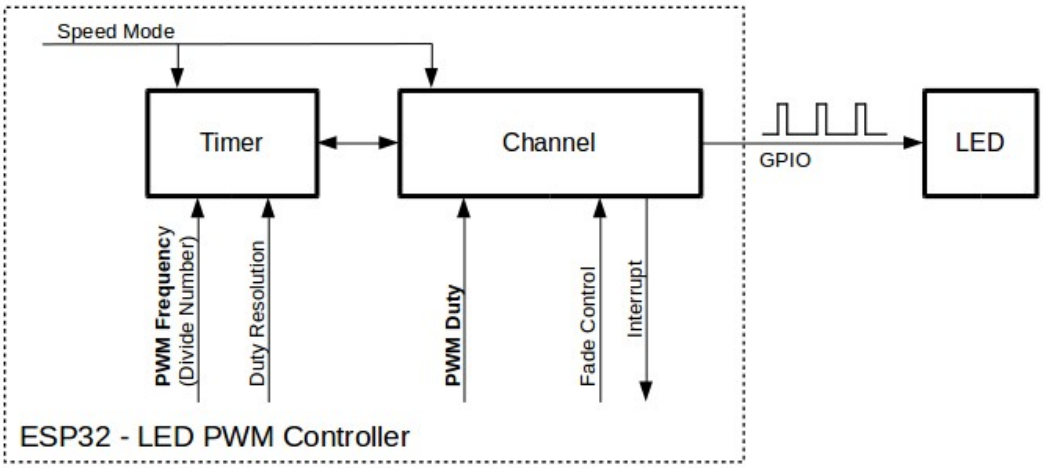


Fig. 9: Key Settings of LED PWM Controller's API

Timer Configuration Setting the timer is done by calling the function `ledc_timer_config()` and passing the data structure `ledc_timer_config_t` that contains the following configuration settings:

- Speed mode (value must be `LEDC_LOW_SPEED_MODE`)

- Timer number `ledc_timer_t`
- PWM signal frequency
- Resolution of PWM duty

The frequency and the duty resolution are interdependent. The higher the PWM frequency, the lower the duty resolution which is available, and vice versa. This relationship might be important if you are planning to use this API for purposes other than changing the intensity of LEDs. For more details, see Section *Supported Range of Frequency and Duty Resolutions*.

Channel Configuration When the timer is set up, configure the desired channel (one out of `ledc_channel_t`). This is done by calling the function `ledc_channel_config()`.

Similar to the timer configuration, the channel setup function should be passed a structure `ledc_channel_config_t` that contains the channel's configuration parameters.

At this point, the channel should start operating and generating the PWM signal on the selected GPIO, as configured in `ledc_channel_config_t`, with the frequency specified in the timer settings and the given duty cycle. The channel operation (signal generation) can be suspended at any time by calling the function `ledc_stop()`.

Change PWM Signal Once the channel starts operating and generating the PWM signal with the constant duty cycle and frequency, there are a couple of ways to change this signal. When driving LEDs, primarily the duty cycle is changed to vary the light intensity.

The following two sections describe how to change the duty cycle using software and hardware fading. If required, the signal's frequency can also be changed; it is covered in Section *Change PWM Frequency*.

Note: All the timers and channels in the ESP32-S2's LED PWM Controller only support low speed mode. Any change of PWM settings must be explicitly triggered by software (see below).

Change PWM Duty Cycle Using Software To set the duty cycle, use the dedicated function `ledc_set_duty()`. After that, call `ledc_update_duty()` to activate the changes. To check the currently set value, use the corresponding `_get_` function `ledc_get_duty()`.

Another way to set the duty cycle, as well as some other channel parameters, is by calling `ledc_channel_config()` covered in Section *Channel Configuration*.

The range of the duty cycle values passed to functions depends on selected `duty_resolution` and should be from `0` to `(2 ** duty_resolution) - 1`. For example, if the selected duty resolution is 10, then the duty cycle values can range from 0 to 1023. This provides the resolution of ~0.1%.

Change PWM Duty Cycle using Hardware The LEDC hardware provides the means to gradually transition from one duty cycle value to another. To use this functionality, enable fading with `ledc_fade_func_install()` and then configure it by calling one of the available fading functions:

- `ledc_set_fade_with_time()`
- `ledc_set_fade_with_step()`
- `ledc_set_fade()`

Finally start fading with `ledc_fade_start()`.

If not required anymore, fading and an associated interrupt can be disabled with `ledc_fade_func_uninstall()`.

Change PWM Frequency The LEDC API provides several ways to change the PWM frequency "on the fly":

- Set the frequency by calling `ledc_set_freq()`. There is a corresponding function `ledc_get_freq()` to check the current frequency.

- Change the frequency and the duty resolution by calling *ledc_bind_channel_timer()* to bind some other timer to the channel.
- Change the channel's timer by calling *ledc_channel_config()*.

More Control Over PWM There are several lower level timer-specific functions that can be used to change PWM settings:

- *ledc_timer_set()*
- *ledc_timer_rst()*
- *ledc_timer_pause()*
- *ledc_timer_resume()*

The first two functions are called "behind the scenes" by *ledc_channel_config()* to provide a startup of a timer after it is configured.

Use Interrupts When configuring an LEDC channel, one of the parameters selected within *ledc_channel_config_t* is *ledc_intr_type_t* which triggers an interrupt on fade completion.

For registration of a handler to address this interrupt, call *ledc_isr_register()*.

Supported Range of Frequency and Duty Resolutions

The LED PWM Controller is designed primarily to drive LEDs. It provides a large flexibility of PWM duty cycle settings. For instance, the PWM frequency of 5 kHz can have the maximum duty resolution of 13 bits. This means that the duty can be set anywhere from 0 to 100% with a resolution of ~0.012% (2 ** 13 = 8192 discrete levels of the LED intensity). Note, however, that these parameters depend on the clock signal clocking the LED PWM Controller timer which in turn clocks the channel (see *timer configuration* and the *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *LED PWM Controller (LEDC)* [PDF]).

The LEDC can be used for generating signals at much higher frequencies that are sufficient enough to clock other devices, e.g., a digital camera module. In this case, the maximum available frequency is 40 MHz with duty resolution of 1 bit. This means that the duty cycle is fixed at 50% and cannot be adjusted.

The LEDC API is designed to report an error when trying to set a frequency and a duty resolution that exceed the range of LEDC's hardware. For example, an attempt to set the frequency to 20 MHz and the duty resolution to 3 bits will result in the following error reported on a serial monitor:

```
E (196) ledc: requested frequency and duty resolution cannot be achieved, try␣
↪reducing freq_hz or duty_resolution. div_param=128
```

In such a situation, either the duty resolution or the frequency must be reduced. For example, setting the duty resolution to 2 will resolve this issue and will make it possible to set the duty cycle at 25% steps, i.e., at 25%, 50% or 75%.

The LEDC driver will also capture and report attempts to configure frequency / duty resolution combinations that are below the supported minimum, e.g.:

```
E (196) ledc: requested frequency and duty resolution cannot be achieved, try␣
↪increasing freq_hz or duty_resolution. div_param=128000000
```

The duty resolution is normally set using *ledc_timer_bit_t*. This enumeration covers the range from 10 to 15 bits. If a smaller duty resolution is required (from 10 down to 1), enter the equivalent numeric values directly.

Application Example

The LEDC change duty cycle and fading control example: peripherals/ledc.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/ledc.h

Functions

esp_err_t **ledc_channel_config**(**const** *ledc_channel_config_t* **ledc_conf*)

LEDC channel configuration Configure LEDC channel with the given channel/output gpio_num/interrupt/source timer/frequency(Hz)/LEDC duty resolution.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `ledc_conf`: Pointer of LEDC channel configure struct

esp_err_t **ledc_timer_config**(**const** *ledc_timer_config_t* **timer_conf*)

LEDC timer configuration Configure LEDC timer with the given source timer/frequency(Hz)/duty_resolution.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Can not find a proper pre-divider number base on the given frequency and the current duty_resolution.

Parameters
- `timer_conf`: Pointer of LEDC timer configure struct

esp_err_t **ledc_update_duty**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*)

LEDC update channel parameters.

Note Call this function to activate the LEDC updated parameters. After ledc_set_duty, we need to call this function to update the settings.

Note ledc_set_duty, ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint and ledc_update_duty are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_duty_and_update

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t

esp_err_t **ledc_set_pin**(int *gpio_num*, *ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t ledc_channel*)

Set LEDC output gpio.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters
- `gpio_num`: The LEDC output gpio
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `ledc_channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t

esp_err_t **ledc_stop**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *idle_level*)

LEDC stop. Disable LEDC output, and set idle level.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `idle_level`: Set output idle level after LEDC stops.

esp_err_t **ledc_set_freq**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_timer_t timer_num*, uint32_t *freq_hz*)

LEDC set channel frequency (Hz)

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Can not find a proper pre-divider number base on the given frequency and the current duty_resolution.

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `timer_num`: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t
- `freq_hz`: Set the LEDC frequency

uint32_t **ledc_get_freq**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_timer_t timer_num*)

LEDC get channel frequency (Hz)

Return

- 0 error
- Others Current LEDC frequency

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `timer_num`: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

esp_err_t **ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *duty*, uint32_t *hpoint*)

LEDC set duty and hpoint value Only after calling ledc_update_duty will the duty update.

Note ledc_set_duty, ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint and ledc_update_duty are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_duty_and_update

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `duty`: Set the LEDC duty, the range of duty setting is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]
- `hpoint`: Set the LEDC hpoint value(max: 0xfffff)

int **ledc_get_hpoint**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*)

LEDC get hpoint value, the counter value when the output is set high level.

Return

- LEDC_ERR_VAL if parameter error
- Others Current hpoint value of LEDC channel

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t

esp_err_t **ledc_set_duty**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *duty*)

LEDC set duty This function do not change the hpoint value of this channel. if needed, please call ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint. only after calling ledc_update_duty will the duty update.

Note ledc_set_duty, ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint and ledc_update_duty are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_duty_and_update.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `duty`: Set the LEDC duty, the range of duty setting is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]

uint32_t **ledc_get_duty**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*)

LEDC get duty.

Return

- LEDC_ERR_DUTY if parameter error
- Others Current LEDC duty

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t

esp_err_t **ledc_set_fade**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *duty*, *ledc_duty_direction_t fade_direction*, uint32_t *step_num*, uint32_t *duty_cycle_num*, uint32_t *duty_scale*)

LEDC set gradient Set LEDC gradient, After the function calls the ledc_update_duty function, the function can take effect.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `duty`: Set the start of the gradient duty, the range of duty setting is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]
- `fade_direction`: Set the direction of the gradient
- `step_num`: Set the number of the gradient
- `duty_cycle_num`: Set how many LEDC tick each time the gradient lasts
- `duty_scale`: Set gradient change amplitude

esp_err_t **ledc_isr_register**(void (**fn*)) void *
, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *ledc_isr_handle_t* **handle*Register LEDC interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

Parameters

- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: User-supplied argument passed to the handler function.
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

esp_err_t **ledc_timer_set**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_timer_t timer_sel*, uint32_t *clock_divider*, uint32_t *duty_resolution*, *ledc_clk_src_t clk_src*)

Configure LEDC settings.

Return
- (-1) Parameter error
- Other Current LEDC duty

Parameters
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `timer_sel`: Timer index (0-3), there are 4 timers in LEDC module
- `clock_divider`: Timer clock divide value, the timer clock is divided from the selected clock source
- `duty_resolution`: Resolution of duty setting in number of bits. The range of duty values is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]
- `clk_src`: Select LEDC source clock.

esp_err_t **ledc_timer_rst** (*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_timer_t timer_sel*)

Reset LEDC timer.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `timer_sel`: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

esp_err_t **ledc_timer_pause** (*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_timer_t timer_sel*)

Pause LEDC timer counter.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `timer_sel`: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

esp_err_t **ledc_timer_resume** (*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_timer_t timer_sel*)

Resume LEDC timer.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `timer_sel`: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

esp_err_t **ledc_bind_channel_timer** (*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, *ledc_timer_t timer_sel*)

Bind LEDC channel with the selected timer.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel index (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `timer_sel`: LEDC timer index (0-3), select from ledc_timer_t

esp_err_t **ledc_set_fade_with_step** (*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *target_duty*, uint32_t *scale*, uint32_t *cycle_num*)

Set LEDC fade function.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function. Call ledc_fade_start() after this to start fading.

Note ledc_set_fade_with_step, ledc_set_fade_with_time and ledc_fade_start are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_fade_step_and_start

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode. ,
- `channel`: LEDC channel index (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `target_duty`: Target duty of fading [0, (2**duty_resolution) - 1]
- `scale`: Controls the increase or decrease step scale.
- `cycle_num`: increase or decrease the duty every cycle_num cycles

esp_err_t **ledc_set_fade_with_time**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *target_duty*, int *max_fade_time_ms*)

Set LEDC fade function, with a limited time.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function. Call ledc_fade_start() after this to start fading.

Note ledc_set_fade_with_step, ledc_set_fade_with_time and ledc_fade_start are not thread-safe, do not call these functions to control one LEDC channel in different tasks at the same time. A thread-safe version of API is ledc_set_fade_step_and_start

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode. ,
- `channel`: LEDC channel index (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `target_duty`: Target duty of fading.(0 - (2 ** duty_resolution - 1)))
- `max_fade_time_ms`: The maximum time of the fading (ms).

esp_err_t **ledc_fade_func_install**(int *intr_alloc_flags*)

Install LEDC fade function. This function will occupy interrupt of LEDC module.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function already installed.

Parameters

- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

void **ledc_fade_func_uninstall**(void)

Uninstall LEDC fade function.

esp_err_t **ledc_fade_start**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, *ledc_fade_mode_t fade_mode*)

Start LEDC fading.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function. Call this API right after ledc_set_fade_with_time or ledc_set_fade_with_step before to start fading.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error.

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel number
- `fade_mode`: Whether to block until fading done.

esp_err_t **ledc_set_duty_and_update**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *duty*, uint32_t *hpoint*)

A thread-safe API to set duty for LEDC channel and return when duty updated.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `duty`: Set the LEDC duty, the range of duty setting is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]
- `hpoint`: Set the LEDC hpoint value(max: 0xfffff)

esp_err_t **ledc_set_fade_time_and_start**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *target_duty*, uint32_t *max_fade_time_ms*, *ledc_fade_mode_t fade_mode*)

A thread-safe API to set and start LEDC fade function, with a limited time.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once, before calling this function.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel index (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `target_duty`: Target duty of fading.(0 - (2 ** duty_resolution - 1)))
- `max_fade_time_ms`: The maximum time of the fading (ms).
- `fade_mode`: choose blocking or non-blocking mode

esp_err_t **ledc_set_fade_step_and_start**(*ledc_mode_t speed_mode*, *ledc_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *target_duty*, uint32_t *scale*, uint32_t *cycle_num*, *ledc_fade_mode_t fade_mode*)

A thread-safe API to set and start LEDC fade function.

Note Call ledc_fade_func_install() once before calling this function.

Note If a fade operation is running in progress on that channel, the driver would not allow it to be stopped. Other duty operations will have to wait until the fade operation has finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Fade function not installed.
- ESP_FAIL Fade function init error

Parameters

- `speed_mode`: Select the LEDC channel group with specified speed mode. Note that not all targets support high speed mode.
- `channel`: LEDC channel index (0-7), select from ledc_channel_t
- `target_duty`: Target duty of fading [0, (2**duty_resolution) - 1]
- `scale`: Controls the increase or decrease step scale.
- `cycle_num`: increase or decrease the duty every cycle_num cycles
- `fade_mode`: choose blocking or non-blocking mode

Macros

LEDC_APB_CLK_HZ

LEDC_REF_CLK_HZ

LEDC_ERR_DUTY

LEDC_ERR_VAL

Type Definitions

typedef *intr_handle_t* **ledc_isr_handle_t**

Header File

- hal/include/hal/ledc_types.h

Structures

struct ledc_channel_config_t

Configuration parameters of LEDC channel for ledc_channel_config function.

Public Members

int **gpio_num**

the LEDC output gpio_num, if you want to use gpio16, gpio_num = 16

ledc_mode_t **speed_mode**

LEDC speed speed_mode, high-speed mode or low-speed mode

ledc_channel_t **channel**

LEDC channel (0 - 7)

ledc_intr_type_t **intr_type**

configure interrupt, Fade interrupt enable or Fade interrupt disable

ledc_timer_t **timer_sel**

Select the timer source of channel (0 - 3)

uint32_t **duty**

LEDC channel duty, the range of duty setting is [0, (2**duty_resolution)]

int **hpoint**

LEDC channel hpoint value, the max value is 0xfffff

struct ledc_timer_config_t

Configuration parameters of LEDC Timer timer for ledc_timer_config function.

Public Members

ledc_mode_t **speed_mode**

LEDC speed speed_mode, high-speed mode or low-speed mode

ledc_timer_bit_t **duty_resolution**

LEDC channel duty resolution

ledc_timer_bit_t **bit_num**
Deprecated in ESP-IDF 3.0. This is an alias to 'duty_resolution' for backward compatibility with ESP-IDF 2.1

ledc_timer_t **timer_num**
The timer source of channel (0 - 3)

uint32_t **freq_hz**
LEDC timer frequency (Hz)

ledc_clk_cfg_t **clk_cfg**
Configure LEDC source clock. For low speed channels and high speed channels, you can specify the source clock using LEDC_USE_REF_TICK, LEDC_USE_APB_CLK or LEDC_AUTO_CLK. For low speed channels, you can also specify the source clock using LEDC_USE_RTC8M_CLK, in this case, all low speed channel's source clock must be RTC8M_CLK

Enumerations

enum ledc_mode_t
Values:

LEDC_LOW_SPEED_MODE
LEDC low speed speed_mode

LEDC_SPEED_MODE_MAX
LEDC speed limit

enum ledc_intr_type_t
Values:

LEDC_INTR_DISABLE = 0
Disable LEDC interrupt

LEDC_INTR_FADE_END
Enable LEDC interrupt

LEDC_INTR_MAX

enum ledc_duty_direction_t
Values:

LEDC_DUTY_DIR_DECREASE = 0
LEDC duty decrease direction

LEDC_DUTY_DIR_INCREASE = 1
LEDC duty increase direction

LEDC_DUTY_DIR_MAX

enum ledc_slow_clk_sel_t
Values:

LEDC_SLOW_CLK_RTC8M = 0
LEDC low speed timer clock source is 8MHz RTC clock

LEDC_SLOW_CLK_APB
LEDC low speed timer clock source is 80MHz APB clock

LEDC_SLOW_CLK_XTAL
LEDC low speed timer clock source XTAL clock

enum ledc_clk_cfg_t
Values:

LEDC_AUTO_CLK = 0
The driver will automatically select the source clock(REF_TICK or APB) based on the giving resolution and duty parameter when init the timer

LEDC_USE_REF_TICK
LEDC timer select REF_TICK clock as source clock

LEDC_USE_APB_CLK
LEDC timer select APB clock as source clock

LEDC_USE_RTC8M_CLK
LEDC timer select RTC8M_CLK as source clock. Only for low speed channels and this parameter must be the same for all low speed channels

LEDC_USE_XTAL_CLK
LEDC timer select XTAL clock as source clock

enum ledc_clk_src_t
Values:

LEDC_REF_TICK = *LEDC_USE_REF_TICK*
LEDC timer clock divided from reference tick (1Mhz)

LEDC_APB_CLK = *LEDC_USE_APB_CLK*
LEDC timer clock divided from APB clock (80Mhz)

enum ledc_timer_t
Values:

LEDC_TIMER_0 = 0
LEDC timer 0

LEDC_TIMER_1
LEDC timer 1

LEDC_TIMER_2
LEDC timer 2

LEDC_TIMER_3
LEDC timer 3

LEDC_TIMER_MAX

enum ledc_channel_t
Values:

LEDC_CHANNEL_0 = 0
LEDC channel 0

LEDC_CHANNEL_1
LEDC channel 1

LEDC_CHANNEL_2
LEDC channel 2

LEDC_CHANNEL_3
LEDC channel 3

LEDC_CHANNEL_4
LEDC channel 4

LEDC_CHANNEL_5
LEDC channel 5

LEDC_CHANNEL_6
LEDC channel 6

LEDC_CHANNEL_7
LEDC channel 7

LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX

enum ledc_timer_bit_t
Values:

LEDC_TIMER_1_BIT = 1
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 1 bits

LEDC_TIMER_2_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 2 bits

LEDC_TIMER_3_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 3 bits

LEDC_TIMER_4_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 4 bits

LEDC_TIMER_5_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 5 bits

LEDC_TIMER_6_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 6 bits

LEDC_TIMER_7_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 7 bits

LEDC_TIMER_8_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 8 bits

LEDC_TIMER_9_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 9 bits

LEDC_TIMER_10_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 10 bits

LEDC_TIMER_11_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 11 bits

LEDC_TIMER_12_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 12 bits

LEDC_TIMER_13_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 13 bits

LEDC_TIMER_14_BIT
LEDC PWM duty resolution of 14 bits

LEDC_TIMER_BIT_MAX

enum ledc_fade_mode_t
Values:

LEDC_FADE_NO_WAIT = 0
LEDC fade function will return immediately

LEDC_FADE_WAIT_DONE
LEDC fade function will block until fading to the target duty

LEDC_FADE_MAX

2.2.11 Pulse Counter

Introduction

The PCNT (Pulse Counter) module is designed to count the number of rising and/or falling edges of an input signal. Each pulse counter unit has a 16-bit signed counter register and two channels that can be configured to either increment or decrement the counter. Each channel has a signal input that accepts signal edges to be detected, as well as a control input that can be used to enable or disable the signal input. The inputs have optional filters that can be used to discard unwanted glitches in the signal.

Functionality Overview

Description of functionality of this API has been broken down into four sections:

- *Configuration* - describes counter's configuration parameters and how to setup the counter.
- *Operating the Counter* - provides information on control functions to pause, measure and clear the counter.
- *Filtering Pulses* - describes options to filtering pulses and the counter control signals.
- *Using Interrupts* - presents how to trigger interrupts on specific states of the counter.

Configuration

The PCNT module has four independent counting "units" numbered from 0 to 3. In the API they are referred to using `pcnt_unit_t`. Each unit has two independent channels numbered as 0 and 1 and specified with `pcnt_channel_t`.

The configuration is provided separately per unit's channel using `pcnt_config_t` and covers:

- The unit and the channel number this configuration refers to.
- GPIO numbers of the pulse input and the pulse gate input.
- Two pairs of parameters: `pcnt_ctrl_mode_t` and `pcnt_count_mode_t` to define how the counter reacts depending on the the status of control signal and how counting is done positive / negative edge of the pulses.
- Two limit values (minimum / maximum) that are used to establish watchpoints and trigger interrupts when the pulse count is meeting particular limit.

Setting up of particular channel is then done by calling a function `pcnt_unit_config()` with above `pcnt_config_t` as the input parameter.

To disable the pulse or the control input pin in configuration, provide `PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED` instead of the GPIO number.

Operating the Counter

After doing setup with `pcnt_unit_config()`, the counter immediately starts to operate. The accumulated pulse count can be checked by calling `pcnt_get_counter_value()`.

There are couple of functions that allow to control the counter's operation: `pcnt_counter_pause()`, `pcnt_counter_resume()` and `pcnt_counter_clear()`

It is also possible to dynamically change the previously set up counter modes with `pcnt_unit_config()` by calling `pcnt_set_mode()`.

If desired, the pulse input pin and the control input pin may be changed "on the fly" using `pcnt_set_pin()`. To disable particular input provide as a function parameter `PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED` instead of the GPIO number.

Note: For the counter not to miss any pulses, the pulse duration should be longer than one APB_CLK cycle (12.5 ns). The pulses are sampled on the edges of the APB_CLK clock and may be missed, if fall between the edges. This applies to counter operation with or without a *filer*.

Filtering Pulses

The PCNT unit features filters on each of the pulse and control inputs, adding the option to ignore short glitches in the signals.

The length of ignored pulses is provided in APB_CLK clock cycles by calling `pcnt_set_filter_value()`. The current filter setting may be checked with `pcnt_get_filter_value()`. The APB_CLK clock is running at 80 MHz.

The filter is put into operation / suspended by calling *pcnt_filter_enable()* / *pcnt_filter_disable()*.

Using Interrupts

There are five counter state watch events, defined in *pcnt_evt_type_t*, that are able to trigger an interrupt. The event happens on the pulse counter reaching specific values:

- Minimum or maximum count values: `counter_l_lim` or `counter_h_lim` provided in *pcnt_config_t* as discussed in *Configuration*
- Threshold 0 or Threshold 1 values set using function *pcnt_set_event_value()*.
- Pulse count = 0

To register, enable or disable an interrupt to service the above events, call *pcnt_isr_register()*, *pcnt_intr_enable()*. and *pcnt_intr_disable()*. To enable or disable events on reaching threshold values, you will also need to call functions *pcnt_event_enable()* and *pcnt_event_disable()*.

In order to check what are the threshold values currently set, use function *pcnt_get_event_value()*.

Application Example

- Pulse counter with control signal and event interrupt example: peripherals/pcnt/pulse_count_event.
- Parse the signal generated from rotary encoder: peripherals/pcnt/rotary_encoder.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/pcnt.h

Functions

esp_err_t **pcnt_unit_config**(**const** *pcnt_config_t* **pcnt_config*)

Configure Pulse Counter unit.

Note This function will disable three events: PCNT_EVT_L_LIM, PCNT_EVT_H_LIM, PCNT_EVT_ZERO.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver already initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_config`: Pointer of Pulse Counter unit configure parameter

esp_err_t **pcnt_get_counter_value**(*pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit*, int16_t **count*)

Get pulse counter value.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_unit`: Pulse Counter unit number
- `count`: Pointer to accept counter value

esp_err_t **pcnt_counter_pause**(*pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit*)

Pause PCNT counter of PCNT unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number

esp_err_t **pcnt_counter_resume**(*pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit*)

Resume counting for PCNT counter.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number, select from pcnt_unit_t

esp_err_t **pcnt_counter_clear**(*pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit*)

Clear and reset PCNT counter value to zero.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number, select from pcnt_unit_t

esp_err_t **pcnt_intr_enable**(*pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit*)

Enable PCNT interrupt for PCNT unit.

Note Each Pulse counter unit has five watch point events that share the same interrupt. Configure events with pcnt_event_enable() and pcnt_event_disable()

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number

esp_err_t **pcnt_intr_disable**(*pcnt_unit_t pcnt_unit*)

Disable PCNT interrupt for PCNT unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `pcnt_unit`: PCNT unit number

esp_err_t **pcnt_event_enable**(*pcnt_unit_t unit*, *pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type*)

Enable PCNT event of PCNT unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `evt_type`: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).

esp_err_t **pcnt_event_disable**(*pcnt_unit_t unit*, *pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type*)

Disable PCNT event of PCNT unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `evt_type`: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).

esp_err_t **pcnt_set_event_value** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*, *pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type*, int16_t *value*)

Set PCNT event value of PCNT unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `evt_type`: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).
- `value`: Counter value for PCNT event

esp_err_t **pcnt_get_event_value** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*, *pcnt_evt_type_t evt_type*, int16_t **value*)

Get PCNT event value of PCNT unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `evt_type`: Watch point event type. All enabled events share the same interrupt (one interrupt per pulse counter unit).
- `value`: Pointer to accept counter value for PCNT event

esp_err_t **pcnt_get_event_status** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*, uint32_t **status*)

Get PCNT event status of PCNT unit.

Return

```
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
```

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `status`: Pointer to accept event status word

esp_err_t **pcnt_isr_unregister** (*pcnt_isr_handle_t handle*)

Unregister PCNT interrupt handler (registered by pcnt_isr_register), the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on. If the interrupt service is registered by pcnt_isr_service_install, please call pcnt_isr_service_uninstall instead.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Can not find the interrupt that matches the flags.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

Parameters

- `handle`: handle to unregister the ISR service.

esp_err_t **pcnt_isr_register** (void (**fn*)) void *

, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *pcnt_isr_handle_t* **handle*Register PCNT interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on. Please do not use pcnt_isr_service_install if this function was called.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Can not find the interrupt that matches the flags.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.

Parameters

- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: Parameter for handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here. Calling pcnt_isr_unregister to unregister this ISR service if needed, but only if the handle is not NULL.

esp_err_t **pcnt_set_pin** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*, *pcnt_channel_t channel*, int *pulse_io*, int *ctrl_io*)

Configure PCNT pulse signal input pin and control input pin.

Note Set the signal input to PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED if unused.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `channel`: PCNT channel number
- `pulse_io`: Pulse signal input GPIO
- `ctrl_io`: Control signal input GPIO

esp_err_t **pcnt_filter_enable** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*)

Enable PCNT input filter.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number

esp_err_t **pcnt_filter_disable** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*)

Disable PCNT input filter.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number

esp_err_t **pcnt_set_filter_value** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*, uint16_t *filter_val*)

Set PCNT filter value.

Note filter_val is a 10-bit value, so the maximum filter_val should be limited to 1023.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `filter_val`: PCNT signal filter value, counter in APB_CLK cycles. Any pulses lasting shorter than this will be ignored when the filter is enabled.

esp_err_t **pcnt_get_filter_value** (*pcnt_unit_t unit*, uint16_t **filter_val*)

Get PCNT filter value.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `filter_val`: Pointer to accept PCNT filter value.

esp_err_t **pcnt_set_mode**(*pcnt_unit_t unit*, *pcnt_channel_t channel*, *pcnt_count_mode_t pos_mode*, *pcnt_count_mode_t neg_mode*, *pcnt_ctrl_mode_t hctrl_mode*, *pcnt_ctrl_mode_t lctrl_mode*)

Set PCNT counter mode.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `channel`: PCNT channel number
- `pos_mode`: Counter mode when detecting positive edge
- `neg_mode`: Counter mode when detecting negative edge
- `hctrl_mode`: Counter mode when control signal is high level
- `lctrl_mode`: Counter mode when control signal is low level

esp_err_t **pcnt_isr_handler_add**(*pcnt_unit_t unit*, void (**isr_handler*)) void *
, void **args*Add ISR handler for specified unit.

Call this function after using pcnt_isr_service_install() to install the PCNT driver's ISR handler service.

The ISR handlers do not need to be declared with IRAM_ATTR, unless you pass the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag when allocating the ISR in pcnt_isr_service_install().

This ISR handler will be called from an ISR. So there is a stack size limit (configurable as "ISR stack size" in menuconfig). This limit is smaller compared to a global PCNT interrupt handler due to the additional level of indirection.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number
- `isr_handler`: Interrupt handler function.
- `args`: Parameter for handler function

esp_err_t **pcnt_isr_service_install**(int *intr_alloc_flags*)

Install PCNT ISR service.

Note We can manage different interrupt service for each unit. This function will use the default ISR handle service, Calling pcnt_isr_service_uninstall to uninstall the default service if needed. Please do not use pcnt_isr_register if this function was called.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory to install this service
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE ISR service already installed

Parameters

- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.

void **pcnt_isr_service_uninstall**(void)

Uninstall PCNT ISR service, freeing related resources.

esp_err_t **pcnt_isr_handler_remove**(*pcnt_unit_t unit*)

Delete ISR handler for specified unit.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE pcnt driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `unit`: PCNT unit number

Type Definitions

typedef *intr_handle_t* **pcnt_isr_handle_t**

Header File

- hal/include/hal/pcnt_types.h

Structures

struct pcnt_config_t

Pulse Counter configuration for a single channel.

Public Members

int **pulse_gpio_num**

Pulse input GPIO number, if you want to use GPIO16, enter pulse_gpio_num = 16, a negative value will be ignored

int **ctrl_gpio_num**

Control signal input GPIO number, a negative value will be ignored

pcnt_ctrl_mode_t **lctrl_mode**

PCNT low control mode

pcnt_ctrl_mode_t **hctrl_mode**

PCNT high control mode

pcnt_count_mode_t **pos_mode**

PCNT positive edge count mode

pcnt_count_mode_t **neg_mode**

PCNT negative edge count mode

int16_t **counter_h_lim**

Maximum counter value

int16_t **counter_l_lim**

Minimum counter value

pcnt_unit_t **unit**

PCNT unit number

pcnt_channel_t **channel**

the PCNT channel

Macros

PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED

When selected for a pin, this pin will not be used

Enumerations

enum pcnt_port_t

PCNT port number, the max port number is (PCNT_PORT_MAX - 1).

Values:

PCNT_PORT_0 = 0
PCNT port 0

PCNT_PORT_MAX
PCNT port max

enum pcnt_unit_t

Selection of all available PCNT units.

Values:

PCNT_UNIT_0 = 0
PCNT unit 0

PCNT_UNIT_1 = 1
PCNT unit 1

PCNT_UNIT_2 = 2
PCNT unit 2

PCNT_UNIT_3 = 3
PCNT unit 3

PCNT_UNIT_MAX

enum pcnt_ctrl_mode_t

Selection of available modes that determine the counter's action depending on the state of the control signal's input GPIO.

Note Configuration covers two actions, one for high, and one for low level on the control input

Values:

PCNT_MODE_KEEP = 0
Control mode: won't change counter mode

PCNT_MODE_REVERSE = 1
Control mode: invert counter mode(increase -> decrease, decrease -> increase)

PCNT_MODE_DISABLE = 2
Control mode: Inhibit counter(counter value will not change in this condition)

PCNT_MODE_MAX

enum pcnt_count_mode_t

Selection of available modes that determine the counter's action on the edge of the pulse signal's input GPIO.

Note Configuration covers two actions, one for positive, and one for negative edge on the pulse input

Values:

PCNT_COUNT_DIS = 0
Counter mode: Inhibit counter(counter value will not change in this condition)

PCNT_COUNT_INC = 1
Counter mode: Increase counter value

PCNT_COUNT_DEC = 2
Counter mode: Decrease counter value

PCNT_COUNT_MAX

enum pcnt_channel_t

Selection of channels available for a single PCNT unit.

Values:

PCNT_CHANNEL_0 = 0x00
PCNT channel 0

PCNT_CHANNEL_1 = 0x01
PCNT channel 1

PCNT_CHANNEL_MAX

enum pcnt_evt_type_t
Selection of counter's events the may trigger an interrupt.

Values:

PCNT_EVT_THRES_1 = BIT(2)
PCNT watch point event: threshold1 value event

PCNT_EVT_THRES_0 = BIT(3)
PCNT watch point event: threshold0 value event

PCNT_EVT_L_LIM = BIT(4)
PCNT watch point event: Minimum counter value

PCNT_EVT_H_LIM = BIT(5)
PCNT watch point event: Maximum counter value

PCNT_EVT_ZERO = BIT(6)
PCNT watch point event: counter value zero event

PCNT_EVT_MAX

2.2.12 RMT

The RMT (Remote Control) module driver can be used to send and receive infrared remote control signals. Due to flexibility of RMT module, the driver can also be used to generate or receive many other types of signals.

The signal, which consists of a series of pulses, is generated by RMT's transmitter based on a list of values. The values define the pulse duration and a binary level, see below. The transmitter can also provide a carrier and modulate it with provided pulses.

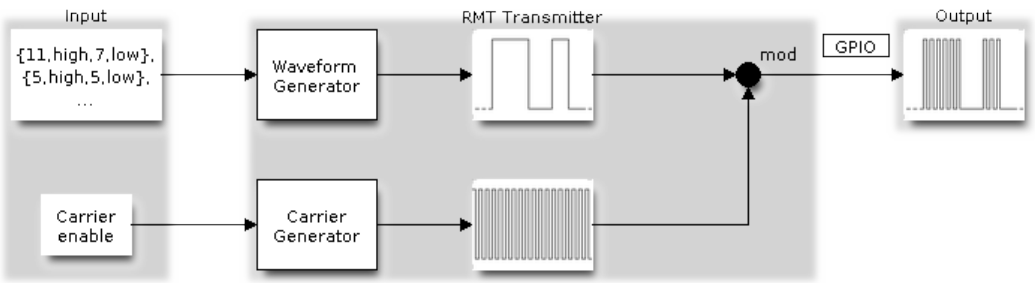


Fig. 10: RMT Transmitter Overview

The reverse operation is performed by the receiver, where a series of pulses is decoded into a list of values containing the pulse duration and binary level. A filter may be applied to remove high frequency noise from the input signal.

There couple of typical steps to setup and operate the RMT and they are discussed in the following sections:

1. *Configure Driver*
2. *Transmit Data* or *Receive Data*
3. *Change Operation Parameters*
4. *Use Interrupts*

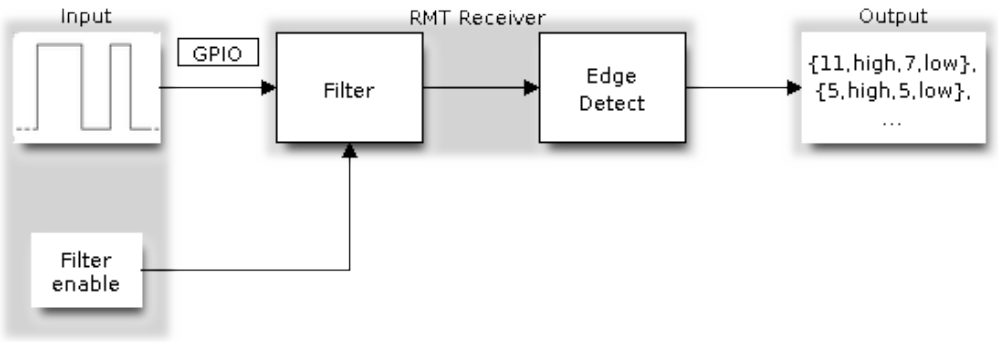


Fig. 11: RMT Receiver Overview

The RMT has four channels numbered from zero to three. Each channel is able to independently transmit or receive data. They are referred to using indexes defined in structure `rmt_channel_t`.

Configure Driver

There are several parameters that define how particular channel operates. Most of these parameters are configured by setting specific members of `rmt_config_t` structure. Some of the parameters are common to both transmit or receive mode, and some are mode specific. They are all discussed below.

Common Parameters

- The **channel** to be configured, select one from the `rmt_channel_t` enumerator.
- The RMT **operation mode** - whether this channel is used to transmit or receive data, selected by setting a **rmt_mode** members to one of the values from `rmt_mode_t`.
- What is the **pin number** to transmit or receive RMT signals, selected by setting **gpio_num**.
- How many **memory blocks** will be used by the channel, set with **mem_block_num**.
- Extra miscellaneous parameters for the channel can be set in the **flags**.
  - When **RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS** is set, RMT channel will take REF_TICK or XTAL as source clock. The benefit is, RMT channel can continue work even when APB clock is changing. See *power_management* for more information.
  - When **RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_INVERT_SIG** is set, the driver will invert the RMT signal sending to or receiving from the channel. It just works like an external inverter connected to the GPIO of certain RMT channel.
- A **clock divider**, that will determine the range of pulse length generated by the RMT transmitter or discriminated by the receiver. Selected by setting **clk_div** to a value within [1 .. 255] range. The RMT source clock is typically APB CLK, 80Mhz by default. But when **RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS** is set in **flags**, RMT source clock is changed to REF_TICK or XTAL.

Note: The period of a square wave after the clock divider is called a ‘tick’. The length of the pulses generated by the RMT transmitter or discriminated by the receiver is configured in number of ‘ticks’.

There are also couple of specific parameters that should be set up depending if selected channel is configured in *Transmit Mode* or *Receive Mode*:

Transmit Mode When configuring channel in transmit mode, set **tx_config** and the following members of `rmt_tx_config_t`:

- Transmit the currently configured data items in a loop - **loop_en**
- Enable the RMT carrier signal - **carrier_en**

- Frequency of the carrier in Hz - **carrier_freq_hz**
- Duty cycle of the carrier signal in percent (%) - **carrier_duty_percent**
- Level of the RMT output, when the carrier is applied - **carrier_level**
- Enable the RMT output if idle - **idle_output_en**
- Set the signal level on the RMT output if idle - **idle_level**
- Specify maximum number of transmissions in a loop - **loop_count**

Receive Mode In receive mode, set **rx_config** and the following members of *rmt_rx_config_t*:

- Enable a filter on the input of the RMT receiver - **filter_en**
- A threshold of the filter, set in the number of ticks - **filter_ticks_thresh**. Pulses shorter than this setting will be filtered out. Note, that the range of entered tick values is [0..255].
- A pulse length threshold that will turn the RMT receiver idle, set in number of ticks - **idle_threshold**. The receiver will ignore pulses longer than this setting.
- Enable the RMT carrier demodulation - **carrier_rm**
- Frequency of the carrier in Hz - **carrier_freq_hz**
- Duty cycle of the carrier signal in percent (%) - **carrier_duty_percent**
- Level of the RMT input, where the carrier is modulated to - **carrier_level**

Finalize Configuration Once the *rmt_config_t* structure is populated with parameters, it should be then invoked with *rmt_config()* to make the configuration effective.

The last configuration step is installation of the driver in memory by calling *rmt_driver_install()*. If `rx_buf_size` parameter of this function is > 0, then a ring buffer for incoming data will be allocated. A default ISR handler will be installed, see a note in *Use Interrupts*.

Now, depending on how the channel is configured, we are ready to either *Transmit Data* or *Receive Data*. This is described in next two sections.

Transmit Data

Before being able to transmit some RMT pulses, we need to define the pulse pattern. The minimum pattern recognized by the RMT controller, later called an ‘item’, is provided in a structure `rmt_item32_t`. Each item consists of two pairs of two values. The first value in a pair describes the signal duration in ticks and is 15 bits long, the second provides the signal level (high or low) and is contained in a single bit. A block of couple of items and the structure of an item is presented below.

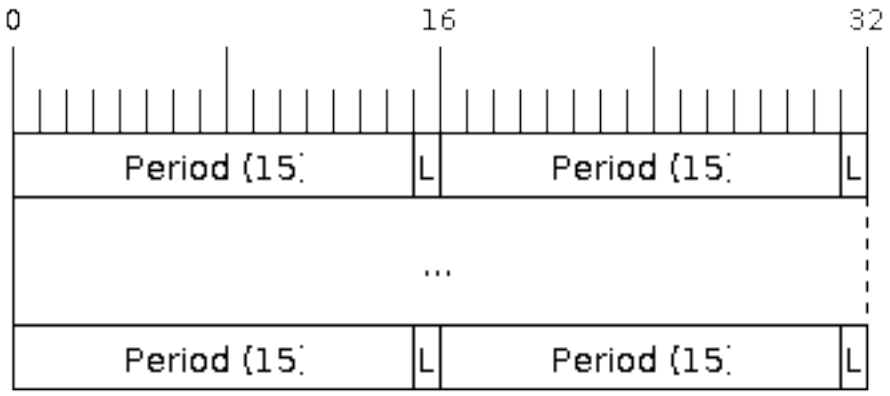


Fig. 12: Structure of RMT items (L - signal level)

For a simple example how to define a block of items see peripherals/rmt/morse_code.

The items are provided to the RMT controller by calling function *rmt_write_items()*. This function also automatically triggers start of transmission. It may be called to wait for transmission completion or exit just after transmission start. In such case you can wait for the transmission end by calling *rmt_wait_tx_done()*. This function does not limit the number of data items to transmit. It is using an interrupt to successively copy the new data chunks to RMT's internal memory as previously provided data are sent out.

Another way to provide data for transmission is by calling *rmt_fill_tx_items()*. In this case transmission is not started automatically. To control the transmission process use *rmt_tx_start()* and *rmt_tx_stop()*. The number of items to sent is restricted by the size of memory blocks allocated in the RMT controller's internal memory, see *rmt_set_mem_block_num()*.

Receive Data

Before starting the receiver we need some storage for incoming items. The RMT controller has 256 x 32-bits of internal RAM shared between all four channels.

In typical scenarios it is not enough as an ultimate storage for all incoming (and outgoing) items. Therefore this API supports retrieval of incoming items on the fly to save them in a ring buffer of a size defined by the user. The size is provided when calling *rmt_driver_install()* discussed above. To get a handle to this buffer call *rmt_get_ringbuf_handle()*.

With the above steps complete we can start the receiver by calling *rmt_rx_start()* and then move to checking what's inside the buffer. To do so, you can use common FreeRTOS functions that interact with the ring buffer. Please see an example how to do it in peripherals/rmt/ir_protocols.

To stop the receiver, call *rmt_rx_stop()*.

Change Operation Parameters

Previously described function *rmt_config()* provides a convenient way to set several configuration parameters in one shot. This is usually done on application start. Then, when the application is running, the API provides an alternate way to update individual parameters by calling dedicated functions. Each function refers to the specific RMT channel provided as the first input parameter. Most of the functions have *_get_* counterpart to read back the currently configured value.

Parameters Common to Transmit and Receive Mode

- Selection of a GPIO pin number on the input or output of the RMT - *rmt_set_gpio()*
- Number of memory blocks allocated for the incoming or outgoing data - *rmt_set_mem_pd()*
- Setting of the clock divider - *rmt_set_clk_div()*
- Selection of the clock source, note that currently one clock source is supported, the APB clock which is 80Mhz - *rmt_set_source_clk()*

Transmit Mode Parameters

- Enable or disable the loop back mode for the transmitter - *rmt_set_tx_loop_mode()*
- Binary level on the output to apply the carrier - *rmt_set_tx_carrier()*, selected from *rmt_carrier_level_t*
- Determines the binary level on the output when transmitter is idle - *rmt_set_idle_level()*, selected from *rmt_idle_level_t*

Receive Mode Parameters

- The filter setting - *rmt_set_rx_filter()*
- The receiver threshold setting - *rmt_set_rx_idle_thresh()*
- Whether the transmitter or receiver is entitled to access RMT's memory - *rmt_set_memory_owner()*, selection is from *rmt_mem_owner_t*.

Use Interrupts

Registering of an interrupt handler for the RMT controller is done be calling *rmt_isr_register()*.

Note: When calling *rmt_driver_install()* to use the system RMT driver, a default ISR is being installed. In such a case you cannot register a generic ISR handler with *rmt_isr_register()*.

The RMT controller triggers interrupts on four specific events describes below. To enable interrupts on these events, the following functions are provided:

- The RMT receiver has finished receiving a signal - *rmt_set_rx_intr_en()*
- The RMT transmitter has finished transmitting the signal - *rmt_set_tx_intr_en()*
- The number of events the transmitter has sent matches a threshold value *rmt_set_tx_thr_intr_en()*
- Ownership to the RMT memory block has been violated - *rmt_set_err_intr_en()*

Setting or clearing an interrupt enable mask for specific channels and events may be also done by calling *rmt_set_intr_enable_mask()* or *rmt_clr_intr_enable_mask()*.

When servicing an interrupt within an ISR, the interrupt need to explicitly cleared. To do so, set specific bits described as `RMT.int_clr.val.chN_event_name` and defined as a `volatile struct` in soc/esp32s2/include/soc/rmt_struct.h, where N is the RMT channel number [0, n] and the `event_name` is one of four events described above.

If you do not need an ISR anymore, you can deregister it by calling a function *rmt_isr_deregister()*.

Warning: It's not recommended for users to register an interrupt handler in their applications. RMT driver is highly dependent on interrupt, especially when doing transaction in a ping-pong way, so the driver itself has registered a default handler called `rmt_driver_isr_default`. Instead, if what you want is to get a notification when transaction is done, go ahead with *rmt_register_tx_end_callback()*.

Uninstall Driver

If the RMT driver has been installed with *rmt_driver_install()* for some specific period of time and then not required, the driver may be removed to free allocated resources by calling *rmt_driver_uninstall()*.

Application Examples

- Using RMT to send morse code: peripherals/rmt/morse_code.
- Using RMT to drive RGB LED strip: peripherals/rmt/led_strip.
- NEC remote control TX and RX example: peripherals/rmt/ir_protocols.
- Musical buzzer example: peripherals/rmt/musical_buzzer.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/rmt.h

Functions

esp_err_t **rmt_set_clk_div**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint8_t *div_cnt*)

Set RMT clock divider, channel clock is divided from source clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `div_cnt`: RMT counter clock divider

esp_err_t **rmt_get_clk_div**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint8_t **div_cnt*)

Get RMT clock divider, channel clock is divided from source clock.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `div_cnt`: pointer to accept RMT counter divider

esp_err_t **rmt_set_rx_idle_thresh**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint16_t *thresh*)

Set RMT RX idle threshold value.

In receive mode, when no edge is detected on the input signal for longer than idle_thres channel clock cycles, the receive process is finished.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `thresh`: RMT RX idle threshold

esp_err_t **rmt_get_rx_idle_thresh**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint16_t **thresh*)

Get RMT idle threshold value.

In receive mode, when no edge is detected on the input signal for longer than idle_thres channel clock cycles, the receive process is finished.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `thresh`: pointer to accept RMT RX idle threshold value

esp_err_t **rmt_set_mem_block_num**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint8_t *rmt_mem_num*)

Set RMT memory block number for RMT channel.

This function is used to configure the amount of memory blocks allocated to channel n The 8 channels share a 512x32-bit RAM block which can be read and written by the processor cores over the APB bus, as well as read by the transmitters and written by the receivers.

The RAM address range for channel n is start_addr_CHn to end_addr_CHn, which are defined by: Memory block start address is RMT_CHANNEL_MEM(n) (in soc/rmt_reg.h), that is, start_addr_chn = RMT base address + 0x800 + 64 ∗ 4 ∗ n, and end_addr_chn = RMT base address + 0x800 + 64 ∗ 4 ∗ n + 64 ∗ 4 ∗ RMT_MEM_SIZE_CHn mod 512 ∗ 4

Note If memory block number of one channel is set to a value greater than 1, this channel will occupy the memory block of the next channel. Channel 0 can use at most 8 blocks of memory, accordingly channel 7 can only use one memory block.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `rmt_mem_num`: RMT RX memory block number, one block has 64 * 32 bits.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_mem_block_num**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint8_t **rmt_mem_num*)

Get RMT memory block number.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `rmt_mem_num`: Pointer to accept RMT RX memory block number

esp_err_t **rmt_set_tx_carrier**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *carrier_en*, uint16_t *high_level*, uint16_t *low_level*, *rmt_carrier_level_t carrier_level*)

Configure RMT carrier for TX signal.

Set different values for carrier_high and carrier_low to set different frequency of carrier. The unit of carrier_high/low is the source clock tick, not the divided channel counter clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `carrier_en`: Whether to enable output carrier.
- `high_level`: High level duration of carrier
- `low_level`: Low level duration of carrier.
- `carrier_level`: Configure the way carrier wave is modulated for channel.
  - 1’ b1:transmit on low output level
  - 1’ b0:transmit on high output level

esp_err_t **rmt_set_mem_pd**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *pd_en*)

Set RMT memory in low power mode.

Reduce power consumed by memory. 1:memory is in low power state.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `pd_en`: RMT memory low power enable.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_mem_pd**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool **pd_en*)

Get RMT memory low power mode.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `pd_en`: Pointer to accept RMT memory low power mode.

esp_err_t **rmt_tx_start**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *tx_idx_rst*)

Set RMT start sending data from memory.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `tx_idx_rst`: Set true to reset memory index for TX. Otherwise, transmitter will continue sending from the last index in memory.

esp_err_t **rmt_tx_stop**(*rmt_channel_t channel*)

Set RMT stop sending.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_rx_start** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *rx_idx_rst*)
Set RMT start receiving data.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `rx_idx_rst`: Set true to reset memory index for receiver. Otherwise, receiver will continue receiving data to the last index in memory.

esp_err_t **rmt_rx_stop** (*rmt_channel_t channel*)
Set RMT stop receiving data.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_tx_memory_reset** (*rmt_channel_t channel*)
Reset RMT TX memory.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_rx_memory_reset** (*rmt_channel_t channel*)
Reset RMT RX memory.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_set_memory_owner** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, *rmt_mem_owner_t owner*)
Set RMT memory owner.

Note Setting memroy is only valid for RX channel.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `owner`: To set when the transmitter or receiver can process the memory of channel.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_memory_owner** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, *rmt_mem_owner_t* **owner*)
Get RMT memory owner.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `owner`: Pointer to get memory owner.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_tx_loop_mode** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *loop_en*)
Set RMT tx loop mode.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `loop_en`: Enable RMT transmitter loop sending mode. If set true, transmitter will continue sending from the first data to the last data in channel over and over again in a loop.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_tx_loop_mode**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool **loop_en*)

Get RMT tx loop mode.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `loop_en`: Pointer to accept RMT transmitter loop sending mode.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_rx_filter**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *rx_filter_en*, uint8_t *thresh*)

Set RMT RX filter.

In receive mode, channel will ignore input pulse when the pulse width is smaller than threshold. Counted in source clock, not divided counter clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `rx_filter_en`: To enable RMT receiver filter.
- `thresh`: Threshold of pulse width for receiver.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_source_clk**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, *rmt_source_clk_t base_clk*)

Set RMT source clock.

RMT module has two clock sources:

1. APB clock which is 80Mhz
2. REF tick clock, which would be 1Mhz (not supported in this version).

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `base_clk`: To choose source clock for RMT module.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_source_clk**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, *rmt_source_clk_t *src_clk*)

Get RMT source clock.

RMT module has two clock sources:

1. APB clock which is 80Mhz
2. REF tick clock, which would be 1Mhz (not supported in this version).

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `src_clk`: Pointer to accept source clock for RMT module.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_idle_level**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *idle_out_en*, *rmt_idle_level_t level*)

Set RMT idle output level for transmitter.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `idle_out_en`: To enable idle level output.
- `level`: To set the output signal's level for channel in idle state.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_idle_level**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool **idle_out_en*, *rmt_idle_level_t *level*)

Get RMT idle output level for transmitter.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `idle_out_en`: Pointer to accept value of enable idle.
- `level`: Pointer to accept value of output signal's level in idle state for specified channel.

esp_err_t **rmt_get_status**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint32_t **status*)

Get RMT status.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `status`: Pointer to accept channel status. Please refer to RMT_CHnSTATUS_REG(n=0~7) in `rmt_reg.h` for more details of each field.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_rx_intr_en**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *en*)

Set RMT RX interrupt enable.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `en`: enable or disable RX interrupt.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_err_intr_en**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *en*)

Set RMT RX error interrupt enable.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `en`: enable or disable RX err interrupt.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_tx_intr_en**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *en*)

Set RMT TX interrupt enable.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `en`: enable or disable TX interrupt.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_tx_thr_intr_en**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *en*, uint16_t *evt_thresh*)

Set RMT TX threshold event interrupt enable.

An interrupt will be triggered when the number of transmitted items reaches the threshold value

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `en`: enable or disable TX event interrupt.
- `evt_thresh`: RMT event interrupt threshold value

esp_err_t **rmt_set_gpio**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, *rmt_mode_t mode*, *gpio_num_t gpio_num*, bool *invert_signal*)

Configure the GPIO used by RMT channel.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Configure RMT GPIO failed because of wrong parameter
- ESP_OK Configure RMT GPIO successfully

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `mode`: RMT mode, either RMT_MODE_TX or RMT_MODE_RX
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number, which is connected with certain RMT signal
- `invert_signal`: Invert RMT signal physically by GPIO matrix

esp_err_t **rmt_config**(**const** *rmt_config_t *rmt_param*)

Configure RMT parameters.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `rmt_param`: RMT parameter struct

esp_err_t **rmt_isr_register**(void (**fn*)) void *

, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *rmt_isr_handle_t *handle*Register RMT interrupt handler, the handler is an ISR.

The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Note If you already called rmt_driver_install to use system RMT driver, please do not register ISR handler again.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Function pointer error.
- ESP_FAIL System driver installed, can not register ISR handler for RMT

Parameters

- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: Parameter for the handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: If non-zero, a handle to later clean up the ISR gets stored here.

esp_err_t **rmt_isr_deregister**(*rmt_isr_handle_t handle*)

Deregister previously registered RMT interrupt handler.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Handle invalid

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle obtained from rmt_isr_register

esp_err_t **rmt_fill_tx_items**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, **const** rmt_item32_t **item*, uint16_t *item_num*, uint16_t *mem_offset*)

Fill memory data of channel with given RMT items.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `item`: Pointer of items.
- `item_num`: RMT sending items number.
- `mem_offset`: Index offset of memory.

esp_err_t **rmt_driver_install** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, size_t *rx_buf_size*, int *intr_alloc_flags*)

Initialize RMT driver.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is already installed, call rmt_driver_uninstall first.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Memory allocation failure
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `rx_buf_size`: Size of RMT RX ringbuffer. Can be 0 if the RX ringbuffer is not used.
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags for the RMT driver interrupt handler. Pass 0 for default flags. See esp_intr_alloc.h for details. If ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is used, please do not use the memory allocated from psram when calling rmt_write_items.

esp_err_t **rmt_driver_uninstall** (*rmt_channel_t channel*)

Uninstall RMT driver.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_get_channel_status** (*rmt_channel_status_result_t *channel_status*)

Get the current status of eight channels.

Note Do not call this function if it is possible that `rmt_driver_uninstall` will be called at the same time.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter is NULL
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `[out] channel_status`: store the current status of each channel

esp_err_t **rmt_get_counter_clock** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint32_t **clock_hz*)

Get speed of channel' s internal counter clock.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter is NULL
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `[out] clock_hz`: counter clock speed, in hz

esp_err_t **rmt_write_items** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, **const** rmt_item32_t **rmt_item*, int *item_num*, bool *wait_tx_done*)

RMT send waveform from rmt_item array.

This API allows user to send waveform with any length.

Note This function will not copy data, instead, it will point to the original items, and send the waveform items. If wait_tx_done is set to true, this function will block and will not return until all items have been sent out. If wait_tx_done is set to false, this function will return immediately, and the driver interrupt will continue sending the items. We must make sure the item data will not be damaged when the driver is still sending items in driver interrupt.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `rmt_item`: head point of RMT items array. If ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is used, please do not use the memory allocated from psram when calling rmt_write_items.
- `item_num`: RMT data item number.
- `wait_tx_done`:
  - If set 1, it will block the task and wait for sending done.
  - If set 0, it will not wait and return immediately.

esp_err_t **rmt_wait_tx_done** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, TickType_t *wait_time*)

Wait RMT TX finished.

Return

- ESP_OK RMT Tx done successfully
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Exceeded the ‘wait_time’ given
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_FAIL Driver not installed

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `wait_time`: Maximum time in ticks to wait for transmission to be complete. If set 0, return immediately with ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if TX is busy (polling).

esp_err_t **rmt_get_ringbuf_handle** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, *RingbufHandle_t* **buf_handle*)

Get ringbuffer from RMT.

Users can get the RMT RX ringbuffer handle, and process the RX data.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `buf_handle`: Pointer to buffer handle to accept RX ringbuffer handle.

esp_err_t **rmt_translator_init** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, *sample_to_rmt_t fn*)

Init rmt translator and register user callback. The callback will convert the raw data that needs to be sent to rmt format. If a channel is initialized more than once, tha user callback will be replaced by the later.

Return

- ESP_FAIL Init fail.
- ESP_OK Init success.

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel .
- `fn`: Point to the data conversion function.

esp_err_t **rmt_translator_set_context** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, void **context*)

Set user context for the translator of specific channel.

Return

- ESP_FAIL Set context fail
- ESP_OK Set context success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel number
- `context`: User context

esp_err_t **rmt_translator_get_context** (**const** size_t **item_num*, void ***context*)

Get the user context set by ‘rmt_translator_set_context’ .

Note This API must be invoked in the RMT translator callback function, and the first argument must be the actual parameter ‘item_num’ you got in that callback function.

Return

- ESP_FAIL Get context fail
- ESP_OK Get context success

Parameters

- `item_num`: Address of the memory which contains the number of translated items (It's from driver's internal memroy)
- `context`: Returned User context

esp_err_t **rmt_write_sample**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, **const** uint8_t **src*, size_t *src_size*, bool *wait_tx_done*)

Translate uint8_t type of data into rmt format and send it out. Requires rmt_translator_init to init the translator first.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Send fail
- ESP_OK Send success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel .
- `src`: Pointer to the raw data.
- `src_size`: The size of the raw data.
- `wait_tx_done`: Set true to wait all data send done.

rmt_tx_end_callback_t **rmt_register_tx_end_callback**(*rmt_tx_end_fn_t function*, void **arg*)

Registers a callback that will be called when transmission ends.

Called by rmt_driver_isr_default in interrupt context.

Note Requires rmt_driver_install to install the default ISR handler.
Return the previous callback settings (members will be set to NULL if there was none)
Parameters
- `function`: Function to be called from the default interrupt handler or NULL.
- `arg`: Argument which will be provided to the callback when it is called.

esp_err_t **rmt_set_rx_thr_intr_en**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, bool *en*, uint16_t *evt_thresh*)

Set RMT RX threshold event interrupt enable.

An interrupt will be triggered when the number of received items reaches the threshold value

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel
- `en`: enable or disable RX event interrupt.
- `evt_thresh`: RMT event interrupt threshold value

esp_err_t **rmt_add_channel_to_group**(*rmt_channel_t channel*)

Add channel into a synchronous group (channels in the same group can start transaction simultaneously)

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_remove_channel_from_group**(*rmt_channel_t channel*)

Remove channel out of a group.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `channel`: RMT channel

esp_err_t **rmt_set_tx_loop_count**(*rmt_channel_t channel*, uint32_t *count*)

Set loop count for RMT TX channel.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `count`: loop count

esp_err_t **rmt_memory_rw_rst** (*rmt_channel_t channel*)

Reset RMT TX/RX memory index.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel

void **rmt_set_intr_enable_mask** (uint32_t *mask*)

Set mask value to RMT interrupt enable register.

Parameters

- `mask`: Bit mask to set to the register

void **rmt_clr_intr_enable_mask** (uint32_t *mask*)

Clear mask value to RMT interrupt enable register.

Parameters

- `mask`: Bit mask to clear the register

esp_err_t **rmt_set_pin** (*rmt_channel_t channel*, *rmt_mode_t mode*, *gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Set RMT pin.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `channel`: RMT channel
- `mode`: TX or RX mode for RMT
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number to transmit or receive the signal.

Structures

struct rmt_tx_config_t

Data struct of RMT TX configure parameters.

Public Members

uint32_t **carrier_freq_hz**

RMT carrier frequency

rmt_carrier_level_t **carrier_level**

Level of the RMT output, when the carrier is applied

rmt_idle_level_t **idle_level**

RMT idle level

uint8_t **carrier_duty_percent**

RMT carrier duty (%)

uint32_t **loop_count**

Maximum loop count

bool **carrier_en**

RMT carrier enable

bool **loop_en**

Enable sending RMT items in a loop

bool **idle_output_en**
RMT idle level output enable

struct rmt_rx_config_t
Data struct of RMT RX configure parameters.

Public Members

uint16_t **idle_threshold**
RMT RX idle threshold

uint8_t **filter_ticks_thresh**
RMT filter tick number

bool **filter_en**
RMT receiver filter enable

bool **rm_carrier**
RMT receiver remove carrier enable

uint32_t **carrier_freq_hz**
RMT carrier frequency

uint8_t **carrier_duty_percent**
RMT carrier duty (%)

rmt_carrier_level_t **carrier_level**
The level to remove the carrier

struct rmt_config_t
Data struct of RMT configure parameters.

Public Members

rmt_mode_t **rmt_mode**
RMT mode: transmitter or receiver

rmt_channel_t **channel**
RMT channel

gpio_num_t **gpio_num**
RMT GPIO number

uint8_t **clk_div**
RMT channel counter divider

uint8_t **mem_block_num**
RMT memory block number

uint32_t **flags**
RMT channel extra configurations, OR'd with RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_[*]

rmt_tx_config_t **tx_config**
RMT TX parameter

rmt_rx_config_t **rx_config**
RMT RX parameter

struct rmt_tx_end_callback_t
Structure encapsulating a RMT TX end callback.

Public Members

rmt_tx_end_fn_t **function**
Function which is called on RMT TX end

void ***arg**
Optional argument passed to function

Macros

RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS
Channel can work during APB clock scaling

RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_INVERT_SIG
Invert RMT signal

RMT_MEM_ITEM_NUM
Define memory space of each RMT channel (in words = 4 bytes)

RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_TX(gpio, channel_id)
Default configuration for Tx channel.

RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_RX(gpio, channel_id)
Default configuration for RX channel.

Type Definitions

typedef *intr_handle_t* **rmt_isr_handle_t**
RMT interrupt handle.

typedef void (***rmt_tx_end_fn_t**)(*rmt_channel_t* channel, void *arg)
Type of RMT Tx End callback function.

typedef void (***sample_to_rmt_t**)(**const** void *src, rmt_item32_t *dest, size_t src_size, size_t wanted_num, size_t *translated_size, size_t *item_num)
User callback function to convert uint8_t type data to rmt format(rmt_item32_t).

This function may be called from an ISR, so, the code should be short and efficient.

Note In fact, item_num should be a multiple of translated_size, e.g. : When we convert each byte of uint8_t type data to rmt format data, the relation between item_num and translated_size should be `item_num = translated_size*8`.

Parameters

- `src`: Pointer to the buffer storing the raw data that needs to be converted to rmt format.
- `[out] dest`: Pointer to the buffer storing the rmt format data.
- `src_size`: The raw data size.
- `wanted_num`: The number of rmt format data that wanted to get.
- `[out] translated_size`: The size of the raw data that has been converted to rmt format, it should return 0 if no data is converted in user callback.
- `[out] item_num`: The number of the rmt format data that actually converted to, it can be less than wanted_num if there is not enough raw data, but cannot exceed wanted_num. it should return 0 if no data was converted.

Header File

- hal/include/hal/rmt_types.h

Structures

struct rmt_channel_status_result_t
Data struct of RMT channel status.

Public Members

rmt_channel_status_t **status**[**RMT_CHANNEL_MAX**]
Store the current status of each channel

Enumerations

enum rmt_channel_t
RMT channel ID.

Values:

RMT_CHANNEL_0
RMT channel number 0

RMT_CHANNEL_1
RMT channel number 1

RMT_CHANNEL_2
RMT channel number 2

RMT_CHANNEL_3
RMT channel number 3

RMT_CHANNEL_MAX
Number of RMT channels

enum rmt_mem_owner_t
RMT Internal Memory Owner.

Values:

RMT_MEM_OWNER_TX
RMT RX mode, RMT transmitter owns the memory block

RMT_MEM_OWNER_RX
RMT RX mode, RMT receiver owns the memory block

RMT_MEM_OWNER_MAX

enum rmt_source_clk_t
Clock Source of RMT Channel.

Values:

RMT_BASECLK_REF = 0
RMT source clock is REF_TICK, 1MHz by default

RMT_BASECLK_APB = 1
RMT source clock is APB CLK, 80Mhz by default

RMT_BASECLK_MAX

enum rmt_data_mode_t
RMT Data Mode.

Note We highly recommended to use MEM mode not FIFO mode since there will be some gotcha in FIFO mode.

Values:

RMT_DATA_MODE_FIFO

RMT_DATA_MODE_MEM

RMT_DATA_MODE_MAX

enum rmt_mode_t
RMT Channel Working Mode (TX or RX)

Values:

RMT_MODE_TX
RMT TX mode

RMT_MODE_RX
RMT RX mode

RMT_MODE_MAX

enum rmt_idle_level_t
RMT Idle Level.

Values:

RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_LOW
RMT TX idle level: low Level

RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_HIGH
RMT TX idle level: high Level

RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_MAX

enum rmt_carrier_level_t
RMT Carrier Level.

Values:

RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_LOW
RMT carrier wave is modulated for low Level output

RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_HIGH
RMT carrier wave is modulated for high Level output

RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_MAX

enum rmt_channel_status_t
RMT Channel Status.

Values:

RMT_CHANNEL_UNINIT
RMT channel uninitialized

RMT_CHANNEL_IDLE
RMT channel status idle

RMT_CHANNEL_BUSY
RMT channel status busy

2.2.13 SD SPI Host Driver

Overview

The SD SPI host driver allows communicating with one or more SD cards by the SPI Master driver which makes use of the SPI host. Each card is accessed through an SD SPI device represented by an *sdspi_dev_handle_t* spi_handle returned when attaching the device to an SPI bus by calling *sdspi_host_init_device*. The bus should be already initialized before (by *spi_bus_initialize*).

With the help of *SPI Master driver* based on, the SPI bus can be shared among SD cards and other SPI devices. The SPI Master driver will handle exclusive access from different tasks.

The SD SPI driver uses software-controlled CS signal.

How to Use

Firstly, use the macro *SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT* to initialize a structure `sdmmc_slot_config_t`, which is used to initialize an SD SPI device. This macro will also fill in the default pin mappings, which is same as the pin mappings of SDMMC host driver. Modify the host and pins of the structure to desired value. Then call *sdspi_host_init_device* to initialize the SD SPI device and attach to its bus.

Then use *SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT* macro to initialize a *sdmmc_host_t* structure, which is used to store the state and configurations of upper layer (SD/SDIO/MMC driver). Modify the *slot* parameter of the structure to the SD SPI device spi_handle just returned from *sdspi_host_init_device*. Call *sdmmc_card_init* with the *sdmmc_host_t* to probe and initialize the SD card.

Now you can use SD/SDIO/MMC driver functions to access your card!

Other Details

Only the following driver's API functions are normally used by most applications:

- *sdspi_host_init()*
- *sdspi_host_init_device()*
- *sdspi_host_remove_device()*
- *sdspi_host_deinit()*

Other functions are mostly used by the protocol level SD/SDIO/MMC driver via function pointers in the *sdmmc_host_t* structure. For more details, see *the SD/SDIO/MMC Driver*.

Note: SD over SPI does not support speeds above *SDMMC_FREQ_DEFAULT* due to the limitations of the SPI driver.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/sdspi_host.h

Functions

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_init**(void)

Initialize SD SPI driver.

Note This function is not thread safe

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- other error codes may be returned in future versions

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_init_device**(**const** *sdspi_device_config_t* *dev_config, *sdspi_dev_handle_t* *out_handle)

Attach and initialize an SD SPI device on the specific SPI bus.

Note This function is not thread safe

Note Initialize the SPI bus by `spi_bus_initialize()` before calling this function.

Note The SDIO over sdspi needs an extra interrupt line. Call `gpio_install_isr_service()` before this function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if sdspi_host_init_device has invalid arguments
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
- other errors from the underlying spi_master and gpio drivers

Parameters

- `dev_config`: pointer to device configuration structure

- `out_handle`: Output of the handle to the sdspi device.

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_remove_device**(*sdspi_dev_handle_t handle*)

Remove an SD SPI device.

Return Always ESP_OK

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of the SD SPI device

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_do_transaction**(*sdspi_dev_handle_t handle*, *sdmmc_command_t *cmdinfo*)

Send command to the card and get response.

This function returns when command is sent and response is received, or data is transferred, or timeout occurs.

Note This function is not thread safe w.r.t. init/deinit functions, and bus width/clock speed configuration functions. Multiple tasks can call sdspi_host_do_transaction as long as other sdspi_host_* functions are not called.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if response or data transfer has timed out
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC if response or data transfer CRC check has failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE if the card has sent an invalid response

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of the sdspi device
- `cmdinfo`: pointer to structure describing command and data to transfer

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_set_card_clk**(*sdspi_dev_handle_t host*, uint32_t *freq_khz*)

Set card clock frequency.

Currently only integer fractions of 40MHz clock can be used. For High Speed cards, 40MHz can be used. For Default Speed cards, 20MHz can be used.

Note This function is not thread safe

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- other error codes may be returned in the future

Parameters

- `host`: Handle of the sdspi device
- `freq_khz`: card clock frequency, in kHz

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_deinit**(void)

Release resources allocated using sdspi_host_init.

Note This function is not thread safe

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if sdspi_host_init function has not been called

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_io_int_enable**(*sdspi_dev_handle_t handle*)

Enable SDIO interrupt.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of the sdspi device

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_io_int_wait**(*sdspi_dev_handle_t handle*, TickType_t *timeout_ticks*)

Wait for SDIO interrupt until timeout.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of the sdspi device
- `timeout_ticks`: Ticks to wait before timeout.

esp_err_t **sdspi_host_init_slot** (int *slot*, **const** *sdspi_slot_config_t* *slot_config)

Initialize SD SPI driver for the specific SPI controller.

Note This function is not thread safe

Note The SDIO over sdspi needs an extra interrupt line. Call `gpio_install_isr_service()` before this function.

Parameters

- `slot`: SPI controller to use (SPI2_HOST or SPI3_HOST)
- `slot_config`: pointer to slot configuration structure

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if sdspi_init_slot has invalid arguments
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
- other errors from the underlying spi_master and gpio drivers

Structures

struct sdspi_device_config_t

Extra configuration for SD SPI device.

Public Members

spi_host_device_t **host_id**

SPI host to use, SPIx_HOST (see spi_types.h).

gpio_num_t **gpio_cs**

GPIO number of CS signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_cd**

GPIO number of card detect signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_wp**

GPIO number of write protect signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_int**

GPIO number of interrupt line (input) for SDIO card.

struct sdspi_slot_config_t

Extra configuration for SPI host.

Public Members

gpio_num_t **gpio_cs**

GPIO number of CS signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_cd**

GPIO number of card detect signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_wp**

GPIO number of write protect signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_int**

GPIO number of interrupt line (input) for SDIO card.

gpio_num_t **gpio_miso**

GPIO number of MISO signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_mosi**

GPIO number of MOSI signal.

gpio_num_t **gpio_sck**

GPIO number of SCK signal.

int **dma_channel**
DMA channel to be used by SPI driver (1 or 2).

Macros

SDSPI_DEFAULT_HOST

SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT()
Default *sdmmc_host_t* structure initializer for SD over SPI driver.

Uses SPI mode and max frequency set to 20MHz

'slot' should be set to an sdspi device initialized by `sdspi_host_init_device()`.

SDSPI_SLOT_NO_CD
indicates that card detect line is not used

SDSPI_SLOT_NO_WP
indicates that write protect line is not used

SDSPI_SLOT_NO_INT
indicates that interrupt line is not used

SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Macro defining default configuration of SD SPI device.

SDSPI_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Macro defining default configuration of SPI host

Type Definitions

typedef int **sdspi_dev_handle_t**
Handle representing an SD SPI device.

2.2.14 Sigma-delta Modulation

Introduction

ESP32-S2 has a second-order sigma-delta modulation module. This driver configures the channels of the sigma-delta module.

Functionality Overview

There are eight independent sigma-delta modulation channels identified with *sigmadelta_channel_t*. Each channel is capable to output the binary, hardware generated signal with the sigma-delta modulation.

Selected channel should be set up by providing configuration parameters in *sigmadelta_config_t* and then applying this configuration with *sigmadelta_config()*.

Another option is to call individual functions, that will configure all required parameters one by one:

- **Prescaler** of the sigma-delta generator - *sigmadelta_set_prescale()*
- **Duty** of the output signal - *sigmadelta_set_duty()*
- **GPIO pin** to output modulated signal - *sigmadelta_set_pin()*

The range of the 'duty' input parameter of *sigmadelta_set_duty()* is from -128 to 127 (eight bit signed integer). If zero value is set, then the output signal's duty will be about 50%, see description of *sigmadelta_set_duty()*.

Convert to analog signal (Optional)

Typically, if the sigma-delta signal is connected to an LED, you don't have to add any filter between them (because our eyes are a low pass filter naturally). However, if you want to check the real voltage or watch the analog waveform, you need to design an analog low pass filter. Also, it is recommended to use an active filter instead of a passive filter to gain better isolation and not lose too much voltage.

For example, you can take the following Sallen-Key topology Low Pass Filter as a reference.

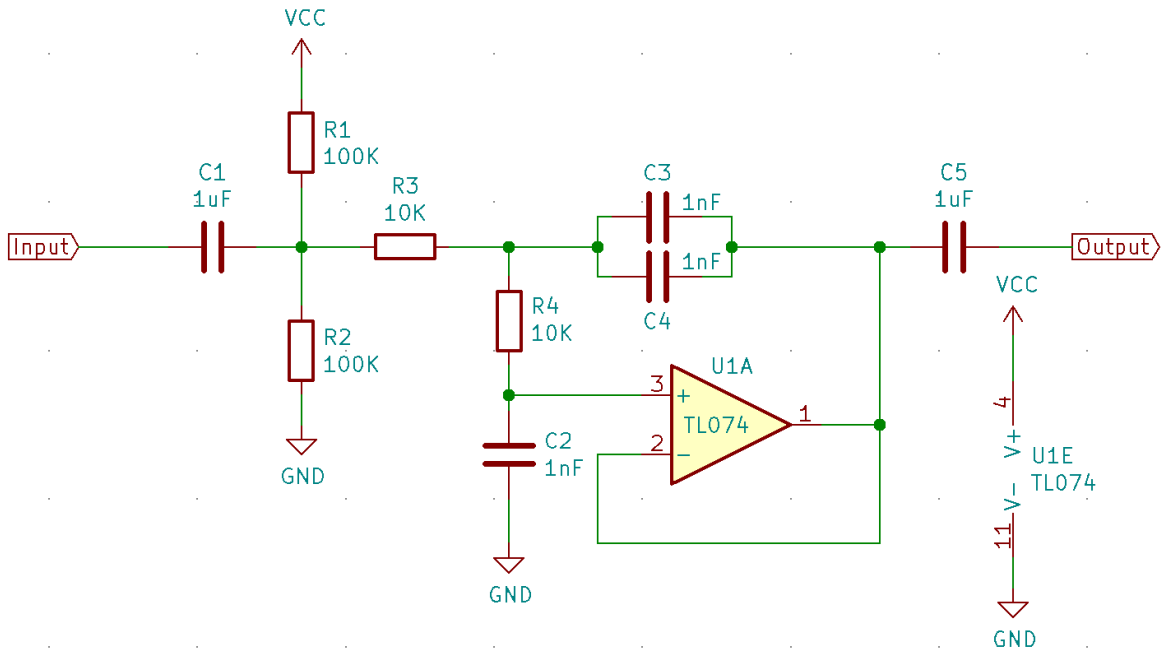


Fig. 13: Sallen-Key Low Pass Filter

Application Example

Sigma-delta Modulation example: peripherals/sigmadelta.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/sigmadelta.h

Functions

esp_err_t **sigmadelta_config**(**const** *sigmadelta_config_t* **config*)

Configure Sigma-delta channel.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver already initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `config`: Pointer of Sigma-delta channel configuration struct

esp_err_t **sigmadelta_set_duty**(*sigmadelta_channel_t channel*, int8_t *duty*)

Set Sigma-delta channel duty.

This function is used to set Sigma-delta channel duty, If you add a capacitor between the output pin and ground, the average output voltage will be Vdc = VDDIO / 256 * duty + VDDIO/2, where VDDIO is the power supply voltage.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `channel`: Sigma-delta channel number
- `duty`: Sigma-delta duty of one channel, the value ranges from -128 to 127, recommended range is -90 ~ 90. The waveform is more like a random one in this range.

esp_err_t **sigmadelta_set_prescale** (*sigmadelta_channel_t channel*, uint8_t *prescale*)

Set Sigma-delta channel' s clock pre-scale value. The source clock is APP_CLK, 80MHz. The clock frequency of the sigma-delta channel is APP_CLK / pre_scale.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `channel`: Sigma-delta channel number
- `prescale`: The divider of source clock, ranges from 0 to 255

esp_err_t **sigmadelta_set_pin** (*sigmadelta_channel_t channel*, *gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Set Sigma-delta signal output pin.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE sigmadelta driver has not been initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `channel`: Sigma-delta channel number
- `gpio_num`: GPIO number of output pin.

Header File

- hal/include/hal/sigmadelta_types.h

Structures

struct sigmadelta_config_t

Sigma-delta configure struct.

Public Members

sigmadelta_channel_t **channel**

Sigma-delta channel number

int8_t **sigmadelta_duty**

Sigma-delta duty, duty ranges from -128 to 127.

uint8_t **sigmadelta_prescale**

Sigma-delta prescale, prescale ranges from 0 to 255.

uint8_t **sigmadelta_gpio**

Sigma-delta output io number, refer to gpio.h for more details.

Enumerations

enum sigmadelta_port_t

SIGMADELTA port number, the max port number is (SIGMADELTA_NUM_MAX -1).

Values:

SIGMADELTA_PORT_0
SIGMADELTA port 0

SIGMADELTA_PORT_MAX
SIGMADELTA port max

enum sigmadelta_channel_t

Sigma-delta channel list.

Values:

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_0
Sigma-delta channel 0

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_1
Sigma-delta channel 1

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_2
Sigma-delta channel 2

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_3
Sigma-delta channel 3

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_4
Sigma-delta channel 4

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_5
Sigma-delta channel 5

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_6
Sigma-delta channel 6

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_7
Sigma-delta channel 7

SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_MAX
Sigma-delta channel max

2.2.15 SPI Master Driver

SPI Master driver is a program that controls ESP32-S2’s SPI peripherals while they function as masters.

Overview of ESP32-S2’s SPI peripherals

ESP32-S2 integrates 4 SPI peripherals.

- SPI0 and SPI1 are used internally to access the ESP32-S2’s attached flash memory. Both controllers share the same SPI bus signals, and there is an arbiter to determine which can access the bus.
  Currently, SPI Master driver does not support SPI1 bus.
- SPI2 and SPI3 are general purpose SPI controllers. They are open to users. SPI2 and SPI3 have independent signal buses with the same respective names. SPI2 has 6 CS lines. SPI3 has 3 CS lines. Each CS line can be used to drive one SPI slave.

Terminology

The terms used in relation to the SPI master driver are given in the table below.

Term	Definition
Host	The SPI controller peripheral inside ESP32-S2 that initiates SPI transmissions over the bus, and acts as an SPI Master.
Device	SPI slave device. An SPI bus may be connected to one or more Devices. Each Device shares the MOSI, MISO and SCLK signals but is only active on the bus when the Host asserts the Device's individual CS line.
Bus	A signal bus, common to all Devices connected to one Host. In general, a bus includes the following lines: MISO, MOSI, SCLK, one or more CS lines, and, optionally, QUADWP and QUADHD. So Devices are connected to the same lines, with the exception that each Device has its own CS line. Several Devices can also share one CS line if connected in the daisy-chain manner.
MISO	Master In, Slave Out, a.k.a. Q. Data transmission from a Device to Host.
MOSI	Master Out, Slave In, a.k.a. D. Data transmission from a Host to Device.
SCLK	Serial Clock. Oscillating signal generated by a Host that keeps the transmission of data bits in sync.
CS	Chip Select. Allows a Host to select individual Device(s) connected to the bus in order to send or receive data.
QUADWP	Write Protect signal. Only used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions.
QUADHD	Hold signal. Only used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions.
Assertion	The action of activating a line.
Deassertion	The action of returning the line back to inactive (back to idle) status.
Transaction	One instance of a Host asserting a CS line, transferring data to and from a Device, and de-asserting the CS line. Transactions are atomic, which means they can never be interrupted by another transaction.
Launch edge	Edge of the clock at which the source register *launches* the signal onto the line.
Latch edge	Edge of the clock at which the destination register *latches in* the signal.

Driver Features

The SPI master driver governs communications of Hosts with Devices. The driver supports the following features:

- Multi-threaded environments
- Transparent handling of DMA transfers while reading and writing data
- Automatic time-division multiplexing of data coming from different Devices on the same signal bus, see *SPI Bus Lock*.

Warning: The SPI master driver has the concept of multiple Devices connected to a single bus (sharing a single ESP32-S2 SPI peripheral). As long as each Device is accessed by only one task, the driver is thread safe. However, if multiple tasks try to access the same SPI Device, the driver is **not thread-safe**. In this case, it is recommended to either:

- Refactor your application so that each SPI peripheral is only accessed by a single task at a time.
- Add a mutex lock around the shared Device using `xSemaphoreCreateMutex`.

SPI Features

SPI Master

SPI Bus Lock To realize the multiplexing of different devices from different drivers (SPI Master, SPI Flash, etc.), an SPI bus lock is applied on each SPI bus. Drivers can attach their devices onto the bus with the arbitration of the

lock.

Each bus lock are initialized with a BG (background) service registered, all devices request to do transactions on the bus should wait until the BG to be successfully disabled.

- For SPI1 bus, the BG is the cache, the bus lock will help to disable the cache before device operations starts, and enable it again after device releasing the lock. No devices on SPI1 is allowed using ISR (it's meaningless for the task to yield to other tasks when the cache is disabled).
  The SPI Master driver hasn't supported SPI1 bus. Only SPI Flash driver can attach to the bus.
- For other buses, the driver may register its ISR as the BG. The bus lock will block a device task when it requests for exclusive use of the bus, try to disable the ISR, and unblock the device task allowed to exclusively use the bus when the ISR is successfully disabled. When the task releases the lock, the lock will also try to resume the ISR if there are pending transactions to be done in the ISR.

SPI Transactions

An SPI bus transaction consists of five phases which can be found in the table below. Any of these phases can be skipped.

Phase	Description
Command	In this phase, a command (0-16 bit) is written to the bus by the Host.
Address	In this phase, an address (0-32 bit) is transmitted over the bus by the Host.
Write	Host sends data to a Device. This data follows the optional command and address phases and is indistinguishable from them at the electrical level.
Dummy	This phase is configurable and is used to meet the timing requirements.
Read	Device sends data to its Host.

The attributes of a transaction are determined by the bus configuration structure *spi_bus_config_t*, device configuration structure *spi_device_interface_config_t*, and transaction configuration structure *spi_transaction_t*.

An SPI Host can send full-duplex transactions, during which the read and write phases occur simultaneously. The total transaction length is determined by the sum of the following members:

- *spi_device_interface_config_t::command_bits*
- *spi_device_interface_config_t::address_bits*
- *spi_transaction_t::length*

While the member *spi_transaction_t::rxlength* only determines the length of data received into the buffer.

In half-duplex transactions, the read and write phases are not simultaneous (one direction at a time). The lengths of the write and read phases are determined by `length` and `rxlength` members of the struct *spi_transaction_t* respectively.

The command and address phases are optional, as not every SPI device requires a command and/or address. This is reflected in the Device's configuration: if `command_bits` and/or `address_bits` are set to zero, no command or address phase will occur.

The read and write phases can also be optional, as not every transaction requires both writing and reading data. If `rx_buffer` is NULL and `SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA` is not set, the read phase is skipped. If `tx_buffer` is NULL and `SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA` is not set, the write phase is skipped.

The driver supports two types of transactions: the interrupt transactions and polling transactions. The programmer can choose to use a different transaction type per Device. If your Device requires both transaction types, see *Notes on Sending Mixed Transactions to the Same Device*.

Interrupt Transactions Interrupt transactions will block the transaction routine until the transaction completes, thus allowing the CPU to run other tasks.

An application task can queue multiple transactions, and the driver will automatically handle them one-by-one in the interrupt service routine (ISR). It allows the task to switch to other procedures until all the transactions complete.

Polling Transactions Polling transactions do not use interrupts. The routine keeps polling the SPI Host' s status bit until the transaction is finished.

All the tasks that use interrupt transactions can be blocked by the queue. At this point, they will need to wait for the ISR to run twice before the transaction is finished. Polling transactions save time otherwise spent on queue handling and context switching, which results in smaller transaction duration. The disadvantage is that the CPU is busy while these transactions are in progress.

The *spi_device_polling_end()* routine needs an overhead of at least 1 us to unblock other tasks when the transaction is finished. It is strongly recommended to wrap a series of polling transactions using the functions *spi_device_acquire_bus()* and *spi_device_release_bus()* to avoid the overhead. For more information, see *Bus Acquiring*.

Command and Address Phases During the command and address phases, the members `cmd` and `addr` in the struct *spi_transaction_t* are sent to the bus, nothing is read at this time. The default lengths of the command and address phases are set in *spi_device_interface_config_t* by calling *spi_bus_add_device()*. If the flags `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD` and `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR` in the member *spi_transaction_t::flags* are not set, the driver automatically sets the length of these phases to default values during Device initialization.

If the lengths of the command and address phases need to be variable, declare the struct *spi_transaction_ext_t*, set the flags `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD` and/or `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR` in the member *spi_transaction_ext_t::base* and configure the rest of base as usual. Then the length of each phase will be equal to `command_bits` and `address_bits` set in the struct *spi_transaction_ext_t*.

Write and Read Phases Normally, the data that needs to be transferred to or from a Device will be read from or written to a chunk of memory indicated by the members `rx_buffer` and `tx_buffer` of the structure *spi_transaction_t*. If DMA is enabled for transfers, the buffers are required to be:

1. Allocated in DMA-capable internal memory. If *external PSRAM is enabled*, this means using `pvPortMallocCaps(size, MALLOC_CAP_DMA)`.
2. 32-bit aligned (staring from a 32-bit boundary and having a length of multiples of 4 bytes).

If these requirements are not satisfied, the transaction efficiency will be affected due to the allocation and copying of temporary buffers.

Bus Acquiring Sometimes you might want to send SPI transactions exclusively and continuously so that it takes as little time as possible. For this, you can use bus acquiring, which helps to suspend transactions (both polling or interrupt) to other devices until the bus is released. To acquire and release a bus, use the functions *spi_device_acquire_bus()* and *spi_device_release_bus()*.

Driver Usage

- Initialize an SPI bus by calling the function *spi_bus_initialize()*. Make sure to set the correct I/O pins in the struct *spi_bus_config_t*. Set the signals that are not needed to `-1`.
- Register a Device connected to the bus with the driver by calling the function *spi_bus_add_device()*. Make sure to configure any timing requirements the device might need with the parameter `dev_config`. You should now have obtained the Device' s handle which will be used when sending a transaction to it.
- To interact with the Device, fill one or more *spi_transaction_t* structs with any transaction parameters required. Then send the structs either using a polling transaction or an interrupt transaction:

  - ***Interrupt*** Either queue all transactions by calling the function `spi_device_queue_trans()` and, at a later time, query the result using the function `spi_device_get_trans_result()`, or handle all requests synchronously by feeding them into `spi_device_transmit()`.
  - ***Polling*** Call the function `spi_device_polling_transmit()` to send polling transactions. Alternatively, if you want to insert something in between, send the transactions by using `spi_device_polling_start()` and `spi_device_polling_end()`.
- (Optional) To perform back-to-back transactions with a Device, call the function `spi_device_acquire_bus()` before sending transactions and `spi_device_release_bus()` after the transactions have been sent.
- (Optional) To unload the driver for a certain Device, call `spi_bus_remove_device()` with the Device handle as an argument.
- (Optional) To remove the driver for a bus, make sure no more drivers are attached and call `spi_bus_free()`.

The example code for the SPI master driver can be found in the peripherals/spi_master directory of ESP-IDF examples.

Transactions with Data Not Exceeding 32 Bits When the transaction data size is equal to or less than 32 bits, it will be sub-optimal to allocate a buffer for the data. The data can be directly stored in the transaction struct instead. For transmitted data, it can be achieved by using the `tx_data` member and setting the `SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA` flag on the transmission. For received data, use `rx_data` and set `SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA`. In both cases, do not touch the `tx_buffer` or `rx_buffer` members, because they use the same memory locations as `tx_data` and `rx_data`.

Transactions with Integers Other Than `uint8_t` An SPI Host reads and writes data into memory byte by byte. By default, data is sent with the most significant bit (MSB) first, as LSB first used in rare cases. If a value less than 8 bits needs to be sent, the bits should be written into memory in the MSB first manner.

For example, if `0b00010` needs to be sent, it should be written into a `uint8_t` variable, and the length for reading should be set to 5 bits. The Device will still receive 8 bits with 3 additional "random" bits, so the reading must be performed correctly.

On top of that, ESP32-S2 is a little-endian chip, which means that the least significant byte of `uint16_t` and `uint32_t` variables is stored at the smallest address. Hence, if `uint16_t` is stored in memory, bits [7:0] are sent first, followed by bits [15:8].

For cases when the data to be transmitted has the size differing from `uint8_t` arrays, the following macros can be used to transform data to the format that can be sent by the SPI driver directly:

- `SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX` for data to be transmitted
- `SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX` for data received

Notes on Sending Mixed Transactions to the Same Device To reduce coding complexity, send only one type of transactions (interrupt or polling) to one Device. However, you still can send both interrupt and polling transactions alternately. The notes below explain how to do this.

The polling transactions should be initiated only after all the polling and interrupt transactions are finished.

Since an unfinished polling transaction blocks other transactions, please do not forget to call the function `spi_device_polling_end()` after `spi_device_polling_start()` to allow other transactions or to allow other Devices to use the bus. Remember that if there is no need to switch to other tasks during your polling transaction, you can initiate a transaction with `spi_device_polling_transmit()` so that it will be ended automatically.

In-flight polling transactions are disturbed by the ISR operation to accommodate interrupt transactions. Always make sure that all the interrupt transactions sent to the ISR are finished before you call `spi_device_polling_start()`. To do that, you can keep calling `spi_device_get_trans_result()` until all the transactions are returned.

To have better control of the calling sequence of functions, send mixed transactions to the same Device only within a single task.

Transfer Speed Considerations

There are three factors limiting the transfer speed:

- Transaction interval
- SPI clock frequency
- Cache miss of SPI functions, including callbacks

The main parameter that determines the transfer speed for large transactions is clock frequency. For multiple small transactions, the transfer speed is mostly determined by the length of transaction intervals.

Transaction Duration Transaction duration includes setting up SPI peripheral registers, copying data to FIFOs or setting up DMA links, and the time for SPI transaction.

Interrupt transactions allow appending extra overhead to accommodate the cost of FreeRTOS queues and the time needed for switching between tasks and the ISR.

For **interrupt transactions**, the CPU can switch to other tasks when a transaction is in progress. This saves the CPU time but increases the transaction duration. See *Interrupt Transactions*. For **polling transactions**, it does not block the task but allows to do polling when the transaction is in progress. For more information, see *Polling Transactions*.

If DMA is enabled, setting up the linked list requires about 2 us per transaction. When a master is transferring data, it automatically reads the data from the linked list. If DMA is not enabled, the CPU has to write and read each byte from the FIFO by itself. Usually, this is faster than 2 us, but the transaction length is limited to 64 bytes for both write and read.

Typical transaction duration for one byte of data are given below.

- Interrupt Transaction via DMA: 23 µs.
- Interrupt Transaction via CPU: 22 µs.
- Polling Transaction via DMA: 9 µs.
- Polling Transaction via CPU: 8 µs.

SPI Clock Frequency Transferring each byte takes eight times the clock period *8/fspi*.

Cache Miss The default config puts only the ISR into the IRAM. Other SPI related functions, including the driver itself and the callback, might suffer from cache misses and will need to wait until the code is read from flash. Select *CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_IN_IRAM* to put the whole SPI driver into IRAM and put the entire callback(s) and its callee functions into IRAM to prevent cache misses.

For an interrupt transaction, the overall cost is *20+8n/Fspi[MHz]* [us] for n bytes transferred in one transaction. Hence, the transferring speed is: *n/(20+8n/Fspi)*. An example of transferring speed at 8 MHz clock speed is given in the following table.

Frequency (MHz)	Transaction Interval (us)	Transaction Length (bytes)	Total Time (us)	Total Speed (KBps)
8	25	1	26	38.5
8	25	8	33	242.4
8	25	16	41	490.2
8	25	64	89	719.1
8	25	128	153	836.6

When a transaction length is short, the cost of transaction interval is high. If possible, try to squash several short transactions into one transaction to achieve a higher transfer speed.

Please note that the ISR is disabled during flash operation by default. To keep sending transactions during flash operations, enable *CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM* and set `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` in the member *`spi_bus_config_t::intr_flags`*. In this case, all the transactions queued before starting flash operations will be handled by the ISR in parallel. Also note that the callback of each Device and their callee functions should be in IRAM, or your callback will crash due to cache miss. For more details, see *IRAM-Safe Interrupt Handlers*.

Application Example

The code example for displaying graphics on an ESP32-WROVER-KIT' s 320x240 LCD screen can be found in the peripherals/spi_master directory of ESP-IDF examples.

API Reference - SPI Common

Header File

- hal/include/hal/spi_types.h

Enumerations

enum spi_host_device_t

Enum with the three SPI peripherals that are software-accessible in it.

Values:

SPI1_HOST = 0
SPI1.

SPI2_HOST = 1
SPI2.

SPI3_HOST = 2
SPI3.

enum spi_event_t

SPI Events.

Values:

SPI_EV_BUF_TX = BIT(0)
The buffer has sent data to master, Slave HD only.

SPI_EV_BUF_RX = BIT(1)
The buffer has received data from master, Slave HD only.

SPI_EV_SEND = BIT(2)
Slave has loaded some data to DMA, and master has received certain number of the data, the number is determined by master. Slave HD only.

SPI_EV_RECV = BIT(3)
Slave has received certain number of data from master, the number is determined by master. Slave HD only.

SPI_EV_CMD9 = BIT(4)
Received CMD9 from master, Slave HD only.

SPI_EV_CMDA = BIT(5)
Received CMDA from master, Slave HD only.

SPI_EV_TRANS = BIT(6)
A transaction has done.

Header File

- driver/include/driver/spi_common.h

Functions

esp_err_t **spi_bus_initialize**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, **const** *spi_bus_config_t *bus_config*, *spi_dma_chan_t dma_chan*)

Initialize a SPI bus.

Warning SPI0/1 is not supported

Warning If a DMA channel is selected, any transmit and receive buffer used should be allocated in DMA-capable memory.

Warning The ISR of SPI is always executed on the core which calls this function. Never starve the ISR on this core or the SPI transactions will not be handled.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if configuration is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if host already is in use
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no available DMA channel
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host_id`: SPI peripheral that controls this bus
- `bus_config`: Pointer to a *spi_bus_config_t* struct specifying how the host should be initialized
- `dma_chan`: - Selecting a DMA channel for an SPI bus allows transactions on the bus with size only limited by the amount of internal memory.
  - Selecting SPI_DMA_DISABLED limits the size of transactions.
  - Set to SPI_DMA_DISABLED if only the SPI flash uses this bus.
  - Set to SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO to let the driver to allocate the DMA channel.

esp_err_t **spi_bus_free**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*)

Free a SPI bus.

Warning In order for this to succeed, all devices have to be removed first.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not all devices on the bus are freed
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host_id`: SPI peripheral to free

Structures

struct spi_bus_config_t

This is a configuration structure for a SPI bus.

You can use this structure to specify the GPIO pins of the bus. Normally, the driver will use the GPIO matrix to route the signals. An exception is made when all signals either can be routed through the IO_MUX or are -1. In that case, the IO_MUX is used, allowing for >40MHz speeds.

Note Be advised that the slave driver does not use the quadwp/quadhd lines and fields in *spi_bus_config_t* refering to these lines will be ignored and can thus safely be left uninitialized.

Public Members

int **mosi_io_num**

GPIO pin for Master Out Slave In (=spi_d) signal, or -1 if not used.

int **miso_io_num**

GPIO pin for Master In Slave Out (=spi_q) signal, or -1 if not used.

int **sclk_io_num**

GPIO pin for Spi CLocK signal, or -1 if not used.

int **quadwp_io_num**

GPIO pin for WP (Write Protect) signal which is used as D2 in 4-bit communication modes, or -1 if not used.

int **quadhd_io_num**

GPIO pin for HD (HolD) signal which is used as D3 in 4-bit communication modes, or -1 if not used.

int **max_transfer_sz**

Maximum transfer size, in bytes. Defaults to 4092 if 0 when DMA enabled, or to `SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE` if DMA is disabled.

uint32_t **flags**
: Abilities of bus to be checked by the driver. Or-ed value of `SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_*` flags.

int **intr_flags**
: Interrupt flag for the bus to set the priority, and IRAM attribute, see `esp_intr_alloc.h`. Note that the EDGE, INTRDISABLED attribute are ignored by the driver. Note that if ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM is set, ALL the callbacks of the driver, and their callee functions, should be put in the IRAM.

Macros

SPI_MAX_DMA_LEN

SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX(DATA, LEN)
: Transform unsigned integer of length <= 32 bits to the format which can be sent by the SPI driver directly.

  E.g. to send 9 bits of data, you can:

```
uint16_t data = SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX(0x145, 9);
```

  Then points tx_buffer to `&data`.

  Parameters
  - `DATA`: Data to be sent, can be uint8_t, uint16_t or uint32_t.
  - `LEN`: Length of data to be sent, since the SPI peripheral sends from the MSB, this helps to shift the data to the MSB.

SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX(DATA, LEN)
: Transform received data of length <= 32 bits to the format of an unsigned integer.

  E.g. to transform the data of 15 bits placed in a 4-byte array to integer:

```
uint16_t data = SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX(*(uint32_t*)t->rx_data, 15);
```

  Parameters
  - `DATA`: Data to be rearranged, can be uint8_t, uint16_t or uint32_t.
  - `LEN`: Length of data received, since the SPI peripheral writes from the MSB, this helps to shift the data to the LSB.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SLAVE
: Initialize I/O in slave mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MASTER
: Initialize I/O in master mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_IOMUX_PINS
: Check using iomux pins. Or indicates the pins are configured through the IO mux rather than GPIO matrix.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_GPIO_PINS
: Force the signals to be routed through GPIO matrix. Or indicates the pins are routed through the GPIO matrix.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SCLK
: Check existing of SCLK pin. Or indicates CLK line initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MISO
: Check existing of MISO pin. Or indicates MISO line initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MOSI
: Check existing of MOSI pin. Or indicates MOSI line initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_DUAL
: Check MOSI and MISO pins can output. Or indicates bus able to work under DIO mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_WPHD
: Check existing of WP and HD pins. Or indicates WP & HD pins initialized.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_QUAD
: Check existing of MOSI/MISO/WP/HD pins as output. Or indicates bus able to work under QIO mode.

SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_NATIVE_PINS

Type Definitions

typedef *spi_common_dma_t* **spi_dma_chan_t**

Enumerations

enum spi_common_dma_t

SPI DMA channels.

Values:

SPI_DMA_DISABLED = 0

Do not enable DMA for SPI.

SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO = 3

Enable DMA, channel is automatically selected by driver.

API Reference - SPI Master

Header File

- driver/include/driver/spi_master.h

Functions

esp_err_t **spi_bus_add_device**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, **const** *spi_device_interface_config_t *dev_config*, *spi_device_handle_t *handle*)

Allocate a device on a SPI bus.

This initializes the internal structures for a device, plus allocates a CS pin on the indicated SPI master peripheral and routes it to the indicated GPIO. All SPI master devices have three CS pins and can thus control up to three devices.

Note While in general, speeds up to 80MHz on the dedicated SPI pins and 40MHz on GPIO-matrix-routed pins are supported, full-duplex transfers routed over the GPIO matrix only support speeds up to 26MHz.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if host doesn't have any free CS slots
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host_id`: SPI peripheral to allocate device on
- `dev_config`: SPI interface protocol config for the device
- `handle`: Pointer to variable to hold the device handle

esp_err_t **spi_bus_remove_device**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*)

Remove a device from the SPI bus.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if device already is freed
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Device handle to free

esp_err_t **spi_device_queue_trans**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*, *spi_transaction_t *trans_desc*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Queue a SPI transaction for interrupt transaction execution. Get the result by `spi_device_get_trans_result`.

Note Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simultaneously.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if there was no room in the queue before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocating DMA-capable temporary buffer failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if previous transactions are not finished
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- `trans_desc`: Description of transaction to execute
- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's room in the queue; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

esp_err_t **spi_device_get_trans_result**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*, *spi_transaction_t* ***trans_desc*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Get the result of a SPI transaction queued earlier by `spi_device_queue_trans`.

This routine will wait until a transaction to the given device succesfully completed. It will then return the description of the completed transaction so software can inspect the result and e.g. free the memory or re-use the buffers.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if there was no completed transaction before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- `trans_desc`: Pointer to variable able to contain a pointer to the description of the transaction that is executed. The descriptor should not be modified until the descriptor is returned by spi_device_get_trans_result.
- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

esp_err_t **spi_device_transmit**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*, *spi_transaction_t* **trans_desc*)

Send a SPI transaction, wait for it to complete, and return the result.

This function is the equivalent of calling spi_device_queue_trans() followed by spi_device_get_trans_result(). Do not use this when there is still a transaction separately queued (started) from spi_device_queue_trans() or polling_start/transmit that hasn't been finalized.

Note This function is not thread safe when multiple tasks access the same SPI device. Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simutanuously.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- `trans_desc`: Description of transaction to execute

esp_err_t **spi_device_polling_start**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*, *spi_transaction_t* **trans_desc*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Immediately start a polling transaction.

Note Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simutanuously. Moreover, a device cannot start a new polling transaction if another polling transaction is not finished.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the device cannot get control of the bus before `ticks_to_wait` expired
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocating DMA-capable temporary buffer failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if previous transactions are not finished
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `handle`: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- `trans_desc`: Description of transaction to execute

- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's room in the queue; currently only portMAX_DELAY is supported.

esp_err_t **spi_device_polling_end**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Poll until the polling transaction ends.

This routine will not return until the transaction to the given device has succesfully completed. The task is not blocked, but actively busy-spins for the transaction to be completed.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the transaction cannot finish before ticks_to_wait expired
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `handle`: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

esp_err_t **spi_device_polling_transmit**(*spi_device_handle_t handle*, *spi_transaction_t *trans_desc*)

Send a polling transaction, wait for it to complete, and return the result.

This function is the equivalent of calling spi_device_polling_start() followed by spi_device_polling_end(). Do not use this when there is still a transaction that hasn't been finalized.

Note This function is not thread safe when multiple tasks access the same SPI device. Normally a device cannot start (queue) polling and interrupt transactions simutanuously.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `handle`: Device handle obtained using spi_host_add_dev
- `trans_desc`: Description of transaction to execute

esp_err_t **spi_device_acquire_bus**(*spi_device_handle_t device*, TickType_t *wait*)

Occupy the SPI bus for a device to do continuous transactions.

Transactions to all other devices will be put off until `spi_device_release_bus` is called.

Note The function will wait until all the existing transactions have been sent.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : `wait` is not set to portMAX_DELAY.
- ESP_OK : Success.

Parameters
- `device`: The device to occupy the bus.
- `wait`: Time to wait before the the bus is occupied by the device. Currently MUST set to portMAX_DELAY.

void **spi_device_release_bus**(*spi_device_handle_t dev*)

Release the SPI bus occupied by the device. All other devices can start sending transactions.

Parameters
- `dev`: The device to release the bus.

int **spi_cal_clock**(int *fapb*, int *hz*, int *duty_cycle*, uint32_t **reg_o*)

Calculate the working frequency that is most close to desired frequency, and also the register value.

Parameters
- `fapb`: The frequency of apb clock, should be `APB_CLK_FREQ`.
- `hz`: Desired working frequency
- `duty_cycle`: Duty cycle of the spi clock
- `reg_o`: Output of value to be set in clock register, or NULL if not needed.

Return Actual working frequency that most fit.

int **spi_get_actual_clock**(int *fapb*, int *hz*, int *duty_cycle*)

Calculate the working frequency that is most close to desired frequency.

Return Actual working frequency that most fit.

Parameters

- `fapb`: The frequency of apb clock, should be `APB_CLK_FREQ`.
- `hz`: Desired working frequency
- `duty_cycle`: Duty cycle of the spi clock

void **spi_get_timing**(bool *gpio_is_used*, int *input_delay_ns*, int *eff_clk*, int *dummy_o, int *cycles_remain_o)

Calculate the timing settings of specified frequency and settings.

Note If **dummy_o* is not zero, it means dummy bits should be applied in half duplex mode, and full duplex mode may not work.

Parameters

- `gpio_is_used`: True if using GPIO matrix, or False if iomux pins are used.
- `input_delay_ns`: Input delay from SCLK launch edge to MISO data valid.
- `eff_clk`: Effective clock frequency (in Hz) from spi_cal_clock.
- `dummy_o`: Address of dummy bits used output. Set to NULL if not needed.
- `cycles_remain_o`: Address of cycles remaining (after dummy bits are used) output.
  - -1 If too many cycles remaining, suggest to compensate half a clock.
  - 0 If no remaining cycles or dummy bits are not used.
  - positive value: cycles suggest to compensate.

int **spi_get_freq_limit**(bool *gpio_is_used*, int *input_delay_ns*)

Get the frequency limit of current configurations. SPI master working at this limit is OK, while above the limit, full duplex mode and DMA will not work, and dummy bits will be aplied in the half duplex mode.

Return Frequency limit of current configurations.

Parameters

- `gpio_is_used`: True if using GPIO matrix, or False if native pins are used.
- `input_delay_ns`: Input delay from SCLK launch edge to MISO data valid.

Structures

struct spi_device_interface_config_t

This is a configuration for a SPI slave device that is connected to one of the SPI buses.

Public Members

uint8_t **command_bits**

Default amount of bits in command phase (0-16), used when `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD` is not used, otherwise ignored.

uint8_t **address_bits**

Default amount of bits in address phase (0-64), used when `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR` is not used, otherwise ignored.

uint8_t **dummy_bits**

Amount of dummy bits to insert between address and data phase.

uint8_t **mode**

SPI mode, representing a pair of (CPOL, CPHA) configuration:

- 0: (0, 0)
- 1: (0, 1)
- 2: (1, 0)
- 3: (1, 1)

uint16_t **duty_cycle_pos**

Duty cycle of positive clock, in 1/256th increments (128 = 50%/50% duty). Setting this to 0 (=not setting it) is equivalent to setting this to 128.

uint16_t **cs_ena_pretrans**
: Amount of SPI bit-cycles the cs should be activated before the transmission (0-16). This only works on half-duplex transactions.

uint8_t **cs_ena_posttrans**
: Amount of SPI bit-cycles the cs should stay active after the transmission (0-16)

int **clock_speed_hz**
: Clock speed, divisors of 80MHz, in Hz. See `SPI_MASTER_FREQ_*`.

int **input_delay_ns**
: Maximum data valid time of slave. The time required between SCLK and MISO valid, including the possible clock delay from slave to master. The driver uses this value to give an extra delay before the MISO is ready on the line. Leave at 0 unless you know you need a delay. For better timing performance at high frequency (over 8MHz), it' s suggest to have the right value.

int **spics_io_num**
: CS GPIO pin for this device, or -1 if not used.

uint32_t **flags**
: Bitwise OR of SPI_DEVICE_* flags.

int **queue_size**
: Transaction queue size. This sets how many transactions can be 'in the air' (queued using spi_device_queue_trans but not yet finished using spi_device_get_trans_result) at the same time.

transaction_cb_t **pre_cb**
: Callback to be called before a transmission is started.

  This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see "Transferring Speed" section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

transaction_cb_t **post_cb**
: Callback to be called after a transmission has completed.

  This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see "Transferring Speed" section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

struct spi_transaction_t
: This structure describes one SPI transaction. The descriptor should not be modified until the transaction finishes.

Public Members

uint32_t **flags**
: Bitwise OR of SPI_TRANS_* flags.

uint16_t **cmd**
: Command data, of which the length is set in the `command_bits` of *spi_device_interface_config_t*.

  NOTE: this field, used to be "command" in ESP-IDF 2.1 and before, is re-written to be used in a new way in ESP-IDF 3.0.

  Example: write 0x0123 and command_bits=12 to send command 0x12, 0x3_ (in previous version, you may have to write 0x3_12).

uint64_t **addr**
: Address data, of which the length is set in the `address_bits` of *spi_device_interface_config_t*.

  NOTE: this field, used to be "address" in ESP-IDF 2.1 and before, is re-written to be used in a new way in ESP-IDF3.0.

  Example: write 0x123400 and address_bits=24 to send address of 0x12, 0x34, 0x00 (in previous version, you may have to write 0x12340000).

size_t **length**
Total data length, in bits.

size_t **rxlength**
Total data length received, should be not greater than `length` in full-duplex mode (0 defaults this to the value of `length`).

void ***user**
User-defined variable. Can be used to store eg transaction ID.

const void ***tx_buffer**
Pointer to transmit buffer, or NULL for no MOSI phase.

uint8_t **tx_data**[4]
If SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA is set, data set here is sent directly from this variable.

void ***rx_buffer**
Pointer to receive buffer, or NULL for no MISO phase. Written by 4 bytes-unit if DMA is used.

uint8_t **rx_data**[4]
If SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA is set, data is received directly to this variable.

struct spi_transaction_ext_t
This struct is for SPI transactions which may change their address and command length. Please do set the flags in base to `SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD_ADR` to use the bit length here.

Public Members

struct *spi_transaction_t* **base**
Transaction data, so that pointer to *spi_transaction_t* can be converted into *spi_transaction_ext_t*.

uint8_t **command_bits**
The command length in this transaction, in bits.

uint8_t **address_bits**
The address length in this transaction, in bits.

uint8_t **dummy_bits**
The dummy length in this transaction, in bits.

Macros

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_8M
SPI master clock is divided by 80MHz apb clock. Below defines are example frequencies, and are accurate. Be free to specify a random frequency, it will be rounded to closest frequency (to macros below if above 8MHz). 8MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_9M
8.89MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_10M
10MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_11M
11.43MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_13M
13.33MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_16M
16MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_20M
20MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_26M
26.67MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_40M
40MHz

SPI_MASTER_FREQ_80M
80MHz

SPI_DEVICE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit command/address/data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_DEVICE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST
Receive data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_DEVICE_BIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit and receive LSB first.

SPI_DEVICE_3WIRE
Use MOSI (=spid) for both sending and receiving data.

SPI_DEVICE_POSITIVE_CS
Make CS positive during a transaction instead of negative.

SPI_DEVICE_HALFDUPLEX
Transmit data before receiving it, instead of simultaneously.

SPI_DEVICE_CLK_AS_CS
Output clock on CS line if CS is active.

SPI_DEVICE_NO_DUMMY
There are timing issue when reading at high frequency (the frequency is related to whether iomux pins are used, valid time after slave sees the clock).

- In half-duplex mode, the driver automatically inserts dummy bits before reading phase to fix the timing issue. Set this flag to disable this feature.
- In full-duplex mode, however, the hardware cannot use dummy bits, so there is no way to prevent data being read from getting corrupted. Set this flag to confirm that you're going to work with output only, or read without dummy bits at your own risk.

SPI_DEVICE_DDRCLK

SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIO
Transmit/receive data in 2-bit mode.

SPI_TRANS_MODE_QIO
Transmit/receive data in 4-bit mode.

SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA
Receive into rx_data member of *spi_transaction_t* instead into memory at rx_buffer.

SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA
Transmit tx_data member of *spi_transaction_t* instead of data at tx_buffer. Do not set tx_buffer when using this.

SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIOQIO_ADDR
Also transmit address in mode selected by SPI_MODE_DIO/SPI_MODE_QIO.

SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD
Use the `command_bits` in *spi_transaction_ext_t* rather than default value in *spi_device_interface_config_t*.

SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR
Use the `address_bits` in *spi_transaction_ext_t* rather than default value in *spi_device_interface_config_t*.

SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_DUMMY
Use the `dummy_bits` in *spi_transaction_ext_t* rather than default value in *spi_device_interface_config_t*.

SPI_TRANS_SET_CD
Set the CD pin.

Type Definitions

typedef struct *spi_transaction_t* **spi_transaction_t**
typedef void (***transaction_cb_t**) (*spi_transaction_t* *trans)

typedef struct spi_device_t ***spi_device_handle_t**
Handle for a device on a SPI bus.

2.2.16 SPI Slave Driver

SPI Slave driver is a program that controls ESP32-S2' s SPI peripherals while they function as slaves.

Overview of ESP32-S2' s SPI peripherals

ESP32-S2 integrates two general purpose SPI controllers which can be used as slave nodes driven by an off-chip SPI master

SPI2 and SPI3 have independent signal buses with the same respective names.

Terminology

The terms used in relation to the SPI slave driver are given in the table below.

Term	Definition
Host	The SPI controller peripheral external to ESP32-S2 that initiates SPI transmissions over the bus, and acts as an SPI Master.
Device	SPI slave device (general purpose SPI controller). Each Device shares the MOSI, MISO and SCLK signals but is only active on the bus when the Host asserts the Device's individual CS line.
Bus	A signal bus, common to all Devices connected to one Host. In general, a bus includes the following lines: MISO, MOSI, SCLK, one or more CS lines, and, optionally, QUADWP and QUADHD. So Devices are connected to the same lines, with the exception that each Device has its own CS line. Several Devices can also share one CS line if connected in the daisy-chain manner.
• **MISO**	Master In, Slave Out, a.k.a. Q. Data transmission from a Device to Host.
• **MOSI**	Master In, Slave Out, a.k.a. D. Data transmission from a Host to Device.
• **SCLK**	Serial Clock. Oscillating signal generated by a Host that keeps the transmission of data bits in sync.
• **CS**	Chip Select. Allows a Host to select individual Device(s) connected to the bus in order to send or receive data.
• **QUADWP**	Write Protect signal. Only used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions.
• **QUADHD**	Hold signal. Only used for 4-bit (qio/qout) transactions.
• **Assertion**	The action of activating a line. The opposite action of returning the line back to inactive (back to idle) is called *de-assertion*.
Transaction	One instance of a Host asserting a CS line, transferring data to and from a Device, and de-asserting the CS line. Transactions are atomic, which means they can never be interrupted by another transaction.
Launch edge	Edge of the clock at which the source register *launches* the signal onto the line.
Latch edge	Edge of the clock at which the destination register *latches in* the signal.

Driver Features

The SPI slave driver allows using the SPI peripherals as full-duplex Devices. The driver can send/receive transactions up to 72 bytes in length, or utilize DMA to send/receive longer transactions. However, there are some *known issues* related to DMA.

SPI Transactions

A full-duplex SPI transaction begins when the Host asserts the CS line and starts sending out clock pulses on the SCLK line. Every clock pulse, a data bit is shifted from the Host to the Device on the MOSI line and back on the MISO line at the same time. At the end of the transaction, the Host de-asserts the CS line.

The attributes of a transaction are determined by the configuration structure for an SPI host acting as a slave device *spi_slave_interface_config_t*, and transaction configuration structure *spi_slave_transaction_t*.

As not every transaction requires both writing and reading data, you have a choice to configure the *spi_transaction_t* structure for TX only, RX only, or TX and RX transactions. If *spi_slave_transaction_t::rx_buffer* is set to NULL, the read phase will be skipped. If *spi_slave_transaction_t::tx_buffer* is set to NULL, the write phase will be skipped.

Note: A Host should not start a transaction before its Device is ready for receiving data. It is recommended to use another GPIO pin for a handshake signal to sync the Devices. For more details, see *Transaction Interval*.

Driver Usage

- Initialize an SPI peripheral as a Device by calling the function cpp:func:*spi_slave_initialize*. Make sure to set the correct I/O pins in the struct `bus_config`. Set the unused signals to `-1`.

If transactions will be longer than 32 bytes, allow a DMA channel by setting the parameter `dma_chan` to the host device. Otherwise, set `dma_chan` to `0`.

- Before initiating transactions, fill one or more *spi_slave_transaction_t* structs with the transaction parameters required. Either queue all transactions by calling the function *spi_slave_queue_trans()* and, at a later time, query the result by using the function *spi_slave_get_trans_result()*, or handle all requests individually by feeding them into *spi_slave_transmit()*. The latter two functions will be blocked until the Host has initiated and finished a transaction, causing the queued data to be sent and received.
- (Optional) To unload the SPI slave driver, call *spi_slave_free()*.

Transaction Data and Master/Slave Length Mismatches

Normally, the data that needs to be transferred to or from a Device is read or written to a chunk of memory indicated by the `rx_buffer` and `tx_buffer` members of the *spi_transaction_t* structure. The SPI driver can be configured to use DMA for transfers, in which case these buffers must be allocated in DMA-capable memory using `pvPortMallocCaps(size, MALLOC_CAP_DMA)`.

The amount of data that the driver can read or write to the buffers is limited by the member *spi_transaction_t::length*. However, this member does not define the actual length of an SPI transaction. A transaction's length is determined by a Host which drives the clock and CS lines. The actual length of the transmission can be read only after a transaction is finished from the member *spi_slave_transaction_t::trans_len*.

If the length of the transmission is greater than the buffer length, only the initial number of bits specified in the `length` member will be sent and received. In this case, `trans_len` is set to `length` instead of the actual transaction length. To meet the actual transaction length requirements, set `length` to a value greater than the maximum `trans_len` expected. If the transmission length is shorter than the buffer length, only the data equal to the length of the buffer will be transmitted.

Speed and Timing Considerations

Transaction Interval The ESP32-S2 SPI slave peripherals are designed as general purpose Devices controlled by a CPU. As opposed to dedicated slaves, CPU-based SPI Devices have a limited number of pre-defined registers. All transactions must be handled by the CPU, which means that the transfers and responses are not real-time, and there might be noticeable latency.

As a solution, a Device's response rate can be doubled by using the functions *spi_slave_queue_trans()* and then *spi_slave_get_trans_result()* instead of using *spi_slave_transmit()*.

You can also configure a GPIO pin through which the Device will signal to the Host when it is ready for a new transaction. A code example of this can be found in peripherals/spi_slave.

SCLK Frequency Requirements The SPI slaves are designed to operate at up to 40 MHz. The data cannot be recognized or received correctly if the clock is too fast or does not have a 50% duty cycle.

Restrictions and Known Issues

1. If DMA is enabled, the rx buffer should be word-aligned (starting from a 32-bit boundary and having a length of multiples of 4 bytes). Otherwise, DMA may write incorrectly or not in a boundary aligned manner. The driver reports an error if this condition is not satisfied.
   Also, a Host should write lengths that are multiples of 4 bytes. The data with inappropriate lengths will be discarded.

Application Example

The code example for Device/Host communication can be found in the peripherals/spi_slave directory of ESP-IDF examples.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/spi_slave.h

Functions

esp_err_t **spi_slave_initialize**(*spi_host_device_t host*, **const** *spi_bus_config_t* **bus_config*, **const** *spi_slave_interface_config_t* **slave_config*, *spi_dma_chan_t dma_chan*)

Initialize a SPI bus as a slave interface.

Warning SPI0/1 is not supported

Warning If a DMA channel is selected, any transmit and receive buffer used should be allocated in DMA-capable memory.

Warning The ISR of SPI is always executed on the core which calls this function. Never starve the ISR on this core or the SPI transactions will not be handled.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if configuration is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if host already is in use
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no available DMA channel
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host`: SPI peripheral to use as a SPI slave interface
- `bus_config`: Pointer to a *spi_bus_config_t* struct specifying how the host should be initialized
- `slave_config`: Pointer to a *spi_slave_interface_config_t* struct specifying the details for the slave interface
- `dma_chan`: - Selecting a DMA channel for an SPI bus allows transactions on the bus with size only limited by the amount of internal memory.
  - Selecting SPI_DMA_DISABLED limits the size of transactions.
  - Set to SPI_DMA_DISABLED if only the SPI flash uses this bus.
  - Set to SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO to let the driver to allocate the DMA channel.

esp_err_t **spi_slave_free**(*spi_host_device_t host*)

Free a SPI bus claimed as a SPI slave interface.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not all devices on the bus are freed
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host`: SPI peripheral to free

esp_err_t **spi_slave_queue_trans**(*spi_host_device_t host*, **const** *spi_slave_transaction_t* **trans_desc*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Queue a SPI transaction for execution.

Queues a SPI transaction to be executed by this slave device. (The transaction queue size was specified when the slave device was initialised via spi_slave_initialize.) This function may block if the queue is full (depending on the ticks_to_wait parameter). No SPI operation is directly initiated by this function, the next queued transaction will happen when the master initiates a SPI transaction by pulling down CS and sending out clock signals.

This function hands over ownership of the buffers in `trans_desc` to the SPI slave driver; the application is not to access this memory until `spi_slave_queue_trans` is called to hand ownership back to the application.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host`: SPI peripheral that is acting as a slave
- `trans_desc`: Description of transaction to execute. Not const because we may want to write status back into the transaction description.
- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's room in the queue; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

esp_err_t **spi_slave_get_trans_result**(*spi_host_device_t host*, *spi_slave_transaction_t* ***trans_desc*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Get the result of a SPI transaction queued earlier.

This routine will wait until a transaction to the given device (queued earlier with spi_slave_queue_trans) has succesfully completed. It will then return the description of the completed transaction so software can inspect the result and e.g. free the memory or re-use the buffers.

It is mandatory to eventually use this function for any transaction queued by `spi_slave_queue_trans`.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host`: SPI peripheral to that is acting as a slave
- `[out] trans_desc`: Pointer to variable able to contain a pointer to the description of the transaction that is executed
- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

esp_err_t **spi_slave_transmit**(*spi_host_device_t host*, *spi_slave_transaction_t* **trans_desc*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Do a SPI transaction.

Essentially does the same as spi_slave_queue_trans followed by spi_slave_get_trans_result. Do not use this when there is still a transaction queued that hasn't been finalized using spi_slave_get_trans_result.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if parameter is invalid
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `host`: SPI peripheral to that is acting as a slave
- `trans_desc`: Pointer to variable able to contain a pointer to the description of the transaction that is executed. Not const because we may want to write status back into the transaction description.
- `ticks_to_wait`: Ticks to wait until there's a returned item; use portMAX_DELAY to never time out.

Structures

struct spi_slave_interface_config_t

This is a configuration for a SPI host acting as a slave device.

Public Members

int **spics_io_num**

CS GPIO pin for this device.

uint32_t **flags**

Bitwise OR of SPI_SLAVE_* flags.

int **queue_size**

Transaction queue size. This sets how many transactions can be 'in the air' (queued using spi_slave_queue_trans but not yet finished using spi_slave_get_trans_result) at the same time.

uint8_t **mode**

SPI mode, representing a pair of (CPOL, CPHA) configuration:

- 0: (0, 0)
- 1: (0, 1)
- 2: (1, 0)
- 3: (1, 1)

slave_transaction_cb_t **post_setup_cb**

Callback called after the SPI registers are loaded with new data.

This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see "Transferring Speed" section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

slave_transaction_cb_t **post_trans_cb**

Callback called after a transaction is done.

This callback is called within interrupt context should be in IRAM for best performance, see "Transferring Speed" section in the SPI Master documentation for full details. If not, the callback may crash during flash operation when the driver is initialized with ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM.

struct spi_slave_transaction_t

This structure describes one SPI transaction

Public Members

size_t **length**

Total data length, in bits.

size_t **trans_len**

Transaction data length, in bits.

const void ***tx_buffer**

Pointer to transmit buffer, or NULL for no MOSI phase.

void ***rx_buffer**

Pointer to receive buffer, or NULL for no MISO phase. When the DMA is anabled, must start at WORD boundary (`rx_buffer%4==0`), and has length of a multiple of 4 bytes.

void ***user**

User-defined variable. Can be used to store eg transaction ID.

Macros

SPI_SLAVE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST

Transmit command/address/data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST

Receive data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_BIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit and receive LSB first.

Type Definitions

typedef struct *spi_slave_transaction_t* **spi_slave_transaction_t**
typedef void (***slave_transaction_cb_t**) (*spi_slave_transaction_t* *trans)

2.2.17 SPI Slave Half Duplex

Introduction

The half duplex (HD) mode is a special mode provided by ESP SPI Slave peripheral. Under this mode, the hardware provides more services than the full duplex (FD) mode (the mode for general purpose SPI transactions, see *SPI Slave Driver*). These services reduce the CPU load and the response time of SPI Slave, but the communication format is determined by the hardware. The communication format is always half duplex, so comes the name of Half Duplex Mode.

There are several different types of transactions, determined by the *command* phase of the transaction. Each transaction may consist of the following phases: command, address, dummy, data. The command phase is mandatory, while the other fields may be determined by the command field. During the command, address, dummy phases, the bus is always controlled by the master, while the direction of the data phase depends on the command. The data phase can be either an in phase, for the master to write data to the slave; or an out phase, for the master to read data from the slave.

About the details of how master should communicate with the SPI Slave, see *ESP SPI Slave HD (Half Duplex) Mode Protocol*.

By these different transactions, the slave provide these services to the master:

- A DMA channel for the master to write a great amount of data to the slave.
- A DMA channel for the master to read a great amount of data from the slave.
- Several general purpose registers, shard between the master and the slave.
- Several general purpose interrupts, for the master to interrupt the SW of slave.

Terminology

- Transaction
- Channel
- Sending
- Receiving
- Data Descriptor

Driver Feature

- Transaction read/write by master in segments
- Queues for data to send and received

Driver usage

Slave initialization Call `spi_slave_hd_init()` to initialize the SPI bus as well as the peripheral and the driver. The SPI slave will exclusively use the SPI peripheral, pins of the bus before it's deinitialized. Most configurations of the slave should be done as soon as the slave is being initialized.

The `spi_bus_config_t` specifies how the bus should be initialized, while `spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t` specifies how the SPI Slave driver should work.

Deinitialization (optional) Call *spi_slave_hd_deinit()* to uninstall the driver. The resources, including the pins, SPI peripheral, internal memory used by the driver, interrupt sources, will be released by the deinit function.

Send/Receive Data by DMA Channels To send data to the master through the sending DMA channel, the application should properly wrap the data to send by a *spi_slave_hd_data_t* descriptor structure before calling *spi_slave_hd_queue_trans()* with the data descriptor, and the channel argument of *SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX*. The pointers to descriptors are stored in the queue, and the data will be send to the master upon master's RDDMA command in the same order they are put into the queue by *spi_slave_hd_queue_trans()*.

The application should check the result of data sending by calling *spi_slave_hd_get_trans_res()* with the channel set as *SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX*. This function will block until the transaction with command RDDMA from master successfully completes (or timeout). The `out_trans` argument of the function will output the pointer of the data descriptor which is just finished.

Receiving data from the master through the receiving DMA channel is quite similar. The application calls *spi_slave_hd_queue_trans()* with proper data descriptor and the channel argument of *SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX*. And the application calls the *spi_slave_hd_get_trans_res()* later to get the descriptor to the receiving buffer, before it handles the data in the receiving buffer.

Note: This driver itself doesn't have internal buffer for the data to send, or just received. The application should provide data descriptors for the data buffer to send to master, or to receive data from the master.

The application will have to properly keep the data descriptor as well as the buffer it points to, after the descriptor is successfully sent into the driver internal queue by *spi_slave_hd_queue_trans()*, and before returned by *spi_slave_hd_get_trans_res()*. During this period, the hardware as well as the driver may read or write to the buffer and the descriptor when required at any time.

Please note that the buffer doesn't have to be fully sent or filled before it's terminated. For example, in the segment transaction mode, the master has to send CMD7 to terminate a WRDMA transaction, or send CMD8 to terminate a RDDMA transaction (in segments), no matter the send (receive) buffer is used up (full) or not.

Using Data Arguments Sometimes you may have initiator (sending data descriptor) and closure (handling returned descriptors) functions in different places. When you get the returned data descriptor in the closure, you may need some extra information when handle the finished data descriptor. For example, you may want to know which round it is for the returned descriptor, when you send the same piece of data for several times.

Set the `arg` member in the data descriptor to an variable indicating the transaction (by force casting), or point it to a a structure which wraps all the information you may need when handling the sending/receiving data. Then you can get what you need in your closure.

Using callbacks

Note: These callbacks are called in the ISR, so that they are fast enough. However, you may need to be very careful to write the code in the ISR. The callback should return as soon as possible. No delay or blocking operations are allowed.

The `spi_slave_hd_intr_config_t` member in the *spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t* configuration structure passed when initialize the SPI Slave HD driver, allows you having callbacks for each events you may concern.

The corresponding interrupt for each callbacks that is not *NULL* will enabled, so that the callbacks can be called immediately when the events happen. You don't need to provide callbacks for the unconcerned events.

The `arg` member in the configuration structure can help you pass some context to the callback, or indicate which SPI Slave instance when you are using the same callbacks for several SPI Slave peripherals. Set the `arg` member to an variable indicating the SPI Slave instance (by force casting), or point it to a context structure. All the callbacks will be called with this `arg` argument you set when the callbacks are initialized.

There are two other arguments: the `event` and the `awoken`. The `event` passes the information of the current event to the callback. The *`spi_slave_hd_event_t`* type contains the information of the event, for example, event type, the data descriptor just finished (The *data argument* will be very useful in this case!). The `awoken` argument is an output one, telling the ISR there are tasks are awoken after this callback, and the ISR should call *portYIELD_FROM_ISR()* to do task scheduling. Just pass the `awoken` argument to all FreeRTOS APIs which may unblock tasks, and the awoken will be returned to the ISR.

Writing/Reading Shared Registers Call *`spi_slave_hd_write_buffer()`* to write the shared buffer, and *`spi_slave_hd_read_buffer()`* to read the shared buffer.

Note: On ESP32-S2, the shared registers are read/written in words by the application, but read/written in bytes by the master. There's no guarantee four continuous bytes read from the master are from the same word written by the slave's application. It's also possible that if the slave reads a word while the master is writing bytes of the word, the slave may get one word with half of them just written by the master, and the other half hasn't been written into.

The master can confirm that the word is not in transition by reading the word twice and comparing the values.

For the slave, it will be more difficult to ensure the word is not in transition because the process of master writing four bytes can be very long (32 SPI clocks). You can put some CRC in the last (largest address) byte of a word so that when the byte is written, the word is sure to be all written.

Due to the conflicts there may be among read/write from SW (worse if there are multi cores) and master, it is suggested that a word is only used in one direction (only written by master or only written by the slave).

Receiving General Purpose Interrupts From the Master When the master sends CMD 0x08, 0x09 or 0x0A, the slave corresponding will be triggered. Currently the CMD8 is permanently used to indicate the termination of RDDMA segments. To receiving general purpose interrupts, register callbacks for CMD 0x09 and 0x0A when the slave is initialized, see *Using callbacks*.

API reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/spi_slave_hd.h

Functions

esp_err_t **`spi_slave_hd_init`**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, **`const`** *spi_bus_config_t *bus_config*, **`const`** *spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t *config*)

Initialize the SPI Slave HD driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid argument given
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: function called in invalid state, may be some resources are already in use
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no available DMA channel
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: memory allocation failed
- or other return value from `esp_intr_alloc`

Parameters

- `host_id`: The host to use
- `bus_config`: Bus configuration for the bus used
- `config`: Configuration for the SPI Slave HD driver

esp_err_t **`spi_slave_hd_deinit`**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*)

Deinitialize the SPI Slave HD driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: if the host_id is not correct

Parameters

- `host_id`: The host to deinitialize the driver

esp_err_t **spi_slave_hd_queue_trans**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, *spi_slave_chan_t chan*, *spi_slave_hd_data_t* **trans*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Queue transactions (segment mode)

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The input argument is invalid. Can be the following reason:
  - The buffer given is not DMA capable
  - The length of data is invalid (not larger than 0, or exceed the max transfer length)
  - The transaction direction is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Cannot queue the data before timeout. Master is still processing previous transaction.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Function called in invalid state. This API should be called under segment mode.

Parameters

- `host_id`: Host to queue the transaction
- `chan`: SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX or SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX
- `trans`: Transaction descriptors
- `timeout`: Timeout before the data is queued

esp_err_t **spi_slave_hd_get_trans_res**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, *spi_slave_chan_t chan*, *spi_slave_hd_data_t* ***out_trans*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Get the result of a data transaction (segment mode)

Note This API should be called successfully the same times as the `spi_slave_hd_queue_trans`.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Function is not valid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: There's no transaction done before timeout
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Function called in invalid state. This API should be called under segment mode.

Parameters

- `host_id`: Host to queue the transaction
- `chan`: Channel to get the result, SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX or SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX
- `[out] out_trans`: Pointer to the transaction descriptor (*`spi_slave_hd_data_t`*) passed to the driver before. Hardware has finished this transaction. Member `trans_len` indicates the actual number of bytes of received data, it's meaningless for TX.
- `timeout`: Timeout before the result is got

void **spi_slave_hd_read_buffer**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, int *addr*, uint8_t **out_data*, size_t *len*)

Read the shared registers.

Parameters

- `host_id`: Host to read the shared registers
- `addr`: Address of register to read, 0 to `SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE-1`
- `[out] out_data`: Output buffer to store the read data
- `len`: Length to read, not larger than `SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE-addr`

void **spi_slave_hd_write_buffer**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, int *addr*, uint8_t **data*, size_t *len*)

Write the shared registers.

Parameters

- `host_id`: Host to write the shared registers
- `addr`: Address of register to write, 0 to `SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE-1`
- `data`: Buffer holding the data to write
- `len`: Length to write, `SOC_SPI_MAXIMUM_BUFFER_SIZE-addr`

esp_err_t **spi_slave_hd_append_trans**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, *spi_slave_chan_t chan*, *spi_slave_hd_data_t* **trans*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Load transactions (append mode)

Note In this mode, user transaction descriptors will be appended to the DMA and the DMA will keep processing the data without stopping

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The input argument is invalid. Can be the following reason:
  - The buffer given is not DMA capable
  - The length of data is invalid (not larger than 0, or exceed the max transfer length)
  - The transaction direction is invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Master is still processing previous transaction. There is no available transaction for slave to load
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Function called in invalid state. This API should be called under append mode.

Parameters

- `host_id`: Host to load transactions
- `chan`: SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX or SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX
- `trans`: Transaction descriptor
- `timeout`: Timeout before the transaction is loaded

esp_err_t **spi_slave_hd_get_append_trans_res**(*spi_host_device_t host_id*, *spi_slave_chan_t chan*, *spi_slave_hd_data_t* ***out_trans*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Get the result of a data transaction (append mode)

Note This API should be called the same times as the `spi_slave_hd_append_trans`

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Function is not valid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: There's no transaction done before timeout
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Function called in invalid state. This API should be called under append mode.

Parameters

- `host_id`: Host to load the transaction
- `chan`: SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX or SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX
- `[out] out_trans`: Pointer to the transaction descriptor (*`spi_slave_hd_data_t`*) passed to the driver before. Hardware has finished this transaction. Member `trans_len` indicates the actual number of bytes of received data, it's meaningless for TX.
- `timeout`: Timeout before the result is got

Structures

struct spi_slave_hd_data_t

Descriptor of data to send/receive.

Public Members

uint8_t ***data**

Buffer to send, must be DMA capable.

size_t **len**

Len of data to send/receive. For receiving the buffer length should be multiples of 4 bytes, otherwise the extra part will be truncated.

size_t **trans_len**

For RX direction, it indicates the data actually received. For TX direction, it is meaningless.

void ***arg**

Extra argument indiciating this data.

struct spi_slave_hd_event_t

Information of SPI Slave HD event.

Public Members

spi_event_t **event**
Event type.

spi_slave_hd_data_t ***trans**
Corresponding transaction for SPI_EV_SEND and SPI_EV_RECV events.

struct spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t
Callback configuration structure for SPI Slave HD.

Public Members

slave_cb_t **cb_buffer_tx**
Callback when master reads from shared buffer.

slave_cb_t **cb_buffer_rx**
Callback when master writes to shared buffer.

slave_cb_t **cb_sent**
Callback when data are sent.

slave_cb_t **cb_recv**
Callback when data are received.

slave_cb_t **cb_cmd9**
Callback when CMD9 received.

slave_cb_t **cb_cmdA**
Callback when CMDA received.

void ***arg**
Argument indicating this SPI Slave HD peripheral instance.

struct spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t
Configuration structure for the SPI Slave HD driver.

Public Members

uint8_t **mode**
SPI mode, representing a pair of (CPOL, CPHA) configuration:

- 0: (0, 0)
- 1: (0, 1)
- 2: (1, 0)
- 3: (1, 1)

uint32_t **spics_io_num**
CS GPIO pin for this device.

uint32_t **flags**
Bitwise OR of SPI_SLAVE_HD_* flags.

uint32_t **command_bits**
command field bits, multiples of 8 and at least 8.

uint32_t **address_bits**
address field bits, multiples of 8 and at least 8.

uint32_t **dummy_bits**
dummy field bits, multiples of 8 and at least 8.

uint32_t **queue_size**
Transaction queue size. This sets how many transactions can be 'in the air' (queued using spi_slave_hd_queue_trans but not yet finished using spi_slave_hd_get_trans_result) at the same time.

spi_dma_chan_t **dma_chan**
DMA channel to used.

spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t **cb_config**
Callback configuration.

Macros

SPI_SLAVE_HD_TXBIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit command/address/data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_HD_RXBIT_LSBFIRST
Receive data LSB first instead of the default MSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_HD_BIT_LSBFIRST
Transmit and receive LSB first.

SPI_SLAVE_HD_APPEND_MODE
Adopt DMA append mode for transactions. In this mode, users can load(append) DMA descriptors without stopping the DMA.

Type Definitions

typedef bool (***slave_cb_t**) (void *arg, *spi_slave_hd_event_t* *event, BaseType_t *awoken)
Callback for SPI Slave HD.

Enumerations

enum spi_slave_chan_t
Channel of SPI Slave HD to do data transaction.

Values:

SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX = 0
The output channel (RDDMA)

SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX = 1
The input channel (WRDMA)

2.2.18 ESP32-S2 Temperature Sensor

Overview

The ESP32-S2 has a built-in temperature sensor. The temperature sensor module contains an 8-bit Sigma-Delta ADC and a temperature offset DAC.

The conversion relationship is the first columns of the table below. Among them, offset = 0 is the main measurement option, and other values are extended measurement options.

offset	measure range(Celsius)	measure error(Celsius)
-2	50 ~ 125	< 3
-1	20 ~ 100	< 2
0	-10 ~ 80	< 1
1	-30 ~ 50	< 2
2	-40 ~ 20	< 3

Application Example

Temperature sensor reading example: peripherals/temp_sensor.

API Reference - Normal Temp Sensor

Header File

- driver/esp32s2/include/driver/temp_sensor.h

Functions

esp_err_t **temp_sensor_set_config** (*temp_sensor_config_t tsens*)

Set parameter of temperature sensor.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `tsens`:

esp_err_t **temp_sensor_get_config** (*temp_sensor_config_t *tsens*)

Get parameter of temperature sensor.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `tsens`:

esp_err_t **temp_sensor_start** (void)

Start temperature sensor measure.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

esp_err_t **temp_sensor_stop** (void)

Stop temperature sensor measure.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **temp_sensor_read_raw** (uint32_t *tsens_out*)

Read temperature sensor raw data.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG `tsens_out` is NULL
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE temperature sensor dont start

Parameters
- `tsens_out`: Pointer to raw data, Range: 0 ~ 255

esp_err_t **temp_sensor_read_celsius** (float *celsius*)

Read temperature sensor data that is converted to degrees Celsius.

Note Should not be called from interrupt.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG ARG is NULL.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE The ambient temperature is out of range.

Parameters
- `celsius`: The measure output value.

Structures

struct temp_sensor_config_t

Configuration for temperature sensor reading.

Public Members

temp_sensor_dac_offset_t **dac_offset**
The temperature measurement range is configured with a built-in temperature offset DAC.

uint8_t **clk_div**
Default: 6

Macros

TSENS_CONFIG_DEFAULT( )
temperature sensor default setting.

Enumerations

enum temp_sensor_dac_offset_t
temperature sensor range option.

Values:

TSENS_DAC_L0 = 0
offset = -2, measure range: 50℃ ~ 125℃, error < 3℃.

TSENS_DAC_L1
offset = -1, measure range: 20℃ ~ 100℃, error < 2℃.

TSENS_DAC_L2
offset = 0, measure range:-10℃ ~ 80℃, error < 1℃.

TSENS_DAC_L3
offset = 1, measure range:-30℃ ~ 50℃, error < 2℃.

TSENS_DAC_L4
offset = 2, measure range:-40℃ ~ 20℃, error < 3℃.

TSENS_DAC_MAX

TSENS_DAC_DEFAULT = *TSENS_DAC_L2*

2.2.19 Touch Sensor

Introduction

A touch sensor system is built on a substrate which carries electrodes and relevant connections under a protective flat surface. When a user touches the surface, the capacitance variation is used to evaluate if the touch was valid.

ESP32-S2 can handle up to 14 capacitive touch pads / GPIOs.

The sensing pads can be arranged in different combinations (e.g., matrix, slider), so that a larger area or more points can be detected. The touch pad sensing process is under the control of a hardware-implemented finite-state machine (FSM) which is initiated by software or a dedicated hardware timer.

For design, operation, and control registers of a touch sensor, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *On-Chip Sensors and Analog Signal Processing* [PDF].

In-depth design details of touch sensors and firmware development guidelines for ESP32-S2 are available in Touch Sensor Application Note.

Functionality Overview

Description of API is broken down into groups of functions to provide a quick overview of the following features:

- Initialization of touch pad driver
- Configuration of touch pad GPIO pins

- Taking measurements
- Adjusting parameters of measurements
- Filtering measurements
- Touch detection methods
- Setting up interrupts to report touch detection
- Waking up from Sleep mode on interrupt

For detailed description of a particular function, please go to Section *API Reference*. Practical implementation of this API is covered in Section *Application Examples*.

Initialization Before using a touch pad, you need to initialize the touch pad driver by calling the function `touch_pad_init()`. This function sets several `..._DEFAULT` driver parameters listed in *API Reference* under *Macros*. It also removes the information about which pads have been touched before, if any, and disables interrupts.

If the driver is not required anymore, deinitialize it by calling `touch_pad_deinit()`.

Configuration Enabling the touch sensor functionality for a particular GPIO is done with `touch_pad_config()`.

Use the function `touch_pad_set_fsm_mode()` to select if touch pad measurement (operated by FSM) should be started automatically by a hardware timer, or by software. If software mode is selected, use `touch_pad_sw_start()` to start the FSM.

Touch State Measurements The following function come in handy to read raw measurements from the sensor:

- `touch_pad_read_raw_data()`

It can also be used, for example, to evaluate a particular touch pad design by checking the range of sensor readings when a pad is touched or released. This information can be then used to establish a touch threshold.

For the demonstration of how to read the touch pad data, check the application example peripherals/touch_pad_read.

Optimization of Measurements A touch sensor has several configurable parameters to match the characteristics of a particular touch pad design. For instance, to sense smaller capacity changes, it is possible to narrow down the reference voltage range within which the touch pads are charged / discharged. The high and low reference voltages are set using the function `touch_pad_set_voltage()`.

Besides the ability to discern smaller capacity changes, a positive side effect is reduction of power consumption for low power applications. A likely negative effect is an increase in measurement noise. If the dynamic range of obtained readings is still satisfactory, then further reduction of power consumption might be done by reducing the measurement time with `touch_pad_set_meas_time()`.

The following list summarizes available measurement parameters and corresponding 'set' functions:

- Touch pad charge / discharge parameters:
  - voltage range: `touch_pad_set_voltage()`
  - speed (slope): `touch_pad_set_cnt_mode()`
- Measurement time: `touch_pad_set_meas_time()`

Relationship between the voltage range (high / low reference voltages), speed (slope), and measurement time is shown in the figure below.

The last chart *Output* represents the touch sensor reading, i.e., the count of pulses collected within the measurement time.

All functions are provided in pairs to *set* a specific parameter and to *get* the current parameter's value, e.g., `touch_pad_set_voltage()` and `touch_pad_get_voltage()`.

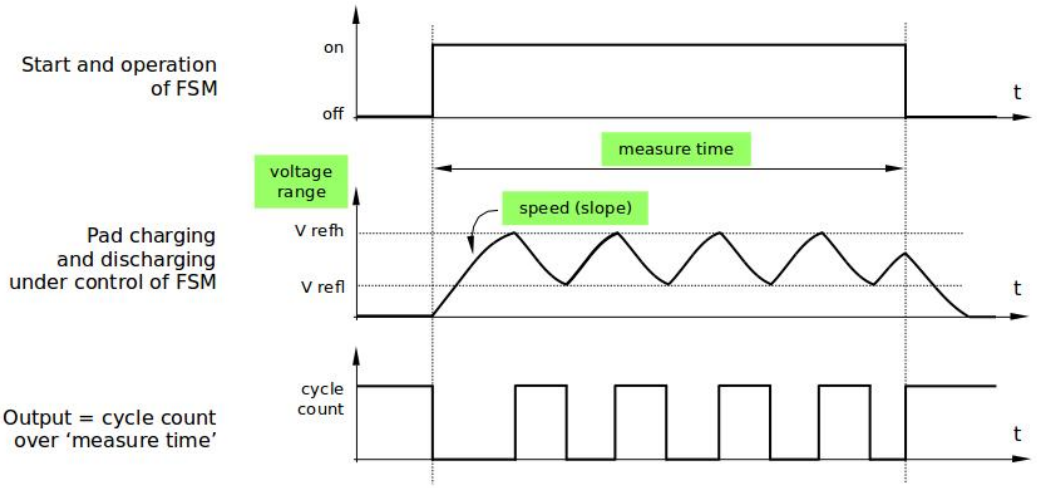


Fig. 14: Touch pad - relationship between measurement parameters

Filtering of Measurements If measurements are noisy, you can filter them with provided API functions. The ESP32-S2's touch functionality provide two sets of APIs for doing this.

There is an internal touch channel that is not connected to any external GPIO. The measurements from this denoise pad can be used to filters out interference introduced on all channels, such as noise introduced by the power supply and external EMI. The denoise paramaters are set with the function `touch_pad_denoise_set_config()` and started by with `touch_pad_denoise_enable()`

There is also a configurable hardware implemented IIR-filter (infinite impulse response). This IIR-filter is configured with the function `touch_pad_filter_set_config()` and enabled by calling `touch_pad_filter_enable()`

Touch Detection Touch detection is implemented in ESP32's hardware based on the user-configured threshold and raw measurements executed by FSM. Use the functions `touch_pad_get_status()` to check which pads have been touched and `touch_pad_clear_status()` to clear the touch status information.

Hardware touch detection can also be wired to interrupts. This is described in the next section.

If measurements are noisy and capacity changes are small, hardware touch detection might be unreliable. To resolve this issue, instead of using hardware detection / provided interrupts, implement measurement filtering and perform touch detection in your own application. For sample implementation of both methods of touch detection, see peripherals/touch_pad_interrupt.

Touch Triggered Interrupts Before enabling an interrupt on a touch detection, you should establish a touch detection threshold. Use the functions described in *Touch State Measurements* to read and display sensor measurements when a pad is touched and released. Apply a filter if measurements are noisy and relative capacity changes are small. Depending on your application and environment conditions, test the influence of temperature and power supply voltage changes on measured values.

Once a detection threshold is established, it can be set during initialization with `touch_pad_config()` or at the runtime with `touch_pad_set_thresh()`.

Finally, configure and manage interrupt calls using the following functions:

- `touch_pad_isr_register()` / `touch_pad_isr_deregister()`
- `touch_pad_intr_enable()` / `touch_pad_intr_disable()`

When interrupts are operational, you can obtain the information from which particular pad an interrupt came by invoking `touch_pad_get_status()` and clear the pad status with `touch_pad_clear_status()`.

Application Examples

- Touch sensor read example: peripherals/touch_pad_read.
- Touch sensor interrupt example: peripherals/touch_pad_interrupt.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/esp32s2/include/driver/touch_sensor.h

Functions

esp_err_t **touch_pad_fsm_start** (void)

Set touch sensor FSM start.

Note Start FSM after the touch sensor FSM mode is set.
Note Call this function will reset benchmark of all touch channels.
Return
- ESP_OK on success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_fsm_stop** (void)

Stop touch sensor FSM.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sw_start** (void)

Trigger a touch sensor measurement, only support in SW mode of FSM.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_meas_time** (uint16_t *sleep_cycle*, uint16_t *meas_times*)

Set touch sensor times of charge and discharge and sleep time. Excessive total time will slow down the touch response. Too small measurement time will not be sampled enough, resulting in inaccurate measurements.

Note The greater the duty cycle of the measurement time, the more system power is consumed.
Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `sleep_cycle`: The touch sensor will sleep after each measurement. sleep_cycle decide the interval between each measurement. t_sleep = sleep_cycle / (RTC_SLOW_CLK frequency). The approximate frequency value of RTC_SLOW_CLK can be obtained using rtc_clk_slow_freq_get_hz function.
- `meas_times`: The times of charge and discharge in each measure process of touch channels. The timer frequency is 8Mhz. Range: 0 ~ 0xffff. Recommended typical value: Modify this value to make the measurement time around 1ms.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_meas_time** (uint16_t **sleep_cycle*, uint16_t **meas_times*)

Get touch sensor times of charge and discharge and sleep time.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `sleep_cycle`: Pointer to accept sleep cycle number
- `meas_times`: Pointer to accept measurement times count.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_idle_channel_connect** (*touch_pad_conn_type_t type*)

Set connection type of touch channel in idle status. When a channel is in measurement mode, other initialized channels are in idle mode. The touch channel is generally adjacent to the trace, so the connection state of the idle channel affects the stability and sensitivity of the test channel. The CONN_HIGHZ(high resistance) setting increases the sensitivity of touch channels. The CONN_GND(grounding) setting increases the stability of touch channels.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- type: Select idle channel connect to high resistance state or ground.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_idle_channel_connect** (*touch_pad_conn_type_t *type*)

Set connection type of touch channel in idle status. When a channel is in measurement mode, other initialized channels are in idle mode. The touch channel is generally adjacent to the trace, so the connection state of the idle channel affects the stability and sensitivity of the test channel. The CONN_HIGHZ(high resistance) setting increases the sensitivity of touch channels. The CONN_GND(grounding) setting increases the stability of touch channels.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- type: Pointer to connection type.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_thresh** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t *threshold*)

Set the trigger threshold of touch sensor. The threshold determines the sensitivity of the touch sensor. The threshold is the original value of the trigger state minus the benchmark value.

Note If set "TOUCH_PAD_THRESHOLD_MAX" , the touch is never be triggered.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- touch_num: touch pad index
- threshold: threshold of touch sensor. Should be less than the max change value of touch.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_thresh** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t *threshold*)

Get touch sensor trigger threshold.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

Parameters
- touch_num: touch pad index
- threshold: pointer to accept threshold

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_channel_mask** (uint16_t *enable_mask*)

Register touch channel into touch sensor scan group. The working mode of the touch sensor is cyclically scanned. This function will set the scan bits according to the given bitmask.

Note If set this mask, the FSM timer should be stop firsty.

Note The touch sensor that in scan map, should be deinit GPIO function firstly by touch_pad_io_init.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- enable_mask: bitmask of touch sensor scan group. e.g. TOUCH_PAD_NUM14 -> BIT(14)

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_channel_mask** (uint16_t *enable_mask*)

Get the touch sensor scan group bit mask.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- enable_mask: Pointer to bitmask of touch sensor scan group. e.g. TOUCH_PAD_NUM14 -> BIT(14)

esp_err_t **touch_pad_clear_channel_mask** (uint16_t *enable_mask*)

Clear touch channel from touch sensor scan group. The working mode of the touch sensor is cyclically scanned. This function will clear the scan bits according to the given bitmask.

Note If clear all mask, the FSM timer should be stop firsty.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `enable_mask`: bitmask of touch sensor scan group. e.g. TOUCH_PAD_NUM14 -> BIT(14)

esp_err_t **touch_pad_config** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*)

Configure parameter for each touch channel.

Note Touch num 0 is denoise channel, please use `touch_pad_denoise_enable` to set denoise function

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument wrong
- ESP_FAIL if touch pad not initialized

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index

esp_err_t **touch_pad_reset** (void)

Reset the FSM of touch module.

Note Call this function after `touch_pad_fsm_stop`.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

touch_pad_t **touch_pad_get_current_meas_channel** (void)

Get the current measure channel.

Note Should be called when touch sensor measurement is in cyclic scan mode.

Return

- touch channel number

uint32_t **touch_pad_read_intr_status_mask** (void)

Get the touch sensor interrupt status mask.

Return

- touch interrupt bit

esp_err_t **touch_pad_intr_enable** (*touch_pad_intr_mask_t int_mask*)

Enable touch sensor interrupt by bitmask.

Note This API can be called in ISR handler.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `int_mask`: Pad mask to enable interrupts

esp_err_t **touch_pad_intr_disable** (*touch_pad_intr_mask_t int_mask*)

Disable touch sensor interrupt by bitmask.

Note This API can be called in ISR handler.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `int_mask`: Pad mask to disable interrupts

esp_err_t **touch_pad_intr_clear** (*touch_pad_intr_mask_t int_mask*)

Clear touch sensor interrupt by bitmask.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `int_mask`: Pad mask to clear interrupts

esp_err_t **touch_pad_isr_register** (*intr_handler_t fn*, void **arg*, *touch_pad_intr_mask_t intr_mask*)

Register touch-pad ISR. The handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Arguments error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No memory

Parameters

- `fn`: Pointer to ISR handler
- `arg`: Parameter for ISR
- `intr_mask`: Enable touch sensor interrupt handler by bitmask.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_timeout_set** (bool *enable*, uint32_t *threshold*)

Enable/disable the timeout check and set timeout threshold for all touch sensor channels measurements. If enable: When the touch reading of a touch channel exceeds the measurement threshold, a timeout interrupt will be generated. If disable: the FSM does not check if the channel under measurement times out.

Note The threshold compared with touch readings.

Note In order to avoid abnormal short circuit of some touch channels. This function should be turned on. Ensure the normal operation of other touch channels.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `enable`: true(default): Enable the timeout check; false: Disable the timeout check.
- `threshold`: For all channels, the maximum value that will not be exceeded during normal operation.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_timeout_resume** (void)

Call this interface after timeout to make the touch channel resume normal work. Point on the next channel to measure. If this API is not called, the touch FSM will stop the measurement after timeout interrupt.

Note Call this API after finishes the exception handling by user.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_read_raw_data** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t **raw_data*)

get raw data of touch sensor.

Note After the initialization is complete, the "raw_data" is max value. You need to wait for a measurement cycle before you can read the correct touch value.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Touch channel 0 haven't this parameter.

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `raw_data`: pointer to accept touch sensor value

esp_err_t **touch_pad_read_benchmark** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t **benchmark*)

get benchmark of touch sensor.

Note After initialization, the benchmark value is the maximum during the first measurement period.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Touch channel 0 haven't this parameter.

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `benchmark`: pointer to accept touch sensor benchmark value

esp_err_t **touch_pad_filter_read_smooth** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t **smooth*)

Get smoothed data that obtained by filtering the raw data.

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `smooth`: pointer to smoothed data

esp_err_t **touch_pad_reset_benchmark** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*)
Force reset benchmark to raw data of touch sensor.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
  - TOUCH_PAD_MAX Reset basaline of all channels

esp_err_t **touch_pad_filter_set_config** (*touch_filter_config_t *filter_info*)
set parameter of touch sensor filter and detection algorithm. For more details on the detection algorithm, please refer to the application documentation.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `filter_info`: select filter type and threshold of detection algorithm

esp_err_t **touch_pad_filter_get_config** (*touch_filter_config_t *filter_info*)
get parameter of touch sensor filter and detection algorithm. For more details on the detection algorithm, please refer to the application documentation.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `filter_info`: select filter type and threshold of detection algorithm

esp_err_t **touch_pad_filter_enable** (void)
enable touch sensor filter for detection algorithm. For more details on the detection algorithm, please refer to the application documentation.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_filter_disable** (void)
disable touch sensor filter for detection algorithm. For more details on the detection algorithm, please refer to the application documentation.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_denoise_set_config** (*touch_pad_denoise_t *denoise*)
set parameter of denoise pad (TOUCH_PAD_NUM0). T0 is an internal channel that does not have a corresponding external GPIO. T0 will work simultaneously with the measured channel Tn. Finally, the actual measured value of Tn is the value after subtracting lower bits of T0. The noise reduction function filters out interference introduced simultaneously on all channels, such as noise introduced by power supplies and external EMI.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `denoise`: parameter of denoise

esp_err_t **touch_pad_denoise_get_config** (*touch_pad_denoise_t *denoise*)
get parameter of denoise pad (TOUCH_PAD_NUM0).

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `denoise`: Pointer to parameter of denoise

esp_err_t **touch_pad_denoise_enable** (void)
enable denoise function. T0 is an internal channel that does not have a corresponding external GPIO. T0 will work simultaneously with the measured channel Tn. Finally, the actual measured value of Tn is the value after

subtracting lower bits of T0. The noise reduction function filters out interference introduced simultaneously on all channels, such as noise introduced by power supplies and external EMI.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_denoise_disable**(void)
disable denoise function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_denoise_read_data**(uint32_t **data*)
Get denoise measure value (TOUCH_PAD_NUM0).

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `data`: Pointer to receive denoise value

esp_err_t **touch_pad_waterproof_set_config**(*touch_pad_waterproof_t *waterproof*)
set parameter of waterproof function.

The waterproof function includes a shielded channel (TOUCH_PAD_NUM14) and a guard channel. Guard pad is used to detect the large area of water covering the touch panel. Shield pad is used to shield the influence of water droplets covering the touch panel. It is generally designed as a grid and is placed around the touch buttons.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `waterproof`: parameter of waterproof

esp_err_t **touch_pad_waterproof_get_config**(*touch_pad_waterproof_t *waterproof*)
get parameter of waterproof function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `waterproof`: parameter of waterproof

esp_err_t **touch_pad_waterproof_enable**(void)
Enable parameter of waterproof function. Should be called after function `touch_pad_waterproof_set_config`.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_waterproof_disable**(void)
Disable parameter of waterproof function.

Return
- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_proximity_enable**(*touch_pad_t touch_num*, bool *enabled*)
Enable/disable proximity function of touch channels. The proximity sensor measurement is the accumulation of touch channel measurements.

Note Supports up to three touch channels configured as proximity sensors.

Return
- ESP_OK: Configured correctly.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Touch channel number error.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Don't support configured.

Parameters
- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `enabled`: true: enable the proximity function; false: disable the proximity function

esp_err_t **touch_pad_proximity_set_count** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t *count*)

Set measure count of proximity channel. The proximity sensor measurement is the accumulation of touch channel measurements.

Note All proximity channels use the same `count` value. So please pass the parameter `TOUCH_PAD_MAX`.

Return

- ESP_OK: Configured correctly.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Touch channel number error.

Parameters

- `touch_num`: Touch pad index. In this version, pass the parameter `TOUCH_PAD_MAX`.
- `count`: The cumulative times of measurements for proximity pad. Range: 0 ~ 255.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_proximity_get_count** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t **count*)

Get measure count of proximity channel. The proximity sensor measurement is the accumulation of touch channel measurements.

Note All proximity channels use the same `count` value. So please pass the parameter `TOUCH_PAD_MAX`.

Return

- ESP_OK: Configured correctly.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Touch channel number error.

Parameters

- `touch_num`: Touch pad index. In this version, pass the parameter `TOUCH_PAD_MAX`.
- `count`: The cumulative times of measurements for proximity pad. Range: 0 ~ 255.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_proximity_get_data** (*touch_pad_t touch_num*, uint32_t **measure_out*)

Get the accumulated measurement of the proximity sensor. The proximity sensor measurement is the accumulation of touch channel measurements.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Touch num is not proximity

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `measure_out`: If the accumulation process does not end, the `measure_out` is the process value.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_get_info** (*touch_pad_sleep_channel_t *slp_config*)

Get parameter of touch sensor sleep channel. The touch sensor can works in sleep mode to wake up sleep.

Note After the sleep channel is configured, Please use special functions for sleep channel. e.g. The user should uses `touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_data` instead of `touch_pad_read_raw_data` to obtain the sleep channel reading.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `slp_config`: touch sleep pad config.

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_enable** (*touch_pad_t pad_num*, bool *enable*)

Enable/Disable sleep channel function for touch sensor. The touch sensor can works in sleep mode to wake up sleep.

Note ESP32S2 only support one sleep channel.

Note After the sleep channel is configured, Please use special functions for sleep channel. e.g. The user should uses `touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_data` instead of `touch_pad_read_raw_data` to obtain the sleep channel reading.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `enable`: true: enable sleep pad for touch sensor; false: disable sleep pad for touch sensor;

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_enable_proximity**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, bool *enable*)

Enable/Disable proximity function for sleep channel. The touch sensor can works in sleep mode to wake up sleep.

Note ESP32S2 only support one sleep channel.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `enable`: true: enable proximity for sleep channel; false: disable proximity for sleep channel;

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_set_threshold**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, uint32_t *touch_thres*)

Set the trigger threshold of touch sensor in deep sleep. The threshold determines the sensitivity of the touch sensor.

Note In general, the touch threshold during sleep can use the threshold parameter parameters before sleep.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `touch_thres`: touch sleep pad threshold

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_get_threshold**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, uint32_t **touch_thres*)

Get the trigger threshold of touch sensor in deep sleep. The threshold determines the sensitivity of the touch sensor.

Note In general, the touch threshold during sleep can use the threshold parameter parameters before sleep.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `touch_thres`: touch sleep pad threshold

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_benchmark**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, uint32_t **benchmark*)

Read benchmark of touch sensor sleep channel.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter is NULL

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `benchmark`: pointer to accept touch sensor benchmark value

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_smooth**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, uint32_t **smooth_data*)

Read smoothed data of touch sensor sleep channel. Smoothed data is filtered from the raw data.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter is NULL

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `smooth_data`: pointer to accept touch sensor smoothed data

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_data**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, uint32_t **raw_data*)

Read raw data of touch sensor sleep channel.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter is NULL

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `raw_data`: pointer to accept touch sensor raw data

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_reset_benchmark**(void)

Reset benchmark of touch sensor sleep channel.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_proximity_cnt**(*touch_pad_t pad_num*, uint32_t **proximity_cnt*)

Read proximity count of touch sensor sleep channel.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter is NULL

Parameters

- `pad_num`: Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode.
- `proximity_cnt`: pointer to accept touch sensor proximity count value

esp_err_t **touch_pad_sleep_channel_set_work_time**(uint16_t *sleep_cycle*, uint16_t *meas_times*)

Change the operating frequency of touch pad in deep sleep state. Reducing the operating frequency can effectively reduce power consumption. If this function is not called, the working frequency of touch in the deep sleep state is the same as that in the wake-up state.

Return

- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `sleep_cycle`: The touch sensor will sleep after each measurement. sleep_cycle decide the interval between each measurement. t_sleep = sleep_cycle / (RTC_SLOW_CLK frequency). The approximate frequency value of RTC_SLOW_CLK can be obtained using rtc_clk_slow_freq_get_hz function.
- `meas_times`: The times of charge and discharge in each measure process of touch channels. The timer frequency is 8Mhz. Range: 0 ~ 0xffff. Recommended typical value: Modify this value to make the measurement time around 1ms.

Header File

- driver/include/driver/touch_sensor_common.h

Functions

esp_err_t **touch_pad_init**(void)

Initialize touch module.

Note If default parameter don't match the usage scenario, it can be changed after this function.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Touch pad init error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Touch pad is providing current to external XTAL

esp_err_t **touch_pad_deinit**(void)

Un-install touch pad driver.

Note After this function is called, other touch functions are prohibited from being called.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Touch pad driver not initialized

esp_err_t **touch_pad_io_init**(*touch_pad_t touch_num*)

Initialize touch pad GPIO.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_voltage**(*touch_high_volt_t refh*, *touch_low_volt_t refl*, *touch_volt_atten_t atten*)

Set touch sensor high voltage threshold of chanrge. The touch sensor measures the channel capacitance value by charging and discharging the channel. So the high threshold should be less than the supply voltage.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

Parameters

- `refh`: the value of DREFH
- `refl`: the value of DREFL
- `atten`: the attenuation on DREFH

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_voltage**(*touch_high_volt_t *refh*, *touch_low_volt_t *refl*, *touch_volt_atten_t *atten*)

Get touch sensor reference voltage,.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `refh`: pointer to accept DREFH value
- `refl`: pointer to accept DREFL value
- `atten`: pointer to accept the attenuation on DREFH

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_cnt_mode**(*touch_pad_t touch_num*, *touch_cnt_slope_t slope*, *touch_tie_opt_t opt*)

Set touch sensor charge/discharge speed for each pad. If the slope is 0, the counter would always be zero. If the slope is 1, the charging and discharging would be slow, accordingly. If the slope is set 7, which is the maximum value, the charging and discharging would be fast.

Note The higher the charge and discharge current, the greater the immunity of the touch channel, but it will increase the system power consumption.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `slope`: touch pad charge/discharge speed
- `opt`: the initial voltage

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_cnt_mode**(*touch_pad_t touch_num*, *touch_cnt_slope_t *slope*, *touch_tie_opt_t *opt*)

Get touch sensor charge/discharge speed for each pad.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

Parameters

- `touch_num`: touch pad index
- `slope`: pointer to accept touch pad charge/discharge slope
- `opt`: pointer to accept the initial voltage

esp_err_t **touch_pad_isr_deregister**(void (*fn)) void *

, void *arg)Deregister the handler previously registered using touch_pad_isr_handler_register.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if a handler matching both fn and arg isn't registered

Parameters
- `fn`: handler function to call (as passed to touch_pad_isr_handler_register)
- `arg`: argument of the handler (as passed to touch_pad_isr_handler_register)

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_wakeup_status**(*touch_pad_t *pad_num*)

Get the touch pad which caused wakeup from deep sleep.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter is NULL

Parameters
- `pad_num`: pointer to touch pad which caused wakeup

esp_err_t **touch_pad_set_fsm_mode**(*touch_fsm_mode_t mode*)

Set touch sensor FSM mode, the test action can be triggered by the timer, as well as by the software.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if argument is wrong

Parameters
- `mode`: FSM mode

esp_err_t **touch_pad_get_fsm_mode**(*touch_fsm_mode_t *mode*)

Get touch sensor FSM mode.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `mode`: pointer to accept FSM mode

esp_err_t **touch_pad_clear_status**(void)

To clear the touch sensor channel active status.

Note The FSM automatically updates the touch sensor status. It is generally not necessary to call this API to clear the status.

Return
- ESP_OK on success

uint32_t **touch_pad_get_status**(void)

Get the touch sensor channel active status mask. The bit position represents the channel number. The 0/1 status of the bit represents the trigger status.

Return
- The touch sensor status. e.g. Touch1 trigger status is `status_mask & (BIT1)`.

bool **touch_pad_meas_is_done**(void)

Check touch sensor measurement status.

Return
- True measurement is under way
- False measurement done

GPIO Lookup Macros Some useful macros can be used to specified the GPIO number of a touch pad channel, or vice versa. e.g.

1. `TOUCH_PAD_NUM5_GPIO_NUM` is the GPIO number of channel 5 (12);
2. `TOUCH_PAD_GPIO4_CHANNEL` is the channel number of GPIO 4 (channel 0).

Header File

- soc/esp32s2/include/soc/touch_sensor_channel.h

Macros

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO1_CHANNEL
TOUCH_PAD_NUM1_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO2_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM2_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO3_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM3_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO4_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM4_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO5_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM5_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO6_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM6_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO7_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM7_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO8_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM8_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO9_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM9_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO10_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM10_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO11_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM11_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO12_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM12_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO13_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM13_GPIO_NUM

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO14_CHANNEL

TOUCH_PAD_NUM14_GPIO_NUM

Header File

- hal/include/hal/touch_sensor_types.h

Structures

struct touch_pad_denoise

Touch sensor denoise configuration

Public Members

touch_pad_denoise_grade_t **grade**

Select denoise range of denoise channel. Determined by measuring the noise amplitude of the denoise channel.

touch_pad_denoise_cap_t **cap_level**
Select internal reference capacitance of denoise channel. Ensure that the denoise readings are closest to the readings of the channel being measured. Use `touch_pad_denoise_read_data` to get the reading of denoise channel. The equivalent capacitance of the shielded channel can be calculated from the reading of denoise channel.

struct touch_pad_waterproof
Touch sensor waterproof configuration

Public Members

touch_pad_t **guard_ring_pad**
Waterproof. Select touch channel use for guard pad. Guard pad is used to detect the large area of water covering the touch panel.

touch_pad_shield_driver_t **shield_driver**
Waterproof. Shield channel drive capability configuration. Shield pad is used to shield the influence of water droplets covering the touch panel. When the waterproof function is enabled, Touch14 is set as shield channel by default. The larger the parasitic capacitance on the shielding channel, the higher the drive capability needs to be set. The equivalent capacitance of the shield channel can be estimated through the reading value of the denoise channel(Touch0).

struct touch_filter_config
Touch sensor filter configuration

Public Members

touch_filter_mode_t **mode**
Set filter mode. The input of the filter is the raw value of touch reading, and the output of the filter is involved in the judgment of the touch state.

uint32_t **debounce_cnt**
Set debounce count, such as `n`. If the measured values continue to exceed the threshold for `n+1` times, the touch sensor state changes. Range: 0 ~ 7

uint32_t **noise_thr**
Noise threshold coefficient. Higher = More noise resistance. The actual noise should be less than (noise coefficient * touch threshold). Range: 0 ~ 3. The coefficient is 0: 4/8; 1: 3/8; 2: 2/8; 3: 1;

uint32_t **jitter_step**
Set jitter filter step size. Range: 0 ~ 15

touch_smooth_mode_t **smh_lvl**
Level of filter applied on the original data against large noise interference.

struct touch_pad_sleep_channel_t
Touch sensor channel sleep configuration

Public Members

touch_pad_t **touch_num**
Set touch channel number for sleep pad. Only one touch sensor channel is supported in deep sleep mode. If clear the sleep channel, point this pad to `TOUCH_PAD_NUM0`

bool **en_proximity**
enable proximity function for sleep pad

Macros

TOUCH_PAD_BIT_MASK_ALL
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_DEFAULT

TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_DEFAULT

TOUCH_PAD_BIT_MASK_MAX

TOUCH_PAD_HIGH_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD

TOUCH_PAD_LOW_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD

TOUCH_PAD_ATTEN_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD

TOUCH_PAD_IDLE_CH_CONNECT_DEFAULT

TOUCH_PAD_THRESHOLD_MAX
If set touch threshold max value, The touch sensor can't be in touched status

TOUCH_PAD_SLEEP_CYCLE_DEFAULT
Excessive total time will slow down the touch response. Too small measurement time will not be sampled enough, resulting in inaccurate measurements.

Note The greater the duty cycle of the measurement time, the more system power is consumed.The number of sleep cycle in each measure process of touch channels. The timer frequency is RTC_SLOW_CLK (can be 150k or 32k depending on the options). Range: 0 ~ 0xffff

TOUCH_PAD_MEASURE_CYCLE_DEFAULT
The times of charge and discharge in each measure process of touch channels. The timer frequency is 8Mhz. Recommended typical value: Modify this value to make the measurement time around 1ms. Range: 0 ~ 0xffff

TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_ALL
All touch interrupt type enable.

TOUCH_PROXIMITY_MEAS_NUM_MAX
Touch sensor proximity detection configuration

TOUCH_DEBOUNCE_CNT_MAX

TOUCH_NOISE_THR_MAX

TOUCH_JITTER_STEP_MAX

Type Definitions

typedef struct *touch_pad_denoise* **touch_pad_denoise_t**
Touch sensor denoise configuration

typedef struct *touch_pad_waterproof* **touch_pad_waterproof_t**
Touch sensor waterproof configuration

typedef struct *touch_filter_config* **touch_filter_config_t**
Touch sensor filter configuration

Enumerations

enum touch_pad_t
Touch pad channel

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_NUM0 = 0
Touch pad channel 0 is GPIO4(ESP32)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM1
Touch pad channel 1 is GPIO0(ESP32) / GPIO1(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM2
Touch pad channel 2 is GPIO2(ESP32) / GPIO2(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM3
Touch pad channel 3 is GPIO15(ESP32) / GPIO3(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM4
Touch pad channel 4 is GPIO13(ESP32) / GPIO4(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM5
Touch pad channel 5 is GPIO12(ESP32) / GPIO5(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM6
Touch pad channel 6 is GPIO14(ESP32) / GPIO6(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM7
Touch pad channel 7 is GPIO27(ESP32) / GPIO7(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM8
Touch pad channel 8 is GPIO33(ESP32) / GPIO8(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM9
Touch pad channel 9 is GPIO32(ESP32) / GPIO9(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM10
Touch channel 10 is GPIO10(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM11
Touch channel 11 is GPIO11(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM12
Touch channel 12 is GPIO12(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM13
Touch channel 13 is GPIO13(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_NUM14
Touch channel 14 is GPIO14(ESP32-S2)

TOUCH_PAD_MAX

enum touch_high_volt_t
Touch sensor high reference voltage

Values:

TOUCH_HVOLT_KEEP = -1
Touch sensor high reference voltage, no change

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V4 = 0
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.4V

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V5
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.5V

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V6
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.6V

TOUCH_HVOLT_2V7
Touch sensor high reference voltage, 2.7V

TOUCH_HVOLT_MAX

enum touch_low_volt_t
Touch sensor low reference voltage

Values:

TOUCH_LVOLT_KEEP = -1
Touch sensor low reference voltage, no change

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V5 = 0
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.5V

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V6
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.6V

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V7
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.7V

TOUCH_LVOLT_0V8
Touch sensor low reference voltage, 0.8V

TOUCH_LVOLT_MAX

enum touch_volt_atten_t
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation

Values:

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_KEEP = -1
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, no change

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_1V5 = 0
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 1.5V attenuation

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_1V
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 1.0V attenuation

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_0V5
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 0.5V attenuation

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_0V
Touch sensor high reference voltage attenuation, 0V attenuation

TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_MAX

enum touch_cnt_slope_t
Touch sensor charge/discharge speed

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_0 = 0
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed, always zero

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_1 = 1
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed, slowest

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_2 = 2
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_3 = 3
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_4 = 4
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_5 = 5
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_6 = 6
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_7 = 7
Touch sensor charge / discharge speed, fast

TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_MAX

enum touch_tie_opt_t
Touch sensor initial charge level

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_LOW = 0
Initial level of charging voltage, low level

TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_HIGH = 1
Initial level of charging voltage, high level

TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_MAX

enum touch_fsm_mode_t

Touch sensor FSM mode

Values:

TOUCH_FSM_MODE_TIMER = 0

To start touch FSM by timer

TOUCH_FSM_MODE_SW

To start touch FSM by software trigger

TOUCH_FSM_MODE_MAX

enum touch_trigger_mode_t

Values:

TOUCH_TRIGGER_BELOW = 0

Touch interrupt will happen if counter value is less than threshold.

TOUCH_TRIGGER_ABOVE = 1

Touch interrupt will happen if counter value is larger than threshold.

TOUCH_TRIGGER_MAX

enum touch_trigger_src_t

Values:

TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_BOTH = 0

wakeup interrupt is generated if both SET1 and SET2 are “touched”

TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_SET1 = 1

wakeup interrupt is generated if SET1 is “touched”

TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_MAX

enum touch_pad_intr_mask_t

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_DONE = BIT(0)

Measurement done for one of the enabled channels.

TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_ACTIVE = BIT(1)

Active for one of the enabled channels.

TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_INACTIVE = BIT(2)

Inactive for one of the enabled channels.

TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_SCAN_DONE = BIT(3)

Measurement done for all the enabled channels.

TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_TIMEOUT = BIT(4)

Timeout for one of the enabled channels.

enum touch_pad_denoise_grade_t

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT12 = 0

Denoise range is 12bit

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT10 = 1

Denoise range is 10bit

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT8 = 2

Denoise range is 8bit

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT4 = 3

Denoise range is 4bit

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_MAX

enum touch_pad_denoise_cap_t

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L0 = 0
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 5pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L1 = 1
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 6.4pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L2 = 2
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 7.8pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L3 = 3
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 9.2pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L4 = 4
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 10.6pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L5 = 5
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 12.0pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L6 = 6
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 13.4pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L7 = 7
Denoise channel internal reference capacitance is 14.8pf

TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_MAX = 8

enum touch_pad_shield_driver_t

Touch sensor shield channel drive capability level

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L0 = 0
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 40pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L1
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 80pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L2
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 120pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L3
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 160pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L4
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 200pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L5
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 240pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L6
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 280pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L7
The max equivalent capacitance in shield channel is 320pf

TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_MAX

enum touch_pad_conn_type_t

Touch channel idle state configuration

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_CONN_HIGHZ = 0
Idle status of touch channel is high resistance state

TOUCH_PAD_CONN_GND = 1
Idle status of touch channel is ground connection

TOUCH_PAD_CONN_MAX

enum touch_filter_mode_t

Touch channel IIR filter coefficient configuration.

Note On ESP32S2. There is an error in the IIR calculation. The magnitude of the error is twice the filter coefficient. So please select a smaller filter coefficient on the basis of meeting the filtering requirements. Recommended filter coefficient selection `IIR_16`.

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_4 = 0
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 4.

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_8
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 8.

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_16
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 16 (Typical value).

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_32
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 32.

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_64
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 64.

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_128
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 128.

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_256
The filter mode is first-order IIR filter. The coefficient is 256.

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_JITTER
The filter mode is jitter filter

TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_MAX

enum touch_smooth_mode_t

Level of filter applied on the original data against large noise interference.

Note On ESP32S2. There is an error in the IIR calculation. The magnitude of the error is twice the filter coefficient. So please select a smaller filter coefficient on the basis of meeting the filtering requirements. Recommended filter coefficient selection `IIR_2`.

Values:

TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_OFF = 0
No filtering of raw data.

TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_IIR_2 = 1
Filter the raw data. The coefficient is 2 (Typical value).

TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_IIR_4 = 2
Filter the raw data. The coefficient is 4.

TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_IIR_8 = 3
Filter the raw data. The coefficient is 8.

TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_MAX

2.2.20 Touch Element

Overview

Touch Element library provides a high level abstraction for building capacitive touch applications. The library's implementation gives a unified and friendly software interface thus allows for smooth and easy capacitive touch

application development. The library is implemented atop the touch sensor driver (please see *Touch sensor driver API Reference* for more information regarding low level API usage).

Architecture Touch Element library configures touch sensor peripherals via touch sensor driver. While some necessary hardware parameters should be passed to `touch_element_install()` and will be configured automatically only after calling `touch_element_start()`, because it will make great influence on the run-time system.

These parameters include touch channel threshold, waterproof shield sensor driver-level and etc. Touch Element library sets touch sensor interrupt and esp-timer routine up and the hardware information of touch sensor (channel state, channel number) will be obtained in touch sensor interrupt service routine. When the specified channel event occurs, and those hardware information will be passed to the esp-timer callback routine, esp-timer callback routine will dispatch the touch sensor channel information to the touch elements(such as button, slider etc). Then runs the specified algorithm to update touch element's state or calculate its position, dispatch the result to user.

So using Touch Element library, user doesn't need to care about the implementation of touch sensor peripheral, Touch Element library will handle most of the hardware information and pass the more meaningful messages to user event handler routine.

Workflow of Touch Element library is illustrated in the picture below.

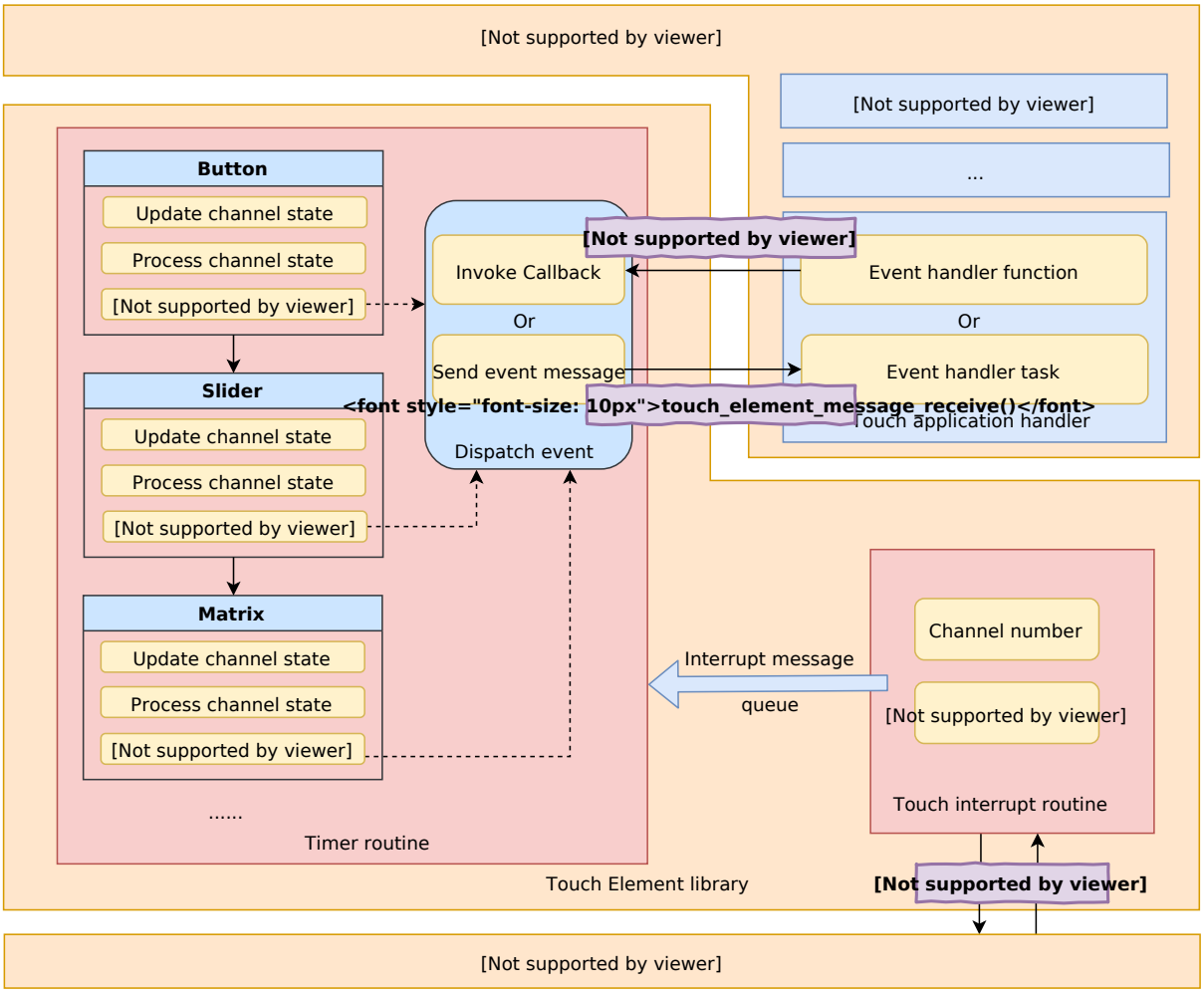


Fig. 15: Touch Element architecture

The features in relation to the Touch Element library in ESP32-S2 are given in the table below.

Features	ESP32S2
Touch Element waterproof	✓
Touch Element button	✓
Touch Element slider	✓
Touch Element matrix button	✓

Peripheral ESP32-S2 integrates one touch sensor peripheral with several physical channels.

- 14 physical capacitive touch channels
- Timer or software FSM trigger mode
- Up to 5 kinds of interrupt(Upper threshold and lower threshold interrupt, measure one channel finish and measure all channels finish interrupt, measurement timeout interrupt)
- Sleep mode wakeup source
- Hardware internal de-noise
- Hardware filter
- Hardware waterproof sensor
- Hardware proximity sensor

The channels are located as follows:

Channel	ESP32-S2
Channel 0	**GPIO 0 (reserved)**
Channel 1	**GPIO 1**
Channel 2	**GPIO 2**
Channel 3	**GPIO 3**
Channel 4	**GPIO 4**
Channel 5	**GPIO 5**
Channel 6	**GPIO 6**
Channel 7	**GPIO 7**
Channel 8	**GPIO 8**
Channel 9	**GPIO 9**
Channel 10	**GPIO 10**
Channel 11	**GPIO 11**
Channel 12	**GPIO 12**
Channel 13	**GPIO 13**
Channel 14	**GPIO 14**

Terminology

The terms used in relation to the Touch Element library are given in the below.

Term	Definition
Touch sensor	Touch sensor peripheral inside the chip
Touch channel	Touch sensor channels inside the touch sensor peripheral
Touch pad	Off-chip physical solder pad (Generally inside the PCB)
De-noise channel	Internal de-noise channel (Is always Channel 0 and it is reserved)
Shield sensor	One of the waterproof sensor, use for compensating the influence of water drop
Guard sensor	One of the waterproof sensor, use for detecting the water stream
Shield channel	The channel that waterproof shield sensor connected to (Is always Channel 14)
Guard channel	The channel that waterproof guard sensor connected to
Shield pad	Off-chip physical solder pad (Generally is grids) and is connected to shield sensor
Guard pad	Off-chip physical solder pad (Is usually a ring) and is connected to guard sensor

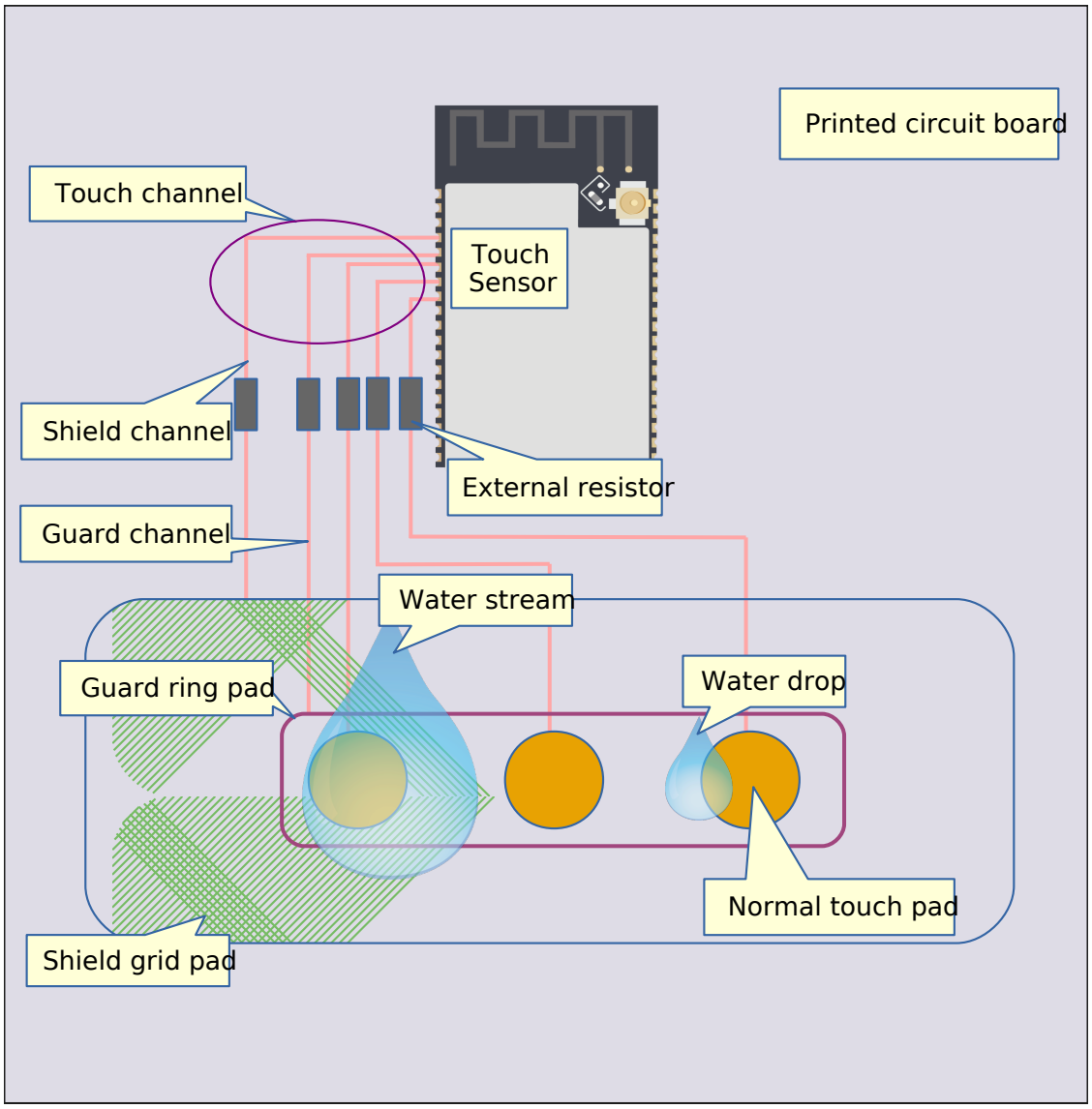


Fig. 16: Touch sensor application system components

Touch Sensor Signal Each touch senor is able to provide the following types of signals:

- Raw: The Raw signal is the unfiltered signal from the touch sensor
- Smooth: The Smooth signal is a filtered version of the Raw signal via an internal hardware filter
- Benchmark: The Benchmark signal is also a filtered signal that filters out extremely low-frequency noise.

All of these signals can be obtained using touch sensor driver API.

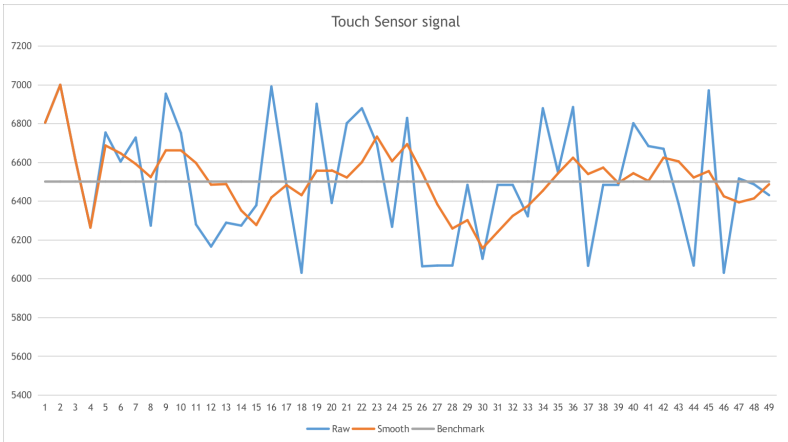


Fig. 17: Touch sensor signals

Touch Sensor Threshold The Touch Sensor Threshold value is a configurable threshold value used to determine when a touch sensor is touched or not. When difference between the Smooth signal and the Benchmark signal becomes greater than the threshold value (i.e., `(smooth - benchmark) > threshold`), the touch channel's state will be changed and a touch interrupt will be triggered simultaneously.

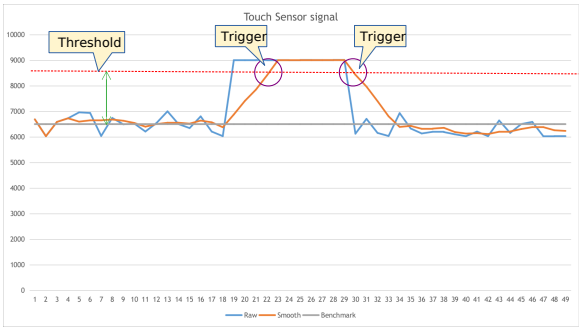


Fig. 18: Touch sensor signal threshold

Sensitivity Important performance parameter of touch sensor, the larger it is, the better touch sensor will perform. It could be calculated by the format in below:

$$Sensitivity = \frac{Signal_{press} - Signal_{release}}{Signal_{release}} = \frac{Signal_{delta}}{Signal_{benchmark}}$$

Waterproof Waterproof is a hardware feature of touch sensor which has guard sensor and shield sensor (Always connect to Channel 14) that has the ability to resist a degree influence of water drop and detect the water stream.

Touch Button Touch button consumes one channel of touch sensor, and it looks like as the picture below:

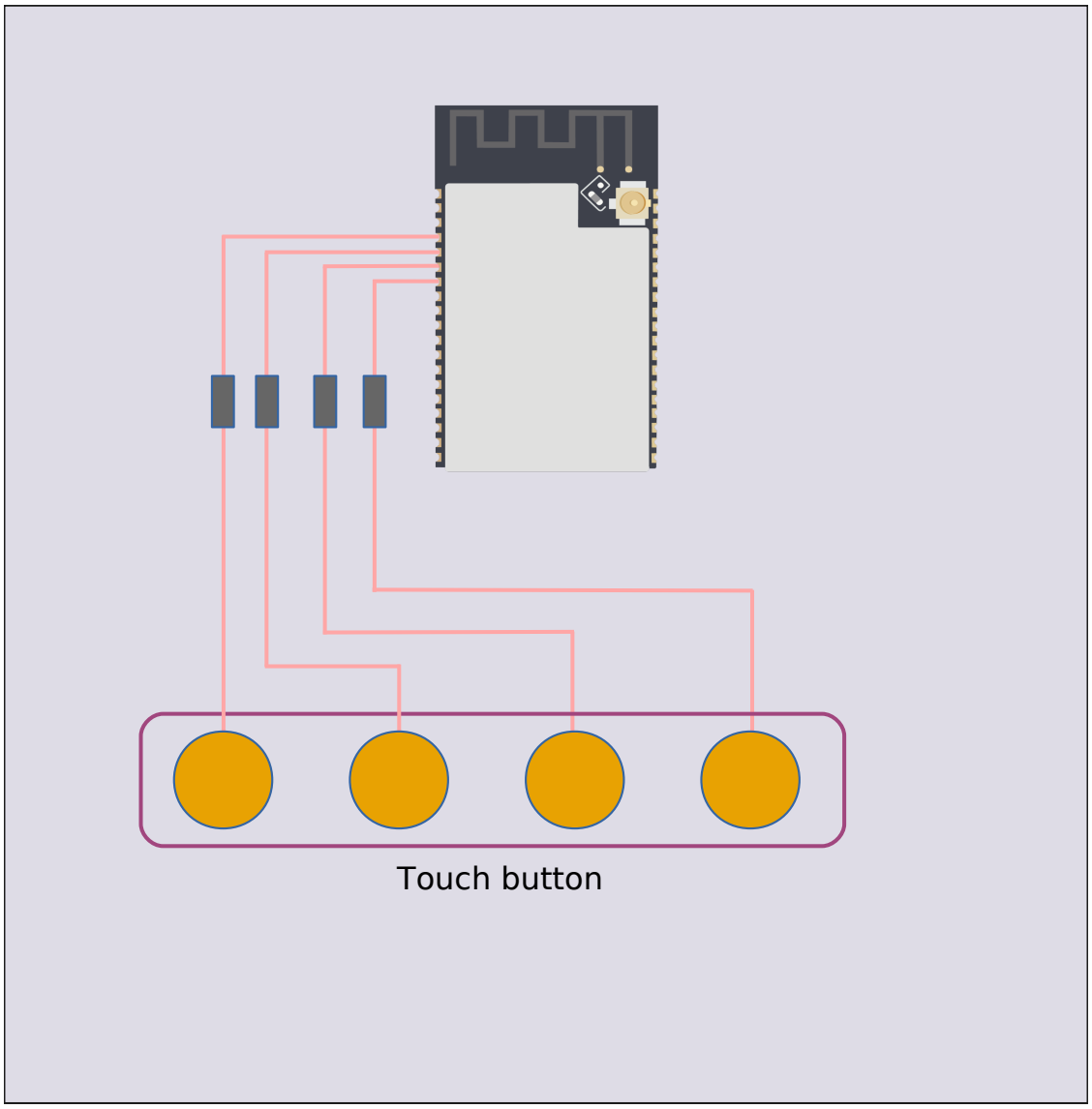


Fig. 19: Touch button

Touch Slider Touch slider consumes several channels(at least three channels) of touch sensor, the more channels consumed, the higher resolution and accuracy position it will perform. Touch slider looks like as the picture below:

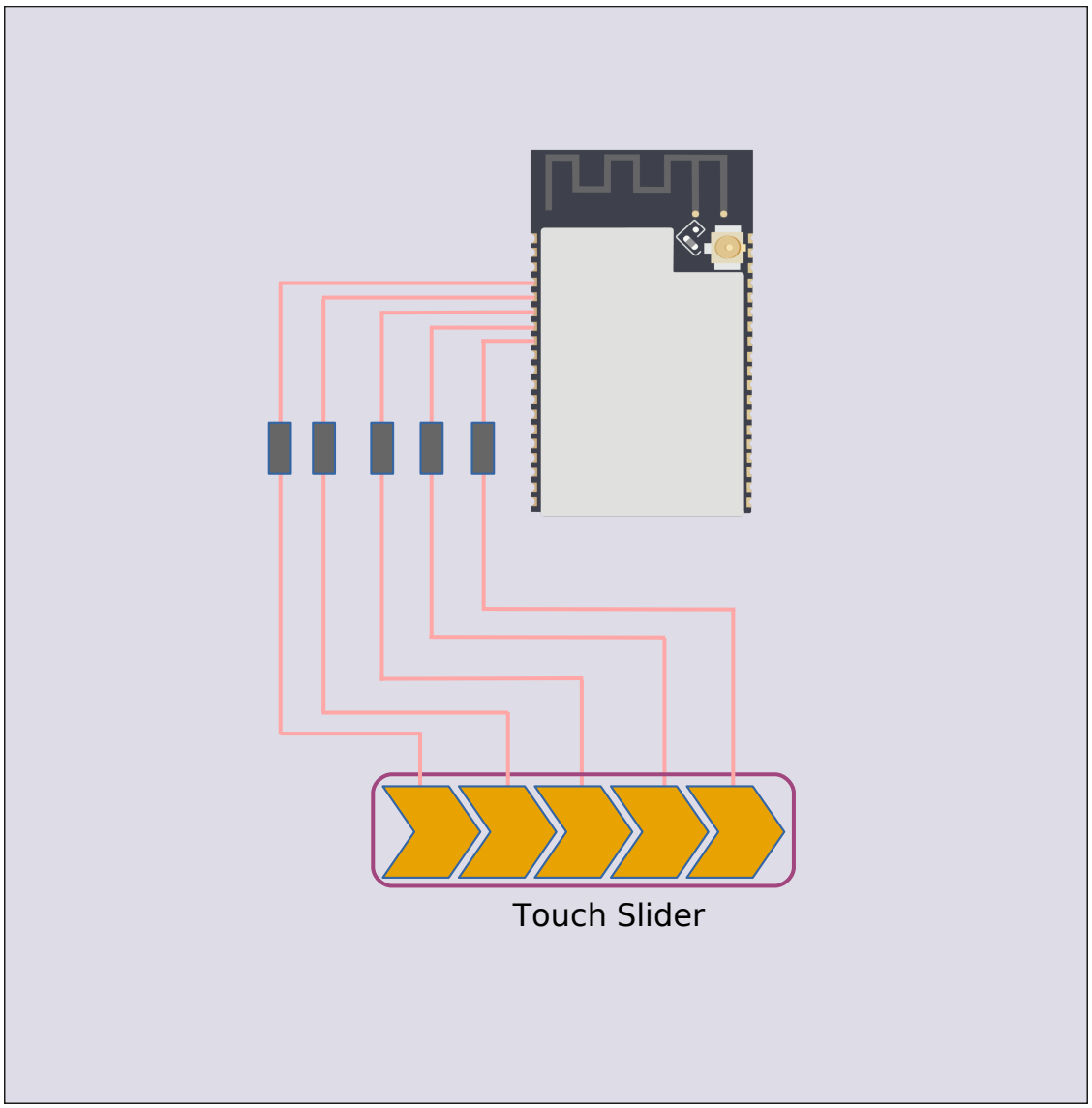


Fig. 20: Touch slider

Touch Matrix Touch matrix button consumes several channels(at least 2 + 2 = 4 channels), it gives a solution to use fewer channels and get more buttons. ESP32-S2 supports up to 49 buttons. Touch matrix button looks like as the picture below:

Touch Element Library Usage

Using this library should follow the initialization flow below:

1. To initialize Touch Element library by calling *`touch_element_install()`*
2. To initialize touch elements(button/slider etc) by calling `touch_xxxx_install()`
3. To create a new element instance by calling `touch_xxxx_create()`
4. To subscribe events by calling `touch_xxxx_subscribe_event()`
5. To choose a dispatch method by calling `touch_xxxx_set_dispatch_method()` that tells the library how to notify you while the subscribed event occur
6. (If dispatch by callback) Call `touch_xxxx_set_callback()` to set the event handler function.

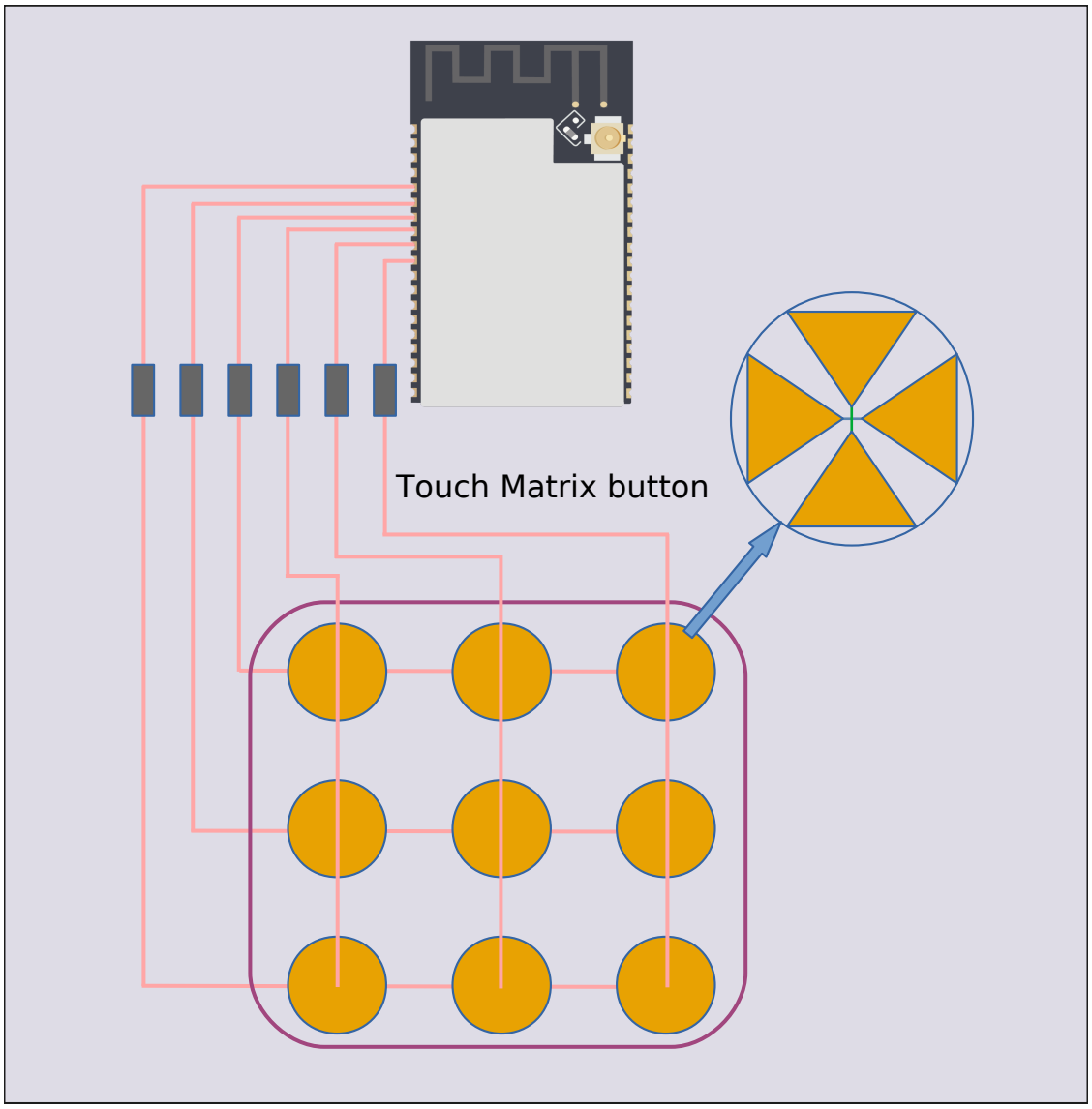


Fig. 21: Touch matrix

7. To start Touch Element library by calling *touch_element_start()*
8. (If dispatch by callback) The callback will be called by the driver core when event happen, no need to do anything; (If dispatch by event task) create an event task and call *touch_element_message_receive()* to obtain messages in a loop.
9. [Optional] If user wants to suspend the Touch Element run-time system or for some reason that could not obtain the touch element message, *touch_element_stop()* should be called to suspend the Touch Element system and then resume it by calling *touch_element_start()* again.

In code, the flow above may look like as follows:

```
static touch_xxx_handle_t element_handle; //Declare a touch element handle

//Define the subscribed event handler
void event_handler(touch_xxx_handle_t out_handle, touch_xxx_message_t out_message,␣
↪void *arg)
{
    //Event handler logic
}

void app_main()
{
    //Using the default initializer to config Touch Element library
    touch_elem_global_config_t global_config = TOUCH_ELEM_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG();
    touch_element_install(&global_config);

    //Using the default initializer to config Touch elements
    touch_xxx_global_config_t elem_global_config = TOUCH_XXXX_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_
↪CONFIG();
    touch_xxx_install(&elem_global_config);

    //Create a new instance
    touch_xxx_config_t element_config = {
        ...
        ...
    };
    touch_xxx_create(&element_config, &element_handle);

    //Subscribe the specified events by using the event mask
    touch_xxx_subscribe_event(element_handle, TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_PRESS | TOUCH_
↪ELEM_EVENT_ON_RELEASE, NULL);

    //Choose CALLBACK as the dispatch method
    touch_xxx_set_dispatch_method(element_handle, TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK);

    //Register the callback routine
    touch_xxx_set_callback(element_handle, event_handler);

    //Start Touch Element library processing
    touch_element_start();
}
```

Initialization

1. To initialize Touch Element library, user has to configure touch sensor peripheral and Touch Element library by calling *touch_element_install()* with *touch_elem_global_config_t*, the default initializer is available in `TOUCH_ELEM_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG()` and this default configuration is suitable for the most general application scene, and users are suggested not to change the default configuration before fully understanding Touch Sensor peripheral, because some changes might bring several impacts to the system.
2. To initialize the specified element, all the elements will not work before its constructor (`touch_xxxx_install()`) is called so as to save memory, so user has to call the constructor of each used touch element respectively, to set up the specified element.

Touch Element Instance Startup

1. To create a new touch element instance by calling `touch_xxxx_create()`, selects channel and passes its *Sensitivity* for the new element instance.
2. To subscribe events by calling `touch_xxxx_subscribe_event()`, there several events in Touch Element library and the event mask is available on components/touch_element/include/touch_element/touch_element.h, user could use those events mask to subscribe specified event or combine them to subscribe multiple events.
3. To configure dispatch method by calling `touch_xxxx_subscribe_event()`, there are two dispatch methods in Touch Element library, one is *TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT*, the other one is *TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK*, it means that user could use two methods to obtain the touch element message and handle it.

Events Processing If *TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT* dispatch method is configured, user need to startup an event handler task to obtain the touch element message, all the elements raw message could be obtained by calling *touch_element_message_receive()*, then extract the element-class-specific message by calling the corresponding message decoder (`touch_xxxx_get_message()`) to get the touch element's extracted message; If *TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK* dispatch method is configured, user need to pass an event handler by calling `touch_xxxx_set_callback()` before the touch elem starts working, all the element's extracted message will be passed to the event handler function.

Warning: Since the event handler function runs on the library driver core(The context located in esp-timer callback routine), user should not do something that attempts to block or delay, such as call *vTaskDelay()*.

In code, the events handle procedure may look like as follows:

```
/* ------------------------------------------ TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT -----------
↪----------------------------------- */
void element_handler_task(void *arg)
{
    touch_elem_message_t element_message;
    while(1) {
        if (touch_element_message_receive(&element_message, Timeout) == ESP_OK) {
            const touch_xxxx_message_t *extracted_message = touch_xxxx_get_
↪message(&element_message); //Decode message
            ... //Event handler logic
        }
    }
}
void app_main()
{
    ...

    touch_xxxx_set_dispatch_method(element_handle, TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT);  //Set␣
↪TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT as the dispatch method
    xTaskCreate(&element_handler_task, "element_handler_task", 2048, NULL, 5,␣
↪NULL);  //Create a handler task

    ...
}
/* ------------------------------------------------------------------------------
↪----------------------------- */

...
/* ------------------------------------------ TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK --------
↪----------------------------------- */
void element_handler(touch_xxxx_handle_t out_handle, touch_xxxx_message_t out_
↪message, void *arg)
{
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    //Event handler logic
}

void app_main()
{
    ...

    touch_xxxx_set_dispatch_method(element_handle, TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK);  //
↪Set TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK as the dispatch method
    touch_xxxx_set_callback(element_handle, element_handler);  //Register an event␣
↪handler function

    ...
}
/* ------------------------------------------------------------------------------
↪----------------------------- */
```

Waterproof Usage

1. To initialize Touch Element waterproof, the waterproof shield sensor is always-on after Touch Element waterproof is initialized, however the waterproof guard sensor is optional, hence if user doesn't need the guard sensor, *TOUCH_WATERPROOF_GUARD_NOUSE* has to be passed to *touch_element_waterproof_install()* by the configuration struct.
2. To associate the touch element with the guard sensor, pass the touch element's handle to the Touch Element waterproof's masked list by calling *touch_element_waterproof_add()*. By associating a touch element with the Guard sensor, the touch element will be disabled when the guard sensor is triggered by a stream of water so as to protect the touch element.

The Touch Element Waterproof example is available in *peripherals/touch_element/touch_element_waterproof* directory.

In code, the waterproof configuration may look like as follows:

```
void app_main()
{
    ...

    touch_xxxx_install();                 //Initialize instance (button, slider,␣
↪etc)
    touch_xxxx_create(&element_handle);  //Create a new Touch element

    ...

    touch_element_waterproof_install();              //Initialize Touch Element␣
↪waterproof
    touch_element_waterproof_add(element_handle);    //Let a element associates␣
↪with guard sensor

    ...
}
```

Application Example

All the Touch Element library examples could be found in the *peripherals/touch_element* directory of ESP-IDF examples.

API Reference - Touch Element core

Header File

- touch_element/include/touch_element/touch_element.h

Functions

esp_err_t **touch_element_install**(**const** *touch_elem_global_config_t* **global_config*)

Touch element processing initialization.

Note To reinitialize the touch element object, call touch_element_uninstall() first

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element is already initialized
- Others: Unknown touch driver layer or lower layer error

Parameters

- `[in] global_config`: Global initialization configuration structure

esp_err_t **touch_element_start**(void)

Touch element processing start.

This function starts the touch element processing system

Note This function must only be called after all the touch element instances finished creating

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully started to process
- Others: Unknown touch driver layer or lower layer error

esp_err_t **touch_element_stop**(void)

Touch element processing stop.

This function stops the touch element processing system

Note This function must be called before changing the system (hardware, software) parameters

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully stopped to process
- Others: Unknown touch driver layer or lower layer error

void **touch_element_uninstall**(void)

Release resources allocated using touch_element_install.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully released touch element object
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element object is not initialized
- Others: Unknown touch driver layer or lower layer error

esp_err_t **touch_element_message_receive**(*touch_elem_message_t* **element_message*, uint32_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Get current event message of touch element instance.

This function will receive the touch element message (handle, event type, etc···) from te_event_give(). It will block until a touch element event or a timeout occurs.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully received touch element event
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element library is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: element_message is null
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for event

Parameters

- `[out] element_message`: Touch element event message structure
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block for waiting event

esp_err_t **touch_element_waterproof_install**(**const** *touch_elem_waterproof_config_t* **waterproof_config*)

Touch element waterproof initialization.

This function enables the hardware waterproof, then touch element system uses Shield-Sensor and Guard-Sensor to mitigate the influence of water-drop and water-stream.

Note If the waterproof function is used, Shield-Sensor can not be disabled and it will use channel 14 as it' s internal channel. Hence, the user can not use channel 14 for another propose. And the Guard-Sensor is not necessary since it is optional.

Note Shield-Sensor: It always uses channel 14 as the shield channel, so user must connect the channel 14 and Shield-Layer in PCB since it will generate a synchronous signal automatically

Note Guard-Sensor: This function is optional. If used, the user must connect the guard channel and Guard-Ring in PCB. Any channels user wants to protect should be added into Guard-Ring in PCB.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element library is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: waterproof_config is null or invalid Guard-Sensor channel
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory

Parameters

- `[in] waterproof_config`: Waterproof configuration

void **touch_element_waterproof_uninstall**(void)

Release resources allocated using touch_element_waterproof_install()

esp_err_t **touch_element_waterproof_add**(*touch_elem_handle_t element_handle*)

Add a masked handle to protect while Guard-Sensor has been triggered.

This function will add an application handle (button, slider, etc···) as a masked handle. While Guard-Sensor has been triggered, waterproof function will start working and lock the application internal state. While the influence of water is reduced, the application will be unlock and reset into IDLE state.

Note The waterproof protection logic must follow the real circuit in PCB, it means that all of the channels inside the input handle must be inside the Guard-Ring in real circuit.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully added a masked handle
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Waterproof is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: element_handle is null

Parameters

- `[in] element_handle`: Touch element instance handle

esp_err_t **touch_element_waterproof_remove**(*touch_elem_handle_t element_handle*)

Remove a masked handle to protect.

This function will remove an application handle from masked handle table.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully removed a masked handle
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Waterproof is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: element_handle is null
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Failed to search element_handle from waterproof mask_handle list

Parameters

- `[in] element_handle`: Touch element instance handle

Structures

struct touch_elem_sw_config_t

Touch element software configuration.

Public Members

float **waterproof_threshold_divider**

Waterproof guard channel threshold divider.

uint8_t **processing_period**

Processing period(ms)

uint8_t **intr_message_size**
Interrupt message queue size.

uint8_t **event_message_size**
Event message queue size.

struct touch_elem_hw_config_t
Touch element hardware configuration.

Public Members

touch_high_volt_t **upper_voltage**
Touch sensor channel upper charge voltage.

touch_volt_atten_t **voltage_attenuation**
Touch sensor channel upper charge voltage attenuation (Diff voltage is upper - attenuation - lower)

touch_low_volt_t **lower_voltage**
Touch sensor channel lower charge voltage.

touch_pad_conn_type_t **suspend_channel_polarity**
Suspend channel polarity (High Impedance State or GND)

touch_pad_denoise_grade_t **denoise_level**
Internal de-noise level.

touch_pad_denoise_cap_t **denoise_equivalent_cap**
Internal de-noise channel (Touch channel 0) equivalent capacitance.

touch_smooth_mode_t **smooth_filter_mode**
Smooth value filter mode (This only apply to touch_pad_filter_read_smooth())

touch_filter_mode_t **benchmark_filter_mode**
Benchmark filter mode.

uint16_t **sample_count**
The count of sample in each measurement of touch sensor.

uint16_t **sleep_cycle**
The cycle (RTC slow clock) of sleep.

uint8_t **benchmark_debounce_count**
Benchmark debounce count.

uint8_t **benchmark_calibration_threshold**
Benchmark calibration threshold.

uint8_t **benchmark_jitter_step**
Benchmark jitter filter step (This only works at while benchmark filter mode is jitter filter)

struct touch_elem_global_config_t
Touch element global configuration passed to touch_element_install.

Public Members

touch_elem_hw_config_t **hardware**
Hardware configuration.

touch_elem_sw_config_t **software**
Software configuration.

struct touch_elem_waterproof_config_t
Touch element waterproof configuration passed to touch_element_waterproof_install.

Public Members

touch_pad_t **guard_channel**
Waterproof Guard-Sensor channel number (index)

float **guard_sensitivity**
Waterproof Guard-Sensor sensitivity.

struct touch_elem_message_t
Touch element event message type from touch_element_message_receive()

Public Members

touch_elem_handle_t **handle**
Touch element handle.

touch_elem_type_t **element_type**
Touch element type.

void ***arg**
User input argument.

uint8_t **child_msg**[8]
Encoded message.

Macros

TOUCH_ELEM_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_NONE
None event.

TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_PRESS
On Press event.

TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_RELEASE
On Release event.

TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_LONGPRESS
On LongPress event.

TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_CALCULATION
On Calculation event.

TOUCH_WATERPROOF_GUARD_NOUSE
Waterproof no use guard sensor.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***touch_elem_handle_t**
Touch element handle type.

typedef uint32_t **touch_elem_event_t**
Touch element event type.

Enumerations

enum touch_elem_type_t
Touch element handle type.

Values:

TOUCH_ELEM_TYPE_BUTTON
Touch element button.

TOUCH_ELEM_TYPE_SLIDER
Touch element slider.

TOUCH_ELEM_TYPE_MATRIX
Touch element matrix button.

enum touch_elem_dispatch_t
Touch element event dispatch methods (event queue/callback)

Values:

TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT
Event queue dispatch.

TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK
Callback dispatch.

TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_MAX

API Reference - Touch Button

Header File

- touch_element/include/touch_element/touch_button.h

Functions

esp_err_t **touch_button_install**(**const** *touch_button_global_config_t* **global_config*)
Touch Button initialize.

This function initializes touch button global and acts on all touch button instances.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully initialized touch button
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element library was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: button_init is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory

Parameters
- `[in] global_config`: Button object initialization configuration

void **touch_button_uninstall**(void)
Release resources allocated using touch_button_install()

esp_err_t **touch_button_create**(**const** *touch_button_config_t* **button_config*, *touch_button_handle_t* **button_handle*)
Create a new touch button instance.

Note The sensitivity has to be explored in experiments, Sensitivity = (Raw(touch) - Raw(release)) / Raw(release) * 100%

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully create touch button
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch button driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid configuration struct or arguments is NULL

Parameters
- `[in] button_config`: Button configuration
- `[out] button_handle`: Button handle

esp_err_t **touch_button_delete**(*touch_button_handle_t button_handle*)
Release resources allocated using touch_button_create()

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully released resources
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch button driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: button_handle is null
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Input handle is not a button handle

Parameters
- `[in] button_handle`: Button handle

esp_err_t **touch_button_subscribe_event**(*touch_button_handle_t button_handle*, uint32_t *event_mask*, void **arg*)

Touch button subscribes event.

This function uses event mask to subscribe to touch button events, once one of the subscribed events occurs, the event message could be retrieved by calling touch_element_message_receive() or input callback routine.

Note Touch button only support three kind of event masks, they are TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_PRESS, TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_RELEASE, TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_LONGPRESS. You can use those event masks in any combination to achieve the desired effect.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully subscribed touch button event
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch button driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: button_handle is null or event is not supported

Parameters

- `[in] button_handle`: Button handle
- `[in] event_mask`: Button subscription event mask
- `[in] arg`: User input argument

esp_err_t **touch_button_set_dispatch_method**(*touch_button_handle_t button_handle*, *touch_elem_dispatch_t dispatch_method*)

Touch button set dispatch method.

This function sets a dispatch method that the driver core will use this method as the event notification method.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set dispatch method
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch button driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: button_handle is null or dispatch_method is invalid

Parameters

- `[in] button_handle`: Button handle
- `[in] dispatch_method`: Dispatch method (By callback/event)

esp_err_t **touch_button_set_callback**(*touch_button_handle_t button_handle*, *touch_button_callback_t button_callback*)

Touch button set callback.

This function sets a callback routine into touch element driver core, when the subscribed events occur, the callback routine will be called.

Note Button message will be passed from the callback function and it will be destroyed when the callback function return.

Warning Since this input callback routine runs on driver core (esp-timer callback routine), it should not do something that attempts to Block, such as calling vTaskDelay().

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch button driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: button_handle or button_callback is null

Parameters

- `[in] button_handle`: Button handle
- `[in] button_callback`: User input callback

esp_err_t **touch_button_set_longpress**(*touch_button_handle_t button_handle*, uint32_t *threshold_time*)

Touch button set long press trigger time.

This function sets the threshold time (ms) for a long press event. If a button is pressed and held for a period of time that exceeds the threshold time, a long press event is triggered.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set the threshold time of long press event
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch button driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: button_handle is null or time (ms) is not lager than 0

Parameters

- `[in] button_handle`: Button handle
- `[in] threshold_time`: Threshold time (ms) of long press event occur

const *touch_button_message_t* ***touch_button_get_message**(**const** *touch_elem_message_t* **element_message*)

Touch button get message.

This function decodes the element message from touch_element_message_receive() and return a button message pointer.

Return Touch button message pointer

Parameters

- `[in] element_message`: element message

Structures

struct touch_button_global_config_t

Button initialization configuration passed to touch_button_install.

Public Members

float **threshold_divider**

Button channel threshold divider.

uint32_t **default_lp_time**

Button default LongPress event time (ms)

struct touch_button_config_t

Button configuration (for new instance) passed to touch_button_create()

Public Members

touch_pad_t **channel_num**

Button channel number (index)

float **channel_sens**

Button channel sensitivity.

struct touch_button_message_t

Button message type.

Public Members

touch_button_event_t **event**

Button event.

Macros

TOUCH_BUTTON_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

Type Definitions

typedef *touch_elem_handle_t* **touch_button_handle_t**

Button handle.

typedef void (***touch_button_callback_t**)(*touch_button_handle_t*, *touch_button_message_t* *, void *)

Button callback type.

Enumerations

enum touch_button_event_t

Button event type.

Values:

TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_ON_PRESS
Button Press event.

TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_ON_RELEASE
Button Release event.

TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_ON_LONGPRESS
Button LongPress event.

TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_MAX

API Reference - Touch Slider

Header File

- touch_element/include/touch_element/touch_slider.h

Functions

esp_err_t **touch_slider_install**(**const** *touch_slider_global_config_t* **global_config*)

Touch slider initialize.

This function initializes touch slider object and acts on all touch slider instances.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully initialized touch slider
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element library was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: slider_init is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory

Parameters
- `[in] global_config`: Touch slider global initialization configuration

void **touch_slider_uninstall**(void)

Release resources allocated using touch_slider_install()

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully released resources

esp_err_t **touch_slider_create**(**const** *touch_slider_config_t* **slider_config*, *touch_slider_handle_t* **slider_handle*)

Create a new touch slider instance.

Note The index of Channel array and sensitivity array must be one-one correspondence

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully create touch slider
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch slider driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid configuration struct or arguments is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory

Parameters
- `[in] slider_config`: Slider configuration
- `[out] slider_handle`: Slider handle

esp_err_t **touch_slider_delete**(*touch_slider_handle_t slider_handle*)

Release resources allocated using touch_slider_create.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully released resources
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch slider driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: slider_handle is null

- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Input handle is not a slider handle

Parameters

- `[in] slider_handle`: Slider handle

esp_err_t **touch_slider_subscribe_event**(*touch_slider_handle_t slider_handle*, uint32_t *event_mask*, void **arg*)

Touch slider subscribes event.

This function uses event mask to subscribe to touch slider events, once one of the subscribed events occurs, the event message could be retrieved by calling touch_element_message_receive() or input callback routine.

Note Touch slider only support three kind of event masks, they are TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_PRESS, TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_RELEASE. You can use those event masks in any combination to achieve the desired effect.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully subscribed touch slider event
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch slider driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: slider_handle is null or event is not supported

Parameters

- `[in] slider_handle`: Slider handle
- `[in] event_mask`: Slider subscription event mask
- `[in] arg`: User input argument

esp_err_t **touch_slider_set_dispatch_method**(*touch_slider_handle_t slider_handle*, *touch_elem_dispatch_t dispatch_method*)

Touch slider set dispatch method.

This function sets a dispatch method that the driver core will use this method as the event notification method.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set dispatch method
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch slider driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: slider_handle is null or dispatch_method is invalid

Parameters

- `[in] slider_handle`: Slider handle
- `[in] dispatch_method`: Dispatch method (By callback/event)

esp_err_t **touch_slider_set_callback**(*touch_slider_handle_t slider_handle*, *touch_slider_callback_t slider_callback*)

Touch slider set callback.

This function sets a callback routine into touch element driver core, when the subscribed events occur, the callback routine will be called.

Note Slider message will be passed from the callback function and it will be destroyed when the callback function return.

Warning Since this input callback routine runs on driver core (esp-timer callback routine), it should not do something that attempts to Block, such as calling vTaskDelay().

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch slider driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: slider_handle or slider_callback is null

Parameters

- `[in] slider_handle`: Slider handle
- `[in] slider_callback`: User input callback

const *touch_slider_message_t* ***touch_slider_get_message**(**const** *touch_elem_message_t* **element_message*)

Touch slider get message.

This function decodes the element message from touch_element_message_receive() and return a slider message pointer.

Return Touch slider message pointer

Parameters

- `[in] element_message`: element message

Structures

`struct touch_slider_global_config_t`

Slider initialization configuration passed to touch_slider_install.

Public Members

float **`quantify_lower_threshold`**
Slider signal quantification threshold.

float **`threshold_divider`**
Slider channel threshold divider.

uint16_t **`filter_reset_time`**
Slider position filter reset time (Unit is esp_timer callback tick)

uint16_t **`benchmark_update_time`**
Slider benchmark update time (Unit is esp_timer callback tick)

uint8_t **`position_filter_size`**
Moving window filter buffer size.

uint8_t **`position_filter_factor`**
One-order IIR filter factor.

uint8_t **`calculate_channel_count`**
The number of channels which will take part in calculation.

`struct touch_slider_config_t`

Slider configuration (for new instance) passed to touch_slider_create()

Public Members

`const` *touch_pad_t* ***`channel_array`**
Slider channel array.

`const` float ***`sensitivity_array`**
Slider channel sensitivity array.

uint8_t **`channel_num`**
The number of slider channels.

uint8_t **`position_range`**
The right region of touch slider position range, [0, position_range (less than or equal to 255)].

`struct touch_slider_message_t`

Slider message type.

Public Members

touch_slider_event_t **`event`**
Slider event.

touch_slider_position_t **`position`**
Slider position.

Macros

`TOUCH_SLIDER_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG``()`

Type Definitions

typedef uint32_t **touch_slider_position_t**
Slider position data type.

typedef *touch_elem_handle_t* **touch_slider_handle_t**
Slider instance handle.

typedef void (***touch_slider_callback_t**)(*touch_slider_handle_t*, *touch_slider_message_t* *, void *)
Slider callback type.

Enumerations

enum touch_slider_event_t
Slider event type.

Values:

TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_ON_PRESS
Slider on Press event.

TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_ON_RELEASE
Slider on Release event.

TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_ON_CALCULATION
Slider on Calculation event.

TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_MAX

API Reference - Touch Slider

Header File

- touch_element/include/touch_element/touch_matrix.h

Functions

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_install**(**const** *touch_matrix_global_config_t* *global_config)
Touch matrix button initialize.

This function initializes touch matrix button object and acts on all touch matrix button instances.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully initialized touch matrix button
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch element library was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: matrix_init is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory

Parameters
- `[in] global_config`: Touch matrix global initialization configuration

void **touch_matrix_uninstall**(void)
Release resources allocated using touch_matrix_install()

Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully released resources

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_create**(**const** *touch_matrix_config_t* *matrix_config, *touch_matrix_handle_t* *matrix_handle)
Create a new touch matrix button instance.

Note Channel array and sensitivity array must be one-one correspondence in those array
Note Touch matrix button does not support Multi-Touch now
Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully create touch matrix button
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch matrix driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid configuration struct or arguments is NULL

- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory

Parameters

- `[in] matrix_config`: Matrix button configuration
- `[out] matrix_handle`: Matrix button handle

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_delete** (*touch_matrix_handle_t matrix_handle*)

Release resources allocated using touch_matrix_create()

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully released resources
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch matrix driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: matrix_handle is null
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Input handle is not a matrix handle

Parameters

- `[in] matrix_handle`: Matrix handle

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_subscribe_event** (*touch_matrix_handle_t matrix_handle*, uint32_t *event_mask*, void **arg*)

Touch matrix button subscribes event.

This function uses event mask to subscribe to touch matrix events, once one of the subscribed events occurs, the event message could be retrieved by calling touch_element_message_receive() or input callback routine.

Note Touch matrix button only support three kind of event masks, they are TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_PRESS, TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_RELEASE, TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_LONGPRESS. You can use those event masks in any combination to achieve the desired effect.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully subscribed touch matrix event
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch matrix driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: matrix_handle is null or event is not supported

Parameters

- `[in] matrix_handle`: Matrix handle
- `[in] event_mask`: Matrix subscription event mask
- `[in] arg`: User input argument

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_set_dispatch_method** (*touch_matrix_handle_t matrix_handle*, *touch_elem_dispatch_t dispatch_method*)

Touch matrix button set dispatch method.

This function sets a dispatch method that the driver core will use this method as the event notification method.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set dispatch method
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch matrix driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: matrix_handle is null or dispatch_method is invalid

Parameters

- `[in] matrix_handle`: Matrix button handle
- `[in] dispatch_method`: Dispatch method (By callback/event)

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_set_callback** (*touch_matrix_handle_t matrix_handle*, *touch_matrix_callback_t matrix_callback*)

Touch matrix button set callback.

This function sets a callback routine into touch element driver core, when the subscribed events occur, the callback routine will be called.

Note Matrix message will be passed from the callback function and it will be destroyed when the callback function return.

Warning Since this input callback routine runs on driver core (esp-timer callback routine), it should not do something that attempts to Block, such as calling vTaskDelay().

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch matrix driver was not initialized

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: matrix_handle or matrix_callback is null

Parameters

- `[in] matrix_handle`: Matrix button handle
- `[in] matrix_callback`: User input callback

esp_err_t **touch_matrix_set_longpress**(*touch_matrix_handle_t matrix_handle*, uint32_t *threshold_time*)

Touch matrix button set long press trigger time.

This function sets the threshold time (ms) for a long press event. If a matrix button is pressed and held for a period of time that exceeds the threshold time, a long press event is triggered.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully set the time of long press event
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Touch matrix driver was not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: matrix_handle is null or time (ms) is 0

Parameters

- `[in] matrix_handle`: Matrix button handle
- `[in] threshold_time`: Threshold time (ms) of long press event occur

const *touch_matrix_message_t* ***touch_matrix_get_message**(**const** *touch_elem_message_t* **element_message*)

Touch matrix get message.

This function decodes the element message from touch_element_message_receive() and return a matrix message pointer.

Return Touch matrix message pointer

Parameters

- `[in] element_message`: element message

Structures

struct touch_matrix_global_config_t

Matrix button initialization configuration passed to touch_matrix_install.

Public Members

float **threshold_divider**

Matrix button channel threshold divider.

uint32_t **default_lp_time**

Matrix button default LongPress event time (ms)

struct touch_matrix_config_t

Matrix button configuration (for new instance) passed to touch_matrix_create()

Public Members

const *touch_pad_t* ***x_channel_array**

Matrix button x-axis channels array.

const *touch_pad_t* ***y_channel_array**

Matrix button y-axis channels array.

const float ***x_sensitivity_array**

Matrix button x-axis channels sensitivity array.

const float ***y_sensitivity_array**

Matrix button y-axis channels sensitivity array.

uint8_t **x_channel_num**

The number of channels in x-axis.

uint8_t **y_channel_num**
The number of channels in y-axis.

struct touch_matrix_position_t
Matrix button position data type.

Public Members

uint8_t **x_axis**
Matrix button x axis position.

uint8_t **y_axis**
Matrix button y axis position.

uint8_t **index**
Matrix button position index.

struct touch_matrix_message_t
Matrix message type.

Public Members

touch_matrix_event_t **event**
Matrix event.

touch_matrix_position_t **position**
Matrix position.

Macros

TOUCH_MATRIX_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

Type Definitions

typedef *touch_elem_handle_t* **touch_matrix_handle_t**
Matrix button instance handle.

typedef void (***touch_matrix_callback_t**)(*touch_matrix_handle_t*, *touch_matrix_message_t* *, void *)
Matrix button callback type.

Enumerations

enum touch_matrix_event_t
Matrix button event type.

Values:

TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_ON_PRESS
Matrix button Press event.

TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_ON_RELEASE
Matrix button Press event.

TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_ON_LONGPRESS
Matrix button LongPress event.

TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_MAX

2.2.21 TWAI

Overview

The Two-Wire Automotive Interface (TWAI) is a real-time serial communication protocol suited for automotive and industrial applications. It is compatible with ISO11898-1 Classical frames, thus can support Standard Frame Format (11-bit ID) and Extended Frame Format (29-bit ID). The ESP32-S2' s peripherals contains a TWAI controller that can be configured to communicate on a TWAI bus via an external transceiver.

Warning: The TWAI controller is not compatible with ISO11898-1 FD Format frames, and will interpret such frames as errors.

This programming guide is split into the following sections:

1. *TWAI Protocol Summary*
2. *Signals Lines and Transceiver*
3. *Driver Configuration*
4. *Driver Operation*
5. *Examples*

TWAI Protocol Summary

The TWAI is a multi-master, multi-cast, asynchronous, serial communication protocol. TWAI also supports error detection and signalling, and inbuilt message prioritization.

Multi-master: Any node on the bus can initiate the transfer of a message.

Multi-cast: When a node transmits a message, all nodes on the bus will receive the message (i.e., broadcast) thus ensuring data consistency across all nodes. However, some nodes can selectively choose which messages to accept via the use of acceptance filtering (multi-cast).

Asynchronous: The bus does not contain a clock signal. All nodes on the bus operate at the same bit rate and synchronize using the edges of the bits transmitted on the bus.

Error Detection and Signalling: Every node will constantly monitor the bus. When any node detects an error, it will signal the detection by transmitting an error frame. Other nodes will receive the error frame and transmit their own error frames in response. This will result in an error detection being propagated to all nodes on the bus.

Message Priorities: Messages contain an ID field. If two or more nodes attempt to transmit simultaneously, the node transmitting the message with the lower ID value will win arbitration of the bus. All other nodes will become receivers ensuring that there is at most one transmitter at any time.

TWAI Messages TWAI Messages are split into Data Frames and Remote Frames. Data Frames are used to deliver a data payload to other nodes, whereas a Remote Frame is used to request a Data Frame from other nodes (other nodes can optionally respond with a Data Frame). Data and Remote Frames have two frame formats known as **Extended Frame** and **Standard Frame** which contain a 29-bit ID and an 11-bit ID respectively. A TWAI message consists of the following fields:

- 29-bit or 11-bit ID: Determines the priority of the message (lower value has higher priority).
- Data Length Code (DLC) between 0 to 8: Indicates the size (in bytes) of the data payload for a Data Frame, or the amount of data to request for a Remote Frame.
- Up to 8 bytes of data for a Data Frame (should match DLC).

Error States and Counters The TWAI protocol implements a feature known as "fault confinement" where a persistently erroneous node will eventually eliminate itself form the bus. This is implemented by requiring every node to maintain two internal error counters known as the **Transmit Error Counter (TEC)** and the **Receive Error Counter (REC)**. The two error counters are incremented and decremented according to a set of rules (where the

counters increase on an error, and decrease on a successful message transmission/reception). The values of the counters are used to determine a node's **error state**, namely **Error Active**, **Error Passive**, and **Bus-Off**.

Error Active: A node is Error Active when **both TEC and REC are less than 128** and indicates that the node is operating normally. Error Active nodes are allowed to participate in bus communications, and will actively signal the detection of any errors by automatically transmitting an **Active Error Flag** over the bus.

Error Passive: A node is Error Passive when **either the TEC or REC becomes greater than or equal to 128**. Error Passive nodes are still able to take part in bus communications, but will instead transmit a **Passive Error Flag** upon detection of an error.

Bus-Off: A node becomes Bus-Off when the **TEC becomes greater than or equal to 256**. A Bus-Off node is unable influence the bus in any manner (essentially disconnected from the bus) thus eliminating itself from the bus. A node will remain in the Bus-Off state until it undergoes bus-off recovery.

Signals Lines and Transceiver

The TWAI controller does not contain a integrated transceiver. Therefore, to connect the TWAI controller to a TWAI bus, **an external transceiver is required**. The type of external transceiver used should depend on the application's physical layer specification (e.g. using SN65HVD23x transceivers for ISO 11898-2 compatibility).

The TWAI controller's interface consists of 4 signal lines known as **TX, RX, BUS-OFF, and CLKOUT**. These four signal lines can be routed through the GPIO Matrix to the ESP32-S2's GPIO pads.

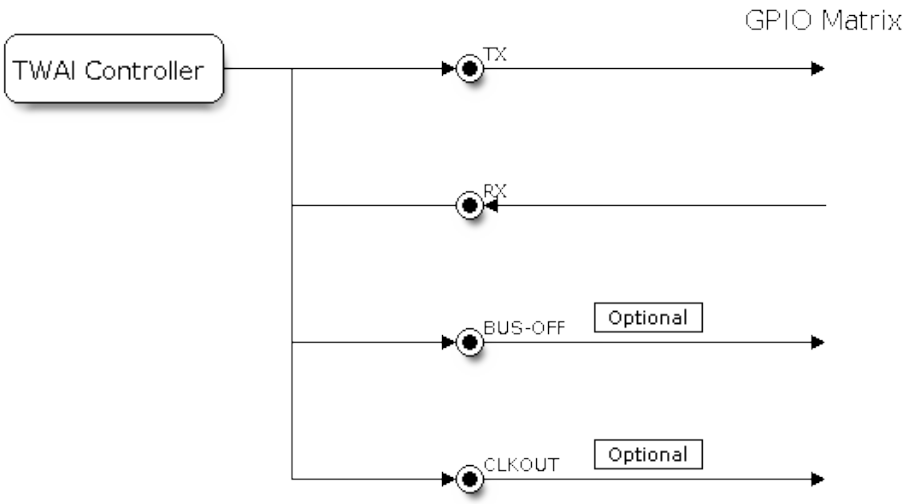


Fig. 22: Signal lines of the TWAI controller

TX and RX: The TX and RX signal lines are required to interface with an external transceiver. Both signal lines represent/interpret a dominant bit as a low logic level (0V), and a recessive bit as a high logic level (3.3V).

BUS-OFF: The BUS-OFF signal line is **optional** and is set to a low logic level (0V) whenever the TWAI controller reaches a bus-off state. The BUS-OFF signal line is set to a high logic level (3.3V) otherwise.

CLKOUT: The CLKOUT signal line is **optional** and outputs a prescaled version of the controller's source clock (APB Clock).

Note: An external transceiver **must internally loopback the TX to RX** such that a change in logic level to the TX signal line can be observed on the RX line. Failing to do so will cause the TWAI controller to interpret differences in logic levels between the two signal lines as a loss in arbitration or a bit error.

Driver Configuration

This section covers how to configure the TWAI driver.

Operating Modes The TWAI driver supports the following modes of operations:

Normal Mode: The normal operating mode allows the TWAI controller to take part in bus activities such as transmitting and receiving messages/error frames. Acknowledgement from another node is required when transmitting a message.

No Ack Mode: The No Acknowledgement mode is similar to normal mode, however acknowledgements are not required for a message transmission to be considered successful. This mode is useful when self testing the TWAI controller (loopback of transmissions).

Listen Only Mode: This mode will prevent the TWAI controller from influencing the bus. Therefore, transmission of messages/acknowledgement/error frames will be disabled. However the TWAI controller will still be able to receive messages but will not acknowledge the message. This mode is suited for bus monitor applications.

Alerts The TWAI driver contains an alert feature that is used to notify the application layer of certain TWAI controller or TWAI bus events. Alerts are selectively enabled when the TWAI driver is installed, but can be reconfigured during runtime by calling `twai_reconfigure_alerts()`. The application can then wait for any enabled alerts to occur by calling `twai_read_alerts()`. The TWAI driver supports the following alerts:

Table 3: TWAI Driver Alerts

Alert Flag	Description
TWAI_ALERT_TX_IDLE	No more messages queued for transmission
TWAI_ALERT_TX_SUCCESS	The previous transmission was successful
TWAI_ALERT_BELOW_ERR_WARN	Both error counters have dropped below error warning limit
TWAI_ALERT_ERR_ACTIVE	TWAI controller has become error active
TWAI_ALERT_RECOVERY_IN_PROGRESS	TWAI controller is undergoing bus recovery
TWAI_ALERT_BUS_RECOVERED	TWAI controller has successfully completed bus recovery
TWAI_ALERT_ARB_LOST	The previous transmission lost arbitration
TWAI_ALERT_ABOVE_ERR_WARN	One of the error counters have exceeded the error warning limit
TWAI_ALERT_BUS_ERROR	A (Bit, Stuff, CRC, Form, ACK) error has occurred on the bus
TWAI_ALERT_TX_FAILED	The previous transmission has failed
TWAI_ALERT_RX_QUEUE_FULL	The RX queue is full causing a received frame to be lost
TWAI_ALERT_ERR_PASS	TWAI controller has become error passive
TWAI_ALERT_BUS_OFF	Bus-off condition occurred. TWAI controller can no longer influence bus

Note: The TWAI controller's **error warning limit** is used to preemptively warn the application of bus errors before the error passive state is reached. By default, the TWAI driver sets the **error warning limit** to **96**. The TWAI_ALERT_ABOVE_ERR_WARN is raised when the TEC or REC becomes larger then or equal to the error warning limit. The TWAI_ALERT_BELOW_ERR_WARN is raised when both TEC and REC return back to values below **96**.

Note: When enabling alerts, the TWAI_ALERT_AND_LOG flag can be used to cause the TWAI driver to log any raised alerts to UART. However, alert logging is disabled and TWAI_ALERT_AND_LOG if the *CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM* option is enabled (see *Placing ISR into IRAM*).

Note: The TWAI_ALERT_ALL and TWAI_ALERT_NONE macros can also be used to enable/disable all alerts during configuration/reconfiguration.

Bit Timing The operating bit rate of the TWAI driver is configured using the *twai_timing_config_t* structure. The period of each bit is made up of multiple **time quanta**, and the period of a **time quantum** is determined by a prescaled version of the TWAI controller's source clock. A single bit contains the following segments in the following order:

1. The **Synchronization Segment** consists of a single time quantum
2. **Timing Segment 1** consists of 1 to 16 time quanta before sample point
3. **Timing Segment 2** consists of 1 to 8 time quanta after sample point

The **Baudrate Prescaler** is used to determine the period of each time quantum by dividing the TWAI controller's source clock (80 MHz APB clock). On the ESP32-S2, the `brp` can be **any even number from 2 to 32768**.

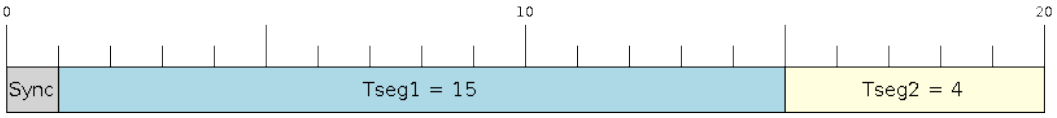


Fig. 23: Bit timing configuration for 500kbit/s given BRP = 8

The sample point of a bit is located on the intersection of Timing Segment 1 and 2. Enabling **Triple Sampling** will cause 3 time quanta to be sampled per bit instead of 1 (extra samples are located at the tail end of Timing Segment 1).

The **Synchronization Jump Width** is used to determine the maximum number of time quanta a single bit time can be lengthened/shortened for synchronization purposes. `sjw` can **range from 1 to 4**.

Note: Multiple combinations of `brp`, `tseg_1`, `tseg_2`, and `sjw` can achieve the same bit rate. Users should tune these values to the physical characteristics of their bus by taking into account factors such as **propagation delay, node information processing time, and phase errors**.

Bit timing **macro initializers** are also available for commonly used bit rates. The following macro initializers are provided by the TWAI driver.

- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_1MBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_800KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_500KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_250KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_125KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_100KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_50KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_25KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_20KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_16KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_12_5KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_10KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_5KBITS()`
- `TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_1KBITS()`

Acceptance Filter The TWAI controller contains a hardware acceptance filter which can be used to filter messages of a particular ID. A node that filters out a message **will not receive the message, but will still acknowledge it**. Acceptance filters can make a node more efficient by filtering out messages sent over the bus that are irrelevant to the node. The acceptance filter is configured using two 32-bit values within *twai_filter_config_t* known as the **acceptance code** and the **acceptance mask**.

The **acceptance code** specifies the bit sequence which a message's ID, RTR, and data bytes must match in order for the message to be received by the TWAI controller. The **acceptance mask** is a bit sequence specifying which

bits of the acceptance code can be ignored. This allows for a messages of different IDs to be accepted by a single acceptance code.

The acceptance filter can be used under **Single or Dual Filter Mode**. Single Filter Mode will use the acceptance code and mask to define a single filter. This allows for the first two data bytes of a standard frame to be filtered, or the entirety of an extended frame's 29-bit ID. The following diagram illustrates how the 32-bit acceptance code and mask will be interpreted under Single Filter Mode (Note: The yellow and blue fields represent standard and extended frame formats respectively).

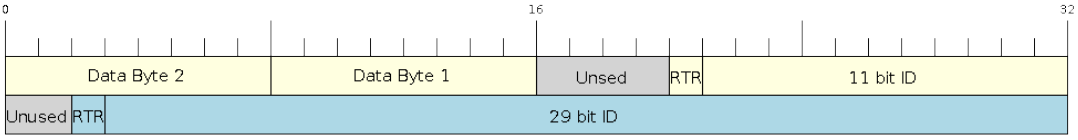


Fig. 24: Bit layout of single filter mode (Right side MSBit)

Dual Filter Mode will use the acceptance code and mask to define two separate filters allowing for increased flexibility of ID's to accept, but does not allow for all 29-bits of an extended ID to be filtered. The following diagram illustrates how the 32-bit acceptance code and mask will be interpreted under **Dual Filter Mode** (Note: The yellow and blue fields represent standard and extended frame formats respectively).

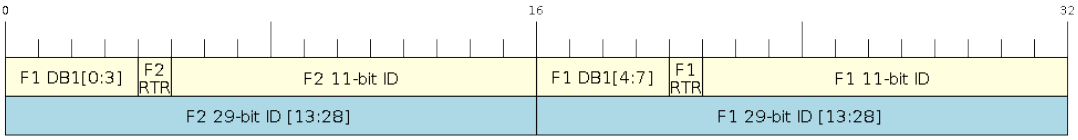


Fig. 25: Bit layout of dual filter mode (Right side MSBit)

Disabling TX Queue The TX queue can be disabled during configuration by setting the `tx_queue_len` member of *`twai_general_config_t`* to `0`. This will allow applications that do not require message transmission to save a small amount of memory when using the TWAI driver.

Placing ISR into IRAM The TWAI driver's ISR (Interrupt Service Routine) can be placed into IRAM so that the ISR can still run whilst the cache is disabled. Placing the ISR into IRAM may be necessary to maintain the TWAI driver's functionality during lengthy cache disabling operations (such as SPI Flash writes, OTA updates etc). Whilst the cache is disabled, the ISR will continue to:

- Read received messages from the RX buffer and place them into the driver's RX queue.
- Load messages pending transmission from the driver's TX queue and write them into the TX buffer.

To place the TWAI driver's ISR, users must do the following:

- Enable the *CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM* option using `idf.py menuconfig`.
- When calling *`twai_driver_install()`*, the *intr_flags* member of *`twai_general_config_t`* should set the *`ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM`* set.

Note: When the *CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM* option is enabled, the TWAI driver will no longer log any alerts (i.e., the `TWAI_ALERT_AND_LOG` flag will not have any effect).

Driver Operation

The TWAI driver is designed with distinct states and strict rules regarding the functions or conditions that trigger a state transition. The following diagram illustrates the various states and their transitions.

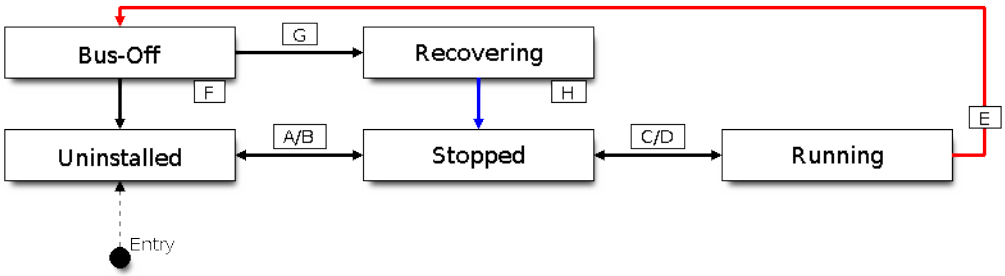


Fig. 26: State transition diagram of the TWAI driver (see table below)

Label	Transition	Action/Condition
A	Uninstalled -> Stopped	`twai_driver_install()`
B	Stopped -> Uninstalled	`twai_driver_uninstall()`
C	Stopped -> Running	`twai_start()`
D	Running -> Stopped	`twai_stop()`
E	Running -> Bus-Off	Transmit Error Counter >= 256
F	Bus-Off -> Uninstalled	`twai_driver_uninstall()`
G	Bus-Off -> Recovering	`twai_initiate_recovery()`
H	Recovering -> Stopped	128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits.

Driver States **Uninstalled**: In the uninstalled state, no memory is allocated for the driver and the TWAI controller is powered OFF.

Stopped: In this state, the TWAI controller is powered ON and the TWAI driver has been installed. However the TWAI controller will be unable to take part in any bus activities such as transmitting, receiving, or acknowledging messages.

Running: In the running state, the TWAI controller is able to take part in bus activities. Therefore messages can be transmitted/received/acknowledged. Furthermore the TWAI controller will be able to transmit error frames upon detection of errors on the bus.

Bus-Off: The bus-off state is automatically entered when the TWAI controller' s Transmit Error Counter becomes greater than or equal to 256. The bus-off state indicates the occurrence of severe errors on the bus or in the TWAI controller. Whilst in the bus-off state, the TWAI controller will be unable to take part in any bus activities. To exit the bus-off state, the TWAI controller must undergo the bus recovery process.

Recovering: The recovering state is entered when the TWAI controller undergoes bus recovery. The TWAI controller/TWAI driver will remain in the recovering state until the 128 occurrences of 11 consecutive recessive bits is observed on the bus.

Message Fields and Flags The TWAI driver distinguishes different types of messages by using the various bit field members of the `twai_message_t` structure. These bit field members determine whether a message is in standard or extended format, a remote frame, and the type of transmission to use when transmitting such a message.

These bit field members can also be toggled using the the *flags* member of `twai_message_t` and the following message flags:

Message Flag	Description
TWAI_MSG_FLAG_EXTD	Message is in Extended Frame Format (29bit ID)
TWAI_MSG_FLAG_RTR	Message is a Remote Frame (Remote Transmission Request)
TWAI_MSG_FLAG_SS	Transmit message using Single Shot Transmission (Message will not be retransmitted upon error or loss of arbitration). Unused for received message.
TWAI_MSG_FLAG_SELF	Transmit message using Self Reception Request (Transmitted message will also received by the same node). Unused for received message.
TWAI_MSG_FLAG_DLC_NON_COMP	Message's Data length code is larger than 8. This will break compliance with TWAI
TWAI_MSG_FLAG_NONE	Clears all bit fields. Equivalent to a Standard Frame Format (11bit ID) Data Frame.

Examples

Configuration & Installation The following code snippet demonstrates how to configure, install, and start the TWAI driver via the use of the various configuration structures, macro initializers, the *twai_driver_install()* function, and the *twai_start()* function.

```
#include "driver/gpio.h"
#include "driver/twai.h"

void app_main()
{
    //Initialize configuration structures using macro initializers
    twai_general_config_t g_config = TWAI_GENERAL_CONFIG_DEFAULT(GPIO_NUM_21, GPIO_
↪NUM_22, TWAI_MODE_NORMAL);
    twai_timing_config_t t_config = TWAI_TIMING_CONFIG_500KBITS();
    twai_filter_config_t f_config = TWAI_FILTER_CONFIG_ACCEPT_ALL();

    //Install TWAI driver
    if (twai_driver_install(&g_config, &t_config, &f_config) == ESP_OK) {
        printf("Driver installed\n");
    } else {
        printf("Failed to install driver\n");
        return;
    }

    //Start TWAI driver
    if (twai_start() == ESP_OK) {
        printf("Driver started\n");
    } else {
        printf("Failed to start driver\n");
        return;
    }

    ...

}
```

The usage of macro initializers is not mandatory and each of the configuration structures can be manually.

Message Transmission The following code snippet demonstrates how to transmit a message via the usage of the *twai_message_t* type and *twai_transmit()* function.

```
#include "driver/twai.h"

...
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
//Configure message to transmit
twai_message_t message;
message.identifier = 0xAAAA;
message.extd = 1;
message.data_length_code = 4;
for (int i = 0; i < 4; i++) {
    message.data[i] = 0;
}

//Queue message for transmission
if (twai_transmit(&message, pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000)) == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Message queued for transmission\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to queue message for transmission\n");
}
```

Message Reception The following code snippet demonstrates how to receive a message via the usage of the *twai_message_t* type and *twai_receive()* function.

```
#include "driver/twai.h"

...

//Wait for message to be received
twai_message_t message;
if (twai_receive(&message, pdMS_TO_TICKS(10000)) == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Message received\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to receive message\n");
    return;
}

//Process received message
if (message.extd) {
    printf("Message is in Extended Format\n");
} else {
    printf("Message is in Standard Format\n");
}
printf("ID is %d\n", message.identifier);
if (!(message.rtr)) {
    for (int i = 0; i < message.data_length_code; i++) {
        printf("Data byte %d = %d\n", i, message.data[i]);
    }
}
```

Reconfiguring and Reading Alerts The following code snippet demonstrates how to reconfigure and read TWAI driver alerts via the use of the *twai_reconfigure_alerts()* and *twai_read_alerts()* functions.

```
#include "driver/twai.h"

...

//Reconfigure alerts to detect Error Passive and Bus-Off error states
uint32_t alerts_to_enable = TWAI_ALERT_ERR_PASS | TWAI_ALERT_BUS_OFF;
if (twai_reconfigure_alerts(alerts_to_enable, NULL) == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Alerts reconfigured\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to reconfigure alerts");
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}

//Block indefinitely until an alert occurs
uint32_t alerts_triggered;
twai_read_alerts(&alerts_triggered, portMAX_DELAY);
```

Stop and Uninstall The following code demonstrates how to stop and uninstall the TWAI driver via the use of the *twai_stop()* and *twai_driver_uninstall()* functions.

```
#include "driver/twai.h"

...

//Stop the TWAI driver
if (twai_stop() == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Driver stopped\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to stop driver\n");
    return;
}

//Uninstall the TWAI driver
if (twai_driver_uninstall() == ESP_OK) {
    printf("Driver uninstalled\n");
} else {
    printf("Failed to uninstall driver\n");
    return;
}
```

Multiple ID Filter Configuration The acceptance mask in *twai_filter_config_t* can be configured such that two or more IDs will be accepted for a single filter. For a particular filter to accept multiple IDs, the conflicting bit positions amongst the IDs must be set in the acceptance mask. The acceptance code can be set to any one of the IDs.

The following example shows how the calculate the acceptance mask given multiple IDs:

```
ID1 =  11'b101 1010 0000
ID2 =  11'b101 1010 0001
ID3 =  11'b101 1010 0100
ID4 =  11'b101 1010 1000
//Acceptance Mask
MASK = 11'b000 0000 1101
```

Application Examples **Network Example:** The TWAI Network example demonstrates communication between two ESP32-S2s using the TWAI driver API. One TWAI node acts as a network master that initiates and ceases the transfer of a data from another node acting as a network slave. The example can be found via peripherals/twai/twai_network.

Alert and Recovery Example: This example demonstrates how to use the TWAI driver's alert and bus-off recovery API. The example purposely introduces errors on the bus to put the TWAI controller into the Bus-Off state. An alert is used to detect the Bus-Off state and trigger the bus recovery process. The example can be found via peripherals/twai/twai_alert_and_recovery.

Self Test Example: This example uses the No Acknowledge Mode and Self Reception Request to cause the TWAI controller to send and simultaneously receive a series of messages. This example can be used to verify if the connections between the TWAI controller and the external transceiver are working correctly. The example can be found via peripherals/twai/twai_self_test.

API Reference

Header File

- hal/include/hal/twai_types.h

Structures

`struct twai_message_t`

Structure to store a TWAI message.

Note The flags member is deprecated

Public Members

uint32_t **`extd`** : 1
Extended Frame Format (29bit ID)

uint32_t **`rtr`** : 1
Message is a Remote Frame

uint32_t **`ss`** : 1
Transmit as a Single Shot Transmission. Unused for received.

uint32_t **`self`** : 1
Transmit as a Self Reception Request. Unused for received.

uint32_t **`dlc_non_comp`** : 1
Message's Data length code is larger than 8. This will break compliance with ISO 11898-1

uint32_t **`reserved`** : 27
Reserved bits

uint32_t **`flags`**
Deprecated: Alternate way to set bits using message flags

uint32_t **`identifier`**
11 or 29 bit identifier

uint8_t **`data_length_code`**
Data length code

uint8_t **`data`**[**`TWAI_FRAME_MAX_DLC`**]
Data bytes (not relevant in RTR frame)

`struct twai_timing_config_t`

Structure for bit timing configuration of the TWAI driver.

Note Macro initializers are available for this structure

Public Members

uint32_t **`brp`**
Baudrate prescaler (i.e., APB clock divider). Any even number from 2 to 128 for ESP32, 2 to 32768 for ESP32S2. For ESP32 Rev 2 or later, multiples of 4 from 132 to 256 are also supported

uint8_t **`tseg_1`**
Timing segment 1 (Number of time quanta, between 1 to 16)

uint8_t **`tseg_2`**
Timing segment 2 (Number of time quanta, 1 to 8)

uint8_t **`sjw`**
Synchronization Jump Width (Max time quanta jump for synchronize from 1 to 4)

bool **triple_sampling**
Enables triple sampling when the TWAI controller samples a bit

struct twai_filter_config_t
Structure for acceptance filter configuration of the TWAI driver (see documentation)

Note Macro initializers are available for this structure

Public Members

uint32_t **acceptance_code**
32-bit acceptance code

uint32_t **acceptance_mask**
32-bit acceptance mask

bool **single_filter**
Use Single Filter Mode (see documentation)

Macros

TWAI_EXTD_ID_MASK
TWAI Constants.

Bit mask for 29 bit Extended Frame Format ID

TWAI_STD_ID_MASK
Bit mask for 11 bit Standard Frame Format ID

TWAI_FRAME_MAX_DLC
Max data bytes allowed in TWAI

TWAI_FRAME_EXTD_ID_LEN_BYTES
EFF ID requires 4 bytes (29bit)

TWAI_FRAME_STD_ID_LEN_BYTES
SFF ID requires 2 bytes (11bit)

TWAI_ERR_PASS_THRESH
Error counter threshold for error passive

Enumerations

enum twai_mode_t
TWAI Controller operating modes.

Values:

TWAI_MODE_NORMAL
Normal operating mode where TWAI controller can send/receive/acknowledge messages

TWAI_MODE_NO_ACK
Transmission does not require acknowledgment. Use this mode for self testing

TWAI_MODE_LISTEN_ONLY
The TWAI controller will not influence the bus (No transmissions or acknowledgments) but can receive messages

Header File

- driver/include/driver/twai.h

Functions

esp_err_t **twai_driver_install**(**const** *twai_general_config_t* **g_config*, **const** *twai_timing_config_t* **t_config*, **const** *twai_filter_config_t* **f_config*)

Install TWAI driver.

This function installs the TWAI driver using three configuration structures. The required memory is allocated and the TWAI driver is placed in the stopped state after running this function.

Note Macro initializers are available for the configuration structures (see documentation)
Note To reinstall the TWAI driver, call twai_driver_uninstall() first
Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully installed TWAI driver
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Insufficient memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is already installed

Parameters
- `[in] g_config`: General configuration structure
- `[in] t_config`: Timing configuration structure
- `[in] f_config`: Filter configuration structure

esp_err_t **twai_driver_uninstall**(void)

Uninstall the TWAI driver.

This function uninstalls the TWAI driver, freeing the memory utilized by the driver. This function can only be called when the driver is in the stopped state or the bus-off state.

Warning The application must ensure that no tasks are blocked on TX/RX queues or alerts when this function is called.
Return
- ESP_OK: Successfully uninstalled TWAI driver
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is not in stopped/bus-off state, or is not installed

esp_err_t **twai_start**(void)

Start the TWAI driver.

This function starts the TWAI driver, putting the TWAI driver into the running state. This allows the TWAI driver to participate in TWAI bus activities such as transmitting/receiving messages. The TX and RX queue are reset in this function, clearing any messages that are unread or pending transmission. This function can only be called when the TWAI driver is in the stopped state.

Return
- ESP_OK: TWAI driver is now running
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is not in stopped state, or is not installed

esp_err_t **twai_stop**(void)

Stop the TWAI driver.

This function stops the TWAI driver, preventing any further message from being transmitted or received until twai_start() is called. Any messages in the TX queue are cleared. Any messages in the RX queue should be read by the application after this function is called. This function can only be called when the TWAI driver is in the running state.

Warning A message currently being transmitted/received on the TWAI bus will be ceased immediately. This may lead to other TWAI nodes interpreting the unfinished message as an error.
Return
- ESP_OK: TWAI driver is now Stopped
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Driver is not in running state, or is not installed

esp_err_t **twai_transmit**(**const** *twai_message_t* **message*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Transmit a TWAI message.

This function queues a TWAI message for transmission. Transmission will start immediately if no other messages are queued for transmission. If the TX queue is full, this function will block until more space becomes available or until it times out. If the TX queue is disabled (TX queue length = 0 in configuration), this function

will return immediately if another message is undergoing transmission. This function can only be called when the TWAI driver is in the running state and cannot be called under Listen Only Mode.

Note This function does not guarantee that the transmission is successful. The TX_SUCCESS/TX_FAILED alert can be enabled to alert the application upon the success/failure of a transmission.

Note The TX_IDLE alert can be used to alert the application when no other messages are awaiting transmission.

Return

- ESP_OK: Transmission successfully queued/initiated
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for space on TX queue
- ESP_FAIL: TX queue is disabled and another message is currently transmitting
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not in running state, or is not installed
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Listen Only Mode does not support transmissions

Parameters

- `[in] message`: Message to transmit
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block on the TX queue

esp_err_t **twai_receive**(*twai_message_t* **message*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Receive a TWAI message.

This function receives a message from the RX queue. The flags field of the message structure will indicate the type of message received. This function will block if there are no messages in the RX queue

Warning The flags field of the received message should be checked to determine if the received message contains any data bytes.

Return

- ESP_OK: Message successfully received from RX queue
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for message
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Parameters

- `[out] message`: Received message
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block on RX queue

esp_err_t **twai_read_alerts**(uint32_t **alerts*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Read TWAI driver alerts.

This function will read the alerts raised by the TWAI driver. If no alert has been issued when this function is called, this function will block until an alert occurs or until it timeouts.

Note Multiple alerts can be raised simultaneously. The application should check for all alerts that have been enabled.

Return

- ESP_OK: Alerts read
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Timed out waiting for alerts
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Parameters

- `[out] alerts`: Bit field of raised alerts (see documentation for alert flags)
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: Number of FreeRTOS ticks to block for alert

esp_err_t **twai_reconfigure_alerts**(uint32_t *alerts_enabled*, uint32_t **current_alerts*)

Reconfigure which alerts are enabled.

This function reconfigures which alerts are enabled. If there are alerts which have not been read whilst reconfiguring, this function can read those alerts.

Return

- ESP_OK: Alerts reconfigured
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Parameters

- `[in] alerts_enabled`: Bit field of alerts to enable (see documentation for alert flags)

- `[out] current_alerts`: Bit field of currently raised alerts. Set to NULL if unused

esp_err_t **twai_initiate_recovery**(void)

Start the bus recovery process.

This function initiates the bus recovery process when the TWAI driver is in the bus-off state. Once initiated, the TWAI driver will enter the recovering state and wait for 128 occurrences of the bus-free signal on the TWAI bus before returning to the stopped state. This function will reset the TX queue, clearing any messages pending transmission.

Note The BUS_RECOVERED alert can be enabled to alert the application when the bus recovery process completes.

Return

- ESP_OK: Bus recovery started
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not in the bus-off state, or is not installed

esp_err_t **twai_get_status_info**(*twai_status_info_t* **status_info*)

Get current status information of the TWAI driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: Status information retrieved
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Arguments are invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Parameters

- `[out] status_info`: Status information

esp_err_t **twai_clear_transmit_queue**(void)

Clear the transmit queue.

This function will clear the transmit queue of all messages.

Note The transmit queue is automatically cleared when twai_stop() or twai_initiate_recovery() is called.

Return

- ESP_OK: Transmit queue cleared
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed or TX queue is disabled

esp_err_t **twai_clear_receive_queue**(void)

Clear the receive queue.

This function will clear the receive queue of all messages.

Note The receive queue is automatically cleared when twai_start() is called.

Return

- ESP_OK: Transmit queue cleared
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: TWAI driver is not installed

Structures

struct twai_general_config_t

Structure for general configuration of the TWAI driver.

Note Macro initializers are available for this structure

Public Members

twai_mode_t **mode**

Mode of TWAI controller

gpio_num_t **tx_io**

Transmit GPIO number

gpio_num_t **rx_io**

Receive GPIO number

gpio_num_t **clkout_io**
CLKOUT GPIO number (optional, set to -1 if unused)

gpio_num_t **bus_off_io**
Bus off indicator GPIO number (optional, set to -1 if unused)

uint32_t **tx_queue_len**
Number of messages TX queue can hold (set to 0 to disable TX Queue)

uint32_t **rx_queue_len**
Number of messages RX queue can hold

uint32_t **alerts_enabled**
Bit field of alerts to enable (see documentation)

uint32_t **clkout_divider**
CLKOUT divider. Can be 1 or any even number from 2 to 14 (optional, set to 0 if unused)

int **intr_flags**
Interrupt flags to set the priority of the driver's ISR. Note that to use the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM, the CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM option should be enabled first.

struct twai_status_info_t
Structure to store status information of TWAI driver.

Public Members

twai_state_t **state**
Current state of TWAI controller (Stopped/Running/Bus-Off/Recovery)

uint32_t **msgs_to_tx**
Number of messages queued for transmission or awaiting transmission completion

uint32_t **msgs_to_rx**
Number of messages in RX queue waiting to be read

uint32_t **tx_error_counter**
Current value of Transmit Error Counter

uint32_t **rx_error_counter**
Current value of Receive Error Counter

uint32_t **tx_failed_count**
Number of messages that failed transmissions

uint32_t **rx_missed_count**
Number of messages that were lost due to a full RX queue (or errata workaround if enabled)

uint32_t **rx_overrun_count**
Number of messages that were lost due to a RX FIFO overrun

uint32_t **arb_lost_count**
Number of instances arbitration was lost

uint32_t **bus_error_count**
Number of instances a bus error has occurred

Macros

TWAI_IO_UNUSED
Marks GPIO as unused in TWAI configuration

Enumerations

enum twai_state_t

TWAI driver states.

Values:

TWAI_STATE_STOPPED

Stopped state. The TWAI controller will not participate in any TWAI bus activities

TWAI_STATE_RUNNING

Running state. The TWAI controller can transmit and receive messages

TWAI_STATE_BUS_OFF

Bus-off state. The TWAI controller cannot participate in bus activities until it has recovered

TWAI_STATE_RECOVERING

Recovering state. The TWAI controller is undergoing bus recovery

2.2.22 UART

Overview

A Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) is a hardware feature that handles communication (i.e., timing requirements and data framing) using widely-adapted asynchronous serial communication interfaces, such as RS232, RS422, RS485. A UART provides a widely adopted and cheap method to realize full-duplex or half-duplex data exchange among different devices.

The ESP32-S2 chip has two UART controllers (UART0 and UART1) that feature an identical set of registers for ease of programming and flexibility.

Each UART controller is independently configurable with parameters such as baud rate, data bit length, bit ordering, number of stop bits, parity bit etc. All the controllers are compatible with UART-enabled devices from various manufacturers and can also support Infrared Data Association protocols (IrDA).

Functional Overview

The following overview describes how to establish communication between an ESP32-S2 and other UART devices using the functions and data types of the UART driver. The overview reflects a typical programming workflow and is broken down into the sections provided below:

1. *Setting Communication Parameters* - Setting baud rate, data bits, stop bits, etc.
2. *Setting Communication Pins* - Assigning pins for connection to a device.
3. *Driver Installation* - Allocating ESP32-S2's resources for the UART driver.
4. *Running UART Communication* - Sending / receiving data
5. *Using Interrupts* - Triggering interrupts on specific communication events
6. *Deleting a Driver* - Freeing allocated resources if a UART communication is no longer required

Steps 1 to 3 comprise the configuration stage. Step 4 is where the UART starts operating. Steps 5 and 6 are optional.

The UART driver's functions identify each of the UART controllers using `uart_port_t`. This identification is needed for all the following function calls.

Setting Communication Parameters UART communication parameters can be configured all in a single step or individually in multiple steps.

Single Step Call the function `uart_param_config()` and pass to it a `uart_config_t` structure. The `uart_config_t` structure should contain all the required parameters. See the example below.

```
const int uart_num = UART_NUM_1;
uart_config_t uart_config = {
    .baud_rate = 115200,
    .data_bits = UART_DATA_8_BITS,
    .parity = UART_PARITY_DISABLE,
    .stop_bits = UART_STOP_BITS_1,
    .flow_ctrl = UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS_RTS,
    .rx_flow_ctrl_thresh = 122,
};
// Configure UART parameters
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_param_config(uart_num, &uart_config));
```

Multiple Steps Configure specific parameters individually by calling a dedicated function from the table given below. These functions are also useful if re-configuring a single parameter.

Table 4: Functions for Configuring specific parameters individually

Parameter to Configure	Function
Baud rate	*uart_set_baudrate()*
Number of transmitted bits	*uart_set_word_length()* selected out of *uart_word_length_t*
Parity control	*uart_set_parity()* selected out of *uart_parity_t*
Number of stop bits	*uart_set_stop_bits()* selected out of *uart_stop_bits_t*
Hardware flow control mode	*uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl()* selected out of *uart_hw_flowcontrol_t*
Communication mode	*uart_set_mode()* selected out of *uart_mode_t*

Each of the above functions has a _get_ counterpart to check the currently set value. For example, to check the current baud rate value, call *uart_get_baudrate()*.

Setting Communication Pins After setting communication parameters, configure the physical GPIO pins to which the other UART device will be connected. For this, call the function *uart_set_pin()* and specify the GPIO pin numbers to which the driver should route the Tx, Rx, RTS, and CTS signals. If you want to keep a currently allocated pin number for a specific signal, pass the macro *UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE*.

The same macro should be specified for pins that will not be used.

```
// Set UART pins(TX: IO17 (UART1 default), RX: IO18 (UART1 default), RTS: IO19,␣
↪CTS: IO20)
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_set_pin(UART_NUM_1, UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE, UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE,␣
↪19, 20));
```

Driver Installation Once the communication pins are set, install the driver by calling *uart_driver_install()* and specify the following parameters:

- Size of Tx ring buffer
- Size of Rx ring buffer
- Event queue handle and size
- Flags to allocate an interrupt

The function will allocate the required internal resources for the UART driver.

```
// Setup UART buffered IO with event queue
const int uart_buffer_size = (1024 * 2);
QueueHandle_t uart_queue;
// Install UART driver using an event queue here
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_driver_install(UART_NUM_1, uart_buffer_size, \
                                    uart_buffer_size, 10, &uart_queue, 0));
```

Once this step is complete, you can connect the external UART device and check the communication.

Running UART Communication Serial communication is controlled by each UART controller's finite state machine (FSM).

The process of sending data involves the following steps:

1. Write data into Tx FIFO buffer
2. FSM serializes the data
3. FSM sends the data out

The process of receiving data is similar, but the steps are reversed:

1. FSM processes an incoming serial stream and parallelizes it
2. FSM writes the data into Rx FIFO buffer
3. Read the data from Rx FIFO buffer

Therefore, an application will be limited to writing and reading data from a respective buffer using *uart_write_bytes()* and *uart_read_bytes()* respectively, and the FSM will do the rest.

Transmitting After preparing the data for transmission, call the function *uart_write_bytes()* and pass the data buffer's address and data length to it. The function will copy the data to the Tx ring buffer (either immediately or after enough space is available), and then exit. When there is free space in the Tx FIFO buffer, an interrupt service routine (ISR) moves the data from the Tx ring buffer to the Tx FIFO buffer in the background. The code below demonstrates the use of this function.

```
// Write data to UART.
char* test_str = "This is a test string.\n";
uart_write_bytes(uart_num, (const char*)test_str, strlen(test_str));
```

The function *uart_write_bytes_with_break()* is similar to *uart_write_bytes()* but adds a serial break signal at the end of the transmission. A 'serial break signal' means holding the Tx line low for a period longer than one data frame.

```
// Write data to UART, end with a break signal.
uart_write_bytes_with_break(uart_num, "test break\n",strlen("test break\n"), 100);
```

Another function for writing data to the Tx FIFO buffer is *uart_tx_chars()*. Unlike *uart_write_bytes()*, this function will not block until space is available. Instead, it will write all data which can immediately fit into the hardware Tx FIFO, and then return the number of bytes that were written.

There is a 'companion' function *uart_wait_tx_done()* that monitors the status of the Tx FIFO buffer and returns once it is empty.

```
// Wait for packet to be sent
const int uart_num = UART_NUM_1;
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_wait_tx_done(uart_num, 100)); // wait timeout is 100 RTOS␣
↪ticks (TickType_t)
```

Receiving Once the data is received by the UART and saved in the Rx FIFO buffer, it needs to be retrieved using the function *uart_read_bytes()*. Before reading data, you can check the number of bytes available in the Rx FIFO buffer by calling *uart_get_buffered_data_len()*. An example of using these functions is given below.

```
// Read data from UART.
const int uart_num = UART_NUM_1;
uint8_t data[128];
int length = 0;
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_get_buffered_data_len(uart_num, (size_t*)&length));
length = uart_read_bytes(uart_num, data, length, 100);
```

If the data in the Rx FIFO buffer is no longer needed, you can clear the buffer by calling *uart_flush()*.

Software Flow Control If the hardware flow control is disabled, you can manually set the RTS and DTR signal levels by using the functions *uart_set_rts()* and *uart_set_dtr()* respectively.

Communication Mode Selection The UART controller supports a number of communication modes. A mode can be selected using the function *uart_set_mode()*. Once a specific mode is selected, the UART driver will handle the behavior of a connected UART device accordingly. As an example, it can control the RS485 driver chip using the RTS line to allow half-duplex RS485 communication.

```
// Setup UART in rs485 half duplex mode
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(uart_set_mode(uart_num, UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX));
```

Using Interrupts There are many interrupts that can be generated following specific UART states or detected errors. The full list of available interrupts is provided in *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *UART Controller (UART)* > *UART Interrupts* and *UHCI Interrupts* [PDF]. You can enable or disable specific interrupts by calling *uart_enable_intr_mask()* or *uart_disable_intr_mask()* respectively. The mask of all interrupts is available as UART_INTR_MASK.

By default, the *uart_driver_install()* function installs the driver's internal interrupt handler to manage the Tx and Rx ring buffers and provides high-level API functions like events (see below). It is also possible to register a lower level interrupt handler instead using *uart_isr_register()*, and to free it again using *uart_isr_free()*. Some UART driver functions which use the Tx and Rx ring buffers, events, etc. will not automatically work in this case - it is necessary to handle the interrupts directly in the ISR. Inside the custom handler implementation, clear the interrupt status bits using *uart_clear_intr_status()*.

The API provides a convenient way to handle specific interrupts discussed in this document by wrapping them into dedicated functions:

- **Event detection**: There are several events defined in *uart_event_type_t* that may be reported to a user application using the FreeRTOS queue functionality. You can enable this functionality when calling *uart_driver_install()* described in *Driver Installation*. An example of using Event detection can be found in peripherals/uart/uart_events.
- **FIFO space threshold or transmission timeout reached**: The Tx and Rx FIFO buffers can trigger an interrupt when they are filled with a specific number of characters, or on a timeout of sending or receiving data. To use these interrupts, do the following:
  - Configure respective threshold values of the buffer length and timeout by entering them in the structure *uart_intr_config_t* and calling *uart_intr_config()*
  - Enable the interrupts using the functions *uart_enable_tx_intr()* and *uart_enable_rx_intr()*
  - Disable these interrupts using the corresponding functions *uart_disable_tx_intr()* or *uart_disable_rx_intr()*
- **Pattern detection**: An interrupt triggered on detecting a 'pattern' of the same character being received/sent repeatedly for a number of times. This functionality is demonstrated in the example peripherals/uart/uart_events. It can be used, e.g., to detect a command string followed by a specific number of identical characters (the 'pattern') added at the end of the command string. The following functions are available:
  - Configure and enable this interrupt using uart_enable_pattern_det_intr()
  - Disable the interrupt using *uart_disable_pattern_det_intr()*

Macros The API also defines several macros. For example, *UART_FIFO_LEN* defines the length of hardware FIFO buffers; *UART_BITRATE_MAX* gives the maximum baud rate supported by the UART controllers, etc.

Deleting a Driver If the communication established with *uart_driver_install()* is no longer required, the driver can be removed to free allocated resources by calling *uart_driver_delete()*.

Overview of RS485 specific communication options

Note: The following section will use `[UART_REGISTER_NAME].[UART_FIELD_BIT]` to refer to UART register fields/bits. For more information on a specific option bit, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *UART Controller (UART)* > *Register Summary* [PDF]. Use the register name to navigate to the register description and then find the field/bit.

- `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485_EN`: setting this bit enables RS485 communication mode support.
- `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN`: if this bit is set, the transmitter's output signal loops back to the receiver's input signal.
- `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485RXBY_TX_EN`: if this bit is set, the transmitter will still be sending data if the receiver is busy (remove collisions automatically by hardware).

The ESP32-S2's RS485 UART hardware can detect signal collisions during transmission of a datagram and generate the interrupt `UART_RS485_CLASH_INT` if this interrupt is enabled. The term collision means that a transmitted datagram is not equal to the one received on the other end. Data collisions are usually associated with the presence of other active devices on the bus or might occur due to bus errors.

The collision detection feature allows handling collisions when their interrupts are activated and triggered. The interrupts `UART_RS485_FRM_ERR_INT` and `UART_RS485_PARITY_ERR_INT` can be used with the collision detection feature to control frame errors and parity bit errors accordingly in RS485 mode. This functionality is supported in the UART driver and can be used by selecting the *`UART_MODE_RS485_APP_CTRL`* mode (see the function *`uart_set_mode()`*).

The collision detection feature can work with circuit A and circuit C (see Section *Interface Connection Options*). In the case of using circuit A or B, the RTS pin connected to the DE pin of the bus driver should be controlled by the user application. Use the function *`uart_get_collision_flag()`* to check if the collision detection flag has been raised.

The ESP32-S2 UART controllers themselves do not support half-duplex communication as they cannot provide automatic control of the RTS pin connected to the ~RE/DE input of RS485 bus driver. However, half-duplex communication can be achieved via software control of the RTS pin by the UART driver. This can be enabled by selecting the *`UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX`* mode when calling *`uart_set_mode()`*.

Once the host starts writing data to the Tx FIFO buffer, the UART driver automatically asserts the RTS pin (logic 1); once the last bit of the data has been transmitted, the driver de-asserts the RTS pin (logic 0). To use this mode, the software would have to disable the hardware flow control function. This mode works with all the used circuits shown below.

Interface Connection Options This section provides example schematics to demonstrate the basic aspects of ESP32-S2's RS485 interface connection.

Note:

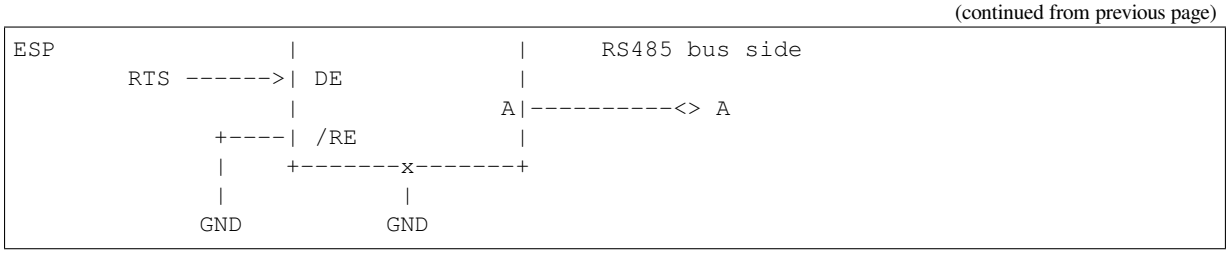
- The schematics below do **not** necessarily contain **all required elements**.
- The **analog devices** ADM483 & ADM2483 are examples of common RS485 transceivers and **can be replaced** with other similar transceivers.

Circuit A: Collision Detection Circuit

```
        VCC ----------------+
                            |
                    +-------x-------+
        RXD <------| R              |
                   |               B|----------<> B
        TXD ------>| D     ADM483   |
```

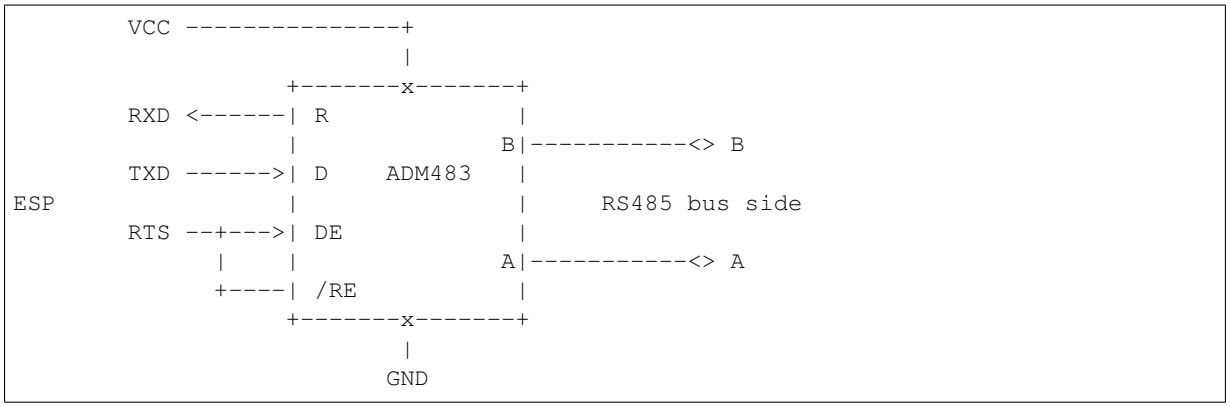
(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)



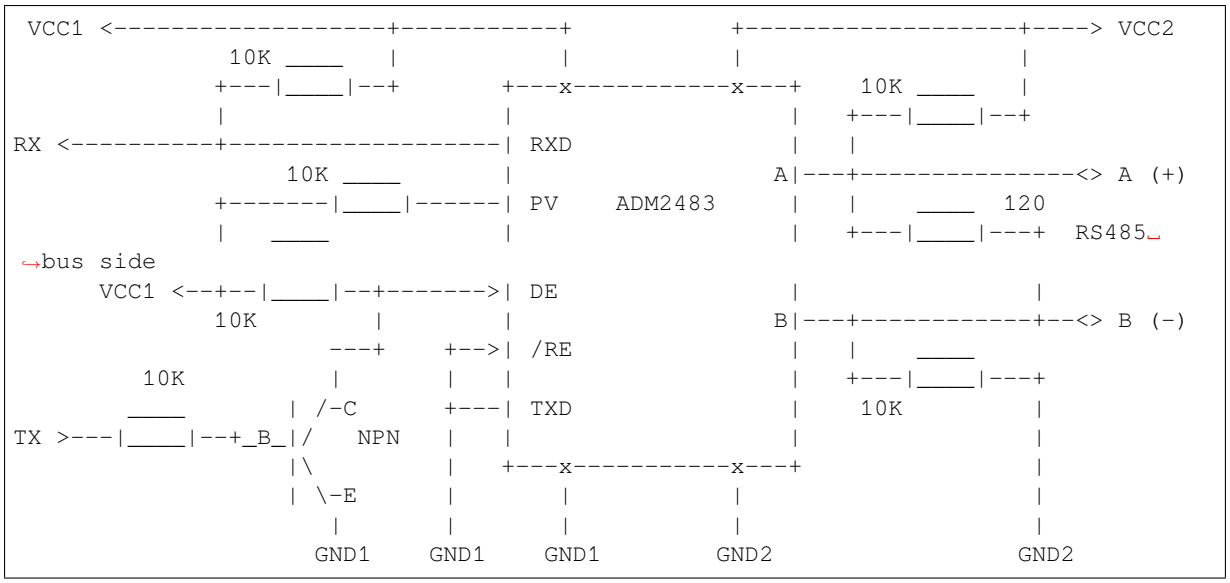
This circuit is preferable because it allows for collision detection and is quite simple at the same time. The receiver in the line driver is constantly enabled, which allows the UART to monitor the RS485 bus. Echo suppression is performed by the UART peripheral when the bit `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN` is enabled.

Circuit B: Manual Switching Transmitter/Receiver Without Collision Detection



This circuit does not allow for collision detection. It suppresses the null bytes that the hardware receives when the bit `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN` is set. The bit `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485RXBY_TX_EN` is not applicable in this case.

Circuit C: Auto Switching Transmitter/Receiver



This galvanically isolated circuit does not require RTS pin control by a software application or driver because it controls the transceiver direction automatically. However, it requires suppressing null bytes during transmission by setting `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485RXBY_TX_EN` to 1 and `UART_RS485_CONF_REG.UART_RS485TX_RX_EN` to 0. This setup can work in any RS485 UART mode or even in *UART_MODE_UART*.

Application Examples

The table below describes the code examples available in the directory peripherals/uart/.

Code Example	Description
peripherals/uart/uart_echo	Configuring UART settings, installing the UART driver, and reading/writing over the UART1 interface.
peripherals/uart/uart_events	Reporting various communication events, using pattern detection interrupts.
peripherals/uart/uart_async_rxtxtasks	Transmitting and receiving data in two separate FreeRTOS tasks over the same UART.
peripherals/uart/uart_select	Using synchronous I/O multiplexing for UART file descriptors.
peripherals/uart/uart_echo_rs485	Setting up UART driver to communicate over RS485 interface in half-duplex mode. This example is similar to peripherals/uart/uart_echo but allows communication through an RS485 interface chip connected to ESP32-S2 pins.
peripherals/uart/nmea0183_parser	Obtaining GPS information by parsing NMEA0183 statements received from GPS via the UART peripheral.

API Reference

Header File

- driver/include/driver/uart.h

Functions

esp_err_t **uart_driver_install**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *rx_buffer_size*, int *tx_buffer_size*, int *queue_size*, *QueueHandle_t* **uart_queue*, int *intr_alloc_flags*)

Install UART driver and set the UART to the default configuration.

UART ISR handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Note Rx_buffer_size should be greater than UART_FIFO_LEN. Tx_buffer_size should be either zero or greater than UART_FIFO_LEN.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `rx_buffer_size`: UART RX ring buffer size.
- `tx_buffer_size`: UART TX ring buffer size. If set to zero, driver will not use TX buffer, TX function will block task until all data have been sent out.
- `queue_size`: UART event queue size/depth.
- `uart_queue`: UART event queue handle (out param). On success, a new queue handle is written here to provide access to UART events. If set to NULL, driver will not use an event queue.
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info. Do not set ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM here (the driver's ISR handler is not located in IRAM)

esp_err_t **uart_driver_delete**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Uninstall UART driver.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

bool **uart_is_driver_installed**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Checks whether the driver is installed or not.

Return
- true driver is installed
- false driver is not installed

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_set_word_length**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_word_length_t data_bit*)
Set UART data bits.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `data_bit`: UART data bits

esp_err_t **uart_get_word_length**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_word_length_t *data_bit*)
Get the UART data bit configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*data_bit)

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `data_bit`: Pointer to accept value of UART data bits.

esp_err_t **uart_set_stop_bits**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_stop_bits_t stop_bits*)
Set UART stop bits.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Fail

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `stop_bits`: UART stop bits

esp_err_t **uart_get_stop_bits**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_stop_bits_t *stop_bits*)
Get the UART stop bit configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*stop_bit)

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `stop_bits`: Pointer to accept value of UART stop bits.

esp_err_t **uart_set_parity**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_parity_t parity_mode*)
Set UART parity mode.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `parity_mode`: the enum of uart parity configuration

esp_err_t **uart_get_parity**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_parity_t *parity_mode*)
Get the UART parity mode configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*parity_mode)

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

- `parity_mode`: Pointer to accept value of UART parity mode.

esp_err_t **uart_set_baudrate**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint32_t *baudrate*)

Set UART baud rate.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `baudrate`: UART baud rate.

esp_err_t **uart_get_baudrate**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint32_t **baudrate*)

Get the UART baud rate configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*baudrate)

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `baudrate`: Pointer to accept value of UART baud rate

esp_err_t **uart_set_line_inverse**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint32_t *inverse_mask*)

Set UART line inverse mode.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `inverse_mask`: Choose the wires that need to be inverted. Using the ORred mask of `uart_signal_inv_t`

esp_err_t **uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_hw_flowcontrol_t flow_ctrl*, uint8_t *rx_thresh*)

Set hardware flow control.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `flow_ctrl`: Hardware flow control mode
- `rx_thresh`: Threshold of Hardware RX flow control (0 ~ UART_FIFO_LEN). Only when UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_RTS is set, will the rx_thresh value be set.

esp_err_t **uart_set_sw_flow_ctrl**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, bool *enable*, uint8_t *rx_thresh_xon*, uint8_t *rx_thresh_xoff*)

Set software flow control.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART_NUM_0, UART_NUM_1 or UART_NUM_2
- `enable`: switch on or off
- `rx_thresh_xon`: low water mark
- `rx_thresh_xoff`: high water mark

esp_err_t **uart_get_hw_flow_ctrl**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_hw_flowcontrol_t *flow_ctrl*)

Get the UART hardware flow control configuration.

Return
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

- ESP_OK Success, result will be put in (*flow_ctrl)

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `flow_ctrl`: Option for different flow control mode.

esp_err_t **uart_clear_intr_status** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint32_t *clr_mask*)

Clear UART interrupt status.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `clr_mask`: Bit mask of the interrupt status to be cleared.

esp_err_t **uart_enable_intr_mask** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint32_t *enable_mask*)

Set UART interrupt enable.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `enable_mask`: Bit mask of the enable bits.

esp_err_t **uart_disable_intr_mask** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint32_t *disable_mask*)

Clear UART interrupt enable bits.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `disable_mask`: Bit mask of the disable bits.

esp_err_t **uart_enable_rx_intr** (*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Enable UART RX interrupt (RX_FULL & RX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_disable_rx_intr** (*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Disable UART RX interrupt (RX_FULL & RX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_disable_tx_intr** (*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Disable UART TX interrupt (TX_FULL & TX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number

esp_err_t **uart_enable_tx_intr** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *enable*, int *thresh*)

Enable UART TX interrupt (TX_FULL & TX_TIMEOUT INTERRUPT)

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `enable`: 1: enable; 0: disable
- `thresh`: Threshold of TX interrupt, 0 ~ UART_FIFO_LEN

esp_err_t **uart_isr_register**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, void (**fn*)) void *
, void **arg*, int *intr_alloc_flags*, *uart_isr_handle_t* **handle*Register UART interrupt handler (ISR).

Note UART ISR handler will be attached to the same CPU core that this function is running on.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `fn`: Interrupt handler function.
- `arg`: parameter for handler function
- `intr_alloc_flags`: Flags used to allocate the interrupt. One or multiple (ORred) ESP_INTR_FLAG_* values. See esp_intr_alloc.h for more info.
- `handle`: Pointer to return handle. If non-NULL, a handle for the interrupt will be returned here.

esp_err_t **uart_isr_free**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)
Free UART interrupt handler registered by uart_isr_register. Must be called on the same core as uart_isr_register was called.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_set_pin**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *tx_io_num*, int *rx_io_num*, int *rts_io_num*, int *cts_io_num*)
Set UART pin number.

Note Internal signal can be output to multiple GPIO pads. Only one GPIO pad can connect with input signal.

Note Instead of GPIO number a macro 'UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE' may be provided to keep the currently allocated pin.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `tx_io_num`: UART TX pin GPIO number.
- `rx_io_num`: UART RX pin GPIO number.
- `rts_io_num`: UART RTS pin GPIO number.
- `cts_io_num`: UART CTS pin GPIO number.

esp_err_t **uart_set_rts**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *level*)
Manually set the UART RTS pin level.

Note UART must be configured with hardware flow control disabled.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `level`: 1: RTS output low (active); 0: RTS output high (block)

esp_err_t **uart_set_dtr**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *level*)
Manually set the UART DTR pin level.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `level`: 1: DTR output low; 0: DTR output high

esp_err_t **uart_set_tx_idle_num** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, uint16_t *idle_num*)

Set UART idle interval after tx FIFO is empty.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `idle_num`: idle interval after tx FIFO is empty(unit: the time it takes to send one bit under current baudrate)

esp_err_t **uart_param_config** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, **const** *uart_config_t* **uart_config*)

Set UART configuration parameters.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `uart_config`: UART parameter settings

esp_err_t **uart_intr_config** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, **const** *uart_intr_config_t* **intr_conf*)

Configure UART interrupts.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `intr_conf`: UART interrupt settings

esp_err_t **uart_wait_tx_done** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Wait until UART TX FIFO is empty.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Timeout

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `ticks_to_wait`: Timeout, count in RTOS ticks

int **uart_tx_chars** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, **const** char **buffer*, uint32_t *len*)

Send data to the UART port from a given buffer and length.

This function will not wait for enough space in TX FIFO. It will just fill the available TX FIFO and return when the FIFO is full.

Note This function should only be used when UART TX buffer is not enabled.

Return
- (-1) Parameter error
- OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes pushed to the TX FIFO

Parameters
- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `buffer`: data buffer address
- `len`: data length to send

int **uart_write_bytes**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*)

Send data to the UART port from a given buffer and length,.

If the UART driver's parameter 'tx_buffer_size' is set to zero: This function will not return until all the data have been sent out, or at least pushed into TX FIFO.

Otherwise, if the 'tx_buffer_size' > 0, this function will return after copying all the data to tx ring buffer, UART ISR will then move data from the ring buffer to TX FIFO gradually.

Return

- (-1) Parameter error
- OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes pushed to the TX FIFO

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `src`: data buffer address
- `size`: data length to send

int **uart_write_bytes_with_break**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*, int *brk_len*)

Send data to the UART port from a given buffer and length,.

If the UART driver's parameter 'tx_buffer_size' is set to zero: This function will not return until all the data and the break signal have been sent out. After all data is sent out, send a break signal.

Otherwise, if the 'tx_buffer_size' > 0, this function will return after copying all the data to tx ring buffer, UART ISR will then move data from the ring buffer to TX FIFO gradually. After all data sent out, send a break signal.

Return

- (-1) Parameter error
- OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes pushed to the TX FIFO

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `src`: data buffer address
- `size`: data length to send
- `brk_len`: break signal duration(unit: the time it takes to send one bit at current baudrate)

int **uart_read_bytes**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, void **buf*, uint32_t *length*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

UART read bytes from UART buffer.

Return

- (-1) Error
- OTHERS (>=0) The number of bytes read from UART FIFO

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `buf`: pointer to the buffer.
- `length`: data length
- `ticks_to_wait`: sTimeout, count in RTOS ticks

esp_err_t **uart_flush**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Alias of uart_flush_input. UART ring buffer flush. This will discard all data in the UART RX buffer.

Note Instead of waiting the data sent out, this function will clear UART rx buffer. In order to send all the data in tx FIFO, we can use uart_wait_tx_done function.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_flush_input**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Clear input buffer, discard all the data is in the ring-buffer.

Note In order to send all the data in tx FIFO, we can use uart_wait_tx_done function.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_get_buffered_data_len**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, size_t **size*)

UART get RX ring buffer cached data length.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `size`: Pointer of size_t to accept cached data length

esp_err_t **uart_disable_pattern_det_intr**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

UART disable pattern detect function. Designed for applications like 'AT commands'. When the hardware detects a series of one same character, the interrupt will be triggered.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_enable_pattern_det_baud_intr**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, char *pattern_chr*, uint8_t *chr_num*, int *chr_tout*, int *post_idle*, int *pre_idle*)

UART enable pattern detect function. Designed for applications like 'AT commands'. When the hardware detect a series of one same character, the interrupt will be triggered.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number.
- `pattern_chr`: character of the pattern.
- `chr_num`: number of the character, 8bit value.
- `chr_tout`: timeout of the interval between each pattern characters, 16bit value, unit is the baud-rate cycle you configured. When the duration is more than this value, it will not take this data as at_cmd char.
- `post_idle`: idle time after the last pattern character, 16bit value, unit is the baud-rate cycle you configured. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take the previous data as the last at_cmd char
- `pre_idle`: idle time before the first pattern character, 16bit value, unit is the baud-rate cycle you configured. When the duration is less than this value, it will not take this data as the first at_cmd char.

int **uart_pattern_pop_pos**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Return the nearest detected pattern position in buffer. The positions of the detected pattern are saved in a queue, this function will dequeue the first pattern position and move the pointer to next pattern position.

The following APIs will modify the pattern position info: uart_flush_input, uart_read_bytes, uart_driver_delete, uart_pop_pattern_pos It is the application's responsibility to ensure atomic access to the pattern queue and the rx data buffer when using pattern detect feature.

Note If the RX buffer is full and flow control is not enabled, the detected pattern may not be found in the rx buffer due to overflow.

Return

- (-1) No pattern found for current index or parameter error
- others the pattern position in rx buffer.

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

int **uart_pattern_get_pos**(*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Return the nearest detected pattern position in buffer. The positions of the detected pattern are saved in a queue, This function do nothing to the queue.

The following APIs will modify the pattern position info: uart_flush_input, uart_read_bytes, uart_driver_delete, uart_pop_pattern_pos It is the application' s responsibility to ensure atomic access to the pattern queue and the rx data buffer when using pattern detect feature.

Note If the RX buffer is full and flow control is not enabled, the detected pattern may not be found in the rx buffer due to overflow.

Return

- (-1) No pattern found for current index or parameter error
- others the pattern position in rx buffer.

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

esp_err_t **uart_pattern_queue_reset**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *queue_length*)

Allocate a new memory with the given length to save record the detected pattern position in rx buffer.

Return

- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM No enough memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver not installed
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error
- ESP_OK Success

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `queue_length`: Max queue length for the detected pattern. If the queue length is not large enough, some pattern positions might be lost. Set this value to the maximum number of patterns that could be saved in data buffer at the same time.

esp_err_t **uart_set_mode**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, *uart_mode_t mode*)

UART set communication mode.

Note This function must be executed after uart_driver_install(), when the driver object is initialized.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: Uart number to configure, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `mode`: UART UART mode to set

esp_err_t **uart_set_rx_full_threshold**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *threshold*)

Set uart threshold value for RX fifo full.

Note If application is using higher baudrate and it is observed that bytes in hardware RX fifo are overwritten then this threshold can be reduced

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is not installed

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART_NUM_0, UART_NUM_1 or UART_NUM_2
- `threshold`: Threshold value above which RX fifo full interrupt is generated

esp_err_t **uart_set_tx_empty_threshold**(*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *threshold*)

Set uart threshold values for TX fifo empty.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is not installed

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART_NUM_0, UART_NUM_1 or UART_NUM_2
- `threshold`: Threshold value below which TX fifo empty interrupt is generated

esp_err_t **uart_set_rx_timeout** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, **const** uint8_t *tout_thresh*)

UART set threshold timeout for TOUT feature.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Driver is not installed

Parameters

- `uart_num`: Uart number to configure, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `tout_thresh`: This parameter defines timeout threshold in uart symbol periods. The maximum value of threshold is 126. tout_thresh = 1, defines TOUT interrupt timeout equal to transmission time of one symbol (~11 bit) on current baudrate. If the time is expired the UART_RXFIFO_TOUT_INT interrupt is triggered. If tout_thresh == 0, the TOUT feature is disabled.

esp_err_t **uart_get_collision_flag** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, bool **collision_flag*)

Returns collision detection flag for RS485 mode Function returns the collision detection flag into variable pointed by collision_flag. *collision_flag = true, if collision detected else it is equal to false. This function should be executed when actual transmission is completed (after uart_write_bytes()).

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

Parameters

- `uart_num`: Uart number to configure the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `collision_flag`: Pointer to variable of type bool to return collision flag.

esp_err_t **uart_set_wakeup_threshold** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, int *wakeup_threshold*)

Set the number of RX pin signal edges for light sleep wakeup.

UART can be used to wake up the system from light sleep. This feature works by counting the number of positive edges on RX pin and comparing the count to the threshold. When the count exceeds the threshold, system is woken up from light sleep. This function allows setting the threshold value.

Stop bit and parity bits (if enabled) also contribute to the number of edges. For example, letter 'a' with ASCII code 97 is encoded as 0100001101 on the wire (with 8n1 configuration), start and stop bits included. This sequence has 3 positive edges (transitions from 0 to 1). Therefore, to wake up the system when 'a' is sent, set wakeup_threshold=3.

The character that triggers wakeup is not received by UART (i.e. it can not be obtained from UART FIFO). Depending on the baud rate, a few characters after that will also not be received. Note that when the chip enters and exits light sleep mode, APB frequency will be changing. To make sure that UART has correct baud rate all the time, select REF_TICK as UART clock source, by setting use_ref_tick field in *uart_config_t* to true.

Note in ESP32, the wakeup signal can only be input via IO_MUX (i.e. GPIO3 should be configured as function_1 to wake up UART0, GPIO9 should be configured as function_5 to wake up UART1), UART2 does not support light sleep wakeup feature.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if uart_num is incorrect or wakeup_threshold is outside of [3, 0x3ff] range.

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `wakeup_threshold`: number of RX edges for light sleep wakeup, value is 3 .. 0x3ff.

esp_err_t **uart_get_wakeup_threshold** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, int **out_wakeup_threshold*)

Get the number of RX pin signal edges for light sleep wakeup.

See description of uart_set_wakeup_threshold for the explanation of UART wakeup feature.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if out_wakeup_threshold is NULL

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART number, the max port number is (UART_NUM_MAX -1).
- `[out] out_wakeup_threshold`: output, set to the current value of wakeup threshold for the given UART.

esp_err_t **uart_wait_tx_idle_polling** (*uart_port_t uart_num*)

Wait until UART tx memory empty and the last char send ok (polling mode).

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
  - ESP_FAIL Driver not installed

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART number

esp_err_t **uart_set_loop_back** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, bool *loop_back_en*)

Configure TX signal loop back to RX module, just for the test usage.

- **Return**
  - ESP_OK on success
  - ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
  - ESP_FAIL Driver not installed

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART number
- `loop_back_en`: Set ture to enable the loop back function, else set it false.

void **uart_set_always_rx_timeout** (*uart_port_t uart_num*, bool *always_rx_timeout_en*)

Configure behavior of UART RX timeout interrupt.

When always_rx_timeout is true, timeout interrupt is triggered even if FIFO is full. This function can cause extra timeout interrupts triggered only to send the timeout event. Call this function only if you want to ensure timeout interrupt will always happen after a byte stream.

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART number
- `always_rx_timeout_en`: Set to false enable the default behavior of timeout interrupt, set it to true to always trigger timeout interrupt.

Structures

struct uart_intr_config_t

UART interrupt configuration parameters for uart_intr_config function.

Public Members

uint32_t **intr_enable_mask**

UART interrupt enable mask, choose from UART_XXXX_INT_ENA_M under UART_INT_ENA_REG(i), connect with bit-or operator

uint8_t **rx_timeout_thresh**

UART timeout interrupt threshold (unit: time of sending one byte)

uint8_t **txfifo_empty_intr_thresh**

UART TX empty interrupt threshold.

uint8_t **rxfifo_full_thresh**

UART RX full interrupt threshold.

struct uart_event_t

Event structure used in UART event queue.

Public Members

uart_event_type_t **type**
UART event type

size_t **size**
UART data size for UART_DATA event

bool **timeout_flag**
UART data read timeout flag for UART_DATA event (no new data received during configured RX TOUT) If the event is caused by FIFO-full interrupt, then there will be no event with the timeout flag before the next byte coming.

Macros

UART_NUM_0
UART port 0

UART_NUM_1
UART port 1

UART_NUM_MAX
UART port max

UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE
Constant for uart_set_pin function which indicates that UART pin should not be changed

UART_FIFO_LEN
Length of the UART HW FIFO.

UART_BITRATE_MAX
Maximum configurable bitrate.

Type Definitions

typedef *intr_handle_t* **uart_isr_handle_t**

Enumerations

enum uart_event_type_t
UART event types used in the ring buffer.

Values:

UART_DATA
UART data event

UART_BREAK
UART break event

UART_BUFFER_FULL
UART RX buffer full event

UART_FIFO_OVF
UART FIFO overflow event

UART_FRAME_ERR
UART RX frame error event

UART_PARITY_ERR
UART RX parity event

UART_DATA_BREAK
UART TX data and break event

UART_PATTERN_DET
UART pattern detected

UART_EVENT_MAX
UART event max index

Header File

- hal/include/hal/uart_types.h

Structures

struct uart_at_cmd_t
UART AT cmd char configuration parameters Note that this function may different on different chip. Please refer to the TRM at confirguration.

Public Members

uint8_t **cmd_char**
UART AT cmd char

uint8_t **char_num**
AT cmd char repeat number

uint32_t **gap_tout**
gap time(in baud-rate) between AT cmd char

uint32_t **pre_idle**
the idle time(in baud-rate) between the non AT char and first AT char

uint32_t **post_idle**
the idle time(in baud-rate) between the last AT char and the none AT char

struct uart_sw_flowctrl_t
UART software flow control configuration parameters.

Public Members

uint8_t **xon_char**
Xon flow control char

uint8_t **xoff_char**
Xoff flow control char

uint8_t **xon_thrd**
If the software flow control is enabled and the data amount in rxfifo is less than xon_thrd, an xon_char will be sent

uint8_t **xoff_thrd**
If the software flow control is enabled and the data amount in rxfifo is more than xoff_thrd, an xoff_char will be sent

struct uart_config_t
UART configuration parameters for uart_param_config function.

Public Members

int **baud_rate**
UART baud rate

uart_word_length_t **data_bits**
UART byte size

uart_parity_t **parity**
UART parity mode

uart_stop_bits_t **stop_bits**
UART stop bits

uart_hw_flowcontrol_t **flow_ctrl**
UART HW flow control mode (cts/rts)

uint8_t **rx_flow_ctrl_thresh**
UART HW RTS threshold

uart_sclk_t **source_clk**
UART source clock selection

bool **use_ref_tick**
Deprecated method to select ref tick clock source, set source_clk field instead

Type Definitions

typedef int **uart_port_t**
UART port number, can be UART_NUM_0 ~ (UART_NUM_MAX -1).

Enumerations

enum uart_mode_t
UART mode selection.

Values:

UART_MODE_UART = 0x00
mode: regular UART mode

UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX = 0x01
mode: half duplex RS485 UART mode control by RTS pin

UART_MODE_IRDA = 0x02
mode: IRDA UART mode

UART_MODE_RS485_COLLISION_DETECT = 0x03
mode: RS485 collision detection UART mode (used for test purposes)

UART_MODE_RS485_APP_CTRL = 0x04
mode: application control RS485 UART mode (used for test purposes)

enum uart_word_length_t
UART word length constants.

Values:

UART_DATA_5_BITS = 0x0
word length: 5bits

UART_DATA_6_BITS = 0x1
word length: 6bits

UART_DATA_7_BITS = 0x2
word length: 7bits

UART_DATA_8_BITS = 0x3
word length: 8bits

UART_DATA_BITS_MAX = 0x4

enum uart_stop_bits_t
UART stop bits number.

Values:

UART_STOP_BITS_1 = 0x1
stop bit: 1bit

UART_STOP_BITS_1_5 = 0x2
stop bit: 1.5bits

UART_STOP_BITS_2 = 0x3
stop bit: 2bits

UART_STOP_BITS_MAX = 0x4

enum uart_parity_t
UART parity constants.

Values:

UART_PARITY_DISABLE = 0x0
Disable UART parity

UART_PARITY_EVEN = 0x2
Enable UART even parity

UART_PARITY_ODD = 0x3
Enable UART odd parity

enum uart_hw_flowcontrol_t
UART hardware flow control modes.

Values:

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_DISABLE = 0x0
disable hardware flow control

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_RTS = 0x1
enable RX hardware flow control (rts)

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS = 0x2
enable TX hardware flow control (cts)

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS_RTS = 0x3
enable hardware flow control

UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_MAX = 0x4

enum uart_signal_inv_t
UART signal bit map.

Values:

UART_SIGNAL_INV_DISABLE = 0
Disable UART signal inverse

UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_TX_INV = (0x1 << 0)
inverse the UART irda_tx signal

UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_RX_INV = (0x1 << 1)
inverse the UART irda_rx signal

UART_SIGNAL_RXD_INV = (0x1 << 2)
inverse the UART rxd signal

UART_SIGNAL_CTS_INV = (0x1 << 3)
inverse the UART cts signal

UART_SIGNAL_DSR_INV = (0x1 << 4)
inverse the UART dsr signal

UART_SIGNAL_TXD_INV = (0x1 << 5)
inverse the UART txd signal

UART_SIGNAL_RTS_INV = (0x1 << 6)
inverse the UART rts signal

UART_SIGNAL_DTR_INV = (0x1 << 7)
inverse the UART dtr signal

enum uart_sclk_t
UART source clock.

Values:

UART_SCLK_APB = 0x0
UART source clock from APB

UART_SCLK_REF_TICK = 0x3
UART source clock from REF_TICK

GPIO Lookup Macros The UART peripherals have dedicated IO_MUX pins to which they are connected directly. However, signals can also be routed to other pins using the less direct GPIO matrix. To use direct routes, you need to know which pin is a dedicated IO_MUX pin for a UART channel. GPIO Lookup Macros simplify the process of finding and assigning IO_MUX pins. You choose a macro based on either the IO_MUX pin number, or a required UART channel name, and the macro will return the matching counterpart for you. See some examples below.

Note: These macros are useful if you need very high UART baud rates (over 40 MHz), which means you will have to use IO_MUX pins only. In other cases, these macros can be ignored, and you can use the GPIO Matrix as it allows you to configure any GPIO pin for any UART function.

---

1. *UART_NUM_2_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM* returns the IO_MUX pin number of UART channel 2 TXD pin (pin 17)
2. *UART_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL* returns the UART number of GPIO 19 when connected to the UART peripheral via IO_MUX (this is UART_NUM_0)
3. *UART_CTS_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL* returns the UART number of GPIO 19 when used as the UART CTS pin via IO_MUX (this is UART_NUM_0). Similar to the above macro but specifies the pin function which is also part of the IO_MUX assignment.

Header File

- soc/esp32s2/include/soc/uart_channel.h

Macros

UART_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL
UART_NUM_0_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_0_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_0_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_0_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_TXD_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_RXD_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_CTS_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_RTS_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_1_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_1_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_1_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_1_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_TXD_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_CTS_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_RTS_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_2_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_2_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_2_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_NUM_2_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM

UART_TXD_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_RXD_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_CTS_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL

UART_RTS_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL

2.2.23 USB Driver

Overview

The driver allows users to use ESP32-S2 chips to develop USB devices on top the TinyUSB stack. TinyUSB is integrating with ESP-IDF to provide USB features of the framework. Using this driver the chip works as a composite device supporting to represent several USB devices simultaneously. Currently, only the communications device class (CDC) type of the device with the ACM (Abstract Control Model) subclass is supported.

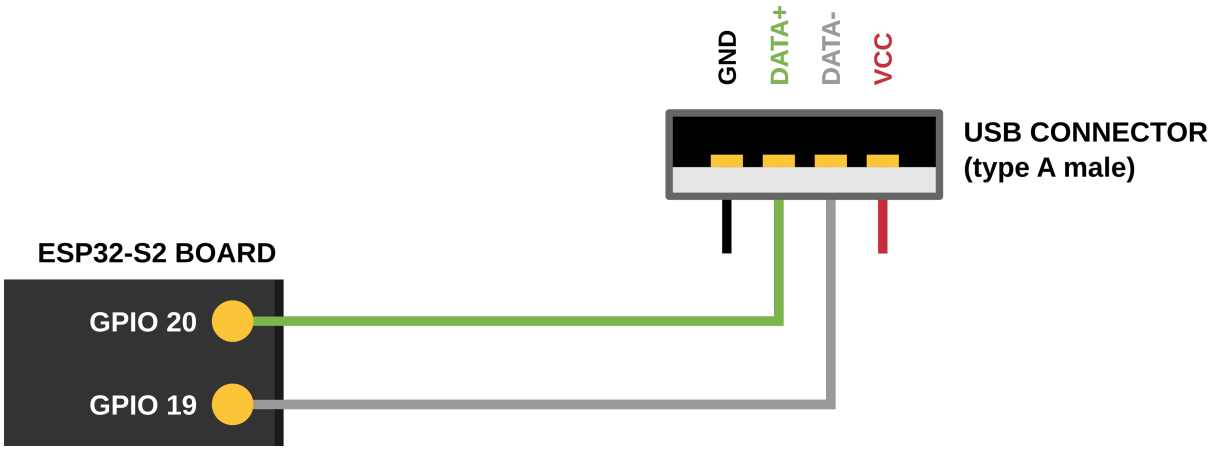
Features

- Configuration of device and string USB descriptors
- USB Serial Device (CDC-ACM)
- Input and output through USB Serial Device

Hardware USB Connection

- Any board with the ESP32-S2 chip with USB connectors or with exposed USB ' s D+ and D- (DATA+/DATA-) pins.

If the board has no USB connector but has the pins, connect pins directly to the host (e.g. with do-it-yourself cable from any USB connection cable). For example, connect GPIO19/20 to D-/D+ respectively for an ESP32-S2 board:



Driver Structure

As the basis is used the TinyUSB stack.

On top of it the driver implements:

- Customization of USB descriptors
- Serial device support
- Redirecting of standard streams through the Serial device
- Encapsulated driver's task servicing the TinyuSB

Configuration

Via Menuconfig options you can specify:

- Several of descriptor's parameters (see: Descriptors Configuration bellow)
- USB Serial low-level Configuration
- The verbosity of the TinyUSB's log
- Disable the TinyUSB main task (for the custom implementation)

Descriptors Configuration The driver's descriptors are provided by the *tinyusb_config_t* structure's `descriptor` and `string_descriptor` members. Therefore, users should initialize *tinyusb_config_t* to their desired descriptor before calling *tinyusb_driver_install()* to install driver.

However, the driver also provides a default descriptor. The driver can be installed with the default descriptor by setting the `descriptor` and `string_descriptor` members of *tinyusb_config_t* to *NULL* before calling *tinyusb_driver_install()*. The driver's default descriptor is specified using Menuconfig, where the following fields should be configured:

- PID
- VID
- bcdDevice
- Manufacturer
- Product name
- Name of CDC device if it is On
- Serial number

If you want to use own descriptors with extended modification, you can define them during the driver installation process

Install Driver

To initialize the driver, users should call *tinyusb_driver_install()*. The driver' s configuration is specified in a *tinyusb_config_t* structure that is passed as an argument to *tinyusb_driver_install()*.

> Note that the *tinyusb_config_t* structure can be zero initialized (e.g. `tinyusb_config_t tusb_cfg = { 0 }`) or partially (as shown below). For any member that is initialized to *0* or *NULL*, the driver will use its default configuration values for that member (see example below)

```
tinyusb_config_t partial_init = {
    .descriptor = NULL;          //Uses default descriptor specified in Menuconfig
    .string_descriptor = NULL;   //Uses default string specified in Menuconfig
    .external_phy = false;
}
```

USB Serial Device (CDC-ACM)

If the CDC option is enabled in Menuconfig, the USB Serial Device could be initialized with *tusb_cdc_acm_init()* according to the settings from *tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t* (see example below).

```
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t amc_cfg = {
    .usb_dev = TINYUSB_USBDEV_0,
    .cdc_port = TINYUSB_CDC_ACM_0,
    .rx_unread_buf_sz = 64,
    .callback_rx = NULL,
    .callback_rx_wanted_char = NULL,
    .callback_line_state_changed = NULL,
    .callback_line_coding_changed = NULL
};
tusb_cdc_acm_init(&amc_cfg);
```

To specify callbacks you can either set the pointer to your *tusb_cdcacm_callback_t* function in the configuration structure or call *tinyusb_cdcacm_register_callback()* after initialization.

USB Serial Console The driver allows to redirect all standard application strings (stdin/out/err) to the USB Serial Device and return them to UART using *esp_tusb_init_console()*/*esp_tusb_deinit_console()* functions.

Application Examples

The table below describes the code examples available in the directory peripherals/usb/.

Code Example	Description
peripherals/usb/tusb_console	How to set up ESP32-S2 chip to get log output via Serial Device connection
peripherals/usb/tusb_sample_descriptor	How to set up ESP32-S2 chip to work as a Generic USB Device with a user-defined descriptor
peripherals/usb/tusb_serial_device	How to set up ESP32-S2 chip to work as a USB Serial Device

API Reference

Header File

- tinyusb/additions/include/tinyusb.h

Functions

esp_err_t **tinyusb_driver_install**(**const** *tinyusb_config_t* **config*)

Structures

struct tinyusb_config_t

Configuration structure of the tinyUSB core.

Public Members

tusb_desc_device_t ***descriptor**

Pointer to a device descriptor

char ****string_descriptor**

Pointer to an array of string descriptors

bool **external_phy**

Should USB use an external PHY

Header File

- tinyusb/additions/include/tinyusb_types.h

Macros

USB_ESPRESSIF_VID

USB_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_ARRAY_SIZE

Type Definitions

typedef char ***tusb_desc_strarray_device_t**[**USB_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_ARRAY_SIZE**]

Enumerations

enum tinyusb_usbdev_t

Values:

TINYUSB_USBDEV_0

Header File

- tinyusb/additions/include/tusb_cdc_acm.h

Functions

esp_err_t **tusb_cdc_acm_init**(**const** *tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t* **cfg*)

Initialize CDC ACM. Initialization will be finished with the `tud_cdc_line_state_cb` callback.

Return esp_err_t

Parameters

- `cfg`: - init configuration structure

esp_err_t **tinyusb_cdcacm_register_callback**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*, *cdcacm_event_type_t event_type*, *tusb_cdcacm_callback_t callback*)

Register a callback invoking on CDC event. If the callback had been already registered, it will be overwritten.

Return esp_err_t - ESP_OK or ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object
- `event_type`: - type of registered event for a callback
- `callback`: - callback function

esp_err_t **tinyusb_cdcacm_unregister_callback**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*, *cdcacm_event_type_t event_type*)

Unregister a callback invoking on CDC event.

Return esp_err_t - ESP_OK or ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object
- `event_type`: - type of registered event for a callback

size_t **tinyusb_cdcacm_write_queue_char**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*, char *ch*)

Sent one character to a write buffer.

Return size_t - amount of queued bytes

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object
- `ch`: - character to send

size_t **tinyusb_cdcacm_write_queue**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*, uint8_t **in_buf*, size_t *in_size*)

Write data to write buffer from a byte array.

Return size_t - amount of queued bytes

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object
- `in_buf`: - a source array
- `in_size`: - size to write from arr_src

esp_err_t **tinyusb_cdcacm_write_flush**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*, uint32_t *timeout_ticks*)

Send all data from a write buffer. Use `tinyusb_cdcacm_write_queue` to add data to the buffer.

WARNING! TinyUSB can block output Endpoint for several RX callbacks, after will do additional flush after the each trasfer. That can leads to the situation when you requested a flush, but it will fail until ont of the next callbacks ends. SO USING OF THE FLUSH WITH TIMEOUTS IN CALLBACKS IS NOT RECOMENDED - YOU CAN GET A LOCK FOR THE TIMEOUT

Return esp_err_t - ESP_OK if (timeout_ticks > 0) and and flush was successful, ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if timeout occurred3 or flush was successful with (timeout_ticks == 0) ESP_FAIL if flush was unsuccessful

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object
- `timeout_ticks`: - waiting until flush will be considered as failed

esp_err_t **tinyusb_cdcacm_read**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*, uint8_t **out_buf*, size_t *out_buf_sz*, size_t **rx_data_size*)

Read a content to the array, and defines it' s size to the sz_store.

Return esp_err_t ESP_OK, ESP_FAIL or ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object
- `out_buf`: - to this array will be stored the object from a CDC buffer
- `out_buf_sz`: - size of buffer for results
- `rx_data_size`: - to this address will be stored the object' s size

bool **tusb_cdc_acm_initialized**(*tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t itf*)

Check if the ACM initialized.

Return true or false

Parameters

- `itf`: - number of a CDC object

Structures

struct cdcacm_event_rx_wanted_char_data_t

Data provided to the input of the `callback_rx_wanted_char` callback.

Public Members

char **wanted_char**
Wanted character

struct cdcacm_event_line_state_changed_data_t
Data provided to the input of the `callback_line_state_changed` callback.

Public Members

bool **dtr**
Data Terminal Ready (DTR) line state

bool **rts**
Request To Send (RTS) line state

struct cdcacm_event_line_coding_changed_data_t
Data provided to the input of the `line_coding_changed` callback.

Public Members

cdc_line_coding_t **const** ***p_line_coding**
New line coding value

struct cdcacm_event_t
Describes an event passing to the input of a callbacks.

Public Members

cdcacm_event_type_t **type**
Event type

cdcacm_event_rx_wanted_char_data_t **rx_wanted_char_data**
Data input of the `callback_rx_wanted_char` callback

cdcacm_event_line_state_changed_data_t **line_state_changed_data**
Data input of the `callback_line_state_changed` callback

cdcacm_event_line_coding_changed_data_t **line_coding_changed_data**
Data input of the `line_coding_changed` callback

struct tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t
Configuration structure for CDC-ACM.

Public Members

tinyusb_usbdev_t **usb_dev**
Usb device to set up

tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t **cdc_port**
CDC port

size_t **rx_unread_buf_sz**
Amount of data that can be passed to the AMC at once

tusb_cdcacm_callback_t **callback_rx**
Pointer to the function with the `tusb_cdcacm_callback_t` type that will be handled as a callback

tusb_cdcacm_callback_t **callback_rx_wanted_char**
Pointer to the function with the `tusb_cdcacm_callback_t` type that will be handled as a callback

tusb_cdcacm_callback_t **callback_line_state_changed**
Pointer to the function with the `tusb_cdcacm_callback_t` type that will be handled as a callback

tusb_cdcacm_callback_t **callback_line_coding_changed**
Pointer to the function with the `tusb_cdcacm_callback_t` type that will be handled as a callback

Type Definitions

typedef void (***tusb_cdcacm_callback_t**) (int itf, *cdcacm_event_t* *event)
CDC-ACM callback type.

Enumerations

enum tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t
CDC ports available to setup.

Values:

TINYUSB_CDC_ACM_0 = 0x0

enum cdcacm_event_type_t
Types of CDC ACM events.

Values:

CDC_EVENT_RX

CDC_EVENT_RX_WANTED_CHAR

CDC_EVENT_LINE_STATE_CHANGED

CDC_EVENT_LINE_CODING_CHANGED

Header File

- tinyusb/additions/include/tusb_console.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_tusb_init_console** (int *cdc_intf*)
Redirect output to the USB serial.

Return esp_err_t - ESP_OK, ESP_FAIL or an error code
Parameters
- `cdc_intf`: - interface number of TinyUSB's CDC

esp_err_t **esp_tusb_deinit_console** (int *cdc_intf*)
Switch log to the default output.

Return esp_err_t
Parameters
- `cdc_intf`: - interface number of TinyUSB's CDC

Header File

- tinyusb/additions/include/tusb_tasks.h

Functions

esp_err_t **tusb_run_task** (void)
This API starts a task with a wrapper function of tud_task and default task parameters.

The wrapper function basically wraps tud_task and some log. Default parameters: stack size and priority as configured, argument = NULL, not pinned to any core. If you have more requirements for this task, you can create your own task which calls tud_task as the last step.

Return ESP_OK or ESP_FAIL

esp_err_t **tusb_stop_task**(void)
Stops a FreeRTOS task.

Return ESP_OK or ESP_FAIL

Header File

- tinyusb/additions/include/vfs_tinyusb.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_tusb_cdc_register**(int *cdc_intf*, char **const** **path*)
Register TinyUSB CDC at VFS with path.

Return esp_err_t ESP_OK or ESP_FAIL
Parameters
- `cdc_intf`: - interface number of TinyUSB' s CDC
- `path`: - path where the CDC will be registered, `/dev/tusb_cdc` will be used if left NULL.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_tusb_cdc_unregister**(char **const** **path*)
Unregister TinyUSB CDC from VFS.

Return esp_err_t ESP_OK or ESP_FAIL
Parameters
- `path`: - path where the CDC will be unregistered if NULL will be used `/dev/tusb_cdc`

Code examples for this API section are provided in the peripherals directory of ESP-IDF examples.

2.3 Application Protocols

2.3.1 ASIO port

Overview

Asio is a cross-platform C++ library, see https://think-async.com. It provides a consistent asynchronous model using a modern C++ approach.

ASIO documentation Please refer to the original asio documentation at https://think-async.com/Asio/Documentation. Asio also comes with a number of examples which could be find under Documentation/Examples on that web site.

Supported features ESP platform port currently supports only network asynchronous socket operations; does not support serial port. SSL/TLS support is disabled by default and could be enabled in component configuration menu by choosing TLS library from

- mbedTLS with OpenSSL translation layer (default option)
- wolfSSL

SSL support is very basic at this stage and it does include following features:

- Verification callbacks
- DH property files
- Certificates/private keys file APIs

Internal asio settings for ESP include

- EXCEPTIONS are enabled in ASIO if enabled in menuconfig
- TYPEID is enabled in ASIO if enabled in menuconfig

Application Example

ESP examples are based on standard asio protocols/asio:

- protocols/asio/udp_echo_server
- protocols/asio/tcp_echo_server
- protocols/asio/chat_client
- protocols/asio/chat_server
- protocols/asio/ssl_client_server

Please refer to the specific example README.md for details

2.3.2 ESP-MQTT

Overview

ESP-MQTT is an implementation of MQTT protocol client (MQTT is a lightweight publish/subscribe messaging protocol).

Features

- Supports MQTT over TCP, SSL with mbedtls, MQTT over Websocket, MQTT over Websocket Secure.
- Easy to setup with URI
- Multiple instances (Multiple clients in one application)
- Support subscribing, publishing, authentication, last will messages, keep alive pings and all 3 QoS levels (it should be a fully functional client).

Application Example

- protocols/mqtt/tcp: MQTT over tcp, default port 1883
- protocols/mqtt/ssl: MQTT over tcp, default port 8883
- protocols/mqtt/ssl_psk: MQTT over tcp using pre-shared keys for authentication, default port 8883
- protocols/mqtt/ws: MQTT over Websocket, default port 80
- protocols/mqtt/wss: MQTT over Websocket Secure, default port 443

Configuration

URI

- Curently support `mqtt`, `mqtts`, `ws`, `wss` schemes
- MQTT over TCP samples:
  - `mqtt://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io`: MQTT over TCP, default port 1883:
  - `mqtt://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:1884` MQTT over TCP, port 1884:
  - `mqtt://username:password@mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:1884` MQTT over TCP, port 1884, with username and password
- MQTT over SSL samples:
  - `mqtts://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io`: MQTT over SSL, port 8883
  - `mqtts://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:8884`: MQTT over SSL, port 8884
- MQTT over Websocket samples:
  - `ws://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:80/mqtt`
- MQTT over Websocket Secure samples:
  - `wss://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:443/mqtt`
- Minimal configurations:

```
const esp_mqtt_client_config_t mqtt_cfg = {
    .uri = "mqtt://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io",
    // .user_context = (void *)your_context
};
esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client = esp_mqtt_client_init(&mqtt_cfg);
esp_mqtt_client_register_event(client, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, mqtt_event_handler,␣
↪client);
esp_mqtt_client_start(client);
```

- Note: By default mqtt client uses event loop library to post related mqtt events (connected, subscribed, published, etc.)

SSL

- Get certificate from server, example: `mqtt.eclipseprojects.io openssl s_client -showcerts -connect mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:8883 </dev/null 2>/dev/null|openssl x509 -outform PEM >mqtt_eclipse_org.pem`
- Check the sample application: `examples/mqtt_ssl`
- Configuration:

```
const esp_mqtt_client_config_t mqtt_cfg = {
    .uri = "mqtts://mqtt.eclipseprojects.io:8883",
    .event_handle = mqtt_event_handler,
    .cert_pem = (const char *)mqtt_eclipse_org_pem_start,
};
```

If the certificate is not null-terminated then `cert_len` should also be set. Other SSL related configuration parameters are:

- `use_global_ca_store`: use the global certificate store to verify server certificate, see `esp-tls.h` for more information
- `client_cert_pem`: pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed.
- `client_cert_len`: length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem.
- `client_key_pem`: pointer to private key data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed.
- `client_key_len`: length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem.
- `psk_hint_key`: pointer to PSK struct defined in esp_tls.h to enable PSK authentication (as alternative to certificate verification). If not NULL and server/client certificates are NULL, PSK is enabled
- `alpn_protos`: NULL-terminated list of protocols to be used for ALPN.

Last Will and Testament MQTT allows for a last will and testament (LWT) message to notify other clients when a client ungracefully disconnects. This is configured by the following fields in the `esp_mqtt_client_config_t`-struct.

- `lwt_topic`: pointer to the LWT message topic
- `lwt_msg`: pointer to the LWT message
- `lwt_msg_len`: length of the LWT message, required if `lwt_msg` is not null-terminated
- `lwt_qos`: quality of service for the LWT message
- `lwt_retain`: specifies the retain flag of the LWT message

Other Configuration Parameters

- `disable_clean_session`: determines the clean session flag for the connect message, defaults to a clean session
- `keepalive`: determines how many seconds the client will wait for a ping response before disconnecting, default is 120 seconds.
- `disable_auto_reconnect`: enable to stop the client from reconnecting to server after errors or disconnects

- `user_context`: custom context that will be passed to the event handler
- `task_prio`: MQTT task priority, defaults to 5
- `task_stack`: MQTT task stack size, defaults to 6144 bytes, setting this will override setting from menuconfig
- `buffer_size`: size of MQTT send/receive buffer, default is 1024 bytes
- `username`: pointer to the username used for connecting to the broker
- `password`: pointer to the password used for connecting to the broker
- `client_id`: pointer to the client id, defaults to `ESP32_%CHIPID%` where %CHIPID% are the last 3 bytes of MAC address in hex format
- `host`: MQTT broker domain (ipv4 as string), setting the uri will override this
- `port`: MQTT broker port, specifying the port in the uri will override this
- `transport`: sets the transport protocol, setting the uri will override this
- `refresh_connection_after_ms`: refresh connection after this value (in milliseconds)
- `event_handle`: handle for MQTT events as a callback in legacy mode
- `event_loop_handle`: handle for MQTT event loop library

For more options on `esp_mqtt_client_config_t`, please refer to API reference below

Change settings in Project Configuration Menu The settings for MQTT can be found using `idf.py menuconfig`, under Component config -> ESP-MQTT Configuration

The following settings are available:

- *CONFIG_MQTT_PROTOCOL_311*: Enables 3.1.1 version of MQTT protocol
- *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL*, *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET*: Enables specific MQTT transport layer, such as SSL, WEBSOCKET, WEBSOCKET_SECURE
- *CONFIG_MQTT_CUSTOM_OUTBOX*: Disables default implementation of mqtt_outbox, so a specific implementaion can be supplied

Events

The following events may be posted by the MQTT client:

- `MQTT_EVENT_BEFORE_CONNECT`: The client is initialized and about to start connecting to the broker.
- `MQTT_EVENT_CONNECTED`: The client has successfully established a connection to the broker. The client is now ready to send and receive data.
- `MQTT_EVENT_DISCONNECTED`: The client has aborted the connection due to being unable to read or write data, e.g. because the server is unavailable.
- `MQTT_EVENT_SUBSCRIBED`: The broker has acknowledged the client's subscribe request. The event data will contain the message ID of the subscribe message.
- `MQTT_EVENT_UNSUBSCRIBED`: The broker has acknowledged the client's unsubscribe request. The event data will contain the message ID of the unsubscribe message.
- `MQTT_EVENT_PUBLISHED`: The broker has acknowledged the client's publish message. This will only be posted for Quality of Service level 1 and 2, as level 0 does not use acknowledgements. The event data will contain the message ID of the publish message.
- `MQTT_EVENT_DATA`: The client has received a publish message. The event data contains: message ID, name of the topic it was published to, received data and its length. For data that exceeds the internal buffer multiple *MQTT_EVENT_DATA* will be posted and *current_data_offset* and *total_data_len* from event data updated to keep track of the fragmented message.
- `MQTT_EVENT_ERROR`: The client has encountered an error. *esp_mqtt_error_type_t* from *error_handle* in the event data can be used to further determine the type of the error. The type of error will determine which parts of the *error_handle* struct is filled.

API Reference

Header File

- mqtt/esp-mqtt/include/mqtt_client.h

Functions

esp_mqtt_client_handle_t **esp_mqtt_client_init** (**const** *esp_mqtt_client_config_t* **config*)
Creates mqtt client handle based on the configuration.

Return mqtt_client_handle if successfully created, NULL on error
Parameters
- `config`: mqtt configuration structure

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_set_uri** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **uri*)
Sets mqtt connection URI. This API is usually used to overrides the URI configured in esp_mqtt_client_init.

Return ESP_FAIL if URI parse error, ESP_OK on success
Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `uri`:

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_start** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*)
Starts mqtt client with already created client handle.

Return ESP_OK on success ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG on wrong initialization ESP_FAIL on other error
Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_reconnect** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*)
This api is typically used to force reconnection upon a specific event.

Return ESP_OK on success ESP_FAIL if client is in invalid state
Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_disconnect** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*)
This api is typically used to force disconnection from the broker.

Return ESP_OK on success
Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_stop** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*)
Stops mqtt client tasks.

- Notes:
- Cannot be called from the mqtt event handler

Return ESP_OK on success ESP_FAIL if client is in invalid state
Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle

int **esp_mqtt_client_subscribe** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **topic*, int *qos*)
Subscribe the client to defined topic with defined qos.

Notes:

- Client must be connected to send subscribe message
- This API is could be executed from a user task or from a mqtt event callback i.e. internal mqtt task (API is protected by internal mutex, so it might block if a longer data receive operation is in progress.

Return message_id of the subscribe message on success -1 on failure
Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `topic`:
- `qos`:

int **esp_mqtt_client_unsubscribe** (*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **topic*)
Unsubscribe the client from defined topic.

Notes:

- Client must be connected to send unsubscribe message

- It is thread safe, please refer to `esp_mqtt_client_subscribe` for details

Return message_id of the subscribe message on success -1 on failure

Parameters

- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `topic`:

int **esp_mqtt_client_publish**(*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **topic*, **const** char **data*, int *len*, int *qos*, int *retain*)

Client to send a publish message to the broker.

Notes:

- This API might block for several seconds, either due to network timeout (10s) or if publishing payloads longer than internal buffer (due to message fragmentation)
- Client doesn't have to be connected for this API to work, enqueueing the messages with qos>1 (returning -1 for all the qos=0 messages if disconnected). If MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED is enabled, this API will not attempt to publish when the client is not connected and will always return -1.
- It is thread safe, please refer to `esp_mqtt_client_subscribe` for details

Return message_id of the publish message (for QoS 0 message_id will always be zero) on success. -1 on failure.

Parameters

- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `topic`: topic string
- `data`: payload string (set to NULL, sending empty payload message)
- `len`: data length, if set to 0, length is calculated from payload string
- `qos`: qos of publish message
- `retain`: retain flag

int **esp_mqtt_client_enqueue**(*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **topic*, **const** char **data*, int *len*, int *qos*, int *retain*, bool *store*)

Enqueue a message to the outbox, to be sent later. Typically used for messages with qos>0, but could be also used for qos=0 messages if store=true.

This API generates and stores the publish message into the internal outbox and the actual sending to the network is performed in the mqtt-task context (in contrast to the esp_mqtt_client_publish() which sends the publish message immediately in the user task's context). Thus, it could be used as a non blocking version of esp_mqtt_client_publish().

Return message_id if queued successfully, -1 otherwise

Parameters

- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `topic`: topic string
- `data`: payload string (set to NULL, sending empty payload message)
- `len`: data length, if set to 0, length is calculated from payload string
- `qos`: qos of publish message
- `retain`: retain flag
- `store`: if true, all messages are enqueued; otherwise only qos1 and qos 2 are enqueued

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_destroy**(*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*)

Destroys the client handle.

Notes:

- Cannot be called from the mqtt event handler

Return ESP_OK

Parameters

- `client`: mqtt client handle

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_set_config**(*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, **const** *esp_mqtt_client_config_t *config*)

Set configuration structure, typically used when updating the config (i.e. on "before_connect" event.

Return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if failed to allocate ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `config`: mqtt configuration structure

esp_err_t **esp_mqtt_client_register_event**(*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*, *esp_mqtt_event_id_t event*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*, void **event_handler_arg*)

Registers mqtt event.

Return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if failed to allocate ESP_OK on success

Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle
- `event`: event type
- `event_handler`: handler callback
- `event_handler_arg`: handlers context

int **esp_mqtt_client_get_outbox_size**(*esp_mqtt_client_handle_t client*)

Get outbox size.

Return outbox size

Parameters
- `client`: mqtt client handle

Structures

struct esp_mqtt_error_codes

MQTT error code structure to be passed as a contextual information into ERROR event.

Important: This structure extends `esp_tls_last_error` error structure and is backward compatible with it (so might be down-casted and treated as `esp_tls_last_error` error, but recommended to update applications if used this way previously)

Use this structure directly checking error_type first and then appropriate error code depending on the source of the error:

| error_type | related member variables | note | | MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT | esp_tls_last_esp_err, esp_tls_stack_err, esp_tls_cert_verify_flags, sock_errno | Error reported from tcp_transport/esp-tls | | MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED | connect_return_code | Internal error reported from MQTT broker on connection |

Public Members

esp_err_t **esp_tls_last_esp_err**

last esp_err code reported from esp-tls component

int **esp_tls_stack_err**

tls specific error code reported from underlying tls stack

int **esp_tls_cert_verify_flags**

tls flags reported from underlying tls stack during certificate verification

esp_mqtt_error_type_t **error_type**

error type referring to the source of the error

esp_mqtt_connect_return_code_t **connect_return_code**

connection refused error code reported from MQTT broker on connection

int **esp_transport_sock_errno**

errno from the underlying socket

struct esp_mqtt_event_t

MQTT event configuration structure

Public Members

esp_mqtt_event_id_t **event_id**
MQTT event type

esp_mqtt_client_handle_t **client**
MQTT client handle for this event

void ***user_context**
User context passed from MQTT client config

char ***data**
Data associated with this event

int **data_len**
Length of the data for this event

int **total_data_len**
Total length of the data (longer data are supplied with multiple events)

int **current_data_offset**
Actual offset for the data associated with this event

char ***topic**
Topic associated with this event

int **topic_len**
Length of the topic for this event associated with this event

int **msg_id**
MQTT messaged id of message

int **session_present**
MQTT session_present flag for connection event

esp_mqtt_error_codes_t ***error_handle**
esp-mqtt error handle including esp-tls errors as well as internal mqtt errors

struct esp_mqtt_client_config_t
MQTT client configuration structure

Public Members

mqtt_event_callback_t **event_handle**
handle for MQTT events as a callback in legacy mode

esp_event_loop_handle_t **event_loop_handle**
handle for MQTT event loop library

const char ***host**
MQTT server domain (ipv4 as string)

const char ***uri**
Complete MQTT broker URI

uint32_t **port**
MQTT server port

const char ***client_id**
default client id is `ESP32_CHIPID%` where CHIPID% are last 3 bytes of MAC address in hex format

const char ***username**
MQTT username

const char ***password**
MQTT password

const char ***lwt_topic**
LWT (Last Will and Testament) message topic (NULL by default)

const char ***lwt_msg**
LWT message (NULL by default)

int **lwt_qos**
LWT message qos

int **lwt_retain**
LWT retained message flag

int **lwt_msg_len**
LWT message length

int **disable_clean_session**
mqtt clean session, default clean_session is true

int **keepalive**
mqtt keepalive, default is 120 seconds

bool **disable_auto_reconnect**
this mqtt client will reconnect to server (when errors/disconnect). Set disable_auto_reconnect=true to disable

void ***user_context**
pass user context to this option, then can receive that context in `event->user_context`

int **task_prio**
MQTT task priority, default is 5, can be changed in `make menuconfig`

int **task_stack**
MQTT task stack size, default is 6144 bytes, can be changed in `make menuconfig`

int **buffer_size**
size of MQTT send/receive buffer, default is 1024 (only receive buffer size if `out_buffer_size` defined)

const char ***cert_pem**
Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for server verify (with SSL), default is NULL, not required to verify the server. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in cert_len.

size_t **cert_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***client_cert_pem**
Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also `client_key_pem` has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in client_cert_len.

size_t **client_cert_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***client_key_pem**
Pointer to private key data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also `client_cert_pem` has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in client_key_len

size_t **client_key_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

esp_mqtt_transport_t **transport**
overrides URI transport

int **refresh_connection_after_ms**
Refresh connection after this value (in milliseconds)

const struct *psk_key_hint* ***psk_hint_key**
Pointer to PSK struct defined in esp_tls.h to enable PSK authentication (as alternative to certificate verification). If not NULL and server/client certificates are NULL, PSK is enabled

bool **use_global_ca_store**
Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

int **reconnect_timeout_ms**
Reconnect to the broker after this value in miliseconds if auto reconnect is not disabled (defaults to 10s)

const char ***alpn_protos**
NULL-terminated list of supported application protocols to be used for ALPN

const char ***clientkey_password**
Client key decryption password string

int **clientkey_password_len**
String length of the password pointed to by clientkey_password

esp_mqtt_protocol_ver_t **protocol_ver**
MQTT protocol version used for connection, defaults to value from menuconfig

int **out_buffer_size**
size of MQTT output buffer. If not defined, both output and input buffers have the same size defined as `buffer_size`

bool **skip_cert_common_name_check**
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field, this reduces the security of TLS and makes the mqtt client susceptible to MITM attacks

bool **use_secure_element**
enable secure element for enabling SSL connection

void ***ds_data**
carrier of handle for digital signature parameters

int **network_timeout_ms**
Abort network operation if it is not completed after this value, in milliseconds (defaults to 10s)

bool **disable_keepalive**
Set disable_keepalive=true to turn off keep-alive mechanism, false by default (keepalive is active by default). Note: setting the config value `keepalive` to `0` doesn't disable keepalive feature, but uses a default keepalive period

Macros

MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_ESP_TLS
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT error type hold all sorts of transport layer errors, including ESP-TLS error, but in the past only the errors from MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_ESP_TLS layer were reported, so the ESP-TLS error type is re-defined here for backward compatibility

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_mqtt_client ***esp_mqtt_client_handle_t**

typedef struct *esp_mqtt_error_codes* **esp_mqtt_error_codes_t**
MQTT error code structure to be passed as a contextual information into ERROR event.

Important: This structure extends `esp_tls_last_error` error structure and is backward compatible with it (so might be down-casted and treated as `esp_tls_last_error` error, but recommended to update applications if used this way previously)

Use this structure directly checking error_type first and then appropriate error code depending on the source of the error:

| error_type | related member variables | note | | MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT | esp_tls_last_esp_err, esp_tls_stack_err, esp_tls_cert_verify_flags, sock_errno | Error reported from tcp_transport/esp-tls | | MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED | connect_return_code | Internal error reported from MQTT broker on connection |

typedef *esp_mqtt_event_t* ***esp_mqtt_event_handle_t**

typedef *esp_err_t* (***mqtt_event_callback_t**) (*esp_mqtt_event_handle_t* event)

Enumerations

enum esp_mqtt_event_id_t

MQTT event types.

User event handler receives context data in `esp_mqtt_event_t` structure with

- `user_context` - user data from `esp_mqtt_client_config_t`
- `client` - mqtt client handle
- various other data depending on event type

Values:

MQTT_EVENT_ANY = -1

MQTT_EVENT_ERROR = 0

on error event, additional context: connection return code, error handle from *esp_tls* (if supported)

MQTT_EVENT_CONNECTED

connected event, additional context: session_present flag

MQTT_EVENT_DISCONNECTED

disconnected event

MQTT_EVENT_SUBSCRIBED

subscribed event, additional context: msg_id

MQTT_EVENT_UNSUBSCRIBED

unsubscribed event

MQTT_EVENT_PUBLISHED

published event, additional context: msg_id

MQTT_EVENT_DATA

data event, additional context:

- msg_id message id
- topic pointer to the received topic
- topic_len length of the topic
- data pointer to the received data
- data_len length of the data for this event
- current_data_offset offset of the current data for this event
- total_data_len total length of the data received Note: Multiple MQTT_EVENT_DATA could be fired for one message, if it is longer than internal buffer. In that case only first event contains topic pointer and length, other contain data only with current data length and current data offset updating.

MQTT_EVENT_BEFORE_CONNECT

The event occurs before connecting

MQTT_EVENT_DELETED

Notification on delete of one message from the internal outbox, if the message couldn't have been sent and acknowledged before expiring defined in OUTBOX_EXPIRED_TIMEOUT_MS. (events are not posted upon deletion of successfully acknowledged messages)

- This event id is posted only if MQTT_REPORT_DELETED_MESSAGES==1
- Additional context: msg_id (id of the deleted message).

enum esp_mqtt_connect_return_code_t
MQTT connection error codes propagated via ERROR event

Values:

MQTT_CONNECTION_ACCEPTED = 0
Connection accepted

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_PROTOCOL
MQTT connection refused reason: Wrong protocol

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_ID_REJECTED
MQTT connection refused reason: ID rejected

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_SERVER_UNAVAILABLE
MQTT connection refused reason: Server unavailable

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_BAD_USERNAME
MQTT connection refused reason: Wrong user

MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_NOT_AUTHORIZED
MQTT connection refused reason: Wrong username or password

enum esp_mqtt_error_type_t
MQTT connection error codes propagated via ERROR event

Values:

MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_NONE = 0

MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT

MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED

enum esp_mqtt_transport_t
Values:

MQTT_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN = 0x0

MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
MQTT over TCP, using scheme: `mqtt`

MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL
MQTT over SSL, using scheme: `mqtts`

MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_WS
MQTT over Websocket, using scheme:: `ws`

MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_WSS
MQTT over Websocket Secure, using scheme: `wss`

enum esp_mqtt_protocol_ver_t
MQTT protocol version used for connection

Values:

MQTT_PROTOCOL_UNDEFINED = 0

MQTT_PROTOCOL_V_3_1

MQTT_PROTOCOL_V_3_1_1

2.3.3 ESP-TLS

Overview

The ESP-TLS component provides a simplified API interface for accessing the commonly used TLS functionality. It supports common scenarios like CA certification validation, SNI, ALPN negotiation, non-blocking connection

among others. All the configuration can be specified in the `esp_tls_cfg_t` data structure. Once done, TLS communication can be conducted using the following APIs:

- *`esp_tls_conn_new()`*: for opening a new TLS connection.
- *`esp_tls_conn_read()`*: for reading from the connection.
- *`esp_tls_conn_write()`*: for writing into the connection.
- *`esp_tls_conn_delete()`*: for freeing up the connection.

Any application layer protocol like HTTP1, HTTP2 etc can be executed on top of this layer.

Application Example

Simple HTTPS example that uses ESP-TLS to establish a secure socket connection: protocols/https_request.

Tree structure for ESP-TLS component

```
├── esp_tls.c
├── esp_tls.h
├── esp_tls_mbedtls.c
├── esp_tls_wolfssl.c
└── private_include
    ├── esp_tls_mbedtls.h
    └── esp_tls_wolfssl.h
```

The ESP-TLS component has a file esp-tls/esp_tls.h which contain the public API headers for the component. Internally ESP-TLS component uses one of the two SSL/TLS Libraries between mbedtls and wolfssl for its operation. API specific to mbedtls are present in esp-tls/private_include/esp_tls_mbedtls.h and API specific to wolfssl are present in esp-tls/private_include/esp_tls_wolfssl.h.

TLS Server verification

The ESP-TLS provides multiple options for TLS server verification on the client side. The ESP-TLS client can verify the server by validating the peer's server certificate or with the help of pre-shared keys. The user should select only one of the following options in the *`esp_tls_cfg_t`* structure for TLS server verification. If no option is selected then client will return a fatal error by default at the time of the TLS connection setup.

- **cacert_buf** and **cacert_bytes**: The CA certificate can be provided in a buffer to the *`esp_tls_cfg_t`* structure. The ESP-TLS will use the CA certificate present in the buffer to verify the server. The following variables in *`esp_tls_cfg_t`* structure must be set.
  - `cacert_buf` - pointer to the buffer which contains the CA cert.
  - `cacert_bytes` - size of the CA certificate in bytes.
- **use_global_ca_store**: The `global_ca_store` can be initialized and set at once. Then it can be used to verify the server for all the ESP-TLS connections which have set `use_global_ca_store = true` in their respective *`esp_tls_cfg_t`* structure. See API Reference section below on information regarding different API used for initializing and setting up the `global_ca_store`.
- **crt_bundle_attach**: The ESP x509 Certificate Bundle API provides an easy way to include a bundle of custom x509 root certificates for TLS server verification. More details can be found at *ESP x509 Certificate Bundle*
- **psk_hint_key**: To use pre-shared keys for server verification, *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_PSK_VERIFICATION* should be enabled in the ESP-TLS menuconfig. Then the pointer to PSK hint and key should be provided to the *`esp_tls_cfg_t`* structure. The ESP-TLS will use the PSK for server verification only when no other option regarding the server verification is selected.
- **skip server verification**: This is an insecure option provided in the ESP-TLS for testing purpose. The option can be set by enabling *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE* and *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SKIP_SERVER_CERT_VERIFY* in the ESP-TLS menuconfig. When this option is enabled the ESP-TLS will skip server verification by default when no other options for server verification are selected in the *`esp_tls_cfg_t`* structure. *WARNING:Enabling this option comes with a potential risk of establishing a TLS connection with a server which has a fake identity, provided that the server certificate is not provided either through API or other mechanism like ca_store etc.*

Underlying SSL/TLS Library Options

The ESP-TLS component has an option to use mbedtls or wolfssl as their underlying SSL/TLS library. By default only mbedtls is available and is used, wolfssl SSL/TLS library is available publicly at https://github.com/espressif/esp-wolfssl. The repository provides wolfssl component in binary format, it also provides few examples which are useful for understanding the API. Please refer the repository README.md for information on licensing and other options. Please see below option for using wolfssl in your project.

Note: *As the library options are internal to ESP-TLS, switching the libries will not change ESP-TLS specific code for a project.*

How to use wolfssl with ESP-IDF

There are two ways to use wolfssl in your project

1) Directly add wolfssl as a component in your project with following three commands.:

```
(First change directory (cd) to your project directory)
mkdir components
cd components
git clone https://github.com/espressif/esp-wolfssl.git
```

2) Add wolfssl as an extra component in your project.

- Download wolfssl with:

```
git clone https://github.com/espressif/esp-wolfssl.git
```

- Include esp-wolfssl in ESP-IDF with setting EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS in CMakeLists.txt/Makefile of your project as done in wolfssl/examples. For reference see Optional Project variables in *build-system*.

After above steps, you will have option to choose wolfssl as underlying SSL/TLS library in configuration menu of your project as follows:

```
idf.py/make menuconfig -> ESP-TLS -> choose SSL/TLS Library -> mbedtls/wolfssl
```

Comparison between mbedtls and wolfssl

The following table shows a typical comparison between wolfssl and mbedtls when protocols/https_request example *(which has server authentication)* was run with both SSL/TLS libraries and with all respective configurations set to default. *(mbedtls IN_CONTENT length and OUT_CONTENT length were set to 16384 bytes and 4096 bytes respectively)*

Property	Wolfssl	Mbedtls
Total Heap Consumed	~19 Kb	~37 Kb
Task Stack Used	~2.2 Kb	~3.6 Kb
Bin size	~858 Kb	~736 Kb

Note: *These values are subject to change with change in configuration options and version of respective libraries.*

Digital Signature with ESP-TLS

ESP-TLS provides support for using the Digital Signature (DS) with ESP32-S2. Use of the DS for TLS is supported only when ESP-TLS is used with mbedTLS (default stack) as its underlying SSL/TLS stack. For more details on Digital Signature, please refer to the *Digital Signature Documentation*. The technical details of Digital Signature such

as how to calculate private key parameters can be found in *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Digital Signature (DS)* [PDF]. The DS peripheral must be configured before it can be used to perform Digital Signature, see *Configure the DS Peripheral* in *Digital Signature*.

The DS peripheral must be initlized with the required encrypted private key parameters (obtained when the DS peripheral is configured). ESP-TLS internally initializes the DS peripheral when provided with the required DS context (DS parameters). Please see the below code snippet for passing the DS context to esp-tls context. The DS context passed to the esp-tls context should not be freed till the TLS connection is deleted.

```
#include "esp_tls.h"
esp_ds_data_ctx_t *ds_ctx;
/* initialize ds_ctx with encrypted private key parameters, which can be read from
↪the nvs or
provided through the application code */
esp_tls_cfg_t cfg = {
    .clientcert_buf = /* the client cert */,
    .clientcert_bytes = /* length of the client cert */,
    /* other configurations options */
    .ds_data = (void *)ds_ctx,
};
```

Note: When using Digital Signature for the TLS connection, along with the other required params, only the client cert (*clientcert_buf*) and the DS params (*ds_data*) are required and the client key (*clientkey_buf*) can be set to NULL.

- An example of mutual authentication with the DS peripheral can be found at ssl mutual auth which internally uses (ESP-TLS) for the TLS connection.

API Reference

Header File

- esp-tls/esp_tls.h

Functions

esp_tls_t ***esp_tls_init**(void)

Create TLS connection.

This function allocates and initializes esp-tls structure handle.

Return tls Pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle if successfully initialized, NULL if allocation error

esp_tls_t ***esp_tls_conn_new**(**const** char **hostname*, int *hostlen*, int *port*, **const** *esp_tls_cfg_t* **cfg*)

Create a new blocking TLS/SSL connection.

This function establishes a TLS/SSL connection with the specified host in blocking manner.

Note: This API is present for backward compatibility reasons. Alternative function with the same functionality is `esp_tls_conn_new_sync` (and its asynchronous version `esp_tls_conn_new_async`)

Return pointer to esp_tls_t, or NULL if connection couldn't be opened.

Parameters

- `[in] hostname`: Hostname of the host.
- `[in] hostlen`: Length of hostname.
- `[in] port`: Port number of the host.
- `[in] cfg`: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. If you wish to open non-TLS connection, keep this NULL. For TLS connection, a pass pointer to esp_tls_cfg_t. At a minimum, this structure should be zero-initialized.

int **esp_tls_conn_new_sync**(**const** char **hostname*, int *hostlen*, int *port*, **const** *esp_tls_cfg_t* **cfg*, *esp_tls_t* **tls*)

Create a new blocking TLS/SSL connection.

This function establishes a TLS/SSL connection with the specified host in blocking manner.

Return
- -1 If connection establishment fails.
- 1 If connection establishment is successful.
- 0 If connection state is in progress.

Parameters
- `[in] hostname`: Hostname of the host.
- `[in] hostlen`: Length of hostname.
- `[in] port`: Port number of the host.
- `[in] cfg`: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. If you wish to open non-TLS connection, keep this NULL. For TLS connection, a pass pointer to esp_tls_cfg_t. At a minimum, this structure should be zero-initialized.
- `[in] tls`: Pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

esp_tls_t ***esp_tls_conn_http_new**(**const** char **url*, **const** *esp_tls_cfg_t* **cfg*)

Create a new blocking TLS/SSL connection with a given "HTTP" url.

The behaviour is same as esp_tls_conn_new() API. However this API accepts host' s url.

Return pointer to esp_tls_t, or NULL if connection couldn' t be opened.

Parameters
- `[in] url`: url of host.
- `[in] cfg`: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. If you wish to open non-TLS connection, keep this NULL. For TLS connection, a pass pointer to 'esp_tls_cfg_t' . At a minimum, this structure should be zero-initialized.

int **esp_tls_conn_new_async**(**const** char **hostname*, int *hostlen*, int *port*, **const** *esp_tls_cfg_t* **cfg*, *esp_tls_t* **tls*)

Create a new non-blocking TLS/SSL connection.

This function initiates a non-blocking TLS/SSL connection with the specified host, but due to its non-blocking nature, it doesn' t wait for the connection to get established.

Return
- -1 If connection establishment fails.
- 0 If connection establishment is in progress.
- 1 If connection establishment is successful.

Parameters
- `[in] hostname`: Hostname of the host.
- `[in] hostlen`: Length of hostname.
- `[in] port`: Port number of the host.
- `[in] cfg`: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t. `non_block` member of this structure should be set to be true.
- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

int **esp_tls_conn_http_new_async**(**const** char **url*, **const** *esp_tls_cfg_t* **cfg*, *esp_tls_t* **tls*)

Create a new non-blocking TLS/SSL connection with a given "HTTP" url.

The behaviour is same as esp_tls_conn_new() API. However this API accepts host' s url.

Return
- -1 If connection establishment fails.
- 0 If connection establishment is in progress.
- 1 If connection establishment is successful.

Parameters
- `[in] url`: url of host.
- `[in] cfg`: TLS configuration as esp_tls_cfg_t.
- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

static ssize_t **esp_tls_conn_write**(*esp_tls_t* **tls*, **const** void **data*, size_t *datalen*)

Write from buffer 'data' into specified tls connection.

Return

- >=0 if write operation was successful, the return value is the number of bytes actually written to the TLS/SSL connection.
- <0 if write operation was not successful, because either an error occured or an action must be taken by the calling process.

Parameters

- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.
- `[in] data`: Buffer from which data will be written.
- `[in] datalen`: Length of data buffer.

static ssize_t **esp_tls_conn_read**(*esp_tls_t* *tls, void *data, size_t datalen)

Read from specified tls connection into the buffer 'data'.

Return

- >0 if read operation was successful, the return value is the number of bytes actually read from the TLS/SSL connection.
- 0 if read operation was not successful. The underlying connection was closed.
- <0 if read operation was not successful, because either an error occured or an action must be taken by the calling process.

Parameters

- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.
- `[in] data`: Buffer to hold read data.
- `[in] datalen`: Length of data buffer.

void **esp_tls_conn_delete**(*esp_tls_t* *tls)

Compatible version of esp_tls_conn_destroy() to close the TLS/SSL connection.

Note This API will be removed in IDFv5.0

Parameters

- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

int **esp_tls_conn_destroy**(*esp_tls_t* *tls)

Close the TLS/SSL connection and free any allocated resources.

This function should be called to close each tls connection opened with esp_tls_conn_new() or esp_tls_conn_http_new() APIs.

Return - 0 on success

- -1 if socket error or an invalid argument

Parameters

- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

ssize_t **esp_tls_get_bytes_avail**(*esp_tls_t* *tls)

Return the number of application data bytes remaining to be read from the current record.

This API is a wrapper over mbedtls' s mbedtls_ssl_get_bytes_avail() API.

Return

- -1 in case of invalid arg
- bytes available in the application data record read buffer

Parameters

- `[in] tls`: pointer to esp-tls as esp-tls handle.

esp_err_t **esp_tls_get_conn_sockfd**(*esp_tls_t* *tls, int *sockfd)

Returns the connection socket file descriptor from *esp_tls* session.

Return - ESP_OK on success and value of sockfd will be updated with socket file descriptor for connection

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if (tls == NULL || sockfd == NULL)

Parameters

- `[in] tls`: handle to *esp_tls* context
- `[out] sockfd`: int pointer to sockfd value.

esp_err_t **esp_tls_init_global_ca_store**(void)

Create a global CA store, initially empty.

This function should be called if the application wants to use the same CA store for multiple connections. This function initialises the global CA store which can be then set by calling esp_tls_set_global_ca_store(). To be effective, this function must be called before any call to esp_tls_set_global_ca_store().

Return

- ESP_OK if creating global CA store was successful.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if an error occured when allocating the mbedTLS resources.

esp_err_t **esp_tls_set_global_ca_store**(**const** unsigned char **cacert_pem_buf*, **const** unsigned int *cacert_pem_bytes*)

Set the global CA store with the buffer provided in pem format.

This function should be called if the application wants to set the global CA store for multiple connections i.e. to add the certificates in the provided buffer to the certificate chain. This function implicitly calls esp_tls_init_global_ca_store() if it has not already been called. The application must call this function before calling esp_tls_conn_new().

Return

- ESP_OK if adding certificates was successful.
- Other if an error occured or an action must be taken by the calling process.

Parameters

- `[in] cacert_pem_buf`: Buffer which has certificates in pem format. This buffer is used for creating a global CA store, which can be used by other tls connections.
- `[in] cacert_pem_bytes`: Length of the buffer.

void **esp_tls_free_global_ca_store**(void)

Free the global CA store currently being used.

The memory being used by the global CA store to store all the parsed certificates is freed up. The application can call this API if it no longer needs the global CA store.

esp_err_t **esp_tls_get_and_clear_last_error**(esp_tls_error_handle_t *h*, int **esp_tls_code*, int **esp_tls_flags*)

Returns last error in *esp_tls* with detailed mbedtls related error codes. The error information is cleared internally upon return.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if invalid parameters
- ESP_OK (0) if no error occurred
- specific error code (based on ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_BASE) otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] h`: esp-tls error handle.
- `[out] esp_tls_code`: last error code returned from mbedtls api (set to zero if none) This pointer could be NULL if caller does not care about esp_tls_code
- `[out] esp_tls_flags`: last certification verification flags (set to zero if none) This pointer could be NULL if caller does not care about esp_tls_code

esp_err_t **esp_tls_get_and_clear_error_type**(esp_tls_error_handle_t *h*, esp_tls_error_type_t *err_type*, int **error_code*)

Returns the last error captured in *esp_tls* of a specific type The error information is cleared internally upon return.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if invalid parameters
- ESP_OK if a valid error returned and was cleared

Parameters

- `[in] h`: esp-tls error handle.
- `[in] err_type`: specific error type
- `[out] error_code`: last error code returned from mbedtls api (set to zero if none) This pointer could be NULL if caller does not care about esp_tls_code

mbedtls_x509_crt ***esp_tls_get_global_ca_store**(void)

Get the pointer to the global CA store currently being used.

The application must first call esp_tls_set_global_ca_store(). Then the same CA store could be used by the application for APIs other than *esp_tls*.

Note Modifying the pointer might cause a failure in verifying the certificates.

Return

- Pointer to the global CA store currently being used if successful.
- NULL if there is no global CA store set.

Structures

struct psk_key_hint

ESP-TLS preshared key and hint structure.

Public Members

const uint8_t ***key**

key in PSK authentication mode in binary format

const size_t **key_size**

length of the key

const char ***hint**

hint in PSK authentication mode in string format

struct tls_keep_alive_cfg

Keep alive parameters structure.

Public Members

bool **keep_alive_enable**

Enable keep-alive timeout

int **keep_alive_idle**

Keep-alive idle time (second)

int **keep_alive_interval**

Keep-alive interval time (second)

int **keep_alive_count**

Keep-alive packet retry send count

struct esp_tls_cfg

ESP-TLS configuration parameters.

Note Note about format of certificates:

- This structure includes certificates of a Certificate Authority, of client or server as well as private keys, which may be of PEM or DER format. In case of PEM format, the buffer must be NULL terminated (with NULL character included in certificate size).
- Certificate Authority’ s certificate may be a chain of certificates in case of PEM format, but could be only one certificate in case of DER format
- Variables names of certificates and private key buffers and sizes are defined as unions providing backward compatibility for legacy *_pem_buf and *_pem_bytes names which suggested only PEM format was supported. It is encouraged to use generic names such as cacert_buf and cacert_bytes.

Public Members

const char ****alpn_protos**

Application protocols required for HTTP2. If HTTP2/ALPN support is required, a list of protocols that should be negotiated. The format is length followed by protocol name. For the most common cases the following is ok: const char **alpn_protos = { “h2”, NULL };

- where ‘h2’ is the protocol name

const unsigned char ***cacert_buf**
Certificate Authority's certificate in a buffer. Format may be PEM or DER, depending on mbedtls-support This buffer should be NULL terminated in case of PEM

const unsigned char ***cacert_pem_buf**
CA certificate buffer legacy name

unsigned int **cacert_bytes**
Size of Certificate Authority certificate pointed to by cacert_buf (including NULL-terminator in case of PEM format)

unsigned int **cacert_pem_bytes**
Size of Certificate Authority certificate legacy name

const unsigned char ***clientcert_buf**
Client certificate in a buffer Format may be PEM or DER, depending on mbedtls-support This buffer should be NULL terminated in case of PEM

const unsigned char ***clientcert_pem_buf**
Client certificate legacy name

unsigned int **clientcert_bytes**
Size of client certificate pointed to by clientcert_pem_buf (including NULL-terminator in case of PEM format)

unsigned int **clientcert_pem_bytes**
Size of client certificate legacy name

const unsigned char ***clientkey_buf**
Client key in a buffer Format may be PEM or DER, depending on mbedtls-support This buffer should be NULL terminated in case of PEM

const unsigned char ***clientkey_pem_buf**
Client key legacy name

unsigned int **clientkey_bytes**
Size of client key pointed to by clientkey_pem_buf (including NULL-terminator in case of PEM format)

unsigned int **clientkey_pem_bytes**
Size of client key legacy name

const unsigned char ***clientkey_password**
Client key decryption password string

unsigned int **clientkey_password_len**
String length of the password pointed to by clientkey_password

bool **non_block**
Configure non-blocking mode. If set to true the underneath socket will be configured in non blocking mode after tls session is established

bool **use_secure_element**
Enable this option to use secure element or atecc608a chip (Integrated with ESP32-WROOM-32SE)

int **timeout_ms**
Network timeout in milliseconds

bool **use_global_ca_store**
Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

const char ***common_name**
If non-NULL, server certificate CN must match this name. If NULL, server certificate CN must match hostname.

bool **skip_common_name**
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field

tls_keep_alive_cfg_t ***keep_alive_cfg**
Enable TCP keep-alive timeout for SSL connection

const *psk_hint_key_t* ***psk_hint_key**
Pointer to PSK hint and key. if not NULL (and certificates are NULL) then PSK authentication is enabled with configured setup. Important note: the pointer must be valid for connection

esp_err_t (***crt_bundle_attach**)(void *conf)
Function pointer to esp_crt_bundle_attach. Enables the use of certification bundle for server verification, must be enabled in menuconfig

void ***ds_data**
Pointer for digital signature peripheral context

bool **is_plain_tcp**
Use non-TLS connection: When set to true, the esp-tls uses plain TCP transport rather then TLS/SSL connection

struct ifreq ***if_name**
The name of interface for data to go through. Use the default interface without setting

struct esp_tls
ESP-TLS Connection Handle.

Public Members

mbedtls_ssl_context **ssl**
TLS/SSL context

mbedtls_entropy_context **entropy**
mbedTLS entropy context structure

mbedtls_ctr_drbg_context **ctr_drbg**
mbedTLS ctr drbg context structure. CTR_DRBG is deterministic random bit generation based on AES-256

mbedtls_ssl_config **conf**
TLS/SSL configuration to be shared between mbedtls_ssl_context structures

mbedtls_net_context **server_fd**
mbedTLS wrapper type for sockets

mbedtls_x509_crt **cacert**
Container for the X.509 CA certificate

mbedtls_x509_crt ***cacert_ptr**
Pointer to the cacert being used.

mbedtls_x509_crt **clientcert**
Container for the X.509 client certificate

mbedtls_pk_context **clientkey**
Container for the private key of the client certificate

int **sockfd**
Underlying socket file descriptor.

ssize_t (***read**)(**struct** *esp_tls* *tls, char *data, size_t datalen)
Callback function for reading data from TLS/SSL connection.

ssize_t (***write**)(**struct** *esp_tls* *tls, **const** char *data, size_t datalen)
Callback function for writing data to TLS/SSL connection.

esp_tls_conn_state_t **conn_state**
ESP-TLS Connection state

fd_set **rset**
: read file descriptors

fd_set **wset**
: write file descriptors

bool **is_tls**
: indicates connection type (TLS or NON-TLS)

esp_tls_role_t **role**
: esp-tls role

  - ESP_TLS_CLIENT
  - ESP_TLS_SERVER

esp_tls_error_handle_t **error_handle**
: handle to error descriptor

Type Definitions

typedef enum *esp_tls_conn_state* **esp_tls_conn_state_t**
: ESP-TLS Connection State.

typedef enum *esp_tls_role* **esp_tls_role_t**

typedef struct *psk_key_hint* **psk_hint_key_t**
: ESP-TLS preshared key and hint structure.

typedef struct *tls_keep_alive_cfg* **tls_keep_alive_cfg_t**
: Keep alive parameters structure.

typedef struct *esp_tls_cfg* **esp_tls_cfg_t**
: ESP-TLS configuration parameters.

  Note Note about format of certificates:
  - This structure includes certificates of a Certificate Authority, of client or server as well as private keys, which may be of PEM or DER format. In case of PEM format, the buffer must be NULL terminated (with NULL character included in certificate size).
  - Certificate Authority' s certificate may be a chain of certificates in case of PEM format, but could be only one certificate in case of DER format
  - Variables names of certificates and private key buffers and sizes are defined as unions providing backward compatibility for legacy *_pem_buf and *_pem_bytes names which suggested only PEM format was supported. It is encouraged to use generic names such as cacert_buf and cacert_bytes.

typedef struct *esp_tls* **esp_tls_t**
: ESP-TLS Connection Handle.

Enumerations

enum esp_tls_conn_state
: ESP-TLS Connection State.

  Values:

  ESP_TLS_INIT = 0

  ESP_TLS_CONNECTING

  ESP_TLS_HANDSHAKE

  ESP_TLS_FAIL

  ESP_TLS_DONE

enum esp_tls_role
: *Values:*

  ESP_TLS_CLIENT = 0

  ESP_TLS_SERVER

2.3.4 OpenSSL-APIs

The code of this API (located in openssl directory), does not contain OpenSSL itself but is intended as a wrapper for applications using the OpenSSL API. It uses mbedTLS to do the actual work, so anyone compiling openssl code needs the mbedtls library and header file.

OpenSSL APIs not mentioned in this article are not open to public for the time, also do not have the corresponding function. If user calls it directly, it will always return an error or may show cannot link at compiling time.

Chapter Introduction

- Chapter 1. SSL Context Method Create
- Chapter 2. SSL Context Function
- Chapter 3. SSL Function
- Chapter 4. SSL X509 Certification and Private Key Function

Chapter 1. SSL Context Method Create

1.1 const SSL_METHOD* `SSLv3_client_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
SSLV3.0 version SSL context client method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = SSLv3_client_method();

    ...
}
```

1.2 const SSL_METHOD* `TLSv1_client_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.0 version SSL context client method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_client_method();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    ...
}
```

1.3 const SSL_METHOD* `TLSv1_1_client_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.1 version SSL context client method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_1_client_method();

    ...
}
```

1.4 const SSL_METHOD* `TLSv1_2_client_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.2 version SSL context client method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_client_method();

    ...
}
```

1.5 const SSL_METHOD* `TLS_client_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.2 version SSL context client method point
```

Description:

```
create the default SSL context method, it's always to be TLSV1.2
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_client_method();

    ...
}
```

1.6 const SSL_METHOD* `SSLv3_server_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
SSLV3.0 version SSL context server method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = SSLv3_server_method();

    ...
}
```

1.7 const SSL_METHOD* `TLSv1_server_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.0 version SSL context server method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_server_method();

    ...
}
```

1.8 const SSL_METHOD* `TLSv1_1_server_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.1 version SSL context server method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_1_server_method();

    ...
}
```

1.9 const SSL_METHOD* `TLSv1_2_server_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.2 version SSL context server method point
```

Description:

```
create the target SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_server_method();

    ...
}
```

1.10 const SSL_METHOD* `TLS_server_method` (void)

Arguments:

```
none
```

Return:

```
TLSV1.2 version SSL context server method point
```

Description:

```
create the default SSL context method, it's always to be TLSV1.2
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method = TLSv1_2_server_method();

    ...
}
```

Chapter 2. SSL Context Function

2.1 SSL_CTX* `SSL_CTX_new` (const SSL_METHOD * method)

Arguments:

```
method - the SSL context method point
```

Return:

```
context point
```

Description:

```
create a SSL context
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL_CTX *ctx = SSL_CTX_new(SSLv3_server_method());

    ...
}
```

2.2 `void SSL_CTX_free` (SSL_CTX * ctx)

Arguments:

```
ctx - the SSL context point
```

Return:

```
none
```

Description:

```
free a SSL context
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL_CTX *ctx;

    ... ...

    SSL_CTX_free(ctx);
}
```

2.3 `int SSL_CTX_set_ssl_version` (SSL_CTX * ctx, const SSL_METHOD * meth)

Arguments:

```
ctx  - SSL context point
meth - SSL method point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
set the SSL context version
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const SSL_METHOD *meth;

    ... ...

    SSL_CTX_set_ssl_version(ctx, meth);
}
```

2.4 const SSL_METHOD* `SSL_CTX_get_ssl_method` (SSL_CTX * ctx)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
```

Return:

```
SSL context method
```

Description:

```
get the SSL context method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    const SSL_METHOD *method;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;

    ... ...

    method = SSL_CTX_get_ssl_method(ctx);
}
```

Chapter 3. SSL Function

3.1 SSL* `SSL_new` (SSL_CTX * ctx)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
```

Return:

```
SSL method
```

Description:

```
create a SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    SSL_CTX *ctx;

    ... ...

    ssl = SSL_new(ctx);
}
```

3.2 void `SSL_free` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
none
```

Description:

```
free SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    SSL_free(ssl);
}
```

3.3 int `SSL_do_handshake` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
 1 : OK
 0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
perform the SSL handshake
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_do_handshake(ssl);
}
```

3.4 int `SSL_connect` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
 1 : OK
 0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
connect to the remote SSL server
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_connect(ssl);
}
```

3.5 int `SSL_accept` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
 1 : OK
 0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
accept the remote connection
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_accept(ssl);
}
```

3.6 int `SSL_shutdown` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
 1 : OK
 0 : failed, connect is close by remote
-1 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
shutdown the connection
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_shutdown(ssl);
}
```

3.7 int `SSL_clear` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
shutdown the connection
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_clear(ssl);
}
```

3.8 int `SSL_read` (SSL * ssl, void * buffer, int len)

Arguments:

```
ssl    - point
buffer - data buffer point
len    - data length
```

Return:

```
> 0 : OK, and return received data bytes
= 0 : no data received or connection is closed
< 0 : an error catch
```

Description:

```
read data from remote
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *buf;
    int len;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_read(ssl, buf, len);
}
```

3.9 int `SSL_write` (SSL * ssl, const void * buffer, int len)

Arguments:

```
ssl    - SSL point
buffer - data buffer point
len    - data length
```

Return:

```
> 0 : OK, and return received data bytes
= 0 : no data sent or connection is closed
< 0 : an error catch
```

Description:

```
send the data to remote
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *buf;
    int len;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_write(ssl, buf, len);
}
```

3.10 `SSL_CTX *SSL_get_SSL_CTX` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
SSL context
```

Description:

```
get SSL context of the SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    SSL *ssl;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;

    ... ...

    ctx = SSL_get_SSL_CTX(ssl);
}
```

3.11 int `SSL_get_shutdown` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
shutdown mode
```

Description:

```
get SSL shutdown mode
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int mode;

    ... ...

    mode = SSL_get_SSL_CTX(ssl);
}
```

3.12 void `SSL_set_shutdown` (SSL * ssl, int mode)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
shutdown mode
```

Description:

```
set SSL shutdown mode
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int mode = 0;

    ... ...

    SSL_set_shutdown(ssl, mode);
}
```

3.13 const SSL_METHOD* `SSL_get_ssl_method` (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
SSL method
```

Description:

```
set SSL shutdown mode
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    const SSL_METHOD *method;

    ... ...

    method = SSL_get_ssl_method(ssl);
}
```

3.14 int `SSL_set_ssl_method` (SSL * ssl, const SSL_METHOD * method)

Arguments:

```
ssl  - SSL point
meth - SSL method point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
set the SSL method
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    const SSL_METHOD *method;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_set_ssl_method(ssl, method);
}
```

3.15 int `SSL_pending` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
data bytes
```

Description:

```
get received data bytes
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_pending(ssl);
}
```

3.16 int `SSL_has_pending` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
1 : Yes
0 : No
```

Description:

```
check if data is received
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_has_pending(ssl);
}
```

3.17 int `SSL_get_fd` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
>= 0 : socket id
 < 0 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
get the socket of the SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    ... ...

    ret = SSL_get_fd(ssl);
}
```

3.18 int SSL_get_rfd (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
>= 0 : socket id
 < 0 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
get the read only socket of the SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_get_rfd(ssl);
}
```

3.19 int SSL_get_wfd (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
>= 0 : socket id
 < 0 : a error catch
```

Description:

```
get the write only socket of the SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_get_wfd(ssl);
}
```

3.20 int SSL_set_fd (SSL * ssl, int fd)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
fd  - socket id
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
set socket to SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    int socket;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_set_fd(ssl, socket);
}
```

3.21 int SSL_set_rfd (SSL * ssl, int fd)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
fd  - socket id
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
set read only socket to SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    int socket;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_set_rfd(ssl, socket);
}
```

3.22 int SSL_set_wfd (SSL * ssl, int fd)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
fd  - socket id
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
set write only socket to SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    int socket;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_set_wfd(ssl, socket);
}
```

3.23 int `SSL_version` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
SSL version
```

Description:

```
get SSL version
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int version;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    version = SSL_version(ssl);
}
```

3.24 const char* `SSL_get_version` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
SSL version string
```

Description:

```
get the SSL current version string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    char *version;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    version = SSL_get_version(ssl);
}
```

3.25 OSSL_HANDSHAKE_STATE `SSL_get_state` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
SSL state
```

Description:

```
get the SSL state
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    OSSL_HANDSHAKE_STATE state;
    SSL *ssl;

    ... ...

    state = SSL_get_state(ssl);
}
```

3.26 const char* `SSL_alert_desc_string` (int value)

Arguments:

```
value - SSL description
```

Return:

```
alert value string
```

Description:

```
get alert description string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_alert_desc_string(val);
}
```

3.27 const char* `SSL_alert_desc_string_long` (int value)

Arguments:

```
value - SSL description
```

Return:

```
alert value long string
```

Description:

```
get alert description long string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_alert_desc_string_long(val);
}
```

3.28 const char* `SSL_alert_type_string` (int value)

Arguments:

```
value - SSL type description
```

Return:

```
alert type string
```

Description:

```
get alert type string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_alert_type_string(val);
}
```

3.29 const char* `SSL_alert_type_string_long` (int value)

Arguments:

```
value - SSL type description
```

Return:

```
alert type long string
```

Description:

```
get alert type long string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int val;
    char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_alert_type_string_long(val);
}
```

3.30 const char* SSL_rstate_string (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
state string
```

Description:

```
get the state string where SSL is reading
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_rstate_string(ssl);
}
```

3.31 const char* SSL_rstate_string_long (SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
state long string
```

Description:

```
get the state long string where SSL is reading
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *str;

    ... ...
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    str = SSL_rstate_string_long(ssl);
}
```

3.32 const char* `SSL_state_string` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
state string
```

Description:

```
get the state string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    const char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_state_string(ssl);
}
```

3.33 char* `SSL_state_string_long` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
state long string
```

Description:

```
get the state long string
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    char *str;

    ... ...

    str = SSL_state_string(ssl);
}
```

3.34 int `SSL_get_error` (const SSL * ssl, int ret_code)

Arguments:

```
ssl      - SSL point
ret_code - SSL return code
```

Return:

```
SSL error number
```

Description:

```
get SSL error code
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;
    int err;

    ... ...

    err = SSL_get_error(ssl, ret);
}
```

3.35 int SSL_want (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
specifical statement
```

Description:

```
get the SSL specifical statement
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int state;

    ... ...

    state = SSL_want(ssl);
}
```

3.36 int SSL_want_nothing (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
0 : false
1 : true
```

Description:

```
check if SSL want nothing
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_want(ssl);
}
```

3.37 int SSL_want_read (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
0 : false
1 : true
```

Description:

```
check if SSL want to read
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_want_read(ssl);
}
```

3.38 int SSL_want_write (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
0 : false
1 : true
```

Description:

```
check if SSL want to write
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    int ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_want_write(ssl);
}
```

Chapter 4. SSL X509 Certification and Private Key Function

4.1 X509 * d2i_X509 (X509 ** cert, const unsigned char * buffer, long len)

Arguments:

```
cert   - a point pointed to X509 certification
buffer - a point pointed to the certification context memory point
length - certification bytes
```

Return:

```
X509 certification object point
```

Description:

```
load a character certification context into system context. If '*cert' is␣
↪pointed to the
certification, then load certification into it. Or create a new X509␣
↪certification object
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    X509 *new;
    X509 *cert;
    unsigned char *buffer;
    long len;
    ... ...

    new = d2i_X509(&cert, buffer, len);
}
```

4.2 int SSL_add_client_CA (SSL * ssl, X509 * x)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
x   - CA certification point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
add CA client certification into the SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    X509 *new;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_add_client_CA(ssl, new);
}
```

4.3 int SSL_CTX_add_client_CA (SSL_CTX * ctx, X509 * x)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
 x   - CA certification point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
add CA client certification into the SSL context
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    X509 *new;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_add_clSSL_CTX_add_client_CAient_CA(ctx, new);
}
```

4.4 X509* `SSL_get_certificate` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
SSL certification point
```

Description:

```
get the SSL certification point
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    X509 *cert;

    ... ...

    cert = SSL_get_certificate(ssl);
}
```

4.5 long `SSL_get_verify_result` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
the result of verifying
```

Description:

```
get the verifying result of the SSL certification
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    long ret;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_get_verify_result(ssl);
}
```

4.6 int `SSL_CTX_use_certificate` (SSL_CTX * ctx, X509 * x)

Arguments:

```
ctx  - the SSL context point
pkey - certification object point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
load the certification into the SSL_CTX or SSL object
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx
    X509 *new;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_CTX_use_certificate(ctx, new);
}
```

4.7 int `SSL_CTX_use_certificate_ASN1` (SSL_CTX * ctx, int len, const unsigned char * d)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
len - certification length
d   - data point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
load the ASN1 certification into SSL context
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    int len;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_CTX_use_certificate_ASN1(ctx, len, buf);
}
```

4.8 int `SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey` (SSL_CTX * ctx, EVP_PKEY * pkey)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
pkey - private key object point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
load the private key into the context object
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    EVP_PKEY *pkey;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey(ctx, pkey);
}
```

4.9 int `SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey_ASN1` (int pk, SSL_CTX * ctx, const unsigned char * d, long len)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
d   - data point
len - private key length
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
load the ASN1 private key into SSL context
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    int ret;
    int pk;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    long len;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_CTX_use_PrivateKey_ASN1(pk, ctx, buf, len);
}
```

4.10 int `SSL_CTX_use_RSAPrivateKey_ASN1` (SSL_CTX * ctx, const unsigned char * d, long len)

Arguments:

```
ctx - SSL context point
d   - data point
len - private key length
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
load the RSA ASN1 private key into SSL context
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL_CTX *ctx;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    long len;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_CTX_use_RSAPrivateKey_ASN1(ctx, buf, len);
}
```

4.11 int `SSL_use_certificate_ASN1` (SSL * ssl, int len, const unsigned char * d)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
len - data bytes
d   - data point
```

Return:

```
1 : OK
0 : failed
```

Description:

```
load certification into the SSL
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    int ret;
    SSL *ssl;
    const unsigned char *buf;
    long len;

    ... ...

    ret = SSL_use_certificate_ASN1(ssl, len, buf);
}
```

4.12 X509* `SSL_get_peer_certificate` (const SSL * ssl)

Arguments:

```
ssl - SSL point
```

Return:

```
peer certification
```

Description:

```
get peer certification
```

Example:

```
void example(void)
{
    SSL *ssl;
    X509 *peer;

    ... ...

    peer = SSL_get_peer_certificate(ssl);
}
```

2.3.5 ESP HTTP Client

Overview

`esp_http_client` provides an API for making HTTP/S requests from ESP-IDF programs. The steps to use this API for an HTTP request are:

- *`esp_http_client_init()`*: To use the HTTP client, the first thing we must do is create an `esp_http_client` by pass into this function with the *`esp_http_client_config_t`* configurations. Which configuration values we do not define, the library will use default.
- *`esp_http_client_perform()`*: The `esp_http_client` argument created from the init function is needed. This function performs all operations of the esp_http_client, from opening the connection, sending data, downloading data and closing the connection if necessary. All related events will be invoked in the event_handle (defined by *`esp_http_client_config_t`*). This function performs its job and blocks the current task until it's done
- *`esp_http_client_cleanup()`*: After completing our **esp_http_client's** task, this is the last function to be called. It will close the connection (if any) and free up all the memory allocated to the HTTP client

Application Example

```
esp_err_t _http_event_handle(esp_http_client_event_t *evt)
{
    switch(evt->event_id) {
        case HTTP_EVENT_ERROR:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ERROR");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER");
            printf("%.*s", evt->data_len, (char*)evt->data);
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA, len=%d", evt->data_len);
            if (!esp_http_client_is_chunked_response(evt->client)) {
                printf("%.*s", evt->data_len, (char*)evt->data);
            }

            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH");
            break;
        case HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED:
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED");
            break;
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}

esp_http_client_config_t config = {
   .url = "http://httpbin.org/redirect/2",
   .event_handler = _http_event_handle,
};
esp_http_client_handle_t client = esp_http_client_init(&config);
esp_err_t err = esp_http_client_perform(client);

if (err == ESP_OK) {
   ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Status = %d, content_length = %d",
           esp_http_client_get_status_code(client),
           esp_http_client_get_content_length(client));
}
esp_http_client_cleanup(client);
```

Persistent Connections

Persistent connections means that the HTTP client can re-use the same connection for several transfers. If the server does not request to close the connection with the `Connection: close` header, the new transfer with sample ip address, port, and protocol.

To allow the HTTP client to take full advantage of persistent connections, you should do as many of your file transfers as possible using the same handle.

Persistent Connections example

```
esp_err_t err;
esp_http_client_config_t config = {
    .url = "http://httpbin.org/get",
};
esp_http_client_handle_t client = esp_http_client_init(&config);
// first request
err = esp_http_client_perform(client);

// second request
esp_http_client_set_url(client, "http://httpbin.org/anything")
esp_http_client_set_method(client, HTTP_METHOD_DELETE);
esp_http_client_set_header(client, "HeaderKey", "HeaderValue");
err = esp_http_client_perform(client);

esp_http_client_cleanup(client);
```

HTTPS

The HTTP client supports SSL connections using **mbedtls**, with the **url** configuration starting with `https` scheme (or `transport_type = HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL`). HTTPS support can be configured via *CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_HTTPS* (enabled by default).

Note: By providing information using HTTPS, the library will use the SSL transport type to connect to the server. If you want to verify server, then need to provide additional certificate in PEM format, and provide to `cert_pem` in `esp_http_client_config_t`

HTTPS example

```
static void https()
{
    esp_http_client_config_t config = {
        .url = "https://www.howsmyssl.com",
        .cert_pem = howsmyssl_com_root_cert_pem_start,
    };
    esp_http_client_handle_t client = esp_http_client_init(&config);
    esp_err_t err = esp_http_client_perform(client);

    if (err == ESP_OK) {
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Status = %d, content_length = %d",
                esp_http_client_get_status_code(client),
                esp_http_client_get_content_length(client));
    }
    esp_http_client_cleanup(client);
}
```

HTTP Stream

Some applications need to open the connection and control the reading of the data in an active manner. the HTTP client supports some functions to make this easier, of course, once you use these functions you should not use the *esp_http_client_perform()* function with that handle, and *esp_http_client_init()* alway to called first to get the handle. Perform that functions in the order below:

- *esp_http_client_init()*: to create and handle
- `esp_http_client_set_*` or `esp_http_client_delete_*`: to modify the http connection information (optional)
- *esp_http_client_open()*: Open the http connection with `write_len` parameter, `write_len=0` if we only need read

- *esp_http_client_write()*: Upload data, max length equal to `write_len` of *esp_http_client_open()* function. We may not need to call it if `write_len=0`
- *esp_http_client_fetch_headers()*: After sending the headers and write data (if any) to the server, this function will read the HTTP Server response headers. Calling this function will return the `content-length` from the Server, and we can call *esp_http_client_get_status_code()* for the HTTP status of the connection.
- *esp_http_client_read()*: Now, we can read the HTTP stream by this function.
- *esp_http_client_close()*: We should the connection after finish
- *esp_http_client_cleanup()*: And release the resources

Perform HTTP request as Stream reader Check the example function `http_perform_as_stream_reader` at protocols/esp_http_client.

HTTP Authentication

The HTTP client supports both **Basic** and **Digest** Authentication. By providing usernames and passwords in `url` or in the `username`, `password` of config entry. And with `auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC`, the HTTP client takes only 1 perform to pass the authentication process. If `auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_NONE`, but there are `username` and `password` in the configuration, the HTTP client takes 2 performs. The first time it connects to the server and receives the UNAUTHORIZED header. Based on this information, it will know which authentication method to choose, and perform it on the second.

Config authentication example with URI

```
esp_http_client_config_t config = {
    .url = "http://user:passwd@httpbin.org/basic-auth/user/passwd",
    .auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC,
};
```

Config authentication example with username, password entry

```
esp_http_client_config_t config = {
    .url = "http://httpbin.org/basic-auth/user/passwd",
    .username = "user",
    .password = "passwd",
    .auth_type = HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC,
};
```

HTTP Client example: protocols/esp_http_client.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_http_client/include/esp_http_client.h

Functions

esp_http_client_handle_t **esp_http_client_init**(**const** *esp_http_client_config_t* **config*)

Start a HTTP session This function must be the first function to call, and it returns a esp_http_client_handle_t that you must use as input to other functions in the interface. This call MUST have a corresponding call to esp_http_client_cleanup when the operation is complete.

Return

- `esp_http_client_handle_t`
- NULL if any errors

Parameters

- `[in] config`: The configurations, see `http_client_config_t`

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_perform** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Invoke this function after `esp_http_client_init` and all the options calls are made, and will perform the transfer as described in the options. It must be called with the same esp_http_client_handle_t as input as the esp_http_client_init call returned. esp_http_client_perform performs the entire request in either blocking or non-blocking manner. By default, the API performs request in a blocking manner and returns when done, or if it failed, and in non-blocking manner, it returns if EAGAIN/EWOULDBLOCK or EINPROGRESS is encountered, or if it failed. And in case of non-blocking request, the user may call this API multiple times unless request & response is complete or there is a failure. To enable non-blocking esp_http_client_perform(), `is_async` member of *esp_http_client_config_t* must be set while making a call to esp_http_client_init() API. You can do any amount of calls to esp_http_client_perform while using the same esp_http_client_handle_t. The underlying connection may be kept open if the server allows it. If you intend to transfer more than one file, you are even encouraged to do so. esp_http_client will then attempt to re-use the same connection for the following transfers, thus making the operations faster, less CPU intense and using less network resources. Just note that you will have to use `esp_http_client_set_**` between the invokes to set options for the following esp_http_client_perform.

Note You must never call this function simultaneously from two places using the same client handle. Let the function return first before invoking it another time. If you want parallel transfers, you must use several esp_http_client_handle_t. This function include `esp_http_client_open` -> `esp_http_client_write` -> `esp_http_client_fetch_headers` -> `esp_http_client_read` (and option) `esp_http_client_close`.

Return

- ESP_OK on successful
- ESP_FAIL on error

Parameters

- `client`: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_url** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **url*)

Set URL for client, when performing this behavior, the options in the URL will replace the old ones.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] url`: The url

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_post_field** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **data*, int *len*)

Set post data, this function must be called before `esp_http_client_perform`. Note: The data parameter passed to this function is a pointer and this function will not copy the data.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] data`: post data pointer
- `[in] len`: post length

int **esp_http_client_get_post_field** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char ***data*)

Get current post field information.

Return Size of post data

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The client
- `[out] data`: Point to post data pointer

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_header** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **key*, **const** char **value*)

Set http request header, this function must be called after esp_http_client_init and before any perform function.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] key`: The header key
- `[in] value`: The header value

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_get_header**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **key*, char ***value*)

Get http request header. The value parameter will be set to NULL if there is no header which is same as the key specified, otherwise the address of header value will be assigned to value parameter. This function must be called after `esp_http_client_init`.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] key`: The header key
- `[out] value`: The header value

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_get_username**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char ***value*)

Get http request username. The address of username buffer will be assigned to value parameter. This function must be called after `esp_http_client_init`.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[out] value`: The username value

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_username**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **username*)

Set http request username. The value of username parameter will be assigned to username buffer. If the username parameter is NULL then username buffer will be freed.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] username`: The username value

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_get_password**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char ***value*)

Get http request password. The address of password buffer will be assigned to value parameter. This function must be called after `esp_http_client_init`.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[out] value`: The password value

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_password**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char **password*)

Set http request password. The value of password parameter will be assigned to password buffer. If the password parameter is NULL then password buffer will be freed.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

- `[in] password`: The password value

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_authtype**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, *esp_http_client_auth_type_t auth_type*)

Set http request auth_type.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] auth_type`: The esp_http_client auth type

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_method**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, *esp_http_client_method_t method*)

Set http request method.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] method`: The method

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_delete_header**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char ***key*)

Delete http request header.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] key`: The key

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_open**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, int *write_len*)

This function will be open the connection, write all header strings and return.

Return
- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[in] write_len`: HTTP Content length need to write to the server

int **esp_http_client_write**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, **const** char ***buffer*, int *len*)

This function will write data to the HTTP connection previously opened by esp_http_client_open()

Return
- (-1) if any errors
- Length of data written

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `buffer`: The buffer
- `[in] len`: This value must not be larger than the write_len parameter provided to esp_http_client_open()

int **esp_http_client_fetch_headers**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

This function need to call after esp_http_client_open, it will read from http stream, process all receive headers.

Return
- (0) if stream doesn' t contain content-length header, or chunked encoding (checked by `esp_http_client_is_chunked` response)
- (-1: ESP_FAIL) if any errors
- Download data length defined by content-length header

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

bool **esp_http_client_is_chunked_response**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Check response data is chunked.

Return true or false

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

int **esp_http_client_read**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char **buffer*, int *len*)

Read data from http stream.

Return

- (-1) if any errors
- Length of data was read

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `buffer`: The buffer
- `[in] len`: The length

int **esp_http_client_get_status_code**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Get http response status code, the valid value if this function invoke after `esp_http_client_perform`

Return Status code

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

int **esp_http_client_get_content_length**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Get http response content length (from header Content-Length) the valid value if this function invoke after `esp_http_client_perform`

Return

- (-1) Chunked transfer
- Content-Length value as bytes

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_close**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Close http connection, still kept all http request resources.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_cleanup**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

This function must be the last function to call for an session. It is the opposite of the esp_http_client_init function and must be called with the same handle as input that a esp_http_client_init call returned. This might close all connections this handle has used and possibly has kept open until now. Don't call this function if you intend to transfer more files, re-using handles is a key to good performance with esp_http_client.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

esp_http_client_transport_t **esp_http_client_get_transport_type**(*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Get transport type.

Return

- HTTP_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN

- HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
- HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_set_redirection** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Set redirection URL. When received the 30x code from the server, the client stores the redirect URL provided by the server. This function will set the current URL to redirect to enable client to execute the redirection request.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

void **esp_http_client_add_auth** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

On receiving HTTP Status code 401, this API can be invoked to add authorization information.

Note There is a possibility of receiving body message with redirection status codes, thus make sure to flush off body data after calling this API.

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

bool **esp_http_client_is_complete_data_received** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*)

Checks if entire data in the response has been read without any error.

Return

- true
- false

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle

int **esp_http_client_read_response** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char **buffer*, int *len*)

Helper API to read larger data chunks This is a helper API which internally calls `esp_http_client_read` multiple times till the end of data is reached or till the buffer gets full.

Return

- Length of data was read

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `buffer`: The buffer
- `[in] len`: The buffer length

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_flush_response** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, int **len*)

Process all remaining response data This uses an internal buffer to repeatedly receive, parse, and discard response data until complete data is processed. As no additional user-supplied buffer is required, this may be preferrable to `esp_http_client_read_response` in situations where the content of the response may be ignored.

Return

- ESP_OK If successful, len will have discarded length
- ESP_FAIL If failed to read response
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG If the client is NULL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `len`: Length of data discarded

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_get_url** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, char **url*, **const** int *len*)

Get URL from client.

Return

- ESP_OK
- ESP_FAIL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[inout] url`: The buffer to store URL
- `[in] len`: The buffer length

esp_err_t **esp_http_client_get_chunk_length** (*esp_http_client_handle_t client*, int **len*)

Get Chunk-Length from client.

Return

- ESP_OK If successful, len will have length of current chunk
- ESP_FAIL If the server is not a chunked server
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG If the client or len are NULL

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The esp_http_client handle
- `[out] len`: Variable to store length

Structures

struct esp_http_client_event

HTTP Client events data.

Public Members

esp_http_client_event_id_t **event_id**

event_id, to know the cause of the event

esp_http_client_handle_t **client**

esp_http_client_handle_t context

void ***data**

data of the event

int **data_len**

data length of data

void ***user_data**

user_data context, from *esp_http_client_config_t* user_data

char ***header_key**

For HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER event_id, it's store current http header key

char ***header_value**

For HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER event_id, it's store current http header value

struct esp_http_client_config_t

HTTP configuration.

Public Members

const char ***url**

HTTP URL, the information on the URL is most important, it overrides the other fields below, if any

const char ***host**

Domain or IP as string

int **port**

Port to connect, default depend on esp_http_client_transport_t (80 or 443)

const char ***username**

Using for Http authentication

const char ***password**

Using for Http authentication

esp_http_client_auth_type_t **auth_type**
Http authentication type, see `esp_http_client_auth_type_t`

const char ***path**
HTTP Path, if not set, default is `/`

const char ***query**
HTTP query

const char ***cert_pem**
SSL server certification, PEM format as string, if the client requires to verify server

size_t **cert_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***client_cert_pem**
SSL client certification, PEM format as string, if the server requires to verify client

size_t **client_cert_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***client_key_pem**
SSL client key, PEM format as string, if the server requires to verify client

size_t **client_key_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***user_agent**
The User Agent string to send with HTTP requests

esp_http_client_method_t **method**
HTTP Method

int **timeout_ms**
Network timeout in milliseconds

bool **disable_auto_redirect**
Disable HTTP automatic redirects

int **max_redirection_count**
Max number of redirections on receiving HTTP redirect status code, using default value if zero

int **max_authorization_retries**
Max connection retries on receiving HTTP unauthorized status code, using default value if zero. Disables authorization retry if -1

http_event_handle_cb **event_handler**
HTTP Event Handle

esp_http_client_transport_t **transport_type**
HTTP transport type, see `esp_http_client_transport_t`

int **buffer_size**
HTTP receive buffer size

int **buffer_size_tx**
HTTP transmit buffer size

void ***user_data**
HTTP user_data context

bool **is_async**
Set asynchronous mode, only supported with HTTPS for now

bool **use_global_ca_store**
Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

bool **skip_cert_common_name_check**
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field

esp_err_t (***crt_bundle_attach**) (void *conf)
Function pointer to esp_crt_bundle_attach. Enables the use of certification bundle for server verification, must be enabled in menuconfig

bool **keep_alive_enable**
Enable keep-alive timeout

int **keep_alive_idle**
Keep-alive idle time. Default is 5 (second)

int **keep_alive_interval**
Keep-alive interval time. Default is 5 (second)

int **keep_alive_count**
Keep-alive packet retry send count. Default is 3 counts

struct ifreq ***if_name**
The name of interface for data to go through. Use the default interface without setting

Macros

DEFAULT_HTTP_BUF_SIZE

ESP_ERR_HTTP_BASE
Starting number of HTTP error codes

ESP_ERR_HTTP_MAX_REDIRECT
The error exceeds the number of HTTP redirects

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECT
Error open the HTTP connection

ESP_ERR_HTTP_WRITE_DATA
Error write HTTP data

ESP_ERR_HTTP_FETCH_HEADER
Error read HTTP header from server

ESP_ERR_HTTP_INVALID_TRANSPORT
There are no transport support for the input scheme

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTING
HTTP connection hasn't been established yet

ESP_ERR_HTTP_EAGAIN
Mapping of errno EAGAIN to esp_err_t

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_http_client ***esp_http_client_handle_t**

typedef struct *esp_http_client_event* ***esp_http_client_event_handle_t**

typedef struct *esp_http_client_event* **esp_http_client_event_t**
HTTP Client events data.

typedef *esp_err_t* (***http_event_handle_cb**) (*esp_http_client_event_t* *evt)

Enumerations

enum esp_http_client_event_id_t
HTTP Client events id.

Values:

HTTP_EVENT_ERROR = 0
This event occurs when there are any errors during execution

HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED
Once the HTTP has been connected to the server, no data exchange has been performed

HTTP_EVENT_HEADERS_SENT
After sending all the headers to the server

HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT = *HTTP_EVENT_HEADERS_SENT*
This header has been kept for backward compatability and will be deprecated in future versions esp-idf

HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER
Occurs when receiving each header sent from the server

HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA
Occurs when receiving data from the server, possibly multiple portions of the packet

HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH
Occurs when finish a HTTP session

HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED
The connection has been disconnected

enum esp_http_client_transport_t
HTTP Client transport.

Values:

HTTP_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN = 0x0
Unknown

HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
Transport over tcp

HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL
Transport over ssl

enum esp_http_client_method_t
HTTP method.

Values:

HTTP_METHOD_GET = 0
HTTP GET Method

HTTP_METHOD_POST
HTTP POST Method

HTTP_METHOD_PUT
HTTP PUT Method

HTTP_METHOD_PATCH
HTTP PATCH Method

HTTP_METHOD_DELETE
HTTP DELETE Method

HTTP_METHOD_HEAD
HTTP HEAD Method

HTTP_METHOD_NOTIFY
HTTP NOTIFY Method

HTTP_METHOD_SUBSCRIBE
HTTP SUBSCRIBE Method

HTTP_METHOD_UNSUBSCRIBE
HTTP UNSUBSCRIBE Method

HTTP_METHOD_OPTIONS
HTTP OPTIONS Method

HTTP_METHOD_COPY
HTTP COPY Method

HTTP_METHOD_MOVE
HTTP MOVE Method

HTTP_METHOD_LOCK
HTTP LOCK Method

HTTP_METHOD_UNLOCK
HTTP UNLOCK Method

HTTP_METHOD_PROPFIND
HTTP PROPFIND Method

HTTP_METHOD_PROPPATCH
HTTP PROPPATCH Method

HTTP_METHOD_MKCOL
HTTP MKCOL Method

HTTP_METHOD_MAX

enum esp_http_client_auth_type_t
HTTP Authentication type.

Values:

HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_NONE = 0
No authention

HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC
HTTP Basic authentication

HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_DIGEST
HTTP Disgest authentication

enum HttpStatus_Code
Enum for the HTTP status codes.

Values:

HttpStatus_Ok = 200

HttpStatus_MultipleChoices = 300

HttpStatus_MovedPermanently = 301

HttpStatus_Found = 302

HttpStatus_TemporaryRedirect = 307

HttpStatus_Unauthorized = 401

HttpStatus_Forbidden = 403

HttpStatus_NotFound = 404

HttpStatus_InternalError = 500

2.3.6 HTTP Server

Overview

The HTTP Server component provides an ability for running a lightweight web server on ESP32-S2. Following are detailed steps to use the API exposed by HTTP Server:

- *httpd_start()*: Creates an instance of HTTP server, allocate memory/resources for it depending upon the specified configuration and outputs a handle to the server instance. The server has both, a listening socket (TCP) for HTTP traffic, and a control socket (UDP) for control signals, which are selected in a round robin fashion in the server task loop. The task priority and stack size are configurable during server instance creation by passing httpd_config_t structure to httpd_start(). TCP traffic is parsed as HTTP requests and, depending

on the requested URI, user registered handlers are invoked which are supposed to send back HTTP response packets.

- *httpd_stop()*: This stops the server with the provided handle and frees up any associated memory/resources. This is a blocking function that first signals a halt to the server task and then waits for the task to terminate. While stopping, the task will close all open connections, remove registered URI handlers and reset all session context data to empty.
- *httpd_register_uri_handler()*: A URI handler is registered by passing object of type `httpd_uri_t` structure which has members including `uri` name, `method` type (eg. `HTTPD_GET/HTTPD_POST/HTTPD_PUT` etc.), function pointer of type `esp_err_t *handler (httpd_req_t *req)` and `user_ctx` pointer to user context data.

Application Example

```
/* Our URI handler function to be called during GET /uri request */
esp_err_t get_handler(httpd_req_t *req)
{
    /* Send a simple response */
    const char resp[] = "URI GET Response";
    httpd_resp_send(req, resp, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN);
    return ESP_OK;
}

/* Our URI handler function to be called during POST /uri request */
esp_err_t post_handler(httpd_req_t *req)
{
    /* Destination buffer for content of HTTP POST request.
     * httpd_req_recv() accepts char* only, but content could
     * as well be any binary data (needs type casting).
     * In case of string data, null termination will be absent, and
     * content length would give length of string */
    char content[100];

    /* Truncate if content length larger than the buffer */
    size_t recv_size = MIN(req->content_len, sizeof(content));

    int ret = httpd_req_recv(req, content, recv_size);
    if (ret <= 0) {  /* 0 return value indicates connection closed */
        /* Check if timeout occurred */
        if (ret == HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT) {
            /* In case of timeout one can choose to retry calling
             * httpd_req_recv(), but to keep it simple, here we
             * respond with an HTTP 408 (Request Timeout) error */
            httpd_resp_send_408(req);
        }
        /* In case of error, returning ESP_FAIL will
         * ensure that the underlying socket is closed */
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }

    /* Send a simple response */
    const char resp[] = "URI POST Response";
    httpd_resp_send(req, resp, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN);
    return ESP_OK;
}

/* URI handler structure for GET /uri */
httpd_uri_t uri_get = {
    .uri      = "/uri",
    .method   = HTTP_GET,
    .handler  = get_handler,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    .user_ctx = NULL
};

/* URI handler structure for POST /uri */
httpd_uri_t uri_post = {
    .uri      = "/uri",
    .method   = HTTP_POST,
    .handler  = post_handler,
    .user_ctx = NULL
};

/* Function for starting the webserver */
httpd_handle_t start_webserver(void)
{
    /* Generate default configuration */
    httpd_config_t config = HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG();

    /* Empty handle to esp_http_server */
    httpd_handle_t server = NULL;

    /* Start the httpd server */
    if (httpd_start(&server, &config) == ESP_OK) {
        /* Register URI handlers */
        httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_get);
        httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_post);
    }
    /* If server failed to start, handle will be NULL */
    return server;
}

/* Function for stopping the webserver */
void stop_webserver(httpd_handle_t server)
{
    if (server) {
        /* Stop the httpd server */
        httpd_stop(server);
    }
}
```

Simple HTTP server example Check HTTP server example under protocols/http_server/simple where handling of arbitrary content lengths, reading request headers and URL query parameters, and setting response headers is demonstrated.

Persistent Connections

HTTP server features persistent connections, allowing for the re-use of the same connection (session) for several transfers, all the while maintaining context specific data for the session. Context data may be allocated dynamically by the handler in which case a custom function may need to be specified for freeing this data when the connection/session is closed.

Persistent Connections Example

```
/* Custom function to free context */
void free_ctx_func(void *ctx)
{
    /* Could be something other than free */
    free(ctx);
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
esp_err_t adder_post_handler(httpd_req_t *req)
{
    /* Create session's context if not already available */
    if (! req->sess_ctx) {
        req->sess_ctx = malloc(sizeof(ANY_DATA_TYPE));   /*!< Pointer to context␣
↪data */
        req->free_ctx = free_ctx_func;                   /*!< Function to free␣
↪context data */
    }

    /* Access context data */
    ANY_DATA_TYPE *ctx_data = (ANY_DATA_TYPE *)req->sess_ctx;

    /* Respond */
    ................
    ................
    ................

    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Check the example under protocols/http_server/persistent_sockets.

Websocket server

HTTP server provides a simple websocket support if the feature is enabled in menuconfig, please see *CONFIG_HTTPD_WS_SUPPORT*. Please check the example under protocols/http_server/ws_echo_server

API Reference

Header File

- esp_http_server/include/esp_http_server.h

Functions

esp_err_t **httpd_register_uri_handler**(*httpd_handle_t handle*, **const** *httpd_uri_t *uri_handler*)

Registers a URI handler.

Example usage:

```
esp_err_t my_uri_handler(httpd_req_t* req)
{
    // Recv , Process and Send
    ....
    ....
    ....

    // Fail condition
    if (....) {
        // Return fail to close session //
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }

    // On success
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// URI handler structure
httpd_uri_t my_uri {
    .uri      = "/my_uri/path/xyz",
    .method   = HTTPD_GET,
    .handler  = my_uri_handler,
    .user_ctx = NULL
};

// Register handler
if (httpd_register_uri_handler(server_handle, &my_uri) != ESP_OK) {
   // If failed to register handler
   ....
}
```

Note URI handlers can be registered in real time as long as the server handle is valid.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully registering the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL : If no slots left for new handler
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS : If handler with same URI and method is already registered

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: handle to HTTPD server instance
- `[in] uri_handler`: pointer to handler that needs to be registered

esp_err_t **httpd_unregister_uri_handler**(*httpd_handle_t handle*, **const** char **uri*, *httpd_method_t method*)

Unregister a URI handler.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully deregistering the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Handler with specified URI and method not found

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: handle to HTTPD server instance
- `[in] uri`: URI string
- `[in] method`: HTTP method

esp_err_t **httpd_unregister_uri**(*httpd_handle_t handle*, **const** char **uri*)

Unregister all URI handlers with the specified uri string.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully deregistering all such handlers
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : No handler registered with specified uri string

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: handle to HTTPD server instance
- `[in] uri`: uri string specifying all handlers that need to be deregisterd

esp_err_t **httpd_sess_set_recv_override**(*httpd_handle_t hd*, int *sockfd*, *httpd_recv_func_t recv_func*)

Override web server’s receive function (by session FD)

This function overrides the web server’s receive function. This same function is used to read HTTP request packets.

Note This API is supposed to be called either from the context of

- an http session APIs where sockfd is a valid parameter
- a URI handler where sockfd is obtained using httpd_req_to_sockfd()

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully registering override
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: HTTPD instance handle
- `[in] sockfd`: Session socket FD
- `[in] recv_func`: The receive function to be set for this session

esp_err_t **httpd_sess_set_send_override** (*httpd_handle_t hd*, int *sockfd*, *httpd_send_func_t send_func*)

Override web server's send function (by session FD)

This function overrides the web server's send function. This same function is used to send out any response to any HTTP request.

Note This API is supposed to be called either from the context of

- an http session APIs where sockfd is a valid parameter
- a URI handler where sockfd is obtained using httpd_req_to_sockfd()

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully registering override
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: HTTPD instance handle
- `[in] sockfd`: Session socket FD
- `[in] send_func`: The send function to be set for this session

esp_err_t **httpd_sess_set_pending_override** (*httpd_handle_t hd*, int *sockfd*, *httpd_pending_func_t pending_func*)

Override web server's pending function (by session FD)

This function overrides the web server's pending function. This function is used to test for pending bytes in a socket.

Note This API is supposed to be called either from the context of

- an http session APIs where sockfd is a valid parameter
- a URI handler where sockfd is obtained using httpd_req_to_sockfd()

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully registering override
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: HTTPD instance handle
- `[in] sockfd`: Session socket FD
- `[in] pending_func`: The receive function to be set for this session

int **httpd_req_to_sockfd** (*httpd_req_t* **r*)

Get the Socket Descriptor from the HTTP request.

This API will return the socket descriptor of the session for which URI handler was executed on reception of HTTP request. This is useful when user wants to call functions that require session socket fd, from within a URI handler, ie. : httpd_sess_get_ctx(), httpd_sess_trigger_close(), httpd_sess_update_lru_counter().

Note This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.

Return

- Socket descriptor : The socket descriptor for this request
- -1 : Invalid/NULL request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request whose socket descriptor should be found

int **httpd_req_recv** (*httpd_req_t* **r*, char **buf*, size_t *buf_len*)

API to read content data from the HTTP request.

This API will read HTTP content data from the HTTP request into provided buffer. Use content_len provided in httpd_req_t structure to know the length of data to be fetched. If content_len is too large for the buffer then user may have to make multiple calls to this function, each time fetching 'buf_len' number of bytes, while the pointer to content data is incremented internally by the same number.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- If an error is returned, the URI handler must further return an error. This will ensure that the erroneous socket is closed and cleaned up by the web server.
- Presently Chunked Encoding is not supported

Return

- Bytes : Number of bytes read into the buffer successfully
- 0 : Buffer length parameter is zero / connection closed by peer
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket recv()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket recv()

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] buf`: Pointer to a buffer that the data will be read into
- `[in] buf_len`: Length of the buffer

size_t **`httpd_req_get_hdr_value_len`**(*httpd_req_t* *r, **`const`** char *field)

Search for a field in request headers and return the string length of it' s value.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once httpd_resp_send() API is called all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return

- Length : If field is found in the request URL
- Zero : Field not found / Invalid request / Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] field`: The header field to be searched in the request

esp_err_t **`httpd_req_get_hdr_value_str`**(*httpd_req_t* *r, **`const`** char *field, char *val, size_t *val_size*)

Get the value string of a field from the request headers.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once httpd_resp_send() API is called all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.
- If output size is greater than input, then the value is truncated, accompanied by truncation error as return value.
- Use httpd_req_get_hdr_value_len() to know the right buffer length

Return

- ESP_OK : Field found in the request header and value string copied
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Key not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid HTTP request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC : Value string truncated

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] field`: The field to be searched in the header
- `[out] val`: Pointer to the buffer into which the value will be copied if the field is found
- `[in] val_size`: Size of the user buffer "val"

size_t **`httpd_req_get_url_query_len`**(*httpd_req_t* *r)

Get Query string length from the request URL.

Note This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid

Return

- Length : Query is found in the request URL
- Zero : Query not found / Null arguments / Invalid request

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to

esp_err_t **httpd_req_get_url_query_str**(*httpd_req_t* *r, char *buf, size_t buf_len)

Get Query string from the request URL.

Note

- Presently, the user can fetch the full URL query string, but decoding will have to be performed by the user. Request headers can be read using httpd_req_get_hdr_value_str() to know the 'Content-Type' (eg. Content-Type: application/x-www-form-urlencoded) and then the appropriate decoding algorithm needs to be applied.
- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid
- If output size is greater than input, then the value is truncated, accompanied by truncation error as return value
- Prior to calling this function, one can use httpd_req_get_url_query_len() to know the query string length beforehand and hence allocate the buffer of right size (usually query string length + 1 for null termination) for storing the query string

Return

- ESP_OK : Query is found in the request URL and copied to buffer
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Query not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid HTTP request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC : Query string truncated

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[out] buf`: Pointer to the buffer into which the query string will be copied (if found)
- `[in] buf_len`: Length of output buffer

esp_err_t **httpd_query_key_value**(**const** char *qry, **const** char *key, char *val, size_t val_size)

Helper function to get a URL query tag from a query string of the type param1=val1&param2=val2.

Note

- The components of URL query string (keys and values) are not URLdecoded. The user must check for 'Content-Type' field in the request headers and then depending upon the specified encoding (URLencoded or otherwise) apply the appropriate decoding algorithm.
- If actual value size is greater than val_size, then the value is truncated, accompanied by truncation error as return value.

Return

- ESP_OK : Key is found in the URL query string and copied to buffer
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Key not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC : Value string truncated

Parameters

- `[in] qry`: Pointer to query string
- `[in] key`: The key to be searched in the query string
- `[out] val`: Pointer to the buffer into which the value will be copied if the key is found
- `[in] val_size`: Size of the user buffer "val"

bool **httpd_uri_match_wildcard**(**const** char *uri_template, **const** char *uri_to_match, size_t match_upto)

Test if a URI matches the given wildcard template.

Template may end with "?" to make the previous character optional (typically a slash), "*" for a wildcard match, and "?*" to make the previous character optional, and if present, allow anything to follow.

Example:

- * matches everything

- /foo/? matches /foo and /foo/
- /foo/* (sans the backslash) matches /foo/ and /foo/bar, but not /foo or /fo
- /foo/?* or /foo/*? (sans the backslash) matches /foo/, /foo/bar, and also /foo, but not /foox or /fo

The special characters "?" and "*" anywhere else in the template will be taken literally.

Return true if a match was found

Parameters

- `[in] uri_template`: URI template (pattern)
- `[in] uri_to_match`: URI to be matched
- `[in] match_upto`: how many characters of the URI buffer to test (there may be trailing query string etc.)

esp_err_t **httpd_resp_send** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *buf, ssize_t buf_len)

API to send a complete HTTP response.

This API will send the data as an HTTP response to the request. This assumes that you have the entire response ready in a single buffer. If you wish to send response in incremental chunks use httpd_resp_send_chunk() instead.

If no status code and content-type were set, by default this will send 200 OK status code and content type as text/html. You may call the following functions before this API to configure the response headers : httpd_resp_set_status() - for setting the HTTP status string, httpd_resp_set_type() - for setting the Content Type, httpd_resp_set_hdr() - for appending any additional field value entries in the response header

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, the request has been responded to.
- No additional data can then be sent for the request.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] buf`: Buffer from where the content is to be fetched
- `[in] buf_len`: Length of the buffer, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN to use strlen()

esp_err_t **httpd_resp_send_chunk** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *buf, ssize_t buf_len)

API to send one HTTP chunk.

This API will send the data as an HTTP response to the request. This API will use chunked-encoding and send the response in the form of chunks. If you have the entire response contained in a single buffer, please use httpd_resp_send() instead.

If no status code and content-type were set, by default this will send 200 OK status code and content type as text/html. You may call the following functions before this API to configure the response headers httpd_resp_set_status() - for setting the HTTP status string, httpd_resp_set_type() - for setting the Content Type, httpd_resp_set_hdr() - for appending any additional field value entries in the response header

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- When you are finished sending all your chunks, you must call this function with buf_len as 0.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet chunk

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] buf`: Pointer to a buffer that stores the data
- `[in] buf_len`: Length of the buffer, HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN to use strlen()

static *esp_err_t* **httpd_resp_sendstr** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *str)

API to send a complete string as HTTP response.

This API simply calls http_resp_send with buffer length set to string length assuming the buffer contains a null terminated string

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] str`: String to be sent as response body

static *esp_err_t* **httpd_resp_sendstr_chunk** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *str)

API to send a string as an HTTP response chunk.

This API simply calls http_resp_send_chunk with buffer length set to string length assuming the buffer contains a null terminated string

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null request pointer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Essential headers are too large for internal buffer
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] str`: String to be sent as response body (NULL to finish response packet)

esp_err_t **httpd_resp_set_status** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *status)

API to set the HTTP status code.

This API sets the status of the HTTP response to the value specified. By default, the '200 OK' response is sent as the response.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- This API only sets the status to this value. The status isn't sent out until any of the send APIs is executed.
- Make sure that the lifetime of the status string is valid till send function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK : On success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] status`: The HTTP status code of this response

esp_err_t **httpd_resp_set_type** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *type)

API to set the HTTP content type.

This API sets the ‘Content Type’ field of the response. The default content type is ‘text/html’.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- This API only sets the content type to this value. The type isn’t sent out until any of the send APIs is executed.
- Make sure that the lifetime of the type string is valid till send function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK : On success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] type`: The Content Type of the response

esp_err_t **httpd_resp_set_hdr** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *field, **const** char *value)

API to append any additional headers.

This API sets any additional header fields that need to be sent in the response.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- The header isn’t sent out until any of the send APIs is executed.
- The maximum allowed number of additional headers is limited to value of max_resp_headers in config structure.
- Make sure that the lifetime of the field value strings are valid till send function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully appending new header
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR : Total additional headers exceed max allowed
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] field`: The field name of the HTTP header
- `[in] value`: The value of this HTTP header

esp_err_t **httpd_resp_send_err** (*httpd_req_t* *req, *httpd_err_code_t* error, **const** char *msg)

For sending out error code in response to HTTP request.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.
- If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] req`: Pointer to the HTTP request for which the response needs to be sent
- `[in] error`: Error type to send
- `[in] msg`: Error message string (pass NULL for default message)

static *esp_err_t* **httpd_resp_send_404** (*httpd_req_t* *r)

Helper function for HTTP 404.

Send HTTP 404 message. If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the

lower-level functions directly.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to

static *esp_err_t* **httpd_resp_send_408** (*httpd_req_t* *r)

Helper function for HTTP 408.

Send HTTP 408 message. If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to

static *esp_err_t* **httpd_resp_send_500** (*httpd_req_t* *r)

Helper function for HTTP 500.

Send HTTP 500 message. If you wish to send additional data in the body of the response, please use the lower-level functions directly.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Once this API is called, all request headers are purged, so request headers need be copied into separate buffers if they are required later.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully sending the response packet
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND : Error in raw send
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ : Invalid request pointer

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to

int **httpd_send** (*httpd_req_t* *r, **const** char *buf, size_t buf_len)

Raw HTTP send.

Call this API if you wish to construct your custom response packet. When using this, all essential header, eg. HTTP version, Status Code, Content Type and Length, Encoding, etc. will have to be constructed manually, and HTTP delimeters (CRLF) will need to be placed correctly for separating sub-sections of the HTTP response packet.

If the send override function is set, this API will end up calling that function eventually to send data out.

Note

- This API is supposed to be called only from the context of a URI handler where httpd_req_t* request pointer is valid.
- Unless the response has the correct HTTP structure (which the user must now ensure) it is not guaranteed that it will be recognized by the client. For most cases, you wouldn't have to call this API, but you would rather use either of : httpd_resp_send(), httpd_resp_send_chunk()

Return

- Bytes : Number of bytes that were sent successfully
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket send()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket send()

Parameters

- `[in] r`: The request being responded to
- `[in] buf`: Buffer from where the fully constructed packet is to be read
- `[in] buf_len`: Length of the buffer

int **`httpd_socket_send`**(*httpd_handle_t hd*, int *sockfd*, **`const`** char **buf*, size_t *buf_len*, int *flags*)

A low level API to send data on a given socket

This internally calls the default send function, or the function registered by httpd_sess_set_send_override().

Note This API is not recommended to be used in any request handler. Use this only for advanced use cases, wherein some asynchronous data is to be sent over a socket.

Return

- Bytes : The number of bytes sent successfully
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket send()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket send()

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor
- `[in] buf`: buffer with bytes to send
- `[in] buf_len`: data size
- `[in] flags`: flags for the send() function

int **`httpd_socket_recv`**(*httpd_handle_t hd*, int *sockfd*, char **buf*, size_t *buf_len*, int *flags*)

A low level API to receive data from a given socket

This internally calls the default recv function, or the function registered by httpd_sess_set_recv_override().

Note This API is not recommended to be used in any request handler. Use this only for advanced use cases, wherein some asynchronous communication is required.

Return

- Bytes : The number of bytes received successfully
- 0 : Buffer length parameter is zero / connection closed by peer
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket recv()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket recv()

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor
- `[in] buf`: buffer with bytes to send
- `[in] buf_len`: data size
- `[in] flags`: flags for the send() function

esp_err_t **`httpd_register_err_handler`**(*httpd_handle_t handle*, *httpd_err_code_t error*, *httpd_err_handler_func_t handler_fn*)

Function for registering HTTP error handlers.

This function maps a handler function to any supported error code given by `httpd_err_code_t`. See prototype `httpd_err_handler_func_t` above for details.

Return

- ESP_OK : handler registered successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : invalid error code or server handle

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: HTTP server handle
- `[in] error`: Error type
- `[in] handler_fn`: User implemented handler function (Pass NULL to unset any previously set handler)

esp_err_t **httpd_start** (*httpd_handle_t* *handle, **const** *httpd_config_t* *config)

Starts the web server.

Create an instance of HTTP server and allocate memory/resources for it depending upon the specified configuration.

Example usage:

```
//Function for starting the webserver
httpd_handle_t start_webserver(void)
{
     // Generate default configuration
     httpd_config_t config = HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG();

     // Empty handle to http_server
     httpd_handle_t server = NULL;

     // Start the httpd server
     if (httpd_start(&server, &config) == ESP_OK) {
         // Register URI handlers
         httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_get);
         httpd_register_uri_handler(server, &uri_post);
     }
     // If server failed to start, handle will be NULL
     return server;
}
```

Return

- ESP_OK : Instance created successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null argument(s)
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM : Failed to allocate memory for instance
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK : Failed to launch server task

Parameters

- `[in] config`: Configuration for new instance of the server
- `[out] handle`: Handle to newly created instance of the server. NULL on error

esp_err_t **httpd_stop** (*httpd_handle_t* *handle*)

Stops the web server.

Deallocates memory/resources used by an HTTP server instance and deletes it. Once deleted the handle can no longer be used for accessing the instance.

Example usage:

```
// Function for stopping the webserver
void stop_webserver(httpd_handle_t server)
{
     // Ensure handle is non NULL
     if (server != NULL) {
         // Stop the httpd server
         httpd_stop(server);
     }
}
```

Return

- ESP_OK : Server stopped successfully

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Handle argument is Null

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

esp_err_t **httpd_queue_work** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, *httpd_work_fn_t work*, void **arg*)

Queue execution of a function in HTTPD's context.

This API queues a work function for asynchronous execution

Note Some protocols require that the web server generate some asynchronous data and send it to the persistently opened connection. This facility is for use by such protocols.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully queueing the work
- ESP_FAIL : Failure in ctrl socket
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- `[in] work`: Pointer to the function to be executed in the HTTPD's context
- `[in] arg`: Pointer to the arguments that should be passed to this function

void ***httpd_sess_get_ctx** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, int *sockfd*)

Get session context from socket descriptor.

Typically if a session context is created, it is available to URI handlers through the httpd_req_t structure. But, there are cases where the web server's send/receive functions may require the context (for example, for accessing keying information etc). Since the send/receive function only have the socket descriptor at their disposal, this API provides them with a way to retrieve the session context.

Return

- void* : Pointer to the context associated with this session
- NULL : Empty context / Invalid handle / Invalid socket fd

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- `[in] sockfd`: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.

void **httpd_sess_set_ctx** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, int *sockfd*, void **ctx*, *httpd_free_ctx_fn_t free_fn*)

Set session context by socket descriptor.

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- `[in] sockfd`: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.
- `[in] ctx`: Context object to assign to the session
- `[in] free_fn`: Function that should be called to free the context

void ***httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, int *sockfd*)

Get session 'transport' context by socket descriptor.

This context is used by the send/receive functions, for example to manage SSL context.

See httpd_sess_get_ctx()

Return

- void* : Pointer to the transport context associated with this session
- NULL : Empty context / Invalid handle / Invalid socket fd

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- `[in] sockfd`: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.

void **httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, int *sockfd*, void **ctx*, *httpd_free_ctx_fn_t free_fn*)

Set session 'transport' context by socket descriptor.

See httpd_sess_set_ctx()

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

- `[in] sockfd`: The socket descriptor for which the context should be extracted.
- `[in] ctx`: Transport context object to assign to the session
- `[in] free_fn`: Function that should be called to free the transport context

void ***httpd_get_global_user_ctx** (*httpd_handle_t handle*)

Get HTTPD global user context (it was set in the server config struct)

Return global user context

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

void ***httpd_get_global_transport_ctx** (*httpd_handle_t handle*)

Get HTTPD global transport context (it was set in the server config struct)

Return global transport context

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

esp_err_t **httpd_sess_trigger_close** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, int *sockfd*)

Trigger an httpd session close externally.

Note Calling this API is only required in special circumstances wherein some application requires to close an httpd client session asynchronously.

Return

- ESP_OK : On successfully initiating closure
- ESP_FAIL : Failure to queue work
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Socket fd not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- `[in] sockfd`: The socket descriptor of the session to be closed

esp_err_t **httpd_sess_update_lru_counter** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, int *sockfd*)

Update LRU counter for a given socket.

LRU Counters are internally associated with each session to monitor how recently a session exchanged traffic. When LRU purge is enabled, if a client is requesting for connection but maximum number of sockets/sessions is reached, then the session having the earliest LRU counter is closed automatically.

Updating the LRU counter manually prevents the socket from being purged due to the Least Recently Used (LRU) logic, even though it might not have received traffic for some time. This is useful when all open sockets/session are frequently exchanging traffic but the user specifically wants one of the sessions to be kept open, irrespective of when it last exchanged a packet.

Note Calling this API is only necessary if the LRU Purge Enable option is enabled.

Return

- ESP_OK : Socket found and LRU counter updated
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Socket not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start
- `[in] sockfd`: The socket descriptor of the session for which LRU counter is to be updated

esp_err_t **httpd_get_client_list** (*httpd_handle_t handle*, size_t **fds*, int **client_fds*)

Returns list of current socket descriptors of active sessions.

Note Size of provided array has to be equal or greater then maximum number of opened sockets, configured upon initialization with max_open_sockets field in httpd_config_t structure.

Return

- ESP_OK : Successfully retrieved session list
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Wrong arguments or list is longer than provided array

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to server returned by httpd_start

- `[inout] fds`: In: Size of provided client_fds array Out: Number of valid client fds returned in client_fds,
- `[out] client_fds`: Array of client fds

Structures

`struct httpd_config`

HTTP Server Configuration Structure.

Note Use HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG() to initialize the configuration to a default value and then modify only those fields that are specifically determined by the use case.

Public Members

unsigned **`task_priority`**
Priority of FreeRTOS task which runs the server

size_t **`stack_size`**
The maximum stack size allowed for the server task

BaseType_t **`core_id`**
The core the HTTP server task will run on

uint16_t **`server_port`**
TCP Port number for receiving and transmitting HTTP traffic

uint16_t **`ctrl_port`**
UDP Port number for asynchronously exchanging control signals between various components of the server

uint16_t **`max_open_sockets`**
Max number of sockets/clients connected at any time

uint16_t **`max_uri_handlers`**
Maximum allowed uri handlers

uint16_t **`max_resp_headers`**
Maximum allowed additional headers in HTTP response

uint16_t **`backlog_conn`**
Number of backlog connections

bool **`lru_purge_enable`**
Purge "Least Recently Used" connection

uint16_t **`recv_wait_timeout`**
Timeout for recv function (in seconds)

uint16_t **`send_wait_timeout`**
Timeout for send function (in seconds)

void ***`global_user_ctx`**
Global user context.

This field can be used to store arbitrary user data within the server context. The value can be retrieved using the server handle, available e.g. in the httpd_req_t struct.

When shutting down, the server frees up the user context by calling free() on the global_user_ctx field. If you wish to use a custom function for freeing the global user context, please specify that here.

httpd_free_ctx_fn_t **`global_user_ctx_free_fn`**
Free function for global user context

void ***`global_transport_ctx`**
Global transport context.

Similar to global_user_ctx, but used for session encoding or encryption (e.g. to hold the SSL context). It will be freed using free(), unless global_transport_ctx_free_fn is specified.

httpd_free_ctx_fn_t **global_transport_ctx_free_fn**
Free function for global transport context

httpd_open_func_t **open_fn**
Custom session opening callback.

Called on a new session socket just after accept(), but before reading any data.

This is an opportunity to set up e.g. SSL encryption using global_transport_ctx and the send/recv/pending session overrides.

If a context needs to be maintained between these functions, store it in the session using httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx() and retrieve it later with httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx()

Returning a value other than ESP_OK will immediately close the new socket.

httpd_close_func_t **close_fn**
Custom session closing callback.

Called when a session is deleted, before freeing user and transport contexts and before closing the socket. This is a place for custom de-init code common to all sockets.

Set the user or transport context to NULL if it was freed here, so the server does not try to free it again.

This function is run for all terminated sessions, including sessions where the socket was closed by the network stack - that is, the file descriptor may not be valid anymore.

httpd_uri_match_func_t **uri_match_fn**
URI matcher function.

Called when searching for a matching URI: 1) whose request handler is to be executed right after an HTTP request is successfully parsed 2) in order to prevent duplication while registering a new URI handler using `httpd_register_uri_handler()`

Available options are: 1) NULL : Internally do basic matching using `strncmp()` 2) `httpd_uri_match_wildcard()` : URI wildcard matcher

Users can implement their own matching functions (See description of the `httpd_uri_match_func_t` function prototype)

struct httpd_req
HTTP Request Data Structure.

Public Members

httpd_handle_t **handle**
Handle to server instance

int **method**
The type of HTTP request, -1 if unsupported method

const char **uri**[**HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN** + 1]
The URI of this request (1 byte extra for null termination)

size_t **content_len**
Length of the request body

void ***aux**
Internally used members

void ***user_ctx**
User context pointer passed during URI registration.

void ***sess_ctx**
Session Context Pointer

A session context. Contexts are maintained across 'sessions' for a given open TCP connection. One session could have multiple request responses. The web server will ensure that the context persists across all these request and responses.

By default, this is NULL. URI Handlers can set this to any meaningful value.

If the underlying socket gets closed, and this pointer is non-NULL, the web server will free up the context by calling free(), unless free_ctx function is set.

httpd_free_ctx_fn_t **free_ctx**
Pointer to free context hook

Function to free session context

If the web server's socket closes, it frees up the session context by calling free() on the sess_ctx member. If you wish to use a custom function for freeing the session context, please specify that here.

bool **ignore_sess_ctx_changes**
Flag indicating if Session Context changes should be ignored

By default, if you change the sess_ctx in some URI handler, the http server will internally free the earlier context (if non NULL), after the URI handler returns. If you want to manage the allocation/reallocation/freeing of sess_ctx yourself, set this flag to true, so that the server will not perform any checks on it. The context will be cleared by the server (by calling free_ctx or free()) only if the socket gets closed.

struct httpd_uri
Structure for URI handler.

Public Members

const char ***uri**
The URI to handle

httpd_method_t **method**
Method supported by the URI

esp_err_t (***handler**) (*httpd_req_t* *r)
Handler to call for supported request method. This must return ESP_OK, or else the underlying socket will be closed.

void ***user_ctx**
Pointer to user context data which will be available to handler

Macros

HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN
HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN

HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL

HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID

HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT

HTTPD_200
HTTP Response 200

HTTPD_204
HTTP Response 204

HTTPD_207
HTTP Response 207

HTTPD_400
HTTP Response 400

HTTPD_404
HTTP Response 404

HTTPD_408
HTTP Response 408

HTTPD_500
HTTP Response 500

HTTPD_TYPE_JSON
HTTP Content type JSON

HTTPD_TYPE_TEXT
HTTP Content type text/HTML

HTTPD_TYPE_OCTET
HTTP Content type octext-stream

HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_BASE
Starting number of HTTPD error codes

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL
All slots for registering URI handlers have been consumed

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS
URI handler with same method and target URI already registered

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ
Invalid request pointer

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC
Result string truncated

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR
Response header field larger than supported

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND
Error occured while sending response packet

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM
Failed to dynamically allocate memory for resource

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK
Failed to launch server task/thread

HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN

Type Definitions

typedef struct *httpd_req* **httpd_req_t**
HTTP Request Data Structure.

typedef struct *httpd_uri* **httpd_uri_t**
Structure for URI handler.

typedef int (***httpd_send_func_t**)(*httpd_handle_t* hd, int sockfd, **const** char *buf, size_t buf_len, int flags)
Prototype for HTTPDs low-level send function.

Note User specified send function must handle errors internally, depending upon the set value of errno, and return specific HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_ codes, which will eventually be conveyed as return value of httpd_send() function

Return

- Bytes : The number of bytes sent successfully
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket send()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket send()

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor
- `[in] buf`: buffer with bytes to send
- `[in] buf_len`: data size
- `[in] flags`: flags for the send() function

typedef int (***httpd_recv_func_t**) (*httpd_handle_t* hd, int sockfd, char *buf, size_t buf_len, int flags)

Prototype for HTTPDs low-level recv function.

Note User specified recv function must handle errors internally, depending upon the set value of errno, and return specific HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_ codes, which will eventually be conveyed as return value of httpd_req_recv() function

Return

- Bytes : The number of bytes received successfully
- 0 : Buffer length parameter is zero / connection closed by peer
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket recv()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket recv()

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor
- `[in] buf`: buffer with bytes to send
- `[in] buf_len`: data size
- `[in] flags`: flags for the send() function

typedef int (***httpd_pending_func_t**) (*httpd_handle_t* hd, int sockfd)

Prototype for HTTPDs low-level "get pending bytes" function.

Note User specified pending function must handle errors internally, depending upon the set value of errno, and return specific HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_ codes, which will be handled accordingly in the server task.

Return

- Bytes : The number of bytes waiting to be received
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID : Invalid arguments
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT : Timeout/interrupted while calling socket pending()
- HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL : Unrecoverable error while calling socket pending()

Parameters

- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor

typedef *esp_err_t* (***httpd_err_handler_func_t**) (*httpd_req_t* *req, *httpd_err_code_t* error)

Function prototype for HTTP error handling.

This function is executed upon HTTP errors generated during internal processing of an HTTP request. This is used to override the default behavior on error, which is to send HTTP error response and close the underlying socket.

Note

- If implemented, the server will not automatically send out HTTP error response codes, therefore, httpd_resp_send_err() must be invoked inside this function if user wishes to generate HTTP error responses.
- When invoked, the validity of `uri`, `method`, `content_len` and `user_ctx` fields of the httpd_req_t parameter is not guaranteed as the HTTP request may be partially received/parsed.
- The function must return ESP_OK if underlying socket needs to be kept open. Any other value will ensure that the socket is closed. The return value is ignored when error is of type `HTTPD_500_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR` and the socket closed anyway.

Return

- ESP_OK : error handled successful
- ESP_FAIL : failure indicates that the underlying socket needs to be closed

Parameters

- `[in] req`: HTTP request for which the error needs to be handled

- `[in] error`: Error type

typedef void ***httpd_handle_t**
HTTP Server Instance Handle.

Every instance of the server will have a unique handle.

typedef enum http_method **httpd_method_t**
HTTP Method Type wrapper over "enum http_method" available in "http_parser" library.

typedef void (***httpd_free_ctx_fn_t**) (void *ctx)
Prototype for freeing context data (if any)

Parameters
- `[in] ctx`: object to free

typedef *esp_err_t* (***httpd_open_func_t**) (*httpd_handle_t* hd, int sockfd)
Function prototype for opening a session.

Called immediately after the socket was opened to set up the send/recv functions and other parameters of the socket.

Return
- ESP_OK : On success
- Any value other than ESP_OK will signal the server to close the socket immediately

Parameters
- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor

typedef void (***httpd_close_func_t**) (*httpd_handle_t* hd, int sockfd)
Function prototype for closing a session.

Note It's possible that the socket descriptor is invalid at this point, the function is called for all terminated sessions. Ensure proper handling of return codes.

Parameters
- `[in] hd`: server instance
- `[in] sockfd`: session socket file descriptor

typedef bool (***httpd_uri_match_func_t**) (**const** char *reference_uri, **const** char *uri_to_match, size_t match_upto)
Function prototype for URI matching.

Return true on match

Parameters
- `[in] reference_uri`: URI/template with respect to which the other URI is matched
- `[in] uri_to_match`: URI/template being matched to the reference URI/template
- `[in] match_upto`: For specifying the actual length of `uri_to_match` up to which the matching algorithm is to be applied (The maximum value is `strlen(uri_to_match)`, independent of the length of `reference_uri`)

typedef struct *httpd_config* **httpd_config_t**
HTTP Server Configuration Structure.

Note Use HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG() to initialize the configuration to a default value and then modify only those fields that are specifically determined by the use case.

typedef void (***httpd_work_fn_t**) (void *arg)
Prototype of the HTTPD work function Please refer to httpd_queue_work() for more details.

Parameters
- `[in] arg`: The arguments for this work function

Enumerations

enum httpd_err_code_t
Error codes sent as HTTP response in case of errors encountered during processing of an HTTP request.

Values:

HTTPD_500_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR = 0

HTTPD_501_METHOD_NOT_IMPLEMENTED

HTTPD_505_VERSION_NOT_SUPPORTED

HTTPD_400_BAD_REQUEST

HTTPD_401_UNAUTHORIZED

HTTPD_403_FORBIDDEN

HTTPD_404_NOT_FOUND

HTTPD_405_METHOD_NOT_ALLOWED

HTTPD_408_REQ_TIMEOUT

HTTPD_411_LENGTH_REQUIRED

HTTPD_414_URI_TOO_LONG

HTTPD_431_REQ_HDR_FIELDS_TOO_LARGE

HTTPD_ERR_CODE_MAX

2.3.7 HTTPS server

Overview

This component is built on top of *esp_http_server*. The HTTPS server takes advantage of hooks and function overrides in the regular HTTP server to provide encryption using OpenSSL.

All documentation for *esp_http_server* applies also to a server you create this way.

Used APIs

The following API of *esp_http_server* should not be used with *esp_https_server*, as they are used internally to handle secure sessions and to maintain internal state:

- "send", "receive" and "pending" function overrides - secure socket handling
  - *httpd_sess_set_send_override()*
  - *httpd_sess_set_recv_override()*
  - *httpd_sess_set_pending_override()*
- "transport context" - both global and session
  - *httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx()* - returns SSL used for the session
  - *httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx()*
  - *httpd_get_global_transport_ctx()* - returns the shared SSL context
  - `httpd_config_t.global_transport_ctx`
  - `httpd_config_t.global_transport_ctx_free_fn`
  - `httpd_config_t.open_fn` - used to set up secure sockets

Everything else can be used without limitations.

Usage

Please see the example protocols/https_server to learn how to set up a secure server.

Basically all you need is to generate a certificate, embed it in the firmware, and provide its pointers and lengths to the start function via the init struct.

The server can be started with or without SSL by changing a flag in the init struct - `httpd_ssl_config.transport_mode`. This could be used e.g. for testing or in trusted environments where you prefer speed over security.

Performance

The initial session setup can take about two seconds, or more with slower clock speeds or more verbose logging. Subsequent requests through the open secure socket are much faster (down to under 100 ms).

API Reference

Header File

- esp_https_server/include/esp_https_server.h

Functions

esp_err_t **httpd_ssl_start** (*httpd_handle_t *handle*, *httpd_ssl_config_t *config*)

Create a SSL capable HTTP server (secure mode may be disabled in config)

Return success

Parameters

- `[inout] config`: - server config, must not be const. Does not have to stay valid after calling this function.
- `[out] handle`: - storage for the server handle, must be a valid pointer

void **httpd_ssl_stop** (*httpd_handle_t handle*)

Stop the server. Blocks until the server is shut down.

Parameters

- `[in] handle`:

Structures

struct httpd_ssl_config

HTTPS server config struct

Please use HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT() to initialize it.

Public Members

httpd_config_t **httpd**

Underlying HTTPD server config

Parameters like task stack size and priority can be adjusted here.

const uint8_t ***cacert_pem**

CA certificate (here it is treated as server cert) Todo: Fix this change in release/v5.0 as it would be a breaking change i.e. Rename the nomenclature of variables holding different certs in https_server component as well as example 1)The cacert variable should hold the CA which is used to authenticate clients (should inherit current role of client_verify_cert_pem var) 2)There should be another variable servercert which whould hold servers own certificate (should inherit current role of cacert var)

size_t **cacert_len**

CA certificate byte length

const uint8_t ***client_verify_cert_pem**

Client verify authority certificate (CA used to sign clients, or client cert itself

size_t **client_verify_cert_len**

Client verify authority cert len

const uint8_t ***prvtkey_pem**
Private key

size_t **prvtkey_len**
Private key byte length

httpd_ssl_transport_mode_t **transport_mode**
Transport Mode (default secure)

uint16_t **port_secure**
Port used when transport mode is secure (default 443)

uint16_t **port_insecure**
Port used when transport mode is insecure (default 80)

Macros

HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Default config struct init

(http_server default config had to be copied for customization)

Notes:

- port is set when starting the server, according to 'transport_mode'
- one socket uses ~ 40kB RAM with SSL, we reduce the default socket count to 4
- SSL sockets are usually long-lived, closing LRU prevents pool exhaustion DOS
- Stack size may need adjustments depending on the user application

Type Definitions

typedef struct *httpd_ssl_config* **httpd_ssl_config_t**

Enumerations

enum httpd_ssl_transport_mode_t
Values:

HTTPD_SSL_TRANSPORT_SECURE

HTTPD_SSL_TRANSPORT_INSECURE

2.3.8 ICMP Echo

Overview

ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol) is used for diagnostic or control purposes or generated in response to errors in IP operations. The common network util `ping` is implemented based on the ICMP packets with the type field value of 0, also called `Echo Reply`.

During a ping session, the source host firstly sends out an ICMP echo request packet and wait for an ICMP echo reply with specific times. In this way, it also measures the round-trip time for the messages. After receiving a valid ICMP echo reply, the source host will generate statistics about the IP link layer (e.g. packet loss, elapsed time, etc).

It is common that IoT device needs to check whether a remote server is alive or not. The device should show the warnings to users when it got offline. It can be achieved by creating a ping session and sending/parsing ICMP echo packets periodically.

To make this internal procedure much easier for users, ESP-IDF provides some out-of-box APIs.

Create a new ping session To create a ping session, you need to fill in the `esp_ping_config_t` configuration structure firstly, specifying target IP address, interval times, and etc. Optionally, you can also register some callback functions with the *esp_ping_callbacks_t*` structure.

Example method to create a new ping session and register callbacks:

```
static void test_on_ping_success(esp_ping_handle_t hdl, void *args)
{
    // optionally, get callback arguments
    // const char* str = (const char*) args;
    // printf("%s\r\n", str); // "foo"
    uint8_t ttl;
    uint16_t seqno;
    uint32_t elapsed_time, recv_len;
    ip_addr_t target_addr;
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO, &seqno, sizeof(seqno));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_TTL, &ttl, sizeof(ttl));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR, &target_addr, sizeof(target_
↪addr));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_SIZE, &recv_len, sizeof(recv_len));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_TIMEGAP, &elapsed_time, sizeof(elapsed_
↪time));
    printf("%d bytes from %s icmp_seq=%d ttl=%d time=%d ms\n",
           recv_len, inet_ntoa(target_addr.u_addr.ip4), seqno, ttl, elapsed_time);
}

static void test_on_ping_timeout(esp_ping_handle_t hdl, void *args)
{
    uint16_t seqno;
    ip_addr_t target_addr;
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO, &seqno, sizeof(seqno));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR, &target_addr, sizeof(target_
↪addr));
    printf("From %s icmp_seq=%d timeout\n", inet_ntoa(target_addr.u_addr.ip4),␣
↪seqno);
}

static void test_on_ping_end(esp_ping_handle_t hdl, void *args)
{
    uint32_t transmitted;
    uint32_t received;
    uint32_t total_time_ms;

    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_REQUEST, &transmitted,␣
↪sizeof(transmitted));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_REPLY, &received, sizeof(received));
    esp_ping_get_profile(hdl, ESP_PING_PROF_DURATION, &total_time_ms, sizeof(total_
↪time_ms));
    printf("%d packets transmitted, %d received, time %dms\n", transmitted,␣
↪received, total_time_ms);
}

void initialize_ping()
{
    /* convert URL to IP address */
    ip_addr_t target_addr;
    struct addrinfo hint;
    struct addrinfo *res = NULL;
    memset(&hint, 0, sizeof(hint));
    memset(&target_addr, 0, sizeof(target_addr));
    getaddrinfo("www.espressif.com", NULL, &hint, &res);
    struct in_addr addr4 = ((struct sockaddr_in *) (res->ai_addr))->sin_addr;
    inet_addr_to_ip4addr(ip_2_ip4(&target_addr), &addr4);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    freeaddrinfo(res);

    esp_ping_config_t ping_config = ESP_PING_DEFAULT_CONFIG();
    ping_config.target_addr = target_addr;          // target IP address
    ping_config.count = ESP_PING_COUNT_INFINITE;    // ping in infinite mode, esp_
↪ping_stop can stop it

    /* set callback functions */
    esp_ping_callbacks_t cbs;
    cbs.on_ping_success = test_on_ping_success;
    cbs.on_ping_timeout = test_on_ping_timeout;
    cbs.on_ping_end = test_on_ping_end;
    cbs.cb_args = "foo";  // arguments that will feed to all callback functions,␣
↪can be NULL
    cbs.cb_args = eth_event_group;

    esp_ping_handle_t ping;
    esp_ping_new_session(&ping_config, &cbs, &ping);
}
```

Start and Stop ping session You can start and stop ping session with the handle returned by `esp_ping_new_session`. Note that, the ping session won't start automatically after creation. If the ping session is stopped, and restart again, the sequence number in ICMP packets will recount from zero again.

Delete a ping session If a ping session won't be used any more, you can delete it with `esp_ping_delete_session`. Please make sure the ping session is in stop state (i.e. you have called `esp_ping_stop` before or the ping session has finished all the procedures) when you call this function.

Get runtime statistics As the example code above, you can call `esp_ping_get_profile` to get different runtime statistics of ping session in the callback function.

Application Example

ICMP echo example: protocols/icmp_echo

API Reference

Header File

- lwip/include/apps/ping/ping_sock.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_ping_new_session**(**const** *esp_ping_config_t* **config*, **const** *esp_ping_callbacks_t* **cbs*, *esp_ping_handle_t* **hdl_out*)

Create a ping session.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. configuration is null, etc)
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: out of memory
- ESP_FAIL: other internal error (e.g. socket error)
- ESP_OK: create ping session successfully, user can take the ping handle to do follow-on jobs

Parameters

- `config`: ping configuration
- `cbs`: a bunch of callback functions invoked by internal ping task
- `hdl_out`: handle of ping session

esp_err_t **esp_ping_delete_session**(*esp_ping_handle_t hdl*)
Delete a ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_OK: delete ping session successfully

Parameters
- `hdl`: handle of ping session

esp_err_t **esp_ping_start**(*esp_ping_handle_t hdl*)
Start the ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_OK: start ping session successfully

Parameters
- `hdl`: handle of ping session

esp_err_t **esp_ping_stop**(*esp_ping_handle_t hdl*)
Stop the ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_OK: stop ping session successfully

Parameters
- `hdl`: handle of ping session

esp_err_t **esp_ping_get_profile**(*esp_ping_handle_t hdl*, *esp_ping_profile_t profile*, void **data*, uint32_t *size*)
Get runtime profile of ping session.

Return
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: invalid parameters (e.g. ping handle is null, etc)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: the actual profile data size doesn't match the "size" parameter
- ESP_OK: get profile successfully

Parameters
- `hdl`: handle of ping session
- `profile`: type of profile
- `data`: profile data
- `size`: profile data size

Structures

struct esp_ping_callbacks_t
Type of "ping" callback functions.

Public Members

void ***cb_args**
arguments for callback functions

void (***on_ping_success**)(*esp_ping_handle_t* hdl, void *args)
Invoked by internal ping thread when received ICMP echo reply packet.

void (***on_ping_timeout**)(*esp_ping_handle_t* hdl, void *args)
Invoked by internal ping thread when receive ICMP echo reply packet timeout.

void (***on_ping_end**)(*esp_ping_handle_t* hdl, void *args)
Invoked by internal ping thread when a ping session is finished.

struct esp_ping_config_t
Type of "ping" configuration.

Public Members

uint32_t **count**
A "ping" session contains count procedures

uint32_t **interval_ms**
Milliseconds between each ping procedure

uint32_t **timeout_ms**
Timeout value (in milliseconds) of each ping procedure

uint32_t **data_size**
Size of the data next to ICMP packet header

uint8_t **tos**
Type of Service, a field specified in the IP header

ip_addr_t **target_addr**
Target IP address, either IPv4 or IPv6

uint32_t **task_stack_size**
Stack size of internal ping task

uint32_t **task_prio**
Priority of internal ping task

uint32_t **interface**
Netif index, interface=0 means NETIF_NO_INDEX

Macros

ESP_PING_DEFAULT_CONFIG()
Default ping configuration.

ESP_PING_COUNT_INFINITE
Set ping count to zero will ping target infinitely

Type Definitions

typedef void ***esp_ping_handle_t**
Type of "ping" session handle.

Enumerations

enum esp_ping_profile_t
Profile of ping session.

Values:

ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO
Sequence number of a ping procedure

ESP_PING_PROF_TTL
Time to live of a ping procedure

ESP_PING_PROF_REQUEST
Number of request packets sent out

ESP_PING_PROF_REPLY
Number of reply packets received

ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR
IP address of replied target

ESP_PING_PROF_SIZE
Size of received packet

ESP_PING_PROF_TIMEGAP
Elapsed time between request and reply packet

ESP_PING_PROF_DURATION
Elapsed time of the whole ping session

2.3.9 ESP Local Control

Overview

ESP Local Control (**esp_local_ctrl**) component in ESP-IDF provides capability to control an ESP device over Wi-Fi + HTTPS or BLE. It provides access to application defined **properties** that are available for reading / writing via a set of configurable handlers.

Initialization of the **esp_local_ctrl** service over BLE transport is performed as follows:

```
esp_local_ctrl_config_t config = {
    .transport = ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_BLE,
    .transport_config = {
        .ble = & (protocomm_ble_config_t) {
            .device_name  = SERVICE_NAME,
            .service_uuid = {
                /* LSB <---------------------------------------
                * ---------------------------------------> MSB */
                0x21, 0xd5, 0x3b, 0x8d, 0xbd, 0x75, 0x68, 0x8a,
                0xb4, 0x42, 0xeb, 0x31, 0x4a, 0x1e, 0x98, 0x3d
            }
        }
    },
    .handlers = {
        /* User defined handler functions */
        .get_prop_values = get_property_values,
        .set_prop_values = set_property_values,
        .usr_ctx         = NULL,
        .usr_ctx_free_fn = NULL
    },
    /* Maximum number of properties that may be set */
    .max_properties = 10
};

/* Start esp_local_ctrl service */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_local_ctrl_start(&config));
```

Similarly for HTTPS transport:

```
/* Set the configuration */
httpd_ssl_config_t https_conf = HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT();

/* Load server certificate */
extern const unsigned char cacert_pem_start[] asm("_binary_cacert_pem_
↪start");
extern const unsigned char cacert_pem_end[]   asm("_binary_cacert_pem_end
↪");
https_conf.cacert_pem = cacert_pem_start;
https_conf.cacert_len = cacert_pem_end - cacert_pem_start;

/* Load server private key */
extern const unsigned char prvtkey_pem_start[] asm("_binary_prvtkey_pem_
↪start");
extern const unsigned char prvtkey_pem_end[]   asm("_binary_prvtkey_pem_
↪end");
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
https_conf.prvtkey_pem = prvtkey_pem_start;
https_conf.prvtkey_len = prvtkey_pem_end - prvtkey_pem_start;

esp_local_ctrl_config_t config = {
    .transport = ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_HTTPD,
    .transport_config = {
        .httpd = &https_conf
    },
    .handlers = {
        /* User defined handler functions */
        .get_prop_values = get_property_values,
        .set_prop_values = set_property_values,
        .usr_ctx         = NULL,
        .usr_ctx_free_fn = NULL
    },
    /* Maximum number of properties that may be set */
    .max_properties = 10
};

/* Start esp_local_ctrl service */
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_local_ctrl_start(&config));
```

Creating a property

Now that we know how to start the **esp_local_ctrl** service, let's add a property to it. Each property must have a unique *name* (string), a *type* (e.g. enum), *flags* (bit fields) and *size*.

The *size* is to be kept 0, if we want our property value to be of variable length (e.g. if its a string or bytestream). For fixed length property value data-types, like int, float, etc., setting the *size* field to the right value, helps **esp_local_ctrl** to perform internal checks on arguments received with write requests.

The interpretation of *type* and *flags* fields is totally upto the application, hence they may be used as enumerations, bit-fields, or even simple integers. One way is to use *type* values to classify properties, while *flags* to specify characteristics of a property.

Here is an example property which is to function as a timestamp. It is assumed that the application defines *TYPE_TIMESTAMP* and *READONLY*, which are used for setting the *type* and *flags* fields here.

```
/* Create a timestamp property */
esp_local_ctrl_prop_t timestamp = {
    .name        = "timestamp",
    .type        = TYPE_TIMESTAMP,
    .size        = sizeof(int32_t),
    .flags       = READONLY,
    .ctx         = func_get_time,
    .ctx_free_fn = NULL
};

/* Now register the property */
esp_local_ctrl_add_property(&timestamp);
```

Also notice that there is a ctx field, which is set to point to some custom *func_get_time()*. This can be used inside the property get / set handlers to retrieve timestamp.

Here is an example of *get_prop_values()* handler, which is used for retrieving the timestamp.

```
static esp_err_t get_property_values(size_t props_count,
                                     const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t *props,
                                     esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t *prop_
↪values,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
                                    void *usr_ctx)
{
    for (uint32_t i = 0; i < props_count; i++) {
        ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Reading %s", props[i].name);
        if (props[i].type == TYPE_TIMESTAMP) {
            /* Obtain the timer function from ctx */
            int32_t (*func_get_time)(void) = props[i].ctx;

            /* Use static variable for saving the value.
             * This is essential because the value has to be
             * valid even after this function returns.
             * Alternative is to use dynamic allocation
             * and set the free_fn field */
            static int32_t ts = func_get_time();
            prop_values[i].data = &ts;
        }
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Here is an example of *set_prop_values()* handler. Notice how we restrict from writing to read-only properties.

```
static esp_err_t set_property_values(size_t props_count,
                                     const esp_local_ctrl_prop_t *props,
                                     const esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t␣
↪*prop_values,
                                     void *usr_ctx)
{
    for (uint32_t i = 0; i < props_count; i++) {
        if (props[i].flags & READONLY) {
            ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Cannot write to read-only property %s",␣
↪props[i].name);
            return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG;
        } else {
            ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Setting %s", props[i].name);

            /* For keeping it simple, lets only log the incoming data */
            ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX_LEVEL(TAG, prop_values[i].data,
                                     prop_values[i].size, ESP_LOG_INFO);
        }
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

For complete example see protocols/esp_local_ctrl

Client Side Implementation

The client side implementation will have establish a protocomm session with the device first, over the supported mode of transport, and then send and receive protobuf messages understood by the **esp_local_ctrl** service. The service will translate these messages into requests and then call the appropriate handlers (set / get). Then, the generated response for each handler is again packed into a protobuf message and transmitted back to the client.

See below the various protobuf messages understood by the **esp_local_ctrl** service:

1. *get_prop_count* : This should simply return the total number of properties supported by the service
2. *get_prop_values* : This accepts an array of indices and should return the information (name, type, flags) and values of the properties corresponding to those indices
3. *set_prop_values* : This accepts an array of indices and an array of new values, which are used for setting the values of the properties corresponding to the indices

Note that indices may or may not be the same for a property, across multiple sessions. Therefore, the client must only use the names of the properties to uniquely identify them. So, every time a new session is established, the client should first call *get_prop_count* and then *get_prop_values*, hence form an index to name mapping for all properties. Now when calling *set_prop_values* for a set of properties, it must first convert the names to indexes, using the created mapping. As emphasized earlier, the client must refresh the index to name mapping every time a new session is established with the same device.

The various protocomm endpoints provided by **esp_local_ctrl** are listed below:

Table 5: Endpoints provided by ESP Local Control

Endpoint Name (BLE + GATT Server)	URI (HTTPS Server + mDNS)	Description
esp_local_ctrl/version	https://<mdns-hostname>.local/esp_local_ctrl/version	Endpoint used for retrieving version string
esp_local_ctrl/control	https://<mdns-hostname>.local/esp_local_ctrl/control	Endpoint used for sending / receiving control messages

API Reference

Header File

- esp_local_ctrl/include/esp_local_ctrl.h

Functions

const *esp_local_ctrl_transport_t* ***esp_local_ctrl_get_transport_ble**(void)

Function for obtaining BLE transport mode.

const *esp_local_ctrl_transport_t* ***esp_local_ctrl_get_transport_httpd**(void)

Function for obtaining HTTPD transport mode.

esp_err_t **esp_local_ctrl_start**(**const** *esp_local_ctrl_config_t* **config*)

Start local control service.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters

- `[in] config`: Pointer to configuration structure

esp_err_t **esp_local_ctrl_stop**(void)

Stop local control service.

esp_err_t **esp_local_ctrl_add_property**(**const** *esp_local_ctrl_prop_t* **prop*)

Add a new property.

This adds a new property and allocates internal resources for it. The total number of properties that could be added is limited by configuration option `max_properties`

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters

- `[in] prop`: Property description structure

esp_err_t **esp_local_ctrl_remove_property**(**const** char **name*)

Remove a property.

This finds a property by name, and releases the internal resources which are associated with it.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Failure

Parameters

- `[in] name`: Name of the property to remove

`const` *esp_local_ctrl_prop_t* ***esp_local_ctrl_get_property**(`const` char **name*)

Get property description structure by name.

This API may be used to get a property' s context structure `esp_local_ctrl_prop_t` when its name is known

Return

- Pointer to property
- NULL if not found

Parameters

- `[in] name`: Name of the property to find

esp_err_t **esp_local_ctrl_set_handler**(`const` char **ep_name*, *protocomm_req_handler_t handler*, void **user_ctx*)

Register protocomm handler for a custom endpoint.

This API can be called by the application to register a protocomm handler for an endpoint after the local control service has started.

Note In case of BLE transport the names and uuids of all custom endpoints must be provided beforehand as a part of the `protocomm_ble_config_t` structure set in `esp_local_ctrl_config_t`, and passed to `esp_local_ctrl_start()`.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters

- `[in] ep_name`: Name of the endpoint
- `[in] handler`: Endpoint handler function
- `[in] user_ctx`: User data

Unions

union esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t

#include <esp_local_ctrl.h> Transport mode (BLE / HTTPD) configuration.

Public Members

esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_ble_t ***ble**

This is same as `protocomm_ble_config_t`. See `protocomm_ble.h` for available configuration parameters.

esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_httpd_t ***httpd**

This is same as `httpd_ssl_config_t`. See `esp_https_server.h` for available configuration parameters.

Structures

struct esp_local_ctrl_prop

Property description data structure, which is to be populated and passed to the `esp_local_ctrl_add_property()` function.

Once a property is added, its structure is available for read-only access inside `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers.

Public Members

char ***name**
Unique name of property

uint32_t **type**
Type of property. This may be set to application defined enums

size_t **size**
Size of the property value, which:

- if zero, the property can have values of variable size
- if non-zero, the property can have values of fixed size only, therefore, checks are performed internally by esp_local_ctrl when setting the value of such a property

uint32_t **flags**
Flags set for this property. This could be a bit field. A flag may indicate property behavior, e.g. read-only / constant

void ***ctx**
Pointer to some context data relevant for this property. This will be available for use inside the `get_prop_values` and `set_prop_values` handlers as a part of this property structure. When set, this is valid throughout the lifetime of a property, till either the property is removed or the esp_local_ctrl service is stopped.

void (***ctx_free_fn**) (void *ctx)
Function used by esp_local_ctrl to internally free the property context when `esp_local_ctrl_remove_property()` or `esp_local_ctrl_stop()` is called.

struct esp_local_ctrl_prop_val
Property value data structure. This gets passed to the `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers for the purpose of retrieving or setting the present value of a property.

Public Members

void ***data**
Pointer to memory holding property value

size_t **size**
Size of property value

void (***free_fn**) (void *data)
This may be set by the application in `get_prop_values()` handler to tell `esp_local_ctrl` to call this function on the data pointer above, for freeing its resources after sending the `get_prop_values` response.

struct esp_local_ctrl_handlers
Handlers for receiving and responding to local control commands for getting and setting properties.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***get_prop_values**) (size_t props_count, **const** *esp_local_ctrl_prop_t* props[], *esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t* prop_values[], void *usr_ctx)
Handler function to be implemented for retrieving current values of properties.

Note If any of the properties have fixed sizes, the size field of corresponding element in `prop_values` need to be set

Return Returning different error codes will convey the corresponding protocol level errors to the client :

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : InvalidArgument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : InvalidProto
- All other error codes : InternalError

Parameters

- `[in] props_count`: Total elements in the props array
- `[in] props`: Array of properties, the current values for which have been requested by the client
- `[out] prop_values`: Array of empty property values, the elements of which need to be populated with the current values of those properties specified by props argument
- `[in] usr_ctx`: This provides value of the `usr_ctx` field of `esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t` structure

esp_err_t (***set_prop_values**) (size_t props_count, **const** *esp_local_ctrl_prop_t* props[], **const** *esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t* prop_values[], void *usr_ctx)

Handler function to be implemented for changing values of properties.

Note If any of the properties have variable sizes, the size field of the corresponding element in `prop_values` must be checked explicitly before making any assumptions on the size.

Return Returning different error codes will convey the corresponding protocol level errors to the client :

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : InvalidArgument
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : InvalidProto
- All other error codes : InternalError

Parameters

- `[in] props_count`: Total elements in the props array
- `[in] props`: Array of properties, the values for which the client requests to change
- `[in] prop_values`: Array of property values, the elements of which need to be used for updating those properties specified by props argument
- `[in] usr_ctx`: This provides value of the `usr_ctx` field of `esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t` structure

void ***usr_ctx**

Context pointer to be passed to above handler functions upon invocation. This is different from the property level context, as this is valid throughout the lifetime of the `esp_local_ctrl` service, and freed only when the service is stopped.

void (***usr_ctx_free_fn**) (void *usr_ctx)

Pointer to function which will be internally invoked on `usr_ctx` for freeing the context resources when `esp_local_ctrl_stop()` is called.

struct esp_local_ctrl_config

Configuration structure to pass to `esp_local_ctrl_start()`

Public Members

const *esp_local_ctrl_transport_t* ***transport**

Transport layer over which service will be provided

esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t **transport_config**

Transport layer over which service will be provided

esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t **handlers**

Register handlers for responding to get/set requests on properties

size_t **max_properties**

This limits the number of properties that are available at a time

Macros

ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_BLE

ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_HTTPD

Type Definitions

typedef struct *esp_local_ctrl_prop* **esp_local_ctrl_prop_t**

Property description data structure, which is to be populated and passed to the `esp_local_ctrl_add_property()` function.

Once a property is added, its structure is available for read-only access inside `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers.

typedef struct *esp_local_ctrl_prop_val* **esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t**

Property value data structure. This gets passed to the `get_prop_values()` and `set_prop_values()` handlers for the purpose of retrieving or setting the present value of a property.

typedef struct *esp_local_ctrl_handlers* **esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t**

Handlers for receiving and responding to local control commands for getting and setting properties.

typedef struct esp_local_ctrl_transport **esp_local_ctrl_transport_t**

Transport mode (BLE / HTTPD) over which the service will be provided.

This is forward declaration of a private structure, implemented internally by `esp_local_ctrl`.

typedef struct *protocomm_ble_config* **esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_ble_t**

Configuration for transport mode BLE.

This is a forward declaration for `protocomm_ble_config_t`. To use this, application must set CONFIG_BT_BLUEDROID_ENABLED and include `protocomm_ble.h`.

typedef struct *httpd_ssl_config* **esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_httpd_t**

Configuration for transport mode HTTPD.

This is a forward declaration for `httpd_ssl_config_t`. To use this, application must set CONFIG_ESP_HTTPS_SERVER_ENABLE and include `esp_https_server.h`

typedef struct *esp_local_ctrl_config* **esp_local_ctrl_config_t**

Configuration structure to pass to `esp_local_ctrl_start()`

2.3.10 mDNS Service

Overview

mDNS is a multicast UDP service that is used to provide local network service and host discovery.

mDNS is installed by default on most operating systems or is available as separate package. On `Mac OS` it is installed by default and is called `Bonjour`. Apple releases an installer for `Windows` that can be found on Apple's support page. On `Linux`, mDNS is provided by avahi and is usually installed by default.

mDNS Properties

- `hostname`: the hostname that the device will respond to. If not set, the `hostname` will be read from the interface. Example: `my-esp32s2` will resolve to `my-esp32s2.local`
- `default_instance`: friendly name for your device, like `Jhon's ESP32-S2 Thing`. If not set, `hostname` will be used.

Example method to start mDNS for the STA interface and set `hostname` and `default_instance`:

```
void start_mdns_service()
{
    //initialize mDNS service
    esp_err_t err = mdns_init();
    if (err) {
        printf("MDNS Init failed: %d\n", err);
        return;
    }

    //set hostname
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    mdns_hostname_set("my-esp32s2");
    //set default instance
    mdns_instance_name_set("Jhon's ESP32-S2 Thing");
}
```

mDNS Services mDNS can advertise information about network services that your device offers. Each service is defined by a few properties.

- `instance_name`: friendly name for your service, like `Jhon's EESP32-S2 Web Server`. If not defined, `default_instance` will be used.
- `service_type`: (required) service type, prepended with underscore. Some common types can be found here.
- `proto`: (required) protocol that the service runs on, prepended with underscore. Example: `_tcp` or `_udp`
- `port`: (required) network port that the service runs on
- `txt`: `{var, val}` array of strings, used to define properties for your service

Example method to add a few services and different properties:

```
void add_mdns_services()
{
    //add our services
    mdns_service_add(NULL, "_http", "_tcp", 80, NULL, 0);
    mdns_service_add(NULL, "_arduino", "_tcp", 3232, NULL, 0);
    mdns_service_add(NULL, "_myservice", "_udp", 1234, NULL, 0);

    //NOTE: services must be added before their properties can be set
    //use custom instance for the web server
    mdns_service_instance_name_set("_http", "_tcp", "Jhon's ESP32-S2 Web Server");

    mdns_txt_item_t serviceTxtData[3] = {
        {"board","{esp32s2}"},
        {"u","user"},
        {"p","password"}
    };
    //set txt data for service (will free and replace current data)
    mdns_service_txt_set("_http", "_tcp", serviceTxtData, 3);

    //change service port
    mdns_service_port_set("_myservice", "_udp", 4321);
}
```

mDNS Query mDNS provides methods for browsing for services and resolving host' s IP/IPv6 addresses.

Results for services are returned as a linked list of `mdns_result_t` objects.

Example method to resolve host IPs:

```
void resolve_mdns_host(const char * host_name)
{
    printf("Query A: %s.local", host_name);

    struct ip4_addr addr;
    addr.addr = 0;

    esp_err_t err = mdns_query_a(host_name, 2000,  &addr);
    if(err){
        if(err == ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND){
            printf("Host was not found!");
            return;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        }
        printf("Query Failed");
        return;
    }

    printf(IPSTR, IP2STR(&addr));
}
```

Example method to resolve local services:

```
static const char * if_str[] = {"STA", "AP", "ETH", "MAX"};
static const char * ip_protocol_str[] = {"V4", "V6", "MAX"};

void mdns_print_results(mdns_result_t * results){
    mdns_result_t * r = results;
    mdns_ip_addr_t * a = NULL;
    int i = 1, t;
    while(r){
        printf("%d: Interface: %s, Type: %s\n", i++, if_str[r->tcpip_if], ip_
↪protocol_str[r->ip_protocol]);
        if(r->instance_name){
            printf("  PTR : %s\n", r->instance_name);
        }
        if(r->hostname){
            printf("  SRV : %s.local:%u\n", r->hostname, r->port);
        }
        if(r->txt_count){
            printf("  TXT : [%u] ", r->txt_count);
            for(t=0; t<r->txt_count; t++){
                printf("%s=%s; ", r->txt[t].key, r->txt[t].value);
            }
            printf("\n");
        }
        a = r->addr;
        while(a){
            if(a->addr.type == IPADDR_TYPE_V6){
                printf("  AAAA: " IPV6STR "\n", IPV62STR(a->addr.u_addr.ip6));
            } else {
                printf("  A   : " IPSTR "\n", IP2STR(&(a->addr.u_addr.ip4)));
            }
            a = a->next;
        }
        r = r->next;
    }

}

void find_mdns_service(const char * service_name, const char * proto)
{
    ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Query PTR: %s.%s.local", service_name, proto);

    mdns_result_t * results = NULL;
    esp_err_t err = mdns_query_ptr(service_name, proto, 3000, 20,  &results);
    if(err){
        ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Query Failed");
        return;
    }
    if(!results){
        ESP_LOGW(TAG, "No results found!");
        return;
    }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    mdns_print_results(results);
    mdns_query_results_free(results);
}
```

Example of using the methods above:

```
void my_app_some_method(){
    //search for esp32s2-mdns.local
    resolve_mdns_host("esp32s2-mdns");

    //search for HTTP servers
    find_mdns_service("_http", "_tcp");
    //or file servers
    find_mdns_service("_smb", "_tcp"); //windows sharing
    find_mdns_service("_afpovertcp", "_tcp"); //apple sharing
    find_mdns_service("_nfs", "_tcp"); //NFS server
    find_mdns_service("_ftp", "_tcp"); //FTP server
    //or networked printer
    find_mdns_service("_printer", "_tcp");
    find_mdns_service("_ipp", "_tcp");
}
```

Application Example

mDNS server/scanner example: protocols/mdns.

API Reference

Header File

- mdns/include/mdns.h

Functions

esp_err_t **mdns_init** (void)

Initialize mDNS on given interface.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE when failed to register event handler
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM on memory error
- ESP_FAIL when failed to start mdns task

void **mdns_free** (void)

Stop and free mDNS server.

esp_err_t **mdns_hostname_set** (**const** char **hostname*)

Set the hostname for mDNS server required if you want to advertise services.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `hostname`: Hostname to set

esp_err_t **mdns_instance_name_set** (**const** char **instance_name*)

Set the default instance name for mDNS server.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `instance_name`: Instance name to set

esp_err_t **mdns_service_add**(**const** char **instance_name*, **const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, uint16_t *port*, *mdns_txt_item_t* *txt*[], size_t *num_items*)

Add service to mDNS server.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_FAIL failed to add service

Parameters

- `instance_name`: instance name to set. If NULL, global instance name or hostname will be used
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `port`: service port
- `txt`: string array of TXT data (eg. {{ "var" ," val" },{ "other" ," 2" }})
- `num_items`: number of items in TXT data

esp_err_t **mdns_service_remove**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*)

Remove service from mDNS server.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)

esp_err_t **mdns_service_instance_name_set**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, **const** char **instance_name*)

Set instance name for service.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `instance_name`: instance name to set

esp_err_t **mdns_service_port_set**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, uint16_t *port*)

Set service port.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `port`: service port

esp_err_t **mdns_service_txt_set**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, *mdns_txt_item_t* *txt*[], uint8_t *num_items*)

Replace all TXT items for service.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `txt`: array of TXT data (eg. {{ "var" ," val" },{ "other" ," 2" }})
- `num_items`: number of items in TXT data

esp_err_t **mdns_service_txt_item_set**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, **const** char **key*, **const** char **value*)

Set/Add TXT item for service TXT record.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `key`: the key that you want to add/update
- `value`: the new value of the key

esp_err_t **mdns_service_txt_item_remove**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, **const** char **key*)

Remove TXT item for service TXT record.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND Service not found
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _ftp, etc)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp)
- `key`: the key that you want to remove

esp_err_t **mdns_service_remove_all**(void)

Remove and free all services from mDNS server.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Parameter error

esp_err_t **mdns_query**(**const** char **name*, **const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, uint16_t *type*, uint32_t *timeout*, size_t *max_results*, *mdns_result_t* ***results*)

Query mDNS for host or service All following query methods are derived from this one.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG timeout was not given

Parameters

- `name`: service instance or host name (NULL for PTR queries)
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.) (NULL for host queries)

- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.) (NULL for host queries)
- `type`: type of query (MDNS_TYPE_*)
- `timeout`: time in milliseconds to wait for answers.
- `max_results`: maximum results to be collected
- `results`: pointer to the results of the query results must be freed using mdns_query_results_free below

void **mdns_query_results_free**(*mdns_result_t* **results*)

Free query results.

Parameters

- `results`: linked list of results to be freed

esp_err_t **mdns_query_ptr**(**const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, uint32_t *timeout*, size_t *max_results*, *mdns_result_t* ***results*)

Query mDNS for service.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

- `service_type`: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.)
- `timeout`: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
- `max_results`: maximum results to be collected
- `results`: pointer to the results of the query

esp_err_t **mdns_query_srv**(**const** char **instance_name*, **const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, uint32_t *timeout*, *mdns_result_t* ***result*)

Query mDNS for SRV record.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

- `instance_name`: service instance name
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.)
- `timeout`: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
- `result`: pointer to the result of the query

esp_err_t **mdns_query_txt**(**const** char **instance_name*, **const** char **service_type*, **const** char **proto*, uint32_t *timeout*, *mdns_result_t* ***result*)

Query mDNS for TXT record.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

- `instance_name`: service instance name
- `service_type`: service type (_http, _arduino, _ftp etc.)
- `proto`: service protocol (_tcp, _udp, etc.)
- `timeout`: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
- `result`: pointer to the result of the query

esp_err_t **mdns_query_a**(**const** char **host_name*, uint32_t *timeout*, esp_ip4_addr_t **addr*)

Query mDNS for A record.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

- `host_name`: host name to look for
- `timeout`: time in milliseconds to wait for answer.
- `addr`: pointer to the resulting IP4 address

esp_err_t **mdns_query_aaaa**(**const** char **host_name*, uint32_t *timeout*, esp_ip6_addr_t **addr*)

Query mDNS for A record.

Please note that hostname must not contain domain name, as mDNS uses '.local' domain.

Return

- ESP_OK success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE mDNS is not running
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM memory error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG parameter error

Parameters

- `host_name`: host name to look for
- `timeout`: time in milliseconds to wait for answer. If 0, max_results needs to be defined
- `addr`: pointer to the resulting IP6 address

esp_err_t **mdns_handle_system_event**(void **ctx*, *system_event_t* **event*)

System event handler This method controls the service state on all active interfaces and applications are required to call it from the system event handler for normal operation of mDNS service.

Please note that hostname must not contain domain name, as mDNS uses '.local' domain.

Parameters

- `ctx`: The system event context
- `event`: The system event

Structures

struct mdns_txt_item_t

mDNS basic text item structure Used in mdns_service_add()

Public Members

const char ***key**

item key name

const char ***value**

item value string

struct mdns_ip_addr_s

mDNS query linked list IP item

Public Members

esp_ip_addr_t **addr**

IP address

struct *mdns_ip_addr_s* ***next**

next IP, or NULL for the last IP in the list

struct mdns_result_s

mDNS query result structure

Public Members

struct *mdns_result_s* ***next**
next result, or NULL for the last result in the list

mdns_if_t **tcpip_if**
interface index

mdns_ip_protocol_t **ip_protocol**
ip_protocol type of the interface (v4/v6)

char ***instance_name**
instance name

char ***hostname**
hostname

uint16_t **port**
service port

mdns_txt_item_t ***txt**
txt record

size_t **txt_count**
number of txt items

mdns_ip_addr_t ***addr**
linked list of IP addresses found

Macros

MDNS_TYPE_A
MDNS_TYPE_PTR

MDNS_TYPE_TXT

MDNS_TYPE_AAAA

MDNS_TYPE_SRV

MDNS_TYPE_OPT

MDNS_TYPE_NSEC

MDNS_TYPE_ANY

Type Definitions

typedef struct *mdns_ip_addr_s* **mdns_ip_addr_t**
mDNS query linked list IP item

typedef enum *mdns_if_internal* **mdns_if_t**

typedef struct *mdns_result_s* **mdns_result_t**
mDNS query result structure

Enumerations

enum mdns_ip_protocol_t
mDNS enum to specify the ip_protocol type

Values:

MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_V4

MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_V6

MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_MAX

enum mdns_if_internal

Values:

MDNS_IF_STA = 0

MDNS_IF_AP = 1

MDNS_IF_ETH = 2

MDNS_IF_MAX

2.3.11 ESP-Modbus

Overview

The Modbus serial communication protocol is de facto standard protocol widely used to connect industrial electronic devices. Modbus allows communication among many devices connected to the same network, for example, a system that measures temperature and humidity and communicates the results to a computer. The Modbus protocol uses several types of data: Holding Registers, Input Registers, Coils (single bit output), Discrete Inputs. Versions of the Modbus protocol exist for serial port and for Ethernet and other protocols that support the Internet protocol suite. There are many variants of Modbus protocols, some of them are:

- `Modbus RTU` —This is used in serial communication and makes use of a compact, binary representation of the data for protocol communication. The RTU format follows the commands/data with a cyclic redundancy check checksum as an error check mechanism to ensure the reliability of data. Modbus RTU is the most common implementation available for Modbus. A Modbus RTU message must be transmitted continuously without inter-character hesitations. Modbus messages are framed (separated) by idle (silent) periods. The RS-485 interface communication is usually used for this type.
- `Modbus ASCII` —This is used in serial communication and makes use of ASCII characters for protocol communication. The ASCII format uses a longitudinal redundancy check checksum. Modbus ASCII messages are framed by leading colon (":") and trailing newline (CR/LF).
- `Modbus TCP/IP or Modbus TCP` —This is a Modbus variant used for communications over TCP/IP networks, connecting over port 502. It does not require a checksum calculation, as lower layers already provide checksum protection.

Modbus port specific API overview ESP-IDF supports Modbus Serial/TCP slave and master protocol stacks (port) and provides Modbus controller interface API to interact with user application.

The functions below are used to create and then initialize actual Modbus controller interface for Serial/TCP port accordingly:

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_init**(mb_port_type_t *port_type*, void **handler*)

Initialize Modbus Slave controller and stack for Serial port.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters

- `[out] handler`: handler(pointer) to master data structure
- `[in] port_type`: the type of port

esp_err_t **mbc_master_init**(mb_port_type_t *port_type*, void **handler*)

Initialize Modbus Master controller and stack for Serial port.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters
- `[out] handler`: handler(pointer) to master data structure
- `[in] port_type`: type of stack

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_init_tcp** (void **handler*)
Initialize Modbus Slave controller and stack for TCP port.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters
- `[out] handler`: handler(pointer) to master data structure

esp_err_t **mbc_master_init_tcp** (void **handler*)
Initialize Modbus controller and stack for TCP port.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM Parameter error
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Port type not supported
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Initialization failure

Parameters
- `[out] handler`: handler(pointer) to master data structure

Modbus common interface API overview The function initializes the Modbus controller interface and its active context (tasks, RTOS objects and other resources).

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_setup** (void **comm_info*)
Set Modbus communication parameters for the controller.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Incorrect parameter data

Parameters
- `comm_info`: Communication parameters structure.

esp_err_t **mbc_master_setup** (void **comm_info*)
Set Modbus communication parameters for the controller.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Incorrect parameter data

Parameters
- `comm_info`: Communication parameters structure.

The function is used to setup communication parameters of the Modbus stack. See the Modbus controller API documentation for more information. Note: The communication structure provided as a parameter is different for serial and TCP communication mode.

mbc_slave_set_descriptor(): Initialization of slave descriptor.

mbc_master_set_descriptor(): Initialization of master descriptor.

The Modbus stack uses parameter description tables (descriptors) for communication. These are different for master and slave implementation of stack and should be assigned by the API call before start of communication.

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_start** (void)
Start Modbus communication stack.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Modbus stack start error

esp_err_t **mbc_master_start** (void)
Start Modbus communication stack.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Modbus stack start error

Modbus controller start function. Starts stack and interface and allows communication.

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_destroy** (void)
Destroy Modbus controller and stack.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Parameter error

esp_err_t **mbc_master_destroy** (void)
Destroy Modbus controller and stack.

Return
- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Parameter error

This function stops Modbus communication stack and destroys controller interface.

There are some configurable parameters of modbus_controller interface and Modbus stack that can be configured using KConfig values in "Modbus configuration" menu. The most important option in KConfig menu is "Enable Modbus stack support ···" for appropriate communication mode that allows to select master or slave stack for implementation. See the examples for more information about how to use these API functions.

Modbus slave interface API overview The slave stack requires the user defined structures which represent Modbus parameters accessed by stack. These structures should be prepared by user and be assigned to the modbus_controller interface using *mbc_slave_set_descriptor()* API call before start of communication. The interface API functions below are used for Modbus slave application:

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_set_descriptor** (mb_register_area_descriptor_t *descr_data*)
Set Modbus area descriptor.

Return
- ESP_OK: The appropriate descriptor is set
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The argument is incorrect

Parameters
- `descr_data`: Modbus registers area descriptor structure

The function initializes Modbus communication descriptors for each type of Modbus register area (Holding Registers, Input Registers, Coils (single bit output), Discrete Inputs). Once areas are initialized and the *mbc_slave_start()* API is called the Modbus stack can access the data in user data structures by request from master. See the `mb_register_area_descriptor_t` and example for more information.

mb_event_group_t **mbc_slave_check_event** (mb_event_group_t *group*)
Wait for specific event on parameter change.

Return
- mb_event_group_t event bits triggered

Parameters
- `group`: Group event bit mask to wait for change

The blocking call to function waits for event specified in the input parameter as event mask. Once master access the parameter and event mask matches the parameter the application task will be unblocked and function will return ESP_OK. See the `mb_event_group_t` for more information about Modbus event masks.

esp_err_t **mbc_slave_get_param_info** (mb_param_info_t **reg_info*, uint32_t *timeout*)
Get parameter information.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT Can not get data from parameter queue or queue overflow

Parameters

- `[out] reg_info`: parameter info structure
- `timeout`: Timeout in milliseconds to read information from parameter queue

The function gets information about accessed parameters from modbus controller event queue. The KConfig 'CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE' key can be used to configure the notification queue size. The timeout parameter allows to specify timeout for waiting notification. The `mb_param_info_t` structure contain information about accessed parameter.

Modbus master interface API overview The Modbus master implementation requires parameter description table be defined before start of stack. This table describes characteristics (physical parameters like temperature, humidity, etc.) and links them to Modbus registers in specific slave device in the Modbus segment. The table has to be assigned to the modbus_controller interface using *`mbc_master_set_descriptor()`* API call before start of communication.

Below are the interface API functions that are used to setup and use Modbus master stack from user application and can be executed in next order:

esp_err_t **mbc_master_set_descriptor**(**const** mb_parameter_descriptor_t **descriptor*, **const** uint16_t *num_elements*)

Assign parameter description table for Modbus controller interface.

Return

- esp_err_t ESP_OK - set descriptor successfully
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument in function call

Parameters

- `[in] descriptor`: pointer to parameter description table
- `num_elements`: number of elements in the table

Assigns parameter description table for Modbus controller interface. The table has to be prepared by user according to particular implementation. Note: TCP communication stack requires to setup additional information about modbus slaves that corresponds to each address(index) used in description table. This information with IP addresses of the slaves is assigned using communication structure and interface setup call.

esp_err_t **mbc_master_send_request**(mb_param_request_t **request*, void **data_ptr*)

Send data request as defined in parameter request, waits response from slave and returns status of command execution. This function provides standard way for read/write access to Modbus devices in the network.

Return

- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE - an invalid response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - operation timeout or no response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - the request command is not supported by slave
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - slave returned an exception or other failure

Parameters

- `[in] request`: pointer to request structure of type mb_param_request_t
- `[in] data_ptr`: pointer to data buffer to send or received data (dependent of command field in request)

This function sends data request as defined in parameter request, waits response from corresponded slave and returns status of command execution. This function provides a standard way for read/write access to Modbus devices in the network.

esp_err_t **mbc_master_get_cid_info**(uint16_t *cid*, **const** mb_parameter_descriptor_t ***param_info*)

Get information about supported characteristic defined as cid. Uses parameter description table to get this information. The function will check if characteristic defined as a cid parameter is supported and returns its description in param_info. Returns ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if characteristic is not supported.

Return

- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful and buffer contains the supported characteristic name
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND - the characteristic (cid) not found
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - unknown error during lookup table processing

Parameters

- `[in] cid`: characteristic id
- `param_info`: pointer to pointer of characteristic data.

The function gets information about supported characteristic defined as cid. It will check if characteristic is supported and returns its description.

esp_err_t **mbc_master_get_parameter**(uint16_t *cid*, char **name*, uint8_t **value*, uint8_t **type*)

Read parameter from modbus slave device whose name is defined by name and has cid. The additional data for request is taken from parameter description (lookup) table.

Return

- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful and value buffer contains representation of actual parameter data from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE - an invalid response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE - invalid state during data processing or allocation failure
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - operation timed out and no response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - the request command is not supported by slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND - the parameter is not found in the parameter description table
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - slave returned an exception or other failure

Parameters

- `[in] cid`: id of the characteristic for parameter
- `[in] name`: pointer into string name (key) of parameter (null terminated)
- `[out] value`: pointer to data buffer of parameter
- `[out] type`: parameter type associated with the name returned from parameter description table.

The function reads data of characteristic defined in parameters from Modbus slave device and returns its data. The additional data for request is taken from parameter description table.

esp_err_t **mbc_master_set_parameter**(uint16_t *cid*, char **name*, uint8_t **value*, uint8_t **type*)

Set characteristic's value defined as a name and cid parameter. The additional data for cid parameter request is taken from master parameter lookup table.

Return

- esp_err_t ESP_OK - request was successful and value was saved in the slave device registers
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG - invalid argument of function
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE - an invalid response from slave during processing of parameter
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE - invalid state during data processing or allocation failure
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT - operation timed out and no response from slave
- esp_err_t ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED - the request command is not supported by slave
- esp_err_t ESP_FAIL - slave returned an exception or other failure

Parameters

- `[in] cid`: id of the characteristic for parameter
- `[in] name`: pointer into string name (key) of parameter (null terminated)
- `[out] value`: pointer to data buffer of parameter (actual representation of json value field in binary form)
- `[out] type`: pointer to parameter type associated with the name returned from parameter lookup table.

The function writes characteristic's value defined as a name and cid parameter in corresponded slave device. The additional data for parameter request is taken from master parameter description table.

Application Example

The examples below use the FreeModbus library port for serial TCP slave and master implementations accordingly. The selection of stack is performed through KConfig menu option "Enable Modbus stack support ···" for appropriate communication mode and related configuration keys.

protocols/modbus/serial/mb_slave

protocols/modbus/serial/mb_master

protocols/modbus/tcp/mb_tcp_slave

protocols/modbus/tcp/mb_tcp_master

Please refer to the specific example README.md for details.

2.3.12 ESP WebSocket Client

Overview

The ESP WebSocket client is an implementation of WebSocket protocol client for ESP32-S2

Features

- Supports WebSocket over TCP, TLS with mbedtls
- Easy to setup with URI
- Multiple instances (Multiple clients in one application)

Configuration

URI

- Supports `ws`, `wss` schemes
- WebSocket samples:
  - `ws://echo.websocket.org`: WebSocket over TCP, default port 80
  - `wss://echo.websocket.org`: WebSocket over SSL, default port 443

Minimal configurations:

```
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://echo.websocket.org",
};
```

The WebSocket client supports the use of both path and query in the URI. Sample:

```
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://echo.websocket.org/connectionhandler?id=104",
};
```

If there are any options related to the URI in *esp_websocket_client_config_t*, the option defined by the URI will be overridden. Sample:

```
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://echo.websocket.org:123",
    .port = 4567,
};
//WebSocket client will connect to websocket.org using port 4567
```

TLS Configuration:

```
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "wss://echo.websocket.org",
    .cert_pem = (const char *)websocket_org_pem_start,
};
```

Note: If you want to verify the server, then you need to provide a certificate in PEM format, and provide to `cert_pem` in `websocket_client_config_t`. If no certficate is provided then the TLS connection will to default not requiring verification.

PEM certificate for this example could be extracted from an openssl *s_client* command connecting to websocket.org. In case a host operating system has *openssl* and *sed* packages installed, one could execute the following command to download and save the root or intermediate root certificate to a file (Note for Windows users: Both Linux like environment or Windows native packages may be used). ` echo "" | openssl s_client -showcerts -connect websocket.org:443 | sed -n "1,/Root/d; /BEGIN/,/END/p" | openssl x509 -outform PEM >websocket_org.pem `

This command will extract the second certificate in the chain and save it as a pem-file.

Subprotocol The subprotocol field in the config struct can be used to request a subprotocol

```
const esp_websocket_client_config_t ws_cfg = {
    .uri = "ws://websocket.org",
    .subprotocol = "soap",
};
```

Note: The client is indifferent to the subprotocol field in the server response and will accept the connection no matter what the server replies.

For more options on *esp_websocket_client_config_t*, please refer to API reference below

Events

- *WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CONNECTED*: The client has successfully established a connection to the server. The client is now ready to send and receive data. Contains no event data.
- *WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED*: The client has aborted the connection due to the transport layer failing to read data, e.g. because the server is unavailable. Contains no event data.
- *WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DATA*: The client has successfully received and parsed a WebSocket frame. The event data contains a pointer to the payload data, the length of the payload data as well as the opcode of the received frame. A message may be fragmented into multiple events if the length exceeds the buffer size. This event will also be posted for non-payload frames, e.g. pong or connection close frames.
- *WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ERROR*: Not used in the current implementation of the client.

If the client handle is needed in the event handler it can be accessed through the pointer passed to the event handler:

```
esp_websocket_client_handle_t client = (esp_websocket_client_handle_t)handler_args;
```

Limitations and Known Issues

- The client is able to request the use of a subprotocol from the server during the handshake, but does not do any subprotocol related checks on the response from the server.

Application Example

A simple WebSocket example that uses esp_websocket_client to establish a websocket connection and send/receive data with the websocket.org server can be found here: protocols/websocket.

Sending Text Data The WebSocket client supports sending data as a text data frame, which informs the application layer that the payload data is text data encoded as UTF-8. Example:

```
esp_websocket_client_send_text(client, data, len, portMAX_DELAY);
```

API Reference

Header File

- esp_websocket_client/include/esp_websocket_client.h

Functions

esp_websocket_client_handle_t **esp_websocket_client_init**(**const** *esp_websocket_client_config_t* **config*)

Start a Websocket session This function must be the first function to call, and it returns a esp_websocket_client_handle_t that you must use as input to other functions in the interface. This call MUST have a corresponding call to esp_websocket_client_destroy when the operation is complete.

Return

- esp_websocket_client_handle_t
- NULL if any errors

Parameters

- [in] config: The configuration

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_client_set_uri**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **uri*)

Set URL for client, when performing this behavior, the options in the URL will replace the old ones Must stop the WebSocket client before set URI if the client has been connected.

Return esp_err_t

Parameters

- [in] client: The client
- [in] uri: The uri

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_client_start**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*)

Open the WebSocket connection.

Return esp_err_t

Parameters

- [in] client: The client

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_client_stop**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*)

Stops the WebSocket connection without websocket closing handshake.

This API stops ws client and closes TCP connection directly without sending close frames. It is a good practice to close the connection in a clean way using esp_websocket_client_close().

Notes:

- Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

Return esp_err_t

Parameters

- [in] client: The client

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_client_destroy**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*)

Destroy the WebSocket connection and free all resources. This function must be the last function to call for an

session. It is the opposite of the esp_websocket_client_init function and must be called with the same handle as input that a esp_websocket_client_init call returned. This might close all connections this handle has used.

Notes:

- Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

Return esp_err_t
Parameters
- `[in] client`: The client

int **esp_websocket_client_send**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **data*, int *len*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Generic write data to the WebSocket connection; defaults to binary send.

Return
- Number of data was sent
- (-1) if any errors

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The client
- `[in] data`: The data
- `[in] len`: The length
- `[in] timeout`: Write data timeout in RTOS ticks

int **esp_websocket_client_send_bin**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **data*, int *len*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Write binary data to the WebSocket connection (data send with WS OPCODE=02, i.e. binary)

Return
- Number of data was sent
- (-1) if any errors

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The client
- `[in] data`: The data
- `[in] len`: The length
- `[in] timeout`: Write data timeout in RTOS ticks

int **esp_websocket_client_send_text**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, **const** char **data*, int *len*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Write textual data to the WebSocket connection (data send with WS OPCODE=01, i.e. text)

Return
- Number of data was sent
- (-1) if any errors

Parameters
- `[in] client`: The client
- `[in] data`: The data
- `[in] len`: The length
- `[in] timeout`: Write data timeout in RTOS ticks

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_client_close**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Close the WebSocket connection in a clean way.

Sequence of clean close initiated by client:

- Client sends CLOSE frame
- Client waits until server echos the CLOSE frame
- Client waits until server closes the connection
- Client is stopped the same way as by the `esp_websocket_client_stop()`
  Notes:
  - Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

Return esp_err_t
Parameters

- `[in] client`: The client
- `[in] timeout`: Timeout in RTOS ticks for waiting

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_client_close_with_code**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, int *code*, **const** char ***data*, int *len*, TickType_t *timeout*)

Close the WebSocket connection in a clean way with custom code/data Closing sequence is the same as for esp_websocket_client_close()

Notes:

- Cannot be called from the websocket event handler

Return esp_err_t

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The client
- `[in] code`: Close status code as defined in RFC6455 section-7.4
- `[in] data`: Additional data to closing message
- `[in] len`: The length of the additional data
- `[in] timeout`: Timeout in RTOS ticks for waiting

bool **esp_websocket_client_is_connected**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*)

Check the WebSocket client connection state.

Return

- true
- false

Parameters

- `[in] client`: The client handle

esp_err_t **esp_websocket_register_events**(*esp_websocket_client_handle_t client*, *esp_websocket_event_id_t event*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*, void ***event_handler_arg*)

Register the Websocket Events.

Return esp_err_t

Parameters

- `client`: The client handle
- `event`: The event id
- `event_handler`: The callback function
- `event_handler_arg`: User context

Structures

struct esp_websocket_event_data_t

Websocket event data.

Public Members

const char ***data_ptr**

Data pointer

int **data_len**

Data length

uint8_t **op_code**

Received opcode

esp_websocket_client_handle_t **client**

esp_websocket_client_handle_t context

void ***user_context**

user_data context, from *esp_websocket_client_config_t* user_data

int **payload_len**
Total payload length, payloads exceeding buffer will be posted through multiple events

int **payload_offset**
Actual offset for the data associated with this event

struct esp_websocket_client_config_t
Websocket client setup configuration.

Public Members

const char ***uri**
Websocket URI, the information on the URI can be overrides the other fields below, if any

const char ***host**
Domain or IP as string

int **port**
Port to connect, default depend on esp_websocket_transport_t (80 or 443)

const char ***username**
Using for Http authentication - Not supported for now

const char ***password**
Using for Http authentication - Not supported for now

const char ***path**
HTTP Path, if not set, default is `/`

bool **disable_auto_reconnect**
Disable the automatic reconnect function when disconnected

void ***user_context**
HTTP user data context

int **task_prio**
Websocket task priority

int **task_stack**
Websocket task stack

int **buffer_size**
Websocket buffer size

const char ***cert_pem**
Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for server verify (with SSL), default is NULL, not required to verify the server. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in cert_len.

size_t **cert_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by cert_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***client_cert**
Pointer to certificate data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also `client_key` has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in client_cert_len.

size_t **client_cert_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_cert. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

const char ***client_key**
Pointer to private key data in PEM or DER format for SSL mutual authentication, default is NULL, not required if mutual authentication is not needed. If it is not NULL, also `client_cert` has to be provided. PEM-format must have a terminating NULL-character. DER-format requires the length to be passed in client_key_len

size_t **client_key_len**
Length of the buffer pointed to by client_key_pem. May be 0 for null-terminated pem

esp_websocket_transport_t **transport**
Websocket transport type, see `esp_websocket_transport_t

char ***subprotocol**
Websocket subprotocol

char ***user_agent**
Websocket user-agent

char ***headers**
Websocket additional headers

int **pingpong_timeout_sec**
Period before connection is aborted due to no PONGs received

bool **disable_pingpong_discon**
Disable auto-disconnect due to no PONG received within pingpong_timeout_sec

bool **use_global_ca_store**
Use a global ca_store for all the connections in which this bool is set.

bool **skip_cert_common_name_check**
Skip any validation of server certificate CN field

bool **keep_alive_enable**
Enable keep-alive timeout

int **keep_alive_idle**
Keep-alive idle time. Default is 5 (second)

int **keep_alive_interval**
Keep-alive interval time. Default is 5 (second)

int **keep_alive_count**
Keep-alive packet retry send count. Default is 3 counts

size_t **ping_interval_sec**
Websocket ping interval, defaults to 10 seconds if not set

struct ifreq ***if_name**
The name of interface for data to go through. Use the default interface without setting

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_websocket_client ***esp_websocket_client_handle_t**

Enumerations

enum esp_websocket_event_id_t
Websocket Client events id.

Values:

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ANY = -1

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ERROR = 0
This event occurs when there are any errors during execution

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CONNECTED
Once the Websocket has been connected to the server, no data exchange has been performed

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED
The connection has been disconnected

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DATA
When receiving data from the server, possibly multiple portions of the packet

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CLOSED
The connection has been closed cleanly

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_MAX

enum esp_websocket_transport_t
Websocket Client transport.

Values:

WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN = 0x0
Transport unknown

WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP
Transport over tcp

WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL
Transport over ssl

2.3.13 ESP Serial Slave Link

Overview

Espressif provides several chips that can work as slaves. These slave devices rely on some common buses, and have their own communication protocols over those buses. The *esp_serial_slave_link* component is designed for the master to communicate with ESP slave devices through those protocols over the bus drivers.

After an *esp_serial_slave_link* device is initialized properly, the application can use it to communicate with the ESP slave devices conveniently.

Espressif Device protocols

For more details about Espressif device protocols, see the following documents.

ESP SPI Slave HD (Half Duplex) Mode Protocol

SPI Slave Capabilities of Espressif chips

	ESP32	ESP32-S2	ESP32-C3
SPI Slave HD	N	Y (v2)	Y (v2)
Tohost intr		N	N
Frhost intr		2 *	2 *
TX DMA		Y	Y
RX DMA		Y	Y
Shared registers		72	64

Introduction In the half duplex mode, the master has to use the protocol defined by the slave to communicate with the slave. Each transaction may consists of the following phases (list by the order they should exist):

- Command: 8-bit, master to slave
  This phase determines the rest phases of the transactions. See *Supported Commands*.
- Address: 8-bit, master to slave, optional
  For some commands (WRBUF, RDBUF), this phase specifies the address of shared buffer to write to/read from. For other commands with this phase, they are meaningless, but still have to exist in the transaction.
- Dummy: 8-bit, floating, optional
  This phase is the turn around time between the master and the slave on the bus, and also provides enough time for the slave to prepare the data to send to master.
- Data: variable length, the direction is also determined by the command.

This may be a data OUT phase, in which the direction is slave to master, or a data IN phase, in which the direction is master to slave.

The *direction* means which side (master or slave) controls the MOSI, MISO, WP and HD pins.

Data IO Modes In some IO modes, more data wires can be use to send the data. As a result, the SPI clock cycles required for the same amount of data will be less than in 1-bit mode. For example, in QIO mode, address and data (IN and OUT) should be sent on all 4 data wires (MOSI, MISO, WP, and HD). Here's the modes supported by ESP32-S2 SPI slave and the wire number used in corresponding modes.

Mode	command WN	address WN	dummy cycles	data WN
1-bit	1	1	1	1
DOUT	1	1	4	2
DIO	1	2	4	2
QOUT	1	1	4	4
QIO	1	4	4	4
QPI	4	4	4	4

Normally, which mode is used is determined is determined by the command sent by the master (See *Supported Commands*), except from the QPI mode.

QPI Mode The QPI mode is a special state of the SPI Slave. The master can send ENQPI command to put the slave into the QPI mode state. In the QPI mode, the command is also sent in 4-bit, thus it's not compatible with the normal modes. The master should only send QPI commands when the slave is in the QPI mode. To exit form the QPI mode, master can send EXQPI command.

Supported Commands

Note: The command name are in a master-oriented direction. For example, WRBUF means master writes the buffer of slave.

Name	Description	Command	Address	Data
WRBUF	Write buffer	0x01	Buf addr	master to slave, no longer than buffer size
RDBUF	Read buffer	0x02	Buf addr	slave to master, no longer than buffer size
WRDMA	Write DMA	0x03	8 bits	master to slave, no longer than length provided by slave
RDDMA	Read DMA	0x04	8 bits	slave to master, no longer than length provided by slave
SEG_DONE	Segments done	0x05	•	•
ENQPI	Enter QPI mode	0x06	•	•
WR_DONE	Write segments done	0x07	•	•
CMD8	Interrupt	0x08	•	•
CMD9	Interrupt	0x09	•	•
CMDA	Interrupt	0x0A	•	•
EXQPI	Exit QPI mode	0xDD	•	•

Moreover, WRBUF, RDBUF, WRDMA, RDDMA commands have their 2-bit and 4-bit version. To do transactions in 2-bit or 4-bit mode, send the original command ORed by the corresponding command mask below. For example, command 0xA1 means WRBUF in QIO mode.

Mode	Mask
1-bit	0x00
DOUT	0x10
DIO	0x50
QOUT	0x20
QIO	0xA0
QPI	0xA0

Segment Transaction Mode Segment transaction mode is the only mode supported by the SPI Slave HD driver for now. In this mode, for a transaction the slave load onto the DMA, the master is allowed to read or write in segments. This way the master doesn't have to prepare large buffer as the size of data provided by the slave. After the master finish reading/writing a buffer, it has to send corresponding termination command to the slave as a synchronization signal. The slave driver will update new data (if exist) onto the DMA upon seeing the termination command.

The termination command is WR_DONE (0x07) for the WRDMA, and CMD8 (0x08) for the RDDMA.

Here's an example for the flow the master read data from the slave DMA:

1. The slave loads 4092 bytes of data onto the RDDMA
2. The master do seven RDDMA transactions, each of them are 512 bytes long, and reads the first 3584 bytes from the slave

3. The master do the last RDDMA transaction of 512 bytes (equal, longer or shorter than the total length loaded by the slave are all allowed). The first 508 bytes are valid data from the slave, while the last 4 bytes are meaningless bytes.
4. The master sends CMD8 to the slave
5. The slave loads another 4092 bytes of data onto the RDDMA
6. The master can start new reading transactions after it sends the CMD8

Terminology

- ESSL: Abbreviation for ESP Serial Slave Link, the component described by this document.
- Master: The device running the *esp_serial_slave_link* component.
- ESSL device: a virtual device on the master associated with an ESP slave device. The device context has the knowledge of the slave protocol above the bus, relying on some bus drivers to communicate with the slave.
- ESSL device handle: a handle to ESSL device context containing the configuration, status and data required by the ESSL component. The context stores the driver configurations, communication state, data shared by master and slave, etc.
  The context should be initialized before it is used, and get deinitialized if not used any more. The master application operates on the ESSL device through this handle.
- ESP slave: the slave device connected to the bus, which ESSL component is designed to communicate with.
- Bus: The bus over which the master and the slave communicate with each other.
- Slave protocol: The special communication protocol specified by Espressif HW/SW over the bus.
- TX buffer num: a counter, which is on the slave and can be read by the master, indicates the accumulated buffer numbers that the slave has loaded to the hardware to receive data from the master.
- RX data size: a counter, which is on the slave and can be read by the master, indicates the accumulated data size that the slave has loaded to the hardware to send to the master.

Services provided by ESP slave

There are some common services provided by the Espressif slaves:

1. Tohost Interrupts: The slave can inform the master about certain events by the interrupt line. (optional)
2. Frhost Interrupts: The master can inform the slave about certain events.
3. Tx FIFO (master to slave): the slave can send data in stream to the master. The SDIO slave can also indicate it has new data to send to master by the interrupt line.
   The slave updates the TX buffer num to inform the master how much data it can receive, and the master then read the TX buffer num, and take off the used buffer number to know how many buffers are remaining.
4. Rx FIFO (slave to master): the slave can receive data from the master in units of receiving buffers.
   The slave updates the RX data size to inform the master how much data it has prepared to send, and then the master read the data size, and take off the data length it has already received to know how many data is remaining.
5. Shared registers: the master can read some part of the registers on the slave, and also write these registers to let the slave read.

The services provided by the slave depends on the slave' s model. See *SPI Slave Capabilities of Espressif chips* for more details.

Initialization of ESP Serial Slave Link

ESP SDIO Slave The ESP SDIO slave link (ESSL SDIO) devices relies on the sdmmc component. It includes the usage of communicating with ESP SDIO Slave device via SDSPI feature. The ESSL device should be initialized as below:

1. Initialize a sdmmc card (see :doc:` Document of SDMMC driver </api-reference/storage/sdmmc>`) structure.
2. Call `sdmmc_card_init()` to initialize the card.
3. Initialize the ESSL device with `essl_sdio_config_t`. The *card* member should be the `sdmmc_card_t` got in step 2, and the *recv_buffer_size* member should be filled correctly according to pre-negotiated value.

4. Call `essl_init()` to do initialization of the SDIO part.
5. Call `essl_wait_for_ready()` to wait for the slave to be ready.

ESP SPI Slave

Note: If you are communicating with the ESP SDIO Slave device through SPI interface, you should use the *SDIO interface* instead.

Hasn't been supported yet.

APIs

After the initialization process above is performed, you can call the APIs below to make use of the services provided by the slave:

Tohost Interrupts (optional)

1. Call `essl_get_intr_ena()` to know which events will trigger the interrupts to the master.
2. Call `essl_set_intr_ena()` to set the events that will trigger interrupts to the master.
3. Call `essl_wait_int()` to wait until interrupt from the slave, or timeout.
4. When interrupt is triggered, call `essl_get_intr()` to know which events are active, and call `essl_clear_intr()` to clear them.

Frhost Interrupts

1. Call `essl_send_slave_intr()` to trigger general purpose interrupt of the slave.

TX FIFO

1. Call `essl_get_tx_buffer_num()` to know how many buffers the slave has prepared to receive data from the master. This is optional. The master will poll *tx_buffer_num* when it try to send packets to the slave, until the slave has enough buffer or timeout.
2. Call `essl_send_paket()` to send data to the slave.

RX FIFO

1. Call `essl_get_rx_data_size()` to know how many data the slave has prepared to send to the master. This is optional. When the master tries to receive data from the slave, it will update the *rx_data_size* for once, if the current *rx_data_size* is shorter than the buffer size the master prepared to receive. And it may poll the *rx_data_size* if the *rx_dat_size* keeps 0, until timeout.
2. Call `essl_get_packet()` to receive data from the slave.

Reset counters (Optional) Call `essl_reset_cnt()` to reset the internal counter if you find the slave has reset its counter.

Application Example

The example below shows how ESP32 SDIO host and slave communicate with each other. The host use the ESSL SDIO.

peripherals/sdio.

Please refer to the specific example README.md for details.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_serial_slave_link/include/esp_serial_slave_link/essl.h

Functions

esp_err_t **essl_init** (*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Initialize the slave.

Return ESP_OK if success, or other value returned from lower layer `init`.

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_wait_for_ready** (*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Wait for interrupt of a ESP32 slave device.

Return

- ESP_OK if success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_get_tx_buffer_num** (*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t **out_tx_num*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Get buffer num for the host to send data to the slave. The buffers are size of `buffer_size`.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `out_tx_num`: Output of buffer num that host can send data to ESP32 slave.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_get_rx_data_size** (*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t **out_rx_size*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Get amount of data the ESP32 slave preparing to send to host.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `out_rx_size`: Output of data size to read from slave.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_reset_cnt** (*essl_handle_t handle*)

Reset the counters of this component. Usually you don't need to do this unless you know the slave is reset.

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.

esp_err_t **essl_send_packet** (*essl_handle_t handle*, **const** void **start*, size_t *length*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Send a packet to the ESP32 slave. The slave receive the packet into buffers whose size is `buffer_size` (configured during initialization).

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT No buffer to use, or error ftrom SDMMC host controller
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `start`: Start address of the packet to send

- `length`: Length of data to send, if the packet is over-size, the it will be divided into blocks and hold into different buffers automatically.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_get_packet**(*essl_handle_t handle*, void **out_data*, size_t *size*, size_t **out_length*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Get a packet from ESP32 slave.

Return

- ESP_OK Success, all the data are read from the slave.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED Read success, while there' re data remaining.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `[out] out_data`: Data output address
- `size`: The size of the output buffer, if the buffer is smaller than the size of data to receive from slave, the driver returns `ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED`
- `[out] out_length`: Output of length the data actually received from slave.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_write_reg**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint8_t *addr*, uint8_t *value*, uint8_t **value_o*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Write general purpose R/W registers (8-bit) of ESP32 slave.

Note sdio 28-31 are reserved, the lower API helps to skip.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Address not valid.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `addr`: Address of register to write. Valid address: 0-59.
- `value`: Value to write to the register.
- `value_o`: Output of the returned written value.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_read_reg**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint8_t *add*, uint8_t **value_o*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Read general purpose R/W registers (8-bit) of ESP32 slave.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Address not valid.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `add`: Address of register to read. Valid address: 0-27, 32-63 (28-31 reserved, return interrupt bits on read).
- `value_o`: Output value read from the register.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_wait_int**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

wait for an interrupt of the slave

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Currently our driver doesnot support SDIO with SPI interface.
- ESP_OK If interrupt triggered.
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT No interrupts before timeout.

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_clear_intr**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t *intr_mask*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Clear interrupt bits of ESP32 slave. All the bits set in the mask will be cleared, while other bits will stay the

same.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `intr_mask`: Mask of interrupt bits to clear.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_get_intr**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t **intr_raw*, uint32_t **intr_st*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Get interrupt bits of ESP32 slave.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- ESP_INVALID_ARG if both `intr_raw` and `intr_st` are NULL.
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `intr_raw`: Output of the raw interrupt bits. Set to NULL if only masked bits are read.
- `intr_st`: Output of the masked interrupt bits. set to NULL if only raw bits are read.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_set_intr_ena**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t *ena_mask*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Set interrupt enable bits of ESP32 slave. The slave only sends interrupt on the line when there is a bit both the raw status and the enable are set.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `ena_mask`: Mask of the interrupt bits to enable.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_get_intr_ena**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t **ena_mask_o*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Get interrupt enable bits of ESP32 slave.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `ena_mask_o`: Output of interrupt bit enable mask.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

esp_err_t **essl_send_slave_intr**(*essl_handle_t handle*, uint32_t *intr_mask*, uint32_t *wait_ms*)

Send interrupts to slave. Each bit of the interrupt will be triggered.

Return

- ESP_OK Success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of a `essl` device.
- `intr_mask`: Mask of interrupt bits to send to slave.
- `wait_ms`: Millisecond to wait before timeout, will not wait at all if set to 0-9.

Macros

ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED

There is still remaining data.

Type Definitions

typedef struct essl_dev_t ***essl_handle_t**

Handle of an ESSL device.

Header File

- esp_serial_slave_link/include/esp_serial_slave_link/essl_sdio.h

Functions

esp_err_t **essl_sdio_init_dev**(*essl_handle_t* **out_handle*, **const** *essl_sdio_config_t* **config*)

Initialize the ESSL SDIO device and get its handle.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: memory exhausted.

Parameters

- `out_handle`: Output of the handle.
- `config`: Configuration for the ESSL SDIO device.

esp_err_t **essl_sdio_deinit_dev**(*essl_handle_t handle*)

Deinitialize and free the space used by the ESSL SDIO device.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: wrong handle passed

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle of the ESSL SDIO device to deinit.

Structures

struct essl_sdio_config_t

Configuration for the essl SDIO device.

Public Members

sdmmc_card_t ***card**

The initialized sdmmc card pointer of the slave.

int **recv_buffer_size**

The pre-negotiated recv buffer size used by both the host and the slave.

Header File

- esp_serial_slave_link/include/esp_serial_slave_link/essl_spi.h

Functions

esp_err_t **essl_spi_rdbuf**(*spi_device_handle_t spi*, uint8_t **out_data*, int *addr*, int *len*, uint32_t *flags*)

Read the shared buffer from the slave.

Note `out_data` should be prepared in words and in the DRAM. The buffer may be written in words by the DMA. When a byte is written, the remaining bytes in the same word will also be overwritten, even the `len` is shorter than a word.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `out_data`: Buffer for read data, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and align to 4
- `addr`: Address of the slave shared buffer

- `len`: Length to read
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_wrbuf**(*spi_device_handle_t spi*, **const** uint8_t **data*, int *addr*, int *len*, uint32_t *flags*)

Write the shared buffer of the slave.

Note `out_data` should be prepared in words and in the DRAM. The buffer may be written in words by the DMA. When a byte is written, the remaining bytes in the same word will also be overwritten, even the `len` is shorter than a word.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `data`: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and align to 4
- `addr`: Address of the slave shared buffer,
- `len`: Length to write
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_rddma**(*spi_device_handle_t spi*, uint8_t **out_data*, int *len*, int *seg_len*, uint32_t *flags*)

Receive long buffer in segments from the slave through its DMA.

Note This function combines several :cpp:func:`essl_spi_rddma_seg` and one :cpp:func:`essl_spi_rddma_done` at the end. Used when the slave is working in segment mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `out_data`: Buffer to hold the received data, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and align to 4
- `len`: Total length of data to receive.
- `seg_len`: Length of each segment, which is not larger than the maximum transaction length allowed for the spi device. Suggested to be multiples of 4. When set < 0, means send all data in one segment (the `rddma_done` will still be sent.)
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_rddma_seg**(*spi_device_handle_t spi*, uint8_t **out_data*, int *seg_len*, uint32_t *flags*)

Read one data segment from the slave through its DMA.

Note To read long buffer, call :cpp:func:`essl_spi_rddma` instead.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `out_data`: Buffer to hold the received data, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and align to 4
- `seg_len`: Length of this segment
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_rddma_done**(*spi_device_handle_t spi*, uint32_t *flags*)

Send the `rddma_done` command to the slave. Upon receiving this command, the slave will stop sending the current buffer even there are data unsent, and maybe prepare the next buffer to send.

Note This is required only when the slave is working in segment mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_wrdma** (*spi_device_handle_t spi*, **const** uint8_t **data*, int *len*, int *seg_len*, uint32_t *flags*)

Send long buffer in segments to the slave through its DMA.

Note This function combines several :cpp:func:`essl_spi_wrdma_seg` and one :cpp:func:`essl_spi_wrdma_done` at the end. Used when the slave is working in segment mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `data`: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and align to 4
- `len`: Total length of data to send.
- `seg_len`: Length of each segment, which is not larger than the maximum transaction length allowed for the spi device. Suggested to be multiples of 4. When set < 0, means send all data in one segment (the `wrdma_done` will still be sent.)
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_wrdma_seg** (*spi_device_handle_t spi*, **const** uint8_t **data*, int *seg_len*, uint32_t *flags*)

Send one data segment to the slave through its DMA.

Note To send long buffer, call :cpp:func:`essl_spi_wrdma` instead.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `data`: Buffer for data to send, strongly suggested to be in the DRAM and align to 4
- `seg_len`: Length of this segment
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

esp_err_t **essl_spi_wrdma_done** (*spi_device_handle_t spi*, uint32_t *flags*)

Send the `wrdma_done` command to the slave. Upon receiving this command, the slave will stop receiving, process the received data, and maybe prepare the next buffer to receive.

Note This is required only when the slave is working in segment mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- or other return value from :cpp:func:`spi_device_transmit`.

Parameters

- `spi`: SPI device handle representing the slave
- `flags`: `SPI_TRANS_*` flags to control the transaction mode of the transaction to send.

2.3.14 ESP x509 Certificate Bundle

Overview

The ESP x509 Certificate Bundle API provides an easy way to include a bundle of custom x509 root certificates for TLS server verification.

Note: The bundle is currently not available when using WolfSSL.

The bundle comes with the complete list of root certificates from Mozilla's NSS root certificate store. Using the gen_crt_bundle.py python utility the certificates' subject name and public key are stored in a file and embedded in the ESP32-S2 binary.

When generating the bundle you may choose between:

- The full root certificate bundle from Mozilla, containing more than 130 certificates. The current bundle was updated Wed Jan 23 04:12:09 2019 GMT.
- A pre-selected filter list of the name of the most commonly used root certificates, reducing the amount of certificates to around 35 while still having around 90 % coverage according to market share statistics.

In addition it is possible to specify a path to a certificate file or a directory containing certificates which then will be added to the generated bundle.

Note: Trusting all root certificates means the list will have to be updated if any of the certificates are retracted. This includes removing them from *cacrt_all.pem*.

Configuration

Most configuration is done through menuconfig. Make and CMake will generate the bundle according to the configuration and embed it.

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE*: automatically build and attach the bundle.
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE*: decide which certificates to include from the complete root list.
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_PATH*: specify the path of any additional certificates to embed in the bundle.

To enable the bundle when using ESP-TLS simply pass the function pointer to the bundle attach function:

```
esp_tls_cfg_t cfg = {
     .crt_bundle_attach = esp_crt_bundle_attach,
};
```

This is done to avoid embedding the certificate bundle unless activated by the user.

If using mbedTLS directly then the bundle may be activated by directly calling the attach function during the setup process:

```
mbedtls_ssl_config conf;
mbedtls_ssl_config_init(&conf);

esp_crt_bundle_attach(&conf);
```

Generating the List of Root Certificates

The list of root certificates comes from Mozilla's NSS root certificate store, which can be found here The list can be downloaded and created by running the script `mk-ca-bundle.pl` that is distributed as a part of curl. Another alternative would be to download the finished list directly from the curl website: CA certificates extracted from Mozilla

The common certificates bundle were made by selecting the authorities with a market share of more than 1 % from w3tech's SSL Survey. These authorities were then used to pick the names of the certificates for the filter list, *cmn_crt_authorities.csv*, from this list provided by Mozilla.

Updating the Certificate Bundle

The bundle is embedded into the app and can be updated along with the app by an OTA update. If you want to include a more up-to-date bundle than the bundle currently included in IDF, then the certificate list can be downloaded from Mozilla as described in *Updating the Certificate Bundle*.

Application Example

Simple HTTPS example that uses ESP-TLS to establish a secure socket connection using the certificate bundle with two custom certificates added for verification: protocols/https_x509_bundle.

HTTPS example that uses ESP-TLS and the default bundle: protocols/https_request.

HTTPS example that uses mbedTLS and the default bundle: protocols/https_mbedtls.

API Reference

Header File

- mbedtls/esp_crt_bundle/include/esp_crt_bundle.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_crt_bundle_attach** (void *conf)

Attach and enable use of a bundle for certificate verification.

Attach and enable use of a bundle for certificate verification through a verification callback. If no specific bundle has been set through esp_crt_bundle_set() it will default to the bundle defined in menuconfig and embedded in the binary.

Return

- ESP_OK if adding certificates was successful.
- Other if an error occured or an action must be taken by the calling process.

Parameters

- `[in] conf`: The config struct for the SSL connection.

void **esp_crt_bundle_detach** (mbedtls_ssl_config *conf)

Disable and dealloc the certification bundle.

Removes the certificate verification callback and deallocates used resources

Parameters

- `[in] conf`: The config struct for the SSL connection.

void **esp_crt_bundle_set** (**const** uint8_t *x509_bundle)

Set the default certificate bundle used for verification.

Overrides the default certificate bundle. In most use cases the bundle should be set through menuconfig. The bundle needs to be sorted by subject name since binary search is used to find certificates.

Parameters

- `[in] x509_bundle`: A pointer to the certificate bundle.

Code examples for this API section are provided in the protocols directory of ESP-IDF examples.

2.3.15 IP Network Layer

Documentation for IP Network Layer protocols (below the Application Protocol layer) are provided in *Networking APIs*.

2.4 Provisioning API

2.4.1 Protocol Communication

Overview

Protocol Communication (protocomm) component manages secure sessions and provides framework for multiple transports. The application can also use protocomm layer directly to have application specific extensions for the provisioning (or non-provisioning) use cases.

Following features are available for provisioning :

- **Communication security at application level -**
  - protocomm_security0 (no security)
  - protocomm_security1 (curve25519 key exchange + AES-CTR encryption)
- Proof-of-possession (support with protocomm_security1 only)

Protocomm internally uses protobuf (protocol buffers) for secure session establishment. Though users can implement their own security (even without using protobuf). One can even use protocomm without any security layer.

Protocomm provides framework for various transports - WiFi (SoftAP+HTTPD), BLE, console - in which case the handler invocation is automatically taken care of on the device side (see Transport Examples below for code snippets).

Note that the client still needs to establish session (only for protocomm_security1) by performing the two way handshake. See *Unified Provisioning* for more details about the secure handshake logic.

Transport Example (SoftAP + HTTP) with Security 1

For complete example see provisioning/legacy/softap_prov

```
/* Endpoint handler to be registered with protocomm.
 * This simply echoes back the received data. */
esp_err_t echo_req_handler (uint32_t session_id,
                            const uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen,
                            uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen,
                            void *priv_data)
{
    /* Session ID may be used for persistence */
    printf("Session ID : %d", session_id);

    /* Echo back the received data */
    *outlen = inlen;            /* Output data length updated */
    *outbuf = malloc(inlen);    /* This will be deallocated outside */
    memcpy(*outbuf, inbuf, inlen);

    /* Private data that was passed at the time of endpoint creation */
    uint32_t *priv = (uint32_t *) priv_data;
    if (priv) {
        printf("Private data : %d", *priv);
    }

    return ESP_OK;
}

/* Example function for launching a protocomm instance over HTTP */
protocomm_t *start_pc(const char *pop_string)
{
    protocomm_t *pc = protocomm_new();


    /* Config for protocomm_httpd_start() */
    protocomm_httpd_config_t pc_config = {
        .data = {
        .config = PROTOCOMM_HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG()
        }
    };
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    /* Start protocomm server on top of HTTP */
    protocomm_httpd_start(pc, &pc_config);

    /* Create Proof of Possession object from pop_string. It must be valid
     * throughout the scope of protocomm endpoint. This need not be␣
↪static,
     * ie. could be dynamically allocated and freed at the time of␣
↪endpoint
     * removal */
    const static protocomm_security_pop_t pop_obj = {
        .data = (const uint8_t *) strdup(pop_string),
        .len = strlen(pop_string)
    };

    /* Set security for communication at application level. Just like for
     * request handlers, setting security creates an endpoint and␣
↪registers
     * the handler provided by protocomm_security1. One can similarly use
     * protocomm_security0. Only one type of security can be set for a
     * protocomm instance at a time. */
    protocomm_set_security(pc, "security_endpoint", &protocomm_security1,␣
↪&pop_obj);

    /* Private data passed to the endpoint must be valid throughout the␣
↪scope
     * of protocomm endpoint. This need not be static, ie. could be␣
↪dynamically
     * allocated and freed at the time of endpoint removal */
    static uint32_t priv_data = 1234;

    /* Add a new endpoint for the protocomm instance, identified by a␣
↪unique name
     * and register a handler function along with private data to be␣
↪passed at the
     * time of handler execution. Multiple endpoints can be added as long␣
↪as they
     * are identified by unique names */
    protocomm_add_endpoint(pc, "echo_req_endpoint",
                           echo_req_handler, (void *) &priv_data);
    return pc;
}

/* Example function for stopping a protocomm instance */
void stop_pc(protocomm_t *pc)
{
    /* Remove endpoint identified by it's unique name */
    protocomm_remove_endpoint(pc, "echo_req_endpoint");

    /* Remove security endpoint identified by it's name */
    protocomm_unset_security(pc, "security_endpoint");

    /* Stop HTTP server */
    protocomm_httpd_stop(pc);

    /* Delete (deallocate) the protocomm instance */
    protocomm_delete(pc);
}
```

Transport Example (BLE) with Security 0

For complete example see provisioning/legacy/ble_prov

```
/* Example function for launching a secure protocomm instance over BLE */
protocomm_t *start_pc()
{
    protocomm_t *pc = protocomm_new();

    /* Endpoint UUIDs */
    protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t nu_lookup_table[] = {
        {"security_endpoint", 0xFF51},
        {"echo_req_endpoint", 0xFF52}
    };

    /* Config for protocomm_ble_start() */
    protocomm_ble_config_t config = {
        .service_uuid = {
            /* LSB <---------------------------------------
            * ---------------------------------------> MSB */
            0xfb, 0x34, 0x9b, 0x5f, 0x80, 0x00, 0x00, 0x80,
            0x00, 0x10, 0x00, 0x00, 0xFF, 0xFF, 0x00, 0x00,
        },
        .nu_lookup_count = sizeof(nu_lookup_table)/sizeof(nu_lookup_
↪table[0]),
        .nu_lookup = nu_lookup_table
    };

    /* Start protocomm layer on top of BLE */
    protocomm_ble_start(pc, &config);

    /* For protocomm_security0, Proof of Possession is not used, and can␣
↪be kept NULL */
    protocomm_set_security(pc, "security_endpoint", &protocomm_security0,␣
↪NULL);
    protocomm_add_endpoint(pc, "echo_req_endpoint", echo_req_handler,␣
↪NULL);
    return pc;
}

/* Example function for stopping a protocomm instance */
void stop_pc(protocomm_t *pc)
{
    protocomm_remove_endpoint(pc, "echo_req_endpoint");
    protocomm_unset_security(pc, "security_endpoint");

    /* Stop BLE protocomm service */
    protocomm_ble_stop(pc);

    protocomm_delete(pc);
}
```

API Reference

Header File

- protocomm/include/common/protocomm.h

Functions

protocomm_t ***protocomm_new**(void)

Create a new protocomm instance.

This API will return a new dynamically allocated protocomm instance with all elements of the protocomm_t structure initialized to NULL.

Return

- protocomm_t* : On success
- NULL : No memory for allocating new instance

void **protocomm_delete** (*protocomm_t* *pc)

Delete a protocomm instance.

This API will deallocate a protocomm instance that was created using `protocomm_new()`.

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance to be deleted

esp_err_t **protocomm_add_endpoint** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name, *protocomm_req_handler_t* h, void *priv_data)

Add endpoint request handler for a protocomm instance.

This API will bind an endpoint handler function to the specified endpoint name, along with any private data that needs to be pass to the handler at the time of call.

Note

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.
- This function internally calls the registered `add_endpoint()` function of the selected transport which is a member of the protocomm_t instance structure.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating endpoint resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name/handler arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- `[in] h`: Endpoint handler function
- `[in] priv_data`: Pointer to private data to be passed as a parameter to the handler function on call. Pass NULL if not needed.

esp_err_t **protocomm_remove_endpoint** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name)

Remove endpoint request handler for a protocomm instance.

This API will remove a registered endpoint handler identified by an endpoint name.

Note

- This function internally calls the registered `remove_endpoint()` function which is a member of the protocomm_t instance structure.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Endpoint with specified name doesn't exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string

esp_err_t **protocomm_open_session** (*protocomm_t* *pc, uint32_t *session_id*)

Allocates internal resources for new transport session.

Note

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.

Return

- ESP_OK : Request handled successfully
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating internal resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance

- `[in] session_id`: Unique ID for a communication session

esp_err_t **protocomm_close_session** (*protocomm_t* *pc, uint32_t *session_id*)

Frees internal resources used by a transport session.

Note

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.

Return

- ESP_OK : Request handled successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] session_id`: Unique ID for a communication session

esp_err_t **protocomm_req_handle** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name, uint32_t *session_id*, **const** uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t *inlen*, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen*)

Calls the registered handler of an endpoint session for processing incoming data and generating the response.

Note

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.
- Resulting output buffer must be deallocated by the caller.

Return

- ESP_OK : Request handled successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Internal error in execution of registered handler
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating internal resource
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Endpoint with specified name doesn't exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- `[in] session_id`: Unique ID for a communication session
- `[in] inbuf`: Input buffer contains input request data which is to be processed by the registered handler
- `[in] inlen`: Length of the input buffer
- `[out] outbuf`: Pointer to internally allocated output buffer, where the resulting response data output from the registered handler is to be stored
- `[out] outlen`: Buffer length of the allocated output buffer

esp_err_t **protocomm_set_security** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name, **const** *protocomm_security_t* *sec, **const** *protocomm_security_pop_t* *pop)

Add endpoint security for a protocomm instance.

This API will bind a security session establisher to the specified endpoint name, along with any proof of possession that may be required for authenticating a session client.

Note

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.
- The choice of security can be any `protocomm_security_t` instance. Choices `protocomm_security0` and `protocomm_security1` are readily available.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Security endpoint already set
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating endpoint resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name/handler arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- `[in] sec`: Pointer to endpoint security instance
- `[in] pop`: Pointer to proof of possession for authenticating a client

esp_err_t **protocomm_unset_security** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name)

Remove endpoint security for a protocomm instance.

This API will remove a registered security endpoint identified by an endpoint name.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Endpoint with specified name doesn't exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string

esp_err_t **protocomm_set_version** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name, **const** char *version)

Set endpoint for version verification.

This API can be used for setting an application specific protocol version which can be verified by clients through the endpoint.

Note

- An endpoint must be bound to a valid protocomm instance, created using `protocomm_new()`.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Error adding endpoint / Endpoint with this name already exists
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Version endpoint already set
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating endpoint resource
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name/handler arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string
- `[in] version`: Version identifier(name) string

esp_err_t **protocomm_unset_version** (*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** char *ep_name)

Remove version verification endpoint from a protocomm instance.

This API will remove a registered version endpoint identified by an endpoint name.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND : Endpoint with specified name doesn't exist
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null instance/name arguments

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Pointer to the protocomm instance
- `[in] ep_name`: Endpoint identifier(name) string

Type Definitions

typedef *esp_err_t* (***protocomm_req_handler_t**) (uint32_t session_id, **const** uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen, void *priv_data)

Function prototype for protocomm endpoint handler.

typedef struct protocomm **protocomm_t**

This structure corresponds to a unique instance of protocomm returned when the API `protocomm_new()` is called. The remaining Protocomm APIs require this object as the first parameter.

Note Structure of the protocomm object is kept private

Header File

- protocomm/include/security/protocomm_security.h

Structures

struct protocomm_security_pop

Proof Of Possession for authenticating a secure session.

Public Members

const uint8_t ***data**

Pointer to buffer containing the proof of possession data

uint16_t **len**

Length (in bytes) of the proof of possession data

struct protocomm_security

Protocomm security object structure.

The member functions are used for implementing secure protocomm sessions.

Note This structure should not have any dynamic members to allow re-entrancy

Public Members

int **ver**

Unique version number of security implementation

esp_err_t (***init**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* *handle)

Function for initializing/allocating security infrastructure

esp_err_t (***cleanup**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* handle)

Function for deallocating security infrastructure

esp_err_t (***new_transport_session**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* handle, uint32_t session_id)

Starts new secure transport session with specified ID

esp_err_t (***close_transport_session**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* handle, uint32_t session_id)

Closes a secure transport session with specified ID

esp_err_t (***security_req_handler**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* handle, **const** *protocomm_security_pop_t* *pop, uint32_t session_id, **const** uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen, void *priv_data)

Handler function for authenticating connection request and establishing secure session

esp_err_t (***encrypt**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* handle, uint32_t session_id, **const** uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t *outbuf, ssize_t *outlen)

Function which implements the encryption algorithm

esp_err_t (***decrypt**) (*protocomm_security_handle_t* handle, uint32_t session_id, **const** uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t *outbuf, ssize_t *outlen)

Function which implements the decryption algorithm

Type Definitions

typedef struct *protocomm_security_pop* **protocomm_security_pop_t**

Proof Of Possession for authenticating a secure session.

typedef void ***protocomm_security_handle_t**

typedef struct *protocomm_security* **protocomm_security_t**

Protocomm security object structure.

The member functions are used for implementing secure protocomm sessions.

Note This structure should not have any dynamic members to allow re-entrancy

Header File

- protocomm/include/security/protocomm_security0.h

Header File

- protocomm/include/security/protocomm_security1.h

Header File

- protocomm/include/transports/protocomm_httpd.h

Functions

esp_err_t **protocomm_httpd_start** (*protocomm_t *pc*, **const** *protocomm_httpd_config_t *config*)

Start HTTPD protocomm transport.

This API internally creates a framework to allow endpoint registration and security configuration for the protocomm.

Note This is a singleton. ie. Protocomm can have multiple instances, but only one instance can be bound to an HTTP transport layer.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED : Transport layer bound to another protocomm instance
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Transport layer already bound to this protocomm instance
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Memory allocation for server resource failed
- ESP_ERR_HTTPD_* : HTTP server error on start

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Protocomm instance pointer obtained from protocomm_new()
- `[in] config`: Pointer to config structure for initializing HTTP server

esp_err_t **protocomm_httpd_stop** (*protocomm_t *pc*)

Stop HTTPD protocomm transport.

This API cleans up the HTTPD transport protocomm and frees all the handlers registered with the protocomm.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null / incorrect protocomm instance pointer

Parameters

- `[in] pc`: Same protocomm instance that was passed to protocomm_httpd_start()

Unions

union protocomm_httpd_config_data_t

#include <protocomm_httpd.h> Protocomm HTTPD Configuration Data

Public Members

void ***handle**

HTTP Server Handle, if ext_handle_provided is set to true

protocomm_http_server_config_t **config**

HTTP Server Configuration, if a server is not already active

Structures

struct protocomm_http_server_config_t

Config parameters for protocomm HTTP server.

Public Members

uint16_t **port**
Port on which the HTTP server will listen

size_t **stack_size**
Stack size of server task, adjusted depending upon stack usage of endpoint handler

unsigned **task_priority**
Priority of server task

struct protocomm_httpd_config_t
Config parameters for protocomm HTTP server.

Public Members

bool **ext_handle_provided**
Flag to indicate of an external HTTP Server Handle has been provided. In such as case, protocomm will use the same HTTP Server and not start a new one internally.

protocomm_httpd_config_data_t **data**
Protocomm HTTPD Configuration Data

Macros

PROTOCOMM_HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

Header File

- protocomm/include/transports/protocomm_ble.h

Functions

esp_err_t **protocomm_ble_start**(*protocomm_t* *pc, **const** *protocomm_ble_config_t* *config)
Start Bluetooth Low Energy based transport layer for provisioning.

Initialize and start required BLE service for provisioning. This includes the initialization for characteristics/service for BLE.

Return
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Simple BLE start error
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Error allocating memory for internal resources
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Error in ble config
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null arguments

Parameters
- `[in] pc`: Protocomm instance pointer obtained from protocomm_new()
- `[in] config`: Pointer to config structure for initializing BLE

esp_err_t **protocomm_ble_stop**(*protocomm_t* *pc)
Stop Bluetooth Low Energy based transport layer for provisioning.

Stops service/task responsible for BLE based interactions for provisioning

Note You might want to optionally reclaim memory from Bluetooth. Refer to the documentation of `esp_bt_mem_release` in that case.

Return
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Simple BLE stop error
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null / incorrect protocomm instance

Parameters
- `[in] pc`: Same protocomm instance that was passed to protocomm_ble_start()

Structures

struct name_uuid

This structure maps handler required by protocomm layer to UUIDs which are used to uniquely identify BLE characteristics from a smartphone or a similar client device.

Public Members

const char ***name**

Name of the handler, which is passed to protocomm layer

uint16_t **uuid**

UUID to be assigned to the BLE characteristic which is mapped to the handler

struct protocomm_ble_config

Config parameters for protocomm BLE service.

Public Members

char **device_name**[**MAX_BLE_DEVNAME_LEN**]

BLE device name being broadcast at the time of provisioning

uint8_t **service_uuid**[**BLE_UUID128_VAL_LENGTH**]

128 bit UUID of the provisioning service

ssize_t **nu_lookup_count**

Number of entries in the Name-UUID lookup table

protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t ***nu_lookup**

Pointer to the Name-UUID lookup table

Macros

MAX_BLE_DEVNAME_LEN

BLE device name cannot be larger than this value 31 bytes (max scan response size) - 1 byte (length) - 1 byte (type) = 29 bytes

BLE_UUID128_VAL_LENGTH

Type Definitions

typedef struct *name_uuid* **protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t**

This structure maps handler required by protocomm layer to UUIDs which are used to uniquely identify BLE characteristics from a smartphone or a similar client device.

typedef struct *protocomm_ble_config* **protocomm_ble_config_t**

Config parameters for protocomm BLE service.

2.4.2 Unified Provisioning

Overview

Unified provisioning support in the ESP-IDF provides an extensible mechanism to the developers to configure the device with the Wi-Fi credentials and/or other custom configuration using various transports and different security schemes. Depending on the use-case it provides a complete and ready solution for Wi-Fi network provisioning along with example iOS and Android applications. Or developers can extend the device-side and phone-app side implementations to accommodate their requirements for sending additional configuration data. Following are the important features of this implementation.

1. *Extensible Protocol:* The protocol is completely flexible and it offers the ability for the developers to send custom configuration in the provisioning process. The data representation too is left to the application to decide.

2. *Transport Flexibility:* The protocol can work on Wi-Fi (SoftAP + HTTP server) or on BLE as a transport protocol. The framework provides an ability to add support for any other transport easily as long as command-response behaviour can be supported on the transport.
3. *Security Scheme Flexibility:* It's understood that each use-case may require different security scheme to secure the data that is exchanged in the provisioning process. Some applications may work with SoftAP that's WPA2 protected or BLE with "just-works" security. Or the applications may consider the transport to be insecure and may want application level security. The unified provisioning framework allows application to choose the security as deemed suitable.
4. *Compact Data Representation:* The protocol uses Google Protobufs as a data representation for session setup and Wi-Fi provisioning. They provide a compact data representation and ability to parse the data in multiple programming languages in native format. Please note that this data representation is not forced on application specific data and the developers may choose the representation of their choice.

Typical Provisioning Process

Deciding on Transport

Unified provisioning subsystem supports Wi-Fi (SoftAP+HTTP server) and BLE (GATT based) transport schemes. Following points need to be considered while selecting the best possible transport for provisioning.

1. BLE based transport has an advantage that in the provisioning process, the BLE communication channel stays intact between the device and the client. That provides reliable provisioning feedback.
2. BLE based provisioning implementation makes the user-experience better from the phone apps as on Android and iOS both, the phone app can discover and connect to the device without requiring user to go out of the phone app
3. BLE transport however consumes ~110KB memory at runtime. If the product does not use the BLE or BT functionality after provisioning is done, almost all the memory can be reclaimed back and can be added into the heap.
4. SoftAP based transport is highly interoperable; however as the same radio is shared between SoftAP and Station interface, the transport is not reliable in the phase when the Wi-Fi connection to external AP is attempted. Also, the client may roam back to different network when the SoftAP changes the channel at the time of Station connection.
5. SoftAP transport does not require much additional memory for the Wi-Fi use-cases
6. SoftAP based provisioning requires the phone app user to go to "System Settings" to connect to Wi-Fi network hosted by the device in case of iOS. The discovery (scanning) as well as connection API is not available for the iOS applications.

Deciding on Security

Depending on the transport and other constraints the security scheme needs to be selected by the application developers. Following considerations need to be given from the provisioning security perspective: 1. The configuration data sent from the client to the device and the response has to be secured. 2. The client should authenticate the device it is connected to. 3. The device manufacturer may choose proof-of-possession - a unique per device secret to be entered on the provisioning client as a security measure to make sure that the user can provisions the device in the possession.

There are two levels of security schemes. The developer may select one or combination depending on requirements.

1. *Transport Security:* SoftAP provisioning may choose WPA2 protected security with unique per-device passphrase. Per-device unique passphrase can also act as a proof-of-possession. For BLE, "just-works" security can be used as a transport level security after understanding the level of security it provides.
2. *Application Security:* The unified provisioning subsystem provides application level security (*security1*) that provides data protection and authentication (through proof-of-possession) if the application does not use the transport level security or if the transport level security is not sufficient for the use-case.

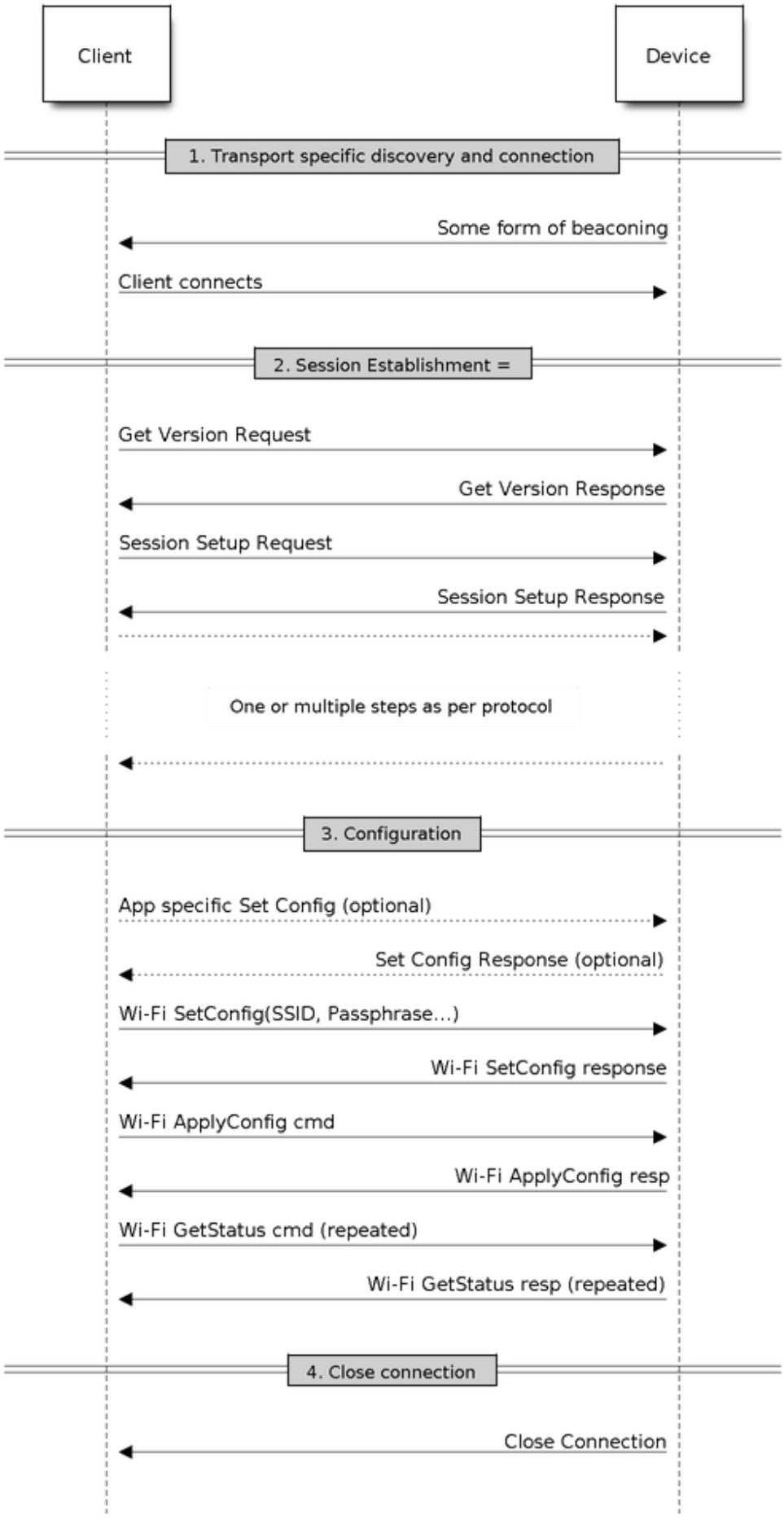


Fig. 27: Typical Provisioning Process

Device Discovery

The advertisement and device discovery is left to the application and depending on the protocol chosen, the phone apps and device firmware application can choose appropriate method to advertise and discovery.

For the SoftAP+HTTP transport, typically the SSID (network name) of the AP hosted by the device can be used for discovery.

For the BLE transport device name or primary service included in the advertisement or combination of both can be used for discovery.

Architecture

The below diagram shows architecture of unified provisioning.

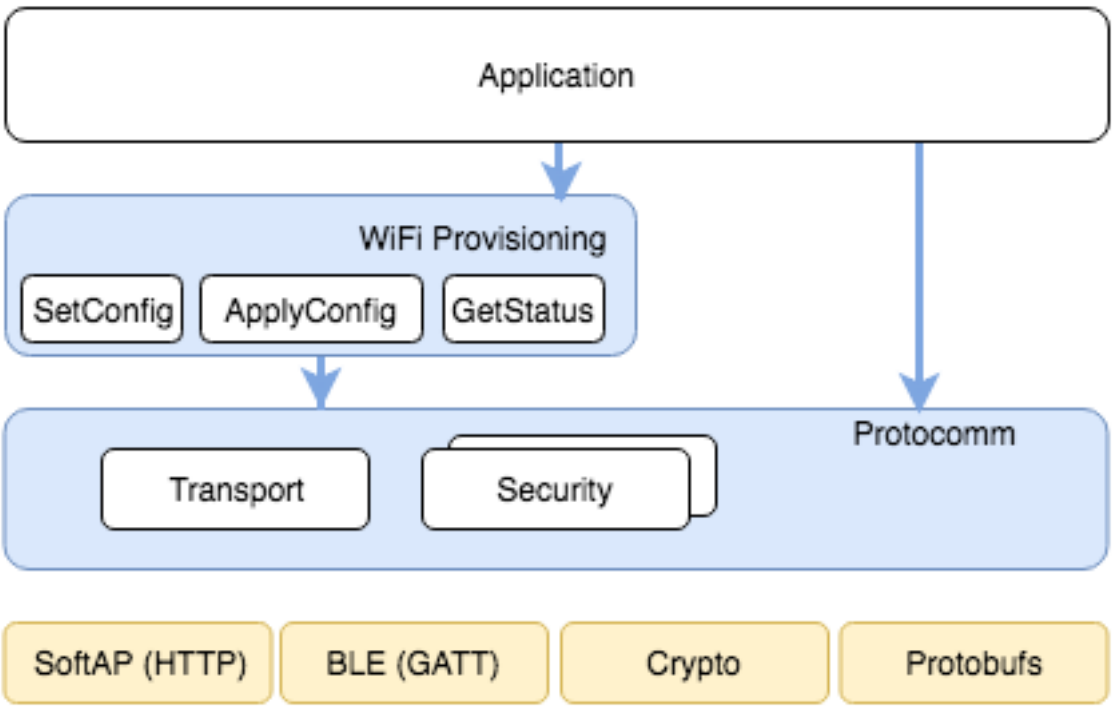


Fig. 28: Unified Provisioning Architecture

It relies on the base layer called *Protocol Communication* (Protocol Communication) which provides a framework for security schemes and transport mechanisms. Wi-Fi Provisioning layer uses Protocomm to provide simple callbacks to the application for setting the configuration and getting the Wi-Fi status. The application has control over implementation of these callbacks. In addition application can directly use protocomm to register custom handlers.

Application creates a protocomm instance which is mapped to a specific transport and specific security scheme. Each transport in the protocomm has a concept of an "end-point" which corresponds to logical channel for communication for specific type of information. For example security handshake happens on a different endpoint than the Wi-Fi configuration endpoint. Each end-point is identified using a string and depending on the transport internal representation of the end-point changes. In case of SoftAP+HTTP transport the end-point corresponds to URI whereas in case of BLE the end-point corresponds to GATT characteristic with specific UUID. Developers can create custom end-points and implement handler for the data that is received or sent over the same end-point.

Security Schemes

At present unified provisioning supports two security schemes: 1. Security0 - No security (No encryption) 2. Security1 - Curve25519 based key exchange, shared key derivation and AES256-CTR mode encryption of the data. It supports two modes :

a. Authorized - Proof of Possession (PoP) string used to authorize session and derive shared key
b. No Auth (Null PoP) - Shared key derived through key exchange only

Security1 scheme details are shown in the below sequence diagram

Sample Code

Please refer to *Protocol Communication* and *Wi-Fi Provisioning* for API guides and code snippets on example usage.

Application implementation can be found as an example under provisioning.

Provisioning Tools

Provisioning applications are available for various platforms, along with source code:

- **Android:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: esp-idf-provisioning-android.
- **iOS:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on app store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on app Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: esp-idf-provisioning-ios.
- Linux/MacOS/Windows : tools/esp_prov (a python based command line tool for provisioning)

The phone applications offer simple UI and thus more user centric, while the command line application is useful as a debugging tool for developers.

2.4.3 Wi-Fi Provisioning

Overview

This component provides APIs that control Wi-Fi provisioning service for receiving and configuring Wi-Fi credentials over SoftAP or BLE transport via secure *Protocol Communication (protocomm)* sessions. The set of `wifi_prov_mgr_` APIs help in quickly implementing a provisioning service having necessary features with minimal amount of code and sufficient flexibility.

Initialization *`wifi_prov_mgr_init()`* is called to configure and initialize the provisioning manager and thus this must be called prior to invoking any other `wifi_prov_mgr_` APIs. Note that the manager relies on other components of IDF, namely NVS, TCP/IP, Event Loop and Wi-Fi (and optionally mDNS), hence these must be initialized beforehand. The manager can be de-initialized at any moment by making a call to *`wifi_prov_mgr_deinit()`*.

```
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t config = {
    .scheme = wifi_prov_scheme_ble,
    .scheme_event_handler = WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM
};

ESP_ERR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_init(config) );
```

The configuration structure `wifi_prov_mgr_config_t` has a few fields to specify the behavior desired of the manager :

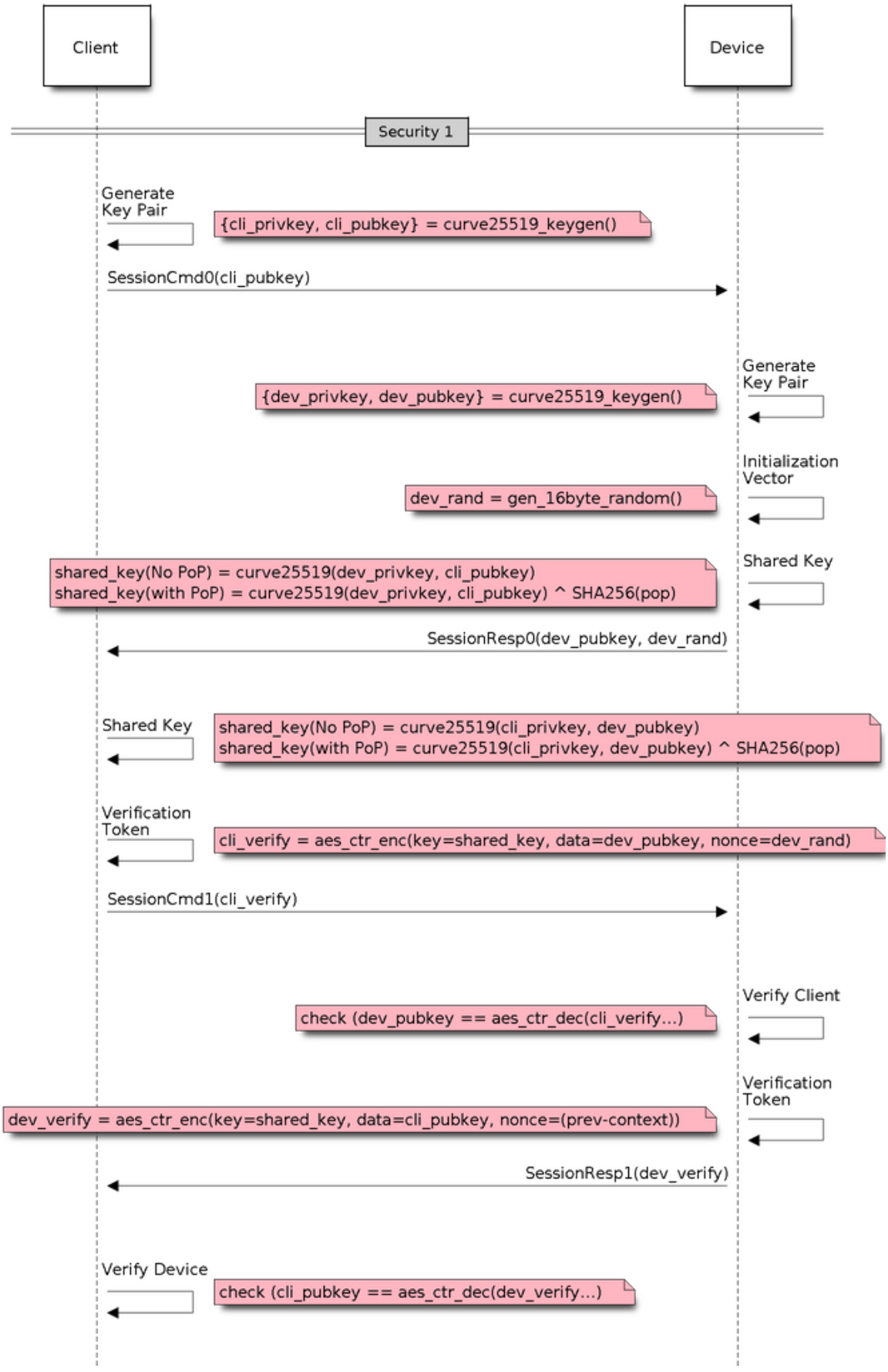


Fig. 29: Security1

- *scheme* : This is used to specify the provisioning scheme. Each scheme corresponds to one of the modes of transport supported by protocomm. Hence, we have three options :
  - `wifi_prov_scheme_ble` : BLE transport and GATT Server for handling provisioning commands
  - `wifi_prov_scheme_softap` : Wi-Fi SoftAP transport and HTTP Server for handling provisioning commands
  - `wifi_prov_scheme_console` : Serial transport and console for handling provisioning commands
- *scheme_event_handler* : An event handler defined along with scheme. Choosing appropriate scheme specific event handler allows the manager to take care of certain matters automatically. Presently this is not used for either SoftAP or Console based provisioning, but is very convenient for BLE. To understand how, we must recall that Bluetooth requires quite some amount of memory to function and once provisioning is finished, the main application may want to reclaim back this memory (or part of it, if it needs to use either BLE or classic BT). Also, upon every future reboot of a provisioned device, this reclamation of memory needs to be performed again. To reduce this complication in using `wifi_prov_scheme_ble`, the scheme specific handlers have been defined, and depending upon the chosen handler, the BLE / classic BT / BTDM memory will be freed automatically when the provisioning manager is de-initialized. The available options are:
  - `WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM` - Free both classic BT and BLE (BTDM) memory. Used when main application doesn't require Bluetooth at all.
  - `WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE` - Free only BLE memory. Used when main application requires classic BT.
  - `WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT` - Free only classic BT. Used when main application requires BLE. In this case freeing happens right when the manager is initialized.
  - `WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE` - Don't use any scheme specific handler. Used when provisioning scheme is not BLE (i.e. SoftAP or Console), or when main application wants to handle the memory reclaiming on its own, or needs both BLE and classic BT to function.
- *app_event_handler* (Deprecated) : It is now recommended to catch `WIFI_PROV_EVENT``s that are emitted to the default event loop handler. See definition of ``wifi_prov_cb_event_t` for the list of events that are generated by the provisioning service. Here is an excerpt showing some of the provisioning events:

```
static void event_handler(void* arg, esp_event_base_t event_base,
                          int event_id, void* event_data)
{
    if (event_base == WIFI_PROV_EVENT) {
        switch (event_id) {
            case WIFI_PROV_START:
                ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Provisioning started");
                break;
            case WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV: {
                wifi_sta_config_t *wifi_sta_cfg = (wifi_sta_config_t␣
↪*)event_data;
                ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Received Wi-Fi credentials"
                         "\n\tSSID     : %s\n\tPassword : %s",
                         (const char *) wifi_sta_cfg->ssid,
                         (const char *) wifi_sta_cfg->password);
                break;
            }
            case WIFI_PROV_CRED_FAIL: {
                wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t *reason = (wifi_prov_sta_fail_
↪reason_t *)event_data;
                ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Provisioning failed!\n\tReason : %s"
                         "\n\tPlease reset to factory and retry␣
↪provisioning",
                         (*reason == WIFI_PROV_STA_AUTH_ERROR) ?
                         "Wi-Fi station authentication failed" : "Wi-Fi␣
↪access-point not found");
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
                break;
            }
            case WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS:
                ESP_LOGI(TAG, "Provisioning successful");
                break;
            case WIFI_PROV_END:
                /* De-initialize manager once provisioning is finished */
                wifi_prov_mgr_deinit();
                break;
            default:
                break;
        }
    }
}
```

The manager can be de-initialized at any moment by making a call to *wifi_prov_mgr_deinit()*.

Check Provisioning State Whether device is provisioned or not can be checked at runtime by calling *wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned()*. This internally checks if the Wi-Fi credentials are stored in NVS.

Note that presently manager does not have its own NVS namespace for storage of Wi-Fi credentials, instead it relies on the `esp_wifi_` APIs to set and get the credentials stored in NVS from the default location.

If provisioning state needs to be reset, any of the following approaches may be taken :

- the associated part of NVS partition has to be erased manually
- main application must implement some logic to call `esp_wifi_` APIs for erasing the credentials at runtime
- main application must implement some logic to force start the provisioning irrespective of the provisioning state

```
bool provisioned = false;
ESP_ERR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned(&provisioned) );
```

Start Provisioning Service At the time of starting provisioning we need to specify a service name and the corresponding key. These translate to :

- Wi-Fi SoftAP SSID and passphrase, respectively, when scheme is `wifi_prov_scheme_softap`
- BLE Device name (service key is ignored) when scheme is `wifi_prov_scheme_ble`

Also, since internally the manager uses *protocomm*, we have the option of choosing one of the security features provided by it :

- Security 1 is secure communication which consists of a prior handshake involving X25519 key exchange along with authentication using a proof of possession (*pop*), followed by AES-CTR for encryption/decryption of subsequent messages
- Security 0 is simply plain text communication. In this case the *pop* is simply ignored

See *Provisioning* for details about the security features.

```
const char *service_name = "my_device";
const char *service_key  = "password";

wifi_prov_security_t security = WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1;
const char *pop = "abcd1234";

ESP_ERR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(security, pop, service_
↪name, service_key) );
```

The provisioning service will automatically finish only if it receives valid Wi-Fi AP credentials followed by successfully connection of device to the AP (IP obtained). Regardless of that, the provisioning service can be stopped at any moment by making a call to *wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning()*.

Note: If the device fails to connect with the provided credentials, it won't accept new credentials anymore, but the provisioning service will keep on running (only to convey failure to the client), until the device is restarted. Upon restart the provisioning state will turn out to be true this time (as credentials will be found in NVS), but device will again fail to connect with those same credentials (unless an AP with the matching credentials somehow does become available). This situation can be fixed by resetting the credentials in NVS or force starting the provisioning service. This has been explained above in *Check Provisioning State*.

Waiting For Completion Typically, the main application will wait for the provisioning to finish, then de-initialize the manager to free up resources and finally start executing its own logic.

There are two ways for making this possible. The simpler way is to use a blocking call to *wifi_prov_mgr_wait()*.

```
// Start provisioning service
ESP_ERR_CHECK( wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(security, pop, service_
↪name, service_key) );

// Wait for service to complete
wifi_prov_mgr_wait();

// Finally de-initialize the manager
wifi_prov_mgr_deinit();
```

The other way is to use the default event loop handler to catch `WIFI_PROV_EVENT``s and call :cpp:func:`wifi_prov_mgr_deinit()` when event ID is ``WIFI_PROV_END`:

```
static void event_handler(void* arg, esp_event_base_t event_base,
                          int event_id, void* event_data)
{
    if (event_base == WIFI_PROV_EVENT && event_id == WIFI_PROV_END) {
        /* De-initialize manager once provisioning is finished */
        wifi_prov_mgr_deinit();
    }
}
```

User Side Implementation When the service is started, the device to be provisioned is identified by the advertised service name which, depending upon the selected transport, is either the BLE device name or the SoftAP SSID.

When using SoftAP transport, for allowing service discovery, mDNS must be initialized before starting provisioning. In this case the hostname set by the main application is used, and the service type is internally set to *_esp_wifi_prov*.

When using BLE transport, a custom 128 bit UUID should be set using *wifi_prov_scheme_ble_set_service_uuid()*. This UUID will be included in the BLE advertisement and will correspond to the primary GATT service that provides provisioning endpoints as GATT characteristics. Each GATT characteristic will be formed using the primary service UUID as base, with different auto assigned 12th and 13th bytes (assume counting starts from 0th byte). Since, an endpoint characteristic UUID is auto assigned, it shouldn't be used to identify the endpoint. Instead, client side applications should identify the endpoints by reading the User Characteristic Description (0x2901) descriptor for each characteristic, which contains the endpoint name of the characteristic. For example, if the service UUID is set to *55cc035e-fb27-4f80-be02-3c60828b7451*, each endpoint characteristic will be assigned a UUID like *55cc____-fb27-4f80-be02-3c60828b7451*, with unique values at the 12th and 13th bytes.

Once connected to the device, the provisioning related protocomm endpoints can be identified as follows :

Table 6: Endpoints provided by Provisioning Service

Endpoint Name (BLE + GATT Server)	URI (SoftAP + HTTP Server + mDNS)	Description
prov-session	http://<mdns-hostname>.local/prov-session	Security endpoint used for session establishment
prov-scan	http://wifi-prov.local/prov-scan	Endpoint used for starting Wi-Fi scan and receiving scan results
prov-config	http://<mdns-hostname>.local/prov-config	Endpoint used for configuring Wi-Fi credentials on device
proto-ver	http://<mdns-hostname>.local/proto-ver	Endpoint for retrieving version info

Immediately after connecting, the client application may fetch the version / capabilities information from the *proto-ver* endpoint. All communications to this endpoint are un-encrypted, hence necessary information (that may be relevant for deciding compatibility) can be retrieved before establishing a secure session. The response is in JSON format and looks like : `prov: { ver: v1.1, cap: [no_pop] }, my_app: { ver: 1.345, cap: [cloud, local_ctrl] },.....` Here label *prov* provides provisioning service version (*ver*) and capabilities (*cap*). For now, only *no_pop* capability is supported, which indicates that the service doesn't require proof of possession for authentication. Any application related version / capabilities will be given by other labels (like *my_app* in this example). These additional fields are set using `wifi_prov_mgr_set_app_info()`.

User side applications need to implement the signature handshaking required for establishing and authenticating secure protocomm sessions as per the security scheme configured for use (this is not needed when manager is configured to use protocomm security 0).

See Unified Provisioning for more details about the secure handshake and encryption used. Applications must use the *.proto* files found under protocomm/proto, which define the Protobuf message structures supported by *prov-session* endpoint.

Once a session is established, Wi-Fi credentials are configured using the following set of *wifi_config* commands, serialized as Protobuf messages (the corresponding *.proto* files can be found under wifi_provisioning/proto) :

- *get_status* - For querying the Wi-Fi connection status. The device will respond with a status which will be one of connecting / connected / disconnected. If status is disconnected, a disconnection reason will also be included in the status response.
- *set_config* - For setting the Wi-Fi connection credentials
- *apply_config* - For applying the credentials saved during *set_config* and start the Wi-Fi station

After session establishment, client can also request Wi-Fi scan results from the device. The results returned is a list of AP SSIDs, sorted in descending order of signal strength. This allows client applications to display APs nearby to the device at the time of provisioning, and users can select one of the SSIDs and provide the password which is then sent using the *wifi_config* commands described above. The *wifi_scan* endpoint supports the following protobuf commands :

- *scan_start* - For starting Wi-Fi scan with various options :
  - *blocking* (input) - If true, the command returns only when the scanning is finished
  - *passive* (input) - If true scan is started in passive mode (this may be slower) instead of active mode
  - *group_channels* (input) - This specifies whether to scan all channels in one go (when zero) or perform scanning of channels in groups, with 120ms delay between scanning of consecutive groups, and the value of this parameter sets the number of channels in each group. This is useful when transport mode is SoftAP, where scanning all channels in one go may not give the Wi-Fi driver enough time to send out beacons, and hence may cause disconnection with any connected stations. When scanning in groups, the manager will wait for atleast 120ms after completing scan on a group of channels, and thus allow the driver to send out the beacons. For example, given that the total number of Wi-Fi channels is 14, then setting group_channels to 4, will create 5 groups, with each group having 3 channels, except the last one which will have 14 % 3 = 2 channels. So, when scan is started, the first 3 channels will be scanned, followed by a 120ms delay, and then the next 3 channels, and so on, until all the 14 channels have been

scanned. One may need to adjust this parameter as having only few channels in a group may slow down the overall scan time, while having too many may again cause disconnection. Usually a value of 4 should work for most cases. Note that for any other mode of transport, e.g. BLE, this can be safely set to 0, and hence achieve the fastest overall scanning time.
  - *period_ms* (input) - Scan parameter specifying how long to wait on each channel
- *scan_status* - Gives the status of scanning process :
  - *scan_finished* (output) - When scan has finished this returns true
  - *result_count* (output) - This gives the total number of results obtained till now. If scan is yet happening this number will keep on updating
- *scan_result* - For fetching scan results. This can be called even if scan is still on going
  - *start_index* (input) - Starting index from where to fetch the entries from the results list
  - *count* (input) - Number of entries to fetch from the starting index
  - *entries* (output) - List of entries returned. Each entry consists of *ssid*, *channel* and *rssi* information

Additional Endpoints In case users want to have some additional protocomm endpoints customized to their requirements, this is done in two steps. First is creation of an endpoint with a specific name, and the second step is the registration of a handler for this endpoint. See *protocomm* for the function signature of an endpoint handler. A custom endpoint must be created after initialization and before starting the provisioning service. Whereas, the protocomm handler is registered for this endpoint only after starting the provisioning service.

```
wifi_prov_mgr_init(config);
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create("custom-endpoint");
wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(security, pop, service_name, service_
↪key);
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register("custom-endpoint", custom_ep_handler,␣
↪custom_ep_data);
```

When the provisioning service stops, the endpoint is unregistered automatically.

One can also choose to call `wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_unregister()` to manually deactivate an endpoint at runtime. This can also be used to deactivate the internal endpoints used by the provisioning service.

When / How To Stop Provisioning Service? The default behavior is that once the device successfully connects using the Wi-Fi credentials set by the *apply_config* command, the provisioning service will be stopped (and BLE / SoftAP turned off) automatically after responding to the next *get_status* command. If *get_status* command is not received by the device, the service will be stopped after a 30s timeout.

On the other hand, if device was not able to connect using the provided Wi-Fi credentials, due to incorrect SSID / passphrase, the service will keep running, and *get_status* will keep responding with disconnected status and reason for disconnection. Any further attempts to provide another set of Wi-Fi credentials, will be rejected. These credentials will be preserved, unless the provisioning service is force started, or NVS erased.

If this default behavior is not desired, it can be disabled by calling `wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop()`. Now the provisioning service will only be stopped after an explicit call to `wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning()`, which returns immediately after scheduling a task for stopping the service. The service stops after a certain delay and WIFI_PROV_END event gets emitted. This delay is specified by the argument to `wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop()`.

The customized behavior is useful for applications which want the provisioning service to be stopped some time after the Wi-Fi connection is successfully established. For example, if the application requires the device to connect to some cloud service and obtain another set of credentials, and exchange this credentials over a custom protocomm endpoint, then after successfully doing so stop the provisioning service by calling `wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning()` inside the protocomm handler itself. The right amount of delay ensures that the transport resources are freed only after the response from the protocomm handler reaches the client side application.

Application Examples

For complete example implementation see provisioning/wifi_prov_mgr

Provisioning Tools

Provisioning applications are available for various platforms, along with source code:

- **Android:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on Play Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: esp-idf-provisioning-android.
- **iOS:**
  - BLE Provisioning app on app store.
  - SoftAP Provisioning app on app Store.
  - Source code on GitHub: esp-idf-provisioning-ios.
- Linux/MacOS/Windows : tools/esp_prov (a python based command line tool for provisioning)

The phone applications offer simple UI and thus more user centric, while the command line application is useful as a debugging tool for developers.

API Reference

Header File

- wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/manager.h

Functions

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_init** (*wifi_prov_mgr_config_t config*)

Initialize provisioning manager instance.

Configures the manager and allocates internal resources

Configuration specifies the provisioning scheme (transport) and event handlers

Event WIFI_PROV_INIT is emitted right after initialization is complete

Return
- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Fail

Parameters
- `[in] config`: Configuration structure

void **wifi_prov_mgr_deinit** (void)

Stop provisioning (if running) and release resource used by the manager.

Event WIFI_PROV_DEINIT is emitted right after de-initialization is finished

If provisioning service is still active when this API is called, it first stops the service, hence emitting WIFI_PROV_END, and then performs the de-initialization

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned** (bool **provisioned*)

Checks if device is provisioned.

This checks if Wi-Fi credentials are present on the NVS

The Wi-Fi credentials are assumed to be kept in the same NVS namespace as used by esp_wifi component

If one were to call esp_wifi_set_config() directly instead of going through the provisioning process, this function will still yield true (i.e. device will be found to be provisioned)

Note Calling wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning() automatically resets the provision state, irrespective of what the state was prior to making the call.

Return
- ESP_OK : Retrieved provision state successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Wi-Fi not initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null argument supplied
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Manager not initialized

Parameters

- `[out] provisioned`: True if provisioned, else false

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning**(*wifi_prov_security_t security*, **const** char ***pop*, **const** char ***service_name*, **const** char ***service_key*)

Start provisioning service.

This starts the provisioning service according to the scheme configured at the time of initialization. For scheme :

- wifi_prov_scheme_ble : This starts protocomm_ble, which internally initializes BLE transport and starts GATT server for handling provisioning requests
- wifi_prov_scheme_softap : This activates SoftAP mode of Wi-Fi and starts protocomm_httpd, which internally starts an HTTP server for handling provisioning requests (If mDNS is active it also starts advertising service with type _esp_wifi_prov._tcp)

Event WIFI_PROV_START is emitted right after provisioning starts without failure

Note This API will start provisioning service even if device is found to be already provisioned, i.e. wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned() yields true

Return

- ESP_OK : Provisioning started successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Failed to start provisioning service
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Provisioning manager not initialized or already started

Parameters

- `[in] security`: Specify which protocomm security scheme to use :
  - WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_0 : For no security
  - WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1 : x25519 secure handshake for session establishment followed by AES-CTR encryption of provisioning messages
- `[in] pop`: Pointer to proof of possession string (NULL if not needed). This is relevant only for protocomm security 1, in which case it is used for authenticating secure session
- `[in] service_name`: Unique name of the service. This translates to:
  - Wi-Fi SSID when provisioning mode is softAP
  - Device name when provisioning mode is BLE
- `[in] service_key`: Key required by client to access the service (NULL if not needed). This translates to:
  - Wi-Fi password when provisioning mode is softAP
  - ignored when provisioning mode is BLE

void **wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning**(void)

Stop provisioning service.

If provisioning service is active, this API will initiate a process to stop the service and return. Once the service actually stops, the event WIFI_PROV_END will be emitted.

If wifi_prov_mgr_deinit() is called without calling this API first, it will automatically stop the provisioning service and emit the WIFI_PROV_END, followed by WIFI_PROV_DEINIT, before returning.

This API will generally be used along with wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop() in the scenario when the main application has registered its own endpoints, and wishes that the provisioning service is stopped only when some protocomm command from the client side application is received.

Calling this API inside an endpoint handler, with sufficient cleanup_delay, will allow the response / acknowledgment to be sent successfully before the underlying protocomm service is stopped.

Cleaup_delay is set when calling wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop(). If not specified, it defaults to 1000ms.

For straightforward cases, using this API is usually not necessary as provisioning is stopped automatically once WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS is emitted. Stopping is delayed (maximum 30 seconds) thus allowing the client side application to query for Wi-Fi state, i.e. after receiving the first query and sending `Wi-Fi state connected` response the service is stopped immediately.

void **wifi_prov_mgr_wait**(void)

Wait for provisioning service to finish.

Calling this API will block until provisioning service is stopped i.e. till event WIFI_PROV_END is emitted.

This will not block if provisioning is not started or not initialized.

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop**(uint32_t *cleanup_delay*)

Disable auto stopping of provisioning service upon completion.

By default, once provisioning is complete, the provisioning service is automatically stopped, and all endpoints (along with those registered by main application) are deactivated.

This API is useful in the case when main application wishes to close provisioning service only after it receives some protocomm command from the client side app. For example, after connecting to Wi-Fi, the device may want to connect to the cloud, and only once that is successfully, the device is said to be fully configured. But, then it is upto the main application to explicitly call wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning() later when the device is fully configured and the provisioning service is no longer required.

Note This must be called before executing wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning()

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Manager not initialized or provisioning service already started

Parameters

- `[in] cleanup_delay`: Sets the delay after which the actual cleanup of transport related resources is done after a call to wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning() returns. Minimum allowed value is 100ms. If not specified, this will default to 1000ms.

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_set_app_info**(**const** char **label*, **const** char ***version*, **const** char ***capabilities*, size_t *total_capabilities*)

Set application version and capabilities in the JSON data returned by proto-ver endpoint.

This function can be called multiple times, to specify information about the various application specific services running on the device, identified by unique labels.

The provisioning service itself registers an entry in the JSON data, by the label "prov", containing only provisioning service version and capabilities. Application services should use a label other than "prov" so as not to overwrite this.

Note This must be called before executing wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning()

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE : Manager not initialized or provisioning service already started
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM : Failed to allocate memory for version string
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null argument

Parameters

- `[in] label`: String indicating the application name.
- `[in] version`: String indicating the application version. There is no constraint on format.
- `[in] capabilities`: Array of strings with capabilities. These could be used by the client side app to know the application registered endpoint capabilities
- `[in] total_capabilities`: Size of capabilities array

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create**(**const** char **ep_name*)

Create an additional endpoint and allocate internal resources for it.

This API is to be called by the application if it wants to create an additional endpoint. All additional endpoints will be assigned UUIDs starting from 0xFF54 and so on in the order of execution.

protocomm handler for the created endpoint is to be registered later using wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register() after provisioning has started.

Note This API can only be called BEFORE provisioning is started

Note Additional endpoints can be used for configuring client provided parameters other than Wi-Fi credentials, that are necessary for the main application and hence must be set prior to starting the application

Note After session establishment, the additional endpoints must be targeted first by the client side application before sending Wi-Fi configuration, because once Wi-Fi configuration finishes the provisioning service is stopped and hence all endpoints are unregistered

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters

- `[in] ep_name`: unique name of the endpoint

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register**(**const** char **ep_name*, *protocomm_req_handler_t handler*, void **user_ctx*)

Register a handler for the previously created endpoint.

This API can be called by the application to register a protocomm handler to any endpoint that was created using wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create().

Note This API can only be called AFTER provisioning has started

Note Additional endpoints can be used for configuring client provided parameters other than Wi-Fi credentials, that are necessary for the main application and hence must be set prior to starting the application

Note After session establishment, the additional endpoints must be targeted first by the client side application before sending Wi-Fi configuration, because once Wi-Fi configuration finishes the provisioning service is stopped and hence all endpoints are unregistered

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_FAIL : Failure

Parameters

- `[in] ep_name`: Name of the endpoint
- `[in] handler`: Endpoint handler function
- `[in] user_ctx`: User data

void **wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_unregister**(**const** char **ep_name*)

Unregister the handler for an endpoint.

This API can be called if the application wants to selectively unregister the handler of an endpoint while the provisioning is still in progress.

All the endpoint handlers are unregistered automatically when the provisioning stops.

Parameters

- `[in] ep_name`: Name of the endpoint

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_event_handler**(void **ctx*, *system_event_t *event*)

Event handler for provisioning manager.

This is called from the main event handler and controls the provisioning manager' s internal state machine depending on incoming Wi-Fi events

Note : This function is DEPRECATED, because events are now handled internally using the event loop library, esp_event. Calling this will do nothing and simply return ESP_OK.

Return

- ESP_OK : Event handled successfully

Parameters

- `[in] ctx`: Event context data
- `[in] event`: Event info

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_get_wifi_state**(*wifi_prov_sta_state_t *state*)

Get state of Wi-Fi Station during provisioning.

Return

- ESP_OK : Successfully retrieved Wi-Fi state
- ESP_FAIL : Provisioning app not running

Parameters

- `[out] state`: Pointer to wifi_prov_sta_state_t variable to be filled

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_get_wifi_disconnect_reason**(*wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t *reason*)

Get reason code in case of Wi-Fi station disconnection during provisioning.

Return

- ESP_OK : Successfully retrieved Wi-Fi disconnect reason
- ESP_FAIL : Provisioning app not running

Parameters

- `[out] reason`: Pointer to wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t variable to be filled

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_configure_sta**(*wifi_config_t* *wifi_cfg)

Runs Wi-Fi as Station with the supplied configuration.

Configures the Wi-Fi station mode to connect to the AP with SSID and password specified in config structure and sets Wi-Fi to run as station.

This is automatically called by provisioning service upon receiving new credentials.

If credentials are to be supplied to the manager via a different mode other than through protocomm, then this API needs to be called.

Event WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV is emitted after credentials have been applied and Wi-Fi station started

Return

- ESP_OK : Wi-Fi configured and started successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Failed to set configuration

Parameters

- `[in] wifi_cfg`: Pointer to Wi-Fi configuration structure

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_mgr_reset_provisioning**(void)

Reset Wi-Fi provisioning config.

Calling this API will restore WiFi stack persistent settings to default values.

Return

- ESP_OK : Reset provisioning config successfully
- ESP_FAIL : Failed to reset provisioning config

Structures

struct wifi_prov_event_handler_t

Event handler that is used by the manager while provisioning service is active.

Public Members

wifi_prov_cb_func_t **event_cb**

Callback function to be executed on provisioning events

void ***user_data**

User context data to pass as parameter to callback function

struct wifi_prov_scheme

Structure for specifying the provisioning scheme to be followed by the manager.

Note Ready to use schemes are available:

- wifi_prov_scheme_ble : for provisioning over BLE transport + GATT server
- wifi_prov_scheme_softap : for provisioning over SoftAP transport + HTTP server
- wifi_prov_scheme_console : for provisioning over Serial UART transport + Console (for debugging)

Public Members

esp_err_t (***prov_start**)(*protocomm_t* *pc, void *config)

Function which is to be called by the manager when it is to start the provisioning service associated with a protocomm instance and a scheme specific configuration

esp_err_t (***prov_stop**)(*protocomm_t* *pc)

Function which is to be called by the manager to stop the provisioning service previously associated with a protocomm instance

void *(***new_config**) (void)
Function which is to be called by the manager to generate a new configuration for the provisioning service, that is to be passed to *prov_start()*

void (***delete_config**) (void *config)
Function which is to be called by the manager to delete a configuration generated using *new_config()*

esp_err_t (***set_config_service**) (void *config, **const** char *service_name, **const** char *service_key)
Function which is to be called by the manager to set the service name and key values in the configuration structure

esp_err_t (***set_config_endpoint**) (void *config, **const** char *endpoint_name, uint16_t uuid)
Function which is to be called by the manager to set a protocomm endpoint with an identifying name and UUID in the configuration structure

wifi_mode_t **wifi_mode**
Sets mode of operation of Wi-Fi during provisioning This is set to :

- WIFI_MODE_APSTA for SoftAP transport
- WIFI_MODE_STA for BLE transport

struct wifi_prov_mgr_config_t
Structure for specifying the manager configuration.

Public Members

wifi_prov_scheme_t **scheme**
Provisioning scheme to use. Following schemes are already available:

- wifi_prov_scheme_ble : for provisioning over BLE transport + GATT server
- wifi_prov_scheme_softap : for provisioning over SoftAP transport + HTTP server + mDNS (optional)
- wifi_prov_scheme_console : for provisioning over Serial UART transport + Console (for debugging)

wifi_prov_event_handler_t **scheme_event_handler**
Event handler required by the scheme for incorporating scheme specific behavior while provisioning manager is running. Various options may be provided by the scheme for setting this field. Use WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE when not used. When using scheme wifi_prov_scheme_ble, the following options are available:

- WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM
- WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE
- WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT

wifi_prov_event_handler_t **app_event_handler**
Event handler that can be set for the purpose of incorporating application specific behavior. Use WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE when not used.

Macros

WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE
Event handler can be set to none if not used.

Type Definitions

typedef void (***wifi_prov_cb_func_t**) (void *user_data, *wifi_prov_cb_event_t* event, void *event_data)

typedef struct *wifi_prov_scheme* **wifi_prov_scheme_t**
Structure for specifying the provisioning scheme to be followed by the manager.

Note Ready to use schemes are available:

- wifi_prov_scheme_ble : for provisioning over BLE transport + GATT server
- wifi_prov_scheme_softap : for provisioning over SoftAP transport + HTTP server

- wifi_prov_scheme_console : for provisioning over Serial UART transport + Console (for debugging)

typedef enum *wifi_prov_security* **wifi_prov_security_t**
Security modes supported by the Provisioning Manager.

These are same as the security modes provided by protocomm

Enumerations

enum wifi_prov_cb_event_t
Events generated by manager.

These events are generated in order of declaration and, for the stretch of time between initialization and de-initialization of the manager, each event is signaled only once

Values:

WIFI_PROV_INIT
Emitted when the manager is initialized

WIFI_PROV_START
Indicates that provisioning has started

WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV
Emitted when Wi-Fi AP credentials are received via `protocomm` endpoint `wifi_config`. The event data in this case is a pointer to the corresponding *`wifi_sta_config_t`* structure

WIFI_PROV_CRED_FAIL
Emitted when device fails to connect to the AP of which the credentials were received earlier on event `WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV`. The event data in this case is a pointer to the disconnection reason code with type `wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t`

WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS
Emitted when device successfully connects to the AP of which the credentials were received earlier on event `WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV`

WIFI_PROV_END
Signals that provisioning service has stopped

WIFI_PROV_DEINIT
Signals that manager has been de-initialized

enum wifi_prov_security
Security modes supported by the Provisioning Manager.

These are same as the security modes provided by protocomm

Values:

WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_0 = 0
No security (plain-text communication)

WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1
This secure communication mode consists of X25519 key exchange

- proof of possession (pop) based authentication
- AES-CTR encryption

Header File

- wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/scheme_ble.h

Functions

void **wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_btdm**(void **user_data*, *wifi_prov_cb_event_t event*, void **event_data*)

void **wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_ble**(void **user_data*, *wifi_prov_cb_event_t event*, void **event_data*)

void **wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_bt**(void *user_data, wifi_prov_cb_event_t event, void *event_data)

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_scheme_ble_set_service_uuid**(uint8_t *uuid128)

Set the 128 bit GATT service UUID used for provisioning.

This API is used to override the default 128 bit provisioning service UUID, which is 0000ffff-0000-1000-8000-00805f9b34fb.

This must be called before starting provisioning, i.e. before making a call to wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning(), otherwise the default UUID will be used.

Note The data being pointed to by the argument must be valid atleast till provisioning is started. Upon start, the manager will store an internal copy of this UUID, and this data can be freed or invalidated afterwords.

Return

- ESP_OK : Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG : Null argument

Parameters

- `[in] uuid128`: A custom 128 bit UUID

Macros

WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM

WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE

WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT

Header File

- wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/scheme_softap.h

Functions

void **wifi_prov_scheme_softap_set_httpd_handle**(void *handle)

Provide HTTPD Server handle externally.

Useful in cases wherein applications need the webserver for some different operations, and do not want the wifi provisioning component to start/stop a new instance.

Note This API should be called before wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning()

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle to HTTPD server instance

Header File

- wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/scheme_console.h

Header File

- wifi_provisioning/include/wifi_provisioning/wifi_config.h

Functions

esp_err_t **wifi_prov_config_data_handler**(uint32_t session_id, **const** uint8_t *inbuf, ssize_t inlen, uint8_t **outbuf, ssize_t *outlen, void *priv_data)

Handler for receiving and responding to requests from master.

This is to be registered as the `wifi_config` endpoint handler (protocomm `protocomm_req_handler_t`) using `protocomm_add_endpoint()`

Structures

struct wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t

WiFi STA connected status information.

Public Members

char **ip_addr**[**IP4ADDR_STRLEN_MAX**]

IP Address received by station

char **bssid**[6]

BSSID of the AP to which connection was estalished

char **ssid**[33]

SSID of the to which connection was estalished

uint8_t **channel**

Channel of the AP

uint8_t **auth_mode**

Authorization mode of the AP

struct wifi_prov_config_get_data_t

WiFi status data to be sent in response to `get_status` request from master.

Public Members

wifi_prov_sta_state_t **wifi_state**

WiFi state of the station

wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t **fail_reason**

Reason for disconnection (valid only when `wifi_state` is `WIFI_STATION_DISCONNECTED`)

wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t **conn_info**

Connection information (valid only when `wifi_state` is `WIFI_STATION_CONNECTED`)

struct wifi_prov_config_set_data_t

WiFi config data received by slave during `set_config` request from master.

Public Members

char **ssid**[33]

SSID of the AP to which the slave is to be connected

char **password**[64]

Password of the AP

char **bssid**[6]

BSSID of the AP

uint8_t **channel**

Channel of the AP

struct wifi_prov_config_handlers

Internal handlers for receiving and responding to protocomm requests from master.

This is to be passed as priv_data for protocomm request handler (refer to `wifi_prov_config_data_handler()`) when calling `protocomm_add_endpoint()`.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***get_status_handler**) (*wifi_prov_config_get_data_t* *resp_data, *wifi_prov_ctx_t* **ctx)

Handler function called when connection status of the slave (in WiFi station mode) is requested

esp_err_t (***set_config_handler**) (**const** *wifi_prov_config_set_data_t* *req_data, *wifi_prov_ctx_t* **ctx)

Handler function called when WiFi connection configuration (eg. AP SSID, password, etc.) of the slave (in WiFi station mode) is to be set to user provided values

esp_err_t (***apply_config_handler**) (*wifi_prov_ctx_t* **ctx)

Handler function for applying the configuration that was set in `set_config_handler`. After applying the station may get connected to the AP or may fail to connect. The slave must be ready to convey the updated connection status information when `get_status_handler` is invoked again by the master.

wifi_prov_ctx_t ***ctx**

Context pointer to be passed to above handler functions upon invocation

Type Definitions

typedef struct wifi_prov_ctx **wifi_prov_ctx_t**

Type of context data passed to each get/set/apply handler function set in *`wifi_prov_config_handlers`* structure.

This is passed as an opaque pointer, thereby allowing it be defined later in application code as per requirements.

typedef struct *wifi_prov_config_handlers* **wifi_prov_config_handlers_t**

Internal handlers for receiving and responding to protocomm requests from master.

This is to be passed as priv_data for protocomm request handler (refer to `wifi_prov_config_data_handler()`) when calling `protocomm_add_endpoint()`.

Enumerations

enum wifi_prov_sta_state_t

WiFi STA status for conveying back to the provisioning master.

Values:

WIFI_PROV_STA_CONNECTING

WIFI_PROV_STA_CONNECTED

WIFI_PROV_STA_DISCONNECTED

enum wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t

WiFi STA connection fail reason.

Values:

WIFI_PROV_STA_AUTH_ERROR

WIFI_PROV_STA_AP_NOT_FOUND

Code examples for above API are provided in the provisioning directory of ESP-IDF examples.

Code example for above API is provided in wifi/smart_config

2.5 Storage API

2.5.1 FAT Filesystem Support

ESP-IDF uses the FatFs library to work with FAT filesystems. FatFs resides in the `fatfs` component. Although the library can be used directly, many of its features can be accessed via VFS, using the C standard library and POSIX API functions.

Additionally, FatFs has been modified to support the runtime pluggable disk I/O layer. This allows mapping of FatFs drives to physical disks at runtime.

Using FatFs with VFS

The header file fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h defines the functions for connecting FatFs and VFS.

The function `esp_vfs_fat_register()` allocates a `FATFS` structure and registers a given path prefix in VFS. Subsequent operations on files starting with this prefix are forwarded to FatFs APIs. The function `esp_vfs_fat_unregister_path()` deletes the registration with VFS, and frees the `FATFS` structure.

Most applications use the following workflow when working with `esp_vfs_fat_` functions:

1. **Call `esp_vfs_fat_register()` to specify:**
   - Path prefix where to mount the filesystem (e.g. `"/sdcard"`, `"/spiflash"`)
   - FatFs drive number
   - A variable which will receive the pointer to the `FATFS` structure
2. Call `ff_diskio_register()` to register the disk I/O driver for the drive number used in Step 1.
3. Call the FatFs function `f_mount`, and optionally `f_fdisk`, `f_mkfs`, to mount the filesystem using the same drive number which was passed to `esp_vfs_fat_register()`. For more information, see *FatFs documentation <http://www.elm-chan.org/fsw/ff/doc/mount.html>*.
4. Call the C standard library and POSIX API functions to perform such actions on files as open, read, write, erase, copy, etc. Use paths starting with the path prefix passed to `esp_vfs_register()` (for example, `"/sdcard/hello.txt"`).
5. Optionally, by enabling the option *CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK*, use the POSIX lseek function to perform it faster, the fast seek will not work for files in write mode, so to take advantage of fast seek, you should open (or close and then reopen) the file in read-only mode.
6. Optionally, call the FatFs library functions directly. In this case, use paths without a VFS prefix (for example, `"/hello.txt"`).
7. Close all open files.
8. Call the FatFs function `f_mount` for the same drive number, with NULL `FATFS*` argument, to unmount the filesystem.
9. Call the FatFs function `ff_diskio_register()` with NULL `ff_diskio_impl_t*` argument and the same drive number to unregister the disk I/O driver.
10. Call `esp_vfs_fat_unregister_path()` with the path where the file system is mounted to remove FatFs from VFS, and free the `FATFS` structure allocated in Step 1.

The convenience functions `esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount`, `esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount` and `esp_vfs_fat_sdcard_unmount` wrap the steps described above and also handle SD card initialization. These two functions are described in the next section.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_register**(**const** char **base_path*, **const** char **fat_drive*, size_t *max_files*, FATFS ***out_fs*)

Register FATFS with VFS component.

This function registers given FAT drive in VFS, at the specified base path. If only one drive is used, fat_drive argument can be an empty string. Refer to FATFS library documentation on how to specify FAT drive. This function also allocates FATFS structure which should be used for f_mount call.

Note This function doesn't mount the drive into FATFS, it just connects POSIX and C standard library IO function with FATFS. You need to mount desired drive into FATFS separately.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_register was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if not enough memory or too many VFSes already registered

Parameters
- `base_path`: path prefix where FATFS should be registered
- `fat_drive`: FATFS drive specification; if only one drive is used, can be an empty string
- `max_files`: maximum number of files which can be open at the same time
- `[out] out_fs`: pointer to FATFS structure which can be used for FATFS f_mount call is returned via this argument.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_unregister_path**(**const** char **base_path*)

Un-register FATFS from VFS.

Note FATFS structure returned by esp_vfs_fat_register is destroyed after this call. Make sure to call f_mount function to unmount it before calling esp_vfs_fat_unregister_ctx. Difference between this function and the one above is that this one will release the correct drive, while the one above will release the last registered one

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if FATFS is not registered in VFS

Parameters

- `base_path`: path prefix where FATFS is registered. This is the same used when esp_vfs_fat_register was called

Using FatFs with VFS and SD cards

The header file fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h defines convenience functions *`esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount()`*, *`esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount()`* and *`esp_vfs_fat_sdcard_unmount()`*. These function perform Steps 1–3 and 7–9 respectively and handle SD card initialization, but provide only limited error handling. Developers are encouraged to check its source code and incorporate more advanced features into production applications.

The convenience function `esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_unmount()` unmounts the filesystem and releases the resources acquired by *`esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount()`*.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount**(**const** char **base_path*, **const** *sdmmc_host_t* **host_config*, **const** void **slot_config*, **const** *esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t* **mount_config*, *sdmmc_card_t* ***out_card*)

Convenience function to get FAT filesystem on SD card registered in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- initializes SDMMC driver or SPI driver with configuration in host_config
- initializes SD card with configuration in slot_config
- mounts FAT partition on SD card using FATFS library, with configuration in mount_config
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

This function is intended to make example code more compact. For real world applications, developers should implement the logic of probing SD card, locating and mounting partition, and registering FATFS in VFS, with proper error checking and handling of exceptional conditions.

Note Use this API to mount a card through SDSPI is deprecated. Please call `esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount()` instead for that case.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition can not be mounted
- other error codes from SDMMC or SPI drivers, SDMMC protocol, or FATFS drivers

Parameters

- `base_path`: path where partition should be registered (e.g. "/sdcard")
- `host_config`: Pointer to structure describing SDMMC host. When using SDMMC peripheral, this structure can be initialized using SDMMC_HOST_DEFAULT() macro. When using SPI peripheral, this structure can be initialized using SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT() macro.
- `slot_config`: Pointer to structure with slot configuration. For SDMMC peripheral, pass a pointer to sdmmc_slot_config_t structure initialized using SDMMC_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT. (Deprecated) For SPI peripheral, pass a pointer to *sdspi_slot_config_t* structure initialized using SDSPI_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT().
- `mount_config`: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS
- `[out] out_card`: if not NULL, pointer to the card information structure will be returned via this argument

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount**(**const** char **base_path*, **const** *sdmmc_host_t *host_config_input*, **const** *sdspi_device_config_t *slot_config*, **const** *esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t *mount_config*, *sdmmc_card_t **out_card*)

Convenience function to get FAT filesystem on SD card registered in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- initializes an SPI Master device based on the SPI Master driver with configuration in slot_config, and attach it to an initialized SPI bus.
- initializes SD card with configuration in host_config_input
- mounts FAT partition on SD card using FATFS library, with configuration in mount_config
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

This function is intended to make example code more compact. For real world applications, developers should implement the logic of probing SD card, locating and mounting partition, and registering FATFS in VFS, with proper error checking and handling of exceptional conditions.

Note This function try to attach the new SD SPI device to the bus specified in host_config. Make sure the SPI bus specified in `host_config->slot` have been initialized by `spi_bus_initialize()` before.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition can not be mounted
- other error codes from SDMMC or SPI drivers, SDMMC protocol, or FATFS drivers

Parameters

- `base_path`: path where partition should be registered (e.g. "/sdcard")
- `host_config_input`: Pointer to structure describing SDMMC host. This structure can be initialized using SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT() macro.
- `slot_config`: Pointer to structure with slot configuration. For SPI peripheral, pass a pointer to *sdspi_device_config_t* structure initialized using SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT().
- `mount_config`: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS
- `[out] out_card`: If not NULL, pointer to the card information structure will be returned via this argument. It is suggested to hold this handle and use it to unmount the card later if needed. Otherwise it's not suggested to use more than one card at the same time and unmount one of them in your application.

struct esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t

Configuration arguments for esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount and esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount functions.

Public Members

bool **format_if_mount_failed**

If FAT partition can not be mounted, and this parameter is true, create partition table and format the filesystem.

int **max_files**

Max number of open files.

size_t **allocation_unit_size**

If format_if_mount_failed is set, and mount fails, format the card with given allocation unit size. Must be a power of 2, between sector size and 128 * sector size. For SD cards, sector size is always 512 bytes. For wear_levelling, sector size is determined by CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE option.

Using larger allocation unit size will result in higher read/write performance and higher overhead when storing small files.

Setting this field to 0 will result in allocation unit set to the sector size.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_sdcard_unmount**(**const** char **base_path*, *sdmmc_card_t *card*)

Unmount an SD card from the FAT filesystem and release resources acquired using `esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount()` or `esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount()`

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the card argument is unregistered
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount hasn't been called

Using FatFs with VFS in read-only mode

The header file fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h also defines the convenience functions *esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount()* and *esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_unmount()*. These functions perform Steps 1-3 and 7-9 respectively for read-only FAT partitions. These are particularly helpful for data partitions written only once during factory provisioning which will not be changed by production application throughout the lifetime of the hardware.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount**(**const** char **base_path*, **const** char **partition_label*, **const** *esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t *mount_config*)

Convenience function to initialize read-only FAT filesystem and register it in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- finds the partition with defined partition_label. Partition label should be configured in the partition table.
- mounts FAT partition using FATFS library
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

Note Wear levelling is not used when FAT is mounted in read-only mode using this function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the partition table does not contain FATFS partition with given label
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount was already called for the same partition
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition can not be mounted
- other error codes from SPI flash driver, or FATFS drivers

Parameters

- `base_path`: path where FATFS partition should be mounted (e.g. "/spiflash")
- `partition_label`: label of the partition which should be used
- `mount_config`: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_unmount**(**const** char **base_path*, **const** char **partition_label*)

Unmount FAT filesystem and release resources acquired using esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount hasn't been called

Parameters

- `base_path`: path where partition should be registered (e.g. "/spiflash")
- `partition_label`: label of partition to be unmounted

FatFS disk IO layer

FatFs has been extended with API functions that register the disk I/O driver at runtime.

They provide implementation of disk I/O functions for SD/MMC cards and can be registered for the given FatFs drive number using the function *ff_diskio_register_sdmmc()*.

void **ff_diskio_register**(BYTE *pdrv*, **const** *ff_diskio_impl_t *discio_impl*)

Register or unregister diskio driver for given drive number.

When FATFS library calls one of disk_xxx functions for driver number pdrv, corresponding function in discio_impl for given pdrv will be called.

Parameters

- `pdrv`: drive number
- `discio_impl`: pointer to *ff_diskio_impl_t* structure with diskio functions or NULL to unregister and free previously registered drive

struct ff_diskio_impl_t

Structure of pointers to disk IO driver functions.

See FatFs documentation for details about these functions

Public Members

DSTATUS (***init**)(unsigned char pdrv)
disk initialization function

DSTATUS (***status**)(unsigned char pdrv)
disk status check function

DRESULT (***read**)(unsigned char pdrv, unsigned char *buff, uint32_t sector, unsigned count)
sector read function

DRESULT (***write**)(unsigned char pdrv, **const** unsigned char *buff, uint32_t sector, unsigned count)
sector write function

DRESULT (***ioctl**)(unsigned char pdrv, unsigned char cmd, void *buff)
function to get info about disk and do some misc operations

void **ff_diskio_register_sdmmc**(unsigned char *pdrv*, *sdmmc_card_t* **card*)

Register SD/MMC diskio driver

Parameters

- `pdrv`: drive number
- `card`: pointer to *sdmmc_card_t* structure describing a card; card should be initialized before calling f_mount.

esp_err_t **ff_diskio_register_wl_partition**(unsigned char *pdrv*, *wl_handle_t flash_handle*)

Register spi flash partition

Parameters

- `pdrv`: drive number
- `flash_handle`: handle of the wear levelling partition.

esp_err_t **ff_diskio_register_raw_partition**(unsigned char *pdrv*, **const** *esp_partition_t* **part_handle*)

Register spi flash partition

Parameters

- `pdrv`: drive number
- `part_handle`: pointer to raw flash partition.

2.5.2 Manufacturing Utility

Introduction

This utility is designed to create instances of factory NVS partition images on a per-device basis for mass manufacturing purposes. The NVS partition images are created from CSV files containing user-provided configurations and values.

Please note that this utility only creates manufacturing binary images which then need to be flashed onto your devices using:

- esptool.py
- Flash Download tool (available on Windows only).Just download it, unzip, and follow the instructions inside the *doc* folder.
- Direct flash programming using custom production tools.

Prerequisites

This utility is dependent on esp-idf's NVS partition utility.

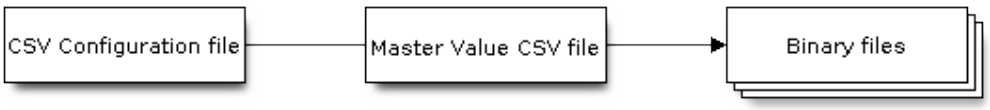
- **Operating System requirements:**
  - Linux / MacOS / Windows (standard distributions)
- **The following packages are needed to use this utility:**
  - Python

Note:

Before using this utility, please make sure that:

- The path to Python is added to the PATH environment variable.
- You have installed the packages from *requirement.txt*, the file in the root of the esp-idf directory.

Workflow



CSV Configuration File

This file contains the configuration of the device to be flashed.

The data in the configuration file has the following format (the *REPEAT* tag is optional):

```
name1,namespace,    <-- First entry should be of type "namespace"
key1,type1,encoding1
key2,type2,encoding2,REPEAT
name2,namespace,
key3,type3,encoding3
key4,type4,encoding4
```

Note: The first line in this file should always be the `namespace` entry.

Each line should have three parameters: `key,type,encoding`, separated by a comma. If the `REPEAT` tag is present, the value corresponding to this key in the master value CSV file will be the same for all devices.

Please refer to README of the NVS Partition Generator utility for detailed description of each parameter.

Below is a sample example of such a configuration file:

```
app,namespace,
firmware_key,data,hex2bin
serial_no,data,string,REPEAT
device_no,data,i32
```

Note:

Make sure there are no spaces:

- before and after ‘,’
- at the end of each line in a CSV file

Master Value CSV File

This file contains details of the devices to be flashed. Each line in this file corresponds to a device instance.

The data in the master value CSV file has the following format:

```
key1,key2,key3,.....
value1,value2,value3,....
```

Note: The first line in the file should always contain the `key` names. All the keys from the configuration file should be present here in the **same order**. This file can have additional columns (keys). The additional keys will be treated as metadata and would not be part of the final binary files.

Each line should contain the `value` of the corresponding keys, separated by a comma. If the key has the `REPEAT` tag, its corresponding value **must** be entered in the second line only. Keep the entry empty for this value in the following lines.

The description of this parameter is as follows:

`value` Data value

Data value is the value of data corresponding to the key.

Below is a sample example of a master value CSV file:

```
id,firmware_key,serial_no,device_no
1,1a2b3c4d5e6faabb,A1,101
2,1a2b3c4d5e6fccdd,,102
3,1a2b3c4d5e6feeff,,103
```

Note: *If the ‘REPEAT’ tag is present, a new master value CSV file will be created in the same folder as the input Master CSV File with the values inserted at each line for the key with the ‘REPEAT’ tag.*

This utility creates intermediate CSV files which are used as input for the NVS partition utility to generate the binary files.

The format of this intermediate CSV file is as follows:

```
key,type,encoding,value
key,namespace, ,
key1,type1,encoding1,value1
key2,type2,encoding2,value2
```

An instance of an intermediate CSV file will be created for each device on an individual basis.

Running the utility

Usage:

```
python mfg_gen.py [-h] {generate,generate-key} ...

Optional Arguments:
+-----+------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| No. | Parameter  |                          Description                        ␣
↪       |
+=====+============+=============================================================================+
| 1   | -h, --help |        show this help message and exit                      ␣
↪       |
+-----+------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+

Commands:
        Run mfg_gen.py {command} -h for additional help
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| No. | Parameter    |                            Description                      ␣
↪       |
+=====+==============+=============================================================================+
| 1   | generate     |      Generate NVS partition                                 ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| 2   | generate-key |      Generate keys for encryption                           ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
```

To generate factory images for each device (Default): Usage:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate [-h] [--fileid FILEID] [--version {1,2}] [--keygen]
                           [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--inputkey INPUTKEY]
                           [--outdir OUTDIR]
                           conf values prefix size

Positional Arguments:
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| Parameter    |                          Description                        ␣
↪       |
+==============+=============================================================================+
| conf         |        Path to configuration csv file to parse              ␣
↪       |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| values       |        Path to values csv file to parse                     ␣
↪       |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| prefix       |        Unique name for each output filename prefix          ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| size         |        Size of NVS partition in bytes                       ␣
↪       |
|              |        (must be multiple of 4096)                           ␣
↪       |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+

Optional Arguments:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| Parameter          |                          Description                 ␣
↪            |
+====================+=======================================================================+
| -h, --help         |     show this help message and exit                  ␣
↪            |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| --fileid FILEID    |     Unique file identifier(any key in values file)   ␣
↪            |
|                    |     for each filename suffix (Default: numeric value(1,
↪2,3...)     |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| --version {1,2}    |     Set multipage blob version.                      ␣
↪            |
|                    |     Version 1 - Multipage blob support disabled.     ␣
↪            |
|                    |     Version 2 - Multipage blob support enabled.      ␣
↪            |
|                    |     Default: Version 2                               ␣
↪            |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| --keygen           |     Generates key for encrypting NVS partition       ␣
↪            |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| --inputkey INPUTKEY |     File having key for encrypting NVS partition     ␣
↪            |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| --outdir OUTDIR    |     Output directory to store files created          ␣
↪            |
|                    |     (Default: current directory)                     ␣
↪            |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
```

You can run the utility to generate factory images for each device using the command below. A sample CSV file is provided with the utility:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate samples/sample_config.csv samples/sample_values_
↪singlepage_blob.csv Sample 0x3000
```

The master value CSV file should have the path in the `file` type relative to the directory from which you are running the utility.

To generate encrypted factory images for each device:

You can run the utility to encrypt factory images for each device using the command below. A sample CSV file is provided with the utility:

- Encrypt by allowing the utility to generate encryption keys:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate samples/sample_config.csv samples/sample_values_
↪singlepage_blob.csv Sample 0x3000 --keygen
```

Note: Encryption key of the following format `<outdir>/keys/keys-<prefix>-<fileid>.bin` is cre-

ated.

Note: This newly created file having encryption keys in `keys/` directory is compatible with NVS key-partition structure. Refer to *NVS key partition* for more details.

- Encrypt by providing the encryption keys as input binary file:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate samples/sample_config.csv samples/sample_values_
↪singlepage_blob.csv Sample 0x3000 --inputkey keys/sample_keys.bin
```

To generate only encryption keys: Usage:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate-key [-h] [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--outdir OUTDIR]

Optional Arguments:
+--------------------+------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
| Parameter          |                            Description                ␣
↪             |
+====================+========================================================================+
| -h, --help         |      show this help message and exit                  ␣
↪             |
+--------------------+------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
| --keyfile KEYFILE  |      Path to output encryption keys file              ␣
↪             |
+--------------------+------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
| --outdir OUTDIR    |      Output directory to store files created.         ␣
↪             |
|                    |      (Default: current directory)                     ␣
↪             |
+--------------------+------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
```

You can run the utility to generate only encryption keys using the command below:

```
python mfg_gen.py generate-key
```

Note: Encryption key of the following format `<outdir>/keys/keys-<timestamp>.bin` is created. Timestamp format is: `%m-%d_%H-%M`.

Note: To provide custom target filename use the –keyfile argument.

Generated encryption key binary file can further be used to encrypt factory images created on the per device basis.

The default numeric value: 1,2,3⋯ of the `fileid` argument corresponds to each line bearing device instance values in the master value CSV file.

While running the manufacturing utility, the following folders will be created in the specified `outdir` directory:

- `bin/` for storing the generated binary files
- `csv/` for storing the generated intermediate CSV files
- `keys/` for storing encryption keys (when generating encrypted factory images)

2.5.3 Non-volatile storage library

Introduction

Non-volatile storage (NVS) library is designed to store key-value pairs in flash. This section introduces some concepts used by NVS.

Underlying storage Currently, NVS uses a portion of main flash memory through the *esp_partition* API. The library uses all the partitions with `data` type and `nvs` subtype. The application can choose to use the partition with the label `nvs` through the *`nvs_open()`* API function or any other partition by specifying its name using the *`nvs_open_from_partition()`* API function.

Future versions of this library may have other storage backends to keep data in another flash chip (SPI or I2C), RTC, FRAM, etc.

Note: if an NVS partition is truncated (for example, when the partition table layout is changed), its contents should be erased. ESP-IDF build system provides a `idf.py erase_flash` target to erase all contents of the flash chip.

Note: NVS works best for storing many small values, rather than a few large values of the type 'string' and 'blob' . If you need to store large blobs or strings, consider using the facilities provided by the FAT filesystem on top of the wear levelling library.

Keys and values NVS operates on key-value pairs. Keys are ASCII strings; the maximum key length is currently 15 characters. Values can have one of the following types:

- integer types: `uint8_t`, `int8_t`, `uint16_t`, `int16_t`, `uint32_t`, `int32_t`, `uint64_t`, `int64_t`
- zero-terminated string
- variable length binary data (blob)

Note: String values are currently limited to 4000 bytes. This includes the null terminator. Blob values are limited to 508000 bytes or 97.6% of the partition size - 4000 bytes, whichever is lower.

Additional types, such as `float` and `double` might be added later.

Keys are required to be unique. Assigning a new value to an existing key works as follows:

- if the new value is of the same type as the old one, value is updated
- if the new value has a different data type, an error is returned

Data type check is also performed when reading a value. An error is returned if the data type of the read operation does not match the data type of the value.

Namespaces To mitigate potential conflicts in key names between different components, NVS assigns each key-value pair to one of namespaces. Namespace names follow the same rules as key names, i.e., the maximum length is 15 characters. Namespace name is specified in the *`nvs_open()`* or *`nvs_open_from_partition`* call. This call returns an opaque handle, which is used in subsequent calls to the `nvs_get_*`, `nvs_set_*`, and *`nvs_commit()`* functions. This way, a handle is associated with a namespace, and key names will not collide with same names in other namespaces. Please note that the namespaces with the same name in different NVS partitions are considered as separate namespaces.

NVS iterators Iterators allow to list key-value pairs stored in NVS, based on specified partition name, namespace, and data type.

There are the following functions available:

- *nvs_entry_find()* returns an opaque handle, which is used in subsequent calls to the *nvs_entry_next()* and *nvs_entry_info()* functions.
- *nvs_entry_next()* returns iterator to the next key-value pair.
- *nvs_entry_info()* returns information about each key-value pair

If none or no other key-value pair was found for given criteria, *nvs_entry_find()* and *nvs_entry_next()* return NULL. In that case, the iterator does not have to be released. If the iterator is no longer needed, you can release it by using the function *nvs_release_iterator()*.

Security, tampering, and robustness NVS is not directly compatible with the ESP32-S2 flash encryption system. However, data can still be stored in encrypted form if NVS encryption is used together with ESP32-S2 flash encryption. Please refer to *NVS Encryption* for more details.

If NVS encryption is not used, it is possible for anyone with physical access to the flash chip to alter, erase, or add key-value pairs. With NVS encryption enabled, it is not possible to alter or add a key-value pair and get recognized as a valid pair without knowing corresponding NVS encryption keys. However, there is no tamper-resistance against the erase operation.

The library does try to recover from conditions when flash memory is in an inconsistent state. In particular, one should be able to power off the device at any point and time and then power it back on. This should not result in loss of data, except for the new key-value pair if it was being written at the moment of powering off. The library should also be able to initialize properly with any random data present in flash memory.

NVS Encryption

Data stored in NVS partitions can be encrypted using AES-XTS in the manner similar to the one mentioned in disk encryption standard IEEE P1619. For the purpose of encryption, each entry is treated as one *sector* and relative address of the entry (w.r.t. partition-start) is fed to the encryption algorithm as *sector-number*. The NVS Encryption can be enabled by enabling *CONFIG_NVS_ENCRYPTION*. The keys required for NVS encryption are stored in yet another partition, which is protected using *Flash Encryption*. Therefore, enabling *Flash Encryption* is a prerequisite for NVS encryption.

The NVS Encryption is enabled by default when *Flash Encryption* is enabled. This is done because WiFi driver stores credentials (like SSID and passphrase) in the default NVS partition. It is important to encrypt them as default choice if platform level encryption is already enabled.

For using NVS encryption, the partition table must contain the *NVS key partition*. Two partition tables containing the *NVS key partition* are provided for NVS encryption under the partition table option (menuconfig->Partition Table). They can be selected with the project configuration menu (`idf.py menuconfig`). Please refer to the example security/flash_encryption for how to configure and use NVS encryption feature.

NVS key partition

An application requiring NVS encryption support needs to be compiled with a key-partition of the type *data* and subtype *key*. This partition should be marked as *encrypted* and its size should be the minimum partition size (4KB). Refer to *Partition Tables* for more details. Two additional partition tables which contain the *NVS key partition* are provided under the partition table option (menuconfig->Partition Table). They can be directly used for *NVS Encryption*. The structure of these partitions is depicted below.

```
+-----------+-------------+-------------+----+
|              XTS encryption key(32)          |
+----------------------------------------------+
|              XTS tweak key (32)              |
+----------------------------------------------+
|                  CRC32(4)                    |
+----------------------------------------------+
```

The XTS encryption keys in the *NVS key partition* can be generated in one of the following two ways.

1. Generate the keys on the ESP chip:

When NVS encryption is enabled the *nvs_flash_init()* API function can be used to initialize the encrypted default NVS partition. The API function internally generates the XTS encryption keys on the ESP chip. The API function finds the first *NVS key partition*. Then the API function automatically generates and stores the nvs keys in that partition by making use of the *nvs_flash_generate_keys()* API function provided by nvs_flash/include/nvs_flash.h. New keys are generated and stored only when the respective key partiton is empty. The same key partition can then be used to read the security configurations for initializing a custom encrypted NVS partition with help of *nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()*.
The API functions *nvs_flash_secure_init()* and *nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()* do not generate the keys internally. When these API functions are used for initializing encrypted NVS partitions, the keys can be generated after startup using the *nvs_flash_generate_keys()* API function provided by `nvs_flash.h`. The API function will then write those keys onto the key-partition in encrypted form.

2. Use pre-generated key partition:
   This option will be required by the user when keys in the *NVS key partition* are not generated by the application. The *NVS key partition* containing the XTS encryption keys can be generated with the help of *NVS Partition Generator Utility*. Then the user can store the pre generated key partition on the flash with help of the following two commands:
   i) Build and flash the partition table

```
idf.py partition_table partition_table-flash
```

   ii) Store the keys in the *NVS key partition* (on the flash) with the help of parttool.py (see Partition Tool section in *partition-tables* for more details)

```
parttool.py --port /dev/ttyUSB0 --partition-table-offset "nvs_key␣
↪partition offset" write_partition --partition-name="name of nvs_key␣
↪partition" --input "nvs_key partition"
```

Since the key partition is marked as *encrypted* and *Flash Encryption* is enabled, the bootloader will encrypt this partition using flash encryption key on the first boot.

It is possible for an application to use different keys for different NVS partitions and thereby have multiple key-partitions. However, it is a responsibility of the application to provide correct key-partition/keys for the purpose of encryption/decryption.

Encrypted Read/Write The same NVS API functions `nvs_get_*` or `nvs_set_*` can be used for reading of, and writing to an encrypted nvs partition as well.

Encrypt the default NVS partition: To enable encryption for the default NVS partition no additional steps are necessary. When *CONFIG_NVS_ENCRYPTION* is enabled, the *nvs_flash_init()* API function internally performs some additional steps using the first *NVS key partition* found to enable encryption for the default NVS partition (refer to the API documentation for more details). Alternatively, *nvs_flash_secure_init()* API function can also be used to enable encryption for the default NVS partition.

Encrypt a custom NVS partition: To enable encryption for a custom NVS partition, *nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()* API function is used instead of *nvs_flash_init_partition()*.

When *nvs_flash_secure_init()* and *nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()* API functions are used, the applications are expected to follow the steps below in order to perform NVS read/write operations with encryption enabled.

1. Find key partition and NVS data partition using `esp_partition_find*` API functions.
2. Populate the *nvs_sec_cfg_t* struct using the *nvs_flash_read_security_cfg()* or *nvs_flash_generate_keys()* API functions.
3. Initialise NVS flash partition using the *nvs_flash_secure_init()* or *nvs_flash_secure_init_partition()* API functions.
4. Open a namespace using the *nvs_open()* or *nvs_open_from_partition()* API functions.
5. Perform NVS read/write operations using `nvs_get_*` or `nvs_set_*`.
6. Deinitialise an NVS partition using *nvs_flash_deinit()*.

NVS Partition Generator Utility

This utility helps generate NVS partition binary files which can be flashed separately on a dedicated partition via a flashing utility. Key-value pairs to be flashed onto the partition can be provided via a CSV file. For more details, please refer to *NVS Partition Generator Utility*.

Application Example

You can find code examples in the storage directory of ESP-IDF examples:

storage/nvs_rw_value

Demonstrates how to read a single integer value from, and write it to NVS.

The value checked in this example holds the number of the ESP32-S2 module restarts. The value's function as a counter is only possible due to its storing in NVS.

The example also shows how to check if a read / write operation was successful, or if a certain value has not been initialized in NVS. The diagnostic procedure is provided in plain text to help you track the program flow and capture any issues on the way.

storage/nvs_rw_blob

Demonstrates how to read a single integer value and a blob (binary large object), and write them to NVS to preserve this value between ESP32-S2 module restarts.

- value - tracks the number of the ESP32-S2 module soft and hard restarts.
- blob - contains a table with module run times. The table is read from NVS to dynamically allocated RAM. A new run time is added to the table on each manually triggered soft restart, and then the added run time is written to NVS. Triggering is done by pulling down GPIO0.

The example also shows how to implement the diagnostic procedure to check if the read / write operation was successful.

storage/nvs_rw_value_cxx

This example does exactly the same as storage/nvs_rw_value, except that it uses the C++ nvs handle class.

Internals

Log of key-value pairs NVS stores key-value pairs sequentially, with new key-value pairs being added at the end. When a value of any given key has to be updated, a new key-value pair is added at the end of the log and the old key-value pair is marked as erased.

Pages and entries NVS library uses two main entities in its operation: pages and entries. Page is a logical structure which stores a portion of the overall log. Logical page corresponds to one physical sector of flash memory. Pages which are in use have a *sequence number* associated with them. Sequence numbers impose an ordering on pages. Higher sequence numbers correspond to pages which were created later. Each page can be in one of the following states:

Empty/uninitialized Flash storage for the page is empty (all bytes are `0xff`). Page is not used to store any data at this point and does not have a sequence number.

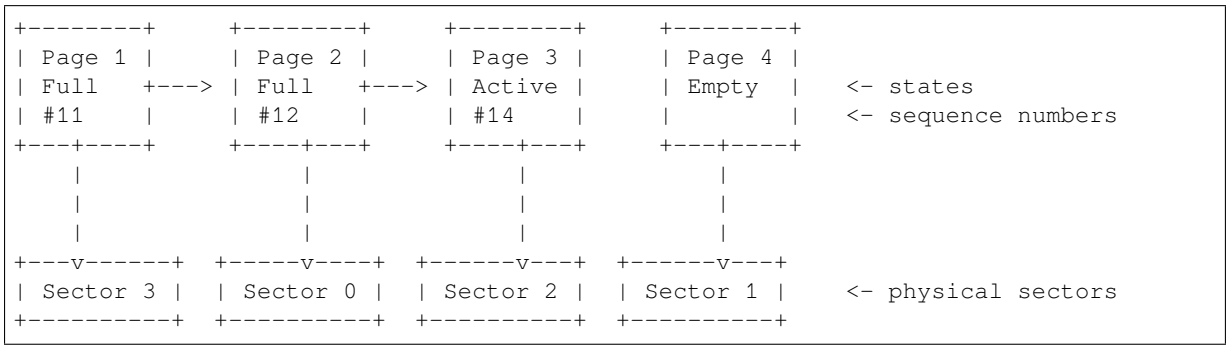
Active Flash storage is initialized, page header has been written to flash, page has a valid sequence number. Page has some empty entries and data can be written there. No more than one page can be in this state at any given moment.

Full Flash storage is in a consistent state and is filled with key-value pairs. Writing new key-value pairs into this page is not possible. It is still possible to mark some key-value pairs as erased.

Erasing Non-erased key-value pairs are being moved into another page so that the current page can be erased. This is a transient state, i.e., page should never stay in this state at the time when any API call returns. In case of a sudden power off, the move-and-erase process will be completed upon the next power-on.

Corrupted Page header contains invalid data, and further parsing of page data was canceled. Any items previously written into this page will not be accessible. The corresponding flash sector will not be erased immediately and will be kept along with sectors in *uninitialized* state for later use. This may be useful for debugging.

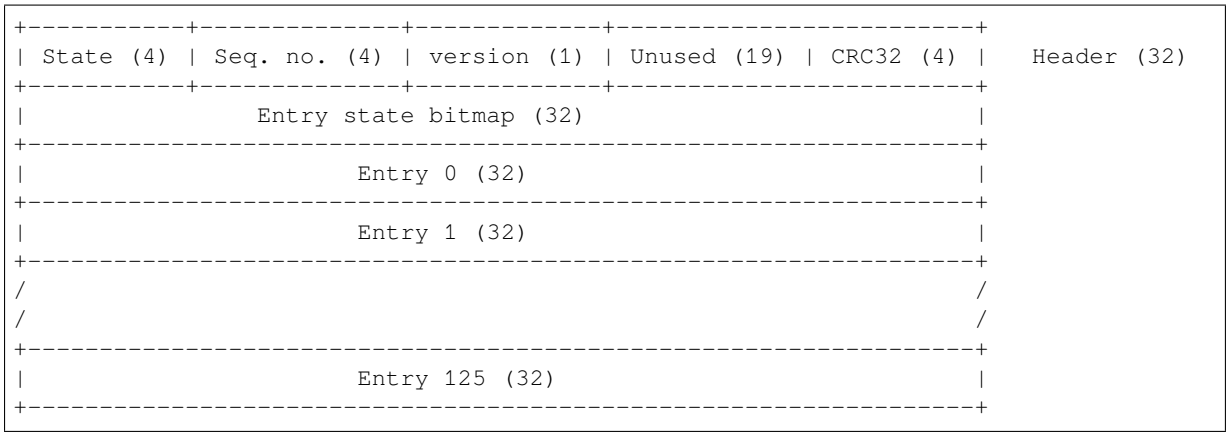
Mapping from flash sectors to logical pages does not have any particular order. The library will inspect sequence numbers of pages found in each flash sector and organize pages in a list based on these numbers.



Structure of a page For now, we assume that flash sector size is 4096 bytes and that ESP32-S2 flash encryption hardware operates on 32-byte blocks. It is possible to introduce some settings configurable at compile-time (e.g., via menuconfig) to accommodate flash chips with different sector sizes (although it is not clear if other components in the system, e.g., SPI flash driver and SPI flash cache can support these other sizes).

Page consists of three parts: header, entry state bitmap, and entries themselves. To be compatible with ESP32-S2 flash encryption, the entry size is 32 bytes. For integer types, an entry holds one key-value pair. For strings and blobs, an entry holds part of key-value pair (more on that in the entry structure description).

The following diagram illustrates the page structure. Numbers in parentheses indicate the size of each part in bytes.



Page header and entry state bitmap are always written to flash unencrypted. Entries are encrypted if flash encryption feature of ESP32-S2 is used.

Page state values are defined in such a way that changing state is possible by writing 0 into some of the bits. Therefore it is not necessary to erase the page to change its state unless that is a change to the *erased* state.

The version field in the header reflects the NVS format version used. For backward compatibility reasons, it is decremented for every version upgrade starting at 0xff (i.e., 0xff for version-1, 0xfe for version-2 and so on).

CRC32 value in the header is calculated over the part which does not include a state value (bytes 4 to 28). The unused part is currently filled with `0xff` bytes.

The following sections describe the structure of entry state bitmap and entry itself.

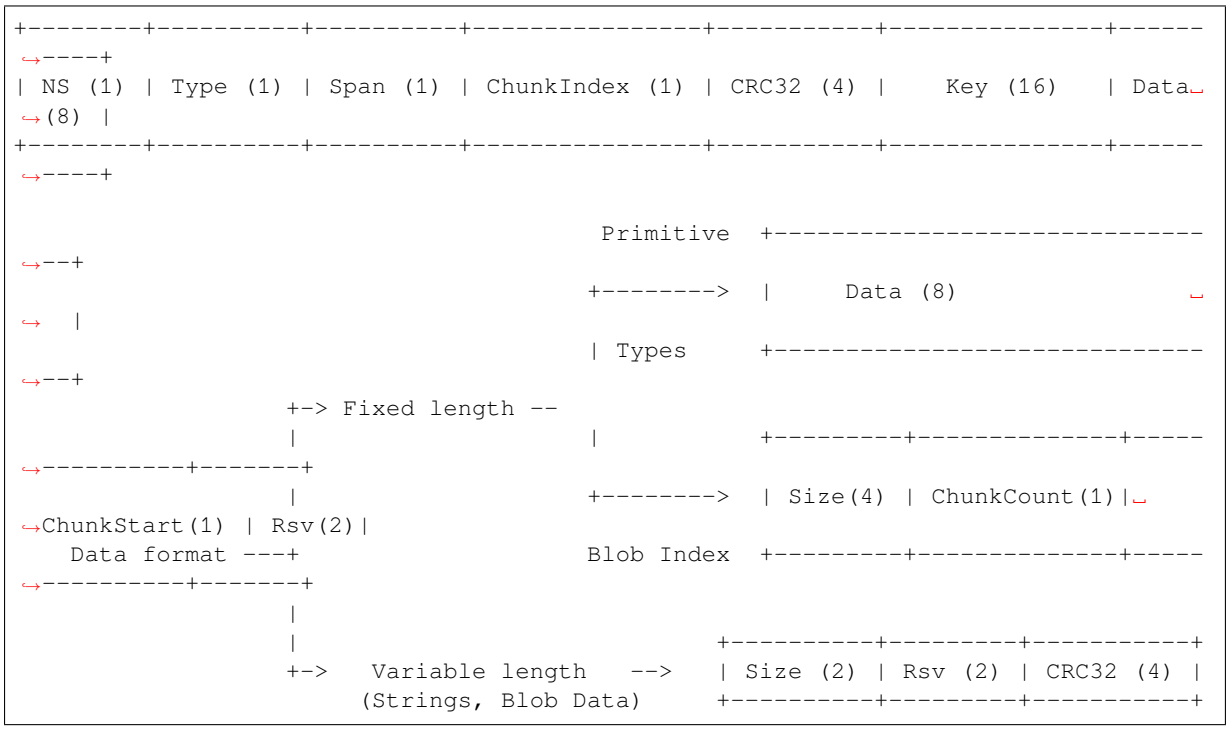
Entry and entry state bitmap Each entry can be in one of the following three states represented with two bits in the entry state bitmap. The final four bits in the bitmap (256 - 2 * 126) are not used.

Empty (2' b11) Nothing is written into the specific entry yet. It is in an uninitialized state (all bytes are `0xff`).

Written (2' b10) A key-value pair (or part of key-value pair which spans multiple entries) has been written into the entry.

Erased (2' b00) A key-value pair in this entry has been discarded. Contents of this entry will not be parsed anymore.

Structure of entry For values of primitive types (currently integers from 1 to 8 bytes long), entry holds one key-value pair. For string and blob types, entry holds part of the whole key-value pair. For strings, in case when a key-value pair spans multiple entries, all entries are stored in the same page. Blobs are allowed to span over multiple pages by dividing them into smaller chunks. For tracking these chunks, an additional fixed length metadata entry is stored called "blob index". Earlier formats of blobs are still supported (can be read and modified). However, once the blobs are modified, they are stored using the new format.



Individual fields in entry structure have the following meanings:

NS Namespace index for this entry. For more information on this value, see the section on namespaces implementation.

Type One byte indicating the value data type. See the `ItemType` enumeration in nvs_flash/include/nvs_handle.hpp for possible values.

Span Number of entries used by this key-value pair. For integer types, this is equal to 1. For strings and blobs, this depends on value length.

ChunkIndex Used to store the index of a blob-data chunk for blob types. For other types, this should be `0xff`.

CRC32 Checksum calculated over all the bytes in this entry, except for the CRC32 field itself.

Key Zero-terminated ASCII string containing a key name. Maximum string length is 15 bytes, excluding a zero terminator.

Data For integer types, this field contains the value itself. If the value itself is shorter than 8 bytes, it is padded to the right, with unused bytes filled with `0xff`.

For "blob index" entry, these 8 bytes hold the following information about data-chunks:

- **Size** (Only for blob index.) Size, in bytes, of complete blob data.
- **ChunkCount** (Only for blob index.) Total number of blob-data chunks into which the blob was divided during storage.
- **ChunkStart** (Only for blob index.) ChunkIndex of the first blob-data chunk of this blob. Subsequent chunks have chunkIndex incrementally allocated (step of 1).

For string and blob data chunks, these 8 bytes hold additional data about the value, which are described below:

- **Size** (Only for strings and blobs.) Size, in bytes, of actual data. For strings, this includes zero terminators.
- **CRC32** (Only for strings and blobs.) Checksum calculated over all bytes of data.

Variable length values (strings and blobs) are written into subsequent entries, 32 bytes per entry. The *Span* field of the first entry indicates how many entries are used.

Namespaces As mentioned above, each key-value pair belongs to one of the namespaces. Namespace identifiers (strings) are stored as keys of key-value pairs in namespace with index 0. Values corresponding to these keys are indexes of these namespaces.

```
+----------------------------------------+
| NS=0 Type=uint8_t Key="wifi" Value=1   |   Entry describing namespace "wifi"
+----------------------------------------+
| NS=1 Type=uint32_t Key="channel" Value=6  |   Key "channel" in namespace "wifi"
+----------------------------------------+
| NS=0 Type=uint8_t Key="pwm" Value=2    |   Entry describing namespace "pwm"
+----------------------------------------+
| NS=2 Type=uint16_t Key="channel" Value=20 |   Key "channel" in namespace "pwm"
+----------------------------------------+
```

Item hash list To reduce the number of reads from flash memory, each member of the Page class maintains a list of pairs: item index; item hash. This list makes searches much quicker. Instead of iterating over all entries, reading them from flash one at a time, *Page::findItem* first performs a search for the item hash in the hash list. This gives the item index within the page if such an item exists. Due to a hash collision, it is possible that a different item will be found. This is handled by falling back to iteration over items in flash.

Each node in the hash list contains a 24-bit hash and 8-bit item index. Hash is calculated based on item namespace, key name, and ChunkIndex. CRC32 is used for calculation; the result is truncated to 24 bits. To reduce the overhead for storing 32-bit entries in a linked list, the list is implemented as a double-linked list of arrays. Each array holds 29 entries, for the total size of 128 bytes, together with linked list pointers and a 32-bit count field. The minimum amount of extra RAM usage per page is therefore 128 bytes; maximum is 640 bytes.

API Reference

Header File

- nvs_flash/include/nvs_flash.h

Functions

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_init** (void)

Initialize the default NVS partition.

This API initialises the default NVS partition. The default NVS partition is the one that is labeled "nvs" in the partition table.

When "NVS_ENCRYPTION" is enabled in the menuconfig, this API enables the NVS encryption for the default NVS partition as follows

1. Read security configurations from the first NVS key partition listed in the partition table. (NVS key partition is any "data" type partition which has the subtype value set to "nvs_keys")
2. If the NVS key partiton obtained in the previous step is empty, generate and store new keys in that NVS key partiton.
3. Internally call "nvs_flash_secure_init()" with the security configurations obtained/generated in the previous steps.

Post initialization NVS read/write APIs remain the same irrespective of NVS encryption.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage was successfully initialized.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if no partition with label "nvs" is found in the partition table

- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver
- error codes from nvs_flash_read_security_cfg API (when "NVS_ENCRYPTION" is enabled).
- error codes from nvs_flash_generate_keys API (when "NVS_ENCRYPTION" is enabled).
- error codes from nvs_flash_secure_init_partition API (when "NVS_ENCRYPTION" is enabled) .

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_init_partition**(**const** char ***partition_label*)

Initialize NVS flash storage for the specified partition.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage was successfully initialized.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if specified partition is not found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] partition_label`: Label of the partition. Must be no longer than 16 characters.

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_init_partition_ptr**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*)

Initialize NVS flash storage for the partition specified by partition pointer.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage was successfully initialized
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG in case partition is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: pointer to a partition obtained by the ESP partition API.

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_deinit**(void)

Deinitialize NVS storage for the default NVS partition.

Default NVS partition is the partition with "nvs" label in the partition table.

Return

- ESP_OK on success (storage was deinitialized)
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage was not initialized prior to this call

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_deinit_partition**(**const** char ***partition_label*)

Deinitialize NVS storage for the given NVS partition.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage for given partition was not initialized prior to this call

Parameters

- `[in] partition_label`: Label of the partition

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_erase**(void)

Erase the default NVS partition.

Erases all contents of the default NVS partition (one with label "nvs").

Note If the partition is initialized, this function first de-initializes it. Afterwards, the partition has to be initialized again to be used.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no NVS partition labeled "nvs" in the partition table
- different error in case de-initialization fails (shouldn't happen)

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_erase_partition**(**const** char ***part_name*)

Erase specified NVS partition.

Erase all content of a specified NVS partition

Note If the partition is initialized, this function first de-initializes it. Afterwards, the partition has to be initialized again to be used.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no NVS partition with the specified name in the partition table
- different error in case de-initialization fails (shouldn't happen)

Parameters

- `[in] part_name`: Name (label) of the partition which should be erased

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_erase_partition_ptr**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*)

Erase custom partition.

Erase all content of specified custom partition.

Note If the partition is initialized, this function first de-initializes it. Afterwards, the partition has to be initialized again to be used.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if there is no partition with the specified parameters in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG in case partition is NULL
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: pointer to a partition obtained by the ESP partition API.

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_secure_init**(*nvs_sec_cfg_t* **cfg*)

Initialize the default NVS partition.

This API initialises the default NVS partition. The default NVS partition is the one that is labeled "nvs" in the partition table.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage has been initialized successfully.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if no partition with label "nvs" is found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] cfg`: Security configuration (keys) to be used for NVS encryption/decryption. If cfg is NULL, no encryption is used.

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_secure_init_partition**(**const** char **partition_label*, *nvs_sec_cfg_t* **cfg*)

Initialize NVS flash storage for the specified partition.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage has been initialized successfully.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES if the NVS storage contains no empty pages (which may happen if NVS partition was truncated)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if specified partition is not found in the partition table
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- one of the error codes from the underlying flash storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] partition_label`: Label of the partition. Note that internally, a reference to passed value is kept and it should be accessible for future operations
- `[in] cfg`: Security configuration (keys) to be used for NVS encryption/decryption. If cfg is null, no encryption/decryption is used.

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_generate_keys**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*, *nvs_sec_cfg_t* **cfg*)

Generate and store NVS keys in the provided esp partition.

Return -ESP_OK, if cfg was read successfully; -ESP_INVALID_ARG, if partition or cfg; -or error codes from esp_partition_write/erase APIs.

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `[out] cfg`: Pointer to nvs security configuration structure. Pointer must be non-NULL. Generated keys will be populated in this structure.

esp_err_t **nvs_flash_read_security_cfg**(**const** *esp_partition_t* *partition, *nvs_sec_cfg_t* *cfg)

Read NVS security configuration from a partition.

Note Provided partition is assumed to be marked 'encrypted'.

Return -ESP_OK, if cfg was read successfully; -ESP_INVALID_ARG, if partition or cfg; -ESP_ERR_NVS_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED, if the partition is not yet written with keys. -ESP_ERR_NVS_CORRUPT_KEY_PART, if the partition containing keys is found to be corrupt -or error codes from esp_partition_read API.

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `[out] cfg`: Pointer to nvs security configuration structure. Pointer must be non-NULL.

Structures

struct nvs_sec_cfg_t

Key for encryption and decryption.

Public Members

uint8_t **eky**[**NVS_KEY_SIZE**]

XTS encryption and decryption key

uint8_t **tky**[**NVS_KEY_SIZE**]

XTS tweak key

Macros

NVS_KEY_SIZE

Header File

- nvs_flash/include/nvs.h

Functions

esp_err_t **nvs_set_i8**(*nvs_handle_t* *handle*, **const** char *key, int8_t *value*)

set int8_t value for given key

Set value for the key, given its name. Note that the actual storage will not be updated until `nvs_commit` is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if value was set successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if storage handle was opened as read only
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE if there is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
- ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED if the value wasn't updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn't fail again.

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle obtained from nvs_open function. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.

- `[in] key`: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.
- `[in] value`: The value to set.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_u8** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, uint8_t *value*)
set uint8_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_i16** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, int16_t *value*)
set int16_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_u16** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, uint16_t *value*)
set uint16_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_i32** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, int32_t *value*)
set int32_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_u32** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, uint32_t *value*)
set uint32_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_i64** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, int64_t *value*)
set int64_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_u64** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, uint64_t *value*)
set uint64_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_set_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_str** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, **const** char **value*)
set string for given key

Set value for the key, given its name. Note that the actual storage will not be updated until `nvs_commit` is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if value was set successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if storage handle was opened as read only
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE if there is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
- ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED if the value wasn't updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn't fail again.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG if the string value is too long

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle obtained from nvs_open function. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
- `[in] key`: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.
- `[in] value`: The value to set. For strings, the maximum length (including null character) is 4000 bytes, if there is one complete page free for writing. This decreases, however, if the free space is fragmented.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_i8** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char **key*, int8_t **out_value*)
get int8_t value for given key

These functions retrieve value for the key, given its name. If `key` does not exist, or the requested variable type doesn't match the type which was used when setting a value, an error is returned.

In case of any error, out_value is not modified.

`out_value` has to be a pointer to an already allocated variable of the given type.

```
// Example of using nvs_get_i32:
int32_t max_buffer_size = 4096; // default value
esp_err_t err = nvs_get_i32(my_handle, "max_buffer_size", &max_buffer_size);
assert(err == ESP_OK || err == ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND);
// if ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND was returned, max_buffer_size will still
// have its default value.
```

Return

- ESP_OK if the value was retrieved successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if the requested key doesn't exist
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH if length is not sufficient to store data

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle obtained from nvs_open function.
- `[in] key`: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.
- `out_value`: Pointer to the output value. May be NULL for nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob, in this case required length will be returned in length argument.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_u8** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, uint8_t ***out_value*)

get uint8_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_i16** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, int16_t ***out_value*)

get int16_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_u16** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, uint16_t ***out_value*)

get uint16_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_i32** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, int32_t ***out_value*)

get int32_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_u32** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, uint32_t ***out_value*)

get uint32_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_i64** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, int64_t ***out_value*)

get int64_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_u64** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, uint64_t ***out_value*)

get uint64_t value for given key

This function is the same as `nvs_get_i8` except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_str** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, char ***out_value*, size_t ***length*)

get string value for given key

These functions retrieve the data of an entry, given its key. If key does not exist, or the requested variable type doesn't match the type which was used when setting a value, an error is returned.

In case of any error, out_value is not modified.

All functions expect out_value to be a pointer to an already allocated variable of the given type.

nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob functions support WinAPI-style length queries. To get the size necessary to store the value, call nvs_get_str or nvs_get_blob with zero out_value and non-zero pointer to length. Variable pointed to by length argument will be set to the required length. For nvs_get_str, this length includes the zero terminator. When calling nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob with non-zero out_value, length has to be non-zero and has to point to the length available in out_value. It is suggested that nvs_get/set_str is used for zero-terminated C strings, and nvs_get/set_blob used for arbitrary data structures.

```
// Example (without error checking) of using nvs_get_str to get a string into␣
↪dynamic array:
size_t required_size;
nvs_get_str(my_handle, "server_name", NULL, &required_size);
char* server_name = malloc(required_size);
nvs_get_str(my_handle, "server_name", server_name, &required_size);

// Example (without error checking) of using nvs_get_blob to get a binary data
into a static array:
uint8_t mac_addr[6];
size_t size = sizeof(mac_addr);
nvs_get_blob(my_handle, "dst_mac_addr", mac_addr, &size);
```

Return

- ESP_OK if the value was retrieved successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if the requested key doesn't exist
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH if `length` is not sufficient to store data

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle obtained from nvs_open function.
- `[in] key`: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.
- `[out] out_value`: Pointer to the output value. May be NULL for nvs_get_str and nvs_get_blob, in this case required length will be returned in length argument.
- `[inout] length`: A non-zero pointer to the variable holding the length of out_value. In case out_value a zero, will be set to the length required to hold the value. In case out_value is not zero, will be set to the actual length of the value written. For nvs_get_str this includes zero terminator.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_blob**(*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, void ***out_value*, size_t ***length*)

get blob value for given key

This function behaves the same as `nvs_get_str`, except for the data type.

esp_err_t **nvs_open**(**const** char ***name*, *nvs_open_mode_t open_mode*, *nvs_handle_t* ***out_handle*)

Open non-volatile storage with a given namespace from the default NVS partition.

Multiple internal ESP-IDF and third party application modules can store their key-value pairs in the NVS module. In order to reduce possible conflicts on key names, each module can use its own namespace. The default NVS partition is the one that is labelled "nvs" in the partition table.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage handle was opened successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND if the partition with label "nvs" is not found
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND id namespace doesn't exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if namespace name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] name`: Namespace name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.

- `[in] open_mode`: NVS_READWRITE or NVS_READONLY. If NVS_READONLY, will open a handle for reading only. All write requests will be rejected for this handle.
- `[out] out_handle`: If successful (return code is zero), handle will be returned in this argument.

esp_err_t **nvs_open_from_partition**(**const** char **part_name*, **const** char **name*, *nvs_open_mode_t open_mode*, *nvs_handle_t *out_handle*)

Open non-volatile storage with a given namespace from specified partition.

The behaviour is same as nvs_open() API. However this API can operate on a specified NVS partition instead of default NVS partition. Note that the specified partition must be registered with NVS using nvs_flash_init_partition() API.

Return

- ESP_OK if storage handle was opened successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized
- ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND if the partition with specified name is not found
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND id namespace doesn't exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if namespace name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM in case memory could not be allocated for the internal structures
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] part_name`: Label (name) of the partition of interest for object read/write/erase
- `[in] name`: Namespace name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.
- `[in] open_mode`: NVS_READWRITE or NVS_READONLY. If NVS_READONLY, will open a handle for reading only. All write requests will be rejected for this handle.
- `[out] out_handle`: If successful (return code is zero), handle will be returned in this argument.

esp_err_t **nvs_set_blob**(*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*, **const** void ***value*, size_t *length*)

set variable length binary value for given key

This family of functions set value for the key, given its name. Note that actual storage will not be updated until nvs_commit function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if value was set successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if storage handle was opened as read only
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME if key name doesn't satisfy constraints
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE if there is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value
- ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED if the value wasn't updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn't fail again.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG if the value is too long

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle obtained from nvs_open function. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
- `[in] key`: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.
- `[in] value`: The value to set.
- `[in] length`: length of binary value to set, in bytes; Maximum length is 508000 bytes or (97.6% of the partition size - 4000) bytes whichever is lower.

esp_err_t **nvs_erase_key**(*nvs_handle_t handle*, **const** char ***key*)

Erase key-value pair with given key name.

Note that actual storage may not be updated until nvs_commit function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if erase operation was successful
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if handle was opened as read only

- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if the requested key doesn't exist
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Storage handle obtained with nvs_open. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.
- `[in] key`: Key name. Maximal length is (NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE-1) characters. Shouldn't be empty.

esp_err_t **nvs_erase_all** (*nvs_handle_t handle*)

Erase all key-value pairs in a namespace.

Note that actual storage may not be updated until nvs_commit function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK if erase operation was successful
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if handle was opened as read only
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Storage handle obtained with nvs_open. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.

esp_err_t **nvs_commit** (*nvs_handle_t handle*)

Write any pending changes to non-volatile storage.

After setting any values, nvs_commit() must be called to ensure changes are written to non-volatile storage. Individual implementations may write to storage at other times, but this is not guaranteed.

Return

- ESP_OK if the changes have been written successfully
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
- other error codes from the underlying storage driver

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Storage handle obtained with nvs_open. Handles that were opened read only cannot be used.

void **nvs_close** (*nvs_handle_t handle*)

Close the storage handle and free any allocated resources.

This function should be called for each handle opened with nvs_open once the handle is not in use any more. Closing the handle may not automatically write the changes to nonvolatile storage. This has to be done explicitly using nvs_commit function. Once this function is called on a handle, the handle should no longer be used.

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Storage handle to close

esp_err_t **nvs_get_stats** (**const** char **part_name*, *nvs_stats_t* **nvs_stats*)

Fill structure *nvs_stats_t*. It provides info about used memory the partition.

This function calculates to runtime the number of used entries, free entries, total entries, and amount namespace in partition.

```
// Example of nvs_get_stats() to get the number of used entries and free␣
↪entries:
nvs_stats_t nvs_stats;
nvs_get_stats(NULL, &nvs_stats);
printf("Count: UsedEntries = (%d), FreeEntries = (%d), AllEntries = (%d)\n",
       nvs_stats.used_entries, nvs_stats.free_entries, nvs_stats.total_
↪entries);
```

Return

- ESP_OK if the changes have been written successfully. Return param nvs_stats will be filled.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND if the partition with label "name" is not found. Return param nvs_stats will be filled 0.

- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized. Return param nvs_stats will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if nvs_stats equal to NULL.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if there is page with the status of INVALID. Return param nvs_stats will be filled not with correct values because not all pages will be counted. Counting will be interrupted at the first INVALID page.

Parameters

- `[in] part_name`: Partition name NVS in the partition table. If pass a NULL than will use NVS_DEFAULT_PART_NAME ("nvs").
- `[out] nvs_stats`: Returns filled structure nvs_states_t. It provides info about used memory the partition.

esp_err_t **nvs_get_used_entry_count** (*nvs_handle_t handle*, size_t **used_entries*)

Calculate all entries in a namespace.

An entry represents the smallest storage unit in NVS. Strings and blobs may occupy more than one entry. Note that to find out the total number of entries occupied by the namespace, add one to the returned value used_entries (if err is equal to ESP_OK). Because the name space entry takes one entry.

```
// Example of nvs_get_used_entry_count() to get amount of all key-value pairs␣
↪in one namespace:
nvs_handle_t handle;
nvs_open("namespace1", NVS_READWRITE, &handle);
...
size_t used_entries;
size_t total_entries_namespace;
if(nvs_get_used_entry_count(handle, &used_entries) == ESP_OK){
    // the total number of entries occupied by the namespace
    total_entries_namespace = used_entries + 1;
}
```

Return

- ESP_OK if the changes have been written successfully. Return param used_entries will be filled valid value.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED if the storage driver is not initialized. Return param used_entries will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL. Return param used_entries will be filled 0.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if used_entries equal to NULL.
- Other error codes from the underlying storage driver. Return param used_entries will be filled 0.

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle obtained from nvs_open function.
- `[out] used_entries`: Returns amount of used entries from a namespace.

nvs_iterator_t **nvs_entry_find**(**const** char **part_name*, **const** char **namespace_name*, *nvs_type_t type*)

Create an iterator to enumerate NVS entries based on one or more parameters.

```
// Example of listing all the key-value pairs of any type under specified␣
↪partition and namespace
nvs_iterator_t it = nvs_entry_find(partition, namespace, NVS_TYPE_ANY);
while (it != NULL) {
        nvs_entry_info_t info;
        nvs_entry_info(it, &info);
        it = nvs_entry_next(it);
        printf("key '%s', type '%d' \n", info.key, info.type);
};
// Note: no need to release iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find function when
//       nvs_entry_find or nvs_entry_next function return NULL, indicating no␣
↪other
//       element for specified criteria was found.
}
```

Return Iterator used to enumerate all the entries found, or NULL if no entry satisfying criteria was found. Iterator obtained through this function has to be released using nvs_release_iterator when not used any more.

Parameters

- `[in] part_name`: Partition name
- `[in] namespace_name`: Set this value if looking for entries with a specific namespace. Pass NULL otherwise.
- `[in] type`: One of nvs_type_t values.

nvs_iterator_t **nvs_entry_next** (*nvs_iterator_t iterator*)

Returns next item matching the iterator criteria, NULL if no such item exists.

Note that any copies of the iterator will be invalid after this call.

Return NULL if no entry was found, valid nvs_iterator_t otherwise.

Parameters

- `[in] iterator`: Iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find function. Must be non-NULL.

void **nvs_entry_info** (*nvs_iterator_t iterator*, *nvs_entry_info_t *out_info*)

Fills *nvs_entry_info_t* structure with information about entry pointed to by the iterator.

Parameters

- `[in] iterator`: Iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find or nvs_entry_next function. Must be non-NULL.
- `[out] out_info`: Structure to which entry information is copied.

void **nvs_release_iterator** (*nvs_iterator_t iterator*)

Release iterator.

Parameters

- `[in] iterator`: Release iterator obtained from nvs_entry_find function. NULL argument is allowed.

Structures

struct nvs_entry_info_t

information about entry obtained from nvs_entry_info function

Public Members

char **namespace_name**[16]

Namespace to which key-value belong

char **key**[16]

Key of stored key-value pair

nvs_type_t **type**

Type of stored key-value pair

struct nvs_stats_t

Note Info about storage space NVS.

Public Members

size_t **used_entries**

Amount of used entries.

size_t **free_entries**

Amount of free entries.

size_t **total_entries**

Amount all available entries.

size_t **namespace_count**
Amount name space.

Macros

ESP_ERR_NVS_BASE
Starting number of error codes

ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED
The storage driver is not initialized

ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND
Id namespace doesn't exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY

ESP_ERR_NVS_TYPE_MISMATCH
The type of set or get operation doesn't match the type of value stored in NVS

ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY
Storage handle was opened as read only

ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE
There is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME
Namespace name doesn't satisfy constraints

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE
Handle has been closed or is NULL

ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED
The value wasn't updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn't fail again.

ESP_ERR_NVS_KEY_TOO_LONG
Key name is too long

ESP_ERR_NVS_PAGE_FULL
Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_STATE
NVS is in an inconsistent state due to a previous error. Call nvs_flash_init and nvs_open again, then retry.

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH
String or blob length is not sufficient to store data

ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES
NVS partition doesn't contain any empty pages. This may happen if NVS partition was truncated. Erase the whole partition and call nvs_flash_init again.

ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG
String or blob length is longer than supported by the implementation

ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND
Partition with specified name is not found in the partition table

ESP_ERR_NVS_NEW_VERSION_FOUND
NVS partition contains data in new format and cannot be recognized by this version of code

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_ENCR_FAILED
XTS encryption failed while writing NVS entry

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_DECR_FAILED
XTS decryption failed while reading NVS entry

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_FAILED
XTS configuration setting failed

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_NOT_FOUND
XTS configuration not found

ESP_ERR_NVS_ENCR_NOT_SUPPORTED
NVS encryption is not supported in this version

ESP_ERR_NVS_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED
NVS key partition is uninitialized

ESP_ERR_NVS_CORRUPT_KEY_PART
NVS key partition is corrupt

ESP_ERR_NVS_WRONG_ENCRYPTION
NVS partition is marked as encrypted with generic flash encryption. This is forbidden since the NVS encryption works differently.

ESP_ERR_NVS_CONTENT_DIFFERS
Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions. NVS key is different in comparison

NVS_DEFAULT_PART_NAME
Default partition name of the NVS partition in the partition table

NVS_PART_NAME_MAX_SIZE
maximum length of partition name (excluding null terminator)

NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE
Maximal length of NVS key name (including null terminator)

Type Definitions

typedef uint32_t **nvs_handle_t**
Opaque pointer type representing non-volatile storage handle

typedef *nvs_handle_t* **nvs_handle**

typedef *nvs_open_mode_t* **nvs_open_mode**

typedef struct nvs_opaque_iterator_t ***nvs_iterator_t**
Opaque pointer type representing iterator to nvs entries

Enumerations

enum nvs_open_mode_t
Mode of opening the non-volatile storage.

Values:

NVS_READONLY
Read only

NVS_READWRITE
Read and write

enum nvs_type_t
Types of variables.

Values:

NVS_TYPE_U8 = 0x01
Type uint8_t

NVS_TYPE_I8 = 0x11
Type int8_t

NVS_TYPE_U16 = 0x02
Type uint16_t

NVS_TYPE_I16 = 0x12
Type int16_t

NVS_TYPE_U32 = 0x04
Type uint32_t

NVS_TYPE_I32 = 0x14
Type int32_t

NVS_TYPE_U64 = 0x08
Type uint64_t

NVS_TYPE_I64 = 0x18
Type int64_t

NVS_TYPE_STR = 0x21
Type string

NVS_TYPE_BLOB = 0x42
Type blob

NVS_TYPE_ANY = 0xff
Must be last

2.5.4 NVS Partition Generator Utility

Introduction

The utility nvs_flash/nvs_partition_generator/nvs_partition_gen.py creates a binary file based on key-value pairs provided in a CSV file. The binary file is compatible with NVS architecture defined in *Non-Volatile Storage*. This utility is ideally suited for generating a binary blob, containing data specific to ODM/OEM, which can be flashed externally at the time of device manufacturing. This allows manufacturers to generate many instances of the same application firmware with customized parameters for each device, such as a serial number.

Prerequisites

To use this utility in encryption mode, install the following packages:

- cryptography package

All the required packages are included in *requirements.txt* in the root of the esp-idf directory.

CSV file format

Each line of a .csv file should contain 4 parameters, separated by a comma. The table below provides the description for each of these parameters.

No.	Parameter	Description	Notes
1	Key	Key of the data. The data can be accessed later from an application using this key.	
2	Type	Supported values are `file`, `data` and `namespace`.	
3	Encoding	Supported values are: `u8`, `i8`, `u16`, `i16`, `u32`, `i32`, `u64`, `i64`, `string`, `hex2bin`, `base64` and `binary`. This specifies how actual data values are encoded in the resulting binary file. The difference between the `string` and `binary` encoding is that `string` data is terminated with a NULL character, whereas `binary` data is not.	As of now, for the `file` type, only `hex2bin`, `base64`, `string`, and `binary` encoding is supported.
4	Value	Data value.	Encoding and Value cells for the `namespace` field type should be empty. Encoding and Value of `namespace` is fixed and is not configurable. Any values in these cells are ignored.

Note: The first line of the CSV file should always be the column header and it is not configurable.

Below is an example dump of such a CSV file:

```
key,type,encoding,value      <-- column header
namespace_name,namespace,,   <-- First entry should be of type "namespace"
key1,data,u8,1
key2,file,string,/path/to/file
```

Note:

Make sure there are no spaces:

- before and after ‘,’
- at the end of each line in a CSV file

NVS Entry and Namespace association

When a namespace entry is encountered in a CSV file, each following entry will be treated as part of that namespace until the next namespace entry is found. At this point, all the following entries will be treated as part of the new namespace.

Note: First entry in a CSV file should always be a `namespace` entry.

Multipage Blob Support

By default, binary blobs are allowed to span over multiple pages and are written in the format mentioned in Section *Structure of entry*. If you intend to use an older format, the utility provides an option to disable this feature.

Encryption Support

The NVS Partition Generator utility also allows you to create an encrypted binary file. The utility uses the AES-XTS encryption. Please refer to *NVS Encryption* for more details.

Decryption Support

This utility allows you to decrypt an encrypted NVS binary file. The utility uses an NVS binary file encrypted using AES-XTS encryption. Please refer to *NVS Encryption* for more details.

Running the utility

Usage:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py [-h] {generate,generate-key,encrypt,decrypt} ...

Optional Arguments:
+-----+------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| No. | Parameter  |                            Description                            ␣
↪       |
+=====+============+===================================================================================+
| 1   | -h, --help |        show this help message and exit                            ␣
↪       |
+-----+------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+

Commands:
        Run nvs_partition_gen.py {command} -h for additional help
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| No. | Parameter    |                              Description                          ␣
↪       |
+=====+==============+===================================================================================+
| 1   | generate     |      Generate NVS partition                                       ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| 2   | generate-key |      Generate keys for encryption                                 ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| 3   |  encrypt     |      Generate NVS encrypted partition                             ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
| 4   |  decrypt     |      Decrypt NVS encrypted partition                              ␣
↪       |
+-----+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------+
```

To generate NVS partition (Default):

Usage:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate [-h] [--version {1,2}] [--outdir␣
↪OUTDIR]
                                     input output size
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Positional Arguments:
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| Parameter    |                            Description                      ␣
↪            |
+==============+=============================================================================+
| input        |        Path to CSV file to parse                            ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| output       |        Path to output NVS binary file                       ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| size         |        Size of NVS partition in bytes (must be multiple␣
↪of 4096)    |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+


Optional Arguments:
+-----------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
| Parameter       |                              Description                    ␣
↪             |
+=================+=============================================================================+
| -h, --help      |     show this help message and exit                         ␣
↪             |
+-----------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
| --version {1,2} |     Set multipage blob version.                             ␣
↪             |
|                 |     Version 1 - Multipage blob support disabled.            ␣
↪             |
|                 |     Version 2 - Multipage blob support enabled.             ␣
↪             |
|                 |     Default: Version 2                                      ␣
↪             |
|                 |                                                             ␣
↪             |
+-----------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
| --outdir OUTDIR |     Output directory to store files created                 ␣
↪             |
|                 |     (Default: current directory)                            ␣
↪             |
+-----------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪-------------+
```

You can run the utility to generate NVS partition using the command below: A sample CSV file is provided with the utility:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample.bin 0x3000
```

To generate only encryption keys:

Usage:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate-key [-h] [--keyfile KEYFILE]
                                         [--outdir OUTDIR]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Optional Arguments:
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------------+
| Parameter          |                            Description             ␣
↪                   |
+====================+=========================================================================+
| -h, --help         |      show this help message and exit               ␣
↪                   |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------------+
| --keyfile KEYFILE  |      Path to output encryption keys file           ␣
↪                   |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------------+
| --outdir OUTDIR    |      Output directory to store files created.      ␣
↪                   |
|                    |      (Default: current directory)                  ␣
↪                   |
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------------+
```

You can run the utility to generate only encryption keys using the command below:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate-key
```

To generate encrypted NVS partition:

Usage:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt [-h] [--version {1,2}] [--keygen]
                                    [--keyfile KEYFILE] [--inputkey␣
↪INPUTKEY]
                                    [--outdir OUTDIR]
                                    input output size

Positional Arguments:
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| Parameter    |                            Description                  ␣
↪            |
+==============+=========================================================================+
| input        |        Path to CSV file to parse                        ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| output       |        Path to output NVS binary file                   ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| size         |        Size of NVS partition in bytes (must be multiple␣
↪of 4096)    |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+


Optional Arguments:
+--------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------------+
| Parameter          |                            Description             ␣
↪                   |
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
+=====================+=============================================================
| -h, --help          |     show this help message and exit
↪                    |
|                     |
↪                    |
+---------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| --version {1,2}     |     Set multipage blob version.
↪                    |
|                     |     Version 1 - Multipage blob support disabled.
↪                    |
|                     |     Version 2 - Multipage blob support enabled.
↪                    |
|                     |     Default: Version 2
↪                    |
+---------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| --keygen            |     Generates key for encrypting NVS partition
↪                    |
+---------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| --keyfile KEYFILE   |     Path to output encryption keys file
↪                    |
+---------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| --inputkey INPUTKEY |     File having key for encrypting NVS partition
↪                    |
+---------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| --outdir OUTDIR     |     Output directory to store files created
↪                    |
|                     |     (Default: current directory)
↪                    |
+---------------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
```

You can run the utility to encrypt NVS partition using the command below: A sample CSV file is provided with the utility:

- Encrypt by allowing the utility to generate encryption keys:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample_encr.bin
↪0x3000 --keygen
```

Note: Encryption key of the following format `<outdir>/keys/keys-<timestamp>.bin` is created.

- Encrypt by allowing the utility to generate encryption keys and store it in provided custom filename:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample_encr.bin
↪0x3000 --keygen --keyfile sample_keys.bin
```

Note: Encryption key of the following format `<outdir>/keys/sample_keys.bin` is created.

Note: This newly created file having encryption keys in `keys/` directory is compatible with NVS key-partition structure. Refer to *NVS key partition* for more details.

- Encrypt by providing the encryption keys as input binary file:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py encrypt sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample_encr.bin␣
↪0x3000 --inputkey sample_keys.bin
```

To decrypt encrypted NVS partition:

Usage:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py decrypt [-h] [--outdir OUTDIR] input key␣
↪output

Positional Arguments:
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| Parameter    |                            Description                 ␣
↪            |
+==============+========================================================================+
| input        |        Path to encrypted NVS partition file to parse   ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| key          |        Path to file having keys for decryption         ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+
| output       |        Path to output decrypted binary file            ␣
↪            |
+--------------+-------------------------------------------------------
↪------------+


Optional Arguments:
+--------------------+-----------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| Parameter          |                              Description            ␣
↪                 |
+====================+=========================================================================+
| -h, --help         |     show this help message and exit                 ␣
↪                 |
+--------------------+-----------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
| --outdir OUTDIR    |     Output directory to store files created         ␣
↪                 |
|                    |     (Default: current directory)                    ␣
↪                 |
+--------------------+-----------------------------------------------------
↪-----------------+
```

You can run the utility to decrypt encrypted NVS partition using the command below:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py decrypt sample_encr.bin sample_keys.bin sample_decr.bin
```

You can also provide the format version number:

- Multipage Blob Support Disabled (Version 1)
- Multipage Blob Support Enabled (Version 2)

Multipage Blob Support Disabled (Version 1): You can run the utility in this format by setting the version parameter to 1, as shown below. A sample CSV file is provided with the utility:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate sample_singlepage_blob.csv sample.bin 0x3000 -
↪-version 1
```

Multipage Blob Support Enabled (Version 2): You can run the utility in this format by setting the version parameter to 2, as shown below. A sample CSV file is provided with the utility:

```
python nvs_partition_gen.py generate sample_multipage_blob.csv sample.bin 0x4000 --
↪version 2
```

Note: *Minimum NVS Partition Size needed is 0x3000 bytes.*

Note: *When flashing the binary onto the device, make sure it is consistent with the application's sdkconfig.*

Caveats

- Utility does not check for duplicate keys and will write data pertaining to both keys. You need to make sure that the keys are distinct.
- Once a new page is created, no data will be written in the space left on the previous page. Fields in the CSV file need to be ordered in such a way as to optimize memory.
- 64-bit datatype is not yet supported.

2.5.5 SD/SDIO/MMC Driver

Overview

The SD/SDIO/MMC driver currently supports SD memory, SDIO cards, and eMMC chips. This is a protocol level driver built on top of SDMMC and SD SPI host drivers.

SDMMC and SD SPI host drivers (driver/include/driver/sdmmc_host.h and driver/include/driver/sdspi_host.h) provide API functions for:

- Sending commands to slave devices
- Sending and receiving data
- Handling error conditions within the bus

For functions used to initialize and configure:

- SD SPI host, see *SD SPI Host API*

Application Example

An example which combines the SDMMC driver with the FATFS library is provided in the storage/sd_card directory of ESP-IDF examples. This example initializes the card, then writes and reads data from it using POSIX and C library APIs. See README.md file in the example directory for more information.

Combo (memory + IO) cards The driver does not support SD combo cards. Combo cards are treated as IO cards.

Thread safety Most applications need to use the protocol layer only in one task. For this reason, the protocol layer does not implement any kind of locking on the `sdmmc_card_t` structure, or when accessing SDMMC or SD SPI host drivers. Such locking is usually implemented on a higher layer, e.g., in the filesystem driver.

API Reference

Header File

- sdmmc/include/sdmmc_cmd.h

Functions

esp_err_t **sdmmc_card_init** (**const** *sdmmc_host_t* *host, *sdmmc_card_t* *out_card)

Probe and initialize SD/MMC card using given host

Note Only SD cards (SDSC and SDHC/SDXC) are supported now. Support for MMC/eMMC cards will be added later.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `host`: pointer to structure defining host controller
- `out_card`: pointer to structure which will receive information about the card when the function completes

void **sdmmc_card_print_info** (FILE *stream, **const** *sdmmc_card_t* *card)

Print information about the card to a stream.

Parameters

- `stream`: stream obtained using fopen or fdopen
- `card`: card information structure initialized using sdmmc_card_init

esp_err_t **sdmmc_write_sectors** (*sdmmc_card_t* *card, **const** void *src, size_t *start_sector*, size_t *sector_count*)

Write given number of sectors to SD/MMC card

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `src`: pointer to data buffer to read data from; data size must be equal to sector_count * card->csd.sector_size
- `start_sector`: sector where to start writing
- `sector_count`: number of sectors to write

esp_err_t **sdmmc_read_sectors** (*sdmmc_card_t* *card, void *dst, size_t *start_sector*, size_t *sector_count*)

Read given number of sectors from the SD/MMC card

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `dst`: pointer to data buffer to write into; buffer size must be at least sector_count * card->csd.sector_size
- `start_sector`: sector where to start reading
- `sector_count`: number of sectors to read

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_read_byte** (*sdmmc_card_t* *card, uint32_t *function*, uint32_t *reg*, uint8_t *out_byte)

Read one byte from an SDIO card using IO_RW_DIRECT (CMD52)

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `function`: IO function number
- `reg`: byte address within IO function
- `[out] out_byte`: output, receives the value read from the card

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_write_byte** (*sdmmc_card_t* *card, uint32_t *function*, uint32_t *reg*, uint8_t *in_byte*, uint8_t *out_byte)

Write one byte to an SDIO card using IO_RW_DIRECT (CMD52)

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `function`: IO function number
- `reg`: byte address within IO function
- `in_byte`: value to be written
- `[out] out_byte`: if not NULL, receives new byte value read from the card (read-after-write).

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_read_bytes**(*sdmmc_card_t* *card, uint32_t *function*, uint32_t *addr*, void *dst, size_t *size*)

Read multiple bytes from an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs read operation using CMD53 in byte mode. For block mode, see sdmmc_io_read_blocks.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size exceeds 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `function`: IO function number
- `addr`: byte address within IO function where reading starts
- `dst`: buffer which receives the data read from card
- `size`: number of bytes to read

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_write_bytes**(*sdmmc_card_t* *card, uint32_t *function*, uint32_t *addr*, **const** void *src, size_t *size*)

Write multiple bytes to an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs write operation using CMD53 in byte mode. For block mode, see sdmmc_io_write_blocks.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size exceeds 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `function`: IO function number
- `addr`: byte address within IO function where writing starts
- `src`: data to be written
- `size`: number of bytes to write

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_read_blocks**(*sdmmc_card_t* *card, uint32_t *function*, uint32_t *addr*, void *dst, size_t *size*)

Read blocks of data from an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs read operation using CMD53 in block mode. For byte mode, see sdmmc_io_read_bytes.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size is not divisible by 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `function`: IO function number
- `addr`: byte address within IO function where writing starts
- `dst`: buffer which receives the data read from card

- `size`: number of bytes to read, must be divisible by the card block size.

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_write_blocks**(*sdmmc_card_t* **card*, uint32_t *function*, uint32_t *addr*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*)

Write blocks of data to an SDIO card using IO_RW_EXTENDED (CMD53)

This function performs write operation using CMD53 in block mode. For byte mode, see sdmmc_io_write_bytes.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if size is not divisible by 512 bytes
- One of the error codes from SDMMC host controller

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `function`: IO function number
- `addr`: byte address within IO function where writing starts
- `src`: data to be written
- `size`: number of bytes to read, must be divisible by the card block size.

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_enable_int**(*sdmmc_card_t* **card*)

Enable SDIO interrupt in the SDMMC host

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the host controller does not support IO interrupts

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_wait_int**(*sdmmc_card_t* **card*, TickType_t *timeout_ticks*)

Block until an SDIO interrupt is received

Slave uses D1 line to signal interrupt condition to the host. This function can be used to wait for the interrupt.

Return

- ESP_OK if the interrupt is received
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the host controller does not support IO interrupts
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if the interrupt does not happen in timeout_ticks

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `timeout_ticks`: time to wait for the interrupt, in RTOS ticks

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_get_cis_data**(*sdmmc_card_t* **card*, uint8_t **out_buffer*, size_t *buffer_size*, size_t **inout_cis_size*)

Get the data of CIS region of a SDIO card.

You may provide a buffer not sufficient to store all the CIS data. In this case, this functions store as much data into your buffer as possible. Also, this function will try to get and return the size required for you.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE: if the card does not (correctly) support CIS.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: CIS_CODE_END found, but buffer_size is less than required size, which is stored in the inout_cis_size then.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: if the CIS_CODE_END not found. Increase input value of inout_cis_size or set it to 0, if you still want to search for the end; output value of inout_cis_size is invalid in this case.
- and other error code return from sdmmc_io_read_bytes

Parameters

- `card`: pointer to card information structure previously initialized using sdmmc_card_init
- `out_buffer`: Output buffer of the CIS data
- `buffer_size`: Size of the buffer.
- `inout_cis_size`: Mandatory, pointer to a size, input and output.

- input: Limitation of maximum searching range, should be 0 or larger than buffer_size. The function searches for CIS_CODE_END until this range. Set to 0 to search infinitely.
- output: The size required to store all the CIS data, if CIS_CODE_END is found.

esp_err_t **sdmmc_io_print_cis_info**(uint8_t **buffer*, size_t *buffer_size*, FILE **fp*)

Parse and print the CIS information of a SDIO card.

Note Not all the CIS codes and all kinds of tuples are supported. If you see some unresolved code, you can add the parsing of these code in sdmmc_io.c and contribute to the IDF through the Github repository.

```
using sdmmc_card_init
```

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: if the value from the card is not supported to be parsed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: if the CIS size fields are not correct.

Parameters

- `buffer`: Buffer to parse
- `buffer_size`: Size of the buffer.
- `fp`: File pointer to print to, set to NULL to print to stdout.

Header File

- driver/include/driver/sdmmc_types.h

Structures

struct sdmmc_csd_t

Decoded values from SD card Card Specific Data register

Public Members

int **csd_ver**

CSD structure format

int **mmc_ver**

MMC version (for CID format)

int **capacity**

total number of sectors

int **sector_size**

sector size in bytes

int **read_block_len**

block length for reads

int **card_command_class**

Card Command Class for SD

int **tr_speed**

Max transfer speed

struct sdmmc_cid_t

Decoded values from SD card Card IDentification register

Public Members

int **mfg_id**

manufacturer identification number

int **oem_id**

OEM/product identification number

char **name**[8]
product name (MMC v1 has the longest)

int **revision**
product revision

int **serial**
product serial number

int **date**
manufacturing date

struct sdmmc_scr_t
Decoded values from SD Configuration Register

Public Members

int **sd_spec**
SD Physical layer specification version, reported by card

int **bus_width**
bus widths supported by card: BIT(0) —1-bit bus, BIT(2) —4-bit bus

struct sdmmc_ext_csd_t
Decoded values of Extended Card Specific Data

Public Members

uint8_t **power_class**
Power class used by the card

struct sdmmc_switch_func_rsp_t
SD SWITCH_FUNC response buffer

Public Members

uint32_t **data**[512 / 8 / sizeof(uint32_t)]
response data

struct sdmmc_command_t
SD/MMC command information

Public Members

uint32_t **opcode**
SD or MMC command index

uint32_t **arg**
SD/MMC command argument

sdmmc_response_t **response**
response buffer

void ***data**
buffer to send or read into

size_t **datalen**
length of data buffer

size_t **blklen**
block length

int **flags**
see below

esp_err_t **error**
error returned from transfer

int **timeout_ms**
response timeout, in milliseconds

struct sdmmc_host_t
SD/MMC Host description

This structure defines properties of SD/MMC host and functions of SD/MMC host which can be used by upper layers.

Public Members

uint32_t **flags**
flags defining host properties

int **slot**
slot number, to be passed to host functions

int **max_freq_khz**
max frequency supported by the host

float **io_voltage**
I/O voltage used by the controller (voltage switching is not supported)

esp_err_t (***init**) (void)
Host function to initialize the driver

esp_err_t (***set_bus_width**) (int slot, size_t width)
host function to set bus width

size_t (***get_bus_width**) (int slot)
host function to get bus width

esp_err_t (***set_bus_ddr_mode**) (int slot, bool ddr_enable)
host function to set DDR mode

esp_err_t (***set_card_clk**) (int slot, uint32_t freq_khz)
host function to set card clock frequency

esp_err_t (***do_transaction**) (int slot, *sdmmc_command_t* *cmdinfo)
host function to do a transaction

esp_err_t (***deinit**) (void)
host function to deinitialize the driver

esp_err_t (***deinit_p**) (int slot)
host function to deinitialize the driver, called with the `slot`

esp_err_t (***io_int_enable**) (int slot)
Host function to enable SDIO interrupt line

esp_err_t (***io_int_wait**) (int slot, TickType_t timeout_ticks)
Host function to wait for SDIO interrupt line to be active

int **command_timeout_ms**
timeout, in milliseconds, of a single command. Set to 0 to use the default value.

struct sdmmc_card_t
SD/MMC card information structure

Public Members

sdmmc_host_t **host**
Host with which the card is associated

uint32_t **ocr**
OCR (Operation Conditions Register) value

sdmmc_cid_t **cid**
decoded CID (Card IDentification) register value

sdmmc_response_t **raw_cid**
raw CID of MMC card to be decoded after the CSD is fetched in the data transfer mode

sdmmc_csd_t **csd**
decoded CSD (Card-Specific Data) register value

sdmmc_scr_t **scr**
decoded SCR (SD card Configuration Register) value

sdmmc_ext_csd_t **ext_csd**
decoded EXT_CSD (Extended Card Specific Data) register value

uint16_t **rca**
RCA (Relative Card Address)

uint16_t **max_freq_khz**
Maximum frequency, in kHz, supported by the card

uint32_t **is_mem** : 1
Bit indicates if the card is a memory card

uint32_t **is_sdio** : 1
Bit indicates if the card is an IO card

uint32_t **is_mmc** : 1
Bit indicates if the card is MMC

uint32_t **num_io_functions** : 3
If is_sdio is 1, contains the number of IO functions on the card

uint32_t **log_bus_width** : 2
log2(bus width supported by card)

uint32_t **is_ddr** : 1
Card supports DDR mode

uint32_t **reserved** : 23
Reserved for future expansion

Macros

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_1BIT
host supports 1-line SD and MMC protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_4BIT
host supports 4-line SD and MMC protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_8BIT
host supports 8-line MMC protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_SPI
host supports SPI protocol

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DDR
host supports DDR mode for SD/MMC

SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DEINIT_ARG
host `deinit` function called with the slot argument

SDMMC_FREQ_DEFAULT
SD/MMC Default speed (limited by clock divider)

SDMMC_FREQ_HIGHSPEED
SD High speed (limited by clock divider)

SDMMC_FREQ_PROBING
SD/MMC probing speed

SDMMC_FREQ_52M
MMC 52MHz speed

SDMMC_FREQ_26M
MMC 26MHz speed

Type Definitions

typedef uint32_t **sdmmc_response_t**[4]
SD/MMC command response buffer

2.5.6 SPI Flash API

Overview

The spi_flash component contains API functions related to reading, writing, erasing, memory mapping for data in the external flash. The spi_flash component also has higher-level API functions which work with partitions defined in the *partition table*.

Different from the API before IDF v4.0, the functionality of esp_flash_* APIs is not limited to the "main" SPI flash chip (the same SPI flash chip from which program runs). With different chip pointers, you can access to external flashes chips connected to not only SPI0/1 but also other SPI buses like SPI2.

Note: Instead of through the cache connected to the SPI0 peripheral, most *esp_flash_** APIs go through other SPI peripherals like SPI1, SPI2, etc.. This makes them able to access to not only the main flash, but also external flash.

However due to limitations of the cache, operations through the cache are limited to the main flash. The address range limitation for these operations are also on the cache side. The cache is not able to access external flash chips or address range above its capabilities. These cache operations include: mmap, encrypted read/write, executing code or access to variables in the flash.

Note: Flash APIs after IDF v4.0 are no longer *atomic*. A writing operation during another on-going read operation, on the overlapped flash address, may cause the return data from the read operation to be partly same as before, and partly updated as new written.

Kconfig option *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL* can be used to switch `spi_flash_*` functions back to the implementation before IDF v4.0. However, the code size may get bigger if you use the new API and the old API the same time.

Encrypted reads and writes use the old implementation, even if *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL* is not enabled. As such, encrypted flash operations are only supported with the main flash chip (and not with other flash chips, that is on SPI1 with different CS, or on other SPI buses). Reading through cache is only supported on the main flash, which is determined by the HW.

Support for features of flash chips

Flash features of different vendors are operated in different ways and need special support. The fast/slow read and Dual mode (DOUT/DIO) of almost all 24-bits address flash chips are supported, because they don't need any vendor-specific commands.

The Quad mode (QIO/QOUT) the following chip types are supported:

1. ISSI
2. GD
3. MXIC
4. FM
5. Winbond
6. XMC
7. BOYA

The 32-bit address range of following chip type is supported:

1. W25Q256

Initializing a flash device

To use `esp_flash_*` APIs, you need to have a chip initialized on a certain SPI bus.

1. Call *`spi_bus_initialize()`* to properly initialize an SPI bus. This functions initialize the resources (I/O, DMA, interrupts) shared among devices attached to this bus.
2. Call *`spi_bus_add_flash_device()`* to attach the flash device onto the bus. This allocates memory, and fill the members for the `esp_flash_t` structure. The CS I/O is also initialized here.
3. Call *`esp_flash_init()`* to actually communicate with the chip. This will also detect the chip type, and influence the following operations.

Note: Multiple flash chips can be attached to the same bus now. However, using `esp_flash_*` devices and `spi_device_*` devices on the same SPI bus is not supported yet.

SPI flash access API

This is the set of API functions for working with data in flash:

- *`esp_flash_read()`* reads data from flash to RAM
- *`esp_flash_write()`* writes data from RAM to flash
- *`esp_flash_erase_region()`* erases specific region of flash
- *`esp_flash_erase_chip()`* erases the whole flash
- `esp_flash_get_chip_size()` returns flash chip size, in bytes, as configured in menuconfig

Generally, try to avoid using the raw SPI flash functions to the "main" SPI flash chip in favour of *partition-specific functions*.

SPI Flash Size

The SPI flash size is configured by writing a field in the software bootloader image header, flashed at offset 0x1000.

By default, the SPI flash size is detected by esptool.py when this bootloader is written to flash, and the header is updated with the correct size. Alternatively, it is possible to generate a fixed flash size by setting `CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE` in project configuration.

If it is necessary to override the configured flash size at runtime, it is possible to set the `chip_size` member of the `g_rom_flashchip` structure. This size is used by `esp_flash_*` functions (in both software & ROM) to check the bounds.

Concurrency Constraints for flash on SPI1

Concurrency Constraints for flash on SPI1 The SPI0/1 bus is shared between the instruction & data cache (for firmware execution) and the SPI1 peripheral (controlled by the drivers including this SPI Flash driver). Hence,

operations to SPI1 will cause significant influence to the whole system. This kind of operations include calling SPI Flash API or other drivers on SPI1 bus, any operations like read/write/erase or other user defined SPI operations, regardless to the main flash or other SPI slave devices.

On ESP32-S2, these caches must be disabled while reading/writing/erasing.

When the caches are disabled This means that all CPUs must be running code from IRAM and must only be reading data from DRAM while flash write operations occur. If you use the API functions documented here, then the caches will be disabled automatically and transparently. However, note that it will have some performance impact on other tasks in the system.

There are no such constraints and impacts for flash chips on other SPI buses than SPI0/1.

For differences between IRAM, DRAM, and flash cache, please refer to the *application memory layout* documentation.

See also *OS functions*, *SPI Bus Lock*.

IRAM-Safe Interrupt Handlers If you have an interrupt handler that you want to execute while a flash operation is in progress (for example, for low latency operations), set the `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` flag when the *interrupt handler is registered*.

You must ensure that all data and functions accessed by these interrupt handlers, including the ones that handlers call, are located in IRAM or DRAM. See *How to place code in IRAM*.

If a function or symbol is not correctly put into IRAM/DRAM, and the interrupt handler reads from the flash cache during a flash operation, it will cause a crash due to Illegal Instruction exception (for code which should be in IRAM) or garbage data to be read (for constant data which should be in DRAM).

Note: When working with string in ISRs, it is not advised to use `printf` and other output functions. For debugging purposes, use `ESP_DRAM_LOGE()` and similar macros when logging from ISRs. Make sure that both `TAG` and format string are placed into `DRAM` in that case.

Attention: The SPI0/1 bus is shared between the instruction & data cache (for firmware execution) and the SPI1 peripheral (controlled by the drivers including this SPI Flash driver). Hence, calling SPI Flash API on SPI1 bus (including the main flash) will cause significant influence to the whole system. See *Concurrency Constraints for flash on SPI1* for more details.

Partition table API

ESP-IDF projects use a partition table to maintain information about various regions of SPI flash memory (bootloader, various application binaries, data, filesystems). More information on partition tables can be found *here*.

This component provides API functions to enumerate partitions found in the partition table and perform operations on them. These functions are declared in `esp_partition.h`:

- *`esp_partition_find()`* checks a partition table for entries with specific type, returns an opaque iterator.
- *`esp_partition_get()`* returns a structure describing the partition for a given iterator.
- *`esp_partition_next()`* shifts the iterator to the next found partition.
- *`esp_partition_iterator_release()`* releases iterator returned by `esp_partition_find`.
- *`esp_partition_find_first()`* - a convenience function which returns the structure describing the first partition found by `esp_partition_find`.
- *`esp_partition_read()`*, *`esp_partition_write()`*, *`esp_partition_erase_range()`* are equivalent to `spi_flash_read()`, `spi_flash_write()`, `spi_flash_erase_range()`, but operate within partition boundaries.

Note: Application code should mostly use these `esp_partition_*` API functions instead of lower level `esp_flash_*` API functions. Partition table API functions do bounds checking and calculate correct offsets in flash, based on data stored in a partition table.

SPI Flash Encryption

It is possible to encrypt the contents of SPI flash and have it transparently decrypted by hardware.

Refer to the *Flash Encryption documentation* for more details.

Memory mapping API

ESP32-S2 features memory hardware which allows regions of flash memory to be mapped into instruction and data address spaces. This mapping works only for read operations. It is not possible to modify contents of flash memory by writing to a mapped memory region.

Mapping happens in 64 KB pages. Memory mapping hardware can map flash into the data address space and the instruction address space. See the technical reference manual for more details and limitations about memory mapping hardware.

Note that some pages are used to map the application itself into memory, so the actual number of available pages may be less than the capability of the hardware.

Reading data from flash using a memory mapped region is the only way to decrypt contents of flash when *flash encryption* is enabled. Decryption is performed at the hardware level.

Memory mapping API are declared in `esp_spi_flash.h` and `esp_partition.h`:

- `spi_flash_mmap()` maps a region of physical flash addresses into instruction space or data space of the CPU.
- `spi_flash_munmap()` unmaps previously mapped region.
- *`esp_partition_mmap()`* maps part of a partition into the instruction space or data space of the CPU.

Differences between `spi_flash_mmap()` and *`esp_partition_mmap()`* are as follows:

- `spi_flash_mmap()` must be given a 64 KB aligned physical address.
- *`esp_partition_mmap()`* may be given any arbitrary offset within the partition, it will adjust the returned pointer to mapped memory as necessary

Note that since memory mapping happens in pages, it may be possible to read data outside of the partition provided to `esp_partition_mmap`, regardless of the partition boundary.

Note: mmap is supported by cache, so it can only be used on main flash.

SPI Flash Implementation

The `esp_flash_t` structure holds chip data as well as three important parts of this API:

1. The host driver, which provides the hardware support to access the chip;
2. The chip driver, which provides compatibility service to different chips;
3. The OS functions, provides support of some OS functions (e.g. lock, delay) in different stages (1st/2st boot, or the app).

Host driver The host driver relies on an interface (`spi_flash_host_driver_t`) defined in the `spi_flash_types.h` (in the `hal/include/hal` folder). This interface provides some common functions to communicate with the chip.

In other files of the SPI HAL, some of these functions are implemented with existing ESP32-S2 memory-spi functionalities. However due to the speed limitations of ESP32-S2, the HAL layer can't provide high-speed implementations to some reading commands (So we didn't do it at all). The files (`memspi_host_driver.h` and `.c`) implement the high-speed version of these commands with the `common_command` function provided in the HAL, and wrap these functions as `spi_flash_host_driver_t` for upper layer to use.

You can also implement your own host driver, even with the GPIO. As long as all the functions in the `spi_flash_host_driver_t` are implemented, the esp_flash API can access to the flash regardless of the low-level hardware.

Chip driver The chip driver, defined in `spi_flash_chip_driver.h`, wraps basic functions provided by the host driver for the API layer to use.

Some operations need some commands to be sent first, or read some status after. Some chips need different command or value, or need special communication ways.

There is a type of chip called `generic chip` which stands for common chips. Other special chip drivers can be developed on the base of the generic chip.

The chip driver relies on the host driver.

OS functions Currently the OS function layer provides entries of a lock and delay.

The lock (see *SPI Bus Lock*) is used to resolve the conflicts among the access of devices on the same SPI bus, and the SPI Flash chip access. E.g.

1. On SPI1 bus, the cache (used to fetch the data (code) in the Flash and PSRAM) should be disabled when the flash chip on the SPI0/1 is being accessed.
2. On the other buses, the flash driver needs to disable the ISR registered by SPI Master driver, to avoid conflicts.
3. Some devices of SPI Master driver may requires to use the bus monopolized during a period. (especially when the device doesn't have CS wire, or the wire is controlled by the software like SDSPI driver).

The delay is used by some long operations which requires the master to wait or polling periodically.

The top API wraps these the chip driver and OS functions into an entire component, and also provides some argument checking.

See also

- *Partition Table documentation*
- *Over The Air Update (OTA) API* provides high-level API for updating app firmware stored in flash.
- *Non-Volatile Storage (NVS) API* provides a structured API for storing small pieces of data in SPI flash.

Implementation details

In order to perform some flash operations, it is necessary to make sure that both CPUs are not running any code from flash for the duration of the flash operation: - In a single-core setup, the SDK does it by disabling interrupts/scheduler before performing the flash operation. - In a dual-core setup, this is slightly more complicated as the SDK needs to make sure that the other CPU is not running any code from flash.

When SPI flash API is called on CPU A (can be PRO or APP), start the spi_flash_op_block_func function on CPU B using the esp_ipc_call API. This API wakes up a high priority task on CPU B and tells it to execute a given function, in this case, spi_flash_op_block_func. This function disables cache on CPU B and signals that the cache is disabled by setting the s_flash_op_can_start flag. Then the task on CPU A disables cache as well and proceeds to execute flash operation.

While a flash operation is running, interrupts can still run on CPUs A and B. It is assumed that all interrupt code is placed into RAM. Once the interrupt allocation API is added, a flag should be added to request the interrupt to be disabled for the duration of a flash operations.

Once the flash operation is complete, the function on CPU A sets another flag, s_flash_op_complete, to let the task on CPU B know that it can re-enable cache and release the CPU. Then the function on CPU A re-enables the cache on CPU A as well and returns control to the calling code.

Additionally, all API functions are protected with a mutex (s_flash_op_mutex).

In a single core environment (*CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE* enabled), you need to disable both caches, so that no inter-CPU communication can take place.

API Reference - SPI Flash

Header File

- spi_flash/include/esp_flash_spi_init.h

Functions

esp_err_t **spi_bus_add_flash_device**(*esp_flash_t* ***out_chip*, **const** *esp_flash_spi_device_config_t* **config*)

Add a SPI Flash device onto the SPI bus.

The bus should be already initialized by `spi_bus_initialization`.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: out_chip is NULL, or some field in the config is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: failed to allocate memory for the chip structures.
- ESP_OK: success.

Parameters

- `out_chip`: Pointer to hold the initialized chip.
- `config`: Configuration of the chips to initialize.

esp_err_t **spi_bus_remove_flash_device**(*esp_flash_t* **chip*)

Remove a SPI Flash device from the SPI bus.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The chip is invalid.
- ESP_OK: success.

Parameters

- `chip`: The flash device to remove.

Structures

struct esp_flash_spi_device_config_t

Configurations for the SPI Flash to init.

Public Members

spi_host_device_t **host_id**

Bus to use.

int **cs_io_num**

GPIO pin to output the CS signal.

esp_flash_io_mode_t **io_mode**

IO mode to read from the Flash.

esp_flash_speed_t **speed**

Speed of the Flash clock.

int **input_delay_ns**
Input delay of the data pins, in ns. Set to 0 if unknown.

int **cs_id**
CS line ID, ignored when not `host_id` is not SPI1_HOST, or `CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SHARE_SPI1_BUS` is enabled. In this case, the CS line used is automatically assigned by the SPI bus lock.

Header File

- spi_flash/include/esp_flash.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_flash_init**(*esp_flash_t* **chip*)
Initialise SPI flash chip interface.

This function must be called before any other API functions are called for this chip.

Note Only the `host` and `read_mode` fields of the chip structure must be initialised before this function is called. Other fields may be auto-detected if left set to zero or NULL.

Note If the chip->drv pointer is NULL, chip chip_drv will be auto-detected based on its manufacturer & product IDs. See `esp_flash_registered_flash_drivers` pointer for details of this process.

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if initialisation fails.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to SPI flash chip to use. If NULL, esp_flash_default_chip is substituted.

bool **esp_flash_chip_driver_initialized**(**const** *esp_flash_t* **chip*)
Check if appropriate chip driver is set.

Return true if set, otherwise false.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to SPI flash chip to use. If NULL, esp_flash_default_chip is substituted.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_read_id**(*esp_flash_t* **chip*, uint32_t **out_id*)
Read flash ID via the common "RDID" SPI flash command.

ID is a 24-bit value. Lower 16 bits of 'id' are the chip ID, upper 8 bits are the manufacturer ID.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `[out] out_id`: Pointer to receive ID value.

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_get_size**(*esp_flash_t* **chip*, uint32_t **out_size*)
Detect flash size based on flash ID.

Note Most flash chips use a common format for flash ID, where the lower 4 bits specify the size as a power of 2. If the manufacturer doesn't follow this convention, the size may be incorrectly detected.

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `[out] out_size`: Detected size in bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_read_unique_chip_id**(*esp_flash_t* **chip*, uint64_t **out_id*)
Read flash unique ID via the common "RDUID" SPI flash command.

ID is a 64-bit value.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init().
- `[out] out_id`: Pointer to receive unique ID value.

Return
- ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip doesn't support read id.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_erase_chip**(*esp_flash_t *chip*)

Erase flash chip contents.

Return
- ESP_OK on success,
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip is not able to perform the operation. This is indicated by WREN = 1 after the command is sent.
- Other flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()

esp_err_t **esp_flash_erase_region**(*esp_flash_t *chip*, uint32_t *start*, uint32_t *len*)

Erase a region of the flash chip.

Sector size is specifyed in chip->drv->sector_size field (typically 4096 bytes.) ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG will be returned if the start & length are not a multiple of this size.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `start`: Address to start erasing flash. Must be sector aligned.
- `len`: Length of region to erase. Must also be sector aligned.

Erase is performed using block (multi-sector) erases where possible (block size is specified in chip->drv->block_erase_size field, typically 65536 bytes). Remaining sectors are erased using individual sector erase commands.

Return
- ESP_OK on success,
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip is not able to perform the operation. This is indicated by WREN = 1 after the command is sent.
- Other flash error code if operation failed.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_get_chip_write_protect**(*esp_flash_t *chip*, bool **write_protected*)

Read if the entire chip is write protected.

Note A correct result for this flag depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the 'chip->drv' field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `[out] write_protected`: Pointer to boolean, set to the value of the write protect flag.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_set_chip_write_protect**(*esp_flash_t *chip*, bool *write_protect*)

Set write protection for the SPI flash chip.

Some SPI flash chips may require a power cycle before write protect status can be cleared. Otherwise, write protection can be removed via a follow-up call to this function.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the 'chip->drv' field).

Parameters
- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `write_protect`: Boolean value for the write protect flag

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_get_protectable_regions**(**const** *esp_flash_t* *chip, **const** *esp_flash_region_t* **out_regions, uint32_t *out_num_regions*)

Read the list of individually protectable regions of this SPI flash chip.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the 'chip->drv' field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `[out] out_regions`: Pointer to receive a pointer to the array of protectable regions of the chip.
- `[out] out_num_regions`: Pointer to an integer receiving the count of protectable regions in the array returned in 'regions'.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_get_protected_region**(*esp_flash_t* *chip, **const** *esp_flash_region_t* *region, bool *out_protected*)

Detect if a region of the SPI flash chip is protected.

Note It is possible for this result to be false and write operations to still fail, if protection is enabled for the entire chip.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the 'chip->drv' field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `region`: Pointer to a struct describing a protected region. This must match one of the regions returned from esp_flash_get_protectable_regions(···).
- `[out] out_protected`: Pointer to a flag which is set based on the protected status for this region.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_set_protected_region**(*esp_flash_t* *chip, **const** *esp_flash_region_t* *region, bool *protect*)

Update the protected status for a region of the SPI flash chip.

Note It is possible for the region protection flag to be cleared and write operations to still fail, if protection is enabled for the entire chip.

Note Correct behaviour of this function depends on the SPI flash chip model and chip_drv in use (via the 'chip->drv' field).

Return ESP_OK on success, or a flash error code if operation failed.

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `region`: Pointer to a struct describing a protected region. This must match one of the regions returned from esp_flash_get_protectable_regions(···).
- `protect`: Write protection flag to set.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_read**(*esp_flash_t* *chip, void *buffer, uint32_t *address*, uint32_t *length*)

Read data from the SPI flash chip.

There are no alignment constraints on buffer, address or length.

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `buffer`: Pointer to a buffer where the data will be read. To get better performance, this should be in the DRAM and word aligned.
- `address`: Address on flash to read from. Must be less than chip->size field.
- `length`: Length (in bytes) of data to read.

Note If on-chip flash encryption is used, this function returns raw (ie encrypted) data. Use the flash cache to transparently decrypt data.

Return

- ESP_OK: success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Buffer is in external PSRAM which cannot be concurrently accessed, and a temporary internal buffer could not be allocated.
- or a flash error code if operation failed.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_write**(*esp_flash_t* *chip, **const** void *buffer, uint32_t *address*, uint32_t *length*)

Write data to the SPI flash chip.

There are no alignment constraints on buffer, address or length.

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must have been successfully initialised via esp_flash_init()
- `address`: Address on flash to write to. Must be previously erased (SPI NOR flash can only write bits 1->0).
- `buffer`: Pointer to a buffer with the data to write. To get better performance, this should be in the DRAM and word aligned.
- `length`: Length (in bytes) of data to write.

Return

- ESP_OK on success,
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the chip is not able to perform the operation. This is indicated by WREN = 1 after the command is sent.
- Other flash error code if operation failed.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_write_encrypted**(*esp_flash_t* *chip, uint32_t *address*, **const** void *buffer, uint32_t *length*)

Encrypted and write data to the SPI flash chip using on-chip hardware flash encryption.

Note Both address & length must be 16 byte aligned, as this is the encryption block size

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: encrypted write not supported for this chip.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Either the address, buffer or length is invalid.
- or other flash error code from spi_flash_write_encrypted().

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must be NULL (the main flash chip). For other chips, encrypted write is not supported.
- `address`: Address on flash to write to. 16 byte aligned. Must be previously erased (SPI NOR flash can only write bits 1->0).
- `buffer`: Pointer to a buffer with the data to write.
- `length`: Length (in bytes) of data to write. 16 byte aligned.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_read_encrypted**(*esp_flash_t* *chip, uint32_t *address*, void *out_buffer, uint32_t *length*)

Read and decrypt data from the SPI flash chip using on-chip hardware flash encryption.

Return

- ESP_OK: on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: encrypted read not supported for this chip.
- or other flash error code from spi_flash_read_encrypted().

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to identify flash chip. Must be NULL (the main flash chip). For other chips, encrypted read is not supported.
- `address`: Address on flash to read from.
- `out_buffer`: Pointer to a buffer for the data to read to.
- `length`: Length (in bytes) of data to read.

static bool **esp_flash_is_quad_mode**(**const** *esp_flash_t* *chip)

Returns true if chip is configured for Quad I/O or Quad Fast Read.

Return true if flash works in quad mode, otherwise false

Parameters

- `chip`: Pointer to SPI flash chip to use. If NULL, esp_flash_default_chip is substituted.

Structures

struct esp_flash_region_t

Structure for describing a region of flash.

Public Members

uint32_t **offset**

Start address of this region.

uint32_t **size**
Size of the region.

struct esp_flash_os_functions_t
OS-level integration hooks for accessing flash chips inside a running OS.

It's in the public header because some instances should be allocated statically in the startup code. May be updated according to hardware version and new flash chip feature requirements, shouldn't be treated as public API.

For advanced developers, you may replace some of them with your implementations at your own risk.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***start**) (void *arg)
Called before commencing any flash operation. Does not need to be recursive (ie is called at most once for each call to 'end').

esp_err_t (***end**) (void *arg)
Called after completing any flash operation.

esp_err_t (***region_protected**) (void *arg, size_t start_addr, size_t size)
Called before any erase/write operations to check whether the region is limited by the OS

esp_err_t (***delay_us**) (void *arg, uint32_t us)
Delay for at least 'us' microseconds. Called in between 'start' and 'end'.

void *(***get_temp_buffer**) (void *arg, size_t reqest_size, size_t *out_size)
Called for get temp buffer when buffer from application cannot be directly read into/write from.

void (***release_temp_buffer**) (void *arg, void *temp_buf)
Called for release temp buffer.

esp_err_t (***check_yield**) (void *arg, uint32_t chip_status, uint32_t *out_request)
Yield to other tasks. Called during erase operations.

Return ESP_OK means yield needs to be called (got an event to handle), while ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT means skip yield.

esp_err_t (***yield**) (void *arg, uint32_t *out_status)
Yield to other tasks. Called during erase operations.

int64_t (***get_system_time**) (void *arg)
Called for get system time.

struct esp_flash_t
Structure to describe a SPI flash chip connected to the system.

Structure must be initialized before use (passed to esp_flash_init()). It's in the public header because some instances should be allocated statically in the startup code. May be updated according to hardware version and new flash chip feature requirements, shouldn't be treated as public API.

For advanced developers, you may replace some of them with your implementations at your own risk.

Public Members

spi_flash_host_inst_t ***host**
Pointer to hardware-specific "host_driver" structure. Must be initialized before used.

const *spi_flash_chip_t* ***chip_drv**
Pointer to chip-model-specific "adapter" structure. If NULL, will be detected during initialisation.

const *esp_flash_os_functions_t* ***os_func**
Pointer to os-specific hook structure. Call `esp_flash_init_os_functions()` to setup this field, after the host is properly initialized.

void ***os_func_data**
Pointer to argument for os-specific hooks. Left NULL and will be initialized with `os_func`.

esp_flash_io_mode_t **read_mode**
Configured SPI flash read mode. Set before `esp_flash_init` is called.

uint32_t **size**
Size of SPI flash in bytes. If 0, size will be detected during initialisation.

uint32_t **chip_id**
Detected chip id.

uint32_t **busy** : 1
This flag is used to verify chip’ s status.

uint32_t **reserved_flags** : 31
reserved.

Macros

SPI_FLASH_YIELD_REQ_YIELD
SPI_FLASH_YIELD_REQ_SUSPEND

SPI_FLASH_YIELD_STA_RESUME

Type Definitions

typedef struct *spi_flash_chip_t* **spi_flash_chip_t**
typedef struct *esp_flash_t* **esp_flash_t**

Header File

- hal/include/hal/spi_flash_types.h

Structures

struct spi_flash_trans_t
Definition of a common transaction. Also holds the return value.

Public Members

uint8_t **reserved**
Reserved, must be 0.

uint8_t **mosi_len**
Output data length, in bytes.

uint8_t **miso_len**
Input data length, in bytes.

uint8_t **address_bitlen**
Length of address in bits, set to 0 if command does not need an address.

uint32_t **address**
Address to perform operation on.

const uint8_t ***mosi_data**
Output data to salve.

uint8_t ***miso_data**
[out] Input data from slave, little endian

uint32_t **flags**
Flags for this transaction. Set to 0 for now.

uint16_t **command**
Command to send.

uint8_t **dummy_bitlen**
Basic dummy bits to use.

struct spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf
Configuration structure for the flash chip suspend feature.

Public Members

uint32_t **sus_mask**
SUS/SUS1/SUS2 bit in flash register.

uint32_t **cmd_rdsr** : 8
Read flash status register(2) command.

uint32_t **sus_cmd** : 8
Flash suspend command.

uint32_t **res_cmd** : 8
Flash resume command.

uint32_t **reserved** : 8
Reserved, set to 0.

struct spi_flash_host_inst_t
SPI Flash Host driver instance

Public Members

const struct *spi_flash_host_driver_s* ***driver**
Pointer to the implementation function table.

struct spi_flash_host_driver_s
Host driver configuration and context structure.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***dev_config**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Configure the device-related register before transactions. This saves some time to re-configure those registers when we send continuously

esp_err_t (***common_command**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, *spi_flash_trans_t* *t)
Send an user-defined spi transaction to the device.

esp_err_t (***read_id**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t *id)
Read flash ID.

void (***erase_chip**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Erase whole flash chip.

void (***erase_sector**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t start_address)
Erase a specific sector by its start address.

void (***erase_block**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t start_address)
Erase a specific block by its start address.

esp_err_t (***read_status**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint8_t *out_sr)
Read the status of the flash chip.

esp_err_t (***set_write_protect**) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, bool wp)
Disable write protection.

void (*`program_page`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, `const` void *buffer, uint32_t address, uint32_t length)
Program a page of the flash. Check `max_write_bytes` for the maximum allowed writing length.

bool (*`supports_direct_write`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, `const` void *p)
Check whether given buffer can be directly used to write

int (*`write_data_slicer`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t address, uint32_t len, uint32_t *align_addr, uint32_t page_size)
Slicer for write data. The `program_page` should be called iteratively with the return value of this function.

Return Length that can be actually written in one `program_page` call
Parameters
- `address`: Beginning flash address to write
- `len`: Length request to write
- `align_addr`: Output of the aligned address to write to
- `page_size`: Physical page size of the flash chip

esp_err_t (*`read`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, void *buffer, uint32_t address, uint32_t read_len)
Read data from the flash. Check `max_read_bytes` for the maximum allowed reading length.

bool (*`supports_direct_read`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, `const` void *p)
Check whether given buffer can be directly used to read

int (*`read_data_slicer`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t address, uint32_t len, uint32_t *align_addr, uint32_t page_size)
Slicer for read data. The `read` should be called iteratively with the return value of this function.

Return Length that can be actually read in one `read` call
Parameters
- `address`: Beginning flash address to read
- `len`: Length request to read
- `align_addr`: Output of the aligned address to read
- `page_size`: Physical page size of the flash chip

uint32_t (*`host_status`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Check the host status, 0:busy, 1:idle, 2:suspended.

esp_err_t (*`configure_host_io_mode`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t command, uint32_t addr_bitlen, int dummy_bitlen_base, *esp_flash_io_mode_t* io_mode)
Configure the host to work at different read mode. Responsible to compensate the timing and set IO mode.

void (*`poll_cmd_done`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Internal use, poll the HW until the last operation is done.

esp_err_t (*`flush_cache`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, uint32_t addr, uint32_t size)
For some host (SPI1), they are shared with a cache. When the data is modified, the cache needs to be flushed. Left NULL if not supported.

void (*`check_suspend`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Suspend check erase/program operation, reserved for ESP32-C3 and ESP32-S3 spi flash ROM IMPL.

void (*`resume`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Resume flash from suspend manually

void (*`suspend`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host)
Set flash in suspend status manually

esp_err_t (*`sus_setup`) (*spi_flash_host_inst_t* *host, `const` *spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf* *sus_conf)
Suspend feature setup for setting cmd and status register mask.

Macros

SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_CMD16
Send command of 16 bits.

SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_IGNORE_BASEIO
Not applying the basic io mode configuration for this transaction.

SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_BYTE_SWAP
Used for DTR mode, to swap the bytes of a pair of rising/falling edge.

ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MIN
Lowest speed supported by the driver, currently 5 MHz.

SPI_FLASH_CONFIG_CONF_BITS
OR the io_mode with this mask, to enable the dummy output feature or replace the first several dummy bits into address to meet the requirements of conf bits. (Used in DIO/QIO/OIO mode)

SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_MIN
Slowest io mode supported by ESP32, currently SlowRd.

Type Definitions

typedef struct *spi_flash_host_driver_s* **spi_flash_host_driver_t**

Enumerations

enum esp_flash_speed_t
SPI flash clock speed values, always refer to them by the enum rather than the actual value (more speed may be appended into the list).

A strategy to select the maximum allowed speed is to enumerate from the `ESP_FLSH_SPEED_MAX-1` or highest frequency supported by your flash, and decrease the speed until the probing success.

Values:

ESP_FLASH_5MHZ = 0
The flash runs under 5MHz.

ESP_FLASH_10MHZ
The flash runs under 10MHz.

ESP_FLASH_20MHZ
The flash runs under 20MHz.

ESP_FLASH_26MHZ
The flash runs under 26MHz.

ESP_FLASH_40MHZ
The flash runs under 40MHz.

ESP_FLASH_80MHZ
The flash runs under 80MHz.

ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MAX
The maximum frequency supported by the host is `ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MAX-1`.

enum esp_flash_io_mode_t
Mode used for reading from SPI flash.

Values:

SPI_FLASH_SLOWRD = 0
Data read using single I/O, some limits on speed.

SPI_FLASH_FASTRD
Data read using single I/O, no limit on speed.

SPI_FLASH_DOUT
Data read using dual I/O.

SPI_FLASH_DIO
Both address & data transferred using dual I/O.

SPI_FLASH_QOUT
Data read using quad I/O.

SPI_FLASH_QIO
Both address & data transferred using quad I/O.

SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_MAX
The fastest io mode supported by the host is `ESP_FLASH_READ_MODE_MAX-1`.

API Reference - Partition Table

Header File

- spi_flash/include/esp_partition.h

Functions

esp_partition_iterator_t **esp_partition_find**(*esp_partition_type_t type*, *esp_partition_subtype_t subtype*, **const** char *label)

Find partition based on one or more parameters.

Return iterator which can be used to enumerate all the partitions found, or NULL if no partitions were found. Iterator obtained through this function has to be released using esp_partition_iterator_release when not used any more.

Parameters

- `type`: Partition type, one of esp_partition_type_t values or an 8-bit unsigned integer
- `subtype`: Partition subtype, one of esp_partition_subtype_t values or an 8-bit unsigned integer. To find all partitions of given type, use ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY.
- `label`: (optional) Partition label. Set this value if looking for partition with a specific name. Pass NULL otherwise.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_partition_find_first**(*esp_partition_type_t type*, *esp_partition_subtype_t subtype*, **const** char *label)

Find first partition based on one or more parameters.

Return pointer to *esp_partition_t* structure, or NULL if no partition is found. This pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

Parameters

- `type`: Partition type, one of esp_partition_type_t values or an 8-bit unsigned integer
- `subtype`: Partition subtype, one of esp_partition_subtype_t values or an 8-bit unsigned integer To find all partitions of given type, use ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY.
- `label`: (optional) Partition label. Set this value if looking for partition with a specific name. Pass NULL otherwise.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_partition_get**(*esp_partition_iterator_t iterator*)

Get *esp_partition_t* structure for given partition.

Return pointer to *esp_partition_t* structure. This pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

Parameters

- `iterator`: Iterator obtained using esp_partition_find. Must be non-NULL.

esp_partition_iterator_t **esp_partition_next**(*esp_partition_iterator_t iterator*)

Move partition iterator to the next partition found.

Any copies of the iterator will be invalid after this call.

Return NULL if no partition was found, valid esp_partition_iterator_t otherwise.

Parameters

- `iterator`: Iterator obtained using esp_partition_find. Must be non-NULL.

void **esp_partition_iterator_release**(*esp_partition_iterator_t iterator*)

Release partition iterator.

Parameters

- `iterator`: Iterator obtained using esp_partition_find. Must be non-NULL.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_partition_verify**(**const** *esp_partition_t *partition*)

Verify partition data.

Given a pointer to partition data, verify this partition exists in the partition table (all fields match.)

This function is also useful to take partition data which may be in a RAM buffer and convert it to a pointer to the permanent partition data stored in flash.

Pointers returned from this function can be compared directly to the address of any pointer returned from *esp_partition_get()*, as a test for equality.

Return

- If partition not found, returns NULL.
- If found, returns a pointer to the *esp_partition_t* structure in flash. This pointer is always valid for the lifetime of the application.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition data to verify. Must be non-NULL. All fields of this structure must match the partition table entry in flash for this function to return a successful match.

esp_err_t **esp_partition_read**(**const** *esp_partition_t *partition*, size_t *src_offset*, void **dst*, size_t *size*)

Read data from the partition.

Partitions marked with an encryption flag will automatically be be read and decrypted via a cache mapping.

Return ESP_OK, if data was read successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst`: Pointer to the buffer where data should be stored. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least 'size' bytes long.
- `src_offset`: Address of the data to be read, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `size`: Size of data to be read, in bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_partition_write**(**const** *esp_partition_t *partition*, size_t *dst_offset*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*)

Write data to the partition.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using esp_partition_erase_range function.

Partitions marked with an encryption flag will automatically be written via the spi_flash_write_encrypted() function. If writing to an encrypted partition, all write offsets and lengths must be multiples of 16 bytes. See the spi_flash_write_encrypted() function for more details. Unencrypted partitions do not have this restriction.

Note Prior to writing to flash memory, make sure it has been erased with esp_partition_erase_range call.

Return ESP_OK, if data was written successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if dst_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if write would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst_offset`: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `src`: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least 'size' bytes long.
- `size`: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_partition_read_raw**(**const** *esp_partition_t* *partition, size_t *src_offset*, void *dst, size_t *size*)

Read data from the partition without any transformation/decryption.

Note This function is essentially the same as `esp_partition_read()` above. It just never decrypts data but returns it as is.

Return ESP_OK, if data was read successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst`: Pointer to the buffer where data should be stored. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least 'size' bytes long.
- `src_offset`: Address of the data to be read, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `size`: Size of data to be read, in bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_partition_write_raw**(**const** *esp_partition_t* *partition, size_t *dst_offset*, **const** void *src, size_t *size*)

Write data to the partition without any transformation/encryption.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using esp_partition_erase_range function.

Note This function is essentially the same as `esp_partition_write()` above. It just never encrypts data but writes it as is.

Note Prior to writing to flash memory, make sure it has been erased with esp_partition_erase_range call.

Return ESP_OK, if data was written successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if dst_offset exceeds partition size; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if write would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of the error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `dst_offset`: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `src`: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least 'size' bytes long.
- `size`: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_partition_erase_range**(**const** *esp_partition_t* *partition, size_t *offset*, size_t *size*)

Erase part of the partition.

Return ESP_OK, if the range was erased successfully; ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if iterator or dst are NULL; ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if erase would go out of bounds of the partition; or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `offset`: Offset from the beginning of partition where erase operation should start. Must be aligned to 4 kilobytes.
- `size`: Size of the range which should be erased, in bytes. Must be divisible by 4 kilobytes.

esp_err_t **esp_partition_mmap**(**const** *esp_partition_t* *partition, size_t *offset*, size_t *size*, spi_flash_mmap_memory_t *memory*, **const** void **out_ptr*, spi_flash_mmap_handle_t *out_handle*)

Configure MMU to map partition into data memory.

Unlike spi_flash_mmap function, which requires a 64kB aligned base address, this function doesn't impose such a requirement. If offset results in a flash address which is not aligned to 64kB boundary, address will be rounded to the lower 64kB boundary, so that mapped region includes requested range. Pointer returned via out_ptr argument will be adjusted to point to the requested offset (not necessarily to the beginning of mmap-ed region).

To release mapped memory, pass handle returned via out_handle argument to spi_flash_munmap function.

Return ESP_OK, if successful

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to partition structure obtained using esp_partition_find_first or esp_partition_get. Must be non-NULL.
- `offset`: Offset from the beginning of partition where mapping should start.
- `size`: Size of the area to be mapped.
- `memory`: Memory space where the region should be mapped
- `out_ptr`: Output, pointer to the mapped memory region
- `out_handle`: Output, handle which should be used for spi_flash_munmap call

esp_err_t **esp_partition_get_sha256**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*, uint8_t **sha_256*)

Get SHA-256 digest for required partition.

For apps with SHA-256 appended to the app image, the result is the appended SHA-256 value for the app image content. The hash is verified before returning, if app content is invalid then the function returns ESP_ERR_IMAGE_INVALID. For apps without SHA-256 appended to the image, the result is the SHA-256 of all bytes in the app image. For other partition types, the result is the SHA-256 of the entire partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: In case of successful operation.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: The size was 0 or the sha_256 was NULL.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for sha256 operation.
- ESP_ERR_IMAGE_INVALID: App partition doesn't contain a valid app image.
- ESP_FAIL: An allocation error occurred.

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: Pointer to info for partition containing app or data. (fields: address, size and type, are required to be filled).
- `[out] sha_256`: Returned SHA-256 digest for a given partition.

bool **esp_partition_check_identity**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition_1*, **const** *esp_partition_t* **partition_2*)

Check for the identity of two partitions by SHA-256 digest.

Return

- True: In case of the two firmware is equal.
- False: Otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] partition_1`: Pointer to info for partition 1 containing app or data. (fields: address, size and type, are required to be filled).
- `[in] partition_2`: Pointer to info for partition 2 containing app or data. (fields: address, size and type, are required to be filled).

esp_err_t **esp_partition_register_external**(*esp_flash_t* **flash_chip*, size_t *offset*, size_t *size*, **const** char **label*, *esp_partition_type_t* *type*, *esp_partition_subtype_t* *subtype*, **const** *esp_partition_t* ***out_partition*)

Register a partition on an external flash chip.

This API allows designating certain areas of external flash chips (identified by the *esp_flash_t* structure) as partitions. This allows using them with components which access SPI flash through the esp_partition API.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL is enabled
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory allocation has failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the new partition overlaps another partition on the same flash chip
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if the partition doesn't fit into the flash chip size

Parameters

- `flash_chip`: Pointer to the structure identifying the flash chip
- `offset`: Address in bytes, where the partition starts
- `size`: Size of the partition in bytes

- `label`: Partition name
- `type`: One of the partition types (ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_*), or an integer. Note that applications can not be booted from external flash chips, so using ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP is not supported.
- `subtype`: One of the partition subtypes (ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_*), or an integer.
- `[out] out_partition`: Output, if non-NULL, receives the pointer to the resulting *esp_partition_t* structure

esp_err_t **esp_partition_deregister_external**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*)

Deregister the partition previously registered using esp_partition_register_external.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the partition pointer is not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the partition comes from the partition table
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the partition was not registered using esp_partition_register_external function.

Parameters

- `partition`: pointer to the partition structure obtained from esp_partition_register_external,

Structures

struct esp_partition_t

partition information structure

This is not the format in flash, that format is esp_partition_info_t.

However, this is the format used by this API.

Public Members

esp_flash_t ***flash_chip**

SPI flash chip on which the partition resides

esp_partition_type_t **type**

partition type (app/data)

esp_partition_subtype_t **subtype**

partition subtype

uint32_t **address**

starting address of the partition in flash

uint32_t **size**

size of the partition, in bytes

char **label**[17]

partition label, zero-terminated ASCII string

bool **encrypted**

flag is set to true if partition is encrypted

Macros

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_OTA(i)

Convenience macro to get esp_partition_subtype_t value for the i-th OTA partition.

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_partition_iterator_opaque_ ***esp_partition_iterator_t**

Opaque partition iterator type.

Enumerations

enum esp_partition_type_t

Partition type.

Note Partition types with integer value 0x00-0x3F are reserved for partition types defined by ESP-IDF. Any other integer value 0x40-0xFE can be used by individual applications, without restriction.

Values:

ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP = 0x00
Application partition type.

ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_DATA = 0x01
Data partition type.

enum esp_partition_subtype_t

Partition subtype.

Application-defined partition types (0x40-0xFE) can set any numeric subtype value.

Note These ESP-IDF-defined partition subtypes apply to partitions of type ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP and ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_DATA.

Values:

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY = 0x00
Factory application partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN = 0x10
Base for OTA partition subtypes.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_0 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 0
OTA partition 0.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_1 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 1
OTA partition 1.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_2 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 2
OTA partition 2.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_3 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 3
OTA partition 3.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_4 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 4
OTA partition 4.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_5 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 5
OTA partition 5.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_6 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 6
OTA partition 6.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_7 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 7
OTA partition 7.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_8 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 8
OTA partition 8.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_9 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 9
OTA partition 9.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_10 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 10
OTA partition 10.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_11 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 11
OTA partition 11.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_12 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 12
OTA partition 12.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_13 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 13
OTA partition 13.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_14 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 14
OTA partition 14.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_15 = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 15
OTA partition 15.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MAX = *ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN* + 16
Max subtype of OTA partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_TEST = 0x20
Test application partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_OTA = 0x00
OTA selection partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_PHY = 0x01
PHY init data partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS = 0x02
NVS partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_COREDUMP = 0x03
COREDUMP partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS_KEYS = 0x04
Partition for NVS keys.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_EFUSE_EM = 0x05
Partition for emulate eFuse bits.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_ESPHTTPD = 0x80
ESPHTTPD partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_FAT = 0x81
FAT partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_SPIFFS = 0x82
SPIFFS partition.

ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY = 0xff
Used to search for partitions with any subtype.

API Reference - Flash Encrypt

Header File

- bootloader_support/include/esp_flash_encrypt.h

Functions

static bool **esp_flash_encryption_enabled**(void)
Is flash encryption currently enabled in hardware?

Flash encryption is enabled if the FLASH_CRYPT_CNT efuse has an odd number of bits set.

Return true if flash encryption is enabled.

esp_err_t **esp_flash_encrypt_check_and_update**(void)

esp_err_t **esp_flash_encrypt_region**(uint32_t *src_addr*, size_t *data_length*)
Encrypt-in-place a block of flash sectors.

Note This function resets RTC_WDT between operations with sectors.

Return ESP_OK if all operations succeeded, ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL if SPI flash fails, ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT if flash times out.

Parameters

- `src_addr`: Source offset in flash. Should be multiple of 4096 bytes.
- `data_length`: Length of data to encrypt in bytes. Will be rounded up to next multiple of 4096 bytes.

void **esp_flash_write_protect_crypt_cnt**(void)

Write protect FLASH_CRYPT_CNT.

Intended to be called as a part of boot process if flash encryption is enabled but secure boot is not used. This should protect against serial re-flashing of an unauthorised code in absence of secure boot.

Note On ESP32 V3 only, write protecting FLASH_CRYPT_CNT will also prevent disabling UART Download Mode. If both are wanted, call esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode() before calling this function.

esp_flash_enc_mode_t **esp_get_flash_encryption_mode**(void)

Return the flash encryption mode.

The API is called during boot process but can also be called by application to check the current flash encryption mode of ESP32

Return

void **esp_flash_encryption_init_checks**(void)

Check the flash encryption mode during startup.

Verifies the flash encryption config during startup:

Note This function is called automatically during app startup, it doesn't need to be called from the app.

- Correct any insecure flash encryption settings if hardware Secure Boot is enabled.
- Log warnings if the efuse config doesn't match the project config in any way

Enumerations

enum esp_flash_enc_mode_t

Values:

ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DISABLED

ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_RELEASE

2.5.7 SPIFFS Filesystem

Overview

SPIFFS is a file system intended for SPI NOR flash devices on embedded targets. It supports wear levelling, file system consistency checks, and more.

Notes

- Currently, SPIFFS does not support directories, it produces a flat structure. If SPIFFS is mounted under `/spiffs`, then creating a file with the path `/spiffs/tmp/myfile.txt` will create a file called `/tmp/myfile.txt` in SPIFFS, instead of `myfile.txt` in the directory `/spiffs/tmp`.
- It is not a real-time stack. One write operation might take much longer than another.
- For now, it does not detect or handle bad blocks.

Tools

spiffsgen.py spiffsgen.py is a write-only Python SPIFFS implementation used to create filesystem images from the contents of a host folder. To use `spiffsgen.py`, open Terminal and run:

```
python spiffsgen.py <image_size> <base_dir> <output_file>
```

The required arguments are as follows:

- **image_size**: size of the partition onto which the created SPIFFS image will be flashed.
- **base_dir**: directory for which the SPIFFS image needs to be created.
- **output_file**: SPIFFS image output file.

There are also other arguments that control image generation. Documentation on these arguments can be found in the tool's help:

```
python spiffsgen.py --help
```

These optional arguments correspond to a possible SPIFFS build configuration. To generate the right image, please make sure that you use the same arguments/configuration as were used to build SPIFFS. As a guide, the help output indicates the SPIFFS build configuration to which the argument corresponds. In cases when these arguments are not specified, the default values shown in the help output will be used.

When the image is created, it can be flashed using `esptool.py` or `parttool.py`.

Aside from invoking the `spiffsgen.py` standalone by manually running it from the command line or a script, it is also possible to invoke `spiffsgen.py` directly from the build system by calling `spiffs_create_partition_image`.

Make:

```
SPIFFS_IMAGE_FLASH_IN_PROJECT := ...
SPIFFS_IMAGE_DEPENDS := ...
$(eval $(call spiffs_create_partition_image,<partition>,<base_dir>))
```

CMake:

```
spiffs_create_partition_image(<partition> <base_dir> [FLASH_IN_PROJECT] [DEPENDS␣
↪dep dep dep...])
```

This is more convenient as the build configuration is automatically passed to the tool, ensuring that the generated image is valid for that build. An example of this is while the *image_size* is required for the standalone invocation, only the *partition* name is required when using `spiffs_create_partition_image` –the image size is automatically obtained from the project's partition table.

Due to the differences in structure between Make and CMake, it is important to note that:

- for Make `spiffs_create_partition_image` must be called from the project Makefile
- for CMake `spiffs_create_partition_image` must be called from one of the component CMakeLists.txt files

Optionally, user can opt to have the image automatically flashed together with the app binaries, partition tables, etc. on `idf.py flash` or `make flash` by specifying `FLASH_IN_PROJECT`. For example,

in Make:

```
SPIFFS_IMAGE_FLASH_IN_PROJECT := 1
$(eval $(call spiffs_create_partition_image,<partition>,<base_dir>))
```

in CMake:

```
spiffs_create_partition_image(my_spiffs_partition my_folder FLASH_IN_PROJECT)
```

If FLASH_IN_PROJECT/SPIFFS_IMAGE_FLASH_IN_PROJECT is not specified, the image will still be generated, but you will have to flash it manually using `esptool.py`, `parttool.py`, or a custom build system target.

There are cases where the contents of the base directory itself is generated at build time. Users can use DEPENDS/SPIFFS_IMAGE_DEPENDS to specify targets that should be executed before generating the image.

in Make:

```
dep:
    ...

SPIFFS_IMAGE_DEPENDS := dep
$(eval $(call spiffs_create_partition_image,<partition>,<base_dir>))
```

in CMake:

```
add_custom_target(dep COMMAND ...)

spiffs_create_partition_image(my_spiffs_partition my_folder DEPENDS dep)
```

For an example, see storage/spiffsgen.

mkspiffs Another tool for creating SPIFFS partition images is mkspiffs. Similar to `spiffsgen.py`, it can be used to create an image from a given folder and then flash that image using `esptool.py`

For that, you need to obtain the following parameters:

- **Block Size**: 4096 (standard for SPI Flash)
- **Page Size**: 256 (standard for SPI Flash)
- **Image Size**: Size of the partition in bytes (can be obtained from a partition table)
- **Partition Offset**: Starting address of the partition (can be obtained from a partition table)

To pack a folder into a 1-Megabyte image, run:

```
mkspiffs -c [src_folder] -b 4096 -p 256 -s 0x100000 spiffs.bin
```

To flash the image onto ESP32-S2 at offset 0x110000, run:

```
python esptool.py --chip esp32s2 --port [port] --baud [baud] write_flash -z␣
↪0x110000 spiffs.bin
```

Notes on which SPIFFS tool to use The two tools presented above offer very similar functionality. However, there are reasons to prefer one over the other, depending on the use case.

Use `spiffsgen.py` in the following cases:

1. If you want to simply generate a SPIFFS image during the build. `spiffsgen.py` makes it very convenient by providing functions/commands from the build system itself.
2. If the host has no C/C++ compiler available, because `spiffsgen.py` does not require compilation.

Use `mkspiffs` in the following cases:

1. If you need to unpack SPIFFS images in addition to image generation. For now, it is not possible with `spiffsgen.py`.
2. If you have an environment where a Python interpreter is not available, but a host compiler is available. Otherwise, a pre-compiled `mkspiffs` binary can do the job. However, there is no build system integration for `mkspiffs` and the user has to do the corresponding work: compiling `mkspiffs` during build (if a pre-compiled binary is not used), creating build rules/targets for the output files, passing proper parameters to the tool, etc.

See also

- *Partition Table documentation*

Application Example

An example of using SPIFFS is provided in the storage/spiffs directory. This example initializes and mounts a SPIFFS partition, then writes and reads data from it using POSIX and C library APIs. See the README.md file in the example directory for more information.

High-level API Reference

Header File

- spiffs/include/esp_spiffs.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_spiffs_register**(**const** *esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t* **conf*)
Register and mount SPIFFS to VFS with given path prefix.

Return
- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if objects could not be allocated
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already mounted or partition is encrypted
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if partition for SPIFFS was not found
- ESP_FAIL if mount or format fails

Parameters
- `conf`: Pointer to *esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t* configuration structure

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_spiffs_unregister**(**const** char **partition_label*)
Unregister and unmount SPIFFS from VFS

Return
- ESP_OK if successful
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE already unregistered

Parameters
- `partition_label`: Same label as passed to esp_vfs_spiffs_register.

bool **esp_spiffs_mounted**(**const** char **partition_label*)
Check if SPIFFS is mounted

Return
- true if mounted
- false if not mounted

Parameters
- `partition_label`: Optional, label of the partition to check. If not specified, first partition with subtype=spiffs is used.

esp_err_t **esp_spiffs_format**(**const** char **partition_label*)
Format the SPIFFS partition

Return
- ESP_OK if successful
- ESP_FAIL on error

Parameters
- `partition_label`: Same label as passed to esp_vfs_spiffs_register.

esp_err_t **esp_spiffs_info**(**const** char **partition_label*, size_t **total_bytes*, size_t **used_bytes*)
Get information for SPIFFS

Return

- ESP_OK if success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not mounted

Parameters

- `partition_label`: Same label as passed to esp_vfs_spiffs_register
- `[out] total_bytes`: Size of the file system
- `[out] used_bytes`: Current used bytes in the file system

Structures

struct esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t

Configuration structure for esp_vfs_spiffs_register.

Public Members

const char ***base_path**

File path prefix associated with the filesystem.

const char ***partition_label**

Optional, label of SPIFFS partition to use. If set to NULL, first partition with subtype=spiffs will be used.

size_t **max_files**

Maximum files that could be open at the same time.

bool **format_if_mount_failed**

If true, it will format the file system if it fails to mount.

2.5.8 Virtual filesystem component

Overview

Virtual filesystem (VFS) component provides a unified interface for drivers which can perform operations on file-like objects. These can be real filesystems (FAT, SPIFFS, etc.) or device drivers which provide a file-like interface.

This component allows C library functions, such as fopen and fprintf, to work with FS drivers. At a high level, each FS driver is associated with some path prefix. When one of C library functions needs to open a file, the VFS component searches for the FS driver associated with the file path and forwards the call to that driver. VFS also forwards read, write, and other calls for the given file to the same FS driver.

For example, one can register a FAT filesystem driver with the `/fat` prefix and call `fopen("/fat/file.txt", "w")`. The VFS component will then call the function `open` of the FAT driver and pass the argument `/file.txt` to it together with appropriate mode flags. All subsequent calls to C library functions for the returned `FILE*` stream will also be forwarded to the FAT driver.

FS registration

To register an FS driver, an application needs to define an instance of the *`esp_vfs_t`* structure and populate it with function pointers to FS APIs:

```
esp_vfs_t myfs = {
    .flags = ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT,
    .write = &myfs_write,
    .open = &myfs_open,
    .fstat = &myfs_fstat,
    .close = &myfs_close,
    .read = &myfs_read,
};

ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data", &myfs, NULL));
```

Depending on the way how the FS driver declares its API functions, either `read`, `write`, etc., or `read_p`, `write_p`, etc., should be used.

Case 1: API functions are declared without an extra context pointer (the FS driver is a singleton):

```
ssize_t myfs_write(int fd, const void * data, size_t size);

// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .flags = ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT,
    .write = &myfs_write,
// ... other members initialized

// When registering FS, context pointer (third argument) is NULL:
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data", &myfs, NULL));
```

Case 2: API functions are declared with an extra context pointer (the FS driver supports multiple instances):

```
ssize_t myfs_write(myfs_t* fs, int fd, const void * data, size_t size);

// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .flags = ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR,
    .write_p = &myfs_write,
// ... other members initialized

// When registering FS, pass the FS context pointer into the third argument
// (hypothetical myfs_mount function is used for illustrative purposes)
myfs_t* myfs_inst1 = myfs_mount(partition1->offset, partition1->size);
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data1", &myfs, myfs_inst1));

// Can register another instance:
myfs_t* myfs_inst2 = myfs_mount(partition2->offset, partition2->size);
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_vfs_register("/data2", &myfs, myfs_inst2));
```

Synchronous input/output multiplexing Synchronous input/output multiplexing by `select()` is supported in the VFS component. The implementation works in the following way.

1. `select()` is called with file descriptors which could belong to various VFS drivers.
2. The file descriptors are divided into groups each belonging to one VFS driver.
3. The file descriptors belonging to non-socket VFS drivers are handed over to the given VFS drivers by `start_select()` described later on this page. This function represents the driver-specific implementation of `select()` for the given driver. This should be a non-blocking call which means the function should immediately return after setting up the environment for checking events related to the given file descriptors.
4. The file descriptors belonging to the socket VFS driver are handed over to the socket driver by `socket_select()` described later on this page. This is a blocking call which means that it will return only if there is an event related to socket file descriptors or a non-socket driver signals `socket_select()` to exit.
5. Results are collected from each VFS driver and all drivers are stopped by deinitiazation of the environment for checking events.
6. The `select()` call ends and returns the appropriate results.

Non-socket VFS drivers If you want to use `select()` with a file descriptor belonging to a non-socket VFS driver then you need to register the driver with functions `start_select()` and `end_select()` similarly to the following example:

```
// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .start_select = &uart_start_select,
    .end_select = &uart_end_select,
// ... other members initialized
```

`start_select()` is called for setting up the environment for detection of read/write/error conditions on file descriptors belonging to the given VFS driver.

`end_select()` is called to stop/deinitialize/free the environment which was setup by `start_select()`.

Note: `end_select()` might be called without a previous `start_select()` call in some rare circumstances. `end_select()` should fail gracefully if this is the case.

Please refer to the reference implementation for the UART peripheral in vfs/vfs_uart.c and most particularly to the functions *`esp_vfs_dev_uart_register()`*, `uart_start_select()`, and `uart_end_select()` for more information.

Please check the following examples that demonstrate the use of `select()` with VFS file descriptors:

- peripherals/uart/uart_select
- system/select

Socket VFS drivers A socket VFS driver is using its own internal implementation of `select()` and non-socket VFS drivers notify it upon read/write/error conditions.

A socket VFS driver needs to be registered with the following functions defined:

```
// In definition of esp_vfs_t:
    .socket_select = &lwip_select,
    .get_socket_select_semaphore = &lwip_get_socket_select_semaphore,
    .stop_socket_select = &lwip_stop_socket_select,
    .stop_socket_select_isr = &lwip_stop_socket_select_isr,
// ... other members initialized
```

`socket_select()` is the internal implementation of `select()` for the socket driver. It works only with file descriptors belonging to the socket VFS.

`get_socket_select_semaphore()` returns the signalization object (semaphore) which will be used in non-socket drivers to stop the waiting in `socket_select()`.

`stop_socket_select()` call is used to stop the waiting in `socket_select()` by passing the object returned by `get_socket_select_semaphore()`.

`stop_socket_select_isr()` has the same functionality as `stop_socket_select()` but it can be used from ISR.

Please see lwip/port/esp32/vfs_lwip.c for a reference socket driver implementation using LWIP.

Note: If you use `select()` for socket file descriptors only then you can enable the `CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT` option to reduce the code size and improve performance.

Note: Don't change the socket driver during an active `select()` call or you might experience some undefined behavior.

Paths

Each registered FS has a path prefix associated with it. This prefix can be considered as a "mount point" of this partition.

In case when mount points are nested, the mount point with the longest matching path prefix is used when opening the file. For instance, suppose that the following filesystems are registered in VFS:

- FS 1 on /data
- FS 2 on /data/static

Then:

- FS 1 will be used when opening a file called `/data/log.txt`
- FS 2 will be used when opening a file called `/data/static/index.html`
- Even if `/index.html"` does not exist in FS 2, FS 1 will *not* be searched for `/static/index.html`.

As a general rule, mount point names must start with the path separator (`/`) and must contain at least one character after path separator. However, an empty mount point name is also supported and might be used in cases when an application needs to provide a "fallback" filesystem or to override VFS functionality altogether. Such filesystem will be used if no prefix matches the path given.

VFS does not handle dots (`.`) in path names in any special way. VFS does not treat `..` as a reference to the parent directory. In the above example, using a path `/data/static/../log.txt` will not result in a call to FS 1 to open `/log.txt`. Specific FS drivers (such as FATFS) might handle dots in file names differently.

When opening files, the FS driver receives only relative paths to files. For example:

1. The `myfs` driver is registered with `/data` as a path prefix.
2. The application calls `fopen("/data/config.json", ...)`.
3. The VFS component calls `myfs_open("/config.json", ...)`.
4. The `myfs` driver opens the `/config.json` file.

VFS does not impose any limit on total file path length, but it does limit the FS path prefix to `ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX` characters. Individual FS drivers may have their own filename length limitations.

File descriptors

File descriptors are small positive integers from `0` to `FD_SETSIZE - 1`, where `FD_SETSIZE` is defined in newlib's `sys/types.h`. The largest file descriptors (configured by `CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS`) are reserved for sockets. The VFS component contains a lookup-table called `s_fd_table` for mapping global file descriptors to VFS driver indexes registered in the `s_vfs` array.

Standard IO streams (stdin, stdout, stderr)

If the menuconfig option `UART for console output` is not set to `None`, then `stdin`, `stdout`, and `stderr` are configured to read from, and write to, a UART. It is possible to use UART0 or UART1 for standard IO. By default, UART0 is used with 115200 baud rate; TX pin is GPIO1; RX pin is GPIO3. These parameters can be changed in menuconfig.

Writing to `stdout` or `stderr` will send characters to the UART transmit FIFO. Reading from `stdin` will retrieve characters from the UART receive FIFO.

By default, VFS uses simple functions for reading from and writing to UART. Writes busy-wait until all data is put into UART FIFO, and reads are non-blocking, returning only the data present in the FIFO. Due to this non-blocking read behavior, higher level C library calls, such as `fscanf("%d\n", &var);`, might not have desired results.

Applications which use the UART driver can instruct VFS to use the driver's interrupt driven, blocking read and write functions instead. This can be done using a call to the `esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_driver` function. It is also possible to revert to the basic non-blocking functions using a call to `esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_nonblocking`.

VFS also provides an optional newline conversion feature for input and output. Internally, most applications send and receive lines terminated by the LF ('' n'') character. Different terminal programs may require different line termination, such as CR or CRLF. Applications can configure this separately for input and output either via menuconfig, or by calls to the functions `esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_rx_line_endings` and `esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_tx_line_endings`.

Standard streams and FreeRTOS tasks `FILE` objects for `stdin`, `stdout`, and `stderr` are shared between all FreeRTOS tasks, but the pointers to these objects are stored in per-task `struct _reent`.

The following code is transferred to `fprintf(__getreent()->_stderr, "42\n");` by the preprocessor:

```
fprintf(stderr, "42\n");
```

The `__getreent()` function returns a per-task pointer to `struct _reent` in newlib libc. This structure is allocated on the TCB of each task. When a task is initialized, `_stdin`, `_stdout`, and `_stderr` members of `struct _reent` are set to the values of `_stdin`, `_stdout`, and `_stderr` of `_GLOBAL_REENT` (i.e., the structure which is used before FreeRTOS is started).

Such a design has the following consequences:

- It is possible to set `stdin`, `stdout`, and `stderr` for any given task without affecting other tasks, e.g., by doing `stdin = fopen("/dev/uart/1", "r")`.
- Closing default `stdin`, `stdout`, or `stderr` using `fclose` will close the `FILE` stream object, which will affect all other tasks.
- To change the default `stdin`, `stdout`, `stderr` streams for new tasks, modify `_GLOBAL_REENT->_stdin` (`_stdout`, `_stderr`) before creating the task.

API Reference

Header File

- vfs/include/esp_vfs.h

Functions

ssize_t **esp_vfs_write**(**struct** _reent *r, int *fd*, **const** void *data, size_t *size*)

These functions are to be used in newlib syscall table. They will be called by newlib when it needs to use any of the syscalls.

off_t **esp_vfs_lseek**(**struct** _reent *r, int *fd*, off_t *size*, int *mode*)

ssize_t **esp_vfs_read**(**struct** _reent *r, int *fd*, void *dst, size_t *size*)

int **esp_vfs_open**(**struct** _reent *r, **const** char *path, int *flags*, int *mode*)

int **esp_vfs_close**(**struct** _reent *r, int *fd*)

int **esp_vfs_fstat**(**struct** _reent *r, int *fd*, **struct** stat *st*)

int **esp_vfs_stat**(**struct** _reent *r, **const** char *path, **struct** stat *st*)

int **esp_vfs_link**(**struct** _reent *r, **const** char *n1, **const** char *n2*)

int **esp_vfs_unlink**(**struct** _reent *r, **const** char *path*)

int **esp_vfs_rename**(**struct** _reent *r, **const** char *src, **const** char *dst*)

int **esp_vfs_utime**(**const** char *path, **const struct** utimbuf *times*)

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_register**(**const** char *base_path, **const** *esp_vfs_t* *vfs, void *ctx*)

Register a virtual filesystem for given path prefix.

Return ESP_OK if successful, ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if too many VFSes are registered.

Parameters

- `base_path`: file path prefix associated with the filesystem. Must be a zero-terminated C string, may be empty. If not empty, must be up to ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX characters long, and at least 2 characters long. Name must start with a "/" and must not end with "/". For example, "/data" or "/dev/spi" are valid. These VFSes would then be called to handle file paths such as "/data/myfile.txt" or "/dev/spi/0". In the special case of an empty base_path, a "fallback" VFS is registered. Such VFS will handle paths which are not matched by any other registered VFS.
- `vfs`: Pointer to *esp_vfs_t*, a structure which maps syscalls to the filesystem driver functions. VFS component doesn't assume ownership of this pointer.
- `ctx`: If vfs->flags has ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR set, a pointer which should be passed to VFS functions. Otherwise, NULL.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_register_fd_range**(**const** *esp_vfs_t* **vfs*, void **ctx*, int *min_fd*, int *max_fd*)

Special case function for registering a VFS that uses a method other than open() to open new file descriptors from the interval <min_fd; max_fd).

This is a special-purpose function intended for registering LWIP sockets to VFS.

Return ESP_OK if successful, ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if too many VFSes are registered, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the file descriptor boundaries are incorrect.

Parameters

- `vfs`: Pointer to *esp_vfs_t*. Meaning is the same as for esp_vfs_register().
- `ctx`: Pointer to context structure. Meaning is the same as for esp_vfs_register().
- `min_fd`: The smallest file descriptor this VFS will use.
- `max_fd`: Upper boundary for file descriptors this VFS will use (the biggest file descriptor plus one).

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_register_with_id**(**const** *esp_vfs_t* **vfs*, void **ctx*, *esp_vfs_id_t* **vfs_id*)

Special case function for registering a VFS that uses a method other than open() to open new file descriptors. In comparison with esp_vfs_register_fd_range, this function doesn't pre-registers an interval of file descriptors. File descriptors can be registered later, by using esp_vfs_register_fd.

Return ESP_OK if successful, ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if too many VFSes are registered, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the file descriptor boundaries are incorrect.

Parameters

- `vfs`: Pointer to *esp_vfs_t*. Meaning is the same as for esp_vfs_register().
- `ctx`: Pointer to context structure. Meaning is the same as for esp_vfs_register().
- `vfs_id`: Here will be written the VFS ID which can be passed to esp_vfs_register_fd for registering file descriptors.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_unregister**(**const** char **base_path*)

Unregister a virtual filesystem for given path prefix

Return ESP_OK if successful, ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if VFS for given prefix hasn't been registered

Parameters

- `base_path`: file prefix previously used in esp_vfs_register call

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_register_fd**(*esp_vfs_id_t* *vfs_id*, int **fd*)

Special function for registering another file descriptor for a VFS registered by esp_vfs_register_with_id.

Return ESP_OK if the registration is successful, ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if too many file descriptors are registered, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the arguments are incorrect.

Parameters

- `vfs_id`: VFS identificator returned by esp_vfs_register_with_id.
- `fd`: The registered file descriptor will be written to this address.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_unregister_fd**(*esp_vfs_id_t* *vfs_id*, int *fd*)

Special function for unregistering a file descriptor belonging to a VFS registered by esp_vfs_register_with_id.

Return ESP_OK if the registration is successful, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the arguments are incorrect.

Parameters

- `vfs_id`: VFS identificator returned by esp_vfs_register_with_id.
- `fd`: File descriptor which should be unregistered.

int **esp_vfs_select**(int *nfds*, fd_set **readfds*, fd_set **writefds*, fd_set **errorfds*, **struct** timeval **timeout*)

Synchronous I/O multiplexing which implements the functionality of POSIX select() for VFS.

Return The number of descriptors set in the descriptor sets, or -1 when an error (specified by errno) have occurred.

Parameters

- `nfds`: Specifies the range of descriptors which should be checked. The first nfds descriptors will be checked in each set.
- `readfds`: If not NULL, then points to a descriptor set that on input specifies which descriptors should be checked for being ready to read, and on output indicates which descriptors are ready to read.

- `writefds`: If not NULL, then points to a descriptor set that on input specifies which descriptors should be checked for being ready to write, and on output indicates which descriptors are ready to write.
- `errorfds`: If not NULL, then points to a descriptor set that on input specifies which descriptors should be checked for error conditions, and on output indicates which descriptors have error conditions.
- `timeout`: If not NULL, then points to timeval structure which specifies the time period after which the functions should time-out and return. If it is NULL, then the function will not time-out.

void **esp_vfs_select_triggered**(*esp_vfs_select_sem_t sem*)

Notification from a VFS driver about a read/write/error condition.

This function is called when the VFS driver detects a read/write/error condition as it was requested by the previous call to start_select.

Parameters

- `sem`: semaphore structure which was passed to the driver by the start_select call

void **esp_vfs_select_triggered_isr**(*esp_vfs_select_sem_t sem*, BaseType_t **woken*)

Notification from a VFS driver about a read/write/error condition (ISR version)

This function is called when the VFS driver detects a read/write/error condition as it was requested by the previous call to start_select.

Parameters

- `sem`: semaphore structure which was passed to the driver by the start_select call
- `woken`: is set to pdTRUE if the function wakes up a task with higher priority

ssize_t **esp_vfs_pread**(int *fd*, void **dst*, size_t *size*, off_t *offset*)

Implements the VFS layer of POSIX pread()

Return A positive return value indicates the number of bytes read. -1 is return on failure and errno is set accordingly.

Parameters

- `fd`: File descriptor used for read
- `dst`: Pointer to the buffer where the output will be written
- `size`: Number of bytes to be read
- `offset`: Starting offset of the read

ssize_t **esp_vfs_pwrite**(int *fd*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*, off_t *offset*)

Implements the VFS layer of POSIX pwrite()

Return A positive return value indicates the number of bytes written. -1 is return on failure and errno is set accordingly.

Parameters

- `fd`: File descriptor used for write
- `src`: Pointer to the buffer from where the output will be read
- `size`: Number of bytes to write
- `offset`: Starting offset of the write

Structures

struct esp_vfs_select_sem_t

VFS semaphore type for select()

Public Members

bool **is_sem_local**

type of "sem" is SemaphoreHandle_t when true, defined by socket driver otherwise

void ***sem**

semaphore instance

struct esp_vfs_t

VFS definition structure.

This structure should be filled with pointers to corresponding FS driver functions.

VFS component will translate all FDs so that the filesystem implementation sees them starting at zero. The caller sees a global FD which is prefixed with an pre-filesystem-implementation.

Some FS implementations expect some state (e.g. pointer to some structure) to be passed in as a first argument. For these implementations, populate the members of this structure which have _p suffix, set flags member to ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR and provide the context pointer to esp_vfs_register function. If the implementation doesn't use this extra argument, populate the members without _p suffix and set flags member to ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT.

If the FS driver doesn't provide some of the functions, set corresponding members to NULL.

Public Members

int **flags**

ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR or ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT

ssize_t (***write_p**) (void *p, int fd, **const** void *data, size_t size)

Write with context pointer

ssize_t (***write**) (int fd, **const** void *data, size_t size)

Write without context pointer

off_t (***lseek_p**) (void *p, int fd, off_t size, int mode)

Seek with context pointer

off_t (***lseek**) (int fd, off_t size, int mode)

Seek without context pointer

ssize_t (***read_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, void *dst, size_t size)

Read with context pointer

ssize_t (***read**) (int fd, void *dst, size_t size)

Read without context pointer

ssize_t (***pread_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, void *dst, size_t size, off_t offset)

pread with context pointer

ssize_t (***pread**) (int fd, void *dst, size_t size, off_t offset)

pread without context pointer

ssize_t (***pwrite_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, **const** void *src, size_t size, off_t offset)

pwrite with context pointer

ssize_t (***pwrite**) (int fd, **const** void *src, size_t size, off_t offset)

pwrite without context pointer

int (***open_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *path, int flags, int mode)

open with context pointer

int (***open**) (**const** char *path, int flags, int mode)

open without context pointer

int (***close_p**) (void *ctx, int fd)

close with context pointer

int (***close**) (int fd)

close without context pointer

int (***fstat_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, **struct** *stat* *st)

fstat with context pointer

int (***fstat**) (int fd, **struct** *stat* *st)
fstat without context pointer

int (***stat_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *path, **struct** *stat* *st)
stat with context pointer

int (***stat**) (**const** char *path, **struct** *stat* *st)
stat without context pointer

int (***link_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *n1, **const** char *n2)
link with context pointer

int (***link**) (**const** char *n1, **const** char *n2)
link without context pointer

int (***unlink_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *path)
unlink with context pointer

int (***unlink**) (**const** char *path)
unlink without context pointer

int (***rename_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *src, **const** char *dst)
rename with context pointer

int (***rename**) (**const** char *src, **const** char *dst)
rename without context pointer

DIR *(***opendir_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *name)
opendir with context pointer

DIR *(***opendir**) (**const** char *name)
opendir without context pointer

struct dirent *(***readdir_p**) (void *ctx, DIR *pdir)
readdir with context pointer

struct dirent *(***readdir**) (DIR *pdir)
readdir without context pointer

int (***readdir_r_p**) (void *ctx, DIR *pdir, **struct** dirent *entry, **struct** dirent **out_dirent)
readdir_r with context pointer

int (***readdir_r**) (DIR *pdir, **struct** dirent *entry, **struct** dirent **out_dirent)
readdir_r without context pointer

long (***telldir_p**) (void *ctx, DIR *pdir)
telldir with context pointer

long (***telldir**) (DIR *pdir)
telldir without context pointer

void (***seekdir_p**) (void *ctx, DIR *pdir, long offset)
seekdir with context pointer

void (***seekdir**) (DIR *pdir, long offset)
seekdir without context pointer

int (***closedir_p**) (void *ctx, DIR *pdir)
closedir with context pointer

int (***closedir**) (DIR *pdir)
closedir without context pointer

int (***mkdir_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *name, mode_t mode)
mkdir with context pointer

int (***mkdir**) (**const** char *name, mode_t mode)
mkdir without context pointer

int (***rmdir_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *name)
rmdir with context pointer

int (***rmdir**) (**const** char *name)
rmdir without context pointer

int (***fcntl_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, int cmd, int arg)
fcntl with context pointer

int (***fcntl**) (int fd, int cmd, int arg)
fcntl without context pointer

int (***ioctl_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, int cmd, va_list args)
ioctl with context pointer

int (***ioctl**) (int fd, int cmd, va_list args)
ioctl without context pointer

int (***fsync_p**) (void *ctx, int fd)
fsync with context pointer

int (***fsync**) (int fd)
fsync without context pointer

int (***access_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *path, int amode)
access with context pointer

int (***access**) (**const** char *path, int amode)
access without context pointer

int (***truncate_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *path, off_t length)
truncate with context pointer

int (***truncate**) (**const** char *path, off_t length)
truncate without context pointer

int (***utime_p**) (void *ctx, **const** char *path, **const struct** utimbuf *times)
utime with context pointer

int (***utime**) (**const** char *path, **const struct** utimbuf *times)
utime without context pointer

int (***tcsetattr_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, int optional_actions, **const struct** termios *p)
tcsetattr with context pointer

int (***tcsetattr**) (int fd, int optional_actions, **const struct** termios *p)
tcsetattr without context pointer

int (***tcgetattr_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, **struct** termios *p)
tcgetattr with context pointer

int (***tcgetattr**) (int fd, **struct** termios *p)
tcgetattr without context pointer

int (***tcdrain_p**) (void *ctx, int fd)
tcdrain with context pointer

int (***tcdrain**) (int fd)
tcdrain without context pointer

int (***tcflush_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, int select)
tcflush with context pointer

int (***tcflush**) (int fd, int select)
tcflush without context pointer

int (***tcflow_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, int action)
tcflow with context pointer

int (***tcflow**) (int fd, int action)
tcflow without context pointer

pid_t (***tcgetsid_p**) (void *ctx, int fd)
tcgetsid with context pointer

pid_t (***tcgetsid**) (int fd)
tcgetsid without context pointer

int (***tcsendbreak_p**) (void *ctx, int fd, int duration)
tcsendbreak with context pointer

int (***tcsendbreak**) (int fd, int duration)
tcsendbreak without context pointer

esp_err_t (***start_select**) (int nfds, fd_set *readfds, fd_set *writefds, fd_set *exceptfds, *esp_vfs_select_sem_t* sem, void **end_select_args)
start_select is called for setting up synchronous I/O multiplexing of the desired file descriptors in the given VFS

int (***socket_select**) (int nfds, fd_set *readfds, fd_set *writefds, fd_set *errorfds, **struct** timeval *timeout)
socket select function for socket FDs with the functionality of POSIX select(); this should be set only for the socket VFS

void (***stop_socket_select**) (void *sem)
called by VFS to interrupt the socket_select call when select is activated from a non-socket VFS driver; set only for the socket driver

void (***stop_socket_select_isr**) (void *sem, BaseType_t *woken)
stop_socket_select which can be called from ISR; set only for the socket driver

void *(***get_socket_select_semaphore**) (void)
end_select is called to stop the I/O multiplexing and deinitialize the environment created by start_select for the given VFS

esp_err_t (***end_select**) (void *end_select_args)
get_socket_select_semaphore returns semaphore allocated in the socket driver; set only for the socket driver

Macros

MAX_FDS
Maximum number of (global) file descriptors.

ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX
Maximum length of path prefix (not including zero terminator)

ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT
Default value of flags member in *esp_vfs_t* structure.

ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR
Flag which indicates that FS needs extra context pointer in syscalls.

Type Definitions

typedef int **esp_vfs_id_t**

Header File

- vfs/include/esp_vfs_dev.h

Functions

void **esp_vfs_dev_uart_register**(void)
add /dev/uart virtual filesystem driver

This function is called from startup code to enable serial output

void **esp_vfs_dev_uart_set_rx_line_endings**(esp_line_endings_t *mode*)
Set the line endings expected to be received on UART.

This specifies the conversion between line endings received on UART and newlines ('' , LF) passed into stdin:

- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert CRLF to LF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert CR to LF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

Note this function is not thread safe w.r.t. reading from UART
Parameters
- `mode`: line endings expected on UART

void **esp_vfs_dev_uart_set_tx_line_endings**(esp_line_endings_t *mode*)
Set the line endings to sent to UART.

This specifies the conversion between newlines ('' , LF) on stdout and line endings sent over UART:

- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert LF to CRLF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert LF to CR
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

Note this function is not thread safe w.r.t. writing to UART
Parameters
- `mode`: line endings to send to UART

int **esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_rx_line_endings**(int *uart_num*, esp_line_endings_t *mode*)
Set the line endings expected to be received on specified UART.

This specifies the conversion between line endings received on UART and newlines ('' , LF) passed into stdin:

- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert CRLF to LF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert CR to LF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

Note this function is not thread safe w.r.t. reading from UART
Return 0 if successed, or -1 when an error (specified by errno) have occurred.
Parameters
- `uart_num`: the UART number
- `mode`: line endings to send to UART

int **esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_tx_line_endings**(int *uart_num*, esp_line_endings_t *mode*)
Set the line endings to sent to specified UART.

This specifies the conversion between newlines ('' , LF) on stdout and line endings sent over UART:

- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CRLF: convert LF to CRLF
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_CR: convert LF to CR
- ESP_LINE_ENDINGS_LF: no modification

Note this function is not thread safe w.r.t. writing to UART
Return 0 if successed, or -1 when an error (specified by errno) have occurred.
Parameters
- `uart_num`: the UART number
- `mode`: line endings to send to UART

void **esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_nonblocking**(int *uart_num*)
set VFS to use simple functions for reading and writing UART Read is non-blocking, write is busy waiting until TX FIFO has enough space. These functions are used by default.

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART peripheral number

void **`esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_driver`**(int *uart_num*)

set VFS to use UART driver for reading and writing

Note application must configure UART driver before calling these functions With these functions, read and write are blocking and interrupt-driven.

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART peripheral number

2.5.9 Wear Levelling API

Overview

Most of flash memory and especially SPI flash that is used in ESP32-S2 has a sector-based organization and also has a limited number of erase/modification cycles per memory sector. The wear levelling component helps to distribute wear and tear among sectors more evenly without requiring any attention from the user.

The wear levelling component provides API functions related to reading, writing, erasing, and memory mapping of data in external SPI flash through the partition component. The component also has higher-level API functions which work with the FAT filesystem defined in *FAT filesystem*.

The wear levelling component, together with the FAT FS component, uses FAT FS sectors of 4096 bytes, which is a standard size for flash memory. With this size, the component shows the best performance but needs additional memory in RAM.

To save internal memory, the component has two additional modes which both use sectors of 512 bytes:

- **Performance mode.** Erase sector operation data is stored in RAM, the sector is erased, and then data is copied back to flash memory. However, if a device is powered off for any reason, all 4096 bytes of data is lost.
- **Safety mode.** The data is first saved to flash memory, and after the sector is erased, the data is saved back. If a device is powered off, the data can be recovered as soon as the device boots up.

The default settings are as follows: - Sector size is 512 bytes - Performance mode

You can change the settings through the configuration menu.

The wear levelling component does not cache data in RAM. The write and erase functions modify flash directly, and flash contents are consistent when the function returns.

Wear Levelling access API functions

This is the set of API functions for working with data in flash:

- `wl_mount` - initializes the wear levelling module and mounts the specified partition
- `wl_unmount` - unmounts the partition and deinitializes the wear levelling module
- `wl_erase_range` - erases a range of addresses in flash
- `wl_write` - writes data to a partition
- `wl_read` - reads data from a partition
- `wl_size` - returns the size of available memory in bytes
- `wl_sector_size` - returns the size of one sector

As a rule, try to avoid using raw wear levelling functions and use filesystem-specific functions instead.

Memory Size

The memory size is calculated in the wear levelling module based on partition parameters. The module uses some sectors of flash for internal data.

See also

- *FAT Filesystem*
- *Partition Table documentation*

Application Example

An example which combines the wear levelling driver with the FATFS library is provided in the storage/wear_levelling directory. This example initializes the wear levelling driver, mounts FATFS partition, as well as writes and reads data from it using POSIX and C library APIs. See the storage/wear_levelling/README.md file for more information.

High level API Reference

Header Files

- fatfs/vfs/esp_vfs_fat.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount**(**const** char **base_path*, **const** char **partition_label*, **const** *esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t* **mount_config*, *wl_handle_t* **wl_handle*)

Convenience function to initialize FAT filesystem in SPI flash and register it in VFS.

This is an all-in-one function which does the following:

- finds the partition with defined partition_label. Partition label should be configured in the partition table.
- initializes flash wear levelling library on top of the given partition
- mounts FAT partition using FATFS library on top of flash wear levelling library
- registers FATFS library with VFS, with prefix given by base_prefix variable

This function is intended to make example code more compact.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the partition table does not contain FATFS partition with given label
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount was already called
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory can not be allocated
- ESP_FAIL if partition can not be mounted
- other error codes from wear levelling library, SPI flash driver, or FATFS drivers

Parameters

- `base_path`: path where FATFS partition should be mounted (e.g. "/spiflash")
- `partition_label`: label of the partition which should be used
- `mount_config`: pointer to structure with extra parameters for mounting FATFS
- `[out] wl_handle`: wear levelling driver handle

struct esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t

Configuration arguments for esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount and esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount functions.

Public Members

bool **format_if_mount_failed**

If FAT partition can not be mounted, and this parameter is true, create partition table and format the filesystem.

int **max_files**

Max number of open files.

size_t **allocation_unit_size**

If format_if_mount_failed is set, and mount fails, format the card with given allocation unit size. Must

be a power of 2, between sector size and 128 * sector size. For SD cards, sector size is always 512 bytes. For wear_levelling, sector size is determined by CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE option.

Using larger allocation unit size will result in higher read/write performance and higher overhead when storing small files.

Setting this field to 0 will result in allocation unit set to the sector size.

esp_err_t **esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_unmount**(**const** char **base_path*, *wl_handle_t wl_handle*)

Unmount FAT filesystem and release resources acquired using esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount hasn't been called

Parameters

- `base_path`: path where partition should be registered (e.g. "/spiflash")
- `wl_handle`: wear levelling driver handle returned by esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount

Mid level API Reference

Header File

- wear_levelling/include/wear_levelling.h

Functions

esp_err_t **wl_mount**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*, *wl_handle_t* **out_handle*)

Mount WL for defined partition.

Return

- ESP_OK, if the allocation was successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if WL allocation was unsuccessful;
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM, if there was no memory to allocate WL components;

Parameters

- `partition`: that will be used for access
- `out_handle`: handle of the WL instance

esp_err_t **wl_unmount**(*wl_handle_t handle*)

Unmount WL for defined partition.

Return

- ESP_OK, if the operation completed successfully;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `handle`: WL partition handle

esp_err_t **wl_erase_range**(*wl_handle_t handle*, size_t *start_addr*, size_t *size*)

Erase part of the WL storage.

Return

- ESP_OK, if the range was erased successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if iterator or dst are NULL;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if erase would go out of bounds of the partition;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `handle`: WL handle that are related to the partition
- `start_addr`: Address where erase operation should start. Must be aligned to the result of function wl_sector_size(···).
- `size`: Size of the range which should be erased, in bytes. Must be divisible by result of function wl_sector_size(···)..

esp_err_t **wl_write**(*wl_handle_t handle*, size_t *dest_addr*, **const** void **src*, size_t *size*)

Write data to the WL storage.

Before writing data to flash, corresponding region of flash needs to be erased. This can be done using wl_erase_range function.

Note Prior to writing to WL storage, make sure it has been erased with wl_erase_range call.

Return

- ESP_OK, if data was written successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if dst_offset exceeds partition size;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if write would go out of bounds of the partition;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `handle`: WL handle that are related to the partition
- `dest_addr`: Address where the data should be written, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `src`: Pointer to the source buffer. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least 'size' bytes long.
- `size`: Size of data to be written, in bytes.

esp_err_t **wl_read**(*wl_handle_t handle*, size_t *src_addr*, void **dest*, size_t *size*)

Read data from the WL storage.

Return

- ESP_OK, if data was read successfully;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if src_offset exceeds partition size;
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE, if read would go out of bounds of the partition;
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `handle`: WL module instance that was initialized before
- `dest`: Pointer to the buffer where data should be stored. Pointer must be non-NULL and buffer must be at least 'size' bytes long.
- `src_addr`: Address of the data to be read, relative to the beginning of the partition.
- `size`: Size of data to be read, in bytes.

size_t **wl_size**(*wl_handle_t handle*)

Get size of the WL storage.

Return usable size, in bytes

Parameters

- `handle`: WL module handle that was initialized before

size_t **wl_sector_size**(*wl_handle_t handle*)

Get sector size of the WL instance.

Return sector size, in bytes

Parameters

- `handle`: WL module handle that was initialized before

Macros

WL_INVALID_HANDLE

Type Definitions

typedef int32_t **wl_handle_t**

wear levelling handle

Code examples for this API section are provided in the storage directory of ESP-IDF examples.

2.6 System API

2.6.1 App Image Format

An application image consists of the following structures:

1. The *esp_image_header_t* structure describes the mode of SPI flash and the count of memory segments.
2. The *esp_image_segment_header_t* structure describes each segment, its length, and its location in ESP32-S2' s memory, followed by the data with a length of `data_len`. The data offset for each segment in the image is calculated in the following way:

- offset for 0 Segment = sizeof(*esp_image_header_t*) + sizeof(*esp_image_segment_header_t*).
- offset for 1 Segment = offset for 0 Segment + length of 0 Segment + sizeof(*esp_image_segment_header_t*).
- offset for 2 Segment = offset for 1 Segment + length of 1 Segment + sizeof(*esp_image_segment_header_t*).
- ...

The count of each segment is defined in the `segment_count` field that is stored in *esp_image_header_t*. The count cannot be more than `ESP_IMAGE_MAX_SEGMENTS`.

To get the list of your image segments, please run the following command:

```
esptool.py --chip esp32s2 image_info build/app.bin
```

```
esptool.py v2.3.1
Image version: 1
Entry point: 40080ea4
13 segments
Segment 1: len 0x13ce0 load 0x3f400020 file_offs 0x00000018 SOC_DROM
Segment 2: len 0x00000 load 0x3ff80000 file_offs 0x00013d00 SOC_RTC_DRAM
Segment 3: len 0x00000 load 0x3ff80000 file_offs 0x00013d08 SOC_RTC_DRAM
Segment 4: len 0x028e0 load 0x3ffb0000 file_offs 0x00013d10 DRAM
Segment 5: len 0x00000 load 0x3ffb28e0 file_offs 0x000165f8 DRAM
Segment 6: len 0x00400 load 0x40080000 file_offs 0x00016600 SOC_IRAM
Segment 7: len 0x09600 load 0x40080400 file_offs 0x00016a08 SOC_IRAM
Segment 8: len 0x62e4c load 0x400d0018 file_offs 0x00020010 SOC_IROM
Segment 9: len 0x06cec load 0x40089a00 file_offs 0x00082e64 SOC_IROM
Segment 10: len 0x00000 load 0x400c0000 file_offs 0x00089b58 SOC_RTC_IRAM
Segment 11: len 0x00004 load 0x50000000 file_offs 0x00089b60 SOC_RTC_DATA
Segment 12: len 0x00000 load 0x50000004 file_offs 0x00089b6c SOC_RTC_DATA
Segment 13: len 0x00000 load 0x50000004 file_offs 0x00089b74 SOC_RTC_DATA
Checksum: e8 (valid)Validation Hash:␣
↪407089ca0eae2bbf83b4120979d3354b1c938a49cb7a0c997f240474ef2ec76b (valid)
```

You can also see the information on segments in the IDF logs while your application is booting:

```
I (443) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00020020 vaddr=0x3f400020 size=0x13ce0 (␣
↪81120) map
I (489) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x00033d08 vaddr=0x3ff80000 size=0x00000 ( 0)␣
↪load
I (530) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x00033d10 vaddr=0x3ff80000 size=0x00000 ( 0)␣
↪load
I (571) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x00033d18 vaddr=0x3ffb0000 size=0x028e0 (␣
↪10464) load
I (612) esp_image: segment 4: paddr=0x00036600 vaddr=0x3ffb28e0 size=0x00000 ( 0)␣
↪load
I (654) esp_image: segment 5: paddr=0x00036608 vaddr=0x40080000 size=0x00400 (␣
↪1024) load
I (695) esp_image: segment 6: paddr=0x00036a10 vaddr=0x40080400 size=0x09600 (␣
↪38400) load
I (737) esp_image: segment 7: paddr=0x00040018 vaddr=0x400d0018 size=0x62e4c␣
↪(405068) map
I (847) esp_image: segment 8: paddr=0x000a2e6c vaddr=0x40089a00 size=0x06cec (␣
↪27884) load
I (888) esp_image: segment 9: paddr=0x000a9b60 vaddr=0x400c0000 size=0x00000 ( 0)␣
↪load
I (929) esp_image: segment 10: paddr=0x000a9b68 vaddr=0x50000000 size=0x00004 ( 4)␣
↪load
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
I (971) esp_image: segment 11: paddr=0x000a9b74 vaddr=0x50000004 size=0x00000 ( 0)␣
↪load
I (1012) esp_image: segment 12: paddr=0x000a9b7c vaddr=0x50000004 size=0x00000 (␣
↪0) load
```

For more details on the type of memory segments and their address ranges, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *System and Memory* > *Internal Memory* [PDF].

3. The image has a single checksum byte after the last segment. This byte is written on a sixteen byte padded boundary, so the application image might need padding.
4. If the `hash_appended` field from *`esp_image_header_t`* is set then a SHA256 checksum will be appended. The value of SHA256 is calculated on the range from first byte and up to this field. The length of this field is 32 bytes.
5. If the options *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_SCHEME* is set to ECDSA then the application image will have additional 68 bytes for an ECDSA signature, which includes:

- version word (4 bytes),
- signature data (64 bytes).

Application Description

The `DROM` segment starts with the *`esp_app_desc_t`* structure which carries specific fields describing the application:

- `secure_version` - see *Anti-rollback*.
- `version` - see *App version*. *
- `project_name` is filled from `PROJECT_NAME`. *
- `time` and `date` - compile time and date.
- `idf_ver` - version of ESP-IDF. *
- `app_elf_sha256` - contains sha256 for the elf application file.

* - The maximum length is 32 characters, including null-termination character. For example, if the length of `PROJECT_NAME` exceeds 32 characters, the excess characters will be disregarded.

This structure is useful for identification of images uploaded OTA because it has a fixed offset = sizeof(*`esp_image_header_t`*) + sizeof(*`esp_image_segment_header_t`*). As soon as a device receives the first fragment containing this structure, it has all the information to determine whether the update should be continued or not.

Adding a Custom Structure to an Application

Customer also has the opportunity to have similar structure with a fixed offset relative to the beginning of the image. The following pattern can be used to add a custom structure to your image:

```
const __attribute__((section(".rodata_custom_desc"))) esp_custom_app_desc_t custom_
↪app_desc = { ... }
```

Offset for custom structure is sizeof(*`esp_image_header_t`*) + sizeof(*`esp_image_segment_header_t`*) + sizeof(*`esp_app_desc_t`*).

To guarantee that the custom structure is located in the image even if it is not used, you need to add:

- For Make: add `COMPONENT_ADD_LDFLAGS += -u custom_app_desc` into `component.mk`
- For Cmake: add `target_link_libraries(${COMPONENT_TARGET} "-u custom_app_desc")` into `CMakeLists.txt`

API Reference

Header File

- bootloader_support/include/esp_app_format.h

Structures

struct esp_image_header_t

Main header of binary image.

Public Members

uint8_t **magic**

Magic word ESP_IMAGE_HEADER_MAGIC

uint8_t **segment_count**

Count of memory segments

uint8_t **spi_mode**

flash read mode (esp_image_spi_mode_t as uint8_t)

uint8_t **spi_speed** : 4

flash frequency (esp_image_spi_freq_t as uint8_t)

uint8_t **spi_size** : 4

flash chip size (esp_image_flash_size_t as uint8_t)

uint32_t **entry_addr**

Entry address

uint8_t **wp_pin**

WP pin when SPI pins set via efuse (read by ROM bootloader, the IDF bootloader uses software to configure the WP pin and sets this field to 0xEE=disabled)

uint8_t **spi_pin_drv**[3]

Drive settings for the SPI flash pins (read by ROM bootloader)

esp_chip_id_t **chip_id**

Chip identification number

uint8_t **min_chip_rev**

Minimum chip revision supported by image

uint8_t **reserved**[8]

Reserved bytes in additional header space, currently unused

uint8_t **hash_appended**

If 1, a SHA256 digest "simple hash" (of the entire image) is appended after the checksum. Included in image length. This digest is separate to secure boot and only used for detecting corruption. For secure boot signed images, the signature is appended after this (and the simple hash is included in the signed data).

struct esp_image_segment_header_t

Header of binary image segment.

Public Members

uint32_t **load_addr**

Address of segment

uint32_t **data_len**

Length of data

struct esp_app_desc_t

Description about application.

Public Members

uint32_t **magic_word**
Magic word ESP_APP_DESC_MAGIC_WORD

uint32_t **secure_version**
Secure version

uint32_t **reserv1**[2]
reserv1

char **version**[32]
Application version

char **project_name**[32]
Project name

char **time**[16]
Compile time

char **date**[16]
Compile date

char **idf_ver**[32]
Version IDF

uint8_t **app_elf_sha256**[32]
sha256 of elf file

uint32_t **reserv2**[20]
reserv2

Macros

ESP_IMAGE_HEADER_MAGIC
The magic word for the *esp_image_header_t* structure.

ESP_IMAGE_MAX_SEGMENTS
Max count of segments in the image.

ESP_APP_DESC_MAGIC_WORD
The magic word for the esp_app_desc structure that is in DROM.

Enumerations

enum esp_chip_id_t
ESP chip ID.

Values:

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32 = 0x0000
chip ID: ESP32

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S2 = 0x0002
chip ID: ESP32-S2

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32C3 = 0x0005
chip ID: ESP32-C3

ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S3 = 0x0006
chip ID: ESP32-S3

ESP_CHIP_ID_INVALID = 0xFFFF
Invalid chip ID (we defined it to make sure the esp_chip_id_t is 2 bytes size)

enum esp_image_spi_mode_t
SPI flash mode, used in *esp_image_header_t*.

Values:

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_QIO
SPI mode QIO

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_QOUT
SPI mode QOUT

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_DIO
SPI mode DIO

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_DOUT
SPI mode DOUT

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_FAST_READ
SPI mode FAST_READ

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_SLOW_READ
SPI mode SLOW_READ

enum esp_image_spi_freq_t
SPI flash clock frequency.

Values:

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_40M
SPI clock frequency 40 MHz

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_26M
SPI clock frequency 26 MHz

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_20M
SPI clock frequency 20 MHz

ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_80M = 0xF
SPI clock frequency 80 MHz

enum esp_image_flash_size_t
Supported SPI flash sizes.

Values:

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_1MB = 0
SPI flash size 1 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_2MB
SPI flash size 2 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_4MB
SPI flash size 4 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_8MB
SPI flash size 8 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_16MB
SPI flash size 16 MB

ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_MAX
SPI flash size MAX

2.6.2 Application Level Tracing

Overview

IDF provides useful feature for program behaviour analysis: application level tracing. It is implemented in the corresponding library and can be enabled via menuconfig. This feature allows to transfer arbitrary data between host and ESP32-S2 via JTAG interface with small overhead on program execution. Developers can use this library to send application specific state of execution to the host and receive commands or other type of info in the opposite direction at runtime. The main use cases of this library are:

1. Collecting application specific data, see *Application Specific Tracing*
2. Lightweight logging to the host, see *Logging to Host*
3. System behaviour analysis, see *System Behavior Analysis with SEGGER SystemView*

API Reference

Header File

- app_trace/include/esp_app_trace.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_init** (void)

Initializes application tracing module.

Note Should be called before any esp_apptrace_xxx call.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

void **esp_apptrace_down_buffer_config** (uint8_t **buf*, uint32_t *size*)

Configures down buffer.

Note Needs to be called before initiating any data transfer using esp_apptrace_buffer_get and esp_apptrace_write. This function does not protect internal data by lock.

Parameters

- `buf`: Address of buffer to use for down channel (host to target) data.
- `size`: Size of the buffer.

uint8_t ***esp_apptrace_buffer_get** (*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, uint32_t *size*, uint32_t *tmo*)

Allocates buffer for trace data. After data in buffer are ready to be sent off esp_apptrace_buffer_put must be called to indicate it.

Return non-NULL on success, otherwise NULL.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to send data.
- `size`: Size of data to write to trace buffer.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_buffer_put** (*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, uint8_t **ptr*, uint32_t *tmo*)

Indicates that the data in buffer are ready to be sent off. This function is a counterpart of and must be preceeded by esp_apptrace_buffer_get.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to send data. Should be identical to the same parameter in call to esp_apptrace_buffer_get.
- `ptr`: Address of trace buffer to release. Should be the value returned by call to esp_apptrace_buffer_get.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_write** (*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, **const** void **data*, uint32_t *size*, uint32_t *tmo*)

Writes data to trace buffer.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to send data.
- `data`: Address of data to write to trace buffer.
- `size`: Size of data to write to trace buffer.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

int **esp_apptrace_vprintf_to** (*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, uint32_t *tmo*, **const** char **fmt*, va_list *ap*)

vprintf-like function to sent log messages to host via specified HW interface.

Return Number of bytes written.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to send data.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.
- `fmt`: Address of format string.
- `ap`: List of arguments.

int **esp_apptrace_vprintf**(**const** char *_fmt_, va_list _ap_)

vprintf-like function to sent log messages to host.

Return Number of bytes written.

Parameters

- `fmt`: Address of format string.
- `ap`: List of arguments.

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_flush**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t* _dest_, uint32_t _tmo_)

Flushes remaining data in trace buffer to host.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to flush data on.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_flush_nolock**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t* _dest_, uint32_t _min_sz_, uint32_t _tmo_)

Flushes remaining data in trace buffer to host without locking internal data. This is special version of esp_apptrace_flush which should be called from panic handler.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to flush data on.
- `min_sz`: Threshold for flushing data. If current filling level is above this value, data will be flushed. TRAX destinations only.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_read**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t* _dest_, void *_data_, uint32_t *_size_, uint32_t _tmo_)

Reads host data from trace buffer.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to read the data on.
- `data`: Address of buffer to put data from trace buffer.
- `size`: Pointer to store size of read data. Before call to this function pointed memory must hold requested size of data
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

uint8_t ***esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t* _dest_, uint32_t *_size_, uint32_t _tmo_)

Retrieves incoming data buffer if any. After data in buffer are processed esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put must be called to indicate it.

Return non-NULL on success, otherwise NULL.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to receive data.
- `size`: Address to store size of available data in down buffer. Must be initialized with requested value.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

esp_err_t **esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t* _dest_, uint8_t *_ptr_, uint32_t _tmo_)

Indicates that the data in down buffer are processed. This function is a counterpart of and must be preceeded by esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get.

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to receive data. Should be identical to the same parameter in call to esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get.

- `ptr`: Address of trace buffer to release. Should be the value returned by call to esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get.
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinitely.

bool **esp_apptrace_host_is_connected**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*)

Checks whether host is connected.

Return true if host is connected, otherwise false

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.

void ***esp_apptrace_fopen**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, **const** char **path*, **const** char **mode*)

Opens file on host. This function has the same semantic as 'fopen' except for the first argument.

Return non zero file handle on success, otherwise 0

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.
- `path`: Path to file.
- `mode`: Mode string. See fopen for details.

int **esp_apptrace_fclose**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, void **stream*)

Closes file on host. This function has the same semantic as 'fclose' except for the first argument.

Return Zero on success, otherwise non-zero. See fclose for details.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.
- `stream`: File handle returned by esp_apptrace_fopen.

size_t **esp_apptrace_fwrite**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, **const** void **ptr*, size_t *size*, size_t *nmemb*, void **stream*)

Writes to file on host. This function has the same semantic as 'fwrite' except for the first argument.

Return Number of written items. See fwrite for details.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.
- `ptr`: Address of data to write.
- `size`: Size of an item.
- `nmemb`: Number of items to write.
- `stream`: File handle returned by esp_apptrace_fopen.

size_t **esp_apptrace_fread**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, void **ptr*, size_t *size*, size_t *nmemb*, void **stream*)

Read file on host. This function has the same semantic as 'fread' except for the first argument.

Return Number of read items. See fread for details.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.
- `ptr`: Address to store read data.
- `size`: Size of an item.
- `nmemb`: Number of items to read.
- `stream`: File handle returned by esp_apptrace_fopen.

int **esp_apptrace_fseek**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, void **stream*, long *offset*, int *whence*)

Set position indicator in file on host. This function has the same semantic as 'fseek' except for the first argument.

Return Zero on success, otherwise non-zero. See fseek for details.

Parameters

- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.
- `stream`: File handle returned by esp_apptrace_fopen.
- `offset`: Offset. See fseek for details.
- `whence`: Position in file. See fseek for details.

int **esp_apptrace_ftell**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*, void **stream*)

Get current position indicator for file on host. This function has the same semantic as 'ftell' except for the

first argument.

Return Current position in file. See ftell for details.
Parameters
- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.
- `stream`: File handle returned by esp_apptrace_fopen.

int **esp_apptrace_fstop**(*esp_apptrace_dest_t dest*)
Indicates to the host that all file operations are completed. This function should be called after all file operations are finished and indicate to the host that it can perform cleanup operations (close open files etc.).

Return ESP_OK on success, otherwise see esp_err_t
Parameters
- `dest`: Indicates HW interface to use.

void **esp_gcov_dump**(void)
Triggers gcov info dump. This function waits for the host to connect to target before dumping data.

Enumerations

enum esp_apptrace_dest_t
Application trace data destinations bits.

Values:

ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX = 0x1
JTAG destination.

ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_UART0 = 0x2
UART destination.

Header File

- app_trace/include/esp_sysview_trace.h

Functions

static *esp_err_t* **esp_sysview_flush**(uint32_t *tmo*)
Flushes remaining data in SystemView trace buffer to host.

Return ESP_OK.
Parameters
- `tmo`: Timeout for operation (in us). Use ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE to wait indefinetly.

int **esp_sysview_vprintf**(**const** char **format*, va_list *args*)
vprintf-like function to sent log messages to the host.

Return Number of bytes written.
Parameters
- `format`: Address of format string.
- `args`: List of arguments.

esp_err_t **esp_sysview_heap_trace_start**(uint32_t *tmo*)
Starts SystemView heap tracing.

Return ESP_OK on success, ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT if operation has been timed out.
Parameters
- `tmo`: Timeout (in us) to wait for the host to be connected. Use -1 to wait forever.

esp_err_t **esp_sysview_heap_trace_stop**(void)
Stops SystemView heap tracing.

Return ESP_OK.

void **esp_sysview_heap_trace_alloc**(void **addr*, uint32_t *size*, **const** void **callers*)
Sends heap allocation event to the host.

Parameters

- `addr`: Address of allocated block.
- `size`: Size of allocated block.
- `callers`: Pointer to array with callstack addresses. Array size must be CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH.

void **esp_sysview_heap_trace_free**(void *addr, **const** void *callers)

Sends heap de-allocation event to the host.

Parameters

- `addr`: Address of de-allocated block.
- `callers`: Pointer to array with callstack addresses. Array size must be CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH.

2.6.3 The Async memcpy API

Overview

ESP32-S2 has a DMA engine which can help to offload internal memory copy operations from the CPU in a asynchronous way.

The async memcpy API wraps all DMA configurations and operations, the signature of *esp_async_memcpy()* is almost the same to the standard libc one.

Thanks to the benefit of the DMA, we don't have to wait for each memory copy to be done before we issue another memcpy request. By the way, it's still possible to know when memcpy is finished by listening in the memcpy callback function.

Note: Memory copy from/to external PSRAM is not supported on ESP32-S2, *esp_async_memcpy()* will abort returning an error if buffer address is not in SRAM.

Configure and Install driver

esp_async_memcpy_install() is used to install the driver with user's configuration. Please note that async memcpy has to be called with the handle returned from *esp_async_memcpy_install()*.

Driver configuration is described in *async_memcpy_config_t*: `backlog`: This is used to configured the maximum number of DMA operation that can be working at the background at the same time. `flags`: This is used to enable some special driver features.

ASYNC_MEMCPY_DEFAULT_CONFIG provides a default configuration, which specifies the backlog to 8.

```
async_memcpy_config_t config = ASYNC_MEMCPY_DEFAULT_CONFIG();
// update the maximum data stream supported by underlying DMA engine
config.backlog = 16;
async_memcpy_t driver = NULL;
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_async_memcpy_install(&config, &driver)); // install driver,␣
↪return driver handle
```

Send memory copy request

esp_async_memcpy() is the API to send memory copy request to DMA engine. It must be called after driver is installed successfully. This API is thread safe, so it can be called from different tasks.

Different from the libc version of *memcpy*, user should also pass a callback to *esp_async_memcpy()*, if it's necessary to be notified when the memory copy is done. The callback is executed in the ISR context, make sure you won't violate the the restriction applied to ISR handler.

Besides that, the callback function should reside in IRAM space by applying *IRAM_ATTR* attribute. The prototype of the callback function is *async_memcpy_isr_cb_t*, please note that, the callback function should return true if it wakes up a high priority task by some API like `xSemaphoreGiveFromISR()`.

```
Semphr_Handle_t semphr; //already initialized in somewhere

// Callback implementation, running in ISR context
static IRAM_ATTR bool my_async_memcpy_cb(async_memcpy_t mcp_hdl, async_memcpy_
↪event_t *event, void *cb_args)
{
    SemaphoreHandle_t sem = (SemaphoreHandle_t)cb_args;
    BaseType_t high_task_wakeup = pdFALSE;
    SemphrGiveInISR(semphr, &high_task_wakeup); // high_task_wakeup set to pdTRUE␣
↪if some high priority task unblocked
    return high_task_wakeup == pdTRUE;
}

// Called from user's context
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(esp_async_memcpy(driver_handle, to, from, copy_len, my_async_
↪memcpy_cb, my_semaphore));
//Do something else here
SemphrTake(my_semaphore, ...); //wait until the buffer copy is done
```

Uninstall driver (optional)

esp_async_memcpy_uninstall() is used to uninstall asynchronous memcpy driver. It's not necessary to uninstall the driver after each memcpy operation. If you know your application won't use this driver anymore, then this API can recycle the memory for you.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_hw_support/include/esp_async_memcpy.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_async_memcpy_install**(**const** *async_memcpy_config_t* **config*, *async_memcpy_t* **asmcp*)

Install async memcpy driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: Install async memcpy driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Install async memcpy driver failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Install async memcpy driver failed because out of memory
- ESP_FAIL: Install async memcpy driver failed because of other error

Parameters

- `[in] config`: Configuration of async memcpy
- `[out] asmcp`: Handle of async memcpy that returned from this API. If driver installation is failed, asmcp would be assigned to NULL.

esp_err_t **esp_async_memcpy_uninstall**(*async_memcpy_t asmcp*)

Uninstall async memcpy driver.

Return

- ESP_OK: Uninstall async memcpy driver successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Uninstall async memcpy driver failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: Uninstall async memcpy driver failed because of other error

Parameters

- `[in] asmcp`: Handle of async memcpy driver that returned from esp_async_memcpy_install

esp_err_t **esp_async_memcpy**(*async_memcpy_t asmcp*, void **dst*, void **src*, size_t *n*, *async_memcpy_isr_cb_t cb_isr*, void **cb_args*)

Send an asynchronous memory copy request.

Return

- ESP_OK: Send memory copy request successfully
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Send memory copy request failed because of invalid argument
- ESP_FAIL: Send memory copy request failed because of other error

Note The callback function is invoked in interrupt context, never do blocking jobs in the callback.

Parameters

- `[in] asmcp`: Handle of async memcpy driver that returned from esp_async_memcpy_install
- `[in] dst`: Destination address (copy to)
- `[in] src`: Source address (copy from)
- `[in] n`: Number of bytes to copy
- `[in] cb_isr`: Callback function, which got invoked in interrupt context. Set to NULL can bypass the callback.
- `[in] cb_args`: User defined argument to be passed to the callback function

Structures

struct async_memcpy_event_t

Type of async memcpy event object.

Public Members

void ***data**

Event data

struct async_memcpy_config_t

Type of async memcpy configuration.

Public Members

uint32_t **backlog**

Maximum number of streams that can be handled simultaneously

uint32_t **flags**

Extra flags to control async memcpy feature

Macros

ASYNC_MEMCPY_DEFAULT_CONFIG()

Default configuration for async memcpy.

Type Definitions

typedef struct async_memcpy_context_t ***async_memcpy_t**

Type of async memcpy handle.

typedef bool (***async_memcpy_isr_cb_t**)(*async_memcpy_t* mcp_hdl, *async_memcpy_event_t* *event, void *cb_args)

Type of async memcpy interrupt callback function.

Return Whether a high priority task is woken up by the callback function

Note User can call OS primitives (semaphore, mutex, etc) in the callback function. Keep in mind, if any OS primitive wakes high priority task up, the callback should return true.

Parameters

- `mcp_hdl`: Handle of async memcpy
- `event`: Event object, which contains related data, reserved for future
- `cb_args`: User defined arguments, passed from esp_async_memcpy function

2.6.4 Console

ESP-IDF provides `console` component, which includes building blocks needed to develop an interactive console over serial port. This component includes following facilities:

- Line editing, provided by linenoise library. This includes handling of backspace and arrow keys, scrolling through command history, command auto-completion, and argument hints.
- Splitting of command line into arguments.
- Argument parsing, provided by argtable3 library. This library includes APIs used for parsing GNU style command line arguments.
- Functions for registration and dispatching of commands.
- Functions to establish a basic REPL (Read-Evaluate-Print-Loop) environment.

Note: These facilities can be used together or independently. For example, it is possible to use line editing and command registration features, but use `getopt` or custom code for argument parsing, instead of argtable3. Likewise, it is possible to use simpler means of command input (such as `fgets`) together with the rest of the means for command splitting and argument parsing.

Line editing

Line editing feature lets users compose commands by typing them, erasing symbols using 'backspace' key, navigating within the command using left/right keys, navigating to previously typed commands using up/down keys, and performing autocompletion using 'tab' key.

Note: This feature relies on ANSI escape sequence support in the terminal application. As such, serial monitors which display raw UART data can not be used together with the line editing library. If you see `[6n` or similar escape sequence when running system/console example instead of a command prompt (e.g. `esp>`), it means that the serial monitor does not support escape sequences. Programs which are known to work are GNU screen, minicom, and idf_monitor.py (which can be invoked using `idf.py monitor` from project directory).

Here is an overview of functions provided by linenoise library.

Configuration Linenoise library does not need explicit initialization. However, some configuration defaults may need to be changed before invoking the main line editing function.

`linenoiseClearScreen()` Clear terminal screen using an escape sequence and position the cursor at the top left corner.

`linenoiseSetMultiLine()` Switch between single line and multi line editing modes. In single line mode, if the length of the command exceeds the width of the terminal, the command text is scrolled within the line to show the end of the text. In this case the beginning of the text is hidden. Single line needs less data to be sent to refresh screen on each key press, so exhibits less glitching compared to the multi line mode. On the flip side, editing commands and copying command text from terminal in single line mode is harder. Default is single line mode.

`linenoiseAllowEmpty()` Set whether linenoise library will return a zero-length string (if `true`) or `NULL` (if `false`) for empty lines. By default, zero-length strings are returned.

Main loop

`linenoise()` In most cases, console applications have some form of read/eval loop. `linenoise()` is the single function which handles user's key presses and returns completed line once 'enter' key is pressed. As such, it handles the 'read' part of the loop.

`linenoiseFree()` This function must be called to release the command line buffer obtained from `linenoise()` function.

Hints and completions

`linenoiseSetCompletionCallback()` When user presses 'tab' key, linenoise library invokes completion callback. The callback should inspect the contents of the command typed so far and provide a list of possible completions using calls to `linenoiseAddCompletion()` function. `linenoiseSetCompletionCallback()` function should be called to register this completion callback, if completion feature is desired. `console` component provides a ready made function to provide completions for registered commands, *`esp_console_get_completion()`* (see below).

`linenoiseAddCompletion()` Function to be called by completion callback to inform the library about possible completions of the currently typed command.

`linenoiseSetHintsCallback()` Whenever user input changes, linenoise invokes hints callback. This callback can inspect the command line typed so far, and provide a string with hints (which can include list of command arguments, for example). The library then displays the hint text on the same line where editing happens, possibly with a different color.

`linenoiseSetFreeHintsCallback()` If hint string returned by hints callback is dynamically allocated or needs to be otherwise recycled, the function which performs such cleanup should be registered via `linenoiseSetFreeHintsCallback()`.

History

`linenoiseHistorySetMaxLen()` This function sets the number of most recently typed commands to be kept in memory. Users can navigate the history using up/down arrows.

`linenoiseHistoryAdd()` Linenoise does not automatically add commands to history. Instead, applications need to call this function to add command strings to the history.

`linenoiseHistorySave()` Function saves command history from RAM to a text file, for example on an SD card or on a filesystem in flash memory.

`linenoiseHistoryLoad()` Counterpart to `linenoiseHistorySave()`, loads history from a file.

`linenoiseHistoryFree()` Releases memory used to store command history. Call this function when done working with linenoise library.

Splitting of command line into arguments

`console` component provides *`esp_console_split_argv()`* function to split command line string into arguments. The function returns the number of arguments found (`argc`) and fills an array of pointers which can be passed as `argv` argument to any function which accepts arguments in `argc, argv` format.

The command line is split into arguments according to the following rules:

- Arguments are separated by spaces
- If spaces within arguments are required, they can be escaped using `\` (backslash) character.
- Other escape sequences which are recognized are `\\` (which produces literal backslash) and `\"`, which produces a double quote.
- Arguments can be quoted using double quotes. Quotes may appear only in the beginning and at the end of the argument. Quotes within the argument must be escaped as mentioned above. Quotes surrounding the argument are stripped by `esp_console_split_argv` function.

Examples:

- `abc def 1 20 .3` → [`abc`, `def`, `1`, `20`, `.3`]
- `abc "123 456" def` → [`abc`, `123 456`, `def`]
- `` `a\ b\\c\" `` → [`a b\c"`]

Argument parsing

For argument parsing, `console` component includes argtable3 library. Please see tutorial for an introduction to argtable3. Github repository also includes examples.

Command registration and dispatching

`console` component includes utility functions which handle registration of commands, matching commands typed by the user to registered ones, and calling these commands with the arguments given on the command line.

Application first initializes command registration module using a call to *`esp_console_init()`*, and calls *`esp_console_cmd_register()`* function to register command handlers.

For each command, application provides the following information (in the form of `esp_console_cmd_t` structure):

- Command name (string without spaces)
- Help text explaining what the command does
- Optional hint text listing the arguments of the command. If application uses Argtable3 for argument parsing, hint text can be generated automatically by providing a pointer to argtable argument definitions structure instead.
- The command handler function.

A few other functions are provided by the command registration module:

`esp_console_run()` This function takes the command line string, splits it into argc/argv argument list using *`esp_console_split_argv()`*, looks up the command in the list of registered components, and if it is found, executes its handler.

`esp_console_register_help_command()` Adds `help` command to the list of registered commands. This command prints the list of all the registered commands, along with their arguments and help texts.

`esp_console_get_completion()` Callback function to be used with `linenoiseSetCompletionCallback()` from linenoise library. Provides completions to linenoise based on the list of registered commands.

`esp_console_get_hint()` Callback function to be used with `linenoiseSetHintsCallback()` from linenoise library. Provides argument hints for registered commands to linenoise.

Initialize console REPL environment

To establish a basic REPL environment, `console` component provides several useful APIs, combining those functions described above.

In a typical application, you only need to call *`esp_console_new_repl_uart()`* to initialize the REPL environment based on UART device, including driver install, basic console configuration, spawning a thread to do REPL task and register several useful commands (e.g. *help*).

After that, you can register your own commands with *`esp_console_cmd_register()`*. The REPL environment keeps in init state until you call *`esp_console_start_repl()`*.

Application Example

Example application illustrating usage of the `console` component is available in system/console directory. This example shows how to initialize UART and VFS functions, set up linenoise library, read and handle commands from UART, and store command history in Flash. See README.md in the example directory for more details.

Besides that, ESP-IDF contains several useful examples which based on *console* component and can be treated as "tools" when developing applications. For example, peripherals/i2c/i2c_tools, wifi/iperf.

API Reference

Header File

- console/esp_console.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_console_init**(**const** *esp_console_config_t* **config*)

initialize console module

Note Call this once before using other console module features

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the configuration is invalid

Parameters

- `config`: console configuration

esp_err_t **esp_console_deinit**(void)

de-initialize console module

Note Call this once when done using console module functions

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not initialized yet

esp_err_t **esp_console_cmd_register**(**const** *esp_console_cmd_t* **cmd*)

Register console command.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if command description includes invalid arguments

Parameters

- `cmd`: pointer to the command description; can point to a temporary value

esp_err_t **esp_console_run**(**const** char **cmdline*, int **cmd_ret*)

Run command line.

Return

- ESP_OK, if command was run
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG, if the command line is empty, or only contained whitespace
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND, if command with given name wasn't registered
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE, if esp_console_init wasn't called

Parameters

- `cmdline`: command line (command name followed by a number of arguments)
- `[out] cmd_ret`: return code from the command (set if command was run)

size_t **esp_console_split_argv**(char **line*, char ***argv*, size_t *argv_size*)

Split command line into arguments in place.

```
* - This function finds whitespace-separated arguments in the given input line.
*
*     'abc def 1 20 .3' -> [ 'abc', 'def', '1', '20', '.3' ]
*
* - Argument which include spaces may be surrounded with quotes. In this case
*   spaces are preserved and quotes are stripped.
*
*     'abc "123 456" def' -> [ 'abc', '123 456', 'def' ]
*
* - Escape sequences may be used to produce backslash, double quote, and space:
*
*     'a\ b\\c\"' -> [ 'a b\c"' ]
*
```

Note Pointers to at most argv_size - 1 arguments are returned in argv array. The pointer after the last one (i.e. argv[argc]) is set to NULL.

Return number of arguments found (argc)

Parameters

- `line`: pointer to buffer to parse; it is modified in place
- `argv`: array where the pointers to arguments are written
- `argv_size`: number of elements in argv_array (max. number of arguments)

void **esp_console_get_completion**(**const** char *buf, *linenoiseCompletions* *lc)

Callback which provides command completion for linenoise library.

When using linenoise for line editing, command completion support can be enabled like this:

linenoiseSetCompletionCallback(&esp_console_get_completion);

Parameters

- `buf`: the string typed by the user
- `lc`: linenoiseCompletions to be filled in

const char ***esp_console_get_hint**(**const** char *buf, int *color, int *bold)

Callback which provides command hints for linenoise library.

When using linenoise for line editing, hints support can be enabled as follows:

linenoiseSetHintsCallback((linenoiseHintsCallback*) &esp_console_get_hint);

The extra cast is needed because linenoiseHintsCallback is defined as returning a char* instead of const char*.

Return string containing the hint text. This string is persistent and should not be freed (i.e. linenoiseSetFreeHintsCallback should not be used).

Parameters

- `buf`: line typed by the user
- `[out] color`: ANSI color code to be used when displaying the hint
- `[out] bold`: set to 1 if hint has to be displayed in bold

esp_err_t **esp_console_register_help_command**(void)

Register a 'help' command.

Default 'help' command prints the list of registered commands along with hints and help strings.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE, if esp_console_init wasn't called

esp_err_t **esp_console_new_repl_uart**(**const** *esp_console_dev_uart_config_t* *dev_config, **const** *esp_console_repl_config_t* *repl_config, *esp_console_repl_t* **ret_repl)

Establish a console REPL environment over UART driver.

Note This is a all-in-one function to establish the environment needed for REPL, includes:

- Install the UART driver on the console UART (8n1, 115200, REF_TICK clock source)
- Configures the stdin/stdout to go through the UART driver
- Initializes linenoise
- Spawn new thread to run REPL in the background

Attention This function is meant to be used in the examples to make the code more compact. Applications which use console functionality should be based on the underlying linenoise and esp_console functions.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `[in] dev_config`: UART device configuration
- `[in] repl_config`: REPL configuration
- `[out] ret_repl`: return REPL handle after initialization succeed, return NULL otherwise

esp_err_t **esp_console_new_repl_usb_cdc**(**const** *esp_console_dev_usb_cdc_config_t* *dev_config, **const** *esp_console_repl_config_t* *repl_config, *esp_console_repl_t* **ret_repl)

Establish a console REPL environment over USB CDC.

Note This is a all-in-one function to establish the environment needed for REPL, includes:

- Initializes linenoise
- Spawn new thread to run REPL in the background

Attention This function is meant to be used in the examples to make the code more compact. Applications which use console functionality should be based on the underlying linenoise and esp_console functions.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL Parameter error

Parameters

- `[in] dev_config`: USB CDC configuration
- `[in] repl_config`: REPL configuration
- `[out] ret_repl`: return REPL handle after initialization succeed, return NULL otherwise

esp_err_t **esp_console_start_repl** (*esp_console_repl_t* **repl*)

Start REPL environment.

Note Once the REPL got started, it won't be stopped until user call repl->del(repl) to destory the REPL environment.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE, if repl has started already

Parameters

- `[in] repl`: REPL handle returned from esp_console_new_repl_xxx

Structures

struct esp_console_config_t

Parameters for console initialization.

Public Members

size_t **max_cmdline_length**

length of command line buffer, in bytes

size_t **max_cmdline_args**

maximum number of command line arguments to parse

int **hint_color**

ASCII color code of hint text.

int **hint_bold**

Set to 1 to print hint text in bold.

struct esp_console_repl_config_t

Parameters for console REPL (Read Eval Print Loop)

Public Members

uint32_t **max_history_len**

maximum length for the history

const char ***history_save_path**

file path used to save history commands, set to NULL won't save to file system

uint32_t **task_stack_size**

repl task stack size

uint32_t **task_priority**

repl task priority

const char ***prompt**

prompt (NULL represents default: "esp> ")

struct esp_console_dev_uart_config_t
Parameters for console device: UART.

Public Members

int **channel**
UART channel number (count from zero)

int **baud_rate**
Comunication baud rate.

int **tx_gpio_num**
GPIO number for TX path, -1 means using default one.

int **rx_gpio_num**
GPIO number for RX path, -1 means using default one.

struct esp_console_dev_usb_cdc_config_t
Parameters for console device: USB CDC.

Note It's an empty structure for now, reserved for future

struct esp_console_cmd_t
Console command description.

Public Members

const char ***command**
Command name. Must not be NULL, must not contain spaces. The pointer must be valid until the call to esp_console_deinit.

const char ***help**
Help text for the command, shown by help command. If set, the pointer must be valid until the call to esp_console_deinit. If not set, the command will not be listed in 'help' output.

const char ***hint**
Hint text, usually lists possible arguments. If set to NULL, and 'argtable' field is non-NULL, hint will be generated automatically

esp_console_cmd_func_t **func**
Pointer to a function which implements the command.

void ***argtable**
Array or structure of pointers to arg_xxx structures, may be NULL. Used to generate hint text if 'hint' is set to NULL. Array/structure which this field points to must end with an arg_end. Only used for the duration of esp_console_cmd_register call.

struct esp_console_repl_s
Console REPL base structure.

Public Members

esp_err_t (***del**) (*esp_console_repl_t* *repl)
Delete console REPL environment.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_FAIL on errors

Parameters
- `[in] repl`: REPL handle returned from esp_console_new_repl_xxx

Macros

ESP_CONSOLE_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Default console configuration value.

ESP_CONSOLE_REPL_CONFIG_DEFAULT()
Default console repl configuration value.

ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_UART_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_CDC_CONFIG_DEFAULT()

Type Definitions

typedef struct *linenoiseCompletions* **linenoiseCompletions**

typedef int (***esp_console_cmd_func_t**)(int argc, char **argv)
Console command main function.

Return console command return code, 0 indicates "success"

Parameters

- `argc`: number of arguments
- `argv`: array with argc entries, each pointing to a zero-terminated string argument

typedef struct *esp_console_repl_s* **esp_console_repl_t**
Type defined for console REPL.

2.6.5 eFuse Manager

Introduction

The eFuse Manager library is designed to structure access to eFuse bits and make using these easy. This library operates eFuse bits by a structure name which is assigned in eFuse table. This sections introduces some concepts used by eFuse Manager.

Hardware description

The ESP32-S2 has a number of eFuses which can store system and user parameters. Each eFuse is a one-bit field which can be programmed to 1 after which it cannot be reverted back to 0. Some of system parameters are using these eFuse bits directly by hardware modules and have special place (for example EFUSE_BLK0).

For more details, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *eFuse Controller (eFuse)* [PDF]. Some eFuse bits are available for user applications.

ESP32-S2 has 11 eFuse blocks each of the size of 256 bits (not all bits are available):

- EFUSE_BLK0 is used entirely for system purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK1 is used entirely for system purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK2 is used entirely for system purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK3 or EFUSE_BLK_USER_DATA can be used for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK4 or EFUSE_BLK_KEY0 can be used as key (for secure_boot or flash_encryption) or for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK5 or EFUSE_BLK_KEY1 can be used as key (for secure_boot or flash_encryption) or for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK6 or EFUSE_BLK_KEY2 can be used as key (for secure_boot or flash_encryption) or for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK7 or EFUSE_BLK_KEY3 can be used as key (for secure_boot or flash_encryption) or for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK8 or EFUSE_BLK_KEY4 can be used as key (for secure_boot or flash_encryption) or for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK9 or EFUSE_BLK_KEY5 can be used as key (for secure_boot or flash_encryption) or for user purposes;
- EFUSE_BLK10 or EFUSE_BLK_SYS_DATA_PART2 is reseved for system purposes.

Each block is divided into 8 32-bits registers.

eFuse Manager component

The component has API functions for reading and writing fields. Access to the fields is carried out through the structures that describe the location of the eFuse bits in the blocks. The component provides the ability to form fields of any length and from any number of individual bits. The description of the fields is made in a CSV file in a table form. To generate from a tabular form (CSV file) in the C-source uses the tool *efuse_table_gen.py*. The tool checks the CSV file for uniqueness of field names and bit intersection, in case of using a *custom* file from the user's project directory, the utility will check with the *common* CSV file.

CSV files:

- common (*esp_efuse_table.csv*) - contains eFuse fields which are used inside the IDF. C-source generation should be done manually when changing this file (run command `idf.py efuse_common_table`). Note that changes in this file can lead to incorrect operation.
- custom - (optional and can be enabled by *CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE*) contains eFuse fields that are used by the user in their application. C-source generation should be done manually when changing this file and running `idf.py efuse_custom_table`.

Description CSV file

The CSV file contains a description of the eFuse fields. In the simple case, one field has one line of description. Table header:

```
# field_name,  efuse_block(EFUSE_BLK0..EFUSE_BLK10), bit_start(0..255),    bit_
↪count(1..256),         comment
```

Individual params in CSV file the following meanings:

field_name Name of field. The prefix *ESP_EFUSE_* will be added to the name, and this field name will be available in the code. This name will be used to access the fields. The name must be unique for all fields. If the line has an empty name, then this line is combined with the previous field. This allows you to set an arbitrary order of bits in the field, and expand the field as well (see `MAC_FACTORY` field in the common table).

efuse_block Block number. It determines where the eFuse bits will be placed for this field. Available EFUSE_BLK0..EFUSE_BLK10.

bit_start Start bit number (0..255). The bit_start field can be omitted. In this case, it will be set to bit_start + bit_count from the previous record, if it has the same efuse_block. Otherwise (if efuse_block is different, or this is the first entry), an error will be generated.

bit_count The number of bits to use in this field (1..-). This parameter can not be omitted. This field also may be `MAX_BLK_LEN` in this case, the field length will have the maximum block length.

comment This param is using for comment field, it also move to C-header file. The comment field can be omitted.

If a non-sequential bit order is required to describe a field, then the field description in the following lines should be continued without specifying a name, this will indicate that it belongs to one field. For example two fields MAC_FACTORY and MAC_FACTORY_CRC:

```
# Factory MAC address #
########################
MAC_FACTORY,            EFUSE_BLK0,     72,     8,    Factory MAC addr [0]
,                       EFUSE_BLK0,     64,     8,    Factory MAC addr [1]
,                       EFUSE_BLK0,     56,     8,    Factory MAC addr [2]
,                       EFUSE_BLK0,     48,     8,    Factory MAC addr [3]
,                       EFUSE_BLK0,     40,     8,    Factory MAC addr [4]
,                       EFUSE_BLK0,     32,     8,    Factory MAC addr [5]
MAC_FACTORY_CRC,        EFUSE_BLK0,     80,     8,    CRC8 for factory MAC address
```

This field will available in code as ESP_EFUSE_MAC_FACTORY and ESP_EFUSE_MAC_FACTORY_CRC.

efuse_table_gen.py tool

The tool is designed to generate C-source files from CSV file and validate fields. First of all, the check is carried out on the uniqueness of the names and overlaps of the field bits. If an additional *custom* file is used, it will be checked with the existing *common* file (esp_efuse_table.csv). In case of errors, a message will be displayed and the string that caused the error. C-source files contain structures of type *esp_efuse_desc_t*.

To generate a *common* files, use the following command `idf.py efuse_common_table` or:

```
cd $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/
./efuse_table_gen.py esp32s2/esp_efuse_table.csv
```

After generation in the folder $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/*esp32s2* create:

- *esp_efuse_table.c* file.
- In *include* folder *esp_efuse_table.c* file.

To generate a *custom* files, use the following command `idf.py efuse_custom_table` or:

```
cd $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/
./efuse_table_gen.py esp32s2/esp_efuse_table.csv PROJECT_PATH/main/esp_efuse_
↪custom_table.csv
```

After generation in the folder PROJECT_PATH/main create:

- *esp_efuse_custom_table.c* file.
- In *include* folder *esp_efuse_custom_table.c* file.

To use the generated fields, you need to include two files:

```
#include "esp_efuse.h"
#include "esp_efuse_table.h" or "esp_efuse_custom_table.h"
```

Supported coding scheme

Coding schemes are used to protect against data corruption. ESP32-S2 supports two coding schemes:

- `None`. EFUSE_BLK0 is stored with four backups, meaning each bit is stored four times. This backup scheme is automatically applied by the hardware and is not visible to software. EFUSE_BLK0 can be written many times.
- `RS`. EFUSE_BLK1 - EFUSE_BLK10 use Reed-Solomon coding scheme that supports up to 5 bytes of automatic error correction. Software will encode the 32-byte EFUSE_BLKx using RS (44, 32) to generate a 12-byte check code, and then burn the EFUSE_BLKx and the check code into eFuse at the same time. The eFuse Controller automatically decodes the RS encoding and applies error correction when reading back the eFuse block. Because the RS check codes are generated across the entire 256-bit eFuse block, each block can only be written to one time.

To write some fields into one block, or different blocks in one time, you need to use `the batch writing mode`. Firstly set this mode through *`esp_efuse_batch_write_begin()`* function then write some fields as usual using the `esp_efuse_write_...` functions. At the end to burn them, call the *`esp_efuse_batch_write_commit()`* function. It burns prepared data to the eFuse blocks and disables the `batch recording mode`.

eFuse API

Access to the fields is via a pointer to the description structure. API functions have some basic operation:

- *`esp_efuse_read_field_blob()`* - returns an array of read eFuse bits.
- *`esp_efuse_read_field_cnt()`* - returns the number of bits programmed as "1".
- *`esp_efuse_write_field_blob()`* - writes an array.
- *`esp_efuse_write_field_cnt()`* - writes a required count of bits as "1".

- *esp_efuse_get_field_size()* - returns the number of bits by the field name.
- *esp_efuse_read_reg()* - returns value of eFuse register.
- *esp_efuse_write_reg()* - writes value to eFuse register.
- *esp_efuse_get_coding_scheme()* - returns eFuse coding scheme for blocks.
- *esp_efuse_read_block()* - reads key to eFuse block starting at the offset and the required size.
- *esp_efuse_write_block()* - writes key to eFuse block starting at the offset and the required size.
- *esp_efuse_batch_write_begin()* - set the batch mode of writing fields.
- *esp_efuse_batch_write_commit()* - writes all prepared data for batch writing mode and reset the batch writing mode.
- *esp_efuse_batch_write_cancel()* - reset the batch writing mode and prepared data.

For frequently used fields, special functions are made, like this *esp_efuse_get_chip_ver()*, *esp_efuse_get_pkg_ver()*.

eFuse API for keys

EFUSE_BLK_KEY0 - EFUSE_BLK_KEY5 are intended to keep up to 6 keys with a length of 256-bits. Each key has an `ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_x` field which defines the purpose of these keys. The purpose field is described in *esp_efuse_purpose_t*.

The purposes like `ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_...` are used for flash encryption.

The purposes like `ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST...` are used for secure boot.

There are some eFuse APIs useful to work with states of keys.

- *esp_efuse_get_purpose_field()* - Returns a pointer to a key purpose for an eFuse key block.
- *esp_efuse_get_key()* - Returns a pointer to a key block.
- *esp_efuse_get_key_dis_read()* - Returns a read protection for the key block.
- *esp_efuse_set_key_dis_read()* - Sets a read protection for the key block.
- *esp_efuse_get_key_dis_write()* - Returns a write protection for the key block.
- *esp_efuse_set_key_dis_write()* - Sets a write protection for the key block.
- *esp_efuse_get_key_purpose()* - Returns the current purpose set for an eFuse key block.
- *esp_efuse_set_key_purpose()* - Sets a key purpose for an eFuse key block.
- *esp_efuse_get_keypurpose_dis_write()* - Returns a write protection of the key purpose field for an eFuse key block.
- *esp_efuse_set_keypurpose_dis_write()* - Sets a write protection of the key purpose field for an eFuse key block.
- *esp_efuse_find_purpose()* - Finds a key block with the particular purpose set.
- *esp_efuse_find_unused_key_block()* - Search for an unused key block and return the first one found.
- *esp_efuse_count_unused_key_blocks()* - Returns the number of unused eFuse key blocks in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX
- *esp_efuse_key_block_unused()* - Returns true if the key block is unused, false otherwise.
- *esp_efuse_get_digest_revoke()* - Returns the status of the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.
- *esp_efuse_set_digest_revoke()* - Sets the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.
- *esp_efuse_get_write_protect_of_digest_revoke()* - Returns a write protection of the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.
- *esp_efuse_set_write_protect_of_digest_revoke()* - Sets a write protection of the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.
- *esp_efuse_write_key()* - Programs a block of key data to an eFuse block
- *esp_efuse_write_keys()* - Programs keys to unused eFuse blocks

How to add a new field

1. Find a free bits for field. Show *esp_efuse_table.csv* file or run `idf.py show_efuse_table` or the next command:

```
$ ./efuse_table_gen.py esp32s2/esp_efuse_table.csv --info
eFuse coding scheme: NONE
#       field_name                      efuse_block     bit_start       bit_count
1       WR_DIS_FLASH_CRYPT_CNT          EFUSE_BLK0          2               1
2       WR_DIS_BLK1                     EFUSE_BLK0          7               1
3       WR_DIS_BLK2                     EFUSE_BLK0          8               1
4       WR_DIS_BLK3                     EFUSE_BLK0          9               1
5       RD_DIS_BLK1                     EFUSE_BLK0          16              1
6       RD_DIS_BLK2                     EFUSE_BLK0          17              1
7       RD_DIS_BLK3                     EFUSE_BLK0          18              1
8       FLASH_CRYPT_CNT                 EFUSE_BLK0          20              7
9       MAC_FACTORY                     EFUSE_BLK0          32              8
10      MAC_FACTORY                     EFUSE_BLK0          40              8
11      MAC_FACTORY                     EFUSE_BLK0          48              8
12      MAC_FACTORY                     EFUSE_BLK0          56              8
13      MAC_FACTORY                     EFUSE_BLK0          64              8
14      MAC_FACTORY                     EFUSE_BLK0          72              8
15      MAC_FACTORY_CRC                 EFUSE_BLK0          80              8
16      CHIP_VER_DIS_APP_CPU            EFUSE_BLK0          96              1
17      CHIP_VER_DIS_BT                 EFUSE_BLK0          97              1
18      CHIP_VER_PKG                    EFUSE_BLK0          105             3
19      CHIP_CPU_FREQ_LOW               EFUSE_BLK0          108             1
20      CHIP_CPU_FREQ_RATED             EFUSE_BLK0          109             1
21      CHIP_VER_REV1                   EFUSE_BLK0          111             1
22      ADC_VREF_AND_SDIO_DREF          EFUSE_BLK0          136             6
23      XPD_SDIO_REG                    EFUSE_BLK0          142             1
24      SDIO_TIEH                       EFUSE_BLK0          143             1
25      SDIO_FORCE                      EFUSE_BLK0          144             1
26      ENCRYPT_CONFIG                  EFUSE_BLK0          188             4
27      CONSOLE_DEBUG_DISABLE           EFUSE_BLK0          194             1
28      ABS_DONE_0                      EFUSE_BLK0          196             1
29      DISABLE_JTAG                    EFUSE_BLK0          198             1
30      DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT              EFUSE_BLK0          199             1
31      DISABLE_DL_DECRYPT              EFUSE_BLK0          200             1
32      DISABLE_DL_CACHE                EFUSE_BLK0          201             1
33      ENCRYPT_FLASH_KEY               EFUSE_BLK1          0               256
34      SECURE_BOOT_KEY                 EFUSE_BLK2          0               256
35      MAC_CUSTOM_CRC                  EFUSE_BLK3          0               8
36      MAC_CUSTOM                      EFUSE_BLK3          8               48
37      ADC1_TP_LOW                     EFUSE_BLK3          96              7
38      ADC1_TP_HIGH                    EFUSE_BLK3          103             9
39      ADC2_TP_LOW                     EFUSE_BLK3          112             7
40      ADC2_TP_HIGH                    EFUSE_BLK3          119             9
41      SECURE_VERSION                  EFUSE_BLK3          128             32
42      MAC_CUSTOM_VER                  EFUSE_BLK3          184             8

Used bits in eFuse table:
EFUSE_BLK0
[2 2] [7 9] [16 18] [20 27] [32 87] [96 97] [105 109] [111 111] [136 144] [188␣
↪191] [194 194] [196 196] [198 201]

EFUSE_BLK1
[0 255]

EFUSE_BLK2
[0 255]

EFUSE_BLK3
[0 55] [96 159] [184 191]

Note: Not printed ranges are free for using. (bits in EFUSE_BLK0 are reserved for␣
↪Espressif)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Parsing eFuse CSV input file $IDF_PATH/components/efuse/esp32s2/esp_efuse_table.
↪csv ...
Verifying eFuse table...
```

The number of bits not included in square brackets is free (bits in EFUSE_BLK0 are reserved for Espressif). All fields are checked for overlapping.

2. Fill a line for field: field_name, efuse_block, bit_start, bit_count, comment.
3. Run a `show_efuse_table` command to check eFuse table. To generate source files run `efuse_common_table` or `efuse_custom_table` command.

Debug eFuse & Unit tests

Virtual eFuses The Kconfig option *CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL* will virtualize eFuse values inside the eFuse Manager, so writes are emulated and no eFuse values are permanently changed. This can be useful for debugging app and unit tests.

espefuse.py esptool includes a useful tool for reading/writing ESP32-S2 eFuse bits - espefuse.py.

```
espefuse.py -p PORT summary

Connecting....
Detecting chip type... ESP32-S2
espefuse.py v3.1-dev
EFUSE_NAME (Block)                          Description  = [Meaningful␣
↪Value] [Readable/Writeable] (Hex Value)
----------------------------------------------------------------------------
↪--------------
Calibration fuses:
TEMP_SENSOR_CAL (BLOCK2)                    Temperature calibration         ␣
↪                    = -9.200000000000001 R/W (0b101011100)
ADC1_MODE0_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 1              ␣
↪                    = -28 R/W (0x87)
ADC1_MODE1_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 2              ␣
↪                    = -28 R/W (0x87)
ADC1_MODE2_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 3              ␣
↪                    = -28 R/W (0x87)
ADC1_MODE3_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 4              ␣
↪                    = -24 R/W (0x86)
ADC2_MODE0_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC2 calibration 5              ␣
↪                    = 12 R/W (0x03)
ADC2_MODE1_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC2 calibration 6              ␣
↪                    = 8 R/W (0x02)
ADC2_MODE2_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC2 calibration 7              ␣
↪                    = 12 R/W (0x03)
ADC2_MODE3_D2 (BLOCK2)                      ADC2 calibration 8              ␣
↪                    = 16 R/W (0x04)
ADC1_MODE0_D1 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 9              ␣
↪                    = -20 R/W (0b100101)
ADC1_MODE1_D1 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 10             ␣
↪                    = -12 R/W (0b100011)
ADC1_MODE2_D1 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 11             ␣
↪                    = -12 R/W (0b100011)
ADC1_MODE3_D1 (BLOCK2)                      ADC1 calibration 12             ␣
↪                    = -4 R/W (0b100001)
ADC2_MODE0_D1 (BLOCK2)                      ADC2 calibration 13             ␣
↪                    = -12 R/W (0b100011)
ADC2_MODE1_D1 (BLOCK2)                      ADC2 calibration 14             ␣
↪                    = -8 R/W (0b100010)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
ADC2_MODE2_D1 (BLOCK2)                    ADC2 calibration 15             ␣
↪                  = -8 R/W (0b100010)
ADC2_MODE3_D1 (BLOCK2)                    ADC2 calibration 16             ␣
↪                  = -4 R/W (0b100001)

Config fuses:
DIS_RTC_RAM_BOOT (BLOCK0)                 Disables boot from RTC RAM      ␣
↪                  = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_ICACHE (BLOCK0)                       Disables ICache                 ␣
↪                  = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_DCACHE (BLOCK0)                       Disables DCache                 ␣
↪                  = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_DOWNLOAD_ICACHE (BLOCK0)              Disables Icache when SoC is in␣
↪Download mode       = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_DOWNLOAD_DCACHE (BLOCK0)              Disables Dcache when SoC is in␣
↪Download mode       = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_FORCE_DOWNLOAD (BLOCK0)               Disables forcing chip into␣
↪Download mode           = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_CAN (BLOCK0)                          Disables the TWAI Controller␣
↪hardware              = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_BOOT_REMAP (BLOCK0)                   Disables capability to Remap RAM␣
↪to ROM address sp = False R/W (0b0)
                                         ace
FLASH_TPUW (BLOCK0)                       Configures flash startup delay␣
↪after SoC power-up, = 0 R/W (0x0)
                                         unit is (ms/2). When the value is␣
↪15, delay is 7.
                                         5 ms
DIS_LEGACY_SPI_BOOT (BLOCK0)              Disables Legacy SPI boot mode   ␣
↪                  = False R/W (0b0)
UART_PRINT_CHANNEL (BLOCK0)               Selects the default UART for␣
↪printing boot msg     = UART0 R/W (0b0)
DIS_USB_DOWNLOAD_MODE (BLOCK0)            Disables use of USB in UART␣
↪download boot mode     = False R/W (0b0)
UART_PRINT_CONTROL (BLOCK0)               Sets the default UART boot␣
↪message output mode     = Enabled R/W (0b00)
FLASH_TYPE (BLOCK0)                       Selects SPI flash type          ␣
↪                  = 4 data lines R/W (0b0)
FORCE_SEND_RESUME (BLOCK0)                Forces ROM code to send an SPI␣
↪flash resume comman = False R/W (0b0)
                                         d during SPI boot
BLOCK_USR_DATA (BLOCK3)                   User data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00␣
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W

Efuse fuses:
WR_DIS (BLOCK0)                           Disables programming of␣
↪individual eFuses          = 0 R/W (0x00000000)
RD_DIS (BLOCK0)                           Disables software reading from␣
↪BLOCK4-10           = 0 R/W (0b0000000)

Identity fuses:
BLOCK0_VERSION (BLOCK0)                   BLOCK0 efuse version            ␣
↪                  = 0 R/W (0b00)
SECURE_VERSION (BLOCK0)                   Secure version (used by ESP-IDF␣
↪anti-rollback feat = 0 R/W (0x0000)
                                         ure)
MAC (BLOCK1)                              Factory MAC Address
= 7c:df:a1:00:3a:6e: (OK) R/W
WAFER_VERSION (BLOCK1)                    WAFER version                   ␣
↪                  = A R/W (0b000)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
PKG_VERSION (BLOCK1)                          Package version
= ESP32-S2, QFN 7x7 56 pins R/W (0x0)
BLOCK1_VERSION (BLOCK1)                       BLOCK1 efuse version
↪                    = 0 R/W (0b000)
OPTIONAL_UNIQUE_ID (BLOCK2)(0 errors):   Optional unique 128-bit ID
= 7d 33 b8 bb 0b 13 b3 c8 71 37 0e e8 7c ab d5 92 R/W
BLOCK2_VERSION (BLOCK2)                       Version of BLOCK2
↪                    = With calibration R/W (0b001)

Security fuses:
SOFT_DIS_JTAG (BLOCK0)                        Software disables JTAG. When
↪software disabled, JT = False R/W (0b0)
                                             AG can be activated temporarily
↪by HMAC peripheral
HARD_DIS_JTAG (BLOCK0)                        Hardware disables JTAG
↪permanently                    = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT (BLOCK0)     Disables flash encryption when
↪in download boot mo = False R/W (0b0)
                                             des
SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT (BLOCK0)                   Enables encryption and
↪decryption, when an SPI boo = Disable R/W (0b000)
                                             t mode is set. Enabled when 1 or
↪3 bits are set,di
                                             sabled otherwise
SECURE_BOOT_KEY_REVOKE0 (BLOCK0)          If set, revokes use of secure
↪boot key digest 0    = False R/W (0b0)
SECURE_BOOT_KEY_REVOKE1 (BLOCK0)          If set, revokes use of secure
↪boot key digest 1    = False R/W (0b0)
SECURE_BOOT_KEY_REVOKE2 (BLOCK0)          If set, revokes use of secure
↪boot key digest 2    = False R/W (0b0)
KEY_PURPOSE_0 (BLOCK0)                        KEY0 purpose
↪                    = USER R/W (0x0)
KEY_PURPOSE_1 (BLOCK0)                        KEY1 purpose
↪                    = USER R/W (0x0)
KEY_PURPOSE_2 (BLOCK0)                        KEY2 purpose
↪                    = USER R/W (0x0)
KEY_PURPOSE_3 (BLOCK0)                        KEY3 purpose
↪                    = USER R/W (0x0)
KEY_PURPOSE_4 (BLOCK0)                        KEY4 purpose
↪                    = USER R/W (0x0)
KEY_PURPOSE_5 (BLOCK0)                        KEY5 purpose
↪                    = USER R/W (0x0)
SECURE_BOOT_EN (BLOCK0)                       Enables secure boot
↪                    = False R/W (0b0)
SECURE_BOOT_AGGRESSIVE_REVOKE (BLOCK0)   Enables aggressive secure boot
↪key revocation mode = False R/W (0b0)
DIS_DOWNLOAD_MODE (BLOCK0)                    Disables all Download boot modes
↪                    = False R/W (0b0)
ENABLE_SECURITY_DOWNLOAD (BLOCK0)         Enables secure UART download
↪mode (read/write flas = False R/W (0b0)
                                             h only)
BLOCK_KEY0 (BLOCK4)(0 errors):
Purpose: USER
Encryption key0 or user data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
BLOCK_KEY1 (BLOCK5)(0 errors):
Purpose: USER
Encryption key1 or user data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
BLOCK_KEY2 (BLOCK6)(0 errors):
Purpose: USER
Encryption key2 or user data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00␣
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
BLOCK_KEY3 (BLOCK7)(0 errors):
Purpose: USER
Encryption key3 or user data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00␣
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
BLOCK_KEY4 (BLOCK8)(0 errors):
Purpose: USER
Encryption key4 or user data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00␣
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
BLOCK_KEY5 (BLOCK9)(0 errors):
Purpose: USER
Encryption key5 or user data
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00␣
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W
BLOCK_SYS_DATA2 (BLOCK10)                 System data (part 2)
= 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00␣
↪00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 R/W

Spi_Pad_Config fuses:
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_CLK (BLOCK1)               SPI CLK pad                      ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_Q (BLOCK1)                 SPI Q (D1) pad                   ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_D (BLOCK1)                 SPI D (D0) pad                   ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_CS (BLOCK1)                SPI CS pad                       ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_HD (BLOCK1)                SPI HD (D3) pad                  ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_WP (BLOCK1)                SPI WP (D2) pad                  ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_DQS (BLOCK1)               SPI DQS pad                      ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_D4 (BLOCK1)                SPI D4 pad                       ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_D5 (BLOCK1)                SPI D5 pad                       ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_D6 (BLOCK1)                SPI D6 pad                       ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)
SPI_PAD_CONFIG_D7 (BLOCK1)                SPI D7 pad                       ␣
↪                   = 0 R/W (0b000000)

Usb Config fuses:
DIS_USB (BLOCK0)                          Disables the USB OTG hardware    ␣
↪                   = False R/W (0b0)
USB_EXCHG_PINS (BLOCK0)                   Exchanges USB D+ and D- pins     ␣
↪                   = False R/W (0b0)
EXT_PHY_ENABLE (BLOCK0)                   Enables external USB PHY         ␣
↪                   = False R/W (0b0)
USB_FORCE_NOPERSIST (BLOCK0)              Forces to set USB BVALID to 1    ␣
↪                   = False R/W (0b0)

Vdd_Spi Config fuses:
VDD_SPI_FORCE (BLOCK0)                    Force using VDD_SPI_XPD and VDD_
↪SPI_TIEH to config = False R/W (0b0)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
                                        ure VDD_SPI LDO
VDD_SPI_XPD (BLOCK0)                     The VDD_SPI regulator is powered␣
↪on                 = False R/W (0b0)
VDD_SPI_TIEH (BLOCK0)                    The VDD_SPI power supply voltage␣
↪at reset           = Connect to 1.8V LDO R/W (0b0)
PIN_POWER_SELECTION (BLOCK0)             Sets default power supply for␣
↪GPIO33..37, set when = VDD3P3_CPU R/W (0b0)
                                        SPI flash is initialized

Wdt Config fuses:
WDT_DELAY_SEL (BLOCK0)                   Selects RTC WDT timeout␣
↪threshold at startup       = 0 R/W (0b00)

Flash voltage (VDD_SPI) determined by GPIO45 on reset (GPIO45=High: VDD_
↪SPI pin is powered from internal 1.8V LDO
GPIO45=Low or NC: VDD_SPI pin is powered directly from VDD3P3_RTC_IO via␣
↪resistor Rspi. Typically this voltage is 3.3 V).
```

To get a dump for all eFuse registers.

```
espefuse.py -p PORT dump

Connecting....
Detecting chip type... ESP32-S2
BLOCK0          (                ) [0 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
MAC_SPI_8M_0    (BLOCK1          ) [1 ] read_regs: a1003a6e 00007cdf␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_SYS_DATA  (BLOCK2          ) [2 ] read_regs: bbb8337d c8b3130b␣
↪e80e3771 92d5ab7c 8787ae10 02038687 38e50403 8628a386
BLOCK_USR_DATA  (BLOCK3          ) [3 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_KEY0      (BLOCK4          ) [4 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_KEY1      (BLOCK5          ) [5 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_KEY2      (BLOCK6          ) [6 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_KEY3      (BLOCK7          ) [7 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_KEY4      (BLOCK8          ) [8 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_KEY5      (BLOCK9          ) [9 ] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
BLOCK_SYS_DATA2 (BLOCK10         ) [10] read_regs: 00000000 00000000␣
↪00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000 00000000
espefuse.py v3.1-dev
```

Header File

- efuse/include/esp_efuse.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_read_field_blob**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[], void **dst*, size_t *dst_size_bits*)

Reads bits from EFUSE field and writes it into an array.

The number of read bits will be limited to the minimum value from the description of the bits in "field" structure or "dst_size_bits" required size. Use "esp_efuse_get_field_size()" function to determine the length of the field.

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
- `[out] dst`: A pointer to array that will contain the result of reading.
- `[in] dst_size_bits`: The number of bits required to read. If the requested number of bits is greater than the field, the number will be limited to the field size.

bool **esp_efuse_read_field_bit**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[])

Read a single bit eFuse field as a boolean value.

Note The value must exist and must be a single bit wide. If there is any possibility of an error in the provided arguments, call esp_efuse_read_field_blob() and check the returned value instead.

Note If assertions are enabled and the parameter is invalid, execution will abort

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

Return

- true: The field parameter is valid and the bit is set.
- false: The bit is not set, or the parameter is invalid and assertions are disabled.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_read_field_cnt**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[], size_t **out_cnt*)

Reads bits from EFUSE field and returns number of bits programmed as "1".

If the bits are set not sequentially, they will still be counted.

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
- `[out] out_cnt`: A pointer that will contain the number of programmed as "1" bits.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_field_blob**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[], **const** void **src*, size_t *src_size_bits*)

Writes array to EFUSE field.

The number of write bits will be limited to the minimum value from the description of the bits in "field" structure or "src_size_bits" required size. Use "esp_efuse_get_field_size()" function to determine the length of the field. After the function is completed, the writing registers are cleared.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
- `[in] src`: A pointer to array that contains the data for writing.
- `[in] src_size_bits`: The number of bits required to write.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_field_cnt**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[], size_t *cnt*)

Writes a required count of bits as "1" to EFUSE field.

If there are no free bits in the field to set the required number of bits to "1", ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL error is returned, the field will not be partially recorded. After the function is completed, the writing registers are cleared.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL: Not all requested cnt bits is set.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.
- `[in] cnt`: Required number of programmed as "1" bits.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_field_bit**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[])

Write a single bit eFuse field to 1.

For use with eFuse fields that are a single bit. This function will write the bit to value 1 if it is not already set, or does nothing if the bit is already set.

This is equivalent to calling esp_efuse_write_field_cnt() with the cnt parameter equal to 1, except that it will return ESP_OK if the field is already set to 1.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed, or the bit was already set to value 1.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arugments, including if the efuse field is not 1 bit wide.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: Pointer to the structure describing the efuse field.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_write_protect**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*)

Sets a write protection for the whole block.

After that, it is impossible to write to this block. The write protection does not apply to block 0.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL: Not all requested cnt bits is set.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: The block does not support this command.

Parameters

- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse. (EFUSE_BLK1, EFUSE_BLK2 and EFUSE_BLK3)

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_read_protect**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*)

Sets a read protection for the whole block.

After that, it is impossible to read from this block. The read protection does not apply to block 0.

Return

- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL: Not all requested cnt bits is set.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: The block does not support this command.

Parameters

- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse. (EFUSE_BLK1, EFUSE_BLK2 and EFUSE_BLK3)

int **esp_efuse_get_field_size**(**const** *esp_efuse_desc_t* **field*[])

Returns the number of bits used by field.

Return Returns the number of bits used by field.

Parameters

- `[in] field`: A pointer to the structure describing the fields of efuse.

uint32_t **esp_efuse_read_reg**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*, unsigned int *num_reg*)

Returns value of efuse register.

This is a thread-safe implementation. Example: EFUSE_BLK2_RDATA3_REG where (blk=2, num_reg=3)

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

Return Value of register

Parameters

- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse.
- `[in] num_reg`: The register number in the block.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_reg**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*, unsigned int *num_reg*, uint32_t *val*)
Write value to efuse register.

Apply a coding scheme if necessary. This is a thread-safe implementation. Example: EFUSE_BLK3_WDATA0_REG where (blk=3, num_reg=0)

Return
- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.

Parameters
- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse.
- `[in] num_reg`: The register number in the block.
- `[in] val`: Value to write.

esp_efuse_coding_scheme_t **esp_efuse_get_coding_scheme**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*)
Return efuse coding scheme for blocks.

Note: The coding scheme is applicable only to 1, 2 and 3 blocks. For 0 block, the coding scheme is always `NONE`.

Return Return efuse coding scheme for blocks
Parameters
- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_read_block**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*, void **dst_key*, size_t *offset_in_bits*, size_t *size_bits*)
Read key to efuse block starting at the offset and the required size.

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.
Return
- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters
- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse.
- `[in] dst_key`: A pointer to array that will contain the result of reading.
- `[in] offset_in_bits`: Start bit in block.
- `[in] size_bits`: The number of bits required to read.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_block**(esp_efuse_block_t *blk*, **const** void **src_key*, size_t *offset_in_bits*, size_t *size_bits*)
Write key to efuse block starting at the offset and the required size.

Return
- ESP_OK: The operation was successfully completed.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits

Parameters
- `[in] blk`: Block number of eFuse.
- `[in] src_key`: A pointer to array that contains the key for writing.
- `[in] offset_in_bits`: Start bit in block.
- `[in] size_bits`: The number of bits required to write.

uint8_t **esp_efuse_get_chip_ver**(void)
Returns chip version from efuse.

Return chip version

uint32_t **esp_efuse_get_pkg_ver**(void)
Returns chip package from efuse.

Return chip package

void **esp_efuse_burn_new_values**(void)

Permanently update values written to the efuse write registers.

After updating EFUSE_BLKx_WDATAx_REG registers with new values to write, call this function to permanently write them to efuse.

After burning new efuses, the read registers are updated to match the new efuse values.

Note Setting bits in efuse is permanent, they cannot be unset.

Note Due to this restriction you don't need to copy values to Efuse write registers from the matching read registers, bits which are set in the read register but unset in the matching write register will be unchanged when new values are burned.

Note This function is not threadsafe, if calling code updates efuse values from multiple tasks then this is caller's responsibility to serialise.

void **esp_efuse_reset**(void)

Reset efuse write registers.

Efuse write registers are written to zero, to negate any changes that have been staged here.

Note This function is not threadsafe, if calling code updates efuse values from multiple tasks then this is caller's responsibility to serialise.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode**(void)

Disable ROM Download Mode via eFuse.

Permanently disables the ROM Download Mode feature. Once disabled, if the SoC is booted with strapping pins set for ROM Download Mode then an error is printed instead.

Note Not all SoCs support this option. An error will be returned if called on an ESP32 with a silicon revision lower than 3, as these revisions do not support this option.

Note If ROM Download Mode is already disabled, this function does nothing and returns success.

Return

- ESP_OK If the eFuse was successfully burned, or had already been burned.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (ESP32 only) This SoC is not capable of disabling UART download mode
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE (ESP32 only) This eFuse is write protected and cannot be written

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_rom_log_scheme**(*esp_efuse_rom_log_scheme_t log_scheme*)

Set boot ROM log scheme via eFuse.

Note By default, the boot ROM will always print to console. This API can be called to set the log scheme only once per chip, once the value is changed from the default it can't be changed again.

Return

- ESP_OK If the eFuse was successfully burned, or had already been burned.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (ESP32 only) This SoC is not capable of setting ROM log scheme
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE This eFuse is write protected or has been burned already

Parameters

- `log_scheme`: Supported ROM log scheme

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_enable_rom_secure_download_mode**(void)

Switch ROM Download Mode to Secure Download mode via eFuse.

Permanently enables Secure Download mode. This mode limits the use of ROM Download Mode functions to simple flash read, write and erase operations, plus a command to return a summary of currently enabled security features.

Note If Secure Download mode is already enabled, this function does nothing and returns success.

Note Disabling the ROM Download Mode also disables Secure Download Mode.

Return

- ESP_OK If the eFuse was successfully burned, or had already been burned.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE ROM Download Mode has been disabled via eFuse, so Secure Download mode is unavailable.

void **esp_efuse_write_random_key**(uint32_t *blk_wdata0_reg*)

Write random data to efuse key block write registers.

Note Caller is responsible for ensuring efuse block is empty and not write protected, before calling.

Note Behaviour depends on coding scheme: a 256-bit key is generated and written for Coding Scheme "None" , a 192-bit key is generated, extended to 256-bits by the Coding Scheme, and then writtten for 3/4 Coding Scheme.

Note This function does not burn the new values, caller should call esp_efuse_burn_new_values() when ready to do this.

Parameters

- `blk_wdata0_reg`: Address of the first data write register in the block

uint32_t **esp_efuse_read_secure_version**(void)

Return secure_version from efuse field.

Return Secure version from efuse field

bool **esp_efuse_check_secure_version**(uint32_t *secure_version*)

Check secure_version from app and secure_version and from efuse field.

Return

- True: If version of app is equal or more then secure_version from efuse.

Parameters

- `secure_version`: Secure version from app.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_update_secure_version**(uint32_t *secure_version*)

Write efuse field by secure_version value.

Update the secure_version value is available if the coding scheme is None. Note: Do not use this function in your applications. This function is called as part of the other API.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_FAIL: secure version of app cannot be set to efuse field.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: Anti rollback is not supported with the 3/4 and Repeat coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] secure_version`: Secure version from app.

void **esp_efuse_init**(uint32_t *offset*, uint32_t *size*)

Initializes variables: offset and size to simulate the work of an eFuse.

Note: To simulate the work of an eFuse need to set CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_EFUSE_SECURE_VERSION_EMULATE option and to add in the partition.csv file a line `efuse_em, data, efuse, , 0x2000,`.

Parameters

- `[in] offset`: The starting address of the partition where the eFuse data will be located.
- `[in] size`: The size of the partition.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_batch_write_begin**(void)

Set the batch mode of writing fields.

This mode allows you to write the fields in the batch mode when need to burn several efuses at one time. To enable batch mode call begin() then perform as usually the necessary operations read and write and at the end call commit() to actually burn all written efuses. The batch mode can be used nested. The commit will be done by the last commit() function. The number of begin() functions should be equal to the number of commit() functions.

Note: If batch mode is enabled by the first task, at this time the second task cannot write/read efuses. The second task will wait for the first task to complete the batch operation.

Note Please note that reading in the batch mode does not show uncommitted changes.

```
// Example of using the batch writing mode.

// set the batch writing mode
esp_efuse_batch_write_begin();
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// use any writing functions as usual
esp_efuse_write_field_blob(ESP_EFUSE_...);
esp_efuse_write_field_cnt(ESP_EFUSE_...);
esp_efuse_set_write_protect(EFUSE_BLKx);
esp_efuse_write_reg(EFUSE_BLKx, ...);
esp_efuse_write_block(EFUSE_BLKx, ...);
esp_efuse_write(ESP_EFUSE_1, 3);  // ESP_EFUSE_1 == 1, here we write a new␣
↪value = 3. The changes will be burn by the commit() function.
esp_efuse_read_...(ESP_EFUSE_1);  // this function returns ESP_EFUSE_1 == 1␣
↪because uncommitted changes are not readable, it will be available only␣
↪after commit.
...

// esp_efuse_batch_write APIs can be called recursively.
esp_efuse_batch_write_begin();
esp_efuse_set_write_protect(EFUSE_BLKx);
esp_efuse_batch_write_commit(); // the burn will be skipped here, it will be␣
↪done in the last commit().

...

// Write all of these fields to the efuse registers
esp_efuse_batch_write_commit();
esp_efuse_read_...(ESP_EFUSE_1);  // this function returns ESP_EFUSE_1 == 3.
```

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_batch_write_cancel** (void)

Reset the batch mode of writing fields.

It will reset the batch writing mode and any written changes.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Tha batch mode was not set.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_batch_write_commit** (void)

Writes all prepared data for the batch mode.

Must be called to ensure changes are written to the efuse registers. After this the batch writing mode will be reset.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: The deferred writing mode was not set.

bool **esp_efuse_block_is_empty** (esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Checks that the given block is empty.

Return

- True: The block is empty.
- False: The block is not empty or was an error.

bool **esp_efuse_get_key_dis_read** (esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Returns a read protection for the key block.

Return True: The key block is read protected False: The key block is readable.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_key_dis_read** (esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Sets a read protection for the key block.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

bool **esp_efuse_get_key_dis_write**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Returns a write protection for the key block.

Return True: The key block is write protected False: The key block is writeable.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_key_dis_write**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Sets a write protection for the key block.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

bool **esp_efuse_key_block_unused**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Returns true if the key block is unused, false otherwise.

An unused key block is all zero content, not read or write protected, and has purpose 0 (ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_USER)

Return

- True if key block is unused,
- False if key block is used or the specified block index is not a key block.

Parameters

- `block`: key block to check.

const *esp_efuse_desc_t* ****esp_efuse_get_purpose_field**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Returns a pointer to a key purpose for an efuse key block.

To get the value of this field use esp_efuse_read_field_blob() or esp_efuse_get_key_purpose().

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

Return Pointer: If Successful returns a pointer to the corresponding efuse field otherwise NULL.

const *esp_efuse_desc_t* ****esp_efuse_get_key**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Returns a pointer to a key block.

Return Pointer: If Successful returns a pointer to the corresponding efuse field otherwise NULL.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

esp_efuse_purpose_t **esp_efuse_get_key_purpose**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*)

Returns the current purpose set for an efuse key block.

Return

- Value: If Successful, it returns the value of the purpose related to the given key block.
- ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_MAX: Otherwise.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_key_purpose** (esp_efuse_block_t *block*, *esp_efuse_purpose_t* *purpose*)
Sets a key purpose for an efuse key block.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters
- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX
- `[in] purpose`: Key purpose.

bool **esp_efuse_get_keypurpose_dis_write** (esp_efuse_block_t *block*)
Returns a write protection of the key purpose field for an efuse key block.

Return True: The key purpose is write protected. False: The key purpose is writeable.

Parameters
- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_keypurpose_dis_write** (esp_efuse_block_t *block*)
Sets a write protection of the key purpose field for an efuse key block.

Return
- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters
- `[in] block`: A key block in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX

bool **esp_efuse_find_purpose** (*esp_efuse_purpose_t* *purpose*, esp_efuse_block_t **block*)
Find a key block with the particular purpose set.

Return
- True: If found,
- False: If not found (value at block pointer is unchanged).

Parameters
- `[in] purpose`: Purpose to search for.
- `[out] block`: Pointer in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX which will be set to the key block if found. Can be NULL, if only need to test the key block exists.

esp_efuse_block_t **esp_efuse_find_unused_key_block** (void)
Search for an unused key block and return the first one found.

See esp_efuse_key_block_unused for a description of an unused key block.

Return First unused key block, or EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX if no unused key block is found.

unsigned **esp_efuse_count_unused_key_blocks** (void)
Return the number of unused efuse key blocks in the range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0..EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX.

bool **esp_efuse_get_digest_revoke** (unsigned *num_digest*)
Returns the status of the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.

Return
- True: If key digest is revoked,
- False; If key digest is not revoked.

Parameters
- `[in] num_digest`: The number of digest in range 0..2

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_digest_revoke** (unsigned *num_digest*)
Sets the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] num_digest`: The number of digest in range 0..2

bool **esp_efuse_get_write_protect_of_digest_revoke**(unsigned *num_digest*)

Returns a write protection of the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.

Return True: The revocation bit is write protected. False: The revocation bit is writeable.

Parameters

- `[in] num_digest`: The number of digest in range 0..2

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_set_write_protect_of_digest_revoke**(unsigned *num_digest*)

Sets a write protection of the Secure Boot public key digest revocation bit.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] num_digest`: The number of digest in range 0..2

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_key**(esp_efuse_block_t *block*, *esp_efuse_purpose_t* *purpose*, **const** void **key*, size_t *key_size_bytes*)

Program a block of key data to an efuse block.

The burn of a key, protection bits, and a purpose happens in batch mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error in efuses state, unused block not found.
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] block`: Block to read purpose for. Must be in range EFUSE_BLK_KEY0 to EFUSE_BLK_KEY_MAX. Key block must be unused (esp_efuse_key_block_unused).
- `[in] purpose`: Purpose to set for this key. Purpose must be already unset.
- `[in] key`: Pointer to data to write.
- `[in] key_size_bytes`: Bytes length of data to write.

esp_err_t **esp_efuse_write_keys**(*esp_efuse_purpose_t* *purposes*[], uint8_t *keys*[][32], unsigned *number_of_keys*)

Program keys to unused efuse blocks.

The burn of keys, protection bits, and purposes happens in batch mode.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error in the passed arguments.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error in efuses state, unused block not found.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS: Error not enough unused key blocks available
- ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.
- ESP_ERR_CODING: Error range of data does not match the coding scheme.

Parameters

- `[in] purposes`: Array of purposes (purpose[number_of_keys]).
- `[in] keys`: Array of keys (uint8_t keys[number_of_keys][32]). Each key is 32 bytes long.
- `[in] number_of_keys`: The number of keys to write (up to 6 keys).

Structures

struct esp_efuse_desc_t

Type definition for an eFuse field.

Public Members

esp_efuse_block_t **efuse_block** : 8

Block of eFuse

uint8_t **bit_start**

Start bit [0..255]

uint16_t **bit_count**

Length of bit field [1..-]

Macros

ESP_ERR_EFUSE

Base error code for efuse api.

ESP_OK_EFUSE_CNT

OK the required number of bits is set.

ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL

Error field is full.

ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG

Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.

ESP_ERR_CODING

Error while a encoding operation.

ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS

Error not enough unused key blocks available

Enumerations

enum esp_efuse_rom_log_scheme_t

Type definition for ROM log scheme.

Values:

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_ON

Always enable ROM logging

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_LOW

ROM logging is enabled when specific GPIO level is low during start up

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_HIGH

ROM logging is enabled when specific GPIO level is high during start up

ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_OFF

Disable ROM logging permanently

enum esp_efuse_purpose_t

Type of key purpose.

Values:

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_USER = 0

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_RESERVED = 1

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_256_KEY_1 = 2

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_256_KEY_2 = 3

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_128_KEY = 4

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_DOWN_ALL = 5

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_DOWN_JTAG = 6

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_DOWN_DIGITAL_SIGNATURE = 7

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_UP = 8

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST0 = 9

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST1 = 10

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST2 = 11

ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_MAX

2.6.6 Error Codes and Helper Functions

This section lists definitions of common ESP-IDF error codes and several helper functions related to error handling.

For general information about error codes in ESP-IDF, see *Error Handling*.

For the full list of error codes defined in ESP-IDF, see *Error Code Reference*.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_common/include/esp_err.h

Functions

const char ***esp_err_to_name** (*esp_err_t code*)

Returns string for esp_err_t error codes.

This function finds the error code in a pre-generated lookup-table and returns its string representation.

The function is generated by the Python script tools/gen_esp_err_to_name.py which should be run each time an esp_err_t error is modified, created or removed from the IDF project.

Return string error message

Parameters

- `code`: esp_err_t error code

const char ***esp_err_to_name_r** (*esp_err_t code*, char **buf*, size_t *buflen*)

Returns string for esp_err_t and system error codes.

This function finds the error code in a pre-generated lookup-table of esp_err_t errors and returns its string representation. If the error code is not found then it is attempted to be found among system errors.

The function is generated by the Python script tools/gen_esp_err_to_name.py which should be run each time an esp_err_t error is modified, created or removed from the IDF project.

Return buf containing the string error message

Parameters

- `code`: esp_err_t error code
- `[out] buf`: buffer where the error message should be written
- `buflen`: Size of buffer buf. At most buflen bytes are written into the buf buffer (including the terminating null byte).

Macros

ESP_OK
esp_err_t value indicating success (no error)

ESP_FAIL
Generic esp_err_t code indicating failure

ESP_ERR_NO_MEM
Out of memory

ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG
Invalid argument

ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE
Invalid state

ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE
Invalid size

ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND
Requested resource not found

ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED
Operation or feature not supported

ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT
Operation timed out

ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE
Received response was invalid

ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC
CRC or checksum was invalid

ESP_ERR_INVALID_VERSION
Version was invalid

ESP_ERR_INVALID_MAC
MAC address was invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_BASE
Starting number of WiFi error codes

ESP_ERR_MESH_BASE
Starting number of MESH error codes

ESP_ERR_FLASH_BASE
Starting number of flash error codes

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_BASE
Starting number of HW cryptography module error codes

ESP_ERROR_CHECK(x)
Macro which can be used to check the error code, and terminate the program in case the code is not ESP_OK. Prints the error code, error location, and the failed statement to serial output.

Disabled if assertions are disabled.

ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT(x)
Macro which can be used to check the error code. Prints the error code, error location, and the failed statement to serial output. In comparison with ESP_ERROR_CHECK(), this prints the same error message but isn't terminating the program.

Type Definitions

typedef int **esp_err_t**

2.6.7 ESP HTTPS OTA

Overview

`esp_https_ota` provides simplified APIs to perform firmware upgrades over HTTPS. It's an abstraction layer over existing OTA APIs.

Application Example

```
esp_err_t do_firmware_upgrade()
{
    esp_http_client_config_t config = {
        .url = CONFIG_FIRMWARE_UPGRADE_URL,
        .cert_pem = (char *)server_cert_pem_start,
    };
    esp_err_t ret = esp_https_ota(&config);
    if (ret == ESP_OK) {
        esp_restart();
    } else {
        return ESP_FAIL;
    }
    return ESP_OK;
}
```

Partial Image Download over HTTPS

To use partial image download feature, enable `partial_http_download` configuration in `esp_https_ota_config_t`. When this configuration is enabled, firmware image will be downloaded in multiple HTTP requests of specified size. Maximum content length of each request can be specified by setting `max_http_request_size` to required value.

This option is useful while fetching image from a service like AWS S3, where mbedTLS Rx buffer size (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_IN_CONTENT_LEN*) can be set to lower value which is not possible without enabling this configuration.

Default value of mbedTLS Rx buffer size is set to 16K. By using partial_http_download with max_http_request_size of 4K, size of mbedTLS Rx buffer can be reduced to 4K. With this confiuration, memory saving of around 12K is expected.

Signature Verification

For additional security, signature of OTA firmware images can be verified. For that, refer *Secure OTA Updates Without Secure boot*

API Reference

Header File

- esp_https_ota/include/esp_https_ota.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_https_ota**(**const** *esp_http_client_config_t* **config*)

HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade.

This function allocates HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade context, establishes HTTPS connection, reads image data from HTTP stream and writes it to OTA partition and finishes HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade operation.

This API supports URL redirection, but if CA cert of URLs differ then it should be appended to `cert_pem` member of `config`.

Note This API handles the entire OTA operation, so if this API is being used then no other APIs from `esp_https_ota` component should be called. If more information and control is needed during the HTTPS OTA process, then one can use `esp_https_ota_begin` and subsequent APIs. If this API returns successfully, esp_restart() must be called to boot from the new firmware image.

Return

- ESP_OK: OTA data updated, next reboot will use specified partition.
- ESP_FAIL: For generic failure.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Invalid app image
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for OTA operation.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- For other return codes, refer OTA documentation in esp-idf ' s app_update component.

Parameters

- `[in] config`: pointer to *esp_http_client_config_t* structure.

esp_err_t **esp_https_ota_begin**(*esp_https_ota_config_t* **ota_config*, *esp_https_ota_handle_t* **handle*)

Start HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade.

This function initializes ESP HTTPS OTA context and establishes HTTPS connection. This function must be invoked first. If this function returns successfully, then `esp_https_ota_perform` should be called to continue with the OTA process and there should be a call to `esp_https_ota_finish` on completion of OTA operation or on failure in subsequent operations. This API supports URL redirection, but if CA cert of URLs differ then it should be appended to `cert_pem` member of `http_config`, which is a part of `ota_config`. In case of error, this API explicitly sets `handle` to NULL.

Note This API is blocking, so setting `is_async` member of `http_config` structure will result in an error.

Return

- ESP_OK: HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade context initialised and HTTPS connection established
- ESP_FAIL: For generic failure.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument (missing/incorrect config, certificate, etc.)
- For other return codes, refer documentation in app_update component and esp_http_client component in esp-idf.

Parameters

- `[in] ota_config`: pointer to *esp_https_ota_config_t* structure
- `[out] handle`: pointer to an allocated data of type `esp_https_ota_handle_t` which will be initialised in this function

esp_err_t **esp_https_ota_perform**(*esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle*)

Read image data from HTTP stream and write it to OTA partition.

This function reads image data from HTTP stream and writes it to OTA partition. This function must be called only if esp_https_ota_begin() returns successfully. This function must be called in a loop since it returns after every HTTP read operation thus giving you the flexibility to stop OTA operation midway.

Return

- ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS: OTA update is in progress, call this API again to continue.
- ESP_OK: OTA update was successful
- ESP_FAIL: OTA update failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Invalid app image
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for OTA operation.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- For other return codes, refer OTA documentation in esp-idf ' s app_update component.

Parameters

- `[in] https_ota_handle`: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

bool **esp_https_ota_is_complete_data_received**(*esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle*)

Checks if complete data was received or not.

Note This API can be called just before esp_https_ota_finish() to validate if the complete image was indeed received.

Return

- false
- true

Parameters

- `[in] https_ota_handle`: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

esp_err_t **esp_https_ota_finish** (*esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle*)

Clean-up HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade and close HTTPS connection.

This function closes the HTTP connection and frees the ESP HTTPS OTA context. This function switches the boot partition to the OTA partition containing the new firmware image.

Note If this API returns successfully, esp_restart() must be called to boot from the new firmware image esp_https_ota_finish should not be called after calling esp_https_ota_abort

Return

- ESP_OK: Clean-up successful
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Invalid app image

Parameters

- `[in] https_ota_handle`: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

esp_err_t **esp_https_ota_abort** (*esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle*)

Clean-up HTTPS OTA Firmware upgrade and close HTTPS connection.

This function closes the HTTP connection and frees the ESP HTTPS OTA context.

Note esp_https_ota_abort should not be called after calling esp_https_ota_finish

Return

- ESP_OK: Clean-up successful
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Invalid ESP HTTPS OTA state
- ESP_FAIL: OTA not started
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA handle not found
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid argument

Parameters

- `[in] https_ota_handle`: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

esp_err_t **esp_https_ota_get_img_desc** (*esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle*, *esp_app_desc_t *new_app_info*)

Reads app description from image header. The app description provides information like the "Firmware version" of the image.

Note This API can be called only after esp_https_ota_begin() and before esp_https_ota_perform(). Calling this API is not mandatory.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid arguments
- ESP_FAIL: Failed to read image descriptor
- ESP_OK: Successfully read image descriptor

Parameters

- `[in] https_ota_handle`: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure
- `[out] new_app_info`: pointer to an allocated *esp_app_desc_t* structure

int **esp_https_ota_get_image_len_read** (*esp_https_ota_handle_t https_ota_handle*)

This function returns OTA image data read so far.

Note This API should be called only if `esp_https_ota_perform()` has been called atleast once or if `esp_https_ota_get_img_desc` has been called before.

Return

- -1 On failure
- total bytes read so far

Parameters

- `[in] https_ota_handle`: pointer to esp_https_ota_handle_t structure

Structures

struct esp_https_ota_config_t

ESP HTTPS OTA configuration.

Public Members

const *esp_http_client_config_t* ***http_config**

ESP HTTP client configuration

http_client_init_cb_t **http_client_init_cb**

Callback after ESP HTTP client is initialised

bool **bulk_flash_erase**

Erase entire flash partition during initialization. By default flash partition is erased during write operation and in chunk of 4K sector size

bool **partial_http_download**

Enable Firmware image to be downloaded over multiple HTTP requests

int **max_http_request_size**

Maximum request size for partial HTTP download

Macros

ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_BASE

ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS

Type Definitions

typedef void ***esp_https_ota_handle_t**

typedef *esp_err_t* (***http_client_init_cb_t**)(*esp_http_client_handle_t*)

2.6.8 ESP-pthread

Overview

This module offers Espressif specific extensions to the pthread library that can be used to influence the behaviour of pthreads. Currently the following configuration can be tuned:

- Stack size of the pthreads
- Priority of the created pthreads
- Inheriting this configuration across threads
- Thread name
- Core affinity / core pinning.

Example to tune the stack size of the pthread:

```
void * thread_func(void * p)
{
    printf("In thread_func\n");
    return NULL;
}

void app_main(void)
{
    pthread_t t1;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    esp_pthread_cfg_t cfg = esp_create_default_pthread_config();
    cfg.stack_size = (4 * 1024);
    esp_pthread_set_cfg(&cfg);

    pthread_create(&t1, NULL, thread_func, NULL);
}
```

The API can also be used for inheriting the settings across threads. For example:

```
void * my_thread2(void * p)
{
    /* This thread will inherit the stack size of 4K */
    printf("In my_thread2\n");

    return NULL;
}

void * my_thread1(void * p)
{
    printf("In my_thread1\n");
    pthread_t t2;
    pthread_create(&t2, NULL, my_thread2, NULL);

    return NULL;
}

void app_main(void)
{
    pthread_t t1;

    esp_pthread_cfg_t cfg = esp_create_default_pthread_config();
    cfg.stack_size = (4 * 1024);
    cfg.inherit_cfg = true;
    esp_pthread_set_cfg(&cfg);

    pthread_create(&t1, NULL, my_thread1, NULL);
}
```

API Reference

Header File

- pthread/include/esp_pthread.h

Functions

esp_pthread_cfg_t **esp_pthread_get_default_config**(void)

Creates a default pthread configuration based on the values set via menuconfig.

Return A default configuration structure.

esp_err_t **esp_pthread_set_cfg**(**const** *esp_pthread_cfg_t* *cfg)

Configure parameters for creating pthread.

This API allows you to configure how the subsequent pthread_create() call will behave. This call can be used to setup configuration parameters like stack size, priority, configuration inheritance etc.

If the 'inherit' flag in the configuration structure is enabled, then the same configuration is also inherited in the thread subtree.

Note Passing non-NULL attributes to pthread_create() will override the stack_size parameter set using this API

Return

- ESP_OK if configuration was successfully set
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if out of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if stack_size is less than PTHREAD_STACK_MIN

Parameters

- `cfg`: The pthread config parameters

esp_err_t **esp_pthread_get_cfg**(*esp_pthread_cfg_t* *p)

Get current pthread creation configuration.

This will retrieve the current configuration that will be used for creating threads.

Return

- ESP_OK if the configuration was available
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if a configuration wasn't previously set

Parameters

- `p`: Pointer to the pthread config structure that will be updated with the currently configured parameters

esp_err_t **esp_pthread_init**(void)

Initialize pthread library.

Structures

struct esp_pthread_cfg_t

pthread configuration structure that influences pthread creation

Public Members

size_t **stack_size**

The stack size of the pthread.

size_t **prio**

The thread's priority.

bool **inherit_cfg**

Inherit this configuration further.

const char ***thread_name**

The thread name.

int **pin_to_core**

The core id to pin the thread to. Has the same value range as xCoreId argument of xTaskCreatePinnedToCore.

Macros

PTHREAD_STACK_MIN

2.6.9 Event Loop Library

Overview

The event loop library allows components to declare events to which other components can register handlers –code which will execute when those events occur. This allows loosely coupled components to attach desired behavior to changes in state of other components without application involvement. For instance, a high level connection handling library may subscribe to events produced by the wifi subsystem directly and act on those events. This also simplifies event processing by serializing and deferring code execution to another context.

Using esp_event APIs

There are two objects of concern for users of this library: events and event loops.

Events are occurrences of note. For example, for WiFi, a successful connection to the access point may be an event. Events are referenced using a two part identifier which are discussed more *here*. Event loops are the vehicle by which events get posted by event sources and handled by event handler functions. These two appear prominently in the event loop library APIs.

Using this library roughly entails the following flow:

1. A user defines a function that should run when an event is posted to a loop. This function is referred to as the event handler. It should have the same signature as `esp_event_handler_t`.
2. An event loop is created using `esp_event_loop_create()`, which outputs a handle to the loop of type `esp_event_loop_handle_t`. Event loops created using this API are referred to as user event loops. There is, however, a special type of event loop called the default event loop which are discussed *here*.
3. Components register event handlers to the loop using `esp_event_handler_register_with()`. Handlers can be registered with multiple loops, more on that *here*.
4. Event sources post an event to the loop using `esp_event_post_to()`.
5. Components wanting to remove their handlers from being called can do so by unregistering from the loop using `esp_event_handler_unregister_with()`.
6. Event loops which are no longer needed can be deleted using `esp_event_loop_delete()`.

In code, the flow above may look like as follows:

```
// 1. Define the event handler
void run_on_event(void* handler_arg, esp_event_base_t base, int32_t id, void*␣
↪event_data)
{
    // Event handler logic
}

void app_main()
{
    // 2. A configuration structure of type esp_event_loop_args_t is needed to␣
↪specify the properties of the loop to be
    // created. A handle of type esp_event_loop_handle_t is obtained, which is␣
↪needed by the other APIs to reference the loop
    // to perform their operations on.
    esp_event_loop_args_t loop_args = {
        .queue_size = ...,
        .task_name = ...
        .task_priority = ...,
        .task_stack_size = ...,
        .task_core_id = ...
    };

    esp_event_loop_handle_t loop_handle;

    esp_event_loop_create(&loop_args, &loop_handle);

    // 3. Register event handler defined in (1). MY_EVENT_BASE and MY_EVENT_ID␣
↪specifies a hypothetical
    // event that handler run_on_event should execute on when it gets posted to␣
↪the loop.
    esp_event_handler_register_with(loop_handle, MY_EVENT_BASE, MY_EVENT_ID, run_
↪on_event, ...);

    ...

    // 4. Post events to the loop. This queues the event on the event loop. At␣
↪some point in time
    // the event loop executes the event handler registered to the posted event,␣
↪in this case run_on_event.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // For simplicity sake this example calls esp_event_post_to from app_main, but␣
↪posting can be done from
    // any other tasks (which is the more interesting use case).
    esp_event_post_to(loop_handle, MY_EVENT_BASE, MY_EVENT_ID, ...);

    ...

    // 5. Unregistering an unneeded handler
    esp_event_handler_unregister_with(loop_handle, MY_EVENT_BASE, MY_EVENT_ID, run_
↪on_event);

    ...

    // 6. Deleting an unneeded event loop
    esp_event_loop_delete(loop_handle);
}
```

Declaring and defining events

As mentioned previously, events consists of two-part identifers: the event base and the event ID. The event base identifies an independent group of events; the event ID identifies the event within that group. Think of the event base and event ID as a person's last name and first name, respectively. A last name identifies a family, and the first name identifies a person within that family.

The event loop library provides macros to declare and define the event base easily.

Event base declaration:

```
ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE(EVENT_BASE)
```

Event base definition:

```
ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE(EVENT_BASE)
```

Note: In IDF, the base identifiers for system events are uppercase and are postfixed with `_EVENT`. For example, the base for wifi events is declared and defined as `WIFI_EVENT`, the ethernet event base `ETHERNET_EVENT`, and so on. The purpose is to have event bases look like constants (although they are global variables considering the defintions of macros `ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE` and `ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE`).

For event ID's, declaring them as enumerations is recommended. Once again, for visibility, these are typically placed in public header files.

Event ID:

```
enum {
    EVENT_ID_1,
    EVENT_ID_2,
    EVENT_ID_3,
    ...
}
```

Default Event Loop

The default event loop is a special type of loop used for system events (WiFi events, for example). The handle for this loop is hidden from the user. The creation, deletion, handler registration/unregistration and posting of events is done through a variant of the APIs for user event loops. The table below enumerates those variants, and the user event loops equivalent.

User Event Loops	Default Event Loops
esp_event_loop_create()	*esp_event_loop_create_default()*
esp_event_loop_delete()	*esp_event_loop_delete_default()*
esp_event_handler_register_with()	*esp_event_handler_register()*
esp_event_handler_unregister_with()	*esp_event_handler_unregister()*
esp_event_post_to()	*esp_event_post()*

If you compare the signatures for both, they are mostly similar except the for the lack of loop handle specification for the default event loop APIs.

Other than the API difference and the special designation to which system events are posted to, there is no difference to how default event loops and user event loops behave. It is even possible for users to post their own events to the default event loop, should the user opt to not create their own loops to save memory.

Notes on Handler Registration

It is possible to register a single handler to multiple events individually, i.e. using multiple calls to *esp_event_handler_register_with()*. For those multiple calls, the specific event base and event ID can be specified with which the handler should execute.

However, in some cases it is desirable for a handler to execute on (1) all events that get posted to a loop or (2) all events of a particular base identifier. This is possible using the special event base identifier `ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE` and special event ID `ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID`. These special identifiers may be passed as the event base and event ID arguments for *esp_event_handler_register_with()*.

Therefore, the valid arguments to *esp_event_handler_register_with()* are:

1. <event base>, <event ID> - handler executes when the event with base <event base> and event ID <event ID> gets posted to the loop
2. <event base>, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID - handler executes when any event with base <event base> gets posted to the loop
3. ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID - handler executes when any event gets posted to the loop

As an example, suppose the following handler registrations were performed:

```
esp_event_handler_register_with(loop_handle, MY_EVENT_BASE, MY_EVENT_ID, run_on_
↪event_1, ...);
esp_event_handler_register_with(loop_handle, MY_EVENT_BASE, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID, run_
↪on_event_2, ...);
esp_event_handler_register_with(loop_handle, ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE, ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID,␣
↪run_on_event_3, ...);
```

If the hypothetical event `MY_EVENT_BASE`, `MY_EVENT_ID` is posted, all three handlers `run_on_event_1`, `run_on_event_2`, and `run_on_event_3` would execute.

If the hypothetical event `MY_EVENT_BASE`, `MY_OTHER_EVENT_ID` is posted, only `run_on_event_2` and `run_on_event_3` would execute.

If the hypothetical event `MY_OTHER_EVENT_BASE`, `MY_OTHER_EVENT_ID` is posted, only `run_on_event_3` would execute.

Handler Registration and Handler Dispatch Order The general rule is that for handlers that match a certain posted event during dispatch, those which are registered first also gets executed first. The user can then control which handlers get executed first by registering them before other handlers, provided that all registrations are performed using a single task. If the user plans to take advantage of this behavior, caution must be exercised if there are multiple tasks registering handlers. While the 'first registered, first executed' behavior still holds true, the task which gets executed first will also get their handlers registered first. Handlers registered one after the other by a single task will still be dispatched in the order relative to each other, but if that task gets pre-empted in between registration by another task which also registers handlers; then during dispatch those handlers will also get executed in between.

Event loop profiling

A configuration option *CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING* can be enabled in order to activate statistics collection for all event loops created. The function `esp_event_dump()` can be used to output the collected statistics to a file stream. More details on the information included in the dump can be found in the `esp_event_dump()` API Reference.

Application Example

Examples on using the `esp_event` library can be found in system/esp_event. The examples cover event declaration, loop creation, handler registration and unregistration and event posting.

Other examples which also adopt esp_event library:

- NMEA Parser , which will decode the statements received from GPS.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_event/include/esp_event.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_event_loop_create**(**const** *esp_event_loop_args_t* *event_loop_args, *esp_event_loop_handle_t* *event_loop)

Create a new event loop.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for event loops list
- ESP_FAIL: Failed to create task loop
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop_args`: configuration structure for the event loop to create
- `[out] event_loop`: handle to the created event loop

esp_err_t **esp_event_loop_delete**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t* *event_loop*)

Delete an existing event loop.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: event loop to delete

esp_err_t **esp_event_loop_create_default**(void)

Create default event loop.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for event loops list
- ESP_FAIL: Failed to create task loop
- Others: Fail

esp_err_t **esp_event_loop_delete_default**(void)

Delete the default event loop.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- Others: Fail

esp_err_t **esp_event_loop_run**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, TickType_t *ticks_to_run*)

Dispatch events posted to an event loop.

This function is used to dispatch events posted to a loop with no dedicated task, i.e task name was set to NULL in event_loop_args argument during loop creation. This function includes an argument to limit the amount of time it runs, returning control to the caller when that time expires (or some time afterwards). There is no guarantee that a call to this function will exit at exactly the time of expiry. There is also no guarantee that events have been dispatched during the call, as the function might have spent all of the alloted time waiting on the event queue. Once an event has been unqueued, however, it is guaranteed to be dispatched. This guarantee contributes to not being able to exit exactly at time of expiry as (1) blocking on internal mutexes is necessary for dispatching the unqueued event, and (2) during dispatch of the unqueued event there is no way to control the time occupied by handler code execution. The guaranteed time of exit is therefore the alloted time + amount of time required to dispatch the last unqueued event.

In cases where waiting on the queue times out, ESP_OK is returned and not ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT, since it is normal behavior.

Note encountering an unknown event that has been posted to the loop will only generate a warning, not an error.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: event loop to dispatch posted events from
- `[in] ticks_to_run`: number of ticks to run the loop

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_register**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*, void **event_handler_arg*)

Register an event handler to the system event loop (legacy).

This function can be used to register a handler for either: (1) specific events, (2) all events of a certain event base, or (3) all events known by the system event loop.

Note This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use esp_event_handler_instance_register() instead.

- specific events: specify exact event_base and event_id
- all events of a certain base: specify exact event_base and use ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id
- all events known by the loop: use ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE for event_base and ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id

Registering multiple handlers to events is possible. Registering a single handler to multiple events is also possible. However, registering the same handler to the same event multiple times would cause the previous registrations to be overwritten.

Note the event loop library does not maintain a copy of event_handler_arg, therefore the user should ensure that event_handler_arg still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the base id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_handler`: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- `[in] event_handler_arg`: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_register_with**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, *esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*, void **event_handler_arg*)

Register an event handler to a specific loop (legacy).

This function behaves in the same manner as esp_event_handler_register, except the additional specification of the event loop to register the handler to.

Note This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use esp_event_handler_instance_register_with() instead.

Note the event loop library does not maintain a copy of event_handler_arg, therefore the user should ensure that event_handler_arg still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: the event loop to register this handler function to
- `[in] event_base`: the base id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_handler`: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- `[in] event_handler_arg`: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_instance_register_with**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, *esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*, void **event_handler_arg*, *esp_event_handler_instance_t *instance*)

Register an instance of event handler to a specific loop.

This function can be used to register a handler for either: (1) specific events, (2) all events of a certain event base, or (3) all events known by the system event loop.

- specific events: specify exact event_base and event_id
- all events of a certain base: specify exact event_base and use ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id
- all events known by the loop: use ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE for event_base and ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id

Besides the error, the function returns an instance object as output parameter to identify each registration. This is necessary to remove (unregister) the registration before the event loop is deleted.

Registering multiple handlers to events, registering a single handler to multiple events as well as registering the same handler to the same event multiple times is possible. Each registration yields a distinct instance object which identifies it over the registration lifetime.

Note the event loop library does not maintain a copy of event_handler_arg, therefore the user should ensure that event_handler_arg still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id or instance is NULL
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: the event loop to register this handler function to
- `[in] event_base`: the base id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_handler`: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched

- `[in] event_handler_arg`: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called
- `[out] instance`: An event handler instance object related to the registered event handler and data, can be NULL. This needs to be kept if the specific callback instance should be unregistered before deleting the whole event loop. Registering the same event handler multiple times is possible and yields distinct instance objects. The data can be the same for all registrations. If no unregistration is needed but the handler should be deleted when the event loop is deleted, instance can be NULL.

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_instance_register**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*, void **event_handler_arg*, *esp_event_handler_instance_t *instance*)

Register an instance of event handler to the default loop.

This function does the same as esp_event_handler_instance_register_with, except that it registers the handler to the default event loop.

Note the event loop library does not maintain a copy of event_handler_arg, therefore the user should ensure that event_handler_arg still points to a valid location by the time the handler gets called

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for the handler
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id or instance is NULL
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the base id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event to register the handler for
- `[in] event_handler`: the handler function which gets called when the event is dispatched
- `[in] event_handler_arg`: data, aside from event data, that is passed to the handler when it is called
- `[out] instance`: An event handler instance object related to the registered event handler and data, can be NULL. This needs to be kept if the specific callback instance should be unregistered before deleting the whole event loop. Registering the same event handler multiple times is possible and yields distinct instance objects. The data can be the same for all registrations. If no unregistration is needed but the handler should be deleted when the event loop is deleted, instance can be NULL.

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_unregister**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*)

Unregister a handler with the system event loop (legacy).

This function can be used to unregister a handler so that it no longer gets called during dispatch. Handlers can be unregistered for either: (1) specific events, (2) all events of a certain event base, or (3) all events known by the system event loop

Note This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use esp_event_handler_instance_unregister() instead.

- specific events: specify exact event_base and event_id
- all events of a certain base: specify exact event_base and use ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id
- all events known by the loop: use ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE for event_base and ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id

This function ignores unregistration of handlers that has not been previously registered.

Return ESP_OK success
Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG invalid combination of event base and event id
Return others fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] event_handler`: the handler to unregister

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_unregister_with**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, *esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_t event_handler*)

Unregister a handler from a specific event loop (legacy).

This function behaves in the same manner as esp_event_handler_unregister, except the additional specification of the event loop to unregister the handler with.

Note This function is obsolete and will be deprecated soon, please use esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with() instead.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: the event loop with which to unregister this handler function
- `[in] event_base`: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] event_handler`: the handler to unregister

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, *esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_instance_t instance*)

Unregister a handler instance from a specific event loop.

This function can be used to unregister a handler so that it no longer gets called during dispatch. Handlers can be unregistered for either: (1) specific events, (2) all events of a certain event base, or (3) all events known by the system event loop

- specific events: specify exact event_base and event_id
- all events of a certain base: specify exact event_base and use ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id
- all events known by the loop: use ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE for event_base and ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID as the event_id

This function ignores unregistration of handler instances that have not been previously registered.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: the event loop with which to unregister this handler function
- `[in] event_base`: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] instance`: the instance object of the registration to be unregistered

esp_err_t **esp_event_handler_instance_unregister**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, *esp_event_handler_instance_t instance*)

Unregister a handler from the system event loop.

This function does the same as esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with, except that it unregisters the handler instance from the default event loop.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the base of the event with which to unregister the handler
- `[in] event_id`: the id of the event with which to unregister the handler

- `[in] instance`: the instance object of the registration to be unregistered

esp_err_t **esp_event_post**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, void **event_data*, size_t *event_data_size*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Posts an event to the system default event loop. The event loop library keeps a copy of event_data and manages the copy's lifetime automatically (allocation + deletion); this ensures that the data the handler recieves is always valid.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Time to wait for event queue to unblock expired, queue full when posting from ISR
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- `[in] event_id`: the event id that identifies the event
- `[in] event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurence, that gets passed to the handler
- `[in] event_data_size`: the size of the event data
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: number of ticks to block on a full event queue

esp_err_t **esp_event_post_to**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, *esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, void **event_data*, size_t *event_data_size*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Posts an event to the specified event loop. The event loop library keeps a copy of event_data and manages the copy's lifetime automatically (allocation + deletion); this ensures that the data the handler recieves is always valid.

This function behaves in the same manner as esp_event_post_to, except the additional specification of the event loop to post the event to.

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT: Time to wait for event queue to unblock expired, queue full when posting from ISR
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: the event loop to post to
- `[in] event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- `[in] event_id`: the event id that identifies the event
- `[in] event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurence, that gets passed to the handler
- `[in] event_data_size`: the size of the event data
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: number of ticks to block on a full event queue

esp_err_t **esp_event_isr_post**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, void **event_data*, size_t *event_data_size*, BaseType_t **task_unblocked*)

Special variant of esp_event_post for posting events from interrupt handlers.

Note this function is only available when CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR is enabled

Note when this function is called from an interrupt handler placed in IRAM, this function should be placed in IRAM as well by enabling CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Event queue for the default event loop full
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id, data size of more than 4 bytes
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- `[in] event_id`: the event id that identifies the event
- `[in] event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurence, that gets passed to the handler

- `[in] event_data_size`: the size of the event data; max is 4 bytes
- `[out] task_unblocked`: an optional parameter (can be NULL) which indicates that an event task with higher priority than currently running task has been unblocked by the posted event; a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is existed.

esp_err_t **esp_event_isr_post_to**(*esp_event_loop_handle_t event_loop*, *esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, void **event_data*, size_t *event_data_size*, BaseType_t **task_unblocked*)

Special variant of esp_event_post_to for posting events from interrupt handlers.

Note this function is only available when CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR is enabled

Note when this function is called from an interrupt handler placed in IRAM, this function should be placed in IRAM as well by enabling CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_FAIL: Event queue for the loop full
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Invalid combination of event base and event id, data size of more than 4 bytes
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] event_loop`: the event loop to post to
- `[in] event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- `[in] event_id`: the event id that identifies the event
- `[in] event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurence, that gets passed to the handler
- `[in] event_data_size`: the size of the event data
- `[out] task_unblocked`: an optional parameter (can be NULL) which indicates that an event task with higher priority than currently running task has been unblocked by the posted event; a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is existed.

esp_err_t **esp_event_dump**(FILE **file*)

Dumps statistics of all event loops.

Dumps event loop info in the format:

```
      event loop
          handler
          handler
          ...
      event loop
          handler
          handler
          ...

 where:

  event loop
      format: address,name rx:total_recieved dr:total_dropped
      where:
          address - memory address of the event loop
          name - name of the event loop, 'none' if no dedicated task
          total_recieved - number of successfully posted events
          total_dropped - number of events unsuccessfully posted due to queue␣
↪being full

  handler
      format: address ev:base,id inv:total_invoked run:total_runtime
      where:
          address - address of the handler function
          base,id - the event specified by event base and id this handler␣
↪executes
          total_invoked - number of times this handler has been invoked
          total_runtime - total amount of time used for invoking this handler
```

Note this function is a noop when CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING is disabled

Return

- ESP_OK: Success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for event loops list
- Others: Fail

Parameters

- `[in] file`: the file stream to output to

Structures

struct esp_event_loop_args_t

Configuration for creating event loops.

Public Members

int32_t **queue_size**

size of the event loop queue

const char ***task_name**

name of the event loop task; if NULL, a dedicated task is not created for event loop

UBaseType_t **task_priority**

priority of the event loop task, ignored if task name is NULL

uint32_t **task_stack_size**

stack size of the event loop task, ignored if task name is NULL

BaseType_t **task_core_id**

core to which the event loop task is pinned to, ignored if task name is NULL

Header File

- esp_event/include/esp_event_base.h

Macros

ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE(id)

ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE(id)

ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE

register handler for any event base

ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID

register handler for any event id

Type Definitions

typedef const char ***esp_event_base_t**

unique pointer to a subsystem that exposes events

typedef void ***esp_event_loop_handle_t**

a number that identifies an event with respect to a base

typedef void (***esp_event_handler_t**)(void *event_handler_arg, *esp_event_base_t* event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data)

function called when an event is posted to the queue

typedef void ***esp_event_handler_instance_t**

context identifying an instance of a registered event handler

Related Documents

Legacy event loop

API Reference

Header File

- esp_event/include/esp_event_legacy.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_event_send**(*system_event_t* **event*)

Send a event to event task.

Other task/modules, such as the tcpip_adapter, can call this API to send an event to event task

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

Return ESP_OK : succeed
Return others : fail
Parameters

- `event`: Event to send

esp_err_t **esp_event_send_internal**(*esp_event_base_t event_base*, int32_t *event_id*, void **event_data*, size_t *event_data_size*, TickType_t *ticks_to_wait*)

Send a event to event task.

Other task/modules, such as the tcpip_adapter, can call this API to send an event to event task

Note This API is used by WiFi Driver only.

Return ESP_OK : succeed
Return others : fail
Parameters

- `[in] event_base`: the event base that identifies the event
- `[in] event_id`: the event id that identifies the event
- `[in] event_data`: the data, specific to the event occurence, that gets passed to the handler
- `[in] event_data_size`: the size of the event data
- `[in] ticks_to_wait`: number of ticks to block on a full event queue

esp_err_t **esp_event_process_default**(*system_event_t* **event*)

Default event handler for system events.

This function performs default handling of system events. When using esp_event_loop APIs, it is called automatically before invoking the user-provided callback function.

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

Applications which implement a custom event loop must call this function as part of event processing.

Return ESP_OK if an event was handled successfully
Parameters

- `event`: pointer to event to be handled

void **esp_event_set_default_eth_handlers**(void)

Install default event handlers for Ethernet interface.

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

void **esp_event_set_default_wifi_handlers**(void)

Install default event handlers for Wi-Fi interfaces (station and AP)

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

esp_err_t **esp_event_loop_init**(*system_event_cb_t cb*, void **ctx*)

Initialize event loop.

Create the event handler and task

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

Parameters

- `cb`: application specified event callback, it can be modified by call esp_event_set_cb
- `ctx`: reserved for user

system_event_cb_t **esp_event_loop_set_cb** (*system_event_cb_t cb*, void **ctx*)

Set application specified event callback function.

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

Attention 1. If cb is NULL, means application don't need to handle If cb is not NULL, it will be call when an event is received, after the default event callback is completed

Return old callback

Parameters

- `cb`: application callback function
- `ctx`: argument to be passed to callback

Unions

union system_event_info_t

#include <esp_event_legacy.h> Union of all possible system_event argument structures

Public Members

system_event_sta_connected_t **connected**

ESP32 station connected to AP

system_event_sta_disconnected_t **disconnected**

ESP32 station disconnected to AP

system_event_sta_scan_done_t **scan_done**

ESP32 station scan (APs) done

system_event_sta_authmode_change_t **auth_change**

the auth mode of AP ESP32 station connected to changed

system_event_sta_got_ip_t **got_ip**

ESP32 station got IP, first time got IP or when IP is changed

system_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t **sta_er_pin**

ESP32 station WPS enrollee mode PIN code received

system_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t **sta_er_fail_reason**

ESP32 station WPS enrollee mode failed reason code received

system_event_sta_wps_er_success_t **sta_er_success**

ESP32 station WPS enrollee success

system_event_ap_staconnected_t **sta_connected**

a station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

system_event_ap_stadisconnected_t **sta_disconnected**

a station disconnected to ESP32 soft-AP

system_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t **ap_probereqrecved**

ESP32 soft-AP receive probe request packet

system_event_ftm_report_t **ftm_report**

Report of FTM procedure

system_event_ap_staipassigned_t **ap_staipassigned**

ESP32 soft-AP assign an IP to the station

system_event_got_ip6_t **got_ip6**
ESP32 station or ap or ethernet ipv6 addr state change to preferred

Structures

struct system_event_t
Event, as a tagged enum

Public Members

system_event_id_t **event_id**
event ID

system_event_info_t **event_info**
event information

Macros

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_GOT_IP6

Type Definitions

typedef *wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t* **system_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED event

typedef *wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t* **system_event_sta_scan_done_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE event

typedef *wifi_event_sta_connected_t* **system_event_sta_connected_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED event

typedef *wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t* **system_event_sta_disconnected_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED event

typedef *wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t* **system_event_sta_authmode_change_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE event

typedef *wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t* **system_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN event

typedef *wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t* **system_event_sta_wps_er_success_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN event

typedef *wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t* **system_event_ap_staconnected_t**
Argument structure of event

typedef *wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t* **system_event_ap_stadisconnected_t**
Argument structure of event

typedef *wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t* **system_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t**
Argument structure of event

typedef *wifi_event_ftm_report_t* **system_event_ftm_report_t**
Argument structure of SYSTEM_EVENT_FTM_REPORT event

typedef ip_event_ap_staipassigned_t **system_event_ap_staipassigned_t**
Argument structure of event

typedef ip_event_got_ip_t **system_event_sta_got_ip_t**
Argument structure of event

typedef ip_event_got_ip6_t **system_event_got_ip6_t**
Argument structure of event

typedef *esp_err_t* (***system_event_handler_t**) (*esp_event_base_t* event_base, int32_t event_id, void *event_data, size_t event_data_size, TickType_t ticks_to_wait)

Event handler function type

typedef *esp_err_t* (***system_event_cb_t**) (void *ctx, *system_event_t* *event)

Application specified event callback function.

Note This API is part of the legacy event system. New code should use event library API in esp_event.h

Return

- ESP_OK: succeed
- others: fail

Parameters

- `ctx`: reserved for user
- `event`: event type defined in this file

Enumerations

enum system_event_id_t

System event types enumeration

Values:

SYSTEM_EVENT_WIFI_READY = 0

ESP32 WiFi ready

SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE

ESP32 finish scanning AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_START

ESP32 station start

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_STOP

ESP32 station stop

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED

ESP32 station connected to AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED

ESP32 station disconnected from AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE

the auth mode of AP connected by ESP32 station changed

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP

ESP32 station got IP from connected AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP

ESP32 station lost IP and the IP is reset to 0

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW

ESP32 station connected BSS rssi goes below threshold

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS

ESP32 station wps succeeds in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED

ESP32 station wps fails in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT

ESP32 station wps timeout in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN

ESP32 station wps pin code in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PBC_OVERLAP

ESP32 station wps overlap in enrollee mode

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_START
ESP32 soft-AP start

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STOP
ESP32 soft-AP stop

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED
a station connected to ESP32 soft-AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED
a station disconnected from ESP32 soft-AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STAIPASSIGNED
ESP32 soft-AP assign an IP to a connected station

SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED
Receive probe request packet in soft-AP interface

SYSTEM_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS
Receive status of Action frame transmitted

SYSTEM_EVENT_ROC_DONE
Indicates the completion of Remain-on-Channel operation status

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BEACON_TIMEOUT
ESP32 station beacon timeout

SYSTEM_EVENT_FTM_REPORT
Receive report of FTM procedure

SYSTEM_EVENT_GOT_IP6
ESP32 station or ap or ethernet interface v6IP addr is preferred

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_START
ESP32 ethernet start

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_STOP
ESP32 ethernet stop

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED
ESP32 ethernet phy link up

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_DISCONNECTED
ESP32 ethernet phy link down

SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP
ESP32 ethernet got IP from connected AP

SYSTEM_EVENT_MAX
Number of members in this enum

2.6.10 FreeRTOS

Overview

This section contains documentation of FreeRTOS types, functions, and macros. It is automatically generated from FreeRTOS header files.

Note: ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is based on the Xtensa port of FreeRTOS v10.2.0,

---

For more information about FreeRTOS features specific to ESP-IDF, see *ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes* and *ESP-IDF FreeRTOS Additions*.

Task API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/task.h

Functions

BaseType_t **xTaskCreatePinnedToCore**(TaskFunction_t *pvTaskCode*, **const** char ***const** *pcName*, **const** uint32_t *usStackDepth*, void ***const** *pvParameters*, UBaseType_t *uxPriority*, *TaskHandle_t* ***const** *pvCreatedTask*, **const** BaseType_t *xCoreID*)

Create a new task with a specified affinity.

This function is similar to xTaskCreate, but allows setting task affinity in SMP system.

Return pdPASS if the task was successfully created and added to a ready list, otherwise an error code defined in the file projdefs.h

Parameters

- `pvTaskCode`: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.
- `pcName`: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. Max length defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN - default is 16.
- `usStackDepth`: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- `pvParameters`: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- `uxPriority`: The priority at which the task should run. Systems that include MPU support can optionally create tasks in a privileged (system) mode by setting bit portPRIVILEGE_BIT of the priority parameter. For example, to create a privileged task at priority 2 the uxPriority parameter should be set to (2 | portPRIVILEGE_BIT).
- `pvCreatedTask`: Used to pass back a handle by which the created task can be referenced.
- `xCoreID`: If the value is tskNO_AFFINITY, the created task is not pinned to any CPU, and the scheduler can run it on any core available. Values 0 or 1 indicate the index number of the CPU which the task should be pinned to. Specifying values larger than (portNUM_PROCESSORS - 1) will cause the function to fail.

static BaseType_t **xTaskCreate**(TaskFunction_t *pvTaskCode*, **const** char ***const** *pcName*, **const** uint32_t *usStackDepth*, void ***const** *pvParameters*, UBaseType_t *uxPriority*, *TaskHandle_t* ***const** *pvCreatedTask*)

Create a new task and add it to the list of tasks that are ready to run.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, tasks use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the task's data structures. The second block is used by the task as its stack. If a task is created using xTaskCreate() then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTaskCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a task is created using xTaskCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the required memory. xTaskCreateStatic() therefore allows a task to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

See xTaskCreateStatic() for a version that does not use any dynamic memory allocation.

xTaskCreate() can only be used to create a task that has unrestricted access to the entire microcontroller memory map. Systems that include MPU support can alternatively create an MPU constrained task using xTaskCreateRestricted().

Example usage:

```
// Task to be created.
void vTaskCode( void * pvParameters )
{
 for( ;; )
 {
     // Task code goes here.
 }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}

// Function that creates a task.
void vOtherFunction( void )
{
static uint8_t ucParameterToPass;
TaskHandle_t xHandle = NULL;

 // Create the task, storing the handle.  Note that the passed parameter␣
↪ucParameterToPass
 // must exist for the lifetime of the task, so in this case is declared␣
↪static.  If it was just an
 // an automatic stack variable it might no longer exist, or at least have␣
↪been corrupted, by the time
 // the new task attempts to access it.
 xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, &ucParameterToPass, tskIDLE_
↪PRIORITY, &xHandle );
    configASSERT( xHandle );

 // Use the handle to delete the task.
    if( xHandle != NULL )
    {
     vTaskDelete( xHandle );
    }
}
```

Return pdPASS if the task was successfully created and added to a ready list, otherwise an error code defined in the file projdefs.h

Note If program uses thread local variables (ones specified with "__thread" keyword) then storage for them will be allocated on the task's stack.

Parameters

- `pvTaskCode`: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.
- `pcName`: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. Max length defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN - default is 16.
- `usStackDepth`: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- `pvParameters`: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- `uxPriority`: The priority at which the task should run. Systems that include MPU support can optionally create tasks in a privileged (system) mode by setting bit portPRIVILEGE_BIT of the priority parameter. For example, to create a privileged task at priority 2 the uxPriority parameter should be set to (2 | portPRIVILEGE_BIT).
- `pvCreatedTask`: Used to pass back a handle by which the created task can be referenced.

TaskHandle_t **xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore**(TaskFunction_t *pvTaskCode*, **const** char ***const** *pcName*, **const** uint32_t *ulStackDepth*, void ***const** *pvParameters*, UBaseType_t *uxPriority*, StackType_t ***const** *pxStackBuffer*, StaticTask_t ***const** *pxTaskBuffer*, **const** BaseType_t *xCoreID*)

Create a new task with a specified affinity.

This function is similar to xTaskCreateStatic, but allows specifying task affinity in an SMP system.

Return If neither pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL, then the task will be created and pdPASS is returned. If either pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL then the task will not be created and errCOULD_NOT_ALLOCATE_REQUIRED_MEMORY is returned.

Parameters

- `pvTaskCode`: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.

- `pcName`: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. The maximum length of the string is defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN in FreeRTOSConfig.h.
- `ulStackDepth`: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- `pvParameters`: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- `uxPriority`: The priority at which the task will run.
- `pxStackBuffer`: Must point to a StackType_t array that has at least ulStackDepth indexes - the array will then be used as the task's stack, removing the need for the stack to be allocated dynamically.
- `pxTaskBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticTask_t, which will then be used to hold the task's data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.
- `xCoreID`: If the value is tskNO_AFFINITY, the created task is not pinned to any CPU, and the scheduler can run it on any core available. Values 0 or 1 indicate the index number of the CPU which the task should be pinned to. Specifying values larger than (portNUM_PROCESSORS - 1) will cause the function to fail.

static *TaskHandle_t* **xTaskCreateStatic**(TaskFunction_t *pvTaskCode*, **const** char ***const** *pcName*, **const** uint32_t *ulStackDepth*, void ***const** *pvParameters*, UBaseType_t *uxPriority*, StackType_t ***const** *pxStackBuffer*, StaticTask_t ***const** *pxTaskBuffer*)

Create a new task and add it to the list of tasks that are ready to run.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, tasks use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the task's data structures. The second block is used by the task as its stack. If a task is created using xTaskCreate() then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTaskCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a task is created using xTaskCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the required memory. xTaskCreateStatic() therefore allows a task to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Example usage:

```
// Dimensions the buffer that the task being created will use as its stack.
// NOTE:  This is the number of bytes the stack will hold, not the number of
// words as found in vanilla FreeRTOS.
#define STACK_SIZE 200

// Structure that will hold the TCB of the task being created.
StaticTask_t xTaskBuffer;

// Buffer that the task being created will use as its stack.  Note this is
// an array of StackType_t variables.  The size of StackType_t is dependent on
// the RTOS port.
StackType_t xStack[ STACK_SIZE ];

// Function that implements the task being created.
void vTaskCode( void * pvParameters )
{
    // The parameter value is expected to be 1 as 1 is passed in the
    // pvParameters value in the call to xTaskCreateStatic().
    configASSERT( ( uint32_t ) pvParameters == 1UL );

    for( ;; )
    {
        // Task code goes here.
    }
}

// Function that creates a task.
void vOtherFunction( void )
{
    TaskHandle_t xHandle = NULL;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // Create the task without using any dynamic memory allocation.
    xHandle = xTaskCreateStatic(
                  vTaskCode,       // Function that implements the task.
                  "NAME",          // Text name for the task.
                  STACK_SIZE,      // Stack size in bytes, not words.
                  ( void * ) 1,    // Parameter passed into the task.
                  tskIDLE_PRIORITY,// Priority at which the task is created.
                  xStack,          // Array to use as the task's stack.
                  &xTaskBuffer );  // Variable to hold the task's data.
↪structure.

    // puxStackBuffer and pxTaskBuffer were not NULL, so the task will have
    // been created, and xHandle will be the task's handle.  Use the handle
    // to suspend the task.
    vTaskSuspend( xHandle );
}
```

Return If neither pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL, then the task will be created and pdPASS is returned. If either pxStackBuffer or pxTaskBuffer are NULL then the task will not be created and errCOULD_NOT_ALLOCATE_REQUIRED_MEMORY is returned.

Note If program uses thread local variables (ones specified with "__thread" keyword) then storage for them will be allocated on the task's stack.

Parameters

- `pvTaskCode`: Pointer to the task entry function. Tasks must be implemented to never return (i.e. continuous loop), or should be terminated using vTaskDelete function.
- `pcName`: A descriptive name for the task. This is mainly used to facilitate debugging. The maximum length of the string is defined by configMAX_TASK_NAME_LEN in FreeRTOSConfig.h.
- `ulStackDepth`: The size of the task stack specified as the number of bytes. Note that this differs from vanilla FreeRTOS.
- `pvParameters`: Pointer that will be used as the parameter for the task being created.
- `uxPriority`: The priority at which the task will run.
- `pxStackBuffer`: Must point to a StackType_t array that has at least ulStackDepth indexes - the array will then be used as the task's stack, removing the need for the stack to be allocated dynamically.
- `pxTaskBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticTask_t, which will then be used to hold the task's data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

void **vTaskAllocateMPURegions**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*, **const** MemoryRegion_t ***const** *pxRegions*)

void **vTaskDelete**(*TaskHandle_t xTaskToDelete*)

Remove a task from the RTOS real time kernel's management. The task being deleted will be removed from all ready, blocked, suspended and event lists.

INCLUDE_vTaskDelete must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

NOTE: The idle task is responsible for freeing the kernel allocated memory from tasks that have been deleted. It is therefore important that the idle task is not starved of microcontroller processing time if your application makes any calls to vTaskDelete (). Memory allocated by the task code is not automatically freed, and should be freed before the task is deleted.

See the demo application file death.c for sample code that utilises vTaskDelete ().

Example usage:

```
void vOtherFunction( void )
{
TaskHandle_t xHandle;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // Create the task, storing the handle.
    xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &
↪xHandle );

    // Use the handle to delete the task.
    vTaskDelete( xHandle );
}
```

Parameters

- `xTaskToDelete`: The handle of the task to be deleted. Passing NULL will cause the calling task to be deleted.

void **vTaskDelay**(**const** TickType_t *xTicksToDelay*)

Delay a task for a given number of ticks.

Delay a task for a given number of ticks. The actual time that the task remains blocked depends on the tick rate. The constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to calculate real time from the tick rate - with the resolution of one tick period.

INCLUDE_vTaskDelay must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

vTaskDelay() specifies a time at which the task wishes to unblock relative to the time at which vTaskDelay() is called. For example, specifying a block period of 100 ticks will cause the task to unblock 100 ticks after vTaskDelay() is called. vTaskDelay() does not therefore provide a good method of controlling the frequency of a periodic task as the path taken through the code, as well as other task and interrupt activity, will effect the frequency at which vTaskDelay() gets called and therefore the time at which the task next executes. See vTaskDelayUntil() for an alternative API function designed to facilitate fixed frequency execution. It does this by specifying an absolute time (rather than a relative time) at which the calling task should unblock.

Example usage:

```
void vTaskFunction( void * pvParameters )
{
// Block for 500ms.
const TickType_t xDelay = 500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS;

    for( ;; )
    {
        // Simply toggle the LED every 500ms, blocking between each toggle.
        vToggleLED();
        vTaskDelay( xDelay );
    }
}
```

Parameters

- `xTicksToDelay`: The amount of time, in tick periods, that the calling task should block.

void **vTaskDelayUntil**(TickType_t ***const** *pxPreviousWakeTime*, **const** TickType_t *xTimeIncrement*)

Delay a task until a specified time.

INCLUDE_vTaskDelayUntil must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Delay a task until a specified time. This function can be used by periodic tasks to ensure a constant execution frequency.

This function differs from vTaskDelay () in one important aspect: vTaskDelay () will cause a task to block for the specified number of ticks from the time vTaskDelay () is called. It is therefore difficult to use vTaskDelay () by itself to generate a fixed execution frequency as the time between a task starting to execute and that task calling vTaskDelay () may not be fixed [the task may take a different path though the code between calls, or may get interrupted or preempted a different number of times each time it executes].

Whereas vTaskDelay () specifies a wake time relative to the time at which the function is called, vTaskDelayUntil () specifies the absolute (exact) time at which it wishes to unblock.

The constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to calculate real time from the tick rate - with the resolution of one tick period.

Example usage:

```
// Perform an action every 10 ticks.
void vTaskFunction( void * pvParameters )
{
TickType_t xLastWakeTime;
const TickType_t xFrequency = 10;

    // Initialise the xLastWakeTime variable with the current time.
    xLastWakeTime = xTaskGetTickCount ();
    for( ;; )
    {
        // Wait for the next cycle.
        vTaskDelayUntil( &xLastWakeTime, xFrequency );

        // Perform action here.
    }
}
```

Parameters

- `pxPreviousWakeTime`: Pointer to a variable that holds the time at which the task was last unblocked. The variable must be initialised with the current time prior to its first use (see the example below). Following this the variable is automatically updated within vTaskDelayUntil ().
- `xTimeIncrement`: The cycle time period. The task will be unblocked at time *pxPreviousWakeTime + xTimeIncrement. Calling vTaskDelayUntil with the same xTimeIncrement parameter value will cause the task to execute with a fixed interface period.

BaseType_t **xTaskAbortDelay**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

UBaseType_t **uxTaskPriorityGet**(**const** *TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Obtain the priority of any task.

INCLUDE_uxTaskPriorityGet must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Example usage:

```
 void vAFunction( void )
 {
 TaskHandle_t xHandle;

  // Create a task, storing the handle.
  xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle␣
↪);

  // ...

  // Use the handle to obtain the priority of the created task.
  // It was created with tskIDLE_PRIORITY, but may have changed
  // it itself.
  if( uxTaskPriorityGet( xHandle ) != tskIDLE_PRIORITY )
  {
      // The task has changed it's priority.
  }

  // ...

  // Is our priority higher than the created task?
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
  if( uxTaskPriorityGet( xHandle ) < uxTaskPriorityGet( NULL ) )
  {
      // Our priority (obtained using NULL handle) is higher.
  }
}
```

Return The priority of xTask.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task to be queried. Passing a NULL handle results in the priority of the calling task being returned.

UBaseType_t **uxTaskPriorityGetFromISR**(**const** *TaskHandle_t xTask*)

A version of uxTaskPriorityGet() that can be used from an ISR.

eTaskState **eTaskGetState**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Obtain the state of any task.

States are encoded by the eTaskState enumerated type.

INCLUDE_eTaskGetState must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Return The state of xTask at the time the function was called. Note the state of the task might change between the function being called, and the functions return value being tested by the calling task.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task to be queried.

void **vTaskGetInfo**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*, TaskStatus_t **pxTaskStatus*, BaseType_t *xGetFreeStackSpace*, *eTaskState eState*)

Populates a TaskStatus_t structure with information about a task.

configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Example usage:

```
void vAFunction( void )
{
TaskHandle_t xHandle;
TaskStatus_t xTaskDetails;

   // Obtain the handle of a task from its name.
   xHandle = xTaskGetHandle( "Task_Name" );

   // Check the handle is not NULL.
   configASSERT( xHandle );

   // Use the handle to obtain further information about the task.
   vTaskGetInfo( xHandle,
                 &xTaskDetails,
                 pdTRUE, // Include the high water mark in xTaskDetails.
                 eInvalid ); // Include the task state in xTaskDetails.
}
```

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task being queried. If xTask is NULL then information will be returned about the calling task.
- `pxTaskStatus`: A pointer to the TaskStatus_t structure that will be filled with information about the task referenced by the handle passed using the xTask parameter.
- `xGetFreeStackSpace`: The TaskStatus_t structure contains a member to report the stack high water mark of the task being queried. Calculating the stack high water mark takes a relatively long time, and can make the system temporarily unresponsive - so the xGetFreeStackSpace parameter is

provided to allow the high water mark checking to be skipped. The high watermark value will only be written to the TaskStatus_t structure if xGetFreeStackSpace is not set to pdFALSE;
- `eState`: The TaskStatus_t structure contains a member to report the state of the task being queried. Obtaining the task state is not as fast as a simple assignment - so the eState parameter is provided to allow the state information to be omitted from the TaskStatus_t structure. To obtain state information then set eState to eInvalid - otherwise the value passed in eState will be reported as the task state in the TaskStatus_t structure.

void **vTaskPrioritySet** (*TaskHandle_t xTask*, UBaseType_t *uxNewPriority*)

Set the priority of any task.

INCLUDE_vTaskPrioritySet must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

A context switch will occur before the function returns if the priority being set is higher than the currently executing task.

Example usage:

```
void vAFunction( void )
{
TaskHandle_t xHandle;

 // Create a task, storing the handle.
 xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle␣
↪);

 // ...

 // Use the handle to raise the priority of the created task.
 vTaskPrioritySet( xHandle, tskIDLE_PRIORITY + 1 );

 // ...

 // Use a NULL handle to raise our priority to the same value.
 vTaskPrioritySet( NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY + 1 );
}
```

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle to the task for which the priority is being set. Passing a NULL handle results in the priority of the calling task being set.
- `uxNewPriority`: The priority to which the task will be set.

void **vTaskSuspend** (*TaskHandle_t xTaskToSuspend*)

Suspend a task.

INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

Suspend any task. When suspended a task will never get any microcontroller processing time, no matter what its priority.

Calls to vTaskSuspend are not accumulative - i.e. calling vTaskSuspend () twice on the same task still only requires one call to vTaskResume () to ready the suspended task.

Example usage:

```
void vAFunction( void )
{
TaskHandle_t xHandle;

 // Create a task, storing the handle.
 xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle␣
↪);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
 // ...

 // Use the handle to suspend the created task.
 vTaskSuspend( xHandle );

 // ...

 // The created task will not run during this period, unless
 // another task calls vTaskResume( xHandle ).

 //...


 // Suspend ourselves.
 vTaskSuspend( NULL );

 // We cannot get here unless another task calls vTaskResume
 // with our handle as the parameter.
}
```

Parameters

- `xTaskToSuspend`: Handle to the task being suspended. Passing a NULL handle will cause the calling task to be suspended.

void **vTaskResume** (*TaskHandle_t xTaskToResume*)

Resumes a suspended task.

INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

A task that has been suspended by one or more calls to vTaskSuspend () will be made available for running again by a single call to vTaskResume ().

Example usage:

```
void vAFunction( void )
{
TaskHandle_t xHandle;

 // Create a task, storing the handle.
 xTaskCreate( vTaskCode, "NAME", STACK_SIZE, NULL, tskIDLE_PRIORITY, &xHandle␣
↪);

 // ...

 // Use the handle to suspend the created task.
 vTaskSuspend( xHandle );

 // ...

 // The created task will not run during this period, unless
 // another task calls vTaskResume( xHandle ).

 //...


 // Resume the suspended task ourselves.
 vTaskResume( xHandle );

 // The created task will once again get microcontroller processing
 // time in accordance with its priority within the system.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}
```

Parameters

- `xTaskToResume`: Handle to the task being readied.

BaseType_t **`xTaskResumeFromISR`** (*TaskHandle_t xTaskToResume*)

An implementation of vTaskResume() that can be called from within an ISR.

INCLUDE_xTaskResumeFromISR must be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section for more information.

A task that has been suspended by one or more calls to vTaskSuspend () will be made available for running again by a single call to xTaskResumeFromISR ().

xTaskResumeFromISR() should not be used to synchronise a task with an interrupt if there is a chance that the interrupt could arrive prior to the task being suspended - as this can lead to interrupts being missed. Use of a semaphore as a synchronisation mechanism would avoid this eventuality.

Return pdTRUE if resuming the task should result in a context switch, otherwise pdFALSE. This is used by the ISR to determine if a context switch may be required following the ISR.

Parameters

- `xTaskToResume`: Handle to the task being readied.

void **`vTaskSuspendAll`** (void)

Suspends the scheduler without disabling interrupts.

Context switches will not occur while the scheduler is suspended.

After calling vTaskSuspendAll () the calling task will continue to execute without risk of being swapped out until a call to xTaskResumeAll () has been made.

API functions that have the potential to cause a context switch (for example, vTaskDelayUntil(), xQueueSend(), etc.) must not be called while the scheduler is suspended.

Example usage:

```
void vTask1( void * pvParameters )
{
 for( ;; )
 {
     // Task code goes here.

     // ...

     // At some point the task wants to perform a long operation during
     // which it does not want to get swapped out.  It cannot use
     // taskENTER_CRITICAL ()/taskEXIT_CRITICAL () as the length of the
     // operation may cause interrupts to be missed - including the
     // ticks.

     // Prevent the real time kernel swapping out the task.
     vTaskSuspendAll ();

     // Perform the operation here.  There is no need to use critical
     // sections as we have all the microcontroller processing time.
     // During this time interrupts will still operate and the kernel
     // tick count will be maintained.

     // ...

     // The operation is complete.  Restart the kernel.
     xTaskResumeAll ();
 }
}
```

BaseType_t **xTaskResumeAll** (void)

Resumes scheduler activity after it was suspended by a call to vTaskSuspendAll().

xTaskResumeAll() only resumes the scheduler. It does not unsuspend tasks that were previously suspended by a call to vTaskSuspend().

Example usage:

```
void vTask1( void * pvParameters )
{
 for( ;; )
 {
     // Task code goes here.

     // ...

     // At some point the task wants to perform a long operation during
     // which it does not want to get swapped out.  It cannot use
     // taskENTER_CRITICAL ()/taskEXIT_CRITICAL () as the length of the
     // operation may cause interrupts to be missed - including the
     // ticks.

     // Prevent the real time kernel swapping out the task.
     vTaskSuspendAll ();

     // Perform the operation here.  There is no need to use critical
     // sections as we have all the microcontroller processing time.
     // During this time interrupts will still operate and the real
     // time kernel tick count will be maintained.

     // ...

     // The operation is complete.  Restart the kernel.  We want to force
     // a context switch - but there is no point if resuming the scheduler
     // caused a context switch already.
     if( !xTaskResumeAll () )
     {
          taskYIELD ();
     }
 }
}
```

Return If resuming the scheduler caused a context switch then pdTRUE is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

TickType_t **xTaskGetTickCount** (void)

Get tick count

Return The count of ticks since vTaskStartScheduler was called.

TickType_t **xTaskGetTickCountFromISR** (void)

Get tick count from ISR

This is a version of xTaskGetTickCount() that is safe to be called from an ISR - provided that TickType_t is the natural word size of the microcontroller being used or interrupt nesting is either not supported or not being used.

Return The count of ticks since vTaskStartScheduler was called.

UBaseType_t **uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks** (void)

Get current number of tasks

Return The number of tasks that the real time kernel is currently managing. This includes all ready, blocked and suspended tasks. A task that has been deleted but not yet freed by the idle task will also be included in the count.

char *`pcTaskGetName` (*TaskHandle_t xTaskToQuery*)

Get task name

Return The text (human readable) name of the task referenced by the handle xTaskToQuery. A task can query its own name by either passing in its own handle, or by setting xTaskToQuery to NULL.

TaskHandle_t `xTaskGetHandle` (`const` char *pcNameToQuery)

Note This function takes a relatively long time to complete and should be used sparingly.

Return The handle of the task that has the human readable name pcNameToQuery. NULL is returned if no matching name is found. INCLUDE_xTaskGetHandle must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for pcTaskGetHandle() to be available.

UBaseType_t `uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark` (*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Returns the high water mark of the stack associated with xTask.

INCLUDE_uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.

Returns the high water mark of the stack associated with xTask. That is, the minimum free stack space there has been (in bytes not words, unlike vanilla FreeRTOS) since the task started. The smaller the returned number the closer the task has come to overflowing its stack.

uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark() and uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2() are the same except for their return type. Using configSTACK_DEPTH_TYPE allows the user to determine the return type. It gets around the problem of the value overflowing on 8-bit types without breaking backward compatibility for applications that expect an 8-bit return type.

Return The smallest amount of free stack space there has been (in bytes not words, unlike vanilla FreeRTOS) since the task referenced by xTask was created.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task associated with the stack to be checked. Set xTask to NULL to check the stack of the calling task.

configSTACK_DEPTH_TYPE `uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2` (*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Returns the start of the stack associated with xTask.

INCLUDE_uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2 must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.

Returns the high water mark of the stack associated with xTask. That is, the minimum free stack space there has been (in words, so on a 32 bit machine a value of 1 means 4 bytes) since the task started. The smaller the returned number the closer the task has come to overflowing its stack.

uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark() and uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2() are the same except for their return type. Using configSTACK_DEPTH_TYPE allows the user to determine the return type. It gets around the problem of the value overflowing on 8-bit types without breaking backward compatibility for applications that expect an 8-bit return type.

Return The smallest amount of free stack space there has been (in words, so actual spaces on the stack rather than bytes) since the task referenced by xTask was created.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task associated with the stack to be checked. Set xTask to NULL to check the stack of the calling task.

uint8_t *`pxTaskGetStackStart` (*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Returns the start of the stack associated with xTask.

INCLUDE_pxTaskGetStackStart must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this function to be available.

Returns the lowest stack memory address, regardless of whether the stack grows up or down.

Return A pointer to the start of the stack.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task associated with the stack returned. Set xTask to NULL to return the stack of the calling task.

void **vTaskSetApplicationTaskTag**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*, *TaskHookFunction_t pxHookFunction*)

Sets pxHookFunction to be the task hook function used by the task xTask.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task to set the hook function for Passing xTask as NULL has the effect of setting the calling tasks hook function.
- `pxHookFunction`: Pointer to the hook function.

TaskHookFunction_t **xTaskGetApplicationTaskTag**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Returns the pxHookFunction value assigned to the task xTask. Do not call from an interrupt service routine - call xTaskGetApplicationTaskTagFromISR() instead.

TaskHookFunction_t **xTaskGetApplicationTaskTagFromISR**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

Returns the pxHookFunction value assigned to the task xTask. Can be called from an interrupt service routine.

void **vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer**(*TaskHandle_t xTaskToSet*, BaseType_t *xIndex*, void **pvValue*)

Set local storage pointer specific to the given task.

Each task contains an array of pointers that is dimensioned by the configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. The kernel does not use the pointers itself, so the application writer can use the pointers for any purpose they wish.

Parameters

- `xTaskToSet`: Task to set thread local storage pointer for
- `xIndex`: The index of the pointer to set, from 0 to configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS - 1.
- `pvValue`: Pointer value to set.

void ***pvTaskGetThreadLocalStoragePointer**(*TaskHandle_t xTaskToQuery*, BaseType_t *xIndex*)

Get local storage pointer specific to the given task.

Each task contains an array of pointers that is dimensioned by the configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. The kernel does not use the pointers itself, so the application writer can use the pointers for any purpose they wish.

Return Pointer value

Parameters

- `xTaskToQuery`: Task to get thread local storage pointer for
- `xIndex`: The index of the pointer to get, from 0 to configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS - 1.

void **vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback**(*TaskHandle_t xTaskToSet*, BaseType_t *xIndex*, void **pvValue*, *TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t pvDelCallback*)

Set local storage pointer and deletion callback.

Each task contains an array of pointers that is dimensioned by the configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. The kernel does not use the pointers itself, so the application writer can use the pointers for any purpose they wish.

Local storage pointers set for a task can reference dynamically allocated resources. This function is similar to vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer, but provides a way to release these resources when the task gets deleted. For each pointer, a callback function can be set. This function will be called when task is deleted, with the local storage pointer index and value as arguments.

Parameters

- `xTaskToSet`: Task to set thread local storage pointer for
- `xIndex`: The index of the pointer to set, from 0 to configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS - 1.
- `pvValue`: Pointer value to set.
- `pvDelCallback`: Function to call to dispose of the local storage pointer when the task is deleted.

BaseType_t **xTaskCallApplicationTaskHook**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*, void **pvParameter*)

Calls the hook function associated with xTask. Passing xTask as NULL has the effect of calling the Running tasks (the calling task) hook function.

Parameters

- `xTask`: Handle of the task to call the hook for.
- `pvParameter`: Parameter passed to the hook function for the task to interpret as it wants. The return value is the value returned by the task hook function registered by the user.

TaskHandle_t **xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle**(void)

xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle() is only available if INCLUDE_xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h.

Simply returns the handle of the idle task. It is not valid to call xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle() before the scheduler has been started.

UBaseType_t **uxTaskGetSystemState**(TaskStatus_t ***const** *pxTaskStatusArray*, **const** UBaseType_t *uxArraySize*, uint32_t ***const** *pulTotalRunTime*)

configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY must be defined as 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for uxTaskGetSystemState() to be available.

uxTaskGetSystemState() populates an TaskStatus_t structure for each task in the system. TaskStatus_t structures contain, among other things, members for the task handle, task name, task priority, task state, and total amount of run time consumed by the task. See the TaskStatus_t structure definition in this file for the full member list.

Example usage:

```
// This example demonstrates how a human readable table of run time stats
// information is generated from raw data provided by uxTaskGetSystemState().
// The human readable table is written to pcWriteBuffer
void vTaskGetRunTimeStats( char *pcWriteBuffer )
{
TaskStatus_t *pxTaskStatusArray;
volatile UBaseType_t uxArraySize, x;
uint32_t ulTotalRunTime, ulStatsAsPercentage;

 // Make sure the write buffer does not contain a string.
 *pcWriteBuffer = 0x00;

 // Take a snapshot of the number of tasks in case it changes while this
 // function is executing.
 uxArraySize = uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks();

 // Allocate a TaskStatus_t structure for each task.  An array could be
 // allocated statically at compile time.
 pxTaskStatusArray = pvPortMalloc( uxArraySize * sizeof( TaskStatus_t ) );

 if( pxTaskStatusArray != NULL )
 {
     // Generate raw status information about each task.
     uxArraySize = uxTaskGetSystemState( pxTaskStatusArray, uxArraySize, &
↪ulTotalRunTime );

     // For percentage calculations.
     ulTotalRunTime /= 100UL;

     // Avoid divide by zero errors.
     if( ulTotalRunTime > 0 )
     {
         // For each populated position in the pxTaskStatusArray array,
         // format the raw data as human readable ASCII data
         for( x = 0; x < uxArraySize; x++ )
         {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
            // What percentage of the total run time has the task used?
            // This will always be rounded down to the nearest integer.
            // ulTotalRunTimeDiv100 has already been divided by 100.
            ulStatsAsPercentage = pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].ulRunTimeCounter /␣
↪ulTotalRunTime;

            if( ulStatsAsPercentage > 0UL )
            {
                sprintf( pcWriteBuffer, "%s\t\t%lu\t\t%lu%%\r\n",␣
↪pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].pcTaskName, pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].ulRunTimeCounter,␣
↪ulStatsAsPercentage );
            }
            else
            {
                // If the percentage is zero here then the task has
                // consumed less than 1% of the total run time.
                sprintf( pcWriteBuffer, "%s\t\t%lu\t\t<1%%\r\n",␣
↪pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].pcTaskName, pxTaskStatusArray[ x ].ulRunTimeCounter );
            }

            pcWriteBuffer += strlen( ( char * ) pcWriteBuffer );
        }
    }

    // The array is no longer needed, free the memory it consumes.
    vPortFree( pxTaskStatusArray );
 }
}
```

Note This function is intended for debugging use only as its use results in the scheduler remaining suspended for an extended period.

Return The number of TaskStatus_t structures that were populated by uxTaskGetSystemState(). This should equal the number returned by the uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks() API function, but will be zero if the value passed in the uxArraySize parameter was too small.

Parameters

- `pxTaskStatusArray`: A pointer to an array of TaskStatus_t structures. The array must contain at least one TaskStatus_t structure for each task that is under the control of the RTOS. The number of tasks under the control of the RTOS can be determined using the uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks() API function.
- `uxArraySize`: The size of the array pointed to by the pxTaskStatusArray parameter. The size is specified as the number of indexes in the array, or the number of TaskStatus_t structures contained in the array, not by the number of bytes in the array.
- `pulTotalRunTime`: If configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h then *pulTotalRunTime is set by uxTaskGetSystemState() to the total run time (as defined by the run time stats clock, see http://www.freertos.org/rtos-run-time-stats.html) since the target booted. pulTotalRunTime can be set to NULL to omit the total run time information.

void **vTaskList**(char *pcWriteBuffer)

List all the current tasks.

configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY and configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS must both be defined as 1 for this function to be available. See the configuration section of the FreeRTOS.org website for more information.

Lists all the current tasks, along with their current state and stack usage high water mark.

Note This function will disable interrupts for its duration. It is not intended for normal application runtime use but as a debug aid.

Tasks are reported as blocked ('B'), ready ('R'), deleted ('D') or suspended ('S').

vTaskList() calls uxTaskGetSystemState(), then formats part of the uxTaskGetSystemState() output into a

human readable table that displays task names, states and stack usage.

Note This function is provided for convenience only, and is used by many of the demo applications. Do not consider it to be part of the scheduler.

vTaskList() has a dependency on the sprintf() C library function that might bloat the code size, use a lot of stack, and provide different results on different platforms. An alternative, tiny, third party, and limited functionality implementation of sprintf() is provided in many of the FreeRTOS/Demo sub-directories in a file called printf-stdarg.c (note printf-stdarg.c does not provide a full snprintf() implementation!).

It is recommended that production systems call uxTaskGetSystemState() directly to get access to raw stats data, rather than indirectly through a call to vTaskList().

Parameters

- `pcWriteBuffer`: A buffer into which the above mentioned details will be written, in ASCII form. This buffer is assumed to be large enough to contain the generated report. Approximately 40 bytes per task should be sufficient.

void **`vTaskGetRunTimeStats`**(char **pcWriteBuffer*)

Get the state of running tasks as a string

configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS and configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS must both be defined as 1 for this function to be available. The application must also then provide definitions for portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() and portGET_RUN_TIME_COUNTER_VALUE() to configure a peripheral timer/counter and return the timers current count value respectively. The counter should be at least 10 times the frequency of the tick count.

Setting configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS to 1 will result in a total accumulated execution time being stored for each task. The resolution of the accumulated time value depends on the frequency of the timer configured by the portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() macro. Calling vTaskGetRunTimeStats() writes the total execution time of each task into a buffer, both as an absolute count value and as a percentage of the total system execution time.

Note This function will disable interrupts for its duration. It is not intended for normal application runtime use but as a debug aid.

vTaskGetRunTimeStats() calls uxTaskGetSystemState(), then formats part of the uxTaskGetSystemState() output into a human readable table that displays the amount of time each task has spent in the Running state in both absolute and percentage terms.

Note This function is provided for convenience only, and is used by many of the demo applications. Do not consider it to be part of the scheduler.

vTaskGetRunTimeStats() has a dependency on the sprintf() C library function that might bloat the code size, use a lot of stack, and provide different results on different platforms. An alternative, tiny, third party, and limited functionality implementation of sprintf() is provided in many of the FreeRTOS/Demo sub-directories in a file called printf-stdarg.c (note printf-stdarg.c does not provide a full snprintf() implementation!).

It is recommended that production systems call uxTaskGetSystemState() directly to get access to raw stats data, rather than indirectly through a call to vTaskGetRunTimeStats().

Parameters

- `pcWriteBuffer`: A buffer into which the execution times will be written, in ASCII form. This buffer is assumed to be large enough to contain the generated report. Approximately 40 bytes per task should be sufficient.

uint32_t **`ulTaskGetIdleRunTimeCounter`**(void)

configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS and configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS must both be defined as 1 for this function to be available. The application must also then provide definitions for portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() and portGET_RUN_TIME_COUNTER_VALUE() to configure a peripheral timer/counter and return the timers current count value respectively. The counter should be at least 10 times the frequency of the tick count.

Setting configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS to 1 will result in a total accumulated execution time being stored for each task. The resolution of the accumulated time value depends on the frequency of the timer configured by the portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() macro. While uxTaskGetSystem-

State() and vTaskGetRunTimeStats() writes the total execution time of each task into a buffer, ulTaskGetIdleRunTimeCounter() returns the total execution time of just the idle task.

Return The total run time of the idle task. This is the amount of time the idle task has actually been executing. The unit of time is dependent on the frequency configured using the portCONFIGURE_TIMER_FOR_RUN_TIME_STATS() and portGET_RUN_TIME_COUNTER_VALUE() macros.

BaseType_t **xTaskGenericNotify**(*TaskHandle_t xTaskToNotify*, uint32_t *ulValue*, *eNotifyAction eAction*, uint32_t **pulPreviousNotificationValue*)

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this function to be available.

When configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS is set to one each task has its own private "notification value", which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t).

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment the task's notification value. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

A notification sent to a task will remain pending until it is cleared by the task calling xTaskNotifyWait() or ulTaskNotifyTake(). If the task was already in the Blocked state to wait for a notification when the notification arrives then the task will automatically be removed from the Blocked state (unblocked) and the notification cleared.

A task can use xTaskNotifyWait() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification to be pending, or ulTaskNotifyTake() to [optionally] block to wait for its notification value to have a non-zero value. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

See http://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html for details.

eSetBits - The task's notification value is bitwise ORed with ulValue. xTaskNofify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

Parameters

- `xTaskToNotify`: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().
- `ulValue`: Data that can be sent with the notification. How the data is used depends on the value of the eAction parameter.
- `eAction`: Specifies how the notification updates the task's notification value, if at all. Valid values for eAction are as follows:

eIncrement - The task's notification value is incremented. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

eSetValueWithOverwrite - The task's notification value is set to the value of ulValue, even if the task being notified had not yet processed the previous notification (the task already had a notification pending). xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

eSetValueWithoutOverwrite - If the task being notified did not already have a notification pending then the task's notification value is set to ulValue and xTaskNotify() will return pdPASS. If the task being notified already had a notification pending then no action is performed and pdFAIL is returned.

eNoAction - The task receives a notification without its notification value being updated. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

Return Dependent on the value of eAction. See the description of the eAction parameter.

Parameters

- `pulPreviousNotificationValue`: Can be used to pass out the subject task's notification value before any bits are modified by the notify function.

BaseType_t **xTaskGenericNotifyFromISR**(*TaskHandle_t xTaskToNotify*, uint32_t *ulValue*, *eNotifyAction eAction*, uint32_t **pulPreviousNotificationValue*, BaseType_t **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Send task notification from an ISR.

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this function to be available.

When configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS is set to one each task has its own private "notification value", which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t).

A version of xTaskNotify() that can be used from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment the task's notification value. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

A notification sent to a task will remain pending until it is cleared by the task calling xTaskNotifyWait() or ulTaskNotifyTake(). If the task was already in the Blocked state to wait for a notification when the notification arrives then the task will automatically be removed from the Blocked state (unblocked) and the notification cleared.

A task can use xTaskNotifyWait() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification to be pending, or ulTaskNotifyTake() to [optionally] block to wait for its notification value to have a non-zero value. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

See http://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html for details.

eSetBits - The task's notification value is bitwise ORed with ulValue. xTaskNofify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

Parameters

- `xTaskToNotify`: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().
- `ulValue`: Data that can be sent with the notification. How the data is used depends on the value of the eAction parameter.
- `eAction`: Specifies how the notification updates the task's notification value, if at all. Valid values for eAction are as follows:

eIncrement - The task's notification value is incremented. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

eSetValueWithOverwrite - The task's notification value is set to the value of ulValue, even if the task being notified had not yet processed the previous notification (the task already had a notification pending). xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

eSetValueWithoutOverwrite - If the task being notified did not already have a notification pending then the task's notification value is set to ulValue and xTaskNotify() will return pdPASS. If the task being notified already had a notification pending then no action is performed and pdFAIL is returned.

eNoAction - The task receives a notification without its notification value being updated. ulValue is not used and xTaskNotify() always returns pdPASS in this case.

Return Dependent on the value of eAction. See the description of the eAction parameter.

Parameters

- `pulPreviousNotificationValue`: Can be used to pass out the subject task's notification value before any bits are modified by the notify function.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xTaskNotifyFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending the notification caused the task to which the notification was sent to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xTaskNotifyFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before

the interrupt is exited. How a context switch is requested from an ISR is dependent on the port - see the documentation page for the port in use.

BaseType_t **xTaskNotifyWait**(uint32_t *ulBitsToClearOnEntry*, uint32_t *ulBitsToClearOnExit*, uint32_t **pulNotificationValue*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Wait for task notification

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this function to be available.

When configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS is set to one each task has its own private "notification value", which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t).

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment the task's notification value. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

A notification sent to a task will remain pending until it is cleared by the task calling xTaskNotifyWait() or ulTaskNotifyTake(). If the task was already in the Blocked state to wait for a notification when the notification arrives then the task will automatically be removed from the Blocked state (unblocked) and the notification cleared.

A task can use xTaskNotifyWait() to [optionally] block to wait for a notification to be pending, or ulTaskNotifyTake() to [optionally] block to wait for its notification value to have a non-zero value. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

See http://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html for details.

Return If a notification was received (including notifications that were already pending when xTaskNotifyWait was called) then pdPASS is returned. Otherwise pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters

- `ulBitsToClearOnEntry`: Bits that are set in ulBitsToClearOnEntry value will be cleared in the calling task's notification value before the task checks to see if any notifications are pending, and optionally blocks if no notifications are pending. Setting ulBitsToClearOnEntry to ULONG_MAX (if limits.h is included) or 0xffffffffUL (if limits.h is not included) will have the effect of resetting the task's notification value to 0. Setting ulBitsToClearOnEntry to 0 will leave the task's notification value unchanged.
- `ulBitsToClearOnExit`: If a notification is pending or received before the calling task exits the xTaskNotifyWait() function then the task's notification value (see the xTaskNotify() API function) is passed out using the pulNotificationValue parameter. Then any bits that are set in ulBitsToClearOnExit will be cleared in the task's notification value (note *pulNotificationValue is set before any bits are cleared). Setting ulBitsToClearOnExit to ULONG_MAX (if limits.h is included) or 0xffffffffUL (if limits.h is not included) will have the effect of resetting the task's notification value to 0 before the function exits. Setting ulBitsToClearOnExit to 0 will leave the task's notification value unchanged when the function exits (in which case the value passed out in pulNotificationValue will match the task's notification value).
- `pulNotificationValue`: Used to pass the task's notification value out of the function. Note the value passed out will not be effected by the clearing of any bits caused by ulBitsToClearOnExit being non-zero.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time that the task should wait in the Blocked state for a notification to be received, should a notification not already be pending when xTaskNotifyWait() was called. The task will not consume any processing time while it is in the Blocked state. This is specified in kernel ticks, the macro pdMS_TO_TICKS(value_in_ms) can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds to a time specified in ticks.

void **vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR**(*TaskHandle_t* *xTaskToNotify*, BaseType_t **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Simplified macro for sending task notification from ISR.

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this macro to be available.

When configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS is set to one each task has its own private "notification value", which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t).

A version of xTaskNotifyGive() that can be called from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment the task's notification value. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() is intended for use when task notifications are used as light weight and faster binary or counting semaphore equivalents. Actual FreeRTOS semaphores are given from an ISR using the xSemaphoreGiveFromISR() API function, the equivalent action that instead uses a task notification is vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR().

When task notifications are being used as a binary or counting semaphore equivalent then the task being notified should wait for the notification using the ulTaskNotificationTake() API function rather than the xTaskNotifyWait() API function.

See http://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html for more details.

Parameters

- `xTaskToNotify`: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending the notification caused the task to which the notification was sent to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited. How a context switch is requested from an ISR is dependent on the port - see the documentation page for the port in use.

uint32_t **`ulTaskNotifyTake`**(BaseType_t *xClearCountOnExit*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Simplified macro for receiving task notification.

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this function to be available.

When configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS is set to one each task has its own private "notification value", which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t).

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment the task's notification value. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

ulTaskNotifyTake() is intended for use when a task notification is used as a faster and lighter weight binary or counting semaphore alternative. Actual FreeRTOS semaphores are taken using the xSemaphoreTake() API function, the equivalent action that instead uses a task notification is ulTaskNotifyTake().

When a task is using its notification value as a binary or counting semaphore other tasks should send notifications to it using the xTaskNotifyGive() macro, or xTaskNotify() function with the eAction parameter set to eIncrement.

ulTaskNotifyTake() can either clear the task's notification value to zero on exit, in which case the notification value acts like a binary semaphore, or decrement the task's notification value on exit, in which case the notification value acts like a counting semaphore.

A task can use ulTaskNotifyTake() to [optionally] block to wait for a the task's notification value to be non-zero. The task does not consume any CPU time while it is in the Blocked state.

Where as xTaskNotifyWait() will return when a notification is pending, ulTaskNotifyTake() will return when the task's notification value is not zero.

See http://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html for details.

Return The task's notification count before it is either cleared to zero or decremented (see the xClearCountOnExit parameter).

Parameters

- `xClearCountOnExit`: if xClearCountOnExit is pdFALSE then the task's notification value is decremented when the function exits. In this way the notification value acts like a counting semaphore. If xClearCountOnExit is not pdFALSE then the task's notification value is cleared to zero when the function exits. In this way the notification value acts like a binary semaphore.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time that the task should wait in the Blocked state for the task's notification value to be greater than zero, should the count not already be greater than zero when ulTaskNotifyTake() was called. The task will not consume any processing time while it is in the Blocked state. This is specified in kernel ticks, the macro pdMS_TO_TICKS(value_in_ms) can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds to a time specified in ticks.

BaseType_t **xTaskNotifyStateClear**(*TaskHandle_t xTask*)

If the notification state of the task referenced by the handle xTask is eNotified, then set the task's notification state to eNotWaitingNotification. The task's notification value is not altered. Set xTask to NULL to clear the notification state of the calling task.

Return pdTRUE if the task's notification state was set to eNotWaitingNotification, otherwise pdFALSE.

Macros

tskKERNEL_VERSION_NUMBER
tskKERNEL_VERSION_MAJOR

tskKERNEL_VERSION_MINOR

tskKERNEL_VERSION_BUILD

tskMPU_REGION_READ_ONLY

tskMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE

tskMPU_REGION_EXECUTE_NEVER

tskMPU_REGION_NORMAL_MEMORY

tskMPU_REGION_DEVICE_MEMORY

tskNO_AFFINITY

tskIDLE_PRIORITY

Defines the priority used by the idle task. This must not be modified.

taskYIELD()

Macro for forcing a context switch.

taskENTER_CRITICAL(x)

Macro to mark the start of a critical code region. Preemptive context switches cannot occur when in a critical region.

Note This may alter the stack (depending on the portable implementation) so must be used with care!

taskENTER_CRITICAL_FROM_ISR()

taskENTER_CRITICAL_ISR(mux)

taskEXIT_CRITICAL(x)

Macro to mark the end of a critical code region. Preemptive context switches cannot occur when in a critical region.

Note This may alter the stack (depending on the portable implementation) so must be used with care!

taskEXIT_CRITICAL_FROM_ISR(x)

taskEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR(mux)

taskDISABLE_INTERRUPTS()
Macro to disable all maskable interrupts.

taskENABLE_INTERRUPTS()
Macro to enable microcontroller interrupts.

taskSCHEDULER_SUSPENDED

taskSCHEDULER_NOT_STARTED

taskSCHEDULER_RUNNING

xTaskNotify(xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction)

xTaskNotifyAndQuery(xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pulPreviousNotifyValue)

xTaskNotifyFromISR(xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

xTaskNotifyAndQueryFromISR(xTaskToNotify, ulValue, eAction, pulPreviousNotificationValue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

xTaskNotifyGive(xTaskToNotify)
Simplified macro for sending task notification.

configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS must be undefined or defined as 1 for this macro to be available.

When configUSE_TASK_NOTIFICATIONS is set to one each task has its own private "notification value", which is a 32-bit unsigned integer (uint32_t).

Events can be sent to a task using an intermediary object. Examples of such objects are queues, semaphores, mutexes and event groups. Task notifications are a method of sending an event directly to a task without the need for such an intermediary object.

A notification sent to a task can optionally perform an action, such as update, overwrite or increment the task's notification value. In that way task notifications can be used to send data to a task, or be used as light weight and fast binary or counting semaphores.

xTaskNotifyGive() is a helper macro intended for use when task notifications are used as light weight and faster binary or counting semaphore equivalents. Actual FreeRTOS semaphores are given using the xSemaphoreGive() API function, the equivalent action that instead uses a task notification is xTaskNotifyGive().

When task notifications are being used as a binary or counting semaphore equivalent then the task being notified should wait for the notification using the ulTaskNotificationTake() API function rather than the xTaskNotifyWait() API function.

See http://www.FreeRTOS.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html for more details.

Return xTaskNotifyGive() is a macro that calls xTaskNotify() with the eAction parameter set to eIncrement - so pdPASS is always returned.

Parameters

- `xTaskToNotify`: The handle of the task being notified. The handle to a task can be returned from the xTaskCreate() API function used to create the task, and the handle of the currently running task can be obtained by calling xTaskGetCurrentTaskHandle().

Type Definitions

typedef void ***TaskHandle_t**

typedef BaseType_t (***TaskHookFunction_t**)(void *)
Defines the prototype to which the application task hook function must conform.

typedef void (***TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t**)(int, void *)
Prototype of local storage pointer deletion callback.

Enumerations

enum eTaskState

Task states returned by eTaskGetState.

Values:

eRunning = 0

eReady

eBlocked

eSuspended

eDeleted

eInvalid

enum eNotifyAction

Values:

eNoAction = 0

eSetBits

eIncrement

eSetValueWithOverwrite

eSetValueWithoutOverwrite

enum eSleepModeStatus

Possible return values for eTaskConfirmSleepModeStatus().

Values:

eAbortSleep = 0

eStandardSleep

eNoTasksWaitingTimeout

Queue API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/queue.h

Functions

BaseType_t **xQueueGenericSendFromISR**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, **const** void ***const** *pvItemToQueue*, BaseType_t ***const** *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*, **const** BaseType_t *xCopyPosition*)

It is preferred that the macros xQueueSendFromISR(), xQueueSendToFrontFromISR() and xQueueSendToBackFromISR() be used in place of calling this function directly. xQueueGiveFromISR() is an equivalent for use by semaphores that don't actually copy any data.

Post an item on a queue. It is safe to use this function from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```
void vBufferISR( void )
{
char cIn;
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
    xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost = pdFALSE;

    // Loop until the buffer is empty.
    do
    {
        // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
        cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

        // Post each byte.
        xQueueGenericSendFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &
↪xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost, queueSEND_TO_BACK );

    } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

    // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary.  Note that␣
↪the
    // name of the yield function required is port specific.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWokenByPost )
    {
        taskYIELD_YIELD_FROM_ISR();
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xQueueGenericSendFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueGenericSendFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.
- `xCopyPosition`: Can take the value queueSEND_TO_BACK to place the item at the back of the queue, or queueSEND_TO_FRONT to place the item at the front of the queue (for high priority messages).

BaseType_t **xQueueGiveFromISR**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, BaseType_t *__const__ *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

BaseType_t **xQueueGenericSend**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, __const__ void *__const__ *pvItemToQueue*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*, __const__ BaseType_t *xCopyPosition*)

It is preferred that the macros xQueueSend(), xQueueSendToFront() and xQueueSendToBack() are used in place of calling this function directly.

Post an item on a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR () for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
char ucMessageID;
char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
struct AMessage *pxMessage;

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
// These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

// ...

if( xQueue1 != 0 )
{
    // Send an uint32_t.  Wait for 10 ticks for space to become
    // available if necessary.
    if( xQueueGenericSend( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10,␣
↪queueSEND_TO_BACK ) != pdPASS )
    {
        // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
    }
}

if( xQueue2 != 0 )
{
    // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object.  Don't block if the
    // queue is already full.
    pxMessage = & xMessage;
    xQueueGenericSend( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0,␣
↪queueSEND_TO_BACK );
}

// ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0 and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.
- `xCopyPosition`: Can take the value queueSEND_TO_BACK to place the item at the back of the queue, or queueSEND_TO_FRONT to place the item at the front of the queue (for high priority messages).

BaseType_t **xQueuePeek**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, void ***const** *pvBuffer*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Receive an item from a queue without removing the item from the queue. The item is received by copy so a buffer of adequate size must be provided. The number of bytes copied into the buffer was defined when the queue was created.

Successfully received items remain on the queue so will be returned again by the next call, or a call to xQueueReceive().

This macro must not be used in an interrupt service routine. See xQueuePeekFromISR() for an alternative that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
char ucMessageID;
char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

QueueHandle_t xQueue;

// Task to create a queue and post a value.
void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
struct AMessage *pxMessage;

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
// These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
xQueue = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );
if( xQueue == 0 )
{
    // Failed to create the queue.
}

// ...

// Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object.  Don't block if the
// queue is already full.
pxMessage = & xMessage;
xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );

// ... Rest of task code.
}

// Task to peek the data from the queue.
void vADifferentTask( void *pvParameters )
{
struct AMessage *pxRxedMessage;

if( xQueue != 0 )
{
    // Peek a message on the created queue.  Block for 10 ticks if a
    // message is not immediately available.
    if( xQueuePeek( xQueue, &( pxRxedMessage ), ( TickType_t ) 10 ) )
    {
        // pcRxedMessage now points to the struct AMessage variable posted
        // by vATask, but the item still remains on the queue.
    }
}

// ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- `pvBuffer`: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for an item to receive should the queue be empty at the time of the call. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required. xQueuePeek() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is 0 and the queue is empty.

BaseType_t **xQueuePeekFromISR**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, void ***const** *pvBuffer*)

A version of xQueuePeek() that can be called from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Receive an item from a queue without removing the item from the queue. The item is received by copy so a

buffer of adequate size must be provided. The number of bytes copied into the buffer was defined when the queue was created.

Successfully received items remain on the queue so will be returned again by the next call, or a call to xQueueReceive().

Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.
Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- `pvBuffer`: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.

BaseType_t **xQueueReceive**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, void ***const** *pvBuffer*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Receive an item from a queue. The item is received by copy so a buffer of adequate size must be provided. The number of bytes copied into the buffer was defined when the queue was created.

Successfully received items are removed from the queue.

This function must not be used in an interrupt service routine. See xQueueReceiveFromISR for an alternative that can.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
   char ucMessageID;
   char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

QueueHandle_t xQueue;

// Task to create a queue and post a value.
void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
struct AMessage *pxMessage;

   // Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
   // These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
   xQueue = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );
   if( xQueue == 0 )
   {
       // Failed to create the queue.
   }

   // ...

   // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object.  Don't block if the
   // queue is already full.
   pxMessage = & xMessage;
   xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );

   // ... Rest of task code.
}

// Task to receive from the queue.
void vADifferentTask( void *pvParameters )
{
struct AMessage *pxRxedMessage;

   if( xQueue != 0 )
   {
       // Receive a message on the created queue.  Block for 10 ticks if a
       // message is not immediately available.
       if( xQueueReceive( xQueue, &( pxRxedMessage ), ( TickType_t ) 10 ) )
       {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
            // pcRxedMessage now points to the struct AMessage variable posted
            // by vATask.
        }
    }

    // ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- `pvBuffer`: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for an item to receive should the queue be empty at the time of the call. xQueueReceive() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is zero and the queue is empty. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

UBaseType_t **uxQueueMessagesWaiting**(**const** *QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

Return the number of messages stored in a queue.

Return The number of messages available in the queue.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: A handle to the queue being queried.

UBaseType_t **uxQueueSpacesAvailable**(**const** *QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

Return the number of free spaces available in a queue. This is equal to the number of items that can be sent to the queue before the queue becomes full if no items are removed.

Return The number of spaces available in the queue.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: A handle to the queue being queried.

void **vQueueDelete**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

Delete a queue - freeing all the memory allocated for storing of items placed on the queue.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: A handle to the queue to be deleted.

BaseType_t **xQueueReceiveFromISR**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, void ***const** *pvBuffer*, BaseType_t ***const** *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Receive an item from a queue. It is safe to use this function from within an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```
QueueHandle_t xQueue;

// Function to create a queue and post some values.
void vAFunction( void *pvParameters )
{
char cValueToPost;
const TickType_t xTicksToWait = ( TickType_t )0xff;

    // Create a queue capable of containing 10 characters.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( char ) );
    if( xQueue == 0 )
    {
        // Failed to create the queue.
    }

    // ...

    // Post some characters that will be used within an ISR.  If the queue
    // is full then this task will block for xTicksToWait ticks.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    cValueToPost = 'a';
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &cValueToPost, xTicksToWait );
    cValueToPost = 'b';
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &cValueToPost, xTicksToWait );

    // ... keep posting characters ... this task may block when the queue
    // becomes full.

    cValueToPost = 'c';
    xQueueSend( xQueue, ( void * ) &cValueToPost, xTicksToWait );
}

// ISR that outputs all the characters received on the queue.
void vISR_Routine( void )
{
BaseType_t xTaskWokenByReceive = pdFALSE;
char cRxedChar;

    while( xQueueReceiveFromISR( xQueue, ( void * ) &cRxedChar, &
↪xTaskWokenByReceive) )
    {
        // A character was received.  Output the character now.
        vOutputCharacter( cRxedChar );

        // If removing the character from the queue woke the task that was
        // posting onto the queue cTaskWokenByReceive will have been set to
        // pdTRUE.  No matter how many times this loop iterates only one
        // task will be woken.
    }

    if( cTaskWokenByPost != ( char ) pdFALSE;
    {
        taskYIELD ();
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if an item was successfully received from the queue, otherwise pdFALSE.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue from which the item is to be received.
- `pvBuffer`: Pointer to the buffer into which the received item will be copied.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: A task may be blocked waiting for space to become available on the queue. If xQueueReceiveFromISR causes such a task to unblock *pxTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE, otherwise *pxTaskWoken will remain unchanged.

BaseType_t **xQueueIsQueueEmptyFromISR**(**const** *QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

BaseType_t **xQueueIsQueueFullFromISR**(**const** *QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

UBaseType_t **uxQueueMessagesWaitingFromISR**(**const** *QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

void **vQueueAddToRegistry**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*, **const** char **pcQueueName*)

The registry is provided as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores and mutexes. Call vQueueAddToRegistry() add a queue, semaphore or mutex handle to the registry if you want the handle to be available to a kernel aware debugger. If you are not using a kernel aware debugger then this function can be ignored.

configQUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE defines the maximum number of handles the registry can hold. configQUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE must be greater than 0 within FreeRTOSConfig.h for the registry to be available. Its value does not effect the number of queues, semaphores and mutexes that can be created - just the number that the registry can hold.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle of the queue being added to the registry. This is the handle returned by a call to xQueueCreate(). Semaphore and mutex handles can also be passed in here.
- `pcQueueName`: The name to be associated with the handle. This is the name that the kernel aware debugger will display. The queue registry only stores a pointer to the string - so the string must be persistent (global or preferably in ROM/Flash), not on the stack.

void **vQueueUnregisterQueue**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

lint !e971 Unqualified char types are allowed for strings and single characters only. The registry is provided as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores and mutexes. Call vQueueAddToRegistry() add a queue, semaphore or mutex handle to the registry if you want the handle to be available to a kernel aware debugger, and vQueueUnregisterQueue() to remove the queue, semaphore or mutex from the register. If you are not using a kernel aware debugger then this function can be ignored.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle of the queue being removed from the registry.

const char ***pcQueueGetName**(*QueueHandle_t xQueue*)

The queue registry is provided as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores and mutexes. Call pcQueueGetName() to look up and return the name of a queue in the queue registry from the queue's handle.

Return If the queue is in the registry then a pointer to the name of the queue is returned. If the queue is not in the registry then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle of the queue the name of which will be returned.

QueueHandle_t **xQueueGenericCreate**(**const** UBaseType_t *uxQueueLength*, **const** UBaseType_t *uxItemSize*, **const** uint8_t *ucQueueType*)

lint !e971 Unqualified char types are allowed for strings and single characters only. Generic version of the function used to creaet a queue using dynamic memory allocation. This is called by other functions and macros that create other RTOS objects that use the queue structure as their base.

QueueHandle_t **xQueueGenericCreateStatic**(**const** UBaseType_t *uxQueueLength*, **const** UBaseType_t *uxItemSize*, uint8_t **pucQueueStorage*, StaticQueue_t **pxStaticQueue*, **const** uint8_t *ucQueueType*)

Generic version of the function used to creaet a queue using dynamic memory allocation. This is called by other functions and macros that create other RTOS objects that use the queue structure as their base.

QueueSetHandle_t **xQueueCreateSet**(**const** UBaseType_t *uxEventQueueLength*)

Queue sets provide a mechanism to allow a task to block (pend) on a read operation from multiple queues or semaphores simultaneously.

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

A queue set must be explicitly created using a call to xQueueCreateSet() before it can be used. Once created, standard FreeRTOS queues and semaphores can be added to the set using calls to xQueueAddToSet(). xQueueSelectFromSet() is then used to determine which, if any, of the queues or semaphores contained in the set is in a state where a queue read or semaphore take operation would be successful.

Note 1: See the documentation on http://wwwFreeRTOS.org/RTOS-queue-sets.html for reasons why queue sets are very rarely needed in practice as there are simpler methods of blocking on multiple objects.

Note 2: Blocking on a queue set that contains a mutex will not cause the mutex holder to inherit the priority of the blocked task.

Note 3: An additional 4 bytes of RAM is required for each space in a every queue added to a queue set. Therefore counting semaphores that have a high maximum count value should not be added to a queue set.

Note 4: A receive (in the case of a queue) or take (in the case of a semaphore) operation must not be performed on a member of a queue set unless a call to xQueueSelectFromSet() has first returned a handle to that set member.

Return If the queue set is created successfully then a handle to the created queue set is returned. Otherwise NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `uxEventQueueLength`: Queue sets store events that occur on the queues and semaphores contained in the set. uxEventQueueLength specifies the maximum number of events that can be queued at once. To be absolutely certain that events are not lost uxEventQueueLength should be set to the total sum of the length of the queues added to the set, where binary semaphores and mutexes have a length of 1, and counting semaphores have a length set by their maximum count value. Examples:
  - If a queue set is to hold a queue of length 5, another queue of length 12, and a binary semaphore, then uxEventQueueLength should be set to (5 + 12 + 1), or 18.
  - If a queue set is to hold three binary semaphores then uxEventQueueLength should be set to (1 + 1 + 1), or 3.
  - If a queue set is to hold a counting semaphore that has a maximum count of 5, and a counting semaphore that has a maximum count of 3, then uxEventQueueLength should be set to (5 + 3), or 8.

BaseType_t **xQueueAddToSet** (*QueueSetMemberHandle_t xQueueOrSemaphore*, *QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet*)

Adds a queue or semaphore to a queue set that was previously created by a call to xQueueCreateSet().

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

Note 1: A receive (in the case of a queue) or take (in the case of a semaphore) operation must not be performed on a member of a queue set unless a call to xQueueSelectFromSet() has first returned a handle to that set member.

Return If the queue or semaphore was successfully added to the queue set then pdPASS is returned. If the queue could not be successfully added to the queue set because it is already a member of a different queue set then pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters

- `xQueueOrSemaphore`: The handle of the queue or semaphore being added to the queue set (cast to an QueueSetMemberHandle_t type).
- `xQueueSet`: The handle of the queue set to which the queue or semaphore is being added.

BaseType_t **xQueueRemoveFromSet** (*QueueSetMemberHandle_t xQueueOrSemaphore*, *QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet*)

Removes a queue or semaphore from a queue set. A queue or semaphore can only be removed from a set if the queue or semaphore is empty.

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

Return If the queue or semaphore was successfully removed from the queue set then pdPASS is returned. If the queue was not in the queue set, or the queue (or semaphore) was not empty, then pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters

- `xQueueOrSemaphore`: The handle of the queue or semaphore being removed from the queue set (cast to an QueueSetMemberHandle_t type).
- `xQueueSet`: The handle of the queue set in which the queue or semaphore is included.

QueueSetMemberHandle_t **xQueueSelectFromSet** (*QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet*, **const** TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

xQueueSelectFromSet() selects from the members of a queue set a queue or semaphore that either contains data (in the case of a queue) or is available to take (in the case of a semaphore). xQueueSelectFromSet() effectively allows a task to block (pend) on a read operation on all the queues and semaphores in a queue set simultaneously.

See FreeRTOS/Source/Demo/Common/Minimal/QueueSet.c for an example using this function.

Note 1: See the documentation on http://wwwFreeRTOS.org/RTOS-queue-sets.html for reasons why queue sets are very rarely needed in practice as there are simpler methods of blocking on multiple objects.

Note 2: Blocking on a queue set that contains a mutex will not cause the mutex holder to inherit the priority of the blocked task.

Note 3: A receive (in the case of a queue) or take (in the case of a semaphore) operation must not be performed on a member of a queue set unless a call to xQueueSelectFromSet() has first returned a handle to that set member.

Return xQueueSelectFromSet() will return the handle of a queue (cast to a QueueSetMemberHandle_t type) contained in the queue set that contains data, or the handle of a semaphore (cast to a QueueSetMemberHandle_t type) contained in the queue set that is available, or NULL if no such queue or semaphore exists before before the specified block time expires.

Parameters

- `xQueueSet`: The queue set on which the task will (potentially) block.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum time, in ticks, that the calling task will remain in the Blocked state (with other tasks executing) to wait for a member of the queue set to be ready for a successful queue read or semaphore take operation.

QueueSetMemberHandle_t **xQueueSelectFromSetFromISR** (*QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet*)

A version of xQueueSelectFromSet() that can be used from an ISR.

Macros

xQueueCreate (uxQueueLength, uxItemSize)

Creates a new queue instance. This allocates the storage required by the new queue and returns a handle for the queue.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
char ucMessageID;
char ucData[ 20 ];
};

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );
if( xQueue1 == 0 )
{
    // Queue was not created and must not be used.
}

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
// These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );
if( xQueue2 == 0 )
{
    // Queue was not created and must not be used.
}

// ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return If the queue is successfully create then a handle to the newly created queue is returned. If the queue cannot be created then 0 is returned.

Parameters

- `uxQueueLength`: The maximum number of items that the queue can contain.
- `uxItemSize`: The number of bytes each item in the queue will require. Items are queued by copy, not by reference, so this is the number of bytes that will be copied for each posted item. Each item on the queue must be the same size.

xQueueCreateStatic (uxQueueLength, uxItemSize, pucQueueStorage, pxQueueBuffer)

Creates a new queue instance, and returns a handle by which the new queue can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, queues use two blocks of memory. The first block is used to hold the queue's data structures. The second block is used to hold items placed into the queue. If a queue is created using xQueueCreate() then both blocks of memory are automatically dynamically allocated

inside the xQueueCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a queue is created using xQueueCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the queue. xQueueCreateStatic() therefore allows a queue to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

http://www.FreeRTOS.org/Embedded-RTOS-Queues.html

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
 char ucMessageID;
 char ucData[ 20 ];
};

#define QUEUE_LENGTH 10
#define ITEM_SIZE sizeof( uint32_t )

// xQueueBuffer will hold the queue structure.
StaticQueue_t xQueueBuffer;

// ucQueueStorage will hold the items posted to the queue.  Must be at least
// [(queue length) * ( queue item size)] bytes long.
uint8_t ucQueueStorage[ QUEUE_LENGTH * ITEM_SIZE ];

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
 QueueHandle_t xQueue1;

 // Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
 xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( QUEUE_LENGTH, // The number of items the queue can␣
↪hold.
                         ITEM_SIZE     // The size of each item in the queue
                         &( ucQueueStorage[ 0 ] ), // The buffer that will␣
↪hold the items in the queue.
                         &xQueueBuffer ); // The buffer that will hold the␣
↪queue structure.

 // The queue is guaranteed to be created successfully as no dynamic memory
 // allocation is used.  Therefore xQueue1 is now a handle to a valid queue.

 // ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return If the queue is created then a handle to the created queue is returned. If pxQueueBuffer is NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `uxQueueLength`: The maximum number of items that the queue can contain.
- `uxItemSize`: The number of bytes each item in the queue will require. Items are queued by copy, not by reference, so this is the number of bytes that will be copied for each posted item. Each item on the queue must be the same size.
- `pucQueueStorage`: If uxItemSize is not zero then pucQueueStorageBuffer must point to a uint8_t array that is at least large enough to hold the maximum number of items that can be in the queue at any one time - which is (uxQueueLength * uxItemsSize) bytes. If uxItemSize is zero then pucQueueStorageBuffer can be NULL.
- `pxQueueBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticQueue_t, which will be used to hold the queue's data structure.

`xQueueSendToFront`(xQueue, pvItemToQueue, xTicksToWait)

Post an item to the front of a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR () for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
char ucMessageID;
char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
struct AMessage *pxMessage;

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
// These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

// ...

if( xQueue1 != 0 )
{
    // Send an uint32_t.  Wait for 10 ticks for space to become
    // available if necessary.
    if( xQueueSendToFront( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) !=␣
↪pdPASS )
    {
        // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
    }
}

if( xQueue2 != 0 )
{
    // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object.  Don't block if the
    // queue is already full.
    pxMessage = & xMessage;
    xQueueSendToFront( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
}

// ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0 and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

xQueueSendToBack (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, xTicksToWait)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSend().

Post an item to the back of a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR () for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
char ucMessageID;
char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
struct AMessage *pxMessage;

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
// These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

// ...

if( xQueue1 != 0 )
{
    // Send an uint32_t.  Wait for 10 ticks for space to become
    // available if necessary.
    if( xQueueSendToBack( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) !=␣
↪pdPASS )
    {
        // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
    }
}

if( xQueue2 != 0 )
{
    // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object.  Don't block if the
    // queue is already full.
    pxMessage = & xMessage;
    xQueueSendToBack( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
}

// ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0 and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

xQueueSend (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, xTicksToWait)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSend(). It is included for backward compatibility with versions of FreeRTOS.org that did not include the xQueueSendToFront() and xQueueSendToBack() macros. It is equivalent to xQueueSendToBack().

Post an item on a queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference. This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueSendFromISR () for an alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```
struct AMessage
{
char ucMessageID;
char ucData[ 20 ];
} xMessage;

uint32_t ulVar = 10UL;

void vATask( void *pvParameters )
{
QueueHandle_t xQueue1, xQueue2;
struct AMessage *pxMessage;

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 uint32_t values.
xQueue1 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

// Create a queue capable of containing 10 pointers to AMessage structures.
// These should be passed by pointer as they contain a lot of data.
xQueue2 = xQueueCreate( 10, sizeof( struct AMessage * ) );

// ...

if( xQueue1 != 0 )
{
    // Send an uint32_t.  Wait for 10 ticks for space to become
    // available if necessary.
    if( xQueueSend( xQueue1, ( void * ) &ulVar, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) != pdPASS )
    {
        // Failed to post the message, even after 10 ticks.
    }
}

if( xQueue2 != 0 )
{
    // Send a pointer to a struct AMessage object.  Don't block if the
    // queue is already full.
    pxMessage = & xMessage;
    xQueueSend( xQueue2, ( void * ) &pxMessage, ( TickType_t ) 0 );
}

// ... Rest of task code.
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the item was successfully posted, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should block waiting for space to become available on the queue, should it already be full. The call will return immediately if this is set to 0 and the queue is full. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS should be used to convert to real time if this is required.

`xQueueOverwrite`(xQueue, pvItemToQueue)

Only for use with queues that have a length of one - so the queue is either empty or full.

Post an item on a queue. If the queue is already full then overwrite the value held in the queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference.

This function must not be called from an interrupt service routine. See xQueueOverwriteFromISR () for an

alternative which may be used in an ISR.

Example usage:

```
void vFunction( void *pvParameters )
{
QueueHandle_t xQueue;
uint32_t ulVarToSend, ulValReceived;

// Create a queue to hold one uint32_t value.  It is strongly
// recommended *not* to use xQueueOverwrite() on queues that can
// contain more than one value, and doing so will trigger an assertion
// if configASSERT() is defined.
xQueue = xQueueCreate( 1, sizeof( uint32_t ) );

// Write the value 10 to the queue using xQueueOverwrite().
ulVarToSend = 10;
xQueueOverwrite( xQueue, &ulVarToSend );

// Peeking the queue should now return 10, but leave the value 10 in
// the queue.  A block time of zero is used as it is known that the
// queue holds a value.
ulValReceived = 0;
xQueuePeek( xQueue, &ulValReceived, 0 );

if( ulValReceived != 10 )
{
    // Error unless the item was removed by a different task.
}

// The queue is still full.  Use xQueueOverwrite() to overwrite the
// value held in the queue with 100.
ulVarToSend = 100;
xQueueOverwrite( xQueue, &ulVarToSend );

// This time read from the queue, leaving the queue empty once more.
// A block time of 0 is used again.
xQueueReceive( xQueue, &ulValReceived, 0 );

// The value read should be the last value written, even though the
// queue was already full when the value was written.
if( ulValReceived != 100 )
{
    // Error!
}

// ...
}
```

Return xQueueOverwrite() is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSend(), and therefore has the same return values as xQueueSendToFront(). However, pdPASS is the only value that can be returned because xQueueOverwrite() will write to the queue even when the queue is already full.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle of the queue to which the data is being sent.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.

`xQueueSendToFrontFromISR` (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSendFromISR().

Post an item to the front of a queue. It is safe to use this macro from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called

from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```
void vBufferISR( void )
{
char cIn;
BaseType_t xHigherPrioritTaskWoken;

   // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
   xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

   // Loop until the buffer is empty.
   do
   {
       // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
       cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

       // Post the byte.
       xQueueSendToFrontFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

   } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

   // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary.
   if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
   {
       portYIELD_FROM_ISR ();
   }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xQueueSendToFrontFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueSendToFromFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xQueueSendToBackFromISR(xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSendFromISR().

Post an item to the back of a queue. It is safe to use this macro from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```
void vBufferISR( void )
{
char cIn;
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

   // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
   xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

   // Loop until the buffer is empty.
   do
   {
       // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

        // Post the byte.
        xQueueSendToBackFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );

    // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
    {
        portYIELD_FROM_ISR ();
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xQueueSendToBackFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueSendToBackFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xQueueOverwriteFromISR(xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xQueueOverwrite() that can be used in an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Only for use with queues that can hold a single item - so the queue is either empty or full.

Post an item on a queue. If the queue is already full then overwrite the value held in the queue. The item is queued by copy, not by reference.

Example usage:

```
 QueueHandle_t xQueue;

 void vFunction( void *pvParameters )
 {
    // Create a queue to hold one uint32_t value.  It is strongly
    // recommended *not* to use xQueueOverwriteFromISR() on queues that can
    // contain more than one value, and doing so will trigger an assertion
    // if configASSERT() is defined.
    xQueue = xQueueCreate( 1, sizeof( uint32_t ) );
}

void vAnInterruptHandler( void )
{
// xHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be set to pdFALSE before it is used.
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
uint32_t ulVarToSend, ulValReceived;

    // Write the value 10 to the queue using xQueueOverwriteFromISR().
    ulVarToSend = 10;
    xQueueOverwriteFromISR( xQueue, &ulVarToSend, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    // The queue is full, but calling xQueueOverwriteFromISR() again will still
    // pass because the value held in the queue will be overwritten with the
    // new value.
    ulVarToSend = 100;
    xQueueOverwriteFromISR( xQueue, &ulVarToSend, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // Reading from the queue will now return 100.

    // ...

    if( xHigherPrioritytaskWoken == pdTRUE )
    {
        // Writing to the queue caused a task to unblock and the unblocked task
        // has a priority higher than or equal to the priority of the currently
        // executing task (the task this interrupt interrupted).  Perform a␣
↪context
        // switch so this interrupt returns directly to the unblocked task.
        portYIELD_FROM_ISR(); // or portEND_SWITCHING_ISR() depending on the␣
↪port.
    }
}
```

Return xQueueOverwriteFromISR() is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSendFromISR(), and therefore has the same return values as xQueueSendToFrontFromISR(). However, pdPASS is the only value that can be returned because xQueueOverwriteFromISR() will write to the queue even when the queue is already full.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xQueueOverwriteFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueOverwriteFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xQueueSendFromISR (xQueue, pvItemToQueue, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

This is a macro that calls xQueueGenericSendFromISR(). It is included for backward compatibility with versions of FreeRTOS.org that did not include the xQueueSendToBackFromISR() and xQueueSendToFrontFromISR() macros.

Post an item to the back of a queue. It is safe to use this function from within an interrupt service routine.

Items are queued by copy not reference so it is preferable to only queue small items, especially when called from an ISR. In most cases it would be preferable to store a pointer to the item being queued.

Example usage for buffered IO (where the ISR can obtain more than one value per call):

```
void vBufferISR( void )
{
char cIn;
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

   // We have not woken a task at the start of the ISR.
   xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

   // Loop until the buffer is empty.
   do
   {
       // Obtain a byte from the buffer.
       cIn = portINPUT_BYTE( RX_REGISTER_ADDRESS );

       // Post the byte.
       xQueueSendFromISR( xRxQueue, &cIn, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

   } while( portINPUT_BYTE( BUFFER_COUNT ) );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // Now the buffer is empty we can switch context if necessary.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken )
    {
        // Actual macro used here is port specific.
        portYIELD_FROM_ISR ();
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the data was successfully sent to the queue, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xQueue`: The handle to the queue on which the item is to be posted.
- `pvItemToQueue`: A pointer to the item that is to be placed on the queue. The size of the items the queue will hold was defined when the queue was created, so this many bytes will be copied from pvItemToQueue into the queue storage area.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xQueueSendFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if sending to the queue caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xQueueSendFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xQueueReset(xQueue)

Reset a queue back to its original empty state. The return value is now obsolete and is always set to pdPASS.

Type Definitions

typedef struct QueueDefinition ***QueueHandle_t**

typedef struct QueueDefinition ***QueueSetHandle_t**

Type by which queue sets are referenced. For example, a call to xQueueCreateSet() returns an xQueueSet variable that can then be used as a parameter to xQueueSelectFromSet(), xQueueAddToSet(), etc.

typedef struct QueueDefinition ***QueueSetMemberHandle_t**

Queue sets can contain both queues and semaphores, so the QueueSetMemberHandle_t is defined as a type to be used where a parameter or return value can be either an QueueHandle_t or an SemaphoreHandle_t.

Semaphore API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/semphr.h

Macros

semBINARY_SEMAPHORE_QUEUE_LENGTH

semSEMAPHORE_QUEUE_ITEM_LENGTH

semGIVE_BLOCK_TIME

xSemaphoreCreateBinary()

Creates a new binary semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new semaphore can be referenced.

In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a binary semaphore! http://www.freertos.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, binary semaphores use a block of memory, in which the semaphore structure is stored. If a binary semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateBinary() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateBinary() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a binary semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory. xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic() therefore allows a binary semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

The old vSemaphoreCreateBinary() macro is now deprecated in favour of this xSemaphoreCreateBinary() function. Note that binary semaphores created using the vSemaphoreCreateBinary() macro are created in a

state such that the first call to 'take' the semaphore would pass, whereas binary semaphores created using xSemaphoreCreateBinary() are created in a state such that the the semaphore must first be 'given' before it can be 'taken'.

This type of semaphore can be used for pure synchronisation between tasks or between an interrupt and a task. The semaphore need not be given back once obtained, so one task/interrupt can continuously 'give' the semaphore while another continuously 'takes' the semaphore. For this reason this type of semaphore does not use a priority inheritance mechanism. For an alternative that does use priority inheritance see xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to vSemaphoreCreateBinary ().
   // This is a macro so pass the variable in directly.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateBinary();

   if( xSemaphore != NULL )
   {
       // The semaphore was created successfully.
       // The semaphore can now be used.
   }
}
```

Return Handle to the created semaphore, or NULL if the memory required to hold the semaphore's data structures could not be allocated.

xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic(pxStaticSemaphore)

Creates a new binary semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new semaphore can be referenced.

NOTE: In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a binary semaphore! http://www.freertos.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, binary semaphores use a block of memory, in which the semaphore structure is stored. If a binary semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateBinary() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateBinary() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a binary semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory. xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic() therefore allows a binary semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

This type of semaphore can be used for pure synchronisation between tasks or between an interrupt and a task. The semaphore need not be given back once obtained, so one task/interrupt can continuously 'give' the semaphore while another continuously 'takes' the semaphore. For this reason this type of semaphore does not use a priority inheritance mechanism. For an alternative that does use priority inheritance see xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;
StaticSemaphore_t xSemaphoreBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary() or
   // xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic().
   // The semaphore's data structures will be placed in the xSemaphoreBuffer
   // variable, the address of which is passed into the function.  The
   // function's parameter is not NULL, so the function will not attempt any
   // dynamic memory allocation, and therefore the function will not return
   // return NULL.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic( &xSemaphoreBuffer );

    // Rest of task code goes here.
}
```

Return If the semaphore is created then a handle to the created semaphore is returned. If pxSemaphoreBuffer is NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pxStaticSemaphore`: Must point to a variable of type StaticSemaphore_t, which will then be used to hold the semaphore' s data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

`xSemaphoreTake` (xSemaphore, xBlockTime)

Macro to obtain a semaphore. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary(), xSemaphoreCreateMutex() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting().

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

// A task that creates a semaphore.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // Create the semaphore to guard a shared resource.
    vSemaphoreCreateBinary( xSemaphore );
}

// A task that uses the semaphore.
void vAnotherTask( void * pvParameters )
{
    // ... Do other things.

    if( xSemaphore != NULL )
    {
        // See if we can obtain the semaphore.  If the semaphore is not␣
↪available
        // wait 10 ticks to see if it becomes free.
        if( xSemaphoreTake( xSemaphore, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) == pdTRUE )
        {
            // We were able to obtain the semaphore and can now access the
            // shared resource.

            // ...

            // We have finished accessing the shared resource.  Release the
            // semaphore.
            xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore );
        }
        else
        {
            // We could not obtain the semaphore and can therefore not access
            // the shared resource safely.
        }
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was obtained. pdFALSE if xBlockTime expired without the semaphore becoming available.

Parameters

- `xSemaphore`: A handle to the semaphore being taken - obtained when the semaphore was created.
- `xBlockTime`: The time in ticks to wait for the semaphore to become available. The macro

portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert this to a real time. A block time of zero can be used to poll the semaphore. A block time of portMAX_DELAY can be used to block indefinitely (provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h).

xSemaphoreTakeRecursive (xMutex, xBlockTime)

Macro to recursively obtain, or 'take', a mutex type semaphore. The mutex must have previously been created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();

configUSE_RECURSIVE_MUTEXES must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this macro to be available.

This macro must not be used on mutexes created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

A mutex used recursively can be 'taken' repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn't become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful 'take' request. For example, if a task successfully 'takes' the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also 'given' the mutex back exactly five times.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xMutex = NULL;

// A task that creates a mutex.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Create the mutex to guard a shared resource.
   xMutex = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
}

// A task that uses the mutex.
void vAnotherTask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // ... Do other things.

   if( xMutex != NULL )
   {
       // See if we can obtain the mutex.  If the mutex is not available
       // wait 10 ticks to see if it becomes free.
       if( xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xSemaphore, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) == pdTRUE )
       {
           // We were able to obtain the mutex and can now access the
           // shared resource.

           // ...
           // For some reason due to the nature of the code further calls to
           // xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() are made on the same mutex.  In real
           // code these would not be just sequential calls as this would make
           // no sense.  Instead the calls are likely to be buried inside
           // a more complex call structure.
           xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );
           xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );

           // The mutex has now been 'taken' three times, so will not be
           // available to another task until it has also been given back
           // three times.  Again it is unlikely that real code would have
           // these calls sequentially, but instead buried in a more complex
           // call structure.  This is just for illustrative purposes.
           xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
           xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
           xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );

           // Now the mutex can be taken by other tasks.
       }
       else
       {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
            // We could not obtain the mutex and can therefore not access
            // the shared resource safely.
        }
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was obtained. pdFALSE if xBlockTime expired without the semaphore becoming available.

Parameters

- `xMutex`: A handle to the mutex being obtained. This is the handle returned by xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
- `xBlockTime`: The time in ticks to wait for the semaphore to become available. The macro portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert this to a real time. A block time of zero can be used to poll the semaphore. If the task already owns the semaphore then xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() will return immediately no matter what the value of xBlockTime.

`xSemaphoreGive`(xSemaphore)

Macro to release a semaphore. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary(), xSemaphoreCreateMutex() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting(). and obtained using sSemaphoreTake().

This macro must not be used from an ISR. See xSemaphoreGiveFromISR () for an alternative which can be used from an ISR.

This macro must also not be used on semaphores created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex().

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Create the semaphore to guard a shared resource.
   vSemaphoreCreateBinary( xSemaphore );

   if( xSemaphore != NULL )
   {
       if( xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore ) != pdTRUE )
       {
           // We would expect this call to fail because we cannot give
           // a semaphore without first "taking" it!
       }

       // Obtain the semaphore - don't block if the semaphore is not
       // immediately available.
       if( xSemaphoreTake( xSemaphore, ( TickType_t ) 0 ) )
       {
           // We now have the semaphore and can access the shared resource.

           // ...

           // We have finished accessing the shared resource so can free the
           // semaphore.
           if( xSemaphoreGive( xSemaphore ) != pdTRUE )
           {
               // We would not expect this call to fail because we must have
               // obtained the semaphore to get here.
           }
       }
   }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was released. pdFALSE if an error occurred. Semaphores are implemented using queues. An error can occur if there is no space on the queue to post a message - indicating that the semaphore was not first obtained correctly.

Parameters

- `xSemaphore`: A handle to the semaphore being released. This is the handle returned when the semaphore was created.

`xSemaphoreGiveRecursive`(xMutex)

semphr. h

Macro to recursively release, or ‘give’, a mutex type semaphore. The mutex must have previously been created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();

configUSE_RECURSIVE_MUTEXES must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for this macro to be available.

This macro must not be used on mutexes created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex().

A mutex used recursively can be ‘taken’ repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn’t become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful ‘take’ request. For example, if a task successfully ‘takes’ the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also ‘given’ the mutex back exactly five times.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xMutex = NULL;

// A task that creates a mutex.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Create the mutex to guard a shared resource.
   xMutex = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();
}

// A task that uses the mutex.
void vAnotherTask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // ... Do other things.

   if( xMutex != NULL )
   {
       // See if we can obtain the mutex.  If the mutex is not available
       // wait 10 ticks to see if it becomes free.
       if( xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 ) == pdTRUE )
       {
           // We were able to obtain the mutex and can now access the
           // shared resource.

           // ...
           // For some reason due to the nature of the code further calls to
           // xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() are made on the same mutex.  In real
           // code these would not be just sequential calls as this would make
           // no sense.  Instead the calls are likely to be buried inside
           // a more complex call structure.
           xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );
           xSemaphoreTakeRecursive( xMutex, ( TickType_t ) 10 );

           // The mutex has now been 'taken' three times, so will not be
           // available to another task until it has also been given back
           // three times.  Again it is unlikely that real code would have
           // these calls sequentially, it would be more likely that the calls
           // to xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() would be called as a call stack
           // unwound.  This is just for demonstrative purposes.
           xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
           xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
            xSemaphoreGiveRecursive( xMutex );

            // Now the mutex can be taken by other tasks.
        }
        else
        {
            // We could not obtain the mutex and can therefore not access
            // the shared resource safely.
        }
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was given.

Parameters

- `xMutex`: A handle to the mutex being released, or 'given'. This is the handle returned by xSemaphoreCreateMutex();

`xSemaphoreGiveFromISR` (xSemaphore, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

Macro to release a semaphore. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting().

Mutex type semaphores (those created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex()) must not be used with this macro.

This macro can be used from an ISR.

Example usage:

```
\#define LONG_TIME 0xffff
\#define TICKS_TO_WAIT 10
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

// Repetitive task.
void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   for( ;; )
   {
       // We want this task to run every 10 ticks of a timer.  The semaphore
       // was created before this task was started.

       // Block waiting for the semaphore to become available.
       if( xSemaphoreTake( xSemaphore, LONG_TIME ) == pdTRUE )
       {
           // It is time to execute.

           // ...

           // We have finished our task.  Return to the top of the loop where
           // we will block on the semaphore until it is time to execute
           // again.  Note when using the semaphore for synchronisation with an
           // ISR in this manner there is no need to 'give' the semaphore back.
       }
   }
}

// Timer ISR
void vTimerISR( void * pvParameters )
{
static uint8_t ucLocalTickCount = 0;
static BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

   // A timer tick has occurred.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // ... Do other time functions.

    // Is it time for vATask () to run?
    xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
    ucLocalTickCount++;
    if( ucLocalTickCount >= TICKS_TO_WAIT )
    {
        // Unblock the task by releasing the semaphore.
        xSemaphoreGiveFromISR( xSemaphore, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

        // Reset the count so we release the semaphore again in 10 ticks time.
        ucLocalTickCount = 0;
    }

    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // We can force a context switch here.  Context switching from an
        // ISR uses port specific syntax.  Check the demo task for your port
        // to find the syntax required.
    }
}
```

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was successfully given, otherwise errQUEUE_FULL.

Parameters

- `xSemaphore`: A handle to the semaphore being released. This is the handle returned when the semaphore was created.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xSemaphoreGiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if giving the semaphore caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xSemaphoreGiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xSemaphoreTakeFromISR (xSemaphore, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

Macro to take a semaphore from an ISR. The semaphore must have previously been created with a call to xSemaphoreCreateBinary() or xSemaphoreCreateCounting().

Mutex type semaphores (those created using a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex()) must not be used with this macro.

This macro can be used from an ISR, however taking a semaphore from an ISR is not a common operation. It is likely to only be useful when taking a counting semaphore when an interrupt is obtaining an object from a resource pool (when the semaphore count indicates the number of resources available).

Return pdTRUE if the semaphore was successfully taken, otherwise pdFALSE

Parameters

- `xSemaphore`: A handle to the semaphore being taken. This is the handle returned when the semaphore was created.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: xSemaphoreTakeFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE if taking the semaphore caused a task to unblock, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently running task. If xSemaphoreTakeFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be requested before the interrupt is exited.

xSemaphoreCreateMutex ()

Macro that implements a mutex semaphore by using the existing queue mechanism.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, mutex semaphores use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateMutex() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() then the application writer must provided the memory. xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() therefore allows a mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this function can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros. The xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros must not be used.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task 'taking' a semaphore MUST ALWAYS 'give' the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See xSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always 'gives' the semaphore and another always 'takes' the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex().
   // This is a macro so pass the variable in directly.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateMutex();

   if( xSemaphore != NULL )
   {
       // The semaphore was created successfully.
       // The semaphore can now be used.
   }
}
```

Return If the mutex was successfully created then a handle to the created semaphore is returned. If there was not enough heap to allocate the mutex data structures then NULL is returned.

xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic(pxMutexBuffer)

Creates a new mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, mutex semaphores use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateMutex() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() then the application writer must provided the memory. xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() therefore allows a mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this function can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros. The xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros must not be used.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task 'taking' a semaphore MUST ALWAYS 'give' the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See xSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always 'gives' the semaphore and another always 'takes' the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;
StaticSemaphore_t xMutexBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // A mutex cannot be used before it has been created.  xMutexBuffer is
   // into xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic() so no dynamic memory allocation is
   // attempted.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic( &xMutexBuffer );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // As no dynamic memory allocation was performed, xSemaphore cannot be NULL,
    // so there is no need to check it.
}
```

Return If the mutex was successfully created then a handle to the created mutex is returned. If pxMutexBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pxMutexBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticSemaphore_t, which will be used to hold the mutex's data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex()

Creates a new recursive mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new recursive mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, recursive mutexs use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the mutex. xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() therefore allows a recursive mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this macro can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros. The xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros must not be used.

A mutex used recursively can be 'taken' repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn't become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful 'take' request. For example, if a task successfully 'takes' the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also 'given' the mutex back exactly five times.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task 'taking' a semaphore MUST ALWAYS 'give' the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See vSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always 'gives' the semaphore and another always 'takes' the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateMutex().
   // This is a macro so pass the variable in directly.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex();

   if( xSemaphore != NULL )
   {
       // The semaphore was created successfully.
       // The semaphore can now be used.
   }
}
```

Return xSemaphore Handle to the created mutex semaphore. Should be of type SemaphoreHandle_t.

xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic(pxStaticSemaphore)

Creates a new recursive mutex type semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new recursive mutex can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, recursive mutexs use a block of memory, in which the mutex structure is stored. If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the mutex. xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic() therefore allows a recursive mutex to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Mutexes created using this macro can be accessed using the xSemaphoreTakeRecursive() and xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() macros. The xSemaphoreTake() and xSemaphoreGive() macros must not be used.

A mutex used recursively can be 'taken' repeatedly by the owner. The mutex doesn't become available again until the owner has called xSemaphoreGiveRecursive() for each successful 'take' request. For example, if a task successfully 'takes' the same mutex 5 times then the mutex will not be available to any other task until it has also 'given' the mutex back exactly five times.

This type of semaphore uses a priority inheritance mechanism so a task 'taking' a semaphore MUST ALWAYS 'give' the semaphore back once the semaphore it is no longer required.

Mutex type semaphores cannot be used from within interrupt service routines.

See xSemaphoreCreateBinary() for an alternative implementation that can be used for pure synchronisation (where one task or interrupt always 'gives' the semaphore and another always 'takes' the semaphore) and from within interrupt service routines.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;
StaticSemaphore_t xMutexBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
   // A recursive semaphore cannot be used before it is created.  Here a
   // recursive mutex is created using xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic().
   // The address of xMutexBuffer is passed into the function, and will hold
   // the mutexes data structures - so no dynamic memory allocation will be
   // attempted.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic( &xMutexBuffer );

   // As no dynamic memory allocation was performed, xSemaphore cannot be NULL,
   // so there is no need to check it.
}
```

Return If the recursive mutex was successfully created then a handle to the created recursive mutex is returned. If pxMutexBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pxStaticSemaphore`: Must point to a variable of type StaticSemaphore_t, which will then be used to hold the recursive mutex's data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

`xSemaphoreCreateCounting`(uxMaxCount, uxInitialCount)

Creates a new counting semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new counting semaphore can be referenced.

In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a counting semaphore! http://www.freertos.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, counting semaphores use a block of memory, in which the counting semaphore structure is stored. If a counting semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateCounting() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateCounting() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a counting semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic() then the application writer can instead optionally provide the memory that will get used by the counting semaphore. xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic() therefore allows a counting semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Counting semaphores are typically used for two things:

1) Counting events.

In this usage scenario an event handler will 'give' a semaphore each time an event occurs (incrementing the semaphore count value), and a handler task will 'take' a semaphore each time it processes an event (decrementing the semaphore count value). The count value is therefore the difference between the number of events that have occurred and the number that have been processed. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be zero.

2) Resource management.

In this usage scenario the count value indicates the number of resources available. To obtain control of a resource a task must first obtain a semaphore - decrementing the semaphore count value. When the count value reaches zero there are no free resources. When a task finishes with the resource it 'gives' the semaphore back - incrementing the semaphore count value. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be equal to the maximum count value, indicating that all resources are free.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

   // Semaphore cannot be used before a call to xSemaphoreCreateCounting().
   // The max value to which the semaphore can count should be 10, and the
   // initial value assigned to the count should be 0.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateCounting( 10, 0 );

   if( xSemaphore != NULL )
   {
       // The semaphore was created successfully.
       // The semaphore can now be used.
   }
}
```

Return Handle to the created semaphore. Null if the semaphore could not be created.

Parameters

- `uxMaxCount`: The maximum count value that can be reached. When the semaphore reaches this value it can no longer be 'given'.
- `uxInitialCount`: The count value assigned to the semaphore when it is created.

`xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic`(uxMaxCount, uxInitialCount, pxSemaphoreBuffer)

Creates a new counting semaphore instance, and returns a handle by which the new counting semaphore can be referenced.

In many usage scenarios it is faster and more memory efficient to use a direct to task notification in place of a counting semaphore! http://www.freertos.org/RTOS-task-notifications.html

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, counting semaphores use a block of memory, in which the counting semaphore structure is stored. If a counting semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateCounting() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xSemaphoreCreateCounting() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a counting semaphore is created using xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory. xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic() therefore allows a counting semaphore to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Counting semaphores are typically used for two things:

1) Counting events.

In this usage scenario an event handler will 'give' a semaphore each time an event occurs (incrementing the semaphore count value), and a handler task will 'take' a semaphore each time it processes an event

(decrementing the semaphore count value). The count value is therefore the difference between the number of events that have occurred and the number that have been processed. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be zero.

2) Resource management.

In this usage scenario the count value indicates the number of resources available. To obtain control of a resource a task must first obtain a semaphore - decrementing the semaphore count value. When the count value reaches zero there are no free resources. When a task finishes with the resource it 'gives' the semaphore back - incrementing the semaphore count value. In this case it is desirable for the initial count value to be equal to the maximum count value, indicating that all resources are free.

Example usage:

```
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore;
StaticSemaphore_t xSemaphoreBuffer;

void vATask( void * pvParameters )
{
SemaphoreHandle_t xSemaphore = NULL;

   // Counting semaphore cannot be used before they have been created.  Create
   // a counting semaphore using xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic().  The max
   // value to which the semaphore can count is 10, and the initial value
   // assigned to the count will be 0.  The address of xSemaphoreBuffer is
   // passed in and will be used to hold the semaphore structure, so no dynamic
   // memory allocation will be used.
   xSemaphore = xSemaphoreCreateCounting( 10, 0, &xSemaphoreBuffer );

   // No memory allocation was attempted so xSemaphore cannot be NULL, so there
   // is no need to check its value.
}
```

Return If the counting semaphore was successfully created then a handle to the created counting semaphore is returned. If pxSemaphoreBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `uxMaxCount`: The maximum count value that can be reached. When the semaphore reaches this value it can no longer be 'given'.
- `uxInitialCount`: The count value assigned to the semaphore when it is created.
- `pxSemaphoreBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticSemaphore_t, which will then be used to hold the semaphore's data structure, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

vSemaphoreDelete(xSemaphore)

Delete a semaphore. This function must be used with care. For example, do not delete a mutex type semaphore if the mutex is held by a task.

Parameters

- `xSemaphore`: A handle to the semaphore to be deleted.

xSemaphoreGetMutexHolder(xSemaphore)

If xMutex is indeed a mutex type semaphore, return the current mutex holder. If xMutex is not a mutex type semaphore, or the mutex is available (not held by a task), return NULL.

Note: This is a good way of determining if the calling task is the mutex holder, but not a good way of determining the identity of the mutex holder as the holder may change between the function exiting and the returned value being tested.

xSemaphoreGetMutexHolderFromISR(xSemaphore)

If xMutex is indeed a mutex type semaphore, return the current mutex holder. If xMutex is not a mutex type semaphore, or the mutex is available (not held by a task), return NULL.

uxSemaphoreGetCount(xSemaphore)

semphr.h

If the semaphore is a counting semaphore then uxSemaphoreGetCount() returns its current count value. If the semaphore is a binary semaphore then uxSemaphoreGetCount() returns 1 if the semaphore is available, and 0 if the semaphore is not available.

Type Definitions

typedef *QueueHandle_t* **SemaphoreHandle_t**

Timer API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/timers.h

Functions

TimerHandle_t **xTimerCreate**(**const** char ***const** *pcTimerName*, **const** TickType_t *xTimerPeriodInTicks*, **const** UBaseType_t *uxAutoReload*, void ***const** *pvTimerID*, *TimerCallbackFunction_t pxCallbackFunction*)

Creates a new software timer instance, and returns a handle by which the created software timer can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, software timers use a block of memory, in which the timer data structure is stored. If a software timer is created using xTimerCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTimerCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a software timer is created using xTimerCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the software timer. xTimerCreateStatic() therefore allows a software timer to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Timers are created in the dormant state. The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() and xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions can all be used to transition a timer into the active state.

Example usage:

```
#define NUM_TIMERS 5

// An array to hold handles to the created timers.
TimerHandle_t xTimers[ NUM_TIMERS ];

// An array to hold a count of the number of times each timer expires.
int32_t lExpireCounters[ NUM_TIMERS ] = { 0 };

// Define a callback function that will be used by multiple timer instances.
// The callback function does nothing but count the number of times the
// associated timer expires, and stop the timer once the timer has expired
// 10 times.
void vTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
{
int32_t lArrayIndex;
const int32_t xMaxExpiryCountBeforeStopping = 10;

       // Optionally do something if the pxTimer parameter is NULL.
       configASSERT( pxTimer );

    // Which timer expired?
    lArrayIndex = ( int32_t ) pvTimerGetTimerID( pxTimer );

    // Increment the number of times that pxTimer has expired.
    lExpireCounters[ lArrayIndex ] += 1;

    // If the timer has expired 10 times then stop it from running.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    if( lExpireCounters[ lArrayIndex ] == xMaxExpiryCountBeforeStopping )
    {
        // Do not use a block time if calling a timer API function from a
        // timer callback function, as doing so could cause a deadlock!
        xTimerStop( pxTimer, 0 );
    }
}

void main( void )
{
int32_t x;

    // Create then start some timers.  Starting the timers before the scheduler
    // has been started means the timers will start running immediately that
    // the scheduler starts.
    for( x = 0; x < NUM_TIMERS; x++ )
    {
        xTimers[ x ] = xTimerCreate(    "Timer",       // Just a text name,␣
↪not used by the kernel.
                                        ( 100 * x ),   // The timer period in␣
↪ticks.
                                        pdTRUE,        // The timers will auto-
↪reload themselves when they expire.
                                        ( void * ) x,  // Assign each timer a␣
↪unique id equal to its array index.
                                        vTimerCallback // Each timer calls the␣
↪same callback when it expires.
                                    );

        if( xTimers[ x ] == NULL )
        {
            // The timer was not created.
        }
        else
        {
            // Start the timer.  No block time is specified, and even if one␣
↪was
            // it would be ignored because the scheduler has not yet been
            // started.
            if( xTimerStart( xTimers[ x ], 0 ) != pdPASS )
            {
                // The timer could not be set into the Active state.
            }
        }
    }

    // ...
    // Create tasks here.
    // ...

    // Starting the scheduler will start the timers running as they have␣
↪already
    // been set into the active state.
    vTaskStartScheduler();

    // Should not reach here.
    for( ;; );
}
```

Return If the timer is successfully created then a handle to the newly created timer is returned. If the timer cannot be created (because either there is insufficient FreeRTOS heap remaining to allocate the timer structures, or the timer period was set to 0) then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pcTimerName`: A text name that is assigned to the timer. This is done purely to assist debugging. The kernel itself only ever references a timer by its handle, and never by its name.
- `xTimerPeriodInTicks`: The timer period. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xTimerPeriodInTicks should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000.
- `uxAutoReload`: If uxAutoReload is set to pdTRUE then the timer will expire repeatedly with a frequency set by the xTimerPeriodInTicks parameter. If uxAutoReload is set to pdFALSE then the timer will be a one-shot timer and enter the dormant state after it expires.
- `pvTimerID`: An identifier that is assigned to the timer being created. Typically this would be used in the timer callback function to identify which timer expired when the same callback function is assigned to more than one timer.
- `pxCallbackFunction`: The function to call when the timer expires. Callback functions must have the prototype defined by TimerCallbackFunction_t, which is "void vCallbackFunction(TimerHandle_t xTimer);" .

TimerHandle_t **xTimerCreateStatic**(**const** char ***const** *pcTimerName*, **const** TickType_t *xTimerPeriodInTicks*, **const** UBaseType_t *uxAutoReload*, void ***const** *pvTimerID*, *TimerCallbackFunction_t pxCallbackFunction*, StaticTimer_t **pxTimerBuffer*)

Creates a new software timer instance, and returns a handle by which the created software timer can be referenced.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, software timers use a block of memory, in which the timer data structure is stored. If a software timer is created using xTimerCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xTimerCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If a software timer is created using xTimerCreateStatic() then the application writer must provide the memory that will get used by the software timer. xTimerCreateStatic() therefore allows a software timer to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Timers are created in the dormant state. The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() and xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions can all be used to transition a timer into the active state.

Example usage:

```
// The buffer used to hold the software timer's data structure.
static StaticTimer_t xTimerBuffer;

// A variable that will be incremented by the software timer's callback
// function.
UBaseType_t uxVariableToIncrement = 0;

// A software timer callback function that increments a variable passed to
// it when the software timer was created.  After the 5th increment the
// callback function stops the software timer.
static void prvTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t xExpiredTimer )
{
UBaseType_t *puxVariableToIncrement;
BaseType_t xReturned;

    // Obtain the address of the variable to increment from the timer ID.
    puxVariableToIncrement = ( UBaseType_t * ) pvTimerGetTimerID(␣
↪xExpiredTimer );

    // Increment the variable to show the timer callback has executed.
    ( *puxVariableToIncrement )++;

    // If this callback has executed the required number of times, stop the
    // timer.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    if( *puxVariableToIncrement == 5 )
    {
        // This is called from a timer callback so must not block.
        xTimerStop( xExpiredTimer, staticDONT_BLOCK );
    }
}


void main( void )
{
    // Create the software time.  xTimerCreateStatic() has an extra parameter
    // than the normal xTimerCreate() API function.  The parameter is a pointer
    // to the StaticTimer_t structure that will hold the software timer
    // structure.  If the parameter is passed as NULL then the structure will␣
↪be
    // allocated dynamically, just as if xTimerCreate() had been called.
    xTimer = xTimerCreateStatic( "T1",             // Text name for the task. ␣
↪Helps debugging only.  Not used by FreeRTOS.
                                 xTimerPeriod,     // The period of the timer␣
↪in ticks.
                                 pdTRUE,           // This is an auto-reload␣
↪timer.
                                 ( void * ) &uxVariableToIncrement,    // A␣
↪variable incremented by the software timer's callback function
                                 prvTimerCallback, // The function to execute␣
↪when the timer expires.
                                 &xTimerBuffer );  // The buffer that will␣
↪hold the software timer structure.

    // The scheduler has not started yet so a block time is not used.
    xReturned = xTimerStart( xTimer, 0 );

    // ...
    // Create tasks here.
    // ...

    // Starting the scheduler will start the timers running as they have␣
↪already
    // been set into the active state.
    vTaskStartScheduler();

    // Should not reach here.
    for( ;; );
}
```

Return If the timer is created then a handle to the created timer is returned. If pxTimerBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pcTimerName`: A text name that is assigned to the timer. This is done purely to assist debugging. The kernel itself only ever references a timer by its handle, and never by its name.
- `xTimerPeriodInTicks`: The timer period. The time is defined in tick periods so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xTimerPeriodInTicks should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000.
- `uxAutoReload`: If uxAutoReload is set to pdTRUE then the timer will expire repeatedly with a frequency set by the xTimerPeriodInTicks parameter. If uxAutoReload is set to pdFALSE then the timer will be a one-shot timer and enter the dormant state after it expires.
- `pvTimerID`: An identifier that is assigned to the timer being created. Typically this would be used in the timer callback function to identify which timer expired when the same callback function is

assigned to more than one timer.

- `pxCallbackFunction`: The function to call when the timer expires. Callback functions must have the prototype defined by TimerCallbackFunction_t, which is "void vCallbackFunction(TimerHandle_t xTimer);" .
- `pxTimerBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticTimer_t, which will be then be used to hold the software timer's data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

void ***pvTimerGetTimerID**(**const** *TimerHandle_t xTimer*)
void *pvTimerGetTimerID(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Returns the ID assigned to the timer.

IDs are assigned to timers using the pvTimerID parameter of the call to xTimerCreated() that was used to create the timer, and by calling the vTimerSetTimerID() API function.

If the same callback function is assigned to multiple timers then the timer ID can be used as time specific (timer local) storage.

Example usage:

Return The ID assigned to the timer being queried.
Parameters

- `xTimer`: The timer being queried.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

void **vTimerSetTimerID**(*TimerHandle_t xTimer*, void **pvNewID*)
void vTimerSetTimerID(TimerHandle_t xTimer, void *pvNewID);

Sets the ID assigned to the timer.

IDs are assigned to timers using the pvTimerID parameter of the call to xTimerCreated() that was used to create the timer.

If the same callback function is assigned to multiple timers then the timer ID can be used as time specific (timer local) storage.

Example usage:

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The timer being updated.
- `pvNewID`: The ID to assign to the timer.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

BaseType_t **xTimerIsTimerActive**(*TimerHandle_t xTimer*)
BaseType_t xTimerIsTimerActive(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Queries a timer to see if it is active or dormant.

A timer will be dormant if: 1) It has been created but not started, or 2) It is an expired one-shot timer that has not been restarted.

Timers are created in the dormant state. The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() and xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions can all be used to transition a timer into the active state.

Example usage:

```
// This function assumes xTimer has already been created.
void vAFunction( TimerHandle_t xTimer )
{
    if( xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) != pdFALSE ) // or more simply and␣
↪equivalently "if( xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) )"
    {
        // xTimer is active, do something.
    }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    else
    {
        // xTimer is not active, do something else.
    }
}
```

Return pdFALSE will be returned if the timer is dormant. A value other than pdFALSE will be returned if the timer is active.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The timer being queried.

TaskHandle_t **xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle**(void)

xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle() is only available if INCLUDE_xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h.

Simply returns the handle of the timer service/daemon task. It it not valid to call xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle() before the scheduler has been started.

BaseType_t **xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR**(*PendedFunction_t* *xFunctionToPend*, void **pvParameter1*, uint32_t *ulParameter2*, BaseType_t **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Used from application interrupt service routines to defer the execution of a function to the RTOS daemon task (the timer service task, hence this function is implemented in timers.c and is prefixed with 'Timer').

Ideally an interrupt service routine (ISR) is kept as short as possible, but sometimes an ISR either has a lot of processing to do, or needs to perform processing that is not deterministic. In these cases xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR() can be used to defer processing of a function to the RTOS daemon task.

A mechanism is provided that allows the interrupt to return directly to the task that will subsequently execute the pended callback function. This allows the callback function to execute contiguously in time with the interrupt - just as if the callback had executed in the interrupt itself.

Example usage:

```
// The callback function that will execute in the context of the daemon task.
// Note callback functions must all use this same prototype.
void vProcessInterface( void *pvParameter1, uint32_t ulParameter2 )
{
   BaseType_t xInterfaceToService;

   // The interface that requires servicing is passed in the second
    // parameter.  The first parameter is not used in this case.
   xInterfaceToService = ( BaseType_t ) ulParameter2;

   // ...Perform the processing here...
}

// An ISR that receives data packets from multiple interfaces
void vAnISR( void )
{
   BaseType_t xInterfaceToService, xHigherPriorityTaskWoken;

   // Query the hardware to determine which interface needs processing.
   xInterfaceToService = prvCheckInterfaces();

    // The actual processing is to be deferred to a task.  Request the
    // vProcessInterface() callback function is executed, passing in the
   // number of the interface that needs processing.  The interface to
   // service is passed in the second parameter.  The first parameter is
   // not used in this case.
   xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;
   xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR( vProcessInterface, NULL, ( uint32_t )␣
↪xInterfaceToService, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken is now set to pdTRUE then a context
    // switch should be requested.  The macro used is port specific and will
    // be either portYIELD_FROM_ISR() or portEND_SWITCHING_ISR() - refer to
    // the documentation page for the port being used.
    portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

}
```

Return pdPASS is returned if the message was successfully sent to the timer daemon task, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xFunctionToPend`: The function to execute from the timer service/ daemon task. The function must conform to the PendedFunction_t prototype.
- `pvParameter1`: The value of the callback function's first parameter. The parameter has a void * type to allow it to be used to pass any type. For example, unsigned longs can be cast to a void *, or the void * can be used to point to a structure.
- `ulParameter2`: The value of the callback function's second parameter.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: As mentioned above, calling this function will result in a message being sent to the timer daemon task. If the priority of the timer daemon task (which is set using configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY in FreeRTOSConfig.h) is higher than the priority of the currently running task (the task the interrupt interrupted) then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will be set to pdTRUE within xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR(), indicating that a context switch should be requested before the interrupt exits. For that reason *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be initialised to pdFALSE. See the example code below.

BaseType_t **xTimerPendFunctionCall**(*PendedFunction_t xFunctionToPend*, void **pvParameter1*, uint32_t *ulParameter2*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Used to defer the execution of a function to the RTOS daemon task (the timer service task, hence this function is implemented in timers.c and is prefixed with 'Timer').

Return pdPASS is returned if the message was successfully sent to the timer daemon task, otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xFunctionToPend`: The function to execute from the timer service/ daemon task. The function must conform to the PendedFunction_t prototype.
- `pvParameter1`: The value of the callback function's first parameter. The parameter has a void * type to allow it to be used to pass any type. For example, unsigned longs can be cast to a void *, or the void * can be used to point to a structure.
- `ulParameter2`: The value of the callback function's second parameter.
- `xTicksToWait`: Calling this function will result in a message being sent to the timer daemon task on a queue. xTicksToWait is the amount of time the calling task should remain in the Blocked state (so not using any processing time) for space to become available on the timer queue if the queue is found to be full.

const char ***pcTimerGetName**(*TimerHandle_t xTimer*)

const char * const pcTimerGetName(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Returns the name that was assigned to a timer when the timer was created.

Return The name assigned to the timer specified by the xTimer parameter.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being queried.

void **vTimerSetReloadMode**(*TimerHandle_t xTimer*, **const** UBaseType_t *uxAutoReload*)

void vTimerSetReloadMode(TimerHandle_t xTimer, const UBaseType_t uxAutoReload);

Updates a timer to be either an autoreload timer, in which case the timer automatically resets itself each time it expires, or a one shot timer, in which case the timer will only expire once unless it is manually restarted.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being updated.

- `uxAutoReload`: If uxAutoReload is set to pdTRUE then the timer will expire repeatedly with a frequency set by the timer's period (see the xTimerPeriodInTicks parameter of the xTimerCreate() API function). If uxAutoReload is set to pdFALSE then the timer will be a one-shot timer and enter the dormant state after it expires.

TickType_t **xTimerGetPeriod**(*TimerHandle_t xTimer*)

TickType_t xTimerGetPeriod(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Returns the period of a timer.

Return The period of the timer in ticks.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being queried.

TickType_t **xTimerGetExpiryTime**(*TimerHandle_t xTimer*)

TickType_t xTimerGetExpiryTime(TimerHandle_t xTimer);

Returns the time in ticks at which the timer will expire. If this is less than the current tick count then the expiry time has overflowed from the current time.

Return If the timer is running then the time in ticks at which the timer will next expire is returned. If the timer is not running then the return value is undefined.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being queried.

Macros

tmrCOMMAND_EXECUTE_CALLBACK_FROM_ISR
tmrCOMMAND_EXECUTE_CALLBACK

tmrCOMMAND_START_DONT_TRACE

tmrCOMMAND_START

tmrCOMMAND_RESET

tmrCOMMAND_STOP

tmrCOMMAND_CHANGE_PERIOD

tmrCOMMAND_DELETE

tmrFIRST_FROM_ISR_COMMAND

tmrCOMMAND_START_FROM_ISR

tmrCOMMAND_RESET_FROM_ISR

tmrCOMMAND_STOP_FROM_ISR

tmrCOMMAND_CHANGE_PERIOD_FROM_ISR

xTimerStart(xTimer, xTicksToWait)

BaseType_t xTimerStart(TimerHandle_t xTimer, TickType_t xTicksToWait);

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerStart() starts a timer that was previously created using the xTimerCreate() API function. If the timer had already been started and was already in the active state, then xTimerStart() has equivalent functionality to the xTimerReset() API function.

Starting a timer ensures the timer is in the active state. If the timer is not stopped, deleted, or reset in the mean time, the callback function associated with the timer will get called 'n' ticks after xTimerStart() was called, where 'n' is the timers defined period.

It is valid to call xTimerStart() before the scheduler has been started, but when this is done the timer will not actually start until the scheduler is started, and the timers expiry time will be relative to when the scheduler is started, not relative to when xTimerStart() was called.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerStart() to be available.

Example usage:

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the start command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerStart() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being started/restarted.
- `xTicksToWait`: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the start command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerStart() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerStart() is called before the scheduler is started.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

`xTimerStop`(xTimer, xTicksToWait)

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerStop() stops a timer that was previously started using either of the The xTimerStart(), xTimerReset(), xTimerStartFromISR(), xTimerResetFromISR(), xTimerChangePeriod() or xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() API functions.

Stopping a timer ensures the timer is not in the active state.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerStop() to be available.

Example usage:

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the stop command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being stopped.
- `xTicksToWait`: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the stop command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerStop() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerStop() is called before the scheduler is started.

See the xTimerCreate() API function example usage scenario.

`xTimerChangePeriod`(xTimer, xNewPeriod, xTicksToWait)

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerChangePeriod() changes the period of a timer that was previously created using the xTimerCreate() API function.

xTimerChangePeriod() can be called to change the period of an active or dormant state timer.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerChangePeriod() to be available.

Example usage:

```
// This function assumes xTimer has already been created.  If the timer
// referenced by xTimer is already active when it is called, then the timer
// is deleted.  If the timer referenced by xTimer is not active when it is
// called, then the period of the timer is set to 500ms and the timer is
// started.
void vAFunction( TimerHandle_t xTimer )
{
    if( xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) != pdFALSE ) // or more simply and␣
↪equivalently "if( xTimerIsTimerActive( xTimer ) )"
    {
        // xTimer is already active - delete it.
        xTimerDelete( xTimer );
    }
    else
    {
        // xTimer is not active, change its period to 500ms.  This will also
        // cause the timer to start.  Block for a maximum of 100 ticks if the
        // change period command cannot immediately be sent to the timer
        // command queue.
        if( xTimerChangePeriod( xTimer, 500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS, 100 ) ==␣
↪pdPASS )
        {
            // The command was successfully sent.
        }
        else
        {
            // The command could not be sent, even after waiting for 100 ticks
            // to pass.  Take appropriate action here.
        }
    }
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the change period command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer that is having its period changed.
- `xNewPeriod`: The new period for xTimer. Timer periods are specified in tick periods, so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xNewPeriod should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xNewPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000.
- `xTicksToWait`: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the change period command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerChangePeriod() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerChangePeriod() is called before the scheduler is started.

`xTimerDelete` (xTimer, xTicksToWait)

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerDelete() deletes a timer that was previously created using the xTimerCreate() API function.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerDelete() to be available.

Example usage:

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the delete command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being deleted.
- `xTicksToWait`: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the delete command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the queue already be full when xTimerDelete() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerDelete() is called before the scheduler is started.

See the xTimerChangePeriod() API function example usage scenario.

`xTimerReset`(xTimer, xTicksToWait)

Timer functionality is provided by a timer service/daemon task. Many of the public FreeRTOS timer API functions send commands to the timer service task through a queue called the timer command queue. The timer command queue is private to the kernel itself and is not directly accessible to application code. The length of the timer command queue is set by the configTIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH configuration constant.

xTimerReset() re-starts a timer that was previously created using the xTimerCreate() API function. If the timer had already been started and was already in the active state, then xTimerReset() will cause the timer to re-evaluate its expiry time so that it is relative to when xTimerReset() was called. If the timer was in the dormant state then xTimerReset() has equivalent functionality to the xTimerStart() API function.

Resetting a timer ensures the timer is in the active state. If the timer is not stopped, deleted, or reset in the mean time, the callback function associated with the timer will get called 'n' ticks after xTimerReset() was called, where 'n' is the timers defined period.

It is valid to call xTimerReset() before the scheduler has been started, but when this is done the timer will not actually start until the scheduler is started, and the timers expiry time will be relative to when the scheduler is started, not relative to when xTimerReset() was called.

The configUSE_TIMERS configuration constant must be set to 1 for xTimerReset() to be available.

Example usage:

```
// When a key is pressed, an LCD back-light is switched on.  If 5 seconds pass
// without a key being pressed, then the LCD back-light is switched off.  In
// this case, the timer is a one-shot timer.

TimerHandle_t xBacklightTimer = NULL;

// The callback function assigned to the one-shot timer.  In this case the
// parameter is not used.
void vBacklightTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
{
    // The timer expired, therefore 5 seconds must have passed since a key
    // was pressed.  Switch off the LCD back-light.
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_OFF );
}

// The key press event handler.
void vKeyPressEventHandler( char cKey )
{
    // Ensure the LCD back-light is on, then reset the timer that is
    // responsible for turning the back-light off after 5 seconds of
    // key inactivity.  Wait 10 ticks for the command to be successfully sent
    // if it cannot be sent immediately.
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_ON );
    if( xTimerReset( xBacklightTimer, 100 ) != pdPASS )
    {
        // The reset command was not executed successfully.  Take appropriate
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        // action here.
    }

    // Perform the rest of the key processing here.
}

void main( void )
{
int32_t x;

    // Create then start the one-shot timer that is responsible for turning
    // the back-light off if no keys are pressed within a 5 second period.
    xBacklightTimer = xTimerCreate( "BacklightTimer",           // Just a text␣
↪name, not used by the kernel.
                                    ( 5000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS), // The timer␣
↪period in ticks.
                                    pdFALSE,                    // The timer␣
↪is a one-shot timer.
                                    0,                          // The id is␣
↪not used by the callback so can take any value.
                                    vBacklightTimerCallback     // The␣
↪callback function that switches the LCD back-light off.
                                  );

    if( xBacklightTimer == NULL )
    {
        // The timer was not created.
    }
    else
    {
        // Start the timer.  No block time is specified, and even if one was
        // it would be ignored because the scheduler has not yet been
        // started.
        if( xTimerStart( xBacklightTimer, 0 ) != pdPASS )
        {
            // The timer could not be set into the Active state.
        }
    }

    // ...
    // Create tasks here.
    // ...

    // Starting the scheduler will start the timer running as it has already
    // been set into the active state.
    vTaskStartScheduler();

    // Should not reach here.
    for( ;; );
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the reset command could not be sent to the timer command queue even after xTicksToWait ticks had passed. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerStart() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being reset/started/restarted.
- `xTicksToWait`: Specifies the time, in ticks, that the calling task should be held in the Blocked state to wait for the reset command to be successfully sent to the timer command queue, should the

queue already be full when xTimerReset() was called. xTicksToWait is ignored if xTimerReset() is called before the scheduler is started.

xTimerStartFromISR (xTimer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xTimerStart() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```
// This scenario assumes xBacklightTimer has already been created.  When a
// key is pressed, an LCD back-light is switched on.  If 5 seconds pass
// without a key being pressed, then the LCD back-light is switched off.  In
// this case, the timer is a one-shot timer, and unlike the example given for
// the xTimerReset() function, the key press event handler is an interrupt
// service routine.

// The callback function assigned to the one-shot timer.  In this case the
// parameter is not used.
void vBacklightTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
{
    // The timer expired, therefore 5 seconds must have passed since a key
    // was pressed.  Switch off the LCD back-light.
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_OFF );
}

// The key press interrupt service routine.
void vKeyPressEventInterruptHandler( void )
{
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // Ensure the LCD back-light is on, then restart the timer that is
    // responsible for turning the back-light off after 5 seconds of
    // key inactivity.  This is an interrupt service routine so can only
    // call FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR".
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_ON );

    // xTimerStartFromISR() or xTimerResetFromISR() could be called here
    // as both cause the timer to re-calculate its expiry time.
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was initialised to pdFALSE when it was
    // declared (in this function).
    if( xTimerStartFromISR( xBacklightTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) !=␣
↪pdPASS )
    {
        // The start command was not executed successfully.  Take appropriate
        // action here.
    }

    // Perform the rest of the key processing here.

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken equals pdTRUE, then a context switch
    // should be performed.  The syntax required to perform a context switch
    // from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to
    // compiler.  Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the
    // actual syntax required.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function
        // depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
    }
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the start command could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerStartFromISR() is actually called.

The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being started/restarted.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerStartFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerStartFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/ daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerStartFromISR() function. If xTimerStartFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

`xTimerStopFromISR` (xTimer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xTimerStop() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```
// This scenario assumes xTimer has already been created and started.  When
// an interrupt occurs, the timer should be simply stopped.

// The interrupt service routine that stops the timer.
void vAnExampleInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // The interrupt has occurred - simply stop the timer.
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdFALSE where it was defined
    // (within this function).  As this is an interrupt service routine, only
    // FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR" can be used.
    if( xTimerStopFromISR( xTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) != pdPASS )
    {
        // The stop command was not executed successfully.  Take appropriate
        // action here.
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken equals pdTRUE, then a context switch
    // should be performed.  The syntax required to perform a context switch
    // from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to
    // compiler.  Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the
    // actual syntax required.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function
        // depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
    }
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the stop command could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer being stopped.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerStopFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerStopFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/ daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then

*pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerStopFromISR() function. If xTimerStopFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

xTimerChangePeriodFromISR(xTimer, xNewPeriod, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xTimerChangePeriod() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```
// This scenario assumes xTimer has already been created and started.  When
// an interrupt occurs, the period of xTimer should be changed to 500ms.

// The interrupt service routine that changes the period of xTimer.
void vAnExampleInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // The interrupt has occurred - change the period of xTimer to 500ms.
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdFALSE where it was defined
    // (within this function).  As this is an interrupt service routine, only
    // FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR" can be used.
    if( xTimerChangePeriodFromISR( xTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) !=␣
↪pdPASS )
    {
        // The command to change the timers period was not executed
        // successfully.  Take appropriate action here.
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken equals pdTRUE, then a context switch
    // should be performed.  The syntax required to perform a context switch
    // from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to
    // compiler.  Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the
    // actual syntax required.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function
        // depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
    }
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the command to change the timers period could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer that is having its period changed.
- `xNewPeriod`: The new period for xTimer. Timer periods are specified in tick periods, so the constant portTICK_PERIOD_MS can be used to convert a time that has been specified in milliseconds. For example, if the timer must expire after 100 ticks, then xNewPeriod should be set to 100. Alternatively, if the timer must expire after 500ms, then xNewPeriod can be set to (500 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS) provided configTICK_RATE_HZ is less than or equal to 1000.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/ daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() function. If xTimerChangePeriodFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

xTimerResetFromISR (xTimer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xTimerReset() that can be called from an interrupt service routine.

Example usage:

```
// This scenario assumes xBacklightTimer has already been created.  When a
// key is pressed, an LCD back-light is switched on.  If 5 seconds pass
// without a key being pressed, then the LCD back-light is switched off.  In
// this case, the timer is a one-shot timer, and unlike the example given for
// the xTimerReset() function, the key press event handler is an interrupt
// service routine.

// The callback function assigned to the one-shot timer.  In this case the
// parameter is not used.
void vBacklightTimerCallback( TimerHandle_t pxTimer )
{
    // The timer expired, therefore 5 seconds must have passed since a key
    // was pressed.  Switch off the LCD back-light.
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_OFF );
}

// The key press interrupt service routine.
void vKeyPressEventInterruptHandler( void )
{
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

    // Ensure the LCD back-light is on, then reset the timer that is
    // responsible for turning the back-light off after 5 seconds of
    // key inactivity.  This is an interrupt service routine so can only
    // call FreeRTOS API functions that end in "FromISR".
    vSetBacklightState( BACKLIGHT_ON );

    // xTimerStartFromISR() or xTimerResetFromISR() could be called here
    // as both cause the timer to re-calculate its expiry time.
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was initialised to pdFALSE when it was
    // declared (in this function).
    if( xTimerResetFromISR( xBacklightTimer, &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken ) !=␣
↪pdPASS )
    {
        // The reset command was not executed successfully.  Take appropriate
        // action here.
    }

    // Perform the rest of the key processing here.

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken equals pdTRUE, then a context switch
    // should be performed.  The syntax required to perform a context switch
    // from inside an ISR varies from port to port, and from compiler to
    // compiler.  Inspect the demos for the port you are using to find the
    // actual syntax required.
    if( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken != pdFALSE )
    {
        // Call the interrupt safe yield function here (actual function
        // depends on the FreeRTOS port being used).
    }
}
```

Return pdFAIL will be returned if the reset command could not be sent to the timer command queue. pdPASS will be returned if the command was successfully sent to the timer command queue. When the command is actually processed will depend on the priority of the timer service/daemon task relative to other tasks in the system, although the timers expiry time is relative to when xTimerResetFromISR() is actually called. The timer service/daemon task priority is set by the configTIMER_TASK_PRIORITY configuration constant.

Parameters

- `xTimer`: The handle of the timer that is to be started, reset, or restarted.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: The timer service/daemon task spends most of its time in the Blocked state, waiting for messages to arrive on the timer command queue. Calling xTimerResetFromISR() writes a message to the timer command queue, so has the potential to transition the timer service/daemon task out of the Blocked state. If calling xTimerResetFromISR() causes the timer service/daemon task to leave the Blocked state, and the timer service/ daemon task has a priority equal to or greater than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE internally within the xTimerResetFromISR() function. If xTimerResetFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE then a context switch should be performed before the interrupt exits.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***TimerHandle_t**

typedef void (***TimerCallbackFunction_t**)(*TimerHandle_t* xTimer)

typedef void (***PendedFunction_t**)(void *, uint32_t)

Event Group API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/event_groups.h

Functions

EventGroupHandle_t **xEventGroupCreate**(void)

Create a new event group.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, event groups use a [small] block of memory, in which the event group's structure is stored. If an event groups is created using xEventGropuCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xEventGroupCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If an event group is created using xEventGropuCreateStatic() then the application writer must instead provide the memory that will get used by the event group. xEventGroupCreateStatic() therefore allows an event group to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Although event groups are not related to ticks, for internal implementation reasons the number of bits available for use in an event group is dependent on the configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is 1 then each event group contains 8 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 7). If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is set to 0 then each event group has 24 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 23). The EventBits_t type is used to store event bits within an event group.

Example usage:

```
// Declare a variable to hold the created event group.
EventGroupHandle_t xCreatedEventGroup;

// Attempt to create the event group.
xCreatedEventGroup = xEventGroupCreate();

// Was the event group created successfully?
if( xCreatedEventGroup == NULL )
{
    // The event group was not created because there was insufficient
    // FreeRTOS heap available.
}
else
{
    // The event group was created.
}
```

Return If the event group was created then a handle to the event group is returned. If there was insufficient FreeRTOS heap available to create the event group then NULL is returned. See http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html

EventGroupHandle_t **xEventGroupCreateStatic**(StaticEventGroup_t **pxEventGroupBuffer*)

Create a new event group.

Internally, within the FreeRTOS implementation, event groups use a [small] block of memory, in which the event group's structure is stored. If an event groups is created using xEventGropuCreate() then the required memory is automatically dynamically allocated inside the xEventGroupCreate() function. (see http://www.freertos.org/a00111.html). If an event group is created using xEventGropuCreateStatic() then the application writer must instead provide the memory that will get used by the event group. xEventGroupCreateStatic() therefore allows an event group to be created without using any dynamic memory allocation.

Although event groups are not related to ticks, for internal implementation reasons the number of bits available for use in an event group is dependent on the configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS setting in FreeRTOSConfig.h. If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is 1 then each event group contains 8 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 7). If configUSE_16_BIT_TICKS is set to 0 then each event group has 24 usable bits (bit 0 to bit 23). The EventBits_t type is used to store event bits within an event group.

Example usage:

```
// StaticEventGroup_t is a publicly accessible structure that has the same
// size and alignment requirements as the real event group structure.  It is
// provided as a mechanism for applications to know the size of the event
// group (which is dependent on the architecture and configuration file
// settings) without breaking the strict data hiding policy by exposing the
// real event group internals.  This StaticEventGroup_t variable is passed
// into the xSemaphoreCreateEventGroupStatic() function and is used to store
// the event group's data structures
StaticEventGroup_t xEventGroupBuffer;

// Create the event group without dynamically allocating any memory.
xEventGroup = xEventGroupCreateStatic( &xEventGroupBuffer );
```

Return If the event group was created then a handle to the event group is returned. If pxEventGroupBuffer was NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `pxEventGroupBuffer`: pxEventGroupBuffer must point to a variable of type StaticEventGroup_t, which will be then be used to hold the event group's data structures, removing the need for the memory to be allocated dynamically.

EventBits_t **xEventGroupWaitBits**(*EventGroupHandle_t* *xEventGroup*, **const** *EventBits_t* *uxBitsToWaitFor*, **const** BaseType_t *xClearOnExit*, **const** BaseType_t *xWaitForAllBits*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

[Potentially] block to wait for one or more bits to be set within a previously created event group.

This function cannot be called from an interrupt.

Example usage:

```
#define BIT_0    ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4    ( 1 << 4 )

void aFunction( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup )
{
EventBits_t uxBits;
const TickType_t xTicksToWait = 100 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS;

    // Wait a maximum of 100ms for either bit 0 or bit 4 to be set within
    // the event group.  Clear the bits before exiting.
    uxBits = xEventGroupWaitBits(
                xEventGroup,    // The event group being tested.
                BIT_0 | BIT_4,  // The bits within the event group to wait␣
↪for.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
                    pdTRUE,         // BIT_0 and BIT_4 should be cleared before␣
↪returning.
                    pdFALSE,        // Don't wait for both bits, either bit will␣
↪do.
                    xTicksToWait ); // Wait a maximum of 100ms for either bit to␣
↪be set.

    if( ( uxBits & ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) ) == ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) )
    {
        // xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because both bits were set.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_0 ) != 0 )
    {
        // xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because just BIT_0 was set.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_4 ) != 0 )
    {
        // xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because just BIT_4 was set.
    }
    else
    {
        // xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because xTicksToWait ticks passed
        // without either BIT_0 or BIT_4 becoming set.
    }
}
```

{c}

Return The value of the event group at the time either the bits being waited for became set, or the block time expired. Test the return value to know which bits were set. If xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because its timeout expired then not all the bits being waited for will be set. If xEventGroupWaitBits() returned because the bits it was waiting for were set then the returned value is the event group value before any bits were automatically cleared in the case that xClearOnExit parameter was set to pdTRUE.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are being tested. The event group must have previously been created using a call to xEventGroupCreate().
- `uxBitsToWaitFor`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to test inside the event group. For example, to wait for bit 0 and/or bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x05. To wait for bits 0 and/or bit 1 and/or bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x07. Etc.
- `xClearOnExit`: If xClearOnExit is set to pdTRUE then any bits within uxBitsToWaitFor that are set within the event group will be cleared before xEventGroupWaitBits() returns if the wait condition was met (if the function returns for a reason other than a timeout). If xClearOnExit is set to pdFALSE then the bits set in the event group are not altered when the call to xEventGroupWaitBits() returns.
- `xWaitForAllBits`: If xWaitForAllBits is set to pdTRUE then xEventGroupWaitBits() will return when either all the bits in uxBitsToWaitFor are set or the specified block time expires. If xWaitForAllBits is set to pdFALSE then xEventGroupWaitBits() will return when any one of the bits set in uxBitsToWaitFor is set or the specified block time expires. The block time is specified by the xTicksToWait parameter.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time (specified in 'ticks') to wait for one/all (depending on the xWaitForAllBits value) of the bits specified by uxBitsToWaitFor to become set.

EventBits_t **xEventGroupClearBits** (*EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup*, **const** *EventBits_t uxBitsToClear*)

Clear bits within an event group. This function cannot be called from an interrupt.

Example usage:

```
#define BIT_0    ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4    ( 1 << 4 )
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
void aFunction( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup )
{
EventBits_t uxBits;

    // Clear bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
    uxBits = xEventGroupClearBits(
                            xEventGroup,    // The event group being updated.
                            BIT_0 | BIT_4 );// The bits being cleared.

    if( ( uxBits & ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) ) == ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) )
    {
        // Both bit 0 and bit 4 were set before xEventGroupClearBits() was
        // called.  Both will now be clear (not set).
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_0 ) != 0 )
    {
        // Bit 0 was set before xEventGroupClearBits() was called.  It will
        // now be clear.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_4 ) != 0 )
    {
        // Bit 4 was set before xEventGroupClearBits() was called.  It will
        // now be clear.
    }
    else
    {
        // Neither bit 0 nor bit 4 were set in the first place.
    }
}
```

Return The value of the event group before the specified bits were cleared.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are to be cleared.
- `uxBitsToClear`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to clear in the event group. For example, to clear bit 3 only, set uxBitsToClear to 0x08. To clear bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToClear to 0x09.

EventBits_t **xEventGroupSetBits** (*EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup*, **const** *EventBits_t uxBitsToSet*)

Set bits within an event group. This function cannot be called from an interrupt. xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR() is a version that can be called from an interrupt.

Setting bits in an event group will automatically unblock tasks that are blocked waiting for the bits.

Example usage:

```
#define BIT_0    ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4    ( 1 << 4 )

void aFunction( EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup )
{
EventBits_t uxBits;

    // Set bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
    uxBits = xEventGroupSetBits(
                        xEventGroup,    // The event group being updated.
                        BIT_0 | BIT_4 );// The bits being set.

    if( ( uxBits & ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) ) == ( BIT_0 | BIT_4 ) )
    {
        // Both bit 0 and bit 4 remained set when the function returned.
    }
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_0 ) != 0 )
    {
        // Bit 0 remained set when the function returned, but bit 4 was
        // cleared.  It might be that bit 4 was cleared automatically as a
        // task that was waiting for bit 4 was removed from the Blocked
        // state.
    }
    else if( ( uxBits & BIT_4 ) != 0 )
    {
        // Bit 4 remained set when the function returned, but bit 0 was
        // cleared.  It might be that bit 0 was cleared automatically as a
        // task that was waiting for bit 0 was removed from the Blocked
        // state.
    }
    else
    {
        // Neither bit 0 nor bit 4 remained set.  It might be that a task
        // was waiting for both of the bits to be set, and the bits were
        // cleared as the task left the Blocked state.
    }
}
```

{c}

Return The value of the event group at the time the call to xEventGroupSetBits() returns. There are two reasons why the returned value might have the bits specified by the uxBitsToSet parameter cleared. First, if setting a bit results in a task that was waiting for the bit leaving the blocked state then it is possible the bit will be cleared automatically (see the xClearBitOnExit parameter of xEventGroupWaitBits()). Second, any unblocked (or otherwise Ready state) task that has a priority above that of the task that called xEventGroupSetBits() will execute and may change the event group value before the call to xEventGroupSetBits() returns.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are to be set.
- `uxBitsToSet`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to set. For example, to set bit 3 only, set uxBitsToSet to 0x08. To set bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToSet to 0x09.

EventBits_t **xEventGroupSync**(*EventGroupHandle_t* *xEventGroup*, **const** *EventBits_t* *uxBitsToSet*, **const** *EventBits_t* *uxBitsToWaitFor*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Atomically set bits within an event group, then wait for a combination of bits to be set within the same event group. This functionality is typically used to synchronise multiple tasks, where each task has to wait for the other tasks to reach a synchronisation point before proceeding.

This function cannot be used from an interrupt.

The function will return before its block time expires if the bits specified by the uxBitsToWait parameter are set, or become set within that time. In this case all the bits specified by uxBitsToWait will be automatically cleared before the function returns.

Example usage:

```
// Bits used by the three tasks.
#define TASK_0_BIT     ( 1 << 0 )
#define TASK_1_BIT     ( 1 << 1 )
#define TASK_2_BIT     ( 1 << 2 )

#define ALL_SYNC_BITS ( TASK_0_BIT | TASK_1_BIT | TASK_2_BIT )

// Use an event group to synchronise three tasks.  It is assumed this event
// group has already been created elsewhere.
EventGroupHandle_t xEventBits;

void vTask0( void *pvParameters )
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
{
EventBits_t uxReturn;
TickType_t xTicksToWait = 100 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS;

    for( ;; )
    {
       // Perform task functionality here.

       // Set bit 0 in the event flag to note this task has reached the
       // sync point.  The other two tasks will set the other two bits defined
       // by ALL_SYNC_BITS.  All three tasks have reached the synchronisation
       // point when all the ALL_SYNC_BITS are set.  Wait a maximum of 100ms
       // for this to happen.
       uxReturn = xEventGroupSync( xEventBits, TASK_0_BIT, ALL_SYNC_BITS,␣
↪xTicksToWait );

       if( ( uxReturn & ALL_SYNC_BITS ) == ALL_SYNC_BITS )
       {
           // All three tasks reached the synchronisation point before the call
           // to xEventGroupSync() timed out.
       }
     }
}

void vTask1( void *pvParameters )
{
    for( ;; )
    {
       // Perform task functionality here.

       // Set bit 1 in the event flag to note this task has reached the
       // synchronisation point.  The other two tasks will set the other two
       // bits defined by ALL_SYNC_BITS.  All three tasks have reached the
       // synchronisation point when all the ALL_SYNC_BITS are set.  Wait
       // indefinitely for this to happen.
       xEventGroupSync( xEventBits, TASK_1_BIT, ALL_SYNC_BITS, portMAX_DELAY );

       // xEventGroupSync() was called with an indefinite block time, so
       // this task will only reach here if the syncrhonisation was made by all
       // three tasks, so there is no need to test the return value.
    }
}

void vTask2( void *pvParameters )
{
    for( ;; )
    {
       // Perform task functionality here.

       // Set bit 2 in the event flag to note this task has reached the
       // synchronisation point.  The other two tasks will set the other two
       // bits defined by ALL_SYNC_BITS.  All three tasks have reached the
       // synchronisation point when all the ALL_SYNC_BITS are set.  Wait
       // indefinitely for this to happen.
       xEventGroupSync( xEventBits, TASK_2_BIT, ALL_SYNC_BITS, portMAX_DELAY );

       // xEventGroupSync() was called with an indefinite block time, so
       // this task will only reach here if the syncrhonisation was made by all
       // three tasks, so there is no need to test the return value.
       }
}
```

Return The value of the event group at the time either the bits being waited for became set, or the block time expired. Test the return value to know which bits were set. If xEventGroupSync() returned because its timeout expired then not all the bits being waited for will be set. If xEventGroupSync() returned because all the bits it was waiting for were set then the returned value is the event group value before any bits were automatically cleared.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are being tested. The event group must have previously been created using a call to xEventGroupCreate().
- `uxBitsToSet`: The bits to set in the event group before determining if, and possibly waiting for, all the bits specified by the uxBitsToWait parameter are set.
- `uxBitsToWaitFor`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to test inside the event group. For example, to wait for bit 0 and bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x05. To wait for bits 0 and bit 1 and bit 2 set uxBitsToWaitFor to 0x07. Etc.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time (specified in 'ticks') to wait for all of the bits specified by uxBitsToWaitFor to become set.

EventBits_t **xEventGroupGetBitsFromISR**(*EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup*)

A version of xEventGroupGetBits() that can be called from an ISR.

Return The event group bits at the time xEventGroupGetBitsFromISR() was called.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group being queried.

void **vEventGroupDelete**(*EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup*)

Delete an event group that was previously created by a call to xEventGroupCreate(). Tasks that are blocked on the event group will be unblocked and obtain 0 as the event group's value.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group being deleted.

Macros

xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR(xEventGroup, uxBitsToClear)

A version of xEventGroupClearBits() that can be called from an interrupt.

Setting bits in an event group is not a deterministic operation because there are an unknown number of tasks that may be waiting for the bit or bits being set. FreeRTOS does not allow nondeterministic operations to be performed while interrupts are disabled, so protects event groups that are accessed from tasks by suspending the scheduler rather than disabling interrupts. As a result event groups cannot be accessed directly from an interrupt service routine. Therefore xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR() sends a message to the timer task to have the clear operation performed in the context of the timer task.

Example usage:

```
#define BIT_0    ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4    ( 1 << 4 )

// An event group which it is assumed has already been created by a call to
// xEventGroupCreate().
EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup;

void anInterruptHandler( void )
{
     // Clear bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
     xResult = xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR(
                          xEventGroup,     // The event group being updated.
                          BIT_0 | BIT_4 ); // The bits being set.

     if( xResult == pdPASS )
     {
         // The message was posted successfully.
     }
}
```

Return If the request to execute the function was posted successfully then pdPASS is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned. pdFALSE will be returned if the timer service queue was full.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are to be cleared.
- `uxBitsToClear`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to clear. For example, to clear bit 3 only, set uxBitsToClear to 0x08. To clear bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToClear to 0x09.

`xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR` (xEventGroup, uxBitsToSet, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

A version of xEventGroupSetBits() that can be called from an interrupt.

Setting bits in an event group is not a deterministic operation because there are an unknown number of tasks that may be waiting for the bit or bits being set. FreeRTOS does not allow nondeterministic operations to be performed in interrupts or from critical sections. Therefore xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR() sends a message to the timer task to have the set operation performed in the context of the timer task - where a scheduler lock is used in place of a critical section.

Example usage:

```
#define BIT_0    ( 1 << 0 )
#define BIT_4    ( 1 << 4 )

// An event group which it is assumed has already been created by a call to
// xEventGroupCreate().
EventGroupHandle_t xEventGroup;

void anInterruptHandler( void )
{
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken, xResult;

     // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be initialised to pdFALSE.
     xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;

     // Set bit 0 and bit 4 in xEventGroup.
     xResult = xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR(
                         xEventGroup,    // The event group being updated.
                         BIT_0 | BIT_4   // The bits being set.
                         &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

     // Was the message posted successfully?
     if( xResult == pdPASS )
     {
          // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken is now set to pdTRUE then a context
          // switch should be requested.  The macro used is port specific and
          // will be either portYIELD_FROM_ISR() or portEND_SWITCHING_ISR() -
          // refer to the documentation page for the port being used.
          portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
     }
}
```

Return If the request to execute the function was posted successfully then pdPASS is returned, otherwise pdFALSE is returned. pdFALSE will be returned if the timer service queue was full.

Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group in which the bits are to be set.
- `uxBitsToSet`: A bitwise value that indicates the bit or bits to set. For example, to set bit 3 only, set uxBitsToSet to 0x08. To set bit 3 and bit 0 set uxBitsToSet to 0x09.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: As mentioned above, calling this function will result in a message being sent to the timer daemon task. If the priority of the timer daemon task is higher than the priority of the currently running task (the task the interrupt interrupted) then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will be set to pdTRUE by xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR(), indicating that a context switch should be requested before the interrupt exits. For that reason *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken must be initialised to pdFALSE. See the example code below.

`xEventGroupGetBits` (xEventGroup)

Returns the current value of the bits in an event group. This function cannot be used from an interrupt.

Return The event group bits at the time xEventGroupGetBits() was called.
Parameters

- `xEventGroup`: The event group being queried.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***EventGroupHandle_t**
typedef TickType_t **EventBits_t**

Stream Buffer API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/stream_buffer.h

Functions

size_t **xStreamBufferSend**(*StreamBufferHandle_t* *xStreamBuffer*, **const** void **pvTxData*, size_t *xDataLengthBytes*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Sends bytes to a stream buffer. The bytes are copied into the stream buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xStreamBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xStreamBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xStreamBufferSend() to write to a stream buffer from a task. Use xStreamBufferSendFromISR() to write to a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
void vAFunction( StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer )
{
size_t xBytesSent;
uint8_t ucArrayToSend[] = { 0, 1, 2, 3 };
char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
const TickType_t x100ms = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 100 );

    // Send an array to the stream buffer, blocking for a maximum of 100ms to
    // wait for enough space to be available in the stream buffer.
    xBytesSent = xStreamBufferSend( xStreamBuffer, ( void * ) ucArrayToSend,␣
↪sizeof( ucArrayToSend ), x100ms );

    if( xBytesSent != sizeof( ucArrayToSend ) )
    {
        // The call to xStreamBufferSend() times out before there was enough
        // space in the buffer for the data to be written, but it did
        // successfully write xBytesSent bytes.
    }

    // Send the string to the stream buffer.  Return immediately if there is␣
↪not
    // enough space in the buffer.
    xBytesSent = xStreamBufferSend( xStreamBuffer, ( void * ) pcStringToSend,␣
↪strlen( pcStringToSend ), 0 );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
    {
        // The entire string could not be added to the stream buffer because
        // there was not enough free space in the buffer, but xBytesSent bytes
        // were sent.  Could try again to send the remaining bytes.
    }
}
```

Return The number of bytes written to the stream buffer. If a task times out before it can write all xDataLengthBytes into the buffer it will still write as many bytes as possible.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer to which a stream is being sent.
- `pvTxData`: A pointer to the buffer that holds the bytes to be copied into the stream buffer.
- `xDataLengthBytes`: The maximum number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the stream buffer.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for enough space to become available in the stream buffer, should the stream buffer contain too little space to hold the another xDataLengthBytes bytes. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting xTicksToWait to portMAX_DELAY will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h. If a task times out before it can write all xDataLengthBytes into the buffer it will still write as many bytes as possible. A task does not use any CPU time when it is in the blocked state.

size_t **xStreamBufferSendFromISR**(*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*, **const** void **pvTxData*, size_t *xDataLengthBytes*, BaseType_t ***const** *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Interrupt safe version of the API function that sends a stream of bytes to the stream buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xStreamBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xStreamBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xStreamBufferSend() to write to a stream buffer from a task. Use xStreamBufferSendFromISR() to write to a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
//A stream buffer that has already been created.
StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
size_t xBytesSent;
char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE; // Initialised to pdFALSE.

    // Attempt to send the string to the stream buffer.
    xBytesSent = xStreamBufferSendFromISR( xStreamBuffer,
                                           ( void * ) pcStringToSend,
                                           strlen( pcStringToSend ),
                                           &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
    {
        // There was not enough free space in the stream buffer for the entire
        // string to be written, ut xBytesSent bytes were written.
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
    // xStreamBufferSendFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
    // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
    // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
    // task.  In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into taskYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
    // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary.  Check the
    // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
    taskYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}
```

Return The number of bytes actually written to the stream buffer, which will be less than xDataLengthBytes if the stream buffer didn't have enough free space for all the bytes to be written.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer to which a stream is being sent.
- `pvTxData`: A pointer to the data that is to be copied into the stream buffer.
- `xDataLengthBytes`: The maximum number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the stream buffer.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: It is possible that a stream buffer will have a task blocked on it waiting for data. Calling xStreamBufferSendFromISR() can make data available, and so cause a task that was waiting for data to leave the Blocked state. If calling xStreamBufferSendFromISR() causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, xStreamBufferSendFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE. If xStreamBufferSendFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. This will ensure that the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE before it is passed into the function. See the example code below for an example.

size_t **xStreamBufferReceive** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*, void **pvRxData*, size_t *xBufferLengthBytes*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Receives bytes from a stream buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xStreamBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xStreamBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xStreamBufferReceive() to read from a stream buffer from a task. Use xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() to read from a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
void vAFunction( StreamBuffer_t xStreamBuffer )
{
uint8_t ucRxData[ 20 ];
size_t xReceivedBytes;
const TickType_t xBlockTime = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 20 );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // Receive up to another sizeof( ucRxData ) bytes from the stream buffer.
    // Wait in the Blocked state (so not using any CPU processing time) for a
    // maximum of 100ms for the full sizeof( ucRxData ) number of bytes to be
    // available.
    xReceivedBytes = xStreamBufferReceive( xStreamBuffer,
                                           ( void * ) ucRxData,
                                           sizeof( ucRxData ),
                                           xBlockTime );

    if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
    {
        // A ucRxData contains another xRecievedBytes bytes of data, which can
        // be processed here....
    }
}
```

Return The number of bytes actually read from the stream buffer, which will be less than xBufferLengthBytes if the call to xStreamBufferReceive() timed out before xBufferLengthBytes were available.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer from which bytes are to be received.
- `pvRxData`: A pointer to the buffer into which the received bytes will be copied.
- `xBufferLengthBytes`: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This sets the maximum number of bytes to receive in one call. xStreamBufferReceive will return as many bytes as possible up to a maximum set by xBufferLengthBytes.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for data to become available if the stream buffer is empty. xStreamBufferReceive() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is zero. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting xTicksToWait to portMAX_DELAY will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h. A task does not use any CPU time when it is in the Blocked state.

size_t **xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR**(*StreamBufferHandle_t* *xStreamBuffer*, void **pvRxData*, size_t *xBufferLengthBytes*, BaseType_t ***const** *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

An interrupt safe version of the API function that receives bytes from a stream buffer.

Use xStreamBufferReceive() to read bytes from a stream buffer from a task. Use xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() to read bytes from a stream buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
// A stream buffer that has already been created.
StreamBuffer_t xStreamBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
uint8_t ucRxData[ 20 ];
size_t xReceivedBytes;
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;  // Initialised to pdFALSE.

    // Receive the next stream from the stream buffer.
    xReceivedBytes = xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR( xStreamBuffer,
                                                  ( void * ) ucRxData,
                                                  sizeof( ucRxData ),
                                                  &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

    if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
    {
        // ucRxData contains xReceivedBytes read from the stream buffer.
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        // Process the stream here....
    }

    // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
    // xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
    // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
    // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
    // task.  In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
    // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into taskYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
    // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary.  Check the
    // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
    taskYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}
```

Return The number of bytes read from the stream buffer, if any.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer from which a stream is being received.
- `pvRxData`: A pointer to the buffer into which the received bytes are copied.
- `xBufferLengthBytes`: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This sets the maximum number of bytes to receive in one call. xStreamBufferReceive will return as many bytes as possible up to a maximum set by xBufferLengthBytes.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: It is possible that a stream buffer will have a task blocked on it waiting for space to become available. Calling xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() can make space available, and so cause a task that is waiting for space to leave the Blocked state. If calling xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE. If xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. That will ensure the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE before it is passed into the function. See the code example below for an example.

void **vStreamBufferDelete** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*)

Deletes a stream buffer that was previously created using a call to xStreamBufferCreate() or xStreamBufferCreateStatic(). If the stream buffer was created using dynamic memory (that is, by xStreamBufferCreate()), then the allocated memory is freed.

A stream buffer handle must not be used after the stream buffer has been deleted.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer to be deleted.

BaseType_t **xStreamBufferIsFull** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*)

Queries a stream buffer to see if it is full. A stream buffer is full if it does not have any free space, and therefore cannot accept any more data.

Return If the stream buffer is full then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer being queried.

BaseType_t **xStreamBufferIsEmpty** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*)

Queries a stream buffer to see if it is empty. A stream buffer is empty if it does not contain any data.

Return If the stream buffer is empty then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer being queried.

BaseType_t **xStreamBufferReset** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*)

Resets a stream buffer to its initial, empty, state. Any data that was in the stream buffer is discarded. A stream buffer can only be reset if there are no tasks blocked waiting to either send to or receive from the stream buffer.

Return If the stream buffer is reset then pdPASS is returned. If there was a task blocked waiting to send to

or read from the stream buffer then the stream buffer is not reset and pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer being reset.

size_t **xStreamBufferSpacesAvailable** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*)

size_t **xStreamBufferBytesAvailable** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*)

BaseType_t **xStreamBufferSetTriggerLevel** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*, size_t *xTriggerLevel*)

A stream buffer's trigger level is the number of bytes that must be in the stream buffer before a task that is blocked on the stream buffer to wait for data is moved out of the blocked state. For example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 1 then the task will be unblocked when a single byte is written to the buffer or the task's block time expires. As another example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 10 then the task will not be unblocked until the stream buffer contains at least 10 bytes or the task's block time expires. If a reading task's block time expires before the trigger level is reached then the task will still receive however many bytes are actually available. Setting a trigger level of 0 will result in a trigger level of 1 being used. It is not valid to specify a trigger level that is greater than the buffer size.

A trigger level is set when the stream buffer is created, and can be modified using xStreamBufferSetTriggerLevel().

Return If xTriggerLevel was less than or equal to the stream buffer's length then the trigger level will be updated and pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer being updated.
- `xTriggerLevel`: The new trigger level for the stream buffer.

BaseType_t **xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*, BaseType_t **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

For advanced users only.

The sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is sent to a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbSEND_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

Return If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer to which data was written.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR(). If calling xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

BaseType_t **xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR** (*StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer*, BaseType_t **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

For advanced users only.

The sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is read out of a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

Return If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xStreamBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer from which data was read.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR(). If calling xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

Macros

`xStreamBufferCreate`(xBufferSizeBytes, xTriggerLevelBytes)

Creates a new stream buffer using dynamically allocated memory. See xStreamBufferCreateStatic() for a version that uses statically allocated memory (memory that is allocated at compile time).

configSUPPORT_DYNAMIC_ALLOCATION must be set to 1 or left undefined in FreeRTOSConfig.h for xStreamBufferCreate() to be available.

Example use:

```
void vAFunction( void )
    {
    StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer;
    const size_t xStreamBufferSizeBytes = 100, xTriggerLevel = 10;

        // Create a stream buffer that can hold 100 bytes.  The memory used to␣
↪hold
        // both the stream buffer structure and the data in the stream buffer␣
↪is
        // allocated dynamically.
        xStreamBuffer = xStreamBufferCreate( xStreamBufferSizeBytes,␣
↪xTriggerLevel );

        if( xStreamBuffer == NULL )
        {
            // There was not enough heap memory space available to create the
            // stream buffer.
        }
        else
        {
             // The stream buffer was created successfully and can now be used.
        }
    }
```

Return If NULL is returned, then the stream buffer cannot be created because there is insufficient heap memory available for FreeRTOS to allocate the stream buffer data structures and storage area. A non-NULL value being returned indicates that the stream buffer has been created successfully - the returned value should be stored as the handle to the created stream buffer.

Parameters

- `xBufferSizeBytes`: The total number of bytes the stream buffer will be able to hold at any one time.
- `xTriggerLevelBytes`: The number of bytes that must be in the stream buffer before a task that is blocked on the stream buffer to wait for data is moved out of the blocked state. For example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 1 then the task will be unblocked when a single byte is written to the buffer or the task's block time expires. As another example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 10 then the task will not be unblocked until the stream buffer contains at least 10 bytes or the task's block time expires. If a reading task's block time expires before the trigger level is reached then the task will still receive however many bytes are actually available. Setting a trigger level of 0 will result in a trigger level of 1 being used. It is not valid to specify a trigger level that is greater than the buffer size.

xStreamBufferCreateStatic(xBufferSizeBytes, xTriggerLevelBytes, pucStreamBufferStorageArea, pxStaticStreamBuffer)

Creates a new stream buffer using statically allocated memory. See xStreamBufferCreate() for a version that uses dynamically allocated memory.

configSUPPORT_STATIC_ALLOCATION must be set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h for xStreamBufferCreateStatic() to be available.

Example use:

```
// Used to dimension the array used to hold the streams.  The available space
// will actually be one less than this, so 999.
#define STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES 1000

// Defines the memory that will actually hold the streams within the stream
// buffer.
static uint8_t ucStorageBuffer[ STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES ];

// The variable used to hold the stream buffer structure.
StaticStreamBuffer_t xStreamBufferStruct;

void MyFunction( void )
{
StreamBufferHandle_t xStreamBuffer;
const size_t xTriggerLevel = 1;

    xStreamBuffer = xStreamBufferCreateStatic( sizeof( ucBufferStorage ),
                                               xTriggerLevel,
                                               ucBufferStorage,
                                               &xStreamBufferStruct );

    // As neither the pucStreamBufferStorageArea or pxStaticStreamBuffer
    // parameters were NULL, xStreamBuffer will not be NULL, and can be used to
    // reference the created stream buffer in other stream buffer API calls.

    // Other code that uses the stream buffer can go here.
}
```

Return If the stream buffer is created successfully then a handle to the created stream buffer is returned. If either pucStreamBufferStorageArea or pxStaticstreamBuffer are NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `xBufferSizeBytes`: The size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by the pucStreamBufferStorageArea parameter.
- `xTriggerLevelBytes`: The number of bytes that must be in the stream buffer before a task that is blocked on the stream buffer to wait for data is moved out of the blocked state. For example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 1 then the task will be unblocked when a single byte is written to the buffer or the task's block time expires. As another example, if a task is blocked on a read of an empty stream buffer that has a trigger level of 10 then the task will not be unblocked until the stream buffer contains at least 10 bytes or the task's block time expires. If a reading task's block time expires before the trigger level is reached then the task will still receive however many bytes are actually available. Setting a trigger level of 0 will result in a trigger level of 1 being used. It is not valid to specify a trigger level that is greater than the buffer size.
- `pucStreamBufferStorageArea`: Must point to a uint8_t array that is at least xBufferSizeBytes + 1 big. This is the array to which streams are copied when they are written to the stream buffer.
- `pxStaticStreamBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticStreamBuffer_t, which will be used to hold the stream buffer's data structure.

Type Definitions

typedef struct StreamBufferDef_t ***StreamBufferHandle_t**

Message Buffer API

Header File

- freertos/include/freertos/message_buffer.h

Macros

xMessageBufferCreate(xBufferSizeBytes)

Creates a new message buffer using dynamically allocated memory. See xMessageBufferCreateStatic() for a version that uses statically allocated memory (memory that is allocated at compile time).

configSUPPORT_DYNAMIC_ALLOCATION must be set to 1 or left undefined in FreeRTOSConfig.h for xMessageBufferCreate() to be available.

Example use:

```
void vAFunction( void )
{
MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer;
const size_t xMessageBufferSizeBytes = 100;

  // Create a message buffer that can hold 100 bytes.  The memory used to hold
  // both the message buffer structure and the messages themselves is allocated
  // dynamically.  Each message added to the buffer consumes an additional 4
  // bytes which are used to hold the lengh of the message.
  xMessageBuffer = xMessageBufferCreate( xMessageBufferSizeBytes );

  if( xMessageBuffer == NULL )
  {
      // There was not enough heap memory space available to create the
      // message buffer.
  }
  else
  {
      // The message buffer was created successfully and can now be used.
  }
```

Return If NULL is returned, then the message buffer cannot be created because there is insufficient heap memory available for FreeRTOS to allocate the message buffer data structures and storage area. A non-NULL value being returned indicates that the message buffer has been created successfully - the returned value should be stored as the handle to the created message buffer.

Parameters

- `xBufferSizeBytes`: The total number of bytes (not messages) the message buffer will be able to hold at any one time. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message' s length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architectures a 10 byte message will take up 14 bytes of message buffer space.

xMessageBufferCreateStatic(xBufferSizeBytes, pucMessageBufferStorageArea, pxStaticMessageBuffer)

Creates a new message buffer using statically allocated memory. See xMessageBufferCreate() for a version that uses dynamically allocated memory.

Example use:

```
// Used to dimension the array used to hold the messages.  The available space
// will actually be one less than this, so 999.
#define STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES 1000

// Defines the memory that will actually hold the messages within the message
// buffer.
static uint8_t ucStorageBuffer[ STORAGE_SIZE_BYTES ];
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// The variable used to hold the message buffer structure.
StaticMessageBuffer_t xMessageBufferStruct;

void MyFunction( void )
{
MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer;

  xMessageBuffer = xMessageBufferCreateStatic( sizeof( ucBufferStorage ),
                                               ucBufferStorage,
                                               &xMessageBufferStruct );

  // As neither the pucMessageBufferStorageArea or pxStaticMessageBuffer
  // parameters were NULL, xMessageBuffer will not be NULL, and can be used to
  // reference the created message buffer in other message buffer API calls.

  // Other code that uses the message buffer can go here.
}
```

Return If the message buffer is created successfully then a handle to the created message buffer is returned. If either pucMessageBufferStorageArea or pxStaticmessageBuffer are NULL then NULL is returned.

Parameters

- `xBufferSizeBytes`: The size, in bytes, of the buffer pointed to by the pucMessageBufferStorageArea parameter. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message's length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architecture a 10 byte message will take up 14 bytes of message buffer space. The maximum number of bytes that can be stored in the message buffer is actually (xBufferSizeBytes - 1).
- `pucMessageBufferStorageArea`: Must point to a uint8_t array that is at least xBufferSizeBytes + 1 big. This is the array to which messages are copied when they are written to the message buffer.
- `pxStaticMessageBuffer`: Must point to a variable of type StaticMessageBuffer_t, which will be used to hold the message buffer's data structure.

xMessageBufferSend(xMessageBuffer, pvTxData, xDataLengthBytes, xTicksToWait)

Sends a discrete message to the message buffer. The message can be any length that fits within the buffer's free space, and is copied into the buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xMessageBufferSend() to write to a message buffer from a task. Use xMessageBufferSendFromISR() to write to a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
void vAFunction( MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer )
{
size_t xBytesSent;
uint8_t ucArrayToSend[] = { 0, 1, 2, 3 };
char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
const TickType_t x100ms = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 100 );
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
  // Send an array to the message buffer, blocking for a maximum of 100ms to
  // wait for enough space to be available in the message buffer.
  xBytesSent = xMessageBufferSend( xMessageBuffer, ( void * ) ucArrayToSend,␣
↪sizeof( ucArrayToSend ), x100ms );

  if( xBytesSent != sizeof( ucArrayToSend ) )
  {
      // The call to xMessageBufferSend() times out before there was enough
      // space in the buffer for the data to be written.
  }

  // Send the string to the message buffer.  Return immediately if there is
  // not enough space in the buffer.
  xBytesSent = xMessageBufferSend( xMessageBuffer, ( void * ) pcStringToSend,␣
↪strlen( pcStringToSend ), 0 );

  if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
  {
      // The string could not be added to the message buffer because there was
      // not enough free space in the buffer.
  }
}
```

Return The number of bytes written to the message buffer. If the call to xMessageBufferSend() times out before there was enough space to write the message into the message buffer then zero is returned. If the call did not time out then xDataLengthBytes is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer to which a message is being sent.
- `pvTxData`: A pointer to the message that is to be copied into the message buffer.
- `xDataLengthBytes`: The length of the message. That is, the number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the message buffer. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message's length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architecture setting xDataLengthBytes to 20 will reduce the free space in the message buffer by 24 bytes (20 bytes of message data and 4 bytes to hold the message length).
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the calling task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for enough space to become available in the message buffer, should the message buffer have insufficient space when xMessageBufferSend() is called. The calling task will never block if xTicksToWait is zero. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting xTicksToWait to portMAX_DELAY will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h. Tasks do not use any CPU time when they are in the Blocked state.

xMessageBufferSendFromISR(xMessageBuffer, pvTxData, xDataLengthBytes, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

Interrupt safe version of the API function that sends a discrete message to the message buffer. The message can be any length that fits within the buffer's free space, and is copied into the buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xMessageBufferSend() to write to a message buffer from a task. Use xMessageBufferSendFromISR() to

write to a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
// A message buffer that has already been created.
MessageBufferHandle_t xMessageBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
size_t xBytesSent;
char *pcStringToSend = "String to send";
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE; // Initialised to pdFALSE.

  // Attempt to send the string to the message buffer.
  xBytesSent = xMessageBufferSendFromISR( xMessageBuffer,
                                          ( void * ) pcStringToSend,
                                          strlen( pcStringToSend ),
                                          &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

  if( xBytesSent != strlen( pcStringToSend ) )
  {
      // The string could not be added to the message buffer because there was
      // not enough free space in the buffer.
  }

  // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
  // xMessageBufferSendFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
  // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
  // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
  // task.  In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
  // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into portYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
  // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary.  Check the
  // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
  portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}
```

Return The number of bytes actually written to the message buffer. If the message buffer didn't have enough free space for the message to be stored then 0 is returned, otherwise xDataLengthBytes is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer to which a message is being sent.
- `pvTxData`: A pointer to the message that is to be copied into the message buffer.
- `xDataLengthBytes`: The length of the message. That is, the number of bytes to copy from pvTxData into the message buffer. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message's length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so on most 32-bit architecture setting xDataLengthBytes to 20 will reduce the free space in the message buffer by 24 bytes (20 bytes of message data and 4 bytes to hold the message length).
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: It is possible that a message buffer will have a task blocked on it waiting for data. Calling xMessageBufferSendFromISR() can make data available, and so cause a task that was waiting for data to leave the Blocked state. If calling xMessageBufferSendFromISR() causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, xMessageBufferSendFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE. If xMessageBufferSendFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. This will ensure that the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE before it is passed into the function. See the code example below for an example.

xMessageBufferReceive(xMessageBuffer, pvRxData, xBufferLengthBytes, xTicksToWait)

Receives a discrete message from a message buffer. Messages can be of variable length and are copied out of the buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xMessageBufferReceive() to read from a message buffer from a task. Use xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() to read from a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
void vAFunction( MessageBuffer_t xMessageBuffer )
{
uint8_t ucRxData[ 20 ];
size_t xReceivedBytes;
const TickType_t xBlockTime = pdMS_TO_TICKS( 20 );

  // Receive the next message from the message buffer.  Wait in the Blocked
  // state (so not using any CPU processing time) for a maximum of 100ms for
  // a message to become available.
  xReceivedBytes = xMessageBufferReceive( xMessageBuffer,
                                          ( void * ) ucRxData,
                                          sizeof( ucRxData ),
                                          xBlockTime );

  if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
  {
      // A ucRxData contains a message that is xReceivedBytes long.  Process
      // the message here....
  }
}
```

Return The length, in bytes, of the message read from the message buffer, if any. If xMessageBufferReceive() times out before a message became available then zero is returned. If the length of the message is greater than xBufferLengthBytes then the message will be left in the message buffer and zero is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer from which a message is being received.
- `pvRxData`: A pointer to the buffer into which the received message is to be copied.
- `xBufferLengthBytes`: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This sets the maximum length of the message that can be received. If xBufferLengthBytes is too small to hold the next message then the message will be left in the message buffer and 0 will be returned.
- `xTicksToWait`: The maximum amount of time the task should remain in the Blocked state to wait for a message, should the message buffer be empty. xMessageBufferReceive() will return immediately if xTicksToWait is zero and the message buffer is empty. The block time is specified in tick periods, so the absolute time it represents is dependent on the tick frequency. The macro pdMS_TO_TICKS() can be used to convert a time specified in milliseconds into a time specified in ticks. Setting xTicksToWait to portMAX_DELAY will cause the task to wait indefinitely (without timing out), provided INCLUDE_vTaskSuspend is set to 1 in FreeRTOSConfig.h. Tasks do not use any CPU time when they are in the Blocked state.

`xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR`(xMessageBuffer, pvRxData, xBufferLengthBytes, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

An interrupt safe version of the API function that receives a discrete message from a message buffer. Messages can be of variable length and are copied out of the buffer.

NOTE: Uniquely among FreeRTOS objects, the stream buffer implementation (so also the message buffer implementation, as message buffers are built on top of stream buffers) assumes there is only one task or interrupt that will write to the buffer (the writer), and only one task or interrupt that will read from the

buffer (the reader). It is safe for the writer and reader to be different tasks or interrupts, but, unlike other FreeRTOS objects, it is not safe to have multiple different writers or multiple different readers. If there are to be multiple different writers then the application writer must place each call to a writing API function (such as xMessageBufferSend()) inside a critical section and set the send block time to 0. Likewise, if there are to be multiple different readers then the application writer must place each call to a reading API function (such as xMessageBufferRead()) inside a critical section and set the receive block time to 0.

Use xMessageBufferReceive() to read from a message buffer from a task. Use xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() to read from a message buffer from an interrupt service routine (ISR).

Example use:

```
// A message buffer that has already been created.
MessageBuffer_t xMessageBuffer;

void vAnInterruptServiceRoutine( void )
{
uint8_t ucRxData[ 20 ];
size_t xReceivedBytes;
BaseType_t xHigherPriorityTaskWoken = pdFALSE;  // Initialised to pdFALSE.

  // Receive the next message from the message buffer.
  xReceivedBytes = xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR( xMessageBuffer,
                                                 ( void * ) ucRxData,
                                                 sizeof( ucRxData ),
                                                 &xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );

  if( xReceivedBytes > 0 )
  {
      // A ucRxData contains a message that is xReceivedBytes long.  Process
      // the message here....
  }

  // If xHigherPriorityTaskWoken was set to pdTRUE inside
  // xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() then a task that has a priority above the
  // priority of the currently executing task was unblocked and a context
  // switch should be performed to ensure the ISR returns to the unblocked
  // task.  In most FreeRTOS ports this is done by simply passing
  // xHigherPriorityTaskWoken into portYIELD_FROM_ISR(), which will test the
  // variables value, and perform the context switch if necessary.  Check the
  // documentation for the port in use for port specific instructions.
  portYIELD_FROM_ISR( xHigherPriorityTaskWoken );
}
```

Return The length, in bytes, of the message read from the message buffer, if any.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer from which a message is being received.
- `pvRxData`: A pointer to the buffer into which the received message is to be copied.
- `xBufferLengthBytes`: The length of the buffer pointed to by the pvRxData parameter. This sets the maximum length of the message that can be received. If xBufferLengthBytes is too small to hold the next message then the message will be left in the message buffer and 0 will be returned.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: It is possible that a message buffer will have a task blocked on it waiting for space to become available. Calling xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() can make space available, and so cause a task that is waiting for space to leave the Blocked state. If calling xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() causes a task to leave the Blocked state, and the unblocked task has a priority higher than the currently executing task (the task that was interrupted), then, internally, xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() will set *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken to pdTRUE. If xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR() sets this value to pdTRUE, then normally a context switch should be performed before the interrupt is exited. That will ensure the interrupt returns directly to the highest priority Ready state task. *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be set to pdFALSE before it is passed into the function. See the code example below for an example.

vMessageBufferDelete (xMessageBuffer)

Deletes a message buffer that was previously created using a call to xMessageBufferCreate() or xMessageBufferCreateStatic(). If the message buffer was created using dynamic memory (that is, by xMessageBufferCreate()), then the allocated memory is freed.

A message buffer handle must not be used after the message buffer has been deleted.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer to be deleted.

xMessageBufferIsFull (xMessageBuffer)

Tests to see if a message buffer is full. A message buffer is full if it cannot accept any more messages, of any size, until space is made available by a message being removed from the message buffer.

Return If the message buffer referenced by xMessageBuffer is full then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

xMessageBufferIsEmpty (xMessageBuffer)

Tests to see if a message buffer is empty (does not contain any messages).

Return If the message buffer referenced by xMessageBuffer is empty then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

xMessageBufferReset (xMessageBuffer)

Resets a message buffer to its initial empty state, discarding any message it contained.

A message buffer can only be reset if there are no tasks blocked on it.

Return If the message buffer was reset then pdPASS is returned. If the message buffer could not be reset because either there was a task blocked on the message queue to wait for space to become available, or to wait for a a message to be available, then pdFAIL is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer being reset.

xMessageBufferSpaceAvailable (xMessageBuffer)

Returns the number of bytes of free space in the message buffer.

Return The number of bytes that can be written to the message buffer before the message buffer would be full. When a message is written to the message buffer an additional sizeof(size_t) bytes are also written to store the message' s length. sizeof(size_t) is typically 4 bytes on a 32-bit architecture, so if xMessageBufferSpacesAvailable() returns 10, then the size of the largest message that can be written to the message buffer is 6 bytes.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

xMessageBufferSpacesAvailable (xMessageBuffer)

xMessageBufferNextLengthBytes (xMessageBuffer)

Returns the length (in bytes) of the next message in a message buffer. Useful if xMessageBufferReceive() returned 0 because the size of the buffer passed into xMessageBufferReceive() was too small to hold the next message.

Return The length (in bytes) of the next message in the message buffer, or 0 if the message buffer is empty.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the message buffer being queried.

xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR (xMessageBuffer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

For advanced users only.

The sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is sent to a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbSEND_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked

state. xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbSEND_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

Return If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer to which data was written.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR(). If calling xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR(xMessageBuffer, pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken)

For advanced users only.

The sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro is called from within the FreeRTOS APIs when data is read out of a message buffer or stream buffer. If there was a task that was blocked on the message or stream buffer waiting for data to arrive then the sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED() macro sends a notification to the task to remove it from the Blocked state. xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() does the same thing. It is provided to enable application writers to implement their own version of sbRECEIVE_COMPLETED(), and MUST NOT BE USED AT ANY OTHER TIME.

See the example implemented in FreeRTOS/Demo/Minimal/MessageBufferAMP.c for additional information.

Return If a task was removed from the Blocked state then pdTRUE is returned. Otherwise pdFALSE is returned.

Parameters

- `xMessageBuffer`: The handle of the stream buffer from which data was read.
- `pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken should be initialised to pdFALSE before it is passed into xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR(). If calling xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR() removes a task from the Blocked state, and the task has a priority above the priority of the currently running task, then *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken will get set to pdTRUE indicating that a context switch should be performed before exiting the ISR.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***MessageBufferHandle_t**

Type by which message buffers are referenced. For example, a call to xMessageBufferCreate() returns an MessageBufferHandle_t variable that can then be used as a parameter to xMessageBufferSend(), xMessageBufferReceive(), etc.

2.6.11 FreeRTOS Additions

Overview

ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is based on the Xtensa port of FreeRTOS v10.2.0 with significant modifications for SMP compatibility (see *ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes*). However various features specific to ESP-IDF FreeRTOS have been added. The features are as follows:

Ring Buffers: Ring buffers were added to provide a form of buffer that could accept entries of arbitrary lengths.

Hooks: ESP-IDF FreeRTOS hooks provides support for registering extra Idle and Tick hooks at run time. Moreover, the hooks can be asymmetric amongst both CPUs.

Component Specific Properties: Currently added only one component specific property *ORIG_INCLUDE_PATH*.

Ring Buffers

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS ring buffer is a strictly FIFO buffer that supports arbitrarily sized items. Ring buffers are a more memory efficient alternative to FreeRTOS queues in situations where the size of items is variable. The capacity of a ring buffer is not measured by the number of items it can store, but rather by the amount of memory used for storing items. The ring buffer provides API to send an item, or to allocate space for an item in the ring buffer to be filled manually by the user. For efficiency reasons, **items are always retrieved from the ring buffer by reference**. As a result, all retrieved items *must also be returned* to the ring buffer by using `vRingbufferReturnItem()` or `vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR()`, in order for them to be removed from the ring buffer completely. The ring buffers are split into the three following types:

No-Split buffers will guarantee that an item is stored in contiguous memory and will not attempt to split an item under any circumstances. Use no-split buffers when items must occupy contiguous memory. *Only this buffer type allows you getting the data item address and writting to the item by yourself.*

Allow-Split buffers will allow an item to be split when wrapping around if doing so will allow the item to be stored. Allow-split buffers are more memory efficient than no-split buffers but can return an item in two parts when retrieving.

Byte buffers do not store data as separate items. All data is stored as a sequence of bytes, and any number of bytes and be sent or retrieved each time. Use byte buffers when separate items do not need to be maintained (e.g. a byte stream).

Note: No-split/allow-split buffers will always store items at 32-bit aligned addresses. Therefore when retrieving an item, the item pointer is guaranteed to be 32-bit aligned. This is useful especially when you need to send some data to the DMA.

Note: Each item stored in no-split/allow-split buffers will **require an additional 8 bytes for a header**. Item sizes will also be rounded up to a 32-bit aligned size (multiple of 4 bytes), however the true item size is recorded within the header. The sizes of no-split/allow-split buffers will also be rounded up when created.

Usage The following example demonstrates the usage of `xRingbufferCreate()` and `xRingbufferSend()` to create a ring buffer then send an item to it.

```
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
static char tx_item[] = "test_item";

...

    //Create ring buffer
    RingbufHandle_t buf_handle;
    buf_handle = xRingbufferCreate(1028, RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT);
    if (buf_handle == NULL) {
        printf("Failed to create ring buffer\n");
    }

    //Send an item
    UBaseType_t res =  xRingbufferSend(buf_handle, tx_item, sizeof(tx_item), pdMS_
↪TO_TICKS(1000));
    if (res != pdTRUE) {
        printf("Failed to send item\n");
    }
```

The following example demonstrates the usage of `xRingbufferSendAcquire()` and `xRingbufferSendComplete()` instead of `xRingbufferSend()` to apply for the memory on the ring buffer (of type *RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT*) and then send an item to it. This way adds one more step, but allows getting the address of the memory to write to, and writing to the memory yourself.

```
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
#include "soc/lldesc.h"

typedef struct {
    lldesc_t dma_desc;
    uint8_t buf[1];
} dma_item_t;

#define DMA_ITEM_SIZE(N) (sizeof(lldesc_t)+(((N)+3)&(~3)))

...

    //Retrieve space for DMA descriptor and corresponding data buffer
    //This has to be done with SendAcquire, or the address may be different when␣
↪copy
    dma_item_t item;
    UBaseType_t res =  xRingbufferSendAcquire(buf_handle,
                        &item, DMA_ITEM_SIZE(buffer_size), pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));
    if (res != pdTRUE) {
        printf("Failed to acquire memory for item\n");
    }
    item->dma_desc = (lldesc_t) {
        .size = buffer_size,
        .length = buffer_size,
        .eof = 0,
        .owner = 1,
        .buf = &item->buf,
    };
    //Actually send to the ring buffer for consumer to use
    res = xRingbufferSendComplete(buf_handle, &item);
    if (res != pdTRUE) {
        printf("Failed to send item\n");
    }
```

The following example demonstrates retrieving and returning an item from a **no-split ring buffer** using *xRingbufferReceive()* and *vRingbufferReturnItem()*

```
...

    //Receive an item from no-split ring buffer
    size_t item_size;
    char *item = (char *)xRingbufferReceive(buf_handle, &item_size, pdMS_TO_
↪TICKS(1000));

    //Check received item
    if (item != NULL) {
        //Print item
        for (int i = 0; i < item_size; i++) {
            printf("%c", item[i]);
        }
        printf("\n");
        //Return Item
        vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item);
    } else {
        //Failed to receive item
        printf("Failed to receive item\n");
    }
```

The following example demonstrates retrieving and returning an item from an **allow-split ring buffer** using *xRingbufferReceiveSplit()* and *vRingbufferReturnItem()*

```
...

    //Receive an item from allow-split ring buffer
    size_t item_size1, item_size2;
    char *item1, *item2;
    BaseType_t ret = xRingbufferReceiveSplit(buf_handle, (void **)&item1, (void
↪**)&item2, &item_size1, &item_size2, pdMS_TO_TICKS(1000));

    //Check received item
    if (ret == pdTRUE && item1 != NULL) {
        for (int i = 0; i < item_size1; i++) {
            printf("%c", item1[i]);
        }
        vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item1);
        //Check if item was split
        if (item2 != NULL) {
            for (int i = 0; i < item_size2; i++) {
                printf("%c", item2[i]);
            }
            vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item2);
        }
        printf("\n");
    } else {
        //Failed to receive item
        printf("Failed to receive item\n");
    }
```

The following example demonstrates retrieving and returning an item from a **byte buffer** using *xRingbufferReceiveUpTo()* and *vRingbufferReturnItem()*

```
...

    //Receive data from byte buffer
    size_t item_size;
    char *item = (char *)xRingbufferReceiveUpTo(buf_handle, &item_size, pdMS_TO_
↪TICKS(1000), sizeof(tx_item));

    //Check received data
    if (item != NULL) {
        //Print item
        for (int i = 0; i < item_size; i++) {
            printf("%c", item[i]);
        }
        printf("\n");
        //Return Item
        vRingbufferReturnItem(buf_handle, (void *)item);
    } else {
        //Failed to receive item
        printf("Failed to receive item\n");
    }
```

For ISR safe versions of the functions used above, call *xRingbufferSendFromISR()*, *xRingbufferReceiveFromISR()*, *xRingbufferReceiveSplitFromISR()*, *xRingbufferReceiveUpToFromISR()*, and *vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR()*

Note: Two calls to RingbufferReceive[UpTo][FromISR]() are required if the bytes wraps around the end of the ring buffer.

Sending to Ring Buffer The following diagrams illustrate the differences between no-split/allow-split buffers and byte buffers with regards to sending items/data. The diagrams assume that three items of sizes **18, 3, and 27 bytes** are sent respectively to a **buffer of 128 bytes**.

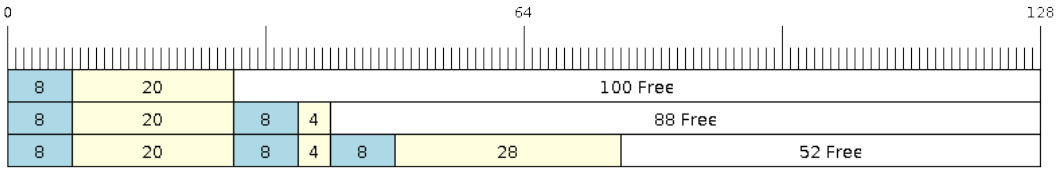


Fig. 30: Sending items to no-split/allow-split ring buffers

For no-split/allow-split buffers, a header of 8 bytes precedes every data item. Furthermore, the space occupied by each item is **rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size** in order to maintain overall 32-bit alignment. However the true size of the item is recorded inside the header which will be returned when the item is retrieved.

Referring to the diagram above, the 18, 3, and 27 byte items are **rounded up to 20, 4, and 28 bytes** respectively. An 8 byte header is then added in front of each item.

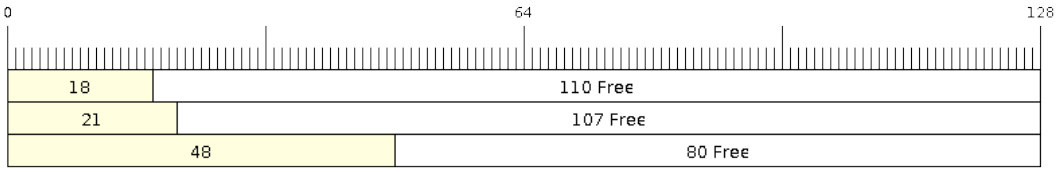


Fig. 31: Sending items to byte buffers

Byte buffers treat data as a sequence of bytes and does not incur any overhead (no headers). As a result, all data sent to a byte buffer is merged into a single item.

Referring to the diagram above, the 18, 3, and 27 byte items are sequentially written to the byte buffer and **merged into a single item of 48 bytes**.

Using SendAcquire and SendComplete Items in no-split buffers are acquired (by SendAcquire) in strict FIFO order and must be sent to the buffer by SendComplete for the data to be accessible by the consumer. Multiple items can be sent or acquired without calling SendComplete, and the items do not necessarily need to be completed in the order they were acquired. However the receiving of data items must occur in FIFO order, therefore not calling SendComplete the earliest acquired item will prevent the subsequent items from being received.

The following diagrams illustrate what will happen when SendAcquire/SendComplete don't happen in the same order. At the beginning, there is already an data item of 16 bytes sent to the ring buffer. Then SendAcquire is called to acquire space of 20, 8, 24 bytes on the ring buffer.

After that, we fill (use) the buffers, and send them to the ring buffer by SendComplete in the order of 8, 24, 20. When 8 bytes and 24 bytes data are sent, the consumer still can only get the 16 bytes data item. Due to the usage if 20 bytes item is not complete, it's not available, nor the following data items.

When the 20 bytes item is finally completed, all the 3 data items can be received now, in the order of 20, 8, 24 bytes, right after the 16 bytes item existing in the buffer at the beginning.

Allow-split/byte buffers do not allow using SendAcquire/SendComplete since acquired buffers are required to be complete (not wrapped).

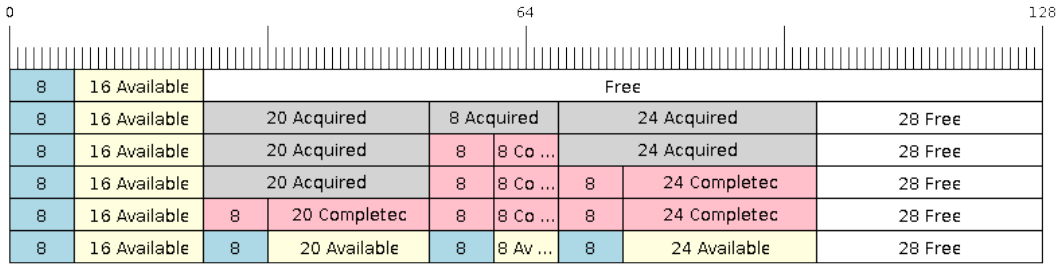


Fig. 32: SendAcquire/SendComplete items in no-split ring buffers

Wrap around The following diagrams illustrate the differences between no-split, allow-split, and byte buffers when a sent item requires a wrap around. The diagrams assumes a buffer of **128 bytes** with **56 bytes of free space that wraps around** and a sent item of **28 bytes**.

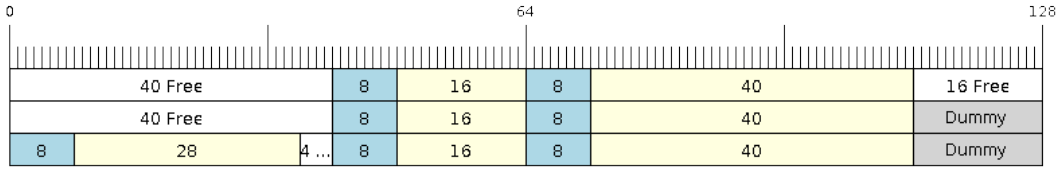


Fig. 33: Wrap around in no-split buffers

No-split buffers will **only store an item in continuous free space and will not split an item under any circumstances**. When the free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to completely store the item and its header, the free space at the tail will be **marked as dummy data**. The buffer will then wrap around and store the item in the free space at the head of the buffer.

Referring to the diagram above, the 16 bytes of free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to store the 28 byte item. Therefore the 16 bytes is marked as dummy data and the item is written to the free space at the head of the buffer instead.

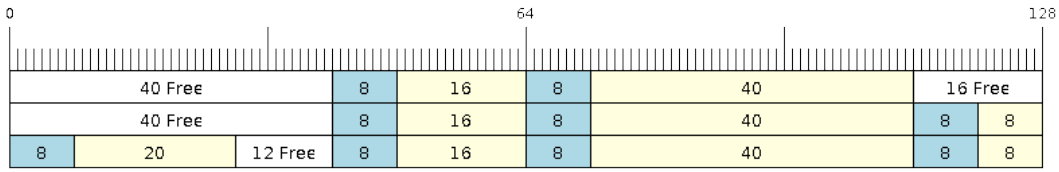


Fig. 34: Wrap around in allow-split buffers

Allow-split buffers will attempt to **split the item into two parts** when the free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to store the item data and its header. Both parts of the split item will have their own headers (therefore incurring an extra 8 bytes of overhead).

Referring to the diagram above, the 16 bytes of free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to store the 28 byte item. Therefore the item is split into two parts (8 and 20 bytes) and written as two parts to the buffer.

Note: Allow-split buffers treats the both parts of the split item as two separate items, therefore call *xRingbufferReceiveSplit()* instead of *xRingbufferReceive()* to receive both parts of a split item in a thread

safe manner.

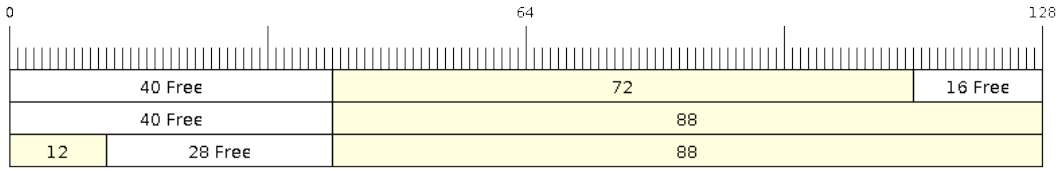


Fig. 35: Wrap around in byte buffers

Byte buffers will **store as much data as possible into the free space at the tail of buffer**. The remaining data will then be stored in the free space at the head of the buffer. No overhead is incurred when wrapping around in byte buffers.

Referring to the diagram above, the 16 bytes of free space at the tail of the buffer is insufficient to completely store the 28 bytes of data. Therefore the 16 bytes of free space is filled with data, and the remaining 12 bytes are written to the free space at the head of the buffer. The buffer now contains data in two separate continuous parts, and each part continuous will be treated as a separate item by the byte buffer.

Retrieving/Returning The following diagrams illustrates the differences between no-split/allow-split and byte buffers in retrieving and returning data.

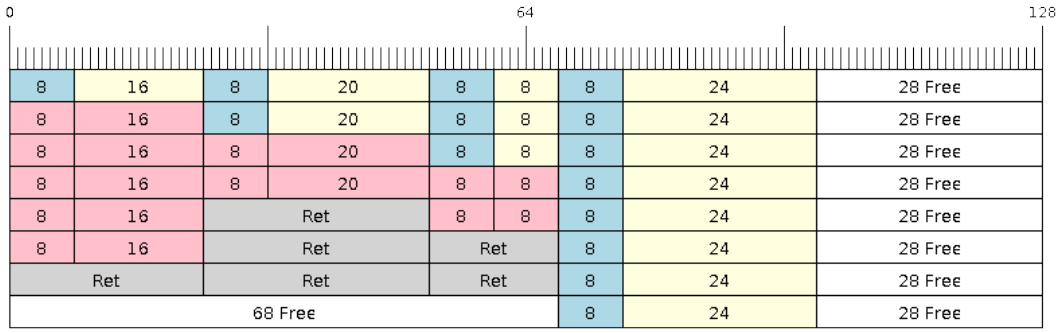


Fig. 36: Retrieving/Returning items in no-split/allow-split ring buffers

Items in no-split/allow-split buffers are **retrieved in strict FIFO order** and **must be returned** for the occupied space to be freed. Multiple items can be retrieved before returning, and the items do not necessarily need to be returned in the order they were retrieved. However the freeing of space must occur in FIFO order, therefore not returning the earliest retrieved item will prevent the space of subsequent items from being freed.

Referring to the diagram above, the **16, 20, and 8 byte items are retrieved in FIFO order**. However the items are not returned in they were retrieved (20, 8, 16). As such, the space is not freed until the first item (16 byte) is returned.

Byte buffers **do not allow multiple retrievals before returning** (every retrieval must be followed by a return before another retrieval is permitted). When using `xRingbufferReceive()` or `xRingbufferReceiveFromISR()`, all continuous stored data will be retrieved. `xRingbufferReceiveUpTo()` or `xRingbufferReceiveUpToFromISR()` can be used to restrict the maximum number of bytes retrieved. Since every retrieval must be followed by a return, the space will be freed as soon as the data is returned.

Referring to the diagram above, the 38 bytes of continuous stored data at the tail of the buffer is retrieved, returned, and freed. The next call to `xRingbufferReceive()` or `xRingbufferReceiveFromISR()` then wraps around and does the same to the 30 bytes of continuous stored data at the head of the buffer.

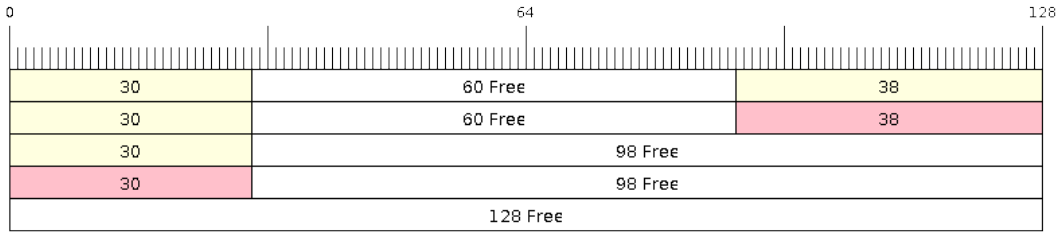


Fig. 37: Retrieving/Returning data in byte buffers

Ring Buffers with Queue Sets Ring buffers can be added to FreeRTOS queue sets using *xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead()* such that every time a ring buffer receives an item or data, the queue set is notified. Once added to a queue set, every attempt to retrieve an item from a ring buffer should be preceded by a call to *xQueueSelectFromSet()*. To check whether the selected queue set member is the ring buffer, call *xRingbufferCanRead()*.

The following example demonstrates queue set usage with ring buffers.

```
#include "freertos/queue.h"
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"

...

    //Create ring buffer and queue set
    RingbufHandle_t buf_handle = xRingbufferCreate(1028, RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT);
    QueueSetHandle_t queue_set = xQueueCreateSet(3);

    //Add ring buffer to queue set
    if (xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead(buf_handle, queue_set) != pdTRUE) {
        printf("Failed to add to queue set\n");
    }

...

    //Block on queue set
    xQueueSetMemberHandle member = xQueueSelectFromSet(queue_set, pdMS_TO_
↪TICKS(1000));

    //Check if member is ring buffer
    if (member != NULL && xRingbufferCanRead(buf_handle, member) == pdTRUE) {
        //Member is ring buffer, receive item from ring buffer
        size_t item_size;
        char *item = (char *)xRingbufferReceive(buf_handle, &item_size, 0);

        //Handle item
        ...

    } else {
        ...
    }
```

Ring Buffers with Static Allocation The *xRingbufferCreateStatic()* can be used to create ring buffers with specific memory requirements (such as a ring buffer being allocated in external RAM). All blocks of memory used by a ring buffer must be manually allocated beforehand then passed to the *xRingbufferCreateStatic()* to be initialized as a ring buffer. These blocks include the following:

- The ring buffer's data structure of type *StaticRingbuffer_t*

- The ring buffer's storage area of size `xBufferSize`. Note that `xBufferSize` must be 32-bit aligned for no-split/allow-split buffers.

The manner in which these blocks are allocated will depend on the users requirements (e.g. all blocks being statically declared, or dynamically allocated with specific capabilities such as external RAM).

Note: When deleting a ring buffer created via *xRingbufferCreateStatic()*, the function *vRingbufferDelete()* will not free any of the memory blocks. This must be done manually by the user after *vRingbufferDelete()* is called.

The code snippet below demonstrates a ring buffer being allocated entirely in external RAM.

```
#include "freertos/ringbuf.h"
#include "freertos/semphr.h"
#include "esp_heap_caps.h"

#define BUFFER_SIZE     400      //32-bit aligned size
#define BUFFER_TYPE     RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT
...

//Allocate ring buffer data structure and storage area into external RAM
StaticRingbuffer_t *buffer_struct = (StaticRingbuffer_t *)heap_caps_
↪malloc(sizeof(StaticRingbuffer_t), MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM);
uint8_t *buffer_storage = (uint8_t *)heap_caps_malloc(sizeof(uint8_t)*BUFFER_SIZE,␣
↪MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM);

//Create a ring buffer with manually allocated memory
RingbufHandle_t handle = xRingbufferCreateStatic(BUFFER_SIZE, BUFFER_TYPE, buffer_
↪storage, buffer_struct);

...

//Delete the ring buffer after used
vRingbufferDelete(handle);

//Manually free all blocks of memory
free(buffer_struct);
free(buffer_storage);
```

Ring Buffer API Reference

Note: Ideally, ring buffers can be used with multiple tasks in an SMP fashion where the **highest priority task will always be serviced first.** However due to the usage of binary semaphores in the ring buffer's underlying implementation, priority inversion may occur under very specific circumstances.

The ring buffer governs sending by a binary semaphore which is given whenever space is freed on the ring buffer. The highest priority task waiting to send will repeatedly take the semaphore until sufficient free space becomes available or until it times out. Ideally this should prevent any lower priority tasks from being serviced as the semaphore should always be given to the highest priority task.

However in between iterations of acquiring the semaphore, there is a **gap in the critical section** which may permit another task (on the other core or with an even higher priority) to free some space on the ring buffer and as a result give the semaphore. Therefore the semaphore will be given before the highest priority task can re-acquire the semaphore. This will result in the **semaphore being acquired by the second highest priority task** waiting to send, hence causing priority inversion.

This side effect will not affect ring buffer performance drastically given if the number of tasks using the ring buffer simultaneously is low, and the ring buffer is not operating near maximum capacity.

Header File

- esp_ringbuf/include/freertos/ringbuf.h

Functions

RingbufHandle_t **xRingbufferCreate**(size_t *xBufferSize*, *RingbufferType_t* *xBufferType*)

Create a ring buffer.

Note xBufferSize of no-split/allow-split buffers will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size.
Return A handle to the created ring buffer, or NULL in case of error.
Parameters
- `[in] xBufferSize`: Size of the buffer in bytes. Note that items require space for overhead in no-split/allow-split buffers
- `[in] xBufferType`: Type of ring buffer, see documentation.

RingbufHandle_t **xRingbufferCreateNoSplit**(size_t *xItemSize*, size_t *xItemNum*)

Create a ring buffer of type RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT for a fixed item_size.

This API is similar to xRingbufferCreate(), but it will internally allocate additional space for the headers.

Return A RingbufHandle_t handle to the created ring buffer, or NULL in case of error.
Parameters
- `[in] xItemSize`: Size of each item to be put into the ring buffer
- `[in] xItemNum`: Maximum number of items the buffer needs to hold simultaneously

RingbufHandle_t **xRingbufferCreateStatic**(size_t *xBufferSize*, *RingbufferType_t* *xBufferType*, uint8_t **pucRingbufferStorage*, *StaticRingbuffer_t* **pxStaticRingbuffer*)

Create a ring buffer but manually provide the required memory.

Note xBufferSize of no-split/allow-split buffers MUST be 32-bit aligned.
Return A handle to the created ring buffer
Parameters
- `[in] xBufferSize`: Size of the buffer in bytes.
- `[in] xBufferType`: Type of ring buffer, see documentation
- `[in] pucRingbufferStorage`: Pointer to the ring buffer's storage area. Storage area must of the same size as specified by xBufferSize
- `[in] pxStaticRingbuffer`: Pointed to a struct of type StaticRingbuffer_t which will be used to hold the ring buffer's data structure

BaseType_t **xRingbufferSend**(*RingbufHandle_t* *xRingbuffer*, **const** void **pvItem*, size_t *xItemSize*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Insert an item into the ring buffer.

Attempt to insert an item into the ring buffer. This function will block until enough free space is available or until it times out.

Note For no-split/allow-split ring buffers, the actual size of memory that the item will occupy will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size. This is done to ensure all items are always stored in 32-bit aligned fashion.
Return
- pdTRUE if succeeded
- pdFALSE on time-out or when the data is larger than the maximum permissible size of the buffer

Parameters
- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to insert the item into
- `[in] pvItem`: Pointer to data to insert. NULL is allowed if xItemSize is 0.
- `[in] xItemSize`: Size of data to insert.
- `[in] xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for room in the ring buffer.

BaseType_t **xRingbufferSendFromISR**(*RingbufHandle_t* *xRingbuffer*, **const** void **pvItem*, size_t *xItemSize*, BaseType_t **pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Insert an item into the ring buffer in an ISR.

Attempt to insert an item into the ring buffer from an ISR. This function will return immediately if there is insufficient free space in the buffer.

Note For no-split/allow-split ring buffers, the actual size of memory that the item will occupy will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size. This is done to ensure all items are always stored in 32-bit aligned fashion.

Return

- pdTRUE if succeeded
- pdFALSE when the ring buffer does not have space.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to insert the item into
- `[in] pvItem`: Pointer to data to insert. NULL is allowed if xItemSize is 0.
- `[in] xItemSize`: Size of data to insert.
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: Value pointed to will be set to pdTRUE if the function woke up a higher priority task.

BaseType_t **`xRingbufferSendAcquire`**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, void **ppvItem*, size_t *xItemSize*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Acquire memory from the ring buffer to be written to by an external source and to be sent later.

Attempt to allocate buffer for an item to be sent into the ring buffer. This function will block until enough free space is available or until it timesout.

The item, as well as the following items `SendAcquire` or `Send` after it, will not be able to be read from the ring buffer until this item is actually sent into the ring buffer.

Note Only applicable for no-split ring buffers now, the actual size of memory that the item will occupy will be rounded up to the nearest 32-bit aligned size. This is done to ensure all items are always stored in 32-bit aligned fashion.

Return

- pdTRUE if succeeded
- pdFALSE on time-out or when the data is larger than the maximum permissible size of the buffer

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to allocate the memory
- `[out] ppvItem`: Double pointer to memory acquired (set to NULL if no memory were retrieved)
- `[in] xItemSize`: Size of item to acquire.
- `[in] xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for room in the ring buffer.

BaseType_t **`xRingbufferSendComplete`**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, void **pvItem*)

Actually send an item into the ring buffer allocated before by `xRingbufferSendAcquire`.

Note Only applicable for no-split ring buffers. Only call for items allocated by `xRingbufferSendAcquire`.

Return

- pdTRUE if succeeded
- pdFALSE if fail for some reason.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to insert the item into
- `[in] pvItem`: Pointer to item in allocated memory to insert.

void ***`xRingbufferReceive`**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, size_t **pxItemSize*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Retrieve an item from the ring buffer.

Attempt to retrieve an item from the ring buffer. This function will block until an item is available or until it times out.

Note A call to vRingbufferReturnItem() is required after this to free the item retrieved.

Return

- Pointer to the retrieved item on success; *pxItemSize filled with the length of the item.
- NULL on timeout, *pxItemSize is untouched in that case.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from

- `[out] pxItemSize`: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.
- `[in] xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for items in the ring buffer.

void ***xRingbufferReceiveFromISR**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, size_t **pxItemSize*)

Retrieve an item from the ring buffer in an ISR.

Attempt to retrieve an item from the ring buffer. This function returns immediately if there are no items available for retrieval

Note A call to vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR() is required after this to free the item retrieved.
Note Byte buffers do not allow multiple retrievals before returning an item
Note Two calls to RingbufferReceiveFromISR() are required if the bytes wrap around the end of the ring buffer.
Return

- Pointer to the retrieved item on success; *pxItemSize filled with the length of the item.
- NULL when the ring buffer is empty, *pxItemSize is untouched in that case.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out] pxItemSize`: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.

BaseType_t **xRingbufferReceiveSplit**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, void **ppvHeadItem*, void **ppvTailItem*, size_t **pxHeadItemSize*, size_t **pxTailItemSize*, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*)

Retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer.

Attempt to retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer. If the item is not split, only a single item is retried. If the item is split, both parts will be retrieved. This function will block until an item is available or until it times out.

Note Call(s) to vRingbufferReturnItem() is required after this to free up the item(s) retrieved.
Note This function should only be called on allow-split buffers
Return

- pdTRUE if an item (split or unsplit) was retrieved
- pdFALSE when no item was retrieved

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out] ppvHeadItem`: Double pointer to first part (set to NULL if no items were retrieved)
- `[out] ppvTailItem`: Double pointer to second part (set to NULL if item is not split)
- `[out] pxHeadItemSize`: Pointer to size of first part (unmodified if no items were retrieved)
- `[out] pxTailItemSize`: Pointer to size of second part (unmodified if item is not split)
- `[in] xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for items in the ring buffer.

BaseType_t **xRingbufferReceiveSplitFromISR**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, void **ppvHeadItem*, void **ppvTailItem*, size_t **pxHeadItemSize*, size_t **pxTailItemSize*)

Retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer in an ISR.

Attempt to retrieve a split item from an allow-split ring buffer. If the item is not split, only a single item is retried. If the item is split, both parts will be retrieved. This function returns immediately if there are no items available for retrieval

Note Calls to vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR() is required after this to free up the item(s) retrieved.
Note This function should only be called on allow-split buffers
Return

- pdTRUE if an item (split or unsplit) was retrieved
- pdFALSE when no item was retrieved

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out] ppvHeadItem`: Double pointer to first part (set to NULL if no items were retrieved)
- `[out] ppvTailItem`: Double pointer to second part (set to NULL if item is not split)
- `[out] pxHeadItemSize`: Pointer to size of first part (unmodified if no items were retrieved)
- `[out] pxTailItemSize`: Pointer to size of second part (unmodified if item is not split)

void *__xRingbufferReceiveUpTo__(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, size_t *pxItemSize, TickType_t *xTicksToWait*, size_t *xMaxSize*)

Retrieve bytes from a byte buffer, specifying the maximum amount of bytes to retrieve.

Attempt to retrieve data from a byte buffer whilst specifying a maximum number of bytes to retrieve. This function will block until there is data available for retrieval or until it times out.

Note A call to vRingbufferReturnItem() is required after this to free up the data retrieved.
Note This function should only be called on byte buffers
Note Byte buffers do not allow multiple retrievals before returning an item
Note Two calls to RingbufferReceiveUpTo() are required if the bytes wrap around the end of the ring buffer.
Return

- Pointer to the retrieved item on success; *pxItemSize filled with the length of the item.
- NULL on timeout, *pxItemSize is untouched in that case.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out] pxItemSize`: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.
- `[in] xTicksToWait`: Ticks to wait for items in the ring buffer.
- `[in] xMaxSize`: Maximum number of bytes to return.

void *__xRingbufferReceiveUpToFromISR__(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, size_t *pxItemSize, size_t *xMaxSize*)

Retrieve bytes from a byte buffer, specifying the maximum amount of bytes to retrieve. Call this from an ISR.

Attempt to retrieve bytes from a byte buffer whilst specifying a maximum number of bytes to retrieve. This function will return immediately if there is no data available for retrieval.

Note A call to vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR() is required after this to free up the data received.
Note This function should only be called on byte buffers
Note Byte buffers do not allow multiple retrievals before returning an item
Return

- Pointer to the retrieved item on success; *pxItemSize filled with the length of the item.
- NULL when the ring buffer is empty, *pxItemSize is untouched in that case.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to retrieve the item from
- `[out] pxItemSize`: Pointer to a variable to which the size of the retrieved item will be written.
- `[in] xMaxSize`: Maximum number of bytes to return.

void __vRingbufferReturnItem__(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, void *pvItem)

Return a previously-retrieved item to the ring buffer.

Note If a split item is retrieved, both parts should be returned by calling this function twice
Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer the item was retrieved from
- `[in] pvItem`: Item that was received earlier

void __vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR__(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, void *pvItem, BaseType_t *pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken*)

Return a previously-retrieved item to the ring buffer from an ISR.

Note If a split item is retrieved, both parts should be returned by calling this function twice
Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer the item was retrieved from
- `[in] pvItem`: Item that was received earlier
- `[out] pxHigherPriorityTaskWoken`: Value pointed to will be set to pdTRUE if the function woke up a higher priority task.

void __vRingbufferDelete__(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*)

Delete a ring buffer.

Note This function will not deallocate any memory if the ring buffer was created using xRingbufferCreateStatic(). Deallocation must be done manually be the user.
Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to delete

size_t **xRingbufferGetMaxItemSize**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*)

Get maximum size of an item that can be placed in the ring buffer.

This function returns the maximum size an item can have if it was placed in an empty ring buffer.

Note The max item size for a no-split buffer is limited to ((buffer_size/2)-header_size). This limit is imposed so that an item of max item size can always be sent to the an empty no-split buffer regardless of the internal positions of the buffer's read/write/free pointers.

Return Maximum size, in bytes, of an item that can be placed in a ring buffer.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to query

size_t **xRingbufferGetCurFreeSize**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*)

Get current free size available for an item/data in the buffer.

This gives the real time free space available for an item/data in the ring buffer. This represents the maximum size an item/data can have if it was currently sent to the ring buffer.

Warning This API is not thread safe. So, if multiple threads are accessing the same ring buffer, it is the application's responsibility to ensure atomic access to this API and the subsequent Send

Note An empty no-split buffer has a max current free size for an item that is limited to ((buffer_size/2)-header_size). See API reference for xRingbufferGetMaxItemSize().

Return Current free size, in bytes, available for an entry

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to query

BaseType_t **xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, *QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet*)

Add the ring buffer's read semaphore to a queue set.

The ring buffer's read semaphore indicates that data has been written to the ring buffer. This function adds the ring buffer's read semaphore to a queue set.

Return

- pdTRUE on success, pdFALSE otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to add to the queue set
- `[in] xQueueSet`: Queue set to add the ring buffer's read semaphore to

BaseType_t **xRingbufferCanRead**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, *QueueSetMemberHandle_t xMember*)

Check if the selected queue set member is the ring buffer's read semaphore.

This API checks if queue set member returned from xQueueSelectFromSet() is the read semaphore of this ring buffer. If so, this indicates the ring buffer has items waiting to be retrieved.

Return

- pdTRUE when semaphore belongs to ring buffer
- pdFALSE otherwise.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer which should be checked
- `[in] xMember`: Member returned from xQueueSelectFromSet

BaseType_t **xRingbufferRemoveFromQueueSetRead**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, *QueueSetHandle_t xQueueSet*)

Remove the ring buffer's read semaphore from a queue set.

This specifically removes a ring buffer's read semaphore from a queue set. The read semaphore is used to indicate when data has been written to the ring buffer

Return

- pdTRUE on success
- pdFALSE otherwise

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to remove from the queue set
- `[in] xQueueSet`: Queue set to remove the ring buffer's read semaphore from

void **vRingbufferGetInfo**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*, UBaseType_t **uxFree*, UBaseType_t **uxRead*, UBaseType_t **uxWrite*, UBaseType_t **uxAcquire*, UBaseType_t **uxItemsWaiting*)

Get information about ring buffer status.

Get information of the a ring buffer's current status such as free/read/write pointer positions, and number of items waiting to be retrieved. Arguments can be set to NULL if they are not required.

Parameters

- `[in] xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to remove from the queue set
- `[out] uxFree`: Pointer use to store free pointer position
- `[out] uxRead`: Pointer use to store read pointer position
- `[out] uxWrite`: Pointer use to store write pointer position
- `[out] uxAcquire`: Pointer use to store acquire pointer position
- `[out] uxItemsWaiting`: Pointer use to store number of items (bytes for byte buffer) waiting to be retrieved

void **xRingbufferPrintInfo**(*RingbufHandle_t xRingbuffer*)

Debugging function to print the internal pointers in the ring buffer.

Parameters

- `xRingbuffer`: Ring buffer to show

Structures

struct xSTATIC_RINGBUFFER

Struct that is equivalent in size to the ring buffer's data structure.

The contents of this struct are not meant to be used directly. This structure is meant to be used when creating a statically allocated ring buffer where this struct is of the exact size required to store a ring buffer's control data structure.

Type Definitions

typedef void ***RingbufHandle_t**

Type by which ring buffers are referenced. For example, a call to xRingbufferCreate() returns a RingbufHandle_t variable that can then be used as a parameter to xRingbufferSend(), xRingbufferReceive(), etc.

typedef struct *xSTATIC_RINGBUFFER* **StaticRingbuffer_t**

Struct that is equivalent in size to the ring buffer's data structure.

The contents of this struct are not meant to be used directly. This structure is meant to be used when creating a statically allocated ring buffer where this struct is of the exact size required to store a ring buffer's control data structure.

Enumerations

enum RingbufferType_t

Values:

RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT = 0

No-split buffers will only store an item in contiguous memory and will never split an item. Each item requires an 8 byte overhead for a header and will always internally occupy a 32-bit aligned size of space.

RINGBUF_TYPE_ALLOWSPLIT

Allow-split buffers will split an item into two parts if necessary in order to store it. Each item requires an 8 byte overhead for a header, splitting incurs an extra header. Each item will always internally occupy a 32-bit aligned size of space.

RINGBUF_TYPE_BYTEBUF

Byte buffers store data as a sequence of bytes and do not maintain separate items, therefore byte buffers have no overhead. All data is stored as a sequence of byte and any number of bytes can be sent or retrieved each time.

RINGBUF_TYPE_MAX

Hooks

FreeRTOS consists of Idle Hooks and Tick Hooks which allow for application specific functionality to be added to the Idle Task and Tick Interrupt. ESP-IDF provides its own Idle and Tick Hook API in addition to the hooks provided by Vanilla FreeRTOS. ESP-IDF hooks have the added benefit of being run time configurable and asymmetrical.

Vanilla FreeRTOS Hooks Idle and Tick Hooks in vanilla FreeRTOS are implemented by the user defining the functions `vApplicationIdleHook()` and `vApplicationTickHook()` respectively somewhere in the application. Vanilla FreeRTOS will run the user defined Idle Hook and Tick Hook on every iteration of the Idle Task and Tick Interrupt respectively.

Vanilla FreeRTOS hooks are referred to as **Legacy Hooks** in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. To enable legacy hooks, *CONFIG_FREERTOS_LEGACY_HOOKS* should be enabled in *project configuration menu*.

Due to vanilla FreeRTOS being designed for single core, `vApplicationIdleHook()` and `vApplicationTickHook()` can only be defined once. However, the ESP32 is dual core in nature, therefore same Idle Hook and Tick Hook are used for both cores (in other words, the hooks are symmetrical for both cores).

In a dual core system, `vApplicationTickHook()` must be located in IRAM (for example by adding the IRAM_ATTR attribute).

ESP-IDF Idle and Tick Hooks Due to the the dual core nature of the ESP32, it may be necessary for some applications to have separate hooks for each core. Furthermore, it may be necessary for the Idle Tasks or Tick Interrupts to execute multiple hooks that are configurable at run time. Therefore the ESP-IDF provides it's own hooks API in addition to the legacy hooks provided by Vanilla FreeRTOS.

The ESP-IDF tick/idle hooks are registered at run time, and each tick/idle hook must be registered to a specific CPU. When the idle task runs/tick Interrupt occurs on a particular CPU, the CPU will run each of its registered idle/tick hooks in turn.

Hooks API Reference

Header File

- esp_system/include/esp_freertos_hooks.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_register_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu**(*esp_freertos_idle_cb_t new_idle_cb*, UBaseType_t *cpuid*)

Register a callback to be called from the specified core's idle hook. The callback should return true if it should be called by the idle hook once per interrupt (or FreeRTOS tick), and return false if it should be called repeatedly as fast as possible by the idle hook.

Warning Idle callbacks MUST NOT, UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES, CALL A FUNCTION THAT MIGHT BLOCK.

Return

- ESP_OK: Callback registered to the specified core's idle hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the specified core's idle hook to register callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: cpuid is invalid

Parameters

- `[in] new_idle_cb`: Callback to be called
- `[in] cpuid`: id of the core

esp_err_t **esp_register_freertos_idle_hook**(*esp_freertos_idle_cb_t new_idle_cb*)

Register a callback to the idle hook of the core that calls this function. The callback should return true if it should be called by the idle hook once per interrupt (or FreeRTOS tick), and return false if it should be called repeatedly as fast as possible by the idle hook.

Warning Idle callbacks MUST NOT, UNDER ANY CIRCUMSTANCES, CALL A FUNCTION THAT MIGHT BLOCK.

Return

- ESP_OK: Callback registered to the calling core's idle hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the calling core's idle hook to register callback

Parameters

- `[in] new_idle_cb`: Callback to be called

esp_err_t **esp_register_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu**(*esp_freertos_tick_cb_t new_tick_cb*, UBaseType_t *cpuid*)

Register a callback to be called from the specified core's tick hook.

Return

- ESP_OK: Callback registered to specified core's tick hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the specified core's tick hook to register the callback
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: cpuid is invalid

Parameters

- `[in] new_tick_cb`: Callback to be called
- `[in] cpuid`: id of the core

esp_err_t **esp_register_freertos_tick_hook**(*esp_freertos_tick_cb_t new_tick_cb*)

Register a callback to be called from the calling core's tick hook.

Return

- ESP_OK: Callback registered to the calling core's tick hook
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: No more space on the calling core's tick hook to register the callback

Parameters

- `[in] new_tick_cb`: Callback to be called

void **esp_deregister_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu**(*esp_freertos_idle_cb_t old_idle_cb*, UBaseType_t *cpuid*)

Unregister an idle callback from the idle hook of the specified core.

Parameters

- `[in] old_idle_cb`: Callback to be unregistered
- `[in] cpuid`: id of the core

void **esp_deregister_freertos_idle_hook**(*esp_freertos_idle_cb_t old_idle_cb*)

Unregister an idle callback. If the idle callback is registered to the idle hooks of both cores, the idle hook will be unregistered from both cores.

Parameters

- `[in] old_idle_cb`: Callback to be unregistered

void **esp_deregister_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu**(*esp_freertos_tick_cb_t old_tick_cb*, UBaseType_t *cpuid*)

Unregister a tick callback from the tick hook of the specified core.

Parameters

- `[in] old_tick_cb`: Callback to be unregistered
- `[in] cpuid`: id of the core

void **esp_deregister_freertos_tick_hook**(*esp_freertos_tick_cb_t old_tick_cb*)

Unregister a tick callback. If the tick callback is registered to the tick hooks of both cores, the tick hook will be unregistered from both cores.

Parameters

- `[in] old_tick_cb`: Callback to be unregistered

Type Definitions

typedef bool (***esp_freertos_idle_cb_t**)(void)

typedef void (***esp_freertos_tick_cb_t**)(void)

Component Specific Properties

Besides standart component variables that could be gotten with basic cmake build properties FreeRTOS component also provides an arguments (only one so far) for simpler integration with other modules:

- *ORIG_INCLUDE_PATH* - contains an absolute path to freertos root include folder. Thus instead of *#include "freertos/FreeRTOS.h"* you can refer to headers directly: *#include "FreeRTOS.h"* .

2.6.12 Heap Memory Allocation

Stack and Heap

ESP-IDF applications use the common computer architecture patterns of *stack* (dynamic memory allocated by program control flow) and *heap* (dynamic memory allocated by function calls), as well as statically allocated memory (allocated at compile time).

Because ESP-IDF is a multi-threaded RTOS environment, each RTOS task has its own stack. By default, each of these stacks is allocated from the heap when the task is created. (See `xTaskCreateStatic()` for the alternative where stacks are statically allocated.)

Because ESP32-S2 uses multiple types of RAM, it also contains multiple heaps with different capabilities. A capabilities-based memory allocator allows apps to make heap allocations for different purposes.

For most purposes, the standard libc `malloc()` and `free()` functions can be used for heap allocation without any special consideration.

However, in order to fully make use of all of the memory types and their characteristics, ESP-IDF also has a capabilities-based heap memory allocator. If you want to have memory with certain properties (for example, *DMA-Capable Memory* or executable-memory), you can create an OR-mask of the required capabilities and pass that to `heap_caps_malloc()`.

Memory Capabilities

The ESP32-S2 contains multiple types of RAM:

- DRAM (Data RAM) is memory used to hold data. This is the most common kind of memory accessed as heap.
- IRAM (Instruction RAM) usually holds executable data only. If accessed as generic memory, all accesses must be *32-bit aligned*.
- D/IRAM is RAM which can be used as either Instruction or Data RAM.

For more details on these internal memory types, see *Memory Types*.

It ' s also possible to connect external SPI RAM to the ESP32-S2 - *external RAM* can be integrated into the ESP32-S2 ' s memory map using the flash cache, and accessed similarly to DRAM.

DRAM uses capability `MALLOC_CAP_8BIT` (accessible in single byte reads and writes). When calling `malloc()`, the ESP-IDF `malloc()` implementation internally calls `heap_caps_malloc(size, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)` in order to allocate DRAM that is byte-addressable. To test the free DRAM heap size at runtime, call cpp:func:*heap_caps_get_free_size(MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)*.

Because malloc uses the capabilities-based allocation system, memory allocated using `heap_caps_malloc()` can be freed by calling the standard `free()` function.

Available Heap

DRAM At startup, the DRAM heap contains all data memory which is not statically allocated by the app. Reducing statically allocated buffers will increase the amount of available free heap.

To find the amount of statically allocated memory, use the *idf.py size* command.

Note: At runtime, the available heap DRAM may be less than calculated at compile time, because at startup some memory is allocated from the heap before the FreeRTOS scheduler is started (including memory for the stacks of initial FreeRTOS tasks).

IRAM At startup, the IRAM heap contains all instruction memory which is not used by the app executable code.

The *idf.py size* command can be used to find the amount of IRAM used by the app.

D/IRAM Some memory in the ESP32-S2 is available as either DRAM or IRAM. If memory is allocated from a D/IRAM region, the free heap size for both types of memory will decrease.

Heap Sizes At startup, all ESP-IDF apps log a summary of all heap addresses (and sizes) at level Info:

```
I (252) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation:
I (259) heap_init: At 3FFAE6E0 len 00001920 (6 KiB): DRAM
I (265) heap_init: At 3FFB2EC8 len 0002D138 (180 KiB): DRAM
I (272) heap_init: At 3FFE0440 len 00003AE0 (14 KiB): D/IRAM
I (278) heap_init: At 3FFE4350 len 0001BCB0 (111 KiB): D/IRAM
I (284) heap_init: At 4008944C len 00016BB4 (90 KiB): IRAM
```

Finding available heap See *Heap Information*.

Special Capabilities

DMA-Capable Memory Use the `MALLOC_CAP_DMA` flag to allocate memory which is suitable for use with hardware DMA engines (for example SPI and I2S). This capability flag excludes any external PSRAM.

32-Bit Accessible Memory If a certain memory structure is only addressed in 32-bit units, for example an array of ints or pointers, it can be useful to allocate it with the `MALLOC_CAP_32BIT` flag. This also allows the allocator to give out IRAM memory; something which it can't do for a normal malloc() call. This can help to use all the available memory in the ESP32-S2.

Memory allocated with `MALLOC_CAP_32BIT` can *only* be accessed via 32-bit reads and writes, any other type of access will generate a fatal LoadStoreError exception.

External SPI Memory When *external RAM* is enabled, external SPI RAM under 4MiB in size can be allocated using standard `malloc` calls, or via `heap_caps_malloc(MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM)`, depending on configuration. See *Configuring External RAM* for more details.

API Reference - Heap Allocation

Header File

- heap/include/esp_heap_caps.h

Functions

esp_err_t **heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback**(*esp_alloc_failed_hook_t callback*)

registers a callback function to be invoked if a memory allocation operation fails

Return ESP_OK if callback was registered.

Parameters

- `callback`: caller defined callback to be invoked

void *__heap_caps_malloc__(size_t *size*, uint32_t *caps*)

Allocate a chunk of memory which has the given capabilities.

Equivalent semantics to libc malloc(), for capability-aware memory.

In IDF, `malloc(p)` is equivalent to `heap_caps_malloc(p, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)`.

Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `size`: Size, in bytes, of the amount of memory to allocate
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

void __heap_caps_free__(void **ptr*)

Free memory previously allocated via heap_caps_malloc() or heap_caps_realloc().

Equivalent semantics to libc free(), for capability-aware memory.

In IDF, `free(p)` is equivalent to `heap_caps_free(p)`.

Parameters

- `ptr`: Pointer to memory previously returned from heap_caps_malloc() or heap_caps_realloc(). Can be NULL.

void *__heap_caps_realloc__(void **ptr*, size_t *size*, uint32_t *caps*)

Reallocate memory previously allocated via heap_caps_malloc() or heap_caps_realloc().

Equivalent semantics to libc realloc(), for capability-aware memory.

In IDF, `realloc(p, s)` is equivalent to `heap_caps_realloc(p, s, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)`.

'caps' parameter can be different to the capabilities that any original 'ptr' was allocated with. In this way, realloc can be used to "move" a buffer if necessary to ensure it meets a new set of capabilities.

Return Pointer to a new buffer of size 'size' with capabilities 'caps', or NULL if allocation failed.

Parameters

- `ptr`: Pointer to previously allocated memory, or NULL for a new allocation.
- `size`: Size of the new buffer requested, or 0 to free the buffer.
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory desired for the new allocation.

void *__heap_caps_aligned_alloc__(size_t *alignment*, size_t *size*, uint32_t *caps*)

Allocate a aligned chunk of memory which has the given capabilities.

Equivalent semantics to libc aligned_alloc(), for capability-aware memory.

Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `alignment`: How the pointer received needs to be aligned must be a power of two
- `size`: Size, in bytes, of the amount of memory to allocate
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

void __heap_caps_aligned_free__(void **ptr*)

Used to deallocate memory previously allocated with heap_caps_aligned_alloc.

Note This function is deprecated, plase consider using heap_caps_free() instead

Parameters

- `ptr`: Pointer to the memory allocated

void *__heap_caps_aligned_calloc__(size_t *alignment*, size_t *n*, size_t *size*, uint32_t *caps*)

Allocate a aligned chunk of memory which has the given capabilities. The initialized value in the memory is set to zero.

Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `alignment`: How the pointer received needs to be aligned must be a power of two
- `n`: Number of continuing chunks of memory to allocate
- `size`: Size, in bytes, of a chunk of memory to allocate
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

void *__heap_caps_calloc__(size_t *n*, size_t *size*, uint32_t *caps*)

Allocate a chunk of memory which has the given capabilities. The initialized value in the memory is set to zero.

Equivalent semantics to libc calloc(), for capability-aware memory.

In IDF, `calloc(p)` is equivalent to `heap_caps_calloc(p, MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)`.

Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `n`: Number of continuing chunks of memory to allocate
- `size`: Size, in bytes, of a chunk of memory to allocate
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory to be returned

size_t __heap_caps_get_total_size__(uint32_t *caps*)

Get the total size of all the regions that have the given capabilities.

This function takes all regions capable of having the given capabilities allocated in them and adds up the total space they have.

Return total size in bytes

Parameters

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

size_t __heap_caps_get_free_size__(uint32_t *caps*)

Get the total free size of all the regions that have the given capabilities.

This function takes all regions capable of having the given capabilities allocated in them and adds up the free space they have.

Note that because of heap fragmentation it is probably not possible to allocate a single block of memory of this size. Use heap_caps_get_largest_free_block() for this purpose.

Return Amount of free bytes in the regions

Parameters

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

size_t __heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size__(uint32_t *caps*)

Get the total minimum free memory of all regions with the given capabilities.

This adds all the low water marks of the regions capable of delivering the memory with the given capabilities.

Note the result may be less than the global all-time minimum available heap of this kind, as "low water marks" are tracked per-region. Individual regions' heaps may have reached their "low water marks" at different points in time. However this result still gives a "worst case" indication for all-time minimum free heap.

Return Amount of free bytes in the regions

Parameters

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

size_t __heap_caps_get_largest_free_block__(uint32_t *caps*)

Get the largest free block of memory able to be allocated with the given capabilities.

Returns the largest value of `s` for which `heap_caps_malloc(s, caps)` will succeed.

Return Size of largest free block in bytes.

Parameters

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

void __heap_caps_get_info__(*multi_heap_info_t* **info*, uint32_t *caps*)

Get heap info for all regions with the given capabilities.

Calls multi_heap_info() on all heaps which share the given capabilities. The information returned is an aggregate across all matching heaps. The meanings of fields are the same as defined for *multi_heap_info_t*, except that `minimum_free_bytes` has the same caveats described in heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size().

Parameters

- `info`: Pointer to a structure which will be filled with relevant heap metadata.

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

void **heap_caps_print_heap_info**(uint32_t *caps*)
Print a summary of all memory with the given capabilities.

Calls multi_heap_info on all heaps which share the given capabilities, and prints a two-line summary for each, then a total summary.

Parameters
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

bool **heap_caps_check_integrity_all**(bool *print_errors*)
Check integrity of all heap memory in the system.

Calls multi_heap_check on all heaps. Optionally print errors if heaps are corrupt.

Calling this function is equivalent to calling heap_caps_check_integrity with the caps argument set to MALLOC_CAP_INVALID.

Return True if all heaps are valid, False if at least one heap is corrupt.
Parameters
- `print_errors`: Print specific errors if heap corruption is found.

bool **heap_caps_check_integrity**(uint32_t *caps*, bool *print_errors*)
Check integrity of all heaps with the given capabilities.

Calls multi_heap_check on all heaps which share the given capabilities. Optionally print errors if the heaps are corrupt.

See also heap_caps_check_integrity_all to check all heap memory in the system and heap_caps_check_integrity_addr to check memory around a single address.

Return True if all heaps are valid, False if at least one heap is corrupt.
Parameters
- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory
- `print_errors`: Print specific errors if heap corruption is found.

bool **heap_caps_check_integrity_addr**(intptr_t *addr*, bool *print_errors*)
Check integrity of heap memory around a given address.

This function can be used to check the integrity of a single region of heap memory, which contains the given address.

This can be useful if debugging heap integrity for corruption at a known address, as it has a lower overhead than checking all heap regions. Note that if the corrupt address moves around between runs (due to timing or other factors) then this approach won't work and you should call heap_caps_check_integrity or heap_caps_check_integrity_all instead.

Note The entire heap region around the address is checked, not only the adjacent heap blocks.
Return True if the heap containing the specified address is valid, False if at least one heap is corrupt or the address doesn't belong to a heap region.
Parameters
- `addr`: Address in memory. Check for corruption in region containing this address.
- `print_errors`: Print specific errors if heap corruption is found.

void **heap_caps_malloc_extmem_enable**(size_t *limit*)
Enable malloc() in external memory and set limit below which malloc() attempts are placed in internal memory.

When external memory is in use, the allocation strategy is to initially try to satisfy smaller allocation requests with internal memory and larger requests with external memory. This sets the limit between the two, as well as generally enabling allocation in external memory.

Parameters
- `limit`: Limit, in bytes.

void ***heap_caps_malloc_prefer**(size_t *size*, size_t *num*, ...)
Allocate a chunk of memory as preference in decreasing order.

Attention The variable parameters are bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory. This API prefers to allocate memory with the first parameter. If failed, allocate memory with the next parameter. It will try in this order until allocating a chunk of memory successfully or fail to allocate memories with any of the parameters.

Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `size`: Size, in bytes, of the amount of memory to allocate
- `num`: Number of variable paramters

void ***heap_caps_realloc_prefer**(void **ptr*, size_t *size*, size_t *num*, ...)

Allocate a chunk of memory as preference in decreasing order.

Return Pointer to a new buffer of size ‘size’, or NULL if allocation failed.

Parameters

- `ptr`: Pointer to previously allocated memory, or NULL for a new allocation.
- `size`: Size of the new buffer requested, or 0 to free the buffer.
- `num`: Number of variable paramters

void ***heap_caps_calloc_prefer**(size_t *n*, size_t *size*, size_t *num*, ...)

Allocate a chunk of memory as preference in decreasing order.

Return A pointer to the memory allocated on success, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `n`: Number of continuing chunks of memory to allocate
- `size`: Size, in bytes, of a chunk of memory to allocate
- `num`: Number of variable paramters

void **heap_caps_dump**(uint32_t *caps*)

Dump the full structure of all heaps with matching capabilities.

Prints a large amount of output to serial (because of locking limitations, the output bypasses stdout/stderr). For each (variable sized) block in each matching heap, the following output is printed on a single line:

- Block address (the data buffer returned by malloc is 4 bytes after this if heap debugging is set to Basic, or 8 bytes otherwise).
- Data size (the data size may be larger than the size requested by malloc, either due to heap fragmentation or because of heap debugging level).
- Address of next block in the heap.
- If the block is free, the address of the next free block is also printed.

Parameters

- `caps`: Bitwise OR of MALLOC_CAP_* flags indicating the type of memory

void **heap_caps_dump_all**(void)

Dump the full structure of all heaps.

Covers all registered heaps. Prints a large amount of output to serial.

Output is the same as for heap_caps_dump.

size_t **heap_caps_get_allocated_size**(void **ptr*)

Return the size that a particular pointer was allocated with.

Note The app will crash with an assertion failure if the pointer is not valid.

Return Size of the memory allocated at this block.

Parameters

- `ptr`: Pointer to currently allocated heap memory. Must be a pointer value previously returned by heap_caps_malloc,malloc,calloc, etc. and not yet freed.

Macros

MALLOC_CAP_EXEC

Flags to indicate the capabilities of the various memory systems.

Memory must be able to run executable code

MALLOC_CAP_32BIT
Memory must allow for aligned 32-bit data accesses.

MALLOC_CAP_8BIT
Memory must allow for 8/16/…-bit data accesses.

MALLOC_CAP_DMA
Memory must be able to accessed by DMA.

MALLOC_CAP_PID2
Memory must be mapped to PID2 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

MALLOC_CAP_PID3
Memory must be mapped to PID3 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

MALLOC_CAP_PID4
Memory must be mapped to PID4 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

MALLOC_CAP_PID5
Memory must be mapped to PID5 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

MALLOC_CAP_PID6
Memory must be mapped to PID6 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

MALLOC_CAP_PID7
Memory must be mapped to PID7 memory space (PIDs are not currently used)

MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM
Memory must be in SPI RAM.

MALLOC_CAP_INTERNAL
Memory must be internal; specifically it should not disappear when flash/spiram cache is switched off.

MALLOC_CAP_DEFAULT
Memory can be returned in a non-capability-specific memory allocation (e.g. malloc(), calloc()) call.

MALLOC_CAP_IRAM_8BIT
Memory must be in IRAM and allow unaligned access.

MALLOC_CAP_RETENTION

MALLOC_CAP_INVALID
Memory can't be used / list end marker.

Type Definitions

typedef void (***esp_alloc_failed_hook_t**)(size_t size, uint32_t caps, **const** char *function_name)
callback called when a allocation operation fails, if registered

Parameters

- `size`: in bytes of failed allocation
- `caps`: capabillites requested of failed allocation
- `function_name`: function which generated the failure

Thread Safety Heap functions are thread safe, meaning they can be called from different tasks simultaneously without any limitations.

It is technically possible to call `malloc`, `free`, and related functions from interrupt handler (ISR) context. However this is not recommended, as heap function calls may delay other interrupts. It is strongly recommended to refactor applications so that any buffers used by an ISR are pre-allocated outside of the ISR. Support for calling heap functions from ISRs may be removed in a future update.

Heap Tracing & Debugging

The following features are documented on the *Heap Memory Debugging* page:

- *Heap Information* (free space, etc.)
- *Heap Corruption Detection*
- *Heap Tracing* (memory leak detection, monitoring, etc.)

API Reference - Initialisation

Header File

- heap/include/esp_heap_caps_init.h

Functions

void **heap_caps_init**(void)

Initialize the capability-aware heap allocator.

This is called once in the IDF startup code. Do not call it at other times.

void **heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps**(void)

Enable heap(s) in memory regions where the startup stacks are located.

On startup, the pro/app CPUs have a certain memory region they use as stack, so we cannot do allocations in the regions these stack frames are. When FreeRTOS is completely started, they do not use that memory anymore and heap(s) there can be enabled.

esp_err_t **heap_caps_add_region**(intptr_t *start*, intptr_t *end*)

Add a region of memory to the collection of heaps at runtime.

Most memory regions are defined in soc_memory_layout.c for the SoC, and are registered via heap_caps_init(). Some regions can't be used immediately and are later enabled via heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps().

Call this function to add a region of memory to the heap at some later time.

This function does not consider any of the "reserved" regions or other data in soc_memory_layout, caller needs to consider this themselves.

All memory within the region specified by start & end parameters must be otherwise unused.

The capabilities of the newly registered memory will be determined by the start address, as looked up in the regions specified in soc_memory_layout.c.

Use heap_caps_add_region_with_caps() to register a region with custom capabilities.

Return ESP_OK on success, ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if a parameter is invalid, ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND if the specified start address doesn't reside in a known region, or any error returned by heap_caps_add_region_with_caps().

Parameters

- `start`: Start address of new region.
- `end`: End address of new region.

esp_err_t **heap_caps_add_region_with_caps**(**const** uint32_t *caps*[], intptr_t *start*, intptr_t *end*)

Add a region of memory to the collection of heaps at runtime, with custom capabilities.

Similar to heap_caps_add_region(), only custom memory capabilities are specified by the caller.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if a parameter is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if no memory to register new heap.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if the memory region is too small to fit a heap
- ESP_FAIL if region overlaps the start and/or end of an existing region

Parameters

- `caps`: Ordered array of capability masks for the new region, in order of priority. Must have length SOC_MEMORY_TYPE_NO_PRIOS. Does not need to remain valid after the call returns.
- `start`: Start address of new region.
- `end`: End address of new region.

Implementation Notes

Knowledge about the regions of memory in the chip comes from the "soc" component, which contains memory layout information for the chip, and the different capabilities of each region. Each region's capabilities are prioritised, so that (for example) dedicated DRAM and IRAM regions will be used for allocations ahead of the more versatile D/IRAM regions.

Each contiguous region of memory contains its own memory heap. The heaps are created using the multi_heap functionality. multi_heap allows any contiguous region of memory to be used as a heap.

The heap capabilities allocator uses knowledge of the memory regions to initialize each individual heap. Allocation functions in the heap capabilities API will find the most appropriate heap for the allocation (based on desired capabilities, available space, and preferences for each region's use) and then calling *`multi_heap_malloc()`* or `multi_heap_calloc()` for the heap situated in that particular region.

Calling `free()` involves finding the particular heap corresponding to the freed address, and then calling *`multi_heap_free()`* on that particular multi_heap instance.

API Reference - Multi Heap API

(Note: The multi heap API is used internally by the heap capabilities allocator. Most IDF programs will never need to call this API directly.)

Header File

- heap/include/multi_heap.h

Functions

void ***multi_heap_aligned_alloc**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, size_t *size*, size_t *alignment*)*

allocate a chunk of memory with specific alignment

Return pointer to the memory allocated, NULL on failure

Parameters

- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.
- `size`: size in bytes of memory chunk
- `alignment`: how the memory must be aligned

void ***multi_heap_malloc**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, size_t *size*)*

malloc() a buffer in a given heap

Semantics are the same as standard malloc(), only the returned buffer will be allocated in the specified heap.

Return Pointer to new memory, or NULL if allocation fails.

Parameters

- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.
- `size`: Size of desired buffer.

void **multi_heap_aligned_free**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, void *p)

free() a buffer aligned in a given heap.

Note This function is deprecated, consider using multi_heap_free() instead

Parameters

- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.
- `p`: NULL, or a pointer previously returned from multi_heap_aligned_alloc() for the same heap.

void **multi_heap_free**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, void *p)

free() a buffer in a given heap.

Semantics are the same as standard free(), only the argument 'p' must be NULL or have been allocated in the specified heap.

Parameters

- heap: Handle to a registered heap.
- p: NULL, or a pointer previously returned from multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_realloc() for the same heap.

void ***multi_heap_realloc**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, void *p, size_t *size*)

realloc() a buffer in a given heap.

Semantics are the same as standard realloc(), only the argument 'p' must be NULL or have been allocated in the specified heap.

Return New buffer of 'size' containing contents of 'p', or NULL if reallocation failed.

Parameters

- heap: Handle to a registered heap.
- p: NULL, or a pointer previously returned from multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_realloc() for the same heap.
- size: Desired new size for buffer.

size_t **multi_heap_get_allocated_size**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, void *p)

Return the size that a particular pointer was allocated with.

Return Size of the memory allocated at this block. May be more than the original size argument, due to padding and minimum block sizes.

Parameters

- heap: Handle to a registered heap.
- p: Pointer, must have been previously returned from multi_heap_malloc() or multi_heap_realloc() for the same heap.

multi_heap_handle_t **multi_heap_register**(void *start, size_t *size*)

Register a new heap for use.

This function initialises a heap at the specified address, and returns a handle for future heap operations.

There is no equivalent function for deregistering a heap - if all blocks in the heap are free, you can immediately start using the memory for other purposes.

Return Handle of a new heap ready for use, or NULL if the heap region was too small to be initialised.

Parameters

- start: Start address of the memory to use for a new heap.
- size: Size (in bytes) of the new heap.

void **multi_heap_set_lock**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, void *lock)

Associate a private lock pointer with a heap.

The lock argument is supplied to the MULTI_HEAP_LOCK() and MULTI_HEAP_UNLOCK() macros, defined in multi_heap_platform.h.

The lock in question must be recursive.

When the heap is first registered, the associated lock is NULL.

Parameters

- heap: Handle to a registered heap.
- lock: Optional pointer to a locking structure to associate with this heap.

void **multi_heap_dump**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*)

Dump heap information to stdout.

For debugging purposes, this function dumps information about every block in the heap to stdout.

Parameters

- heap: Handle to a registered heap.

bool **multi_heap_check**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, bool *print_errors*)
Check heap integrity.

Walks the heap and checks all heap data structures are valid. If any errors are detected, an error-specific message can be optionally printed to stderr. Print behaviour can be overriden at compile time by defining MULTI_CHECK_FAIL_PRINTF in multi_heap_platform.h.

Return true if heap is valid, false otherwise.
Parameters
- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.
- `print_errors`: If true, errors will be printed to stderr.

size_t **multi_heap_free_size**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*)
Return free heap size.

Returns the number of bytes available in the heap.

Equivalent to the total_free_bytes member returned by multi_heap_get_heap_info().

Note that the heap may be fragmented, so the actual maximum size for a single malloc() may be lower. To know this size, see the largest_free_block member returned by multi_heap_get_heap_info().

Return Number of free bytes.
Parameters
- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.

size_t **multi_heap_minimum_free_size**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*)
Return the lifetime minimum free heap size.

Equivalent to the minimum_free_bytes member returned by multi_heap_get_info().

Returns the lifetime "low water mark" of possible values returned from multi_free_heap_size(), for the specified heap.

Return Number of free bytes.
Parameters
- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.

void **multi_heap_get_info**(*multi_heap_handle_t heap*, *multi_heap_info_t *info*)
Return metadata about a given heap.

Fills a *multi_heap_info_t* structure with information about the specified heap.

Parameters
- `heap`: Handle to a registered heap.
- `info`: Pointer to a structure to fill with heap metadata.

Structures

struct multi_heap_info_t
Structure to access heap metadata via multi_heap_get_info.

Public Members

size_t **total_free_bytes**
Total free bytes in the heap. Equivalent to multi_free_heap_size().

size_t **total_allocated_bytes**
Total bytes allocated to data in the heap.

size_t **largest_free_block**
Size of largest free block in the heap. This is the largest malloc-able size.

size_t **minimum_free_bytes**
Lifetime minimum free heap size. Equivalent to multi_minimum_free_heap_size().

size_t **allocated_blocks**
: Number of (variable size) blocks allocated in the heap.

size_t **free_blocks**
: Number of (variable size) free blocks in the heap.

size_t **total_blocks**
: Total number of (variable size) blocks in the heap.

Type Definitions

typedef struct multi_heap_info ***multi_heap_handle_t**
: Opaque handle to a registered heap.

2.6.13 Heap Memory Debugging

Overview

ESP-IDF integrates tools for requesting *heap information*, *detecting heap corruption*, and *tracing memory leaks*. These can help track down memory-related bugs.

For general information about the heap memory allocator, see the *Heap Memory Allocation* page.

Heap Information

To obtain information about the state of the heap:

- `xPortGetFreeHeapSize()` is a FreeRTOS function which returns the number of free bytes in the (data memory) heap. This is equivalent to calling `heap_caps_get_free_size(MALLOC_CAP_8BIT)`.
- *`heap_caps_get_free_size()`* can also be used to return the current free memory for different memory capabilities.
- *`heap_caps_get_largest_free_block()`* can be used to return the largest free block in the heap. This is the largest single allocation which is currently possible. Tracking this value and comparing to total free heap allows you to detect heap fragmentation.
- `xPortGetMinimumEverFreeHeapSize()` and the related *`heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size()`* can be used to track the heap "low water mark" since boot.
- *`heap_caps_get_info()`* returns a *`multi_heap_info_t`* structure which contains the information from the above functions, plus some additional heap-specific data (number of allocations, etc.).
- *`heap_caps_print_heap_info()`* prints a summary to stdout of the information returned by *`heap_caps_get_info()`*.
- *`heap_caps_dump()`* and *`heap_caps_dump_all()`* will output detailed information about the structure of each block in the heap. Note that this can be large amount of output.

Heap Corruption Detection

Heap corruption detection allows you to detect various types of heap memory errors:

- Out of bounds writes & buffer overflow.
- Writes to freed memory.
- Reads from freed or uninitialized memory,

Assertions The heap implementation (`multi_heap.c`, etc.) includes a lot of assertions which will fail if the heap memory is corrupted. To detect heap corruption most effectively, ensure that assertions are enabled in the project configuration menu under `Compiler options` -> *CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL*.

If a heap integrity assertion fails, a line will be printed like `CORRUPT HEAP: multi_heap.c:225 detected at 0x3ffbb71c`. The memory address which is printed is the address of the heap structure which has corrupt content.

It's also possible to manually check heap integrity by calling *heap_caps_check_integrity_all()* or related functions. This function checks all of requested heap memory for integrity, and can be used even if assertions are disabled. If the integrity check prints an error, it will also contain the address(es) of corrupt heap structures.

Memory Allocation Failed Hook Users can use *heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback()* to register a callback that will be invoked every time a allocation operation fails.

Additionaly user can enable a generation of a system abort if allocation operation fails by following the steps below: - In the project configuration menu, navigate to `Component config -> Heap Memory Debugging` and select `Abort if memory allocation fails` option (see *CONFIG_HEAP_ABORT_WHEN_ALLOCATION_FAILS*).

The example below show how to register a allocation failure callback:

```
#include "esp_heap_caps.h"

void heap_caps_alloc_failed_hook(size_t requested_size, uint32_t caps, const char␣
↪*function_name)
{
  printf("%s was called but failed to allocate %d bytes with 0x%X capabilities. \n
↪",function_name, requested_size, caps);
}

void app_main()
{
    ...
    esp_err_t error = heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback(heap_caps_alloc_
↪failed_hook);
    ...
    void *ptr = heap_caps_malloc(allocation_size, MALLOC_CAP_DEFAULT);
    ...
}
```

Finding Heap Corruption Memory corruption can be one of the hardest classes of bugs to find and fix, as one area of memory can be corrupted from a totally different place. Some tips:

- A crash with a `CORRUPT HEAP:` message will usually include a stack trace, but this stack trace is rarely useful. The crash is the symptom of memory corruption when the system realises the heap is corrupt, but usually the corruption happened elsewhere and earlier in time.
- Increasing the Heap memory debugging *Configuration* level to "Light impact" or "Comprehensive" can give you a more accurate message with the first corrupt memory address.
- Adding regular calls to *heap_caps_check_integrity_all()* or *heap_caps_check_integrity_addr()* in your code will help you pin down the exact time that the corruption happened. You can move these checks around to "close in on" the section of code that corrupted the heap.
- Based on the memory address which is being corrupted, you can use *JTAG debugging* to set a watchpoint on this address and have the CPU halt when it is written to.
- If you don't have JTAG, but you do know roughly when the corruption happens, then you can set a watchpoint in software just beforehand via `esp_cpu_set_watchpoint()`. A fatal exception will occur when the watchpoint triggers. For example `esp_cpu_set_watchpoint(0, (void *)addr, 4, ESP_WATCHPOINT_STORE`. Note that watchpoints are per-CPU and are set on the current running CPU only, so if you don't know which CPU is corrupting memory then you will need to call this function on both CPUs.
- For buffer overflows, *heap tracing* in `HEAP_TRACE_ALL` mode lets you see which callers are allocating which addresses from the heap. See *Heap Tracing To Find Heap Corruption* for more details. If you can find the function which allocates memory with an address immediately before the address which is corrupted, this will probably be the function which overflows the buffer.
- Calling *heap_caps_dump()* or *heap_caps_dump_all()* can give an indication of what heap blocks are surrounding the corrupted region and may have overflowed/underflowed/etc.

Configuration Temporarily increasing the heap corruption detection level can give more detailed information about heap corruption errors.

In the project configuration menu, under `Component config` there is a menu `Heap memory debugging`. The setting *CONFIG_HEAP_CORRUPTION_DETECTION* can be set to one of three levels:

Basic (no poisoning) This is the default level. No special heap corruption features are enabled, but provided assertions are enabled (the default configuration) then a heap corruption error will be printed if any of the heap's internal data structures appear overwritten or corrupted. This usually indicates a buffer overrun or out of bounds write.

If assertions are enabled, an assertion will also trigger if a double-free occurs (the same memory is freed twice).

Calling *heap_caps_check_integrity()* in Basic mode will check the integrity of all heap structures, and print errors if any appear to be corrupted.

Light Impact At this level, heap memory is additionally "poisoned" with head and tail "canary bytes" before and after each block which is allocated. If an application writes outside the bounds of allocated buffers, the canary bytes will be corrupted and the integrity check will fail.

The head canary word is 0xABBA1234 (3412BAAB in byte order), and the tail canary word is 0xBAAD5678 (7856ADBA in byte order).

"Basic" heap corruption checks can also detect most out of bounds writes, but this setting is more precise as even a single byte overrun can be detected. With Basic heap checks, the number of overrun bytes before a failure is detected will depend on the properties of the heap.

Enabling "Light Impact" checking increases memory usage, each individual allocation will use 9 to 12 additional bytes of memory (depending on alignment).

Each time `free()` is called in Light Impact mode, the head and tail canary bytes of the buffer being freed are checked against the expected values.

When *heap_caps_check_integrity()* is called, all allocated blocks of heap memory have their canary bytes checked against the expected values.

In both cases, the check is that the first 4 bytes of an allocated block (before the buffer returned to the user) should be the word 0xABBA1234. Then the last 4 bytes of the allocated block (after the buffer returned to the user) should be the word 0xBAAD5678.

Different values usually indicate buffer underrun or overrun, respectively.

Comprehensive This level incorporates the "light impact" detection features plus additional checks for uninitialised-access and use-after-free bugs. In this mode, all freshly allocated memory is filled with the pattern 0xCE, and all freed memory is filled with the pattern 0xFE.

Enabling "Comprehensive" detection has a substantial runtime performance impact (as all memory needs to be set to the allocation patterns each time a malloc/free completes, and the memory also needs to be checked each time.) However it allows easier detection of memory corruption bugs which are much more subtle to find otherwise. It is recommended to only enable this mode when debugging, not in production.

Crashes in Comprehensive Mode If an application crashes reading/writing an address related to 0xCECECECE in Comprehensive mode, this indicates it has read uninitialized memory. The application should be changed to either use calloc() (which zeroes memory), or initialize the memory before using it. The value 0xCECECECE may also be seen in stack-allocated automatic variables, because in IDF most task stacks are originally allocated from the heap and in C stack memory is uninitialized by default.

If an application crashes and the exception register dump indicates that some addresses or values were 0xFEFEFEFE, this indicates it is reading heap memory after it has been freed (a "use after free bug".) The application should be changed to not access heap memory after it has been freed.

If a call to malloc() or realloc() causes a crash because it expected to find the pattern 0xFEFEFEFE in free memory and a different pattern was found, then this indicates the app has a use-after-free bug where it is writing to memory which has already been freed.

Manual Heap Checks in Comprehensive Mode Calls to *heap_caps_check_integrity()* may print errors relating to 0xFEFEFEFE, 0xABBA1234 or 0xBAAD5678. In each case the checker is expecting to find a given pattern, and will error out if this is not found:

- For free heap blocks, the checker expects to find all bytes set to 0xFE. Any other values indicate a use-after-free bug where free memory has been incorrectly overwritten.
- For allocated heap blocks, the behaviour is the same as for *Light Impact* mode. The canary bytes 0xABBA1234 and 0xBAAD5678 are checked at the head and tail of each allocated buffer, and any variation indicates a buffer overrun/underrun.

Heap Task Tracking

Heap Task Tracking can be used to get per task info for heap memory allocation. Application has to specify the heap capabilities for which the heap allocation is to be tracked.

Example code is provided in system/heap_task_tracking

Heap Tracing

Heap Tracing allows tracing of code which allocates/frees memory. Two tracing modes are supported:

- Standalone. In this mode trace data are kept on-board, so the size of gathered information is limited by the buffer assigned for that purposes. Analysis is done by the on-board code. There are a couple of APIs available for accessing and dumping collected info.
- Host-based. This mode does not have the limitation of the standalone mode, because trace data are sent to the host over JTAG connection using app_trace library. Later on they can be analysed using special tools.

Heap tracing can perform two functions:

- Leak checking: find memory which is allocated and never freed.
- Heap use analysis: show all functions that are allocating/freeing memory while the trace is running.

How To Diagnose Memory Leaks If you suspect a memory leak, the first step is to figure out which part of the program is leaking memory. Use the `xPortGetFreeHeapSize()`, *heap_caps_get_free_size()*, or *related functions* to track memory use over the life of the application. Try to narrow the leak down to a single function or sequence of functions where free memory always decreases and never recovers.

Standalone Mode Once you've identified the code which you think is leaking:

- In the project configuration menu, navigate to `Component settings` -> `Heap Memory Debugging` -> `Heap tracing` and select `Standalone` option (see *CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST*).
- Call the function *heap_trace_init_standalone()* early in the program, to register a buffer which can be used to record the memory trace.
- Call the function *heap_trace_start()* to begin recording all mallocs/frees in the system. Call this immediately before the piece of code which you suspect is leaking memory.
- Call the function *heap_trace_stop()* to stop the trace once the suspect piece of code has finished executing.
- Call the function *heap_trace_dump()* to dump the results of the heap trace.

An example:

```
#include "esp_heap_trace.h"

#define NUM_RECORDS 100
static heap_trace_record_t trace_record[NUM_RECORDS]; // This buffer must be in␣
↪internal RAM

...

void app_main()
{
    ...
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_init_standalone(trace_record, NUM_RECORDS) );
    ...
}

void some_function()
{
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_start(HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS) );

    do_something_you_suspect_is_leaking();

    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_stop() );
    heap_trace_dump();
    ...
}
```

The output from the heap trace will look something like this:

```
2 allocations trace (100 entry buffer)
32 bytes (@ 0x3ffaf214) allocated CPU 0 ccount 0x2e9b7384 caller␣
↪0x400d276d:0x400d27c1
0x400d276d: leak_some_memory at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:27

0x400d27c1: blink_task at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/./blink.c:52

8 bytes (@ 0x3ffaf804) allocated CPU 0 ccount 0x2e9b79c0 caller␣
↪0x400d2776:0x400d27c1
0x400d2776: leak_some_memory at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:29

0x400d27c1: blink_task at /path/to/idf/examples/get-started/blink/main/./blink.c:52

40 bytes 'leaked' in trace (2 allocations)
total allocations 2 total frees 0
```

(Above example output is using *IDF Monitor* to automatically decode PC addresses to their source files & line number.)

The first line indicates how many allocation entries are in the buffer, compared to its total size.

In `HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS` mode, for each traced memory allocation which has not already been freed a line is printed with:

- `XX bytes` is number of bytes allocated
- `@ 0x...` is the heap address returned from malloc/calloc.
- `CPU x` is the CPU (0 or 1) running when the allocation was made.
- `ccount 0x...` is the CCOUNT (CPU cycle count) register value when the allocation was mode. Is different for CPU 0 vs CPU 1.
- `caller 0x...` gives the call stack of the call to malloc()/free(), as a list of PC addresses. These can be decoded to source files and line numbers, as shown above.

The depth of the call stack recorded for each trace entry can be configured in the project configuration menu, under `Heap Memory Debugging` -> `Enable heap tracing` -> `Heap tracing stack depth`. Up to 10

stack frames can be recorded for each allocation (the default is 2). Each additional stack frame increases the memory usage of each `heap_trace_record_t` record by eight bytes.

Finally, the total number of 'leaked' bytes (bytes allocated but not freed while trace was running) is printed, and the total number of allocations this represents.

A warning will be printed if the trace buffer was not large enough to hold all the allocations which happened. If you see this warning, consider either shortening the tracing period or increasing the number of records in the trace buffer.

Host-Based Mode Once you've identified the code which you think is leaking:

- In the project configuration menu, navigate to `Component settings` -> `Heap Memory Debugging` -> *CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST* and select `Host-Based`.
- In the project configuration menu, navigate to `Component settings` -> `Application Level Tracing` -> *CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION* and select `Trace memory`.
- In the project configuration menu, navigate to `Component settings` -> `Application Level Tracing` -> `FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing` and enable *CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE*.
- Call the function *`heap_trace_init_tohost()`* early in the program, to initialize JTAG heap tracing module.
- Call the function *`heap_trace_start()`* to begin recording all mallocs/frees in the system. Call this immediately before the piece of code which you suspect is leaking memory. In host-based mode argument to this function is ignored and heap tracing module behaves like `HEAP_TRACE_ALL` was passed: all allocations and deallocations are sent to the host.
- Call the function *`heap_trace_stop()`* to stop the trace once the suspect piece of code has finished executing.

An example:

```
#include "esp_heap_trace.h"

...

void app_main()
{
    ...
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_init_tohost() );
    ...
}

void some_function()
{
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_start(HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS) );

    do_something_you_suspect_is_leaking();

    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( heap_trace_stop() );
    ...
}
```

To gather and analyse heap trace do the following on the host:

1. Build the program and download it to the target as described in *Getting Started Guide*.
2. Run OpenOCD (see *JTAG Debugging*).

Note: In order to use this feature you need OpenOCD version *v0.10.0-esp32-20181105* or later.

---

3. You can use GDB to start and/or stop tracing automatically. To do this you need to prepare special `gdbinit` file:

```
target remote :3333

mon reset halt
flushregs

tb heap_trace_start
commands
mon esp sysview start file:///tmp/heap.svdat
c
end

tb heap_trace_stop
commands
mon esp sysview stop
end

c
```

Using this file GDB will connect to the target, reset it, and start tracing when program hits breakpoint at *heap_trace_start()*. Trace data will be saved to `/tmp/heap_log.svdat`. Tracing will be stopped when program hits breakpoint at *heap_trace_stop()*.

4. Run GDB using the following command `xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb -x gdbinit </path/to/program/elf>`
5. Quit GDB when program stops at *heap_trace_stop()*. Trace data are saved in `/tmp/heap.svdat`
6. Run processing script `$IDF_PATH/tools/esp_app_trace/sysviewtrace_proc.py -p -b </path/to/program/elf> /tmp/heap_log.svdat`

The output from the heap trace will look something like this:

```
Parse trace from '/tmp/heap.svdat'...
Stop parsing trace. (Timeout 0.000000 sec while reading 1 bytes!)
Process events from '['/tmp/heap.svdat']'...
[0.002244575] HEAP: Allocated 1 bytes @ 0x3ffaffd8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.002258425] HEAP: Allocated 2 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.002563725] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.002782950] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffb40b8 from task "main" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590

[0.002798700] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffb50bc from task "main" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/tasks.c:4590

[0.102436025] HEAP: Allocated 2 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.102449800] HEAP: Allocated 4 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.102666150] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202436200] HEAP: Allocated 3 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202451725] HEAP: Allocated 6 bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202667075] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302436000] HEAP: Allocated 4 bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302451475] HEAP: Allocated 8 bytes @ 0x3ffb40b8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:48
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302667500] HEAP: Freed bytes @ 0x3ffb40b8 from task "free" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:31 (discriminator 9)
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

Processing completed.
Processed 1019 events
=============== HEAP TRACE REPORT ===============
Processed 14 heap events.
[0.002244575] HEAP: Allocated 1 bytes @ 0x3ffaffd8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.102436025] HEAP: Allocated 2 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.202436200] HEAP: Allocated 3 bytes @ 0x3ffaffe8 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

[0.302436000] HEAP: Allocated 4 bytes @ 0x3ffafff0 from task "alloc" on core 0 by:
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/examples/system/sysview_tracing_heap_log/main/
↪sysview_heap_log.c:47
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
/home/user/projects/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/port.c:355 (discriminator 1)

Found 10 leaked bytes in 4 blocks.
```

Heap Tracing To Find Heap Corruption Heap tracing can also be used to help track down heap corruption. When a region in heap is corrupted, it may be from some other part of the program which allocated memory at a nearby address.

If you have some idea at what time the corruption occurred, enabling heap tracing in `HEAP_TRACE_ALL` mode allows you to record all of the functions which allocated memory, and the addresses of the allocations.

Using heap tracing in this way is very similar to memory leak detection as described above. For memory which is allocated and not freed, the output is the same. However, records will also be shown for memory which has been freed.

Performance Impact Enabling heap tracing in menuconfig increases the code size of your program, and has a very small negative impact on performance of heap allocation/free operations even when heap tracing is not running.

When heap tracing is running, heap allocation/free operations are substantially slower than when heap tracing is stopped. Increasing the depth of stack frames recorded for each allocation (see above) will also increase this performance impact.

False-Positive Memory Leaks Not everything printed by *`heap_trace_dump()`* is necessarily a memory leak. Among things which may show up here, but are not memory leaks:

- Any memory which is allocated after *`heap_trace_start()`* but then freed after *`heap_trace_stop()`* will appear in the leak dump.
- Allocations may be made by other tasks in the system. Depending on the timing of these tasks, it's quite possible this memory is freed after *`heap_trace_stop()`* is called.
- The first time a task uses stdio - for example, when it calls `printf()` - a lock (RTOS mutex semaphore) is allocated by the libc. This allocation lasts until the task is deleted.
- Certain uses of `printf()`, such as printing floating point numbers, will allocate some memory from the heap on demand. These allocations last until the task is deleted.
- The Bluetooth, WiFi, and TCP/IP libraries will allocate heap memory buffers to handle incoming or outgoing data. These memory buffers are usually short lived, but some may be shown in the heap leak trace if the data was received/transmitted by the lower levels of the network while the leak trace was running.
- TCP connections will continue to use some memory after they are closed, because of the `TIME_WAIT` state. After the `TIME_WAIT` period has completed, this memory will be freed.

One way to differentiate between "real" and "false positive" memory leaks is to call the suspect code multiple times while tracing is running, and look for patterns (multiple matching allocations) in the heap trace output.

API Reference - Heap Tracing

Header File

- heap/include/esp_heap_trace.h

Functions

esp_err_t **heap_trace_init_standalone** (*heap_trace_record_t* *record_buffer, size_t *num_records*)

Initialise heap tracing in standalone mode.

This function must be called before any other heap tracing functions.

To disable heap tracing and allow the buffer to be freed, stop tracing and then call heap_trace_init_standalone(NULL, 0);

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing is currently in progress.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing initialised successfully.

Parameters

- `record_buffer`: Provide a buffer to use for heap trace data. Must remain valid any time heap tracing is enabled, meaning it must be allocated from internal memory not in PSRAM.
- `num_records`: Size of the heap trace buffer, as number of record structures.

esp_err_t **heap_trace_init_tohost** (void)

Initialise heap tracing in host-based mode.

This function must be called before any other heap tracing functions.

Return

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing is currently in progress.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing initialised successfully.

esp_err_t **heap_trace_start** (*heap_trace_mode_t mode*)

Start heap tracing. All heap allocations & frees will be traced, until heap_trace_stop() is called.

Note heap_trace_init_standalone() must be called to provide a valid buffer, before this function is called.

Note Calling this function while heap tracing is running will reset the heap trace state and continue tracing.

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE A non-zero-length buffer has not been set via heap_trace_init_standalone().
- ESP_OK Tracing is started.

Parameters

- `mode`: Mode for tracing.
  - HEAP_TRACE_ALL means all heap allocations and frees are traced.
  - HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS means only suspected memory leaks are traced. (When memory is freed, the record is removed from the trace buffer.)

esp_err_t **heap_trace_stop** (void)

Stop heap tracing.

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing was not in progress.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing stopped..

esp_err_t **heap_trace_resume** (void)

Resume heap tracing which was previously stopped.

Unlike heap_trace_start(), this function does not clear the buffer of any pre-existing trace records.

The heap trace mode is the same as when heap_trace_start() was last called (or HEAP_TRACE_ALL if heap_trace_start() was never called).

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing was already started.
- ESP_OK Heap tracing resumed.

size_t **heap_trace_get_count** (void)

Return number of records in the heap trace buffer.

It is safe to call this function while heap tracing is running.

esp_err_t **heap_trace_get** (size_t *index*, *heap_trace_record_t *record*)

Return a raw record from the heap trace buffer.

Note It is safe to call this function while heap tracing is running, however in HEAP_TRACE_LEAK mode record indexing may skip entries unless heap tracing is stopped first.

Return

- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Project was compiled without heap tracing enabled in menuconfig.

- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE Heap tracing was not initialised.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Index is out of bounds for current heap trace record count.
- ESP_OK Record returned successfully.

Parameters

- `index`: Index (zero-based) of the record to return.
- `[out] record`: Record where the heap trace record will be copied.

void **heap_trace_dump**(void)

Dump heap trace record data to stdout.

Note It is safe to call this function while heap tracing is running, however in HEAP_TRACE_LEAK mode the dump may skip entries unless heap tracing is stopped first.

Structures

struct heap_trace_record_t

Trace record data type. Stores information about an allocated region of memory.

Public Members

uint32_t **ccount**

CCOUNT of the CPU when the allocation was made. LSB (bit value 1) is the CPU number (0 or 1).

void ***address**

Address which was allocated.

size_t **size**

Size of the allocation.

void ***alloced_by**[**CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH**]

Call stack of the caller which allocated the memory.

void ***freed_by**[**CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH**]

Call stack of the caller which freed the memory (all zero if not freed.)

Macros

CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH

Enumerations

enum heap_trace_mode_t

Values:

HEAP_TRACE_ALL

HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS

2.6.14 High Resolution Timer

Overview

Although FreeRTOS provides software timers, these timers have a few limitations:

- Maximum resolution is equal to RTOS tick period
- Timer callbacks are dispatched from a low-priority task

Hardware timers are free from both of the limitations, but often they are less convenient to use. For example, application components may need timer events to fire at certain times in the future, but the hardware timer only contains one "compare" value used for interrupt generation. This means that some facility needs to be built on top of the hardware timer to manage the list of pending events can dispatch the callbacks for these events as corresponding hardware interrupts happen.

An interrupt level of the handler depends on the *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_INTERRUPT_LEVEL* option. It allows to set this: 1, 2 or 3 level (by default 1). Raising the level, the interrupt handler can reduce the timer processing delay.

`esp_timer` set of APIs provides one-shot and periodic timers, microsecond time resolution, and 64-bit range.

Internally, `esp_timer` uses a 64-bit hardware timer, where the implemention depends on *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_IMPL*. Available options are:

- SYSTIMER

Timer callbacks can dispatched by two methods:

- `ESP_TIMER_TASK`
- `ESP_TIMER_ISR`. Available only if *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_SUPPORTS_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD* is enabled (by default disabled).

`ESP_TIMER_TASK`. Timer callbacks are dispatched from a high-priority `esp_timer` task. Because all the callbacks are dispatched from the same task, it is recommended to only do the minimal possible amount of work from the callback itself, posting an event to a lower priority task using a queue instead.

If other tasks with priority higher than `esp_timer` are running, callback dispatching will be delayed until `esp_timer` task has a chance to run. For example, this will happen if a SPI Flash operation is in progress.

`ESP_TIMER_ISR`. Timer callbacks are dispatched directly from the timer interrupt handler. This method is useful for some simple callbacks which aim for lower latency.

Creating and starting a timer, and dispatching the callback takes some time. Therefore there is a lower limit to the timeout value of one-shot `esp_timer`. If *`esp_timer_start_once()`* is called with a timeout value less than 20us, the callback will be dispatched only after approximately 20us.

Periodic `esp_timer` also imposes a 50us restriction on the minimal timer period. Periodic software timers with period of less than 50us are not practical since they would consume most of the CPU time. Consider using dedicated hardware peripherals or DMA features if you find that a timer with small period is required.

Using `esp_timer` APIs

Single timer is represented by *`esp_timer_handle_t`* type. Timer has a callback function associated with it. This callback function is called from the `esp_timer` task each time the timer elapses.

- To create a timer, call *`esp_timer_create()`*.
- To delete the timer when it is no longer needed, call *`esp_timer_delete()`*.

The timer can be started in one-shot mode or in periodic mode.

- To start the timer in one-shot mode, call *`esp_timer_start_once()`*, passing the time interval after which the callback should be called. When the callback gets called, the timer is considered to be stopped.
- To start the timer in periodic mode, call *`esp_timer_start_periodic()`*, passing the period with which the callback should be called. The timer keeps running until *`esp_timer_stop()`* is called.

Note that the timer must not be running when *`esp_timer_start_once()`* or *`esp_timer_start_periodic()`* is called. To restart a running timer, call *`esp_timer_stop()`* first, then call one of the start functions.

Callback functions

Timer callbacks which are processed by `ESP_TIMER_ISR` method should not call the context switch call - `portYIELD_FROM_ISR()`, instead of this you should use the `esp_timer_isr_dispatch_need_yield()` function. The context switch will be done after all ISR dispatch timers have been processed, if required by the system.

esp_timer during the light sleep

During light sleep, the esp_timer counter stops and no callback functions are called. Instead, the time is counted by the RTC counter. Upon waking up, the system gets the difference between the counters and calls a function that advances the esp_timer counter. Since the counter has been advanced, the system starts calling callbacks that were not called during sleep. The number of callbacks depends on the duration of the sleep and the period of the timers. It can lead to overflow of some queues. This only applies to periodic timers, one-shot timers will be called once.

This behavior can be changed by calling `esp_timer_stop()` before sleeping. In some cases, this can be inconvenient, and instead of the stop function, you can use the *skip_unhandled_events* option during `esp_timer_create()`. When the *skip_unhandled_events* is true, if a periodic timer expires one or more times during light sleep then only one callback is called on wake.

Handling callbacks

esp_timer is designed to achieve a high-resolution low latency timer and the ability to handle delayed events. If the timer is late then the callback will be called as soon as possible, it will not be lost. In the worst case, when the timer has not been processed for more than one period (for periodic timers), in this case the callbacks will be called one after the other without waiting for the set period. This can be bad for some applications, and the *skip_unhandled_events* option was introduced to eliminate this behavior. If *skip_unhandled_events* is set then a periodic timer that has expired multiple times without being able to call the callback will still result in only one callback event once processing is possible.

Obtaining Current Time

`esp_timer` also provides a convenience function to obtain the time passed since start-up, with microsecond precision: `esp_timer_get_time()`. This function returns the number of microseconds since `esp_timer` was initialized, which usually happens shortly before `app_main` function is called.

Unlike *gettimeofday* function, values returned by `esp_timer_get_time()`:

- Start from zero after the chip wakes up from deep sleep
- Do not have timezone or DST adjustments applied

Application Example

The following example illustrates usage of `esp_timer` APIs: system/esp_timer.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_timer/include/esp_timer.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_timer_init** (void)

Initialize esp_timer library.

Note This function is called from startup code. Applications do not need to call this function before using other esp_timer APIs.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if allocation has failed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if already initialized
- other errors from interrupt allocator

esp_err_t **esp_timer_deinit** (void)

De-initialize esp_timer library.

Note Normally this function should not be called from applications

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if not yet initialized

esp_err_t **esp_timer_create**(**const** *esp_timer_create_args_t* **create_args*, *esp_timer_handle_t* **out_handle*)

Create an esp_timer instance.

Note When done using the timer, delete it with esp_timer_delete function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if some of the create_args are not valid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if esp_timer library is not initialized yet
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if memory allocation fails

Parameters

- `create_args`: Pointer to a structure with timer creation arguments. Not saved by the library, can be allocated on the stack.
- `[out] out_handle`: Output, pointer to esp_timer_handle_t variable which will hold the created timer handle.

esp_err_t **esp_timer_start_once**(*esp_timer_handle_t* *timer*, uint64_t *timeout_us*)

Start one-shot timer.

Timer should not be running when this function is called.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is already running

Parameters

- `timer`: timer handle created using esp_timer_create
- `timeout_us`: timer timeout, in microseconds relative to the current moment

esp_err_t **esp_timer_start_periodic**(*esp_timer_handle_t* *timer*, uint64_t *period*)

Start a periodic timer.

Timer should not be running when this function is called. This function will start the timer which will trigger every ‘period’ microseconds.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is already running

Parameters

- `timer`: timer handle created using esp_timer_create
- `period`: timer period, in microseconds

esp_err_t **esp_timer_stop**(*esp_timer_handle_t* *timer*)

Stop the timer.

This function stops the timer previously started using esp_timer_start_once or esp_timer_start_periodic.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is not running

Parameters

- `timer`: timer handle created using esp_timer_create

esp_err_t **esp_timer_delete**(*esp_timer_handle_t* *timer*)

Delete an esp_timer instance.

The timer must be stopped before deleting. A one-shot timer which has expired does not need to be stopped.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the timer is running

Parameters

- `timer`: timer handle allocated using esp_timer_create

int64_t **esp_timer_get_time**(void)
Get time in microseconds since boot.

Return number of microseconds since underlying timer has been started

int64_t **esp_timer_get_next_alarm**(void)
Get the timestamp when the next timeout is expected to occur.

Return Timestamp of the nearest timer event, in microseconds. The timebase is the same as for the values returned by esp_timer_get_time.

esp_err_t **esp_timer_dump**(FILE *_stream_)
Dump the list of timers to a stream.

If CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING option is enabled, this prints the list of all the existing timers. Otherwise, only the list active timers is printed.

The format is:

name period alarm times_armed times_triggered total_callback_run_time

where:

name —timer name (if CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING is defined), or timer pointer period —period of timer, in microseconds, or 0 for one-shot timer alarm - time of the next alarm, in microseconds since boot, or 0 if the timer is not started

The following fields are printed if CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING is defined:

times_armed —number of times the timer was armed via esp_timer_start_X times_triggered - number of times the callback was called total_callback_run_time - total time taken by callback to execute, across all calls

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if can not allocate temporary buffer for the output

Parameters

- `stream`: stream (such as stdout) to dump the information to

Structures

struct esp_timer_create_args_t
Timer configuration passed to esp_timer_create.

Public Members

esp_timer_cb_t **callback**
Function to call when timer expires.

void ***arg**
Argument to pass to the callback.

esp_timer_dispatch_t **dispatch_method**
Call the callback from task or from ISR.

const char ***name**
Timer name, used in esp_timer_dump function.

bool **skip_unhandled_events**
Skip unhandled events for periodic timers.

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_timer ***esp_timer_handle_t**

Opaque type representing a single esp_timer.

typedef void (***esp_timer_cb_t**) (void *arg)

Timer callback function type.

Parameters

- `arg`: pointer to opaque user-specific data

Enumerations

enum esp_timer_dispatch_t

Method for dispatching timer callback.

Values:

ESP_TIMER_TASK

Callback is called from timer task.

ESP_TIMER_MAX

Count of the methods for dispatching timer callback.

2.6.15 Call function with external stack

Overview

A given function can be executed with a user allocated stack space which is independent of current task stack, this mechanism can be used to save stack space wasted by tasks which call a common function with intensive stack usage such as *printf*. The given function can be called inside the shared stack space which is a callback function deferred by calling *esp_execute_shared_stack_function()*, passing that function as parameter

Usage

esp_execute_shared_stack_function() takes four arguments, a mutex object allocated by the caller, which is used to protect if the same function shares its allocated stack, a pointer to the top of stack used to that fuction, the size in bytes of stack and, a pointer to a user function where the shared stack space will reside, after calling the function, the user defined function will be deferred as a callback where functions can be called using the user allocated space without taking space from current task stack.

The usage may looks like the code below:

```
void external_stack_function(void)
{
    printf("Executing this printf from external stack! \n");
}

//Let's suppose we wanting to call printf using a separated stack space
//allowing app to reduce its stack size.
void app_main()
{
    //Allocate a stack buffer, from heap or as a static form:
    portSTACK_TYPE *shared_stack = malloc(8192 * sizeof(portSTACK_TYPE));
    assert(shared_stack != NULL);

    //Allocate a mutex to protect its usage:
    SemaphoreHandle_t printf_lock = xSemaphoreCreateMutex();
    assert(printf_lock != NULL);

    //Call the desired function using the macro helper:
    esp_execute_shared_stack_function(printf_lock,
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
                                    shared_stack,
                                    8192,
                                    external_stack_function);

    vSemaphoreDelete(printf_lock);
    free(shared_stack);
}
```

API Reference

Header File

- esp_system/include/esp_expression_with_stack.h

Functions

void **esp_execute_shared_stack_function**(*SemaphoreHandle_t* *lock*, void **stack*, size_t *stack_size*, *shared_stack_function* *function*)

Calls user defined shared stack space function.

Note if either lock, stack or stack size is invalid, the expression will be called using the current stack.

Parameters

- `lock`: Mutex object to protect in case of shared stack
- `stack`: Pointer to user alocated stack
- `stack_size`: Size of current stack in bytes
- `function`: pointer to the shared stack function to be executed

Macros

ESP_EXECUTE_EXPRESSION_WITH_STACK(lock, stack, stack_size, expression)

Type Definitions

typedef void (***shared_stack_function**)(void)

2.6.16 Interrupt allocation

Overview

The ESP32-S2 has one core, with 32 interrupts. Each interrupt has a certain priority level, most (but not all) interrupts are connected to the interrupt mux.

Because there are more interrupt sources than interrupts, sometimes it makes sense to share an interrupt in multiple drivers. The *esp_intr_alloc()* abstraction exists to hide all these implementation details.

A driver can allocate an interrupt for a certain peripheral by calling *esp_intr_alloc()* (or *esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus()*). It can use the flags passed to this function to set the type of interrupt allocated, specifying a specific level or trigger method. The interrupt allocation code will then find an applicable interrupt, use the interrupt mux to hook it up to the peripheral, and install the given interrupt handler and ISR to it.

This code has two different types of interrupts it handles differently: Shared interrupts and non-shared interrupts. The simplest of the two are non-shared interrupts: a separate interrupt is allocated per esp_intr_alloc call and this interrupt is solely used for the peripheral attached to it, with only one ISR that will get called. Shared interrupts can have multiple peripherals triggering it, with multiple ISRs being called when one of the peripherals attached signals an interrupt. Thus, ISRs that are intended for shared interrupts should check the interrupt status of the peripheral they service in order to see if any action is required.

Non-shared interrupts can be either level- or edge-triggered. Shared interrupts can only be level interrupts (because of the chance of missed interrupts when edge interrupts are used.) (The logic behind this: DevA and DevB share an

int. DevB signals an int. Int line goes high. ISR handler calls code for DevA -> does nothing. ISR handler calls code for DevB, but while doing that, DevA signals an int. ISR DevB is done, clears int for DevB, exits interrupt code. Now an interrupt for DevA is still pending, but because the int line never went low (DevA kept it high even when the int for DevB was cleared) the interrupt is never serviced.)

Multicore issues

Peripherals that can generate interrupts can be divided in two types:

- External peripherals, within the ESP32-S2 but outside the Xtensa cores themselves. Most ESP32-S2 peripherals are of this type.
- Internal peripherals, part of the Xtensa CPU cores themselves.

Interrupt handling differs slightly between these two types of peripherals.

Internal peripheral interrupts Each Xtensa CPU core has its own set of six internal peripherals:

- Three timer comparators
- A performance monitor
- Two software interrupts.

Internal interrupt sources are defined in esp_intr_alloc.h as `ETS_INTERNAL_*_INTR_SOURCE`.

These peripherals can only be configured from the core they are associated with. When generating an interrupt, the interrupt they generate is hard-wired to their associated core; it's not possible to have e.g. an internal timer comparator of one core generate an interrupt on another core. That is why these sources can only be managed using a task running on that specific core. Internal interrupt sources are still allocatable using esp_intr_alloc as normal, but they cannot be shared and will always have a fixed interrupt level (namely, the one associated in hardware with the peripheral).

External Peripheral Interrupts The remaining interrupt sources are from external peripherals. These are defined in soc/soc.h as `ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE`.

Non-internal interrupt slots in both CPU cores are wired to an interrupt multiplexer, which can be used to route any external interrupt source to any of these interrupt slots.

- Allocating an external interrupt will always allocate it on the core that does the allocation.
- Freeing an external interrupt must always happen on the same core it was allocated on.
- Disabling and enabling external interrupts from another core is allowed.
- Multiple external interrupt sources can share an interrupt slot by passing `ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED` as a flag to esp_intr_alloc().

Care should be taken when calling esp_intr_alloc() from a task which is not pinned to a core. During task switching, these tasks can migrate between cores. Therefore it is impossible to tell which CPU the interrupt is allocated on, which makes it difficult to free the interrupt handle and may also cause debugging difficulties. It is advised to use xTaskCreatePinnedToCore() with a specific CoreID argument to create tasks that will allocate interrupts. In the case of internal interrupt sources, this is required.

IRAM-Safe Interrupt Handlers

The `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` flag registers an interrupt handler that always runs from IRAM (and reads all its data from DRAM), and therefore does not need to be disabled during flash erase and write operations.

This is useful for interrupts which need a guaranteed minimum execution latency, as flash write and erase operations can be slow (erases can take tens or hundreds of milliseconds to complete).

It can also be useful to keep an interrupt handler in IRAM if it is called very frequently, to avoid flash cache misses.

Refer to the *SPI flash API documentation* for more details.

Multiple Handlers Sharing A Source

Several handlers can be assigned to a same source, given that all handlers are allocated using the `ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED` flag. They' ll be all allocated to the interrupt, which the source is attached to, and called sequentially when the source is active. The handlers can be disabled and freed individually. The source is attached to the interrupt (enabled), if one or more handlers are enabled, otherwise detached. A handler will never be called when disabled, while **its source may still be triggered** if any one of its handler enabled.

Sources attached to non-shared interrupt do not support this feature.

Though the framework support this feature, you have to use it *very carefully*. There usually exist 2 ways to stop a interrupt from being triggered: *disable the source* or *mask peripheral interrupt status*. IDF only handles the enabling and disabling of the source itself, leaving status and mask bits to be handled by users. **Status bits should always be masked before the handler responsible for it is disabled, or the status should be handled in other enabled interrupt properly**. You may leave some status bits unhandled if you just disable one of all the handlers without masking the status bits, which causes the interrupt to trigger infinitely resulting in a system crash.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_hw_support/include/esp_intr_alloc.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_intr_mark_shared**(int *intno*, int *cpu*, bool *is_in_iram*)

Mark an interrupt as a shared interrupt.

This will mark a certain interrupt on the specified CPU as an interrupt that can be used to hook shared interrupt handlers to.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if cpu or intno is invalid ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

- `intno`: The number of the interrupt (0-31)
- `cpu`: CPU on which the interrupt should be marked as shared (0 or 1)
- `is_in_iram`: Shared interrupt is for handlers that reside in IRAM and the int can be left enabled while the flash cache is disabled.

esp_err_t **esp_intr_reserve**(int *intno*, int *cpu*)

Reserve an interrupt to be used outside of this framework.

This will mark a certain interrupt on the specified CPU as reserved, not to be allocated for any reason.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if cpu or intno is invalid ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

- `intno`: The number of the interrupt (0-31)
- `cpu`: CPU on which the interrupt should be marked as shared (0 or 1)

esp_err_t **esp_intr_alloc**(int *source*, int *flags*, *intr_handler_t* *handler*, void **arg*, *intr_handle_t* **ret_handle*)

Allocate an interrupt with the given parameters.

This finds an interrupt that matches the restrictions as given in the flags parameter, maps the given interrupt source to it and hooks up the given interrupt handler (with optional argument) as well. If needed, it can return a handle for the interrupt as well.

The interrupt will always be allocated on the core that runs this function.

If ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM flag is used, and handler address is not in IRAM or RTC_FAST_MEM, then ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG is returned.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

- `source`: The interrupt source. One of the ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE interrupt mux sources, as defined in soc/soc.h, or one of the internal ETS_INTERNAL_*_INTR_SOURCE sources as defined in this header.
- `flags`: An ORred mask of the ESP_INTR_FLAG_* defines. These restrict the choice of interrupts that this routine can choose from. If this value is 0, it will default to allocating a non-shared interrupt of level 1, 2 or 3. If this is ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED, it will allocate a shared interrupt of level 1. Setting ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED will return from this function with the interrupt disabled.
- `handler`: The interrupt handler. Must be NULL when an interrupt of level >3 is requested, because these types of interrupts aren't C-callable.
- `arg`: Optional argument for passed to the interrupt handler
- `ret_handle`: Pointer to an intr_handle_t to store a handle that can later be used to request details or free the interrupt. Can be NULL if no handle is required.

esp_err_t **esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus** (int *source*, int *flags*, uint32_t *intrstatusreg*, uint32_t *intrstatusmask*, *intr_handler_t* *handler*, void *arg, *intr_handle_t* *ret_handle)

Allocate an interrupt with the given parameters.

This essentially does the same as esp_intr_alloc, but allows specifying a register and mask combo. For shared interrupts, the handler is only called if a read from the specified register, ANDed with the mask, returns non-zero. By passing an interrupt status register address and a fitting mask, this can be used to accelerate interrupt handling in the case a shared interrupt is triggered; by checking the interrupt statuses first, the code can decide which ISRs can be skipped

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND No free interrupt found with the specified flags ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

- `source`: The interrupt source. One of the ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE interrupt mux sources, as defined in soc/soc.h, or one of the internal ETS_INTERNAL_*_INTR_SOURCE sources as defined in this header.
- `flags`: An ORred mask of the ESP_INTR_FLAG_* defines. These restrict the choice of interrupts that this routine can choose from. If this value is 0, it will default to allocating a non-shared interrupt of level 1, 2 or 3. If this is ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED, it will allocate a shared interrupt of level 1. Setting ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED will return from this function with the interrupt disabled.
- `intrstatusreg`: The address of an interrupt status register
- `intrstatusmask`: A mask. If a read of address intrstatusreg has any of the bits that are 1 in the mask set, the ISR will be called. If not, it will be skipped.
- `handler`: The interrupt handler. Must be NULL when an interrupt of level >3 is requested, because these types of interrupts aren't C-callable.
- `arg`: Optional argument for passed to the interrupt handler
- `ret_handle`: Pointer to an intr_handle_t to store a handle that can later be used to request details or free the interrupt. Can be NULL if no handle is required.

esp_err_t **esp_intr_free** (*intr_handle_t* *handle*)

Disable and free an interrupt.

Use an interrupt handle to disable the interrupt and release the resources associated with it. If the current core is not the core that registered this interrupt, this routine will be assigned to the core that allocated this interrupt, blocking and waiting until the resource is successfully released.

Note When the handler shares its source with other handlers, the interrupt status bits it's responsible for should be managed properly before freeing it. see `esp_intr_disable` for more details. Please do not call this function in `esp_ipc_call_blocking`.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG the handle is NULL ESP_FAIL failed to release this handle ESP_OK otherwise

Parameters

- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by esp_intr_alloc or esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus

int **esp_intr_get_cpu** (*intr_handle_t* *handle*)

Get CPU number an interrupt is tied to.

Return The core number where the interrupt is allocated
Parameters
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by esp_intr_alloc or esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus

int **esp_intr_get_intno**(*intr_handle_t handle*)
Get the allocated interrupt for a certain handle.

Return The interrupt number
Parameters
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by esp_intr_alloc or esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus

esp_err_t **esp_intr_disable**(*intr_handle_t handle*)
Disable the interrupt associated with the handle.

Note
1. For local interrupts (ESP_INTERNAL_* sources), this function has to be called on the CPU the interrupt is allocated on. Other interrupts have no such restriction.
2. When several handlers sharing a same interrupt source, interrupt status bits, which are handled in the handler to be disabled, should be masked before the disabling, or handled in other enabled interrupts properly. Miss of interrupt status handling will cause infinite interrupt calls and finally system crash.

Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_OK otherwise
Parameters
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by esp_intr_alloc or esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus

esp_err_t **esp_intr_enable**(*intr_handle_t handle*)
Enable the interrupt associated with the handle.

Note For local interrupts (ESP_INTERNAL_* sources), this function has to be called on the CPU the interrupt is allocated on. Other interrupts have no such restriction.
Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_OK otherwise
Parameters
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by esp_intr_alloc or esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus

esp_err_t **esp_intr_set_in_iram**(*intr_handle_t handle*, bool *is_in_iram*)
Set the "in IRAM" status of the handler.

Note Does not work on shared interrupts.
Return ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the combination of arguments is invalid. ESP_OK otherwise
Parameters
- `handle`: The handle, as obtained by esp_intr_alloc or esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus
- `is_in_iram`: Whether the handler associated with this handle resides in IRAM. Handlers residing in IRAM can be called when cache is disabled.

void **esp_intr_noniram_disable**(void)
Disable interrupts that aren't specifically marked as running from IRAM.

void **esp_intr_noniram_enable**(void)
Re-enable interrupts disabled by esp_intr_noniram_disable.

void **esp_intr_enable_source**(int *inum*)
enable the interrupt source based on its number

Parameters
- `inum`: interrupt number from 0 to 31

void **esp_intr_disable_source**(int *inum*)
disable the interrupt source based on its number

Parameters
- `inum`: interrupt number from 0 to 31

static int **esp_intr_flags_to_level**(int *flags*)
Get the lowest interrupt level from the flags.

Parameters
- `flags`: The same flags that pass to `esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus` API

Macros

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL1
Interrupt allocation flags.

These flags can be used to specify which interrupt qualities the code calling esp_intr_alloc* needs.Accept a Level 1 interrupt vector (lowest priority)

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL2
Accept a Level 2 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL3
Accept a Level 3 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL4
Accept a Level 4 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL5
Accept a Level 5 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL6
Accept a Level 6 interrupt vector.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_NMI
Accept a Level 7 interrupt vector (highest priority)

ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED
Interrupt can be shared between ISRs.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_EDGE
Edge-triggered interrupt.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM
ISR can be called if cache is disabled.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED
Return with this interrupt disabled.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LOWMED
Low and medium prio interrupts. These can be handled in C.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_HIGH
High level interrupts. Need to be handled in assembly.

ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVELMASK
Mask for all level flags.

ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER0_INTR_SOURCE
Platform timer 0 interrupt source.

The esp_intr_alloc* functions can allocate an int for all ETS_*_INTR_SOURCE interrupt sources that are routed through the interrupt mux. Apart from these sources, each core also has some internal sources that do not pass through the interrupt mux. To allocate an interrupt for these sources, pass these pseudo-sources to the functions.

ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER1_INTR_SOURCE
Platform timer 1 interrupt source.

ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER2_INTR_SOURCE
Platform timer 2 interrupt source.

ETS_INTERNAL_SW0_INTR_SOURCE
Software int source 1.

ETS_INTERNAL_SW1_INTR_SOURCE
Software int source 2.

ETS_INTERNAL_PROFILING_INTR_SOURCE
Int source for profiling.

ETS_INTERNAL_INTR_SOURCE_OFF
Provides SystemView with positive IRQ IDs, otherwise scheduler events are not shown properly

ESP_INTR_ENABLE(inum)
Enable interrupt by interrupt number

ESP_INTR_DISABLE(inum)
Disable interrupt by interrupt number

Type Definitions

typedef void (***intr_handler_t**)(void *arg)
Function prototype for interrupt handler function

typedef struct *intr_handle_data_t* **intr_handle_data_t**
Interrupt handler associated data structure

typedef *intr_handle_data_t* ***intr_handle_t**
Handle to an interrupt handler

2.6.17 Logging library

Overview

The logging library provides two ways for setting log verbosity:

- **At compile time**: in menuconfig, set the verbosity level using the option `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL`. All logging statements for verbosity levels higher than `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL` will be removed by the preprocessor.
- **At runtime**: all logs for verbosity levels lower than `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL` are enabled by default. The function *esp_log_level_set()* can be used to set a logging level on a per module basis. Modules are identified by their tags, which are human-readable ASCII zero-terminated strings.

There are the following verbosity levels:

- Error (lowest)
- Warning
- Info
- Debug
- Verbose (highest)

Note: The function *esp_log_level_set()* cannot set logging levels higher than specified by `CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL`. To increase log level for a specific file at compile time, use the macro *LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL* (see the details below).

How to use this library

In each C file that uses logging functionality, define the TAG variable as shown below:

```
static const char* TAG = "MyModule";
```

Then use one of logging macros to produce output, e.g:

```
ESP_LOGW(TAG, "Baud rate error %.1f%%. Requested: %d baud, actual: %d baud", error_
↪* 100, baud_req, baud_real);
```

Several macros are available for different verbosity levels:

- `ESP_LOGE` - error (lowest)
- `ESP_LOGW` - warning

- ESP_LOGI - info
- ESP_LOGD - debug
- ESP_LOGV - verbose (highest)

Additionally, there are ESP_EARLY_LOGx versions for each of these macros, e.g., *ESP_EARLY_LOGE*. These versions have to be used explicitly in the early startup code only, before heap allocator and syscalls have been initialized. Normal ESP_LOGx macros can also be used while compiling the bootloader, but they will fall back to the same implementation as ESP_EARLY_LOGx macros.

To override default verbosity level at file or component scope, define the LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL macro.

At file scope, define it before including esp_log.h, e.g.:

```
#define LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL ESP_LOG_VERBOSE
#include "esp_log.h"
```

At component scope, define it in the component makefile:

```
CFLAGS += -D LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL=ESP_LOG_DEBUG
```

To configure logging output per module at runtime, add calls to the function *esp_log_level_set()* as follows:

```
esp_log_level_set("*", ESP_LOG_ERROR);        // set all components to ERROR level
esp_log_level_set("wifi", ESP_LOG_WARN);      // enable WARN logs from WiFi stack
esp_log_level_set("dhcpc", ESP_LOG_INFO);     // enable INFO logs from DHCP client
```

Logging to Host via JTAG By default, the logging library uses the vprintf-like function to write formatted output to the dedicated UART. By calling a simple API, all log output may be routed to JTAG instead, making logging several times faster. For details, please refer to Section *Logging to Host*.

Application Example

The logging library is commonly used by most esp-idf components and examples. For demonstration of log functionality, check ESP-IDF's examples directory. The most revelant examples that deal with logging are the following:

- system/ota
- storage/sd_card
- protocols/https_request

API Reference

Header File

- log/include/esp_log.h

Functions

void **esp_log_level_set**(**const** char *tag, *esp_log_level_t level*)

Set log level for given tag.

If logging for given component has already been enabled, changes previous setting.

Note that this function can not raise log level above the level set using CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL setting in menuconfig.

To raise log level above the default one for a given file, define LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL to one of the ESP_LOG_* values, before including esp_log.h in this file.

Parameters

- tag: Tag of the log entries to enable. Must be a non-NULL zero terminated string. Value "*" resets log level for all tags to the given value.

- `level`: Selects log level to enable. Only logs at this and lower verbosity levels will be shown.

vprintf_like_t **esp_log_set_vprintf** (*vprintf_like_t func*)
Set function used to output log entries.

By default, log output goes to UART0. This function can be used to redirect log output to some other destination, such as file or network. Returns the original log handler, which may be necessary to return output to the previous destination.

Return func old Function used for output.
Parameters
- `func`: new Function used for output. Must have same signature as vprintf.

uint32_t **esp_log_timestamp** (void)
Function which returns timestamp to be used in log output.

This function is used in expansion of ESP_LOGx macros. In the 2nd stage bootloader, and at early application startup stage this function uses CPU cycle counter as time source. Later when FreeRTOS scheduler start running, it switches to FreeRTOS tick count.

For now, we ignore millisecond counter overflow.

Return timestamp, in milliseconds

char ***esp_log_system_timestamp** (void)
Function which returns system timestamp to be used in log output.

This function is used in expansion of ESP_LOGx macros to print the system time as "HH:MM:SS.sss". The system time is initialized to 0 on startup, this can be set to the correct time with an SNTP sync, or manually with standard POSIX time functions.

Currently this will not get used in logging from binary blobs (i.e WiFi & Bluetooth libraries), these will still print the RTOS tick time.

Return timestamp, in "HH:MM:SS.sss"

uint32_t **esp_log_early_timestamp** (void)
Function which returns timestamp to be used in log output.

This function uses HW cycle counter and does not depend on OS, so it can be safely used after application crash.

Return timestamp, in milliseconds

void **esp_log_write** (*esp_log_level_t level*, **const** char **tag*, **const** char **format*, ...)
Write message into the log.

This function is not intended to be used directly. Instead, use one of ESP_LOGE, ESP_LOGW, ESP_LOGI, ESP_LOGD, ESP_LOGV macros.

This function or these macros should not be used from an interrupt.

void **esp_log_writev** (*esp_log_level_t level*, **const** char **tag*, **const** char **format*, va_list *args*)
Write message into the log, va_list variant.

This function is provided to ease integration toward other logging framework, so that esp_log can be used as a log sink.

See esp_log_write()

Macros

ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX_LEVEL (tag, buffer, buff_len, level)
Log a buffer of hex bytes at specified level, separated into 16 bytes each line.

Parameters
- `tag`: description tag
- `buffer`: Pointer to the buffer array
- `buff_len`: length of buffer in bytes

- `level`: level of the log

ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR_LEVEL(tag, buffer, buff_len, level)

Log a buffer of characters at specified level, separated into 16 bytes each line. Buffer should contain only printable characters.

Parameters

- `tag`: description tag
- `buffer`: Pointer to the buffer array
- `buff_len`: length of buffer in bytes
- `level`: level of the log

ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEXDUMP(tag, buffer, buff_len, level)

Dump a buffer to the log at specified level.

The dump log shows just like the one below:

```
 W (195) log_example: 0x3ffb4280   45 53 50 33 32 20 69 73  20 67 72 65 61 74␣
↪2c 20  |ESP32 is great, |
 W (195) log_example: 0x3ffb4290   77 6f 72 6b 69 6e 67 20  61 6c 6f 6e 67 20␣
↪77 69  |working along wi|
 W (205) log_example: 0x3ffb42a0   74 68 20 74 68 65 20 49  44 46 2e 00       ␣
↪       |th the IDF..|
```

It is highly recommend to use terminals with over 102 text width.

Parameters

- `tag`: description tag
- `buffer`: Pointer to the buffer array
- `buff_len`: length of buffer in bytes
- `level`: level of the log

ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX(tag, buffer, buff_len)

Log a buffer of hex bytes at Info level.

See `esp_log_buffer_hex_level`

Parameters

- `tag`: description tag
- `buffer`: Pointer to the buffer array
- `buff_len`: length of buffer in bytes

ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR(tag, buffer, buff_len)

Log a buffer of characters at Info level. Buffer should contain only printable characters.

See `esp_log_buffer_char_level`

Parameters

- `tag`: description tag
- `buffer`: Pointer to the buffer array
- `buff_len`: length of buffer in bytes

ESP_EARLY_LOGE(tag, format, ...)

macro to output logs in startup code, before heap allocator and syscalls have been initialized. log at `ESP_LOG_ERROR` level.

See `printf`,`ESP_LOGE`

ESP_EARLY_LOGW(tag, format, ...)

macro to output logs in startup code at `ESP_LOG_WARN` level.

See `ESP_EARLY_LOGE`,`ESP_LOGE`, `printf`

ESP_EARLY_LOGI(tag, format, ...)

macro to output logs in startup code at `ESP_LOG_INFO` level.

See `ESP_EARLY_LOGE`,`ESP_LOGE`, `printf`

ESP_EARLY_LOGD (tag, format, ...)
macro to output logs in startup code at ESP_LOG_DEBUG level.

See ESP_EARLY_LOGE,ESP_LOGE, printf

ESP_EARLY_LOGV (tag, format, ...)
macro to output logs in startup code at ESP_LOG_VERBOSE level.

See ESP_EARLY_LOGE,ESP_LOGE, printf

ESP_LOG_EARLY_IMPL (tag, format, log_level, log_tag_letter, ...)

ESP_LOGE (tag, format, ...)

ESP_LOGW (tag, format, ...)

ESP_LOGI (tag, format, ...)

ESP_LOGD (tag, format, ...)

ESP_LOGV (tag, format, ...)

ESP_LOG_LEVEL (level, tag, format, ...)
runtime macro to output logs at a specified level.

See printf
Parameters
- tag: tag of the log, which can be used to change the log level by esp_log_level_set at runtime.
- level: level of the output log.
- format: format of the output log. see printf
- ...: variables to be replaced into the log. see printf

ESP_LOG_LEVEL_LOCAL (level, tag, format, ...)
runtime macro to output logs at a specified level. Also check the level with LOG_LOCAL_LEVEL.

See printf, ESP_LOG_LEVEL

ESP_DRAM_LOGE (tag, format, ...)
Macro to output logs when the cache is disabled. log at ESP_LOG_ERROR level.

Similar to ESP_EARLY_LOGE, the log level cannot be changed by esp_log_level_set.

Usage: ESP_DRAM_LOGE(DRAM_STR("my_tag"), "format", orESP_DRAM_LOGE(TAG, “format” , ⋯)`, where TAG is a char* that points to a str in the DRAM.

Note Placing log strings in DRAM reduces available DRAM, so only use when absolutely essential.
See esp_rom_printf,ESP_LOGE

ESP_DRAM_LOGW (tag, format, ...)
macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_WARN level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGW,ESP_LOGW, esp_rom_printf

ESP_DRAM_LOGI (tag, format, ...)
macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_INFO level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGI,ESP_LOGI, esp_rom_printf

ESP_DRAM_LOGD (tag, format, ...)
macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_DEBUG level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGD,ESP_LOGD, esp_rom_printf

ESP_DRAM_LOGV (tag, format, ...)
macro to output logs when the cache is disabled at ESP_LOG_VERBOSE level.

See ESP_DRAM_LOGV,ESP_LOGV, esp_rom_printf

Type Definitions

typedef int (***vprintf_like_t**)(**const** char *, va_list)

Enumerations

enum esp_log_level_t

Log level.

Values:

ESP_LOG_NONE
No log output

ESP_LOG_ERROR
Critical errors, software module can not recover on its own

ESP_LOG_WARN
Error conditions from which recovery measures have been taken

ESP_LOG_INFO
Information messages which describe normal flow of events

ESP_LOG_DEBUG
Extra information which is not necessary for normal use (values, pointers, sizes, etc).

ESP_LOG_VERBOSE
Bigger chunks of debugging information, or frequent messages which can potentially flood the output.

2.6.18 Miscellaneous System APIs

Software reset

To perform software reset of the chip, *esp_restart()* function is provided. When the function is called, execution of the program will stop, both CPUs will be reset, application will be loaded by the bootloader and started again.

Additionally, *esp_register_shutdown_handler()* function is provided to register a routine which needs to be called prior to restart (when done by *esp_restart()*). This is similar to the functionality of `atexit` POSIX function.

Reset reason

ESP-IDF application can be started or restarted due to a variety of reasons. To get the last reset reason, call *esp_reset_reason()* function. See description of *esp_reset_reason_t* for the list of possible reset reasons.

Heap memory

Two heap memory related functions are provided:

- *esp_get_free_heap_size()* returns the current size of free heap memory
- *esp_get_minimum_free_heap_size()* returns the minimum size of free heap memory that was available during program execution.

Note that ESP-IDF supports multiple heaps with different capabilities. Functions mentioned in this section return the size of heap memory which can be allocated using `malloc` family of functions. For further information about heap memory see *Heap Memory Allocation*.

Random number generation

ESP32-S2 contains a hardware random number generator, values from it can be obtained using `esp_random()`.

When Wi-Fi or Bluetooth are enabled, numbers returned by hardware random number generator (RNG) can be considered true random numbers. Without Wi-Fi or Bluetooth enabled, hardware RNG is a pseudo-random number generator. At startup, ESP-IDF bootloader seeds the hardware RNG with entropy, but care must be taken when reading random values between the start of `app_main` and initialization of Wi-Fi or Bluetooth drivers.

MAC Address

These APIs allow querying and customizing MAC addresses for different network interfaces that supported (e.g. Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Ethernet).

In ESP-IDF these addresses are calculated from *Base MAC address*. Base MAC address can be initialized with factory-programmed value from internal eFuse, or with a user-defined value. In addition to setting the base MAC address, applications can specify the way in which MAC addresses are allocated to devices. See *Number of universally administered MAC address* section for more details.

Interface	MAC address (2 universally administered)	MAC address (1 universally administered)
Wi-Fi Station	base_mac	base_mac
Wi-Fi SoftAP	base_mac, +1 to the last octet	base_mac, first octet randomized

Base MAC address To fetch MAC address for a specific interface (e.g. Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, Ethernet), you can simply use `esp_read_mac()` function.

By default, this function takes the eFuse value burned at a pre-defined block (e.g. BLK0 for ESP32, BLK1 for ESP32-S2) as the base MAC address. Per-interface MAC addresses will be calculated according to the table above.

Applications who want to customize base MAC address (not the one provided by Espressif) should call `esp_base_mac_addr_set()` before `esp_read_mac()`. The customized MAC address can be stored in any supported storage device (e.g. Flash, NVS, etc).

Note that, calls to `esp_base_mac_addr_set()` should take place before the initialization of network stack, for example, early in `app_main`.

Custom MAC address in eFuse To facilitate the usage of custom MAC addresses, ESP-IDF provides `esp_efuse_mac_get_custom()` function, which loads MAC address from internal pre-defined eFuse block (e.g. BLK3 for ESP32). This function assumes that custom MAC address is stored in the following format:

Field	# of bits	Range of bits	Notes
Version	8	191:184	0: invalid, others —valid
Reserved	128	183:56	
MAC address	48	55:8	
MAC address CRC	8	7:0	CRC-8-CCITT, polynomial 0x07

Once MAC address has been obtained using `esp_efuse_mac_get_custom()`, call `esp_base_mac_addr_set()` to set this MAC address as base MAC address.

Number of universally administered MAC address Several MAC addresses (universally administered by IEEE) are uniquely assigned to the networking interfaces (Wi-Fi/BT/Ethernet). The final octet of each universally administered MAC address increases by one. Only the first one of them (which is called base MAC address) is stored in eFuse or external storage, the others are generated from it. Here, 'generate' means adding 0, 1, 2 and 3 (respectively) to the final octet of the base MAC address.

If the universally administered MAC addresses are not enough for all of the networking interfaces, locally administered MAC addresses which are derived from universally administered MAC addresses are assigned to the rest of networking interfaces.

See this article for the definition of local and universally administered MAC addresses.

The number of universally administered MAC address can be configured using *CONFIG_ESP32S2_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES*.

If the number of universal MAC addresses is one, only one interface (Wi-Fi Station) receive a universally administered MAC address. This is generated by adding 0 to the base MAC address. The remaining interface (Wi-Fi SoftAP) receive a local MAC address. This is derived from the universal Wi-Fi station.

If the number of universal MAC addresses is two, both interfaces (Wi-Fi Station, Wi-Fi SoftAP) receive a universally administered MAC address. These are generated sequentially by adding 0 and 1 (respectively) to the final octet of the base MAC address.

When using the default (Espressif-assigned) base MAC address, either setting can be used. When using a custom universal MAC address range, the correct setting will depend on the allocation of MAC addresses in this range (either 1 or 2 per device.)

Chip version

`esp_chip_info()` function fills `esp_chip_info_t` structure with information about the chip. This includes the chip revision, number of CPU cores, and a bit mask of features enabled in the chip.

SDK version

`esp_get_idf_version()` returns a string describing the IDF version which was used to compile the application. This is the same value as the one available through `IDF_VER` variable of the build system. The version string generally has the format of `git describe` output.

To get the version at build time, additional version macros are provided. They can be used to enable or disable parts of the program depending on IDF version.

- *`ESP_IDF_VERSION_MAJOR`*, *`ESP_IDF_VERSION_MINOR`*, *`ESP_IDF_VERSION_PATCH`* are defined to integers representing major, minor, and patch version.
- *`ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL`* and *`ESP_IDF_VERSION`* can be used when implementing version checks:

```
#include "esp_idf_version.h"

#if ESP_IDF_VERSION >= ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(4, 0, 0)
    // enable functionality present in IDF v4.0
#endif
```

App version

Application version is stored in *`esp_app_desc_t`* structure. It is located in DROM sector and has a fixed offset from the beginning of the binary file. The structure is located after *`esp_image_header_t`* and *`esp_image_segment_header_t`* structures. The field version has string type and max length 32 chars.

To set version in your project manually you need to set `PROJECT_VER` variable in your project CMakeLists.txt/Makefile:

- In application CMakeLists.txt put `set(PROJECT_VER "0.1.0.1")` before including `project.cmake`.

(For legacy GNU Make build system: in application Makefile put `PROJECT_VER = "0.1.0.1"` before including `project.mk`.)

If *CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG* option is set, the value of *CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER* will be used. Otherwise if `PROJECT_VER` variable is not set in the project then it will be retrieved from either `$(PROJECT_PATH)/version.txt` file (if present) else using git command `git describe`. If neither is available then `PROJECT_VER` will be set to "1". Application can make use of this by calling *esp_ota_get_app_description()* or *esp_ota_get_partition_description()* functions.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_system/include/esp_system.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_register_shutdown_handler**(*shutdown_handler_t handle*)

Register shutdown handler.

This function allows you to register a handler that gets invoked before the application is restarted using esp_restart function.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the handler has already been registered
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if no more shutdown handler slots are available

Parameters
- `handle`: function to execute on restart

esp_err_t **esp_unregister_shutdown_handler**(*shutdown_handler_t handle*)

Unregister shutdown handler.

This function allows you to unregister a handler which was previously registered using esp_register_shutdown_handler function.

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the given handler hasn't been registered before

void **esp_restart**(void)

Restart PRO and APP CPUs.

This function can be called both from PRO and APP CPUs. After successful restart, CPU reset reason will be SW_CPU_RESET. Peripherals (except for WiFi, BT, UART0, SPI1, and legacy timers) are not reset. This function does not return.

esp_reset_reason_t **esp_reset_reason**(void)

Get reason of last reset.

Return See description of esp_reset_reason_t for explanation of each value.

uint32_t **esp_get_free_heap_size**(void)

Get the size of available heap.

Note that the returned value may be larger than the maximum contiguous block which can be allocated.

Return Available heap size, in bytes.

uint32_t **esp_get_free_internal_heap_size**(void)

Get the size of available internal heap.

Note that the returned value may be larger than the maximum contiguous block which can be allocated.

Return Available internal heap size, in bytes.

uint32_t **esp_get_minimum_free_heap_size**(void)

Get the minimum heap that has ever been available.

Return Minimum free heap ever available

void **esp_system_abort**(**const** char *_details_)

Trigger a software abort.

Parameters

- `details`: Details that will be displayed during panic handling.

Type Definitions

typedef void (***shutdown_handler_t**)(void)

Shutdown handler type

Enumerations

enum esp_reset_reason_t

Reset reasons.

Values:

ESP_RST_UNKNOWN

Reset reason can not be determined.

ESP_RST_POWERON

Reset due to power-on event.

ESP_RST_EXT

Reset by external pin (not applicable for ESP32)

ESP_RST_SW

Software reset via esp_restart.

ESP_RST_PANIC

Software reset due to exception/panic.

ESP_RST_INT_WDT

Reset (software or hardware) due to interrupt watchdog.

ESP_RST_TASK_WDT

Reset due to task watchdog.

ESP_RST_WDT

Reset due to other watchdogs.

ESP_RST_DEEPSLEEP

Reset after exiting deep sleep mode.

ESP_RST_BROWNOUT

Brownout reset (software or hardware)

ESP_RST_SDIO

Reset over SDIO.

Header File

- esp_common/include/esp_idf_version.h

Functions

const char ***esp_get_idf_version**(void)

Return full IDF version string, same as 'git describe' output.

Note If you are printing the ESP-IDF version in a log file or other information, this function provides more information than using the numerical version macros. For example, numerical version macros don't differentiate between development, pre-release and release versions, but the output of this function does.

Return constant string from IDF_VER

Macros

ESP_IDF_VERSION_MAJOR
Major version number (X.x.x)

ESP_IDF_VERSION_MINOR
Minor version number (x.X.x)

ESP_IDF_VERSION_PATCH
Patch version number (x.x.X)

ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(major, minor, patch)
Macro to convert IDF version number into an integer

To be used in comparisons, such as ESP_IDF_VERSION >= ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(4, 0, 0)

ESP_IDF_VERSION
Current IDF version, as an integer

To be used in comparisons, such as ESP_IDF_VERSION >= ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL(4, 0, 0)

2.6.19 Over The Air Updates (OTA)

OTA Process Overview

The OTA update mechanism allows a device to update itself based on data received while the normal firmware is running (for example, over WiFi or Bluetooth.)

OTA requires configuring the *Partition Table* of the device with at least two "OTA app slot" partitions (ie *ota_0* and *ota_1*) and an "OTA Data Partition".

The OTA operation functions write a new app firmware image to whichever OTA app slot is not currently being used for booting. Once the image is verified, the OTA Data partition is updated to specify that this image should be used for the next boot.

OTA Data Partition

An OTA data partition (type `data`, subtype `ota`) must be included in the *Partition Table* of any project which uses the OTA functions.

For factory boot settings, the OTA data partition should contain no data (all bytes erased to 0xFF). In this case the esp-idf software bootloader will boot the factory app if it is present in the the partition table. If no factory app is included in the partition table, the first available OTA slot (usually `ota_0`) is booted.

After the first OTA update, the OTA data partition is updated to specify which OTA app slot partition should be booted next.

The OTA data partition is two flash sectors (0x2000 bytes) in size, to prevent problems if there is a power failure while it is being written. Sectors are independently erased and written with matching data, and if they disagree a counter field is used to determine which sector was written more recently.

App rollback

The main purpose of the application rollback is to keep the device working after the update. This feature allows you to roll back to the previous working application in case a new application has critical errors. When the rollback process is enabled and an OTA update provides a new version of the app, one of three things can happen:

- The application works fine, *esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()* marks the running application with the state `ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID`. There are no restrictions on booting this application.
- The application has critical errors and further work is not possible, a rollback to the previous application is required, *esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()* marks the running application with the state `ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID` and reset. This application will not be selected by the bootloader for boot and will boot the previously working application.

- If the *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is set, and a reset occurs without calling either function then the application is rolled back.

Note: The state is not written to the binary image of the application it is written to the `otadata` partition. The partition contains a `ota_seq` counter which is a pointer to the slot (ota_0, ota_1, ···) from which the application will be selected for boot.

App OTA State States control the process of selecting a boot app:

States	Restriction of selecting a boot app in bootloader
ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID	No restriction. Will be selected.
ESP_OTA_IMG_UNDEFINED	No restriction. Will be selected.
ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID	Will not be selected.
ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED	Will not be selected.
ESP_OTA_IMG_NEW	If *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is set it will be selected only once. In bootloader the state immediately changes to `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`.
ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY	If *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is set it will not be selected and the state will change to `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED`.

If *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is not enabled (by default), then the use of the following functions *esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()* and *esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()* are optional, and `ESP_OTA_IMG_NEW` and `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` states are not used.

An option in Kconfig *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* allows you to track the first boot of a new application. In this case, the application must confirm its operability by calling *esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()* function, otherwise the application will be rolled back upon reboot. It allows you to control the operability of the application during the boot phase. Thus, a new application has only one attempt to boot successfully.

Rollback Process The description of the rollback process when *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is enabled:

- The new application successfully downloaded and *esp_ota_set_boot_partition()* function makes this partition bootable and sets the state `ESP_OTA_IMG_NEW`. This state means that the application is new and should be monitored for its first boot.
- Reboot *esp_restart()*.
- The bootloader checks for the `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` state if it is set, then it will be written to `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED`.
- The bootloader selects a new application to boot so that the state is not set as `ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID` or `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED`.
- The bootloader checks the selected application for `ESP_OTA_IMG_NEW` state if it is set, then it will be written to `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`. This state means that the application requires confirmation of its operability, if this does not happen and a reboot occurs, this state will be overwritten to `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED` (see above) and this application will no longer be able to start, i.e. there will be a rollback to the previous work application.
- A new application has started and should make a self-test.
- If the self-test has completed successfully, then you must call the function *esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()* because the application is awaiting confirmation of operability (`ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` state).
- If the self-test fails then call *esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()* function to roll back to the previous working application, while the invalid application is set `ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID` state.
- If the application has not been confirmed, the state remains `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY`, and the next boot it will be changed to `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED`. That will prevent re-boot of this application. There will be a rollback to the previous working application.

Unexpected Reset If a power loss or an unexpected crash occurs at the time of the first boot of a new application, it will roll back the application.

Recommendation: Perform the self-test procedure as quickly as possible, to prevent rollback due to power loss.

Only `OTA` partitions can be rolled back. Factory partition is not rolled back.

Booting invalid/aborted apps Booting an application which was previously set to `ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID` or `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED` is possible:

- Get the last invalid application partition *`esp_ota_get_last_invalid_partition()`*.
- Pass the received partition to *`esp_ota_set_boot_partition()`*, this will update the `otadata`.
- Restart *`esp_restart()`*. The bootloader will boot the specified application.

To determine if self-tests should be run during startup of an application, call the *`esp_ota_get_state_partition()`* function. If result is `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` then self-testing and subsequent confirmation of operability is required.

Where the states are set A brief description of where the states are set:

- `ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID` state is set by *`esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()`* function.
- `ESP_OTA_IMG_UNDEFINED` state is set by *`esp_ota_set_boot_partition()`* function if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is not enabled.
- `ESP_OTA_IMG_NEW` state is set by *`esp_ota_set_boot_partition()`* function if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is enabled.
- `ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID` state is set by *`esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()`* function.
- `ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED` state is set if there was no confirmation of the application operability and occurs reboots (if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is enabled).
- `ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY` state is set in a bootloader if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* option is enabled and selected app has `ESP_OTA_IMG_NEW` state.

Anti-rollback

Anti-rollback prevents rollback to application with security version lower than one programmed in eFuse of chip.

This function works if set *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK* option. In the bootloader, when selecting a bootable application, an additional security version check is added which is on the chip and in the application image. The version in the bootable firmware must be greater than or equal to the version in the chip.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK and *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE* options are used together. In this case, rollback is possible only on the security version which is equal or higher than the version in the chip.

A typical anti-rollback scheme is

- New firmware released with the elimination of vulnerabilities with the previous version of security.
- After the developer makes sure that this firmware is working. He can increase the security version and release a new firmware.
- Download new application.
- To make it bootable, run the function *`esp_ota_set_boot_partition()`*. If the security version of the new application is smaller than the version in the chip, the new application will be erased. Update to new firmware is not possible.
- Reboot.
- In the bootloader, an application with a security version greater than or equal to the version in the chip will be selected. If otadata is in the initial state, and one firmware was loaded via a serial channel, whose secure version is higher than the chip, then the secure version of efuse will be immediately updated in the bootloader.

- New application booted. Then the application should perform diagnostics of the operation and if it is completed successfully, you should call *esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback()* function to mark the running application with the ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID state and update the secure version on chip. Note that if was called *esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot()* function a rollback may not happend due to the device may not have any bootable apps then it will return ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED error and stay in the ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY state.
- The next update of app is possible if a running app is in the ESP_OTA_IMG_VALID state.

Recommendation:

If you want to avoid the download/erase overhead in case of the app from the server has security version lower then running app you have to get new_app_info.secure_version from the first package of an image and compare it with the secure version of efuse. Use esp_efuse_check_secure_version(new_app_info.secure_version) function if it is true then continue downloading otherwise abort.

```
....
bool image_header_was_checked = false;
while (1) {
    int data_read = esp_http_client_read(client, ota_write_data, BUFFSIZE);
    ...
    if (data_read > 0) {
        if (image_header_was_checked == false) {
            esp_app_desc_t new_app_info;
            if (data_read > sizeof(esp_image_header_t) + sizeof(esp_image_segment_
↪header_t) + sizeof(esp_app_desc_t)) {
                // check current version with downloading
                if (esp_efuse_check_secure_version(new_app_info.secure_version) ==␣
↪false) {
                    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "This a new app can not be downloaded due to a␣
↪secure version is lower than stored in efuse.");
                    http_cleanup(client);
                    task_fatal_error();
                }

                image_header_was_checked = true;

                esp_ota_begin(update_partition, OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN, &update_handle);
            }
        }
        esp_ota_write( update_handle, (const void *)ota_write_data, data_read);
    }
}
...
```

Restrictions:

- The number of bits in the secure_version field is limited to 32 bits. This means that only 32 times you can do an anti-rollback. You can reduce the length of this efuse field use *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD* option.
- Anti-rollback only works if the encoding scheme for efuse is set to NONE.
- The partition table should not have a factory partition, only two of the app.

security_version:

- In application image it is stored in esp_app_desc structure. The number is set *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SECURE_VERSION*.

Secure OTA Updates Without Secure boot

The verification of signed OTA updates can be performed even without enabling hardware secure boot. This can be achieved by setting *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT* and *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_UPDATE_NO_SECURE_BOOT*

OTA Tool (otatool.py)

The component *app_update* provides a tool otatool.py for performing OTA partition-related operations on a target device. The following operations can be performed using the tool:

- read contents of otadata partition (read_otadata)
- erase otadata partition, effectively resetting device to factory app (erase_otadata)
- switch OTA partitions (switch_ota_partition)
- erasing OTA partition (erase_ota_partition)
- write to OTA partition (write_ota_partition)
- read contents of OTA partition (read_ota_partition)

The tool can either be imported and used from another Python script or invoked from shell script for users wanting to perform operation programmatically. This is facilitated by the tool's Python API and command-line interface, respectively.

Python API Before anything else, make sure that the *otatool* module is imported.

```
import sys
import os

idf_path = os.environ["IDF_PATH"]  # get value of IDF_PATH from environment
otatool_dir = os.path.join(idf_path, "components", "app_update")  # otatool.py␣
↪lives in $IDF_PATH/components/app_update

sys.path.append(otatool_dir)  # this enables Python to find otatool module
from otatool import *  # import all names inside otatool module
```

The starting point for using the tool's Python API to do is create a *OtatoolTarget* object:

```
# Create a partool.py target device connected on serial port /dev/ttyUSB1
target = OtatoolTarget("/dev/ttyUSB1")
```

The created object can now be used to perform operations on the target device:

```
# Erase otadata, reseting the device to factory app
target.erase_otadata()

# Erase contents of OTA app slot 0
target.erase_ota_partition(0)

# Switch boot partition to that of app slot 1
target.switch_ota_partition(1)

# Read OTA partition 'ota_3' and save contents to a file named 'ota_3.bin'
target.read_ota_partition("ota_3", "ota_3.bin")
```

The OTA partition to operate on is specified using either the app slot number or the partition name.

More information on the Python API is available in the docstrings for the tool.

Command-line Interface The command-line interface of *otatool.py* has the following structure:

```
otatool.py [command-args] [subcommand] [subcommand-args]

- command-args - these are arguments that are needed for executing the main␣
↪command (parttool.py), mostly pertaining to the target device
- subcommand - this is the operation to be performed
- subcommand-args - these are arguments that are specific to the chosen operation
```

```
# Erase otadata, resetting the device to factory app
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" erase_otadata

# Erase contents of OTA app slot 0
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" erase_ota_partition --slot 0

# Switch boot partition to that of app slot 1
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" switch_ota_partition --slot 1

# Read OTA partition 'ota_3' and save contents to a file named 'ota_3.bin'
otatool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" read_ota_partition --name=ota_3 --output=ota_3.bin
```

More information can be obtained by specifying *–help* as argument:

```
# Display possible subcommands and show main command argument descriptions
otatool.py --help

# Show descriptions for specific subcommand arguments
otatool.py [subcommand] --help
```

See also

- *Partition Table documentation*
- *Lower-Level SPI Flash/Partition API*
- *ESP HTTPS OTA*

Application Example

End-to-end example of OTA firmware update workflow: system/ota.

API Reference

Header File

- app_update/include/esp_ota_ops.h

Functions

const *esp_app_desc_t* ***esp_ota_get_app_description**(void)

Return esp_app_desc structure. This structure includes app version.

Return description for running app.

Return Pointer to esp_app_desc structure.

int **esp_ota_get_app_elf_sha256**(char **dst*, size_t *size*)

Fill the provided buffer with SHA256 of the ELF file, formatted as hexadecimal, null-terminated. If the buffer size is not sufficient to fit the entire SHA256 in hex plus a null terminator, the largest possible number of bytes will be written followed by a null.

Return Number of bytes written to dst (including null terminator)

Parameters

- `dst`: Destination buffer
- `size`: Size of the buffer

esp_err_t **esp_ota_begin**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*, size_t *image_size*, *esp_ota_handle_t* **out_handle*)

Commence an OTA update writing to the specified partition.

The specified partition is erased to the specified image size.

If image size is not yet known, pass OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN which will cause the entire partition to be erased.

On success, this function allocates memory that remains in use until esp_ota_end() is called with the returned handle.

Note: If the rollback option is enabled and the running application has the ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY state then it will lead to the ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE error. Confirm the running app before to run download a new app, use esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback() function for it (this should be done as early as possible when you first download a new application).

Return

- ESP_OK: OTA operation commenced successfully.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: partition or out_handle arguments were NULL, or partition doesn't point to an OTA app partition.
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Cannot allocate memory for OTA operation.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT: Partition holds the currently running firmware, cannot update in place.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Partition argument not found in partition table.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID: The OTA data partition contains invalid data.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE: Partition doesn't fit in configured flash size.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE: If the running app has not confirmed state. Before performing an update, the application must be valid.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to info for partition which will receive the OTA update. Required.
- `image_size`: Size of new OTA app image. Partition will be erased in order to receive this size of image. If 0 or OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN, the entire partition is erased.
- `out_handle`: On success, returns a handle which should be used for subsequent esp_ota_write() and esp_ota_end() calls.

esp_err_t **esp_ota_write**(*esp_ota_handle_t handle*, **const** void **data*, size_t *size*)

Write OTA update data to partition.

This function can be called multiple times as data is received during the OTA operation. Data is written sequentially to the partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: Data was written to flash successfully.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: handle is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: First byte of image contains invalid app image magic byte.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID: OTA data partition has invalid contents

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle obtained from esp_ota_begin
- `data`: Data buffer to write
- `size`: Size of data buffer in bytes.

esp_err_t **esp_ota_write_with_offset**(*esp_ota_handle_t handle*, **const** void **data*, size_t *size*, uint32_t *offset*)

Write OTA update data to partition.

This function can write data in non contiguous manner. If flash encryption is enabled, data should be 16 byte aligned.

Note While performing OTA, if the packets arrive out of order, esp_ota_write_with_offset() can be used to write data in non contiguous manner. Use of esp_ota_write_with_offset() in combination with esp_ota_write() is not recommended.

Return

- ESP_OK: Data was written to flash successfully.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: handle is invalid.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: First byte of image contains invalid app image magic byte.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash write failed.

- ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID: OTA data partition has invalid contents

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle obtained from esp_ota_begin
- `data`: Data buffer to write
- `size`: Size of data buffer in bytes
- `offset`: Offset in flash partition

esp_err_t **esp_ota_end**(*esp_ota_handle_t handle*)

Finish OTA update and validate newly written app image.

Note After calling esp_ota_end(), the handle is no longer valid and any memory associated with it is freed (regardless of result).

Return

- ESP_OK: Newly written OTA app image is valid.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA handle was not found.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Handle was never written to.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: OTA image is invalid (either not a valid app image, or - if secure boot is enabled - signature failed to verify.)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: If flash encryption is enabled, this result indicates an internal error writing the final encrypted bytes to flash.

Parameters

- `handle`: Handle obtained from esp_ota_begin().

esp_err_t **esp_ota_abort**(*esp_ota_handle_t handle*)

Abort OTA update, free the handle and memory associated with it.

Return

- ESP_OK: Handle and its associated memory is freed successfully.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA handle was not found.

Parameters

- `handle`: obtained from esp_ota_begin().

esp_err_t **esp_ota_set_boot_partition**(**const** *esp_partition_t *partition*)

Configure OTA data for a new boot partition.

Note If this function returns ESP_OK, calling esp_restart() will boot the newly configured app partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: OTA data updated, next reboot will use specified partition.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: partition argument was NULL or didn't point to a valid OTA partition of type "app".
- ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED: Partition contained invalid app image. Also returned if secure boot is enabled and signature validation failed.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: OTA data partition not found.
- ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT or ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL: Flash erase or write failed.

Parameters

- `partition`: Pointer to info for partition containing app image to boot.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_ota_get_boot_partition**(void)

Get partition info of currently configured boot app.

If esp_ota_set_boot_partition() has been called, the partition which was set by that function will be returned.

If esp_ota_set_boot_partition() has not been called, the result is usually the same as esp_ota_get_running_partition(). The two results are not equal if the configured boot partition does not contain a valid app (meaning that the running partition will be an app that the bootloader chose via fallback).

If the OTA data partition is not present or not valid then the result is the first app partition found in the partition table. In priority order, this means: the factory app, the first OTA app slot, or the test app partition.

Note that there is no guarantee the returned partition is a valid app. Use esp_image_verify(ESP_IMAGE_VERIFY, ···) to verify if the returned partition contains a bootable image.

Return Pointer to info for partition structure, or NULL if partition table is invalid or a flash read operation failed. Any returned pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_ota_get_running_partition**(void)

Get partition info of currently running app.

This function is different to esp_ota_get_boot_partition() in that it ignores any change of selected boot partition caused by esp_ota_set_boot_partition(). Only the app whose code is currently running will have its partition information returned.

The partition returned by this function may also differ from esp_ota_get_boot_partition() if the configured boot partition is somehow invalid, and the bootloader fell back to a different app partition at boot.

Return Pointer to info for partition structure, or NULL if no partition is found or flash read operation failed. Returned pointer is valid for the lifetime of the application.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_ota_get_next_update_partition**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **start_from*)

Return the next OTA app partition which should be written with a new firmware.

Call this function to find an OTA app partition which can be passed to esp_ota_begin().

Finds next partition round-robin, starting from the current running partition.

Return Pointer to info for partition which should be updated next. NULL result indicates invalid OTA data partition, or that no eligible OTA app slot partition was found.

Parameters

- `start_from`: If set, treat this partition info as describing the current running partition. Can be NULL, in which case esp_ota_get_running_partition() is used to find the currently running partition. The result of this function is never the same as this argument.

esp_err_t **esp_ota_get_partition_description**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*, *esp_app_desc_t* **app_desc*)

Returns esp_app_desc structure for app partition. This structure includes app version.

Returns a description for the requested app partition.

Return

- ESP_OK Successful.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND app_desc structure is not found. Magic word is incorrect.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED Partition is not application.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG Arguments is NULL or if partition' s offset exceeds partition size.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE Read would go out of bounds of the partition.
- or one of error codes from lower-level flash driver.

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: Pointer to app partition. (only app partition)
- `[out] app_desc`: Structure of info about app.

esp_err_t **esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback**(void)

This function is called to indicate that the running app is working well.

Return

- ESP_OK: if successful.

esp_err_t **esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot**(void)

This function is called to roll back to the previously workable app with reboot.

If rollback is successful then device will reset else API will return with error code. Checks applications on a flash drive that can be booted in case of rollback. If the flash does not have at least one app (except the running app) then rollback is not possible.

Return

- ESP_FAIL: if not successful.
- ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED: The rollback is not possible due to flash does not have any apps.

const *esp_partition_t* ***esp_ota_get_last_invalid_partition**(void)

Returns last partition with invalid state (ESP_OTA_IMG_INVALID or ESP_OTA_IMG_ABORTED).

Return partition.

esp_err_t **esp_ota_get_state_partition**(**const** *esp_partition_t* **partition*, esp_ota_img_states_t **ota_state*)

Returns state for given partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: partition or ota_state arguments were NULL.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED: partition is not ota.
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Partition table does not have otadata or state was not found for given partition.

Parameters

- `[in] partition`: Pointer to partition.
- `[out] ota_state`: state of partition (if this partition has a record in otadata).

esp_err_t **esp_ota_erase_last_boot_app_partition**(void)

Erase previous boot app partition and corresponding otadata select for this partition.

When current app is marked to as valid then you can erase previous app partition.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successful, otherwise ESP_ERR.

bool **esp_ota_check_rollback_is_possible**(void)

Checks applications on the slots which can be booted in case of rollback.

These applications should be valid (marked in otadata as not UNDEFINED, INVALID or ABORTED and crc is good) and be able booted, and secure_version of app >= secure_version of efuse (if anti-rollback is enabled).

Return

- True: Returns true if the slots have at least one app (except the running app).
- False: The rollback is not possible.

Macros

OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN

Used for esp_ota_begin() if new image size is unknown

OTA_WITH_SEQUENTIAL_WRITES

Used for esp_ota_begin() if new image size is unknown and erase can be done in incremental manner (assuming write operation is in continuous sequence)

ESP_ERR_OTA_BASE

Base error code for ota_ops api

ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT

Error if request was to write or erase the current running partition

ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID

Error if OTA data partition contains invalid content

ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED

Error if OTA app image is invalid

ESP_ERR_OTA_SMALL_SEC_VER

Error if the firmware has a secure version less than the running firmware.

ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED

Error if flash does not have valid firmware in passive partition and hence rollback is not possible

ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE

Error if current active firmware is still marked in pending validation state (ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY), essentially first boot of firmware image post upgrade and hence firmware upgrade is not possible

Type Definitions

typedef uint32_t **esp_ota_handle_t**

Opaque handle for an application OTA update.

esp_ota_begin() returns a handle which is then used for subsequent calls to esp_ota_write() and esp_ota_end().

2.6.20 Performance Monitor

The Performance Monitor component provides APIs to use ESP32-S2 internal performance counters to profile functions and applications.

Application Example

An example which combines performance monitor is provided in `examples/system/perfmon` directory. This example initializes the performance monitor structure and execute them with printing the statistics.

High level API Reference

Header Files

- perfmon/include/perfmon.h

API Reference

Header File

- perfmon/include/xtensa_perfmon_access.h

Functions

esp_err_t **xtensa_perfmon_init** (int *id*, uint16_t *select*, uint16_t *mask*, int *kernelcnt*, int *tracelevel*)

Init Performance Monitoor.

Initialize performance monitor register with define values

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the arguments is not correct

Parameters

- `[in] id`: performance counter number
- `[in] select`: select value from PMCTRLx register
- `[in] mask`: mask value from PMCTRLx register
- `[in] kernelcnt`: kernelcnt value from PMCTRLx register
- `[in] tracelevel`: tracelevel value from PMCTRLx register

esp_err_t **xtensa_perfmon_reset** (int *id*)

Reset PM counter.

Reset PM counter. Writes 0 to the PMx register.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if id out of range

Parameters

- `[in] id`: performance counter number

void **xtensa_perfmon_start** (void)

Start PM counters.

Start all PM counters synchronously. Write 1 to the PGM register

void **xtensa_perfmon_stop**(void)
Stop PM counters.

Stop all PM counters synchronously. Write 0 to the PGM register

uint32_t **xtensa_perfmon_value**(int *id*)
Read PM counter.

Read value of defined PM counter.

Return
- Performance counter value

Parameters
- `[in] id`: performance counter number

esp_err_t **xtensa_perfmon_overflow**(int *id*)
Read PM overflow state.

Read overflow value of defined PM counter.

Return
- ESP_OK if there is no overflow (overflow = 0)
- ESP_FAIL if overflow occure (overflow = 1)

Parameters
- `[in] id`: performance counter number

void **xtensa_perfmon_dump**(void)
Dump PM values.

Dump all PM register to the console.

Header File

- perfmon/include/xtensa_perfmon_apis.h

Functions

esp_err_t **xtensa_perfmon_exec**(**const** *xtensa_perfmon_config_t* **config*)
Execute PM.

Execute performance counter for dedicated function with defined parameters

Return
- ESP_OK if no errors
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if one of the required parameters not defined
- ESP_FAIL - counter overflow

Parameters
- `[in] config`: pointer to the configuration structure

void **xtensa_perfmon_view_cb**(void **params*, uint32_t *select*, uint32_t *mask*, uint32_t *value*)
Dump PM results.

Callback to dump perfmon result to a FILE* stream specified in perfmon_config_t::callback_params. If callback_params is set to NULL, will print to stdout

Parameters
- `[in] params`: used parameters passed from configuration (callback_params). This parameter expected as FILE* hanle, where data will be stored. If this parameter NULL, then data will be stored to the stdout.
- `[in] select`: select value for current counter
- `[in] mask`: mask value for current counter
- `[in] value`: counter value for current counter

Structures

struct xtensa_perfmon_config

Performance monitor configuration structure.

Structure to configure performance counter to measure dedicated function

Public Members

int **repeat_count**

how much times function will be called before the calback will be repeated

float **max_deviation**

Difference between min and max counter number 0..1, 0 - no difference, 1 - not used

void ***call_params**

This pointer will be passed to the call_function as a parameter

void (***call_function**) (void *params)

pointer to the function that have to be called

void (***callback**) (void *params, uint32_t select, uint32_t mask, uint32_t value)

pointer to the function that will be called with result parameters

void ***callback_params**

parameter that will be passed to the callback

int **tracelevel**

trace level for all counters. In case of negative value, the filter will be ignored. If it's >=0, then the perfmon will count only when interrupt level > tracelevel. It's useful to monitor interrupts.

uint32_t **counters_size**

amount of counter in the list

const uint32_t ***select_mask**

list of the select/mask parameters

Type Definitions

typedef struct *xtensa_perfmon_config* **xtensa_perfmon_config_t**

Performance monitor configuration structure.

Structure to configure performance counter to measure dedicated function

2.6.21 Power Management

Overview

Power management algorithm included in ESP-IDF can adjust the advanced peripheral bus (APB) frequency, CPU frequency, and put the chip into light sleep mode to run an application at smallest possible power consumption, given the requirements of application components.

Application components can express their requirements by creating and acquiring power management locks.

For example:

- Driver for a peripheral clocked from APB can request the APB frequency to be set to 80 MHz while the peripheral is used.
- RTOS can request the CPU to run at the highest configured frequency while there are tasks ready to run.
- A peripheral driver may need interrupts to be enabled, which means it will have to request disabling light sleep.

Since requesting higher APB or CPU frequencies or disabling light sleep causes higher current consumption, please keep the usage of power management locks by components to a minimum.

Configuration

Power management can be enabled at compile time, using the option *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*.

Enabling power management features comes at the cost of increased interrupt latency. Extra latency depends on a number of factors, such as the CPU frequency, single/dual core mode, whether or not frequency switch needs to be done. Minimum extra latency is 0.2 us (when the CPU frequency is 240 MHz and frequency scaling is not enabled). Maximum extra latency is 40 us (when frequency scaling is enabled, and a switch from 40 MHz to 80 MHz is performed on interrupt entry).

Dynamic frequency scaling (DFS) and automatic light sleep can be enabled in an application by calling the function `esp_pm_configure()`. Its argument is a structure defining the frequency scaling settings, `esp_pm_config_esp32s2_t`. In this structure, three fields need to be initialized:

- `max_freq_mhz`: Maximum CPU frequency in MHz, i.e., the frequency used when the `ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX` lock is acquired. This field will usually be set to the default CPU frequency.
- `min_freq_mhz`: Minimum CPU frequency in MHz, i.e., the frequency used when only the `ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` lock is acquired. This field can be set to the XTAL frequency value, or the XTAL frequency divided by an integer. Note that 10 MHz is the lowest frequency at which the default REF_TICK clock of 1 MHz can be generated.
- `light_sleep_enable`: Whether the system should automatically enter light sleep when no locks are acquired (`true`/`false`).
  Alternatively, if you enable the option *CONFIG_PM_DFS_INIT_AUTO* in menuconfig, the maximum CPU frequency will be determined by the *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ* setting, and the minimum CPU frequency will be locked to the XTAL frequency.

Note: Automatic light sleep is based on FreeRTOS Tickless Idle functionality. If automatic light sleep is requested while the option *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE* is not enabled in menuconfig, `esp_pm_configure()` will return the error *ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED*.

Note: In light sleep, peripherals are clock gated, and interrupts (from GPIOs and internal peripherals) will not be generated. A wakeup source described in the *Sleep Modes* documentation can be used to trigger wakeup from the light sleep state.

For example, the EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources can be used to wake up the chip via a GPIO.

Power Management Locks

Applications have the ability to acquire/release locks in order to control the power management algorithm. When an application acquires a lock, the power management algorithm operation is restricted in a way described below. When the lock is released, such restrictions are removed.

Power management locks have acquire/release counters. If the lock has been acquired a number of times, it needs to be released the same number of times to remove associated restrictions.

ESP32-S2 supports three types of locks described in the table below.

Lock	Description
`ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX`	Requests CPU frequency to be at the maximum value set with `esp_pm_configure()`. For ESP32-S2, this value can be set to 80 MHz, 160 MHz, or 240 MHz.
`ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX`	Requests the APB frequency to be at the maximum supported value. For ESP32-S2, this is 80 MHz.
`ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP`	Disables automatic switching to light sleep.

ESP32-S2 Power Management Algorithm

The table below shows how CPU and APB frequencies will be switched if dynamic frequency scaling is enabled. You can specify the maximum CPU frequency with either `esp_pm_configure()` or *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ*.

Max CPU Frequency Set	Lock Acquisition	CPU and APB Frequncies
240	`ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX` acquired	CPU: 240 MHz APB: 80 MHz
	`ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` acquired, `ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX` not acquired	CPU: 80 MHz APB: 80 MHz
	None	Min values for both frequencies set with `esp_pm_configure()`
160	`ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX` acquired	CPU: 160 MHz APB: 80 MHz
	`ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` acquired, `ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX` not acquired	CPU: 80 MHz APB: 80 MHz
	None	Min values for both frequencies set with `esp_pm_configure()`
80	Any of `ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX` or `ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` acquired	CPU: 80 MHz APB: 80 MHz
	None	Min values for both frequencies set with `esp_pm_configure()`

If none of the locks are acquired, and light sleep is enabled in a call to `esp_pm_configure()`, the system will go into light sleep mode. The duration of light sleep will be determined by:

- FreeRTOS tasks blocked with finite timeouts
- Timers registered with *High resolution timer* APIs

Light sleep duration will be chosen to wake up the chip before the nearest event (task being unblocked, or timer elapses).

Dynamic Frequency Scaling and Peripheral Drivers

When DFS is enabled, the APB frequency can be changed multiple times within a single RTOS tick. The APB frequency change does not affect the work of some peripherals, while other peripherals may have issues. For example, Timer Group peripheral timers will keep counting, however, the speed at which they count will change proportionally to the APB frequency.

The following peripherals work normally even when the APB frequency is changing:

- **UART**: if REF_TICK is used as a clock source. See *use_ref_tick* member of `uart_config_t`.

- **LEDC**: if REF_TICK is used as a clock source. See `ledc_timer_config()` function.
- **RMT**: if REF_TICK or XTAL is used as a clock source. See *flags* member of `rmt_config_t` and macro *RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS*.

Currently, the following peripheral drivers are aware of DFS and will use the `ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` lock for the duration of the transaction:

- SPI master
- I2C
- I2S (If the APLL clock is used, then it will use the `ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP` lock)
- SDMMC

The following drivers will hold the `ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX` lock while the driver is enabled:

- **SPI slave**: between calls to `spi_slave_initialize()` and `spi_slave_free()`.
- **Ethernet**: between calls to `esp_eth_driver_install()` and `esp_eth_driver_uninstall()`.
- **WiFi**: between calls to `esp_wifi_start()` and `esp_wifi_stop()`. If modem sleep is enabled, the lock will be released for the periods of time when radio is disabled.
- **TWAI**: between calls to `twai_driver_install()` and `twai_driver_uninstall()`.

The following peripheral drivers are not aware of DFS yet. Applications need to acquire/release locks themselves, when necessary:

- PCNT
- Sigma-delta
- Timer group

API Reference

Header File

- esp_pm/include/esp_pm.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_pm_configure**(**const** void **config*)

Set implementation-specific power management configuration.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the configuration values are not correct
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if certain combination of values is not supported, or if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

Parameters

- `config`: pointer to implementation-specific configuration structure (e.g. esp_pm_config_esp32)

esp_err_t **esp_pm_get_configuration**(void **config*)

Get implementation-specific power management configuration.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the pointer is null

Parameters

- `config`: pointer to implementation-specific configuration structure (e.g. esp_pm_config_esp32)

esp_err_t **esp_pm_lock_create**(*esp_pm_lock_type_t* *lock_type*, int *arg*, **const** char **name*, *esp_pm_lock_handle_t* **out_handle*)

Initialize a lock handle for certain power management parameter.

When lock is created, initially it is not taken. Call esp_pm_lock_acquire to take the lock.

This function must not be called from an ISR.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if the lock structure can not be allocated
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if out_handle is NULL or type argument is not valid
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

Parameters

- `lock_type`: Power management constraint which the lock should control
- `arg`: argument, value depends on lock_type, see esp_pm_lock_type_t
- `name`: arbitrary string identifying the lock (e.g. "wifi" or "spi"). Used by the esp_pm_dump_locks function to list existing locks. May be set to NULL. If not set to NULL, must point to a string which is valid for the lifetime of the lock.
- `[out] out_handle`: handle returned from this function. Use this handle when calling esp_pm_lock_delete, esp_pm_lock_acquire, esp_pm_lock_release. Must not be NULL.

esp_err_t **esp_pm_lock_acquire**(*esp_pm_lock_handle_t handle*)

Take a power management lock.

Once the lock is taken, power management algorithm will not switch to the mode specified in a call to esp_pm_lock_create, or any of the lower power modes (higher numeric values of 'mode').

The lock is recursive, in the sense that if esp_pm_lock_acquire is called a number of times, esp_pm_lock_release has to be called the same number of times in order to release the lock.

This function may be called from an ISR.

This function is not thread-safe w.r.t. calls to other esp_pm_lock_* functions for the same handle.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

Parameters

- `handle`: handle obtained from esp_pm_lock_create function

esp_err_t **esp_pm_lock_release**(*esp_pm_lock_handle_t handle*)

Release the lock taken using esp_pm_lock_acquire.

Call to this functions removes power management restrictions placed when taking the lock.

Locks are recursive, so if esp_pm_lock_acquire is called a number of times, esp_pm_lock_release has to be called the same number of times in order to actually release the lock.

This function may be called from an ISR.

This function is not thread-safe w.r.t. calls to other esp_pm_lock_* functions for the same handle.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if lock is not acquired
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

Parameters

- `handle`: handle obtained from esp_pm_lock_create function

esp_err_t **esp_pm_lock_delete**(*esp_pm_lock_handle_t handle*)

Delete a lock created using esp_pm_lock.

The lock must be released before calling this function.

This function must not be called from an ISR.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the handle argument is NULL
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if the lock is still acquired
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

Parameters

- `handle`: handle obtained from esp_pm_lock_create function

esp_err_t **esp_pm_dump_locks**(FILE *_stream_)

Dump the list of all locks to stderr

This function dumps debugging information about locks created using esp_pm_lock_create to an output stream.

This function must not be called from an ISR. If esp_pm_lock_acquire/release are called while this function is running, inconsistent results may be reported.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if CONFIG_PM_ENABLE is not enabled in sdkconfig

Parameters

- `stream`: stream to print information to; use stdout or stderr to print to the console; use fmemopen/open_memstream to print to a string buffer.

Type Definitions

typedef struct esp_pm_lock ***esp_pm_lock_handle_t**

Opaque handle to the power management lock.

Enumerations

enum esp_pm_lock_type_t

Power management constraints.

Values:

ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX

Require CPU frequency to be at the maximum value set via esp_pm_configure. Argument is unused and should be set to 0.

ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX

Require APB frequency to be at the maximum value supported by the chip. Argument is unused and should be set to 0.

ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP

Prevent the system from going into light sleep. Argument is unused and should be set to 0.

Header File

- esp_pm/include/esp32s2/pm.h

Structures

struct esp_pm_config_esp32s2_t

Power management config for ESP32.

Pass a pointer to this structure as an argument to esp_pm_configure function.

Public Members

int **max_freq_mhz**

Maximum CPU frequency, in MHz

int **min_freq_mhz**

Minimum CPU frequency to use when no locks are taken, in MHz

bool **light_sleep_enable**

Enter light sleep when no locks are taken

2.6.22 Sleep Modes

Overview

ESP32-S2 is capable of light sleep and deep sleep power saving modes.

In light sleep mode, digital peripherals, most of the RAM, and CPUs are clock-gated, and supply voltage is reduced. Upon exit from light sleep, peripherals and CPUs resume operation, their internal state is preserved.

In deep sleep mode, CPUs, most of the RAM, and all the digital peripherals which are clocked from APB_CLK are powered off. The only parts of the chip which can still be powered on are:

- RTC controller
- RTC peripherals
- ULP coprocessor
- RTC fast memory
- RTC slow memory

Wakeup from deep and light sleep modes can be done using several sources. These sources can be combined, in this case the chip will wake up when any one of the sources is triggered. Wakeup sources can be enabled using `esp_sleep_enable_X_wakeup` APIs and can be disabled using `esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source()` API. Next section describes these APIs in detail. Wakeup sources can be configured at any moment before entering light or deep sleep mode.

Additionally, the application can force specific powerdown modes for the RTC peripherals and RTC memories using `esp_sleep_pd_config()` API.

Once wakeup sources are configured, application can enter sleep mode using `esp_light_sleep_start()` or `esp_deep_sleep_start()` APIs. At this point the hardware will be configured according to the requested wakeup sources, and RTC controller will either power down or power off the CPUs and digital peripherals.

If WiFi connection needs to be maintained, enable WiFi modem sleep, and enable automatic light sleep feature (see *Power Management APIs*). This will allow the system to wake up from sleep automatically when required by WiFi driver, thereby maintaining connection to the AP.

WiFi and sleep modes

In deep sleep and light sleep modes, wireless peripherals are powered down. Before entering deep sleep or light sleep modes, applications must disable WiFi using appropriate calls (`esp_wifi_stop()`). WiFi connection will not be maintained in deep sleep or light sleep, even if these functions are not called.

Wakeup sources

Timer RTC controller has a built in timer which can be used to wake up the chip after a predefined amount of time. Time is specified at microsecond precision, but the actual resolution depends on the clock source selected for RTC SLOW_CLK.

For details on RTC clock options, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *ULP Coprocessor* [PDF].

This wakeup mode doesn't require RTC peripherals or RTC memories to be powered on during sleep.

`esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup()` function can be used to enable deep sleep wakeup using a timer.

Touch pad RTC IO module contains logic to trigger wakeup when a touch sensor interrupt occurs. You need to configure the touch pad interrupt before the chip starts deep sleep.

`esp_sleep_enable_touchpad_wakeup()` function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

External wakeup (ext0) RTC IO module contains logic to trigger wakeup when one of RTC GPIOs is set to a predefined logic level. RTC IO is part of RTC peripherals power domain, so RTC peripherals will be kept powered on during deep sleep if this wakeup source is requested.

Because RTC IO module is enabled in this mode, internal pullup or pulldown resistors can also be used. They need to be configured by the application using *rtc_gpio_pullup_en()* and *rtc_gpio_pulldown_en()* functions, before calling `esp_sleep_start()`.

esp_sleep_enable_ext0_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

Warning: After wake up from sleep, IO pad used for wakeup will be configured as RTC IO. Before using this pad as digital GPIO, reconfigure it using `rtc_gpio_deinit(gpio_num)` function.

External wakeup (ext1) RTC controller contains logic to trigger wakeup using multiple RTC GPIOs. One of the two logic functions can be used to trigger wakeup:

- wake up if any of the selected pins is high (`ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ANY_HIGH`)
- wake up if all the selected pins are low (`ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ALL_LOW`)

This wakeup source is implemented by the RTC controller. As such, RTC peripherals and RTC memories can be powered down in this mode. However, if RTC peripherals are powered down, internal pullup and pulldown resistors will be disabled. To use internal pullup or pulldown resistors, request RTC peripherals power domain to be kept on during sleep, and configure pullup/pulldown resistors using `rtc_gpio_` functions, before entering sleep:

```
esp_sleep_pd_config(ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH, ESP_PD_OPTION_ON);
gpio_pullup_dis(gpio_num);
gpio_pulldown_en(gpio_num);
```

Warning: After wake up from sleep, IO pad(s) used for wakeup will be configured as RTC IO. Before using these pads as digital GPIOs, reconfigure them using `rtc_gpio_deinit(gpio_num)` function.

esp_sleep_enable_ext1_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

ULP coprocessor wakeup ULP coprocessor can run while the chip is in sleep mode, and may be used to poll sensors, monitor ADC or touch sensor values, and wake up the chip when a specific event is detected. ULP coprocessor is part of RTC peripherals power domain, and it runs the program stored in RTC slow memory. RTC slow memory will be powered on during sleep if this wakeup mode is requested. RTC peripherals will be automatically powered on before ULP coprocessor starts running the program; once the program stops running, RTC peripherals are automatically powered down again.

esp_sleep_enable_ulp_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

GPIO wakeup (light sleep only) In addition to EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources described above, one more method of wakeup from external inputs is available in light sleep mode. With this wakeup source, each pin can be individually configured to trigger wakeup on high or low level using *gpio_wakeup_enable()* function. Unlike EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources, which can only be used with RTC IOs, this wakeup source can be used with any IO (RTC or digital).

esp_sleep_enable_gpio_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

Warning: Before entering light sleep mode, check if any GPIO pin to be driven is part of the VDD_SPI power domain. If so, this power domain must be configured to remain ON during sleep.

For example, on ESP32-WROOM-32 board, GPIO16 and GPIO17 are linked to VDD_SPI power domain. If they are configured to remain high during light sleep, the power domain should be configured to remain powered ON. This can be done with *esp_sleep_pd_config()*:

```
esp_sleep_pd_config(ESP_PD_DOMAIN_VDDSDIO, ESP_PD_OPTION_ON);
```

UART wakeup (light sleep only) When ESP32-S2 receives UART input from external devices, it is often required to wake up the chip when input data is available. UART peripheral contains a feature which allows waking up the chip from light sleep when a certain number of positive edges on RX pin are seen. This number of positive edges can be set using *uart_set_wakeup_threshold()* function. Note that the character which triggers wakeup (and any characters before it) will not be received by the UART after wakeup. This means that the external device typically needs to send an extra character to the ESP32-S2 to trigger wakeup, before sending the data.

esp_sleep_enable_uart_wakeup() function can be used to enable this wakeup source.

Power-down of RTC peripherals and memories

By default, *esp_deep_sleep_start()* and *esp_light_sleep_start()* functions will power down all RTC power domains which are not needed by the enabled wakeup sources. To override this behaviour, *esp_sleep_pd_config()* function is provided.

If some variables in the program are placed into RTC slow memory (for example, using `RTC_DATA_ATTR` attribute), RTC slow memory will be kept powered on by default. This can be overridden using *esp_sleep_pd_config()* function, if desired.

Entering light sleep

esp_light_sleep_start() function can be used to enter light sleep once wakeup sources are configured. It is also possible to go into light sleep with no wakeup sources configured, in this case the chip will be in light sleep mode indefinitely, until external reset is applied.

Entering deep sleep

esp_deep_sleep_start() function can be used to enter deep sleep once wakeup sources are configured. It is also possible to go into deep sleep with no wakeup sources configured, in this case the chip will be in deep sleep mode indefinitely, until external reset is applied.

Configuring IOs

Some ESP32-S2 IOs have internal pullups or pulldowns, which are enabled by default. If an external circuit drives this pin in deep sleep mode, current consumption may increase due to current flowing through these pullups and pulldowns.

To isolate a pin, preventing extra current draw, call *rtc_gpio_isolate()* function.

For example, on ESP32-WROVER module, GPIO12 is pulled up externally. GPIO12 also has an internal pull-down in the ESP32 chip. This means that in deep sleep, some current will flow through these external and internal resistors, increasing deep sleep current above the minimal possible value. Add the following code before *esp_deep_sleep_start()* to remove this extra current:

```
rtc_gpio_isolate(GPIO_NUM_12);
```

UART output handling

Before entering sleep mode, *esp_deep_sleep_start()* will flush the contents of UART FIFOs.

When entering light sleep mode using *esp_light_sleep_start()*, UART FIFOs will not be flushed. Instead, UART output will be suspended, and remaining characters in the FIFO will be sent out after wakeup from light sleep.

Checking sleep wakeup cause

esp_sleep_get_wakeup_cause() function can be used to check which wakeup source has triggered wakeup from sleep mode.

For touch pad, it is possible to identify touch pad which has caused wakeup using *esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wakeup_status()* functions.

For ext1 wakeup sources, it is possible to identify pin which has caused wakeup using *esp_sleep_get_ext1_wakeup_status()* functions.

Disable sleep wakeup source

Previously configured wakeup source can be disabled later using *esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source()* API. This function deactivates trigger for the given wakeup source. Additionally it can disable all triggers if the argument is `ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ALL`.

Application Example

Implementation of basic functionality of deep sleep is shown in protocols/sntp example, where ESP module is periodically waken up to retrieve time from NTP server.

More extensive example in system/deep_sleep illustrates usage of various deep sleep wakeup triggers and ULP coprocessor programming.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_hw_support/include/esp_sleep.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source**(*esp_sleep_source_t source*)

Disable wakeup source.

This function is used to deactivate wake up trigger for source defined as parameter of the function.

See docs/sleep-modes.rst for details.

Note This function does not modify wake up configuration in RTC. It will be performed in esp_sleep_start function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if trigger was not active

Parameters

- `source`: - number of source to disable of type esp_sleep_source_t

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_ulp_wakeup**(void)

Enable wakeup by ULP coprocessor.

Note In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, ULP wakeup source cannot be used when RTC_PERIPH power domain is forced to be powered on (ESP_PD_OPTION_ON) or when ext0 wakeup source is used.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if additional current by touch (CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT) is enabled.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if ULP co-processor is not enabled or if wakeup triggers conflict

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup**(uint64_t *time_in_us*)

Enable wakeup by timer.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if value is out of range (TBD)

Parameters

- `time_in_us`: time before wakeup, in microseconds

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_touchpad_wakeup**(void)

Enable wakeup by touch sensor.

Note In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, touch wakeup source can not be used when RTC_PERIPH power domain is forced to be powered on (ESP_PD_OPTION_ON) or when ext0 wakeup source is used.

Note The FSM mode of the touch button should be configured as the timer trigger mode.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if additional current by touch (CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_EXT_CRYST_ADDIT_CURRENT) is enabled.
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if wakeup triggers conflict

touch_pad_t **esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wakeup_status**(void)

Get the touch pad which caused wakeup.

If wakeup was caused by another source, this function will return TOUCH_PAD_MAX;

Return touch pad which caused wakeup

bool **esp_sleep_is_valid_wakeup_gpio**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*)

Returns true if a GPIO number is valid for use as wakeup source.

Note For SoCs with RTC IO capability, this can be any valid RTC IO input pin.

Return True if this GPIO number will be accepted as a sleep wakeup source.

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: Number of the GPIO to test for wakeup source capability

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_ext0_wakeup**(*gpio_num_t gpio_num*, int *level*)

Enable wakeup using a pin.

This function uses external wakeup feature of RTC_IO peripheral. It will work only if RTC peripherals are kept on during sleep.

This feature can monitor any pin which is an RTC IO. Once the pin transitions into the state given by level argument, the chip will be woken up.

Note This function does not modify pin configuration. The pin is configured in esp_sleep_start, immediately before entering sleep mode.

Note In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, ext0 wakeup source can not be used together with touch or ULP wakeup sources.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if the selected GPIO is not an RTC GPIO, or the mode is invalid
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if wakeup triggers conflict

Parameters

- `gpio_num`: GPIO number used as wakeup source. Only GPIOs which are have RTC functionality can be used: 0,2,4,12-15,25-27,32-39.
- `level`: input level which will trigger wakeup (0=low, 1=high)

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_ext1_wakeup**(uint64_t *mask*, *esp_sleep_ext1_wakeup_mode_t mode*)

Enable wakeup using multiple pins.

This function uses external wakeup feature of RTC controller. It will work even if RTC peripherals are shut down during sleep.

This feature can monitor any number of pins which are in RTC IOs. Once any of the selected pins goes into the state given by mode argument, the chip will be woken up.

Note This function does not modify pin configuration. The pins are configured in esp_sleep_start, immediately before entering sleep mode.

Note internal pullups and pulldowns don't work when RTC peripherals are shut down. In this case, external resistors need to be added. Alternatively, RTC peripherals (and pullups/pulldowns) may be kept enabled using esp_sleep_pd_config function.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if any of the selected GPIOs is not an RTC GPIO, or mode is invalid

Parameters

- `mask`: bit mask of GPIO numbers which will cause wakeup. Only GPIOs which are have RTC functionality can be used in this bit map: 0,2,4,12-15,25-27,32-39.
- `mode`: select logic function used to determine wakeup condition:
  - ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ALL_LOW: wake up when all selected GPIOs are low
  - ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ANY_HIGH: wake up when any of the selected GPIOs is high

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_gpio_wakeup**(void)

Enable wakeup from light sleep using GPIOs.

Each GPIO supports wakeup function, which can be triggered on either low level or high level. Unlike EXT0 and EXT1 wakeup sources, this method can be used both for all IOs: RTC IOs and digital IOs. It can only be used to wakeup from light sleep though.

To enable wakeup, first call gpio_wakeup_enable, specifying gpio number and wakeup level, for each GPIO which is used for wakeup. Then call this function to enable wakeup feature.

Note In revisions 0 and 1 of the ESP32, GPIO wakeup source can not be used together with touch or ULP wakeup sources.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if wakeup triggers conflict

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_uart_wakeup**(int *uart_num*)

Enable wakeup from light sleep using UART.

Use uart_set_wakeup_threshold function to configure UART wakeup threshold.

Wakeup from light sleep takes some time, so not every character sent to the UART can be received by the application.

Note ESP32 does not support wakeup from UART2.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if wakeup from given UART is not supported

Parameters

- `uart_num`: UART port to wake up from

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_enable_wifi_wakeup**(void)

Enable wakeup by WiFi MAC.

Return

- ESP_OK on success

uint64_t **esp_sleep_get_ext1_wakeup_status**(void)

Get the bit mask of GPIOs which caused wakeup (ext1)

If wakeup was caused by another source, this function will return 0.

Return bit mask, if GPIOn caused wakeup, BIT(n) will be set

esp_err_t **esp_sleep_pd_config**(*esp_sleep_pd_domain_t domain*, *esp_sleep_pd_option_t option*)
Set power down mode for an RTC power domain in sleep mode.

If not set set using this API, all power domains default to ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO.

Return
- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if either of the arguments is out of range

Parameters
- `domain`: power domain to configure
- `option`: power down option (ESP_PD_OPTION_OFF, ESP_PD_OPTION_ON, or ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO)

void **esp_deep_sleep_start**(void)
Enter deep sleep with the configured wakeup options.

This function does not return.

esp_err_t **esp_light_sleep_start**(void)
Enter light sleep with the configured wakeup options.

Return
- ESP_OK on success (returned after wakeup)
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE if WiFi or BT is not stopped

void **esp_deep_sleep**(uint64_t *time_in_us*)
Enter deep-sleep mode.

The device will automatically wake up after the deep-sleep time Upon waking up, the device calls deep sleep wake stub, and then proceeds to load application.

Call to this function is equivalent to a call to esp_deep_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup followed by a call to esp_deep_sleep_start.

esp_deep_sleep does not shut down WiFi, BT, and higher level protocol connections gracefully. Make sure relevant WiFi and BT stack functions are called to close any connections and deinitialize the peripherals. These include:

- esp_bluedroid_disable
- esp_bt_controller_disable
- esp_wifi_stop

This function does not return.

Parameters
- `time_in_us`: deep-sleep time, unit: microsecond

esp_sleep_wakeup_cause_t **esp_sleep_get_wakeup_cause**(void)
Get the wakeup source which caused wakeup from sleep.

Return cause of wake up from last sleep (deep sleep or light sleep)

void **esp_wake_deep_sleep**(void)
Default stub to run on wake from deep sleep.

Allows for executing code immediately on wake from sleep, before the software bootloader or ESP-IDF app has started up.

This function is weak-linked, so you can implement your own version to run code immediately when the chip wakes from sleep.

See docs/deep-sleep-stub.rst for details.

void **esp_set_deep_sleep_wake_stub**(*esp_deep_sleep_wake_stub_fn_t new_stub*)
Install a new stub at runtime to run on wake from deep sleep.

If implementing esp_wake_deep_sleep() then it is not necessary to call this function.

However, it is possible to call this function to substitute a different deep sleep stub. Any function used as a deep sleep stub must be marked RTC_IRAM_ATTR, and must obey the same rules given for esp_wake_deep_sleep().

esp_deep_sleep_wake_stub_fn_t **esp_get_deep_sleep_wake_stub**(void)
Get current wake from deep sleep stub.

Return Return current wake from deep sleep stub, or NULL if no stub is installed.

void **esp_default_wake_deep_sleep**(void)
The default esp-idf-provided esp_wake_deep_sleep() stub.

See docs/deep-sleep-stub.rst for details.

void **esp_deep_sleep_disable_rom_logging**(void)
Disable logging from the ROM code after deep sleep.

Using LSB of RTC_STORE4.

void **esp_sleep_config_gpio_isolate**(void)
Configure to isolate all GPIO pins in sleep state.

void **esp_sleep_enable_gpio_switch**(bool *enable*)
Enable or disable GPIO pins status switching between slept status and waked status.

Parameters
- `enable`: decide whether to switch status or not

Type Definitions

typedef *esp_sleep_source_t* **esp_sleep_wakeup_cause_t**

typedef void (***esp_deep_sleep_wake_stub_fn_t**)(void)
Function type for stub to run on wake from sleep.

Enumerations

enum esp_sleep_ext1_wakeup_mode_t
Logic function used for EXT1 wakeup mode.

Values:

ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ALL_LOW = 0
Wake the chip when all selected GPIOs go low.

ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ANY_HIGH = 1
Wake the chip when any of the selected GPIOs go high.

enum esp_sleep_pd_domain_t
Power domains which can be powered down in sleep mode.

Values:

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH
RTC IO, sensors and ULP co-processor.

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_SLOW_MEM
RTC slow memory.

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_FAST_MEM
RTC fast memory.

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_XTAL
XTAL oscillator.

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_CPU
CPU core.

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_VDDSDIO
VDD_SDIO.

ESP_PD_DOMAIN_MAX
Number of domains.

enum esp_sleep_pd_option_t
Power down options.

Values:

ESP_PD_OPTION_OFF
Power down the power domain in sleep mode.

ESP_PD_OPTION_ON
Keep power domain enabled during sleep mode.

ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO
Keep power domain enabled in sleep mode, if it is needed by one of the wakeup options. Otherwise power it down.

enum esp_sleep_source_t
Sleep wakeup cause.

Values:

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UNDEFINED
In case of deep sleep, reset was not caused by exit from deep sleep.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ALL
Not a wakeup cause, used to disable all wakeup sources with esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT0
Wakeup caused by external signal using RTC_IO.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT1
Wakeup caused by external signal using RTC_CNTL.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TIMER
Wakeup caused by timer.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TOUCHPAD
Wakeup caused by touchpad.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ULP
Wakeup caused by ULP program.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_GPIO
Wakeup caused by GPIO (light sleep only)

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UART
Wakeup caused by UART (light sleep only)

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_WIFI
Wakeup caused by WIFI (light sleep only)

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU
Wakeup caused by COCPU int.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU_TRAP_TRIG
Wakeup caused by COCPU crash.

ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_BT
Wakeup caused by BT (light sleep only)

2.6.23 Watchdogs

Overview

The ESP-IDF has support for two types of watchdogs: The Interrupt Watchdog Timer and the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT). The Interrupt Watchdog Timer and the TWDT can both be enabled using *Project Configuration Menu*, however the TWDT can also be enabled during runtime. The Interrupt Watchdog is responsible for detecting instances where FreeRTOS task switching is blocked for a prolonged period of time. The TWDT is responsible for detecting instances of tasks running without yielding for a prolonged period.

Interrupt watchdog The interrupt watchdog makes sure the FreeRTOS task switching interrupt isn't blocked for a long time. This is bad because no other tasks, including potentially important ones like the WiFi task and the idle task, can't get any CPU runtime. A blocked task switching interrupt can happen because a program runs into an infinite loop with interrupts disabled or hangs in an interrupt.

The default action of the interrupt watchdog is to invoke the panic handler. causing a register dump and an opportunity for the programmer to find out, using either OpenOCD or gdbstub, what bit of code is stuck with interrupts disabled. Depending on the configuration of the panic handler, it can also blindly reset the CPU, which may be preferred in a production environment.

The interrupt watchdog is built around the hardware watchdog in timer group 1. If this watchdog for some reason cannot execute the NMI handler that invokes the panic handler (e.g. because IRAM is overwritten by garbage), it will hard-reset the SOC. If the panic handler executes, it will display the panic reason as "Interrupt wdt timeout on CPU0" or "Interrupt wdt timeout on CPU1" (as applicable).

Configuration The interrupt watchdog is enabled by default via the *CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT* configuration flag. The timeout is configured by setting *CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS*. The default timeout is higher if PSRAM support is enabled, as a critical section or interrupt routine that accesses a large amount of PSRAM will take longer to complete in some circumstances. The INT WDT timeout should always be longer than the period between FreeRTOS ticks (see *CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ*).

Tuning If you find the Interrupt watchdog timeout is triggering because an interrupt or critical section is running longer than the timeout period, consider rewriting the code: critical sections should be made as short as possible, with non-critical computation happening outside the critical section. Interrupt handlers should also perform the minimum possible amount of computation, consider pushing data into a queue from the ISR and processing it in a task instead. Neither critical sections or interrupt handlers should ever block waiting for another event to occur.

If changing the code to reduce the processing time is not possible or desirable, it's possible to increase the *CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS* setting instead.

Task Watchdog Timer The Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT) is responsible for detecting instances of tasks running for a prolonged period of time without yielding. This is a symptom of CPU starvation and is usually caused by a higher priority task looping without yielding to a lower-priority task thus starving the lower priority task from CPU time. This can be an indicator of poorly written code that spinloops on a peripheral, or a task that is stuck in an infinite loop.

By default the TWDT will watch the Idle task, however any task can subscribe to be watched by the TWDT. Each watched task must 'reset' the TWDT periodically to indicate that they have been allocated CPU time. If a task does not reset within the TWDT timeout period, a warning will be printed with information about which tasks failed to reset the TWDT in time and which tasks are currently running.

It is also possible to redefine the function *esp_task_wdt_isr_user_handler* in the user code, in order to receive the timeout event and handle it differently.

The TWDT is built around the Hardware Watchdog Timer in Timer Group 0. The TWDT can be initialized by calling `esp_task_wdt_init()` which will configure the hardware timer. A task can then subscribe to the TWDT using `esp_task_wdt_add()` in order to be watched. Each subscribed task must periodically call `esp_task_wdt_reset()` to reset the TWDT. Failure by any subscribed tasks to periodically call `esp_task_wdt_reset()` indicates that one or more tasks have been starved of CPU time or are stuck in a loop somewhere.

A watched task can be unsubscribed from the TWDT using `esp_task_wdt_delete()`. A task that has been unsubscribed should no longer call `esp_task_wdt_reset()`. Once all tasks have unsubscribed form the TWDT, the TWDT can be deinitialized by calling `esp_task_wdt_deinit()`.

The default timeout period for the TWDT is set using config item *CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S*. This should be set to at least as long as you expect any single task will need to monopolise the CPU (for example, if you expect the app will do a long intensive calculation and should not yield to other tasks). It is also possible to change this timeout at runtime by calling `esp_task_wdt_init()`.

The following config options control TWDT configuration at startup. They are all enabled by default:

- *CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT* - the TWDT is initialized automatically during startup. If this option is disabled, it is still possible to initialize the Task WDT at runtime by calling `esp_task_wdt_init()`.
- *CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0* - Idle task is subscribed to the TWDT during startup. If this option is disabled, it is still possible to subscribe the idle task by calling `esp_task_wdt_add()` at any time.

JTAG and watchdogs While debugging using OpenOCD, the CPUs will be halted every time a breakpoint is reached. However if the watchdog timers continue to run when a breakpoint is encountered, they will eventually trigger a reset making it very difficult to debug code. Therefore OpenOCD will disable the hardware timers of both the interrupt and task watchdogs at every breakpoint. Moreover, OpenOCD will not reenable them upon leaving the breakpoint. This means that interrupt watchdog and task watchdog functionality will essentially be disabled. No warnings or panics from either watchdogs will be generated when the ESP32-S2 is connected to OpenOCD via JTAG.

Interrupt Watchdog API Reference

Header File

- esp_system/include/esp_int_wdt.h

Functions

void **esp_int_wdt_init**(void)

Initialize the non-CPU-specific parts of interrupt watchdog. This is called in the init code if the interrupt watchdog is enabled in menuconfig.

Task Watchdog API Reference

A full example using the Task Watchdog is available in esp-idf: system/task_watchdog

Header File

- esp_system/include/esp_task_wdt.h

Functions

esp_err_t **esp_task_wdt_init**(uint32_t *timeout*, bool *panic*)

Initialize the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function configures and initializes the TWDT. If the TWDT is already initialized when this function is called, this function will update the TWDT's timeout period and panic configurations instead. After initializing the TWDT, any task can elect to be watched by the TWDT by subscribing to it using esp_task_wdt_add().

Return

- ESP_OK: Initialization was successful
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Initialization failed due to lack of memory

Note esp_task_wdt_init() must only be called after the scheduler started

Parameters

- `[in] timeout`: Timeout period of TWDT in seconds
- `[in] panic`: Flag that controls whether the panic handler will be executed when the TWDT times out

esp_err_t **esp_task_wdt_deinit** (void)

Deinitialize the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function will deinitialize the TWDT. Calling this function whilst tasks are still subscribed to the TWDT, or when the TWDT is already deinitialized, will result in an error code being returned.

Return

- ESP_OK: TWDT successfully deinitialized
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, tasks are still subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Error, TWDT has already been deinitialized

esp_err_t **esp_task_wdt_add** (*TaskHandle_t handle*)

Subscribe a task to the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function subscribes a task to the TWDT. Each subscribed task must periodically call esp_task_wdt_reset() to prevent the TWDT from elapsing its timeout period. Failure to do so will result in a TWDT timeout. If the task being subscribed is one of the Idle Tasks, this function will automatically enable esp_task_wdt_reset() to called from the Idle Hook of the Idle Task. Calling this function whilst the TWDT is uninitialized or attempting to subscribe an already subscribed task will result in an error code being returned.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully subscribed the task to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error, the task is already subscribed
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM: Error, could not subscribe the task due to lack of memory
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, the TWDT has not been initialized yet

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle of the task. Input NULL to subscribe the current running task to the TWDT

esp_err_t **esp_task_wdt_reset** (void)

Reset the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT) on behalf of the currently running task.

This function will reset the TWDT on behalf of the currently running task. Each subscribed task must periodically call this function to prevent the TWDT from timing out. If one or more subscribed tasks fail to reset the TWDT on their own behalf, a TWDT timeout will occur. If the IDLE tasks have been subscribed to the TWDT, they will automatically call this function from their idle hooks. Calling this function from a task that has not subscribed to the TWDT, or when the TWDT is uninitialized will result in an error code being returned.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully reset the TWDT on behalf of the currently running task
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: Error, the current running task has not subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, the TWDT has not been initialized yet

esp_err_t **esp_task_wdt_delete** (*TaskHandle_t handle*)

Unsubscribes a task from the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function will unsubscribe a task from the TWDT. After being unsubscribed, the task should no longer call esp_task_wdt_reset(). If the task is an IDLE task, this function will automatically disable the calling of esp_task_wdt_reset() from the Idle Hook. Calling this function whilst the TWDT is uninitialized or attempting to unsubscribe an already unsubscribed task from the TWDT will result in an error code being returned.

Return

- ESP_OK: Successfully unsubscribed the task from the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG: Error, the task is already unsubscribed
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: Error, the TWDT has not been initialized yet

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle of the task. Input NULL to unsubscribe the current running task.

esp_err_t **esp_task_wdt_status** (*TaskHandle_t handle*)

Query whether a task is subscribed to the Task Watchdog Timer (TWDT)

This function will query whether a task is currently subscribed to the TWDT, or whether the TWDT is initialized.

Return :

- ESP_OK: The task is currently subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND: The task is currently not subscribed to the TWDT
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE: The TWDT is not initialized, therefore no tasks can be subscribed

Parameters

- `[in] handle`: Handle of the task. Input NULL to query the current running task.

2.6.24 System Time

Overview

System time can be kept using either one time source or two time sources simultaneously. The choice depends on the application purpose and accuracy requirements for system time.

There are the following two time sources:

- **RTC timer**: Allows keeping the system time during any resets and sleep modes, only the power-up reset leads to resetting the RTC timer. The frequency deviation depends on an *RTC Clock Source* and affects accuracy only in sleep modes, in which case the time will be measured at 6.6667 us resolution.
- **High-resolution timer**: Not available during any reset and sleep modes. The reason for using this timer is to achieve greater accuracy. It uses the APB_CLK clock source (typically 80 MHz), which has a frequency deviation of less than ±10 ppm. Time will be measured at 1 us resolution.

The settings for the system time source are as follows:

- RTC and high-resolution timer (default)
- RTC
- High-resolution timer
- None

It is recommended to stick to the default setting which provides maximum accuracy. If you want to choose a different timer, configure *CONFIG_ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL* in project configuration.

RTC Clock Source

The RTC timer has the following clock sources:

- `Internal 90kHz RC oscillator` (default): Features lowest deep sleep current consumption and no dependence on any external components. However, as frequency stability is affected by temperature fluctuations, time may drift in both Deep and Light sleep modes.
- `External 32kHz crystal`: Requires a 32kHz crystal to be connected to the 32K_XP and 32K_XN pins. Provides better frequency stability at the expense of slightly higher (by 1 uA) Deep sleep current consumption.
- `External 32kHz oscillator at 32K_XN pin`: Allows using 32kHz clock generated by an external circuit. The external clock signal must be connected to the 32K_XN pin. The amplitude should be less than 1.2 V for sine wave signal and less than 1 V for square wave signal. Common mode voltage should be in the range of 0.1 < Vcm < 0.5xVamp, where Vamp is signal amplitude. Additionally, a 1 nF capacitor must be placed between the 32K_XP pin and ground. In this case, the 32K_XP pin cannot be used as a GPIO pin.
- `Internal 8.5MHz oscillator, divided by 256 (~33kHz)`: Provides better frequency stability than the `internal 90kHz RC oscillator` at the expense of higher (by 5 uA) deep sleep current consumption. It also does not require external components.

The choice depends on your requirements for system time accuracy and power consumption in sleep modes. To modify the RTC clock source, set *CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC* in project configuration.

More details on wiring requirements for the `External 32kHz crystal` and `External 32kHz oscillator at 32K_XN pin` sources can be found in Section *Crystal Oscillator* of ESP32-S2 Hardware Design Guidelines.

Get Current Time

To get the current time, use the POSIX function `gettimeofday()`. Additionally, you can use the following standard C library functions to obtain time and manipulate it:

```
gettimeofday
time
asctime
clock
ctime
difftime
gmtime
localtime
mktime
strftime
adjtime*
```

* –To stop smooth time adjustment and update the current time immediately, use the POSIX function `settimeofday()`.

If you need to obtain time with one second resolution, use the following method:

```
time_t now;
char strftime_buf[64];
struct tm timeinfo;

time(&now);
// Set timezone to China Standard Time
setenv("TZ", "CST-8", 1);
tzset();

localtime_r(&now, &timeinfo);
strftime(strftime_buf, sizeof(strftime_buf), "%c", &timeinfo);
ESP_LOGI(TAG, "The current date/time in Shanghai is: %s", strftime_buf);
```

If you need to obtain time with one microsecond resolution, use the code snippet below:

```
struct timeval tv_now;
gettimeofday(&tv_now, NULL);
int64_t time_us = (int64_t)tv_now.tv_sec * 1000000L + (int64_t)tv_now.tv_usec;
```

SNTP Time Synchronization

To set the current time, you can use the POSIX functions `settimeofday()` and `adjtime()`. They are used internally in the lwIP SNTP library to set current time when a response from the NTP server is received. These functions can also be used separately from the lwIP SNTP library.

A function to use inside the lwIP SNTP library depends on a sync mode for system time. Use the function *`sntp_set_sync_mode()`* to set one of the following sync modes:

- `SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED` (default) updates system time immediately upon receiving a response from the SNTP server after using `settimeofday()`.
- `SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH` updates time smoothly by gradually reducing time error using the funcion `adjtime()`. If the difference between the SNTP response time and system time is more than 35 minutes, update system time immediately by using `settimeofday()`.

The lwIP SNTP library has API functions for setting a callback function for a certain event. You might need the following functions:

- `sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb()` - use it for setting a callback function that will notify of the time synchronization process

- `sntp_get_sync_status()` and `sntp_set_sync_status()` - use it to get/set time synchronization status

To start synchronization via SNTP, just call the following three functions.

```
sntp_setoperatingmode(SNTP_OPMODE_POLL);
sntp_setservername(0, "pool.ntp.org");
sntp_init();
```

An application with this initialization code will periodically synchronize the time. The time synchronization period is determined by `CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY` (default value is one hour). To modify the variable, set *CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY* in project configuration.

A code example that demonstrates the implementation of time synchronization based on the lwIP SNTP library is provided in protocols/sntp directory.

Timezones

To set local timezone, use the following POSIX functions:

1. Call `setenv()` to set the `TZ` environment variable to the correct value depending on the device location. The format of the time string is the same as described in the GNU libc documentation (although the implementation is different).
2. Call `tzset()` to update C library runtime data for the new time zone.

Once these steps are completed, call the standard C library function `localtime()`, and it will return correct local time taking into account the time zone offset and daylight saving time.

API Reference

Header File

- lwip/include/apps/esp_sntp.h

Functions

void **sntp_sync_time**(**struct** timeval *tv)

This function updates the system time.

This is a weak-linked function. It is possible to replace all SNTP update functionality by placing a sntp_sync_time() function in the app firmware source. If the default implementation is used, calling sntp_set_sync_mode() allows the time synchronization mode to be changed to instant or smooth. If a callback function is registered via sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb(), it will be called following time synchronization.

Parameters

- `tv`: Time received from SNTP server.

void **sntp_set_sync_mode**(*sntp_sync_mode_t sync_mode*)

Set the sync mode.

Allowable two mode: SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED and SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH.

Parameters

- `sync_mode`: Sync mode.

sntp_sync_mode_t **sntp_get_sync_mode**(void)

Get set sync mode.

Return SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED: Update time immediately. SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH: Smooth time updating.

sntp_sync_status_t **sntp_get_sync_status** (void)
Get status of time sync.

After the update is completed, the status will be returned as SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED. After that, the status will be reset to SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET. If the update operation is not completed yet, the status will be SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET. If a smooth mode was chosen and the synchronization is still continuing (adjtime works), then it will be SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS.

Return SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET: Reset status. SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED: Time is synchronized. SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS: Smooth time sync in progress.

void **sntp_set_sync_status** (*sntp_sync_status_t sync_status*)
Set status of time sync.

Parameters
- `sync_status`: status of time sync (see sntp_sync_status_t)

void **sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb** (*sntp_sync_time_cb_t callback*)
Set a callback function for time synchronization notification.

Parameters
- `callback`: a callback function

void **sntp_set_sync_interval** (uint32_t *interval_ms*)
Set the sync interval of SNTP operation.

Note: SNTPv4 RFC 4330 enforces a minimum sync interval of 15 seconds. This sync interval will be used in the next attempt update time throught SNTP. To apply the new sync interval call the sntp_restart() function, otherwise, it will be applied after the last interval expired.

Parameters
- `interval_ms`: The sync interval in ms. It cannot be lower than 15 seconds, otherwise 15 seconds will be set.

uint32_t **sntp_get_sync_interval** (void)
Get the sync interval of SNTP operation.

Return the sync interval

bool **sntp_restart** (void)
Restart SNTP.

Return True - Restart False - SNTP was not initialized yet

Type Definitions

typedef void (***sntp_sync_time_cb_t**) (**struct** timeval *tv)
SNTP callback function for notifying about time sync event.

Parameters
- `tv`: Time received from SNTP server.

Enumerations

enum sntp_sync_mode_t
SNTP time update mode.

Values:

SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED
Update system time immediately when receiving a response from the SNTP server.

SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH
Smooth time updating. Time error is gradually reduced using adjtime function. If the difference between SNTP response time and system time is large (more than 35 minutes) then update immediately.

enum sntp_sync_status_t

SNTP sync status.

Values:

SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET

SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED

SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS

2.6.25 Internal and Unstable APIs

This section is listing some APIs that are internal or likely to be changed or removed in the next releases of ESP-IDF.

API Reference

Header File

- esp_rom/include/esp_rom_sys.h

Functions

int **esp_rom_printf**(**const** char *_fmt_, ...)

Print formated string to console device.

Note float and long long data are not supported!

Return int: Total number of characters written on success; A negative number on failure.

Parameters

- `fmt`: Format string
- `...`: Additional arguments, depending on the format string

void **esp_rom_delay_us**(uint32_t *us*)

Pauses execution for us microseconds.

Parameters

- `us`: Number of microseconds to pause

void **esp_rom_install_channel_putc**(int *channel*, void (*_putc_)) char c

esp_rom_printf can print message to different channels simultaneously. This function can help install the low level putc function for esp_rom_printf.

Parameters

- `channel`: Channel number (startting from 1)
- `putc`: Function pointer to the putc implementation. Set NULL can disconnect esp_rom_printf with putc.

void **esp_rom_install_uart_printf**(void)

Install UART1 as the default console channel, equivalent to `esp_rom_install_channel_putc(1, esp_rom_uart_putc)`

Code examples for this API section are provided in the system directory of ESP-IDF examples.

2.7 Project Configuration

2.7.1 Introduction

ESP-IDF uses kconfiglib which is a Python-based extension to the Kconfig system which provides a compile-time project configuration mechanism. Kconfig is based around options of several types: integer, string, boolean. Kconfig files specify dependencies between options, default values of the options, the way the options are grouped together, etc.

For the complete list of available features please see Kconfig and kconfiglib extentions.

2.7.2 Project Configuration Menu

Application developers can open a terminal-based project configuration menu with the `idf.py menuconfig` build target.

After being updated, this configuration is saved inside `sdkconfig` file in the project root directory. Based on `sdkconfig`, application build targets will generate `sdkconfig.h` file in the build directory, and will make sdkconfig options available to the project build system and source files.

(For the legacy GNU Make build system, the project configuration menu is opened with `make menuconfig`.)

2.7.3 Using sdkconfig.defaults

In some cases, such as when `sdkconfig` file is under revision control, the fact that `sdkconfig` file gets changed by the build system may be inconvenient. The build system offers a way to avoid this, in the form of `sdkconfig.defaults` file. This file is never touched by the build system, and must be created manually. It can contain all the options which matter for the given application. The format is the same as that of the `sdkconfig` file. Once `sdkconfig.defaults` is created, `sdkconfig` can be deleted and added to the ignore list of the revision control system (e.g. `.gitignore` file for git). Project build targets will automatically create `sdkconfig` file, populated with the settings from `sdkconfig.defaults` file, and the rest of the settings will be set to their default values. Note that the build process will not override settings that are already in `sdkconfig` by ones from `sdkconfig.defaults`. For more information, see *Custom sdkconfig defaults*.

2.7.4 Kconfig Formatting Rules

The following attributes of `Kconfig` files are standardized:

- Within any menu, option names should have a consistent prefix. The prefix length is currently set to at least 3 characters.
- The indentation style is 4 characters created by spaces. All sub-items belonging to a parent item are indented by one level deeper. For example, `menu` is indented by 0 characters, the `config` inside of the menu by 4 characters, the help of the `config` by 8 characters and the text of the `help` by 12 characters.
- No trailing spaces are allowed at the end of the lines.
- The maximum length of options is set to 40 characters.
- The maximum length of lines is set to 120 characters.
- Lines cannot be wrapped by backslash (because there is a bug in earlier versions of `conf-idf` which causes that Windows line endings are not recognized after a backslash).

Format checker

`tools/check_kconfigs.py` is provided for checking the `Kconfig` formatting rules. The checker checks all `Kconfig` and `Kconfig.projbuild` files in the ESP-IDF directory and generates a new file with suffix `.new` with some recommendations how to fix issues (if there are any). Please note that the checker cannot correct all rules and the responsibility of the developer is to check and make final corrections in order to pass the tests. For example, indentations will be corrected if there isn't some misleading previous formatting but it cannot come up with a common prefix for options inside a menu.

2.7.5 Backward Compatibility of Kconfig Options

The standard Kconfig tools ignore unknown options in `sdkconfig`. So if a developer has custom settings for options which are renamed in newer ESP-IDF releases then the given setting for the option would be silently ignored. Therefore, several features have been adopted to avoid this:

1. `confgen.py` is used by the tool chain to pre-process `sdkconfig` files before anything else, for example `menuconfig`, would read them. As the consequence, the settings for old options will be kept and not ignored.
2. `confgen.py` recursively finds all `sdkconfig.rename` files in ESP-IDF directory which contain old and new `Kconfig` option names. Old options are replaced by new ones in the `sdkconfig` file.
3. `confgen.py` post-processes `sdkconfig` files and generates all build outputs (`sdkconfig.h`, `sdkconfig.cmake`, `auto.conf`) by adding a list of compatibility statements, i.e. value of the old option is set the value of the new option (after modification). This is done in order to not break customer codes where old option might still be used.
4. *Deprecated options and their replacements* are automatically generated by `confgen.py`.

2.7.6 Configuration Options Reference

Subsequent sections contain the list of available ESP-IDF options, automatically generated from Kconfig files. Note that depending on the options selected, some options listed here may not be visible by default in the interface of menuconfig.

By convention, all option names are upper case with underscores. When Kconfig generates sdkconfig and sdkconfig.h files, option names are prefixed with `CONFIG_`. So if an option `ENABLE_FOO` is defined in a Kconfig file and selected in menuconfig, then sdkconfig and sdkconfig.h files will have `CONFIG_ENABLE_FOO` defined. In this reference, option names are also prefixed with `CONFIG_`, same as in the source code.

SDK tool configuration

Contains:

- *CONFIG_SDK_MAKE_WARN_UNDEFINED_VARIABLES*
- *CONFIG_SDK_TOOLPREFIX*
- *CONFIG_SDK_PYTHON*
- *CONFIG_SDK_TOOLCHAIN_SUPPORTS_TIME_WIDE_64_BITS*

CONFIG_SDK_TOOLPREFIX

Compiler toolchain path/prefix

Found in: SDK tool configuration

The prefix/path that is used to call the toolchain. The default setting assumes a crosstool-ng gcc setup that is in your PATH.

Default value:

- “xtensa-esp32s2-elf- “

CONFIG_SDK_PYTHON

Python interpreter

Found in: SDK tool configuration

The executable name/path that is used to run python.

(Note: This option is used with the legacy GNU Make build system only.)

Default value:

- “python”

CONFIG_SDK_MAKE_WARN_UNDEFINED_VARIABLES

‘make’ warns on undefined variables

Found in: SDK tool configuration

Adds –warn-undefined-variables to MAKEFLAGS. This causes make to print a warning any time an undefined variable is referenced.

This option helps find places where a variable reference is misspelled or otherwise missing, but it can be unwanted if you have Makefiles which depend on undefined variables expanding to an empty string.

(Note: this option is used with the legacy GNU Make build system only.)

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SDK_TOOLCHAIN_SUPPORTS_TIME_WIDE_64_BITS

Toolchain supports time_t wide 64-bits

Found in: SDK tool configuration

Enable this option in case you have a custom toolchain which supports time_t wide 64-bits. This option checks time_t is 64-bits and disables ROM time functions to use the time functions from the toolchain instead. This option allows resolving the Y2K38 problem. See "Setup Linux Toolchain from Scratch" to build a custom toolchain which supports 64-bits time_t.

Note: ESP-IDF does not currently come with any pre-compiled toolchain that supports 64-bit wide time_t. This will change in a future major release, but currently 64-bit time_t requires a custom built toolchain.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Build type

Contains:

- *CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE*

CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE

Application build type

Found in: Build type

Select the way the application is built.

By default, the application is built as a binary file in a format compatible with the ESP-IDF bootloader. In addition to this application, 2nd stage bootloader is also built. Application and bootloader binaries can be written into flash and loaded/executed from there.

Another option, useful for only very small and limited applications, is to only link the .elf file of the application, such that it can be loaded directly into RAM over JTAG. Note that since IRAM and DRAM sizes are very limited, it is not possible to build any complex application this way. However for kinds of testing and debugging, this option may provide faster iterations, since the application does not need to be written into flash. Note that at the moment, ESP-IDF does not contain all the startup code required to initialize the CPUs and ROM memory (data/bss). Therefore it is necessary to execute a bit of ROM code prior to executing the application. A gdbinit file may look as follows (for ESP32):

> # Connect to a running instance of OpenOCD target remote :3333 # Reset and halt the target mon reset halt # Run to a specific point in ROM code, # where most of initialization is complete. thb *0x40007901 c # Load the application into RAM load # Run till app_main tb app_main c

Execute this gdbinit file as follows:

> xtensa-esp32-elf-gdb build/app-name.elf -x gdbinit

Example gdbinit files for other targets can be found in tools/test_apps/system/gdb_loadable_elf/

Recommended sdkconfig.defaults for building loadable ELF files is as follows. CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE_ELF_RAM is required, other options help reduce application memory footprint.

```
CONFIG_APP_BUILD_TYPE_ELF_RAM=y CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS=
CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT=y CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_HALT=y
CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE= CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP=
```

Available options:

- Default (binary application + 2nd stage bootloader) (APP_BUILD_TYPE_APP_2NDBOOT)
- ELF file, loadable into RAM (EXPERIMENTAL)) (APP_BUILD_TYPE_ELF_RAM)

Serial flasher config

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_AFTER*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BAUD*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_PORT*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_DETECT*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_NO_STUB*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_OTHER_VAL*
- *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_COMPRESSED*

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_PORT

Default serial port

Found in: Serial flasher config

The serial port that' s connected to the ESP chip. This can be overridden by setting the ESPPORT environment variable.

This value is ignored when using the CMake-based build system or idf.py.

Default value:

- "/dev/ttyUSB0"

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BAUD

Default baud rate

Found in: Serial flasher config

Default baud rate to use while communicating with the ESP chip. Can be overridden by setting the ESPBAUD variable.

This value is ignored when using the CMake-based build system or idf.py.

Available options:

- 115200 baud (ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_115200B)
- 230400 baud (ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_230400B)
- 921600 baud (ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_921600B)
- 2Mbaud (ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_2MB)

- Other baud rate (ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_OTHER)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BAUD_OTHER_VAL

Other baud rate value

Found in: Serial flasher config

Default value:
- 115200

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_COMPRESSED

Use compressed upload

Found in: Serial flasher config

The flasher tool can send data compressed using zlib, letting the ROM on the ESP chip decompress it on the fly before flashing it. For most payloads, this should result in a speed increase.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_NO_STUB

Disable download stub

Found in: Serial flasher config

The flasher tool sends a precompiled download stub first by default. That stub allows things like compressed downloads and more. Usually you should not need to disable that feature

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE

Flash SPI mode

Found in: Serial flasher config

Mode the flash chip is flashed in, as well as the default mode for the binary to run in.

Available options:
- QIO (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QIO)
- QOUT (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_QOUT)
- DIO (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DIO)
- DOUT (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE_DOUT)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ

Flash SPI speed

Found in: Serial flasher config

The SPI flash frequency to be used.

Available options:
- 80 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_80M)
- 40 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_40M)
- 26 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_26M)
- 20 MHz (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ_20M)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE

Flash size

Found in: Serial flasher config

SPI flash size, in megabytes

Available options:
- 1 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_1MB)
- 2 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_2MB)
- 4 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_4MB)
- 8 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_8MB)
- 16 MB (ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_16MB)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE_DETECT

Detect flash size when flashing bootloader

Found in: Serial flasher config

If this option is set, flashing the project will automatically detect the flash size of the target chip and update the bootloader image before it is flashed.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE

Before flashing

Found in: Serial flasher config

Configure whether esptool.py should reset the ESP32 before flashing.

Automatic resetting depends on the RTS & DTR signals being wired from the serial port to the ESP32. Most USB development boards do this internally.

Available options:
- Reset to bootloader (ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE_RESET)
- No reset (ESPTOOLPY_BEFORE_NORESET)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_AFTER

After flashing

Found in: Serial flasher config

Configure whether esptool.py should reset the ESP32 after flashing.

Automatic resetting depends on the RTS & DTR signals being wired from the serial port to the ESP32. Most USB development boards do this internally.

Available options:
- Reset after flashing (ESPTOOLPY_AFTER_RESET)
- Stay in bootloader (ESPTOOLPY_AFTER_NORESET)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD

'idf.py monitor' baud rate

Found in: Serial flasher config

Baud rate to use when running 'idf.py monitor' or 'make monitor' to view serial output from a running chip.

If “Same as UART Console baud rate” is chosen then the value will follow the “UART Console baud rate” config item.

Can override by setting the MONITORBAUD environment variable.

Available options:

- Same as UART console baud rate (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_CONSOLE)
- 9600 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_9600B)
- 57600 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_57600B)
- 115200 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_115200B)
- 230400 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_230400B)
- 921600 bps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_921600B)
- 2 Mbps (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_2MB)
- Custom baud rate (ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER)

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL

Custom baud rate value

Found in: Serial flasher config

Default value:

- 115200

Bootloader config

Contains:

- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_RESERVE_RTC*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ALWAYS*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ON_POWER_ON*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE*
- *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION

Bootloader optimization Level

Found in: Bootloader config

This option sets compiler optimization level (gcc -O argument) for the bootloader.

- The default “Size” setting will add the -0s flag to CFLAGS.
- The “Debug” setting will add the -Og flag to CFLAGS.
- The “Performance” setting will add the -O2 flag to CFLAGS.
- The “None” setting will add the -O0 flag to CFLAGS.

Note that custom optimization levels may be unsupported.

Available options:

- Size (-Os) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_SIZE)
- Debug (-Og) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_DEBUG)
- Optimize for performance (-O2) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_PERF)
- Debug without optimization (-O0) (BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_NONE)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL

Bootloader log verbosity

Found in: Bootloader config

Specify how much output to see in bootloader logs.

Available options:

- No output (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_NONE)
- Error (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_ERROR)
- Warning (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_WARN)
- Info (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST

VDDSDIO LDO voltage

Found in: Bootloader config

If this option is enabled, and VDDSDIO LDO is set to 1.8V (using eFuse or MTDI bootstrapping pin), bootloader will change LDO settings to output 1.9V instead. This helps prevent flash chip from browning out during flash programming operations.

This option has no effect if VDDSDIO is set to 3.3V, or if the internal VDDSDIO regulator is disabled via eFuse.

Available options:

- 1.8V (BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST_1_8V)
- 1.9V (BOOTLOADER_VDDSDIO_BOOST_1_9V)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

GPIO triggers factory reset

Found in: Bootloader config

Allows to reset the device to factory settings: - clear one or more data partitions; - boot from "factory" partition. The factory reset will occur if there is a GPIO input pulled low while device starts up. See settings below.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_FACTORY_RESET

Number of the GPIO input for factory reset

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

The selected GPIO will be configured as an input with internal pull-up enabled. To trigger a factory reset, this GPIO must be pulled low on reset. Note that GPIO34-39 do not have an internal pullup and an external one must be provided.

Range:

- from 0 to 44 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

Default value:

- 4 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_OTA_DATA_ERASE

Clear OTA data on factory reset (select factory partition)

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

The device will boot from "factory" partition (or OTA slot 0 if no factory partition is present) after a factory reset.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_DATA_FACTORY_RESET

Comma-separated names of partitions to clear on factory reset

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET

Allows customers to select which data partitions will be erased while factory reset.

Specify the names of partitions as a comma-delimited with optional spaces for readability. (Like this: "nvs, phy_init, ···") Make sure that the name specified in the partition table and here are the same. Partitions of type "app" cannot be specified here.

Default value:

- "nvs" if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST

GPIO triggers boot from test app partition

Found in: Bootloader config

Allows to run the test app from "TEST" partition. A boot from "test" partition will occur if there is a GPIO input pulled low while device starts up. See settings below.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_APP_TEST

Number of the GPIO input to boot TEST partition

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST

The selected GPIO will be configured as an input with internal pull-up enabled. To trigger a test app, this GPIO must be pulled low on reset. After the GPIO input is deactivated and the device reboots, the old application will boot. (factory or OTA[x]). Note that GPIO34-39 do not have an internal pullup and an external one must be provided.

Range:

- from 0 to 39 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST*

Default value:

- 18 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO

Hold time of GPIO for reset/test mode (seconds)

Found in: Bootloader config

The GPIO must be held low continuously for this period of time after reset before a factory reset or test partition boot (as applicable) is performed.

Default value:

- 5 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET* || *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE

Use RTC watchdog in start code

Found in: Bootloader config

Tracks the execution time of startup code. If the execution time is exceeded, the RTC_WDT will restart system. It is also useful to prevent a lock up in start code caused by an unstable power source. NOTE: Tracks the execution time starts from the bootloader code - re-set timeout, while selecting the source for slow_clk - and ends calling app_main. Re-set timeout is needed due to WDT uses a SLOW_CLK clock source. After changing a frequency slow_clk a time of WDT needs to re-set for new frequency. slow_clk depends on ESP32_RTC_CLK_SRC (INTERNAL_RC or EXTERNAL_CRYSTAL).

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_DISABLE_IN_USER_CODE

Allows RTC watchdog disable in user code

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE

If it is set, the client must itself reset or disable rtc_wdt in their code (app_main()). Otherwise rtc_wdt will be disabled before calling app_main function. Use function rtc_wdt_feed() for resetting counter of rtc_wdt. Use function rtc_wdt_disable() for disabling rtc_wdt.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_TIME_MS

Timeout for RTC watchdog (ms)

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE

Verify that this parameter is correct and more then the execution time. Pay attention to options such as reset to factory, trigger test partition and encryption on boot - these options can increase the execution time. Note: RTC_WDT will reset while encryption operations will be performed.

Range:

- from 0 to 120000

Default value:

- 9000

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE

Enable app rollback support

Found in: Bootloader config

After updating the app, the bootloader runs a new app with the "ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY" state set. This state prevents the re-run of this app. After the first boot of the new app in the user code, the function should be called to confirm the operability of the app or vice versa about its non-operability. If the app is working, then it is marked as valid. Otherwise, it is marked as not valid and rolls back to the previous working app. A reboot is performed, and the app is booted before the software update. Note: If during the first boot a new app the power goes out or the WDT works, then roll back will happen. Rollback is possible only between the apps with the same security versions.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

Enable app anti-rollback support

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE

This option prevents rollback to previous firmware/application image with lower security version.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SECURE_VERSION

eFuse secure version of app

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

The secure version is the sequence number stored in the header of each firmware. The security version is set in the bootloader, version is recorded in the eFuse field as the number of set ones. The allocated number of bits in the efuse field for storing the security version is limited (see BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD option).

Bootloader: When bootloader selects an app to boot, an app is selected that has a security version greater or equal that recorded in eFuse field. The app is booted with a higher (or equal) secure version.

The security version is worth increasing if in previous versions there is a significant vulnerability and their use is not acceptable.

Your partition table should has a scheme with ota_0 + ota_1 (without factory).

Default value:

- 0 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD

Size of the efuse secure version field

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

The size of the efuse secure version field. Its length is limited to 32 bits for ESP32 and 16 bits for ESP32-S2. This determines how many times the security version can be increased.

Range:

- from 1 to 16 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

Default value:

- 16 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_EFUSE_SECURE_VERSION_EMULATE

Emulate operations with efuse secure version(only test)

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK

This option allow emulate read/write operations with efuse secure version. It allow to test anti-rollback implemention without permanent write eFuse bits. In partition table should be exist this partition *emul_efuse, data, 5, , 0x2000*.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP

Skip image validation when exiting deep sleep

Found in: Bootloader config

This option disables the normal validation of an image coming out of deep sleep (checksums, SHA256, and signature). This is a trade-off between wakeup performance from deep sleep, and image integrity checks.

Only enable this if you know what you are doing. It should not be used in conjunction with using deep_sleep() entry and changing the active OTA partition as this would skip the validation upon first load of the new OTA partition.

It is possible to enable this option with Secure Boot if "allow insecure options" is enabled, however it's strongly recommended to NOT enable it as it may allow a Secure Boot bypass.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if (*CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT* && *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE*) || *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT*

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ON_POWER_ON

Skip image validation from power on reset (READ HELP FIRST)

Found in: Bootloader config

Some applications need to boot very quickly from power on. By default, the entire app binary is read from flash and verified which takes up a significant portion of the boot time.

Enabling this option will skip validation of the app when the SoC boots from power on. Note that in this case it's not possible for the bootloader to detect if an app image is corrupted in the flash, therefore it's not possible to safely fall back to a different app partition. Flash corruption of this kind is unlikely but can happen if there is a serious firmware bug or physical damage.

Following other reset types, the bootloader will still validate the app image. This increases the chances that flash corruption resulting in a crash can be detected following soft reset, and the bootloader will fall back to a valid app image. To increase the chances of successfully recovering from a flash corruption event, keep the option BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE enabled and consider also enabling BOOTLOADER_WDT_DISABLE_IN_USER_CODE - then manually disable the RTC Watchdog once the app is running. In addition, enable both the Task and Interrupt watchdog timers with reset options set.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_ALWAYS

Skip image validation always (READ HELP FIRST)

Found in: Bootloader config

Selecting this option prevents the bootloader from ever validating the app image before booting it. Any flash corruption of the selected app partition will make the entire SoC unbootable.

Although flash corruption is a very rare case, it is not recommended to select this option. Consider selecting "Skip image validation from power on reset" instead. However, if boot time is the only important factor then it can be enabled.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_RESERVE_RTC

Reserve RTC FAST memory for custom purposes

Found in: Bootloader config

This option allows the customer to place data in the RTC FAST memory, this area remains valid when rebooted, except for power loss. This memory is located at a fixed address and is available for both the bootloader and the application. (The application and bootoloader must be compiled with the same option). The RTC FAST memory has access only through PRO_CPU.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_RESERVE_RTC_SIZE

Size in bytes for custom purposes

Found in: Bootloader config > CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_RESERVE_RTC

This option reserves in RTC FAST memory the area for custom purposes. If you want to create your own bootloader and save more information in this area of memory, you can increase it. It must be a multiple of 4 bytes. This area (rtc_retain_mem_t) is reserved and has access from the bootloader and an application.

Range:

- from 0 to 0x10 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_RESERVE_RTC*

Default value:

- 0 if *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_CUSTOM_RESERVE_RTC*

Security features

Contains:

- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_SCHEME*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_CHECK_ENC_EN_IN_APP*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT*
- *Potentially insecure options*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_VERIFICATION_KEY*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_UPDATE_NO_SECURE_BOOT*

CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT

Require signed app images

Found in: Security features

Require apps to be signed to verify their integrity.

This option uses the same app signature scheme as hardware secure boot, but unlike hardware secure boot it does not prevent the bootloader from being physically updated. This means that the device can be secured against remote network access, but not physical access. Compared to using hardware Secure Boot this option is much simpler to implement.

CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_SCHEME

App Signing Scheme

Found in: Security features

Select the Secure App signing scheme. Depends on the Chip Revision. There are two options: 1. ECDSA based secure boot scheme. (Only choice for Secure Boot V1) Supported in ESP32 and ESP32-ECO3. 2. The RSA based secure boot scheme. (Only choice for Secure Boot V2) Supported in ESP32-ECO3 (ESP32 Chip Revision 3 onwards), ESP32-S2, ESP32-C3, ESP32-S3.

Available options:

- ECDSA (SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_ECDSA_SCHEME)
  Embeds the ECDSA public key in the bootloader and signs the application with an ECDSA key.
  Refer to the documentation before enabling.
- RSA (SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_RSA_SCHEME)
  Appends the RSA-3072 based Signature block to the application. Refer to <Secure Boot Version 2 documentation link> before enabling.

CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_ON_UPDATE_NO_SECURE_BOOT

Verify app signature on update

Found in: Security features

If this option is set, any OTA updated apps will have the signature verified before being considered valid.

When enabled, the signature is automatically checked whenever the esp_ota_ops.h APIs are used for OTA updates, or esp_image_format.h APIs are used to verify apps.

If hardware secure boot is enabled, this option is always enabled and cannot be disabled. If hardware secure boot is not enabled, this option still adds significant security against network-based attackers by preventing spoofing of OTA updates.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT*

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT

Enable hardware Secure Boot in bootloader (READ DOCS FIRST)

Found in: Security features

Build a bootloader which enables Secure Boot on first boot.

Once enabled, Secure Boot will not boot a modified bootloader. The bootloader will only load a partition table or boot an app if the data has a verified digital signature. There are implications for reflashing updated apps once secure boot is enabled.

When enabling secure boot, JTAG and ROM BASIC Interpreter are permanently disabled by default.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_VERSION

Select secure boot version

Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT

Select the Secure Boot Version. Depends on the Chip Revision. Secure Boot V2 is the new RSA based secure boot scheme. Supported in ESP32-ECO3 (ESP32 Chip Revision 3 onwards), ESP32-S2, ESP32-C3 ECO3. Secure Boot V1 is the AES based secure boot scheme. Supported in ESP32 and ESP32-ECO3.

Available options:

- Enable Secure Boot version 1 (SECURE_BOOT_V1_ENABLED)
  Build a bootloader which enables secure boot version 1 on first boot. Refer to the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer's Guide for this version before enabling.
- Enable Secure Boot version 2 (SECURE_BOOT_V2_ENABLED)
  Build a bootloader which enables Secure Boot version 2 on first boot. Refer to Secure Boot V2 section of the ESP-IDF Programmer's Guide for this version before enabling.

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES

Sign binaries during build

Found in: Security features

Once secure boot or signed app requirement is enabled, app images are required to be signed.

If enabled (default), these binary files are signed as part of the build process. The file named in "Secure boot private signing key" will be used to sign the image.

If disabled, unsigned app/partition data will be built. They must be signed manually using espsecure.py. Version 1 to enable ECDSA Based Secure Boot and Version 2 to enable RSA based Secure Boot. (for example, on a remote signing server.)

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_SIGNING_KEY

Secure boot private signing key

Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES

Path to the key file used to sign app images.

Key file is an ECDSA private key (NIST256p curve) in PEM format for Secure Boot V1. Key file is an RSA private key in PEM format for Secure Boot V2.

Path is evaluated relative to the project directory.

You can generate a new signing key by running the following command: espsecure.py generate_signing_key secure_boot_signing_key.pem

See the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer's Guide for this version for details.

Default value:

- "secure_boot_signing_key.pem" if *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_BUILD_SIGNED_BINARIES*

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_VERIFICATION_KEY

Secure boot public signature verification key

Found in: Security features

Path to a public key file used to verify signed images. Secure Boot V1: This ECDSA public key is compiled into the bootloader and/or app, to verify app images. Secure Boot V2: This RSA public key is compiled into the signature block at the end of the bootloader/app.

Key file is in raw binary format, and can be extracted from a PEM formatted private key using the espsecure.py extract_public_key command.

Refer to the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer's Guide for this version before enabling.

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE

Allow potentially insecure options

Found in: Security features

You can disable some of the default protections offered by secure boot, in order to enable testing or a custom combination of security features.

Only enable these options if you are very sure.

Refer to the Secure Boot section of the ESP-IDF Programmer's Guide for this version before enabling.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT*

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED

Enable flash encryption on boot (READ DOCS FIRST)

Found in: Security features

If this option is set, flash contents will be encrypted by the bootloader on first boot.

Note: After first boot, the system will be permanently encrypted. Re-flashing an encrypted system is complicated and not always possible.

Read *Flash Encryption* before enabling.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_KEYSIZE

Size of generated AES-XTS key

Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED

Size of generated AES-XTS key.

AES-128 uses a 256-bit key (32 bytes) which occupies one Efuse key block. AES-256 uses a 512-bit key (64 bytes) which occupies two Efuse key blocks.

This setting is ignored if either type of key is already burned to Efuse before the first boot. In this case, the pre-burned key is used and no new key is generated.

Available options:

- AES-128 (256-bit key) (SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_AES128)
- AES-256 (512-bit key) (SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_AES256)

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE

Enable usage mode

Found in: Security features > CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED

By default Development mode is enabled which allows ROM download mode to perform flash encryption operations (plaintext is sent to the device, and it encrypts it internally and writes ciphertext to flash.) This mode is not secure, it's possible for an attacker to write their own chosen plaintext to flash.

Release mode should always be selected for production or manufacturing. Once enabled it's no longer possible for the device in ROM Download Mode to use the flash encryption hardware.

Refer to the Flash Encryption section of the ESP-IDF Programmer's Guide for details.

Available options:

- Development (NOT SECURE) (SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT)
- Release (SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_RELEASE)

Potentially insecure options Contains:

- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_V2_ALLOW_EFUSE_RD_DIS*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_SHORT_APP_PARTITION*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_JTAG*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENC*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_UNUSED_DIGEST_SLOTS*
- *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_REQUIRE_ALREADY_ENABLED*

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_JTAG

Allow JTAG Debugging

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable JTAG (across entire chip) on first boot when either secure boot or flash encryption is enabled.

Setting this option leaves JTAG on for debugging, which negates all protections of flash encryption and some of the protections of secure boot.

Only set this option in testing environments.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE* || SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_SHORT_APP_PARTITION

Allow app partition length not 64KB aligned

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default), app partition size must be a multiple of 64KB. App images are padded to 64KB length, and the bootloader checks any trailing bytes after the signature (before the next 64KB boundary) have not been written. This is because flash cache maps entire 64KB pages into the address space. This prevents an attacker from appending unverified data after the app image in the flash, causing it to be mapped into the address space.

Setting this option allows the app partition length to be unaligned, and disables padding of the app image to this length. It is generally not recommended to set this option, unless you have a legacy partitioning scheme which doesn't support 64KB aligned partition lengths.

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_V2_ALLOW_EFUSE_RD_DIS

Allow additional read protecting of efuses

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default, recommended), on first boot the bootloader will burn the WR_DIS_RD_DIS efuse when Secure Boot is enabled. This prevents any more efuses from being read protected.

If this option is set, it will remain possible to write the EFUSE_RD_DIS efuse field after Secure Boot is enabled. This may allow an attacker to read-protect the BLK2 efuse holding the public key digest, causing an immediate denial of service and possibly allowing an additional fault injection attack to bypass the signature protection.

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_UNUSED_DIGEST_SLOTS

Leave unused digest slots available (not revoke)

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default), during startup in the app all unused digest slots will be revoked. To revoke unused slot will be called esp_efuse_set_digest_revoke(num_digest) for each digest. Revoking unused digest slots makes ensures that no trusted keys can be added later by an attacker. If set, it means that you have a plan to use unused digests slots later.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE*

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENC

Leave UART bootloader encryption enabled

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable UART bootloader encryption access on first boot. If set, the UART bootloader will still be able to access hardware encryption.

It is recommended to only set this option in testing environments.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE

Leave UART bootloader flash cache enabled

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default), the bootloader will permanently disable UART bootloader flash cache access on first boot. If set, the UART bootloader will still be able to access the flash cache.

Only set this option in testing environments.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_REQUIRE_ALREADY_ENABLED

Require flash encryption to be already enabled

Found in: Security features > Potentially insecure options

If not set (default), and flash encryption is not yet enabled in eFuses, the 2nd stage bootloader will enable flash encryption: generate the flash encryption key and program eFuses. If this option is set, and flash encryption is not yet enabled, the bootloader will error out and reboot. If flash encryption is enabled in eFuses, this option does not change the bootloader behavior.

Only use this option in testing environments, to avoid accidentally enabling flash encryption on the wrong device. The device needs to have flash encryption already enabled using espefuse.py.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if SECURE_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_MODE_DEVELOPMENT

CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_CHECK_ENC_EN_IN_APP

Check Flash Encryption enabled on app startup

Found in: Security features

If set (default), in an app during startup code, there is a check of the flash encryption eFuse bit is on (as the bootloader should already have set it). The app requires this bit is on to continue work otherwise abort.

If not set, the app does not care if the flash encryption eFuse bit is set or not.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED*

CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE

UART ROM download mode

Found in: Security features

Available options:

- UART ROM download mode (Permanently disabled (recommended)) (SECURE_DISABLE_ROM_DL_MODE)
  If set, during startup the app will burn an eFuse bit to permanently disable the UART ROM Download Mode. This prevents any future use of esptool.py, espefuse.py and similar tools.
  Once disabled, if the SoC is booted with strapping pins set for ROM Download Mode then an error is printed instead.
  It is recommended to enable this option in any production application where Flash Encryption and/or Secure Boot is enabled and access to Download Mode is not required.
  It is also possible to permanently disable Download Mode by calling esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode() at runtime.
- UART ROM download mode (Permanently switch to Secure mode (recommended)) (SECURE_ENABLE_SECURE_ROM_DL_MODE)
  If set, during startup the app will burn an eFuse bit to permanently switch the UART ROM Download Mode into a separate Secure Download mode. This option can only work if Download Mode is not already disabled by eFuse.
  Secure Download mode limits the use of Download Mode functions to simple flash read, write and erase operations, plus a command to return a summary of currently enabled security features.
  Secure Download mode is not compatible with the esptool.py flasher stub feature, espefuse.py, read/writing memory or registers, encrypted download, or any other features that interact with unsupported Download Mode commands.
  Secure Download mode should be enabled in any application where Flash Encryption and/or Secure Boot is enabled. Disabling this option does not immediately cancel the benefits of the security features, but it increases the potential "attack surface" for an attacker to try and bypass them with a successful physical attack.
  It is also possible to enable secure download mode at runtime by calling esp_efuse_enable_rom_secure_download_mode()
- UART ROM download mode (Enabled (not recommended)) (SECURE_INSECURE_ALLOW_DL_MODE)
  This is a potentially insecure option. Enabling this option will allow the full UART download mode to stay enabled. This option SHOULD NOT BE ENABLED for production use cases.

Boot ROM Behavior

Contains:

- *CONFIG_BOOT_ROM_LOG_SCHEME*

CONFIG_BOOT_ROM_LOG_SCHEME

Permanently change Boot ROM output

Found in: Boot ROM Behavior

Controls the Boot ROM log behavior. The rom log behavior can only be changed for once, specific eFuse bit(s) will be burned at app boot stage.

Available options:

- Always Log (BOOT_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_ON)
  Always print ROM logs, this is the default behavior.

- Permanently disable logging (BOOT_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_OFF)
  Don't print ROM logs.
- Log on GPIO High (BOOT_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_HIGH)
  Print ROM logs when GPIO level is high during start up. The GPIO number is chip dependent, e.g. on ESP32-S2, the control GPIO is GPIO46.
- Log on GPIO Low (BOOT_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_LOW)
  Print ROM logs when GPIO level is low during start up. The GPIO number is chip dependent, e.g. on ESP32-S2, the control GPIO is GPIO46.

Partition Table

Contains:

- *CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_CUSTOM_FILENAME*
- *CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_MD5*
- *CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET*
- *CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_TYPE*

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_TYPE

Partition Table

Found in: Partition Table

The partition table to flash to the ESP32. The partition table determines where apps, data and other resources are expected to be found.

The predefined partition table CSV descriptions can be found in the components/partition_table directory. Otherwise it's possible to create a new custom partition CSV for your application.

Available options:

- Single factory app, no OTA (PARTITION_TABLE_SINGLE_APP)
- Factory app, two OTA definitions (PARTITION_TABLE_TWO_OTA)
- Custom partition table CSV (PARTITION_TABLE_CUSTOM)
- Single factory app, no OTA, encrypted NVS (PARTITION_TABLE_SINGLE_APP_ENCRYPTED_NVS)
- Factory app, two OTA definitions, encrypted NVS (PARTITION_TABLE_TWO_OTA_ENCRYPTED_NVS)

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_CUSTOM_FILENAME

Custom partition CSV file

Found in: Partition Table

Name of the custom partition CSV filename. This path is evaluated relative to the project root directory.

Default value:

- "partitions.csv"

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET

Offset of partition table

Found in: Partition Table

The address of partition table (by default 0x8000). Allows you to move the partition table, it gives more space for the bootloader. Note that the bootloader and app will both need to be compiled with the same PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET value.

This number should be a multiple of 0x1000.

Note that partition offsets in the partition table CSV file may need to be changed if this value is set to a higher value. To have each partition offset adapt to the configured partition table offset, leave all partition offsets blank in the CSV file.

Default value:

- "0x8000"

CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_MD5

Generate an MD5 checksum for the partition table

Found in: Partition Table

Generate an MD5 checksum for the partition table for protecting the integrity of the table. The generation should be turned off for legacy bootloaders which cannot recognize the MD5 checksum in the partition table.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Application manager

Contains:

- *CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_NAME_VAR*
- *CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_VER_VAR*
- *CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG*
- *CONFIG_APP_RETRIEVE_LEN_ELF_SHA*
- *CONFIG_APP_COMPILE_TIME_DATE*

CONFIG_APP_COMPILE_TIME_DATE

Use time/date stamp for app

Found in: Application manager

If set, then the app will be built with the current time/date stamp. It is stored in the app description structure. If not set, time/date stamp will be excluded from app image. This can be useful for getting the same binary image files made from the same source, but at different times.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_VER_VAR

Exclude PROJECT_VER from firmware image

Found in: Application manager

The PROJECT_VER variable from the build system will not affect the firmware image. This value will not be contained in the esp_app_desc structure.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_APP_EXCLUDE_PROJECT_NAME_VAR

Exclude PROJECT_NAME from firmware image

Found in: Application manager

The PROJECT_NAME variable from the build system will not affect the firmware image. This value will not be contained in the esp_app_desc structure.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG

Get the project version from Kconfig

Found in: Application manager

If this is enabled, then config item APP_PROJECT_VER will be used for the variable PROJECT_VER. Other ways to set PROJECT_VER will be ignored.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER

Project version

Found in: Application manager > CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG

Project version

Default value:

- 1 if *CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG*

CONFIG_APP_RETRIEVE_LEN_ELF_SHA

The length of APP ELF SHA is stored in RAM(chars)

Found in: Application manager

At startup, the app will read this many hex characters from the embedded APP ELF SHA-256 hash value and store it in static RAM. This ensures the app ELF SHA-256 value is always available if it needs to be printed by the panic handler code. Changing this value will change the size of a static buffer, in bytes.

Range:

- from 8 to 64

Default value:

- 16

Compiler options

Contains:

- *CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_DUMP_RTL_FILES*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_RTTI*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_HIDE_PATHS_MACROS*
- *CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE*

CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION

Optimization Level

Found in: Compiler options

This option sets compiler optimization level (gcc -O argument) for the app.

- The "Default" setting will add the -0g flag to CFLAGS.
- The "Size" setting will add the -0s flag to CFLAGS.
- The "Performance" setting will add the -O2 flag to CFLAGS.
- The "None" setting will add the -O0 flag to CFLAGS.

The "Size" setting cause the compiled code to be smaller and faster, but may lead to difficulties of correlating code addresses to source file lines when debugging.

The "Performance" setting causes the compiled code to be larger and faster, but will be easier to correlated code addresses to source file lines.

"None" with -O0 produces compiled code without optimization.

Note that custom optimization levels may be unsupported.

Compiler optimization for the IDF bootloader is set separately, see the BOOTLOADER_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION setting.

Available options:

- Debug (-Og) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_DEFAULT)
- Optimize for size (-Os) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_SIZE)
- Optimize for performance (-O2) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_PERF)
- Debug without optimization (-O0) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_NONE)

CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL

Assertion level

Found in: Compiler options

Assertions can be:

- Enabled. Failure will print verbose assertion details. This is the default.
- Set to "silent" to save code size (failed assertions will abort() but user needs to use the aborting address to find the line number with the failed assertion.)
- Disabled entirely (not recommended for most configurations.) -DNDEBUG is added to CPPFLAGS in this case.

Available options:

- Enabled (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_ENABLE)
  Enable assertions. Assertion content and line number will be printed on failure.
- Silent (saves code size) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_SILENT)
  Enable silent assertions. Failed assertions will abort(), user needs to use the aborting address to find the line number with the failed assertion.
- Disabled (sets -DNDEBUG) (COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_DISABLE)
  If assertions are disabled, -DNDEBUG is added to CPPFLAGS.

CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT

Disable messages in ESP_RETURN_ON_* and ESP_EXIT_ON_* macros

Found in: Compiler options

If enabled, the error messages will be discarded in following check macros: - ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR - ESP_EXIT_ON_ERROR - ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE - ESP_EXIT_ON_FALSE

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_HIDE_PATHS_MACROS

Replace ESP-IDF and project paths in binaries

Found in: Compiler options

When expanding the __FILE__ and __BASE_FILE__ macros, replace paths inside ESP-IDF with paths relative to the placeholder string "IDF", and convert paths inside the project directory to relative paths.

This allows building the project with assertions or other code that embeds file paths, without the binary containing the exact path to the IDF or project directories.

This option passes -fmacro-prefix-map options to the GCC command line. To replace additional paths in your binaries, modify the project CMakeLists.txt file to pass custom -fmacro-prefix-map or -ffile-prefix-map arguments.

CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS

Enable C++ exceptions

Found in: Compiler options

Enabling this option compiles all IDF C++ files with exception support enabled.

Disabling this option disables C++ exception support in all compiled files, and any libstdc++ code which throws an exception will abort instead.

Enabling this option currently adds an additional ~500 bytes of heap overhead when an exception is thrown in user code for the first time.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE*

CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE

Emergency Pool Size

Found in: Compiler options > CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS

Size (in bytes) of the emergency memory pool for C++ exceptions. This pool will be used to allocate memory for thrown exceptions when there is not enough memory on the heap.

Default value:

- 0 if *CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS*

CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_RTTI

Enable C++ run-time type info (RTTI)

Found in: Compiler options

Enabling this option compiles all C++ files with RTTI support enabled. This increases binary size (typically by tens of kB) but allows using dynamic_cast conversion and typeid operator.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE

Stack smashing protection mode

Found in: Compiler options

Stack smashing protection mode. Emit extra code to check for buffer overflows, such as stack smashing attacks. This is done by adding a guard variable to functions with vulnerable objects. The guards are initialized when a function is entered and then checked when the function exits. If a guard check fails, program is halted. Protection has the following modes:

- In NORMAL mode (GCC flag: -fstack-protector) only functions that call alloca, and functions with buffers larger than 8 bytes are protected.
- STRONG mode (GCC flag: -fstack-protector-strong) is like NORMAL, but includes additional functions to be protected –those that have local array definitions, or have references to local frame addresses.
- In OVERALL mode (GCC flag: -fstack-protector-all) all functions are protected.

Modes have the following impact on code performance and coverage:

- performance: NORMAL > STRONG > OVERALL
- coverage: NORMAL < STRONG < OVERALL

Available options:

- None (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_NONE)
- Normal (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_NORM)
- Strong (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_STRONG)
- Overall (COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE_ALL)

CONFIG_COMPILER_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS

Enable -Wwrite-strings warning flag

Found in: Compiler options

Adds -Wwrite-strings flag for the C/C++ compilers.

For C, this gives string constants the type `const char[]` so that copying the address of one into a non-const `char \*` pointer produces a warning. This warning helps to find at compile time code that tries to write into a string constant.

For C++, this warns about the deprecated conversion from string literals to `char \*`.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS

Disable new warnings introduced in GCC 6 - 8

Found in: Compiler options

Enable this option if using GCC 6 or newer, and wanting to disable warnings which don’t appear with GCC 5.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COMPILER_DUMP_RTL_FILES

Dump RTL files during compilation

Found in: Compiler options

If enabled, RTL files will be produced during compilation. These files can be used by other tools, for example to calculate call graphs.

Component config

Contains:

- *ADC-Calibration*
- *Application Level Tracing*
- *CoAP Configuration*
- *Common ESP-related*
- *Core dump*
- *Driver configurations*
- *eFuse Bit Manager*
- *ESP HTTP client*
- *ESP HTTPS OTA*
- *ESP HTTPS server*
- *ESP NETIF Adapter*
- *ESP System Settings*
- *ESP-ASIO*
- *ESP-MQTT Configurations*
- *ESP-TLS*
- *ESP32S2-specific*
- *Ethernet*
- *Event Loop Library*
- *FAT Filesystem support*
- *FreeRTOS*
- *GDB Stub*
- *Hardware Settings*
- *Heap memory debugging*
- *High resolution timer (esp_timer)*
- *HTTP Server*
- *jsmn*
- *libsodium*
- *Log output*
- *LWIP*
- *mbedTLS*
- *mDNS*
- *Modbus configuration*
- *Newlib*
- *NVS*
- *OpenSSL*
- *OpenThread*
- *PHY*
- *Power Management*
- *PThreads*
- *SPI Flash driver*
- *SPIFFS Configuration*
- *Supplicant*
- *TCP Transport*
- *TinyUSB*
- *Unity unit testing library*
- *Virtual file system*
- *Wear Levelling*
- *Wi-Fi*
- *Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager*

ESP HTTPS server

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_HTTPS_SERVER_ENABLE*

CONFIG_ESP_HTTPS_SERVER_ENABLE

Enable ESP_HTTPS_SERVER component

Found in: Component config > ESP HTTPS server

Enable ESP HTTPS server component

Unity unit testing library Contains:

- *CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_COLOR*
- *CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_IDF_TEST_RUNNER*
- *CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_FIXTURE*
- *CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_BACKTRACE_ON_FAIL*
- *CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_DOUBLE*
- *CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_FLOAT*

CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_FLOAT

Support for float type

Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library

If not set, assertions on float arguments will not be available.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_DOUBLE

Support for double type

Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library

If not set, assertions on double arguments will not be available.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_COLOR

Colorize test output

Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library

If set, Unity will colorize test results using console escape sequences.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_IDF_TEST_RUNNER

Include ESP-IDF test registration/running helpers

Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library

If set, then the following features will be available:

- TEST_CASE macro which performs automatic registration of test functions
- Functions to run registered test functions: unity_run_all_tests, unity_run_tests_with_filter, unity_run_single_test_by_name.
- Interactive menu which lists test cases and allows choosing the tests to be run, available via unity_run_menu function.

Disable if a different test registration mechanism is used.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_FIXTURE

Include Unity test fixture

Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library

If set, unity_fixture.h header file and associated source files are part of the build. These provide an optional set of macros and functions to implement test groups.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_UNITY_ENABLE_BACKTRACE_ON_FAIL

Print a backtrace when a unit test fails

Found in: Component config > Unity unit testing library

If set, the unity framework will print the backtrace information before jumping back to the test menu. The jumping is usually occurs in assert functions such as TEST_ASSERT, TEST_FAIL etc.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

PThreads Contains:

- *CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT*
- *CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT*
- *CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT*
- *CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT*
- *CONFIG_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN*

CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT

Default task priority

Found in: Component config > PThreads

Priority used to create new tasks with default pthread parameters.

Range:

- from 0 to 255

Default value:

- 5

CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT

Default task stack size

Found in: Component config > PThreads

Stack size used to create new tasks with default pthread parameters.

Default value:

- 3072

CONFIG_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN

Minimum allowed pthread stack size

Found in: Component config > PThreads

Minimum allowed pthread stack size set in attributes passed to pthread_create

Default value:

- 768

CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT

Default pthread core affinity

Found in: Component config > PThreads

The default core to which pthreads are pinned.

Available options:

- No affinity (PTHREAD_DEFAULT_CORE_NO_AFFINITY)
- Core 0 (PTHREAD_DEFAULT_CORE_0)
- Core 1 (PTHREAD_DEFAULT_CORE_1)

CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT

Default name of pthreads

Found in: Component config > PThreads

The default name of pthreads.

Default value:

- “pthread”

FreeRTOS

Contains:

- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_MUTEX_GIVEN_BY_OWNER*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_INTERRUPT_BACKTRACE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_OPTIMIZED_SCHEDULER*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_TASK_FUNCTION_WRAPPER*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_QUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT_ON_UNTESTED_FUNCTION*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TASK_STACKSIZE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_ISR_STACKSIZE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_MAX_TASK_NAME_LEN*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_FUNCTIONS_INTO_FLASH*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_PORT_CRITICAL_COMPLIANCE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_LEGACY_HOOKS*
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_CORETIMER*

CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

Run FreeRTOS only on first core

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

This version of FreeRTOS normally takes control of all cores of the CPU. Select this if you only want to start it on the first core. This is needed when e.g. another process needs complete control over the second core.

This invisible config value sets the value of tskNO_AFFINITY in task.h. # Intended to be used as a constant from other Kconfig files. # Value is (32-bit) INT_MAX.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_CORETIMER

Xtensa timer to use as the FreeRTOS tick source

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS needs a timer with an associated interrupt to use as the main tick source to increase counters, run timers and do pre-emptive multitasking with. There are multiple timers available to do this, with different interrupt priorities. Check

Available options:

- Timer 0 (int 6, level 1) (FREERTOS_CORETIMER_0)
  Select this to use timer 0
- Timer 1 (int 15, level 3) (FREERTOS_CORETIMER_1)
  Select this to use timer 1

CONFIG_FREERTOS_OPTIMIZED_SCHEDULER

Enable FreeRTOS ṕlatform optimized scheduler

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

On most platforms there are instructions can speedup the ready task searching. Enabling this option the FreeRTOS with this instructions support will be built.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_HZ

Tick rate (Hz)

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

Select the tick rate at which FreeRTOS does pre-emptive context switching.

Range:

- from 1 to 1000

Default value:

- 100

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT_ON_UNTESTED_FUNCTION

Halt when an SMP-untested function is called

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

Some functions in FreeRTOS have not been thoroughly tested yet when moving to the SMP implementation of FreeRTOS. When this option is enabled, these fuctions will throw an assert().

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW

Check for stack overflow

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS can check for stack overflows in threads and trigger an user function called vApplication-StackOverflowHook when this happens.

Available options:

- No checking (FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW_NONE)
  Do not check for stack overflows (configCHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW=0)
- Check by stack pointer value (FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW_PTRVAL)
  Check for stack overflows on each context switch by checking if the stack pointer is in a valid range. Quick but does not detect stack overflows that happened between context switches (configCHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW=1)
- Check using canary bytes (FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW_CANARY)
  Places some magic bytes at the end of the stack area and on each context switch, check if these bytes are still intact. More thorough than just checking the pointer, but also slightly slower. (configCHECK_FOR_STACK_OVERFLOW=2)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK

Set a debug watchpoint as a stack overflow check

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS can check if a stack has overflown its bounds by checking either the value of the stack pointer or by checking the integrity of canary bytes. (See FREERTOS_CHECK_STACKOVERFLOW for more information.) These checks only happen on a context switch, and the situation that caused the stack overflow may already be long gone by then. This option will use the last debug memory watchpoint to allow breaking into the debugger (or panic'ing) as soon as any of the last 32 bytes on the stack of a task are overwritten. The side effect is that using gdb, you effectively have one hardware watchpoint less because the last one is overwritten as soon as a task switch happens.

Another consequence is that due to alignment requirements of the watchpoint, the usable stack size decreases by up to 60 bytes. This is because the watchpoint region has to be aligned to its size and the size for the stack watchpoint in IDF is 32 bytes.

This check only triggers if the stack overflow writes within 32 bytes near the end of the stack, rather than overshooting further, so it is worth combining this approach with one of the other stack overflow check methods.

When this watchpoint is hit, gdb will stop with a SIGTRAP message. When no JTAG OCD is attached, esp-idf will panic on an unhandled debug exception.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_INTERRUPT_BACKTRACE

Enable backtrace from interrupt to task context

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If this option is enabled, interrupt stack frame will be modified to point to the code of the interrupted task as its return address. This helps the debugger (or the panic handler) show a backtrace from the interrupt to the task which was interrupted. This also works for nested interrupts: higer level interrupt stack can be traced back to the lower level interrupt. This option adds 4 instructions to the interrupt dispatching code.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS

Number of thread local storage pointers

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS has the ability to store per-thread pointers in the task control block. This controls the number of pointers available.

This value must be at least 1. Index 0 is reserved for use by the pthreads API thread-local-storage. Other indexes can be used for any desired purpose.

Range:

- from 1 to 256

Default value:

- 1

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT

FreeRTOS assertions

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

Failed FreeRTOS configASSERT() assertions can be configured to behave in different ways.

By default these behave the same as the global project assert settings.

Available options:

- abort() on failed assertions (FREERTOS_ASSERT_FAIL_ABORT)
  If a FreeRTOS configASSERT() fails, FreeRTOS will abort() and halt execution. The panic handler can be configured to handle the outcome of an abort() in different ways.
  If assertions are disabled for the entire project, they are also disabled in FreeRTOS and this option is unavailable.
- Print and continue failed assertions (FREERTOS_ASSERT_FAIL_PRINT_CONTINUE)
  If a FreeRTOS assertion fails, print it out and continue.
- Disable FreeRTOS assertions (FREERTOS_ASSERT_DISABLE)
  FreeRTOS configASSERT() will not be compiled into the binary.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TASK_STACKSIZE

Idle Task stack size

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

The idle task has its own stack, sized in bytes. The default size is enough for most uses. Size can be reduced to 768 bytes if no (or simple) FreeRTOS idle hooks are used and pthread local storage or FreeRTOS local storage cleanup callbacks are not used.

The stack size may need to be increased above the default if the app installs idle or thread local storage cleanup hooks that use a lot of stack memory.

Range:

- from 768 to 32768

Default value:

- 2304

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ISR_STACKSIZE

ISR stack size

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

The interrupt handlers have their own stack. The size of the stack can be defined here. Each processor has its own stack, so the total size occupied will be twice this.

Range:
- from 2096 to 32768 if ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_ELF
- from 1536 to 32768

Default value:
- 2096 if ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_ELF
- 1536

CONFIG_FREERTOS_LEGACY_HOOKS

Use FreeRTOS legacy hooks

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS offers a number of hooks/callback functions that are called when a timer tick happens, the idle thread runs etc. esp-idf replaces these by runtime registerable hooks using the esp_register_freertos_xxx_hook system, but for legacy reasons the old hooks can also still be enabled. Please enable this only if you have code that for some reason can't be migrated to the esp_register_freertos_xxx_hook system.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_MAX_TASK_NAME_LEN

Maximum task name length

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

Changes the maximum task name length. Each task allocated will include this many bytes for a task name. Using a shorter value saves a small amount of RAM, a longer value allows more complex names.

For most uses, the default of 16 is OK.

Range:
- from 1 to 256

Default value:
- 16

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP

Enable static task clean up hook

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

Enable this option to make FreeRTOS call the static task clean up hook when a task is deleted.

Bear in mind that if this option is enabled you will need to implement the following function:

```
void vPortCleanUpTCB ( void \*pxTCB ) {
    // place clean up code here
}
```

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY

FreeRTOS timer task priority

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

The timer service task (primarily) makes use of existing FreeRTOS features, allowing timer functionality to be added to an application with minimal impact on the size of the application' s executable binary.

Use this constant to define the priority that the timer task will run at.

Range:
- from 1 to 25

Default value:
- 1

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH

FreeRTOS timer task stack size

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

The timer service task (primarily) makes use of existing FreeRTOS features, allowing timer functionality to be added to an application with minimal impact on the size of the application' s executable binary.

Use this constant to define the size (in bytes) of the stack allocated for the timer task.

Range:
- from 1536 to 32768

Default value:
- 2048

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH

FreeRTOS timer queue length

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS provides a set of timer related API functions. Many of these functions use a standard FreeRTOS queue to send commands to the timer service task. The queue used for this purpose is called the 'timer command queue'. The 'timer command queue' is private to the FreeRTOS timer implementation, and cannot be accessed directly.

For most uses the default value of 10 is OK.

Range:
- from 5 to 20

Default value:
- 10

CONFIG_FREERTOS_QUEUE_REGISTRY_SIZE

FreeRTOS queue registry size

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

FreeRTOS uses the queue registry as a means for kernel aware debuggers to locate queues, semaphores, and mutexes. The registry allows for a textual name to be associated with a queue for easy identification within a debugging GUI. A value of 0 will disable queue registry functionality, and a value larger than 0 will specify the number of queues/semaphores/mutexes that the registry can hold.

Range:
- from 0 to 20

Default value:
- 0

CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY

Enable FreeRTOS trace facility

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If enabled, configUSE_TRACE_FACILITY will be defined as 1 in FreeRTOS. This will allow the usage of trace facility functions such as uxTaskGetSystemState().

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS

Enable FreeRTOS stats formatting functions

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY

If enabled, configUSE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS will be defined as 1 in FreeRTOS. This will allow the usage of stats formatting functions such as vTaskList().

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY*

CONFIG_FREERTOS_VTASKLIST_INCLUDE_COREID

Enable display of xCoreID in vTaskList

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS

If enabled, this will include an extra column when vTaskList is called to display the CoreID the task is pinned to (0,1) or -1 if not pinned.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS*

CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS

Enable FreeRTOS to collect run time stats

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If enabled, configGENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS will be defined as 1 in FreeRTOS. This will allow FreeRTOS to collect information regarding the usage of processor time amongst FreeRTOS tasks. Run time stats are generated using either the ESP Timer or the CPU Clock as the clock source (Note that run time stats are only valid until the clock source overflows). The function vTaskGetRunTimeStats() will also be available if FREERTOS_USE_STATS_FORMATTING_FUNCTIONS and FREERTOS_USE_TRACE_FACILITY are enabled. vTaskGetRunTimeStats() will display the run time of each task as a % of the total run time of all CPUs (task run time / no of CPUs) / (total run time / 100)

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_RUN_TIME_STATS_CLK

Choose the clock source for run time stats

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_GENERATE_RUN_TIME_STATS

Choose the clock source for FreeRTOS run time stats. Options are CPU0's CPU Clock or the ESP Timer. Both clock sources are 32 bits. The CPU Clock can run at a higher frequency hence provide a finer resolution but will overflow much quicker. Note that run time stats are only valid until the clock source overflows.

Available options:

- Use ESP TIMER for run time stats (FREERTOS_RUN_TIME_STATS_USING_ESP_TIMER)
  ESP Timer will be used as the clock source for FreeRTOS run time stats. The ESP Timer runs at a frequency of 1MHz regardless of Dynamic Frequency Scaling. Therefore the ESP Timer will overflow in approximately 4290 seconds.
- Use CPU Clock for run time stats (FREERTOS_RUN_TIME_STATS_USING_CPU_CLK)
  CPU Clock will be used as the clock source for the generation of run time stats. The CPU Clock has a frequency dependent on ESP32_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ and Dynamic Frequency Scaling (DFS). Therefore the CPU Clock frequency can fluctuate between 80 to 240MHz. Run time stats generated using the CPU Clock represents the number of CPU cycles each task is allocated and DOES NOT reflect the amount of time each task runs for (as CPU clock frequency can change). If the CPU clock consistently runs at the maximum frequency of 240MHz, it will overflow in approximately 17 seconds.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE

Tickless idle support

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If power management support is enabled, FreeRTOS will be able to put the system into light sleep mode when no tasks need to run for a number of ticks. This number can be set using FREERTOS_IDLE_TIME_BEFORE_SLEEP option. This feature is also known as "automatic light sleep" .

Note that timers created using esp_timer APIs may prevent the system from entering sleep mode, even when no tasks need to run.

If disabled, automatic light sleep support will be disabled.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

CONFIG_FREERTOS_IDLE_TIME_BEFORE_SLEEP

Minimum number of ticks to enter sleep mode for

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS > CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE

FreeRTOS will enter light sleep mode if no tasks need to run for this number of ticks.

Range:

- from 2 to 4294967295 if *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE*

Default value:

- 3 if *CONFIG_FREERTOS_USE_TICKLESS_IDLE*

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TASK_FUNCTION_WRAPPER

Enclose all task functions in a wrapper function

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If enabled, all FreeRTOS task functions will be enclosed in a wrapper function. If a task function mistakenly returns (i.e. does not delete), the call flow will return to the wrapper function. The wrapper function will then log an error and abort the application. This option is also required for GDB backtraces and C++ exceptions to work correctly inside top-level task functions.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_MUTEX_GIVEN_BY_OWNER

Check that mutex semaphore is given by owner task

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If enabled, assert that when a mutex semaphore is given, the task giving the semaphore is the task which is currently holding the mutex.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_CHECK_PORT_CRITICAL_COMPLIANCE

Tests compliance with Vanilla FreeRTOS port*_CRITICAL calls

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

If enabled, context of port*_CRITICAL calls (ISR or Non-ISR) would be checked to be in compliance with Vanilla FreeRTOS. e.g Calling port*_CRITICAL from ISR context would cause assert failure

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FREERTOS_PLACE_FUNCTIONS_INTO_FLASH

Place FreeRTOS functions into Flash

Found in: Component config > FreeRTOS

When enabled the selected Non-ISR FreeRTOS functions will be placed into Flash memory instead of IRAM. This saves up to 8KB of IRAM depending on which functions are used.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

SPIFFS Configuration

Contains:

- *Debug Configuration*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_STATS*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_CHECK*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_FOLLOW_SYMLINKS*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_MAX_PARTITIONS*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MTIME*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_MAX_RUNS*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_META_LENGTH*
- *SPIFFS Cache Configuration*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_MTIME_WIDE_64_BITS*

CONFIG_SPIFFS_MAX_PARTITIONS

Maximum Number of Partitions

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Define maximum number of partitions that can be mounted.

Range:

- from 1 to 10

Default value:

- 3

SPIFFS Cache Configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE*

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE

Enable SPIFFS Cache

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > SPIFFS Cache Configuration

Enables/disable memory read caching of nucleus file system operations.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_WR

Enable SPIFFS Write Caching

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > SPIFFS Cache Configuration > CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE

Enables memory write caching for file descriptors in hydrogen.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_STATS

Enable SPIFFS Cache Statistics

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > SPIFFS Cache Configuration > CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE

Enable/disable statistics on caching. Debug/test purpose only.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_CHECK

Enable SPIFFS Page Check

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Always check header of each accessed page to ensure consistent state. If enabled it will increase number of reads from flash, especially if cache is disabled.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_MAX_RUNS

Set Maximum GC Runs

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Define maximum number of GC runs to perform to reach desired free pages.

Range:
- from 1 to 255

Default value:
- 10

CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_STATS

Enable SPIFFS GC Statistics

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Enable/disable statistics on gc. Debug/test purpose only.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE

SPIFFS logical page size

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Logical page size of SPIFFS partition, in bytes. Must be multiple of flash page size (which is usually 256 bytes). Larger page sizes reduce overhead when storing large files, and improve filesystem performance when reading large files. Smaller page sizes reduce overhead when storing small (< page size) files.

Range:
- from 256 to 1024

Default value:
- 256

CONFIG_SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN

Set SPIFFS Maximum Name Length

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Object name maximum length. Note that this length include the zero-termination character, meaning maximum string of characters can at most be SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN - 1.

SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN + SPIFFS_META_LENGTH should not exceed SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE - 64.

Range:
- from 1 to 256

Default value:
- 32

CONFIG_SPIFFS_FOLLOW_SYMLINKS

Enable symbolic links for image creation

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

If this option is enabled, symbolic links are taken into account during partition image creation.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC

Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Magic

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

Enable this to have an identifiable spiffs filesystem. This will look for a magic in all sectors to determine if this is a valid spiffs system or not at mount time.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC_LENGTH

Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Length Magic

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MAGIC

If this option is enabled, the magic will also be dependent on the length of the filesystem. For example, a filesystem configured and formatted for 4 megabytes will not be accepted for mounting with a configuration defining the filesystem as 2 megabytes.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_META_LENGTH

Size of per-file metadata field

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

This option sets the number of extra bytes stored in the file header. These bytes can be used in an application-specific manner. Set this to at least 4 bytes to enable support for saving file modification time.

SPIFFS_OBJ_NAME_LEN + SPIFFS_META_LENGTH should not exceed SPIFFS_PAGE_SIZE - 64.

Default value:

- 4

CONFIG_SPIFFS_USE_MTIME

Save file modification time

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

If enabled, then the first 4 bytes of per-file metadata will be used to store file modification time (mtime), accessible through stat/fstat functions. Modification time is updated when the file is opened.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_MTIME_WIDE_64_BITS

The time field occupies 64 bits in the image instead of 32 bits

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration

If this option is not set, the time field is 32 bits (up to 2106 year), otherwise it is 64 bits and make sure it matches SPIFFS_META_LENGTH. If the chip already has the spiffs image with the time field = 32 bits then this option cannot be applied in this case. Erase it first before using this option. To resolve the Y2K38 problem for the spiffs, use a toolchain with support time_t 64 bits (see SDK_TOOLCHAIN_SUPPORTS_TIME_WIDE_64_BITS).

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SPIFFS_META_LENGTH* >= 8

Debug Configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_DBG*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_API_DBG*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_DBG*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_CHECK_DBG*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_TEST_VISUALISATION*
- *CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_DBG*

CONFIG_SPIFFS_DBG

Enable general SPIFFS debug

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration

Enabling this option will print general debug mesages to the console.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_API_DBG

Enable SPIFFS API debug

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration

Enabling this option will print API debug mesages to the console.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_GC_DBG

Enable SPIFFS Garbage Cleaner debug

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration

Enabling this option will print GC debug mesages to the console.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CACHE_DBG

Enable SPIFFS Cache debug

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration

Enabling this option will print cache debug mesages to the console.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_CHECK_DBG

Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Check debug

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration

Enabling this option will print Filesystem Check debug mesages to the console.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPIFFS_TEST_VISUALISATION

Enable SPIFFS Filesystem Visualization

Found in: Component config > SPIFFS Configuration > Debug Configuration

Enable this option to enable SPIFFS_vis function in the API.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Application Level Tracing Contains:

- *CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION*
- *FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing*
- *CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE*
- *CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX*
- *CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH*
- *CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO*

CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION

Data Destination

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing

Select destination for application trace: trace memory or none (to disable).

Available options:

- Trace memory (APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX)
- None (APPTRACE_DEST_NONE)

CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO

Timeout for flushing last trace data to host on panic

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing

Timeout for flushing last trace data to host in case of panic. In ms. Use -1 to disable timeout and wait forever.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH

Threshold for flushing last trace data to host on panic

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing

Threshold for flushing last trace data to host on panic in post-mortem mode. This is minimal amount of data needed to perform flush. In bytes.

Range:

- from 0 to 16384 if APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX

Default value:

- 0 if APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX

CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX

Size of the pending data buffer

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing

Size of the buffer for events in bytes. It is useful for buffering events from the time critical code (scheduler, ISRs etc). If this parameter is 0 then events will be discarded when main HW buffer is full.

Default value:

- 0 if APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX

FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing Contains:

- *CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE*

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

SystemView Tracing Enable

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing

Enables supporrt for SEGGER SystemView tracing functionality.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE

Timer to use as timestamp source

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

SystemView needs to use a hardware timer as the source of timestamps when tracing. This option selects the timer for it.

Available options:

- CPU cycle counter (CCOUNT) (SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_CCOUNT)
- Timer 0, Group 0 (SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_00)
- Timer 1, Group 0 (SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_01)
- Timer 0, Group 1 (SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_10)
- Timer 1, Group 1 (SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_TIMER_11)
- esp_timer high resolution timer (SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE_ESP_TIMER)

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_MAX_TASKS

Maximum supported tasks

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Configures maximum supported tasks in sysview debug

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_BUF_WAIT_TMO

Trace buffer wait timeout

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Configures timeout (in us) to wait for free space in trace buffer. Set to -1 to wait forever and avoid lost events.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_OVERFLOW_ENABLE

Trace Buffer Overflow Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Trace Buffer Overflow" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_ISR_ENTER_ENABLE

ISR Enter Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "ISR Enter" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_ISR_EXIT_ENABLE

ISR Exit Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "ISR Exit" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_ISR_TO_SCHEDULER_ENABLE

ISR Exit to Scheduler Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "ISR to Scheduler" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_START_EXEC_ENABLE

Task Start Execution Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Task Start Execution" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_STOP_EXEC_ENABLE

Task Stop Execution Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Task Stop Execution" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_START_READY_ENABLE

Task Start Ready State Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Task Start Ready State" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_STOP_READY_ENABLE

Task Stop Ready State Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Task Stop Ready State" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_CREATE_ENABLE

Task Create Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Task Create" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TASK_TERMINATE_ENABLE

Task Terminate Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Task Terminate" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_IDLE_ENABLE

System Idle Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "System Idle" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TIMER_ENTER_ENABLE

Timer Enter Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Timer Enter" event.

CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_TIMER_EXIT_ENABLE

Timer Exit Event

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing > FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing > CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE

Enables "Timer Exit" event.

CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE

GCOV to Host Enable

Found in: Component config > Application Level Tracing

Enables support for GCOV data transfer to host.

Heap memory debugging Contains:

- *CONFIG_HEAP_ABORT_WHEN_ALLOCATION_FAILS*
- *CONFIG_HEAP_TASK_TRACKING*
- *CONFIG_HEAP_CORRUPTION_DETECTION*
- *CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST*
- *CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH*

CONFIG_HEAP_CORRUPTION_DETECTION

Heap corruption detection

Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging

Enable heap poisoning features to detect heap corruption caused by out-of-bounds access to heap memory.

See the "Heap Memory Debugging" page of the IDF documentation for a description of each level of heap corruption detection.

Available options:
- Basic (no poisoning) (HEAP_POISONING_DISABLED)
- Light impact (HEAP_POISONING_LIGHT)
- Comprehensive (HEAP_POISONING_COMPREHENSIVE)

CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_DEST

Heap tracing

Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging

Enables the heap tracing API defined in esp_heap_trace.h.

This function causes a moderate increase in IRAM code side and a minor increase in heap function (malloc/free/realloc) CPU overhead, even when the tracing feature is not used. So it's best to keep it disabled unless tracing is being used.

Available options:
- Disabled (HEAP_TRACING_OFF)
- Standalone (HEAP_TRACING_STANDALONE)
- Host-based (HEAP_TRACING_TOHOST)

CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH

Heap tracing stack depth

Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging

Number of stack frames to save when tracing heap operation callers.

More stack frames uses more memory in the heap trace buffer (and slows down allocation), but can provide useful information.

CONFIG_HEAP_TASK_TRACKING

Enable heap task tracking

Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging

Enables tracking the task responsible for each heap allocation.

This function depends on heap poisoning being enabled and adds four more bytes of overhead for each block allocated.

CONFIG_HEAP_ABORT_WHEN_ALLOCATION_FAILS

Abort if memory allocation fails

Found in: Component config > Heap memory debugging

When enabled, if a memory allocation operation fails it will cause a system abort.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

mbedTLS

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ASYMMETRIC_CONTENT_LEN*
- *Certificate Bundle*
- *Certificates*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CMAC_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC*

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_MPI*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_SHA*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_RESTARTABLE*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SHA512_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_LARGE_KEY_SOFTWARE_MPI*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HKDF_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_SSL3*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_MEM_ALLOC_MODE*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_ALPN*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_DTLS*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_1*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_2*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_RENEGOTIATION*
- *Symmetric Ciphers*
- *TLS Key Exchange Methods*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_MAX_CONTENT_LEN*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_TLS_MODE*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CLIENT_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SERVER_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_MEM_ALLOC_MODE

Memory allocation strategy

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Allocation strategy for mbedTLS, essentially provides ability to allocate all required dynamic allocations from,

- Internal DRAM memory only
- External SPIRAM memory only
- Either internal or external memory based on default malloc() behavior in ESP-IDF
- Custom allocation mode, by overwriting calloc()/free() using mbedtls_platform_set_calloc_free() function
- Internal IRAM memory wherever applicable else internal DRAM

Recommended mode here is always internal, since that is most preferred from security perspective. But if application requirement does not allow sufficient free internal memory then alternate mode can be selected.

Available options:

- Internal memory (MBEDTLS_INTERNAL_MEM_ALLOC)
- External SPIRAM (MBEDTLS_EXTERNAL_MEM_ALLOC)
- Default alloc mode (MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_MEM_ALLOC)
- Custom alloc mode (MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_MEM_ALLOC)
- Internal IRAM (MBEDTLS_IRAM_8BIT_MEM_ALLOC)
  Allows to use IRAM memory region as 8bit accessible region.
  TLS input and output buffers will be allocated in IRAM section which is 32bit aligned memory. Every unaligned (8bit or 16bit) access will result in an exception and incur penalty of

certain clock cycles per unaligned read/write.

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_MAX_CONTENT_LEN

TLS maximum message content length

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Maximum TLS message length (in bytes) supported by mbedTLS.

16384 is the default and this value is required to comply fully with TLS standards.

However you can set a lower value in order to save RAM. This is safe if the other end of the connection supports Maximum Fragment Length Negotiation Extension (max_fragment_length, see RFC6066) or you know for certain that it will never send a message longer than a certain number of bytes.

If the value is set too low, symptoms are a failed TLS handshake or a return value of MBEDTLS_ERR_SSL_INVALID_RECORD (-0x7200).

Range:
- from 512 to 16384

Default value:
- 16384

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ASYMMETRIC_CONTENT_LEN

Asymmetric in/out fragment length

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

If enabled, this option allows customizing TLS in/out fragment length in asymmetric way. Please note that enabling this with default values saves 12KB of dynamic memory per TLS connection.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_IN_CONTENT_LEN

TLS maximum incoming fragment length

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ASYMMETRIC_CONTENT_LEN

This defines maximum incoming fragment length, overriding default maximum content length (MBEDTLS_SSL_MAX_CONTENT_LEN).

Range:
- from 512 to 16384

Default value:
- 16384

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_OUT_CONTENT_LEN

TLS maximum outgoing fragment length

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ASYMMETRIC_CONTENT_LEN

This defines maximum outgoing fragment length, overriding default maximum content length (MBEDTLS_SSL_MAX_CONTENT_LEN).

Range:
- from 512 to 16384

Default value:
- 4096

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER

Using dynamic TX/RX buffer

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Using dynamic TX/RX buffer. After enabling this option, mbedTLS will allocate TX buffer when need to send data and then free it if all data is sent, allocate RX buffer when need to receive data and then free it when all data is used or read by upper layer.

By default, when SSL is initialized, mbedTLS also allocate TX and RX buffer with the default value of "MBEDTLS_SSL_OUT_CONTENT_LEN" or "MBEDTLS_SSL_IN_CONTENT_LEN", so to save more heap, users can set the options to be an appropriate value.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_PEER_CERT

Free SSL peer certificate after its usage

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER

Free peer certificate after its usage in handshake process.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CONFIG_DATA

Free private key and DHM data after its usage

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER

Free private key and DHM data after its usage in handshake process.

The option will decrease heap cost when handshake, but also lead to problem:

Becasue all certificate, private key and DHM data are freed so users should register certificate and private key to ssl config object again.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CA_CERT

Free SSL ca certificate after its usage

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_BUFFER > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CONFIG_DATA

Free ca certificate after its usage in the handshake process. This option will decrease the heap footprint for the TLS handshake, but may lead to a problem: If the respective ssl object needs to perform the TLS handshake again, the ca certificate should once again be registered to the ssl object.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DYNAMIC_FREE_CONFIG_DATA*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG

Enable mbedTLS debugging

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable mbedTLS debugging functions at compile time.

If this option is enabled, you can include "mbedtls/esp_debug.h" and call mbedtls_esp_enable_debug_log() at runtime in order to enable mbedTLS debug output via the ESP log mechanism.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL

Set mbedTLS debugging level

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEBUG

Set mbedTLS debugging level

Available options:

- Warning (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_WARN)
- Info (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

Certificate Bundle

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Enable trusted root certificate bundle

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificate Bundle

Enable support for large number of default root certificates

When enabled this option allows user to store default as well as customer specific root certificates in compressed format rather than storing full certificate. For the root certificates the public key and the subject name will be stored.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DEFAULT_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Default certificate bundle options

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificate Bundle > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Available options:

- Use the full default certificate bundle (MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_DEFAULT_FULL)
- Use only the most common certificates from the default bundles (MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_DEFAULT_CMN)
  Use only the most common certificates from the default bundles, reducing the size with 50%, while still having around 99% coverage.
- Do not use the default certificate bundle (MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_DEFAULT_NONE)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Add custom certificates to the default bundle

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificate Bundle > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE_PATH

Custom certificate bundle path

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificate Bundle > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CUSTOM_CERTIFICATE_BUNDLE

Name of the custom certificate directory or file. This path is evaluated relative to the project root directory.

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_RESTARTABLE

Enable mbedTLS ecp restartable

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable "non-blocking" ECC operations that can return early and be resumed.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CMAC_C

Enable CMAC mode for block ciphers

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable the CMAC (Cipher-based Message Authentication Code) mode for block ciphers.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES

Enable hardware AES acceleration

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable hardware accelerated AES encryption & decryption.

Note that if the ESP32 CPU is running at 240MHz, hardware AES does not offer any speed boost over software AES.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_AES_USE_INTERRUPT

Use interrupt for long AES operations

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES

Use an interrupt to coordinate long AES operations.

This allows other code to run on the CPU while an AES operation is pending. Otherwise the CPU busy-waits.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_GCM

Enable partially hardware accelerated GCM

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES

Enable partially hardware accelerated GCM. GHASH calculation is still done in software.

If MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_GCM is disabled and MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_AES is enabled then mbedTLS will still use the hardware accelerated AES block operation, but on a single block at a time.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_MPI

Enable hardware MPI (bignum) acceleration

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable hardware accelerated multiple precision integer operations.

Hardware accelerated multiplication, modulo multiplication, and modular exponentiation for up to 4096 bit results.

These operations are used by RSA.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HARDWARE_SHA

Enable hardware SHA acceleration

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable hardware accelerated SHA1, SHA256, SHA384 & SHA512 in mbedTLS.

Due to a hardware limitation, on the ESP32 hardware acceleration is only guaranteed if SHA digests are calculated one at a time. If more than one SHA digest is calculated at the same time, one will be calculated fully in hardware and the rest will be calculated (at least partially calculated) in software. This happens automatically.

SHA hardware acceleration is faster than software in some situations but slower in others. You should benchmark to find the best setting for you.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_CACHE_WORKAROUND_STRATEGY_DUPLDST

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN

Enable hardware ECDSA sign acceleration when using ATECC608A

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

This option enables hardware acceleration for ECDSA sign function, only when using ATECC608A cryptoauth chip (integrated with ESP32-WROOM-32SE)

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY

Enable hardware ECDSA verify acceleration when using ATECC608A

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

This option enables hardware acceleration for ECDSA sign function, only when using ATECC608A cryptoauth chip (integrated with ESP32-WROOM-32SE)

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME

Enable mbedtls time support

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable use of time.h functions (time() and gmtime()) by mbedTLS.

This option doesn't require the system time to be correct, but enables functionality that requires relative timekeeping - for example periodic expiry of TLS session tickets or session cache entries.

Disabling this option will save some firmware size, particularly if the rest of the firmware doesn't call any standard timekeeeping functions.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME_DATE

Enable mbedtls certificate expiry check

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HAVE_TIME

Enables X.509 certificate expiry checks in mbedTLS.

If this option is disabled (default) then X.509 certificate "valid from" and "valid to" timestamp fields are ignored.

If this option is enabled, these fields are compared with the current system date and time. The time is retrieved using the standard time() and gmtime() functions. If the certificate is not valid for the current system time then verification will fail with code MBEDTLS_X509_BADCERT_FUTURE or MBEDTLS_X509_BADCERT_EXPIRED.

Enabling this option requires adding functionality in the firmware to set the system clock to a valid timestamp before using TLS. The recommended way to do this is via ESP-IDF's SNTP functionality, but any method can be used.

In the case where only a small number of certificates are trusted by the device, please carefully consider the tradeoffs of enabling this option. There may be undesired consequences, for example if all trusted certificates expire while the device is offline and a TLS connection is required to update. Or if an issue with the SNTP server means that the system time is invalid for an extended period after a reset.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_DETERMINISTIC

Enable deterministic ECDSA

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Standard ECDSA is "fragile" in the sense that lack of entropy when signing may result in a compromise of the long-term signing key.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SHA512_C

Enable the SHA-384 and SHA-512 cryptographic hash algorithms

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable MBEDTLS_SHA512_C adds support for SHA-384 and SHA-512.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_TLS_MODE

TLS Protocol Role

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

mbedTLS can be compiled with protocol support for the TLS server, TLS client, or both server and client.

Reducing the number of TLS roles supported saves code size.

Available options:

- Server & Client (MBEDTLS_TLS_SERVER_AND_CLIENT)
- Server (MBEDTLS_TLS_SERVER_ONLY)
- Client (MBEDTLS_TLS_CLIENT_ONLY)
- None (MBEDTLS_TLS_DISABLED)

TLS Key Exchange Methods

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_DHE_RSA*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECJPAKE*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES

Enable pre-shared-key ciphersuites

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods

Enable to show configuration for different types of pre-shared-key TLS authentatication methods.

Leaving this options disabled will save code size if they are not used.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_PSK

Enable PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES

Enable to support symmetric key PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS key exchange modes.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_DHE_PSK

Enable DHE-PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES

Enable to support Diffie-Hellman PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS authentication modes.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDHE_PSK

Enable ECDHE-PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES

Enable to support Elliptic-Curve-Diffie-Hellman PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS authentication modes.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES* && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA_PSK

Enable RSA-PSK based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES

Enable to support RSA PSK (pre-shared-key) TLS authentication modes.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PSK_MODES*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_RSA

Enable RSA-only based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-RSA-WITH-

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_DHE_RSA

Enable DHE-RSA based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-DHE-RSA-WITH-

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE

Support Elliptic Curve based ciphersuites

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods

Enable to show Elliptic Curve based ciphersuite mode options.

Disabling all Elliptic Curve ciphersuites saves code size and can give slightly faster TLS handshakes, provided the server supports RSA-only ciphersuite modes.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDHE_RSA

Enable ECDHE-RSA based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDHE_ECDSA

Enable ECDHE-ECDSA based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDH_ECDSA

Enable ECDH-ECDSA based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECDH_RSA

Enable ECDH-RSA based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ELLIPTIC_CURVE

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECDHE-RSA-WITH-

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_KEY_EXCHANGE_ECJPAKE

Enable ECJPAKE based ciphersuite modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > TLS Key Exchange Methods

Enable to support ciphersuites with prefix TLS-ECJPAKE-WITH-

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C* && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_RENEGOTIATION

Support TLS renegotiation

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

The two main uses of renegotiation are (1) refresh keys on long-lived connections and (2) client authentication after the initial handshake. If you don't need renegotiation, disabling it will save code size and reduce the possibility of abuse/vulnerability.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_SSL3

Legacy SSL 3.0 support

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Support the legacy SSL 3.0 protocol. Most servers will speak a newer TLS protocol these days.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1

Support TLS 1.0 protocol

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_1

Support TLS 1.1 protocol

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_TLS1_2

Support TLS 1.2 protocol

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_PROTO_DTLS

Support DTLS protocol (all versions)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Requires TLS 1.1 to be enabled for DTLS 1.0 Requires TLS 1.2 to be enabled for DTLS 1.2

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SSL_ALPN

Support ALPN (Application Layer Protocol Negotiation)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Disabling this option will save some code size if it is not needed.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CLIENT_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS

TLS: Client Support for RFC 5077 SSL session tickets

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Client support for RFC 5077 session tickets. See mbedTLS documentation for more details. Disabling this option will save some code size.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SERVER_SSL_SESSION_TICKETS

TLS: Server Support for RFC 5077 SSL session tickets

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Server support for RFC 5077 session tickets. See mbedTLS documentation for more details. Disabling this option will save some code size.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Symmetric Ciphers

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_AES_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CCM_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DES_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_GCM_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RC4_MODE*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_XTEA_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_AES_C

AES block cipher

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CAMELLIA_C

Camellia block cipher

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_DES_C

DES block cipher (legacy, insecure)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enables the DES block cipher to support 3DES-based TLS ciphersuites.

3DES is vulnerable to the Sweet32 attack and should only be enabled if absolutely necessary.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RC4_MODE

RC4 Stream Cipher (legacy, insecure)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

ARCFOUR (RC4) stream cipher can be disabled entirely, enabled but not added to default ciphersuites, or enabled completely.

Please consider the security implications before enabling RC4.

Available options:

- Disabled (MBEDTLS_RC4_DISABLED)
- Enabled, not in default ciphersuites (MBEDTLS_RC4_ENABLED_NO_DEFAULT)
- Enabled (MBEDTLS_RC4_ENABLED)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_BLOWFISH_C

Blowfish block cipher (read help)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enables the Blowfish block cipher (not used for TLS sessions.)

The Blowfish cipher is not used for mbedTLS TLS sessions but can be used for other purposes. Read up on the limitations of Blowfish (including Sweet32) before enabling.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_XTEA_C

XTEA block cipher

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enables the XTEA block cipher.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CCM_C

CCM (Counter with CBC-MAC) block cipher modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enable Counter with CBC-MAC (CCM) modes for AES and/or Camellia ciphers.

Disabling this option saves some code size.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_GCM_C

GCM (Galois/Counter) block cipher modes

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Symmetric Ciphers

Enable Galois/Counter Mode for AES and/or Camellia ciphers.

This option is generally faster than CCM.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_RIPEMD160_C

Enable RIPEMD-160 hash algorithm

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable the RIPEMD-160 hash algorithm.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Certificates Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_PARSE_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_WRITE_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CRL_PARSE_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CSR_PARSE_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_PARSE_C

Read & Parse PEM formatted certificates

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates

Enable decoding/parsing of PEM formatted certificates.

If your certificates are all in the simpler DER format, disabling this option will save some code size.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_PEM_WRITE_C

Write PEM formatted certificates

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates

Enable writing of PEM formatted certificates.

If writing certificate data only in DER format, disabling this option will save some code size.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CRL_PARSE_C

X.509 CRL parsing

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates

Support for parsing X.509 Certifificate Revocation Lists.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_X509_CSR_PARSE_C

X.509 CSR parsing

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > Certificates

Support for parsing X.509 Certifificate Signing Requests

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Elliptic Curve Ciphers

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP256R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP384R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP512R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE25519_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192K1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224K1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256K1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP384R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP521R1_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_NIST_OPTIM*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C

Elliptic Curve Diffie-Hellman (ECDH)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable ECDH. Needed to use ECDHE-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDSA_C

Elliptic Curve DSA

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECDH_C

Enable ECDSA. Needed to use ECDSA-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECJPAKE_C

Elliptic curve J-PAKE

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable ECJPAKE. Needed to use ECJPAKE-xxx TLS ciphersuites.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192R1_ENABLED

Enable SECP192R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP192R1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224R1_ENABLED

Enable SECP224R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP224R1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256R1_ENABLED

Enable SECP256R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP256R1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP384R1_ENABLED

Enable SECP384R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP384R1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP521R1_ENABLED

Enable SECP521R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP521R1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP192K1_ENABLED

Enable SECP192K1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP192K1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP224K1_ENABLED

Enable SECP224K1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP224K1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_SECP256K1_ENABLED

Enable SECP256K1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for SECP256K1 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP256R1_ENABLED

Enable BP256R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

support for DP Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP384R1_ENABLED

Enable BP384R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

support for DP Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_BP512R1_ENABLED

Enable BP512R1 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

support for DP Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_DP_CURVE25519_ENABLED

Enable CURVE25519 curve

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

Enable support for CURVE25519 Elliptic Curve.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if (*CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_SIGN* || *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ATCA_HW_ECDSA_VERIFY*) && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_NIST_OPTIM

NIST ‘modulo p’ optimisations

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ECP_C

NIST ‘modulo p’ optimisations increase Elliptic Curve operation performance.

Disabling this option saves some code size.

end of Elliptic Curve options

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C

Poly1305 MAC algorithm

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable support for Poly1305 MAC algorithm.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C

Chacha20 stream cipher

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable support for Chacha20 stream cipher.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHAPOLY_C

ChaCha20-Poly1305 AEAD algorithm

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C

Enable support for ChaCha20-Poly1305 AEAD algorithm.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_CHACHA20_C* && *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_POLY1305_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_HKDF_C

HKDF algorithm (RFC 5869)

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Enable support for the Hashed Message Authentication Code (HMAC)-based key derivation function (HKDF).

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C

Enable the threading abstraction layer

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

If you do intend to use contexts between threads, you will need to enable this layer to prevent race conditions.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_ALT

Enable threading alternate implementation

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C

Enable threading alt to allow your own alternate threading implementation.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_PTHREAD

Enable threading pthread implementation

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C

Enable the pthread wrapper layer for the threading layer.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_THREADING_C*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_LARGE_KEY_SOFTWARE_MPI

Fallback to software implementation for larger MPI values

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Fallback to software implementation for RSA key lengths larger than SOC_RSA_MAX_BIT_LEN. If this is not active then the ESP will be unable to process keys greater than SOC_RSA_MAX_BIT_LEN.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS

Show configurations with potential security risks

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS

Default value:
- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ALLOW_UNSUPPORTED_CRITICAL_EXT*

CONFIG_MBEDTLS_ALLOW_UNSUPPORTED_CRITICAL_EXT

X.509 CRT parsing with unsupported critical extensions

Found in: Component config > mbedTLS > CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS

Allow the X.509 certificate parser to load certificates with unsupported critical extensions

Default value:
- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MBEDTLS_SECURITY_RISKS*

TCP Transport

Contains:

- *CONFIG_WS_BUFFER_SIZE*

CONFIG_WS_BUFFER_SIZE

Websocket transport buffer size

Found in: Component config > TCP Transport

Size of the buffer used for constructing the HTTP Upgrade request during connect

Default value:
- 1024

Log output

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL*
- *CONFIG_LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE*
- *CONFIG_LOG_COLORS*

CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL

Default log verbosity

Found in: Component config > Log output

Specify how much output to see in logs by default. You can set lower verbosity level at runtime using esp_log_level_set function.

Note that this setting limits which log statements are compiled into the program. So setting this to, say, "Warning" would mean that changing log level to "Debug" at runtime will not be possible.

Available options:
- No output (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_NONE)
- Error (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_ERROR)
- Warning (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_WARN)

- Info (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_INFO)
- Debug (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_DEBUG)
- Verbose (LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_LOG_COLORS

Use ANSI terminal colors in log output

Found in: Component config > Log output

Enable ANSI terminal color codes in bootloader output.

In order to view these, your terminal program must support ANSI color codes.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE

Log Timestamps

Found in: Component config > Log output

Choose what sort of timestamp is displayed in the log output:

- Milliseconds since boot is calulated from the RTOS tick count multiplied by the tick period. This time will reset after a software reboot. e.g. (90000)
- System time is taken from POSIX time functions which use the ESP32's RTC and FRC1 timers to maintain an accurate time. The system time is initialized to 0 on startup, it can be set with an SNTP sync, or with POSIX time functions. This time will not reset after a software reboot. e.g. (00:01:30.000)
- NOTE: Currently this will not get used in logging from binary blobs (i.e WiFi & Bluetooth libraries), these will always print milliseconds since boot.

Available options:

- Milliseconds Since Boot (LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE_RTOS)
- System Time (LOG_TIMESTAMP_SOURCE_SYSTEM)

Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager

Contains:

- *CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_SCAN_MAX_ENTRIES*
- *CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_AUTOSTOP_TIMEOUT*

CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_SCAN_MAX_ENTRIES

Max Wi-Fi Scan Result Entries

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager

This sets the maximum number of entries of Wi-Fi scan results that will be kept by the provisioning manager

Range:

- from 1 to 255

Default value:

- 16

CONFIG_WIFI_PROV_AUTOSTOP_TIMEOUT

Provisioning auto-stop timeout

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi Provisioning Manager

Time (in seconds) after which the Wi-Fi provisioning manager will auto-stop after connecting to a Wi-Fi network successfully.

Range:
- from 5 to 600

Default value:
- 30

eFuse Bit Manager Contains:

- *CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL*
- *CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE*

CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE

Use custom eFuse table

Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager

Allows to generate a structure for eFuse from the CSV file.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE_FILENAME

Custom eFuse CSV file

Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager > CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE

Name of the custom eFuse CSV filename. This path is evaluated relative to the project root directory.

Default value:
- "main/esp_efuse_custom_table.csv" if *CONFIG_EFUSE_CUSTOM_TABLE*

CONFIG_EFUSE_VIRTUAL

Simulate eFuse operations in RAM

Found in: Component config > eFuse Bit Manager

All read and writes operations are redirected to RAM instead of eFuse registers. If this option is set, all permanent changes (via eFuse) are disabled. Log output will state changes which would be applied, but they will not be.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

Newlib Contains:

- *CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT*
- *CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING*
- *CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING*

CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING

Line ending for UART output

Found in: Component config > Newlib

This option allows configuring the desired line endings sent to UART when a newline ('n', LF) appears on stdout. Three options are possible:

CRLF: whenever LF is encountered, prepend it with CR

LF: no modification is applied, stdout is sent as is

CR: each occurence of LF is replaced with CR

This option doesn't affect behavior of the UART driver (drivers/uart.h).

Available options:

- CRLF (NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING_CRLF)
- LF (NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING_LF)
- CR (NEWLIB_STDOUT_LINE_ENDING_CR)

CONFIG_NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING

Line ending for UART input

Found in: Component config > Newlib

This option allows configuring which input sequence on UART produces a newline ('n', LF) on stdin. Three options are possible:

CRLF: CRLF is converted to LF

LF: no modification is applied, input is sent to stdin as is

CR: each occurence of CR is replaced with LF

This option doesn't affect behavior of the UART driver (drivers/uart.h).

Available options:

- CRLF (NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING_CRLF)
- LF (NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING_LF)
- CR (NEWLIB_STDIN_LINE_ENDING_CR)

CONFIG_NEWLIB_NANO_FORMAT

Enable 'nano' formatting options for printf/scanf family

Found in: Component config > Newlib

ESP32 ROM contains parts of newlib C library, including printf/scanf family of functions. These functions have been compiled with so-called "nano" formatting option. This option doesn't support 64-bit integer formats and C99 features, such as positional arguments.

For more details about "nano" formatting option, please see newlib readme file, search for '–enable-newlib-nano-formatted-io': https://sourceware.org/newlib/README

If this option is enabled, build system will use functions available in ROM, reducing the application binary size. Functions available in ROM run faster than functions which run from flash. Functions available in ROM can also run when flash instruction cache is disabled.

If you need 64-bit integer formatting support or C99 features, keep this option disabled.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

SPI Flash driver

Contains:

- *Auto-detect flash chips*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_BYPASS_BLOCK_ERASE*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_ENCRYPTED_READ_WRITE*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_COUNTERS*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ROM_DRIVER_PATCH*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_CHECK_ERASE_TIMEOUT_DISABLED*

- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITE_CHUNK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SIZE_OVERRIDE*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE*

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE

Verify SPI flash writes

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

If this option is enabled, any time SPI flash is written then the data will be read back and verified. This can catch hardware problems with SPI flash, or flash which was not erased before verification.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_LOG_FAILED_WRITE

Log errors if verification fails

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE

If this option is enabled, if SPI flash write verification fails then a log error line will be written with the address, expected & actual values. This can be useful when debugging hardware SPI flash problems.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE*

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WARN_SETTING_ZERO_TO_ONE

Log warning if writing zero bits to ones

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE

If this option is enabled, any SPI flash write which tries to set zero bits in the flash to ones will log a warning. Such writes will not result in the requested data appearing identically in flash once written, as SPI NOR flash can only set bits to one when an entire sector is erased. After erasing, individual bits can only be written from one to zero.

Note that some software (such as SPIFFS) which is aware of SPI NOR flash may write one bits as an optimisation, relying on the data in flash becoming a bitwise AND of the new data and any existing data. Such software will log spurious warnings if this option is enabled.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_VERIFY_WRITE*

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_COUNTERS

Enable operation counters

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

This option enables the following APIs:

- spi_flash_reset_counters
- spi_flash_dump_counters
- spi_flash_get_counters

These APIs may be used to collect performance data for spi_flash APIs and to help understand behaviour of libraries which use SPI flash.

Default value:

- 0

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ROM_DRIVER_PATCH

Enable SPI flash ROM driver patched functions

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

Enable this flag to use patched versions of SPI flash ROM driver functions. This option should be enabled, if any one of the following is true: (1) need to write to flash on ESP32-D2WD; (2) main SPI flash is connected to non-default pins; (3) main SPI flash chip is manufactured by ISSI.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE

Writing to dangerous flash regions

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

SPI flash APIs can optionally abort or return a failure code if erasing or writing addresses that fall at the beginning of flash (covering the bootloader and partition table) or that overlap the app partition that contains the running app.

It is not recommended to ever write to these regions from an IDF app, and this check prevents logic errors or corrupted firmware memory from damaging these regions.

Note that this feature *does not* check calls to the esp_rom_xxx SPI flash ROM functions. These functions should not be called directly from IDF applications.

Available options:

- Aborts (SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE_ABORTS)
- Fails (SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE_FAILS)
- Allowed (SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE_ALLOWED)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL

Use the legacy implementation before IDF v4.0

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

The implementation of SPI flash has been greatly changed in IDF v4.0. Enable this option to use the legacy implementation.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_BYPASS_BLOCK_ERASE

Bypass a block erase and always do sector erase

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

Some flash chips can have very high "max" erase times, especially for block erase (32KB or 64KB). This option allows to bypass "block erase" and always do sector erase commands. This will be much slower overall in most cases, but improves latency for other code to run.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE

Enables yield operation during flash erase

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

This allows to yield the CPUs between erase commands. Prevents starvation of other tasks.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ERASE_YIELD_DURATION_MS

Duration of erasing to yield CPUs (ms)

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE

If a duration of one erase command is large then it will yield CPUs after finishing a current command.

Default value:

- 20

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ERASE_YIELD_TICKS

CPU release time (tick) for an erase operation

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_YIELD_DURING_ERASE

Defines how many ticks will be before returning to continue a erasing.

Default value:

- 1

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITE_CHUNK_SIZE

Flash write chunk size

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

Flash write is broken down in terms of multiple (smaller) write operations. This configuration options helps to set individual write chunk size, smaller value here ensures that cache (and non-IRAM resident interrupts) remains disabled for shorter duration.

Range:

- from 256 to 8192

Default value:

- 8192

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SIZE_OVERRIDE

Override flash size in bootloader header by ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

SPI Flash driver uses the flash size configured in bootloader header by default. Enable this option to override flash size with latest ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE value from the app header if the size in the bootloader header is incorrect.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_CHECK_ERASE_TIMEOUT_DISABLED

Flash timeout checkout disabled

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

This option is helpful if you are using a flash chip whose timeout is quite large or unpredictable.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_USE_LEGACY_IMPL*

Auto-detect flash chips Contains:

- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_BOYA_CHIP*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_GD_CHIP*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_ISSI_CHIP*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_MXIC_CHIP*
- *CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_WINBOND_CHIP*

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_ISSI_CHIP

ISSI

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips

Enable this to support auto detection of ISSI chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip\_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_MXIC_CHIP

MXIC

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips

Enable this to support auto detection of MXIC chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip\_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_GD_CHIP

GigaDevice

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips

Enable this to support auto detection of GD (GigaDevice) chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip\_drv` member of the chip struct. If you are using Wrover modules, please don't disable this, otherwise your flash may not work in 4-bit mode.

This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time and image size. Note that the default chip driver supports the GD chips with product ID 60H.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_WINBOND_CHIP

Winbond

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips

Enable this to support auto detection of Winbond chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip\_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_SUPPORT_BOYA_CHIP

BOYA

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver > Auto-detect flash chips

Enable this to support auto detection of BOYA chips if chip vendor not directly given by `chip\_drv` member of the chip struct. This adds support for variant chips, however will extend detecting time.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_ENABLE_ENCRYPTED_READ_WRITE

Enable encrypted partition read/write operations

Found in: Component config > SPI Flash driver

This option enables flash read/write operations to encrypted partition/s. This option is kept enabled irrespective of state of flash encryption feature. However, in case application is not using flash encryption feature and is in need of some additional memory from IRAM region (~1KB) then this config can be disabled.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Modbus configuration

Contains:

- *CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_ASCII_EN*
- *CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_RTU_EN*
- *CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN*
- *CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT*
- *CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO*
- *CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_FMB_QUEUE_LENGTH*
- *CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_FMB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT*
- *CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_GROUP*
- *CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_INDEX*
- *CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_BITS_PER_SYMB*
- *CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_ISR_IN_IRAM*
- *CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_TIMEOUT_RESPOND_MS*
- *CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT*
- *CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND*

CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN

Enable Modbus stack support for TCP communication mode

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Enable Modbus TCP option for stack.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FMB_TCP_PORT_DEFAULT

Modbus TCP port number

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN

Modbus default port number used by Modbus TCP stack

Range:
- from 0 to 65535

Default value:
- 502

CONFIG_FMB_TCP_PORT_MAX_CONN

Maximum allowed connections for TCP stack

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN

Maximum allowed connections number for Modbus TCP stack. This is used by Modbus master and slave port layer to establish connections. This parameter may decrease performance of Modbus stack and can cause increasing of processing time (increase only if absolutely necessary).

Range:
- from 1 to 6

Default value:
- 5

CONFIG_FMB_TCP_CONNECTION_TOUT_SEC

Modbus TCP connection timeout

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_TCP_EN

Modbus TCP connection timeout in seconds. Once expired the current connection with the client will be closed and Modbus slave will be waiting for new connection to accept.

Range:
- from 1 to 3600

Default value:
- 20

CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_RTU_EN

Enable Modbus stack support for RTU mode

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Enable RTU Modbus communication mode option for Modbus serial stack.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FMB_COMM_MODE_ASCII_EN

Enable Modbus stack support for ASCII mode

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Enable ASCII Modbus communication mode option for Modbus serial stack.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND

Slave respond timeout (Milliseconds)

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

If master sends a frame which is not broadcast, it has to wait sometime for slave response. if slave is not respond in this time, the master will process timeout error.

Range:
- from 50 to 3000

Default value:
- 150

CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT

Slave conversion delay (Milliseconds)

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

If master sends a broadcast frame, it has to wait conversion time to delay, then master can send next frame.

Range:
- from 50 to 400

Default value:
- 200

CONFIG_FMB_QUEUE_LENGTH

Modbus serial task queue length

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus serial driver queue length. It is used by event queue task. See the serial driver API for more information.

Range:
- from 0 to 200

Default value:
- 20

CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Modbus port task stack size

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus port task stack size for rx/tx event processing. It may be adjusted when debugging is enabled (for example).

Range:
- from 2048 to 8192

Default value:
- 4096

CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE

Modbus serial task RX/TX buffer size

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus serial task RX and TX buffer size for UART driver initialization. This buffer is used for modbus frame transfer. The Modbus protocol maximum frame size is 256 bytes. Bigger size can be used for non standard implementations.

Range:
- from 0 to 2048

Default value:
- 256

CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_BITS_PER_SYMB

Number of data bits per ASCII character

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

This option defines the number of data bits per ASCII character.

Range:
- from 7 to 8

Default value:
- 8

CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_ASCII_TIMEOUT_RESPOND_MS

Response timeout for ASCII communication mode (ms)

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

This option defines response timeout of slave in milliseconds for ASCII communication mode. Thus the timeout will expire and allow the master program to handle the error.

Range:
- from 300 to 2000

Default value:
- 1000

CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO

Modbus port task priority

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus port data processing task priority. The priority of Modbus controller task is equal to (CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO - 1).

Range:
- from 3 to 10

Default value:
- 10

CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT

Modbus controller slave ID support

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus slave ID support enable. When enabled the Modbus <Report Slave ID> command is supported by stack.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID

Modbus controller slave ID

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration > CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT

Modbus slave ID value to identify modbus device in the network using <Report Slave ID> command. Most significant byte of ID is used as short device ID and other three bytes used as long ID.

Range:
- from 0 to 4294967295

Default value:
- "0x00112233"

CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT

Modbus controller notification timeout (ms)

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus controller notification timeout in milliseconds. This timeout is used to send notification about accessed parameters.

Range:
- from 0 to 200

Default value:
- 20

CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE

Modbus controller notification queue size

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus controller notification queue size. The notification queue is used to get information about accessed parameters.

Range:
- from 0 to 200

Default value:
- 20

CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE

Modbus controller stack size

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus controller task stack size. The Stack size may be adjusted when debug mode is used which requires more stack size (for example).

Range:
- from 0 to 8192

Default value:
- 4096

CONFIG_FMB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT

Modbus stack event queue timeout (ms)

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus stack event queue timeout in milliseconds. This may help to optimize Modbus stack event processing time.

Range:
- from 0 to 500

Default value:
- 20

CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED

Modbus slave stack use timer for 3.5T symbol time measurement

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

If this option is set the Modbus stack uses timer for T3.5 time measurement. Else the internal UART TOUT timeout is used for 3.5T symbol time measurement.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_GROUP

Modbus Timer group number

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus Timer group number that is used for timeout measurement.

Range:
- from 0 to 1

Default value:
- 0

CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_INDEX

Modbus Timer index in the group

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

Modbus Timer Index in the group that is used for timeout measurement.

Range:
- from 0 to 1

Default value:
- 0

CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_ISR_IN_IRAM

Place timer interrupt handler into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Modbus configuration

This option places Modbus timer IRQ handler into IRAM. This allows to avoid delays related to processing of non-IRAM-safe interrupts during a flash write operation (NVS updating a value, or some other flash API which has to perform an read/write operation and disable CPU cache). This option has dependency with the UART_ISR_IN_IRAM option which places UART interrupt handler into IRAM to prevent delays related to processing of UART events.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

GDB Stub

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS*

CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS

Enable listing FreeRTOS tasks through GDB Stub

Found in: Component config > GDB Stub

If enabled, GDBStub can supply the list of FreeRTOS tasks to GDB. Thread list can be queried from GDB using ‘info threads’ command. Note that if GDB task lists were corrupted, this feature may not work. If GDBStub fails, try disabling this feature.

CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_MAX_TASKS

Maximum number of tasks supported by GDB Stub

Found in: Component config > GDB Stub > CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS

Set the number of tasks which GDB Stub will support.

Default value:

- 32 if *CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS*

Power Management

Contains:

- *CONFIG_PM_SLP_DISABLE_GPIO*
- *CONFIG_PM_SLP_IRAM_OPT*
- *CONFIG_PM_RTOS_IDLE_OPT*
- *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

CONFIG_PM_ENABLE

Support for power management

Found in: Component config > Power Management

If enabled, application is compiled with support for power management. This option has run-time overhead (increased interrupt latency, longer time to enter idle state), and it also reduces accuracy of RTOS ticks and timers used for timekeeping. Enable this option if application uses power management APIs.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_PM_DFS_INIT_AUTO

Enable dynamic frequency scaling (DFS) at startup

Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE

If enabled, startup code configures dynamic frequency scaling. Max CPU frequency is set to DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ setting, min frequency is set to XTAL frequency. If disabled, DFS will not be active until the application configures it using esp_pm_configure function.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

CONFIG_PM_PROFILING

Enable profiling counters for PM locks

Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE

If enabled, esp_pm_* functions will keep track of the amount of time each of the power management locks has been held, and esp_pm_dump_locks function will print this information. This feature can be used to analyze which locks are preventing the chip from going into a lower power state, and see what

time the chip spends in each power saving mode. This feature does incur some run-time overhead, so should typically be disabled in production builds.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

CONFIG_PM_TRACE

Enable debug tracing of PM using GPIOs

Found in: Component config > Power Management > CONFIG_PM_ENABLE

If enabled, some GPIOs will be used to signal events such as RTOS ticks, frequency switching, entry/exit from idle state. Refer to pm_trace.c file for the list of GPIOs. This feature is intended to be used when analyzing/debugging behavior of power management implementation, and should be kept disabled in applications.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

CONFIG_PM_SLP_IRAM_OPT

Put lightsleep related codes in internal RAM

Found in: Component config > Power Management

If enabled, about 1.8KB of lightsleep related source code would be in IRAM and chip would sleep longer for 760us at most each time. This feature is intended to be used when lower power consumption is needed while there is enough place in IRAM to place source code.

CONFIG_PM_RTOS_IDLE_OPT

Put RTOS IDLE related codes in internal RAM

Found in: Component config > Power Management

If enabled, about 260B of RTOS_IDLE related source code would be in IRAM and chip would sleep longer for 40us at most each time. This feature is intended to be used when lower power consumption is needed while there is enough place in IRAM to place source code.

CONFIG_PM_SLP_DISABLE_GPIO

Disable all GPIO when chip at sleep

Found in: Component config > Power Management

This feature is intended to disable all GPIO pins at automantic sleep to get a lower power mode. If enabled, chips will disable all GPIO pins at automantic sleep to reduce about 200~300 uA current. If you want to specifically use some pins normally as chip wakes when chip sleeps, you can call 'gpio_sleep_sel_dis' to disable this feature on those pins. You can also keep this feature on and call 'gpio_sleep_set_direction' and 'gpio_sleep_set_pull_mode' to have a different GPIO configuration at sleep. Waring: If you want to enable this option on ESP32, you should enable *GPIO_ESP32_SUPPORT_SWITCH_SLP_PULL* at first, otherwise you will not be able to switch pullup/pulldown mode.

HTTP Server

Contains:

- *CONFIG_HTTPD_PURGE_BUF_LEN*
- *CONFIG_HTTPD_LOG_PURGE_DATA*
- *CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN*
- *CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN*
- *CONFIG_HTTPD_ERR_RESP_NO_DELAY*

- *CONFIG_HTTPD_WS_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN

Max HTTP Request Header Length

Found in: Component config > HTTP Server

This sets the maximum supported size of headers section in HTTP request packet to be processed by the server

Default value:

- 512

CONFIG_HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN

Max HTTP URI Length

Found in: Component config > HTTP Server

This sets the maximum supported size of HTTP request URI to be processed by the server

Default value:

- 512

CONFIG_HTTPD_ERR_RESP_NO_DELAY

Use TCP_NODELAY socket option when sending HTTP error responses

Found in: Component config > HTTP Server

Using TCP_NODEALY socket option ensures that HTTP error response reaches the client before the underlying socket is closed. Please note that turning this off may cause multiple test failures

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_HTTPD_PURGE_BUF_LEN

Length of temporary buffer for purging data

Found in: Component config > HTTP Server

This sets the size of the temporary buffer used to receive and discard any remaining data that is received from the HTTP client in the request, but not processed as part of the server HTTP request handler.

If the remaining data is larger than the available buffer size, the buffer will be filled in multiple iterations. The buffer should be small enough to fit on the stack, but large enough to avoid excessive iterations.

Default value:

- 32

CONFIG_HTTPD_LOG_PURGE_DATA

Log purged content data at Debug level

Found in: Component config > HTTP Server

Enabling this will log discarded binary HTTP request data at Debug level. For large content data this may not be desirable as it will clutter the log.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_HTTPD_WS_SUPPORT

WebSocket server support

Found in: Component config > HTTP Server

This sets the WebSocket server support.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

ESP32S2-specific Contains:

- *Cache config*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_KEEP_USB_ALIVE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEBUG_OCDAWARE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_NO_BLOBS*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_XTAL_CAL_RETRY*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_CAL_CYCLES*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTCDATA_IN_FAST_MEM*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_TRAX*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_MHZ

CPU frequency

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

CPU frequency to be set on application startup.

Available options:

- FPGA (ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_FPGA)
- 80 MHz (ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_80)
- 160 MHz (ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_160)
- 240 MHz (ESP32S2_DEFAULT_CPU_FREQ_240)

Cache config Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_LINE_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_WRAP*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_WRAP*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_SIZE*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_SIZE

Instruction cache size

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > Cache config

Instruction cache size to be set on application startup. If you use 8KB instruction cache rather than 16KB instruction cache, then the other 8KB will be added to the heap.

Available options:
- 8KB (ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_8KB)
- 16KB (ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_16KB)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE_SIZE

Instruction cache line size

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > Cache config

Instruction cache line size to be set on application startup.

Available options:
- 16 Bytes (ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE_16B)
- 32 Bytes (ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE_32B)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_SIZE

Data cache size

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > Cache config

Data cache size to be set on application startup. If you use 0KB data cache, the other 16KB will be added to the heap If you use 8KB data cache rather than 16KB data cache, the other 8KB will be added to the heap

Available options:
- 0KB (ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_0KB)
- 8KB (ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_8KB)
- 16KB (ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_16KB)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_LINE_SIZE

Data cache line size

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > Cache config

Data cache line size to be set on application startup.

Available options:
- 16 Bytes (ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_LINE_16B)
- 32 Bytes (ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_LINE_32B)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_WRAP

Enable instruction cache wrap

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > Cache config

If enabled, instruction cache will use wrap mode to read spi flash (maybe spiram). The wrap length equals to INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE_SIZE. However, it depends on complex conditions.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_DATA_CACHE_WRAP

Enable data cache wrap

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > Cache config

If enabled, data cache will use wrap mode to read spiram (maybe spi flash). The wrap length equals to DATA_CACHE_LINE_SIZE. However, it depends on complex conditions.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

Support for external, SPI-connected RAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

This enables support for an external SPI RAM chip, connected in parallel with the main SPI flash chip.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

SPI RAM config Contains:

- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_FETCH_INSTRUCTIONS*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_RODATA*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_ALWAYSINTERNAL*
- *PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32S2*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_RESERVE_INTERNAL*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_MEMTEST*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_SPEED*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP*
- *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TYPE*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_TYPE

Type of SPI RAM chip in use

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Available options:

- Auto-detect (SPIRAM_TYPE_AUTO)
- ESP-PSRAM16 or APS1604 (SPIRAM_TYPE_ESPPSRAM16)
- ESP-PSRAM32 or IS25WP032 (SPIRAM_TYPE_ESPPSRAM32)
- ESP-PSRAM64 or LY68L6400 (SPIRAM_TYPE_ESPPSRAM64)

PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32S2 Contains:

- *CONFIG_DEFAULT_PSRAM_CLK_IO*
- *CONFIG_DEFAULT_PSRAM_CS_IO*

CONFIG_DEFAULT_PSRAM_CLK_IO

PSRAM CLK IO number

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32S2

The PSRAM CLOCK IO can be any unused GPIO, user can config it based on hardware design.

Range:

- from 0 to 33 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

Default value:

- 30 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_DEFAULT_PSRAM_CS_IO

PSRAM CS IO number

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > PSRAM clock and cs IO for ESP32S2

The PSRAM CS IO can be any unused GPIO, user can config it based on hardware design.

Range:

- from 0 to 33 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

Default value:

- 26 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_FETCH_INSTRUCTIONS

Cache fetch instructions from SPI RAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

If enabled, instruction in flash will be copied into SPIRAM. If SPIRAM_RODATA also enabled, you can run the instruction when erasing or programming the flash.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_RODATA

Cache load read only data from SPI RAM

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

If enabled, radata in flash will be copied into SPIRAM. If SPIRAM_FETCH_INSTRUCTIONS also enabled, you can run the instruction when erasing or programming the flash.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_SPEED

Set RAM clock speed

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Select the speed for the SPI RAM chip.

Available options:

- 80MHz clock speed (SPIRAM_SPEED_80M)
- 40Mhz clock speed (SPIRAM_SPEED_40M)
- 26Mhz clock speed (SPIRAM_SPEED_26M)
- 20Mhz clock speed (SPIRAM_SPEED_20M)

CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT

Initialize SPI RAM during startup

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

If this is enabled, the SPI RAM will be enabled during initial boot. Unless you have specific requirements, you'll want to leave this enabled so memory allocated during boot-up can also be placed in SPI RAM.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_IGNORE_NOTFOUND

Ignore PSRAM when not found

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config > CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT

Normally, if psram initialization is enabled during compile time but not found at runtime, it is seen as an error making the CPU panic. If this is enabled, booting will complete but no PSRAM will be available.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT* && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE

SPI RAM access method

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

The SPI RAM can be accessed in multiple methods: by just having it available as an unmanaged memory region in the CPU's memory map, by integrating it in the heap as 'special' memory needing heap_caps_malloc to allocate, or by fully integrating it making malloc() also able to return SPI RAM pointers.

Available options:

- Integrate RAM into memory map (SPIRAM_USE_MEMMAP)
- Make RAM allocatable using heap_caps_malloc(…, MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM) (SPIRAM_USE_CAPS_ALLOC)
- Make RAM allocatable using malloc() as well (SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC)

CONFIG_SPIRAM_MEMTEST

Run memory test on SPI RAM initialization

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Runs a rudimentary memory test on initialization. Aborts when memory test fails. Disable this for slightly faster startup.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_BOOT_INIT* && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_ALWAYSINTERNAL

Maximum malloc() size, in bytes, to always put in internal memory

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

If malloc() is capable of also allocating SPI-connected ram, its allocation strategy will prefer to allocate chunks less than this size in internal memory, while allocations larger than this will be done from external RAM. If allocation from the preferred region fails, an attempt is made to allocate from the non-preferred region instead, so malloc() will not suddenly fail when either internal or external memory is full.

Range:

- from 0 to 131072 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

Default value:

- 16384 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP

Try to allocate memories of WiFi and LWIP in SPIRAM firstly. If failed, allocate internal memory

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Try to allocate memories of WiFi and LWIP in SPIRAM firstly. If failed, try to allocate internal memory then.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if (SPIRAM_USE_CAPS_ALLOC || SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC) && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_RESERVE_INTERNAL

Reserve this amount of bytes for data that specifically needs to be in DMA or internal memory

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT > SPI RAM config

Because the external/internal RAM allocation strategy is not always perfect, it sometimes may happen that the internal memory is entirely filled up. This causes allocations that are specifically done in internal memory, for example the stack for new tasks or memory to service DMA or have memory that's also available when SPI cache is down, to fail. This option reserves a pool specifically for requests like that; the memory in this pool is not given out when a normal malloc() is called.

Set this to 0 to disable this feature.

Note that because FreeRTOS stacks are forced to internal memory, they will also use this memory pool; be sure to keep this in mind when adjusting this value.

Note also that the DMA reserved pool may not be one single contiguous memory region, depending on the configured size and the static memory usage of the app.

Range:

- from 0 to 262144 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

Default value:

- 32768 if SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC && *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_TRAX

Use TRAX tracing feature

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

The ESP32S2 contains a feature which allows you to trace the execution path the processor has taken through the program. This is stored in a chunk of 32K (16K for single-processor) of memory that can't be used for general purposes anymore. Disable this if you do not know what this is.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED

Enable Ultra Low Power (ULP) Coprocessor

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

Set to 'y' if you plan to load a firmware for the coprocessor.

If this option is enabled, further coprocessor configuration will appear in the Components menu.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_RESERVE_MEM

RTC slow memory reserved for coprocessor

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED

Bytes of memory to reserve for ULP coprocessor firmware & data.

Data is reserved at the beginning of RTC slow memory.

Range:

- from 32 to 8192 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*
- from 0 to 0 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*

Default value:

- 2048 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*
- 0 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_RISCV

Enable RISC-V as ULP coprocessor

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED

Set this to y to use the RISC-V coprocessor instead of the FSM-ULP.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEBUG_OCDAWARE

Make exception and panic handlers JTAG/OCD aware

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

The FreeRTOS panic and unhandled exception handers can detect a JTAG OCD debugger and instead of panicking, have the debugger stop on the offending instruction.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEBUG_STUBS_ENABLE

OpenOCD debug stubs

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

Debug stubs are used by OpenOCD to execute pre-compiled onboard code which does some useful debugging, e.g. GCOV data dump.

Default value:

- "COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_LEVEL_DEBUG" if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_TRAX*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET

Hardware brownout detect & reset

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

The ESP32-S2 has a built-in brownout detector which can detect if the voltage is lower than a specific value. If this happens, it will reset the chip in order to prevent unintended behaviour.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL

Brownout voltage level

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET

The brownout detector will reset the chip when the supply voltage is approximately below this level. Note that there may be some variation of brownout voltage level between each ESP3-S2 chip.

#The voltage levels here are estimates, more work needs to be done to figure out the exact voltages #of the brownout threshold levels.

Available options:

- 2.44V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_7)
- 2.56V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_6)
- 2.67V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_5)
- 2.84V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_4)
- 2.98V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_3)
- 3.19V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_2)
- 3.30V (ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL_1)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL

Timers used for gettimeofday function

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

This setting defines which hardware timers are used to implement 'gettimeofday' and 'time' functions in C library.

- If both high-resolution and RTC timers are used, timekeeping will continue in deep sleep. Time will be reported at 1 microsecond resolution. This is the default, and the recommended option.
- If only high-resolution timer is used, gettimeofday will provide time at microsecond resolution. Time will not be preserved when going into deep sleep mode.
- If only RTC timer is used, timekeeping will continue in deep sleep, but time will be measured at 6.(6) microsecond resolution. Also the gettimeofday function itself may take longer to run.
- If no timers are used, gettimeofday and time functions return -1 and set errno to ENOSYS.
- When RTC is used for timekeeping, two RTC_STORE registers are used to keep time in deep sleep mode.

Available options:

- RTC and high-resolution timer (ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_RTC_FRC1)
- RTC (ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_RTC)
- High-resolution timer (ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_FRC1)
- None (ESP32S2_TIME_SYSCALL_USE_NONE)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC

RTC clock source

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

Choose which clock is used as RTC clock source.

- "Internal 90kHz oscillator" option provides lowest deep sleep current consumption, and does not require extra external components. However frequency stability with respect to temperature is poor, so time may drift in deep/light sleep modes.
- "External 32kHz crystal" provides better frequency stability, at the expense of slightly higher (1uA) deep sleep current consumption.

- "External 32kHz oscillator" allows using 32kHz clock generated by an external circuit. In this case, external clock signal must be connected to 32K_XN pin. Amplitude should be <1.2V in case of sine wave signal, and <1V in case of square wave signal. Common mode voltage should be 0.1 < Vcm < 0.5Vamp, where Vamp is the signal amplitude. Additionally, 1nF capacitor must be connected between 32K_XP pin and ground. 32K_XP pin can not be used as a GPIO in this case.
- "Internal 8MHz oscillator divided by 256" option results in higher deep sleep current (by 5uA) but has better frequency stability than the internal 90kHz oscillator. It does not require external components.

Available options:

- Internal 90kHz RC oscillator (ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_RC)
- External 32kHz crystal (ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYS)
- External 32kHz oscillator at 32K_XN pin (ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_OSC)
- Internal 8MHz oscillator, divided by 256 (~32kHz) (ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_8MD256)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_CAL_CYCLES

Number of cycles for RTC_SLOW_CLK calibration

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

When the startup code initializes RTC_SLOW_CLK, it can perform calibration by comparing the RTC_SLOW_CLK frequency with main XTAL frequency. This option sets the number of RTC_SLOW_CLK cycles measured by the calibration routine. Higher numbers increase calibration precision, which may be important for applications which spend a lot of time in deep sleep. Lower numbers reduce startup time.

When this option is set to 0, clock calibration will not be performed at startup, and approximate clock frequencies will be assumed:

- 90000 Hz if internal RC oscillator is used as clock source. For this use value 1024.
- 32768 Hz if the 32k crystal oscillator is used. For this use value 3000 or more. In case more value will help improve the definition of the launch of the crystal. If the crystal could not start, it will be switched to internal RC.

Range:

- from 0 to 125000

Default value:

- 3000 if ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYS || ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_OSC || ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_INT_8MD256
- 576

CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTC_XTAL_CAL_RETRY

Number of attempts to repeat 32k XTAL calibration

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

Number of attempts to repeat 32k XTAL calibration before giving up and switching to the internal RC. Increase this option if the 32k crystal oscillator does not start and switches to internal RC.

Default value:

- 3 if ESP32S2_RTC_CLK_SRC_EXT_CRYS

CONFIG_ESP32S2_NO_BLOBS

No Binary Blobs

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

If enabled, this disables the linking of binary libraries in the application build. Note that after enabling this Wi-Fi/Bluetooth will not work.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_KEEP_USB_ALIVE

Keep USB peripheral enabled at start up

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

During the application initialization process, all the peripherals except UARTs and timers are reset. Enable this option to keep USB peripheral enabled. This option is automatically enabled if "USB CDC" console is selected.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC

CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTCDATA_IN_FAST_MEM

Place RTC_DATA_ATTR and RTC_RODATA_ATTR variables into RTC fast memory segment

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

This option allows to place .rtc_data and .rtc_rodata sections into RTC fast memory segment to free the slow memory region for ULP programs.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

Use fixed static RAM size

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific

If this option is disabled, the DRAM part of the heap starts right after the .bss section, within the dram0_0 region. As a result, adding or removing some static variables will change the available heap size.

If this option is enabled, the DRAM part of the heap starts right after the dram0_0 region, where its length is set with ESP32S2_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32S2_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

Fixed Static RAM size

Found in: Component config > ESP32S2-specific > CONFIG_ESP32S2_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE

RAM size dedicated for static variables (.data & .bss sections).

Range:

- from 0 to 0x34000 if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE*

Default value:

- "0x10000" if *CONFIG_ESP32S2_USE_FIXED_STATIC_RAM_SIZE*

ESP-MQTT Configurations

Contains:

- *CONFIG_MQTT_CUSTOM_OUTBOX*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_PROTOCOL_311*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION_ENABLED*

- *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_OUTBOX_EXPIRED_TIMEOUT_MS*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_REPORT_DELETED_MESSAGES*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED*
- *CONFIG_MQTT_MSG_ID_INCREMENTAL*

CONFIG_MQTT_PROTOCOL_311

Enable MQTT protocol 3.1.1

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

If not, this library will use MQTT protocol 3.1

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL

Enable MQTT over SSL

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Enable MQTT transport over SSL with mbedtls

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET

Enable MQTT over Websocket

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Enable MQTT transport over Websocket.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET_SECURE

Enable MQTT over Websocket Secure

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET

Enable MQTT transport over Websocket Secure.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_MSG_ID_INCREMENTAL

Use Incremental Message Id

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Set this to true for the message id (2.3.1 Packet Identifier) to be generated as an incremental number rather then a random value (used by default)

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED

Skip publish if disconnected

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Set this to true to avoid publishing (enqueueing messages) if the client is disconnected. The MQTT client tries to publish all messages by default, even in the disconnected state (where the qos1 and qos2 packets are stored in the internal outbox to be published later) The MQTT_SKIP_PUBLISH_IF_DISCONNECTED option allows applications to override this behaviour and not enqueue publish packets in the disconnected state.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_REPORT_DELETED_MESSAGES

Report deleted messages

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Set this to true to post events for all messages which were deleted from the outbox before being correctly sent and confirmed.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

MQTT Using custom configurations

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Custom MQTT configurations.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_TCP_DEFAULT_PORT

Default MQTT over TCP port

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

Default MQTT over TCP port

Default value:

- 1883 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

CONFIG_MQTT_SSL_DEFAULT_PORT

Default MQTT over SSL port

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

Default MQTT over SSL port

Default value:

- 8883 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG* && *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_SSL*

CONFIG_MQTT_WS_DEFAULT_PORT

Default MQTT over Websocket port

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

Default MQTT over Websocket port

Default value:

- 80 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG* && *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET*

CONFIG_MQTT_WSS_DEFAULT_PORT

Default MQTT over Websocket Secure port

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

Default MQTT over Websocket Secure port

Default value:

- 443 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG* && *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET* && *CONFIG_MQTT_TRANSPORT_WEBSOCKET_SECURE*

CONFIG_MQTT_BUFFER_SIZE

Default MQTT Buffer Size

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

This buffer size using for both transmit and receive

Default value:

- 1024 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_STACK_SIZE

MQTT task stack size

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

MQTT task stack size

Default value:

- 6144 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

CONFIG_MQTT_DISABLE_API_LOCKS

Disable API locks

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

Default config employs API locks to protect internal structures. It is possible to disable these locks if the user code doesn't access MQTT API from multiple concurrent tasks

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_PRIORITY

MQTT task priority

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG

MQTT task priority. Higher number denotes higher priority.

Default value:

- 5 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION_ENABLED

Enable MQTT task core selection

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

This will enable core selection

Default value:

- "false"

CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION

Core to use ?

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations > CONFIG_MQTT_TASK_CORE_SELECTION_ENABLED

Available options:

- Core 0 (MQTT_USE_CORE_0)
- Core 1 (MQTT_USE_CORE_1)

CONFIG_MQTT_CUSTOM_OUTBOX

Enable custom outbox implementation

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Set to true if a specific implementation of message outbox is needed (e.g. persistant outbox in NVM or similar).

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MQTT_OUTBOX_EXPIRED_TIMEOUT_MS

Outbox message expired timeout[ms]

Found in: Component config > ESP-MQTT Configurations

Messages which stays in the outbox longer than this value before being published will be discarded.

Default value:

- 30000 if *CONFIG_MQTT_USE_CUSTOM_CONFIG*

OpenSSL Contains:

- *CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_OPENSSL_ERROR_STACK*
- *CONFIG_OPENSSL_LOWLEVEL_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL*
- *CONFIG_OPENSSL_ASSERT*

CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG

Enable OpenSSL debugging

Found in: Component config > OpenSSL

Enable OpenSSL debugging function.

If the option is enabled, "SSL_DEBUG" works.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_OPENSSL_ERROR_STACK

Enable OpenSSL error structure

Found in: Component config > OpenSSL

Enable OpenSSL Error reporting

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL

OpenSSL debugging level

Found in: Component config > OpenSSL

OpenSSL debugging level.

Only function whose debugging level is higher than "OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL" works.

For example: If OPENSSL_DEBUG_LEVEL = 2, you use function "SSL_DEBUG(1, "malloc failed")". Because 1 < 2, it will not print.

Range:

- from 0 to 255 if *CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG*

Default value:

- 0 if *CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG*

CONFIG_OPENSSL_LOWLEVEL_DEBUG

Enable OpenSSL low-level module debugging

Found in: Component config > OpenSSL

If the option is enabled, low-level module debugging function of OpenSSL is enabled, e.g. mbedtls internal debugging function.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_OPENSSL_DEBUG*

CONFIG_OPENSSL_ASSERT

Select OpenSSL assert function

Found in: Component config > OpenSSL

OpenSSL function needs "assert" function to check if input parameters are valid.

If you want to use assert debugging function, "OPENSSL_DEBUG" should be enabled.

Available options:

- Do nothing (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DO_NOTHING)
  Do nothing and "SSL_ASSERT" does not work.
- Check and exit (OPENSSL_ASSERT_EXIT)
  Enable assert exiting, it will check and return error code.
- Show debugging message (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DEBUG)
  Enable assert debugging, it will check and show debugging message.
- Show debugging message and exit (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DEBUG_EXIT)
  Enable assert debugging and exiting, it will check, show debugging message and return error code.

- Show debugging message and block (OPENSSL_ASSERT_DEBUG_BLOCK)
  Enable assert debugging and blocking, it will check, show debugging message and block by "while (1);" .

ESP HTTPS OTA Contains:

- *CONFIG_OTA_ALLOW_HTTP*

CONFIG_OTA_ALLOW_HTTP

Allow HTTP for OTA (WARNING: ONLY FOR TESTING PURPOSE, READ HELP)

Found in: Component config > ESP HTTPS OTA

It is highly recommended to keep HTTPS (along with server certificate validation) enabled. Enabling this option comes with potential risk of: - Non-encrypted communication channel with server - Accepting firmware upgrade image from server with fake identity

Default value:

- No (disabled)

TinyUSB Contains:

- *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_ENABLED

Enable TinyUSB driver

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB

Adds support for TinyUSB

Default value:

- No (disabled)

USB task configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_USB_DO_NOT_CREATE_TASK*
- *CONFIG_USB_TASK_PRIORITY*

CONFIG_USB_DO_NOT_CREATE_TASK

Do not create a TinyUSB task

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > USB task configuration

This option allows to not create the FreeRTOS task during the driver initialization. User will have to handle TinyUSB events manually

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_TASK_PRIORITY

Set a priority of the TinyUSB task

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > USB task configuration

User can change the priority of the main task according the application needs

Default value:

- 5 if *CONFIG_USB_DO_NOT_CREATE_TASK* && *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

Descriptor configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_BCDDEVICE*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_CDC_STRING*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_CUSTOM_PID*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_CUSTOM_VID*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_HID_STRING*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_MANUFACTURER_STRING*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_MSC_STRING*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_USE_DEFAULT_PID*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_PRODUCT_STRING*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_SERIAL_STRING*
- *CONFIG_USB_DESC_USE_ESPRESSIF_VID*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_USE_ESPRESSIF_VID

VID: Use an Espressif ' s default value

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Long description

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_CUSTOM_VID

Custom VID value

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Custom Vendor ID

Default value:

- "0x1234" if *CONFIG_USB_DESC_USE_ESPRESSIF_VID* && *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_USE_DEFAULT_PID

PID: Use a default PID assigning

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Default TinyUSB PID assigning uses values 0x4000···0x4007

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_CUSTOM_PID

Custom PID value

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Custom Product ID

Default value:

- "0x5678" if *CONFIG_USB_DESC_USE_DEFAULT_PID* && *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_BCDDEVICE

bcdDevice

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Version of the firmware of the USB device

Default value:

- "0x0100" if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_MANUFACTURER_STRING

Manufacturer

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Name of the manufacturer of the USB device

Default value:

- "Espressif Systems" if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_PRODUCT_STRING

Product

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Name of the USB device

Default value:

- "Espressif Device" if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_SERIAL_STRING

Serial string

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Specify serial number of the USB device

Default value:

- 123456 if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_CDC_STRING

CDC Device String

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Specify name of the CDC device

Default value:

- "Espressif CDC Device" if *CONFIG_USB_CDC_ENABLED* && *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_MSC_STRING

MSC Device String

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Specify name of the MSC device

Default value:

- "Espressif MSC Device" if *CONFIG_USB_MSC_ENABLED* && *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DESC_HID_STRING

HID Device String

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > Descriptor configuration

Specify name of the HID device

Default value:

- "Espressif HID Device" if USB_HID_ENABLED && *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_MSC_ENABLED

Enable USB MSC TinyUSB driver

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED

Enable USB MSC TinyUSB driver.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_MSC_BUFSIZE

MSC FIFO size

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > CONFIG_USB_MSC_ENABLED

MSC FIFO size

Default value:

- 512 if *CONFIG_USB_MSC_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_CDC_ENABLED

Enable USB Serial (CDC) TinyUSB driver

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED

Enable USB Serial (CDC) TinyUSB driver.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_CDC_RX_BUFSIZE

CDC FIFO size of RX

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > CONFIG_USB_CDC_ENABLED

CDC FIFO size of RX

Default value:

- 64 if *CONFIG_USB_CDC_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_CDC_TX_BUFSIZE

CDC FIFO size of TX

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED > CONFIG_USB_CDC_ENABLED

CDC FIFO size of TX

Default value:

- 64 if *CONFIG_USB_CDC_ENABLED*

CONFIG_USB_DEBUG_LEVEL

TinyUSB log level (0-3)

Found in: Component config > TinyUSB > CONFIG_USB_ENABLED

Define amount of log output from TinyUSB

Range:
- from 0 to 3 if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

Default value:
- 0 if *CONFIG_USB_ENABLED*

Supplicant Contains:

- *CONFIG_WPA_TESTING_OPTIONS*
- *CONFIG_WPA_WPS_WARS*
- *CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_WPA_WAPI_PSK*
- *CONFIG_WPA_DEBUG_PRINT*
- *CONFIG_WPA_MBEDTLS_CRYPTO*

CONFIG_WPA_MBEDTLS_CRYPTO

Use MbedTLS crypto API’s

Found in: Component config > Supplicant

Select this option to use MbedTLS crypto API’s which utilize hardware acceleration.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_WPA_WAPI_PSK

Enable WAPI PSK support

Found in: Component config > Supplicant

Select this option to enable WAPI-PSK which is a Chinese National Standard Encryption for Wireless LANs (GB 15629.11-2003).

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_WPA_DEBUG_PRINT

Print debug messages from WPA Supplicant

Found in: Component config > Supplicant

Select this option to print logging information from WPA supplicant, this includes handshake information and key hex dumps depending on the project logging level.

Enabling this could increase the build size ~60kb depending on the project logging level.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_WPA_TESTING_OPTIONS

Add DPP testing code

Found in: Component config > Supplicant

Select this to enable unity test for DPP.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_WPA_WPS_WARS

Add WPS Inter operatability Fixes

Found in: Component config > Supplicant

Select this option to enable WPS related IOT fixes with different APs. This option fixes IOT related issues with APs which do not follow some of the standards of WPS-2.0 specification. These do not include any of the security related bypassing, just simple configuration corrections.

Current fixes under this flag. 1. Allow NULL-padded WPS attributes: Some APs keep NULL-padding at the end of some variable length WPS Attributes. This is not as par the WPS2.0 specs, but to avoid interop issues, ignore the padding by reducing the attribute length by 1. 2. Bypass WPS-Config method validation: Some APs set display/pbc button bit without setting virtual/phycial display/button bit which will cause M2 validation fail, bypassing WPS-Config method validation.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT

Enable 802.11k, 802.11v APIs handling in supplicant

Found in: Component config > Supplicant

Select this option to enable 802.11k 802.11v APIs(RRM and BTM support). Only APIs which are helpful for network assisted roaming are supported for now. Enable this option with BTM and RRM enabled in sta config to make device ready for network assisted roaming. BTM: BSS transition management enables an AP to request a station to transition to a specific AP, or to indicate to a station a set of preferred APs. RRM: Radio measurements enable STAs to understand the radio environment, it enables STAs to observe and gather data on radio link performance and on the radio environment. Current implementation adds beacon report, link measurement, neighbor report.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_WPA_SCAN_CACHE*

CONFIG_WPA_SCAN_CACHE

Keep scan results in cache

Found in: Component config > Supplicant > CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT

Keep scan results in cache, if not enabled, those will be flushed immediately.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_WPA_11KV_SUPPORT*

FAT Filesystem support Contains:

- *CONFIG_FATFS_API_ENCODING*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_LONG_FILENAMES*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_MAX_LFN*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_FS_LOCK*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_CHOOSE_CODEPAGE*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_ALLOC_PREFER_EXTRAM*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_TIMEOUT_MS*
- *CONFIG_FATFS_PER_FILE_CACHE*

CONFIG_FATFS_CHOOSE_CODEPAGE

OEM Code Page

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

OEM code page used for file name encodings.

If "Dynamic" is selected, code page can be chosen at runtime using f_setcp function. Note that choosing this option will increase application size by ~480kB.

Available options:

- Dynamic (all code pages supported) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_DYNAMIC)
- US (CP437) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_437)
- Arabic (CP720) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_720)
- Greek (CP737) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_737)
- KBL (CP771) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_771)
- Baltic (CP775) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_775)
- Latin 1 (CP850) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_850)
- Latin 2 (CP852) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_852)
- Cyrillic (CP855) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_855)
- Turkish (CP857) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_857)
- Portugese (CP860) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_860)
- Icelandic (CP861) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_861)
- Hebrew (CP862) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_862)
- Canadian French (CP863) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_863)
- Arabic (CP864) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_864)
- Nordic (CP865) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_865)
- Russian (CP866) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_866)
- Greek 2 (CP869) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_869)
- Japanese (DBCS) (CP932) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_932)
- Simplified Chinese (DBCS) (CP936) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_936)
- Korean (DBCS) (CP949) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_949)
- Traditional Chinese (DBCS) (CP950) (FATFS_CODEPAGE_950)

CONFIG_FATFS_LONG_FILENAMES

Long filename support

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

Support long filenames in FAT. Long filename data increases memory usage. FATFS can be configured to store the buffer for long filename data in stack or heap.

Available options:

- No long filenames (FATFS_LFN_NONE)
- Long filename buffer in heap (FATFS_LFN_HEAP)
- Long filename buffer on stack (FATFS_LFN_STACK)

CONFIG_FATFS_MAX_LFN

Max long filename length

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

Maximum long filename length. Can be reduced to save RAM.

Range:
- from 12 to 255

Default value:
- 255

CONFIG_FATFS_API_ENCODING

API character encoding

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

Choose encoding for character and string arguments/returns when using FATFS APIs. The encoding of arguments will usually depend on text editor settings.

Available options:
- API uses ANSI/OEM encoding (FATFS_API_ENCODING_ANSI_OEM)
- API uses UTF-16 encoding (FATFS_API_ENCODING_UTF_16)
- API uses UTF-8 encoding (FATFS_API_ENCODING_UTF_8)

CONFIG_FATFS_FS_LOCK

Number of simultaneously open files protected by lock function

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

This option sets the FATFS configuration value _FS_LOCK. The option _FS_LOCK switches file lock function to control duplicated file open and illegal operation to open objects.

* 0: Disable file lock function. To avoid volume corruption, application should avoid illegal open, remove and rename to the open objects.

* >0: Enable file lock function. The value defines how many files/sub-directories can be opened simultaneously under file lock control.

Note that the file lock control is independent of re-entrancy.

Range:
- from 0 to 65535

Default value:
- 0

CONFIG_FATFS_TIMEOUT_MS

Timeout for acquiring a file lock, ms

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

This option sets FATFS configuration value _FS_TIMEOUT, scaled to milliseconds. Sets the number of milliseconds FATFS will wait to acquire a mutex when operating on an open file. For example, if one task is performing a lenghty operation, another task will wait for the first task to release the lock, and time out after amount of time set by this option.

Default value:
- 10000

CONFIG_FATFS_PER_FILE_CACHE

Use separate cache for each file

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

This option affects FATFS configuration value _FS_TINY.

If this option is set, _FS_TINY is 0, and each open file has its own cache, size of the cache is equal to the _MAX_SS variable (512 or 4096 bytes). This option uses more RAM if more than 1 file is open, but needs less reads and writes to the storage for some operations.

If this option is not set, _FS_TINY is 1, and single cache is used for all open files, size is also equal to _MAX_SS variable. This reduces the amount of heap used when multiple files are open, but increases the number of read and write operations which FATFS needs to make.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_FATFS_ALLOC_PREFER_EXTRAM

Perfer external RAM when allocating FATFS buffers

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

When the option is enabled, internal buffers used by FATFS will be allocated from external RAM. If the allocation from external RAM fails, the buffer will be allocated from the internal RAM. Disable this option if optimizing for performance. Enable this option if optimizing for internal memory size.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if SPIRAM_USE_CAPS_ALLOC || SPIRAM_USE_MALLOC

CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK

Enable fast seek algorithm when using lseek function through VFS FAT

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support

The fast seek feature enables fast backward/long seek operations without FAT access by using an in-memory CLMT (cluster link map table). Please note, fast-seek is only allowed for read-mode files, if a file is opened in write-mode, the seek mechanism will automatically fallback to the default implementation.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_FATFS_FAST_SEEK_BUFFER_SIZE

Fast seek CLMT buffer size

Found in: Component config > FAT Filesystem support > CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK

If fast seek algorithm is enabled, this defines the size of CLMT buffer used by this algorithm in 32-bit word units. This value should be chosen based on prior knowledge of maximum elements of each file entry would store.

Default value:

- 64 if *CONFIG_FATFS_USE_FASTSEEK*

Event Loop Library Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING*
- *CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR*

CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING

Enable event loop profiling

Found in: Component config > Event Loop Library

Enables collections of statistics in the event loop library such as the number of events posted to/recieved by an event loop, number of callbacks involved, number of events dropped to to a full event loop queue, run time of event handlers, and number of times/run time of each event handler.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR

Support posting events from ISRs

Found in: Component config > Event Loop Library

Enable posting events from interrupt handlers.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR

Support posting events from ISRs placed in IRAM

Found in: Component config > Event Loop Library > CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR

Enable posting events from interrupt handlers placed in IRAM. Enabling this option places API functions esp_event_post and esp_event_post_to in IRAM.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Ethernet Contains:

- *CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*
- *CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET*

CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET

Support SPI to Ethernet Module

Found in: Component config > Ethernet

ESP-IDF can also support some SPI-Ethernet modules.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_DM9051*
- *CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_W5500*

CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_DM9051

Use DM9051

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET

DM9051 is a fast Ethernet controller with an SPI interface. It’ s also integrated with a 10/100M PHY and MAC. Select this to enable DM9051 driver.

CONFIG_ETH_SPI_ETHERNET_W5500

Use W5500 (MAC RAW)

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_SPI_ETHERNET

W5500 is a HW TCP/IP embedded Ethernet controller. TCP/IP stack, 10/100 Ethernet MAC and PHY are embedded in a single chip. However the driver in ESP-IDF only enables the RAW MAC mode, making it compatible with the software TCP/IP stack. Say yes to enable W5500 driver.

CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH

Support OpenCores Ethernet MAC (for use with QEMU)

Found in: Component config > Ethernet

OpenCores Ethernet MAC driver can be used when an ESP-IDF application is executed in QEMU. This driver is not supported when running on a real chip.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM*

CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_RX_BUFFER_NUM

Number of Ethernet DMA Rx buffers

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH

Number of DMA receive buffers, each buffer is 1600 bytes.

Range:

- from 1 to 64 if *CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*

Default value:

- 4 if *CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*

CONFIG_ETH_OPENETH_DMA_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Number of Ethernet DMA Tx buffers

Found in: Component config > Ethernet > CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH

Number of DMA transmit buffers, each buffer is 1600 bytes.

Range:

- from 1 to 64 if *CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*

Default value:

- 1 if *CONFIG_ETH_USE_OPENETH*

ESP System Settings

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_RTC_EXT_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC_SUPPORT_ETS_PRINTF*
- *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP*
- *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT*
- *CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT*
- *CONFIG_ESP_IPC_USES_CALLERS_PRIORITY*

- *CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY*
- *CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *Memory protection*
- *CONFIG_ESP_MINIMAL_SHARED_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC*
- *CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_IRAM*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC_RX_BUF_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_RX_GPIO*
- *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_TX_GPIO*

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC

Panic handler behaviour

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

If FreeRTOS detects unexpected behaviour or an unhandled exception, the panic handler is invoked. Configure the panic handler's action here.

Available options:

- Print registers and halt (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_HALT)
  Outputs the relevant registers over the serial port and halt the processor. Needs a manual reset to restart.
- Print registers and reboot (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT)
  Outputs the relevant registers over the serial port and immediately reset the processor.
- Silent reboot (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT)
  Just resets the processor without outputting anything
- Invoke GDBStub (ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_GDBSTUB)
  Invoke gdbstub on the serial port, allowing for gdb to attach to it to do a postmortem of the crash.

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_RTC_EXT_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES

Bootstrap cycles for external 32kHz crystal

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

To reduce the startup time of an external RTC crystal, we bootstrap it with a 32kHz square wave for a fixed number of cycles. Setting 0 will disable bootstrapping (if disabled, the crystal may take longer to start up or fail to oscillate under some conditions).

If this value is too high, a faulty crystal may initially start and then fail. If this value is too low, an otherwise good crystal may not start.

To accurately determine if the crystal has started, set a larger "Number of cycles for RTC_SLOW_CLK calibration" (about 3000).

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP

Enable RTC fast memory for dynamic allocations

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

This config option allows to add RTC fast memory region to system heap with capability similar to that of DRAM region but without DMA. This memory will be consumed first per heap initialization order by early startup services and scheduler related code. Speed wise RTC fast memory operates on APB clock and hence does not have much performance impact.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Memory protection Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE*

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE

Enable memory protection

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > Memory protection

If enabled, the permission control module watches all the memory access and fires the panic handler if a permission violation is detected. This feature automatically splits the SRAM memory into data and instruction segments and sets Read/Execute permissions for the instruction part (below given splitting address) and Read/Write permissions for the data part (above the splitting address). The memory protection is effective on all access through the IRAM0 and DRAM0 buses.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK

Lock memory protection settings

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > Memory protection > CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE

Once locked, memory protection settings cannot be changed anymore. The lock is reset only on the chip startup.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE

System event queue size

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Config system event queue size in different application.

Default value:

- 32

CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Event loop task stack size

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Config system event task stack size in different application.

Default value:

- 2304

CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Main task stack size

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Configure the "main task" stack size. This is the stack of the task which calls app_main(). If app_main() returns then this task is deleted and its stack memory is freed.

Default value:

- 3584

CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY

Main task core affinity

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Configure the "main task" core affinity. This is the used core of the task which calls app_main(). If app_main() returns then this task is deleted.

Available options:

- CPU0 (ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
- CPU1 (ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)
- No affinity (ESP_MAIN_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)

CONFIG_ESP_MINIMAL_SHARED_STACK_SIZE

Minimal allowed size for shared stack

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Minimal value of size, in bytes, accepted to execute a expression with shared stack.

Default value:

- 2048

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART

Channel for console output

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Select where to send console output (through stdout and stderr).

- Default is to use UART0 on pre-defined GPIOs.
- If "Custom" is selected, UART0 or UART1 can be chosen, and any pins can be selected.
- If "None" is selected, there will be no console output on any UART, except for initial output from ROM bootloader. This ROM output can be suppressed by GPIO strapping or EFUSE, refer to chip datasheet for details.
- On chips with USB peripheral, "USB CDC" option redirects output to the CDC port. This option uses the CDC driver in the chip ROM. This option is incompatible with TinyUSB stack.

Available options:

- Default: UART0 (ESP_CONSOLE_UART_DEFAULT)
- USB CDC (ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC)
- Custom UART (ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM)
- None (ESP_CONSOLE_NONE)

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NUM

UART peripheral to use for console output (0-1)

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

This UART peripheral is used for console output from the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app.

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

Due to an ESP32 ROM bug, UART2 is not supported for console output via esp_rom_printf.

Available options:

- UART0 (ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_0)

- UART1 (ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_1)

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_TX_GPIO

UART TX on GPIO#

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

This GPIO is used for console UART TX output in the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app (including boot log output and default standard output and standard error of the app).

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

Range:
- from 0 to 46 if ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM

Default value:
- 43 if ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_RX_GPIO

UART RX on GPIO#

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

This GPIO is used for UART RX input in the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app (including default default standard input of the app).

Note: The default ESP-IDF Bootloader configures this pin but doesn't read anything from the UART.

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

Range:
- from 0 to 46 if ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM

Default value:
- 44 if ESP_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE

UART console baud rate

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

This baud rate is used by both the ESP-IDF Bootloader and the app (including boot log output and default standard input/output/error of the app).

The app's maximum baud rate depends on the UART clock source. If Power Management is disabled, the UART clock source is the APB clock and all baud rates in the available range will be sufficiently accurate. If Power Management is enabled, REF_TICK clock source is used so the baud rate is divided from 1MHz. Baud rates above 1Mbps are not possible and values between 500Kbps and 1Mbps may not be accurate.

If the configuration is different in the Bootloader binary compared to the app binary, UART is reconfigured after the bootloader exits and the app starts.

Range:
- from 1200 to 4000000 if *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*
- from 1200 to 1000000 if *CONFIG_PM_ENABLE*

Default value:
- 115200

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC_RX_BUF_SIZE

Size of USB CDC RX buffer

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Set the size of USB CDC RX buffer. Increase the buffer size if your application is often receiving data over USB CDC.

Range:
- from 4 to 16384 if ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC

Default value:
- 64 if ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC

CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC_SUPPORT_ETS_PRINTF

Enable esp_rom_printf / ESP_EARLY_LOG via USB CDC

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

If enabled, esp_rom_printf and ESP_EARLY_LOG output will also be sent over USB CDC. Disabling this option saves about 1kB or RAM.

Default value:
- No (disabled) if ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC

CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT

Interrupt watchdog

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

This watchdog timer can detect if the FreeRTOS tick interrupt has not been called for a certain time, either because a task turned off interrupts and did not turn them on for a long time, or because an interrupt handler did not return. It will try to invoke the panic handler first and failing that reset the SoC.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS

Interrupt watchdog timeout (ms)

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT

The timeout of the watchdog, in miliseconds. Make this higher than the FreeRTOS tick rate.

Range:
- from 10 to 10000

Default value:
- 300 if ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && *CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT*
- 800 if ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT && *CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT*

CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_CHECK_CPU1

Also watch CPU1 tick interrupt

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT

Also detect if interrupts on CPU 1 are disabled for too long.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT

Initialize Task Watchdog Timer on startup

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

The Task Watchdog Timer can be used to make sure individual tasks are still running. Enabling this option will cause the Task Watchdog Timer to be initialized automatically at startup. The Task Watchdog timer can be initialized after startup as well (see Task Watchdog Timer API Reference)

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_PANIC

Invoke panic handler on Task Watchdog timeout

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT

If this option is enabled, the Task Watchdog Timer will be configured to trigger the panic handler when it times out. This can also be configured at run time (see Task Watchdog Timer API Reference)

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S

Task Watchdog timeout period (seconds)

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT

Timeout period configuration for the Task Watchdog Timer in seconds. This is also configurable at run time (see Task Watchdog Timer API Reference)

Range:

- from 1 to 60

Default value:

- 5

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0

Watch CPU0 Idle Task

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT

If this option is enabled, the Task Watchdog Timer will watch the CPU0 Idle Task. Having the Task Watchdog watch the Idle Task allows for detection of CPU starvation as the Idle Task not being called is usually a symptom of CPU starvation. Starvation of the Idle Task is detrimental as FreeRTOS household tasks depend on the Idle Task getting some runtime every now and then.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1

Watch CPU1 Idle Task

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings > CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT

If this option is enabled, the Task Wtachdog Timer will wach the CPU1 Idle Task.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE

Inter-Processor Call (IPC) task stack size

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

Configure the IPC tasks stack size. One IPC task runs on each core (in dual core mode), and allows for cross-core function calls.

See IPC documentation for more details.

The default stack size should be enough for most common use cases. It can be shrunk if you are sure that you do not use any custom IPC functionality.

Range:
- from 512 to 65536

Default value:
- 1024

CONFIG_ESP_IPC_USES_CALLERS_PRIORITY

IPC runs at caller's priority

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

If this option is not enabled then the IPC task will keep behavior same as prior to that of ESP-IDF v4.0, and hence IPC task will run at (configMAX_PRIORITIES - 1) priority.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_IRAM

Place panic handler code in IRAM

Found in: Component config > ESP System Settings

If this option is disabled (default), the panic handler code is placed in flash not IRAM. This means that if ESP-IDF crashes while flash cache is disabled, the panic handler will automatically re-enable flash cache before running GDB Stub or Core Dump. This adds some minor risk, if the flash cache status is also corrupted during the crash.

If this option is enabled, the panic handler code (including required UART functions) is placed in IRAM. This may be necessary to debug some complex issues with crashes while flash cache is disabled (for example, when writing to SPI flash) or when flash cache is corrupted when an exception is triggered.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

NVS

Contains:

- *CONFIG_NVS_ENCRYPTION*

CONFIG_NVS_ENCRYPTION

Enable NVS encryption

Found in: Component config > NVS

This option enables encryption for NVS. When enabled, AES-XTS is used to encrypt the complete NVS data, except the page headers. It requires XTS encryption keys to be stored in an encrypted partition. This means enabling flash encryption is a pre-requisite for this feature.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED*

High resolution timer (esp_timer) Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_IMPL*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_INTERRUPT_LEVEL*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_SUPPORTS_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD*

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_PROFILING

Enable esp_timer profiling features

Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)

If enabled, esp_timer_dump will dump information such as number of times the timer was started, number of times the timer has triggered, and the total time it took for the callback to run. This option has some effect on timer performance and the amount of memory used for timer storage, and should only be used for debugging/testing purposes.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE

High-resolution timer task stack size

Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)

Configure the stack size of "timer_task" task. This task is used to dispatch callbacks of timers created using ets_timer and esp_timer APIs. If you are seing stack overflow errors in timer task, increase this value.

Note that this is not the same as FreeRTOS timer task. To configure FreeRTOS timer task size, see "FreeRTOS timer task stack size" option in "FreeRTOS" menu.

Range:

- from 2048 to 65536

Default value:

- 3584

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_INTERRUPT_LEVEL

Interrupt level

Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)

It sets the interrupt level for esp_timer ISR in range 1..3. A higher level (3) helps to decrease the ISR esp_timer latency.

Range:

- from 1 to 1

Default value:

- 1

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_SUPPORTS_ISR_DISPATCH_METHOD

Support ISR dispatch method

Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)

Allows using ESP_TIMER_ISR dispatch method (ESP_TIMER_TASK dispatch method is also available). - ESP_TIMER_TASK - Timer callbacks are dispatched from a high-priority esp_timer task. - ESP_TIMER_ISR - Timer callbacks are dispatched directly from the timer interrupt handler. The ISR dispatch can be used, in some cases, when a callback is very simple or need a lower-latency.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_IMPL

Hardware timer to use for esp_timer

Found in: Component config > High resolution timer (esp_timer)

esp_timer APIs can be implemented using different hardware timers.

- "FRC2 (legacy)" implementation has been used in ESP-IDF v2.x - v4.1.
- "LAC timer of Timer Group 0" implementation is simpler, and has smaller run time overhead because software handling of timer overflow is not needed.
- "SYSTIMER" implementation is similar to "LAC timer of Timer Group 0" but for non ESP32 chips.

Available options:
- FRC2 (legacy) timer (ESP_TIMER_IMPL_FRC2)
- LAC timer of Timer Group 0 (ESP_TIMER_IMPL_TG0_LAC)
- SYSTIMER (ESP_TIMER_IMPL_SYSTIMER)

mDNS Contains:

- *CONFIG_MDNS_MAX_SERVICES*
- *CONFIG_MDNS_SERVICE_ADD_TIMEOUT_MS*
- *CONFIG_MDNS_STRICT_MODE*
- *CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY*
- *CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_PRIORITY*
- *CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_MDNS_TIMER_PERIOD_MS*

CONFIG_MDNS_MAX_SERVICES

Max number of services

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Services take up a certain amount of memory, and allowing fewer services to be open at the same time conserves memory. Specify the maximum amount of services here. The valid value is from 1 to 64.

Range:
- from 1 to 64

Default value:
- 10

CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_PRIORITY

mDNS task priority

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Allows setting mDNS task priority. Please do not set the task priority higher than priorities of system tasks. Compile time warning/error would be emitted if the chosen task priority were too high.

Range:
- from 1 to 255

Default value:
- 1

CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_STACK_SIZE

mDNS task stack size

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Allows setting mDNS task stacksize.

Default value:
- 4096

CONFIG_MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY

mDNS task affinity

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Allows setting mDNS tasks affinity, i.e. whether the task is pinned to CPU0, pinned to CPU1, or allowed to run on any CPU.

Available options:
- No affinity (MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)
- CPU0 (MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
- CPU1 (MDNS_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)

CONFIG_MDNS_SERVICE_ADD_TIMEOUT_MS

mDNS adding service timeout (ms)

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Configures timeout for adding a new mDNS service. Adding a service fails if could not be completed within this time.

Range:
- from 10 to 30000

Default value:
- 2000

CONFIG_MDNS_STRICT_MODE

mDNS strict mode

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Configures strict mode. Set this to 1 for the mDNS library to strictly follow the RFC6762: Currently the only strict feature: Do not repeat original questions in response packets (defined in RFC6762 sec. 6). Default configuration is 0, i.e. non-strict mode, since some implementations, such as lwIP mdns resolver (used by standard POSIX API like getaddrinfo, gethostbyname) could not correctly resolve advertised names.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_MDNS_TIMER_PERIOD_MS

mDNS timer period (ms)

Found in: Component config > mDNS

Configures period of mDNS timer, which periodically transmits packets and schedules mDNS searches.

Range:
- from 10 to 10000

Default value:

- 100

Core dump Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT*
- *CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_TO_FLASH_OR_UART*
- *CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_UART_DELAY*
- *CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM*

CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_TO_FLASH_OR_UART

Data destination

Found in: Component config > Core dump

Select place to store core dump: flash, uart or none (to disable core dumps generation).

Core dumps to Flash are not available if PSRAM is used for task stacks.

If core dump is configured to be stored in flash and custom partition table is used add corresponding entry to your CSV. For examples, please see predefined partition table CSV descriptions in the components/partition_table directory.

Available options:

- Flash (ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_FLASH)
- UART (ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_UART)
- None (ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_NONE)

CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT

Core dump data format

Found in: Component config > Core dump

Select the data format for core dump.

Available options:

- Binary format (ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_BIN)
- ELF format (ESP_COREDUMP_DATA_FORMAT_ELF)

CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM

Core dump data integrity check

Found in: Component config > Core dump

Select the integrity check for the core dump.

Available options:

- Use CRC32 for integrity verification (ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM_CRC32)
- Use SHA256 for integrity verification (ESP_COREDUMP_CHECKSUM_SHA256)

CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM

Maximum number of tasks

Found in: Component config > Core dump

Maximum number of tasks snapshots in core dump.

CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_UART_DELAY

Delay before print to UART

Found in: Component config > Core dump

Config delay (in ms) before printing core dump to UART. Delay can be interrupted by pressing Enter key.

Default value:

- 0 if ESP_COREDUMP_ENABLE_TO_UART

CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE

Handling of UART core dumps in IDF Monitor

Found in: Component config > Core dump

Available options:

- Decode and show summary (info_corefile) (ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE_INFO)
- Don’t decode (ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE_DISABLE)

Wear Levelling Contains:

- *CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_MODE*
- *CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE*

CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_SIZE

Wear Levelling library sector size

Found in: Component config > Wear Levelling

Sector size used by wear levelling library. You can set default sector size or size that will fit to the flash device sector size.

With sector size set to 4096 bytes, wear levelling library is more efficient. However if FAT filesystem is used on top of wear levelling library, it will need more temporary storage: 4096 bytes for each mounted filesystem and 4096 bytes for each opened file.

With sector size set to 512 bytes, wear levelling library will perform more operations with flash memory, but less RAM will be used by FAT filesystem library (512 bytes for the filesystem and 512 bytes for each file opened).

Available options:

- 512 (WL_SECTOR_SIZE_512)
- 4096 (WL_SECTOR_SIZE_4096)

CONFIG_WL_SECTOR_MODE

Sector store mode

Found in: Component config > Wear Levelling

Specify the mode to store data into flash:

- In Performance mode a data will be stored to the RAM and then stored back to the flash. Compared to the Safety mode, this operation is faster, but if power will be lost when erase sector operation is in progress, then the data from complete flash device sector will be lost.
- In Safety mode data from complete flash device sector will be read from flash, modified, and then stored back to flash. Compared to the Performance mode, this operation is slower, but if power is lost during erase sector operation, then the data from full flash device sector will not be lost.

Available options:

- Perfomance (WL_SECTOR_MODE_PERF)

- Safety (WL_SECTOR_MODE_SAFE)

LWIP Contains:

- *Checksums*
- *DHCP server*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DOES_ARP_CHECK*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_RESTORE_LAST_IP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_L2_TO_L3_COPY*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_FRAG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_FRAG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_NETBUF_RECVINFO*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_TRUST_IP_MAC*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_LWIP_ASSERT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_STATS*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TIMERS_ONDEMAND*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DNS_SUPPORT_MDNS_QUERIES*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_DEBUG_ON*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_REASSEMBLY*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_REASSEMBLY*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_SO_LINGER*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_SO_RCVBUF*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_API*
- *Hooks*
- *ICMP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_LOCAL_HOSTNAME*
- *LWIP RAW API*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_ND6_NUM_NEIGHBORS*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_MEMP_NUM_ND6_QUEUE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP*
- *SNTP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_LOOPBACK*
- *TCP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*
- *UDP*

CONFIG_LWIP_LOCAL_HOSTNAME

Local netif hostname

Found in: Component config > LWIP

The default name this device will report to other devices on the network. Could be updated at runtime with esp_netif_set_hostname()

Default value:

- "espressif"

CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_API

Enable usage of standard POSIX APIs in LWIP

Found in: Component config > LWIP

If this feature is enabled, standard POSIX APIs: if_indextoname(), if_nametoindex() could be used to convert network interface index to name instead of IDF specific esp-netif APIs (such as esp_netif_get_netif_impl_name())

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_DNS_SUPPORT_MDNS_QUERIES

Enable mDNS queries in resolving host name

Found in: Component config > LWIP

If this feature is enabled, standard API such as gethostbyname support .local addresses by sending one shot multicast mDNS query

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_L2_TO_L3_COPY

Enable copy between Layer2 and Layer3 packets

Found in: Component config > LWIP

If this feature is enabled, all traffic from layer2(WIFI Driver) will be copied to a new buffer before sending it to layer3(LWIP stack), freeing the layer2 buffer. Please be notified that the total layer2 receiving buffer is fixed and ESP32 currently supports 25 layer2 receiving buffer, when layer2 buffer runs out of memory, then the incoming packets will be dropped in hardware. The layer3 buffer is allocated from the heap, so the total layer3 receiving buffer depends on the available heap size, when heap runs out of memory, no copy will be sent to layer3 and packet will be dropped in layer2. Please make sure you fully understand the impact of this feature before enabling it.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION

Enable LWIP IRAM optimization

Found in: Component config > LWIP

If this feature is enabled, some functions relating to RX/TX in LWIP will be put into IRAM, it can improve UDP/TCP throughput by >10% for single core mode, it doesn't help too much for dual core mode. On the other hand, it needs about 10KB IRAM for these optimizations.

If this feature is disabled, all lwip functions will be put into FLASH.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_TIMERS_ONDEMAND

Enable LWIP Timers on demand

Found in: Component config > LWIP

If this feature is enabled, IGMP and MLD6 timers will be activated only when joining groups or receiving QUERY packets.

This feature will reduce the power consumption for applications which do not use IGMP and MLD6.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS

Max number of open sockets

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Sockets take up a certain amount of memory, and allowing fewer sockets to be open at the same time conserves memory. Specify the maximum amount of sockets here. The valid value is from 1 to 16.

Range:

- from 1 to 16

Default value:

- 10

CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT

Support LWIP socket select() only (DEPRECATED)

Found in: Component config > LWIP

This option is deprecated. Use VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT instead, which is the inverse of this option.

The virtual filesystem layer of select() redirects sockets to lwip_select() and non-socket file descriptors to their respective driver implementations. If this option is enabled then all calls of select() will be redirected to lwip_select(), therefore, select can be used for sockets only.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_SO_LINGER

Enable SO_LINGER processing

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows SO_LINGER processing. l_onoff = 1,l_linger can set the timeout.

If l_linger=0, When a connection is closed, TCP will terminate the connection. This means that TCP will discard any data packets stored in the socket send buffer and send an RST to the peer.

If l_linger!=0,Then closesocket() calls to block the process until the remaining data packets has been sent or timed out.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE

Enable SO_REUSEADDR option

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows binding to a port which remains in TIME_WAIT.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE_RXTOALL

SO_REUSEADDR copies broadcast/multicast to all matches

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE

Enabling this option means that any incoming broadcast or multicast packet will be copied to all of the local sockets that it matches (may be more than one if SO_REUSEADDR is set on the socket.)

This increases memory overhead as the packets need to be copied, however they are only copied per matching socket. You can safely disable it if you don't plan to receive broadcast or multicast traffic on more than one socket at a time.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_SO_RCVBUF

Enable SO_RCVBUF option

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows checking for available data on a netconn.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_NETBUF_RECVINFO

Enable IP_PKTINFO option

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows checking for the destination address of a received IPv4 Packet.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_FRAG

Enable fragment outgoing IP4 packets

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows fragmenting outgoing IP4 packets if their size exceeds MTU.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_FRAG

Enable fragment outgoing IP6 packets

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows fragmenting outgoing IP6 packets if their size exceeds MTU.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IP4_REASSEMBLY

Enable reassembly incoming fragmented IP4 packets

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows reassemblying incoming fragmented IP4 packets.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_REASSEMBLY

Enable reassembly incoming fragmented IP6 packets

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows reassemblying incoming fragmented IP6 packets.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD

Enable IP forwarding

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows packets forwarding across multiple interfaces.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV4_NAPT

Enable NAT (new/experimental)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD

Enabling this option allows Network Address and Port Translation.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_IP_FORWARD*

CONFIG_LWIP_STATS

Enable LWIP statistics

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows LWIP statistics

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_TRUST_IP_MAC

Enable LWIP ARP trust

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows ARP table to be updated.

If this option is enabled, the incoming IP packets cause the ARP table to be updated with the source MAC and IP addresses supplied in the packet. You may want to disable this if you do not trust LAN peers to have the correct addresses, or as a limited approach to attempt to handle spoofing. If disabled, lwIP will need to make a new ARP request if the peer is not already in the ARP table, adding a little

latency. The peer *is* in the ARP table if it requested our address before. Also notice that this slows down input processing of every IP packet!

There are two known issues in real application if this feature is enabled: - The LAN peer may have bug to update the ARP table after the ARP entry is aged out. If the ARP entry on the LAN peer is aged out but failed to be updated, all IP packets sent from LWIP to the LAN peer will be dropped by LAN peer. - The LAN peer may not be trustful, the LAN peer may send IP packets to LWIP with two different MACs, but the same IP address. If this happens, the LWIP has problem to receive IP packets from LAN peer.

So the recommendation is to disable this option. Here the LAN peer means the other side to which the ESP station or soft-AP is connected.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP

Send gratuitous ARP periodically

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable this option allows to send gratuitous ARP periodically.

This option solve the compatibility issues.If the ARP table of the AP is old, and the AP doesn't send ARP request to update it's ARP table, this will lead to the STA sending IP packet fail. Thus we send gratuitous ARP periodically to let AP update it's ARP table.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_GARP_TMR_INTERVAL

GARP timer interval(seconds)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP

Set the timer interval for gratuitous ARP. The default value is 60s

Default value:

- 60

CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE

TCPIP task receive mail box size

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Set TCPIP task receive mail box size. Generally bigger value means higher throughput but more memory. The value should be bigger than UDP/TCP mail box size.

Range:

- from 6 to 64 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- from 6 to 1024 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Default value:

- 32

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DOES_ARP_CHECK

DHCP: Perform ARP check on any offered address

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option performs a check (via ARP request) if the offered IP address is not already in use by another host on the network.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_RESTORE_LAST_IP

DHCP: Restore last IP obtained from DHCP server

Found in: Component config > LWIP

When this option is enabled, DHCP client tries to re-obtain last valid IP address obtained from DHCP server. Last valid DHCP configuration is stored in nvs and restored after reset/power-up. If IP is still available, there is no need for sending discovery message to DHCP server and save some time.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

DHCP server Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS_MAX_STATION_NUM*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS_LEASE_UNIT*

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS_LEASE_UNIT

Multiplier for lease time, in seconds

Found in: Component config > LWIP > DHCP server

The DHCP server is calculating lease time multiplying the sent and received times by this number of seconds per unit. The default is 60, that equals one minute.

Range:

- from 1 to 3600

Default value:

- 60

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCPS_MAX_STATION_NUM

Maximum number of stations

Found in: Component config > LWIP > DHCP server

The maximum number of DHCP clients that are connected to the server. After this number is exceeded, DHCP server removes of the oldest device from it' s address pool, without notification.

Range:

- from 1 to 64

Default value:

- 8

CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP

Enable IPV4 Link-Local Addressing (AUTOIP)

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option allows the device to self-assign an address in the 169.256/16 range if none is assigned statically or via DHCP.

See RFC 3927.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_TRIES*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_MAX_CONFLICTS*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_RATE_LIMIT_INTERVAL*

CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_TRIES

DHCP Probes before self-assigning IPv4 LL address

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP

DHCP client will send this many probes before self-assigning a link local address.

From LWIP help: "This can be set as low as 1 to get an AutoIP address very quickly, but you should be prepared to handle a changing IP address when DHCP overrides AutoIP." (In the case of ESP-IDF, this means multiple SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP events.)

Range:
- from 1 to 100 if *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

Default value:
- 2 if *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_MAX_CONFLICTS

Max IP conflicts before rate limiting

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP

If the AUTOIP functionality detects this many IP conflicts while self-assigning an address, it will go into a rate limited mode.

Range:
- from 1 to 100 if *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

Default value:
- 9 if *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP_RATE_LIMIT_INTERVAL

Rate limited interval (seconds)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP

If rate limiting self-assignment requests, wait this long between each request.

Range:
- from 5 to 120 if *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

Default value:
- 20 if *CONFIG_LWIP_AUTOIP*

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6

Enable IPv6

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable IPv6 function. If not use IPv6 function, set this option to n. If disable LWIP_IPV6, not adding coap and asio component into the build. Please assign them to EXCLUDE_COMPONENTS in the make or cmake file in your project directory, so that the component will not be compiled.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_AUTOCONFIG

Enable IPV6 stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6

Enabling this option allows the devices to IPV6 stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC).

See RFC 4862.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_LOOPBACK

Support per-interface loopback

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enabling this option means that if a packet is sent with a destination address equal to the interface's own IP address, it will "loop back" and be received by this interface.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_LOOPBACK_MAX_PBUFS*

CONFIG_LWIP_LOOPBACK_MAX_PBUFS

Max queued loopback packets per interface

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_LOOPBACK

Configure the maximum number of packets which can be queued for loopback on a given interface. Reducing this number may cause packets to be dropped, but will avoid filling memory with queued packet data.

Range:

- from 0 to 16

Default value:

- 8

TCP Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RTO_TIME*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_ACTIVE_TCP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_LISTENING_TCP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MAXRTX*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SYNMAXRTX*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSL*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSS*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_QUEUE_OOSEQ*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SACK_OUT*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_HIGH_SPEED_RETRANSMISSION*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_TMR_INTERVAL*

CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_ACTIVE_TCP

Maximum active TCP Connections

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

The maximum number of simultaneously active TCP connections. The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

Changing this value by itself does not substantially change the memory usage of LWIP, except for preventing new TCP connections after the limit is reached.

Range:
- from 1 to 1024

Default value:
- 16

CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_LISTENING_TCP

Maximum listening TCP Connections

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

The maximum number of simultaneously listening TCP connections. The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

Changing this value by itself does not substantially change the memory usage of LWIP, except for preventing new listening TCP connections after the limit is reached.

Range:
- from 1 to 1024

Default value:
- 16

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_HIGH_SPEED_RETRANSMISSION

TCP high speed retransmissions

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Speed up the TCP retransmission interval. If disabled, it is recommended to change the number of SYN retransmissions to 6, and TCP initial rto time to 3000.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MAXRTX

Maximum number of retransmissions of data segments

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set maximum number of retransmissions of data segments.

Range:
- from 3 to 12

Default value:
- 12

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SYNMAXRTX

Maximum number of retransmissions of SYN segments

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set maximum number of retransmissions of SYN segments.

Range:
- from 3 to 12

Default value:
- 6
- 12

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSS

Maximum Segment Size (MSS)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set maximum segment size for TCP transmission.

Can be set lower to save RAM, the default value 1460(ipv4)/1440(ipv6) will give best throughput. IPv4 TCP_MSS Range: 576 <= TCP_MSS <= 1460 IPv6 TCP_MSS Range: 1220<= TCP_mSS <= 1440

Range:
- from 536 to 1460

Default value:
- 1440

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_TMR_INTERVAL

TCP timer interval(ms)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set TCP timer interval in milliseconds.

Can be used to speed connections on bad networks. A lower value will redeliver unacked packets faster.

Default value:
- 250

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSL

Maximum segment lifetime (MSL)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set maximum segment lifetime in in milliseconds.

Default value:
- 60000

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT

Default send buffer size

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set default send buffer size for new TCP sockets.

Per-socket send buffer size can be changed at runtime with lwip_setsockopt(s, TCP_SNDBUF, ⋯).

This value must be at least 2x the MSS size, and the default is 4x the default MSS size.

Setting a smaller default SNDBUF size can save some RAM, but will decrease performance.

Range:
- from 2440 to 65535 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- from 2440 to 1024000 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Default value:
- 5744

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT

Default receive window size

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set default TCP receive window size for new TCP sockets.

Per-socket receive window size can be changed at runtime with lwip_setsockopt(s, TCP_WINDOW, ⋯).

Setting a smaller default receive window size can save some RAM, but will significantly decrease performance.

Range:
- from 2440 to 65535 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- from 2440 to 1024000 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Default value:
- 5744

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE

Default TCP receive mail box size

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set TCP receive mail box size. Generally bigger value means higher throughput but more memory. The recommended value is: LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT/TCP_MSS + 2, e.g. if LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT=14360, TCP_MSS=1436, then the recommended receive mail box size is (14360/1436 + 2) = 12.

TCP receive mail box is a per socket mail box, when the application receives packets from TCP socket, LWIP core firstly posts the packets to TCP receive mail box and the application then fetches the packets from mail box. It means LWIP can caches maximum LWIP_TCP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE packets for each TCP socket, so the maximum possible cached TCP packets for all TCP sockets is LWIP_TCP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE multiples the maximum TCP socket number. In other words, the bigger LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE means more memory. On the other hand, if the receiv mail box is too small, the mail box may be full. If the mail box is full, the LWIP drops the packets. So generally we need to make sure the TCP receive mail box is big enough to avoid packet drop between LWIP core and application.

Range:
- from 6 to 64 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- from 6 to 1024 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Default value:
- 6

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_QUEUE_OOSEQ

Queue incoming out-of-order segments

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Queue incoming out-of-order segments for later use.

Disable this option to save some RAM during TCP sessions, at the expense of increased retransmissions if segments arrive out of order.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SACK_OUT

Support sending selective acknowledgements

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

TCP will support sending selective acknowledgements (SACKs).

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES

Keep TCP connections when IP changed

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

This option is enabled when the following scenario happen: network dropped and reconnected, IP changes is like: 192.168.0.2->0.0.0.0->192.168.0.2

Disable this option to keep consistent with the original LWIP code behavior.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE

Pre-allocate transmit PBUF size

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Allows enabling "oversize" allocation of TCP transmission pbufs ahead of time, which can reduce the length of pbuf chains used for transmission.

This will not make a difference to sockets where Nagle's algorithm is disabled.

Default value of MSS is fine for most applications, 25% MSS may save some RAM when only transmitting small amounts of data. Disabled will have worst performance and fragmentation characteristics, but uses least RAM overall.

Available options:

- MSS (LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE_MSS)
- 25% MSS (LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE_QUARTER_MSS)
- Disabled (LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE_DISABLE)

CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE

Support TCP window scale

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Enable this feature to support TCP window scaling.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP*

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RCV_SCALE

Set TCP receiving window scaling factor

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP > CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE

Enable this feature to support TCP window scaling.

Range:

- from 0 to 14 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Default value:

- 0 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RTO_TIME

Default TCP rto time

Found in: Component config > LWIP > TCP

Set default TCP rto time for a reasonable initial rto. In bad network environment, recommend set value of rto time to 1500.

Default value:

- 3000
- 1500

UDP Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_UDP_PCBS*

CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_UDP_PCBS

Maximum active UDP control blocks

Found in: Component config > LWIP > UDP

The maximum number of active UDP "connections" (ie UDP sockets sending/receiving data). The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

Range:

- from 1 to 1024

Default value:

- 16

CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE

Default UDP receive mail box size

Found in: Component config > LWIP > UDP

Set UDP receive mail box size. The recommended value is 6.

UDP receive mail box is a per socket mail box, when the application receives packets from UDP socket, LWIP core firstly posts the packets to UDP receive mail box and the application then fetches the packets from mail box. It means LWIP can caches maximum UDP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE packets for each UDP socket, so the maximum possible cached UDP packets for all UDP sockets is UDP_RECCVMBOX_SIZE multiples the maximum UDP socket number. In other words, the bigger UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE means more memory. On the other hand, if the receiv mail box is too small, the mail box may be full. If the mail box is full, the LWIP drops the packets. So generally we need to make sure the UDP receive mail box is big enough to avoid packet drop between LWIP core and application.

Range:

- from 6 to 64

Default value:

- 6

Checksums Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_ICMP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_IP*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_UDP*

CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_IP

Enable LWIP IP checksums

Found in: Component config > LWIP > Checksums

Enable checksum checking for received IP messages

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_UDP

Enable LWIP UDP checksums

Found in: Component config > LWIP > Checksums

Enable checksum checking for received UDP messages

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_CHECKSUM_CHECK_ICMP

Enable LWIP ICMP checksums

Found in: Component config > LWIP > Checksums

Enable checksum checking for received ICMP messages

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE

TCP/IP Task Stack Size

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Configure TCP/IP task stack size, used by LWIP to process multi-threaded TCP/IP operations. Setting this stack too small will result in stack overflow crashes.

Range:
- from 2048 to 65536

Default value:
- 3072

CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY

TCP/IP task affinity

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Allows setting LwIP tasks affinity, i.e. whether the task is pinned to CPU0, pinned to CPU1, or allowed to run on any CPU. Currently this applies to "TCP/IP" task and "Ping" task.

Available options:
- No affinity (LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY)
- CPU0 (LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0)
- CPU1 (LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1)

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT

Enable PPP support (new/experimental)

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable PPP stack. Now only PPP over serial is possible.

PPP over serial support is experimental and unsupported.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_ENABLE_IPV6*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_ENABLE_IPV6

Enable IPV6 support for PPP connections (IPV6CP)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT

Enable IPV6 support in PPP for the local link between the DTE (processor) and DCE (modem). There are some modems which do not support the IPV6 addressing in the local link. If they are requested for IPV6CP negotiation, they may time out. This would in turn fail the configuration for the whole link. If your modem is not responding correctly to PPP Phase Network, try to disable IPV6 support.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT* && *CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6*

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_MEMP_NUM_ND6_QUEUE

Max number of IPv6 packets to queue during MAC resolution

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Config max number of IPv6 packets to queue during MAC resolution.

Range:
- from 3 to 20

Default value:
- 3

CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6_ND6_NUM_NEIGHBORS

Max number of entries in IPv6 neighbor cache

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Config max number of entries in IPv6 neighbor cache

Range:
- from 3 to 10

Default value:
- 5

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT

Enable Notify Phase Callback

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable to set a callback which is called on change of the internal PPP state machine.

Default value:
- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT

Enable PAP support

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) support

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT

Enable CHAP support

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) support

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT

Enable MSCHAP support

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable Microsoft version of the Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol (MSCHAP) support

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT

Enable MPPE support

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable Microsoft Point-to-Point Encryption (MPPE) support

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

Enable LCP ECHO

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable LCP echo keepalive requests

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_LCP_ECHOINTERVAL

Echo interval (s)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

Interval in seconds between keepalive LCP echo requests, 0 to disable.

Range:

- from 0 to 1000000 if *CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO*

Default value:

- 3 if *CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO*

CONFIG_LWIP_LCP_MAXECHOFAILS

Maximum echo failures

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO

Number of consecutive unanswered echo requests before failure is indicated.

Range:
- from 0 to 100000 if *CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO*

Default value:
- 3 if *CONFIG_LWIP_ENABLE_LCP_ECHO*

CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_DEBUG_ON

Enable PPP debug log output

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable PPP debug log output

Default value:
- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT

Enable SLIP support (new/experimental)

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable SLIP stack. Now only SLIP over serial is possible.

SLIP over serial support is experimental and unsupported.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_DEBUG_ON*

CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_DEBUG_ON

Enable SLIP debug log output

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT

Enable SLIP debug log output

Default value:
- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_SLIP_SUPPORT*

ICMP

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_BROADCAST_PING*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_MULTICAST_PING*

CONFIG_LWIP_MULTICAST_PING

Respond to multicast pings

Found in: Component config > LWIP > ICMP

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_LWIP_BROADCAST_PING

Respond to broadcast pings

Found in: Component config > LWIP > ICMP

Default value:
- No (disabled)

LWIP RAW API Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_RAW_PCBS*

CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_RAW_PCBS

Maximum LWIP RAW PCBs

Found in: Component config > LWIP > LWIP RAW API

The maximum number of simultaneously active LWIP RAW protocol control blocks. The practical maximum limit is determined by available heap memory at runtime.

Range:
- from 1 to 1024

Default value:
- 16

SNTP Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_MAX_NTP_SERVERS*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY*

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_MAX_NTP_SERVERS

Maximum number of NTP servers

Found in: Component config > LWIP > SNTP

Set maximum number of NTP servers used by LwIP SNTP module. First argument of sntp_setserver/sntp_setservername functions is limited to this value.

Range:
- from 1 to 16

Default value:
- 1

CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY

Request interval to update time (ms)

Found in: Component config > LWIP > SNTP

This option allows you to set the time update period via SNTP. Default is 1 hour. Must not be below 15 seconds by specification. (SNTPv4 RFC 4330 enforces a minimum update time of 15 seconds).

Range:
- from 15000 to 4294967295

Default value:
- 3600000

CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_LWIP_ASSERT

Enable LWIP ASSERT checks

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Enable this option keeps LWIP assertion checks enabled. It is recommended to keep this option enabled.

If asserts are disabled for the entire project, they are also disabled for LWIP and this option is ignored.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_DISABLE

Hooks Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXTERNAL_RESOLVE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN*

CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN

TCP ISN Hook

Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks

Enables to define a TCP ISN hook to randomize initial sequence number in TCP connection. The default TCP ISN algorithm used in IDF (standardized in RFC 6528) produces ISN by combining an MD5 of the new TCP id and a stable secret with the current time. This is because the lwIP implementation (*tcp_next_iss*) is not very strong, as it does not take into consideration any platform specific entropy source.

Set to LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_CUSTOM to provide custom implementation. Set to LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_NONE to use lwIP implementation.

Available options:

- No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_NONE)
- Default implementation (LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_DEFAULT)
- Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_TCP_ISN_CUSTOM)

CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE

IPv6 route Hook

Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks

Enables custom IPv6 route hook. Setting this to "default" provides weak implementation stub that could be overwritten in application code. Setting this to "custom" provides hook's declaration only and expects the application to implement it.

Available options:

- No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE_NONE)
- Default (weak) implementation (LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE_DEFAULT)
- Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_IP6_ROUTE_CUSTOM)

CONFIG_LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXTERNAL_RESOLVE

Netconn external resolve Hook

Found in: Component config > LWIP > Hooks

Enables custom DNS resolve hook. Setting this to "default" provides weak implementation stub that could be overwritten in application code. Setting this to "custom" provides hook's declaration only and expects the application to implement it.

Available options:

- No hook declared (LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXT_RESOLVE_NONE)
- Default (weak) implementation (LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXT_RESOLVE_DEFAULT)
- Custom implementation (LWIP_HOOK_NETCONN_EXT_RESOLVE_CUSTOM)

CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Enable LWIP Debug

Found in: Component config > LWIP

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_API_LIB_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_STATE_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP6_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_PBUF_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_SOCKETS_DEBUG*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_NETIF_DEBUG

Enable netif debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_PBUF_DEBUG

Enable pbuf debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_ETHARP_DEBUG

Enable etharp debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_API_LIB_DEBUG

Enable api lib debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_SOCKETS_DEBUG

Enable socket debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_IP_DEBUG

Enable IP debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP_DEBUG

Enable ICMP debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_STATE_DEBUG

Enable DHCP state tracking

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_DHCP_DEBUG

Enable DHCP debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_IP6_DEBUG

Enable IP6 debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_ICMP6_DEBUG

Enable ICMP6 debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_DEBUG

Enable TCP debug messages

Found in: Component config > LWIP > CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_LWIP_DEBUG*

OpenThread Contains:

- *CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

OpenThread

Found in: Component config > OpenThread

Select this option to enable OpenThread and show the submenu with OpenThread configuration choices.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_DEVICE_TYPE

Config the Thread device type

Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

OpenThread can be configured to different device types (FTD, MTD, Radio)

Available options:

- Full Thread Device (OPENTHREAD_FTD)
  Select this to enable Full Thread Device which can act as router and leader in a Thread network.
- Minimal Thread Device (OPENTHREAD_MTD)
  Select this to enable Minimal Thread Device which can only act as end device in a Thread network. This will reduce the code size of the OpenThread stack.
- Radio Only Device (OPENTHREAD_RADIO)
  Select this to enable Radio Only Device which cannot can only forward 15.4 packets to the host. The OpenThread stack will be run on the host and OpenThread will have minimal footprint on the radio only device.

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_DIAG

Enable diag

Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

Select this option to enable Diag in OpenThread. This will enable diag mode and a series of diag commands in the OpenThread command line. These commands allow users to manipulate low-level features of the storage and 15.4 radio.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_COMMISSIONER

Enable Commissioner

Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

Select this option to enable commissioner in OpenThread. This will enable the device to act as a commissioner in the Thread network. A commissioner checks the pre-shared key from a joining device with the Thread commissioning protocol and shares the network parameter with the joining device upon success.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_JOINER

Enable Joiner

Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

Select this option to enable Joiner in OpenThread. This allows a device to join the Thread network with a pre-shared key using the Thread commissioning protocol.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_PARTITION_NAME

The partition for OpenThread to store its network data

Found in: Component config > OpenThread > CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED

The storage size should be at least 8192 bytes.

Default value:

- "ot_storage" if *CONFIG_OPENTHREAD_ENABLED*

ESP-TLS

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_LIBRARY_CHOOSE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_WOLFSSL*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_PSK_VERIFICATION*
- *CONFIG_ESP_WOLFSSL_SMALL_CERT_VERIFY*
- *CONFIG_ESP_TLS_USE_DS_PERIPHERAL*

CONFIG_ESP_TLS_LIBRARY_CHOOSE

Choose SSL/TLS library for ESP-TLS (See help for more Info)

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

The ESP-TLS APIs support multiple backend TLS libraries. Currently mbedTLS and WolfSSL are supported. Different TLS libraries may support different features and have different resource usage. Consult the ESP-TLS documentation in ESP-IDF Programming guide for more details.

Available options:

- mbedTLS (ESP_TLS_USING_MBEDTLS)
- wolfSSL (License info in wolfSSL directory README) (ESP_TLS_USING_WOLFSSL)

CONFIG_ESP_TLS_USE_DS_PERIPHERAL

Use Digital Signature (DS) Peripheral with ESP-TLS

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

Enable use of the Digital Signature Peripheral for ESP-TLS.The DS peripheral can only be used when it is appropriately configured for TLS. Consult the ESP-TLS documentation in ESP-IDF Programming Guide for more details.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SERVER

Enable ESP-TLS Server

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

Enable support for creating server side SSL/TLS session, available for mbedTLS as well as wolfSSL TLS library.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TLS_PSK_VERIFICATION

Enable PSK verification

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

Enable support for pre shared key ciphers, supported for both mbedTLS as well as wolfSSL TLS library.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE

Allow potentially insecure options

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

You can enable some potentially insecure options. These options should only be used for testing pusposes. Only enable these options if you are very sure.

CONFIG_ESP_TLS_SKIP_SERVER_CERT_VERIFY

Skip server certificate verification by default (WARNING: ONLY FOR TESTING PURPOSE, READ HELP)

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS > CONFIG_ESP_TLS_INSECURE

After enabling this option the esp-tls client will skip the server certificate verification by default. Note that this option will only modify the default behaviour of esp-tls client regarding server cert verification. The default behaviour should only be applicable when no other option regarding the server cert verification is opted in the esp-tls config (e.g. crt_bundle_attach, use_global_ca_store etc.). WARNING : Enabling this option comes with a potential risk of establishing a TLS connection with a server which has a fake identity, provided that the server certificate is not provided either through API or other mechanism like ca_store etc.

CONFIG_ESP_WOLFSSL_SMALL_CERT_VERIFY

Enable SMALL_CERT_VERIFY

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

Enables server verification with Intermediate CA cert, does not authenticate full chain of trust upto the root CA cert (After Enabling this option client only needs to have Intermediate CA certificate of the server to authenticate server, root CA cert is not necessary).

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if ESP_TLS_USING_WOLFSSL

CONFIG_ESP_DEBUG_WOLFSSL

Enable debug logs for wolfSSL

Found in: Component config > ESP-TLS

Enable detailed debug prints for wolfSSL SSL library.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if ESP_TLS_USING_WOLFSSL

CoAP Configuration

Contains:

- *CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_ENCRYPTION_MODE*
- *CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG*

CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_ENCRYPTION_MODE

CoAP Encryption method

Found in: Component config > CoAP Configuration

If the CoAP information is to be encrypted, the encryption environment can be set up in one of two ways (default being Pre-Shared key mode)

- Encrypt using defined Pre-Shared Keys (PSK if uri includes coaps://)
- Encrypt using defined Public Key Infrastructure (PKI if uri includes coaps://)

Available options:

- Pre-Shared Keys (COAP_MBEDTLS_PSK)
- PKI Certificates (COAP_MBEDTLS_PKI)

CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG

Enable CoAP debugging

Found in: Component config > CoAP Configuration

Enable CoAP debugging functions at compile time for the example code.

If this option is enabled, call coap_set_log_level() at runtime in order to enable CoAP debug output via the ESP log mechanism.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG_LEVEL

Set CoAP debugging level

Found in: Component config > CoAP Configuration > CONFIG_COAP_MBEDTLS_DEBUG

Set CoAP debugging level

Available options:

- Emergency (COAP_LOG_EMERG)
- Alert (COAP_LOG_ALERT)
- Critical (COAP_LOG_CRIT)
- Error (COAP_LOG_ERROR)
- Warning (COAP_LOG_WARNING)
- Notice (COAP_LOG_NOTICE)

- Info (COAP_LOG_INFO)
- Debug (COAP_LOG_DEBUG)

Wi-Fi Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_ENABLE_WPA3_SAE*
- *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_RESPONDER_SUPPORT*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CSI_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_NVS_ENABLED*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT*
- *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi static RX buffers

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi static RX buffers. Each buffer takes approximately 1.6KB of RAM. The static rx buffers are allocated when esp_wifi_init is called, they are not freed until esp_wifi_deinit is called.

WiFi hardware use these buffers to receive all 802.11 frames. A higher number may allow higher throughput but increases memory use. If ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED is enabled, this value is recommended to set equal or bigger than ESP32_WIFI_RX_BA_WIN in order to achieve better throughput and compatibility with both stations and APs.

Range:

- from 2 to 25

Default value:

- 10 if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP*
- 16 if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi dynamic RX buffers

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi dynamic RX buffers, 0 means unlimited RX buffers will be allocated (provided sufficient free RAM). The size of each dynamic RX buffer depends on the size of the received data frame.

For each received data frame, the WiFi driver makes a copy to an RX buffer and then delivers it to the high layer TCP/IP stack. The dynamic RX buffer is freed after the higher layer has successfully received the data frame.

For some applications, WiFi data frames may be received faster than the application can process them. In these cases we may run out of memory if RX buffer number is unlimited (0).

If a dynamic RX buffer limit is set, it should be at least the number of static RX buffers.

Range:
- from 0 to 128 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*
- from 0 to 1024 if *CONFIG_LWIP_WND_SCALE*

Default value:
- 32

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER

Type of WiFi TX buffers

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select type of WiFi TX buffers:

If "Static" is selected, WiFi TX buffers are allocated when WiFi is initialized and released when WiFi is de-initialized. The size of each static TX buffer is fixed to about 1.6KB.

If "Dynamic" is selected, each WiFi TX buffer is allocated as needed when a data frame is delivered to the Wifi driver from the TCP/IP stack. The buffer is freed after the data frame has been sent by the WiFi driver. The size of each dynamic TX buffer depends on the length of each data frame sent by the TCP/IP layer.

If PSRAM is enabled, "Static" should be selected to guarantee enough WiFi TX buffers. If PSRAM is disabled, "Dynamic" should be selected to improve the utilization of RAM.

Available options:
- Static (ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER)
- Dynamic (ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi static TX buffers

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi static TX buffers. Each buffer takes approximately 1.6KB of RAM. The static RX buffers are allocated when esp_wifi_init() is called, they are not released until esp_wifi_deinit() is called.

For each transmitted data frame from the higher layer TCP/IP stack, the WiFi driver makes a copy of it in a TX buffer. For some applications especially UDP applications, the upper layer can deliver frames faster than WiFi layer can transmit. In these cases, we may run out of TX buffers.

Range:
- from 1 to 64 if ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER

Default value:
- 16 if ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi cache TX buffers

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi cache TX buffer number.

For each TX packet from uplayer, such as LWIP etc, WiFi driver needs to allocate a static TX buffer and makes a copy of uplayer packet. If WiFi driver fails to allocate the static TX buffer, it caches the uplayer packets to a dedicated buffer queue, this option is used to configure the size of the cached TX queue.

Range:
- from 16 to 128 if ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* || ESP32S3_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

Default value:
- 32 if ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* || ESP32S3_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM

Max number of WiFi dynamic TX buffers

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi dynamic TX buffers. The size of each dynamic TX buffer is not fixed, it depends on the size of each transmitted data frame.

For each transmitted frame from the higher layer TCP/IP stack, the WiFi driver makes a copy of it in a TX buffer. For some applications, especially UDP applications, the upper layer can deliver frames faster than WiFi layer can transmit. In these cases, we may run out of TX buffers.

Range:
- from 1 to 128

Default value:
- 32

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_CSI_ENABLED

WiFi CSI(Channel State Information)

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable CSI(Channel State Information) feature. CSI takes about CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM KB of RAM. If CSI is not used, it is better to disable this feature in order to save memory.

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED

WiFi AMPDU TX

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable AMPDU TX feature

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BA_WIN

WiFi AMPDU TX BA window size

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED

Set the size of WiFi Block Ack TX window. Generally a bigger value means higher throughput but more memory. Most of time we should NOT change the default value unless special reason, e.g. test the maximum UDP TX throughput with iperf etc. For iperf test in shieldbox, the recommended value is 9~12.

Range:
- from 2 to 32

Default value:
- 6

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED

WiFi AMPDU RX

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable AMPDU RX feature

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_BA_WIN

WiFi AMPDU RX BA window size

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED

Set the size of WiFi Block Ack RX window. Generally a bigger value means higher throughput and better compatibility but more memory. Most of time we should NOT change the default value unless special reason, e.g. test the maximum UDP RX throughput with iperf etc. For iperf test in shieldbox, the recommended value is 9~12. If PSRAM is used and WiFi memory is prefered to allocat in PSRAM first, the default and minimum value should be 16 to achieve better throughput and compatibility with both stations and APs.

Range:

- from 2 to 32

Default value:

- 6 if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP* && *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED*
- 16 if *CONFIG_SPIRAM_TRY_ALLOCATE_WIFI_LWIP* && *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED

WiFi AMSDU TX

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable AMSDU TX feature

Default value:

- No (disabled) if ESP32_SPIRAM_SUPPORT || *CONFIG_ESP32S2_SPIRAM_SUPPORT* || ESP32S3_SPIRAM_SUPPORT

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_NVS_ENABLED

WiFi NVS flash

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable WiFi NVS flash

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID

WiFi Task Core ID

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Pinned WiFi task to core 0 or core 1.

Available options:

- Core 0 (ESP32_WIFI_TASK_PINNED_TO_CORE_0)

- Core 1 (ESP32_WIFI_TASK_PINNED_TO_CORE_1)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN

Max length of WiFi SoftAP Beacon

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

ESP-MESH utilizes beacon frames to detect and resolve root node conflicts (see documentation). However the default length of a beacon frame can simultaneously hold only five root node identifier structures, meaning that a root node conflict of up to five nodes can be detected at one time. In the occurence of more root nodes conflict involving more than five root nodes, the conflict resolution process will detect five of the root nodes, resolve the conflict, and re-detect more root nodes. This process will repeat until all root node conflicts are resolved. However this process can generally take a very long time.

To counter this situation, the beacon frame length can be increased such that more root nodes can be detected simultaneously. Each additional root node will require 36 bytes and should be added ontop of the default beacon frame length of 752 bytes. For example, if you want to detect 10 root nodes simultaneously, you need to set the beacon frame length as 932 (752+36*5).

Setting a longer beacon length also assists with debugging as the conflicting root nodes can be identified more quickly.

Range:
- from 752 to 1256

Default value:
- 752

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM

WiFi mgmt short buffer number

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Set the number of WiFi management short buffer.

Range:
- from 6 to 32

Default value:
- 32

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE

Enable WiFi debug log

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable WiFi debug log

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_LEVEL

WiFi debug log level

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE

The WiFi log is divided into the following levels: ERROR,WARNING,INFO,DEBUG,VERBOSE. The ERROR,WARNING,INFO levels are enabled by default, and the DEBUG,VERBOSE levels can be enabled here.

Available options:
- WiFi Debug Log Debug (ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_DEBUG)

- WiFi Debug Log Verbose (ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_VERBOSE)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_MODULE

WiFi debug log module

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE

The WiFi log module contains three parts: WIFI,COEX,MESH. The WIFI module indicates the logs related to WiFi, the COEX module indicates the logs related to WiFi and BT(or BLE) coexist, the MESH module indicates the logs related to Mesh. When ESP32_WIFI_LOG_MODULE_ALL is enabled, all modules are selected.

Available options:

- WiFi Debug Log Module All (ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_MODULE_ALL)
- WiFi Debug Log Module WiFi (ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_MODULE_WIFI)
- WiFi Debug Log Module Coex (ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_MODULE_COEX)
- WiFi Debug Log Module Mesh (ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_MODULE_MESH)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE

WiFi debug log submodule

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE

Enable this option to set the WiFi debug log submodule. Currently the log submodule contains the following parts: INIT,IOCTL,CONN,SCAN. The INIT submodule indicates the initialization process.The IOCTL submodule indicates the API calling process. The CONN submodule indicates the connecting process.The SCAN submodule indicates the scaning process.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_ALL

WiFi Debug Log Submodule All

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE

When this option is enabled, all debug submodules are selected.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_INIT

WiFi Debug Log Submodule Init

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE* && *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_ALL*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_IOCTL

WiFi Debug Log Submodule Ioctl

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE > CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE* && *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_ALL*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_CONN

WiFi Debug Log Submodule Conn

Found in: Component config > *Wi-Fi* > *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE* > *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE*

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE* && *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_ALL*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_SCAN

WiFi Debug Log Submodule Scan

Found in: Component config > *Wi-Fi* > *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_ENABLE* > *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE*

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE* && *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DEBUG_LOG_SUBMODULE_ALL*

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT

WiFi IRAM speed optimization

Found in: Component config > *Wi-Fi*

Select this option to place frequently called Wi-Fi library functions in IRAM. When this option is disabled, more than 10Kbytes of IRAM memory will be saved but Wi-Fi throughput will be reduced.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT

WiFi RX IRAM speed optimization

Found in: Component config > *Wi-Fi*

Select this option to place frequently called Wi-Fi library RX functions in IRAM. When this option is disabled, more than 17Kbytes of IRAM memory will be saved but Wi-Fi performance will be reduced.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_ENABLE_WPA3_SAE

Enable WPA3-Personal

Found in: Component config > *Wi-Fi*

Select this option to allow the device to establish a WPA3-Personal connection with eligible AP' s. PMF (Protected Management Frames) is a prerequisite feature for a WPA3 connection, it needs to be explicitly configured before attempting connection. Please refer to the Wi-Fi Driver API Guide for details.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

WiFi SLP IRAM speed optimization

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to place called Wi-Fi library TBTT process and receive beacon functions in IRAM. Some functions can be put in IRAM either by ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT and ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT, or this one. If already enabled ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT, the other 7.3KB IRAM memory would be taken by this option. If already enabled ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT, the other 1.3KB IRAM memory would be taken by this option. If neither of them are enabled, the other 7.4KB IRAM memory would be taken by this option. Wi-Fi power-save mode average current would be reduced if this option is enabled.

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_DEFAULT_MIN_ACTIVE_TIME

Minimum active time

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

The minimum timeout for waiting to receive data, unit: milliseconds.

Range:
- from 8 to 60 if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*

Default value:
- 8 if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_DEFAULT_MAX_ACTIVE_TIME

Maximum keep alive time

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT

The maximum time that wifi keep alive, unit: seconds.

Range:
- from 10 to 60 if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*

Default value:
- 60 if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_SLP_IRAM_OPT*

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT

FTM Initiator support

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Default value:
- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE

FTM Report logging

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT

Select this option to get a detailed report of FTM Procedure with raw values

Default value:
- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_SHOW_RTT

Show RTT values

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE*

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_SHOW_DIAG

Show dialog tokens

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE*

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_SHOW_T1T2T3T4

Show T1 to T4

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE*

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_SHOW_RSSI

Show RSSI levels

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_INITIATOR_SUPPORT > CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_REPORT_LOG_ENABLE*

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_FTM_RESPONDER_SUPPORT

FTM Responder support

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLE

Power Management for station at disconnected

Found in: Component config > Wi-Fi

Select this option to enable power_management for station when disconnected. Chip will do modem-sleep when rf module is not in use any more.

PHY Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_MAX_WIFI_TX_POWER*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_REDUCE_PHY_TX_POWER*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION*

CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION

Use a partition to store PHY init data

Found in: Component config > PHY

If enabled, PHY init data will be loaded from a partition. When using a custom partition table, make sure that PHY data partition is included (type: 'data', subtype: 'phy'). With default partition tables, this is done automatically. If PHY init data is stored in a partition, it has to be flashed there, otherwise runtime error will occur.

If this option is not enabled, PHY init data will be embedded into the application binary.

If unsure, choose 'n'.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_DEFAULT_INIT_IF_INVALID*
- *CONFIG_ESP32_SUPPORT_MULTIPLE_PHY_INIT_DATA_BIN*

CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_DEFAULT_INIT_IF_INVALID

Reset default PHY init data if invalid

Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION

If enabled, PHY init data will be restored to default if it cannot be verified successfully to avoid endless bootloops.

If unsure, choose 'n'.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION*

CONFIG_ESP32_SUPPORT_MULTIPLE_PHY_INIT_DATA_BIN

Support multiple PHY init data bin

Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION

If enabled, the corresponding PHY init data type can be automatically switched according to the country code. China's PHY init data bin is used by default. Can be modified by country information in API esp_wifi_set_country(). The priority of switching the PHY init data type is: 1. Country configured by API esp_wifi_set_country() and the parameter policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL. 2. Country notified by the connected AP. 3. Country configured by API esp_wifi_set_country() and the parameter policy is WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION* && *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION*

CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_ERROR

Terminate operation when PHY init data error

Found in: Component config > PHY > CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION > CONFIG_ESP32_SUPPORT_MULTIPLE_PHY_INIT_DATA_BIN

If enabled, when an error occurs while the PHY init data is updated, the program will terminate and restart. If not enabled, the PHY init data will not be updated when an error occurs.

Default value:

- No (disabled) if *CONFIG_ESP32_SUPPORT_MULTIPLE_PHY_INIT_DATA_BIN* && *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION*

CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_MAX_WIFI_TX_POWER

Max WiFi TX power (dBm)

Found in: Component config > PHY

Set maximum transmit power for WiFi radio. Actual transmit power for high data rates may be lower than this setting.

Range:
- from 10 to 20

Default value:
- 20

CONFIG_ESP32_REDUCE_PHY_TX_POWER

Reduce PHY TX power when brownout reset

Found in: Component config > PHY

When brownout reset occurs, reduce PHY TX power to keep the code running.

Default value:
- Yes (enabled) if ESP32_BROWNOUT_DET

Hardware Settings Contains:

- *MAC Config*
- *Sleep Config*

MAC Config Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES*

CONFIG_ESP32S2_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES

Number of universally administered (by IEEE) MAC address

Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > MAC Config

Configure the number of universally administered (by IEEE) MAC addresses. During initialization, MAC addresses for each network interface are generated or derived from a single base MAC address. If the number of universal MAC addresses is Two, all interfaces (WiFi station, WiFi softap) receive a universally administered MAC address. They are generated sequentially by adding 0, and 1 (respectively) to the final octet of the base MAC address. If the number of universal MAC addresses is one, only WiFi station receives a universally administered MAC address. It's generated by adding 0 to the base MAC address. The WiFi softap receives local MAC addresses. It's derived from the universal WiFi station MAC addresses. When using the default (Espressif-assigned) base MAC address, either setting can be used. When using a custom universal MAC address range, the correct setting will depend on the allocation of MAC addresses in this range (either 1 or 2 per device.)

Available options:
- One (ESP32S2_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES_ONE)
- Two (ESP32S2_UNIVERSAL_MAC_ADDRESSES_TWO)

Sleep Config Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_POWER_DOWN_FLASH*

CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_POWER_DOWN_FLASH

Power down flash in light sleep when there is no SPIRAM

Found in: Component config > Hardware Settings > Sleep Config

If enabled, chip will try to power down flash as part of esp_light_sleep_start(), which costs more time when chip wakes up. Can only be enabled if there is no SPIRAM configured. This option will in fact consider VDD_SDIO auto power value (ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO) as OFF. Also, it is possible to force a power domain to stay ON during light sleep by using esp_sleep_pd_config() function.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

jsmn Contains:

- *CONFIG_JSMN_PARENT_LINKS*
- *CONFIG_JSMN_STRICT*

CONFIG_JSMN_PARENT_LINKS

Enable parent links

Found in: Component config > jsmn

You can access to parent node of parsed json

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_JSMN_STRICT

Enable strict mode

Found in: Component config > jsmn

In strict mode primitives are: numbers and booleans

Default value:

- No (disabled)

ESP HTTP client Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_BASIC_AUTH*
- *CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_DIGEST_AUTH*
- *CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_HTTPS*

CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_HTTPS

Enable https

Found in: Component config > ESP HTTP client

This option will enable https protocol by linking esp-tls library and initializing SSL transport

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_BASIC_AUTH

Enable HTTP Basic Authentication

Found in: Component config > ESP HTTP client

This option will enable HTTP Basic Authentication. It is disabled by default as Basic auth uses unencrypted encoding, so it introduces a vulnerability when not using TLS

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ESP_HTTP_CLIENT_ENABLE_DIGEST_AUTH

Enable HTTP Digest Authentication

Found in: Component config > ESP HTTP client

This option will enable HTTP Digest Authentication. It is enabled by default, but use of this configuration is not recommended as the password can be derived from the exchange, so it introduces a vulnerability when not using TLS

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Common ESP-related Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP*

CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP

Enable lookup of error code strings

Found in: Component config > Common ESP-related

Functions esp_err_to_name() and esp_err_to_name_r() return string representations of error codes from a pre-generated lookup table. This option can be used to turn off the use of the look-up table in order to save memory but this comes at the price of sacrificing distinguishable (meaningful) output string representations.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

ESP-ASIO Contains:

- *CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_SUPPORT*

CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_SUPPORT

Enable SSL/TLS support of ASIO

Found in: Component config > ESP-ASIO

Enable support for basic SSL/TLS features, available for mbedTLS/OpenSSL as well as wolfSSL TLS library.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_LIBRARY_CHOICE

Choose SSL/TLS library for ESP-TLS (See help for more Info)

Found in: Component config > ESP-ASIO > CONFIG_ASIO_SSL_SUPPORT

The ASIO support multiple backend TLS libraries. Currently the mbedTLS with a thin ESP-OpenSSL port layer (default choice) and WolfSSL are supported. Different TLS libraries may support different features and have different resource usage. Consult the ESP-TLS documentation in ESP-IDF Programming guide for more details.

Available options:

- esp-openssl (ASIO_USE_ESP_OPENSSL)
- wolfSSL (License info in wolfSSL directory README) (ASIO_USE_ESP_WOLFSSL)

libsodium Contains:

- *CONFIG_LIBSODIUM_USE_MBEDTLS_SHA*

CONFIG_LIBSODIUM_USE_MBEDTLS_SHA

Use mbedTLS SHA256 & SHA512 implementations

Found in: Component config > libsodium

If this option is enabled, libsodium will use thin wrappers around mbedTLS for SHA256 & SHA512 operations.

This saves some code size if mbedTLS is also used. However it is incompatible with hardware SHA acceleration (due to the way libsodium's API manages SHA state).

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

ESP NETIF Adapter Contains:

- *CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_TCPIP_ADAPTER_COMPATIBLE_LAYER*
- *CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_IP_LOST_TIMER_INTERVAL*
- *CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_USE_TCPIP_STACK_LIB*

CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_IP_LOST_TIMER_INTERVAL

IP Address lost timer interval (seconds)

Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter

The value of 0 indicates the IP lost timer is disabled, otherwise the timer is enabled.

The IP address may be lost because of some reasons, e.g. when the station disconnects from soft-AP, or when DHCP IP renew fails etc. If the IP lost timer is enabled, it will be started everytime the IP is lost. Event SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP will be raised if the timer expires. The IP lost timer is stopped if the station get the IP again before the timer expires.

Range:

- from 0 to 65535

Default value:

- 120

CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_USE_TCPIP_STACK_LIB

TCP/IP Stack Library

Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter

Choose the TCP/IP Stack to work, for example, LwIP, uIP, etc.

Available options:

- LwIP (ESP_NETIF_TCPIP_LWIP)
  lwIP is a small independent implementation of the TCP/IP protocol suite.
- Loopback (ESP_NETIF_LOOPBACK)
  Dummy implementation of esp-netif functionality which connects driver transmit to receive function. This option is for testing purpose only

CONFIG_ESP_NETIF_TCPIP_ADAPTER_COMPATIBLE_LAYER

Enable backward compatible tcpip_adapter interface

Found in: Component config > ESP NETIF Adapter

Backward compatible interface to tcpip_adapter is enabled by default to support legacy TCP/IP stack initialisation code. Disable this option to use only esp-netif interface.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Virtual file system

Contains:

- *CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO*

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO

Provide basic I/O functions

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system

If enabled, the following functions are provided by the VFS component.

open, close, read, write, pread, pwrite, lseek, fstat, fsync, ioctl, fcntl

Filesystem drivers can then be registered to handle these functions for specific paths.

Disabling this option can save memory when the support for these functions is not required.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_DIR

Provide directory related functions

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO

If enabled, the following functions are provided by the VFS component.

stat, link, unlink, rename, utime, access, truncate, rmdir, mkdir, opendir, closedir, readdir, readdir_r, seekdir, telldir, rewinddir

Filesystem drivers can then be registered to handle these functions for specific paths.

Disabling this option can save memory when the support for these functions is not required.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT

Provide select function

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO

If enabled, select function is provided by the VFS component, and can be used on peripheral file descriptors (such as UART) and sockets at the same time.

If disabled, the default select implementation will be provided by LWIP for sockets only.

Disabling this option can reduce code size if support for "select" on UART file descriptors is not required.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled) if *CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO* && *CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT*

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPRESS_SELECT_DEBUG_OUTPUT

Suppress select() related debug outputs

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_SELECT

Select() related functions might produce an unconveniently lot of debug outputs when one sets the default log level to DEBUG or higher. It is possible to suppress these debug outputs by enabling this option.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS

Provide termios.h functions

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO

Disabling this option can save memory when the support for termios.h is not required.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

Host File System I/O (Semihosting)

Contains:

- *CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS*
- *CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN*

CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS

Host FS: Maximum number of the host filesystem mount points

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO > Host File System I/O (Semihosting)

Define maximum number of host filesystem mount points.

Default value:

- 1

CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN

Host FS: Maximum path length for the host base directory

Found in: Component config > Virtual file system > CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_IO > Host File System I/O (Semihosting)

Define maximum path length for the host base directory which is to be mounted. If host path passed to esp_vfs_semihost_register() is longer than this value it will be truncated.

Default value:

- 128

ADC-Calibration

Driver configurations Contains:

- *ADC configuration*
- *SPI configuration*
- *TWAI configuration*
- *UART configuration*

ADC configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_ADC_DISABLE_DAC*
- *CONFIG_ADC_FORCE_XPD_FSM*

CONFIG_ADC_FORCE_XPD_FSM

Use the FSM to control ADC power

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > ADC configuration

ADC power can be controlled by the FSM instead of software. This allows the ADC to be shut off when it is not working leading to lower power consumption. However using the FSM control ADC power will increase the noise of ADC.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_ADC_DISABLE_DAC

Disable DAC when ADC2 is used on GPIO 25 and 26

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > ADC configuration

If this is set, the ADC2 driver will disable the output of the DAC corresponding to the specified channel. This is the default value.

For testing, disable this option so that we can measure the output of DAC by internal ADC.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

SPI configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM*
- *CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_ISR_IN_IRAM*
- *CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_IN_IRAM*
- *CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_IN_IRAM*

CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_IN_IRAM

Place transmitting functions of SPI master into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration

Normally only the ISR of SPI master is placed in the IRAM, so that it can work without the flash when interrupt is triggered. For other functions, there's some possibility that the flash cache miss when running inside and out of SPI functions, which may increase the interval of SPI transactions. Enable this to put `queue\_trans`, `get\_trans\_result` and `transmit` functions into the IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

During unit test, this is enabled to measure the ideal case of api.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_MASTER_ISR_IN_IRAM

Place SPI master ISR function into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration

Place the SPI master ISR in to IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

Also you can forbid the ISR being disabled during flash writing access, by add ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM when initializing the driver.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_IN_IRAM

Place transmitting functions of SPI slave into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration

Normally only the ISR of SPI slave is placed in the IRAM, so that it can work without the flash when interrupt is triggered. For other functions, there's some possibility that the flash cache miss when running inside and out of SPI functions, which may increase the interval of SPI transactions. Enable this to put `queue\_trans`, `get\_trans\_result` and `transmit` functions into the IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

CONFIG_SPI_SLAVE_ISR_IN_IRAM

Place SPI slave ISR function into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > SPI configuration

Place the SPI slave ISR in to IRAM to avoid possible cache miss.

Also you can forbid the ISR being disabled during flash writing access, by add ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM when initializing the driver.

Default value:

- Yes (enabled)

TWAI configuration Contains:

- *CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM*

CONFIG_TWAI_ISR_IN_IRAM

Place TWAI ISR function into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > TWAI configuration

Place the TWAI ISR in to IRAM. This will allow the ISR to avoid cache misses, and also be able to run whilst the cache is disabled (such as when writing to SPI Flash). Note that if this option is enabled: - Users should also set the ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM in the driver configuration structure when installing the driver (see docs for specifics). - Alert logging (i.e., setting of the TWAI_ALERT_AND_LOG flag) will have no effect.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

UART configuration

Contains:

- *CONFIG_UART_ISR_IN_IRAM*

CONFIG_UART_ISR_IN_IRAM

Place UART ISR function into IRAM

Found in: Component config > Driver configurations > UART configuration

If this option is not selected, UART interrupt will be disabled for a long time and may cause data lost when doing spi flash operation.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Compatibility options

Contains:

- *CONFIG_LEGACY_INCLUDE_COMMON_HEADERS*

CONFIG_LEGACY_INCLUDE_COMMON_HEADERS

Include headers across components as before IDF v4.0

Found in: Compatibility options

Soc, esp32, and driver components, the most common components. Some header of these components are included implicitly by headers of other components before IDF v4.0. It's not required for high-level components, but still included through long header chain everywhere.

This is harmful to the modularity. So it's changed in IDF v4.0.

You can still include these headers in a legacy way until it is totally deprecated by enable this option.

Default value:

- No (disabled)

Deprecated options and their replacements

- CONFIG_ADC2_DISABLE_DAC (*CONFIG_ADC_DISABLE_DAC*)
- CONFIG_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK (*CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ANTI_ROLLBACK*)
- CONFIG_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE (*CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_ROLLBACK_ENABLE*)
- CONFIG_APP_SECURE_VERSION (*CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SECURE_VERSION*)
- CONFIG_APP_SECURE_VERSION_SIZE_EFUSE_FIELD (*CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_SEC_VER_SIZE_EFUSE_FIEL*
- **CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART (*CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART*)**

  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_DEFAULT
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM
  - CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NONE
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE (*CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_BAUDRATE*)
- **CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_NUM (*CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_NUM*)**
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_0
  - CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_CUSTOM_NUM_1
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_RX_GPIO (*CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_RX_GPIO*)
- CONFIG_CONSOLE_UART_TX_GPIO (*CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART_TX_GPIO*)
- CONFIG_CXX_EXCEPTIONS (*CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS*)
- CONFIG_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE (*CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS (*CONFIG_COMPILER_DISABLE_GCC8_WARNINGS*)
- CONFIG_EFUSE_SECURE_VERSION_EMULATE (*CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_EFUSE_SECURE_VERSION_EMULATE*)
- CONFIG_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP_HOOK (*CONFIG_FREERTOS_ENABLE_STATIC_TASK_CLEAN_UP*)
- CONFIG_ESP32C3_MEMPROT_FEATURE (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE*)
- CONFIG_ESP32C3_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK*)
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEA*
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_MEMPROT_FEATURE (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE*)
- CONFIG_ESP32S2_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_MEMPROT_FEATURE_LOCK*)
- **CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC*)**
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_HALT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_GDBSTUB
- CONFIG_ESP32_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP*)
- **CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_DESTINATION (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION*)**
  - CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX
  - CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_DEST_NONE
- CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_TRAX_THRESH (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH*)
- **CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_DECODE (*CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_DECODE*)**
  - CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_DECODE_INFO
  - CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_DECODE_DISABLE
- CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM (*CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_MAX_TASKS_NUM*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_CORE_DUMP_UART_DELAY (*CONFIG_ESP_COREDUMP_UART_DELAY*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_GCOV_ENABLE (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE*)
- **CONFIG_ESP32_PANIC (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC*)**
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_HALT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT
  - CONFIG_ESP32S2_PANIC_GDBSTUB
- CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN (*CONFIG_PTHREAD_STACK_MIN*)
- **CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT (*CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_CORE_DEFAULT*)**
  - CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_PTHREAD_CORE_NO_AFFINITY
  - CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_PTHREAD_CORE_0
  - CONFIG_ESP32_DEFAULT_PTHREAD_CORE_1
- CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT (*CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_NAME_DEFAULT*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT (*CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_PRIO_DEFAULT*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT (*CONFIG_PTHREAD_TASK_STACK_SIZE_DEFAULT*)
- CONFIG_ESP32_RTC_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_RTC_EXT_XTAL_BOOTSTRAP_CYCLES*)
- CONFIG_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP (*CONFIG_LWIP_ESP_GRATUITOUS_ARP*)
- CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PD_FLASH (*CONFIG_ESP_SLEEP_POWER_DOWN_FLASH*)
- CONFIG_ESP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES*)

- CONFIG_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING (*CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_LOOP_PROFILING*)
- CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_ENABLED (*CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_ENC_ENABLED*)
- CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE (*CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_CACHE*)
- CONFIG_FLASH_ENCRYPTION_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENCRYPT (*CONFIG_SECURE_FLASH_UART_BOOTLOADER_ALLOW_ENC*)
- CONFIG_GARP_TMR_INTERVAL (*CONFIG_LWIP_GARP_TMR_INTERVAL*)
- CONFIG_GDBSTUB_MAX_TASKS (*CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_MAX_TASKS*)
- CONFIG_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS (*CONFIG_ESP_GDBSTUB_SUPPORT_TASKS*)
- CONFIG_INT_WDT (*CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT*)
- CONFIG_INT_WDT_CHECK_CPU1 (*CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_CHECK_CPU1*)
- CONFIG_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS (*CONFIG_ESP_INT_WDT_TIMEOUT_MS*)
- CONFIG_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_ESP_IPC_TASK_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_L2_TO_L3_COPY (*CONFIG_LWIP_L2_TO_L3_COPY*)
- **CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL (*CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_LOG_LEVEL*)**
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_NONE
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_ERROR
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_WARN
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_INFO
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_LOG_BOOTLOADER_LEVEL_VERBOSE
- CONFIG_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_ESP_MAIN_TASK_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_MAKE_WARN_UNDEFINED_VARIABLES (*CONFIG_SDK_MAKE_WARN_UNDEFINED_VARIABLES*)
- CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE (*CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_QUEUE_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT (*CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_NOTIFY_TIMEOUT*)
- CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID (*CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID*)
- CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_SLAVE_ID_SUPPORT*)
- CONFIG_MB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_FMB_CONTROLLER_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_MB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT (*CONFIG_FMB_EVENT_QUEUE_TIMEOUT*)
- CONFIG_MB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT (*CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_DELAY_MS_CONVERT*)
- CONFIG_MB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND (*CONFIG_FMB_MASTER_TIMEOUT_MS_RESPOND*)
- CONFIG_MB_QUEUE_LENGTH (*CONFIG_FMB_QUEUE_LENGTH*)
- CONFIG_MB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE (*CONFIG_FMB_SERIAL_BUF_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_MB_SERIAL_TASK_PRIO (*CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_PRIO*)
- CONFIG_MB_SERIAL_TASK_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_FMB_PORT_TASK_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_MB_TIMER_GROUP (*CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_GROUP*)
- CONFIG_MB_TIMER_INDEX (*CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_INDEX*)
- CONFIG_MB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED (*CONFIG_FMB_TIMER_PORT_ENABLED*)
- **CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD (*CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD*)**
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_9600B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_57600B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_115200B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_230400B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_921600B
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_2MB
  - CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER
- CONFIG_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL (*CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_MONITOR_BAUD_OTHER_VAL*)
- **CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL (*CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL*)**
  - CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_ENABLED
  - CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_SILENT
  - CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTIONS_DISABLED
- **CONFIG_OPTIMIZATION_COMPILER (*CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION*)**
  - CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_LEVEL_DEBUG
  - CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_LEVEL_RELEASE
- CONFIG_POST_EVENTS_FROM_IRAM_ISR (*CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_IRAM_ISR*)
- CONFIG_POST_EVENTS_FROM_ISR (*CONFIG_ESP_EVENT_POST_FROM_ISR*)
- CONFIG_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_CHAP_SUPPORT*)

- CONFIG_PPP_DEBUG_ON (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_DEBUG_ON*)
- CONFIG_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MPPE_SUPPORT*)
- CONFIG_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_MSCHAP_SUPPORT*)
- CONFIG_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_NOTIFY_PHASE_SUPPORT*)
- CONFIG_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_PAP_SUPPORT*)
- CONFIG_PPP_SUPPORT (*CONFIG_LWIP_PPP_SUPPORT*)
- CONFIG_PYTHON (*CONFIG_SDK_PYTHON*)
- CONFIG_REDUCE_PHY_TX_POWER (*CONFIG_ESP32_REDUCE_PHY_TX_POWER*)
- CONFIG_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN (*CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_HOST_PATH_MAX_LEN*)
- CONFIG_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS (*CONFIG_VFS_SEMIHOSTFS_MAX_MOUNT_POINTS*)
- **CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS (*CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_DANGEROUS_WRITE*)**
  - CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS_ABORTS
  - CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS_FAILS
  - CONFIG_SPI_FLASH_WRITING_DANGEROUS_REGIONS_ALLOWED
- **CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_MODE (*CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE*)**
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_NONE
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_NORM
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_STRONG
  - CONFIG_STACK_CHECK_ALL
- CONFIG_SUPPORT_TERMIOS (*CONFIG_VFS_SUPPORT_TERMIOS*)
- CONFIG_SUPPRESS_SELECT_DEBUG_OUTPUT (*CONFIG_VFS_SUPPRESS_SELECT_DEBUG_OUTPUT*)
- CONFIG_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_TASK_WDT (*CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT*)
- CONFIG_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0 (*CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU0*)
- CONFIG_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1 (*CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_CHECK_IDLE_TASK_CPU1*)
- CONFIG_TASK_WDT_PANIC (*CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_PANIC*)
- CONFIG_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S (*CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_TIMEOUT_S*)
- CONFIG_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*)
- **CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY*)**
  - CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_NO_AFFINITY
  - CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU0
  - CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY_CPU1
- CONFIG_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_TCP_MAXRTX (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MAXRTX*)
- CONFIG_TCP_MSL (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSL*)
- CONFIG_TCP_MSS (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_MSS*)
- **CONFIG_TCP_OVERSIZE (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_OVERSIZE*)**
  - CONFIG_TCP_OVERSIZE_MSS
  - CONFIG_TCP_OVERSIZE_QUARTER_MSS
  - CONFIG_TCP_OVERSIZE_DISABLE
- CONFIG_TCP_QUEUE_OOSEQ (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_QUEUE_OOSEQ*)
- CONFIG_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT*)
- CONFIG_TCP_SYNMAXRTX (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SYNMAXRTX*)
- CONFIG_TCP_WND_DEFAULT (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT*)
- CONFIG_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH (*CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_QUEUE_LENGTH*)
- CONFIG_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY (*CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_PRIORITY*)
- CONFIG_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH (*CONFIG_FREERTOS_TIMER_TASK_STACK_DEPTH*)
- CONFIG_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE (*CONFIG_ESP_TIMER_TASK_STACK_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_TOOLPREFIX (*CONFIG_SDK_TOOLPREFIX*)
- CONFIG_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE (*CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*)
- CONFIG_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT (*CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT*)
- CONFIG_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS (*CONFIG_COMPILER_WARN_WRITE_STRINGS*)

2.7.7 Customisations

Because IDF builds by default with *Warning On Undefined Variables*, when the Kconfig tool generates Makefiles (the `auto.conf` file) its behaviour has been customised. In normal Kconfig, a variable which is set to "no" is undefined. In IDF's version of Kconfig, this variable is defined in the Makefile but has an empty value.

(Note that `ifdef` and `ifndef` can still be used in Makefiles, because they test if a variable is defined *and has a non-empty value*.)

When generating header files for C & C++, the behaviour is not customised - so `#ifdef` can be used to test if a boolean config item is set or not.

2.8 Error Codes Reference

This section lists various error code constants defined in ESP-IDF.

For general information about error codes in ESP-IDF, see *Error Handling*.

ESP_FAIL (-1): Generic esp_err_t code indicating failure

ESP_OK (0): esp_err_t value indicating success (no error)

ESP_ERR_NO_MEM **(0x101)**: Out of memory

ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG **(0x102)**: Invalid argument

ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE **(0x103)**: Invalid state

ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE **(0x104)**: Invalid size

ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND **(0x105)**: Requested resource not found

ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED **(0x106)**: Operation or feature not supported

ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT **(0x107)**: Operation timed out

ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE **(0x108)**: Received response was invalid

ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC **(0x109)**: CRC or checksum was invalid

ESP_ERR_INVALID_VERSION **(0x10a)**: Version was invalid

ESP_ERR_INVALID_MAC **(0x10b)**: MAC address was invalid

ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED **(0x201)**

ESP_ERR_NVS_BASE **(0x1100)**: Starting number of error codes

ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED **(0x1101)**: The storage driver is not initialized

ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND **(0x1102)**: Id namespace doesn't exist yet and mode is NVS_READONLY

ESP_ERR_NVS_TYPE_MISMATCH **(0x1103)**: The type of set or get operation doesn't match the type of value stored in NVS

ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY **(0x1104)**: Storage handle was opened as read only

ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE **(0x1105)**: There is not enough space in the underlying storage to save the value

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME **(0x1106)**: Namespace name doesn't satisfy constraints

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE **(0x1107)**: Handle has been closed or is NULL

ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED **(0x1108)**: The value wasn't updated because flash write operation has failed. The value was written however, and update will be finished after re-initialization of nvs, provided that flash operation doesn't fail again.

ESP_ERR_NVS_KEY_TOO_LONG **(0x1109)**: Key name is too long

ESP_ERR_NVS_PAGE_FULL **(0x110a)**: Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_STATE **(0x110b)**: NVS is in an inconsistent state due to a previous error. Call nvs_flash_init and nvs_open again, then retry.

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH **(0x110c)**: String or blob length is not sufficient to store data

ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES **(0x110d)**: NVS partition doesn't contain any empty pages. This may happen if NVS partition was truncated. Erase the whole partition and call nvs_flash_init again.

ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG **(0x110e)**: String or blob length is longer than supported by the implementation

ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND **(0x110f)**: Partition with specified name is not found in the partition table

ESP_ERR_NVS_NEW_VERSION_FOUND **(0x1110)**: NVS partition contains data in new format and cannot be recognized by this version of code

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_ENCR_FAILED **(0x1111)**: XTS encryption failed while writing NVS entry

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_DECR_FAILED **(0x1112)**: XTS decryption failed while reading NVS entry

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_FAILED **(0x1113)**: XTS configuration setting failed

ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_NOT_FOUND **(0x1114)**: XTS configuration not found

ESP_ERR_NVS_ENCR_NOT_SUPPORTED **(0x1115)**: NVS encryption is not supported in this version

ESP_ERR_NVS_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED **(0x1116)**: NVS key partition is uninitialized

ESP_ERR_NVS_CORRUPT_KEY_PART **(0x1117)**: NVS key partition is corrupt

ESP_ERR_NVS_CONTENT_DIFFERS **(0x1118)**: Internal error; never returned by nvs API functions. NVS key is different in comparison

ESP_ERR_NVS_WRONG_ENCRYPTION **(0x1119)**: NVS partition is marked as encrypted with generic flash encryption. This is forbidden since the NVS encryption works differently.

ESP_ERR_ULP_BASE **(0x1200)**: Offset for ULP-related error codes

ESP_ERR_ULP_SIZE_TOO_BIG **(0x1201)**: Program doesn't fit into RTC memory reserved for the ULP

ESP_ERR_ULP_INVALID_LOAD_ADDR **(0x1202)**: Load address is outside of RTC memory reserved for the ULP

ESP_ERR_ULP_DUPLICATE_LABEL **(0x1203)**: More than one label with the same number was defined

ESP_ERR_ULP_UNDEFINED_LABEL **(0x1204)**: Branch instructions references an undefined label

ESP_ERR_ULP_BRANCH_OUT_OF_RANGE **(0x1205)**: Branch target is out of range of B instruction (try replacing with BX)

ESP_ERR_OTA_BASE **(0x1500)**: Base error code for ota_ops api

ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT **(0x1501)**: Error if request was to write or erase the current running partition

ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID **(0x1502)**: Error if OTA data partition contains invalid content

ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED **(0x1503)**: Error if OTA app image is invalid

ESP_ERR_OTA_SMALL_SEC_VER **(0x1504)**: Error if the firmware has a secure version less than the running firmware.

ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED **(0x1505)**: Error if flash does not have valid firmware in passive partition and hence rollback is not possible

ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE **(0x1506)**: Error if current active firmware is still marked in pending validation state (ESP_OTA_IMG_PENDING_VERIFY), essentially first boot of firmware image post upgrade and hence firmware upgrade is not possible

ESP_ERR_EFUSE **(0x1600)**: Base error code for efuse api.

ESP_OK_EFUSE_CNT **(0x1601)**: OK the required number of bits is set.

ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL **(0x1602)**: Error field is full.

ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG **(0x1603)**: Error repeated programming of programmed bits is strictly forbidden.

ESP_ERR_CODING **(0x1604)**: Error while a encoding operation.

ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS **(0x1605)**: Error not enough unused key blocks available

ESP_ERR_IMAGE_BASE **(0x2000)**

ESP_ERR_IMAGE_FLASH_FAIL **(0x2001)**

ESP_ERR_IMAGE_INVALID **(0x2002)**

ESP_ERR_WIFI_BASE **(0x3000)**: Starting number of WiFi error codes

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT **(0x3001)**: WiFi driver was not installed by esp_wifi_init

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED **(0x3002)**: WiFi driver was not started by esp_wifi_start

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STOPPED **(0x3003)**: WiFi driver was not stopped by esp_wifi_stop

ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF **(0x3004)**: WiFi interface error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE **(0x3005)**: WiFi mode error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE **(0x3006)**: WiFi internal state error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN **(0x3007)**: WiFi internal control block of station or soft-AP error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NVS **(0x3008)**: WiFi internal NVS module error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC **(0x3009)**: MAC address is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID **(0x300a)**: SSID is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD **(0x300b)**: Password is invalid

ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT **(0x300c)**: Timeout error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WAKE_FAIL **(0x300d)**: WiFi is in sleep state(RF closed) and wakeup fail

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WOULD_BLOCK **(0x300e)**: The caller would block

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT **(0x300f)**: Station still in disconnect status

ESP_ERR_WIFI_POST **(0x3012)**: Failed to post the event to WiFi task

ESP_ERR_WIFI_INIT_STATE **(0x3013)**: Invalid WiFi state when init/deinit is called

ESP_ERR_WIFI_STOP_STATE **(0x3014)**: Returned when WiFi is stopping

ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_ASSOC **(0x3015)**: The WiFi connection is not associated

ESP_ERR_WIFI_TX_DISALLOW **(0x3016)**: The WiFi TX is disallowed

ESP_ERR_WIFI_REGISTRAR **(0x3033)**: WPS registrar is not supported

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WPS_TYPE **(0x3034)**: WPS type error

ESP_ERR_WIFI_WPS_SM **(0x3035)**: WPS state machine is not initialized

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_BASE **(0x3064)**: ESPNOW error number base.

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT **(0x3065)**: ESPNOW is not initialized.

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG **(0x3066)**: Invalid argument

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM **(0x3067)**: Out of memory

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL **(0x3068)**: ESPNOW peer list is full

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND **(0x3069)**: ESPNOW peer is not found

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL **(0x306a)**: Internal error

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST **(0x306b)**: ESPNOW peer has existed

ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF **(0x306c)**: Interface error

ESP_ERR_DPP_FAILURE **(0x3097)**: Generic failure during DPP Operation

ESP_ERR_DPP_TX_FAILURE **(0x3098)**: DPP Frame Tx failed OR not Acked

ESP_ERR_DPP_INVALID_ATTR **(0x3099)**: Encountered invalid DPP Attribute

ESP_ERR_MESH_BASE **(0x4000)**: Starting number of MESH error codes

ESP_ERR_MESH_WIFI_NOT_START **(0x4001)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT **(0x4002)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG **(0x4003)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START **(0x4004)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_SUPPORT **(0x4005)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED **(0x4006)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY **(0x4007)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT **(0x4008)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU **(0x4009)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT **(0x400a)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED **(0x400b)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FAIL **(0x400c)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL **(0x400d)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_PARENT_FOUND **(0x400e)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND **(0x400f)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_NULL **(0x4010)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_UNKNOWN **(0x4011)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_XON_NO_WINDOW **(0x4012)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_INTERFACE **(0x4013)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD_DUPLICATE **(0x4014)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD **(0x4015)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_VOTING **(0x4016)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_XMIT **(0x4017)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_READ **(0x4018)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_PS **(0x4019)**

ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE **(0x401a)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_BASE **(0x5000)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INVALID_PARAMS **(0x5001)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_IF_NOT_READY **(0x5002)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCPC_START_FAILED **(0x5003)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STARTED **(0x5004)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_ALREADY_STOPPED **(0x5005)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_NO_MEM **(0x5006)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DHCP_NOT_STOPPED **(0x5007)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DRIVER_ATTACH_FAILED **(0x5008)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_INIT_FAILED **(0x5009)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_NETIF_DNS_NOT_CONFIGURED **(0x500a)**

ESP_ERR_FLASH_BASE **(0x6000)**: Starting number of flash error codes

ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_FAIL **(0x6001)**

ESP_ERR_FLASH_OP_TIMEOUT **(0x6002)**

ESP_ERR_FLASH_NOT_INITIALISED **(0x6003)**

ESP_ERR_FLASH_UNSUPPORTED_HOST **(0x6004)**

ESP_ERR_FLASH_UNSUPPORTED_CHIP **(0x6005)**

ESP_ERR_FLASH_PROTECTED **(0x6006)**

ESP_ERR_HTTP_BASE **(0x7000)**: Starting number of HTTP error codes

ESP_ERR_HTTP_MAX_REDIRECT **(0x7001)**: The error exceeds the number of HTTP redirects

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECT **(0x7002)**: Error open the HTTP connection

ESP_ERR_HTTP_WRITE_DATA **(0x7003)**: Error write HTTP data

ESP_ERR_HTTP_FETCH_HEADER **(0x7004)**: Error read HTTP header from server

ESP_ERR_HTTP_INVALID_TRANSPORT **(0x7005)**: There are no transport support for the input scheme

ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTING **(0x7006)**: HTTP connection hasn't been established yet

ESP_ERR_HTTP_EAGAIN **(0x7007)**: Mapping of errno EAGAIN to esp_err_t

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_BASE **(0x8000)**: Starting number of ESP-TLS error codes

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_CANNOT_RESOLVE_HOSTNAME **(0x8001)**: Error if hostname couldn't be resolved upon tls connection

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_CANNOT_CREATE_SOCKET **(0x8002)**: Failed to create socket

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_UNSUPPORTED_PROTOCOL_FAMILY **(0x8003)**: Unsupported protocol family

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_FAILED_CONNECT_TO_HOST **(0x8004)**: Failed to connect to host

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_SOCKET_SETOPT_FAILED **(0x8005)**: failed to set/get socket option

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_CERT_PARTLY_OK **(0x8006)**: mbedtls parse certificates was partly successful

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_CTR_DRBG_SEED_FAILED **(0x8007)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_SET_HOSTNAME_FAILED **(0x8008)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULTS_FAILED **(0x8009)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONF_ALPN_PROTOCOLS_FAILED **(0x800a)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_X509_CRT_PARSE_FAILED **(0x800b)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONF_OWN_CERT_FAILED **(0x800c)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_SETUP_FAILED **(0x800d)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_WRITE_FAILED **(0x800e)**: mbedtls api returned error

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_PK_PARSE_KEY_FAILED **(0x800f)**: mbedtls api returned failed

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_HANDSHAKE_FAILED **(0x8010)**: mbedtls api returned failed

ESP_ERR_MBEDTLS_SSL_CONF_PSK_FAILED **(0x8011)**: mbedtls api returned failed

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_CONNECTION_TIMEOUT **(0x8012)**: new connection in esp_tls_low_level_conn connection timeouted

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_SET_HOSTNAME_FAILED **(0x8013)**: wolfSSL api returned error

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_CONF_ALPN_PROTOCOLS_FAILED **(0x8014)**: wolfSSL api returned error

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_CERT_VERIFY_SETUP_FAILED **(0x8015)**: wolfSSL api returned error

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_KEY_VERIFY_SETUP_FAILED **(0x8016)**: wolfSSL api returned error

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_HANDSHAKE_FAILED **(0x8017)**: wolfSSL api returned failed

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_CTX_SETUP_FAILED **(0x8018)**: wolfSSL api returned failed

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_SETUP_FAILED **(0x8019)**: wolfSSL api returned failed

ESP_ERR_WOLFSSL_SSL_WRITE_FAILED **(0x801a)**: wolfSSL api returned failed

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_SE_FAILED **(0x801b)**

ESP_ERR_ESP_TLS_TCP_CLOSED_FIN **(0x801c)**

ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_BASE **(0x9000)**

ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS **(0x9001)**

ESP_ERR_PING_BASE **(0xa000)**

ESP_ERR_PING_INVALID_PARAMS **(0xa001)**

ESP_ERR_PING_NO_MEM **(0xa002)**

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_BASE **(0xb000)**: Starting number of HTTPD error codes

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL **(0xb001)**: All slots for registering URI handlers have been consumed

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS **(0xb002)**: URI handler with same method and target URI already registered

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ **(0xb003)**: Invalid request pointer

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC **(0xb004)**: Result string truncated

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR **(0xb005)**: Response header field larger than supported

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND **(0xb006)**: Error occured while sending response packet

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM **(0xb007)**: Failed to dynamically allocate memory for resource

ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK **(0xb008)**: Failed to launch server task/thread

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_BASE **(0xc000)**: Starting number of HW cryptography module error codes

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_HMAC_FAIL **(0xc001)**: HMAC peripheral problem

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_KEY **(0xc002)**

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_DIGEST **(0xc004)**

ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_PADDING **(0xc005)**

Chapter 3

ESP32-S2 Hardware Reference

3.1 ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards

Espressif designs and manufactures different modules and development boards to help users evaluate the potential of the ESP32-S2 family of chips.

This document provides description of modules and development boards currently available from Espressif.

Note: For description of previous versions of modules and development boards as well as for description of discontinued ones, please go to Section *Previous Versions of ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards*.

3.1.1 Modules

This is a family of ESP32-S2-based modules with some integrated key components, including a crystal oscillator and an antenna matching circuit. The modules constitute ready-made solutions for integration into final products. If combined with a few extra components, such as a programming interface, bootstrapping resistors, and pin headers, these modules can also be used for evaluation of ESP32-S2' s functionality.

The key characteristics of these modules are summarized in the table below. Some additional details are covered in the following sections.

Module	Chip	Flash, MB	PSRAM, MB	Ant.	Dimensions, mm
ESP32-S2-WROOM-32	ESP32-S2	2	N/A	MIFA	16 x 23 x 3

- MIFA - Meandered Inverted-F Antenna
- U.FL - U.FL / IPEX antenna connector

3.1.2 Development Boards

ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit is a development kit by Espressif that consists of one main board and several extension boards. This kit is intended to provide users with tools for development of human-computer interaction applications based on the ESP32-S2 chip.

Documentation

- *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.3*

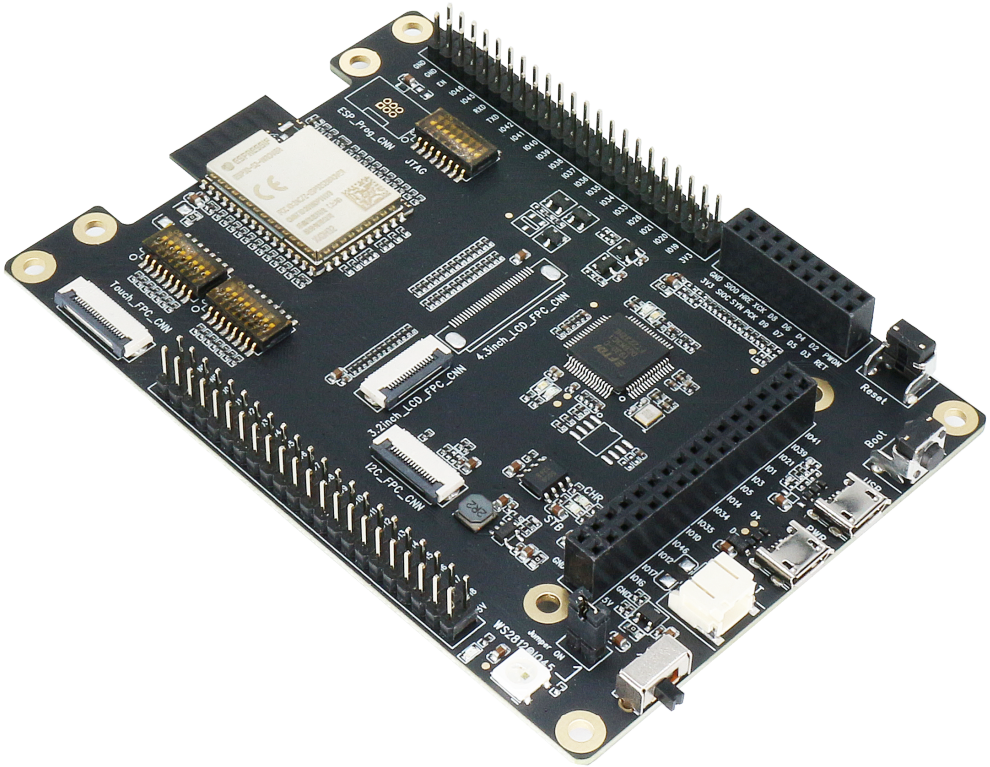


Fig. 1: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 (click to enlarge)

Previous Versions

- *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*

3.1.3 Related Documents

- *Previous Versions of ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards*

3.2 Previous Versions of ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards

This sections contains overview and links to documentation of previous version ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards that have been replaced with newer versions or discontinued. It is maintained for convenience of users as previous versions of some modules and boards are still in use and some may still be available for purchase.

3.2.1 Modules

So far, no modules have been updated or discontinued.

3.2.2 Development Boards

To see the latest development boards, please refer to section *ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards*.

ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2

The ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 kit is a development kit by Espressif that consists of one main board and several extension boards. This kit is intended to provide users with tools for development of human-computer interaction applications based on the ESP32-S2 chip.

Documentation

- *ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 Kit v1.2*

3.2.3 Related Documents

- *ESP32-S2 Modules and Boards*

3.3 Chip Series Comparison

The comparison below covers key features of chips supported by ESP-IDF. For the full list of features please refer to respective datasheets in Section *Related Documents*.

Table 1: Chip Series Comparison

Feature	ESP32 Series	ESP32-S2 Series	ESP32-C3 Series
Launch year	2016	2020	2020
Variants	See ESP32 Datasheet (PDF)	See ESP32-S2 Datasheet (PDF)	See ESP32-C3 Datasheet (PDF)

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

Feature	ESP32 Series	ESP32-S2 Series	ESP32-C3 Series
Core	Xtensa® dual-core 32-bit LX6 with 600 MIPS (in total); 200 MIPS for ESP32-U4WDH/ESP32-S0WD (single-core variants); 400 MIPS for ESP32-D2WD	Xtensa® single-core 32-bit LX7 with 300 MIPS	32-bit single-core RISC-V
Wi-Fi protocols	802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz	802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz	802.11 b/g/n, 2.4 GHz
Bluetooth®	Bluetooth v4.2 BR/EDR and Bluetooth Low Energy	✖	Bluetooth 5.0
Typical frequency	240 MHz (160 MHz for ESP32-S0WD, ESP32-D2WD, and ESP32-U4WDH)	240 MHz	160 MHz
SRAM	520 KB	320 KB	400 KB
ROM	448 KB for booting and core functions	128 KB for booting and core functions	384 KB for booting and core functions
Embedded flash	2 MB, 4 MB, or none, depending on variants	2 MB, 4 MB, or none, depending on variants	4 MB or none, depending on variants
External flash	Up to 16 MB device, address 11 MB + 248 KB each time	Up to 1 GB device, address 11.5 MB each time	Up to 16 MB device, address 8 MB each time
External RAM	Up to 8 MB device, address 4 MB each time	Up to 1 GB device, address 11.5 MB each time	✖
Cache	✓ Two-way set associative	✓ Four-way set associative, independent instruction cache and data cache	✓ Eight-way set associative, 32-bit data/instruction bus width
Peripherals			
ADC	Two 12-bit, 18 channels	Two 13-bit, 20 channels	Two 12-bit SAR ADCs, at most 6 channels
DAC	Two 8-bit channels	Two 8-bit channels	✖
Temperature sensor	✖	1	1
Touch sensor	10	14	✖
Hall sensor	1	✖	✖
GPIO	34	43	22
SPI	4	4 with more modes, compared with ESP32	3
LCD interface	1	1	✖
UART	3	2 [1]	2 [1]
I2C	2	2	1
I2S	2, can be configured to operate with 8/16/32/40/48-bit resolution as an input or output channel.	1, can be configured to operate with 8/16/24/32/48/64-bit resolution as an input or output channel.	1, can be configured to operate with 8/16/24/32-bit resolution as an input or output channel.
Camera interface	1	1	✖
DMA	Dedicated DMA to UART, SPI, I2S, SDIO slave, SD/MMC host, EMAC, BT, and Wi-Fi	Dedicated DMA to UART, SPI, AES, SHA, I2S, and ADC Controller	General-purpose, 3 TX channels, 3 RX channels
RMT	8 channels	4 channels [1], can be configured to TX/RX channels	4 channels [2], 2 TX channels, 2 RX channels

Continued on next page

Table 1 – continued from previous page

Feature	ESP32 Series	ESP32-S2 Series	ESP32-C3 Series
Pulse counter	8 channels	4 channels [1]	✖
LED PWM	16 channels	8 channels [1]	6 channels [2]
USB OTG	✖	1	✖
TWAI® controller (compatible with ISO 11898-1)	1	1	1
SD/SDIO/MMC host controller	1	✖	✖
SDIO slave controller	1	✖	✖
Ethernet MAC	1	✖	✖
ULP	ULP FSM	PicoRV32 core with 8 KB SRAM, ULP FSM with more instructions	✖
Debug Assist	✖	✖	1
Security			
Secure boot	✓	✓ Faster and safer, compared with ESP32	✓ Faster and safer, compared with ESP32
Flash encryption	✓	✓ Support for PSRAM encryption. Safer, compared with ESP32	✓ Safer, compared with ESP32
OTP	1024-bit	4096-bit	4096-bit
AES	✓ AES-128, AES-192, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197)	✓ AES-128, AES-192, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197)	✓ AES-128, AES-256 (FIPS PUB 197)
HASH	SHA-1, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512 (FIPS PUB 180-4)	SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256, SHA-384, SHA-512, SHA-512/224, SHA-512/256, SHA-512/t (FIPS PUB 180-4); DMA support	SHA-1, SHA-224, SHA-256 (FIPS PUB 180-4)
RSA	Up to 4096 bits	Up to 4096 bits, improved acceleration options compared with ESP32	Up to 3072 bits
RNG	✓	✓	✓
HMAC	✖	✓	✓
Digital signature	✖	✓	✓
XTS	✖	✓ XTS-AES-128, XTS-AES-256	✓ XTS-AES-128
Other			
Deep-sleep (ULP sensor-monitored pattern)	100 µA (when ADC work with a duty cycle of 1%)	22 µA (when touch sensors work with a duty cycle of 1%)	No such pattern
Size	QFN48 5*5, 6*6, depending on variants	QFN56 7*7	QFN32 5*5

Note 1: Reduced chip area compared with ESP32

Note 2: Reduced chip area compared with ESP32 and ESP32-S2

Note 3: Die size: ESP32-C3 < ESP32-S2 < ESP32

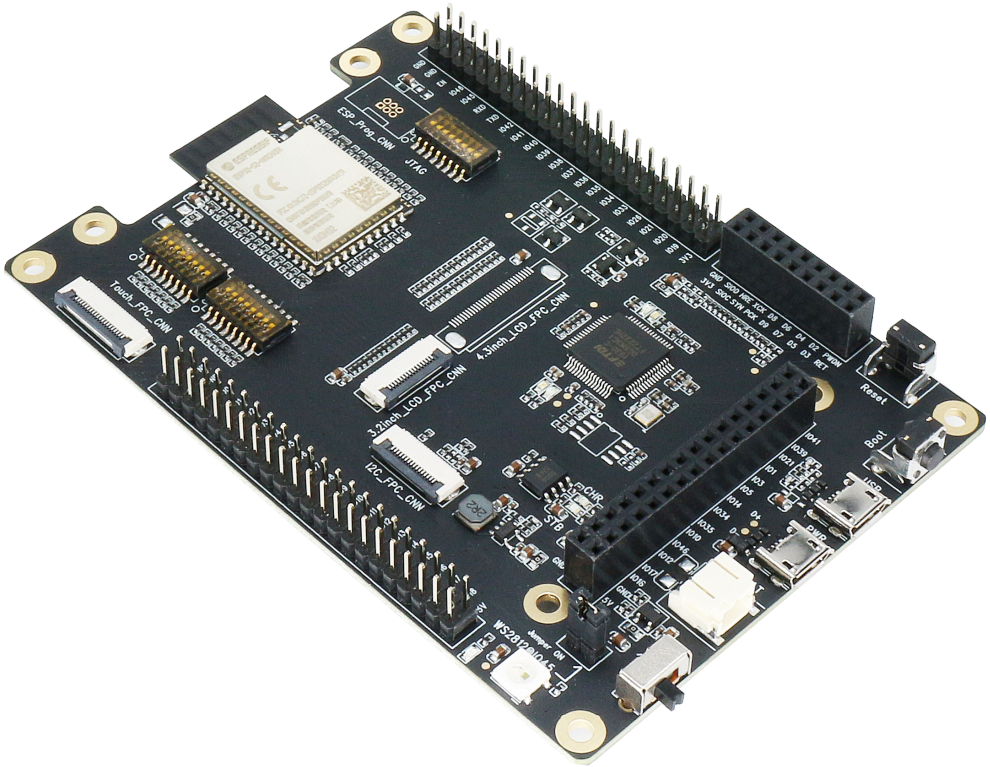


Fig. 2: ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 (click to enlarge)

3.3.1 Related Documents

- ESP32 Datasheet (PDF)
- ESP32-PICO Datasheets (PDF)
  - ESP32-PICO-D4
  - ESP32-PICO-V3
  - ESP32-PICO-V3-02
- ESP32-S2 Datasheet (PDF)
- ESP32-C3 Datasheet (PDF)
- ESP Product Selector

Chapter 4

API Guides

4.1 Application Level Tracing library

4.1.1 Overview

IDF provides useful feature for program behavior analysis: application level tracing. It is implemented in the corresponding library and can be enabled in menuconfig. This feature allows to transfer arbitrary data between host and ESP32-S2 via JTAG interface with small overhead on program execution.

Developers can use this library to send application specific state of execution to the host and receive commands or other type of info in the opposite direction at runtime. The main use cases of this library are:

1. Collecting application specific data, see *Application Specific Tracing*
2. Lightweight logging to the host, see *Logging to Host*
3. System behavior analysis, see *System Behavior Analysis with SEGGER SystemView*
4. Source code coverage, see *Gcov (Source Code Coverage)*

Tracing components when working over JTAG interface are shown in the figure below.

4.1.2 Modes of Operation

The library supports two modes of operation:

Post-mortem mode. This is the default mode. The mode does not need interaction with the host side. In this mode tracing module does not check whether host has read all the data from *HW UP BUFFER* buffer and overwrites old data with the new ones. This mode is useful when only the latest trace data are interesting to the user, e.g. for analyzing program' s behavior just before the crash. Host can read the data later on upon user request, e.g. via special OpenOCD command in case of working via JTAG interface.

Streaming mode. Tracing module enters this mode when host connects to ESP32-S2. In this mode before writing new data to *HW UP BUFFER* tracing module checks that there is enough space in it and if necessary waits for the host to read data and free enough memory. Maximum waiting time is controlled via timeout values passed by users to corresponding API routines. So when application tries to write data to trace buffer using finite value of the maximum waiting time it is possible situation that this data will be dropped. Especially this is true for tracing from time critical code (ISRs, OS scheduler code etc.) when infinite timeouts can lead to system malfunction. In order to avoid loss of such critical data developers can enable additional data buffering via menuconfig option *CONFIG_APPTRACE_PENDING_DATA_SIZE_MAX*. This macro specifies the size of data which can be buffered in above conditions. The option can also help to overcome situation when data transfer to the host is temporarily slowed down, e.g due to USB bus congestions etc. But it will not help when average bitrate of trace data stream exceeds HW interface capabilities.

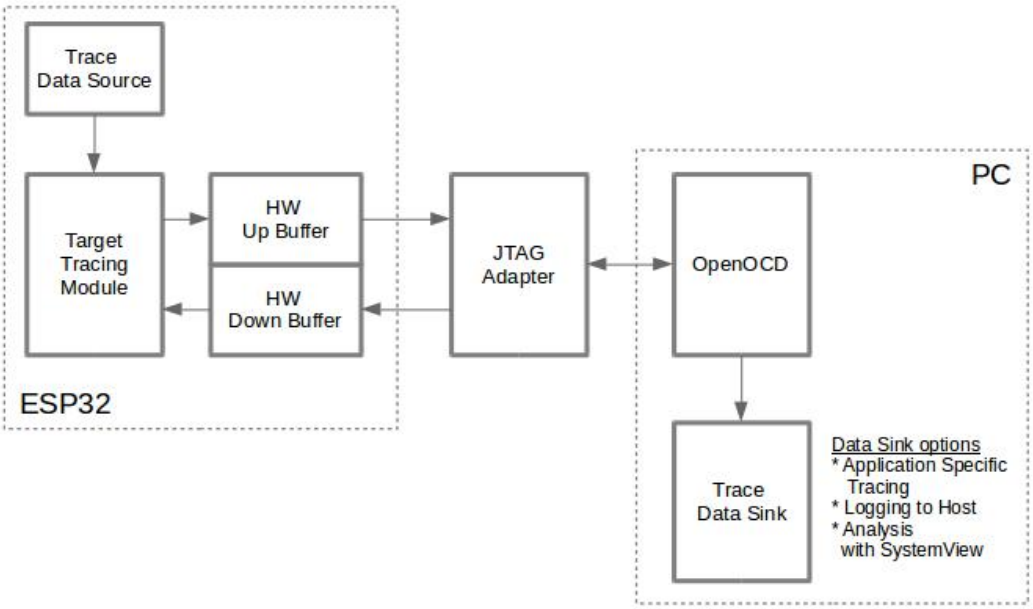


Fig. 1: Tracing Components when Working Over JTAG

4.1.3 Configuration Options and Dependencies

Using of this feature depends on two components:

1. **Host side:** Application tracing is done over JTAG, so it needs OpenOCD to be set up and running on host machine. For instructions on how to set it up, please see *JTAG Debugging* for details.
2. **Target side:** Application tracing functionality can be enabled in menuconfig. *Component config* > *Application Level Tracing* menu allows selecting destination for the trace data (HW interface for transport). Choosing any of the destinations automatically enables `CONFIG_APPTRACE_ENABLE` option.

Note: In order to achieve higher data rates and minimize number of dropped packets it is recommended to optimize setting of JTAG clock frequency, so it is at maximum and still provides stable operation of JTAG, see *Optimize JTAG speed*.

There are two additional menuconfig options not mentioned above:

1. *Threshold for flushing last trace data to host on panic* (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_POSTMORTEM_FLUSH_THRESH*). This option is necessary due to the nature of working over JTAG. In that mode trace data are exposed to the host in 16 KB blocks. In post-mortem mode when one block is filled it is exposed to the host and the previous one becomes unavailable. In other words trace data are overwritten in 16 KB granularity. On panic the latest data from the current input block are exposed to host and host can read them for post-analysis. System panic may occur when very small amount of data are not exposed to the host yet. In this case the previous 16 KB of collected data will be lost and host will see the latest, but very small piece of the trace. It can be insufficient to diagnose the problem. This menuconfig option allows avoiding such situations. It controls the threshold for flushing data in case of panic. For example user can decide that it needs not less then 512 bytes of the recent trace data, so if there is less then 512 bytes of pending data at the moment of panic they will not be flushed and will not overwrite previous 16 KB. The option is only meaningful in post-mortem mode and when working over JTAG.
2. *Timeout for flushing last trace data to host on panic* (*CONFIG_APPTRACE_ONPANIC_HOST_FLUSH_TMO*). The option is only meaningful in streaming mode and controls the maximum time tracing module will wait for the host to read the last data in case of panic.

4.1.4 How to use this library

This library provides API for transferring arbitrary data between host and ESP32-S2. When enabled in menuconfig target application tracing module is initialized automatically at the system startup, so all what the user needs to do is to call corresponding API to send, receive or flush the data.

Application Specific Tracing

In general user should decide what type of data should be transferred in every direction and how these data must be interpreted (processed). The following steps must be performed to transfer data between target and host:

1. On target side user should implement algorithms for writing trace data to the host. Piece of code below shows an example how to do this.

```
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
char buf[] = "Hello World!";
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_write(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, buf, strlen(buf),␣
↪ESP_APPTRACE_TMO_INFINITE);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to write data to host!");
    return res;
}
```

`esp_apptrace_write()` function uses memcpy to copy user data to the internal buffer. In some cases it can be more optimal to use `esp_apptrace_buffer_get()` and `esp_apptrace_buffer_put()` functions. They allow developers to allocate buffer and fill it themselves. The following piece of code shows how to do this.

```
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
int number = 10;
char *ptr = (char *)esp_apptrace_buffer_get(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, 32, 100/
↪*tmo in us*/);
if (ptr == NULL) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to get buffer!");
    return ESP_FAIL;
}
sprintf(ptr, "Here is the number %d", number);
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_buffer_put(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, ptr, 100/*tmo␣
↪in us*/);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    /* in case of error host tracing tool (e.g. OpenOCD) will report␣
↪incomplete user buffer */
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to put buffer!");
    return res;
}
```

Also according to his needs user may want to receive data from the host. Piece of code below shows an example how to do this.

```
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
char buf[32];
char down_buf[32];
size_t sz = sizeof(buf);

/* config down buffer */
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_config(down_buf, sizeof(down_buf));
/* check for incoming data and read them if any */
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_read(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, buf, &sz, 0/*do not␣
↪wait*/);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to read data from host!");
    return res;
}
if (sz > 0) {
    /* we have data, process them */
    ...
}
```

`esp_apptrace_read()` function uses memcpy to copy host data to user buffer. In some cases it can be more optimal to use `esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get()` and `esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put()` functions. They allow developers to occupy chunk of read buffer and process it in-place. The following piece of code shows how to do this.

```
#include "esp_app_trace.h"
...
char down_buf[32];
uint32_t *number;
size_t sz = 32;

/* config down buffer */
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_config(down_buf, sizeof(down_buf));
char *ptr = (char *)esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, &sz,␣
↪100/*tmo in us*/);
if (ptr == NULL) {
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to get buffer!");
    return ESP_FAIL;
}
if (sz > 4) {
    number = (uint32_t *)ptr;
    printf("Here is the number %d", *number);
} else {
    printf("No data");
}
esp_err_t res = esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put(ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX, ptr, 100/
↪*tmo in us*/);
if (res != ESP_OK) {
    /* in case of error host tracing tool (e.g. OpenOCD) will report␣
↪incomplete user buffer */
    ESP_LOGE(TAG, "Failed to put buffer!");
    return res;
}
```

2. The next step is to build the program image and download it to the target as described in the *Getting Started Guide*.
3. Run OpenOCD (see *JTAG Debugging*).
4. Connect to OpenOCD telnet server. It can be done using the following command in terminal `telnet <oocd_host> 4444`. If telnet session is opened on the same machine which runs OpenOCD you can use `localhost` as `<oocd_host>` in the command above.
5. Start trace data collection using special OpenOCD command. This command will transfer tracing data and redirect them to specified file or socket (currently only files are supported as trace data destination). For description of the corresponding commands see *OpenOCD Application Level Tracing Commands*.
6. The final step is to process received data. Since format of data is defined by user the processing stage is out of the scope of this document. Good starting points for data processor are python scripts in `$IDF_PATH/tools/esp_app_trace`: `apptrace_proc.py` (used for feature tests) and `logtrace_proc.py` (see more details in section *Logging to Host*).

OpenOCD Application Level Tracing Commands *HW UP BUFFER* is shared between user data blocks and filling of the allocated memory is performed on behalf of the API caller (in task or ISR context). In multithreading environment it can happen that task/ISR which fills the buffer is preempted by another high priority task/ISR. So

it is possible situation that user data preparation process is not completed at the moment when that chunk is read by the host. To handle such conditions tracing module prepends all user data chunks with header which contains allocated user buffer size (2 bytes) and length of actually written data (2 bytes). So total length of the header is 4 bytes. OpenOCD command which reads trace data reports error when it reads incomplete user data chunk, but in any case it puts contents of the whole user chunk (including unfilled area) to output file.

Below is the description of available OpenOCD application tracing commands.

Note: Currently OpenOCD does not provide commands to send arbitrary user data to the target.

Command usage:

```
esp apptrace [start <options>] | [stop] | [status] | [dump <cores_num> <outfile>]
```

Sub-commands:

`start` Start tracing (continuous streaming).
`stop` Stop tracing.
`status` Get tracing status.
`dump` Dump all data from (post-mortem dump).

Start command syntax:

```
start <outfile> [poll_period [trace_size [stop_tmo [wait4halt [skip_size]]]]
```

`outfile` Path to file to save data from both CPUs. This argument should have the following format: `file://path/to/file`.
`poll_period` Data polling period (in ms) for available trace data. If greater than 0 then command runs in non-blocking mode. By default 1 ms.
`trace_size` Maximum size of data to collect (in bytes). Tracing is stopped after specified amount of data is received. By default -1 (trace size stop trigger is disabled).
`stop_tmo` Idle timeout (in sec). Tracing is stopped if there is no data for specified period of time. By default -1 (disable this stop trigger). Optionally set it to value longer than longest pause between tracing commands from target.
`wait4halt` If 0 start tracing immediately, otherwise command waits for the target to be halted (after reset, by breakpoint etc.) and then automatically resumes it and starts tracing. By default 0.
`skip_size` Number of bytes to skip at the start. By default 0.

Note: If `poll_period` is 0, OpenOCD telnet command line will not be available until tracing is stopped. You must stop it manually by resetting the board or pressing Ctrl+C in OpenOCD window (not one with the telnet session). Another option is to set `trace_size` and wait until this size of data is collected. At this point tracing stops automatically.

Command usage examples:

1. Collect 2048 bytes of tracing data to a file "trace.log". The file will be saved in "openocd-esp32" directory.

   ```
   esp apptrace start file://trace.log 1 2048 5 0 0
   ```

   The tracing data will be retrieved and saved in non-blocking mode. This process will stop automatically after 2048 bytes are collected, or if no data are available for more than 5 seconds.

   Note: Tracing data is buffered before it is made available to OpenOCD. If you see "Data timeout!" message, then the target is likely sending not enough data to empty the buffer to OpenOCD before expiration of timeout. Either increase the timeout or use a function `esp_apptrace_flush()` to flush the data on specific intervals.

   ---

2. Retrieve tracing data indefinitely in non-blocking mode.

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 1 -1 -1 0 0
```

There is no limitation on the size of collected data and there is no any data timeout set. This process may be stopped by issuing `esp apptrace stop` command on OpenOCD telnet prompt, or by pressing Ctrl+C in OpenOCD window.

3. Retrieve tracing data and save them indefinitely.

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 0 -1 -1 0 0
```

OpenOCD telnet command line prompt will not be available until tracing is stopped. To stop tracing press Ctrl+C in OpenOCD window.

4. Wait for target to be halted. Then resume target's operation and start data retrieval. Stop after collecting 2048 bytes of data:

```
esp apptrace start file://trace.log 0 2048 -1 1 0
```

To configure tracing immediately after reset use the openocd `reset halt` command.

Logging to Host

IDF implements useful feature: logging to host via application level tracing library. This is a kind of semihosting when all *ESP_LOGx* calls send strings to be printed to the host instead of UART. This can be useful because "printing to host" eliminates some steps performed when logging to UART. The most part of work is done on the host.

By default IDF's logging library uses vprintf-like function to write formatted output to dedicated UART. In general it involves the following steps:

1. Format string is parsed to obtain type of each argument.
2. According to its type every argument is converted to string representation.
3. Format string combined with converted arguments is sent to UART.

Though implementation of vprintf-like function can be optimized to a certain level, all steps above have to be performed in any case and every step takes some time (especially item 3). So it frequently occurs that with additional log added to the program to identify the problem, the program behavior is changed and the problem cannot be reproduced or in the worst cases the program cannot work normally at all and ends up with an error or even hangs.

Possible ways to overcome this problem are to use higher UART bitrates (or another faster interface) and/or move string formatting procedure to the host.

Application level tracing feature can be used to transfer log information to host using `esp_apptrace_vprintf` function. This function does not perform full parsing of the format string and arguments, instead it just calculates number of arguments passed and sends them along with the format string address to the host. On the host log data are processed and printed out by a special Python script.

Limitations Current implementation of logging over JTAG has some limitations:

1. Tracing from `ESP_EARLY_LOGx` macros is not supported.
2. No support for printf arguments which size exceeds 4 bytes (e.g. `double` and `uint64_t`).
3. Only strings from .rodata section are supported as format strings and arguments.
4. Maximum number of printf arguments is 256.

How To Use It In order to use logging via trace module user needs to perform the following steps:

1. On target side special vprintf-like function needs to be installed. As it was mentioned earlier this function is `esp_apptrace_vprintf`. It sends log data to the host. Example code is provided in system/app_trace_to_host.
2. Follow instructions in items 2-5 in *Application Specific Tracing*.
3. To print out collected log records, run the following command in terminal: `$IDF_PATH/tools/esp_app_trace/logtrace_proc.py /path/to/trace/file /path/to/program/elf/file`.

Log Trace Processor Command Options Command usage:

```
logtrace_proc.py [-h] [--no-errors] <trace_file> <elf_file>
```

Positional arguments:

trace_file Path to log trace file
elf_file Path to program ELF file

Optional arguments:

-h, --help show this help message and exit
--no-errors, -n Do not print errors

System Behavior Analysis with SEGGER SystemView

Another useful IDF feature built on top of application tracing library is the system level tracing which produces traces compatible with SEGGER SystemView tool (see SystemView). SEGGER SystemView is a real-time recording and visualization tool that allows to analyze runtime behavior of an application.

Note: Currently IDF-based application is able to generate SystemView compatible traces in form of files to be opened in SystemView application. The tracing process cannot yet be controlled using that tool.

How To Use It Support for this feature is enabled by *Component config* > *Application Level Tracing* > *FreeRTOS SystemView Tracing* (*CONFIG_SYSVIEW_ENABLE*) menuconfig option. There are several other options enabled under the same menu:

1. ESP32-S2 timer to use as SystemView timestamp source: (*CONFIG_SYSVIEW_TS_SOURCE*) selects the source of timestamps for SystemView events. In single core mode timestamps are generated using ESP32-S2 internal cycle counter running at maximum 240 Mhz (~4 ns granularity). In dual-core mode external timer working at 40 Mhz is used, so timestamp granularity is 25 ns.
2. Individually enabled or disabled collection of SystemView events (`CONFIG_SYSVIEW_EVT_XXX`):
   - Trace Buffer Overflow Event
   - ISR Enter Event
   - ISR Exit Event
   - ISR Exit to Scheduler Event
   - Task Start Execution Event
   - Task Stop Execution Event
   - Task Start Ready State Event
   - Task Stop Ready State Event
   - Task Create Event
   - Task Terminate Event
   - System Idle Event
   - Timer Enter Event
   - Timer Exit Event

IDF has all the code required to produce SystemView compatible traces, so user can just configure necessary project options (see above), build, download the image to target and use OpenOCD to collect data as described in the previous sections.

OpenOCD SystemView Tracing Command Options Command usage:

```
esp sysview [start <options>] | [stop] | [status]
```

Sub-commands:

start Start tracing (continuous streaming).
stop Stop tracing.
status Get tracing status.

Start command syntax:

```
start <outfile1> [outfile2] [poll_period [trace_size [stop_tmo]]]
```

outfile1 Path to file to save data from PRO CPU. This argument should have the following format: `file://path/to/file`.

outfile2 Path to file to save data from APP CPU. This argument should have the following format: `file://path/to/file`.

poll_period Data polling period (in ms) for available trace data. If greater then 0 then command runs in non-blocking mode. By default 1 ms.

trace_size Maximum size of data to collect (in bytes). Tracing is stopped after specified amount of data is received. By default -1 (trace size stop trigger is disabled).

stop_tmo Idle timeout (in sec). Tracing is stopped if there is no data for specified period of time. By default -1 (disable this stop trigger).

Note: If `poll_period` is 0 OpenOCD telnet command line will not be available until tracing is stopped. You must stop it manually by resetting the board or pressing Ctrl+C in OpenOCD window (not one with the telnet session). Another option is to set `trace_size` and wait until this size of data is collected. At this point tracing stops automatically.

Command usage examples:

1. Collect SystemView tracing data to files "pro-cpu.SVDat" and "app-cpu.SVDat". The files will be saved in "openocd-esp32" directory.

   ```
   esp sysview start file://pro-cpu.SVDat file://app-cpu.SVDat
   ```

   The tracing data will be retrieved and saved in non-blocking mode. To stop data this process enter `esp apptrace stop` command on OpenOCD telnet prompt, optionally pressing Ctrl+C in OpenOCD window.
2. Retrieve tracing data and save them indefinitely.

   ```
   esp sysview start file://pro-cpu.SVDat file://app-cpu.SVDat 0 -1 -1
   ```

   OpenOCD telnet command line prompt will not be available until tracing is stopped. To stop tracing, press Ctrl+C in OpenOCD window.

Data Visualization After trace data are collected user can use special tool to visualize the results and inspect behavior of the program.

It is uneasy and awkward to analyze data for every core in separate instance of the tool. Fortunately there is Eclipse plugin called *Impulse* which can load several trace files and makes it possible to inspect events from both cores in one view. Also this plugin has no limitation of 1,000,000 events as compared to free version of SystemView.

Good instruction on how to install, configure and visualize data in Impulse from one core can be found here.

Note: IDF uses its own mapping for SystemView FreeRTOS events IDs, so user needs to replace original file with mapping `$SYSVIEW_INSTALL_DIR/Description/SYSVIEW_FreeRTOS.txt` with `$IDF_PATH/docs/api-guides/SYSVIEW_FreeRTOS.txt`. Also contents of that IDF specific file should be used when configuring SystemView serializer using above link.

Gcov (Source Code Coverage)

Basics of Gcov and Gcovr Source code coverage is data indicating the count and frequency of every program execution path that has been taken within a program's runtime. Gcov is a GCC tool that, when used in concert with the compiler, can generate log files indicating the execution count of each line of a source file. The Gcovr tool is utility for managing Gcov and generating summarized code coverage results.

Generally, using Gcov to compile and run programs on the Host will undergo these steps:

1. Compile the source code using GCC with the `--coverage` option enabled. This will cause the compiler to generate a `.gcno` notes files during compilation. The notes files contain information to reconstruct execution path block graphs and map each block to source code line numbers. Each source file compiled with the `--coverage` option should have their own `.gcno` file of the same name (e.g., a `main.c` will generate a `main.gcno` when compiled).
2. Execute the program. During execution, the program should generate `.gcda` data files. These data files contain the counts of the number of times an execution path was taken. The program will generate a `.gcda` file for each source file compiled with the `--coverage` option (e.g., `main.c` will generate a `main.gcda`.
3. Gcov or Gcovr can be used generate a code coverage based on the `.gcno`, `.gcda`, and source files. Gcov will generate a text based coverage report for each source file in the form of a `.gcov` file, whilst Gcovr will generate a coverage report in HTML format.

Gcov and Gcovr in ESP-IDF Using Gcov in ESP-IDF is complicated by the fact that the program is running remotely from the Host (i.e., on the target). The code coverage data (i.e., the `.gcda` files) is initially stored on the target itself. OpenOCD is then used to dump the code coverage data from the target to the host via JTAG during runtime. Using Gcov in ESP-IDF can be split into the following steps.

1. *Setting Up a Project for Gcov*
2. *Dumping Code Coverage Data*
3. *Generating Coverage Report*

Setting Up a Project for Gcov

Compiler Option In order to obtain code coverage data in a project, one or more source files within the project must be compiled with the `--coverage` option. In ESP-IDF, this can be achieved at the component level or the individual source file level:

To cause all source files in a component to be compiled with the `--coverage` option.

- Add `target_compile_options(${COMPONENT_LIB} PRIVATE --coverage)` to the `CMakeLists.txt` file of the component if using CMake.
- Add `CFLAGS += --coverage` to the `component.mk` file of the component if using Make.

To cause a select number of source files (e.g. `sourec1.c` and `source2.c`) in the same component to be compiled with the

- Add `set_source_files_properties(source1.c source2.c PROPERTIES COMPILE_FLAGS --coverage)` to the `CMakeLists.txt` file of the component if using CMake.
- Add `source1.o: CFLAGS += --coverage` and `source2.o: CFLAGS += --coverage` to the `component.mk` file of the component if using Make.

When a source file is compiled with the `--coverage` option (e.g. `gcov_example.c`), the compiler will generate the `gcov_example.gcno` file in the project's build directory.

Project Configuration Before building a project with source code coverage, ensure that the following project configuration options are enabled by running `idf.py menuconfig` (or `make menuconfig` if using the legacy Make build system).

- Enable the application tracing module by choosing *Trace Memory* for the *CONFIG_APPTRACE_DESTINATION* option.
- Enable Gcov to host via the *CONFIG_APPTRACE_GCOV_ENABLE*

Dumping Code Coverage Data Once a project has been complied with the `--coverage` option and flashed onto the target, code coverage data will be stored internally on the target (i.e., in trace memory) whilst the application runs. The process of transferring code coverage data from the target to the Host is know as dumping.

The dumping of coverage data is done via OpenOCD (see *JTAG Debugging* on how to setup and run OpenOCD). A dump is triggered by issuing commands to OpenOCD, therefore a telnet session to OpenOCD must be opened to issue such commands (run `telnet localhost 4444`). Note that GDB could be used instead of telnet to issue commands to OpenOCD, however all commands issued from GDB will need to be prefixed as `mon <oocd_command>`.

When the target dumps code coverage data, the `.gcda` files are stored in the project's build directory. For example, if `gcov_example_main.c` of the `main` component was compiled with the `--coverage` option, then dumping the code coverage data would generate a `gcov_example_main.gcda` in `build/esp-idf/main/CMakeFiles/__idf_main.dir/gcov_example_main.c.gcda` (or `build/main/gcov_example_main.gcda` if using the legacy Make build system). Note that the `.gcno` files produced during compilation are also placed in the same directory.

The dumping of code coverage data can be done multiple times throughout an application's life time. Each dump will simply update the `.gcda` file with the newest code coverage information. Code coverage data is accumulative, thus the newest data will contain the total execution count of each code path over the application's entire lifetime.

ESP-IDF supports two methods of dumping code coverage data form the target to the host:

- Instant Run-Time Dumpgit
- Hard-coded Dump

Instant Run-Time Dump An Instant Run-Time Dump is triggered by calling the `ESP32-S2 gcov` OpenOCD command (via a telnet session). Once called, OpenOCD will immediately preempt the ESP32-S2's current state and execute a builtin IDF Gcov debug stub function. The debug stub function will handle the dumping of data to the Host. Upon completion, the ESP32-S2 will resume it's current state.

Hard-coded Dump A Hard-coded Dump is triggered by the application itself by calling *`esp_gcov_dump()`* from somewhere within the application. When called, the application will halt and wait for OpenOCD to connect and retrieve the code coverage data. Once *`esp_gcov_dump()`* is called, the Host must execute the `esp gcov dump` OpenOCD command (via a telnet session). The `esp gcov dump` command will cause OpenOCD to connect to the ESP32-S2, retrieve the code coverage data, then disconnect from the ESP32-S2 thus allowing the application to resume. Hard-coded Dumps can also be triggered multiple times throughout an application's lifetime.

Hard-coded dumps are useful if code coverage data is required at certain points of an application's lifetime by placing *`esp_gcov_dump()`* where necessary (e.g., after application initialization, during each iteration of an application's main loop).

GDB can be used to set a breakpoint on *`esp_gcov_dump()`*, then call `mon esp gcov dump` automatically via the use a `gdbinit` script (see Using GDB from *Command Line*).

The following GDB script is will add a breakpoint at *`esp_gcov_dump()`*, then call the `mon esp gcov dump` OpenOCD command.

```
b esp_gcov_dump
commands
mon esp gcov dump
end
```

Note: Note that all OpenOCD commands should be invoked in GDB as: `mon <oocd_command>`.

Generating Coverage Report Once the code coverage data has been dumped, the `.gcno`, `.gcda` and the source files can be used to generate a code coverage report. A code coverage report is simply a report indicating the number of times each line in a source file has been executed.

Both Gcov and Gcovr can be used to generate code coverage reports. Gcov is provided along with the Xtensa toolchain, whilst Gcovr may need to be installed separately. For details on how to use Gcov or Gcovr, refer to Gcov documentation and Gcovr documentation.

Adding Gcovr Build Target to Project To make report generation more convenient, users can define additional build targets in their projects such report generation can be done with a single build command.

CMake Build System For the CMake build systems, add the following lines to the `CMakeLists.txt` file of your project.

```
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/gcov.cmake)
idf_create_coverage_report(${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}/coverage_report)
idf_clean_coverage_report(${CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR}/coverage_report)
```

The following commands can now be used:

- `cmake --build build/ --target gcovr-report` will generate an HTML coverage report in `$(BUILD_DIR_BASE)/coverage_report/html` directory.
- `cmake --build build/ --target cov-data-clean` will remove all coverage data files.

Make Build System For the Make build systems, add the following lines to the `Makefile` of your project.

```
GCOV := $(call dequote,$(CONFIG_SDK_TOOLPREFIX))gcov
REPORT_DIR := $(BUILD_DIR_BASE)/coverage_report

gcovr-report:
    echo "Generating coverage report in: $(REPORT_DIR)"
    echo "Using gcov: $(GCOV)"
    mkdir -p $(REPORT_DIR)/html
    cd $(BUILD_DIR_BASE)
    gcovr -r $(PROJECT_PATH) --gcov-executable $(GCOV) -s --html-details $(REPORT_
↪DIR)/html/index.html

cov-data-clean:
    echo "Remove coverage data files..."
    find $(BUILD_DIR_BASE) -name "*.gcda" -exec rm {} +
    rm -rf $(REPORT_DIR)

.PHONY: gcovr-report cov-data-clean
```

The following commands can now be used:

- `make gcovr-report` will generate an HTML coverage report in `$(BUILD_DIR_BASE)/coverage_report/html` directory.
- `make cov-data-clean` will remove all coverage data files.

4.2 Application Startup Flow

This note explains various steps which happen before `app_main` function of an ESP-IDF application is called.

The high level view of startup process is as follows:

1. *First stage bootloader* in ROM loads second-stage bootloader image to RAM (IRAM & DRAM) from flash offset 0x1000.
2. *Second stage bootloader* loads partition table and main app image from flash. Main app incorporates both RAM segments and read-only segments mapped via flash cache.
3. *Application startup* executes. At this point the second CPU and RTOS scheduler are started.

This process is explained in detail in the following sections.

4.2.1 First stage bootloader

After SoC reset, the CPU will start running immediately to perform initialization. The reset vector code is located in the mask ROM of the ESP32-S2 chip and cannot be modified.

Startup code called from the reset vector determines the boot mode by checking `GPIO_STRAP_REG` register for bootstrap pin states. Depending on the reset reason, the following takes place:

1. Reset from deep sleep: if the value in `RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG` is non-zero, and CRC value of RTC memory in `RTC_CNTL_STORE7_REG` is valid, use `RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG` as an entry point address and jump immediately to it. If `RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG` is zero, or `RTC_CNTL_STORE7_REG` contains invalid CRC, or once the code called via `RTC_CNTL_STORE6_REG` returns, proceed with boot as if it was a power-on reset. **Note**: to run customized code at this point, a deep sleep stub mechanism is provided. Please see *deep sleep* documentation for this.
2. For power-on reset, software SOC reset, and watchdog SOC reset: check the `GPIO_STRAP_REG` register if a custom boot mode (such as UART Download Mode) is requested. If this is the case, this custom loader mode is executed from ROM. Otherwise, proceed with boot as if it was due to software CPU reset. Consult ESP32-S2 datasheet for a description of SoC boot modes and how to execute them.
3. For software CPU reset and watchdog CPU reset: configure SPI flash based on EFUSE values, and attempt to load the code from flash. This step is described in more detail in the next paragraphs.

Note: During normal boot modes the RTC watchdog is enabled when this happens, so if the process is interrupted or stalled then the watchdog will reset the SOC automatically and repeat the boot process. This may cause the SoC to strap into a new boot mode, if the stapping GPIOs have changed.

Second stage bootloader binary image is loaded from flash starting at address 0x1000. The 4kB sector of flash before this address is unused.

4.2.2 Second stage bootloader

In ESP-IDF, the binary image which resides at offset 0x1000 in flash is the second stage bootloader. Second stage bootloader source code is available in components/bootloader directory of ESP-IDF. Second stage bootloader is used in ESP-IDF to add flexibility to flash layout (using partition tables), and allow for various flows associated with flash encryption, secure boot, and over-the-air updates (OTA) to take place.

When the first stage bootloader is finished checking and loading the second stage bootloader, it jumps to the second stage bootloader entry point found in the binary image header.

Second stage bootloader reads the partition table found by default at offset 0x8000 (*configurable value*). See *partition tables* documentation for more information. The bootloader finds factory and OTA app partitions. If OTA app partitions are found in the partition table, the bootloader consults the `otadata` partition to determine which one should be booted. See *Over The Air Updates (OTA)* for more information.

For a full description of the configuration options available for the ESP-IDF bootloader, see *Bootloader*.

For the selected partition, second stage bootloader reads the binary image from flash one segment at a time:

- For segments with load addresses in internal *IRAM (Instruction RAM)* or *DRAM (Data RAM)*, the contents are copied from flash to the load address.
- For segments which have load addresses in *DROM (data stored in Flash)* or *IROM (code executed from Flash)* regions, the flash MMU is configured to provide the correct mapping from the flash to the load address.

Once all segments are processed - meaning code is loaded and flash MMU is set up, second stage bootloader verifies the integrity of the application and then jumps to the application entry point found in the binary image header.

4.2.3 Application startup

Application startup covers everything that happens after the app starts executing and before the `app_main` function starts running inside the main task. This is split into three stages:

- Port initialization of hardware and basic C runtime environment.
- System initialization of software services and FreeRTOS.
- Running the main task and calling `app_main`.

Note: Understanding all stages of ESP-IDF app initialization is often not necessary. To understand initialization from the application developer's perspective only, skip forward to *Running the main task*.

Port Initialization

ESP-IDF application entry point is `call_start_cpu0` function found in components/esp_system/port/cpu_start.c. This function is executed by the second stage bootloader, and never returns.

This port-layer initialization function initializes the basic C Runtime Environment ("CRT") and performs initial configuration of the SoC's internal hardware:

- Reconfigure CPU exceptions for the app (allowing app interrupt handlers to run, and causing *Fatal Errors* to be handled using the options configured for the app rather than the simpler error handler provided by ROM).
- If the option *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_WDT_ENABLE* is not set then the RTC watchdog timer is disabled.
- Initialize internal memory (data & bss).
- Finish configuring the MMU cache.
- Enable PSRAM if configured.
- Set the CPU clocks to the frequencies configured for the project.
- Initialize memory protection if configured.

Once `call_start_cpu0` completes running, it calls the "system layer" initialization function `start_cpu0` found in components/esp_system/startup.c.

System Initialization

The main system initialization function is `start_cpu0`. By default, this function is weak-linked to the function `start_cpu0_default`. This means that it's possible to override this function to add some additional initialization steps.

The primary system initialization stage includes:

- Log information about this application (project name, *App version*, etc.) if default log level enables this.
- Initialize the heap allocator (before this point all allocations must be static or on the stack).
- Initialize newlib component syscalls and time functions.
- Configure the brownout detector.
- Setup libc stdin, stdout, and stderr according to the *serial console configuration*.
- Perform any security-related checks, including burning efuses that should be burned for this configuration (including *permanently limiting ROM download modes*).
- Initialize SPI flash API support.
- Call global C++ constructors and any C functions marked with `__attribute__((constructor))`.

Secondary system initialization allows individual components to be initialized. If a component has an initialization function annotated with the `ESP_SYSTEM_INIT_FN` macro, it will be called as part of secondary initialization.

Running the main task

After all other components are initialized, the main task is created and the FreeRTOS scheduler starts running.

After doing some more initialization tasks (that require the scheduler to have started), the main task runs the application-provided function `app_main` in the firmware.

The main task that runs `app_main` has a fixed RTOS priority (one higher than the minimum) and a *configurable stack size*.

Unlike normal FreeRTOS tasks (or embedded C `main` functions), the `app_main` task is allowed to return. If this happens, The task is cleaned up and the system will continue running with other RTOS tasks scheduled normally. Therefore, it is possible to implement `app_main` as either a function that creates other application tasks and then returns, or as a main application task itself.

4.3 Bootloader

The ESP-IDF Software Bootloader performs the following functions:

1. Minimal initial configuration of internal modules;
2. Initialize *Flash Encryption* and/or *Secure* features, if configured;
3. Select the application partition to boot, based on the partition table and ota_data (if any);
4. Load this image to RAM (IRAM & DRAM) and transfer management to it.

Bootloader is located at the address 0x1000 in the flash.

For a full description of the startup process including the the ESP-IDF bootloader, see *Application Startup Flow*.

4.3.1 Bootloader compatibility

It is recommended to update to newer *versions of ESP-IDF*: when they are released. The OTA (over the air) update process can flash new apps in the field but cannot flash a new bootloader. For this reason, the bootloader supports booting apps built from newer versions of ESP-IDF.

The bootloader does not support booting apps from older versions of ESP-IDF. When updating ESP-IDF manually on an existing product that might need to downgrade the app to an older version, keep using the older ESP-IDF bootloader binary as well.

Note: If testing an OTA update for an existing product in production, always test it using the same ESP-IDF bootloader binary that is deployed in production.

SPI Flash Configuration

Each ESP-IDF application or bootloader .bin file contains a header with *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHMODE*, *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHFREQ*, *CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE* embedded in it. These are used to configure the SPI flash during boot.

The *First stage bootloader* in ROM reads the *Second stage bootloader* header from flash and uses these settings to load it. However, at this time the system clock speed is lower than configured and not all flash modes are supported. When the *Second stage bootloader* then runs and re-configures the flash, it reads values from the currently selected app binary header not the bootloader header. This allows an OTA update to change the SPI flash settings in use.

4.3.2 Factory reset

The user can write a basic working firmware and load it into the factory app partition.

Next, update the firmware via OTA (over the air). The updated firmware will be loaded into an OTA app partition slot and the OTA data partition is updated to boot from this partition.

If you want to be able to roll back to the factory firmware and clear the settings, then you need to set *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_FACTORY_RESET*. The factory reset mechanism allows to reset the device to factory settings:

- Clear one or more data partitions.
- Boot from "factory" partition.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_DATA_FACTORY_RESET allows customers to select which data partitions will be erased when the factory reset is executed. Can specify the names of partitions through comma-delimited with optional spaces for readability. (Like this: "nvs, phy_init, nvs_custom, ···"). Make sure that the name specified in the partition table and here are the same. Partitions of type "app" cannot be specified here.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_OTA_DATA_ERASE - the device will boot from "factory" partition after a factory reset. The OTA data partition will be cleared.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_FACTORY_RESET - number of the GPIO input for factory reset uses to trigger a factory reset, this GPIO must be pulled low on reset to trigger this.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO - this is hold time of GPIO for reset/test mode (by default 5 seconds). The GPIO must be held low continuously for this period of time after reset before a factory reset or test partition boot (as applicable) is performed.

Partition table.:

```
# Name,   Type, SubType, Offset,   Size, Flags
# Note: if you have increased the bootloader size, make sure to update the offsets␣
↪to avoid overlap
nvs,      data, nvs,     0x9000,   0x4000
otadata,  data, ota,     0xd000,   0x2000
phy_init, data, phy,     0xf000,   0x1000
factory,  0,    0,       0x10000,  1M
test,     0,    test,    ,         512K
ota_0,    0,    ota_0,   ,         512K
ota_1,    0,    ota_1,   ,         512K
```

4.3.3 Boot from test app partition

The user can write a special firmware for testing in production, and run it as needed. The partition table also needs a dedicated partition for this testing firmware (See *partition table*). To trigger a test app you need to set *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_APP_TEST*.

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_NUM_PIN_APP_TEST - GPIO number to boot TEST partition. The selected GPIO will be configured as an input with internal pull-up enabled. To trigger a test app, this GPIO must be pulled low on reset. After the GPIO input is deactivated and the device reboots, the normally configured application will boot (factory or any OTA slot).

CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_HOLD_TIME_GPIO - this is hold time of GPIO for reset/test mode (by default 5 seconds). The GPIO must be held low continuously for this period of time after reset before a factory reset or test partition boot (as applicable) is performed.

4.3.4 Fast boot from Deep Sleep

The bootloader has the *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP* option which allows to reduce the wake-up time (useful to reduce consumption). This option is available when the *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT* option is disabled. Reduction of time is achieved due to the lack of image verification. During the first boot, the bootloader stores the address of the application being launched in the RTC FAST memory. And during the awakening, this address is used for booting without any checks, thus fast loading is achieved.

4.3.5 Custom bootloader

The current bootloader implementation allows a project to override it. To do this, you must copy the directory `/esp-idf/components/bootloader` to your project components directory and then edit `/your_project/components/bootloader/subproject/main/bootloader_start.c`.

In the bootloader space, you cannot use the drivers and functions from other components. If necessary, then the required functionality should be placed in the project's `bootloader` directory (note that this will increase its size).

If the bootloader grows too large then it can collide with the partition table, which is flashed at offset 0x8000 by default. Increase the *partition table offset* value to place the partition table later in the flash. This increases the space available for the bootloader.

Note: The first time you copy the bootloader into an existing project, the project may fail to build as paths have changed unexpectedly. If this happens, run `idf.py fullclean` (or delete the project build directory) and then build again.

4.4 Build System

This document explains the implementation of the ESP-IDF build system and the concept of "components". Read this document if you want to know how to organize and build a new ESP-IDF project or component.

4.4.1 Overview

An ESP-IDF project can be seen as an amalgamation of a number of components. For example, for a webserver that shows the current humidity, there could be:

- The ESP-IDF base libraries (libc, ROM bindings, etc)
- The Wi-Fi drivers
- A TCP/IP stack
- The FreeRTOS operating system
- A webserver
- A driver for the humidity sensor
- Main code tying it all together

ESP-IDF makes these components explicit and configurable. To do that, when a project is compiled, the build system will look up all the components in the ESP-IDF directories, the project directories and (optionally) in additional custom component directories. It then allows the user to configure the ESP-IDF project using a text-based menu system to customize each component. After the components in the project are configured, the build system will compile the project.

Concepts

- A "project" is a directory that contains all the files and configuration to build a single "app" (executable), as well as additional supporting elements such as a partition table, data/filesystem partitions, and a bootloader.
- "Project configuration" is held in a single file called `sdkconfig` in the root directory of the project. This configuration file is modified via `idf.py menuconfig` to customise the configuration of the project. A single project contains exactly one project configuration.
- An "app" is an executable which is built by ESP-IDF. A single project will usually build two apps - a "project app" (the main executable, ie your custom firmware) and a "bootloader app" (the initial bootloader program which launches the project app).
- "components" are modular pieces of standalone code which are compiled into static libraries (.a files) and linked into an app. Some are provided by ESP-IDF itself, others may be sourced from other places.
- "Target" is the hardware for which an application is built. At the moment, ESP-IDF supports `esp32`, `esp32s2` and `esp32c3` targets.

Some things are not part of the project:

- "ESP-IDF" is not part of the project. Instead it is standalone, and linked to the project via the `IDF_PATH` environment variable which holds the path of the `esp-idf` directory. This allows the IDF framework to be decoupled from your project.
- The toolchain for compilation is not part of the project. The toolchain should be installed in the system command line PATH.

4.4.2 Using the Build System

idf.py

The `idf.py` command line tool provides a front-end for easily managing your project builds. It manages the following tools:

- CMake, which configures the project to be built
- A command line build tool (either Ninja build or *GNU Make*)
- esptool.py for flashing the target.

The *getting started guide* contains a brief introduction to how to set up `idf.py` to configure, build, and flash projects.

`idf.py` should be run in an ESP-IDF "project" directory, ie one containing a `CMakeLists.txt` file. Older style projects with a Makefile will not work with `idf.py`.

Type `idf.py --help` for a list of commands. Here are a summary of the most useful ones:

- `idf.py set-target <target>` sets the target (chip) for which the project is built. See *Selecting the Target*.
- `idf.py menuconfig` runs the "menuconfig" tool to configure the project.
- `idf.py build` will build the project found in the current directory. This can involve multiple steps:
  - Create the build directory if needed. The sub-directory `build` is used to hold build output, although this can be changed with the `-B` option.
  - Run CMake as necessary to configure the project and generate build files for the main build tool.
  - Run the main build tool (Ninja or *GNU Make*). By default, the build tool is automatically detected but it can be explicitly set by passing the `-G` option to `idf.py`.

  Building is incremental so if no source files or configuration has changed since the last build, nothing will be done.
- `idf.py clean` will "clean" the project by deleting build output files from the build directory, forcing a "full rebuild" the next time the project is built. Cleaning doesn't delete CMake configuration output and some other files.
- `idf.py fullclean` will delete the entire "build" directory contents. This includes all CMake configuration output. The next time the project is built, CMake will configure it from scratch. Note that this option recursively deletes *all* files in the build directory, so use with care. Project configuration is not deleted.
- `idf.py flash` will automatically build the project if necessary, and then flash it to the target. The `-p` and `-b` options can be used to set serial port name and flasher baud rate, respectively.
- `idf.py monitor` will display serial output from the target. The `-p` option can be used to set the serial port name. Type `Ctrl-]` to exit the monitor. See *IDF Monitor* for more details about using the monitor.

Multiple `idf.py` commands can be combined into one. For example, `idf.py -p COM4 clean flash monitor` will clean the source tree, then build the project and flash it to the target before running the serial monitor.

For commands that are not known to `idf.py` an attempt to execute them as a build system target will be made.

The command `idf.py` supports shell autocompletion for bash, zsh and fish shells.

In order to make shell autocompletion supported, please make sure you have at least Python 3.5 and click 7.1 or newer (*see also*).

To enable autocompletion for `idf.py` use the `export` command (*see this*). Autocompletion is initiated by pressing the TAB key. Type "idf.py -" and press the TAB key to autocomplete options.

The autocomplete support for PowerShell is planned in the future.

Note: The environment variables `ESPPORT` and `ESPBAUD` can be used to set default values for the `-p` and `-b` options, respectively. Providing these options on the command line overrides the default.

Advanced Commands

- `idf.py app`, `idf.py bootloader`, `idf.py partition_table` can be used to build only the app, bootloader, or partition table from the project as applicable.
- There are matching commands `idf.py app-flash`, etc. to flash only that single part of the project to the target.

- `idf.py -p PORT erase_flash` will use esptool.py to erase the target's entire flash chip.
- `idf.py size` prints some size information about the app. `size-components` and `size-files` are similar commands which print more detailed per-component or per-source-file information, respectively. If you define variable `-DOUTPUT_JSON=1` when running CMake (or `idf.py`), the output will be formatted as JSON not as human readable text.
- `idf.py reconfigure` re-runs CMake even if it doesn't seem to need re-running. This isn't necessary during normal usage, but can be useful after adding/removing files from the source tree, or when modifying CMake cache variables. For example, `idf.py -DNAME='VALUE' reconfigure` can be used to set variable `NAME` in CMake cache to value `VALUE`.
- `idf.py python-clean` deletes generated Python byte code from the IDF directory which may cause issues when switching between IDF and Python versions. It is advised to run this target after switching versions of Python.

The order of multiple `idf.py` commands on the same invocation is not important, they will automatically be executed in the correct order for everything to take effect (ie building before flashing, erasing before flashing, etc.).

idf.py options To list all available root level options, run `idf.py --help`. To list options that are specific for a subcommand, run `idf.py <command> --help`, for example `idf.py monitor --help`. Here is a list of some useful options:

- `-C <dir>` allows overriding the project directory from the default current working directory.
- `-B <dir>` allows overriding the build directory from the default `build` subdirectory of the project directory.
- `--ccache` flag can be used to enable CCache when compiling source files, if the CCache tool is installed. This can dramatically reduce some build times.

Note that some older versions of CCache may exhibit bugs on some platforms, so if files are not rebuilt as expected then try disabling CCache and build again. CCache can be enabled by default by setting the `IDF_CCACHE_ENABLE` environment variable to a non-zero value.

- `-v` flag causes both `idf.py` and the build system to produce verbose build output. This can be useful for debugging build problems.
- `--cmake-warn-uninitialized` (or `-w`) will cause CMake to print uninitialized variable warnings inside the project directory (not for directories not found inside the project directory). This only controls CMake variable warnings inside CMake itself, not other types of build warnings. This option can also be set permanently by setting the `IDF_CMAKE_WARN_UNINITIALIZED` environment variable to a non-zero value.

Start a new project

Use the command `idf.py create-project` for starting a new project. Execute `idf.py create-project --help` for more information.

Example:

```
idf.py create-project --path my_projects my_new_project
```

This example will create a new project called my_new_project directly into the directory my_projects.

Using CMake Directly

idf.py is a wrapper around CMake for convenience. However, you can also invoke CMake directly if you prefer.

When `idf.py` does something, it prints each command that it runs for easy reference. For example, the `idf.py build` command is the same as running these commands in a bash shell (or similar commands for Windows Command Prompt):

```
mkdir -p build
cd build
cmake .. -G Ninja    # or 'Unix Makefiles'
ninja
```

In the above list, the `cmake` command configures the project and generates build files for use with the final build tool. In this case the final build tool is Ninja: running `ninja` actually builds the project.

It's not necessary to run `cmake` more than once. After the first build, you only need to run `ninja` each time. `ninja` will automatically re-invoke `cmake` if the project needs reconfiguration.

If using CMake with `ninja` or `make`, there are also targets for more of the `idf.py` sub-commands - for example running `make menuconfig` or `ninja menuconfig` in the build directory will work the same as `idf.py menuconfig`.

Note: If you're already familiar with CMake, you may find the ESP-IDF CMake-based build system unusual because it wraps a lot of CMake's functionality to reduce boilerplate. See *writing pure CMake components* for some information about writing more "CMake style" components.

Flashing with ninja or make It's possible to build and flash directly from ninja or make by running a target like:

```
ninja flash
```

Or:

```
make app-flash
```

Available targets are: `flash`, `app-flash` (app only), `bootloader-flash` (bootloader only).

When flashing this way, optionally set the `ESPPORT` and `ESPBAUD` environment variables to specify the serial port and baud rate. You can set environment variables in your operating system or IDE project. Alternatively, set them directly on the command line:

```
ESPPORT=/dev/ttyUSB0 ninja flash
```

Note: Providing environment variables at the start of the command like this is Bash shell Syntax. It will work on Linux and macOS. It won't work when using Windows Command Prompt, but it will work when using Bash-like shells on Windows.

Or:

```
make -j3 app-flash ESPPORT=COM4 ESPBAUD=2000000
```

Note: Providing variables at the end of the command line is `make` syntax, and works for `make` on all platforms.

Using CMake in an IDE

You can also use an IDE with CMake integration. The IDE will want to know the path to the project's `CMakeLists.txt` file. IDEs with CMake integration often provide their own build tools (CMake calls these "generators") to build the source files as part of the IDE.

When adding custom non-build steps like "flash" to the IDE, it is recommended to execute `idf.py` for these "special" commands.

For more detailed information about integrating ESP-IDF with CMake into an IDE, see *Build System Metadata*.

Setting up the Python Interpreter

ESP-IDF works well with all supported Python versions. It should work out-of-box even if you have a legacy system where the default `python` interpreter is still Python 2.7, however, it is advised to switch to Python 3 if possible.

`idf.py` and other Python scripts will run with the default Python interpreter, i.e. `python`. You can switch to a different one like `python3 $IDF_PATH/tools/idf.py ...`, or you can set up a shell alias or another script to simplify the command.

If using CMake directly, running `cmake -D PYTHON=python3 ...` will cause CMake to override the default Python interpreter.

If using an IDE with CMake, setting the `PYTHON` value as a CMake cache override in the IDE UI will override the default Python interpreter.

To manage the Python version more generally via the command line, check out the tools pyenv or virtualenv. These let you change the default Python version.

Possible issues The user of `idf.py` may sometimes experience `ImportError` described below.

```
Traceback (most recent call last):
  File "/Users/user_name/e/esp-idf/tools/kconfig_new/confgen.py", line 27, in
↪<module>
    import kconfiglib
ImportError: bad magic number in 'kconfiglib': b'\x03\xf3\r\n'
```

The exception is often caused by `.pyc` files generated by different Python versions. To solve the issue run the following command:

```
idf.py python-clean
```

4.4.3 Example Project

An example project directory tree might look like this:

```
- myProject/
             - CMakeLists.txt
             - sdkconfig
             - components/ - component1/ - CMakeLists.txt
                                         - Kconfig
                                         - src1.c
                           - component2/ - CMakeLists.txt
                                         - Kconfig
                                         - src1.c
                                         - include/ - component2.h
             - main/       - CMakeLists.txt
                           - src1.c
                           - src2.c

             - build/
```

This example "myProject" contains the following elements:

- A top-level project CMakeLists.txt file. This is the primary file which CMake uses to learn how to build the project; and may set project-wide CMake variables. It includes the file /tools/cmake/project.cmake which implements the rest of the build system. Finally, it sets the project name and defines the project.
- "sdkconfig" project configuration file. This file is created/updated when `idf.py menuconfig` runs, and holds configuration for all of the components in the project (including ESP-IDF itself). The "sdkconfig" file may or may not be added to the source control system of the project.
- Optional "components" directory contains components that are part of the project. A project does not have to contain custom components of this kind, but it can be useful for structuring reusable code or including third party components that aren't part of ESP-IDF. Alternatively, `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS` can be set in the top-level CMakeLists.txt to look for components in other places. See the *renaming main* section for more info. If you have a lot of source files in your project, we recommend grouping most into components instead of putting them all in "main".

- "main" directory is a special component that contains source code for the project itself. "main" is a default name, the CMake variable `COMPONENT_DIRS` includes this component but you can modify this variable.
- "build" directory is where build output is created. This directory is created by `idf.py` if it doesn't already exist. CMake configures the project and generates interim build files in this directory. Then, after the main build process is run, this directory will also contain interim object files and libraries as well as final binary output files. This directory is usually not added to source control or distributed with the project source code.

Component directories each contain a component `CMakeLists.txt` file. This file contains variable definitions to control the build process of the component, and its integration into the overall project. See *Component CMakeLists Files* for more details.

Each component may also include a `Kconfig` file defining the *component configuration* options that can be set via `menuconfig`. Some components may also include `Kconfig.projbuild` and `project_include.cmake` files, which are special files for *overriding parts of the project*.

4.4.4 Project CMakeLists File

Each project has a single top-level `CMakeLists.txt` file that contains build settings for the entire project. By default, the project CMakeLists can be quite minimal.

Minimal Example CMakeLists

Minimal project:

```
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.5)
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/project.cmake)
project(myProject)
```

Mandatory Parts

The inclusion of these three lines, in the order shown above, is necessary for every project:

- `cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.5)` tells CMake the minimum version that is required to build the project. ESP-IDF is designed to work with CMake 3.5 or newer. This line must be the first line in the CMakeLists.txt file.
- `include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/project.cmake)` pulls in the rest of the CMake functionality to configure the project, discover all the components, etc.
- `project(myProject)` creates the project itself, and specifies the project name. The project name is used for the final binary output files of the app - ie `myProject.elf`, `myProject.bin`. Only one project can be defined per CMakeLists file.

Optional Project Variables

These variables all have default values that can be overridden for custom behaviour. Look in /tools/cmake/project.cmake for all of the implementation details.

- `COMPONENT_DIRS`: Directories to search for components. Defaults to `IDF_PATH/components`, `PROJECT_DIR/components`, and `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS`. Override this variable if you don't want to search for components in these places.
- `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS`: Optional list of additional directories to search for components. Paths can be relative to the project directory, or absolute.
- `COMPONENTS`: A list of component names to build into the project. Defaults to all components found in the `COMPONENT_DIRS` directories. Use this variable to "trim down" the project for faster build times. Note that any component which "requires" another component via the REQUIRES or PRIV_REQUIRES arguments on component registration will automatically have it added to this list, so the `COMPONENTS` list can be very short.

Any paths in these variables can be absolute paths, or set relative to the project directory.

To set these variables, use the cmake set command ie `set(VARIABLE "VALUE")`. The `set()` commands should be placed after the `cmake_minimum(...)` line but before the `include(...)` line.

Renaming `main` component

The build system provides special treatment to the `main` component. It is a component that gets automatically added to the build provided that it is in the expected location, PROJECT_DIR/main. All other components in the build are also added as its dependencies, saving the user from hunting down dependencies and providing a build that works right out of the box. Renaming the `main` component causes the loss of these behind-the-scenes heavy lifting, requiring the user to specify the location of the newly renamed component and manually specifying its dependencies. Specifically, the steps to renaming `main` are as follows:

1. Rename `main` directory.
2. Set `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS` in the project CMakeLists.txt to include the renamed `main` directory.
3. Specify the dependencies in the renamed component's CMakeLists.txt file via REQUIRES or PRIV_REQUIRES arguments *on component registration*.

Overriding default build specifications

The build sets some global build specifications (compile flags, definitions, etc.) that gets used in compiling all sources from all components.

For example, one of the default build specifications set is the compile option `-Wextra`. Suppose a user wants to use override this with `-Wno-extra`, it should be done after `project()`:

```
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.5)
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/project.cmake)
project(myProject)

idf_build_set_property(COMPILE_OPTIONS "-Wno-error" APPEND)
```

This ensures that the compile options set by the user won't be overriden by the default build specifications, since the latter are set inside `project()`.

4.4.5 Component CMakeLists Files

Each project contains one or more components. Components can be part of ESP-IDF, part of the project's own components directory, or added from custom component directories (*see above*).

A component is any directory in the `COMPONENT_DIRS` list which contains a `CMakeLists.txt` file.

Searching for Components

The list of directories in `COMPONENT_DIRS` is searched for the project's components. Directories in this list can either be components themselves (ie they contain a *CMakeLists.txt* file), or they can be top-level directories whose sub-directories are components.

When CMake runs to configure the project, it logs the components included in the build. This list can be useful for debugging the inclusion/exclusion of certain components.

Multiple components with the same name

When ESP-IDF is collecting all the components to compile, it will do this in the order specified by `COMPONENT_DIRS`; by default, this means ESP-IDF's internal components first (`IDF_PATH/components`), then any components in directories specified in `EXTRA_COMPONENT_DIRS`, and finally the project's components

(PROJECT_DIR/components). If two or more of these directories contain component sub-directories with the same name, the component in the last place searched is used. This allows, for example, overriding ESP-IDF components with a modified version by copying that component from the ESP-IDF components directory to the project components directory and then modifying it there. If used in this way, the ESP-IDF directory itself can remain untouched.

Note: If a component is overridden in an existing project by moving it to a new location, the project will not automatically see the new component path. Run `idf.py reconfigure` (or delete the project build folder) and then build again.

Minimal Component CMakeLists

The minimal component `CMakeLists.txt` file simply registers the component to the build system using `idf_component_register`:

```
idf_component_register(SRCS "foo.c" "bar.c"
                       INCLUDE_DIRS "include"
                       REQUIRES mbedtls)
```

- `SRCS` is a list of source files (`*.c`, `*.cpp`, `*.cc`, `*.S`). These source files will be compiled into the component library.
- `INCLUDE_DIRS` is a list of directories to add to the global include search path for any component which requires this component, and also the main source files.
- `REQUIRES` is not actually required, but it is very often required to declare what other components this component will use. See *Component Requirements*.

A library with the name of the component will be built and linked into the final app.

Directories are usually specified relative to the `CMakeLists.txt` file itself, although they can be absolute.

There are other arguments that can be passed to `idf_component_register`. These arguments are discussed *here*.

See *example component requirements* and *example component CMakeLists* for more complete component `CMakeLists.txt` examples.

Create a new component

Use the command `idf.py create-component` for creating a new component. The new component will contain set of files necessary for building a component. You may include the component's header file into your project and use its functionality. For more information execute `idf.py create-component --help`.

Example:

```
idf.py -C components create-component my_component
```

The example will create a new component in the subdirectory *components* under the current working directory. For more information about components follow the documentation page *see above*.

Preset Component Variables

The following component-specific variables are available for use inside component CMakeLists, but should not be modified:

- `COMPONENT_DIR`: The component directory. Evaluates to the absolute path of the directory containing `CMakeLists.txt`. The component path cannot contain spaces. This is the same as the `CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR` variable.
- `COMPONENT_NAME`: Name of the component. Same as the name of the component directory.

- COMPONENT_ALIAS: Alias of the library created internally by the build system for the component.
- COMPONENT_LIB: Name of the library created internally by the build system for the component.

The following variables are set at the project level, but available for use in component CMakeLists:

- CONFIG_*: Each value in the project configuration has a corresponding variable available in cmake. All names begin with CONFIG_. *More information here*.
- ESP_PLATFORM: Set to 1 when the CMake file is processed within ESP-IDF build system.

Build/Project Variables

The following are some project/build variables that are available as build properties and whose values can be queried using idf_build_get_property from the component CMakeLists.txt:

- PROJECT_NAME: Name of the project, as set in project CMakeLists.txt file.
- PROJECT_DIR: Absolute path of the project directory containing the project CMakeLists. Same as the CMAKE_SOURCE_DIR variable.
- COMPONENTS: Names of all components that are included in this build, formatted as a semicolon-delimited CMake list.
- IDF_VER: Git version of ESP-IDF (produced by git describe)
- IDF_VERSION_MAJOR, IDF_VERSION_MINOR, IDF_VERSION_PATCH: Components of ESP-IDF version, to be used in conditional expressions. Note that this information is less precise than that provided by IDF_VER variable. v4.0-dev-*, v4.0-beta1, v4.0-rc1 and v4.0 will all have the same values of IDF_VERSION_* variables, but different IDF_VER values.
- IDF_TARGET: Name of the target for which the project is being built.
- PROJECT_VER: Project version.
  - If *CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER_FROM_CONFIG* option is set, the value of *CONFIG_APP_PROJECT_VER* will be used.
  - Else, if PROJECT_VER variable is set in project CMakeLists.txt file, its value will be used.
  - Else, if the PROJECT_DIR/version.txt exists, its contents will be used as PROJECT_VER.
  - Else, if the project is located inside a Git repository, the output of git describe will be used.
  - Otherwise, PROJECT_VER will be "1".

Other build properties are listed *here*.

Controlling Component Compilation

To pass compiler options when compiling source files belonging to a particular component, use the target_compile_options function:

```
target_compile_options(${COMPONENT_LIB} PRIVATE -Wno-unused-variable)
```

To apply the compilation flags to a single source file, use the CMake set_source_files_properties command:

```
set_source_files_properties(mysrc.c
    PROPERTIES COMPILE_FLAGS
    -Wno-unused-variable
)
```

This can be useful if there is upstream code that emits warnings.

When using these commands, place them after the call to idf_component_register in the component CMakeLists file.

4.4.6 Component Configuration

Each component can also have a Kconfig file, alongside CMakeLists.txt. This contains configuration settings to add to the configuration menu for this component.

These settings are found under the "Component Settings" menu when menuconfig is run.

To create a component Kconfig file, it is easiest to start with one of the Kconfig files distributed with ESP-IDF.

For an example, see *Adding conditional configuration*.

4.4.7 Preprocessor Definitions

The ESP-IDF build system adds the following C preprocessor definitions on the command line:

- `ESP_PLATFORM` : Can be used to detect that build happens within ESP-IDF.
- `IDF_VER` : Defined to a git version string. E.g. `v2.0` for a tagged release or `v1.0-275-g0efaa4f` for an arbitrary commit.

4.4.8 Component Requirements

When compiling each component, the ESP-IDF build system recursively evaluates its dependencies. This means each component needs to declare the components that it depends on ("requires").

When writing a component

```
idf_component_register(...
                       REQUIRES mbedtls
                       PRIV_REQUIRES console spiffs)
```

- `REQUIRES` should be set to all components whose header files are #included from the *public* header files of this component.
- `PRIV_REQUIRES` should be set to all components whose header files are #included from *any source files* in this component, unless already listed in `REQUIRES`. Also any component which is required to be linked in order for this component to function correctly.
- The values of `REQUIRES` and `PRIV_REQUIRES` should not depend on any configuration choices (`CONFIG_xxx` macros). This is because requirements are expanded before configuration is loaded. Other component variables (like include paths or source files) can depend on configuration choices.
- Not setting either or both `REQUIRES` variables is fine. If the component has no requirements except for the *Common component requirements* needed for RTOS, libc, etc.

If a components only supports some target chips (values of `IDF_TARGET`) then it can specify `REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS` in the `idf_component_register` call to express these requirements. In this case the build system will generate an error if the component is included into the build, but does not support the selected target.

Note: In CMake terms, `REQUIRES` & `PRIV_REQUIRES` are approximate wrappers around the CMake functions `target_link_libraries(... PUBLIC ...)` and `target_link_libraries(... PRIVATE ...)`.

Example of component requirements

Imagine there is a `car` component, which uses the `engine` component, which uses the `spark_plug` component:

```
- autoProject/
             - CMakeLists.txt
             - components/ - car/ - CMakeLists.txt
                                  - car.c
                                  - car.h
                           - engine/ - CMakeLists.txt
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
                                    - engine.c
                                    - include/ - engine.h
                            - spark_plug/  - CMakeLists.txt
                                           - plug.c
                                           - plug.h
```

Car component The `car.h` header file is the public interface for the `car` component. This header includes `engine.h` directly because it uses some declarations from this header:

```
/* car.h */
#include "engine.h"

#ifdef ENGINE_IS_HYBRID
#define CAR_MODEL "Hybrid"
#endif
```

And car.c includes `car.h` as well:

```
/* car.c */
#include "car.h"
```

This means the `car/CMakeLists.txt` file needs to declare that `car` requires `engine`:

```
idf_component_register(SRCS "car.c"
                    INCLUDE_DIRS "."
                    REQUIRES engine)
```

- `SRCS` gives the list of source files in the `car` component.
- `INCLUDE_DIRS` gives the list of public include directories for this component. Because the public interface is `car.h`, the directory containing `car.h` is listed here.
- `REQUIRES` gives the list of components required by the public interface of this component. Because `car.h` is a public header and includes a header from `engine`, we include `engine` here. This makes sure that any other component which includes `car.h` will be able to recursively include the required `engine.h` also.

Engine component The `engine` component also has a public header file `include/engine.h`, but this header is simpler:

```
/* engine.h */
#define ENGINE_IS_HYBRID

void engine_start(void);
```

The implementation is in `engine.c`:

```
/* engine.c */
#include "engine.h"
#include "spark_plug.h"

...
```

In this component, `engine` depends on `spark_plug` but this is a private dependency. `spark_plug.h` is needed to compile `engine.c`, but not needed to include `engine.h`.

This means that the `engine/CMakeLists.txt` file can use `PRIV_REQUIRES`:

```
idf_component_register(SRCS "engine.c"
                    INCLUDE_DIRS "include"
                    PRIV_REQUIRES spark_plug)
```

As a result, source files in the `car` component don't need the `spark_plug` include directories added to their compiler search path. This can speed up compilation, and stops compiler command lines from becoming longer than necessary.

Spark Plug Component The `spark_plug` component doesn't depend on anything else. It has a public header file `spark_plug.h`, but this doesn't include headers from any other components.

This means that the `spark_plug/CMakeLists.txt` file doesn't need any `REQUIRES` or `PRIV_REQUIRES` clauses:

```
idf_component_register(SRCS "spark_plug.c"
                       INCLUDE_DIRS ".")
```

Source File Include Directories

Each component's source file is compiled with these include path directories, as specified in the passed arguments to `idf_component_register`:

```
idf_component_register(..
                       INCLUDE_DIRS "include"
                       PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS "other")
```

- The current component's `INCLUDE_DIRS` and `PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS`.
- The `INCLUDE_DIRS` belonging to all other components listed in the `REQUIRES` and `PRIV_REQUIRES` parameters (ie all the current component's public and private dependencies).
- Recursively, all of the `INCLUDE_DIRS` of those components `REQUIRES` lists (ie all public dependencies of this component's dependencies, recursively expanded).

Main component requirements

The component named `main` is special because it automatically requires all other components in the build. So it's not necessary to pass `REQUIRES` or `PRIV_REQUIRES` to this component. See *renaming main* for a description of what needs to be changed if no longer using the `main` component.

Common component requirements

To avoid duplication, every component automatically requires some "common" IDF components even if they are not mentioned explicitly. Headers from these components can always be included.

The list of common components is: cxx, newlib, freertos, esp_hw_support, heap, log, lwip, soc, hal, esp_rom, esp_common, esp_system.

Including components in the build

- By default, every component is included in the build.
- If you set the `COMPONENTS` variable to a minimal list of components used directly by your project, then the build will expand to also include required components. The full list of components will be:
  - Components mentioned explicitly in `COMPONENTS`.
  - Those components' requirements (evaluated recursively).
  - The "common" components that every component depends on.
- Setting `COMPONENTS` to the minimal list of required components can significantly reduce compile times.

Requirements in the build system implementation

- Very early in the CMake configuration process, the script `expand_requirements.cmake` is run. This script does a partial evaluation of all component CMakeLists.txt files and builds a graph of component requirements (this graph may have cycles). The graph is used to generate a file `component_depends.cmake` in the build directory.
- The main CMake process then includes this file and uses it to determine the list of components to include in the build (internal `BUILD_COMPONENTS` variable). The `BUILD_COMPONENTS` variable is sorted so dependencies are listed first, however as the component dependency graph has cycles this cannot be guaranteed for all components. The order should be deterministic given the same set of components and component dependencies.
- The value of `BUILD_COMPONENTS` is logged by CMake as "Component names: "
- Configuration is then evaluated for the components included in the build.
- Each component is included in the build normally and the CMakeLists.txt file is evaluated again to add the component libraries to the build.

Component Dependency Order The order of components in the `BUILD_COMPONENTS` variable determines other orderings during the build:

- Order that *project_include.cmake* files are included into the project.
- Order that the list of header paths is generated for compilation (via `-I` argument). (Note that for a given component's source files, only that component's dependency's header paths are passed to the compiler.)

4.4.9 Overriding Parts of the Project

project_include.cmake

For components that have build requirements which must be evaluated before any component CMakeLists files are evaluated, you can create a file called `project_include.cmake` in the component directory. This CMake file is included when `project.cmake` is evaluating the entire project.

`project_include.cmake` files are used inside ESP-IDF, for defining project-wide build features such as `esptool.py` command line arguments and the `bootloader` "special app".

Unlike component `CMakeLists.txt` files, when including a `project_include.cmake` file the current source directory (`CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR` and working directory) is the project directory. Use the variable `COMPONENT_DIR` for the absolute directory of the component.

Note that `project_include.cmake` isn't necessary for the most common component uses - such as adding include directories to the project, or `LDFLAGS` to the final linking step. These values can be customised via the `CMakeLists.txt` file itself. See *Optional Project Variables* for details.

`project_include.cmake` files are included in the order given in `BUILD_COMPONENTS` variable (as logged by CMake). This means that a component's `project_include.cmake` file will be included after it's all dependencies' `project_include.cmake` files, unless both components are part of a dependency cycle. This is important if a `project_include.cmake` file relies on variables set by another component. See also *above*.

Take great care when setting variables or targets in a `project_include.cmake` file. As the values are included into the top-level project CMake pass, they can influence or break functionality across all components!

KConfig.projbuild

This is an equivalent to `project_include.cmake` for *Component Configuration* KConfig files. If you want to include configuration options at the top-level of menuconfig, rather than inside the "Component Configuration" sub-menu, then these can be defined in the KConfig.projbuild file alongside the `CMakeLists.txt` file.

Take care when adding configuration values in this file, as they will be included across the entire project configuration. Where possible, it's generally better to create a KConfig file for *Component Configuration*.

`project_include.cmake` files are used inside ESP-IDF, for defining project-wide build features such as `esptool.py` command line arguments and the `bootloader` "special app".

4.4.10 Configuration-Only Components

Special components which contain no source files, only `Kconfig.projbuild` and `KConfig`, can have a one-line `CMakeLists.txt` file which calls the function `idf_component_register()` with no arguments specified. This function will include the component in the project build, but no library will be built *and* no header files will be added to any include paths.

4.4.11 Debugging CMake

For full details about CMake and CMake commands, see the CMake v3.5 documentation.

Some tips for debugging the ESP-IDF CMake-based build system:

- When CMake runs, it prints quite a lot of diagnostic information including lists of components and component paths.
- Running `cmake -DDEBUG=1` will produce more verbose diagnostic output from the IDF build system.
- Running `cmake` with the `--trace` or `--trace-expand` options will give a lot of information about control flow. See the cmake command line documentation.

When included from a project CMakeLists file, the `project.cmake` file defines some utility modules and global variables and then sets `IDF_PATH` if it was not set in the system environment.

It also defines an overridden custom version of the built-in CMake `project` function. This function is overridden to add all of the ESP-IDF specific project functionality.

Warning On Undefined Variables

By default, `idf.py` passes the `--warn-uninitialized` flag to CMake so it will print a warning if an undefined variable is referenced in the build. This can be very useful to find buggy CMake files.

If you don't want this behaviour, it can be disabled by passing `--no-warnings` to `idf.py`.

Browse the /tools/cmake/project.cmake file and supporting functions in /tools/cmake/ for more details.

4.4.12 Example Component CMakeLists

Because the build environment tries to set reasonable defaults that will work most of the time, component `CMakeLists.txt` can be very small or even empty (see *Minimal Component CMakeLists*). However, overriding *component variables* is usually required for some functionality.

Here are some more advanced examples of component CMakeLists files.

Adding conditional configuration

The configuration system can be used to conditionally compile some files depending on the options selected in the project configuration.

`Kconfig`:

```
config FOO_ENABLE_BAR
    bool "Enable the BAR feature."
    help
        This enables the BAR feature of the FOO component.
```

`CMakeLists.txt`:

```
 set(srcs "foo.c" "more_foo.c")

 if(CONFIG_FOO_ENABLE_BAR)
     list(APPEND srcs "bar.c")
 endif()

idf_component_register(SRCS "${srcs}"
                       ...)
```

This example makes use of the CMake if function and list APPEND function.

This can also be used to select or stub out an implementation, as such:

`Kconfig`:

```
config ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT
    bool "Enable LCD output."
    help
        Select this if your board has a LCD.

config ENABLE_LCD_CONSOLE
    bool "Output console text to LCD"
    depends on ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT
    help
        Select this to output debugging output to the lcd

config ENABLE_LCD_PLOT
    bool "Output temperature plots to LCD"
    depends on ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT
    help
        Select this to output temperature plots
```

`CMakeLists.txt`:

```
if(CONFIG_ENABLE_LCD_OUTPUT)
   set(srcs lcd-real.c lcd-spi.c)
else()
   set(srcs lcd-dummy.c)
endif()

# We need font if either console or plot is enabled
if(CONFIG_ENABLE_LCD_CONSOLE OR CONFIG_ENABLE_LCD_PLOT)
   list(APPEND srcs "font.c")
endif()

idf_component_register(SRCS "${srcs}"
                       ...)
```

Conditions which depend on the target

The current target is available to CMake files via `IDF_TARGET` variable.

In addition to that, if target `xyz` is used (`IDF_TARGET=xyz`), then Kconfig variable `CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_XYZ` will be set.

Note that component dependencies may depend on `IDF_TARGET` variable, but not on Kconfig variables. Also one can not use Kconfig variables in `include` statements in CMake files, but `IDF_TARGET` can be used in such context.

Source Code Generation

Some components will have a situation where a source file isn't supplied with the component itself but has to be generated from another file. Say our component has a header file that consists of the converted binary data of a BMP file, converted using a hypothetical tool called bmp2h. The header file is then included in as C source file called graphics_lib.c:

```
add_custom_command(OUTPUT logo.h
     COMMAND bmp2h -i ${COMPONENT_DIR}/logo.bmp -o log.h
     DEPENDS ${COMPONENT_DIR}/logo.bmp
     VERBATIM)

add_custom_target(logo DEPENDS logo.h)
add_dependencies(${COMPONENT_LIB} logo)

set_property(DIRECTORY "${COMPONENT_DIR}" APPEND PROPERTY
     ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES logo.h)
```

This answer is adapted from the CMake FAQ entry, which contains some other examples that will also work with ESP-IDF builds.

In this example, logo.h will be generated in the current directory (the build directory) while logo.bmp comes with the component and resides under the component path. Because logo.h is a generated file, it should be cleaned when the project is cleaned. For this reason it is added to the ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES property.

Note: If generating files as part of the project CMakeLists.txt file, not a component CMakeLists.txt, then use build property `PROJECT_DIR` instead of `${COMPONENT_DIR}` and `${PROJECT_NAME}.elf` instead of `${COMPONENT_LIB}`.)

If a a source file from another component included `logo.h`, then `add_dependencies` would need to be called to add a dependency between the two components, to ensure that the component source files were always compiled in the correct order.

Embedding Binary Data

Sometimes you have a file with some binary or text data that you'd like to make available to your component - but you don't want to reformat the file as C source.

You can specify argument `EMBED_FILES` in the component registration, giving space-delimited names of the files to embed:

```
idf_component_register(...
                       EMBED_FILES server_root_cert.der)
```

Or if the file is a string, you can use the variable `EMBED_TXTFILES`. This will embed the contents of the text file as a null-terminated string:

```
idf_component_register(...
                       EMBED_TXTFILES server_root_cert.pem)
```

The file's contents will be added to the .rodata section in flash, and are available via symbol names as follows:

```
extern const uint8_t server_root_cert_pem_start[] asm("_binary_server_root_cert_
↪pem_start");
extern const uint8_t server_root_cert_pem_end[]   asm("_binary_server_root_cert_
↪pem_end");
```

The names are generated from the full name of the file, as given in `EMBED_FILES`. Characters /, ., etc. are replaced with underscores. The _binary prefix in the symbol name is added by objcopy and is the same for both text and binary files.

To embed a file into a project, rather than a component, you can call the function `target_add_binary_data` like this:

```
target_add_binary_data(myproject.elf "main/data.bin" TEXT)
```

Place this line after the `project()` line in your project CMakeLists.txt file. Replace `myproject.elf` with your project name. The final argument can be `TEXT` to embed a null-terminated string, or `BINARY` to embed the content as-is.

For an example of using this technique, see the "main" component of the file_serving example protocols/http_server/file_serving/main/CMakeLists.txt - two files are loaded at build time and linked into the firmware.

It is also possible embed a generated file:

```
add_custom_command(OUTPUT my_processed_file.bin
                   COMMAND my_process_file_cmd my_unprocessed_file.bin)
target_add_binary_data(my_target "my_processed_file.bin" BINARY)
```

In the example above, `my_processed_file.bin` is generated from `my_unprocessed_file.bin` through some command `my_process_file_cmd`, then embedded into the target.

To specify a dependence on a target, use the `DEPENDS` argument:

```
add_custom_target(my_process COMMAND ...)
target_add_binary_data(my_target "my_embed_file.bin" BINARY DEPENDS my_process)
```

The `DEPENDS` argument to `target_add_binary_data` ensures that the target executes first.

Code and Data Placements

ESP-IDF has a feature called linker script generation that enables components to define where its code and data will be placed in memory through linker fragment files. These files are processed by the build system, and is used to augment the linker script used for linking app binary. See *Linker Script Generation* for a quick start guide as well as a detailed discussion of the mechanism.

Fully Overriding The Component Build Process

Obviously, there are cases where all these recipes are insufficient for a certain component, for example when the component is basically a wrapper around another third-party component not originally intended to be compiled under this build system. In that case, it's possible to forego the ESP-IDF build system entirely by using a CMake feature called ExternalProject. Example component CMakeLists:

```
# External build process for quirc, runs in source dir and
# produces libquirc.a
externalproject_add(quirc_build
    PREFIX ${COMPONENT_DIR}
    SOURCE_DIR ${COMPONENT_DIR}/quirc
    CONFIGURE_COMMAND ""
    BUILD_IN_SOURCE 1
    BUILD_COMMAND make CC=${CMAKE_C_COMPILER} libquirc.a
    INSTALL_COMMAND ""
    )

 # Add libquirc.a to the build process
 add_library(quirc STATIC IMPORTED GLOBAL)
 add_dependencies(quirc quirc_build)

 set_target_properties(quirc PROPERTIES IMPORTED_LOCATION
      ${COMPONENT_DIR}/quirc/libquirc.a)
 set_target_properties(quirc PROPERTIES INTERFACE_INCLUDE_DIRECTORIES
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    ${COMPONENT_DIR}/quirc/lib)

set_directory_properties( PROPERTIES ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES
    "${COMPONENT_DIR}/quirc/libquirc.a")
```

(The above CMakeLists.txt can be used to create a component named `quirc` that builds the quirc project using its own Makefile.)

- `externalproject_add` defines an external build system.
  - `SOURCE_DIR`, `CONFIGURE_COMMAND`, `BUILD_COMMAND` and `INSTALL_COMMAND` should always be set. `CONFIGURE_COMMAND` can be set to an empty string if the build system has no "configure" step. `INSTALL_COMMAND` will generally be empty for ESP-IDF builds.
  - Setting `BUILD_IN_SOURCE` means the build directory is the same as the source directory. Otherwise you can set `BUILD_DIR`.
  - Consult the ExternalProject documentation for more details about `externalproject_add()`
- The second set of commands adds a library target, which points to the "imported" library file built by the external system. Some properties need to be set in order to add include directories and tell CMake where this file is.
- Finally, the generated library is added to ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES. This means `make clean` will delete this library. (Note that the other object files from the build won't be deleted.)

ExternalProject dependencies, clean builds CMake has some unusual behaviour around external project builds:

- ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES only works when "make" is used as the build system. If Ninja or an IDE build system is used, it won't delete these files when cleaning.
- However, the ExternalProject configure & build commands will *always* be re-run after a clean is run.
- Therefore, there are two alternative recommended ways to configure the external build command:
  1. Have the external `BUILD_COMMAND` run a full clean compile of all sources. The build command will be run if any of the dependencies passed to `externalproject_add` with `DEPENDS` have changed, or if this is a clean build (ie any of `idf.py clean`, `ninja clean`, or `make clean` was run.)
  2. Have the external `BUILD_COMMAND` be an incremental build command. Pass the parameter `BUILD_ALWAYS 1` to `externalproject_add`. This means the external project will be built each time a build is run, regardless of dependencies. This is only recommended if the external project has correct incremental build behaviour, and doesn't take too long to run.

The best of these approaches for building an external project will depend on the project itself, its build system, and whether you anticipate needing to frequently recompile the project.

4.4.13 Custom sdkconfig defaults

For example projects or other projects where you don't want to specify a full sdkconfig configuration, but you do want to override some key values from the ESP-IDF defaults, it is possible to create a file `sdkconfig.defaults` in the project directory. This file will be used when creating a new config from scratch, or when any new config value hasn't yet been set in the `sdkconfig` file.

To override the name of this file or to specify multiple files, set the `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS` environment variable or set `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS` in top-level CMakeLists.txt. If specifying multiple files, use semicolon as the list separator. File names not specified as full paths are resolved relative to current project.

Target-dependent sdkconfig defaults

In addition to `sdkconfig.defaults` file, build system will also load defaults from `sdkconfig.defaults.TARGET_NAME` file, where `TARGET_NAME` is the value of `IDF_TARGET`. For example, for `esp32` target, default settings will be taken from `sdkconfig.defaults` first, and then from `sdkconfig.defaults.esp32`.

If `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS` is used to override the name of defaults file/files, the name of target-specific defaults file will be derived from `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS` value/values using the rule above.

4.4.14 Flash arguments

There are some scenarios that we want to flash the target board without IDF. For this case we want to save the built binaries, esptool.py and esptool write_flash arguments. It's simple to write a script to save binaries and esptool.py.

After running a project build, the build directory contains binary output files (`.bin` files) for the project and also the following flashing data files:

- `flash_project_args` contains arguments to flash the entire project (app, bootloader, partition table, PHY data if this is configured).
- `flash_app_args` contains arguments to flash only the app.
- `flash_bootloader_args` contains arguments to flash only the bootloader.

You can pass any of these flasher argument files to `esptool.py` as follows:

```
python esptool.py --chip esp32 write_flash @build/flash_project_args
```

Alternatively, it is possible to manually copy the parameters from the argument file and pass them on the command line.

The build directory also contains a generated file `flasher_args.json` which contains project flash information, in JSON format. This file is used by `idf.py` and can also be used by other tools which need information about the project build.

4.4.15 Building the Bootloader

The bootloader is built by default as part of `idf.py build`, or can be built standalone via `idf.py bootloader`.

The bootloader is a special "subproject" inside /components/bootloader/subproject. It has its own project CMakeLists.txt file and builds separate .ELF and .BIN files to the main project. However it shares its configuration and build directory with the main project.

The subproject is inserted as an external project from the top-level project, by the file /components/bootloader/project_include.cmake. The main build process runs CMake for the subproject, which includes discovering components (a subset of the main components) and generating a bootloader-specific config (derived from the main `sdkconfig`).

4.4.16 Selecting the Target

ESP-IDF supports multiple targets (chips). The identifiers used for each chip are as follows:

- `esp32` —for ESP32-D0WD, ESP32-D2WD, ESP32-S0WD (ESP-SOLO), ESP32-U4WDH, ESP32-PICO-D4
- `esp32s2`—for ESP32-S2
- `esp32c3`—for ESP32-C3

To select the target before building the project, use `idf.py set-target <target>` command, for example:

```
idf.py set-target esp32s2
```

Important: `idf.py set-target` will clear the build directory and re-generate the `sdkconfig` file from scratch. The old `sdkconfig` file will be saved as `sdkconfig.old`.

Note: The behavior of `idf.py set-target` command is equivalent to:

1. clearing the build directory (`idf.py fullclean`)
2. removing the sdkconfig file (`mv sdkconfig sdkconfig.old`)
3. configuring the project with the new target (`idf.py -DIDF_TARGET=esp32 reconfigure`)

It is also possible to pass the desired `IDF_TARGET` as an environment variable (e.g. `export IDF_TARGET=esp32s2`) or as a CMake variable (e.g. `-DIDF_TARGET=esp32s2` argument to CMake or idf.py). Setting the environment variable is a convenient method if you mostly work with one type of the chip.

To specify the _default_ value of `IDF_TARGET` for a given project, add `CONFIG_IDF_TARGET` value to `sdkconfig.defaults`. For example, `CONFIG_IDF_TARGET="esp32s2"`. This value will be used if `IDF_TARGET` is not specified by other method: using an environment variable, CMake variable, or `idf.py set-target` command.

If the target has not been set by any of these methods, the build system will default to `esp32` target.

4.4.17 Writing Pure CMake Components

The ESP-IDF build system "wraps" CMake with the concept of "components", and helper functions to automatically integrate these components into a project build.

However, underneath the concept of "components" is a full CMake build system. It is also possible to make a component which is pure CMake.

Here is an example minimal "pure CMake" component CMakeLists file for a component named `json`:

```
add_library(json STATIC
cJSON/cJSON.c
cJSON/cJSON_Utils.c)

target_include_directories(json PUBLIC cJSON)
```

- This is actually an equivalent declaration to the IDF `json` component /components/json/CMakeLists.txt.
- This file is quite simple as there are not a lot of source files. For components with a large number of files, the globbing behaviour of ESP-IDF's component logic can make the component CMakeLists style simpler.)
- Any time a component adds a library target with the component name, the ESP-IDF build system will automatically add this to the build, expose public include directories, etc. If a component wants to add a library target with a different name, dependencies will need to be added manually via CMake commands.

4.4.18 Using Third-Party CMake Projects with Components

CMake is used for a lot of open-source C and C++ projects —code that users can tap into for their applications. One of the benefits of having a CMake build system is the ability to import these third-party projects, sometimes even without modification! This allows for users to be able to get functionality that may not yet be provided by a component, or use another library for the same functionality.

Importing a library might look like this for a hypothetical library `foo` to be used in the `main` component:

```
# Register the component
idf_component_register(...)

# Set values of hypothetical variables that control the build of `foo`
set(FOO_BUILD_STATIC OFF)
set(FOO_BUILD_TESTS OFF)

# Create and import the library targets
add_subdirectory(foo)

# Publicly link `foo` to `main` component
target_link_libraries(main PUBLIC foo)
```

For an actual example, take a look at build_system/cmake/import_lib. Take note that what needs to be done in order to import the library may vary. It is recommended to read up on the library's documentation for instructions on how to import it from other projects. Studying the library's CMakeLists.txt and build structure can also be helpful.

It is also possible to wrap a third-party library to be used as a component in this manner. For example, the mbedtls component is a wrapper for Espressif's fork of mbedtls. See its component CMakeLists.txt .

The CMake variable `ESP_PLATFORM` is set to 1 whenever the ESP-IDF build system is being used. Tests such as `if (ESP_PLATFORM)` can be used in generic CMake code if special IDF-specific logic is required.

Using ESP-IDF components from external libraries

The above example assumes that the external library `foo` (or `tinyxml` in the case of the `import_lib` example) doesn't need to use any ESP-IDF APIs apart from common APIs such as libc, libstdc++, etc. If the external library needs to use APIs provided by other ESP-IDF components, this needs to be specified in the external CMakeLists.txt file by adding a dependency on the library target `idf::<componentname>`.

For example, in the `foo/CMakeLists.txt` file:

```
add_library(foo bar.c fizz.cpp buzz.cpp)

if(ESP_PLATFORM)
  # On ESP-IDF, bar.c needs to include esp_spi_flash.h from the spi_flash component
  target_link_libraries(foo PRIVATE idf::spi_flash)
endif()
```

4.4.19 Using Prebuilt Libraries with Components

Another possibility is that you have a prebuilt static library (`.a` file), built by some other build process.

The ESP-IDF build system provides a utility function `add_prebuilt_library` for users to be able to easily import and use prebuilt libraries:

```
add_prebuilt_library(target_name lib_path [REQUIRES req1 req2 ...] [PRIV_REQUIRES␣
↪req1 req2 ...])
```

where:

- `target_name`- name that can be used to reference the imported library, such as when linking to other targets
- `lib_path`- path to prebuilt library; may be an absolute or relative path to the component directory

Optional arguments `REQUIRES` and `PRIV_REQUIRES` specify dependency on other components. These have the same meaning as the arguments for `idf_component_register`.

Take note that the prebuilt library must have been compiled for the same target as the consuming project. Configuration relevant to the prebuilt library must also match. If not paid attention to, these two factors may contribute to subtle bugs in the app.

For an example, take a look at build_system/cmake/import_prebuilt.

4.4.20 Using ESP-IDF in Custom CMake Projects

ESP-IDF provides a template CMake project for easily creating an application. However, in some instances the user might already have an existing CMake project or may want to create a custom one. In these cases it is desirable to be able to consume IDF components as libraries to be linked to the user's targets (libraries/ executables).

It is possible to do so by using the *build system APIs provided* by tools/cmake/idf.cmake. For example:

```
cmake_minimum_required(VERSION 3.5)
project(my_custom_app C)

# Include CMake file that provides ESP-IDF CMake build system APIs.
include($ENV{IDF_PATH}/tools/cmake/idf.cmake)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
# Include ESP-IDF components in the build, may be thought as an equivalent of
# add_subdirectory() but with some additional processing and magic for ESP-IDF␣
↪build
# specific build processes.
idf_build_process(esp32)

# Create the project executable and plainly link the newlib component to it using
# its alias, idf::newlib.
add_executable(${CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME}.elf main.c)
target_link_libraries(${CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME}.elf idf::newlib)

# Let the build system know what the project executable is to attach more targets,␣
↪dependencies, etc.
idf_build_executable(${CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME}.elf)
```

The example in build_system/cmake/idf_as_lib demonstrates the creation of an application equivalent to hello world application using a custom CMake project.

4.4.21 ESP-IDF CMake Build System API

idf-build-commands

```
idf_build_get_property(var property [GENERATOR_EXPRESSION])
```

Retrieve a *build property* *property* and store it in *var* accessible from the current scope. Specifying *GENERATOR_EXPRESSION* will retrieve the generator expression string for that property, instead of the actual value, which can be used with CMake commands that support generator expressions.

```
idf_build_set_property(property val [APPEND])
```

Set a *build property* *property* with value *val*. Specifying *APPEND* will append the specified value to the current value of the property. If the property does not previously exist or it is currently empty, the specified value becomes the first element/member instead.

```
idf_build_component(component_dir)
```

Present a directory *component_dir* that contains a component to the build system. Relative paths are converted to absolute paths with respect to current directory. All calls to this command must be performed before *idf_build_process*.

This command does not guarantee that the component will be processed during build (see the *COMPONENTS* argument description for *idf_build_process*)

```
idf_build_process(target
                  [PROJECT_DIR project_dir]
                  [PROJECT_VER project_ver]
                  [PROJECT_NAME project_name]
                  [SDKCONFIG sdkconfig]
                  [SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS sdkconfig_defaults]
                  [BUILD_DIR build_dir]
                  [COMPONENTS component1 component2 ...])
```

Performs the bulk of the behind-the-scenes magic for including ESP-IDF components such as component configuration, libraries creation, dependency expansion and resolution. Among these functions, perhaps the most important from a user's perspective is the libraries creation by calling each component's `idf_component_register`. This command creates the libraries for each component, which are accessible using aliases in the form idf::*component_name*. These aliases can be used to link the components to the user's own targets, either libraries or executables.

The call requires the target chip to be specified with *target* argument. Optional arguments for the call include:

- PROJECT_DIR - directory of the project; defaults to CMAKE_SOURCE_DIR
- PROJECT_NAME - name of the project; defaults to CMAKE_PROJECT_NAME
- PROJECT_VER - version/revision of the project; defaults to "1"
- SDKCONFIG - output path of generated sdkconfig file; defaults to PROJECT_DIR/sdkconfig or CMAKE_SOURCE_DIR/sdkconfig depending if PROJECT_DIR is set
- SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS - list of files containing default config to use in the build (list must contain full paths); defaults to empty. For each value *filename* in the list, the config from file *filename.target*, if it exists, is also loaded.
- BUILD_DIR - directory to place ESP-IDF build-related artifacts, such as generated binaries, text files, components; defaults to CMAKE_BINARY_DIR
- COMPONENTS - select components to process among the components known by the build system (added via *idf_build_component*). This argument is used to trim the build. Other components are automatically added if they are required in the dependency chain, i.e. the public and private requirements of the components in this list are automatically added, and in turn the public and private requirements of those requirements, so on and so forth. If not specified, all components known to the build system are processed.

```
idf_build_executable(executable)
```

Specify the executable *executable* for ESP-IDF build. This attaches additional targets such as dependencies related to flashing, generating additional binary files, etc. Should be called after `idf_build_process`.

```
idf_build_get_config(var config [GENERATOR_EXPRESSION])
```

Get the value of the specified config. Much like build properties, specifying *GENERATOR_EXPRESSION* will retrieve the generator expression string for that config, instead of the actual value, which can be used with CMake commands that support generator expressions. Actual config values are only known after call to `idf_build_process`, however.

idf-build-properties

These are properties that describe the build. Values of build properties can be retrieved by using the build command `idf_build_get_property`. For example, to get the Python interpreter used for the build:

```
idf_build_get_property(python PYTHON)
message(STATUS "The Python intepreter is: ${python}")
```

- BUILD_DIR - build directory; set from `idf_build_process` BUILD_DIR argument
- BUILD_COMPONENTS - list of components included in the build; set by `idf_build_process`
- BUILD_COMPONENT_ALIASES - list of library alias of components included in the build; set by `idf_build_process`
- C_COMPILE_OPTIONS - compile options applied to all components' C source files
- COMPILE_OPTIONS - compile options applied to all components' source files, regardless of it being C or C++
- COMPILE_DEFINITIONS - compile definitions applied to all component source files
- CXX_COMPILE_OPTIONS - compile options applied to all components' C++ source files
- EXECUTABLE - project executable; set by call to `idf_build_executable`
- EXECUTABLE_NAME - name of project executable without extension; set by call to `idf_build_executable`
- EXECUTABLE_DIR - path containing the output executable
- IDF_PATH - ESP-IDF path; set from IDF_PATH environment variable, if not, inferred from the location of `idf.cmake`
- IDF_TARGET - target chip for the build; set from the required target argument for `idf_build_process`
- IDF_VER - ESP-IDF version; set from either a version file or the Git revision of the IDF_PATH repository
- INCLUDE_DIRECTORIES - include directories for all component source files
- KCONFIGS - list of Kconfig files found in components in build; set by `idf_build_process`
- KCONFIG_PROJBUILDS - list of Kconfig.projbuild files found in components in build; set by `idf_build_process`
- PROJECT_NAME - name of the project; set from `idf_build_process` PROJECT_NAME argument

- PROJECT_DIR - directory of the project; set from `idf_build_process` PROJECT_DIR argument
- PROJECT_VER - version of the project; set from `idf_build_process` PROJECT_VER argument
- PYTHON - Python interpreter used for the build; set from PYTHON environment variable if available, if not "python" is used
- SDKCONFIG - full path to output config file; set from `idf_build_process` SDKCONFIG argument
- SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS - list of files containing default config to use in the build; set from `idf_build_process` SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS argument
- SDKCONFIG_HEADER - full path to C/C++ header file containing component configuration; set by `idf_build_process`
- SDKCONFIG_CMAKE - full path to CMake file containing component configuration; set by `idf_build_process`
- SDKCONFIG_JSON - full path to JSON file containing component configuration; set by `idf_build_process`
- SDKCONFIG_JSON_MENUS - full path to JSON file containing config menus; set by `idf_build_process`

idf-component-commands

```
idf_component_get_property(var component property [GENERATOR_EXPRESSION])
```

Retrieve a specified *component*'s *component property*, *property* and store it in *var* accessible from the current scope. Specifying *GENERATOR_EXPRESSION* will retrieve the generator expression string for that property, instead of the actual value, which can be used with CMake commands that support generator expressions.

```
idf_component_set_property(component property val [APPEND])
```

Set a specified *component*'s *component property*, *property* with value *val*. Specifying *APPEND* will append the specified value to the current value of the property. If the property does not previously exist or it is currently empty, the specified value becomes the first element/member instead.

```
idf_component_register([[SRCS src1 src2 ...] | [[SRC_DIRS dir1 dir2 ...] [EXCLUDE_
↪SRCS src1 src2 ...]]
                       [INCLUDE_DIRS dir1 dir2 ...]
                       [PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS dir1 dir2 ...]
                       [REQUIRES component1 component2 ...]
                       [PRIV_REQUIRES component1 component2 ...]
                       [LDFRAGMENTS ldfragment1 ldfragment2 ...]
                       [REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS target1 target2 ...]
                       [EMBED_FILES file1 file2 ...]
                       [EMBED_TXTFILES file1 file2 ...]
                       [KCONFIG kconfig]
                       [KCONFIG_PROJBUILD kconfig_projbuild])
```

Register a component to the build system. Much like the `project()` CMake command, this should be called from the component's CMakeLists.txt directly (not through a function or macro) and is recommended to be called before any other command. Here are some guidelines on what commands can **not** be called before `idf_component_register`:

- commands that are not valid in CMake script mode
- custom commands defined in project_include.cmake
- build system API commands except `idf_build_get_property`; although consider whether the property may not have been set yet

Commands that set and operate on variables are generally okay to call before `idf_component_register`.

The arguments for `idf_component_register` include:

- SRCS - component source files used for creating a static library for the component; if not specified, component is a treated as a config-only component and an interface library is created instead.

- SRC_DIRS, EXCLUDE_SRCS - used to glob source files (.c, .cpp, .S) by specifying directories, instead of specifying source files manually via SRCS. Note that this is subject to the *limitations of globbing in CMake*. Source files specified in EXCLUDE_SRCS are removed from the globbed files.
- INCLUDE_DIRS - paths, relative to the component directory, which will be added to the include search path for all other components which require the current component
- PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS - directory paths, must be relative to the component directory, which will be added to the include search path for this component's source files only
- REQUIRES - public component requirements for the component
- PRIV_REQUIRES - private component requirements for the component; ignored on config-only components
- LDFRAGMENTS - component linker fragment files
- REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS - specify the only target the component supports
- KCONFIG - override the default Kconfig file
- KCONFIG_PROJBUILD - override the default Kconfig.projbuild file

The following are used for *embedding data into the component*, and is considered as source files when determining if a component is config-only. This means that even if the component does not specify source files, a static library is still created internally for the component if it specifies either:

- EMBED_FILES - binary files to be embedded in the component
- EMBED_TXTFILES - text files to be embedded in the component

idf-component-properties

These are properties that describe a component. Values of component properties can be retrieved by using the build command `idf_component_get_property`. For example, to get the directory of the `freertos` component:

```
idf_component_get_property(dir freertos COMPONENT_DIR)
message(STATUS "The 'freertos' component directory is: ${dir}")
```

- COMPONENT_ALIAS - alias for COMPONENT_LIB used for linking the component to external targets; set by `idf_build_component` and alias library itself is created by `idf_component_register`
- COMPONENT_DIR - component directory; set by `idf_build_component`
- COMPONENT_OVERRIDEN_DIR - contains the directory of the original component if *this component overrides another component*
- COMPONENT_LIB - name for created component static/interface library; set by `idf_build_component` and library itself is created by `idf_component_register`
- COMPONENT_NAME - name of the component; set by `idf_build_component` based on the component directory name
- COMPONENT_TYPE - type of the component, whether LIBRARY or CONFIG_ONLY. A component is of type LIBRARY if it specifies source files or embeds a file
- EMBED_FILES - list of files to embed in component; set from `idf_component_register` EMBED_FILES argument
- EMBED_TXTFILES - list of text files to embed in component; set from `idf_component_register` EMBED_TXTFILES argument
- INCLUDE_DIRS - list of component include directories; set from `idf_component_register` INCLUDE_DIRS argument
- KCONFIG - component Kconfig file; set by `idf_build_component`
- KCONFIG_PROJBUILD - component Kconfig.projbuild; set by `idf_build_component`
- LDFRAGMENTS - list of component linker fragment files; set from `idf_component_register` LDFRAGMENTS argument
- PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS - list of component private include directories; set from `idf_component_register` PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS on components of type LIBRARY
- PRIV_REQUIRES - list of private component dependentices; set from `idf_component_register` PRIV_REQUIRES argument
- REQUIRED_IDF_TARGETS - list of targets the component supports; set from `idf_component_register` EMBED_TXTFILES argument
- REQUIRES - list of public component dependencies; set from `idf_component_register` REQUIRES argument

- SRCS - list of component source files; set from SRCS or SRC_DIRS/EXCLUDE_SRCS argument of `idf_component_register`

4.4.22 File Globbing & Incremental Builds

The preferred way to include source files in an ESP-IDF component is to list them manually via SRCS argument to `idf_component_register`:

```
idf_component_register(SRCS library/a.c library/b.c platform/platform.c
                       ...)
```

This preference reflects the CMake best practice of manually listing source files. This could, however, be inconvenient when there are lots of source files to add to the build. The ESP-IDF build system provides an alternative way for specifying source files using `SRC_DIRS`:

```
idf_component_register(SRC_DIRS library platform
                       ...)
```

This uses globbing behind the scenes to find source files in the specified directories. Be aware, however, that if a new source file is added and this method is used, then CMake won't know to automatically re-run and this file won't be added to the build.

The trade-off is acceptable when you're adding the file yourself, because you can trigger a clean build or run `idf.py reconfigure` to manually re-run CMake. However, the problem gets harder when you share your project with others who may check out a new version using a source control tool like Git…

For components which are part of ESP-IDF, we use a third party Git CMake integration module (/tools/cmake/third_party/GetGitRevisionDescription.cmake) which automatically re-runs CMake any time the repository commit changes. This means if you check out a new ESP-IDF version, CMake will automatically re-run.

For project components (not part of ESP-IDF), there are a few different options:

- If keeping your project file in Git, ESP-IDF will automatically track the Git revision and re-run CMake if the revision changes.
- If some components are kept in a third git repository (not the project repository or ESP-IDF repository), you can add a call to the `git_describe` function in a component CMakeLists file in order to automatically trigger re-runs of CMake when the Git revision changes.
- If not using Git, remember to manually run `idf.py reconfigure` whenever a source file may change.
- To avoid this problem entirely, use `SRCS` argument to `idf_component_register` to list all source files in project components.

The best option will depend on your particular project and its users.

4.4.23 Build System Metadata

For integration into IDEs and other build systems, when CMake runs the build process generates a number of metadata files in the `build/` directory. To regenerate these files, run `cmake` or `idf.py reconfigure` (or any other `idf.py` build command).

- `compile_commands.json` is a standard format JSON file which describes every source file which is compiled in the project. A CMake feature generates this file, and many IDEs know how to parse it.
- `project_description.json` contains some general information about the ESP-IDF project, configured paths, etc.
- `flasher_args.json` contains esptool.py arguments to flash the project's binary files. There are also `flash_*_args` files which can be used directly with esptool.py. See *Flash arguments*.
- `CMakeCache.txt` is the CMake cache file which contains other information about the CMake process, toolchain, etc.
- `config/sdkconfig.json` is a JSON-formatted version of the project configuration values.

- `config/kconfig_menus.json` is a JSON-formatted version of the menus shown in menuconfig, for use in external IDE UIs.

JSON Configuration Server

A tool called `confserver.py` is provided to allow IDEs to easily integrate with the configuration system logic. `confserver.py` is designed to run in the background and interact with a calling process by reading and writing JSON over process stdin & stdout.

You can run `confserver.py` from a project via `idf.py confserver` or `ninja confserver`, or a similar target triggered from a different build generator.

For more information about `confserver.py`, see tools/kconfig_new/README.md.

4.4.24 Build System Internals

Build Scripts

The listfiles for the ESP-IDF build system reside in /tools/cmake. The modules which implement core build system functionality are as follows:

- build.cmake - Build related commands i.e. build initialization, retrieving/setting build properties, build processing.
- component.cmake - Component related commands i.e. adding components, retrieving/setting component properties, registering components.
- kconfig.cmake - Generation of configuration files (sdkconfig, sdkconfig.h, sdkconfig.cmake, etc.) from Kconfig files.
- ldgen.cmake - Generation of final linker script from linker fragment files.
- target.cmake - Setting build target and toolchain file.
- utilities.cmake - Miscellaneous helper commands.

Aside from these files, there are two other important CMake scripts in /tools/cmake:

- idf.cmake - Sets up the build and includes the core modules listed above. Included in CMake projects in order to access ESP-IDF build system functionality.
- project.cmake - Includes `idf.cmake` and provides a custom `project()` command that takes care of all the heavy lifting of building an executable. Included in the top-level CMakeLists.txt of standard ESP-IDF projects.

The rest of the files in /tools/cmake are support or third-party scripts used in the build process.

Build Process

This section describes the standard ESP-IDF application build process. The build process can be broken down roughly into four phases:

Fig. 2: ESP-IDF Build System Process

Initialization This phase sets up necessary parameters for the build.

- **Upon inclusion of `idf.cmake` in `project.cmake`, the following steps are performed:**
  - Set `IDF_PATH` from environment variable or inferred from path to `project.cmake` included in the top-level CMakeLists.txt.
  - Add /tools/cmake to `CMAKE_MODULE_PATH` and include core modules plus the various helper/third-party scripts.
  - Set build tools/executables such as default Python interpreter.
  - Get ESP-IDF git revision and store as `IDF_VER`.
  - Set global build specifications i.e. compile options, compile definitions, include directories for all components in the build.
  - Add components in components to the build.
- **The initial part of the custom `project()` command performs the following steps:**
  - Set `IDF_TARGET` from environment variable or CMake cache and the corresponding `CMAKE_TOOLCHAIN_FILE` to be used.
  - Add components in `EXTRA_COMPONENTS_DIRS` to the build.
  - Prepare arguments for calling command `idf_build_process()` from variables such as `COMPONENTS`/`EXCLUDE_COMPONENTS`, `SDKCONFIG`, `SDKCONFIG_DEFAULTS`.

The call to `idf_build_process()` command marks the end of this phase.

Enumeration

This phase builds a final list of components to be processed in the build, and is performed in the first half of `idf_build_process()`.

- Retrieve each component's public and private requirements. A child process is created which executes each component's CMakeLists.txt in script mode. The values of `idf_component_register` REQUIRES and PRIV_REQUIRES argument is returned to the parent build process. This is called early expansion. The variable `CMAKE_BUILD_EARLY_EXPANSION` is defined during this step.
- Recursively include components based on public and private requirements.

Processing

This phase processes the components in the build, and is the second half of `idf_build_process()`.

- Load project configuration from sdkconfig file and generate an sdkconfig.cmake and sdkconfig.h header. These define configuration variables/macros that are accessible from the build scripts and C/C++ source/header files, respectively.
- Include each component's `project_include.cmake`.
- Add each component as a subdirectory, processing its CMakeLists.txt. The component CMakeLists.txt calls the registration command, `idf_component_register` which adds source files, include directories, creates component library, links dependencies, etc.

Finalization

This phase is everything after `idf_build_process()`.

- Create executable and link the component libraries to it.
- Generate project metadata files such as project_description.json and display relevant information about the project built.

Browse /tools/cmake/project.cmake for more details.

4.4.25 Migrating from ESP-IDF GNU Make System

Some aspects of the CMake-based ESP-IDF build system are very similar to the older GNU Make-based system. The developer needs to provide values the include directories, source files etc. There is a syntactical difference, however,

as the developer needs to pass these as arguments to the registration command, `idf_component_register`.

Automatic Conversion Tool

An automatic project conversion tool is available in /tools/cmake/convert_to_cmake.py. Run this command line tool with the path to a project like this:

```
$IDF_PATH/tools/cmake/convert_to_cmake.py /path/to/project_dir
```

The project directory must contain a Makefile, and GNU Make (`make`) must be installed and available on the PATH.

The tool will convert the project Makefile and any component `component.mk` files to their equivalent `CMakeLists.txt` files.

It does so by running `make` to expand the ESP-IDF build system variables which are set by the build, and then producing equivalent CMakelists files to set the same variables.

Important: When the conversion tool converts a `component.mk` file, it doesn't determine what other components that component depends on. This information needs to be added manually by editing the new component `CMakeLists.txt` file and adding `REQUIRES` and/or `PRIV_REQUIRES` clauses. Otherwise, source files in the component will fail to compile as headers from other components are not found. See *Component Requirements*.

The conversion tool is not capable of dealing with complex Makefile logic or unusual targets. These will need to be converted by hand.

No Longer Available in CMake

Some features are significantly different or removed in the CMake-based system. The following variables no longer exist in the CMake-based build system:

- `COMPONENT_BUILD_DIR`: Use `CMAKE_CURRENT_BINARY_DIR` instead.
- `COMPONENT_LIBRARY`: Defaulted to `$(COMPONENT_NAME).a`, but the library name could be overriden by the component. The name of the component library can no longer be overriden by the component.
- `CC`, `LD`, `AR`, `OBJCOPY`: Full paths to each tool from the gcc xtensa cross-toolchain. Use `CMAKE_C_COMPILER`, `CMAKE_C_LINK_EXECUTABLE`, `CMAKE_OBJCOPY`, etc instead. Full list here.
- `HOSTCC`, `HOSTLD`, `HOSTAR`: Full names of each tool from the host native toolchain. These are no longer provided, external projects should detect any required host toolchain manually.
- `COMPONENT_ADD_LDFLAGS`: Used to override linker flags. Use the CMake target_link_libraries command instead.
- `COMPONENT_ADD_LINKER_DEPS`: List of files that linking should depend on. target_link_libraries will usually infer these dependencies automatically. For linker scripts, use the provided custom CMake function `target_linker_scripts`.
- `COMPONENT_SUBMODULES`: No longer used, the build system will automatically enumerate all submodules in the ESP-IDF repository.
- `COMPONENT_EXTRA_INCLUDES`: Used to be an alternative to `COMPONENT_PRIV_INCLUDEDIRS` for absolute paths. Use `PRIV_INCLUDE_DIRS` argument to `idf_component_register` for all cases now (can be relative or absolute).
- `COMPONENT_OBJS`: Previously, component sources could be specified as a list of object files. Now they can be specified as a list of source files via `SRCS` argument to *idf_component_register*.
- `COMPONENT_OBJEXCLUDE`: Has been replaced with `EXCLUDE_SRCS` argument to `idf_component_register`. Specify source files (as absolute paths or relative to component directory), instead.
- `COMPONENT_EXTRA_CLEAN`: Set property `ADDITIONAL_MAKE_CLEAN_FILES` instead but note *CMake has some restrictions around this functionality*.
- `COMPONENT_OWNBUILDTARGET` & `COMPONENT_OWNCLEANTARGET`: Use CMake ExternalProject instead. See *Fully Overriding The Component Build Process* for full details.

- `COMPONENT_CONFIG_ONLY`: Call `idf_component_register` without any arguments instead. See *Configuration-Only Components*.
- `CFLAGS`, `CPPFLAGS`, `CXXFLAGS`: Use equivalent CMake commands instead. See *Controlling Component Compilation*.

No Default Values

Unlike in the legacy Make-based build system, the following have no default values:

- Source directories (`COMPONENT_SRCDIRS` variable in Make, `SRC_DIRS` argument to `idf_component_register` in CMake)
- Include directories (`COMPONENT_ADD_INCLUDEDIRS` variable in Make, `INCLUDE_DIRS` argument to `idf_component_register` in CMake)

No Longer Necessary

- In the legacy Make-based build system, it is required to also set `COMPONENT_SRCDIRS` if `COMPONENT_SRCS` is set. In CMake, the equivalent is not necessary i.e. specifying `SRC_DIRS` to `idf_component_register` if `SRCS` is also specified (in fact, `SRCS` is ignored if `SRC_DIRS` is specified).

Flashing from make

`make flash` and similar targets still work to build and flash. However, project `sdkconfig` no longer specifies serial port and baud rate. Environment variables can be used to override these. See *Flashing with ninja or make* for more details.

4.5 Deep Sleep Wake Stubs

ESP32-S2 supports running a "deep sleep wake stub" when coming out of deep sleep. This function runs immediately as soon as the chip wakes up - before any normal initialisation, bootloader, or ESP-IDF code has run. After the wake stub runs, the SoC can go back to sleep or continue to start ESP-IDF normally.

Deep sleep wake stub code is loaded into "RTC Fast Memory" and any data which it uses must also be loaded into RTC memory. RTC memory regions hold their contents during deep sleep.

4.5.1 Rules for Wake Stubs

Wake stub code must be carefully written:

- As the SoC has freshly woken from sleep, most of the peripherals are in reset states. The SPI flash is unmapped.
- The wake stub code can only call functions implemented in ROM or loaded into RTC Fast Memory (see below.)
- The wake stub code can only access data loaded in RTC memory. All other RAM will be unintiailised and have random contents. The wake stub can use other RAM for temporary storage, but the contents will be overwritten when the SoC goes back to sleep or starts ESP-IDF.
- RTC memory must include any read-only data (.rodata) used by the stub.
- Data in RTC memory is initialised whenever the SoC restarts, except when waking from deep sleep. When waking from deep sleep, the values which were present before going to sleep are kept.
- Wake stub code is a part of the main esp-idf app. During normal running of esp-idf, functions can call the wake stub functions or access RTC memory. It is as if these were regular parts of the app.

4.5.2 Implementing A Stub

The wake stub in esp-idf is called `esp_wake_deep_sleep()`. This function runs whenever the SoC wakes from deep sleep. There is a default version of this function provided in esp-idf, but the default function is weak-linked so if your app contains a function named `esp_wake_deep_sleep()` then this will override the default.

If supplying a custom wake stub, the first thing it does should be to call `esp_default_wake_deep_sleep()`.

It is not necessary to implement `esp_wake_deep_sleep()` in your app in order to use deep sleep. It is only necessary if you want to have special behaviour immediately on wake.

If you want to swap between different deep sleep stubs at runtime, it is also possible to do this by calling the `esp_set_deep_sleep_wake_stub()` function. This is not necessary if you only use the default `esp_wake_deep_sleep()` function.

All of these functions are declared in the `esp_sleep.h` header under components/esp32s2.

4.5.3 Loading Code Into RTC Memory

Wake stub code must be resident in RTC Fast Memory. This can be done in one of two ways.

The first way is to use the `RTC_IRAM_ATTR` attribute to place a function into RTC memory:

```
void RTC_IRAM_ATTR esp_wake_deep_sleep(void) {
    esp_default_wake_deep_sleep();
    // Add additional functionality here
}
```

The second way is to place the function into any source file whose name starts with `rtc_wake_stub`. Files names `rtc_wake_stub*` have their contents automatically put into RTC memory by the linker.

The first way is simpler for very short and simple code, or for source files where you want to mix "normal" and "RTC" code. The second way is simpler when you want to write longer pieces of code for RTC memory.

4.5.4 Loading Data Into RTC Memory

Data used by stub code must be resident in RTC memory.

The data can be placed in RTC Fast memory or in RTC Slow memory which is also used by the ULP.

Specifying this data can be done in one of two ways:

The first way is to use the `RTC_DATA_ATTR` and `RTC_RODATA_ATTR` to specify any data (writeable or read-only, respectively) which should be loaded into RTC memory:

```
RTC_DATA_ATTR int wake_count;

void RTC_IRAM_ATTR esp_wake_deep_sleep(void) {
    esp_default_wake_deep_sleep();
    static RTC_RODATA_ATTR const char fmt_str[] = "Wake count %d\n";
    esp_rom_printf(fmt_str, wake_count++);
}
```

The RTC memory area where this data will be placed can be configured via menuconfig option named `CONFIG_ESP32S2_RTCDATA_IN_FAST_MEM`. This option allows to keep slow memory area for ULP programs and once it is enabled the data marked with `RTC_DATA_ATTR` and `RTC_RODATA_ATTR` are placed in the RTC fast memory segment otherwise it goes to RTC slow memory (default option). This option depends on the `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE` because RTC fast memory can be accessed only by PRO_CPU.

The attributes `RTC_FAST_ATTR` and `RTC_SLOW_ATTR` can be used to specify data that will be force placed into RTC_FAST and RTC_SLOW memory respectively. Any access to data marked with `RTC_FAST_ATTR` is allowed by PRO_CPU only and it is responsibility of user to make sure about it.

Unfortunately, any string constants used in this way must be declared as arrays and marked with RTC_RODATA_ATTR, as shown in the example above.

The second way is to place the data into any source file whose name starts with `rtc_wake_stub`.

For example, the equivalent example in `rtc_wake_stub_counter.c`:

```
int wake_count;

void RTC_IRAM_ATTR esp_wake_deep_sleep(void) {
    esp_default_wake_deep_sleep();
    esp_rom_printf("Wake count %d\n", wake_count++);
}
```

The second way is a better option if you need to use strings, or write other more complex code.

To reduce wake-up time use the *CONFIG_BOOTLOADER_SKIP_VALIDATE_IN_DEEP_SLEEP* Kconfig option, see more information in *Fast boot from Deep Sleep*.

4.6 Device Firmware Upgrade through USB

Device Firmware Upgrade (DFU) is a mechanism for upgrading the firmware of devices through Universal Serial Bus (USB). DFU is supported by ESP32-S2 chips. The necessary connections for the USB peripheral are shown in the following table.

GPIO	USB
20	D+ (green)
19	D- (white)
GND	GND (black)
+5V	+5V (red)

Note: The ESP32-S2 chip needs to be in bootloader mode for the detection as a DFU device and flashing. This can be achieved by pulling GPIO0 down (e.g. pressing the BOOT button), pulsing RESET down for a moment and releasing GPIO0.

Warning: Some cables are wired up with non-standard colors and some drivers are able to work with swapped D+ and D- connections. Please try to swap the cables connecting to D+ and D- if your device is not detected.

The software requirements of DFU are included in *Step 1. Install prerequisites* of the Getting Started Guide.

Section *Building the DFU Image* describes how to build firmware for DFU with ESP-IDF and Section *Flashing the Chip with the DFU Image* deals with flashing the firmware.

4.6.1 Building the DFU Image

The DFU image can be created by running:

```
idf.py dfu
```

which creates `dfu.bin` in the build directory.

Note: Don't forget to set the target chip by `idf.py set-target` before running `idf.py dfu`. Otherwise, you might create an image for a different chip or receive an error message something like `unknown target`

'dfu'.

4.6.2 Flashing the Chip with the DFU Image

The DFU image is downloaded into the chip by running:

```
idf.py dfu-flash
```

which relies on dfu-util. Please see *Step 1. Install prerequisites* for installing `dfu-util`. `dfu-util` needs additional setup for *USB drivers (Windows only)* or setting up an *udev rule (Linux only)*. Mac OS users should be able to use `dfu-util` without further setup.

If there are more boards with the same chip connected then `idf.py dfu-list` can be used to list the available devices, for example:

```
Found Runtime: [303a:0002] ver=0723, devnum=4, cfg=1, intf=2, path="1-10", alt=0,␣
↪name="UNKNOWN", serial="0"
Found Runtime: [303a:0002] ver=0723, devnum=6, cfg=1, intf=2, path="1-2", alt=0,␣
↪name="UNKNOWN", serial="0"
```

Consequently, the desired device can be selected for flashing by the `--path` argument. For example, the devices listed above can be flashed individually by the following commands:

```
idf.py dfu-flash --path 1-10
idf.py dfu-flash --path 1-2
```

Note: The vendor and product identificators are set based on the selected chip target by the `idf.py set-target` command and it is not selectable during the `idf.py dfu-flash` call.

See *Common errors and known issues* and their solutions.

udev rule (Linux only)

udev is a device manager for the Linux kernel. It allows us to run `dfu-util` (and `idf.py dfu-flash`) without `sudo` for gaining access to the chip.

Create file `/etc/udev/rules.d/40-dfuse.rules` with the following content:

```
SUBSYSTEMS=="usb", ATTRS{idVendor}=="303a", ATTRS{idProduct}=="00??", GROUP=
↪"plugdev", MODE="0666"
```

Note: Please check the output of command `groups`. The user has to be a member of the *GROUP* specified above. You may use some other existing group for this purpose (e.g. *uucp* on some systems instead of *plugdev*) or create a new group for this purpose.

Restart your computer so the previous setting could take into affect or run `sudo udevadm trigger` to force manually udev to trigger your new rule.

USB drivers (Windows only)

`dfu-util` uses *libusb* to access the device. You have to register on Windows the device with the *WinUSB* driver. Please see the libusb wiki for more details.

The drivers can be installed by the Zadig tool. Please make sure that the device is in download mode before running the tool and that it detects the ESP32-S2 device before installing the drivers. The Zadig tool might detect several

USB interfaces of ESP32-S2. Please install the WinUSB driver for only that interface for which there is no driver installed (probably it is Interface 2) and don't re-install the driver for the other interface.

Warning: The manual installation of the driver in Device Manager of Windows is not recommended because the flashing might not work properly.

Common errors and known issues

- `dfu-util: command not found` might indicate that the tool hasn't been installed or is not available from the terminal. An easy way of checking the tool is running `dfu-util --version`. Please see *Step 1. Install prerequisites* for installing `dfu-util`.
- The reason for `No DFU capable USB device available` could be that the USB driver wasn't properly installed on Windows (see *USB drivers (Windows only)*), udev rule was not setup on Linux (see *udev rule (Linux only)*) or the device isn't in bootloader mode.
- Flashing with `dfu-util` on Windows fails on the first attempt with error `Lost device after RESET?`. Please retry the flashing and it should succeed the next time.

4.7 Error Handling

4.7.1 Overview

Identifying and handling run-time errors is important for developing robust applications. There can be multiple kinds of run-time errors:

- Recoverable errors:
  - Errors indicated by functions through return values (error codes)
  - C++ exceptions, thrown using `throw` keyword
- Unrecoverable (fatal) errors:
  - Failed assertions (using `assert` macro and equivalent methods, see *Assertions*) and `abort()` calls.
  - CPU exceptions: access to protected regions of memory, illegal instruction, etc.
  - System level checks: watchdog timeout, cache access error, stack overflow, stack smashing, heap corruption, etc.

This guide explains ESP-IDF error handling mechanisms related to recoverable errors, and provides some common error handling patterns.

For instructions on diagnosing unrecoverable errors, see *Fatal Errors*.

4.7.2 Error codes

The majority of ESP-IDF-specific functions use *esp_err_t* type to return error codes. *esp_err_t* is a signed integer type. Success (no error) is indicated with `ESP_OK` code, which is defined as zero.

Various ESP-IDF header files define possible error codes using preprocessor defines. Usually these defines start with `ESP_ERR_` prefix. Common error codes for generic failures (out of memory, timeout, invalid argument, etc.) are defined in `esp_err.h` file. Various components in ESP-IDF may define additional error codes for specific situations.

For the complete list of error codes, see *Error Code Reference*.

4.7.3 Converting error codes to error messages

For each error code defined in ESP-IDF components, *esp_err_t* value can be converted to an error code name using *esp_err_to_name()* or *esp_err_to_name_r()* functions. For example, passing `0x101` to

esp_err_to_name() will return "ESP_ERR_NO_MEM" string. Such strings can be used in log output to make it easier to understand which error has happened.

Additionally, *esp_err_to_name_r()* function will attempt to interpret the error code as a standard POSIX error code, if no matching ESP_ERR_ value is found. This is done using strerror_r function. POSIX error codes (such as ENOENT, ENOMEM) are defined in errno.h and are typically obtained from errno variable. In ESP-IDF this variable is thread-local: multiple FreeRTOS tasks have their own copies of errno. Functions which set errno only modify its value for the task they run in.

This feature is enabled by default, but can be disabled to reduce application binary size. See *CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP*. When this feature is disabled, *esp_err_to_name()* and *esp_err_to_name_r()* are still defined and can be called. In this case, *esp_err_to_name()* will return UNKNOWN ERROR, and *esp_err_to_name_r()* will return Unknown error 0xXXXX(YYYYY), where 0xXXXX and YYYYY are the hexadecimal and decimal representations of the error code, respectively.

4.7.4 ESP_ERROR_CHECK macro

ESP_ERROR_CHECK() macro serves similar purpose as assert, except that it checks *esp_err_t* value rather than a bool condition. If the argument of ESP_ERROR_CHECK() is not equal *ESP_OK*, then an error message is printed on the console, and abort() is called.

Error message will typically look like this:

```
ESP_ERROR_CHECK failed: esp_err_t 0x107 (ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT) at 0x400d1fdf

file: "/Users/user/esp/example/main/main.c" line 20
func: app_main
expression: sdmmc_card_init(host, &card)

Backtrace: 0x40086e7c:0x3ffb4ff0 0x40087328:0x3ffb5010 0x400d1fdf:0x3ffb5030␣
↪0x400d0816:0x3ffb5050
```

Note: If *IDF monitor* is used, addresses in the backtrace will be converted to file names and line numbers.

- The first line mentions the error code as a hexadecimal value, and the identifier used for this error in source code. The latter depends on *CONFIG_ESP_ERR_TO_NAME_LOOKUP* option being set. Address in the program where error has occured is printed as well.
- Subsequent lines show the location in the program where ESP_ERROR_CHECK() macro was called, and the expression which was passed to the macro as an argument.
- Finally, backtrace is printed. This is part of panic handler output common to all fatal errors. See *Fatal Errors* for more information about the backtrace.

4.7.5 ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT macro

ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT() macro serves similar purpose as ESP_ERROR_CHECK, except that it won't call abort().

4.7.6 ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR macro

ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR() macro checks the error code, if the error code is not equal *ESP_OK*, it prints the message and returns.

4.7.7 ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR macro

`ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR()` macro checks the error code, if the error code is not equal *ESP_OK*, it prints the message, sets the local variable *ret* to the code, and then exits by jumping to *goto_tag*.

4.7.8 ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE macro

`ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE()` macro checks the condition, if the condition is not equal *true*, it prints the message and returns with the supplied *err_code*.

4.7.9 ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE macro

`ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE()` macro checks the condition, if the condition is not equal *true*, it prints the message, sets the local variable *ret* to the supplied *err_code*, and then exits by jumping to *goto_tag*.

4.7.10 CHECK MACROS Examples

Some examples:

```
static const char* TAG = "Test";

esp_err_t test_func(void)
{
    esp_err_t ret = ESP_OK;

    ESP_ERROR_CHECK(x);                                          // err message␣
↪printed if `x` is not `ESP_OK`, and then `abort()`.
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT(x);                            // err message␣
↪printed if `x` is not `ESP_OK`, without `abort()`.
    ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR(x, TAG, "fail reason 1");                // err message␣
↪printed if `x` is not `ESP_OK`, and then function returns with code `x`.
    ESP_GOTO_ON_ERROR(x, err, TAG, "fail reason 2");             // err message␣
↪printed if `x` is not `ESP_OK`, `ret` is set to `x`, and then jumps to `err`.
    ESP_RETURN_ON_FALSE(a, err_code, TAG, "fail reason 3");      // err message␣
↪printed if `a` is not `true`, and then function returns with code `err_code`.
    ESP_GOTO_ON_FALSE(a, err_code, err, TAG, "fail reason 4");   // err message␣
↪printed if `a` is not `true`, `ret` is set to `err_code`, and then jumps to␣
↪`err`.

err:
    // clean up
    return ret;
}
```

Note: If the option *CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_CHECKS_SILENT* in Kconfig is enabled, the err message will be discarded, while the other action works as is.

The `ESP_RETURN_XX` and `ESP_GOTO_xx` macros can't be called from ISR. While there are `xx_ISR` versions for each of them, e.g., *ESP_RETURN_ON_ERROR_ISR*, these macros could be used in ISR.

4.7.11 Error handling patterns

1. Attempt to recover. Depending on the situation, this might mean to retry the call after some time, or attempt to de-initialize the driver and re-initialize it again, or fix the error condition using an out-of-band mechanism (e.g reset an external peripheral which is not responding).

Example:

```
esp_err_t err;
do {
    err = sdio_slave_send_queue(addr, len, arg, timeout);
    // keep retrying while the sending queue is full
} while (err == ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT);
if (err != ESP_OK) {
    // handle other errors
}
```

2. Propagate the error to the caller. In some middleware components this means that a function must exit with the same error code, making sure any resource allocations are rolled back.
   Example:

```
sdmmc_card_t* card = calloc(1, sizeof(sdmmc_card_t));
if (card == NULL) {
    return ESP_ERR_NO_MEM;
}
esp_err_t err = sdmmc_card_init(host, &card);
if (err != ESP_OK) {
    // Clean up
    free(card);
    // Propagate the error to the upper layer (e.g. to notify the user).
    // Alternatively, application can define and return custom error code.
    return err;
}
```

3. Convert into unrecoverable error, for example using `ESP_ERROR_CHECK`. See *ESP_ERROR_CHECK macro* section for details.
   Terminating the application in case of an error is usually undesirable behaviour for middleware components, but is sometimes acceptable at application level.
   Many ESP-IDF examples use `ESP_ERROR_CHECK` to handle errors from various APIs. This is not the best practice for applications, and is done to make example code more concise.
   Example:

```
ESP_ERROR_CHECK(spi_bus_initialize(host, bus_config, dma_chan));
```

4.7.12 C++ Exceptions

Support for C++ Exceptions in ESP-IDF is disabled by default, but can be enabled using *CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS* option.

Enabling exception handling normally increases application binary size by a few kB. Additionally it may be necessary to reserve some amount of RAM for exception emergency pool. Memory from this pool will be used if it is not possible to allocate exception object from the heap. Amount of memory in the emergency pool can be set using *CONFIG_COMPILER_CXX_EXCEPTIONS_EMG_POOL_SIZE* variable.

If an exception is thrown, but there is no `catch` block, the program will be terminated by `abort` function, and backtrace will be printed. See *Fatal Errors* for more information about backtraces.

See cxx/exceptions for an example of C++ exception handling.

4.8 ESP-MESH

This guide provides information regarding the ESP-MESH protocol. Please see the *MESH API Reference* for more information about API usage.

4.8.1 Overview

ESP-MESH is a networking protocol built atop the Wi-Fi protocol. ESP-MESH allows numerous devices (henceforth referred to as nodes) spread over a large physical area (both indoors and outdoors) to be interconnected under a single WLAN (Wireless Local-Area Network). ESP-MESH is self-organizing and self-healing meaning the network can be built and maintained autonomously.

The ESP-MESH guide is split into the following sections:

1. *Introduction*
2. *ESP-MESH Concepts*
3. *Building a Network*
4. *Managing a Network*
5. *Data Transmission*
6. *Channel Switching*
7. *Performance*
8. *Further Notes*

4.8.2 Introduction

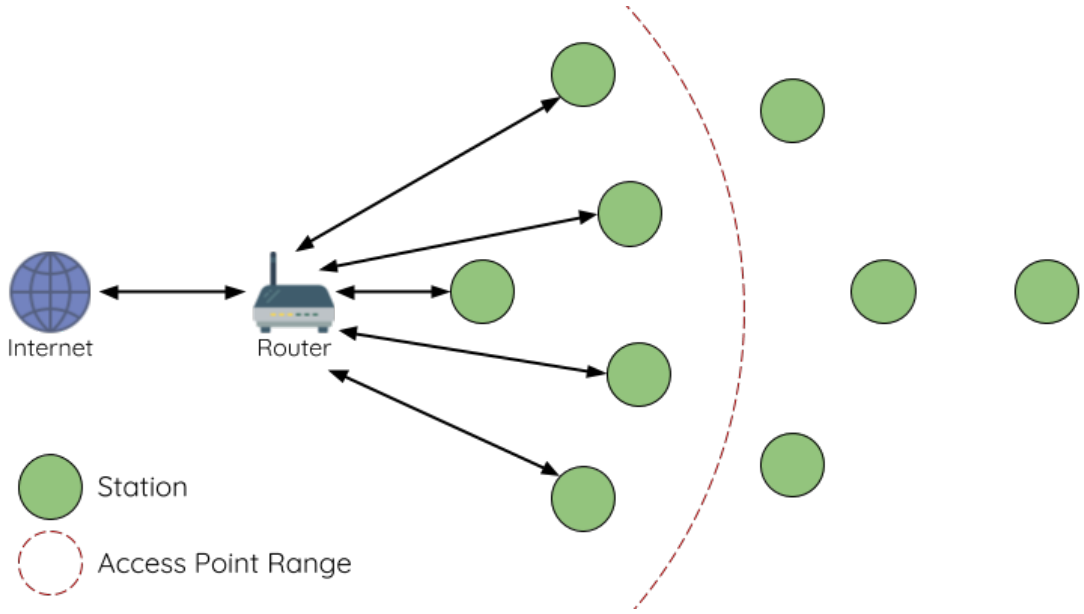


Fig. 3: Traditional Wi-Fi Network Architecture

A traditional infrastructure Wi-Fi network is a point-to-multipoint network where a single central node known as the access point (AP) is directly connected to all other nodes known as stations. The AP is responsible for arbitrating and forwarding transmissions between the stations. Some APs also relay transmissions to/from an external IP network via a router. Traditional infrastructure Wi-Fi networks suffer the disadvantage of limited coverage area due to the requirement that every station must be in range to directly connect with the AP. Furthermore, traditional Wi-Fi networks are susceptible to overloading as the maximum number of stations permitted in the network is limited by the capacity of the AP.

ESP-MESH differs from traditional infrastructure Wi-Fi networks in that nodes are not required to connect to a central node. Instead, nodes are permitted to connect with neighboring nodes. Nodes are mutually responsible for relaying each others transmissions. This allows an ESP-MESH network to have much greater coverage area as nodes can still achieve interconnectivity without needing to be in range of the central node. Likewise, ESP-MESH is also less susceptible to overloading as the number of nodes permitted on the network is no longer limited by a single central node.

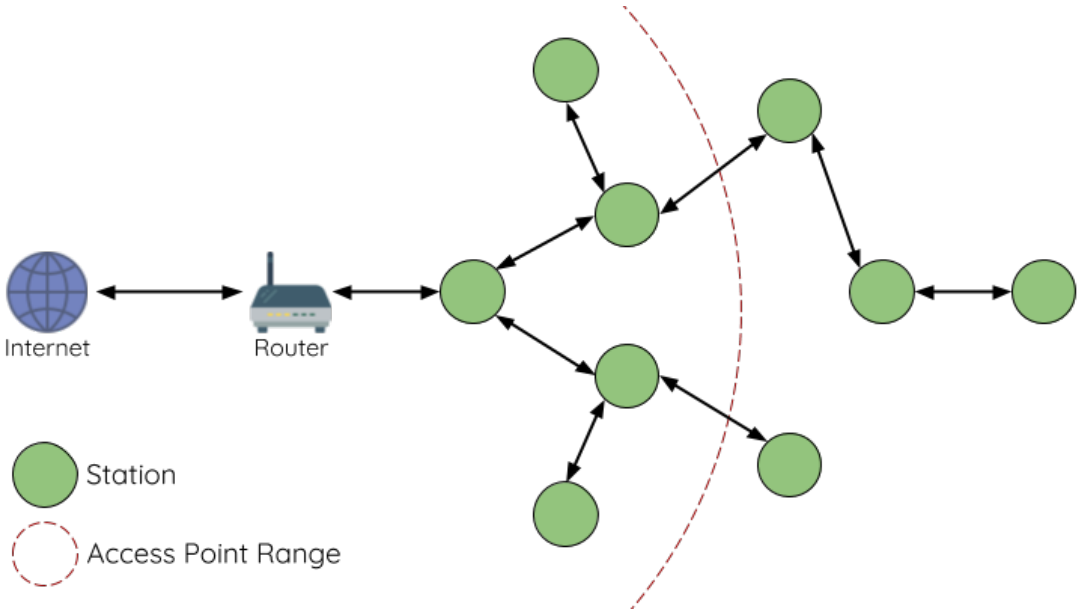


Fig. 4: ESP-MESH Network Architecture

4.8.3 ESP-MESH Concepts

Terminology

Term	Description
Node	Any device that **is** or **can be** part of an ESP-MESH network
Root Node	The top node in the network
Child Node	A node X is a child node when it is connected to another node Y where the connection makes node X more distant from the root node than node Y (in terms of number of connections).
Parent Node	The converse notion of a child node
Descendant Node	Any node reachable by repeated proceeding from parent to child
Sibling Nodes	Nodes that share the same parent node
Connection	A traditional Wi-Fi association between an AP and a station. A node in ESP-MESH will use its station interface to associate with the softAP interface of another node, thus forming a connection. The connection process includes the authentication and association processes in Wi-Fi.
Upstream Connection	The connection from a node to its parent node
Downstream Connection	The connection from a node to one of its child nodes
Wireless Hop	The portion of the path between source and destination nodes that corresponds to a single wireless connection. A data packet that traverses a single connection is known as **single-hop** whereas traversing multiple connections is known as **multi-hop**.
Subnetwork	A subnetwork is subdivision of an ESP-MESH network which consists of a node and all of its descendant nodes. Therefore the subnetwork of the root node consists of all nodes in an ESP-MESH network.
MAC Address	Media Access Control Address used to uniquely identify each node or router within an ESP-MESH network.
DS	Distribution System (External IP Network)

Tree Topology

ESP-MESH is built atop the infrastructure Wi-Fi protocol and can be thought of as a networking protocol that combines many individual Wi-Fi networks into a single WLAN. In Wi-Fi, stations are limited to a single connection with an AP (upstream connection) at any time, whilst an AP can be simultaneously connected to multiple stations (downstream connections). However ESP-MESH allows nodes to simultaneously act as a station and an AP. Therefore a node in ESP-MESH can have **multiple downstream connections using its softAP interface**, whilst simultaneously having **a single upstream connection using its station interface**. This naturally results in a tree network topology with a parent-child hierarchy consisting of multiple layers.

ESP-MESH is a multiple hop (multi-hop) network meaning nodes can transmit packets to other nodes in the network through one or more wireless hops. Therefore, nodes in ESP-MESH not only transmit their own packets, but simultaneously serve as relays for other nodes. Provided that a path exists between any two nodes on the physical layer (via one or more wireless hops), any pair of nodes within an ESP-MESH network can communicate.

Note: The size (total number of nodes) in an ESP-MESH network is dependent on the maximum number of layers permitted in the network, and the maximum number of downstream connections each node can have. Both of these variables can be configured to limit the size of the network.

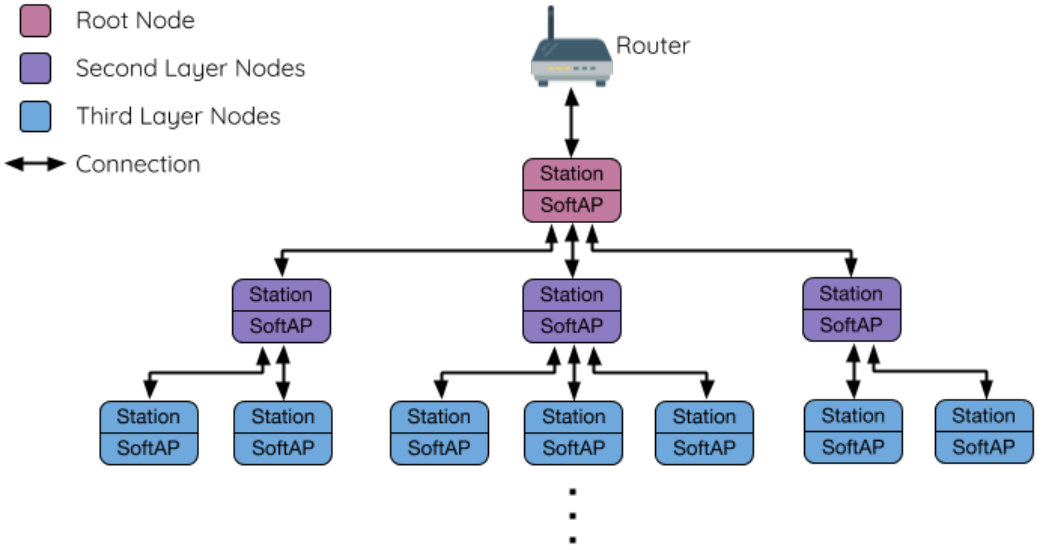


Fig. 5: ESP-MESH Tree Topology

Node Types

Root Node: The root node is the top node in the network and serves as the only interface between the ESP-MESH network and an external IP network. The root node is connected to a conventional Wi-Fi router and relays packets to/from the external IP network to nodes within the ESP-MESH network. **There can only be one root node within an ESP-MESH network** and the root node's upstream connection may only be with the router. Referring to the diagram above, node A is the root node of the network.

Leaf Nodes: A leaf node is a node that is not permitted to have any child nodes (no downstream connections). Therefore a leaf node can only transmit or receive its own packets, but cannot forward the packets of other nodes. If a node is situated on the network's maximum permitted layer, it will be assigned as a leaf node. This prevents the node from forming any downstream connections thus ensuring the network does not add an extra layer. Some nodes without a softAP interface (station only) will also be assigned as leaf nodes due to the requirement of a softAP interface for any downstream connections. Referring to the diagram above, nodes L/M/N are situated on the networks maximum permitted layer hence have been assigned as leaf nodes .

Intermediate Parent Nodes: Connected nodes that are neither the root node or a leaf node are intermediate parent nodes. An intermediate parent node must have a single upstream connection (a single parent node), but can have zero to multiple downstream connections (zero to multiple child nodes). Therefore an intermediate parent node can transmit and receive packets, but also forward packets sent from its upstream and downstream connections. Referring to the diagram above, nodes B to J are intermediate parent nodes. **Intermediate parent nodes without downstream connections such as nodes E/F/G/I/J are not equivalent to leaf nodes** as they are still permitted to form downstream connections in the future.

Idle Nodes: Nodes that have yet to join the network are assigned as idle nodes. Idle nodes will attempt to form an upstream connection with an intermediate parent node or attempt to become the root node under the correct circumstances (see *Automatic Root Node Selection*). Referring to the diagram above, nodes K and O are idle nodes.

Beacon Frames & RSSI Thresholding

Every node in ESP-MESH that is able to form downstream connections (i.e. has a softAP interface) will periodically transmit Wi-Fi beacon frames. A node uses beacon frames to allow other nodes to detect its presence and know of its status. Idle nodes will listen for beacon frames to generate a list of potential parent nodes, one of which the idle node will form an upstream connection with. ESP-MESH uses the Vendor Information Element to store metadata such as:

- Node Type (Root, Intermediate Parent, Leaf, Idle)

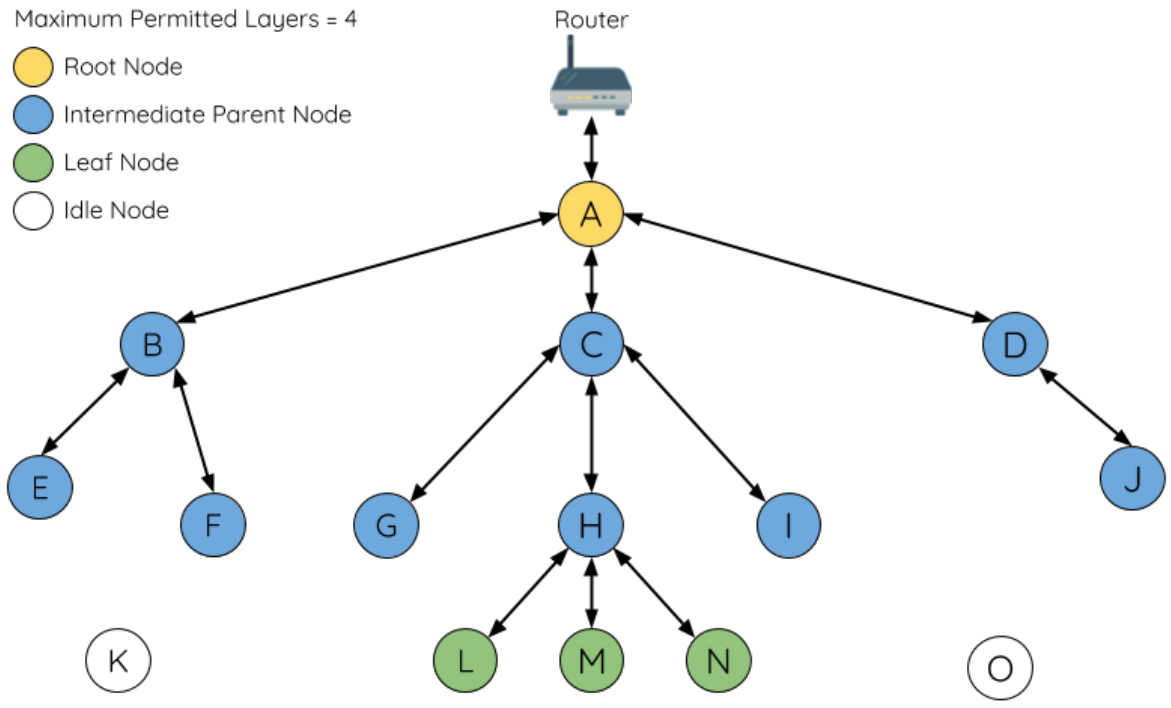


Fig. 6: ESP-MESH Node Types

- Current layer of Node
- Maximum number of layers permitted in the network
- Current number of child nodes
- Maximum number of downstream connections to accept

The signal strength of a potential upstream connection is represented by RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indication) of the beacon frames of the potential parent node. To prevent nodes from forming a weak upstream connection, ESP-MESH implements an RSSI threshold mechanism for beacon frames. If a node detects a beacon frame with an RSSI below a preconfigured threshold, the transmitting node will be disregarded when forming an upstream connection.

Panel A of the illustration above demonstrates how the RSSI threshold affects the number of parent node candidates an idle node has.

Panel B of the illustration above demonstrates how an RF shielding object can lower the RSSI of a potential parent node. Due to the RF shielding object, the area in which the RSSI of node X is above the threshold is significantly reduced. This causes the idle node to disregard node X even though node X is physically adjacent. The idle node will instead form an upstream connection with the physically distant node Y due to a stronger RSSI.

Note: Nodes technically still receive all beacon frames on the MAC layer. The RSSI threshold is an ESP-MESH feature that simply filters out all received beacon frames that are below the preconfigured threshold.

Preferred Parent Node

When an idle node has multiple parent nodes candidates (potential parent nodes), the idle node will form an upstream connection with the **preferred parent node**. The preferred parent node is determined based on the following criteria:

- Which layer the parent node candidate is situated on
- The number of downstream connections (child nodes) the parent node candidate currently has

The selection of the preferred parent node will always prioritize the parent node candidate on the shallowest layer of the network (including the root node). This helps minimize the total number of layers in an ESP-MESH network

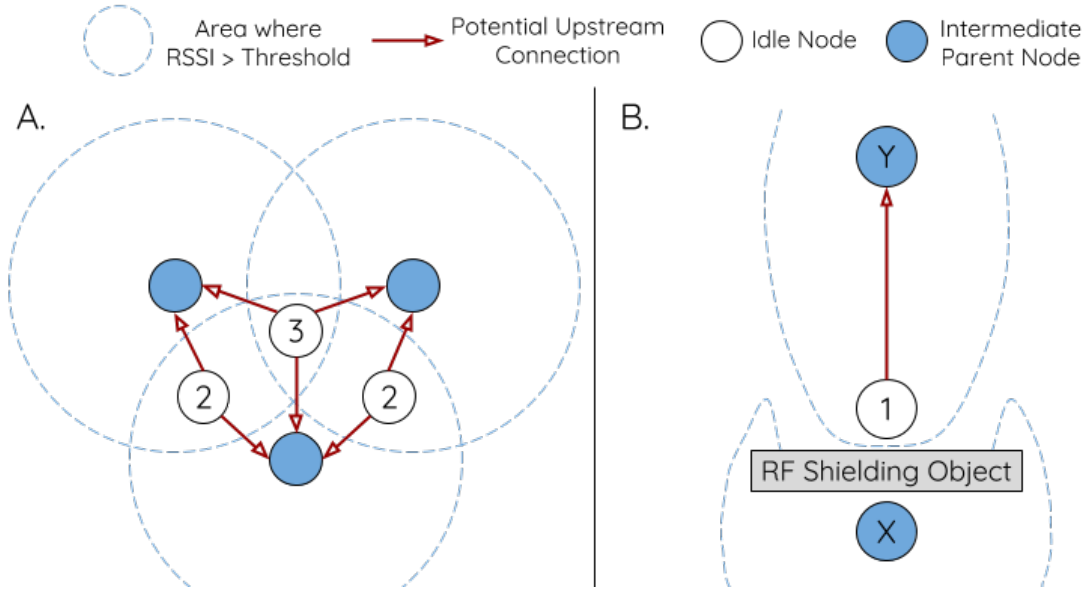


Fig. 7: Effects of RSSI Thresholding

when upstream connections are formed. For example, given a second layer node and a third layer node, the second layer node will always be preferred.

If there are multiple parent node candidates within the same layer, the parent node candidate with the least child nodes will be preferred. This criteria has the effect of balancing the number of downstream connections amongst nodes of the same layer.

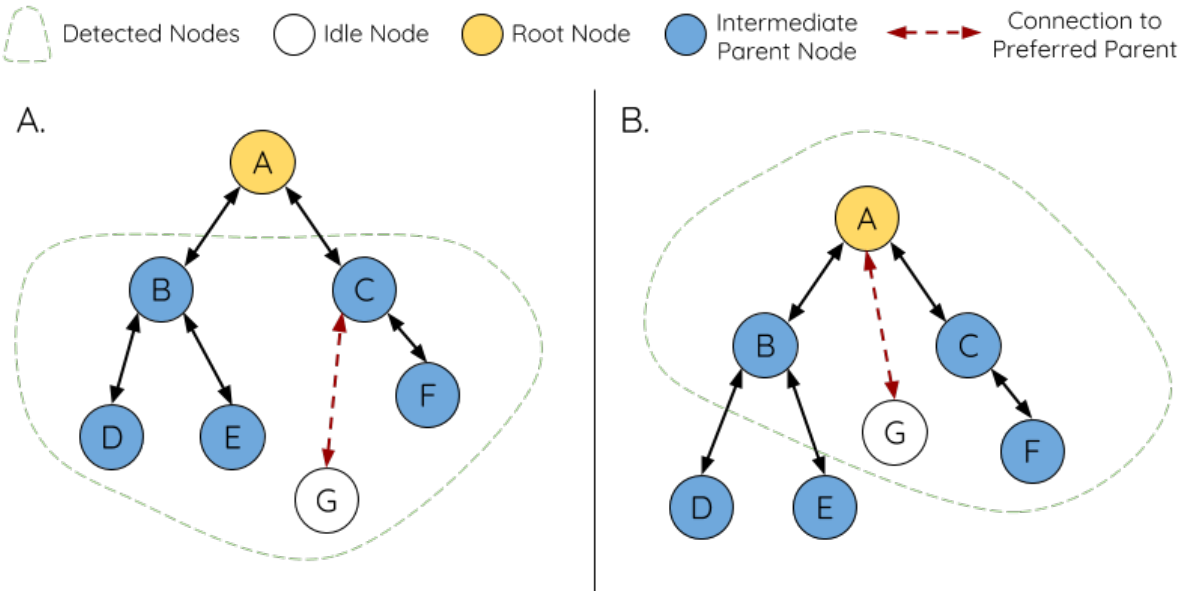


Fig. 8: Preferred Parent Node Selection

Panel A of the illustration above demonstrates an example of how the idle node G selects a preferred parent node given the five parent node candidates B/C/D/E/F. Nodes on the shallowest layer are preferred, hence nodes B/C are prioritized since they are second layer nodes whereas nodes D/E/F are on the third layer. Node C is selected as the preferred parent node due it having fewer downstream connections (fewer child nodes) compared to node B.

Panel B of the illustration above demonstrates the case where the root node is within range of the idle node G. In other words, the root node' s beacon frames are above the RSSI threshold when received by node G. The root node is always the shallowest node in an ESP-MESH network hence is always the preferred parent node given multiple

parent node candidates.

Note: Users may also define their own algorithm for selecting a preferred parent node, or force a node to only connect with a specific parent node (see the Mesh Manual Networking Example).

Routing Tables

Each node within an ESP-MESH network will maintain its individual routing table used to correctly route ESP-MESH packets (see *ESP-MESH Packet*) to the correct destination node. The routing table of a particular node will **consist of the MAC addresses of all nodes within the particular node's subnetwork** (including the MAC address of the particular node itself). Each routing table is internally partitioned into multiple subtables with each subtable corresponding to the subnetwork of each child node.

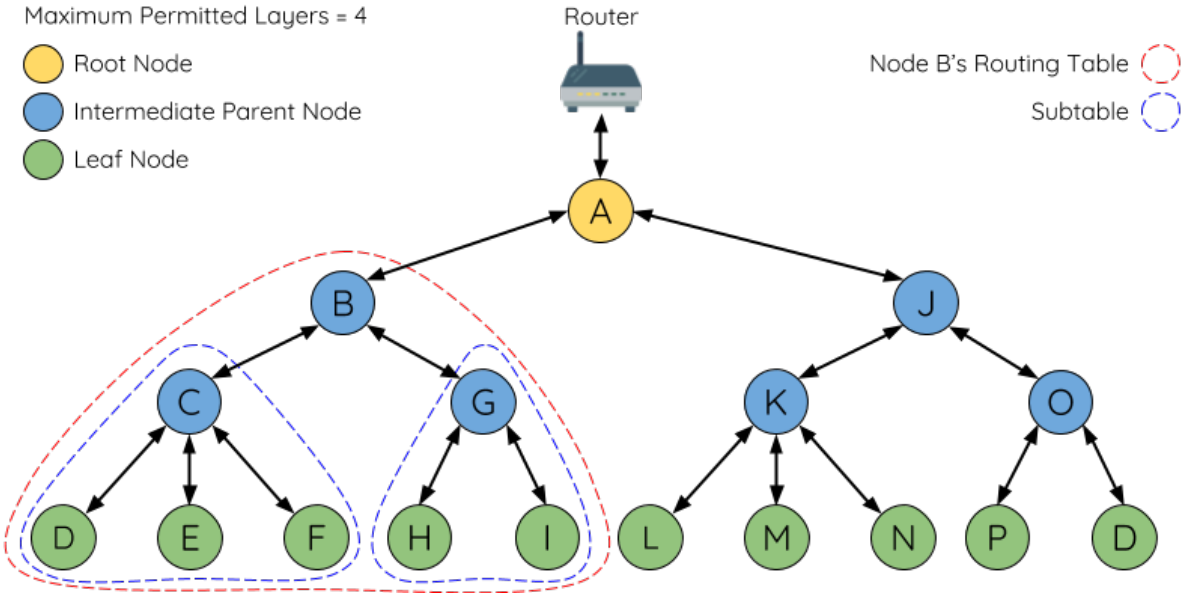


Fig. 9: ESP-MESH Routing Tables Example

Using the diagram above as an example, the routing table of node B would consist of the MAC addresses of nodes B to I (i.e. equivalent to the subnetwork of node B). Node B's routing table is internally partitioned into two subtables containing of nodes C to F and nodes G to I (i.e. equivalent to the subnetworks of nodes C and G respectively).

ESP-MESH utilizes routing tables to determine whether an ESP-MESH packet should be forwarded upstream or downstream based on the following rules.

1. If the packet's destination MAC address is within the current node's routing table and is not the current node, select the subtable that contains the destination MAC address and forward the data packet downstream to the child node corresponding to the subtable.

2. If the destination MAC address is not within the current node's routing table, forward the data packet upstream to the current node's parent node. Doing so repeatedly will result in the packet arriving at the root node where the routing table should contain all nodes within the network.

Note: Users can call `esp_mesh_get_routing_table()` to obtain a node's routing table, or `esp_mesh_get_routing_table_size()` to obtain the size of a node's routing table.

`esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_list()` can be used to obtain the corresponding subtable of a specific child node. Likewise `esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_num()` can be used to obtain the size of the subtable.

4.8.4 Building a Network

General Process

Warning: Before the ESP-MESH network building process can begin, certain parts of the configuration must be uniform across each node in the network (see `mesh_cfg_t`). Each node must be configured with **the same Mesh Network ID, router configuration, and softAP configuration**.

An ESP-MESH network building process involves selecting a root node, then forming downstream connections layer by layer until all nodes have joined the network. The exact layout of the network can be dependent on factors such as root node selection, parent node selection, and asynchronous power-on reset. However, the ESP-MESH network building process can be generalized into the following steps:

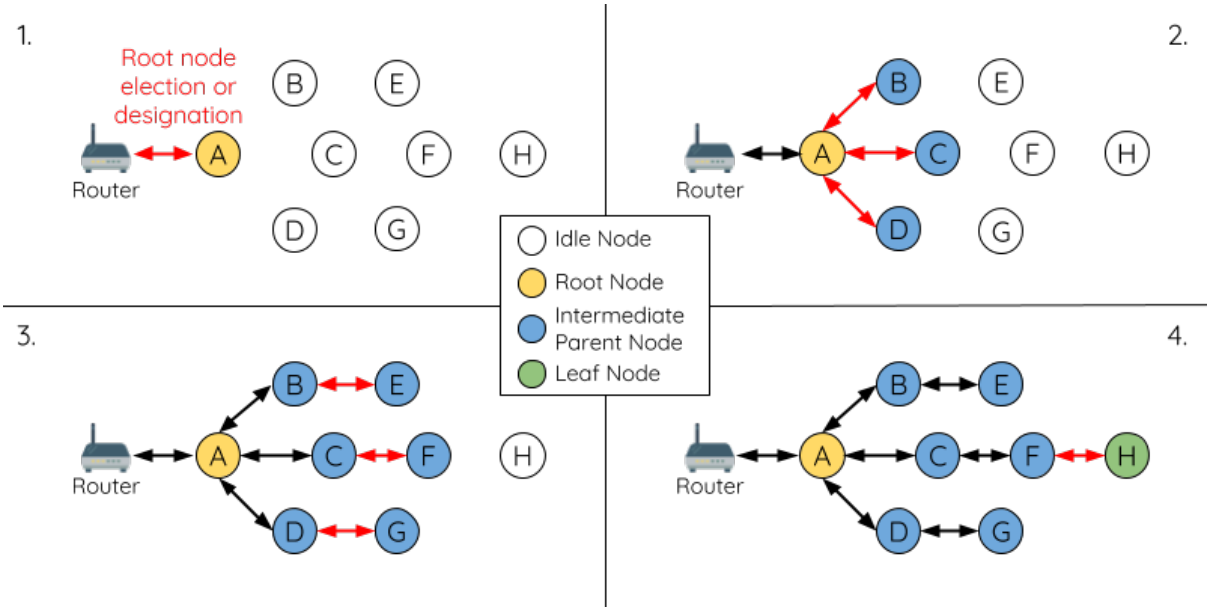


Fig. 10: ESP-MESH Network Building Process

1. Root Node Selection The root node can be designated during configuration (see section on *User Designated Root Node*), or dynamically elected based on the signal strength between each node and the router (see *Automatic Root Node Selection*). Once selected, the root node will connect with the router and begin allowing downstream connections to form. Referring to the figure above, node A is selected to be the root node hence node A forms an upstream connection with the router.

2. Second Layer Formation Once the root node has connected to the router, idle nodes in range of the root node will begin connecting with the root node thereby forming the second layer of the network. Once connected, the second layer nodes become intermediate parent nodes (assuming maximum permitted layers > 2) hence the next layer to form. Referring to the figure above, nodes B to D are in range of the root node. Therefore nodes B to D form upstream connections with the root node and become intermediate parent nodes.

3. Formation of remaining layers The remaining idle nodes will connect with intermediate parent nodes within range thereby forming a new layer in the network. Once connected, the idles nodes become intermediate parent node or leaf nodes depending on the networks maximum permitted layers. This step is repeated until there are no more idle nodes within the network or until the maximum permitted layer of the network has been reached. Referring to the figure above, nodes E/F/G connect with nodes B/C/D respectively and become intermediate parent nodes themselves.

4. Limiting Tree Depth To prevent the network from exceeding the maximum permitted number of layers, nodes on the maximum layer will automatically become leaf nodes once connected. This prevents any other idle node from connecting with the leaf node thereby prevent a new layer form forming. However if an idle node has no other potential parent node, it will remain idle indefinitely. Referring to the figure above, the network's number of maximum permitted layers is set to four. Therefore when node H connects, it becomes a leaf node to prevent any downstream connections from forming.

Automatic Root Node Selection

The automatic selection of a root node involves an election process amongst all idle nodes based on their signal strengths with the router. Each idle node will transmit their MAC addresses and router RSSI values via Wi-Fi beacon frames. **The MAC address is used to uniquely identify each node in the network** whilst the **router RSSI** is used to indicate a node's signal strength with reference to the router.

Each node will then simultaneously scan for the beacon frames from other idle nodes. If a node detects a beacon frame with a stronger router RSSI, the node will begin transmitting the contents of that beacon frame (i.e. voting for the node with the stronger router RSSI). The process of transmission and scanning will repeat for a preconfigured minimum number of iterations (10 iterations by default) and result in the beacon frame with the strongest router RSSI being propagated throughout the network.

After all iterations, each node will individually check for its **vote percentage** (`number of votes/number of nodes participating in election`) to determine if it should become the root node. **If a node has a vote percentage larger than a preconfigured threshold (90% by default), the node will become a root node**.

The following diagram demonstrates how an ESP-MESH network is built when the root node is automatically selected.

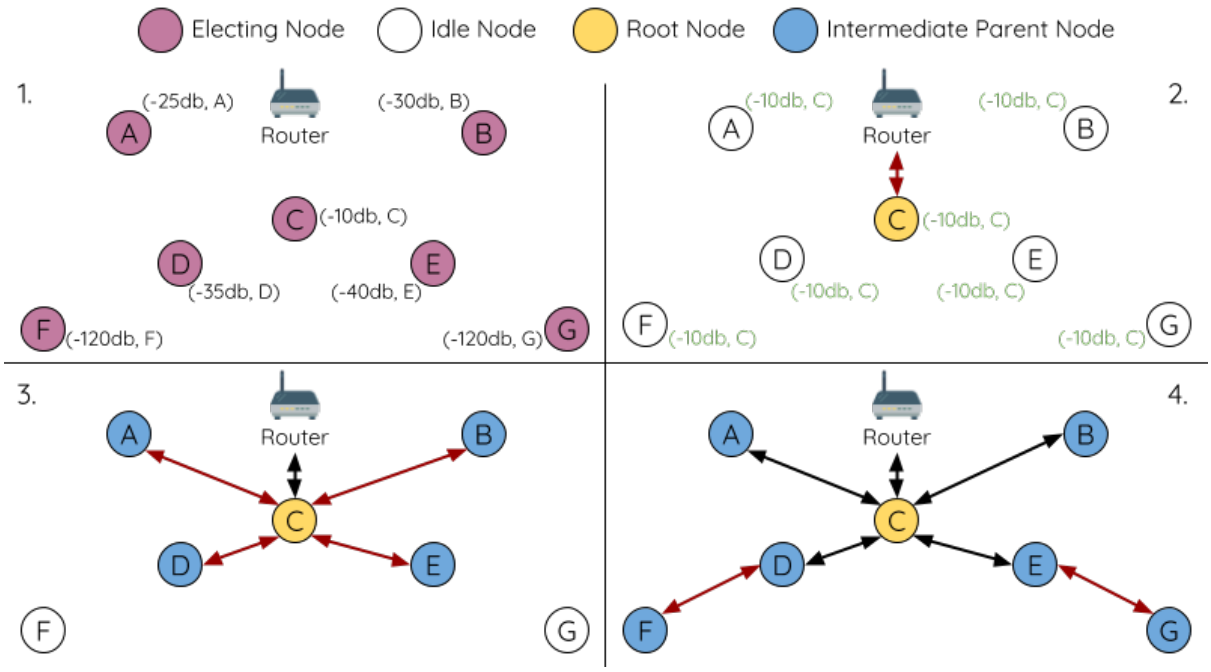


Fig. 11: Root Node Election Example

1. On power-on reset, each node begins transmitting beacon frames consisting of their own MAC addresses and their router RSSIs.

2. Over multiple iterations of transmission and scanning, the beacon frame with the strongest router RSSI is propagated throughout the network. Node C has the strongest router RSSI (-10 dB) hence its beacon frame is propagated throughout the network. All nodes participating in the election vote for node C thus giving node C a vote percentage of 100%. Therefore node C becomes a root node and connects with the router.

3. Once Node C has connected with the router, nodes A/B/D/E connectwith node C as it is the preferred parent node (i.e. the shallowest node). Nodes A/B/D/E form the second layer of the network.

4. Node F and G connect with nodes D and E respectively and the network building process is complete.

Note: The minimum number of iterations for the election process can be configured using `esp_mesh_set_attempts()`. Users should adjust the number of iterations based on the number of nodes within the network (i.e. the larger the network the larger number of scan iterations required).

Warning: **Vote percentage threshold** can also be configured using *`esp_mesh_set_vote_percentage()`*. Setting a low vote percentage threshold **can result in two or more nodes becoming root nodes** within the same ESP-MESH network leading to the building of multiple networks. If such is the case, ESP-MESH has internal mechanisms to autonomously resolve the **root node conflict**. The networks of the multiple root nodes will be combined into a single network with a single root node. However, root node conflicts where two or more root nodes have the same router SSID but different router BSSID are not handled.

User Designated Root Node

The root node can also be designated by user which will entail the designated root node to directly connect with the router and forgo the election process. When a root node is designated, all other nodes within the network must also forgo the election process to prevent the occurrence of a root node conflict. The following diagram demonstrates how an ESP-MESH network is built when the root node is designated by the user.

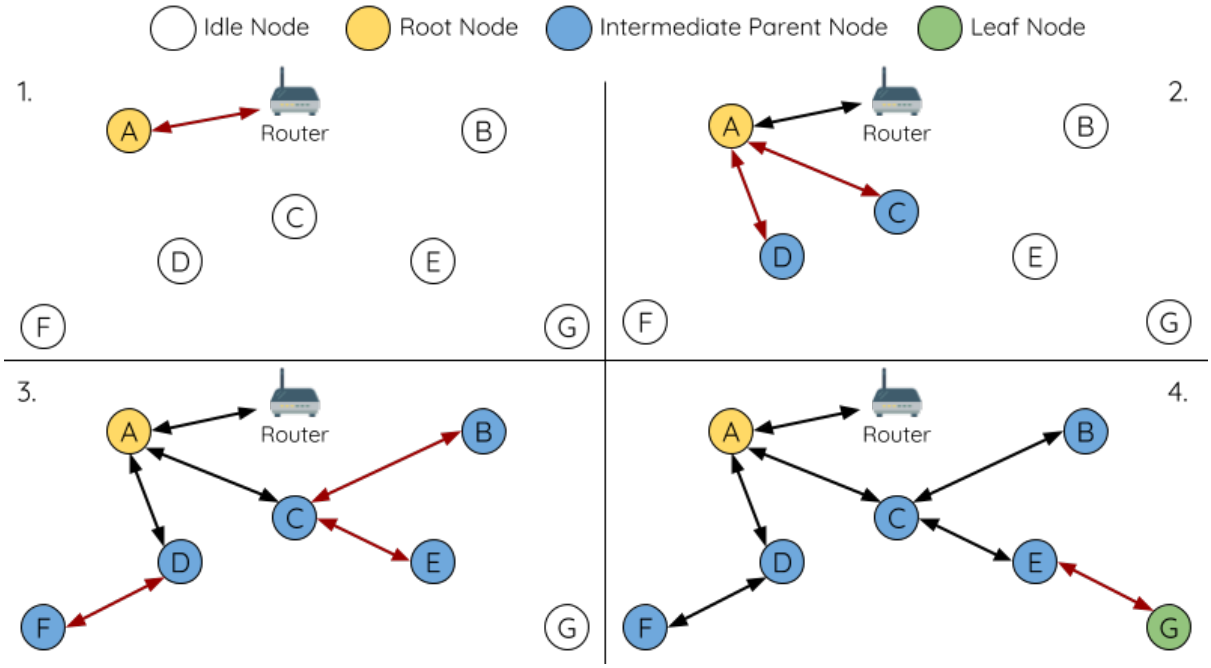


Fig. 12: Root Node Designation Example (Root Node = A, Max Layers = 4)

1. Node A is designated the root node by the user therefore directly connects with the router. All other nodes forgo the election process.

2. Nodes C/D connect with node A as their preferred parent node. Both nodes form the second layer of the network.

3. Likewise, nodes B/E connect with node C, and node F connects with node D. Nodes B/E/F form the third layer of the network.

4. Node G connects with node E, forming the fourth layer of the network. However the maximum permitted number of layers in this network is configured as four, therefore node G becomes a leaf node to prevent any new layers from forming.

Note: When designating a root node, the root node should call `esp_mesh_set_parent()` in order to directly connect with the router. Likewise, all other nodes should call `esp_mesh_fix_root()` to forgo the election process.

Parent Node Selection

By default, ESP-MESH is self organizing meaning that each node will autonomously select which potential parent node to form an upstream connection with. The autonomously selected parent node is known as the preferred parent node. The criteria used for selecting the preferred parent node is designed to reduce the number of layers in the ESP-MESH network and to balance the number of downstream connections between potential parent nodes (see section on *Preferred Parent Node*).

However ESP-MESH also allows users to disable self-organizing behavior which will allow users to define their own criteria for parent node selection, or to configure nodes to have designated parent nodes (see the Mesh Manual Networking Example).

Asynchronous Power-on Reset

ESP-MESH network building can be affected by the order in which nodes power-on. If certain nodes within the network power-on asynchronously (i.e. separated by several minutes), **the final structure of the network could differ from the ideal case where all nodes are powered on synchronously**. Nodes that are delayed in powering on will adhere to the following rules:

Rule 1: If a root node already exists in the network, the delayed node will not attempt to elect a new root node, even if it has a stronger RSSI with the router. The delayed node will instead join the network like any other idle node by connecting with a preferred parent node. If the delayed node is the designated root node, all other nodes in the network will remain idle until the delayed node powers-on.

Rule 2: If a delayed node forms an upstream connection and becomes an intermediate parent node, it may also become the new preferred parent of other nodes (i.e. being a shallower node). This will cause the other nodes to switch their upstream connections to connect with the delayed node (see *Parent Node Switching*).

Rule 3: If an idle node has a designated parent node which is delayed in powering-on, the idle node will not attempt to form any upstream connections in the absence of its designated parent node. The idle node will remain idle indefinitely until its designated parent node powers-on.

The following example demonstrates the effects of asynchronous power-on with regards to network building.

1. Nodes A/C/D/F/G/H are powered-on synchronously and begin the root node election process by broadcasting their MAC addresses and router RSSIs. Node A is elected as the root node as it has the strongest RSSI.

2. Once node A becomes the root node, the remaining nodes begin forming upstream connections layer by layer with their preferred parent nodes. The result is a network with five layers.

3. Node B/E are delayed in powering-on but neither attempt to become the root node even though they have stronger router RSSIs (-20 dB and -10 dB) compared to node A. Instead both delayed nodes form upstream connections with their preferred parent nodes A and C respectively. Both nodes B/E become intermediate parent nodes after connecting.

4. Nodes D/G switch their upstream connections as node B is the new preferred parent node due to it being on a shallower layer (second layer node). Due to the switch, the resultant network has three layers instead of the original five layers.

Synchronous Power-On: Had all nodes powered-on synchronously, node E would have become the root node as it has the strongest router RSSI (-10 dB). This would result in a significantly different network layout compared to the network formed under the conditions of asynchronous power-on. **However the synchronous power-on network layout can still be reached if the user manually switches the root node** (see `esp_mesh_waive_root()`).

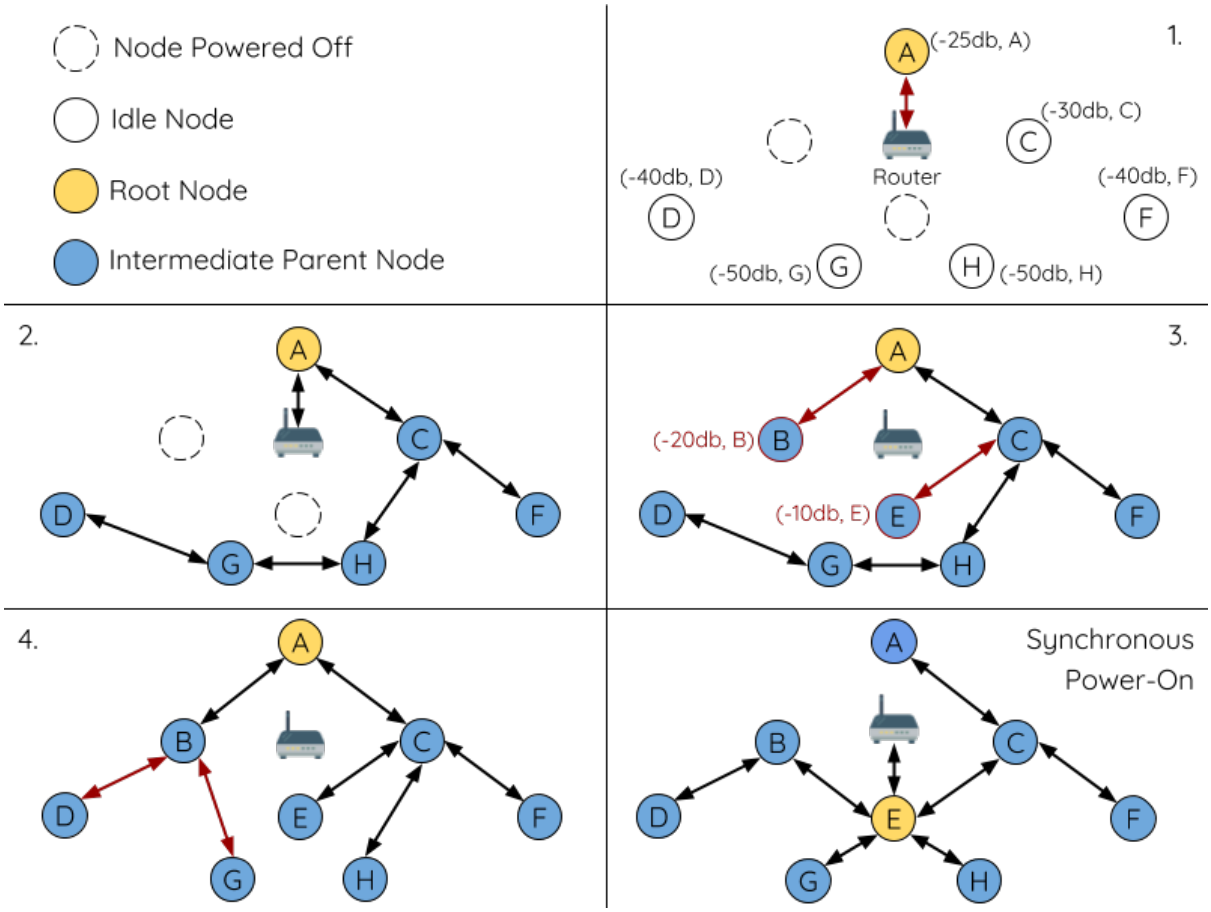


Fig. 13: Network Building with Asynchronous Power On Example

Note: Differences in parent node selection caused by asynchronous power-on are autonomously corrected for to some extent in ESP-MESH (see *Parent Node Switching*)

Loop-back Avoidance, Detection, and Handling

A loop-back is the situation where a particular node forms an upstream connection with one of its descendant nodes (a node within the particular node's subnetwork). This results in a circular connection path thereby breaking the tree topology. ESP-MESH prevents loop-back during parent selection by excluding nodes already present in the selecting node's routing table (see *Routing Tables*) thus prevents a particular node from attempting to connect to any node within its subnetwork.

In the event that a loop-back occurs, ESP-MESH utilizes a path verification mechanism and energy transfer mechanism to detect the loop-back occurrence. The parent node of the upstream connection that caused the loop-back will then inform the child node of the loop-back and initiate a disconnection.

4.8.5 Managing a Network

ESP-MESH is a self healing network meaning it can detect and correct for failures in network routing. Failures occur when a parent node with one or more child nodes breaks down, or when the connection between a parent node and its child nodes becomes unstable. Child nodes in ESP-MESH will autonomously select a new parent node and form an upstream connection with it to maintain network interconnectivity. ESP-MESH can handle both Root Node Failures and Intermediate Parent Node Failures.

Root Node Failure

If the root node breaks down, the nodes connected with it (second layer nodes) will promptly detect the failure of the root node. The second layer nodes will initially attempt to reconnect with the root node. However after multiple failed attempts, the second layer nodes will initialize a new round of root node election. **The second layer node with the strongest router RSSI will be elected as the new root node** whilst the remaining second layer nodes will form an upstream connection with the new root node (or a neighboring parent node if not in range).

If the root node and multiple downstream layers simultaneously break down (e.g. root node, second layer, and third layer), the shallowest layer that is still functioning will initialize the root node election. The following example illustrates an example of self healing from a root node break down.

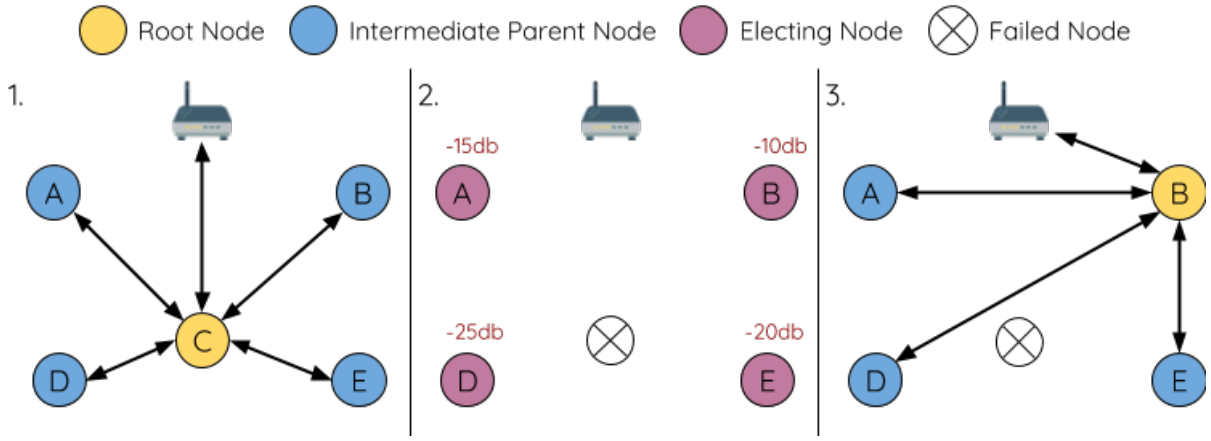


Fig. 14: Self Healing From Root Node Failure

1. Node C is the root node of the network. Nodes A/B/D/E are second layer nodes connected to node C.

2. Node C breaks down. After multiple failed attempts to reconnect, the second layer nodes begin the election process by broadcasting their router RSSIs. Node B has the strongest router RSSI.

3. Node B is elected as the root node and begins accepting downstream connections. The remaining second layer nodes A/D/E form upstream connections with node B thus the network is healed and can continue operating normally.

Note: If a designated root node breaks down, the remaining nodes **will not autonomously attempt to elect a new root node** as an election process will never be attempted whilst a designated root node is used.

Intermediate Parent Node Failure

If an intermediate parent node breaks down, the disconnected child nodes will initially attempt to reconnect with the parent node. After multiple failed attempts to reconnect, each child node will begin to scan for potential parent nodes (see *Beacon Frames & RSSI Thresholding*).

If other potential parent nodes are available, each child node will individually select a new preferred parent node (see *Preferred Parent Node*) and form an upstream connection with it. If there are no other potential parent nodes for a particular child node, it will remain idle indefinitely.

The following diagram illustrates an example of self healing from an Intermediate Parent Node break down.

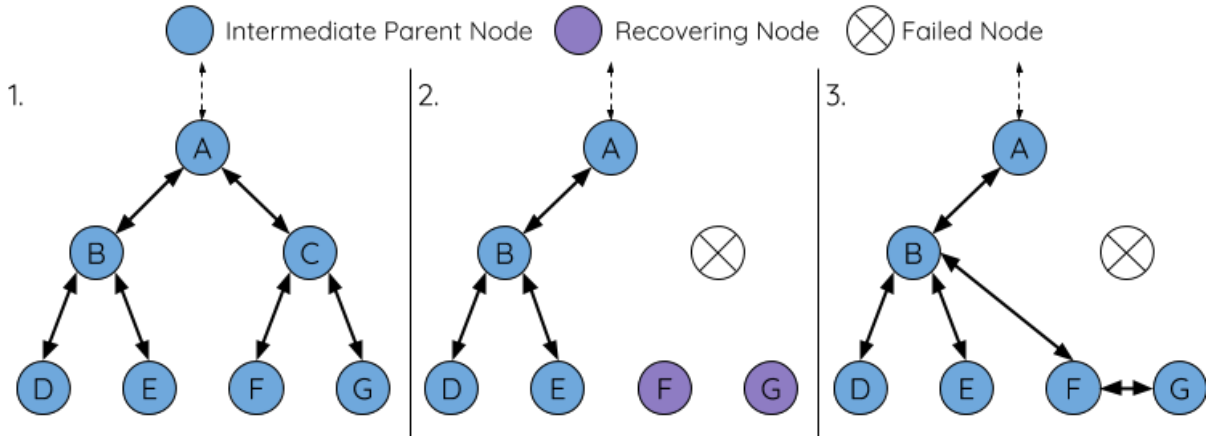


Fig. 15: Self Healing From Intermediate Parent Node Failure

1. The following branch of the network consists of nodes A to G.

2. Node C breaks down. Nodes F/G detect the break down and attempt to reconnect with node C. After multiple failed attempts to reconnect, nodes F/G begin to select a new preferred parent node.

3. Node G is out of range from any other parent node hence remains idle for the time being. Node F is in range of nodes B/E, however node B is selected as it is the shallower node. Node F becomes an intermediate parent node after connecting with Node B thus node G can connect with node F. The network is healed, however the network routing as been affected and an extra layer has been added.

Note: If a child node has a designated parent node that breaks down, the child node will make no attempt to connect with a new parent node. The child node will remain idle indefinitely.

Root Node Switching

ESP-MESH does not automatically switch the root node unless the root node breaks down. Even if the root node's router RSSI degrades to the point of disconnection, the root node will remain unchanged. Root node switching is the act of explicitly starting a new election such that a node with a stronger router RSSI will be elected as the new root node. This can be a useful method of adapting to degrading root node performance.

To trigger a root node switch, the current root node must explicitly call `esp_mesh_waive_root()` to trigger a new election. The current root node will signal all nodes within the network to begin transmitting and scanning for beacon frames (see *Automatic Root Node Selection*) **whilst remaining connected to the network (i.e. not idle)**. If another node receives more votes than the current root node, a root node switch will be initiated. **The root node will remain unchanged otherwise**.

A newly elected root node sends a **switch request** to the current root node which in turn will respond with an acknowledgment signifying both nodes are ready to switch. Once the acknowledgment is received, the newly elected root node will disconnect from its parent and promptly form an upstream connection with the router thereby becoming the new root node of the network. The previous root node will disconnect from the router **whilst maintaining all of its downstream connections** and enter the idle state. The previous root node will then begin scanning for potential parent nodes and selecting a preferred parent.

The following diagram illustrates an example of a root node switch.

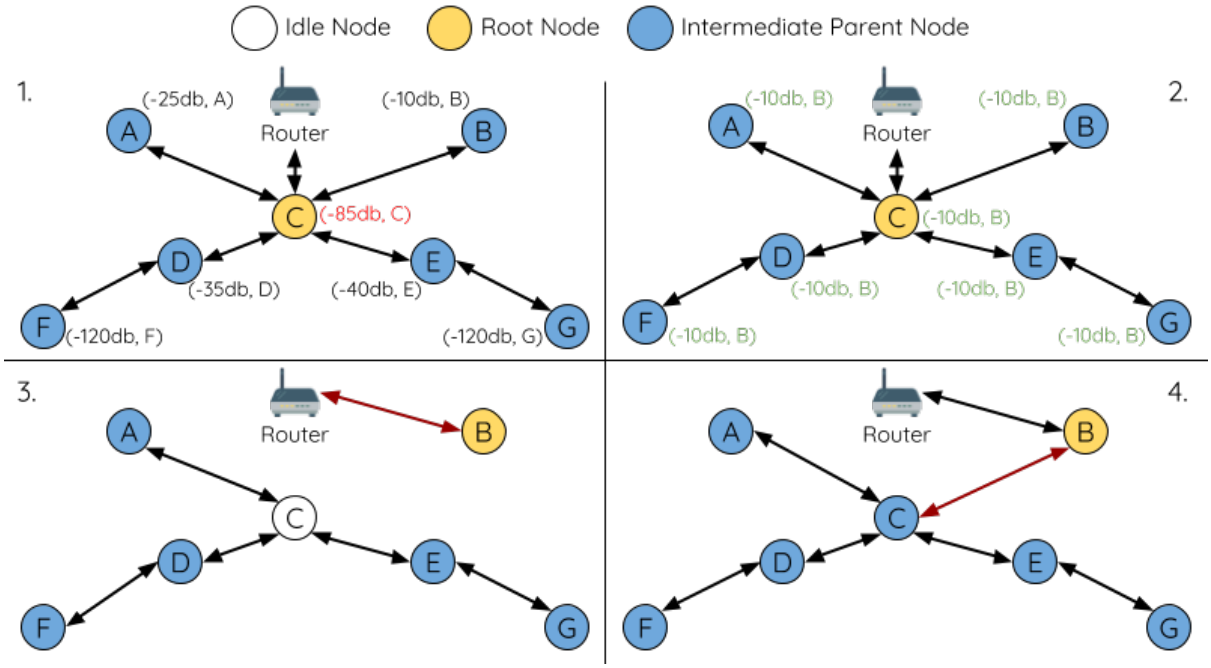


Fig. 16: Root Node Switch Example

1. Node C is the current root node but has degraded signal strength with the router (-85db). The node C triggers a new election and all nodes begin transmitting and scanning for beacon frames **whilst still being connected**.

2. After multiple rounds of transmission and scanning, node B is elected as the new root node. Node B sends node C a **switch request** and node C responds with an acknowledgment.

3. Node B disconnects from its parent and connects with the router becoming the network's new root node. Node C disconnects from the router, enters the idle state, and begins scanning for and selecting a new preferred parent node. **Node C maintains all its downstream connections throughout this process**.

4. Node C selects node B as its preferred parent node, forms an upstream connection, and becomes a second layer node. The network layout is similar after the switch as node C still maintains the same subnetwork. However each node in node C's subnetwork has been placed one layer deeper as a result of the switch. *Parent Node Switching* may adjust the network layout afterwards if any nodes have a new preferred parent node as a result of the root node switch.

Note: Root node switching must require an election hence is only supported when using a self-organized ESP-MESH network. In other words, root node switching cannot occur if a designated root node is used.

Parent Node Switching

Parent Node Switching entails a child node switching its upstream connection to another parent node of a shallower layer. **Parent Node Switching occurs autonomously** meaning that a child node will change its upstream connection automatically if a potential parent node of a shallower layer becomes available (i.e. due to a *Asynchronous Power-on Reset*).

All potential parent nodes periodically transmit beacon frames (see *Beacon Frames & RSSI Thresholding*) allowing for a child node to scan for the availability of a shallower parent node. Due to parent node switching, a self-organized ESP-MESH network can dynamically adjust its network layout to ensure each connection has a good RSSI and that the number of layers in the network is minimized.

4.8.6 Data Transmission

ESP-MESH Packet

ESP-MESH network data transmissions use ESP-MESH packets. ESP-MESH packets are **entirely contained within the frame body of a Wi-Fi data frame**. A multi-hop data transmission in an ESP-MESH network will involve a single ESP-MESH packet being carried over each wireless hop by a different Wi-Fi data frame.

The following diagram shows the structure of an ESP-MESH packet and its relation with a Wi-Fi data frame.

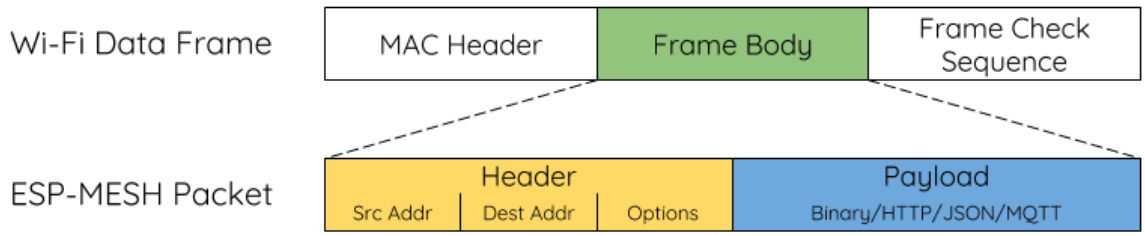


Fig. 17: ESP-MESH Packet

The header of an ESP-MESH packet contains the MAC addresses of the source and destination nodes. The options field contains information pertaining to the special types of ESP-MESH packets such as a group transmission or a packet originating from the external IP network (see `MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP` and `MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR`).

The payload of an ESP-MESH packet contains the actual application data. This data can be raw binary data, or encoded under an application layer protocol such as HTTP, MQTT, and JSON (see `mesh_proto_t`).

Note: When sending an ESP-MESH packet to the external IP network, the destination address field of the header will contain the IP address and port of the target server rather than the MAC address of a node (see `mesh_addr_t`). Furthermore the root node will handle the formation of the outgoing TCP/IP packet.

Group Control & Multicasting

Multicasting is a feature that allows a single ESP-MESH packet to be transmitted simultaneously to multiple nodes within the network. Multicasting in ESP-MESH can be achieved by either specifying a list of target nodes, or specifying a preconfigured group of nodes. Both methods of multicasting are called via `esp_mesh_send()`.

To multicast by specifying a list of target nodes, users must first set the ESP-MESH packet's destination address to the **Multicast-Group Address** (`01:00:5E:xx:xx:xx`). This signifies that the ESP-MESH packet is a multicast packet with a group of addresses, and that the address should be obtained from the header options. Users must then list the MAC addresses of the target nodes as options (see `mesh_opt_t` and `MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP`). This

method of multicasting requires no prior setup but can incur a large amount of overhead data as each target node's MAC address must be listed in the options field of the header.

Multicasting by group allows a ESP-MESH packet to be transmitted to a preconfigured group of nodes. Each grouping is identified by a unique ID, and a node can be placed into a group via `esp_mesh_set_group_id()`. Multicasting to a group involves setting the destination address of the ESP-MESH packet to the target group ID. Furthermore, the `MESH_DATA_GROUP` flag must set. Using groups to multicast incurs less overhead, but requires nodes to previously added into groups.

Note: During a multicast, all nodes within the network still receive the ESP-MESH packet on the MAC layer. However, nodes not included in the MAC address list or the target group will simply filter out the packet.

Broadcasting

Broadcasting is a feature that allows a single ESP-MESH packet to be transmitted simultaneously to all nodes within the network. Each node essentially forwards a broadcast packet to all of its upstream and downstream connections such that the packet propagates throughout the network as quickly as possible. However, ESP-MESH utilizes the following methods to avoid wasting bandwidth during a broadcast.

1. When an intermediate parent node receives a broadcast packet from its parent, it will forward the packet to each of its child nodes whilst storing a copy of the packet for itself.

2. When an intermediate parent node is the source node of the broadcast, it will transmit the broadcast packet upstream to is parent node and downstream to each of its child nodes.

3. When an intermediate parent node receives a broadcast packet from one of its child nodes, it will forward the packet to its parent node and each of its remaining child nodes whilst storing a copy of the packet for itself.

4. When a leaf node is the source node of a broadcast, it will directly transmit the packet to its parent node.

5. When the root node is the source node of a broadcast, the root node will transmit the packet to all of its child nodes.

6. When the root node receives a broadcast packet from one of its child nodes, it will forward the packet to each of its remaining child nodes whilst storing a copy of the packet for itself.

7. When a node receives a broadcast packet with a source address matching its own MAC address, the node will discard the broadcast packet.

8. When an intermediate parent node receives a broadcast packet from its parent node which was originally transmitted from one of its child nodes, it will discard the broadcast packet

Upstream Flow Control

ESP-MESH relies on parent nodes to control the upstream data flow of their immediate child nodes. To prevent a parent node's message buffer from overflowing due to an overload of upstream transmissions, a parent node will allocate a quota for upstream transmissions known as a **receiving window** for each of its child nodes. **Each child node must apply for a receiving window before it is permitted to transmit upstream**. The size of a receiving window can be dynamically adjusted. An upstream transmission from a child node to the parent node consists of the following steps:

1. Before each transmission, the child node sends a window request to its parent node. The window request consists of a sequence number which corresponds to the child node's data packet that is pending transmission.

2. The parent node receives the window request and compares the sequence number with the sequence number of the previous packet sent by the child node. The comparison is used to calculate the size of the receiving window which is transmitted back to the child node.

3. The child node transmits the data packet in accordance with the window size specified by the parent node. If the child node depletes its receiving window, it must obtain another receiving windows by sending a request before it is permitted to continue transmitting.

Note: ESP-MESH does not support any downstream flow control.

Warning: Due to *Parent Node Switching*, packet loss may occur during upstream transmissions.

Due to the fact that the root node acts as the sole interface to an external IP network, it is critical that downstream nodes are aware of the root node's connection status with the external IP network. Failing to do so can lead to nodes attempting to pass data upstream to the root node whilst it is disconnected from the IP network. This results in unnecessary transmissions and packet loss. ESP-MESH address this issue by providing a mechanism to stabilize the throughput of outgoing data based on the connection status between the root node and the external IP network. The root node can broadcast its external IP network connection status to all other nodes by calling `esp_mesh_post_toDS_state()`.

Bi-Directional Data Stream

The following diagram illustrates the various network layers involved in an ESP-MESH Bidirectional Data Stream.

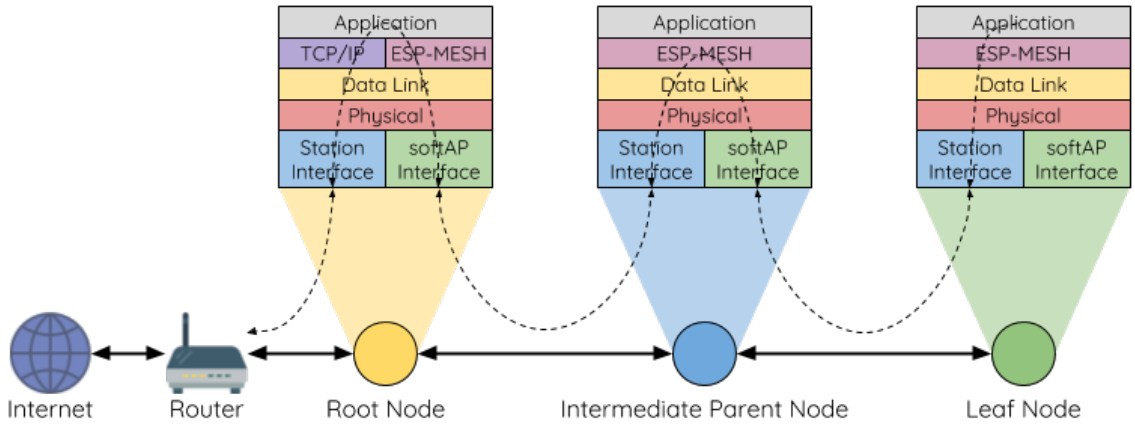


Fig. 18: ESP-MESH Bidirectional Data Stream

Due to the use of *Routing Tables*, **ESP-MESH is able to handle pack forwarding entirely on the mesh layer**. A TCP/IP layer is only required on the root node when it transmits/receives a packet to/from an external IP network.

4.8.7 Channel Switching

Background

In traditional Wi-Fi networks, **channels** are predetermined frequency ranges. In an infrastructure basic service set (BSS), the serving AP and its connected stations must be on the same operating channels (1 to 14) in which beacons are transmitted. Physically adjacent BSS (Basic Service Sets) operating on the same channel can lead to interference and degraded performance.

In order to allow a BSS adapt to changing physical layer conditions and maintain performance, Wi-Fi contains mechanisms for **network channel switching**. A network channel switch is an attempt to move a BSS to a new operating channel whilst minimizing disruption to the BSS during this process. However it should be recognized that a channel switch may be unsuccessful in moving all stations to the new operating channel.

In an infrastructure Wi-Fi network, network channel switches are triggered by the AP with the aim of having the AP and all connected stations synchronously switch to a new channel. Network channel switching is implemented by embedding a **Channel Switch Announcement (CSA)** element within the AP's periodically transmitted beacon

frames. The CSA element is used to advertise to all connected stations regarding an upcoming network channel switch and will be included in multiple beacon frames up until the switch occurs.

A CSA element contains information regarding the **New Channel Number** and a **Channel Switch Count** which indicates the number of beacon frame intervals (TBTTs) remaining until the network channel switch occurs. Therefore, the Channel Switch Count is decremented every beacon frame and allows connected stations to synchronize their channel switch with the AP.

ESP-MESH Network Channel Switching

ESP-MESH Network Channel Switching also utilize beacon frames that contain a CSA element. However, being a multi-hop network makes the switching process in ESP-MESH is more complex due to the fact that a beacon frame might not be able to reach all nodes within the network (i.e. in a single hop). Therefore, an ESP-MESH network relies on nodes to forward the CSA element so that it is propagated throughout the network.

When an intermediate parent node with one or more child nodes receives a beacon frame containing a CSA, the node will forward the CSA element by including the element in its next transmitted beacon frame (i.e. with the same **New Channel Number** and **Channel Switch Count**). Given that all nodes within an ESP-MESH network receive the same CSA, the nodes can synchronize their channel switches using the Channel Switch Count, albeit with a short delay due to CSA element forwarding.

An ESP-MESH network channel switch can be triggered by either the router or the root node.

Root Node Triggered **A root node triggered channel switch can only occur when the ESP-MESH network is not connected to a router**. By calling `esp_mesh_switch_channel()`, the root node will set an initial Channel Switch Count value and begin including a CSA element in its beacon frames. Each CSA element is then received by second layer nodes, and forwarded downstream in the their own beacon frames.

Router Triggered When an ESP-MESH network is connected to a router, the entire network must use the same channel as the router. Therefore, **the root node will not be permitted to trigger a channel switch when it is connected to a router**.

When the root node receives beacon frame containing a CSA element from the router, **the root node will set Channel Switch Count value in the CSA element to a custom value before forwarding it downstream via beacon frames**. It will also decrement the Channel Switch Count of subsequent CSA elements relative to the custom value. This custom value can be based on factors such as the number of network layers, the current number of nodes etc.

The setting the Channel Switch Count value to a custom value is due to the fact that the ESP-MESH network and its router may have a different and varying beacon intervals. Therefore, the Channel Switch Count value provided by the router is irrelevant to an ESP-MESH network. By using a custom value, nodes within the ESP-MESH network are able to switch channels synchronously relative to the ESP-MESH network's beacon interval. However, this will also result in the ESP-MESH network's channel switch being unsynchronized with the channel switch of the router and its connected stations.

Impact of Network Channel Switching

- **Due to the ESP-MESH network channel switch being unsynchronized with the router's channel switch, there will be a**
  - The ESP-MESH network's channel switch time is dependent on the ESP-MESH network's beacon interval and the root node's custom Channel Switch Count value.
  - The channel discrepancy prevents any data exchange between the root node and the router during that ESP-MESH network's switch.
  - In the ESP-MESH network, the root node and intermediate parent nodes will request their connected child nodes to stop transmissions until the channel switch takes place by setting the **Channel Switch Mode** field in the CSA element to 1.
  - Frequent router triggered network channel switches can degrade the ESP-MESH network's performance. Note that this can be caused by the ESP-MESH network itself (e.g. due to wireless medium

contention with ESP-MESH network). If this is the case, users should disable the automatic channel switching on the router and use a specified channel instead.

- **When there is a temporary channel discrepancy, the root node remains technically connected to the router.**
  - Disconnection occurs after the root node fails to receive any beacon frames or probe responses from the router over a fixed number of router beacon intervals.
  - Upon disconnection, the root node will automatically re-scan all channels for the presence of a router.
- **If the root node is unable to receive any of the router's CSA beacon frames (e.g. due to short switch time given by the**
  - After the router switches channels, the root node will no longer be able to receive the router's beacon frames and probe responses and result in a disconnection after a fixed number of beacon intervals.
  - The root node will re-scan all channels for the router after disconnection.
  - The root node will maintain downstream connections throughout this process.

Note: Although ESP-MESH network channel switching aims to move all nodes within the network to a new operating channel, it should be recognized that a channel switch might not successfully move all nodes (e.g. due to reasons such as node failures).

Channel and Router Switching Configuration

ESP-MESH allows for autonomous channel switching to be enabled/disabled via configuration. Likewise, autonomous router switching (i.e. when a root node autonomously connects to another router) can also be enabled/disabled by configuration. Autonomous channel switching and router switching is dependent on the following configuration parameters and run-time conditions.

Allow Channel Switch: This parameter is set via the `allow_channel_switch` field of the *`mesh_cfg_t`* structure and permits an ESP-MESH network to dynamically switch channels when set.

Preset Channel: An ESP-MESH network can have a preset channel by setting the `channel` field of the *`mesh_cfg_t`* structure to the desired channel number. If this field is unset, the `allow_channel_switch` parameter is overridden such that channel switches are always permitted.

Allow Router Switch: This parameter is set via the `allow_router_switch` field of the *`mesh_router_t`* and permits an ESP-MESH to dynamically switch to a different router when set.

Preset Router BSSID: An ESP-MESH network can have a preset router by setting the `bssid` field of the *`mesh_router_t`* structure to the BSSID of the desired router. If this field is unset, the `allow_router_switch` parameter is overridden such that router switches are always permitted.

Root Node Present: The presence of a root node will can also affect whether or a channel or router switch is permitted.

The following table illustrates how the different combinations of parameters/conditions affect whether channel switching and/or router switching is permitted. Note that *X* represents a "don't care" for the parameter.

Preset Channel	Allow Channel Switch	Preset Router BSSID	Allow Router Switch	Root Node Present	Permitted Switches ?
N	X	N	X	X	Channel and Router
N	X	Y	N	X	Channel Only
N	X	Y	Y	X	Channel and Router
Y	Y	N	X	X	Channel and Router
Y	N	N	X	N	Router Only
Y	N	N	X	Y	Channel and Router
Y	Y	Y	N	X	Channel Only
Y	N	Y	N	N	N
Y	N	Y	N	Y	Channel Only
Y	Y	Y	Y	X	Channel and Router
Y	N	Y	Y	N	Router Only
Y	N	Y	Y	Y	Channel and Router

4.8.8 Performance

The performance of an ESP-MESH network can be evaluated based on multiple metrics such as the following:

Network Building Time: The amount of time taken to build an ESP-MESH network from scratch.

Healing Time: The amount of time taken for the network to detect a node break down and carry out appropriate actions to heal the network (such as generating a new root node or forming new connections).

Per-hop latency: The latency of data transmission over one wireless hop. In other words, the time taken to transmit a data packet from a parent node to a child node or vice versa.

Network Node Capacity: The total number of nodes the ESP-MESH network can simultaneously support. This number is determined by the maximum number of downstream connections a node can accept and the maximum number of layers permissible in the network.

The following table lists the common performance figures of an ESP-MESH network:

- Network Building Time: < 60 seconds
- **Healing time:**
  - Root node break down: < 10 seconds
  - Child node break down: < 5 seconds
- Per-hop latency: 10 to 30 milliseconds

Note: The following test conditions were used to generate the performance figures above.

- Number of test devices: **100**
- Maximum Downstream Connections to Accept: **6**
- Maximum Permissible Layers: **6**

Note: Throughput depends on packet error rate and hop count.

Note: The throughput of root node's access to the external IP network is directly affected by the number of nodes in the ESP-MESH network and the bandwidth of the router.

Note: The performance figures can vary greatly between installations based on network configuration and operating environment.

4.8.9 Further Notes

- Data transmission uses Wi-Fi WPA2-PSK encryption
- Mesh networking IE uses AES encryption

Router and internet icon made by Smashicons from www.flaticon.com

4.9 Core Dump

4.9.1 Overview

Note: The python utility does not fully support ESP32-S2

ESP-IDF provides support to generate core dumps on unrecoverable software errors. This useful technique allows post-mortem analysis of software state at the moment of failure. Upon the crash system enters panic state, prints some information and halts or reboots depending configuration. User can choose to generate core dump in order to analyse the reason of failure on PC later on. Core dump contains snapshots of all tasks in the system at the moment of failure. Snapshots include tasks control blocks (TCB) and stacks. So it is possible to find out what task, at what instruction (line of code) and what callstack of that task lead to the crash. It is also possible dumping variables content on demand if previously attributed accordingly. ESP-IDF provides special script *espcoredump.py* to help users to retrieve and analyse core dumps. This tool provides two commands for core dumps analysis:

- info_corefile - prints crashed task's registers, callstack, list of available tasks in the system, memory regions and contents of memory stored in core dump (TCBs and stacks)
- dbg_corefile - creates core dump ELF file and runs GDB debug session with this file. User can examine memory, variables and tasks states manually. Note that since not all memory is saved in core dump only values of variables allocated on stack will be meaningfull

For more information about core dump internals see the - Core dump internals

4.9.2 Configuration

There are a number of core dump related configuration options which user can choose in project configuration menu (*idf.py menuconfig*).

1. Core dump data destination (*Components -> Core dump -> Data destination*):

- Save core dump to Flash (Flash)
- Print core dump to UART (UART)
- Disable core dump generation (None)

2. Core dump data format (*Components -> Core dump -> Core dump data format*):

- ELF format (Executable and Linkable Format file for core dump)
- Binary format (Basic binary format for core dump)

The ELF format contains extended features and allow to save more information about broken tasks and crashed software but it requires more space in the flash memory. It also stores SHA256 of crashed application image. This format of core dump is recommended for new software designs and is flexible enough to extend saved information for future revisions. The Binary format is kept for compatibility standpoint, it uses less space in the memory to keep data and provides better performance.

3. Maximum number of tasks snapshots in core dump (*Components -> Core dump -> Maximum number of tasks*).
4. Delay before core dump is printed to UART (*Components -> Core dump -> Delay before print to UART*). Value is in ms.
5. Type of data integrity check for core dump (*Components -> Core dump -> Core dump data integrity check*).

- Use CRC32 for core dump integrity verification
- Use SHA256 for core dump integrity verification

The SHA256 hash algorithm provides greater probability of detecting corruption than a CRC32 with multiple bit errors. The CRC32 option provides better calculation performance and consumes less memory for storage.

4.9.3 Save core dump to flash

When this option is selected core dumps are saved to special partition on flash. When using default partition table files which are provided with ESP-IDF it automatically allocates necessary space on flash, But if user wants to use its own layout file together with core dump feature it should define separate partition for core dump as it is shown below:

```
# Name,   Type, SubType, Offset,  Size
# Note: if you have increased the bootloader size, make sure to update the offsets␣
↪to avoid overlap
nvs,      data, nvs,     0x9000,  0x6000
phy_init, data, phy,     0xf000,  0x1000
factory,  app,  factory, 0x10000, 1M
coredump, data, coredump,,        64K
```

There are no special requrements for partition name. It can be choosen according to the user application needs, but partition type should be ‘data’ and sub-type should be ‘coredump’. Also when choosing partition size note that core dump data structure introduces constant overhead of 20 bytes and per-task overhead of 12 bytes. This overhead does not include size of TCB and stack for every task. So partirion size should be at least 20 + max tasks number x (12 + TCB size + max task stack size) bytes.

The example of generic command to analyze core dump from flash is: *espcoredump.py -p </path/to/serial/port> info_corefile </path/to/program/elf/file>* or *espcoredump.py -p </path/to/serial/port> dbg_corefile </path/to/program/elf/file>*

4.9.4 Print core dump to UART

When this option is selected base64-encoded core dumps are printed on UART upon system panic. In this case user should save core dump text body to some file manually and then run the following command: *espcoredump.py info_corefile -t b64 -c </path/to/saved/base64/text> </path/to/program/elf/file>* or *espcoredump.py dbg_corefile -t b64 -c </path/to/saved/base64/text> </path/to/program/elf/file>*

Base64-encoded body of core dump will be between the following header and footer:

```
================= CORE DUMP START =================
<body of base64-encoded core dump, save it to file on disk>
================= CORE DUMP END ===================
```

The *CORE DUMP START* and *CORE DUMP END* lines must not be included in core dump text file.

4.9.5 ROM Functions in Backtraces

It is possible situation that at the moment of crash some tasks or/and crashed task itself have one or more ROM functions in their callstacks. Since ROM is not part of the program ELF it will be impossible for GDB to parse such callstacks, because it tries to analyse functions’ prologues to acomplish that. In that case callstack printing will be broken with error message at the first ROM function. To overcome this issue you can use ROM ELF provided by Espressif (https://dl.espressif.com/dl/esp32s2_rom.elf) and pass it to ‘espcoredump.py’.

4.9.6 Dumping variables on demand

Sometimes you want to read the last value of a variable to understand the root cause of a crash. Core dump supports retrieving variable data over GDB by attributing special notations declared variables.

Supported notations and RAM regions

- `COREDUMP_DRAM_ATTR` places variable into DRAM area which will be included into dump.
- `COREDUMP_RTC_ATTR` places variable into RTC area which will be included into dump.
- `COREDUMP_RTC_FAST_ATTR` places variable into RTC_FAST area which will be included into dump.

Example

1. In *Project Configuration Menu*, enable *COREDUMP TO FLASH*, then save and exit.
2. In your project, create a global variable in DRAM area as such as:

```
// uint8_t global_var;
COREDUMP_DRAM_ATTR uint8_t global_var;
```

3. In main application, set the variable to any value and *assert(0)* to cause a crash.

```
global_var = 25;
assert(0);
```

4. Build, flash and run the application on a target device and wait for the dumping information.
5. Run the command below to start core dumping in GDB, where `PORT` is the device USB port:

```
espcoredump.py -p PORT dbg_corefile <path/to/elf>
```

6. In GDB shell, type `p global_var` to get the variable content:

```
(gdb) p global_var
$1 = 25 '\031'
```

4.9.7 Running 'espcoredump.py'

Generic command syntax:

espcoredump.py [options] command [args]

Script Options

- –port,-p PORT. Serial port device.
- –baud,-b BAUD. Serial port baud rate used when flashing/reading.

Commands

- info_corefile. Retrieve core dump and print useful info.
- dbg_corefile. Retrieve core dump and start GDB session with it.

Command Arguments

- –debug,-d DEBUG. Log level (0..3).
- –gdb,-g GDB. Path to gdb to use for data retrieval.
- –core,-c CORE. Path to core dump file to use (if skipped core dump will be read from flash).
- –core-format,-t CORE_FORMAT. Specifies that file passed with "-c" is an ELF ("elf"), dumped raw binary ("raw") or base64-encoded ("b64") format.
- –off,-o OFF. Offset of coredump partition in flash (type *idf.py partition_table* to see it).
- –save-core,-s SAVE_CORE. Save core to file. Othwerwise temporary core file will be deleted. Ignored with "-c".
- –rom-elf,-r ROM_ELF. Path to ROM ELF file to use (if skipped "esp32_rom.elf" is used).
- –print-mem,-m Print memory dump. Used only with "info_corefile".
- <prog> Path to program ELF file.

4.10 Event Handling

Several ESP-IDF components use *events* to inform application about state changes, such as connection or disconnection. This document gives an overview of these event mechanisms.

4.10.1 Wi-Fi, Ethernet, and IP Events

Before the introduction of *esp_event library*, events from Wi-Fi driver, Ethernet driver, and TCP/IP stack were dispatched using the so-called *legacy event loop*. The following sections explain each of the methods.

esp_event Library Event Loop

esp_event library is designed to supersede the legacy event loop for the purposes of event handling in ESP-IDF. In the legacy event loop, all possible event types and event data structures had to be defined in `system_event_id_t` enumeration and `system_event_info_t` union, which made it impossible to send custom events to the event loop, and use the event loop for other kinds of events (e.g. Mesh). Legacy event loop also supported only one event handler function, therefore application components could not handle some of Wi-Fi or IP events themselves, and required application to forward these events from its event handler function.

See *esp_event library API reference* for general information on using this library. Wi-Fi, Ethernet, and IP events are sent to the *default event loop* provided by this library.

Legacy Event Loop

This event loop implementation is started using `esp_event_loop_init()` function. Application typically supplies an *event handler*, a function with the following signature:

```
esp_err_t event_handler(void *ctx, system_event_t *event)
{
}
```

Both the pointer to event handler function, and an arbitrary context pointer are passed to `esp_event_loop_init()`.

When Wi-Fi, Ethernet, or IP stack generate an event, this event is sent to a high-priority `event` task via a queue. Application-provided event handler function is called in the context of this task. Event task stack size and event queue size can be adjusted using *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_TASK_STACK_SIZE* and *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_EVENT_QUEUE_SIZE* options, respectively.

Event handler receives a pointer to the event structure (`system_event_t`) which describes current event. This structure follows a *tagged union* pattern: `event_id` member indicates the type of event, and `event_info` member is a union of description structures. Application event handler will typically use `switch(event->event_id)` to handle different kinds of events.

If application event handler needs to relay the event to some other task, it is important to note that event pointer passed to the event handler is a pointer to temporary structure. To pass the event to another task, application has to make a copy of the entire structure.

Event IDs and Corresponding Data Structures

Event ID (legacy event ID)	Event data structure
Wi-Fi	
WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY (SYSTEM_EVENT_WIFI_READY)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE)	*wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t*
WIFI_EVENT_STA_START (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_START)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_STOP)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED)	*wifi_event_sta_connected_t*
WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED)	*wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t*
WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE)	*wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t*
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED)	*wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t*
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN)	*wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t*
WIFI_EVENT_AP_START (SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_START)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP (SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STOP)	n/a
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED (SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED)	*wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t*
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED (SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED)	*wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t*
WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED (SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED)	*wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t*
Ethernet	
ETHERNET_EVENT_START (SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_START)	n/a
ETHERNET_EVENT_STOP (SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_STOP)	n/a
ETHERNET_EVENT_CONNECTED (SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED)	n/a
ETHERNET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED (SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_DISCONNECTED)	n/a
IP	
IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP)	`ip_event_got_ip_t`
IP_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP (SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP)	n/a
IP_EVENT_AP_STAIPASSIGNED (SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STAIPASSIGNED)	n/a
IP_EVENT_GOT_IP6 (SYSTEM_EVENT_GOT_IP6)	`ip_event_got_ip6_t`
IP_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP (SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP)	`ip_event_got_ip_t`

4.10.2 Mesh Events

ESP-MESH uses a system similar to the *Legacy Event Loop* to deliver events to the application. See *System Events* for details.

4.10.3 Bluetooth Events

Various modules of the Bluetooth stack deliver events to applications via dedicated callback functions. Callback functions receive the event type (enumerated value) and event data (union of structures for each event type). The

following list gives the registration API name, event enumeration type, and event parameters type.

- BLE GAP: `esp_ble_gap_register_callback()`, `esp_gap_ble_cb_event_t`, `esp_ble_gap_cb_param_t`.
- BT GAP: `esp_bt_gap_register_callback()`, `esp_bt_gap_cb_event_t`, `esp_bt_gap_cb_param_t`.
- GATTC: `esp_ble_gattc_register_callback()`, `esp_bt_gattc_cb_event_t`, `esp_bt_gattc_cb_param_t`.
- GATTS: `esp_ble_gatts_register_callback()`, `esp_bt_gatts_cb_event_t`, `esp_bt_gatts_cb_param_t`.
- SPP: `esp_spp_register_callback()`, `esp_spp_cb_event_t`, `esp_spp_cb_param_t`.
- Blufi: `esp_blufi_register_callbacks()`, `esp_blufi_cb_event_t`, `esp_blufi_cb_param_t`.
- A2DP: `esp_a2d_register_callback()`, `esp_a2d_cb_event_t`, `esp_a2d_cb_param_t`.
- AVRC: `esp_avrc_ct_register_callback()`, `esp_avrc_ct_cb_event_t`, `esp_avrc_ct_cb_param_t`.
- HFP Client: `esp_hf_client_register_callback()`, `esp_hf_client_cb_event_t`, `esp_hf_client_cb_param_t`.
- HFP AG: `esp_hf_ag_register_callback()`, `esp_hf_ag_cb_event_t`, `esp_hf_ag_cb_param_t`.

4.11 Support for external RAM

4.11.1 Introduction

ESP32-S2 has a few hundred kilobytes of internal RAM, residing on the same die as the rest of the chip components. It can be insufficient for some purposes, so ESP32-S2 has the ability to also use up to 4 MB of external SPI RAM memory. The external memory is incorporated in the memory map and, with certain restrictions, is usable in the same way as internal data RAM.

4.11.2 Hardware

ESP32-S2 supports SPI PSRAM connected in parallel with the SPI flash chip. While ESP32-S2 is capable of supporting several types of RAM chips, ESP-IDF currently only supports Espressif branded PSRAM chips (ESP-PSRAM32, ESP-PSRAM64, etc).

Note: Some PSRAM chips are 1.8 V devices and some are 3.3 V. The working voltage of the PSRAM chip must match the working voltage of the flash component. Consult the datasheet for your PSRAM chip and ESP32-S2 device to find out the working voltages. For a 1.8 V PSRAM chip, make sure to either set the MTDI pin to a high signal level on bootup, or program ESP32-S2 eFuses to always use the VDD_SIO level of 1.8 V. Not doing this can damage the PSRAM and/or flash chip.

Note: Espressif produces both modules and system-in-package chips that integrate compatible PSRAM and flash and are ready to mount on a product PCB. Consult the Espressif website for more information.

For specific details about connecting the SoC or module pins to an external PSRAM chip, consult the SoC or module datasheet.

4.11.3 Configuring External RAM

ESP-IDF fully supports the use of external memory in applications. Once the external RAM is initialized at startup, ESP-IDF can be configured to handle it in several ways:

- *Integrate RAM into the ESP32-S2 memory map*
- *Add external RAM to the capability allocator*
- *Provide external RAM via malloc()* (default)

Integrate RAM into the ESP32-S2 memory map

Select this option by choosing "Integrate RAM into memory map" from *CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE*.

This is the most basic option for external SPI RAM integration. Most likely, you will need another, more advanced option.

During the ESP-IDF startup, external RAM is mapped into the data address space, starting at address 0x3F800000 (byte-accessible). The length of this region is the same as the SPI RAM size (up to the limit of 4 MB).

Applications can manually place data in external memory by creating pointers to this region. So if an application uses external memory, it is responsible for all management of the external SPI RAM: coordinating buffer usage, preventing corruption, etc.

Add external RAM to the capability allocator

Select this option by choosing "Make RAM allocatable using heap_caps_malloc(…, MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM)" from *CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE*.

When enabled, memory is mapped to address 0x3F800000 and also added to the *capabilities-based heap memory allocator* using `MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM`.

To allocate memory from external RAM, a program should call `heap_caps_malloc(size, MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM)`. After use, this memory can be freed by calling the normal `free()` function.

Provide external RAM via malloc()

Select this option by choosing "Make RAM allocatable using malloc() as well" from *CONFIG_SPIRAM_USE*. This is the default option.

In this case, memory is added to the capability allocator as described for the previous option. However, it is also added to the pool of RAM that can be returned by the standard `malloc()` function.

This allows any application to use the external RAM without having to rewrite the code to use `heap_caps_malloc(..., MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM)`.

An additional configuration item, *CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_ALWAYSINTERNAL*, can be used to set the size threshold when a single allocation should prefer external memory:

- When allocating a size less than the threshold, the allocator will try internal memory first.
- When allocating a size equal to or larger than the threshold, the allocator will try external memory first.

If a suitable block of preferred internal/external memory is not available, the allocator will try the other type of memory.

Because some buffers can only be allocated in internal memory, a second configuration item *CONFIG_SPIRAM_MALLOC_RESERVE_INTERNAL* defines a pool of internal memory which is reserved for *only* explicitly internal allocations (such as memory for DMA use). Regular `malloc()` will not allocate from this pool. The *MALLOC_CAP_DMA* and `MALLOC_CAP_INTERNAL` flags can be used to allocate memory from this pool.

4.11.4 Restrictions

External RAM use has the following restrictions:

- When flash cache is disabled (for example, if the flash is being written to), the external RAM also becomes inaccessible; any reads from or writes to it will lead to an illegal cache access exception. This is also the reason why ESP-IDF does not by default allocate any task stacks in external RAM (see below).

- External RAM cannot be used as a place to store DMA transaction descriptors or as a buffer for a DMA transfer to read from or write into. Any buffers that will be used in combination with DMA must be allocated using `heap_caps_malloc(size, MALLOC_CAP_DMA)` and can be freed using a standard `free()` call.
- External RAM uses the same cache region as the external flash. This means that frequently accessed variables in external RAM can be read and modified almost as quickly as in internal ram. However, when accessing large chunks of data (>32 KB), the cache can be insufficient, and speeds will fall back to the access speed of the external RAM. Moreover, accessing large chunks of data can "push out" cached flash, possibly making the execution of code slower afterwards.
- In general, external RAM cannot be used as task stack memory. Due to this, *`xTaskCreate()`* and similar functions will always allocate internal memory for stack and task TCBs, and functions such as *`xTaskCreateStatic()`* will check if the buffers passed are internal.

4.11.5 Failure to initialize

By default, failure to initialize external RAM will cause the ESP-IDF startup to abort. This can be disabled by enabling the config item *CONFIG_SPIRAM_IGNORE_NOTFOUND*.

4.12 Fatal Errors

4.12.1 Overview

In certain situations, execution of the program can not be continued in a well defined way. In ESP-IDF, these situations include:

- CPU Exceptions: Illegal Instruction, Load/Store Alignment Error, Load/Store Prohibited error, Double Exception.
- System level checks and safeguards:
  - *Interrupt watchdog* timeout
  - *Task watchdog* timeout (only fatal if *CONFIG_ESP_TASK_WDT_PANIC* is set)
  - Cache access error
  - Brownout detection event
  - Stack overflow
  - Stack smashing protection check
  - Heap integrity check
- Failed assertions, via `assert`, `configASSERT` and similar macros.

This guide explains the procedure used in ESP-IDF for handling these errors, and provides suggestions on troubleshooting the errors.

4.12.2 Panic Handler

Every error cause listed in the *Overview* will be handled by *panic handler*.

Panic handler will start by printing the cause of the error to the console. For CPU exceptions, the message will be similar to

```
Guru Meditation Error: Core 0 panic'ed (IllegalInstruction). Exception was␣
↪unhandled.
```

For some of the system level checks (interrupt watchdog, cache access error), the message will be similar to

```
Guru Meditation Error: Core 0 panic'ed (Cache disabled but cached memory␣
↪region accessed). Exception was unhandled.
```

In all cases, error cause will be printed in parentheses. See *Guru Meditation Errors* for a list of possible error causes.

Subsequent behavior of the panic handler can be set using *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC* configuration choice. The available options are:

- Print registers and reboot (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_REBOOT) —default option.
  This will print register values at the point of the exception, print the backtrace, and restart the chip.
- Print registers and halt (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_PRINT_HALT)
  Similar to the above option, but halt instead of rebooting. External reset is required to restart the program.
- Silent reboot (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT)
  Don't print registers or backtrace, restart the chip immediately.
- Invoke GDB Stub (CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_GDBSTUB)
  Start GDB server which can communicate with GDB over console UART port. See *GDB Stub* for more details.

Behavior of panic handler is affected by two other configuration options.

- If *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEBUG_OCDAWARE* is enabled (which is the default), panic handler will detect whether a JTAG debugger is connected. If it is, execution will be halted and control will be passed to the debugger. In this case registers and backtrace are not dumped to the console, and GDBStub / Core Dump functions are not used.
- If *Core Dump* feature is enabled, then system state (task stacks and registers) will be dumped either to Flash or UART, for later analysis.
- If *CONFIG_ESP_PANIC_HANDLER_IRAM* is disabled (disabled by default), the panic handler code is placed in flash memory not IRAM. This means that if ESP-IDF crashes while flash cache is disabled, the panic handler will automatically re-enable flash cache before running GDB Stub or Core Dump. This adds some minor risk, if the flash cache status is also corrupted during the crash.
  If this option is enabled, the panic handler code (including required UART functions) is placed in IRAM. This may be necessary to debug some complex issues with crashes while flash cache is disabled (for example, when writing to SPI flash) or when flash cache is corrupted when an exception is triggered.

The following diagram illustrates panic handler behavior:

4.12.3 Register Dump and Backtrace

Unless CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_SILENT_REBOOT option is enabled, panic handler prints some of the CPU registers, and the backtrace, to the console

```
Core 0 register dump:
PC      : 0x400e14ed  PS      : 0x00060030  A0      : 0x800d0805  A1      :␣
↪0x3ffb5030
A2      : 0x00000000  A3      : 0x00000001  A4      : 0x00000001  A5      :␣
↪0x3ffb50dc
A6      : 0x00000000  A7      : 0x00000001  A8      : 0x00000000  A9      :␣
↪0x3ffb5000
A10     : 0x00000000  A11     : 0x3ffb2bac  A12     : 0x40082d1c  A13     :␣
↪0x06ff1ff8
A14     : 0x3ffb7078  A15     : 0x00000000  SAR     : 0x00000014  EXCCAUSE:␣
↪0x0000001d
EXCVADDR: 0x00000000  LBEG    : 0x4000c46c  LEND    : 0x4000c477  LCOUNT  :␣
↪0xffffffff

Backtrace: 0x400e14ed:0x3ffb5030 0x400d0802:0x3ffb5050
```

Register values printed are the register values in the exception frame, i.e. values at the moment when CPU exception or other fatal error has occured.

Register dump is not printed if the panic handler was executed as a result of an `abort()` call.

In some cases, such as interrupt watchdog timeout, panic handler may print additional CPU registers (EPC1-EPC4) and the registers/backtrace of the code running on the other CPU.

Backtrace line contains PC:SP pairs, where PC is the Program Counter and SP is Stack Pointer, for each stack frame of the current task. If a fatal error happens inside an ISR, the backtrace may include PC:SP pairs both from the task which was interrupted, and from the ISR.

If *IDF Monitor* is used, Program Counter values will be converted to code locations (function name, file name, and line number), and the output will be annotated with additional lines

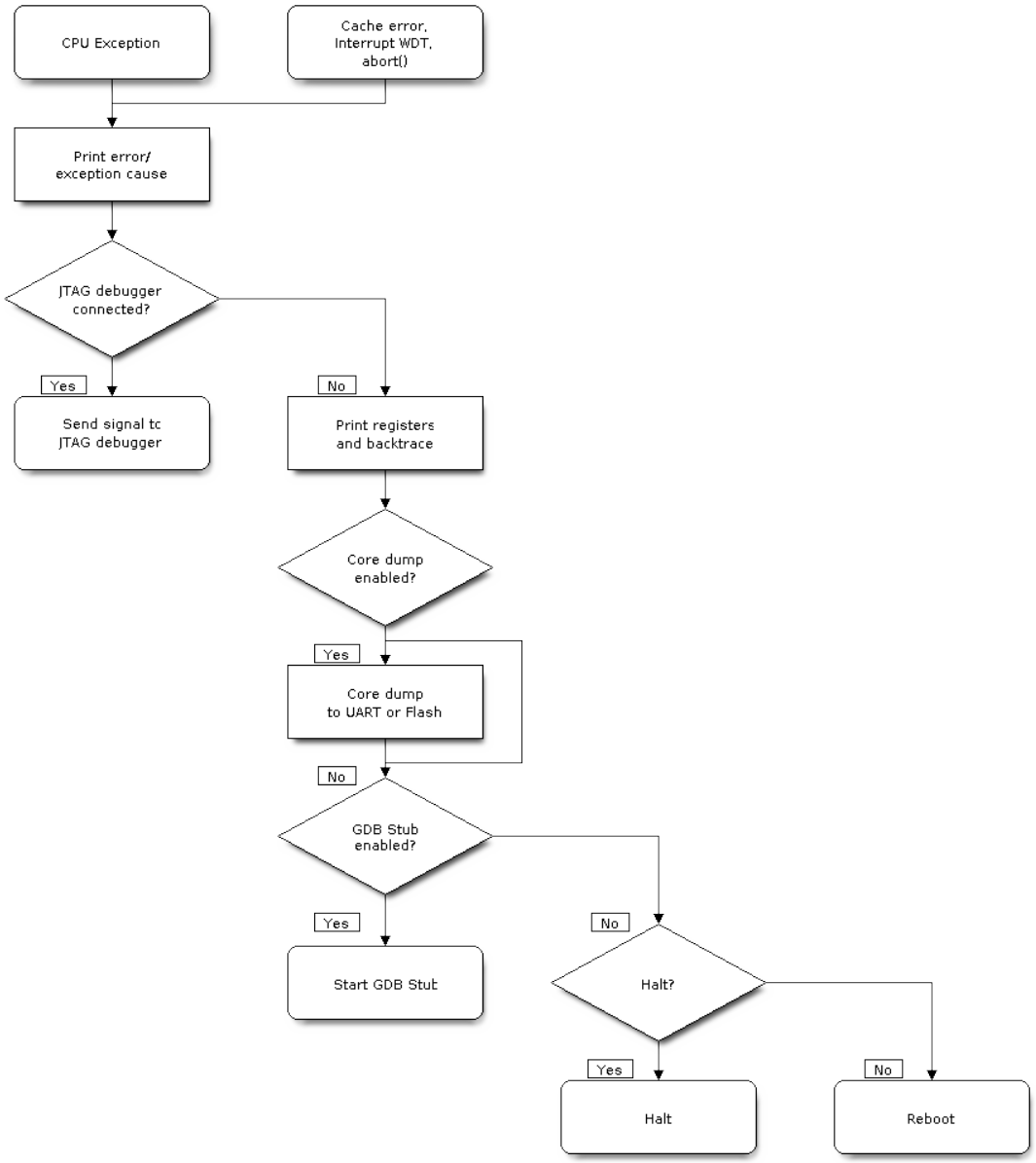


Fig. 19: Panic Handler Flowchart (click to enlarge)

```
Core 0 register dump:
PC      : 0x400e14ed  PS      : 0x00060030  A0      : 0x800d0805  A1      :␣
↪0x3ffb5030
0x400e14ed: app_main at /Users/user/esp/example/main/main.cpp:36

A2      : 0x00000000  A3      : 0x00000001  A4      : 0x00000001  A5      :␣
↪0x3ffb50dc
A6      : 0x00000000  A7      : 0x00000001  A8      : 0x00000000  A9      :␣
↪0x3ffb5000
A10     : 0x00000000  A11     : 0x3ffb2bac  A12     : 0x40082d1c  A13     :␣
↪0x06ff1ff8
0x40082d1c: _calloc_r at /Users/user/esp/esp-idf/components/newlib/syscalls.c:51

A14     : 0x3ffb7078  A15     : 0x00000000  SAR     : 0x00000014  EXCCAUSE:␣
↪0x0000001d
EXCVADDR: 0x00000000  LBEG    : 0x4000c46c  LEND    : 0x4000c477  LCOUNT  :␣
↪0xffffffff

Backtrace: 0x400e14ed:0x3ffb5030 0x400d0802:0x3ffb5050
0x400e14ed: app_main at /Users/user/esp/example/main/main.cpp:36

0x400d0802: main_task at /Users/user/esp/esp-idf/components/esp32s2/cpu_start.c:470
```

To find the location where a fatal error has happened, look at the lines which follow the "Backtrace" line. Fatal error location is the top line, and subsequent lines show the call stack.

4.12.4 GDB Stub

If `CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_PANIC_GDBSTUB` option is enabled, panic handler will not reset the chip when fatal error happens. Instead, it will start GDB remote protocol server, commonly referred to as GDB Stub. When this happens, GDB instance running on the host computer can be instructed to connect to the ESP32-S2 UART port.

If *IDF Monitor* is used, GDB is started automatically when GDB Stub prompt is detected on the UART. The output would look like this:

```
Entering gdb stub now.
$T0b#e6GNU gdb (crosstool-NG crosstool-ng-1.22.0-80-gff1f415) 7.10
Copyright (C) 2015 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law.  Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "--host=x86_64-build_apple-darwin16.3.0 --target=xtensa-
↪esp32s2-elf".
Type "show configuration" for configuration details.
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>.
Find the GDB manual and other documentation resources online at:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/documentation/>.
For help, type "help".
Type "apropos word" to search for commands related to "word"...
Reading symbols from /Users/user/esp/example/build/example.elf...done.
Remote debugging using /dev/cu.usbserial-31301
0x400e1b41 in app_main ()
    at /Users/user/esp/example/main/main.cpp:36
36      *((int*) 0) = 0;
(gdb)
```

GDB prompt can be used to inspect CPU registers, local and static variables, and arbitrary locations in memory. It is not possible to set breakpoints, change PC, or continue execution. To reset the program, exit GDB and perform external reset: Ctrl-T Ctrl-R in IDF Monitor, or using external reset button on the development board.

4.12.5 Guru Meditation Errors

This section explains the meaning of different error causes, printed in parens after `Guru Meditation Error: Core panic'ed` message.

Note: See Wikipedia article for historical origins of "Guru Meditation".

IllegalInstruction

This CPU exception indicates that the instruction which was executed was not a valid instruction. Most common reasons for this error include:

- FreeRTOS task function has returned. In FreeRTOS, if task function needs to terminate, it should call *`vTaskDelete()`* function and delete itself, instead of returning.
- Failure to load next instruction from SPI flash. This usually happens if:
  - Application has reconfigured SPI flash pins as some other function (GPIO, UART, etc.). Consult Hardware Design Guidelines and the Datasheet for the chip or module for details about SPI flash pins.
  - Some external device was accidentally connected to SPI flash pins, and has interfered with communication between ESP32-S2 and SPI flash.

InstrFetchProhibited

This CPU exception indicates that CPU could not load an instruction because the the address of the instruction did not belong to a valid region in instruction RAM or ROM.

Usually this means an attempt to call a function pointer, which does not point to valid code. `PC` (Program Counter) register can be used as an indicator: it will be zero or will contain garbage value (not `0x4xxxxxxx`).

LoadProhibited, StoreProhibited

This CPU exception happens when application attempts to read from or write to an invalid memory location. The address which was written/read is found in `EXCVADDR` register in the register dump. If this address is zero, it usually means that application attempted to dereference a NULL pointer. If this address is close to zero, it usually means that application attempted to access member of a structure, but the pointer to the structure was NULL. If this address is something else (garbage value, not in `0x3fxxxxxx` - `0x6xxxxxxx` range), it likely means that the pointer used to access the data was either not initialized or was corrupted.

IntegerDivideByZero

Application has attempted to do integer division by zero.

LoadStoreAlignment

Application has attempted to read or write memory location, and address alignment did not match load/store size. For example, 32-bit load can only be done from 4-byte aligned address, and 16-bit load can only be done from a 2-byte aligned address.

LoadStoreError

This exception may happen in the following cases:

- If the application has attempted to do an 8- or 16- bit load/store from a memory region which only supports 32-bit loads/stores. For example, dereferencing a `char*` pointer to intruction memory (IRAM, IROM) will result in such an error.

- If the application has attempted a store to a read-only memory region, such as IROM or DROM.

Unhandled debug exception

This will usually be followed by a message like:

```
Debug exception reason: Stack canary watchpoint triggered (task_name)
```

This error indicates that application has written past the end of the stack of `task_name` task. Note that not every stack overflow is guaranteed to trigger this error. It is possible that the task writes to stack beyond the stack canary location, in which case the watchpoint will not be triggered.

Interrupt wdt timeout on CPU0 / CPU1

Indicates that interrupt watchdog timeout has occured. See *Watchdogs* for more information.

Cache disabled but cached memory region accessed

In some situations ESP-IDF will temporarily disable access to external SPI Flash and SPI RAM via caches. For example, this happens with spi_flash APIs are used to read/write/erase/mmap regions of SPI Flash. In these situations, tasks are suspended, and interrupt handlers not registered with `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` are disabled. Make sure that any interrupt handlers registered with this flag have all the code and data in IRAM/DRAM. Refer to the *SPI flash API documentation* for more details.

4.12.6 Other Fatal Errors

Brownout

ESP32-S2 has a built-in brownout detector, which is enabled by default. Brownout detector can trigger system reset if supply voltage goes below safe level. Brownout detector can be configured using *CONFIG_ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET* and *CONFIG_ESP32S2_BROWNOUT_DET_LVL_SEL* options.

When brownout detector triggers, the following message is printed:

```
Brownout detector was triggered
```

Chip is reset after the message is printed.

Note that if supply voltage is dropping at a fast rate, only part of the message may be seen on the console.

Corrupt Heap

ESP-IDF heap implementation contains a number of run-time checks of heap structure. Additional checks ("Heap Poisoning") can be enabled in menuconfig. If one of the checks fails, message similar to the following will be printed:

```
CORRUPT HEAP: Bad tail at 0x3ffe270a. Expected 0xbaad5678 got 0xbaac5678
assertion "head != NULL" failed: file "/Users/user/esp/esp-idf/components/heap/
↪multi_heap_poisoning.c", line 201, function: multi_heap_free
abort() was called at PC 0x400dca43 on core 0
```

Consult *Heap Memory Debugging* documentation for further information.

Stack Smashing

Stack smashing protection (based on GCC `-fstack-protector*` flags) can be enabled in ESP-IDF using *CONFIG_COMPILER_STACK_CHECK_MODE* option. If stack smashing is detected, message similar to the following will be printed:

```
Stack smashing protect failure!

abort() was called at PC 0x400d2138 on core 0

Backtrace: 0x4008e6c0:0x3ffc1780 0x4008e8b7:0x3ffc17a0 0x400d2138:0x3ffc17c0␣
↪0x400e79d5:0x3ffc17e0 0x400e79a7:0x3ffc1840 0x400e79df:0x3ffc18a0␣
↪0x400e2235:0x3ffc18c0 0x400e1916:0x3ffc18f0 0x400e19cd:0x3ffc1910␣
↪0x400e1a11:0x3ffc1930 0x400e1bb2:0x3ffc1950 0x400d2c44:0x3ffc1a80
0
```

The backtrace should point to the function where stack smashing has occured. Check the function code for unbounded access to local arrays.

4.13 Flash Encryption

This is a quick start guide to ESP32-S2's flash encryption feature. Using an application code example, it demonstrates how to test and verify flash encryption operations during development and production.

4.13.1 Introduction

Flash encryption is intended for encrypting the contents of the ESP32-S2's off-chip flash memory. Once this feature is enabled, firmware is flashed as plaintext, and then the data is encrypted in place on the first boot. As a result, physical readout of flash will not be sufficient to recover most flash contents.

With flash encryption enabled, the following types of data are encrypted by default:

- Firmware bootloader
- Partition Table
- All "app" type partitions

Other types of data can be encrypted conditionally:

- Any partition marked with the `encrypted` flag in the partition table. For details, see *Encrypted Partition Flag*.
- Secure Boot bootloader digest if Secure Boot is enabled (see below).

Important: For production use, flash encryption should be enabled in the "Release" mode only.

Important: Enabling flash encryption limits the options for further updates of ESP32-S2. Before using this feature, read the document and make sure to understand the implications.

4.13.2 Relevant eFuses

The flash encryption operation is controlled by various eFuses available on ESP32-S2. The list of eFuses and their descriptions is given in the table below. The names in eFuse column are also used by espefuse.py tool. For usage in the eFuse API, modify the name by adding `ESP_EFUSE_`, for example: esp_efuse_read_field_bit(ESP_EFUSE_**DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT**).

Table 1: eFuses Used in Flash Encryption

eFuse	Description	Bit Depth	R/W Access Control Available	Default Value
BLOCK_KEYN	AES key storage. N is between 0 and 5.	256	Yes	x
KEY_PURPOSE_N	Controls the purpose of eFuse block BLOCK_KEYN, where N is between 0 and 5. Possible values: 2 for XTS_AES_256_KEY_1 , 3 for XTS_AES_256_KEY_2, and 4 for XTS_AES_128_KEY. Final AES key is derived based on the value of one or two of these purpose eFuses. For a detailed description of the possible combinations, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual > External Memory Encryption and Decryption (XTS_AES)* [PDF].	4	Yes	0
DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT	If set, disables flash encryption when in download bootmodes.	1	Yes	0
SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT	Enables encryption and decryption, when an SPI boot mode is set. Feature is enabled if 1 or 3 bits are set in the eFuse, disabled otherwise.	3	Yes	0

Read and write access to eFuse bits is controlled by appropriate fields in the registers WR_DIS and RD_DIS. For more information on ESP32-S2 eFuses, see *eFuse manager*. To change protection bits of eFuse field using espefuse.py, use these two commands: read_protect_efuse and write_protect_efuse. Example `espefuse.py write_protect_efuse DISABLE_DL_ENCRYPT`.

4.13.3 Flash Encryption Process

Assuming that the eFuse values are in their default states and the firmware bootloader is compiled to support flash encryption, the flash encryption process executes as shown below:

1. On the first power-on reset, all data in flash is un-encrypted (plaintext). The ROM bootloader loads the firmware bootloader.
2. Firmware bootloader reads the SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT eFuse value (0b000). Since the value is 0 (even number of bits set), it configures and enables the flash encryption block. For more information on the flash encryption block, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual > eFuse Controller (eFuse) > Auto Encryption Block* [PDF].
3. Firmware bootloader uses RNG (random) module to generate an 256 bit or 512 bit key, depending on the value of *Size of generated AES-XTS key*, and then writes it into respectively one or two *BLOCK_KEYN* eFuses. The software also updates the KEY_PURPOSE_N for the blocks where the keys were stored. The key cannot be accessed via software as the write and read protection bits for one or two *BLOCK_KEYN* eFuses are set. KEY_PURPOSE_N field is write-protected as well. The flash encryption operations happen entirely by hardware, and the key cannot be accessed via software.
4. Flash encryption block encrypts the flash contents - the firmware bootloader, applications and partitions marked as encrypted. Encrypting in-place can take time, up to a minute for large partitions.
5. Firmware bootloader sets the first available bit in SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT (0b001) to mark the flash contents as encrypted. Odd number of bits is set.
6. For *Development Mode*, the firmware bootloader allows the UART bootloader to re-flash encrypted binaries. Also, the SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT eFuse bits are NOT write-protected. In addition, the firmware bootloader by default sets the eFuse bits DIS_BOOT_REMAP, DIS_DOWNLOAD_ICACHE, DIS_DOWNLOAD_DCACHE, HARD_DIS_JTAG and DIS_LEGACY_SPI_BOOT.
7. For *Release Mode*, the firmware bootloader sets all the eFuse bits set under development mode as well as DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT. It also write-protects the SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT eFuse bits. To

modify this behavior, see *Enabling UART Bootloader Encryption/Decryption*.

8. The device is then rebooted to start executing the encrypted image. The firmware bootloader calls the flash decryption block to decrypt the flash contents and then loads the decrypted contents into IRAM.

During the development stage, there is a frequent need to program different plaintext flash images and test the flash encryption process. This requires that Firmware Download mode is able to load new plaintext images as many times as it might be needed. However, during manufacturing or production stages, Firmware Download mode should not be allowed to access flash contents for security reasons.

Hence, two different flash encryption configurations were created: for development and for production. For details on these configurations, see Section *Flash Encryption Configuration*.

4.13.4 Flash Encryption Configuration

The following flash encryption modes are available:

- *Development Mode* - recommended for use ONLY DURING DEVELOPMENT, as it does not prevent modification and readout of encrypted flash contents.
- *Release Mode* - recommended for manufacturing and production to prevent physical readout of encrypted flash contents.

This section provides information on the mentioned flash encryption modes and step by step instructions on how to use them.

Development Mode

During development, you can encrypt flash using either an ESP32-S2 generated key or external host-generated key.

Using ESP32-S2 Generated Key Development mode allows you to download multiple plaintext images using Firmware Download mode.

To test flash encryption process, take the following steps:

1. Ensure that you have an ESP32-S2 device with default flash encryption eFuse settings as shown in *Relevant eFuses*.

   See how to check *ESP32-S2 Flash Encryption Status*.

2. In *Project Configuration Menu*, do the following:

   - *Enable flash encryption on boot*
   - *Select encryption mode* (**Development mode** by default)
   - **ref** *Select UART ROM download mode <CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE>* (**enabled** by default.)
   - Set *Size of generated AES-XTS key*
   - *Select the appropriate bootloader log verbosity*
   - Save the configuration and exit.

Enabling flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating partition table offset. See secure-boot-bootloader-size.

3. Run the command given below to build and flash the complete images.

```
idf.py flash monitor
```

Note: This command does not include any user files which should be written to the partitions on the flash memory. Please write them manually before running this command otherwise the files should be encrypted separately before writing.

This command will write to flash memory unencrypted images: the firmware bootloader, the partition table and applications. Once the flashing is complete, ESP32-S2 will reset. On the next boot, the firmware bootloader encrypts: the firmware bootloader, application partitions and partitions marked as `encrypted` then resets. Encrypting in-place can take time, up to a minute for large partitions. After that, the application is decrypted at runtime and executed.

A sample output of the first ESP32-S2 boot after enabling flash encryption is given below:

```
ESP-ROM:esp32s2-rc4-20191025
Build:Oct 25 2019
rst:0x1 (POWERON),boot:0x8 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
SPIWP:0xee
mode:DIO, clock div:1
load:0x3ffe6260,len:0x78
load:0x3ffe62d8,len:0x231c
load:0x4004c000,len:0x9d8
load:0x40050000,len:0x3cf8
entry 0x4004c1ec
I (48) boot: ESP-IDF qa-test-v4.3-20201113-777-gd8e1 2nd stage bootloader
I (48) boot: compile time 11:24:04
I (48) boot: chip revision: 0
I (52) boot.esp32s2: SPI Speed      : 80MHz
I (57) boot.esp32s2: SPI Mode       : DIO
I (62) boot.esp32s2: SPI Flash Size : 2MB
I (66) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
I (72) boot: Partition Table:
I (75) boot: ## Label            Usage          Type ST Offset   Length
I (83) boot:  0 nvs              WiFi data        01 02 0000a000 00006000
I (90) boot:  1 storage          Unknown data     01 ff 00010000 00001000
I (98) boot:  2 factory          factory app      00 00 00020000 00100000
I (105) boot: End of partition table
I (109) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00020020 vaddr=0x3f000020 size=0x0618c (␣
↪24972) map
I (124) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x000261b4 vaddr=0x3ffbcae0 size=0x02624 ( ␣
↪9764) load
I (129) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x000287e0 vaddr=0x40022000 size=0x00404 ( ␣
↪1028) load
0x40022000: _WindowOverflow4 at /home/marius/esp-idf/components/freertos/port/
↪xtensa/xtensa_vectors.S:1730

I (136) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x00028bec vaddr=0x40022404 size=0x0742c (␣
↪29740) load
0x40022404: _coredump_iram_end at ??:?

I (153) esp_image: segment 4: paddr=0x00030020 vaddr=0x40080020 size=0x1457c (␣
↪83324) map
0x40080020: _stext at ??:?

I (171) esp_image: segment 5: paddr=0x000445a4 vaddr=0x40029830 size=0x032ac (␣
↪12972) load
0x40029830: gpspi_flash_ll_set_miso_bitlen at /home/marius/esp-idf/examples/
↪security/flash_encryption/build/../../../../components/hal/esp32s2/include/hal/
↪gpspi_flash_ll.h:261
(inlined by) spi_flash_hal_gpspi_common_command at /home/marius/esp-idf/components/
↪hal/spi_flash_hal_common.inc:161

I (181) boot: Loaded app from partition at offset 0x20000
I (181) boot: Checking flash encryption...
I (181) efuse: Batch mode of writing fields is enabled
I (188) flash_encrypt: Generating new flash encryption key...
W (199) flash_encrypt: Not disabling UART bootloader encryption
I (201) flash_encrypt: Disable UART bootloader cache...
I (207) flash_encrypt: Disable JTAG...
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
I (212) efuse: Batch mode of writing fields is disabled
I (217) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00001020 vaddr=0x3ffe6260 size=0x00078 (  ␣
↪120)
I (226) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x000010a0 vaddr=0x3ffe62d8 size=0x0231c ( ␣
↪8988)
I (236) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x000033c4 vaddr=0x4004c000 size=0x009d8 ( ␣
↪2520)
I (243) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x00003da4 vaddr=0x40050000 size=0x03cf8 (␣
↪15608)
I (651) flash_encrypt: bootloader encrypted successfully
I (704) flash_encrypt: partition table encrypted and loaded successfully
I (704) flash_encrypt: Encrypting partition 1 at offset 0x10000 (length 0x1000)...
I (765) flash_encrypt: Done encrypting
I (766) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00020020 vaddr=0x3f000020 size=0x0618c (␣
↪24972) map
I (773) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x000261b4 vaddr=0x3ffbcae0 size=0x02624 ( ␣
↪9764)
I (778) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x000287e0 vaddr=0x40022000 size=0x00404 ( ␣
↪1028)
0x40022000: _WindowOverflow4 at /home/marius/esp-idf/components/freertos/port/
↪xtensa/xtensa_vectors.S:1730

I (785) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x00028bec vaddr=0x40022404 size=0x0742c (␣
↪29740)
0x40022404: _coredump_iram_end at ??:?

I (799) esp_image: segment 4: paddr=0x00030020 vaddr=0x40080020 size=0x1457c (␣
↪83324) map
0x40080020: _stext at ??:?

I (820) esp_image: segment 5: paddr=0x000445a4 vaddr=0x40029830 size=0x032ac (␣
↪12972)
0x40029830: gpspi_flash_ll_set_miso_bitlen at /home/marius/esp-idf/examples/
↪security/flash_encryption/build/../../../../components/hal/esp32s2/include/hal/
↪gpspi_flash_ll.h:261
(inlined by) spi_flash_hal_gpspi_common_command at /home/marius/esp-idf/components/
↪hal/spi_flash_hal_common.inc:161

I (823) flash_encrypt: Encrypting partition 2 at offset 0x20000 (length 0x100000)..
↪.
I (13869) flash_encrypt: Done encrypting
I (13870) flash_encrypt: Flash encryption completed
I (13870) boot: Resetting with flash encryption enabled...
```

A sample output of subsequent ESP32-S2 boots just mentions that flash encryption is already enabled:

```
ESP-ROM:esp32s2-rc4-20191025
Build:Oct 25 2019
rst:0x3 (RTC_SW_SYS_RST),boot:0x8 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
Saved PC:0x40051242
SPIWP:0xee
mode:DIO, clock div:1
load:0x3ffe6260,len:0x78
load:0x3ffe62d8,len:0x231c
load:0x4004c000,len:0x9d8
load:0x40050000,len:0x3cf8
entry 0x4004c1ec
I (56) boot: ESP-IDF qa-test-v4.3-20201113-777-gd8e1 2nd stage bootloader
I (56) boot: compile time 11:24:04
I (56) boot: chip revision: 0
I (60) boot.esp32s2: SPI Speed      : 80MHz
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
I (65) boot.esp32s2: SPI Mode       : DIO
I (69) boot.esp32s2: SPI Flash Size : 2MB
I (74) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
I (80) boot: Partition Table:
I (83) boot: ## Label            Usage          Type ST Offset   Length
I (90) boot:  0 nvs              WiFi data        01 02 0000a000 00006000
I (98) boot:  1 storage          Unknown data     01 ff 00010000 00001000
I (105) boot:  2 factory          factory app      00 00 00020000 00100000
I (113) boot: End of partition table
I (117) esp_image: segment 0: paddr=0x00020020 vaddr=0x3f000020 size=0x0618c (␣
↪24972) map
I (132) esp_image: segment 1: paddr=0x000261b4 vaddr=0x3ffbcae0 size=0x02624 ( ␣
↪9764) load
I (137) esp_image: segment 2: paddr=0x000287e0 vaddr=0x40022000 size=0x00404 ( ␣
↪1028) load
0x40022000: _WindowOverflow4 at /home/marius/esp-idf/components/freertos/port/
↪xtensa/xtensa_vectors.S:1730

I (144) esp_image: segment 3: paddr=0x00028bec vaddr=0x40022404 size=0x0742c (␣
↪29740) load
0x40022404: _coredump_iram_end at ??:?

I (161) esp_image: segment 4: paddr=0x00030020 vaddr=0x40080020 size=0x1457c (␣
↪83324) map
0x40080020: _stext at ??:?

I (180) esp_image: segment 5: paddr=0x000445a4 vaddr=0x40029830 size=0x032ac (␣
↪12972) load
0x40029830: gpspi_flash_ll_set_miso_bitlen at /home/marius/esp-idf/examples/
↪security/flash_encryption/build/../../../../components/hal/esp32s2/include/hal/
↪gpspi_flash_ll.h:261
(inlined by) spi_flash_hal_gpspi_common_command at /home/marius/esp-idf/components/
↪hal/spi_flash_hal_common.inc:161

I (190) boot: Loaded app from partition at offset 0x20000
I (191) boot: Checking flash encryption...
I (191) flash_encrypt: flash encryption is enabled (1 plaintext flashes left)
I (199) boot: Disabling RNG early entropy source...
I (216) cache: Instruction cache      : size 8KB, 4Ways, cache line size 32Byte
I (216) cpu_start: Pro cpu up.
I (268) cpu_start: Pro cpu start user code
I (268) cpu_start: cpu freq: 160000000
I (268) cpu_start: Application information:
I (271) cpu_start: Project name:     flash_encryption
I (277) cpu_start: App version:      qa-test-v4.3-20201113-777-gd8e1
I (284) cpu_start: Compile time:     Dec 21 2020 11:24:00
I (290) cpu_start: ELF file SHA256:  30fd1b899312fef7...
I (296) cpu_start: ESP-IDF:          qa-test-v4.3-20201113-777-gd8e1
I (303) heap_init: Initializing. RAM available for dynamic allocation:
I (310) heap_init: At 3FF9E000 len 00002000 (8 KiB): RTCRAM
I (316) heap_init: At 3FFBF898 len 0003C768 (241 KiB): DRAM
I (323) heap_init: At 3FFFC000 len 00003A10 (14 KiB): DRAM
W (329) flash_encrypt: Flash encryption mode is DEVELOPMENT (not secure)
I (336) spi_flash: detected chip: generic
I (341) spi_flash: flash io: dio
W (345) spi_flash: Detected size(4096k) larger than the size in the binary image␣
↪header(2048k). Using the size in the binary image header.
I (358) cpu_start: Starting scheduler on PRO CPU.

Example to check Flash Encryption status
This is esp32s2 chip with 1 CPU core(s), WiFi, silicon revision 0, 2MB external␣
↪flash
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
FLASH_CRYPT_CNT eFuse value is 1
Flash encryption feature is enabled in DEVELOPMENT mode
```

At this stage, if you need to update and re-flash binaries, see *Re-flashing Updated Partitions*.

Using Host Generated Key It is possible to pre-generate a flash encryption key on the host computer and burn it into the eFuse. This allows you to pre-encrypt data on the host and flash already encrypted data without needing a plaintext flash update. This feature can be used in both *Development Mode* and *Release Mode*. Without a pre-generated key, data is flashed in plaintext and then ESP32-S2 encrypts the data in-place.

Note: This option is not recommended for production, unless a separate key is generated for each individual device.

To use a host generated key, take the following steps:

1. Ensure that you have an ESP32-S2 device with default flash encryption eFuse settings as shown in *Relevant eFuses*.

   See how to check *ESP32-S2 Flash Encryption Status*.

2. Generate a random key by running:

If *Size of generated AES-XTS key* is AES-256 (512-bit key) need to use the *XTS_AES_256_KEY_1* and *XTS_AES_256_KEY_2* purposes. The espsecure does not support 512-bit key, but it is possible to workaround:

```
espsecure.py generate_flash_encryption_key my_flash_encryption_key1.bin

espsecure.py generate_flash_encryption_key my_flash_encryption_key2.bin

# To use encrypt_flash_data with XTS_AES_256 requires combining the two binary␣
↪files to one 64 byte file
cat my_flash_encryption_key1.bin my_flash_encryption_key2.bin > my_flash_
↪encryption_key.bin
```

If *Size of generated AES-XTS key* is AES-128 (256-bit key) need to use the *XTS_AES_128_KEY* purpose.

```
espsecure.py generate_flash_encryption_key my_flash_encryption_key.bin
```

3. **Before the first encrypted boot**, burn the key into your device' s eFuse using the command below. This action can be done **only once**.

```
espefuse.py --port PORT burn_key BLOCK my_flash_encryption_key.bin KEYPURPOSE
```

where *BLOCK* is a free keyblock between *BLOCK_KEY0* and *BLOCK_KEY5*. And *KEYPURPOSE* is either *AES_256_KEY_1*, *XTS_AES_256_KEY_2*, *XTS_AES_128_KEY*. See ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual for a description of the key purposes.

AES-128 (256-bit key) - *XTS_AES_128_KEY*:

```
espefuse.py --port PORT burn_key BLOCK my_flash_encryption_key.bin XTS_AES_128_KEY
```

AES-256 (512-bit key) - *XTS_AES_256_KEY_1* and *XTS_AES_256_KEY_2*. It is not fully supported yet in espefuse.py and espsecure.py. Need to do the following steps:

```
espefuse.py  --port PORT  burn_key BLOCK   my_flash_encryption_key1.bin XTS_AES_
↪256_KEY_1

espefuse.py  --port PORT  burn_key BLOCK+1 my_flash_encryption_key2.bin XTS_AES_
↪256_KEY_2
```

If the key is not burned and the device is started after enabling flash encryption, the ESP32-S2 will generate a random key that software cannot access or modify.

4. In *Project Configuration Menu*, do the following:
   - *Enable flash encryption on boot*
   - *Select encryption mode* (**Development mode** by default)
   - *Select the appropriate bootloader log verbosity*
   - Save the configuration and exit.

Enabling flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating partition table offset. See secure-boot-bootloader-size.

5. Run the command given below to build and flash the complete images.

```
idf.py flash monitor
```

Note: This command does not include any user files which should be written to the partitions on the flash memory. Please write them manually before running this command otherwise the files should be encrypted separately before writing.

This command will write to flash memory unencrypted images: the firmware bootloader, the partition table and applications. Once the flashing is complete, ESP32-S2 will reset. On the next boot, the firmware bootloader encrypts: the firmware bootloader, application partitions and partitions marked as `encrypted` then resets. Encrypting in-place can take time, up to a minute for large partitions. After that, the application is decrypted at runtime and executed.

At this stage, if you need to update and re-flash binaries, see *Re-flashing Updated Partitions*.

Re-flashing Updated Partitions If you update your application code (done in plaintext) and want to re-flash it, you will need to encrypt it before flashing. To encrypt the application and flash it in one step, run:

```
idf.py encrypted-app-flash monitor
```

If all partitions needs to be updated in encrypted format, run:

```
idf.py encrypted-flash monitor
```

Release Mode

In Release mode, UART bootloader cannot perform flash encryption operations. New plaintext images can ONLY be downloaded using the over-the-air (OTA) scheme which will encrypt the plaintext image before writing to flash.

To use this mode, take the following steps:

1. Ensure that you have an ESP32-S2 device with default flash encryption eFuse settings as shown in *Relevant eFuses*.

   See how to check *ESP32-S2 Flash Encryption Status*.

2. In *Project Configuration Menu*, do the following:

   - *Enable flash encryption on boot*
   - *Select Release mode* (Note that once Release mode is selected, the `EFUSE_DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT` eFuse bit will be burned to disable flash encryption hardware in ROM Download Mode.)
   - *Select UART ROM download mode (Permanently switch to Secure mode (recommended))*. This is the default option, and is recommended. It is also possible to change this configuration setting to permanently disable UART ROM download mode, if this mode is not needed.
   - *Select the appropriate bootloader log verbosity*
   - Save the configuration and exit.

Enabling flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating partition table offset. See secure-boot-bootloader-size.

3. Run the command given below to build and flash the complete images.

```
idf.py flash monitor
```

Note: This command does not include any user files which should be written to the partitions on the flash memory. Please write them manually before running this command otherwise the files should be encrypted separately before writing.

This command will write to flash memory unencrypted images: the firmware bootloader, the partition table and applications. Once the flashing is complete, ESP32-S2 will reset. On the next boot, the firmware bootloader encrypts: the firmware bootloader, application partitions and partitions marked as `encrypted` then resets. Encrypting in-place can take time, up to a minute for large partitions. After that, the application is decrypted at runtime and executed.

Once the flash encryption is enabled in Release mode, the bootloader will write-protect the `SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT` eFuse.

For subsequent plaintext field updates, use *OTA scheme*.

Note: If you have pre-generated the flash encryption key and stored a copy, and the UART download mode is not permanently disabled via *CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE* , then it is possible to update the flash locally by pre-encrypting the files using `espsecure.py encrypt_flash_data --aes_xts` and then flashing the ciphertext.

. _flash-encrypt-best-practices:

Best Practices

When using Flash Encryption in production:

- Do not reuse the same flash encryption key between multiple devices. This means that an attacker who copies encrypted data from one device cannot transfer it to a second device.
- The UART ROM Download Mode should be disabled entirely if it is not needed, or permanently set to "Secure Download Mode" otherwise. Secure Download Mode permanently limits the available commands to basic flash read and write only. The default behaviour is to set Secure Download Mode on first boot in Release mode. To disable Download Mode entirely select select the *CONFIG_SECURE_UART_ROM_DL_MODE* to "Permanently disable ROM Download Mode (recommended)" or call *esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode()* at runtime.
- Enable *Secure Boot* as an extra layer of protection, and to prevent an attacker from selectively corrupting any part of the flash before boot.

4.13.5 Possible Failures

Once flash encryption is enabled, the `SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT` eFuse value will have an odd number of bits set. It means that all the partitions marked with the encryption flag are expected to contain encrypted ciphertext. Below are the three typical failure cases if the ESP32-S2 is erroneously loaded with plaintext data:

1. If the bootloader partition is re-flashed with a **plaintext firmware bootloader image**, the ROM bootloader will fail to load the firmware bootloader resulting in the following failure:

```
rst:0x3 (SW_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
invalid header: 0xb414f76b
```

Note: The value of invalid header will be different for every application.

Note: This error also appears if the flash contents are erased or corrupted.

2. If the firmware bootloader is encrypted, but the partition table is re-flashed with a **plaintext partition table image**, the bootloader will fail to read the partition table resulting in the following failure:

```
rst:0x3 (SW_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configsip: 0, SPIWP:0xee
clk_drv:0x00,q_drv:0x00,d_drv:0x00,cs0_drv:0x00,hd_drv:0x00,wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0018,len:4
load:0x3fff001c,len:10464
ho 0 tail 12 room 4
load:0x40078000,len:19168
load:0x40080400,len:6664
entry 0x40080764
I (60) boot: ESP-IDF v4.0-dev-763-g2c55fae6c-dirty 2nd stage bootloader
I (60) boot: compile time 19:15:54
I (62) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
I (67) boot: SPI Speed      : 40MHz
I (72) boot: SPI Mode       : DIO
I (76) boot: SPI Flash Size : 4MB
E (80) flash_parts: partition 0 invalid magic number 0x94f6
E (86) boot: Failed to verify partition table
E (91) boot: load partition table error!
```

3. If the bootloader and partition table are encrypted, but the application is re-flashed with a **plaintext application image**, the bootloader will fail to load the application resulting in the following failure:

```
rst:0x3 (SW_RESET),boot:0x13 (SPI_FAST_FLASH_BOOT)
configsip: 0, SPIWP:0xee
clk_drv:0x00,q_drv:0x00,d_drv:0x00,cs0_drv:0x00,hd_drv:0x00,wp_drv:0x00
mode:DIO, clock div:2
load:0x3fff0018,len:4
load:0x3fff001c,len:8452
load:0x40078000,len:13616
load:0x40080400,len:6664
entry 0x40080764
I (56) boot: ESP-IDF v4.0-dev-850-gc4447462d-dirty 2nd stage bootloader
I (56) boot: compile time 15:37:14
I (58) boot: Enabling RNG early entropy source...
I (64) boot: SPI Speed      : 40MHz
I (68) boot: SPI Mode       : DIO
I (72) boot: SPI Flash Size : 4MB
I (76) boot: Partition Table:
I (79) boot: ## Label            Usage          Type ST Offset   Length
I (87) boot:  0 nvs              WiFi data        01 02 0000a000 00006000
I (94) boot:  1 phy_init         RF data          01 01 00010000 00001000
I (102) boot:  2 factory          factory app      00 00 00020000 00100000
I (109) boot: End of partition table
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
E (113) esp_image: image at 0x20000 has invalid magic byte
W (120) esp_image: image at 0x20000 has invalid SPI mode 108
W (126) esp_image: image at 0x20000 has invalid SPI size 11
E (132) boot: Factory app partition is not bootable
E (138) boot: No bootable app partitions in the partition table
```

4.13.6 ESP32-S2 Flash Encryption Status

1. Ensure that you have an ESP32-S2 device with default flash encryption eFuse settings as shown in *Relevant eFuses*.

To check if flash encryption on your ESP32-S2 device is enabled, do one of the following:

- flash the application example security/flash_encryption onto your device. This application prints the `SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT` eFuse value and if flash encryption is enabled or disabled.
- *Find the serial port name* under which your ESP32-S2 device is connected, replace `PORT` with your port name in the following command, and run it:

```
espefuse.py -p PORT summary
```

4.13.7 Reading and Writing Data in Encrypted Flash

ESP32-S2 application code can check if flash encryption is currently enabled by calling *`esp_flash_encryption_enabled()`*. Also, a device can identify the flash encryption mode by calling *`esp_get_flash_encryption_mode()`*.

Once flash encryption is enabled, be more careful with accessing flash contents from code.

Scope of Flash Encryption

Whenever the `SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT` eFuse is set to a value with an odd number of bits, all flash content accessed via the MMU's flash cache is transparently decrypted. It includes:

- Executable application code in flash (IROM).
- All read-only data stored in flash (DROM).
- Any data accessed via `spi_flash_mmap()`.
- The firmware bootloader image when it is read by the ROM bootloader.

Important: The MMU flash cache unconditionally decrypts all existing data. Data which is stored unencrypted in flash memory will also be "transparently decrypted" via the flash cache and will appear to software as random garbage.

Reading from Encrypted Flash

To read data without using a flash cache MMU mapping, you can use the partition read function *`esp_partition_read()`*. This function will only decrypt data when it is read from an encrypted partition. Data read from unencrypted partitions will not be decrypted. In this way, software can access encrypted and non-encrypted flash in the same way.

You can also use the following SPI flash API functions:

- *`esp_flash_read()`* to read raw (encrypted) data which will not be decrypted
- *`esp_flash_read_encrypted()`* to read and decrypt data

The ROM function `SPIRead()` can read data without decryption, however, this function is not supported in esp-idf applications.

Data stored using the Non-Volatile Storage (NVS) API is always stored and read decrypted from the perspective of flash encryption. It is up to the library to provide encryption feature if required. Refer to *NVS Encryption* for more details.

Writing to Encrypted Flash

It is recommended to use the partition write function *`esp_partition_write()`*. This function will only encrypt data when it is written to an encrypted partition. Data written to unencrypted partitions will not be encrypted. In this way, software can access encrypted and non-encrypted flash in the same way.

You can also pre-encrypt and write data using the function *`esp_flash_write_encrypted()`*

Also, the following ROM function exist but not supported in esp-idf applications:

- `esp_rom_spiflash_write_encrypted` pre-encrypts and writes data to flash
- `SPIWrite` writes unencrypted data to flash

Since data is encrypted in blocks, the minimum write size for encrypted data is 16 bytes and the alignment is also 16 bytes.

4.13.8 Updating Encrypted Flash

OTA Updates

OTA updates to encrypted partitions will automatically write encrypted data if the function *`esp_partition_write()`* is used.

Before building the application image for OTA updating of an already encrypted device, enable the option *Enable flash encryption on boot* in project configuration menu.

For general information about ESP-IDF OTA updates, please refer to *OTA*

4.13.9 Disabling Flash Encryption

If flash encryption was enabled accidentally, flashing of plaintext data will soft-brick the ESP32-S2. The device will reboot continuously, printing the error `flash read err, 1000` or `invalid header: 0xXXXXXX`.

For flash encryption in Development mode, encryption can be disabled by burning the `SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT` eFuse. It can only be done one time per chip by taking the following steps:

1. In *Project Configuration Menu*, disable *Enable flash encryption on boot*, then save and exit.
2. Open project configuration menu again and **double-check** that you have disabled this option! If this option is left enabled, the bootloader will immediately re-enable encryption when it boots.
3. With flash encryption disabled, build and flash the new bootloader and application by running `idf.py flash`.
4. Use `espefuse.py` (in `components/esptool_py/esptool`) to disable the `SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT` by running:

```
espefuse.py burn_efuse SPI_BOOT_CRYPT_CNT
```

Reset the ESP32-S2. Flash encryption will be disabled, and the bootloader will boot as usual.

4.13.10 Key Points About Flash Encryption

- Flash memory contents is encrypted using XTS-AES-128 or XTS-AES-256. The flash encryption key is 256 bits and 512 bits respectively and stored one or two `BLOCK_KEYN` eFuses internal to the chip and, by default, is protected from software access.

- Flash access is transparent via the flash cache mapping feature of ESP32-S2 - any flash regions which are mapped to the address space will be transparently decrypted when read.
  Some data partitions might need to remain unencrypted for ease of access or might require the use of flash-friendly update algorithms which are ineffective if the data is encrypted. NVS partitions for non-volatile storage cannot be encrypted since the NVS library is not directly compatible with flash encryption. For details, refer to *NVS Encryption*.
- If flash encryption might be used in future, the programmer must keep it in mind and take certain precautions when writing code that *uses encrypted flash*.
- If secure boot is enabled, re-flashing the bootloader of an encrypted device requires a "Re-flashable" secure boot digest (see *Flash Encryption and Secure Boot*).

Enabling flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating partition table offset. See secure-boot-bootloader-size.

Important: Do not interrupt power to the ESP32-S2 while the first boot encryption pass is running. If power is interrupted, the flash contents will be corrupted and will require flashing with unencrypted data again. In this case, re-flashing will not count towards the flashing limit.

4.13.11 Limitations of Flash Encryption

Flash encryption protects firmware against unauthorised readout and modification. It is important to understand the limitations of the flash encryption feature:

- Flash encryption is only as strong as the key. For this reason, we recommend keys are generated on the device during first boot (default behaviour). If generating keys off-device, ensure proper procedure is followed and don't share the same key between all production devices.
- Not all data is stored encrypted. If storing data on flash, check if the method you are using (library, API, etc.) supports flash encryption.
- Flash encryption does not prevent an attacker from understanding the high-level layout of the flash. This is because the same AES key is used for every pair of adjacent 16 byte AES blocks. When these adjacent 16 byte blocks contain identical content (such as empty or padding areas), these blocks will encrypt to produce matching pairs of encrypted blocks. This may allow an attacker to make high-level comparisons between encrypted devices (i.e. to tell if two devices are probably running the same firmware version).
- Flash encryption alone may not prevent an attacker from modifying the firmware of the device. To prevent unauthorised firmware from running on the device, use flash encryption in combination with *Secure Boot*.

4.13.12 Flash Encryption and Secure Boot

It is recommended to use flash encryption in combination with Secure Boot. However, if Secure Boot is enabled, additional restrictions apply to device re-flashing:

- *OTA Updates* are not restricted, provided that the new app is signed correctly with the Secure Boot signing key.

4.13.13 Advanced Features

The following section covers advanced features of flash encryption.

Encrypted Partition Flag

Some partitions are encrypted by default. Other partitions can be marked in the partition table description as requiring encryption by adding the flag `encrypted` to the partitions' flag field. As a result, data in these marked partitions will be treated as encrypted in the same manner as an app partition.

```
# Name,   Type, SubType, Offset,  Size, Flags
nvs,      data, nvs,     0x9000,  0x6000
phy_init, data, phy,     0xf000,  0x1000
factory,  app,  factory, 0x10000, 1M
secret_data, 0x40, 0x01, 0x20000, 256K, encrypted
```

For details on partition table description, see *partition table*.

Further information about encryption of partitions:

- Default partition tables do not include any encrypted data partitions.
- With flash encryption enabled, the `app` partition is always treated as encrypted and does not require marking.
- If flash encryption is not enabled, the flag "encrypted" has no effect.
- You can also consider protecting `phy_init` data from physical access, readout, or modification, by marking the optional `phy` partition with the flag `encrypted`.
- The `nvs` partition cannot be encrypted, because the NVS library is not directly compatible with flash encryption.

Enabling UART Bootloader Encryption/Decryption

On the first boot, the flash encryption process burns by default the following eFuses:

- `DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT` which disables flash encryption operation when running in UART bootloader boot mode.
- `DIS_DOWNLOAD_ICACHE` and `DIS_DOWNLOAD_DCACHE` which disables the entire MMU flash cache when running in UART bootloader mode.
- `HARD_DIS_JTAG` which disables JTAG.
- `DIS_LEGACY_SPI_BOOT` which disables Legacy SPI boot mode

However, before the first boot you can choose to keep any of these features enabled by burning only selected eFuses and write-protect the rest of eFuses with unset value 0. For example:

```
espefuse.py --port PORT burn_efuse DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT
espefuse.py --port PORT write_protect_efuse DIS_DOWNLOAD_MANUAL_ENCRYPT
```

Note: Set all appropriate bits before write-protecting!

Write protection of all the three eFuses is controlled by one bit. It means that write-protecting one eFuse bit will inevitably write-protect all unset eFuse bits.

Write protecting these eFuses to keep them unset is not currently very useful, as `esptool.py` does not support reading encrypted flash.

JTAG Debugging

By default, when Flash Encryption is enabled (in either Development or Release mode) then JTAG debugging is disabled via eFuse. The bootloader does this on first boot, at the same time it enables flash encryption.

See *JTAG with Flash Encryption or Secure Boot* for more information about using JTAG Debugging with Flash Encryption.

4.13.14 Technical Details

The following sections provide some reference information about the operation of flash encryption.

Flash Encryption Algorithm

- ESP32-S2 use the XTS-AES block chiper mode with 256 bit or 512 bit key size for flash encryption.
- XTS-AES is a block chiper mode specifically designed for disc encryption and addresses the weaknesses other potential modes (e.g. AES-CTR) have for this use case. A detailed description of the XTS-AES algorithm can be found in IEEE Std 1619-2007.
- The flash encryption key is stored in one or two `BLOCK_KEYN` eFuses and, by default, is protected from further writes or software readout.
- To see the full flash encryption algorithm implemented in Python, refer to the *_flash_encryption_operation()* function in the `espsecure.py` source code.

4.14 ESP-IDF FreeRTOS SMP Changes

4.14.1 Overview

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is a modified version of vanilla FreeRTOS which supports symmetric multiprocessing (SMP). ESP-IDF FreeRTOS is based on the Xtensa port of FreeRTOS v10.2.0. This guide outlines the major differences between vanilla FreeRTOS and ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. The API reference for vanilla FreeRTOS can be found via https://www.freertos.org/a00106.html

For information regarding features that are exclusive to ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, see *ESP-IDF FreeRTOS Additions*.

Thread Local Storage Pointers & Deletion Callbacks: Deletion callbacks are called automatically during task deletion and are used to free memory pointed to by TLSP. Call *`vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback()`* to set TLSP and Deletion Callbacks.

Configuring ESP-IDF FreeRTOS: Several aspects of ESP-IDF FreeRTOS can be set in the project configuration (`idf.py menuconfig`) such as running ESP-IDF in Unicore (single core) Mode, or configuring the number of Thread Local Storage Pointers each task will have.

It is not necessary to manually start the FreeRTOS scheduler by calling `vTaskStartScheduler()`. In ESP-IDF the scheduler is started by the *Application Startup Flow* and is already running when the `app_main` function is called (see *Running the main task* for details).

4.14.2 Tasks and Task Creation

Tasks in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS are designed to run on a particular core, therefore two new task creation functions have been added to ESP-IDF FreeRTOS by appending `PinnedToCore` to the names of the task creation functions in vanilla FreeRTOS. The vanilla FreeRTOS functions of *`xTaskCreate()`* and *`xTaskCreateStatic()`* have led to the addition of *`xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()`* and *`xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore()`* in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS

For more details see freertos/tasks.c

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS task creation functions are nearly identical to their vanilla counterparts with the exception of the extra parameter known as `xCoreID`. This parameter specifies the core on which the task should run on and can be one of the following values.

- `0` pins the task to **PRO_CPU**
- `1` pins the task to **APP_CPU**
- `tskNO_AFFINITY` allows the task to be run on both CPUs

For example `xTaskCreatePinnedToCore(tsk_callback, "APP_CPU Task", 1000, NULL, 10, NULL, 1)` creates a task of priority 10 that is pinned to **APP_CPU** with a stack size of 1000 bytes. It should be noted that the `uxStackDepth` parameter in vanilla FreeRTOS specifies a task's stack depth in terms of the number of words, whereas ESP-IDF FreeRTOS specifies the stack depth in terms of bytes.

Note that the vanilla FreeRTOS functions *`xTaskCreate()`* and *`xTaskCreateStatic()`* have been defined in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS as inline functions which call *`xTaskCreatePinnedToCore()`* and *`xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore()`* respectively with `tskNO_AFFINITY` as the `xCoreID` value.

Each Task Control Block (TCB) in ESP-IDF stores the `xCoreID` as a member. Hence when each core calls the scheduler to select a task to run, the `xCoreID` member will allow the scheduler to determine if a given task is permitted to run on the core that called it.

4.14.3 Scheduling

The vanilla FreeRTOS implements scheduling in the `vTaskSwitchContext()` function. This function is responsible for selecting the highest priority task to run from a list of tasks in the Ready state known as the Ready Tasks List (described in the next section). In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, each core will call `vTaskSwitchContext()` independently to select a task to run from the Ready Tasks List which is shared between both cores. There are several differences in scheduling behavior between vanilla and ESP-IDF FreeRTOS such as differences in Round Robin scheduling, scheduler suspension, and tick interrupt synchronicity.

Round Robin Scheduling

Given multiple tasks in the Ready state and of the same priority, vanilla FreeRTOS implements Round Robin scheduling between each task. This will result in running those tasks in turn each time the scheduler is called (e.g. every tick interrupt). On the other hand, the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS scheduler may skip tasks when Round Robin scheduling multiple Ready state tasks of the same priority.

The issue of skipping tasks during Round Robin scheduling arises from the way the Ready Tasks List is implemented in FreeRTOS. In vanilla FreeRTOS, `pxReadyTasksList` is used to store a list of tasks that are in the Ready state. The list is implemented as an array of length `configMAX_PRIORITIES` where each element of the array is a linked list. Each linked list is of type `List_t` and contains TCBs of tasks of the same priority that are in the Ready state. The following diagram illustrates the `pxReadyTasksList` structure.

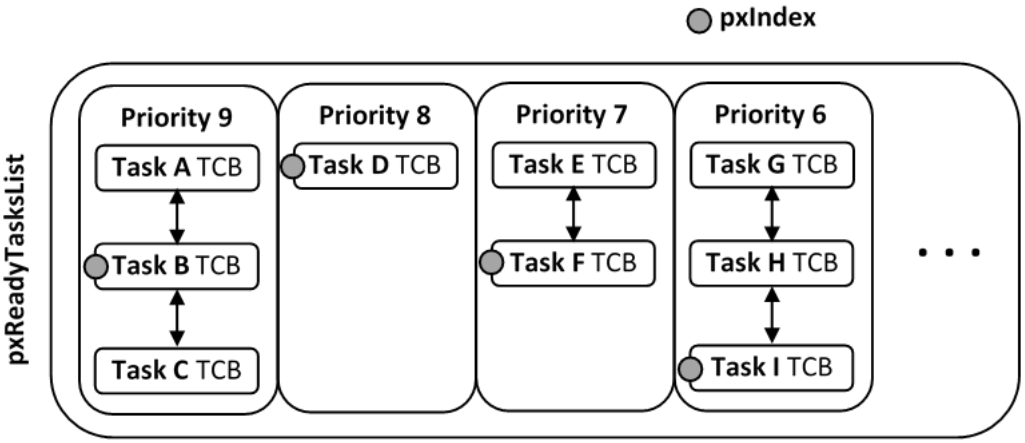


Fig. 20: Illustration of FreeRTOS Ready Task List Data Structure

Each linked list also contains a `pxIndex` which points to the last TCB returned when the list was queried. This index allows the `vTaskSwitchContext()` to start traversing the list at the TCB immediately after `pxIndex` hence implementing Round Robin Scheduling between tasks of the same priority.

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, the Ready Tasks List is shared between cores hence `pxReadyTasksList` will contain tasks pinned to different cores. When a core calls the scheduler, it is able to look at the `xCoreID` member of each TCB in the list to determine if a task is allowed to run on calling the core. The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS `pxReadyTasksList` is illustrated below.

Therefore when **PRO_CPU** calls the scheduler, it will only consider the tasks in blue or purple. Whereas when **APP_CPU** calls the scheduler, it will only consider the tasks in orange or purple.

Although each TCB has an `xCoreID` in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, the linked list of each priority only has a single `pxIndex`. Therefore when the scheduler is called from a particular core and traverses the linked list, it will skip all TCBs pinned to the other core and point the pxIndex at the selected task. If the other core then calls the scheduler,

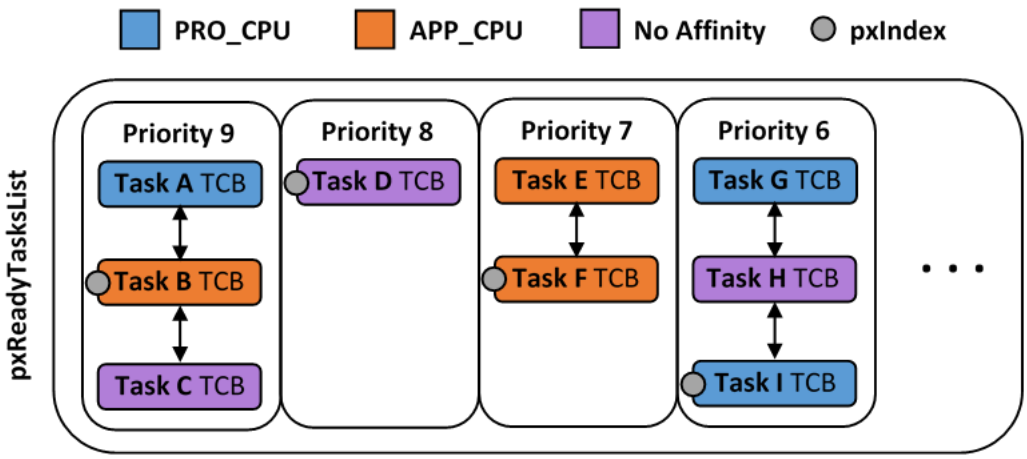


Fig. 21: Illustration of FreeRTOS Ready Task List Data Structure in ESP-IDF

it will traverse the linked list starting at the TCB immediately after `pxIndex`. Therefore, TCBs skipped on the previous scheduler call from the other core would not be considered on the current scheduler call. This issue is demonstrated in the following illustration.

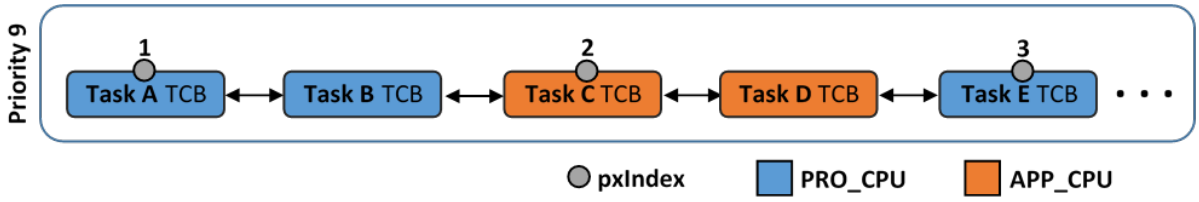


Fig. 22: Illustration of pxIndex behavior in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS

Referring to the illustration above, assume that priority 9 is the highest priority, and none of the tasks in priority 9 will block hence will always be either in the running or Ready state.

1) **PRO_CPU** calls the scheduler and selects Task A to run, hence moves `pxIndex` to point to Task A

2) **APP_CPU** calls the scheduler and starts traversing from the task after `pxIndex` which is Task B. However Task B is not selected to run as it is not pinned to **APP_CPU** hence it is skipped and Task C is selected instead. `pxIndex` now points to Task C

3) **PRO_CPU** calls the scheduler and starts traversing from Task D. It skips Task D and selects Task E to run and points `pxIndex` to Task E. Notice that Task B isn't traversed because it was skipped the last time **APP_CPU** called the scheduler to traverse the list.

4) The same situation with Task D will occur if **APP_CPU** calls the scheduler again as `pxIndex` now points to Task E

One solution to the issue of task skipping is to ensure that every task will enter a blocked state so that they are removed from the Ready Task List. Another solution is to distribute tasks across multiple priorities such that a given priority will not be assigned multiple tasks that are pinned to different cores.

Scheduler Suspension

In vanilla FreeRTOS, suspending the scheduler via *`vTaskSuspendAll()`* will prevent calls of `vTaskSwitchContext` from context switching until the scheduler has been resumed with *`xTaskResumeAll()`*. However servicing ISRs are still permitted. Therefore any changes in task states as a result from the current running task or ISRs will not be executed until the scheduler is resumed. Scheduler suspension in vanilla FreeRTOS is a common protection method against simultaneous access of data shared between tasks, whilst still allowing ISRs to be serviced.

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, `xTaskSuspendAll()` will only prevent calls of `vTaskSwitchContext()` from switching contexts on the core that called for the suspension. Hence if **PRO_CPU** calls *vTaskSuspendAll()*, **APP_CPU** will still be able to switch contexts. If data is shared between tasks that are pinned to different cores, scheduler suspension is **NOT** a valid method of protection against simultaneous access. Consider using critical sections (disables interrupts) or semaphores (does not disable interrupts) instead when protecting shared resources in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS.

In general, it's better to use other RTOS primitives like mutex semaphores to protect against data shared between tasks, rather than *vTaskSuspendAll()*.

Tick Interrupt Synchronicity

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, tasks on different cores that unblock on the same tick count might not run at exactly the same time due to the scheduler calls from each core being independent, and the tick interrupts to each core being unsynchronized.

In vanilla FreeRTOS the tick interrupt triggers a call to `xTaskIncrementTick()` which is responsible for incrementing the tick counter, checking if tasks which have called *vTaskDelay()* have fulfilled their delay period, and moving those tasks from the Delayed Task List to the Ready Task List. The tick interrupt will then call the scheduler if a context switch is necessary.

In ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, delayed tasks are unblocked with reference to the tick interrupt on PRO_CPU as PRO_CPU is responsible for incrementing the shared tick count. However tick interrupts to each core might not be synchronized (same frequency but out of phase) hence when PRO_CPU receives a tick interrupt, APP_CPU might not have received it yet. Therefore if multiple tasks of the same priority are unblocked on the same tick count, the task pinned to PRO_CPU will run immediately whereas the task pinned to APP_CPU must wait until APP_CPU receives its out of sync tick interrupt. Upon receiving the tick interrupt, APP_CPU will then call for a context switch and finally switches contexts to the newly unblocked task.

Therefore, task delays should **NOT** be used as a method of synchronization between tasks in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. Instead, consider using a counting semaphore to unblock multiple tasks at the same time.

4.14.4 Critical Sections & Disabling Interrupts

Vanilla FreeRTOS implements critical sections with `taskENTER_CRITICAL()` which calls `portDISABLE_INTERRUPTS()`. This prevents preemptive context switches and servicing of ISRs during a critical section. Therefore, critical sections are used as a valid protection method against simultaneous access in vanilla FreeRTOS.

ESP-IDF contains some modifications to work with dual core concurrency, and the dual core API is used even on a single core only chip.

For this reason, ESP-IDF FreeRTOS implements critical sections using special mutexes, referred by `portMUX_Type` objects. These are implemented on top of a specific spinlock component. Calls to `taskENTER_CRITICAL` or `taskEXIT_CRITICAL` each provide a spinlock object as an argument. The spinlock is associated with a shared resource requiring access protection. When entering a critical section in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS, the calling core will disable interrupts similar to the vanilla FreeRTOS implementation, and will then take the spinlock and enter the critical section. The other core is unaffected at this point, unless it enters its own critical section and attempts to take the same spinlock. In that case it will spin until the lock is released. Therefore, the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS implementation of critical sections allows a core to have protected access to a shared resource without disabling the other core. The other core will only be affected if it tries to concurrently access the same resource.

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS critical section functions have been modified as follows···

- `taskENTER_CRITICAL(mux)`, `taskENTER_CRITICAL_ISR(mux)`, `portENTER_CRITICAL(mux)`, `portENTER_CRITICAL_ISR(mux)` are all macro defined to call internal function `vPortEnterCritical()`
- `taskEXIT_CRITICAL(mux)`, `taskEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR(mux)`, `portEXIT_CRITICAL(mux)`, `portEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR(mux)` are all macro defined to call internal function `vPortExitCritical()`

- `portENTER_CRITICAL_SAFE(mux)`, `portEXIT_CRITICAL_SAFE(mux)` macro identifies the context of execution, i.e ISR or Non-ISR, and calls appropriate critical section functions (`port*_CRITICAL` in Non-ISR and `port*_CRITICAL_ISR` in ISR) in order to be in compliance with Vanilla FreeRTOS.

For more details see esp_hw_support/include/soc/spinlock.h, freertos/include/freertos/task.h, and freertos/tasks.c

It should be noted that when modifying vanilla FreeRTOS code to be ESP-IDF FreeRTOS compatible, it is trivial to modify the type of critical section called as they are all defined to call the same function. As long as the same spinlock is provided upon entering and exiting, the exact macro or function used for the call should not matter.

4.14.5 Task Deletion

In FreeRTOS task deletion the freeing of task memory will occur immediately (within *`vTaskDelete()`*) if the task being deleted is not currently running or is not pinned to the other core (with respect to the core *`vTaskDelete()`* is called on). TLSP deletion callbacks will also run immediately if the same conditions are met.

However, calling *`vTaskDelete()`* to delete a task that is either currently running or pinned to the other core will still result in the freeing of memory being delegated to the Idle Task.

4.14.6 Thread Local Storage Pointers & Deletion Callbacks

Thread Local Storage Pointers (TLSP) are pointers stored directly in the TCB. TLSP allow each task to have its own unique set of pointers to data structures. However task deletion behavior in vanilla FreeRTOS does not automatically free the memory pointed to by TLSP. Therefore if the memory pointed to by TLSP is not explicitly freed by the user before task deletion, memory leak will occur.

ESP-IDF FreeRTOS provides the added feature of Deletion Callbacks. Deletion Callbacks are called automatically during task deletion to free memory pointed to by TLSP. Each TLSP can have its own Deletion Callback. Note that due to the to *Task Deletion* behavior, there can be instances where Deletion Callbacks are called in the context of the Idle Tasks. Therefore Deletion Callbacks **should never attempt to block** and critical sections should be kept as short as possible to minimize priority inversion.

Deletion callbacks are of type `void (*TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t)( int, void * )` where the first parameter is the index number of the associated TLSP, and the second parameter is the TLSP itself.

Deletion callbacks are set alongside TLSP by calling *`vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback()`*. Calling the vanilla FreeRTOS function *`vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer()`* will simply set the TLSP's associated Deletion Callback to *NULL* meaning that no callback will be called for that TLSP during task deletion. If a deletion callback is *NULL*, users should manually free the memory pointed to by the associated TLSP before task deletion in order to avoid memory leak.

For more details see *FreeRTOS API reference*.

4.14.7 Configuring ESP-IDF FreeRTOS

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS can be configured in the project configuration menu (`idf.py menuconfig`) under `Component Config/FreeRTOS`. The following section highlights some of the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS configuration options. For a full list of ESP-IDF FreeRTOS configurations, see *FreeRTOS*

As ESP32-S2 is a single core SoC, the config item *CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE* is always set. This means ESP-IDF only runs on the single CPU. Note that this is **not equivalent to running vanilla FreeRTOS**. Behaviors of multiple components in ESP-IDF will be modified. For more details regarding the effects of running ESP-IDF FreeRTOS on a single core, search for occurences of `CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE` in the ESP-IDF components.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_ASSERT_ON_UNTESTED_FUNCTION will trigger a halt in particular functions in ESP-IDF FreeRTOS which have not been fully tested in an SMP context.

CONFIG_FREERTOS_TASK_FUNCTION_WRAPPER will enclose all task functions within a wrapper function. In the case that a task function mistakenly returns (i.e. does not call `vTaskDelete()`), the call flow will return to the wrapper function. The wrapper function will then log an error and abort the application, as illustrated below:

```
E (25) FreeRTOS: FreeRTOS task should not return. Aborting now!
abort() was called at PC 0x40085c53 on core 0
```

4.15 Hardware Abstraction

Hardware abstraction in ESP-IDF are a group of API that allow users to control peripherals at differing levels of abstraction, as opposed to interfacing with hardware using only the ESP-IDF drivers. ESP-IDF Hardware abstraction will likely be useful for users writing high performance bare-metal drivers, or for those attempting to port an ESP chip to another platform.

This guide is split into the following sections:

1. *Architecture*
2. *LL (Low Level) Layer*
3. *HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer)*

Warning: Hardware abstraction API (excluding the driver and `xxx_types.h`) should be considered an experimental feature, thus cannot be considered public API. Hardware abstraction API do not adhere to the API name changing restrictions of ESP-IDF's versioning scheme. In other words, it is possible that Hardware Abstraction API may change in between non-major release versions.

Note: Although this document mainly focuses on hardware abstraction of peripherals (e.g., UART, SPI, I2C), certain layers of hardware abstraction extend to other aspects of hardware as well (e.g., some of the CPU's features are partially abstracted).

4.15.1 Architecture

Hardware abstraction in ESP-IDF is comprised of the following layers, ordered from low level (closer to hardware) to high level (further away from hardware) of abstraction.

- Low Level (LL) Layer
- Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL)
- Driver Layers

The LL Layer, and HAL are entirely contained within the `hal` component. Each layer is dependent on the layer below it (i.e, driver depends on HAL, HAL depends on LL, LL depends on the register header files).

For a particular peripheral `xxx`, its hardware abstraction will generally consist of the header files described in the table below. Files that are **Target Specific** will have a separate implementation for each target (i.e., a separate copy for each chip). However, the `#include` directive will still be target-independent (i.e., will be the same for different targets) as the build system will automatically include the correct version of the header and source files.

Table 2: Hardware Abstraction Header Files

Include Directive	Target Specific	Description
`#include 'soc/xxx_caps.h"`	Y	This header contains a list of C macros specifying the various capabilities of the ESP32-S2's peripheral `xxx`. Hardware capabilities of a peripheral include things such as the number of channels, DMA support, hardware FIFO/buffer lengths, etc.
`#include "soc/xxx_struct.h"` `#include "soc/xxx_reg.h"`	Y	The two headers contain a representation of a peripheral's registers in C structure and C macro format respectively. Users can operate a peripheral at the register level via either of these two header files.
`#include "soc/xxx_pins.h"`	Y	If certain signals of a peripheral are mapped to a particular pin of the ESP32-S2, their mappings are defined in this header as C macros.
`#include "soc/xxx_periph.h"`	N	This header is mainly used as a convenience header file to automatically include `xxx_caps.h`, `xxx_struct.h`, and `xxx_reg.h`.
`#include "hal/xxx_types.h`	N	This header contains type definitions and macros that are shared among the LL, HAL, and driver layers. Moreover, it is considered public API thus can be included by the application level. The shared types and definitions usually related to non-implementation specific concepts such as the following: • Protocol related types/macros such a frames, modes, common bus speeds, etc. • Features/characteristics of an `xxx` peripheral that are likely to be present on any implementation (implementation-independent) such as channels, operating modes, signal amplification or attenuation intensities, etc.
`#include "hal/xxx_ll.h"`	Y	This header contains the Low Level (LL) Layer of hardware abstraction. LL Layer API are primarily used to abstract away register operations into readable functions.
`#include "hal/xxx_hal.h"`	Y	The Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) is used to abstract away peripheral operation steps into functions (e.g., reading a buffer, starting a transmission, handling an event, etc). The HAL is built on top of the LL Layer.
`#include "driver/xxx.h"`	N	The driver layer is the highest level of ESP-IDF's hardware abstraction. Driver layer API are meant to be called from ESP-IDF applications, and internally utilize OS primitives. Thus, driver layer API are event-driven, and can used in a multi-threaded environment.

4.15.2 LL (Low Level) Layer

The primary purpose of the LL Layer is to abstract away register field access into more easily understandable functions. LL functions essentially translate various in/out arguments into the register fields of a peripheral in the form of get/set functions. All the necessary bit shifting, masking, offsetting, and endianness of the register fields should be handled by the LL functions.

```
//Inside xxx_ll.h

static inline void xxx_ll_set_baud_rate(xxx_dev_t *hw,
                                        xxx_ll_clk_src_t clock_source,
                                        uint32_t baud_rate) {
    uint32_t src_clk_freq = (source_clk == XXX_SCLK_APB) ? APB_CLK_FREQ : REF_CLK_
↪FREQ;
    uint32_t clock_divider = src_clk_freq / baud;
    // Set clock select field
    hw->clk_div_reg.divider = clock_divider >> 4;
    // Set clock divider field
    hw->config.clk_sel = (source_clk == XXX_SCLK_APB) ? 0 : 1;
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
}

static inline uint32_t xxx_ll_get_rx_byte_count(xxx_dev_t *hw) {
    return hw->status_reg.rx_cnt;
}
```

The code snippet above illustrates typical LL functions for a peripheral `xxx`. LL functions typically have the following characteristics:

- All LL functions are defined as `static inline` so that there is minimal overhead when calling these functions due to compiler optimization.
- The first argument should be a pointer to a `xxx_dev_t` type. The `xxx_dev_t` type is a structure representing the peripheral's registers, thus the first argument is always a pointer to the starting address of the peripheral's registers. Note that in some cases where the peripheral has multiple channels with identical register layouts, `xxx_dev_t *hw` may point to the registers of a particular channel instead.
- LL functions should be short and in most cases are deterministic. In other words, the worst case runtime of the LL function can be determined at compile time. Thus, any loops in LL functions should be finite bounded; however, there are currently a few exceptions to this rule.
- LL functions are not thread safe, it is the responsibility of the upper layers (driver layer) to ensure that registers or register fields are not accessed concurrently.

4.15.3 HAL (Hardware Abstraction Layer)

The HAL layer models the operational process of a peripheral as a set of general steps, where each step has an associated function. For each step, the details of a peripheral's register implementation (i.e., which registers need to be set/read) are hidden (abstracted away) by the HAL. By modelling peripheral operation as a set of functional steps, any minor hardware implementation differences of the peripheral between different targets or chip versions can be abstracted away by the HAL (i.e., handled transparently). In other words, the HAL API for a particular peripheral will remain mostly the same across multiple targets/chip versions.

The following HAL function examples are selected from the Watchdog Timer HAL as each function maps to one of the steps in a WDT's operation life cycle, thus illustrating how a HAL abstracts a peripheral's operation into functional steps.

```
// Initialize one of the WDTs
void wdt_hal_init(wdt_hal_context_t *hal, wdt_inst_t wdt_inst, uint32_t prescaler,␣
↪bool enable_intr);

// Configure a particular timeout stage of the WDT
void wdt_hal_config_stage(wdt_hal_context_t *hal, wdt_stage_t stage, uint32_t␣
↪timeout, wdt_stage_action_t behavior);

// Start the WDT
void wdt_hal_enable(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// Feed (i.e., reset) the WDT
void wdt_hal_feed(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// Handle a WDT timeout
void wdt_hal_handle_intr(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// Stop the WDT
void wdt_hal_disable(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);

// De-initialize the WDT
void wdt_hal_deinit(wdt_hal_context_t *hal);
```

HAL functions will generally have the following characteristics:

- The first argument to a HAL function has the `xxx_hal_context_t *` type. The HAL context type is used to store information about a particular instance of the peripheral (i.e. the context instance). A HAL context is initialized by the `xxx_hal_init()` function and can store information such as the following:
  - The channel number of this instance
  - Pointer to the peripheral's (or channel's) registers (i.e., a `xxx_dev_t *` type)
  - Information about an ongoing transaction (e.g., pointer to DMA descriptor list in use)
  - Some configuration values for the instance (e.g., channel configurations)
  - Variables to maintain state information regarding the instance (e.g., a flag to indicate if the instance is waiting for transaction to complete)
- HAL functions should not contain any OS primitives such as queues, semaphores, mutexes, etc. All synchronization/concurrency should be handled at higher layers (e.g., the driver).
- Some peripherals may have steps that cannot be further abstracted by the HAL, thus will end up being a direct wrapper (or macro) for an LL function.
- Some HAL functions may be placed in IRAM thus may carry an `IRAM_ATTR` or be placed in a separate `xxx_hal_iram.c` source file.

4.16 High-Level Interrupts

The Xtensa architecture has support for 32 interrupts, divided over 8 levels, plus an assortment of exceptions. On the ESP32-S2, the interrupt mux allows most interrupt sources to be routed to these interrupts using the *interrupt allocator*. Normally, interrupts will be written in C, but ESP-IDF allows high-level interrupts to be written in assembly as well, allowing for very low interrupt latencies.

4.16.1 Interrupt Levels

Level	Symbol	Remark
1	N/A	Exception and level 0 interrupts. Handled by ESP-IDF
2-3	N/A	Medium level interrupts. Handled by ESP-IDF
4	xt_highint4	Normally used by ESP-IDF debug logic
5	xt_highint5	Free to use
NMI	xt_nmi	Free to use
dbg	xt_debugexception	Debug exception. Called on e.g. a BREAK instruction.

Using these symbols is done by creating an assembly file (suffix .S) and defining the named symbols, like this:

```
    .section .iram1,"ax"
    .global     xt_highint5
    .type       xt_highint5,@function
    .align      4
xt_highint5:
    ... your code here
    rsr     a0, EXCSAVE_5
    rfi     5
```

For a real-life example, see the esp_system/port/soc/esp32s2/dport_panic_highint_hdl.S file; the panic handler interrupt is implemented there.

4.16.2 Notes

- Do not call C code from a high-level interrupt; because these interrupts still run in critical sections, this can cause crashes. (The panic handler interrupt does call normal C code, but this is OK because there is no intention of returning to the normal code flow afterwards.)
- Make sure your assembly code gets linked in. If the interrupt handler symbol is the only symbol the rest of the code uses from this file, the linker will take the default ISR instead and not link the assembly file into the final project. To get around this, in the assembly file, define a symbol, like this:

```
    .global ld_include_my_isr_file
ld_include_my_isr_file:
```

The symbol is called `ld_include_my_isr_file` here but can have any arbitrary name not defined anywhere else.

Then, in the component CMakeLists.txt, add this file as an unresolved symbol to the ld command line arguments:

```
target_link_libraries(${COMPONENT_TARGET} "-u ld_include_my_isr_file")
```

If using the legacy Make build system, add the following to component.mk, instead:

```
COMPONENT_ADD_LDFLAGS := -u ld_include_my_isr_file
```

This should cause the linker to always include a file defining `ld_include_my_isr_file`, causing the ISR to always be linked in.

- High-level interrupts can be routed and handled using esp_intr_alloc and associated functions. The handler and handler arguments to esp_intr_alloc must be NULL, however.
- In theory, medium priority interrupts could also be handled in this way. For now, ESP-IDF does not support this.

4.17 JTAG Debugging

This document provides a guide to installing OpenOCD for ESP32-S2 and debugging using GDB. The document is structured as follows:

Introduction Introduction to the purpose of this guide.
How it Works? Description how ESP32-S2, JTAG interface, OpenOCD and GDB are interconnected and working together to enable debugging of ESP32-S2.
Selecting JTAG Adapter What are the criteria and options to select JTAG adapter hardware.
Setup of OpenOCD Procedure to install OpenOCD and verify that it is installed.
Configuring ESP32-S2 Target Configuration of OpenOCD software and set up JTAG adapter hardware that will make together a debugging target.
Launching Debugger Steps to start up a debug session with GDB from *Eclipse* and from *Command Line*.
Debugging Examples If you are not familiar with GDB, check this section for debugging examples provided from *Eclipse* as well as from *Command Line*.
Building OpenOCD from Sources Procedure to build OpenOCD from sources for *Windows*, *Linux* and *MacOS* operating systems.
Tips and Quirks This section provides collection of tips and quirks related JTAG debugging of ESP32-S2 with OpenOCD and GDB.

4.17.1 Introduction

Espressif has ported OpenOCD to support the ESP32-S2 processor and the multicore FreeRTOS, which will be the foundation of most ESP32-S2 apps, and has written some tools to help with features OpenOCD does not support natively.

This document provides a guide to installing OpenOCD for ESP32-S2 and debugging using GDB under Linux, Windows and MacOS. Except for OS specific installation procedures, the s/w user interface and use procedures are the same across all supported operating systems.

Note: Screenshots presented in this document have been made for Eclipse Neon 3 running on Ubuntu 16.04 LTS. There may be some small differences in what a particular user interface looks like, depending on whether you are using Windows, MacOS or Linux and / or a different release of Eclipse.

4.17.2 How it Works?

The key software and hardware to perform debugging of ESP32-S2 with OpenOCD over JTAG (Joint Test Action Group) interface is presented below and includes xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb debugger, OpenOCD on chip debugger and JTAG adapter connected to ESP32-S2 target.

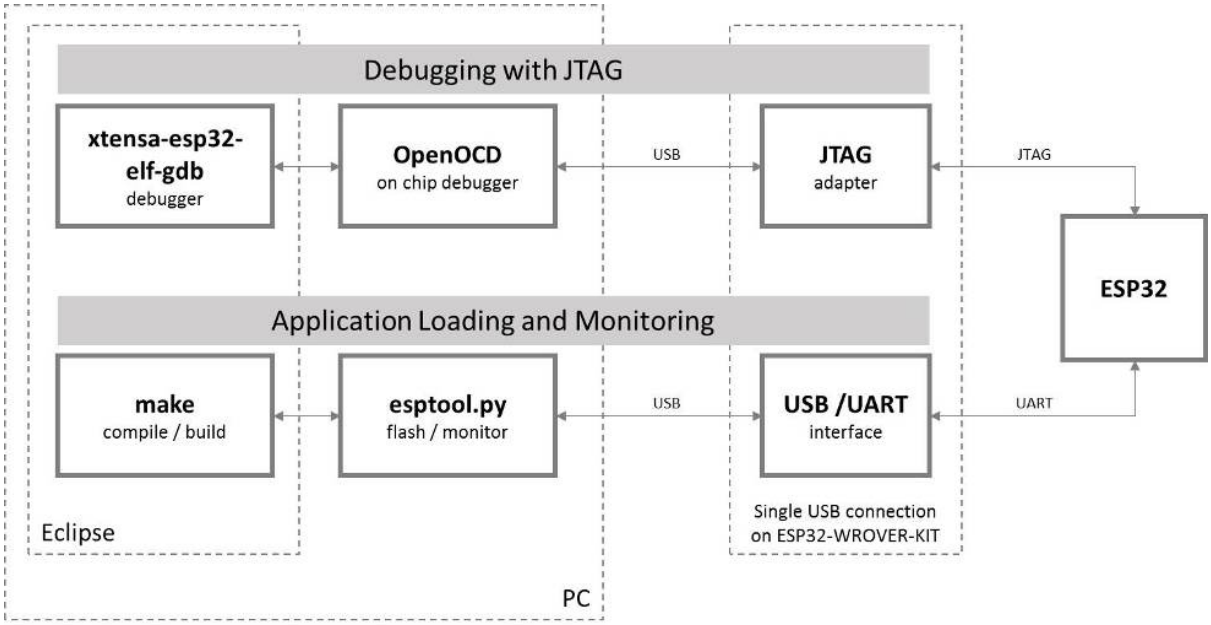


Fig. 23: JTAG debugging - overview diagram

Under "Application Loading and Monitoring" there is another software and hardware to compile, build and flash application to ESP32-S2, as well as to provide means to monitor diagnostic messages from ESP32-S2.

Debugging using JTAG and application loading / monitoring is integrated under the Eclipse environment, to provide quick and easy transition from writing, compiling and loading the code to debugging, back to writing the code, and so on. All the software is available for Windows, Linux and MacOS platforms.

If the *ESP-S2-Kaluga-1* is used, then connection from PC to ESP32-S2 is done effectively with a single USB cable. This is made possible by the FT2232H chip, which provides two USB channels, one for JTAG and the one for UART connection.

Depending on user preferences, both *debugger* and *idf.py build* can be operated directly from terminal/command line, instead from Eclipse.

4.17.3 Selecting JTAG Adapter

The quickest and most convenient way to start with JTAG debugging is by using *ESP-S2-Kaluga-1*. Each version of this development board has JTAG interface already build in. No need for an external JTAG adapter and extra wiring / cable to connect JTAG to ESP32-S2. ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 is using FT2232H JTAG interface operating at 20 MHz clock speed, which is difficult to achieve with an external adapter.

If you decide to use separate JTAG adapter, look for one that is compatible with both the voltage levels on the ESP32-S2 as well as with the OpenOCD software. The JTAG port on the ESP32-S2 is an industry-standard JTAG port which lacks (and does not need) the TRST pin. The JTAG I/O pins all are powered from the VDD_3P3_RTC pin (which normally would be powered by a 3.3 V rail) so the JTAG adapter needs to be able to work with JTAG pins in that voltage range.

On the software side, OpenOCD supports a fair amount of JTAG adapters. See http://openocd.org/doc/html/Debug-Adapter-Hardware.html for an (unfortunately slightly incomplete) list of the adapters OpenOCD works with. This page lists SWD-compatible adapters as well; take note that the ESP32-S2 does not support SWD. JTAG adapters that are hardcoded to a specific product line, e.g. ST-LINK debugging adapters for STM32 families, will not work.

The minimal signalling to get a working JTAG connection are TDI, TDO, TCK, TMS and GND. Some JTAG debuggers also need a connection from the ESP32-S2 power line to a line called e.g. Vtar to set the working voltage. SRST can optionally be connected to the CH_PD of the ESP32-S2, although for now, support in OpenOCD for that line is pretty minimal.

4.17.4 Setup of OpenOCD

If you have already set up ESP-IDF with CMake build system according to the *Getting Started Guide*, then OpenOCD is already installed. After *setting up the environment* in your terminal, you should be able to run OpenOCD. Check this by executing the following command:

```
openocd --version
```

The output should be as follows (although the version may be more recent than listed here):

```
Open On-Chip Debugger  v0.10.0-esp32-20190708 (2019-07-08-11:04)
Licensed under GNU GPL v2
For bug reports, read
    http://openocd.org/doc/doxygen/bugs.html
```

You may also verify that OpenOCD knows where its configuration scripts are located by printing the value of `OPENOCD_SCRIPTS` environment variable, by typing `echo $OPENOCD_SCRIPTS` (for Linux and macOS) or `echo %OPENOCD_SCRIPTS%` (for Windows). If a valid path is printed, then OpenOCD is set up correctly.

If any of these steps do not work, please go back to the *setting up the tools* section of the Getting Started Guide.

Note: It is also possible to build OpenOCD from source. Please refer to *Building OpenOCD from Sources* section for details.

4.17.5 Configuring ESP32-S2 Target

Once OpenOCD is installed, move to configuring ESP32-S2 target (i.e ESP32-S2 board with JTAG interface). You will do it in the following three steps:

- Configure and connect JTAG interface
- Run OpenOCD
- Upload application for debugging

Configure and connect JTAG interface

This step depends on JTAG and ESP32-S2 board you are using - see the two cases described below.

Configure ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 JTAG Interface All versions of ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 boards have built-in JTAG functionality. Putting it to work requires setting jumpers or DIP switches to enable JTAG functionality, and configuring USB drivers. Please refer to step by step instructions below.

Configure Hardware

- Out of the box, ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 doesn't need any additional hardware configuration for JTAG debugging. However if you are experiencing issues, check that switches 2-5 of the "JTAG" DIP switch block are in "ON" position.
- Verify if ESP32-S2 pins used for JTAG communication are not connected to some other h/w that may disturb JTAG operation:

Table 3: ESP32-S2 pins and JTAG signals

ESP32-S2 Pin	JTAG Signal
MTDO / GPIO40	TDO
MTDI / GPIO41	TDI
MTCK / GPIO39	TCK
MTMS / GPIO42	TMS

Configure USB Drivers Install and configure USB drivers, so OpenOCD is able to communicate with JTAG interface on ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 board as well as with UART interface used to upload application for flash. Follow steps below specific to your operating system.

Note: ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 uses an FT2232 adapter. The following instructions can also be used for other FT2232 based JTAG adapters.

Windows

1. Using standard USB A / micro USB B cable connect ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 to the computer. Switch the ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 on.
2. Wait until USB ports of ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 are recognized by Windows and drives are installed. If they do not install automatically, then download them from https://www.ftdichip.com/Drivers/D2XX.htm and install manually.
3. Download Zadig tool (Zadig_X.X.exe) from https://zadig.akeo.ie/ and run it.
4. In Zadig tool go to "Options" and check "List All Devices".
5. Check the list of devices that should contain two ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 specific USB entries: "Dual RS232-HS (Interface 0)" and "Dual RS232-HS (Interface 1)". The driver name would be "FTDIBUS (vxxxx)" and USB ID: 0403 6010.

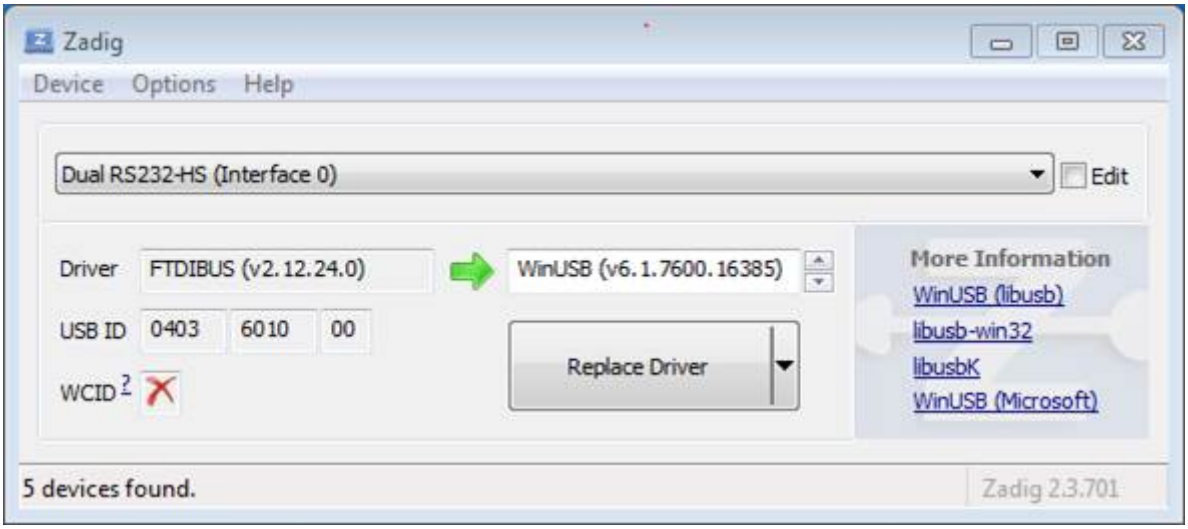


Fig. 24: Configuration of JTAG USB driver in Zadig tool

6. The first device (Dual RS232-HS (Interface 0)) is connected to the JTAG port of the ESP32-S2. Original "FTDIBUS (vxxxx)" driver of this device should be replaced with "WinUSB (v6xxxxx)". To do so, select "Dual RS232-HS (Interface 0) and reinstall attached driver to the "WinUSB (v6xxxxx)", see picture above.

Note: Do not change the second device "Dual RS232-HS (Interface 1)". It is routed to ESP32-S2's serial port (UART) used for upload of application to ESP32-S2's flash.

Now ESP-S2-Kaluga-1's JTAG interface should be available to the OpenOCD. To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Run OpenOCD*.

Linux

1. Using standard USB A / micro USB B cable connect ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 board to the computer. Power on the board.
2. Open a terminal, enter `ls -l /dev/ttyUSB*` command and check, if board's USB ports are recognized by the OS. You are looking for similar result:

```
user-name@computer-name:~/esp$ ls -l /dev/ttyUSB*
crw-rw---- 1 root dialout 188, 0 Jul 10 19:04 /dev/ttyUSB0
crw-rw---- 1 root dialout 188, 1 Jul 10 19:04 /dev/ttyUSB1
```

3. Following section "Permissions delegation" in OpenOCD's README, set up the access permissions to both USB ports.
4. Log off and login, then cycle the power to the board to make the changes effective. In terminal enter again `ls -l /dev/ttyUSB*` command to verify, if group-owner has changed from `dialout` to `plugdev`:

```
user-name@computer-name:~/esp$ ls -l /dev/ttyUSB*
crw-rw-r-- 1 root plugdev 188, 0 Jul 10 19:07 /dev/ttyUSB0
crw-rw-r-- 1 root plugdev 188, 1 Jul 10 19:07 /dev/ttyUSB1
```

   If you see similar result and you are a member of `plugdev` group, then the set up is complete.
   The `/dev/ttyUSBn` interface with lower number is used for JTAG communication. The other interface is routed to ESP32-S2's serial port (UART) used for upload of application to ESP32-S2's flash.

Now ESP-S2-Kaluga-1's JTAG interface should be available to the OpenOCD. To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Run OpenOCD*.

MacOS On macOS, using FT2232 for JTAG and serial port at the same time needs some additional steps. When the OS loads FTDI serial port driver, it does so for both channels of FT2232 chip. However only one of these channels is used as a serial port, while the other is used as JTAG. If the OS has loaded FTDI serial port driver for the channel used for JTAG, OpenOCD will not be able to connect to the chip. There are two ways around this:

1. Manually unload the FTDI serial port driver before starting OpenOCD, start OpenOCD, then load the serial port driver.
2. Modify FTDI driver configuration so that it doesn't load itself for channel B of FT2232 chip, which is the channel used for JTAG on ESP-S2-Kaluga-1.

Manually unloading the driver

1. Install FTDI driver from https://www.ftdichip.com/Drivers/VCP.htm
2. Connect USB cable to the ESP-S2-Kaluga-1.
3. Unload the serial port driver:

```
sudo kextunload -b com.FTDI.driver.FTDIUSBSerialDriver
```

   In some cases you may need to unload Apple's FTDI driver as well:
   - macOS < 10.15:

```
sudo kextunload -b com.apple.driver.AppleUSBFTDI
```

   - macOS 10.15:

```
sudo kextunload -b com.apple.DriverKit-AppleUSBFTDI
```

> **Warning:** Attempting to use serial over the wrong channel with the FTDI driver will cause a kernel panic. The ESP-WROVER-KIT uses channel A for JTAG and channel B for serial.

4. Run OpenOCD:

```
openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg
```

5. In another terminal window, load FTDI serial port driver again:

```
sudo kextload -b com.FTDI.driver.FTDIUSBSerialDriver
```

Note: If you need to restart OpenOCD, there is no need to unload FTDI driver again —just stop OpenOCD and start it again. The driver only needs to be unloaded if ESP-S2-Kaluga-1 was reconnected or power was toggled.

This procedure can be wrapped into a shell script, if desired.

Modifying FTDI driver In a nutshell, this approach requires modification to FTDI driver configuration file, which prevents the driver from being loaded for channel B of FT2232H.

Note: Other boards may use channel A for JTAG, so use this option with caution.

Warning: This approach also needs signature verification of drivers to be disabled, so may not be acceptable for all users.

1. Open FTDI driver configuration file using a text editor (note `sudo`):

```
sudo nano /Library/Extensions/FTDIUSBSerialDriver.kext/Contents/Info.plist
```

2. Find and delete the following lines:

```
<key>FT2232H_B</key>
<dict>
    <key>CFBundleIdentifier</key>
    <string>com.FTDI.driver.FTDIUSBSerialDriver</string>
    <key>IOClass</key>
    <string>FTDIUSBSerialDriver</string>
    <key>IOProviderClass</key>
    <string>IOUSBInterface</string>
    <key>bConfigurationValue</key>
    <integer>1</integer>
    <key>bInterfaceNumber</key>
    <integer>1</integer>
    <key>bcdDevice</key>
    <integer>1792</integer>
    <key>idProduct</key>
    <integer>24592</integer>
    <key>idVendor</key>
    <integer>1027</integer>
</dict>
```

3. Save and close the file
4. Disable driver signature verification:
    1. Open Apple logo menu, choose "Restart…"
    2. When you hear the chime after reboot, press CMD+R immediately
    3. Once Recovery mode starts up, open Terminal
    4. Run the command:

```
csrutil enable --without kext
```

    5. Restart again

After these steps, serial port and JTAG can be used at the same time.

To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Run OpenOCD*.

Configure Other JTAG Interface Refer to section *Selecting JTAG Adapter* for guidance what JTAG interface to select, so it is able to operate with OpenOCD and ESP32-S2. Then follow three configuration steps below to get it working.

Configure Hardware

1. Identify all pins / signals on JTAG interface and ESP32-S2 board, that should be connected to establish communication.

Table 4: ESP32-S2 pins and JTAG signals

ESP32-S2 Pin	JTAG Signal
MTDO / GPIO40	TDO
MTDI / GPIO41	TDI
MTCK / GPIO39	TCK
MTMS / GPIO42	TMS

2. Verify if ESP32-S2 pins used for JTAG communication are not connected to some other h/w that may disturb JTAG operation.
3. Connect identified pin / signals of ESP32-S2 and JTAG interface.

Configure Drivers You may need to install driver s/w to make JTAG work with computer. Refer to documentation of JTAG adapter, that should provide related details.

Connect Connect JTAG interface to the computer. Power on ESP32-S2 and JTAG interface boards. Check if JTAG interface is visible by computer.

To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Run OpenOCD*.

Run OpenOCD

Once target is configured and connected to computer, you are ready to launch OpenOCD.

Open a terminal and set it up for using the ESP-IDF as described in the *setting up the environment* section of the Getting Started Guide. Then run OpenOCD (this command works on Windows, Linux, and macOS):

```
openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg
```

Note: The files provided after `-f` above are specific for ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 board. You may need to provide different files depending on used hardware. For guidance see *Configuration of OpenOCD for specific target*.

You should now see similar output (this log is for ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 board):

```
user-name@computer-name:~/esp/esp-idf$ openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg
Open On-Chip Debugger  v0.10.0-esp32-20200420 (2020-04-20-16:15)
Licensed under GNU GPL v2
For bug reports, read
        http://openocd.org/doc/doxygen/bugs.html
none separate
adapter speed: 20000 kHz
force hard breakpoints
Info : ftdi: if you experience problems at higher adapter clocks, try the command
↪"ftdi_tdo_sample_edge falling"
Info : clock speed 20000 kHz
Info : JTAG tap: esp32s2.cpu0 tap/device found: 0x120034e5 (mfg: 0x272 (Tensilica),
↪ part: 0x2003, ver: 0x1)
Info : esp32s2: Debug controller was reset (pwrstat=0x5F, after clear 0x0F).
Info : esp32s2: Core was reset (pwrstat=0x5F, after clear 0x0F).
```

- If there is an error indicating permission problems, please see the "Permissions delegation" bit in the OpenOCD README file in `~/esp/openocd-esp32` directory.
- In case there is an error finding configuration files, e.g. `Can't find board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg`, check `OPENOCD_SCRIPTS` environment variable is set correctly. This variable is used by OpenOCD to look for the files specified after `-f`. See *Setup of OpenOCD* section for details. Also check if the file is indeed under provided path.
- If you see JTAG errors (…all ones/…all zeroes) please check your connections, whether no other signals are connected to JTAG besides ESP32-S2' s pins, and see if everything is powered on.

Upload application for debugging

Build and upload your application to ESP32-S2 as usual, see *Step 8. Build the Project*.

Another option is to write application image to flash using OpenOCD via JTAG with commands like this:

```
openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg -c "program_esp filename.bin 0x10000 verify␣
↪exit"
```

OpenOCD flashing command `program_esp` has the following format:

```
program_esp <image_file> <offset> [verify] [reset] [exit]
```

- `image_file` - Path to program image file.
- `offset` - Offset in flash bank to write image.
- `verify` - Optional. Verify flash contents after writing.
- `reset` - Optional. Reset target after programing.
- `exit` - Optional. Finally exit OpenOCD.

You are now ready to start application debugging. Follow steps described in section below.

4.17.6 Launching Debugger

The toolchain for ESP32-S2 features GNU Debugger, in short GDB. It is available with other toolchain programs under filename: xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb. GDB can be called and operated directly from command line in a terminal. Another option is to call it from within IDE (like Eclipse, Visual Studio Code, etc.) and operate indirectly with help of GUI instead of typing commands in a terminal.

Both options of using debugger are discussed under links below.

- *Eclipse*
- *Command Line*

It is recommended to first check if debugger works from *Command Line* and then move to using *Eclipse*.

4.17.7 Debugging Examples

This section is intended for users not familiar with GDB. It presents example debugging session from *Eclipse* using simple application available under get-started/blink and covers the following debugging actions:

1. *Navigating through the code, call stack and threads*
2. *Setting and clearing breakpoints*
3. *Halting the target manually*
4. *Stepping through the code*
5. *Checking and setting memory*
6. *Watching and setting program variables*
7. *Setting conditional breakpoints*

Similar debugging actions are provided using GDB from *Command Line*.

Before proceeding to examples, set up your ESP32-S2 target and load it with get-started/blink.

4.17.8 Building OpenOCD from Sources

Please refer to separate documents listed below, that describe build process.

Building OpenOCD from Sources for Windows

The following instructions are alternative to downloading binary OpenOCD from Espressif GitHub. To quickly setup the binary OpenOCD, instead of compiling it yourself, backup and proceed to section *Setup of OpenOCD*.

Note: Following instructions are assumed to be runned in MSYS2 environment with MINGW32 subsystem!

Install Dependencies Install packages that are required to compile OpenOCD:

```
pacman -S --noconfirm --needed autoconf automake git make \
mingw-w64-i686-gcc \
mingw-w64-i686-toolchain \
mingw-w64-i686-libtool \
mingw-w64-i686-pkg-config \
mingw-w64-cross-winpthreads-git \
p7zip
```

Download Sources of OpenOCD The sources for the ESP32-S2-enabled variant of OpenOCD are available from Espressif GitHub under https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32. To download the sources, use the following commands:

```
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git
```

The clone of sources should be now saved in `~/esp/openocd-esp32` directory.

Downloading libusb Build and export variables for a following OpenOCD compilation:

```
wget https://github.com/libusb/libusb/releases/download/v1.0.22/libusb-1.0.22.7z
7z x -olibusb ./libusb-1.0.22.7z
export CPPFLAGS="$CPPFLAGS -I${PWD}/libusb/include/libusb-1.0"
export LDFLAGS="$LDFLAGS -L${PWD}/libusb/MinGW32/.libs/dll"
```

Build OpenOCD Proceed with configuring and building OpenOCD:

```
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
export CPPFLAGS="$CPPFLAGS -D__USE_MINGW_ANSI_STDIO=1 -Wno-error"; export CFLAGS="
↪$CFLAGS -Wno-error"
./bootstrap
./configure --disable-doxygen-pdf --enable-ftdi --enable-jlink --enable-ulink --
↪build=i686-w64-mingw32 --host=i686-w64-mingw32
make
cp ../libusb/MinGW32/dll/libusb-1.0.dll ./src
cp /opt/i686-w64-mingw32/bin/libwinpthread-1.dll ./src
```

Optionally you can add `make install` step at the end. Skip it, if you have an existing OpenOCD (from e.g. another development platform), as it may get overwritten. Also you could use `export DESTDIR="/custom/install/dir"; make install`.

Note:

- Should an error occur, resolve it and try again until the command `make` works.
- If there is a submodule problem from OpenOCD, please `cd` to the `openocd-esp32` directory and input `git submodule update --init`.
- If the `./configure` is successfully run, information of enabled JTAG will be printed under `OpenOCD configuration summary`.
- If the information of your device is not shown in the log, use `./configure` to enable it as described in `../openocd-esp32/doc/INSTALL.txt`.
- For details concerning compiling OpenOCD, please refer to `openocd-esp32/README.Windows`.
- Don't forget to copy *libusb-1.0.dll* and *libwinpthread-1.dll* into *OOCD_INSTALLDIR/bin* from `~/esp/openocd-esp32/src`.

Once `make` process is successfully completed, the executable of OpenOCD will be saved in `~/esp/openocd-esp32/src` directory.

Full Listing A complete described previously process is provided below for the faster execution, e.g. as a shell script:

```
pacman -S --noconfirm --needed autoconf automake git make mingw-w64-i686-gcc mingw-
↪w64-i686-toolchain mingw-w64-i686-libtool mingw-w64-i686-pkg-config mingw-w64-
↪cross-winpthreads-git p7zip
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git

wget https://github.com/libusb/libusb/releases/download/v1.0.22/libusb-1.0.22.7z
7z x -olibusb ./libusb-1.0.22.7z
export CPPFLAGS="$CPPFLAGS -I${PWD}/libusb/include/libusb-1.0"; export LDFLAGS="
↪$LDFLAGS -L${PWD}/libusb/MinGW32/.libs/dll"

export CPPFLAGS="$CPPFLAGS -D__USE_MINGW_ANSI_STDIO=1 -Wno-error"; export CFLAGS="
↪$CFLAGS -Wno-error"
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
./bootstrap
./configure --disable-doxygen-pdf --enable-ftdi --enable-jlink --enable-ulink --
↪build=i686-w64-mingw32 --host=i686-w64-mingw32
make
cp ../libusb/MinGW32/dll/libusb-1.0.dll ./src
cp /opt/i686-w64-mingw32/bin/libwinpthread-1.dll ./src

# # optional
# export DESTDIR="$PWD"
# make install
# cp ./src/libusb-1.0.dll $DESTDIR/mingw32/bin
# cp ./src/libwinpthread-1.dll $DESTDIR/mingw32/bin
```

Next Steps To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Configuring ESP32-S2 Target*.

Building OpenOCD from Sources for Linux

The following instructions are alternative to downloading binary OpenOCD from Espressif GitHub. To quickly setup the binary OpenOCD, instead of compiling it yourself, backup and proceed to section *Setup of OpenOCD*.

Download Sources of OpenOCD The sources for the ESP32-S2-enabled variant of OpenOCD are available from Espressif GitHub under https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32. To download the sources, use the following commands:

```
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git
```

The clone of sources should be now saved in `~/esp/openocd-esp32` directory.

Install Dependencies Install packages that are required to compile OpenOCD.

Note: Install the following packages one by one, check if installation was successful and then proceed to the next package. Resolve reported problems before moving to the next step.

```
sudo apt-get install make
sudo apt-get install libtool
sudo apt-get install pkg-config
sudo apt-get install autoconf
sudo apt-get install automake
sudo apt-get install texinfo
sudo apt-get install libusb-1.0
```

Note:

- Version of pkg-config should be 0.2.3 or above.
- Version of autoconf should be 2.6.4 or above.
- Version of automake should be 1.9 or above.
- When using USB-Blaster, ASIX Presto, OpenJTAG and FT2232 as adapters, drivers libFTDI and FTD2XX need to be downloaded and installed.
- When using CMSIS-DAP, HIDAPI is needed.

Build OpenOCD Proceed with configuring and building OpenOCD:

```
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
./bootstrap
./configure
make
```

Optionally you can add `sudo make install` step at the end. Skip it, if you have an existing OpenOCD (from e.g. another development platform), as it may get overwritten.

Note:

- Should an error occur, resolve it and try again until the command `make` works.
- If there is a submodule problem from OpenOCD, please `cd` to the `openocd-esp32` directory and input `git submodule update --init`.
- If the `./configure` is successfully run, information of enabled JTAG will be printed under `OpenOCD configuration summary`.
- If the information of your device is not shown in the log, use `./configure` to enable it as described in `../openocd-esp32/doc/INSTALL.txt`.
- For details concerning compiling OpenOCD, please refer to `openocd-esp32/README`.

Once `make` process is successfully completed, the executable of OpenOCD will be saved in `~/openocd-esp32/bin` directory.

Next Steps To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Configuring ESP32-S2 Target*.

Building OpenOCD from Sources for MacOS

The following instructions are alternative to downloading binary OpenOCD from Espressif GitHub. To quickly setup the binary OpenOCD, instead of compiling it yourself, backup and proceed to section *Setup of OpenOCD*.

Download Sources of OpenOCD The sources for the ESP32-S2-enabled variant of OpenOCD are available from Espressif GitHub under https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32. To download the sources, use the following commands:

```
cd ~/esp
git clone --recursive https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32.git
```

The clone of sources should be now saved in `~/esp/openocd-esp32` directory.

Install Dependencies Install packages that are required to compile OpenOCD using Homebrew:

```
brew install automake libtool libusb wget gcc@4.9 pkg-config
```

Build OpenOCD Proceed with configuring and building OpenOCD:

```
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
./bootstrap
./configure
make
```

Optionally you can add `sudo make install` step at the end. Skip it, if you have an existing OpenOCD (from e.g. another development platform), as it may get overwritten.

Note:

- Should an error occur, resolve it and try again until the command `make` works.
- If there is a submodule problem from OpenOCD, please `cd` to the `openocd-esp32` directory and input `git submodule update --init`.
- If the `./configure` is successfully run, information of enabled JTAG will be printed under `OpenOCD configuration summary`.
- If the information of your device is not shown in the log, use `./configure` to enable it as described in `../openocd-esp32/doc/INSTALL.txt`.
- For details concerning compiling OpenOCD, please refer to `openocd-esp32/README.OSX`.

Once `make` process is successfully completed, the executable of OpenOCD will be saved in `~/esp/openocd-esp32/src/openocd` directory.

Next Steps To carry on with debugging environment setup, proceed to section *Configuring ESP32-S2 Target*.

The examples of invoking OpenOCD in this document assume using pre-built binary distribution described in section *Setup of OpenOCD*.

To use binaries build locally from sources, change the path to OpenOCD executable to `src/openocd` and set the `OPENOCD_SCRIPTS` environment variable so that OpenOCD can find the configuration files. For Linux and macOS:

```
cd ~/esp/openocd-esp32
export OPENOCD_SCRIPTS=$PWD/tcl
```

For Windows:

```
cd %USERPROFILE%\esp\openocd-esp32
set "OPENOCD_SCRIPTS=%CD%\tcl"
```

Example of invoking OpenOCD build locally from sources, for Linux and macOS:

```
src/openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg
```

and Windows:

```
src\openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg
```

4.17.9 Tips and Quirks

This section provides collection of links to all tips and quirks referred to from various parts of this guide.

Tips and Quirks

This section provides collection of all tips and quirks referred to from various parts of this guide.

Breakpoints and watchpoints available ESP32-S2 debugger supports 2 hardware implemented breakpoints and 64 software ones. Hardware breakpoints are implemented by ESP32-S2 chip's logic and can be set anywhere in the code: either in flash or IRAM program's regions. Additionally there are 2 types of software breakpoints implemented by OpenOCD: flash (up to 32) and IRAM (up to 32) breakpoints. Currently GDB can not set software breakpoints in flash. So until this limitation is removed those breakpoints have to be emulated by OpenOCD as hardware ones (see *below* for details). ESP32-S2 also supports two watchpoints, so two variables can be watched for change or read by the GDB command `watch myVariable`. Note that menuconfig option *CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK* uses the 2nd watchpoint and will not provide expected results, if you also try to use it within OpenOCD / GDB. See menuconfig's help for detailed description.

What else should I know about breakpoints? Emulating part of hardware breakpoints using software flash ones means that the GDB command `hb myFunction` which is invoked for function in flash will use pure hardware breakpoint if it is avalable otherwise one of the 32 software flash breakpoints is used. The same rule applies to `b myFunction`-like commands. In this case GDB will decide what type of breakpoint to set itself. If `myFunction` is resided in writable region (IRAM) software IRAM breakpoint will be used otherwise hardware or software flash breakpoint is used as it is done for `hb` command.

Flash Mappings vs SW Flash Breakpoints In order to set/clear software breakpoints in flash, OpenOCD needs to know their flash addresses. To accomplish conversion from the ESP32-S2 address space to the flash one, OpenOCD uses mappings of program's code regions resided in flash. Those mappings are kept in the image header which is prepended to program binary data (code and data segments) and is specific to every application image written to the flash. So to support software flash breakpoints OpenOCD should know where application image under debugging is resided in the flash. By default OpenOCD reads partition table at 0x8000 and uses mappings from the first found application image, but there can be the cases when it will not work, e.g. partition table is not at standard flash location or even there can be multiple images: one factory and two OTA and you may want to debbug any of them. To cover all possible debugging scenarios OpenOCD supports special command which can be used to set arbitrary location of application image to debug. The command has the following format:

```
esp appimage_offset <offset>
```

Offset should be in hex format. To reset to the default behaviour you can specify `-1` as offset.

Note: Since GDB requests memory map from OpenOCD only once when connecting to it, this command should be specified in one of the TCL configuration files, or passed to OpenOCD via its command line. In the latter case command line should look like below:

```
openocd -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg -c "init; halt; esp appimage_offset 0x210000"
```

Another option is to execute that command via OpenOCD telnet session and then connect GDB, but it seems to be less handy.

Why stepping with "next" does not bypass subroutine calls? When stepping through the code with `next` command, GDB is internally setting a breakpoint (one out of two available) ahead in the code to bypass the subroutine calls. This functionality will not work, if the two available breakpoints are already set elsewhere in the code. If this is the case, delete breakpoints to have one "spare". With both breakpoints already used, stepping through the code with `next` command will work as like with `step` command and debugger will step inside subroutine calls.

Support options for OpenOCD at compile time ESP-IDF has some support options for OpenOCD debugging which can be set at compile time:

- *CONFIG_ESP32S2_DEBUG_OCDAWARE* is enabled by default. If a panic or unhandled exception is thrown and a JTAG debugger is connected (ie OpenOCD is running), ESP-IDF will break into the debugger.
- *CONFIG_FREERTOS_WATCHPOINT_END_OF_STACK* (disabled by default) sets watchpoint index 1 (the second of two) at the end of any task stack. This is the most accurate way to debug task stack overflows. Click the link for more details.

Please see the *project configuration menu* menu for more details on setting compile-time options.

FreeRTOS support OpenOCD has explicit support for the ESP-IDF FreeRTOS. GDB can see FreeRTOS tasks as threads. Viewing them all can be done using the GDB `i threads` command, changing to a certain task is done with `thread n`, with `n` being the number of the thread. FreeRTOS detection can be disabled in target's configuration. For more details see *Configuration of OpenOCD for specific target*.

Optimize JTAG speed In order to achieve higher data rates and minimize number of dropped packets it is recommended to optimize setting of JTAG clock frequency, so it is at maximum and still provides stable operation of JTAG. To do so use the following tips.

1. The upper limit of JTAG clock frequency is 20 MHz if CPU runs at 80 MHz, or 26 MHz if CPU runs at 160 MHz or 240 MHz.
2. Depending on particular JTAG adapter and the length of connecting cables, you may need to reduce JTAG frequency below 20 / 26 MHz.
3. In particular reduce frequency, if you get DSR/DIR errors (and they do not relate to OpenOCD trying to read from a memory range without physical memory being present there).
4. ESP-WROVER-KIT operates stable at 20 / 26 MHz.

What is the meaning of debugger's startup commands? On startup, debugger is issuing sequence of commands to reset the chip and halt it at specific line of code. This sequence (shown below) is user defined to pick up at most convenient / appropriate line and start debugging.

- `set remote hardware-watchpoint-limit 2` —Restrict GDB to using two hardware watchpoints supported by the chip, 2 for ESP32-S2. For more information see https://sourceware.org/gdb/onlinedocs/gdb/Remote-Configuration.html.
- `mon reset halt` —reset the chip and keep the CPUs halted
- `flushregs` —monitor (`mon`) command can not inform GDB that the target state has changed. GDB will assume that whatever stack the target had before `mon reset halt` will still be valid. In fact, after reset the target state will change, and executing `flushregs` is a way to force GDB to get new state from the target.
- `thb app_main` —insert a temporary hardware breakpoint at `app_main`, put here another function name if required
- `c` —resume the program. It will then stop at breakpoint inserted at `app_main`.

Configuration of OpenOCD for specific target There are several kinds of OpenOCD configuration files (`*.cfg`). All configuration files are located in subdirectories of `share/openocd/scripts` directory of OpenOCD distribution (or `tcl/scripts` directory of the source repository). For the purposes of this guide, the most important ones are `board`, `interface` and `target`.

- `interface` configuration files describe the JTAG adapter. Examples of JTAG adapters are ESP-Prog and J-Link.
- `target` configuration files describe specific chips, or in some cases, modules.
- `board` configuration files are provided for development boards with a built-in JTAG adapter. Such files include an `interface` configuration file to choose the adapter, and `target` configuration file to choose the chip/module.

The following configuration files are available for ESP32-S2:

Table 5: OpenOCD configuration files for ESP32-S2

Name	Description
`board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg`	Board configuration file for ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1, includes target and adapter configuration.
`target/esp32s2.cfg`	ESP32-S2 target configuration file. Can be used together with one of the `interface/` configuration files.
`interface/ftdi/esp32s2_kaluga_v1.cfg`	JTAG adapter configuration file for ESP32-S2-Kaluga-1 board.
`interface/ftdi/esp32_devkitj_v1.cfg`	JTAG adapter configuration file for ESP-Prog boards.

If you are using one of the boards which have a pre-defined configuration file, you only need to pass one `-f` argument to OpenOCD, specifying that file.

If you are using a board not listed here, you need to specify both the interface configuration file and target configuration file.

Custom configuration files OpenOCD configuration files are written in TCL, and include a variety of choices for customization and scripting. This can be useful for non-standard debugging situations. Please refer to OpenOCD Manual for the TCL scripting reference.

OpenOCD configuration variables The following variables can be optionally set before including the ESP-specific target configuration file. This can be done either in a custom configuration file, or from the command line.

The syntax for setting a variable in TCL is:

```
set VARIABLE_NAME value
```

To set a variable from the command line (replace the name of .cfg file with the correct file for your board):

```
openocd -c 'set VARIABLE_NAME value' -f board/esp-xxxxx-kit.cfg
```

It is important to set the variable before including the ESP-specific configuration file, otherwise the variable will not have effect. You can set multiple variables by repeating the `-c` option.

Table 6: Common ESP-related OpenOCD variables

Variable	Description
`ESP_RTOS`	Set to `none` to disable RTOS support. In this case, thread list will not be available in GDB. Can be useful when debugging FreeRTOS itself, and stepping through the scheduler code.
`ESP_FLASH_SIZE`	Set to `0` to disable Flash breakpoints support.
`ESP_SEMIHOST_BASEDIR`	Set to the path (on the host) which will be the default directory for semihosting functions.

How debugger resets ESP32-S2? The board can be reset by entering `mon reset` or `mon reset halt` into GDB.

Do not use JTAG pins for something else Operation of JTAG may be disturbed, if some other h/w is connected to JTAG pins besides ESP32-S2 module and JTAG adapter. ESP32-S2 JTAG is using the following pins:

Table 7: ESP32-S2 pins and JTAG signals

ESP32-S2 Pin	JTAG Signal
MTDO / GPIO40	TDO
MTDI / GPIO41	TDI
MTCK / GPIO39	TCK
MTMS / GPIO42	TMS

JTAG communication will likely fail, if configuration of JTAG pins is changed by user application. If OpenOCD initializes correctly (detects the two Tensilica cores), but loses sync and spews out a lot of DTR/DIR errors when the program is ran, it is likely that the application reconfigures the JTAG pins to something else, or the user forgot to connect Vtar to a JTAG adapter that needed it.

Below is an excerpt from series of errors reported by GDB after the application stepped into the code that reconfigured MTDO pin to be an input:

```
cpu0: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates target still busy!
cpu0: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated␣
↪an exception!
cpu0: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated␣
↪an overrun!
cpu1: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates target still busy!
cpu1: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated␣
↪an exception!
cpu1: xtensa_resume (line 431): DSR (FFFFFFFF) indicates DIR instruction generated␣
↪an overrun!
```

JTAG with Flash Encryption or Secure Boot By default, enabling Flash Encryption and/or Secure Boot will disable JTAG debugging. On first boot, the bootloader will burn an eFuse bit to permanently disable JTAG at the same time it enables the other features.

The project configuration option *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_JTAG* will keep JTAG enabled at this time, removing all physical security but allowing debugging. (Although the name suggests Secure Boot, this option can be applied even when only Flash Encryption is enabled).

However, OpenOCD may attempt to automatically read and write the flash in order to set *software breakpoints*. This has two problems:

- Software breakpoints are incompatible with Flash Encryption, OpenOCD currently has no support for encrypting or decrypting flash contents.
- If Secure Boot is enabled, setting a software breakpoint will change the digest of a signed app and make the signature invalid. This means if a software breakpoint is set and then a reset occurs, the signature verification will fail on boot.

To disable software breakpoints while using JTAG, add an extra argument `-c 'set ESP_FLASH_SIZE 0'` to the start of the OpenOCD command line, see *OpenOCD configuration variables*.

Note: For the same reason, the ESP-IDF app may fail bootloader verification of app signatures, when this option is enabled and a software breakpoint is set.

Reporting issues with OpenOCD / GDB In case you encounter a problem with OpenOCD or GDB programs itself and do not find a solution searching available resources on the web, open an issue in the OpenOCD issue tracker under https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/issues.

1. In issue report provide details of your configuration:
   a. JTAG adapter type, and the chip/module being debugged.
   b. Release of ESP-IDF used to compile and load application that is being debugged.
   c. Details of OS used for debugging.
   d. Is OS running natively on a PC or on a virtual machine?
2. Create a simple example that is representative to observed issue. Describe steps how to reproduce it. In such an example debugging should not be affected by non-deterministic behaviour introduced by the Wi-Fi stack, so problems will likely be easier to reproduce, if encountered once.
3. Prepare logs from debugging session by adding additional parameters to start up commands.
   OpenOCD:

   ```
   openocd -l openocd_log.txt -d3 -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg
   ```

   Logging to a file this way will prevent information displayed on the terminal. This may be a good thing taken amount of information provided, when increased debug level `-d3` is set. If you still like to see the log on the screen, then use another command instead:

   ```
   openocd -d3 -f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg 2>&1 | tee openocd.log
   ```

   Debugger:

   ```
   xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb -ex "set remotelogfile gdb_log.txt" <all other options>
   ```

   Optionally add command `remotelogfile gdb_log.txt` to the `gdbinit` file.
4. Attach both `openocd_log.txt` and `gdb_log.txt` files to your issue report.

4.17.10 Related Documents

Using Debugger

This section covers configuration and running debugger using several methods:

- from *Eclipse*
- from *Command Line*
- using *idf.py debug targets*

Eclipse

Note: It is recommended to first check if debugger works using *idf.py debug targets* or from *Command Line* and then move to using Eclipse.

Debugging functionality is provided out of box in standard Eclipse installation. Another option is to use pluggins like "GDB Hardware Debugging" plugin. We have found this plugin quite convenient and decided to use throughout this guide.

To begin with, install "GDB Hardware Debugging" plugin by opening Eclipse and going to *Help* > *Install* New Software.

Once installation is complete, configure debugging session following steps below. Please note that some of configuration parameters are generic and some are project specific. This will be shown below by configuring debugging for "blink" example project. If not done already, add this project to Eclipse workspace following guidance in section *Build and Flash with Eclipse IDE*. The source of get-started/blink application is available in examples directory of ESP-IDF repository.

1. In Eclipse go to *Run* > *Debug Configuration*. A new window will open. In the window's left pane double click "GDB Hardware Debugging" (or select "GDB Hardware Debugging" and press the "New" button) to create a new configuration.
2. In a form that will show up on the right, enter the "Name:" of this configuration, e.g. "Blink checking".
3. On the "Main" tab below, under "Project:", press "Browse" button and select the "blink" project.
4. In next line "C/C++ Application:" press "Browse" button and select "blink.elf" file. If "blink.elf" is not there, then likely this project has not been build yet. See *Build and Flash with Eclipse IDE* how to do it.
5. Finally, under "Build (if required) before launching" click "Disable auto build".
   A sample window with settings entered in points 1 - 5 is shown below.

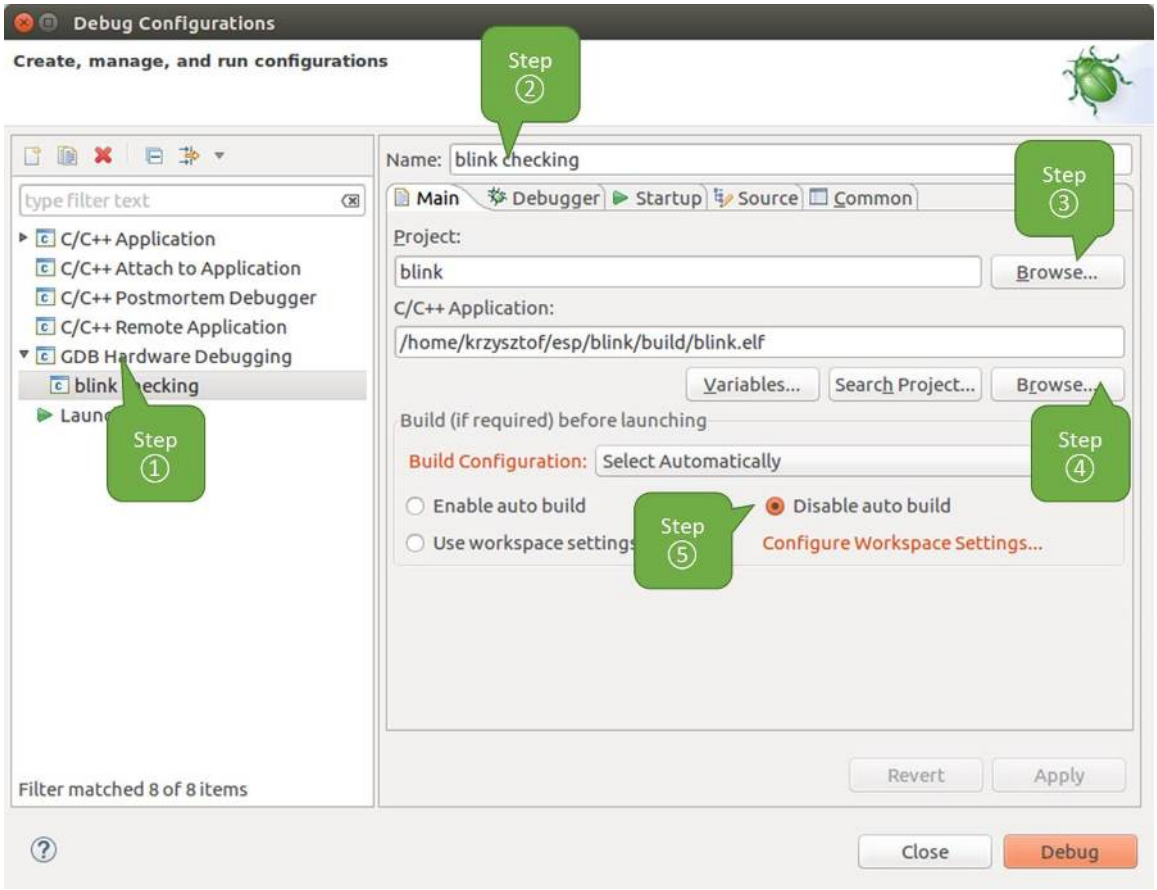


Fig. 25: Configuration of GDB Hardware Debugging - Main tab

6. Click "Debugger" tab. In field "GDB Command" enter `xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb` to invoke debugger.
7. Change default configuration of "Remote host" by entering `3333` under the "Port number".
   Configuration entered in points 6 and 7 is shown on the following picture.
8. The last tab to that requires changing of default configuration is "Startup". Under "Initialization Commands" uncheck "Reset and Delay (seconds)" and "Halt"". Then, in entry field below, enter the following lines:

```
mon reset halt
flushregs
set remote hardware-watchpoint-limit 2
```

Note: If you want to update image in the flash automatically before starting new debug session add the following lines of commands at the beginning of "Initialization Commands" textbox:

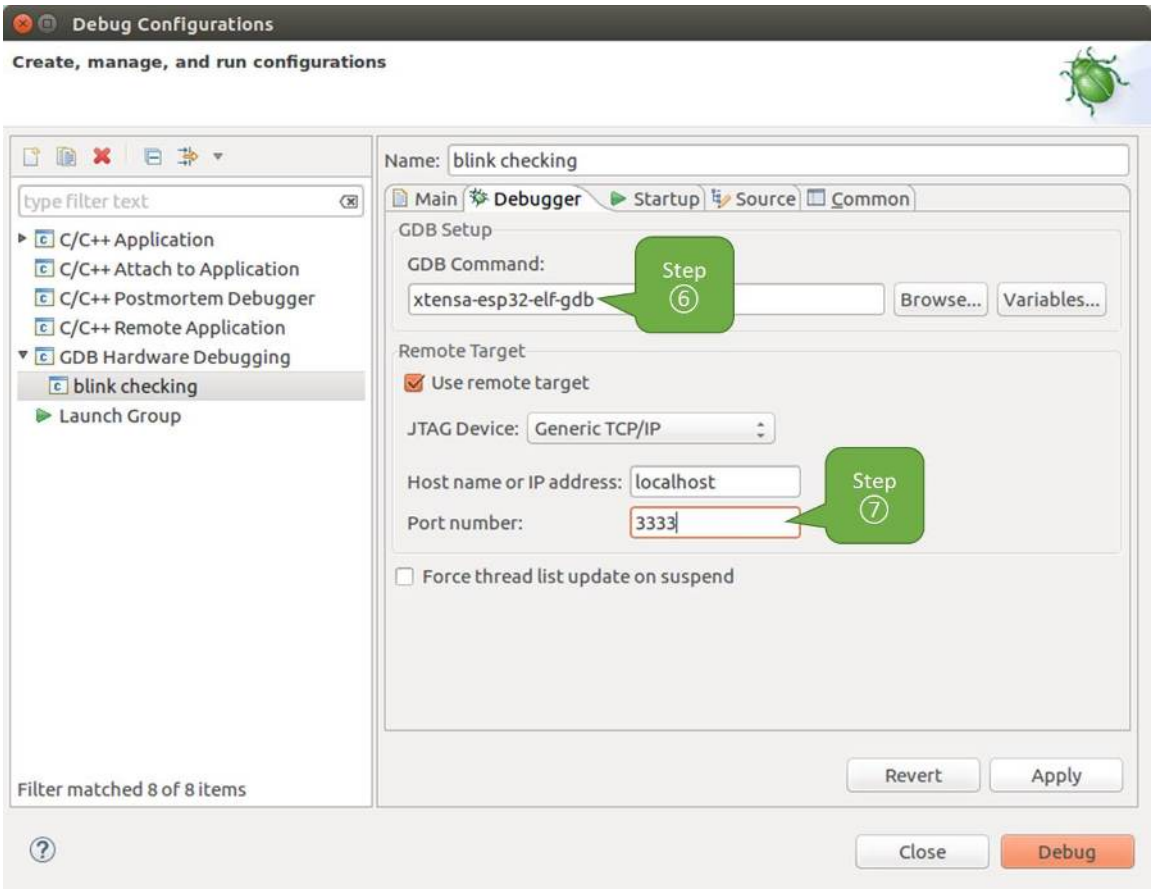


Fig. 26: Configuration of GDB Hardware Debugging - Debugger tab

```
mon reset halt
mon program_esp ${workspace_loc:blink/build/blink.bin} 0x10000 verify
```

For description of `program_esp` command see *Upload application for debugging*.

9. Under "Load Image and Symbols" uncheck "Load image" option.
10. Further down on the same tab, establish an initial breakpoint to halt CPUs after they are reset by debugger. The plugin will set this breakpoint at the beginning of the function entered under "Set break point at:". Checkout this option and enter `app_main` in provided field.
11. Checkout "Resume" option. This will make the program to resume after `mon reset halt` is invoked per point 8. The program will then stop at breakpoint inserted at `app_main`.
    Configuration described in points 8 - 11 is shown below.

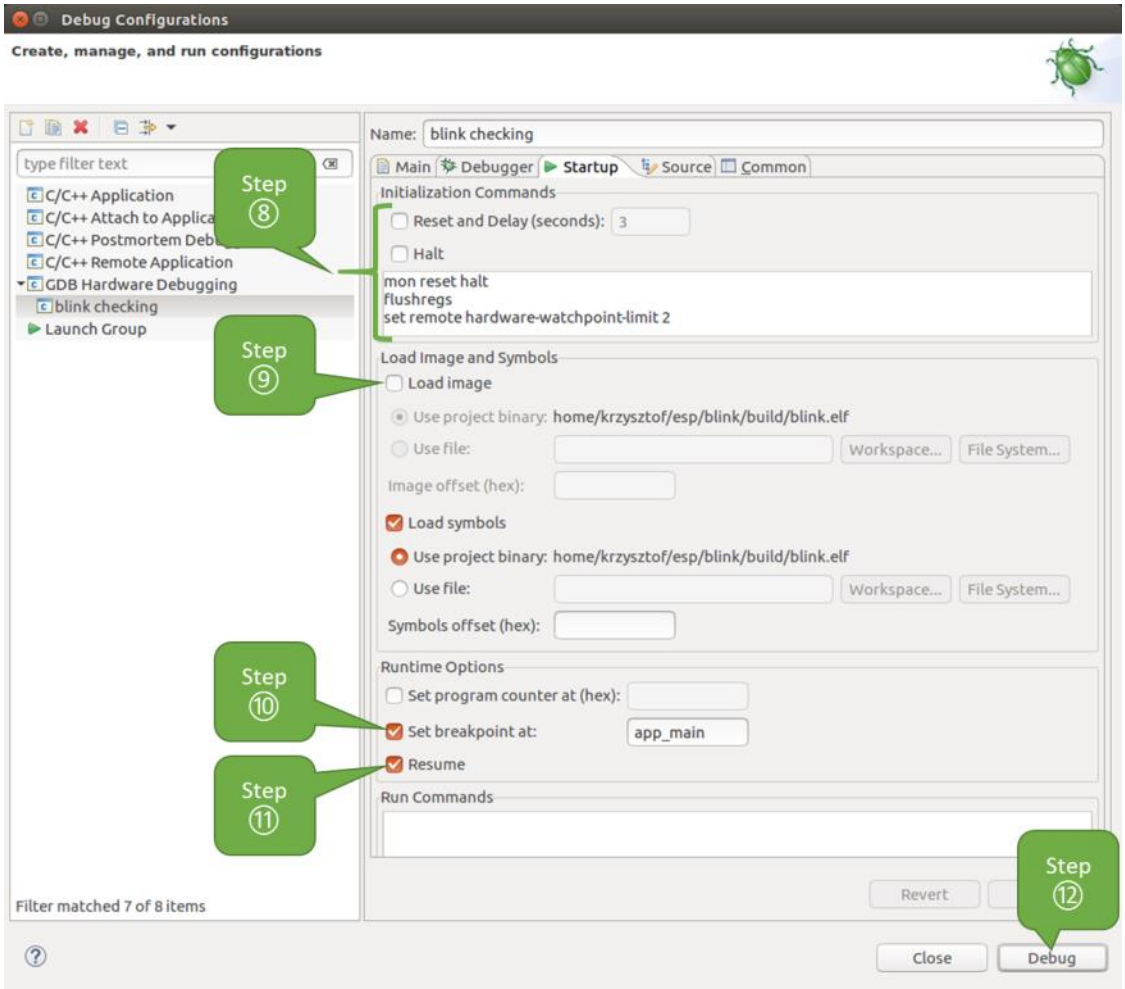


Fig. 27: Configuration of GDB Hardware Debugging - Startup tab

If the "Startup" sequence looks convoluted and respective "Initialization Commands" are not clear to you, check *What is the meaning of debugger' s startup commands?* for additional explanation.

12. If you previously completed *Configuring ESP32-S2 Target* steps described above, so the target is running and ready to talk to debugger, go right to debugging by pressing "Debug" button. Otherwise press "Apply" to save changes, go back to *Configuring ESP32-S2 Target* and return here to start debugging.

Once all 1 - 12 configuration steps are satisfied, the new Eclipse perspective called "Debug" will open as shown on example picture below.

If you are not quite sure how to use GDB, check *Eclipse* example debugging session in section *Debugging Examples*.

Command Line

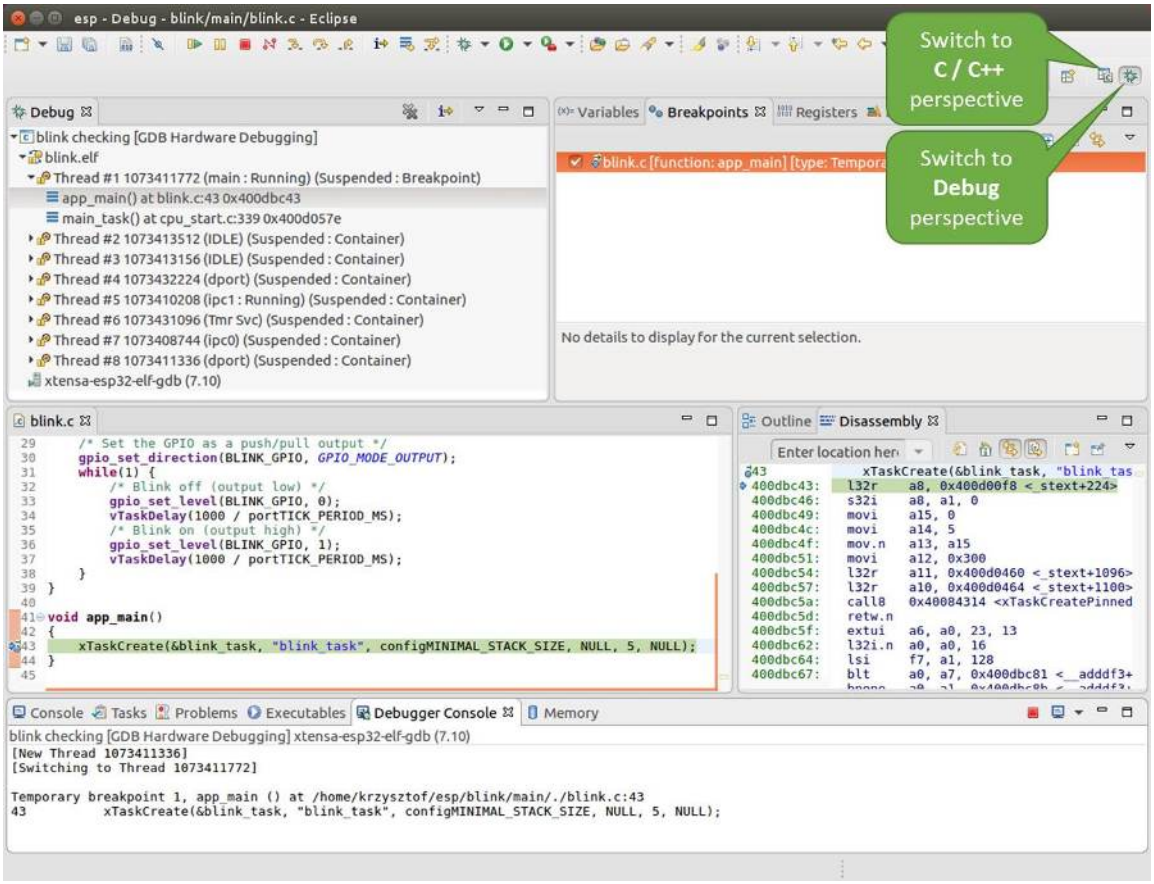


Fig. 28: Debug Perspective in Eclipse

1. Begin with completing steps described under *Configuring ESP32-S2 Target*. This is prerequisite to start a debugging session.
2. Open a new terminal session and go to directory that contains project for debugging, e.g.

```
cd ~/esp/blink
```

3. When launching a debugger, you will need to provide couple of configuration parameters and commands. Instead of entering them one by one in command line, create a configuration file and name it `gdbinit`:

```
target remote :3333
set remote hardware-watchpoint-limit 2
mon reset halt
flushregs
thb app_main
c
```

Save this file in current directory.
For more details what's inside `gdbinit` file, see *What is the meaning of debugger's startup commands?*

4. Now you are ready to launch GDB. Type the following in terminal:

```
xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb -x gdbinit build/blink.elf
```

5. If previous steps have been done correctly, you will see a similar log concluded with `(gdb)` prompt:

```
user-name@computer-name:~/esp/blink$ xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gdb -x gdbinit build/
↪blink.elf
GNU gdb (crosstool-NG crosstool-ng-1.22.0-61-gab8375a) 7.10
Copyright (C) 2015 Free Software Foundation, Inc.
License GPLv3+: GNU GPL version 3 or later <http://gnu.org/licenses/gpl.html>
This is free software: you are free to change and redistribute it.
There is NO WARRANTY, to the extent permitted by law.  Type "show copying"
and "show warranty" for details.
This GDB was configured as "--host=x86_64-build_pc-linux-gnu --target=xtensa-
↪esp32s2-elf".
Type "show configuration" for configuration details.
For bug reporting instructions, please see:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/bugs/>.
Find the GDB manual and other documentation resources online at:
<http://www.gnu.org/software/gdb/documentation/>.
For help, type "help".
Type "apropos word" to search for commands related to "word"...
Reading symbols from build/blink.elf...done.
0x400d10d8 in esp_vApplicationIdleHook () at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/
↪components/esp32s2/./freertos_hooks.c:52
52          asm("waiti 0");
JTAG tap: esp32s2.cpu0 tap/device found: 0x120034e5 (mfg: 0x272 (Tensilica),␣
↪part: 0x2003, ver: 0x1)
JTAG tap: esp32s2.slave tap/device found: 0x120034e5 (mfg: 0x272 (Tensilica),␣
↪part: 0x2003, ver: 0x1)
esp32s2: Debug controller was reset (pwrstat=0x5F, after clear 0x0F).
esp32s2: Core was reset (pwrstat=0x5F, after clear 0x0F).
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x5000004B (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x00000000
esp32s2: target state: halted
esp32s2: Core was reset (pwrstat=0x1F, after clear 0x0F).
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x40000400 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x40000400
esp32s2: target state: halted
Hardware assisted breakpoint 1 at 0x400db717: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/
↪main/./blink.c, line 43.
0x0:    0x00000000
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB717 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8
[New Thread 1073428656]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
[New Thread 1073413708]
[New Thread 1073431316]
[New Thread 1073410672]
[New Thread 1073408876]
[New Thread 1073432196]
[New Thread 1073411552]
[Switching to Thread 1073411996]

Temporary breakpoint 1, app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.
↪c:43
43      xTaskCreate(&blink_task, "blink_task", 512, NULL, 5, NULL);
(gdb)
```

Note the third line from bottom that shows debugger halting at breakpoint established in `gdbinit` file at function `app_main()`. Since the processor is halted, the LED should not be blinking. If this is what you see as well, you are ready to start debugging.

If you are not quite sure how to use GDB, check *Command Line* example debugging session in section *Debugging Examples*.

idf.py debug targets It is also possible to execute the described debugging tools conveniently from `idf.py`. These commands are supported:

1. `idf.py openocd`
   Runs OpenOCD in a console with configuration defined in the environment or via command line. It uses default script directory defined as `OPENOCD_SCRIPTS` environmental variable, which is automatically added from an Export script (`export.sh` or `export.bat`). It is possible to override the script location using command line argument `--openocd-scripts`.
   As for the JTAG configuration of the current board, please use the environmental variable `OPENOCD_COMMANDS` or `--openocd-commands` command line argument. If none of the above is defined, OpenOCD is started with `-f board/esp32s2-kaluga-1.cfg` board definition.
2. `idf.py gdb`
   Starts the gdb the same way as the *Command Line*, but generates the initial gdb scripts referring to the current project elf file.
3. `idf.py gdbtui`
   The same as *2*, but starts the gdb with `tui` argument allowing very simple source code view.
4. `idf.py gdbgui`
   Starts gdbgui debugger frontend enabling out-of-the-box debugging in a browser window.
   It is possible to combine these debugging actions on a single command line allowing convenient setup of blocking and non-blocking actions in one step. `idf.py` implements a simple logic to move the background actions (such as openocd) to the beginning and the interactive ones (such as gdb, monitor) to the end of the action list. An example of a very useful combination is:

   ```
   idf.py openocd gdbgui monitor
   ```

   The above command runs OpenOCD in the background, starts gdbgui to open a browser window with active debugger frontend and opens a serial monitor in the active console.

Debugging Examples

This section describes debugging with GDB from *Eclipse* as well as from *Command Line*.

Eclipse Verify if your target is ready and loaded with get-started/blink example. Configure and start debugger following steps in section *Eclipse*. Pick up where target was left by debugger, i.e. having the application halted at breakpoint established at `app_main()`.

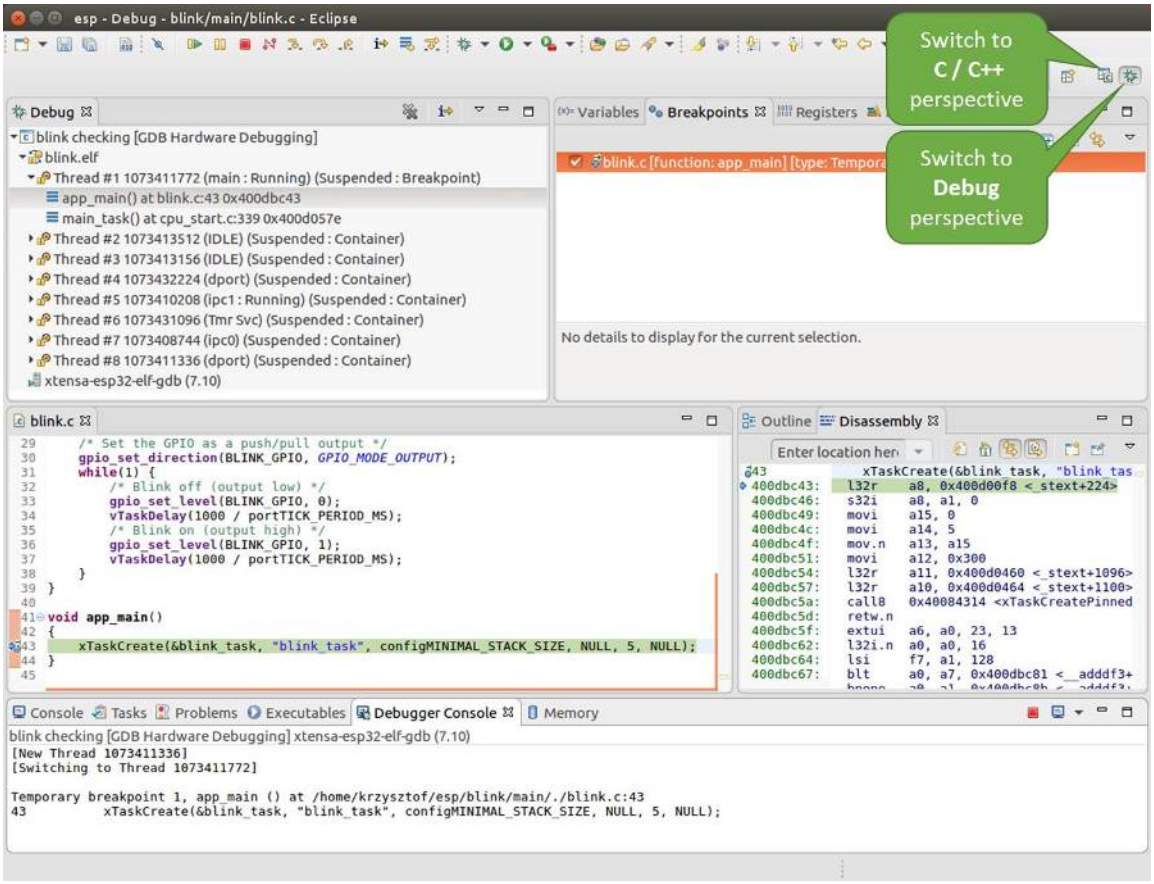


Fig. 29: Debug Perspective in Eclipse

Examples in this section

1. *Navigating through the code, call stack and threads*
2. *Setting and clearing breakpoints*
3. *Halting the target manually*
4. *Stepping through the code*
5. *Checking and setting memory*
6. *Watching and setting program variables*
7. *Setting conditional breakpoints*

Navigating through the code, call stack and threads When the target is halted, debugger shows the list of threads in "Debug" window. The line of code where program halted is highlighted in another window below, as shown on the following picture. The LED stops blinking.

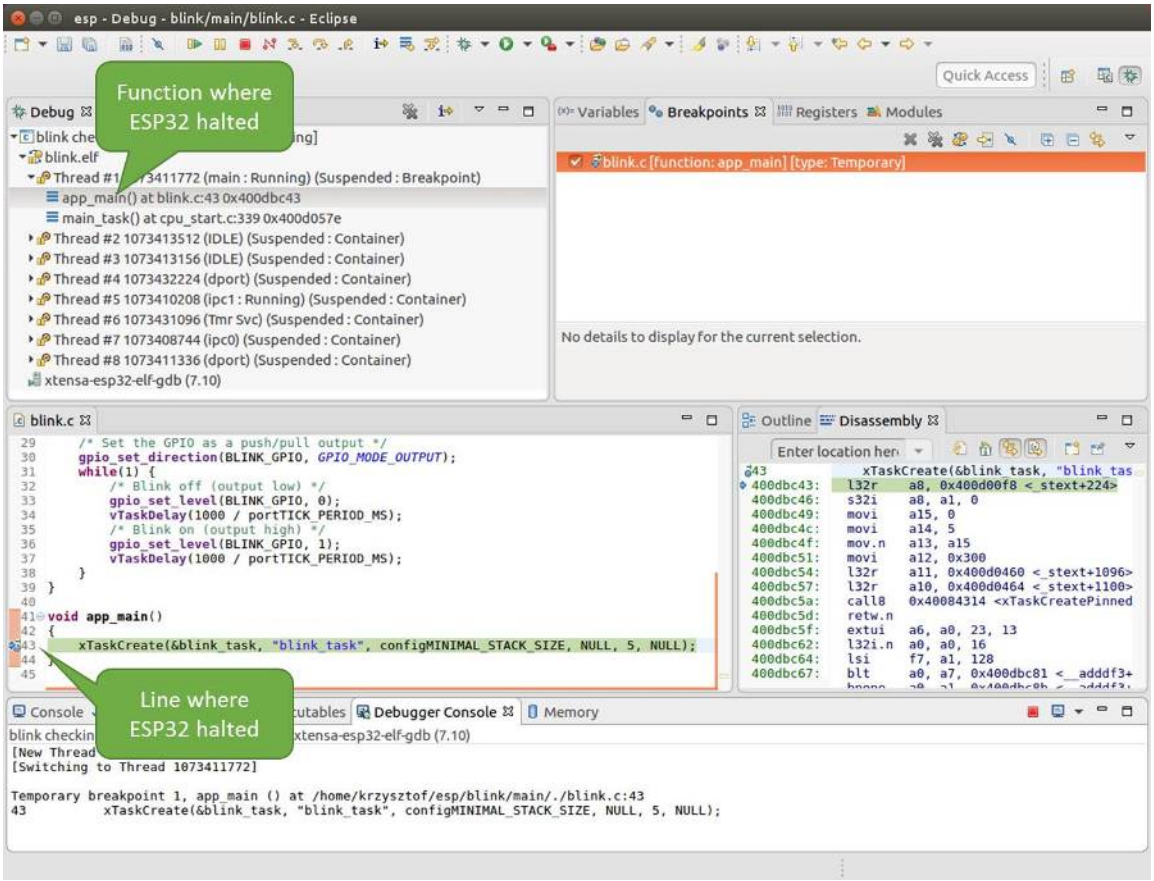


Fig. 30: Target halted during debugging

Specific thread where the program halted is expanded showing the call stack. It represents function calls that lead up to the highlighted line of code, where the target halted. The first line of call stack under Thread #1 contains the last called function `app_main()`, that in turn was called from function `main_task()` shown in a line below. Each line of the stack also contains the file name and line number where the function was called. By clicking / highlighting the stack entries, in window below, you will see contents of this file.

By expanding threads you can navigate throughout the application. Expand Thread #5 that contains much longer call stack. You will see there, besides function calls, numbers like `0x4000000c`. They represent addresses of binary code not provided in source form.

In another window on right, you can see the disassembled machine code no matter if your project provides it in source or only the binary form.

Go back to the `app_main()` in Thread #1 to familiar code of `blink.c` file that will be examined in more details in the following examples. Debugger makes it easy to navigate through the code of entire application. This comes

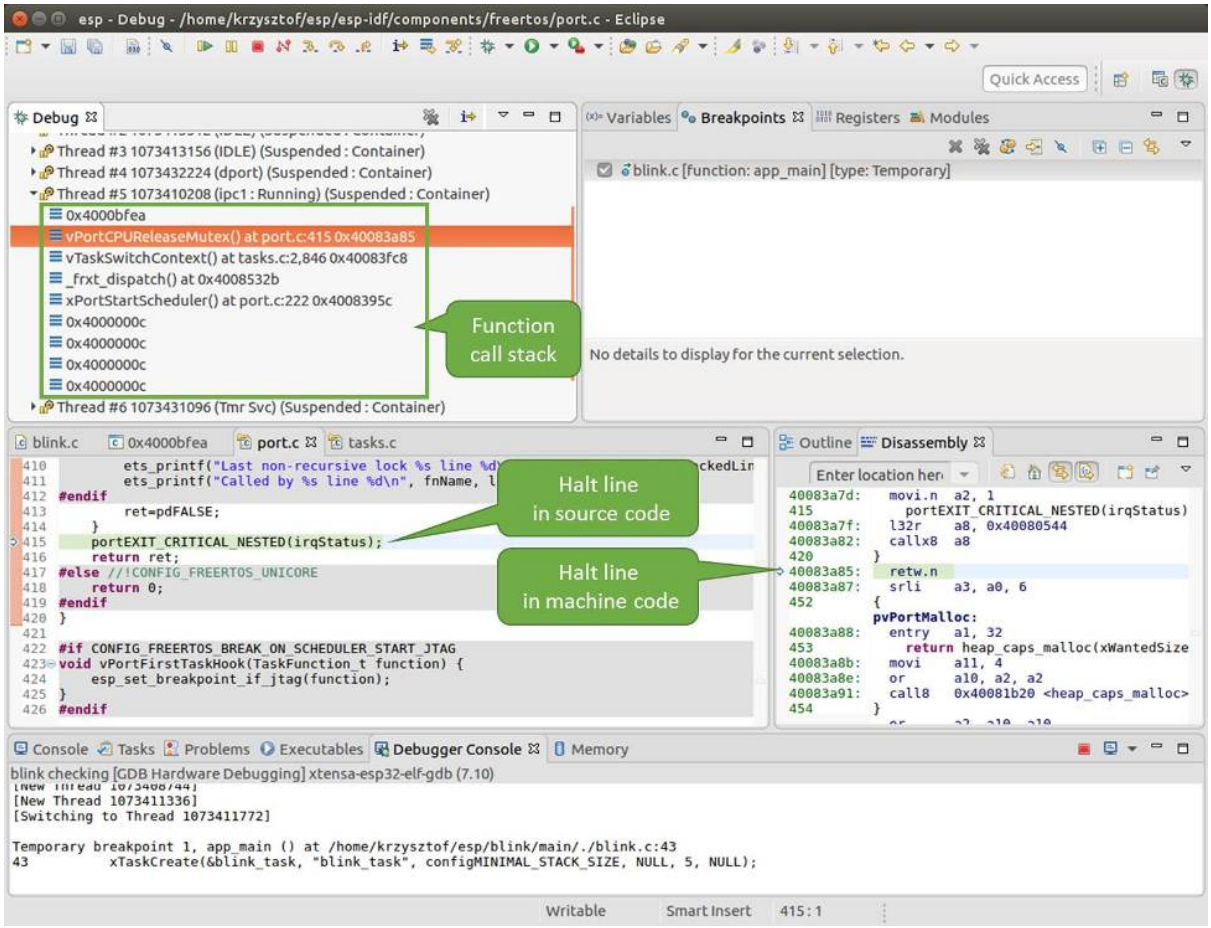


Fig. 31: Navigate through the call stack

handy when stepping through the code and working with breakpoints and will be discussed below.

Setting and clearing breakpoints When debugging, we would like to be able to stop the application at critical lines of code and then examine the state of specific variables, memory and registers / peripherals. To do so we are using breakpoints. They provide a convenient way to quickly get to and halt the application at specific line.

Let's establish two breakpoints when the state of LED changes. Basing on code listing above, this happens at lines 33 and 36. To do so, hold the "Control" on the keyboard and double clink on number `33` in file `blink.c` file. A dialog will open where you can confirm your selection by pressing "OK" button. If you do not like to see the dialog just double click the line number. Set another breakpoint in line 36.

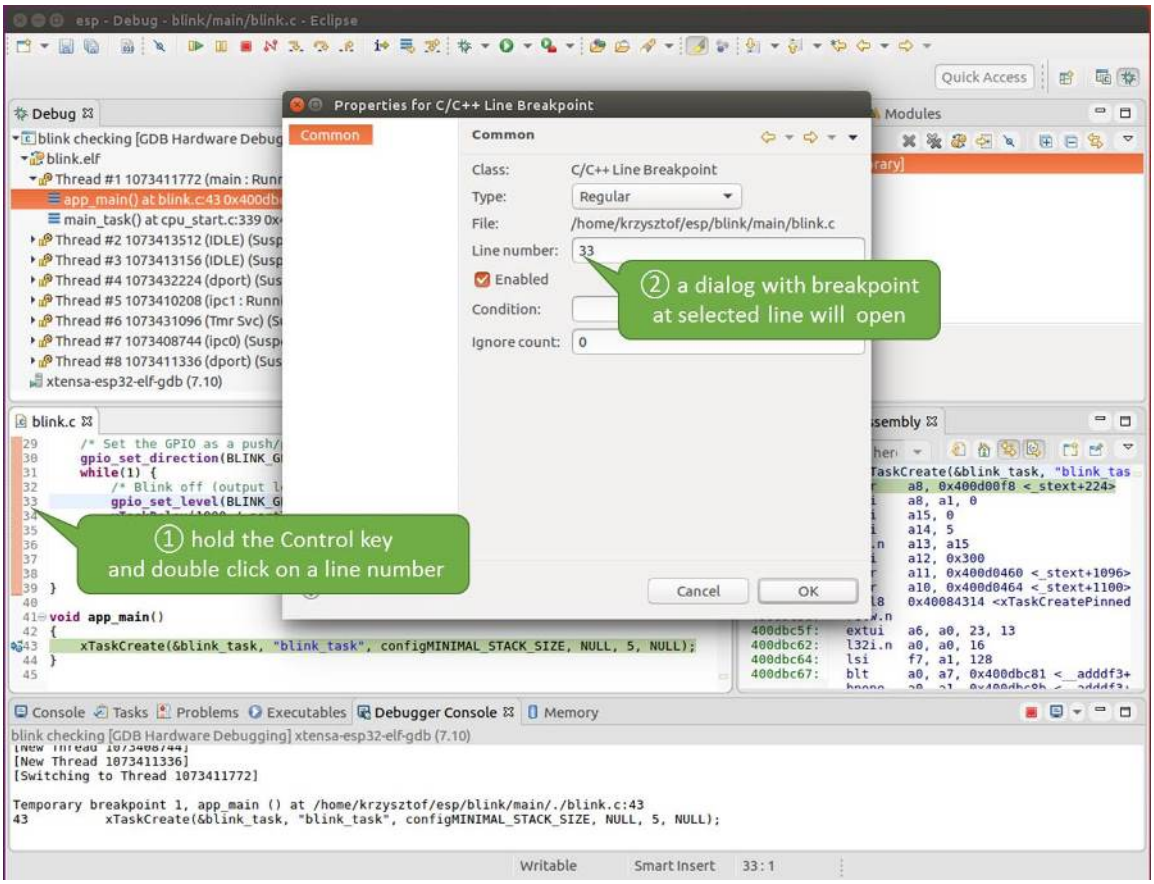


Fig. 32: Setting a breakpoint

Information how many breakpoints are set and where is shown in window "Breakpoints" on top right. Click "Show Breakpoints Supported by Selected Target" to refresh this list. Besides the two just set breakpoints the list may contain temporary breakpoint at function `app_main()` established at debugger start. As maximum two breakpoints are allowed (see *Breakpoints and watchpoints available*), you need to delete it, or debugging will fail.

If you now click "Resume" (click `blink_task()` under "Tread #8", if "Resume" button is grayed out), the processor will run and halt at a breakpoint. Clicking "Resume" another time will make it run again, halt on second breakpoint, and so on.

You will be also able to see that LED is changing the state after each click to "Resume" program execution.

Read more about breakpoints under *Breakpoints and watchpoints available* and *What else should I know about breakpoints?*

Halting the target manually When debugging, you may resume application and enter code waiting for some event or staying in infinite loop without any break points defined. In such case, to go back to debugging mode, you can break program execution manually by pressing "Suspend" button.

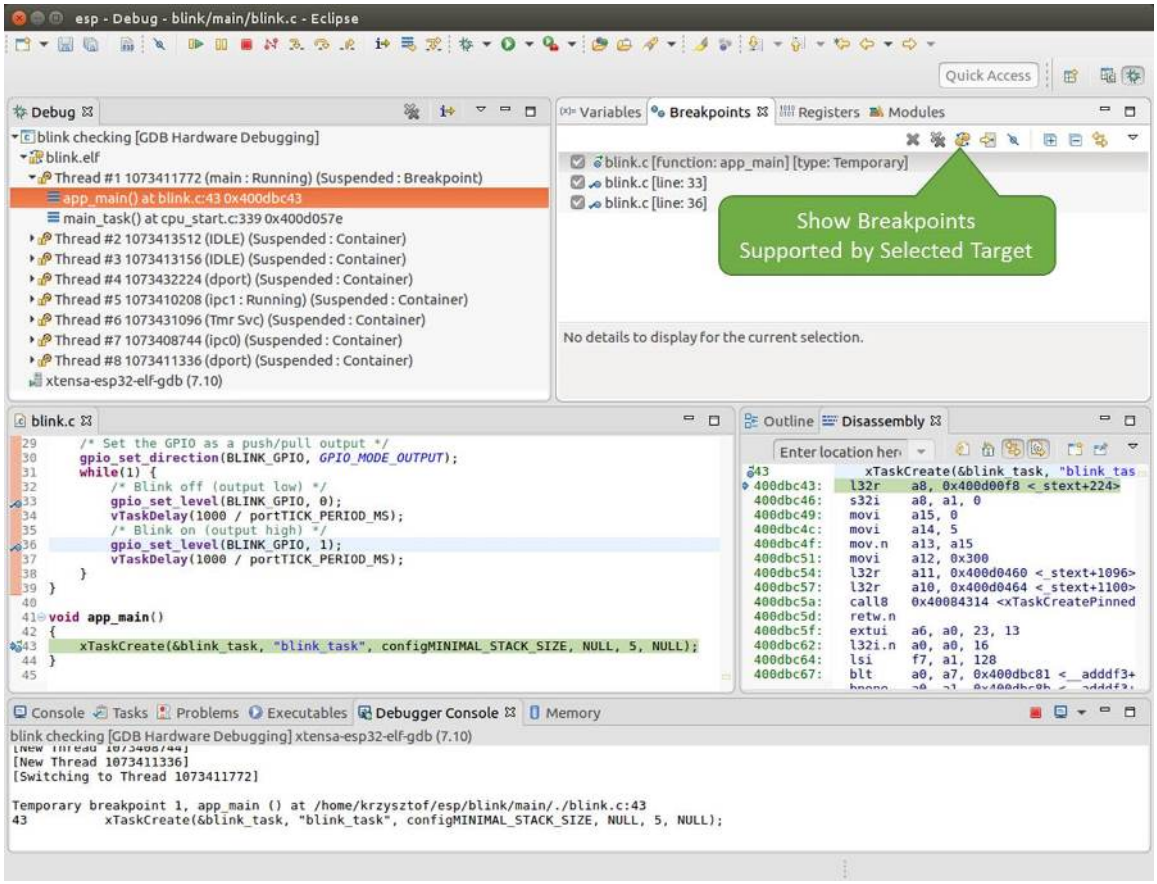


Fig. 33: Three breakpoints are set / maximum two are allowed

To check it, delete all breakpoints and click "Resume". Then click "Suspend". Application will be halted at some random point and LED will stop blinking. Debugger will expand tread and highlight the line of code where application halted.

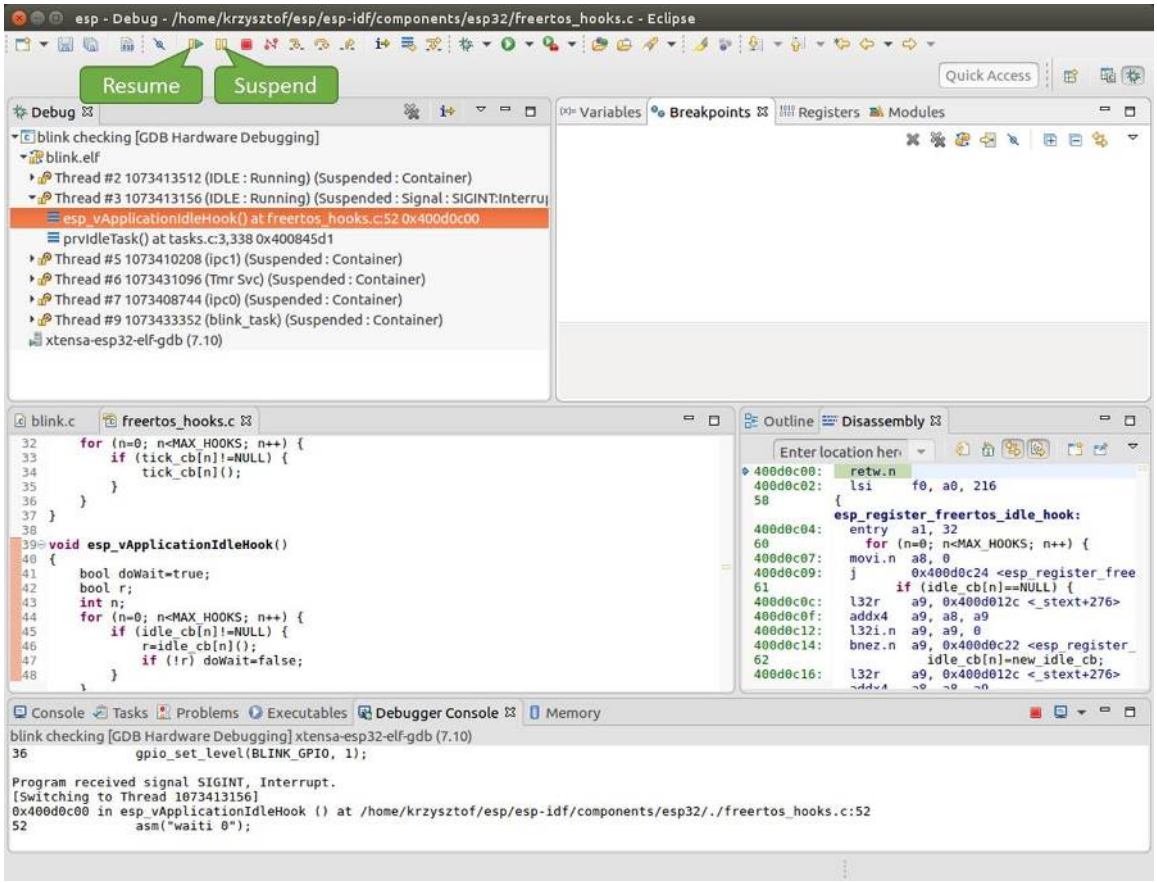


Fig. 34: Target halted manually

In particular case above, the application has been halted in line 52 of code in file `freertos_hooks.c` Now you can resume it again by pressing "Resume" button or do some debugging as discussed below.

Stepping through the code It is also possible to step through the code using "Step Into (F5)" and "Step Over (F6)" commands. The difference is that "Step Into (F5)" is entering inside subroutines calls, while "Step Over (F6)" steps over the call, treating it as a single source line.

Before being able to demonstrate this functionality, using information discussed in previous paragraph, make sure that you have only one breakpoint defined at line `36` of `blink.c`.

Resume program by entering pressing F8 and let it halt. Now press "Step Over (F6)", one by one couple of times, to see how debugger is stepping one program line at a time.

If you press "Step Into (F5)" instead, then debugger will step inside subroutine calls.

In this particular case debugger stepped inside `gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0)` and effectively moved to `gpio.c` driver code.

See *Why stepping with "next" does not bypass subroutine calls?* for potential limitation of using `next` command.

Checking and setting memory To display or set contents of memory use "Memory" tab at the bottom of "Debug" perspective.

With the "Memory" tab, we will read from and write to the memory location `0x3FF44004` labeled as `GPIO_OUT_REG` used to set and clear individual GPIO's.

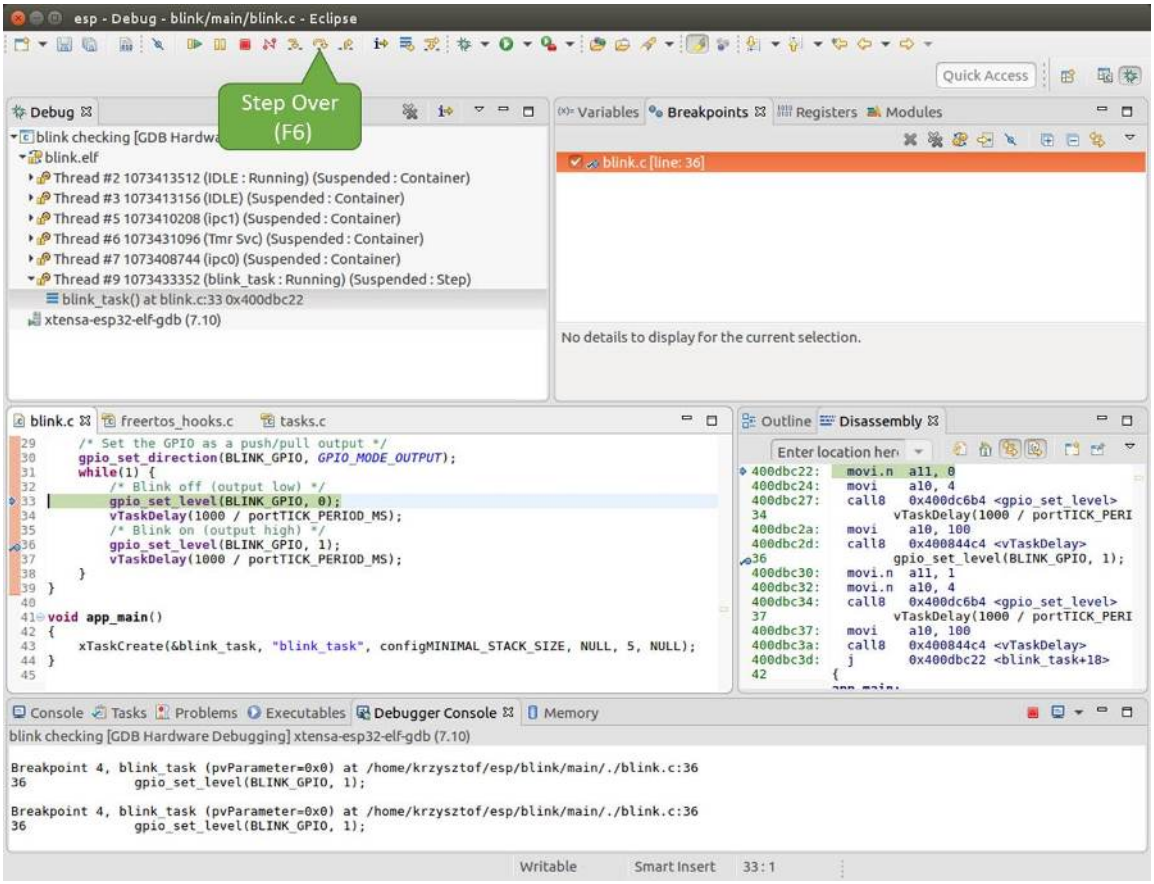


Fig. 35: Stepping through the code with "Step Over (F6)"

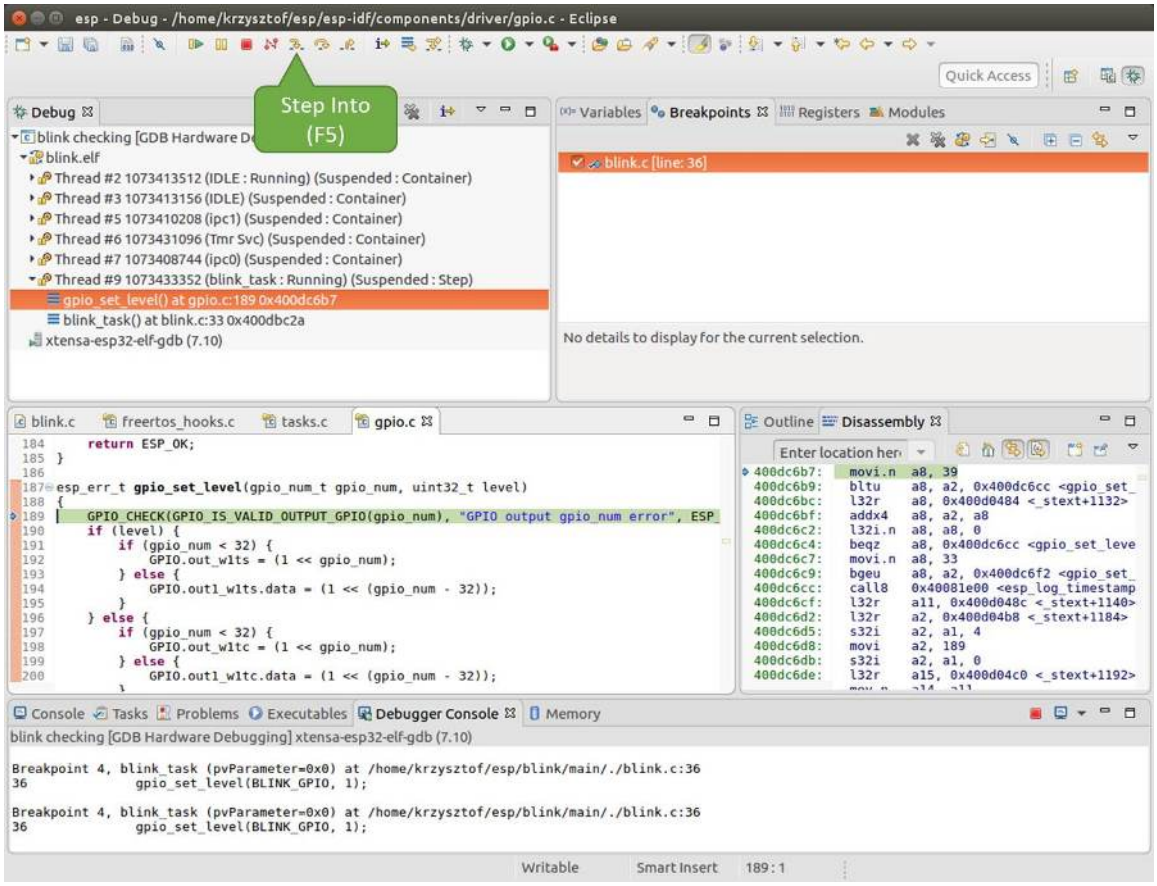


Fig. 36: Stepping through the code with "Step Into (F5)"

For more information, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *IO MUX and GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX)* [PDF].

Being in the same `blink.c` project as before, set two breakpoints right after `gpio_set_level` instruction. Click "Memory" tab and then "Add Memory Monitor" button. Enter `0x3FF44004` in provided dialog.

Now resume program by pressing F8 and observe "Monitor" tab.

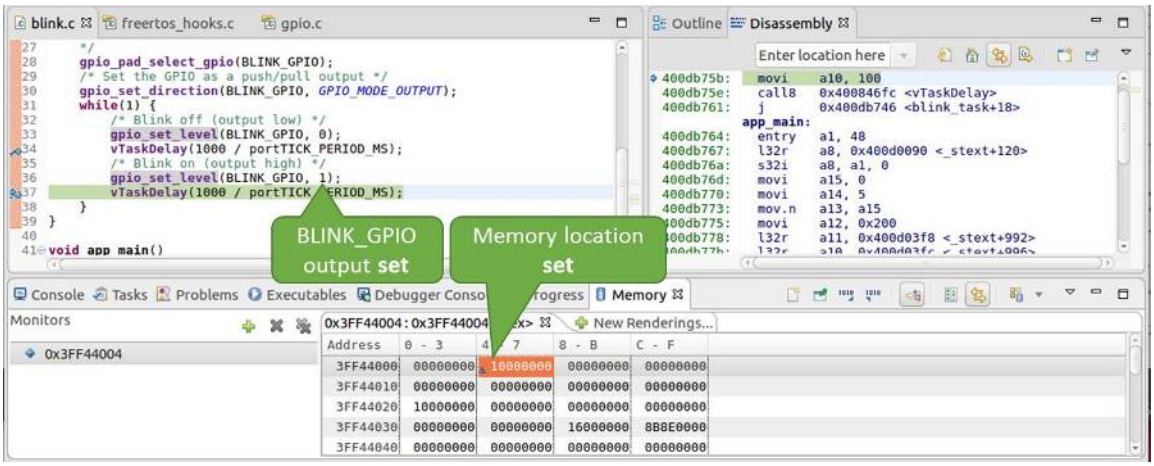


Fig. 37: Observing memory location 0x3FF44004 changing one bit to "ON"

You should see one bit being flipped over at memory location `0x3FF44004` (and LED changing the state) each time F8 is pressed.

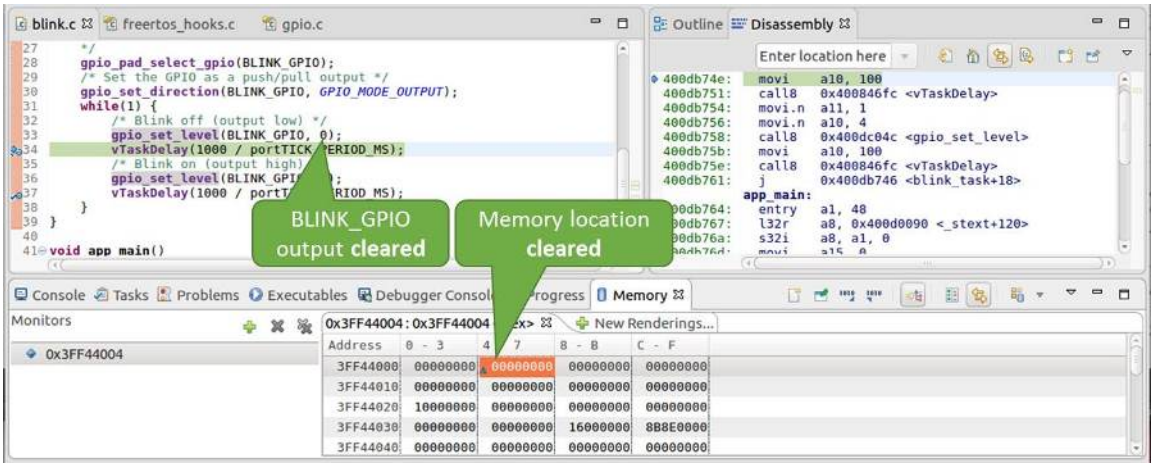


Fig. 38: Observing memory location 0x3FF44004 changing one bit to "OFF"

To set memory use the same "Monitor" tab and the same memory location. Type in alternate bit pattern as previously observed. Immediately after pressing enter you will see LED changing the state.

Watching and setting program variables A common debugging tasks is checking the value of a program variable as the program runs. To be able to demonstrate this functionality, update file `blink.c` by adding a declaration of a global variable `int i` above definition of function `blink_task`. Then add `i++` inside `while(1)` of this function to get `i` incremented on each blink.

Exit debugger, so it is not confused with new code, build and flash the code to the ESP and restart debugger. There is no need to restart OpenOCD.

Once application is halted, enter a breakpoint in the line where you put `i++`.

In next step, in the window with "Breakpoints", click the "Expressions" tab. If this tab is not visible, then add it by going to the top menu Window > Show View > Expressions. Then click "Add new expression" and enter `i`.

Resume program execution by pressing F8. Each time the program is halted you will see `i` value being incremented.

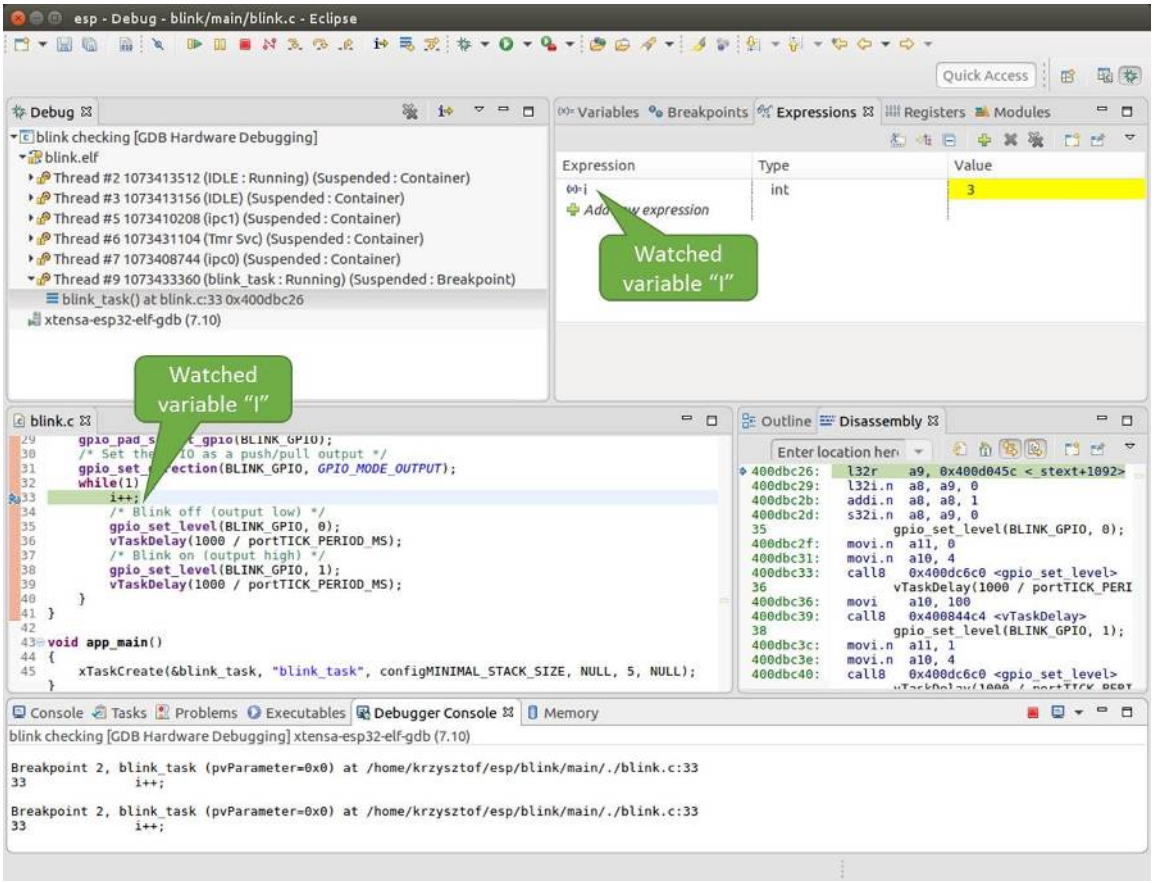


Fig. 39: Watching program variable "i"

To modify `i` enter a new number in "Value" column. After pressing "Resume (F8)" the program will keep incrementing `i` starting from the new entered number.

Setting conditional breakpoints Here comes more interesting part. You may set a breakpoint to halt the program execution, if certain condition is satisfied. Right click on the breakpoint to open a context menu and select "Breakpoint Properties". Change the selection under "Type:" to "Hardware" and enter a "Condition:" like `i == 2`.

If current value of `i` is less than `2` (change it if required) and program is resumed, it will blink LED in a loop until condition `i == 2` gets true and then finally halt.

Command Line Verify if your target is ready and loaded with get-started/blink example. Configure and start debugger following steps in section *Command Line*. Pick up where target was left by debugger, i.e. having the application halted at breakpoint established at `app_main()`:

```
Temporary breakpoint 1, app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c:43
43      xTaskCreate(&blink_task, "blink_task", configMINIMAL_STACK_SIZE, NULL, 5,␣
↪NULL);
(gdb)
```

Examples in this section

1. *Navigating through the code, call stack and threads*
2. *Setting and clearing breakpoints*
3. *Halting and resuming the application*
4. *Stepping through the code*

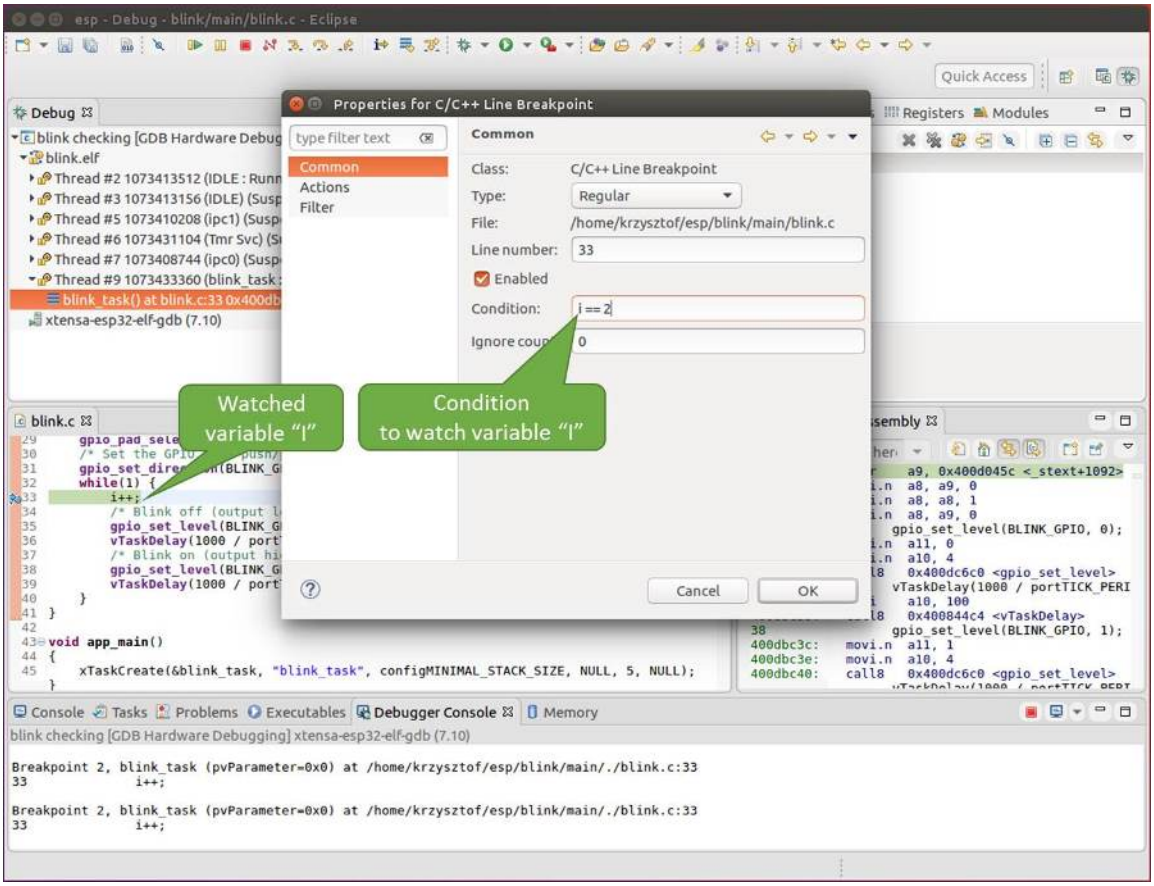


Fig. 40: Setting a conditional breakpoint

5. *Checking and setting memory*
6. *Watching and setting program variables*
7. *Setting conditional breakpoints*

Navigating through the code, call stack and threads When you see the `(gdb)` prompt, the application is halted. LED should not be blinking.

To find out where exactly the code is halted, enter `l` or `list`, and debugger will show couple of lines of code around the halt point (line 43 of code in file `blink.c`)

```
(gdb) l
38      }
39  }
40
41  void app_main()
42  {
43      xTaskCreate(&blink_task, "blink_task", configMINIMAL_STACK_SIZE, NULL, 5,␣
↪NULL);
44  }
(gdb)
```

Check how code listing works by entering, e.g. `l 30, 40` to see particular range of lines of code.

You can use `bt` or `backtrace` to see what function calls lead up to this code:

```
(gdb) bt
#0  app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c:43
#1  0x400d057e in main_task (args=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
↪esp32s2/./cpu_start.c:339
(gdb)
```

Line #0 of output provides the last function call before the application halted, i.e. `app_main ()` we have listed previously. The `app_main ()` was in turn called by function `main_task` from line 339 of code located in file `cpu_start.c`.

To get to the context of `main_task` in file `cpu_start.c`, enter `frame N`, where N = 1, because the `main_task` is listed under #1):

```
(gdb) frame 1
#1  0x400d057e in main_task (args=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
↪esp32s2/./cpu_start.c:339
339     app_main();
(gdb)
```

Enter `l` and this will reveal the piece of code that called `app_main()` (in line 339):

```
(gdb) l
334         ;
335     }
336 #endif
337     //Enable allocation in region where the startup stacks were located.
338     heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps();
339     app_main();
340     vTaskDelete(NULL);
341 }
342
(gdb)
```

By listing some lines before, you will see the function name `main_task` we have been looking for:

```
(gdb) l 326, 341
326 static void main_task(void* args)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
327 {
328     // Now that the application is about to start, disable boot watchdogs
329     REG_CLR_BIT(TIMG_WDTCONFIG0_REG(0), TIMG_WDT_FLASHBOOT_MOD_EN_S);
330     REG_CLR_BIT(RTC_CNTL_WDTCONFIG0_REG, RTC_CNTL_WDT_FLASHBOOT_MOD_EN);
331 #if !CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE
332     // Wait for FreeRTOS initialization to finish on APP CPU, before replacing␣
↪its startup stack
333     while (port_xSchedulerRunning[1] == 0) {
334         ;
335     }
336 #endif
337     //Enable allocation in region where the startup stacks were located.
338     heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps();
339     app_main();
340     vTaskDelete(NULL);
341 }
(gdb)
```

To see the other code, enter `i threads`. This will show the list of threads running on target:

```
(gdb) i threads
  Id   Target Id         Frame
  8    Thread 1073411336 (dport) 0x400d0848 in dport_access_init_core (arg=
↪<optimized out>)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/esp32s2/./dport_access.c:170
  7    Thread 1073408744 (ipc0) xQueueGenericReceive (xQueue=0x3ffae694,␣
↪pvBuffer=0x0, xTicksToWait=1644638200,
    xJustPeeking=0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/./queue.
↪c:1452
  6    Thread 1073431096 (Tmr Svc) prvTimerTask (pvParameters=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/./timers.c:445
  5    Thread 1073410208 (ipc1 : Running) 0x4000bfea in ?? ()
  4    Thread 1073432224 (dport) dport_access_init_core (arg=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/esp32s2/./dport_access.c:150
  3    Thread 1073413156 (IDLE) prvIdleTask (pvParameters=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/./tasks.c:3282
  2    Thread 1073413512 (IDLE) prvIdleTask (pvParameters=0x0)
    at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/./tasks.c:3282
* 1    Thread 1073411772 (main : Running) app_main () at /home/user-name/esp/blink/
↪main/./blink.c:43
(gdb)
```

The thread list shows the last function calls per each thread together with the name of C source file if available.

You can navigate to specific thread by entering `thread N`, where `N` is the thread Id. To see how it works go to thread thread 5:

```
(gdb) thread 5
[Switching to thread 5 (Thread 1073410208)]
#0  0x4000bfea in ?? ()
(gdb)
```

Then check the backtrace:

```
(gdb) bt
#0  0x4000bfea in ?? ()
#1  0x40083a85 in vPortCPUReleaseMutex (mux=<optimized out>) at /home/user-name/
↪esp/esp-idf/components/freertos/./port.c:415
#2  0x40083fc8 in vTaskSwitchContext () at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
↪freertos/./tasks.c:2846
#3  0x4008532b in _frxt_dispatch ()
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
#4  0x4008395c in xPortStartScheduler () at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/components/
↪freertos/./port.c:222
#5  0x4000000c in ?? ()
#6  0x4000000c in ?? ()
#7  0x4000000c in ?? ()
#8  0x4000000c in ?? ()
(gdb)
```

As you see, the backtrace may contain several entries. This will let you check what exact sequence of function calls lead to the code where the target halted. Question marks `??` instead of a function name indicate that application is available only in binary format, without any source file in C language. The value like `0x4000bfea` is the memory address of the function call.

Using `bt`, `i threads`, `thread N` and `list` commands we are now able to navigate through the code of entire application. This comes handy when stepping through the code and working with breakpoints and will be discussed below.

Setting and clearing breakpoints When debugging, we would like to be able to stop the application at critical lines of code and then examine the state of specific variables, memory and registers / peripherals. To do so we are using breakpoints. They provide a convenient way to quickly get to and halt the application at specific line.

Let's establish two breakpoints when the state of LED changes. Basing on code listing above this happens at lines 33 and 36. Breakpoints may be established using command `break M` where M is the code line number:

```
(gdb) break 33
Breakpoint 2 at 0x400db6f6: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c, line 33.
(gdb) break 36
Breakpoint 3 at 0x400db704: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c, line 36.
```

If you new enter `c`, the processor will run and halt at a breakpoint. Entering `c` another time will make it run again, halt on second breakpoint, and so on:

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB6F6 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8

Breakpoint 2, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:33
33          gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0);
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB6F8 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB704 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D10D8

Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:36
36          gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 1);
(gdb)
```

You will be also able to see that LED is changing the state only if you resume program execution by entering `c`.

To examine how many breakpoints are set and where, use command `info break`:

```
(gdb) info break
Num     Type           Disp Enb Address    What
2       breakpoint     keep y   0x400db6f6 in blink_task at /home/user-name/esp/
↪blink/main/./blink.c:33
    breakpoint already hit 1 time
3       breakpoint     keep y   0x400db704 in blink_task at /home/user-name/esp/
↪blink/main/./blink.c:36
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    breakpoint already hit 1 time
(gdb)
```

Please note that breakpoint numbers (listed under `Num`) start with `2`. This is because first breakpoint has been already established at function `app_main()` by running command `thb app_main` on debugger launch. As it was a temporary breakpoint, it has been automatically deleted and now is not listed anymore.

To remove breakpoints enter `delete N` command (in short `d N`), where `N` is the breakpoint number:

```
(gdb) delete 1
No breakpoint number 1.
(gdb) delete 2
(gdb)
```

Read more about breakpoints under *Breakpoints and watchpoints available* and *What else should I know about breakpoints?*

Halting and resuming the application When debugging, you may resume application and enter code waiting for some event or staying in infinite loop without any break points defined. In such case, to go back to debugging mode, you can break program execution manually by entering Ctrl+C.

To check it delete all breakpoints and enter `c` to resume application. Then enter Ctrl+C. Application will be halted at some random point and LED will stop blinking. Debugger will print the following:

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
^CTarget halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400D0C00             APP_CPU: PC=0x400D0C00 (active)
[New Thread 1073433352]

Program received signal SIGINT, Interrupt.
[Switching to Thread 1073413512]
0x400d0c00 in esp_vApplicationIdleHook () at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/
↪components/esp32s2/./freertos_hooks.c:52
52          asm("waiti 0");
(gdb)
```

In particular case above, the application has been halted in line 52 of code in file `freertos_hooks.c`. Now you can resume it again by enter `c` or do some debugging as discussed below.

Note: In MSYS2 shell Ctrl+C does not halt the target but exists debugger. To resolve this issue consider debugging with *Eclipse* or check a workaround under http://www.mingw.org/wiki/Workaround_for_GDB_Ctrl_C_Interrupt.

Stepping through the code It is also possible to step through the code using `step` and `next` commands (in short `s` and `n`). The difference is that `step` is entering inside subroutines calls, while `next` steps over the call, treating it as a single source line.

To demonstrate this functionality, using command `break` and `delete` discussed in previous paragraph, make sure that you have only one breakpoint defined at line `36` of `blink.c`:

```
(gdb) info break
Num     Type           Disp Enb Address    What
3       breakpoint     keep y   0x400db704 in blink_task at /home/user-name/esp/
↪blink/main/./blink.c:36
    breakpoint already hit 1 time
(gdb)
```

Resume program by entering `c` and let it halt:

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB754 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128

Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:36
36          gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 1);
(gdb)
```

Then enter `n` couple of times to see how debugger is stepping one program line at a time:

```
(gdb) n
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB756 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB758 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DC04C (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB75B (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
37          vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
(gdb) n
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB75E (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400846FC (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB761 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB746 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
33          gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0);
(gdb)
```

If you enter `s` instead, then debugger will step inside subroutine calls:

```
(gdb) s
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB748 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB74B (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DC04C (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DC04F (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
gpio_set_level (gpio_num=GPIO_NUM_4, level=0) at /home/user-name/esp/esp-idf/
↪components/driver/./gpio.c:183
183     GPIO_CHECK(GPIO_IS_VALID_OUTPUT_GPIO(gpio_num), "GPIO output gpio_num error
↪", ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG);
(gdb)
```

In this particular case debugger stepped inside `gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0)` and effectively moved to `gpio.c` driver code.

See *Why stepping with "next" does not bypass subroutine calls?* for potential limitation of using `next` command.

Checking and setting memory Displaying the contents of memory is done with command `x`. With additional parameters you may vary the format and count of memory locations displayed. Run `help x` to see more details. Companion command to `x` is `set` that let you write values to the memory.

We will demonstrate how `x` and `set` work by reading from and writing to the memory location `0x3FF44004` labeled as `GPIO_OUT_REG` used to set and clear individual GPIO's.

For more information, see *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual > IO MUX and GPIO Matrix (GPIO, IO_MUX)* [PDF].

Being in the same `blink.c` project as before, set two breakpoints right after `gpio_set_level` instruction. Enter two times `c` to get to the break point followed by `x /1wx 0x3FF44004` to display contents of `GPIO_OUT_REG` memory location:

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB75E (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB74E (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
Breakpoint 2, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:34
34          vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
(gdb) x /1wx 0x3FF44004
0x3ff44004: 0x00000000
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB751 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB75B (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D1128

Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:37
37          vTaskDelay(1000 / portTICK_PERIOD_MS);
(gdb) x /1wx 0x3FF44004
0x3ff44004: 0x00000010
(gdb)
```

If your are blinking LED connected to GPIO4, then you should see fourth bit being flipped each time the LED changes the state:

```
0x3ff44004: 0x00000000
...
0x3ff44004: 0x00000010
```

Now, when the LED is off, that corresponds to `0x3ff44004: 0x00000000` being displayed, try using `set` command to set this bit by writting `0x00000010` to the same memory location:

```
(gdb) x /1wx 0x3FF44004
0x3ff44004: 0x00000000
(gdb) set {unsigned int}0x3FF44004=0x000010
```

You should see the LED to turn on immediately after entering `set {unsigned int}0x3FF44004=0x000010` command.

Watching and setting program variables A common debugging tasks is checking the value of a program variable as the program runs. To be able to demonstrate this functionality, update file `blink.c` by adding a declaration of a global variable `int i` above definition of function `blink_task`. Then add `i++` inside `while(1)` of this function to get `i` incremented on each blink.

Exit debugger, so it is not confused with new code, build and flash the code to the ESP and restart debugger. There is no need to restart OpenOCD.

Once application is halted, enter the command `watch i`:

```
(gdb) watch i
Hardware watchpoint 2: i
(gdb)
```

This will insert so called "watchpoint" in each place of code where variable `i` is being modified. Now enter `continue` to resume the application and observe it being halted:

```
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB751 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D0811
[New Thread 1073432196]

Program received signal SIGTRAP, Trace/breakpoint trap.
[Switching to Thread 1073432196]
0x400db751 in blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:33
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
33          i++;
(gdb)
```

Resume application couple more times so `i` gets incremented. Now you can enter `print i` (in short `p i`) to check the current value of `i`:

```
(gdb) p i
$1 = 3
(gdb)
```

To modify the value of `i` use `set` command as below (you can then print it out to check if it has been indeed changed):

```
(gdb) set var i = 0
(gdb) p i
$3 = 0
(gdb)
```

You may have up to two watchpoints, see *Breakpoints and watchpoints available*.

Setting conditional breakpoints Here comes more interesting part. You may set a breakpoint to halt the program execution, if certain condition is satisfied. Delete existing breakpoints and try this:

```
(gdb) break blink.c:34 if (i == 2)
Breakpoint 3 at 0x400db753: file /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./blink.c, line 34.
(gdb)
```

Above command sets conditional breakpoint to halt program execution in line `34` of `blink.c` if `i == 2`.

If current value of `i` is less than `2` and program is resumed, it will blink LED in a loop until condition `i == 2` gets true and then finally halt:

```
(gdb) set var i = 0
(gdb) c
Continuing.
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB755 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB753 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB755 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C
Target halted. PRO_CPU: PC=0x400DB753 (active)    APP_CPU: PC=0x400D112C

Breakpoint 3, blink_task (pvParameter=0x0) at /home/user-name/esp/blink/main/./
↪blink.c:34
34          gpio_set_level(BLINK_GPIO, 0);
(gdb)
```

Obtaining help on commands Commands presented so for should provide are very basis and intended to let you quickly get started with JTAG debugging. Check help what are the other commands at you disposal. To obtain help on syntax and functionality of particular command, being at `(gdb)` prompt type `help` and command name:

```
(gdb) help next
Step program, proceeding through subroutine calls.
Usage: next [N]
Unlike "step", if the current source line calls a subroutine,
this command does not enter the subroutine, but instead steps over
the call, in effect treating it as a single source line.
(gdb)
```

By typing just `help`, you will get top level list of command classes, to aid you drilling down to more details. Optionally refer to available GDB cheat sheets, for instance https://darkdust.net/files/GDB%20Cheat%20Sheet.pdf. Good to have as a reference (even if not all commands are applicable in an embedded environment).

Ending debugger session To quit debugger enter `q`:

```
(gdb) q
A debugging session is active.

    Inferior 1 [Remote target] will be detached.

Quit anyway? (y or n) y
Detaching from program: /home/user-name/esp/blink/build/blink.elf, Remote target
Ending remote debugging.
user-name@computer-name:~/esp/blink$
```

- *Using Debugger*
- *Debugging Examples*
- *Tips and Quirks*
- *Application Level Tracing library*
- Introduction to ESP-Prog Board

4.18 Linker Script Generation

4.18.1 Overview

There are several *memory regions* where code and data can be placed. Code and read-only data are placed by default in flash, writable data in RAM, etc. However, it is sometimes necessary to change these default placements.

For example, it may be necessary to place critical code in RAM for performance reasons or to place code in RTC memory for use in a wake stub or the ULP coprocessor.

With the linker script generation mechanism, it is possible to specify these placements at the component level within ESP-IDF. The component presents information on how it would like to place its symbols, objects or the entire archive. During build, the information presented by the components are collected, parsed and processed; and the placement rules generated is used to link the app.

4.18.2 Quick Start

This section presents a guide for quickly placing code/data to RAM and RTC memory - placements ESP-IDF provides out-of-the-box.

For this guide, suppose we have the following:

```
- components/
                - my_component/
                                - CMakeLists.txt
                                - component.mk
                                - Kconfig
                                - src/
                                      - my_src1.c
                                      - my_src2.c
                                      - my_src3.c
                                - my_linker_fragment_file.lf
```

- a component named `my_component` that is archived as library `libmy_component.a` during build
- three source files archived under the library, `my_src1.c`, `my_src2.c` and `my_src3.c` which are compiled as `my_src1.o`, `my_src2.o` and `my_src3.o`, respectively

- under `my_src1.o`, the function `my_function1` is defined; under `my_src2.o`, the function `my_function2` is defined
- there is bool-type config `PERFORMANCE_MODE` (y/n) and int type config `PERFORMANCE_LEVEL` (with range 0-3) in `my_component`'s Kconfig

Creating and Specifying a Linker Fragment File

Before anything else, a linker fragment file needs to be created. A linker fragment file is simply a text file with a `.lf` extension upon which the desired placements will be written. After creating the file, it is then necessary to present it to the build system. The instructions for the build systems supported by ESP-IDF are as follows:

Make In the component's `component.mk` file, set the variable `COMPONENT_ADD_LDFRAGMENTS` to the path of the created linker fragment file. The path can either be an absolute path or a relative path from the component directory.

```
COMPONENT_ADD_LDFRAGMENTS += my_linker_fragment_file.lf
```

CMake In the component's `CMakeLists.txt` file, specify argument `LDFRAGMENTS` in the `idf_component_register` call. The value of `LDFRAGMENTS` can either be an absolute path or a relative path from the component directory to the created linker fragment file.

```
# file paths relative to CMakeLists.txt
idf_component_register(...
                       LDFRAGMENTS "path/to/linker_fragment_file.lf" "path/to/
↪another_linker_fragment_file.lf"
                       ...
                       )
```

Specifying placements

It is possible to specify placements at the following levels of granularity:

- object file (`.obj` or `.o` files)
- symbol (function/variable)
- archive (`.a` files)

Placing object files Suppose the entirety of `my_src1.o` is performance-critical, so it is desirable to place it in RAM. On the other hand, the entirety of `my_src2.o` contains symbols needed coming out of deep sleep, so it needs to be put under RTC memory. In the the linker fragment file, we can write:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    my_src1 (noflash)      # places all my_src1 code/read-only data under IRAM/DRAM
    my_src2 (rtc)          # places all my_src2 code/ data and read-only data under␣
↪RTC fast memory/RTC slow memory
```

What happens to `my_src3.o`? Since it is not specified, default placements are used for `my_src3.o`. More on default placements *here*.

Placing symbols Continuing our example, suppose that among functions defined under `object1.o`, only `my_function1` is performance-critical; and under `object2.o`, only `my_function2` needs to execute after the chip comes out of deep sleep. This could be accomplished by writing:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    my_src1:my_function1 (noflash)
    my_src2:my_function2 (rtc)
```

The default placements are used for the rest of the functions in `my_src1.o` and `my_src2.o` and the entire `object3.o`. Something similar can be achieved for placing data by writing the variable name instead of the function name, like so:

```
my_src1:my_variable (noflash)
```

Warning: There are *limitations* in placing code/data at symbol granularity. In order to ensure proper placements, an alternative would be to group relevant code and data into source files, and *use object-granularity placements*.

Placing entire archive In this example, suppose that the entire component archive needs to be placed in RAM. This can be written as:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    * (noflash)
```

Similarly, this places the entire component in RTC memory:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    * (rtc)
```

Configuration-dependent placements Suppose that the entire component library should only have special placement when a certain condition is true; for example, when `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_MODE == y`. This could be written as:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    if PERFORMANCE_MODE = y:
        * (noflash)
    else:
        * (default)
```

For a more complex config-dependent placement, suppose the following requirements: when `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 1`, only `object1.o` is put in RAM; when `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 2`, `object1.o` and `object2.o`; and when `CONFIG_PERFORMANCE_LEVEL == 3` all object files under the archive are to be put into RAM. When these three are false however, put entire library in RTC memory. This scenario is a bit contrived, but, it can be written as:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL = 1:
        my_src1 (noflash)
    elif PERFORMANCE_LEVEL = 2:
        my_src1 (noflash)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        my_src2 (noflash)
    elif PERFORMANCE_LEVEL = 3:
        my_src1 (noflash)
        my_src2 (noflash)
        my_src3 (noflash)
    else:
        * (rtc)
```

Nesting condition-checking is also possible. The following is equivalent to the snippet above:

```
[mapping:my_component]
archive: libmy_component.a
entries:
    if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL <= 3 && PERFORMANCE_LEVEL > 0:
        if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL >= 1:
            object1 (noflash)
            if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL >= 2:
                object2 (noflash)
                if PERFORMANCE_LEVEL >= 3:
                    object2 (noflash)
    else:
        * (rtc)
```

The 'default' placements

Up until this point, the term 'default placements' has been mentioned as fallback placements when the placement rules `rtc` and `noflash` are not specified. It is important to note that the tokens `noflash` or `rtc` are not merely keywords, but are actually entities called fragments, specifically *schemes*.

In the same manner as `rtc` and `noflash` are schemes, there exists a `default` scheme which defines what the default placement rules should be. As the name suggests, it is where code and data are usually placed, i.e. code/constants is placed in flash, variables placed in RAM, etc. More on the default scheme *here*.

Note: For an example of an ESP-IDF component using the linker script generation mechanism, see freertos/CMakeLists.txt. `freertos` uses this to place its object files to the instruction RAM for performance reasons.

This marks the end of the quick start guide. The following text discusses the internals of the mechanism in a little bit more detail. The following sections should be helpful in creating custom placements or modifying default behavior.

4.18.3 Linker Script Generation Internals

Linking is the last step in the process of turning C/C++ source files into an executable. It is performed by the toolchain's linker, and accepts linker scripts which specify code/data placements, among other things. With the linker script generation mechanism, this process is no different, except that the linker script passed to the linker is dynamically generated from: (1) the collected *linker fragment files* and (2) *linker script template*.

Note: The tool that implements the linker script generation mechanism lives under tools/ldgen.

Linker Fragment Files

As mentioned in the quick start guide, fragment files are simple text files with the `.lf` extension containing the desired placements. This is a simplified description of what fragment files contain, however. What fragment files actually contain are 'fragments'. Fragments are entities which contain pieces of information which, when put

together, form placement rules that tell where to place sections of object files in the output binary. There are three types of fragments: *sections*, *scheme* and *mapping*.

Grammar The three fragment types share a common grammar:

```
[type:name]
key: value
key:
    value
    value
    value
    ...
```

- type: Corresponds to the fragment type, can either be `sections`, `scheme` or `mapping`.
- name: The name of the fragment, should be unique for the specified fragment type.
- key, value: Contents of the fragment; each fragment type may support different keys and different grammars for the key values.

Note: In cases where multiple fragments of the same type and name are encountered, an exception is thrown.

Note: The only valid characters for fragment names and keys are alphanumeric characters and underscore.

Condition Checking

Condition checking enable the linker script generation to be configuration-aware. Depending on whether expressions involving configuration values are true or not, a particular set of values for a key can be used. The evaluation uses `eval_string` from kconfiglib package and adheres to its required syntax and limitations. Supported operators are as follows:

- **comparison**
  - LessThan `<`
  - LessThanOrEqualTo `<=`
  - MoreThan `>`
  - MoreThanOrEqualTo `>=`
  - Equal `=`
  - NotEqual `!=`
- **logical**
  - Or `||`
  - And `&&`
  - Negation `!`
- **grouping**
  - Parenthesis `()`

Condition checking behaves as you would expect an `if...elseif/elif...else` block in other languages. Condition-checking is possible for both key values and entire fragments. The two sample fragments below are equivalent:

```
# Value for keys is dependent on config
[type:name]
key_1:
    if CONDITION = y:
        value_1
    else:
        value_2
key_2:
    if CONDITION = y:
        value_a
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    else:
        value_b
```

```
# Entire fragment definition is dependent on config
if CONDITION = y:
    [type:name]
    key_1:
        value_1
    key_2:
        value_b
else:
    [type:name]
    key_1:
        value_2
    key_2:
        value_b
```

Comments

Comment in linker fragment files begin with `#`. Like in other languages, comment are used to provide helpful descriptions and documentation and are ignored during processing.

Compatibility with ESP-IDF v3.x Linker Script Fragment Files ESP-IDF v4.0 brings some changes to the linker script fragment file grammar:

- indentation is enforced and improperly indented fragment files generate a parse exception; this was not enforced in the old version but previous documentation and examples demonstrates properly indented grammar
- move to `if...elif...else` structure for conditionals, with the ability to nest checks and place entire fragments themselves inside conditionals
- mapping fragments now requires a name like other fragment types

Linker script generator should be able to parse ESP-IDF v3.x linker fragment files that are indented properly (as demonstrated by the ESP-IDF v3.x version of this document). Backward compatibility with the previous mapping fragment grammar (optional name and the old grammar for conditionals) has also been retained but with a deprecation warning. Users should switch to the newer grammar discussed in this document as support for the old grammar is planned to be removed in the future.

Note that linker fragment files using the new ESP-IDF v4.0 grammar is not supported on ESP-IDF v3.x, however.

Types Sections

Sections fragments defines a list of object file sections that the GCC compiler emits. It may be a default section (e.g. `.text`, `.data`) or it may be user defined section through the `__attribute__` keyword.

The use of an optional '`+`' indicates the inclusion of the section in the list, as well as sections that start with it. This is the preferred method over listing both explicitly.

```
[sections:name]
entries:
    .section+
    .section
    ...
```

Example:

```
# Non-preferred
[sections:text]
entries:
    .text
    .text.*
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    .literal
    .literal.*

# Preferred, equivalent to the one above
[sections:text]
entries:
    .text+              # means .text and .text.*
    .literal+           # means .literal and .literal.*
```

Scheme

Scheme fragments define what `target` a sections fragment is assigned to.

```
[scheme:name]
entries:
    sections -> target
    sections -> target
    ...
```

Example:

```
[scheme:noflash]
entries:
    text -> iram0_text          # the entries under the sections fragment named␣
↪text will go to iram0_text
    rodata -> dram0_data        # the entries under the sections fragment named␣
↪rodata will go to dram0_data
```

The `default` scheme

There exists a special scheme with the name `default`. This scheme is special because catch-all placement rules are generated from its entries. This means that, if one of its entries is `text -> flash_text`, the placement rule will be generated for the target `flash_text`.

```
*(.literal .literal.* .text .text.*)
```

These catch-all rules then effectively serve as fallback rules for those whose mappings were not specified.

The `default scheme` is defined in esp_system/app.lf. The `noflash` and `rtc` scheme fragments which are built-in schemes referenced in the quick start guide are also defined in this file.

Mapping

Mapping fragments define what scheme fragment to use for mappable entities, i.e. object files, function names, variable names, archives.

```
[mapping:name]
archive: archive                # output archive file name, as built (i.e. libxxx.
↪a)
entries:
    object:symbol (scheme)      # symbol granularity
    object (scheme)             # object granularity
    * (scheme)                  # archive granularity
```

There are three levels of placement granularity:

- symbol: The object file name and symbol name are specified. The symbol name can be a function name or a variable name.
- object: Only the object file name is specified.
- archive: `*` is specified, which is a short-hand for all the object files under the archive.

To know what an entry means, let us expand a sample object-granularity placement:

```
object (scheme)
```

Then expanding the scheme fragment from its entries definitions, we have:

```
object (sections -> target,
        sections -> target,
        ...)
```

Expanding the sections fragment with its entries definition:

```
object (.section,      # given this object file
        .section,      # put its sections listed here at this
        ... -> target, # target

        .section,
        .section,      # same should be done for these sections
        ... -> target,

        ...)           # and so on
```

Example:

```
[mapping:map]
archive: libfreertos.a
entries:
    * (noflash)
```

Aside from the entity and scheme, flags can also be specified in an entry. The following flags are supported (note: <> = argument name, [] = optional):

1. ALIGN(<alignment>[, pre, post])
   Align the placement by the amount specified in `alignment`. Generates
2. SORT([<sort_by_first>, <sort_by_second>])
   Emits `SORT_BY_NAME`, `SORT_BY_ALIGNMENT`, `SORT_BY_INIT_PRIORITY` or `SORT` in the input section description.
   Possible values for `sort_by_first` and `sort_by_second` are: `name`, `alignment`, `init_priority`.
   If both `sort_by_first` and `sort_by_second` are not specified, the input sections are sorted by name. If both are specified, then the nested sorting follows the same rules discussed in https://sourceware.org/binutils/docs/ld/Input-Section-Wildcards.html.
3. KEEP()
   Prevent the linker from discarding the placement by surrounding the input section description with KEEP command. See https://sourceware.org/binutils/docs/ld/Input-Section-Keep.html for more details.

4.SURROUND(<name>)

Generate symbols before and after the placement. The generated symbols follow the naming `_<name>_start` and `_<name>_end`. For example, if `name` == sym1,

When adding flags, the specific `section -> target` in the scheme needs to be specified. For multiple `section -> target`, use a comma as a separator. For example,

```
# Notes:
# A. semicolon after entity-scheme
# B. comma before section2 -> target2
# C. section1 -> target1 and section2 -> target2 should be defined in entries of␣
↪scheme1
entity1 (scheme1);
    section1 -> target1 KEEP() ALIGN(4, pre, post),
    section2 -> target2 SURROUND(sym) ALIGN(4, post) SORT()
```

Putting it all together, the following mapping fragment, for example,

```
[mapping:name]
archive: lib1.a
entries:
    obj1 (noflash);
        rodata -> dram0_data KEEP() SORT() ALIGN(8) SURROUND(my_sym)
```

generates an output on the linker script:

```
. = ALIGN(8)
_my_sym_start = ABSOLUTE(.)
KEEP(lib1.a:obj1.*( SORT(.rodata) SORT(.rodata.*) ))
_my_sym_end = ABSOLUTE(.)
```

Note that ALIGN and SURROUND, as mentioned in the flag descriptions, are order sensitive. Therefore, if for the same mapping fragment these two are switched, the following is generated instead:

```
_my_sym_start = ABSOLUTE(.)
. = ALIGN(8)
KEEP(lib1.a:obj1.*( SORT(.rodata) SORT(.rodata.*) ))
_my_sym_end = ABSOLUTE(.)
```

On Symbol-Granularity Placements Symbol granularity placements is possible due to compiler flags `-ffunction-sections` and `-fdata-sections`. ESP-IDF compiles with these flags by default. If the user opts to remove these flags, then the symbol-granularity placements will not work. Furthermore, even with the presence of these flags, there are still other limitations to keep in mind due to the dependence on the compiler's emitted output sections.

For example, with `-ffunction-sections`, separate sections are emitted for each function; with section names predictably constructed i.e. `.text.{func_name}` and `.literal.{func_name}`. This is not the case for string literals within the function, as they go to pooled or generated section names.

With `-fdata-sections`, for global scope data the compiler predictably emits either `.data.{var_name}`, `.rodata.{var_name}` or `.bss.{var_name}`; and so `Type I` mapping entry works for these. However, this is not the case for static data declared in function scope, as the generated section name is a result of mangling the variable name with some other information.

Linker Script Template

The linker script template is the skeleton in which the generated placement rules are put into. It is an otherwise ordinary linker script, with a specific marker syntax that indicates where the generated placement rules are placed.

To reference the placement rules collected under a `target` token, the following syntax is used:

```
mapping[target]
```

Example:

The example below is an excerpt from a possible linker script template. It defines an output section `.iram0.text`, and inside is a marker referencing the target `iram0_text`.

```
.iram0.text :
{
    /* Code marked as runnning out of IRAM */
    _iram_text_start = ABSOLUTE(.);

    /* Marker referencing iram0_text */
    mapping[iram0_text]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    _iram_text_end = ABSOLUTE(.);
} > iram0_0_seg
```

Suppose the generator collected the fragment definitions below:

```
[sections:text]
    .text+
    .literal+

[sections:iram]
    .iram1+

[scheme:default]
entries:
    text -> flash_text
    iram -> iram0_text

[scheme:noflash]
entries:
    text -> iram0_text

[mapping:freertos]
archive: libfreertos.a
entries:
    * (noflash)
```

Then the corresponding excerpt from the generated linker script will be as follows:

```
.iram0.text :
{
    /* Code marked as runnning out of IRAM */
    _iram_text_start = ABSOLUTE(.);

    /* Placement rules generated from the processed fragments, placed where the␣
↪marker was in the template */
    *(.iram1 .iram1.*)
    *libfreertos.a:(.literal .text .literal.* .text.*)

    _iram_text_end = ABSOLUTE(.);
} > iram0_0_seg
```

`*libfreertos.a:(.literal .text .literal.* .text.*)`

Rule generated from the entry `* (noflash)` of the `freertos` mapping fragment. All `text` sections of all object files under the archive `libfreertos.a` will be collected under the target `iram0_text` (as per the `noflash` scheme) and placed wherever in the template `iram0_text` is referenced by a marker.

`*(.iram1 .iram1.*)`

Rule generated from the default scheme entry `iram -> iram0_text`. Since the default scheme specifies an `iram -> iram0_text` entry, it too is placed wherever `iram0_text` is referenced by a marker. Since it is a rule generated from the default scheme, it comes first among all other rules collected under the same target name.

The linker script template currently used is esp32s2/ld/esp32s2.project.ld.in, specified by the `esp32s2` component; the generated output script is put under its build directory.

4.19 Memory Types

ESP32-S2 chip has multiple memory types and flexible memory mapping features. This section describes how ESP-IDF uses these features by default.

ESP-IDF distinguishes between instruction memory bus (IRAM, IROM, RTC FAST memory) and data memory bus (DRAM, DROM). Instruction memory is executable, and can only be read or written via 4-byte aligned words. Data memory is not executable and can be accessed via individual byte operations. For more information about the different memory buses consult the ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *System and Memory* [PDF].

4.19.1 DRAM (Data RAM)

Non-constant static data (.data) and zero-initialized data (.bss) is placed by the linker into Internal SRAM as data memory. Remaining space in this region is used for the runtime heap.

Note: The maximum statically allocated DRAM size is reduced by the *IRAM (Instruction RAM)* size of the compiled application. The available heap memory at runtime is reduced by the total static IRAM and DRAM usage of the application.

Constant data may also be placed into DRAM, for example if it is used in an non-flash-safe ISR (see explanation under *How to place code in IRAM*).

"noinit" DRAM

The macro `__NOINIT_ATTR` can be used as attribute to place data into `.noinit` section. The values placed into this section will not be initialized at startup and should keep its value after software restart.

Example:

```
__NOINIT_ATTR uint32_t noinit_data;
```

4.19.2 IRAM (Instruction RAM)

ESP-IDF allocates part of Internal SRAM region for instruction RAM. The region is defined in *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *System and Memory* > *Internal Memory* [PDF]. Except for the first block (up to 32 kB) which is used for MMU cache, the rest of this memory range is used to store parts of application which need to run from RAM.

Note: Any internal SRAM which is not used for Instruction RAM will be made available as *DRAM (Data RAM)* for static data and dynamic allocation (heap).

Why place code in IRAM

Cases when parts of application should be placed into IRAM:

- Interrupt handlers must be placed into IRAM if `ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM` is used when registering the interrupt handler. For more information, see *IRAM-Safe Interrupt Handlers*.
- Some timing critical code may be placed into IRAM to reduce the penalty associated with loading the code from flash. ESP32-S2 reads code and data from flash via the MMU cache. In some cases, placing a function into IRAM may reduce delays caused by a cache miss and significantly improve that function's performance.

How to place code in IRAM

Some code is automatically placed into the IRAM region using the linker script.

If some specific application code needs to be placed into IRAM, it can be done by using the *Linker Script Generation* feature and adding a linker script fragment file to your component that targets entire source files or functions with the `noflash` placement. See the *Linker Script Generation* docs for more information.

Alternatively, it's possible to specify IRAM placement in the source code using the `IRAM_ATTR` macro:

```
#include "esp_attr.h"

void IRAM_ATTR gpio_isr_handler(void* arg)
{
        // ...
}
```

There are some possible issues with placement in IRAM, that may cause problems with IRAM-safe interrupt handlers:

- Strings or constants inside an `IRAM_ATTR` function may not be placed in RAM automatically. It's possible to use `DRAM_ATTR` attributes to mark these, or using the linker script method will cause these to be automatically placed correctly.

  ```
  void IRAM_ATTR gpio_isr_handler(void* arg)
  {
      const static DRAM_ATTR uint8_t INDEX_DATA[] = { 45, 33, 12, 0 };
      const static char *MSG = DRAM_STR("I am a string stored in RAM");
  }
  ```

  Note that knowing which data should be marked with `DRAM_ATTR` can be hard, the compiler will sometimes recognize that a variable or expression is constant (even if it is not marked `const`) and optimize it into flash, unless it is marked with `DRAM_ATTR`.
- GCC optimizations that automatically generate jump tables or switch/case lookup tables place these tables in flash. There are two possible ways to resolve this issue:
  - Use a *linker script fragment* to mark the entire source file as `noflash`
  - Pass specific flags to the compiler to disable these optimizations in the relevant source files. For CMake, place the following in the component CMakeLists.txt file:

    ```
    set_source_files_properties("${CMAKE_CURRENT_LIST_DIR}/relative/path/to/
    ↪file" PROPERTIES
                                COMPILE_FLAGS "-fno-jump-tables -fno-tree-
    ↪switch-conversion")
    ```

4.19.3 IROM (code executed from Flash)

If a function is not explicitly placed into *IRAM (Instruction RAM)* or RTC memory, it is placed into flash. The mechanism by which Flash MMU is used to allow code execution from flash is described in *ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual* > *Memory Management and Protection Units (MMU, MPU)* [PDF]. As IRAM is limited, most of an application's binary code must be placed into IROM instead.

During *Application Startup Flow*, the bootloader (which runs from IRAM) configures the MMU flash cache to map the app's instruction code region to the instruction space. Flash accessed via the MMU is cached using some internal SRAM and accessing cached flash data is as fast as accessing other types of internal memory.

4.19.4 RTC fast memory

The same region of RTC fast memory can be accessed as both instruction and data memory. Code which has to run after wake-up from deep sleep mode has to be placed into RTC memory. Please check detailed description in *deep sleep* documentation.

Remaining RTC fast memory is added to the heap unless the option *CONFIG_ESP_SYSTEM_ALLOW_RTC_FAST_MEM_AS_HEAP* is disabled. This memory can be used interchangeably with *DRAM (Data RAM)*, but is slightly slower to access.

4.19.5 DROM (data stored in Flash)

By default, constant data is placed by the linker into a region mapped to the MMU flash cache. This is the same as the *IROM (code executed from Flash)* section, but is for read-only data not executable code.

The only constant data not placed into into this memory type by default are literal constants which are embedded by the compiler into application code. These are placed as the surrounding function's executable instructions.

The `DRAM_ATTR` attribute can be used to force constants from DROM into the *DRAM (Data RAM)* section (see above).

4.19.6 RTC slow memory

Global and static variables used by code which runs from RTC memory must be placed into RTC slow memory. For example *deep sleep* variables can be placed here instead of RTC fast memory, or code and variables accessed by the *ULP Coprocessor programming*.

The attribute macro named `RTC_NOINIT_ATTR` can be used to place data into this type of memory. The values placed into this section keep their value after waking from deep sleep.

Example:

```
RTC_NOINIT_ATTR uint32_t rtc_noinit_data;
```

4.19.7 DMA Capable Requirement

Most peripheral DMA controllers (e.g. SPI, sdmmc, etc.) have requirements that sending/receiving buffers should be placed in DRAM and word-aligned. We suggest to place DMA buffers in static variables rather than in the stack. Use macro `DMA_ATTR` to declare global/local static variables like:

```
DMA_ATTR uint8_t buffer[]="I want to send something";

void app_main()
{
    // initialization code...
    spi_transaction_t temp = {
        .tx_buffer = buffer,
        .length = 8 * sizeof(buffer),
    };
    spi_device_transmit(spi, &temp);
    // other stuff
}
```

Or:

```
void app_main()
{
    DMA_ATTR static uint8_t buffer[] = "I want to send something";
    // initialization code...
    spi_transaction_t temp = {
        .tx_buffer = buffer,
        .length = 8 * sizeof(buffer),
    };
    spi_device_transmit(spi, &temp);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    // other stuff
}
```

It is also possible to allocate DMA-capable memory buffers dynamically by using the *MALLOC_CAP_DMA* capabilities flag.

4.19.8 DMA Buffer in the stack

Placing DMA buffers in the stack is possible but discouraged. If doing so, pay attention to the following:

- Placing DRAM buffers on the stack is not recommended if if the stack may be in PSRAM. If the stack of a task is placed in the PSRAM, several steps have to be taken as described in *Support for external RAM*.
- Use macro `WORD_ALIGNED_ATTR` in functions before variables to place them in proper positions like:

```
void app_main()
{
    uint8_t stuff;
    WORD_ALIGNED_ATTR uint8_t buffer[] = "I want to send something";    //or␣
↪the buffer will be placed right after stuff.
    // initialization code...
    spi_transaction_t temp = {
        .tx_buffer = buffer,
        .length = 8 * sizeof(buffer),
    };
    spi_device_transmit(spi, &temp);
    // other stuff
}
```

4.20 lwIP

ESP-IDF uses the open source lwIP lightweight TCP/IP stack. The ESP-IDF version of lwIP (esp-lwip) has some modifications and additions compared to the upstream project.

4.20.1 Supported APIs

ESP-IDF supports the following lwIP TCP/IP stack functions:

- *BSD Sockets API*
- *Netconn API* is enabled but not officially supported for ESP-IDF applications

Adapted APIs

Some common lwIP "app" APIs are supported indirectly by ESP-IDF:

- DHCP Server & Client are supported indirectly via the *ESP-NETIF* functionality
- Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) is supported via the lwip/include/apps/sntp/sntp.h lwip/lwip/src/include/lwip/apps/sntp.h functions (see also *SNTP Time Synchronization*)
- ICMP Ping is supported using a variation on the lwIP ping API. See *ICMP Echo*.
- NetBIOS lookup is available using the standard lwIP API. protocols/http_server/restful_server has an option to demonstrate using NetBIOS to look up a host on the LAN.
- mDNS uses a different implementation to the lwIP default mDNS (see *mDNS Service*), but lwIP can look up mDNS hosts using standard APIs such as `gethostbyname()` and the convention `hostname.local`, provided the *CONFIG_LWIP_DNS_SUPPORT_MDNS_QUERIES* setting is enabled.

4.20.2 BSD Sockets API

The BSD Sockets API is a common cross-platform TCP/IP sockets API that originated in the Berkeley Standard Distribution of UNIX but is now standardized in a section of the POSIX specification. BSD Sockets are sometimes called POSIX Sockets or Berkeley Sockets.

As implemented in ESP-IDF, lwIP supports all of the common usages of the BSD Sockets API.

References

A wide range of BSD Sockets reference material is available, including:

- Single UNIX Specification BSD Sockets page
- Berkeley Sockets Wikipedia page

Examples

A number of ESP-IDF examples show how to use the BSD Sockets APIs:

- protocols/sockets/tcp_server
- protocols/sockets/tcp_client
- protocols/sockets/udp_server
- protocols/sockets/udp_client
- protocols/sockets/udp_multicast
- protocols/http_request (Note: this is a simplified example of using a TCP socket to send an HTTP request. The *ESP HTTP Client* is a much better option for sending HTTP requests.)

Supported functions

The following BSD socket API functions are supported. For full details see lwip/lwip/src/include/lwip/sockets.h.

- `socket()`
- `bind()`
- `accept()`
- `shutdown()`
- `getpeername()`
- `getsockopt()` & `setsockopt()` (see *Socket Options*)
- `close()` (via *Virtual filesystem component*)
- `read()`, `readv()`, `write()`, `writev()` (via *Virtual filesystem component*)
- `recv()`, `recvmsg()`, `recvfrom()`
- `send()`, `sendmsg()`, `sendto()`
- `select()` (via *Virtual filesystem component*)
- `poll()` (Note: on ESP-IDF, `poll()` is implemented by calling select internally, so using `select()` directly is recommended if a choice of methods is available.)
- `fcntl()` (see *fcntl*)

Non-standard functions:

- `ioctl()` (see *ioctls*)

Note: Some lwIP application sample code uses prefixed versions of BSD APIs, for example `lwip_socket()` instead of the standard `socket()`. Both forms can be used with ESP-IDF, but using standard names is recommended.

Socket Error Handling

BSD Socket error handling code is very important for robust socket applications. Normally the socket error handling involves the following aspects:

- Detecting the error.
- Geting the error reason code.
- Handle the error according to the reason code.

In lwIP, we have two different scenarios of handling socket errors:

- Socket API returns an error. For more information, see *Socket API Errors*.
- `select(int maxfdp1, fd_set *readset, fd_set *writeset, fd_set *exceptset, struct timeval *timeout)` has exception descriptor indicating that the socket has an error. For more information, see *select() Errors*.

Socket API Errors

The error detection

- We can know that the socket API fails according to its return value.

Get the error reason code

- When socket API fails, the return value doesn't contain the failure reason and the application can get the error reason code by accessing errno. Different values indicate different meanings. For more information, see <*Socket Error Reason Code*>.

Example:

```
int err;
int sockfd;

if (sockfd = socket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0) < 0) {
    // the error code is obtained from errno
    err = errno;
    return err;
}
```

select() Errors

The error detection

- Socket error when `select()` has exception descriptor

Get the error reason code

- If the `select` indicates that the socket fails, we can't get the error reason code by accessing errno, instead we should call `getsockopt()` to get the failure reason code. Because `select()` has exception descriptor, the error code will not be given to errno.

Note: `getsockopt` function prototype `int getsockopt(int s, int level, int optname, void *optval, socklen_t *optlen)`. Its function is to get the current value of the option of any type, any state socket, and store the result in optval. For example, when you get the error code on a socket, you can get it by `getsockopt(sockfd, SOL_SOCKET, SO_ERROR, &err, &optlen)`.

Example:

```
int err;

if (select(sockfd + 1, NULL, NULL, &exfds, &tval) <= 0) {
    err = errno;
    return err;
} else {
    if (FD_ISSET(sockfd, &exfds)) {
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
        // select() exception set using getsockopt()
        int optlen = sizeof(int);
        getsockopt(sockfd, SOL_SOCKET, SO_ERROR, &err, &optlen);
        return err;
    }
}
```

Socket Error Reason Code Below is a list of common error codes. For more detailed list of standard POSIX/C error codes, please see *newlib errno.h <https://github.com/espressif/newlib-esp32/blob/master/newlib/libc/include/sys/errno.h>* and the platform-specific extensions newlib/platform_include/errno.h

Error code	Description
ECONNREFUSED	Connection refused
EADDRINUSE	Address already in use
ECONNABORTED	Software caused connection abort
ENETUNREACH	Network is unreachable
ENETDOWN	Network interface is not configured
ETIMEDOUT	Connection timed out
EHOSTDOWN	Host is down
EHOSTUNREACH	Host is unreachable
EINPROGRESS	Connection already in progress
EALREADY	Socket already connected
EDESTADDRREQ	Destination address required
EPROTONOSUPPORT	Unknown protocol

Socket Options

The `getsockopt()` and `setsockopt()` functions allow getting/setting per-socket options.

Not all standard socket options are supported by lwIP in ESP-IDF. The following socket options are supported:

Common options Used with level argument `SOL_SOCKET`.

- `SO_REUSEADDR` (available if *CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE* is set, behavior can be customized by setting *CONFIG_LWIP_SO_REUSE_RXTOALL*)
- `SO_KEEPALIVE`
- `SO_BROADCAST`
- `SO_ACCEPTCONN`
- `SO_RCVBUF` (available if *CONFIG_LWIP_SO_RCVBUF* is set)
- `SO_SNDTIMEO` / `SO_RCVTIMEO`
- `SO_ERROR` (this option is only used with `select()`, see *Socket Error Handling*)
- `SO_TYPE`
- `SO_NO_CHECK` (for UDP sockets only)

IP options Used with level argument `IPPROTO_IP`.

- `IP_TOS`
- `IP_TTL`
- `IP_PKTINFO` (available if *CONFIG_LWIP_NETBUF_RECVINFO* is set)

For multicast UDP sockets:

- `IP_MULTICAST_IF`
- `IP_MULTICAST_LOOP`
- `IP_MULTICAST_TTL`

- IP_ADD_MEMBERSHIP
- IP_DROP_MEMBERSHIP

TCP options TCP sockets only. Used with level argument IPPROTO_TCP.

- TCP_NODELAY

Options relating to TCP keepalive probes:

- TCP_KEEPALIVE (int value, TCP keepalive period in milliseconds)
- TCP_KEEPIDLE (same as TCP_KEEPALIVE, but the value is in seconds)
- TCP_KEEPINTVL (int value, interval between keepalive probes in seconds)
- TCP_KEEPCNT (int value, number of keepalive probes before timing out)

IPv6 options IPv6 sockets only. Used with level argument IPPROTO_IPV6

- IPV6_CHECKSUM
- IPV6_V6ONLY

For multicast IPv6 UDP sockets:

- IPV6_JOIN_GROUP / IPV6_ADD_MEMBERSHIP
- IPV6_LEAVE_GROUP / IPV6_DROP_MEMBERSHIP
- IPV6_MULTICAST_IF
- IPV6_MULTICAST_HOPS
- IPV6_MULTICAST_LOOP

fcntl

The fcntl() function is a standard API for manipulating options related to a file descriptor. In ESP-IDF, the *Virtual filesystem component* layer is used to implement this function.

When the file descriptor is a socket, only the following fcntl() values are supported:

- O_NONBLOCK to set/clear non-blocking I/O mode. Also supports O_NDELAY, which is identical to O_NONBLOCK.
- O_RDONLY, O_WRONLY, O_RDWR flags for different read/write modes. These can read via F_GETFL only, they cannot be set using F_SETFL. A TCP socket will return a different mode depending on whether the connection has been closed at either end or is still open at both ends. UDP sockets always return O_RDWR.

ioctls

The ioctl() function provides a semi-standard way to access some internal features of the TCP/IP stack. In ESP-IDF, the *Virtual filesystem component* layer is used to implement this function.

When the file descriptor is a socket, only the following ioctl() values are supported:

- FIONREAD returns the number of bytes of pending data already received in the socket's network buffer.
- FIONBIO is an alternative way to set/clear non-blocking I/O status for a socket, equivalent to fcntl(fd, F_SETFL, O_NONBLOCK, ...).

4.20.3 Netconn API

lwIP supports two lower level APIs as well as the BSD Sockets API: the Netconn API and the Raw API.

The lwIP Raw API is designed for single threaded devices and is not supported in ESP-IDF.

The Netconn API is used to implement the BSD Sockets API inside lwIP, and it can also be called directly from ESP-IDF apps. This API has lower resource usage than the BSD Sockets API, in particular it can send and receive data without needing to first copy it into internal lwIP buffers.

Important: Espressif does not test the Netconn API in ESP-IDF. As such, this functionality is *enabled but not supported*. Some functionality may only work correctly when used from the BSD Sockets API.

For more information about the Netconn API, consult lwip/lwip/src/include/lwip/api.h and this wiki page which is part of the unofficial lwIP Application Developers Manual.

4.20.4 lwIP FreeRTOS Task

lwIP creates a dedicated TCP/IP FreeRTOS task to handle socket API requests from other tasks.

A number of configuration items are available to modify the task and the queues ("mailboxes") used to send data to/from the TCP/IP task:

- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_STACK_SIZE*
- *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY*

4.20.5 esp-lwip custom modifications

Additions

The following code is added which is not present in the upstream lwIP release:

Thread-safe sockets It is possible to `close()` a socket from a different thread to the one that created it. The `close()` call will block until any function calls currently using that socket from other tasks have returned.

It is, however, not possible to delete a task while it is actively waiting on `select()` or `poll()` APIs. It is always necessary that these APIs exit before destroying the task, as this might corrupt internal structures and cause subsequent crashes of the lwIP. (These APIs allocate globally referenced callback pointers on stack, so that when the task gets destroyed before unrolling the stack, the lwIP would still hold pointers to the deleted stack)

On demand timers lwIP IGMP and MLD6 features both initialize a timer in order to trigger timeout events at certain times.

The default lwIP implementation is to have these timers enabled all the time, even if no timeout events are active. This increases CPU usage and power consumption when using automatic light sleep mode. `esp-lwip` default behaviour is to set each timer "on demand" so it is only enabled when an event is pending.

To return to the default lwIP behaviour (always-on timers), disable *CONFIG_LWIP_TIMERS_ONDEMAND*.

Abort TCP connections when IP changes *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_KEEP_CONNECTION_WHEN_IP_CHANGES* is disabled by default. This disables the default lwIP behaviour of keeping TCP connections open if an interface IP changes, in case the interface IP changes back (for example, if an interface connection goes down and comes back up). Enable this option to keep TCP connections open in this case, until they time out normally. This may increase the number of sockets in use if a network interface goes down temporarily.

Additional Socket Options

- Some standard IPV4 and IPV6 multicast socket options are implemented (see *Socket Options*).
- Possible to set IPV6-only UDP and TCP sockets with `IPV6_V6ONLY` socket option (normal lwIP is TCP only).

IP layer features

- IPV4 source based routing implementation is different.
- IPV4 mapped IPV6 addresses are supported.

Limitations

Calling `send()` or `sendto()` repeatedly on a UDP socket may eventually fail with `errno` equal to `ENOMEM`. This is a limitation of buffer sizes in the lower layer network interface drivers. If all driver transmit buffers are full then UDP transmission will fail. Applications sending a high volume of UDP datagrams who don't wish for any to be dropped by the sender should check for this error code and re-send the datagram after a short delay.

Increasing the number of TX buffers in the *Wi-Fi* project configuration may also help.

4.20.6 Performance Optimization

TCP/IP performance is a complex subject, and performance can be optimized towards multiple goals. The default settings of ESP-IDF are tuned for a compromise between throughput, latency, and moderate memory usage.

Maximum throughput

Espressif tests ESP-IDF TCP/IP throughput using the wifi/iperf example in an RF sealed enclosure.

The wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.defaults file for the iperf example contains settings known to maximize TCP/IP throughput, usually at the expense of higher RAM usage. To get maximum TCP/IP throughput in an application at the expense of other factors then suggest applying settings from this file into the project sdkconfig.

Important: Suggest applying changes a few at a time and checking the performance each time with a particular application workload.

- If a lot of tasks are competing for CPU time on the system, consider that the lwIP task has configurable CPU affinity (*CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_TASK_AFFINITY*) and runs at fixed priority `ESP_TASK_TCPIP_PRIO` (18). Configure competing tasks to be pinned to a different core, or to run at a lower priority.
- If using `select()` function with socket arguments only, setting *CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT* will make `select()` calls faster.

If using a Wi-Fi network interface, please also refer to *Wi-Fi Buffer Usage*.

Minimum latency

Except for increasing buffer sizes, most changes which increase throughput will also decrease latency by reducing the amount of CPU time spent in lwIP functions.

- For TCP sockets, lwIP supports setting the standard `TCP_NODELAY` flag to disable Nagle's algorithm.

Minimum RAM usage

Most lwIP RAM usage is on-demand, as RAM is allocated from the heap as needed. Therefore, changing lwIP settings to reduce RAM usage may not change RAM usage at idle but can change it at peak.

- Reducing *CONFIG_LWIP_MAX_SOCKETS* reduces the maximum number of sockets in the system. This will also cause TCP sockets in the `WAIT_CLOSE` state to be closed and recycled more rapidly (if needed to open a new socket), further reducing peak RAM usage.
- Reducing *CONFIG_LWIP_TCPIP_RECVMBOX_SIZE*, *CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_RECVMBOX_SIZE* and *CONFIG_LWIP_UDP_RECVMBOX_SIZE* reduce memory usage at the expense of throughput, depending on usage.

- Disable *CONFIG_LWIP_IPV6* can save about 39 KB for firmware size and 2KB RAM when system power up and 7KB RAM when TCPIP stack running. If there is no requirement for supporting IPV6 then it can be disabled to save flash and RAM footprint.

If using Wi-Fi, please also refer to *Wi-Fi Buffer Usage*.

Peak Buffer Usage The peak heap memory that lwIP consumes is the **theoretically-maximum memory** that the lwIP driver consumes. Generally, the peak heap memory that lwIP consumes depends on:

- the memory required to create a UDP connection: lwip_udp_conn
- the memory required to create a TCP connection: lwip_tcp_conn
- the number of UDP connections that the application has: lwip_udp_con_num
- the number of TCP connections that the application has: lwip_tcp_con_num
- the TCP TX window size: lwip_tcp_tx_win_size
- the TCP RX window size: lwip_tcp_rx_win_size

So, the peak heap memory that the LwIP consumes can be calculated with the following formula:
lwip_dynamic_peek_memory = (lwip_udp_con_num * lwip_udp_conn) + (lwip_tcp_con_num * (lwip_tcp_tx_win_size + lwip_tcp_rx_win_size + lwip_tcp_conn))

Some TCP-based applications need only one TCP connection. However, they may choose to close this TCP connection and create a new one when an error (such as a sending failure) occurs. This may result in multiple TCP connections existing in the system simultaneously, because it may take a long time for a TCP connection to close, according to the TCP state machine (refer to RFC793).

4.21 Partition Tables

4.21.1 Overview

A single ESP32-S2' s flash can contain multiple apps, as well as many different kinds of data (calibration data, filesystems, parameter storage, etc). For this reason a partition table is flashed to (*default offset*) 0x8000 in the flash.

Partition table length is 0xC00 bytes (maximum 95 partition table entries). An MD5 checksum, which is used for checking the integrity of the partition table, is appended after the table data.

Each entry in the partition table has a name (label), type (app, data, or something else), subtype and the offset in flash where the partition is loaded.

The simplest way to use the partition table is to open the project configuration menu (`idf.py menuconfig`) and choose one of the simple predefined partition tables under *CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_TYPE*:

- "Single factory app, no OTA"
- "Factory app, two OTA definitions"

In both cases the factory app is flashed at offset 0x10000. If you execute *idf.py partition_table* then it will print a summary of the partition table.

4.21.2 Built-in Partition Tables

Here is the summary printed for the "Single factory app, no OTA" configuration:

```
# ESP-IDF Partition Table
# Name,   Type, SubType, Offset,  Size, Flags
nvs,      data, nvs,     0x9000,  0x6000,
phy_init, data, phy,     0xf000,  0x1000,
factory,  app,  factory, 0x10000, 1M,
```

- At a 0x10000 (64KB) offset in the flash is the app labelled "factory". The bootloader will run this app by default.

- There are also two data regions defined in the partition table for storing NVS library partition and PHY init data.

Here is the summary printed for the "Factory app, two OTA definitions" configuration:

```
# ESP-IDF Partition Table
# Name,   Type, SubType, Offset,  Size, Flags
nvs,      data, nvs,     0x9000,  0x4000,
otadata,  data, ota,     0xd000,  0x2000,
phy_init, data, phy,     0xf000,  0x1000,
factory,  app,  factory, 0x10000,  1M,
ota_0,    app,  ota_0,   0x110000, 1M,
ota_1,    app,  ota_1,   0x210000, 1M,
```

- There are now three app partition definitions. The type of the factory app (at 0x10000) and the next two "OTA" apps are all set to "app", but their subtypes are different.
- There is also a new "otadata" slot, which holds the data for OTA updates. The bootloader consults this data in order to know which app to execute. If "ota data" is empty, it will execute the factory app.

4.21.3 Creating Custom Tables

If you choose "Custom partition table CSV" in menuconfig then you can also enter the name of a CSV file (in the project directory) to use for your partition table. The CSV file can describe any number of definitions for the table you need.

The CSV format is the same format as printed in the summaries shown above. However, not all fields are required in the CSV. For example, here is the "input" CSV for the OTA partition table:

```
# Name,   Type, SubType,  Offset,   Size,  Flags
nvs,      data, nvs,      0x9000,  0x4000
otadata,  data, ota,      0xd000,  0x2000
phy_init, data, phy,      0xf000,  0x1000
factory,  app,  factory,  0x10000,  1M
ota_0,    app,  ota_0,    ,          1M
ota_1,    app,  ota_1,    ,          1M
nvs_key,  data, nvs_keys, ,         0x1000
```

- Whitespace between fields is ignored, and so is any line starting with # (comments).
- Each non-comment line in the CSV file is a partition definition.
- The "Offset" field for each partition is empty. The gen_esp32part.py tool fills in each blank offset, starting after the partition table and making sure each partition is aligned correctly.

Name field

Name field can be any meaningful name. It is not significant to the ESP32-S2. Names longer than 16 characters will be truncated.

Type field

Partition type field can be specified as `app` (0x00) or `data` (0x01). Or it can be a number 0-254 (or as hex 0x00-0xFE). Types 0x00-0x3F are reserved for ESP-IDF core functions.

If your app needs to store data in a format not already supported by ESP-IDF, then please add a custom partition type value in the range 0x40-0xFE.

See *`esp_partition_type_t`* for the enum definitions for `app` and `data` partitions.

If writing in C++ then specifying a application-defined partition type requires casting an integer to *`esp_partition_type_t`* in order to use it with the *partition API*. For example:

```
static const esp_partition_type_t APP_PARTITION_TYPE_A = (esp_partition_type_
↪t)0x40;
```

The ESP-IDF bootloader ignores any partition types other than `app` (0x00) and `data` (0x01).

SubType

The 8-bit subtype field is specific to a given partition type. ESP-IDF currently only specifies the meaning of the subtype field for `app` and `data` partition types.

See enum *`esp_partition_subtype_t`* for the full list of subtypes defined by ESP-IDF, including the following:

- When type is `app`, the subtype field can be specified as `factory` (0x00), `ota_0` (0x10) ···`ota_15` (0x1F) or `test` (0x20).
  - `factory` (0x00) is the default app partition. The bootloader will execute the factory app unless there it sees a partition of type data/ota, in which case it reads this partition to determine which OTA image to boot.
    * OTA never updates the factory partition.
    * If you want to conserve flash usage in an OTA project, you can remove the factory partition and use `ota_0` instead.
  - `ota_0` (0x10) ···`ota_15` (0x1F) are the OTA app slots. When *OTA* is in use, the OTA data partition configures which app slot the bootloader should boot. When using OTA, an application should have at least two OTA application slots (`ota_0` & `ota_1`). Refer to the *OTA documentation* for more details.
  - `test` (0x20) is a reserved subtype for factory test procedures. It will be used as the fallback boot partition if no other valid app partition is found. It is also possible to configure the bootloader to read a GPIO input during each boot, and boot this partition if the GPIO is held low, see *Boot from test app partition*.
- When type is `data`, the subtype field can be specified as `ota` (0x00), `phy` (0x01), `nvs` (0x02), nvs_keys (0x04), or a range of other component-specific subtypes (see *`subtype enum`*).
  - `ota` (0) is the *OTA data partition* which stores information about the currently selected OTA app slot. This partition should be 0x2000 bytes in size. Refer to the *OTA documentation* for more details.
  - `phy` (1) is for storing PHY initialisation data. This allows PHY to be configured per-device, instead of in firmware.
    * In the default configuration, the phy partition is not used and PHY initialisation data is compiled into the app itself. As such, this partition can be removed from the partition table to save space.
    * To load PHY data from this partition, open the project configuration menu (`idf.py menuconfig`) and enable *CONFIG_ESP32_PHY_INIT_DATA_IN_PARTITION* option. You will also need to flash your devices with phy init data as the esp-idf build system does not do this automatically.
  - `nvs` (2) is for the *Non-Volatile Storage (NVS) API*.
    * NVS is used to store per-device PHY calibration data (different to initialisation data).
    * NVS is used to store WiFi data if the *esp_wifi_set_storage(WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH)* initialisation function is used.
    * The NVS API can also be used for other application data.
    * It is strongly recommended that you include an NVS partition of at least 0x3000 bytes in your project.
    * If using NVS API to store a lot of data, increase the NVS partition size from the default 0x6000 bytes.
  - `nvs_keys` (4) is for the NVS key partition. See *Non-Volatile Storage (NVS) API* for more details.
    * It is used to store NVS encryption keys when *NVS Encryption* feature is enabled.
    * The size of this partition should be 4096 bytes (minimum partition size).
  - There are other predefined data subtypes for data storage supported by ESP-IDF. These include *FAT filesystem* (*`ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_FAT`*), *SPIFFS* (*`ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_SPIFFS`*), etc.

  Other subtypes of `data` type are reserved for future ESP-IDF uses.
- If the partition type is any application-defined value (range 0x40-0xFE), then `subtype` field can be any value chosen by the application (range 0x00-0xFE).
  Note that when writing in C++, an application-defined subtype value requires casting to type *`esp_partition_subtype_t`* in order to use it with the *partition API*.

Offset & Size

Partitions with blank offsets in the CSV file will start after the previous partition, or after the partition table in the case of the first partition.

Partitions of type `app` have to be placed at offsets aligned to 0x10000 (64K). If you leave the offset field blank, `gen_esp32part.py` will automatically align the partition. If you specify an unaligned offset for an app partition, the tool will return an error.

Sizes and offsets can be specified as decimal numbers, hex numbers with the prefix 0x, or size multipliers K or M (1024 and 1024*1024 bytes).

If you want the partitions in the partition table to work relative to any placement (*CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_OFFSET*) of the table itself, leave the offset field (in CSV file) for all partitions blank. Similarly, if changing the partition table offset then be aware that all blank partition offsets may change to match, and that any fixed offsets may now collide with the partition table (causing an error).

Flags

Only one flag is currently supported, `encrypted`. If this field is set to `encrypted`, this partition will be encrypted if *Flash Encryption* is enabled.

Note: `app` type partitions will always be encrypted, regardless of whether this flag is set or not.

4.21.4 Generating Binary Partition Table

The partition table which is flashed to the ESP32-S2 is in a binary format, not CSV. The tool partition_table/gen_esp32part.py is used to convert between CSV and binary formats.

If you configure the partition table CSV name in the project configuration (`idf.py menuconfig`) and then build the project or run `idf.py partition_table`, this conversion is done as part of the build process.

To convert CSV to Binary manually:

```
python gen_esp32part.py input_partitions.csv binary_partitions.bin
```

To convert binary format back to CSV manually:

```
python gen_esp32part.py binary_partitions.bin input_partitions.csv
```

To display the contents of a binary partition table on stdout (this is how the summaries displayed when running `idf.py partition_table` are generated:

```
python gen_esp32part.py binary_partitions.bin
```

MD5 checksum

The binary format of the partition table contains an MD5 checksum computed based on the partition table. This checksum is used for checking the integrity of the partition table during the boot.

The MD5 checksum generation can be disabled by the `--disable-md5sum` option of `gen_esp32part.py` or by the *CONFIG_PARTITION_TABLE_MD5* option. This is useful for example when one uses a legacy bootloader which cannot process MD5 checksums and the boot fails with the error message `invalid magic number 0xebeb`.

4.21.5 Flashing the partition table

- `idf.py partition_table-flash`: will flash the partition table with esptool.py.
- `idf.py flash`: Will flash everything including the partition table.

A manual flashing command is also printed as part of `idf.py partition_table` output.

Note: Note that updating the partition table doesn't erase data that may have been stored according to the old partition table. You can use `idf.py erase_flash` (or `esptool.py erase_flash`) to erase the entire flash contents.

4.21.6 Partition Tool (parttool.py)

The component *partition_table* provides a tool parttool.py for performing partition-related operations on a target device. The following operations can be performed using the tool:

- reading a partition and saving the contents to a file (read_partition)
- writing the contents of a file to a partition (write_partition)
- erasing a partition (erase_partition)
- retrieving info such as name, offset, size and flag ("encrypted") of a given partition (get_partition_info)

The tool can either be imported and used from another Python script or invoked from shell script for users wanting to perform operation programmatically. This is facilitated by the tool's Python API and command-line interface, respectively.

Python API

Before anything else, make sure that the *parttool* module is imported.

```
import sys
import os

idf_path = os.environ["IDF_PATH"]  # get value of IDF_PATH from environment
parttool_dir = os.path.join(idf_path, "components", "partition_table")  # parttool.
↪py lives in $IDF_PATH/components/partition_table

sys.path.append(parttool_dir)  # this enables Python to find parttool module
from parttool import *  # import all names inside parttool module
```

The starting point for using the tool's Python API to do is create a *ParttoolTarget* object:

```
# Create a partool.py target device connected on serial port /dev/ttyUSB1
target = ParttoolTarget("/dev/ttyUSB1")
```

The created object can now be used to perform operations on the target device:

```
# Erase partition with name 'storage'
target.erase_partition(PartitionName("storage"))

# Read partition with type 'data' and subtype 'spiffs' and save to file 'spiffs.bin
↪'
target.read_partition(PartitionType("data", "spiffs"), "spiffs.bin")

# Write to partition 'factory' the contents of a file named 'factory.bin'
target.write_partition(PartitionName("factory"), "factory.bin")

# Print the size of default boot partition
storage = target.get_partition_info(PARTITION_BOOT_DEFAULT)
print(storage.size)
```

The partition to operate on is specified using *PartitionName* or *PartitionType* or PARTITION_BOOT_DEFAULT. As the name implies, these can be used to refer to partitions of a particular name, type-subtype combination, or the default boot partition.

More information on the Python API is available in the docstrings for the tool.

Command-line Interface

The command-line interface of *parttool.py* has the following structure:

```
parttool.py [command-args] [subcommand] [subcommand-args]

- command-args - These are arguments that are needed for executing the main␣
↪command (parttool.py), mostly pertaining to the target device
- subcommand - This is the operation to be performed
- subcommand-args - These are arguments that are specific to the chosen operation
```

```
# Erase partition with name 'storage'
parttool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" erase_partition --partition-name=storage

# Read partition with type 'data' and subtype 'spiffs' and save to file 'spiffs.bin
↪'
parttool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" read_partition --partition-type=data --partition-
↪subtype=spiffs --output "spiffs.bin"

# Write to partition 'factory' the contents of a file named 'factory.bin'
parttool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" write_partition --partition-name=factory
↪"factory.bin"

# Print the size of default boot partition
parttool.py --port "/dev/ttyUSB1" get_partition_info --partition-boot-default --
↪info size
```

More information can be obtained by specifying *–help* as argument:

```
# Display possible subcommands and show main command argument descriptions
parttool.py --help

# Show descriptions for specific subcommand arguments
parttool.py [subcommand] --help
```

4.22 Secure Boot V2

Important: The references in this document are related to Secure Boot V2, the preferred scheme from ESP32 ECO3 onwards, in ESP32-S2, and from ESP32-C3 ECO3 onwards.

Secure Boot V2 uses RSA based app and bootloader verification. This document can also be referred for signing apps with the RSA scheme without signing the bootloader.

4.22.1 Background

Secure Boot protects a device from running unsigned code (verification at time of load). A new RSA based secure boot verification scheme (Secure Boot V2) has been introduced for ESP32-S2, ESP32-C3 ECO3 onwards, and ESP32 ECO3 onwards.

- The software bootloader's RSA-PSS signature is verified by the Mask ROM and it is executed post successful verification.
- The verified software bootloader verifies the RSA-PSS signature of the application image before it is executed.

4.22.2 Advantages

- The RSA public key is stored on the device. The corresponding RSA private key is kept secret on a server and is never accessed by the device.
  - Up to three public keys can be generated and stored in the chip during manufacturing.
  - ESP32-S2 provides the facility to permanently revoke individual public keys. This can be configured conservatively or aggressively.
  - Conservatively - The old key is revoked after the bootloader and application have successfully migrated to a new key. Aggressively - The key is revoked as soon as verification with this key fails.
- Same image format & signature verification is applied for applications & software bootloader.
- No secrets are stored on the device. Therefore immune to passive side-channel attacks (timing or power analysis, etc.)

4.22.3 Secure Boot V2 Process

This is an overview of the Secure Boot V2 Process, Step by step instructions are supplied under *How To Enable Secure Boot V2*.

1. Secure Boot V2 verifies the signature blocks appended to the bootloader and application binaries. The signature block contains the image binary signed by a RSA-3072 private key and its corresponding public key. More details on the *Signature Block Format*.
2. On startup, ROM code checks the Secure Boot V2 bit in eFuse.
3. If secure boot is enabled, ROM checks the SHA-256 of the public key in the signature block in the eFuse.
4. The ROM code validates the public key embedded in the software bootloader's signature block by matching the SHA-256 of its public key to the SHA-256 in eFuse as per the earlier step. Boot process will be aborted if a valid hash of the public key isn't found in the eFuse.
5. The ROM code verifies the signature of the bootloader with the pre-validated public key with the RSA-PSS Scheme. In depth information on *Verifying the signature Block*.
6. Software bootloader, reads the app partition and performs similar verification on the application. The application is verified on every boot up and OTA update. If selected OTA app partition fails verification, bootloader will fall back and look for another correctly signed partition.

4.22.4 Signature Block Format

The bootloader and application images are padded to the next 4096 byte boundary, thus the signature has a flash sector of its own. The signature is calculated over all bytes in the image including the padding bytes.

Each signature block contains the following:

- **Offset 0 (1 byte):** Magic byte (0xe7)
- **Offset 1 (1 byte):** Version number byte (currently 0x02), 0x01 is for Secure Boot V1.
- **Offset 2 (2 bytes):** Padding bytes, Reserved. Should be zero.
- **Offset 4 (32 bytes):** SHA-256 hash of only the image content, not including the signature block.
- **Offset 36 (384 bytes):** RSA Public Modulus used for signature verification. (value 'n' in RFC8017).
- **Offset 420 (4 bytes):** RSA Public Exponent used for signature verification (value 'e' in RFC8017).
- **Offset 424 (384 bytes):** Precalculated R, derived from 'n'.
- **Offset 808 (4 bytes):** Precalculated M', derived from 'n'
- **Offset 812 (384 bytes):** RSA-PSS Signature result (section 8.1.1 of RFC8017) of image content, computed using following PSS parameters: SHA256 hash, MFG1 function, 0 length salt, default trailer field (0xBC).
- **Offset 1196:** CRC32 of the preceding 1095 bytes.
- **Offset 1200 (16 bytes):** Zero padding to length 1216 bytes.

Note: R and M' are used for hardware-assisted Montgomery Multiplication.

The remainder of the signature sector is erased flash (0xFF) which allows writing other signature blocks after previous signature block.

4.22.5 Verifying the signature Block

A signature block is "valid" if the first byte is 0xe7 and a valid CRC32 is stored at offset 1196.

Upto 3 signature blocks can be appended to the bootloader or application image in ESP32-S2.

An image is "verified" if the public key stored in any signature block is valid for this device, and if the stored signature is valid for the image data read from flash.

1. The magic byte, signature block CRC is validated.
2. Public key digests are generated per signature block and compared with the digests from eFuse. If none of the digests match, the verification process is aborted.
3. The application image digest is generated and matched with the image digest in the signature blocks. The verification process is aborted is the digests don' t match.
4. The public key is used to verify the signature of the bootloader image, using RSA-PSS (section 8.1.2 of RFC8017) with the image digest calculated in step (3) for comparison.

- The application signing scheme is set to RSA for Secure Boot V2 and to ECDSA for Secure Boot V1.

Important: It is recommended to use Secure Boot V2 on the chip versions supporting them.

4.22.6 Bootloader Size

Enabling Secure boot and/or flash encryption will increase the size of bootloader, which might require updating partition table offset. See secure-boot-bootloader-size.

4.22.7 eFuse usage

- SECURE_BOOT_EN - Enables secure boot protection on boot.
- KEY_PURPOSE_X - Set the purpose of the key block on ESP32-S2 by programming SECURE_BOOT_DIGESTX (X = 0, 1, 2) into KEY_PURPOSE_X (X = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5). Example: If KEY_PURPOSE_2 is set to SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST1, then BLOCK_KEY2 will have the Secure Boot V2 public key digest.
- BLOCK_KEYX - The block contains the data corresponding to its purpose programmed in KEY_PURPOSE_X. Stores the SHA-256 digest of the public key. SHA-256 hash of public key modulus, exponent, precalculated R & M' values (represented as 776 bytes –offsets 36 to 812 - as per the *Signature Block Format*) is written to an eFuse key block.
- KEY_REVOKEX - The revocation bits corresponding to each of the 3 key block. Ex. Setting KEY_REVOKE2 revokes the key block whose key purpose is SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST2.
- SECURE_BOOT_AGGRESSIVE_REVOKE - Enables aggressive revocation of keys. The key is revoked as soon as verification with this key fails.

To ensure no trusted keys can be added later by an attacker, each unused key digest slot should be revoked (KEY_REVOKEX). It will be checked during app startup in `esp_secure_boot_init_checks()` and fixed unless *CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_ALLOW_UNUSED_DIGEST_SLOTS* is enabled.

4.22.8 How To Enable Secure Boot V2

1. Open the *Project Configuration Menu*, in "Security Features" set "Enable hardware Secure Boot in bootloader" to enable Secure Boot.
2. The "Secure Boot V2" option will be selected and the "App Signing Scheme" would be set to RSA by default.
3. Select the number of keys to be used to sign the bootloader binary and chose one of them to sign the application. Specify the secure boot signing key paths for each one of these. The file can be anywhere on your system. A relative path will be evaluated from the project directory. The file does not need to exist yet.
4. Select the UART ROM download mode in "Security features -> UART ROM download mode".
5. Set other menuconfig options (as desired). Pay particular attention to the "Bootloader Config" options, as you can only flash the bootloader once. Then exit menuconfig and save your configuration.
6. The first time you run `make` or `idf.py build`, if the signing key is not found then an error message will be printed with a command to generate a signing key via `espsecure.py generate_signing_key`.

Important: A signing key generated this way will use the best random number source available to the OS and its Python installation (*/dev/urandom* on OSX/Linux and *CryptGenRandom()* on Windows). If this random number source is weak, then the private key will be weak.

Important: For production environments, we recommend generating the keypair using openssl or another industry standard encryption program. See *Generating Secure Boot Signing Key* for more details.

---

7. Run `idf.py bootloader` to build a secure boot enabled bootloader. The build output will include a prompt for a flashing command, using `esptool.py write_flash`.
8. When you're ready to flash the bootloader, run the specified command (you have to enter it yourself, this step is not performed by the build system) and then wait for flashing to complete.
9. Run `idf.py flash` to build and flash the partition table and the just-built app image. The app image will be signed using the signing key you generated in step 4.

Note: `idf.py flash` doesn't flash the bootloader if secure boot is enabled.

---

10. Reset the ESP32-S2 and it will boot the software bootloader you flashed. The software bootloader will enable secure boot on the chip, and then it verifies the app image signature and boots the app. You should watch the serial console output from the ESP32-S2 to verify that secure boot is enabled and no errors have occurred due to the build configuration.

Note: Secure boot won't be enabled until after a valid partition table and app image have been flashed. This is to prevent accidents before the system is fully configured.

Note: If the ESP32-S2 is reset or powered down during the first boot, it will start the process again on the next boot.

---

11. On subsequent boots, the secure boot hardware will verify the software bootloader has not changed and the software bootloader will verify the signed app image (using the validated public key portion of its appended signature block).

4.22.9 Restrictions after Secure Boot is enabled

- Any updated bootloader or app will need to be signed with a key matching the digest already stored in efuse.
- After Secure Boot is enabled, no further efuses can be read protected. (If *Flash Encryption* is enabled then the bootloader will ensure that any flash encryption key generated on first boot will already be read protected.) If

CONFIG_SECURE_BOOT_INSECURE is enabled then this behaviour can be disabled, but this is not recommended.

4.22.10 Generating Secure Boot Signing Key

The build system will prompt you with a command to generate a new signing key via `espsecure.py generate_signing_key`. The –version 2 parameter will generate the RSA 3072 private key for Secure Boot V2.

The strength of the signing key is proportional to (a) the random number source of the system, and (b) the correctness of the algorithm used. For production devices, we recommend generating signing keys from a system with a quality entropy source, and using the best available RSA key generation utilities.

For example, to generate a signing key using the openssl command line:

```
` openssl genrsa -out my_secure_boot_signing_key.pem 3072 `
```

Remember that the strength of the secure boot system depends on keeping the signing key private.

4.22.11 Remote Signing of Images

For production builds, it can be good practice to use a remote signing server rather than have the signing key on the build machine (which is the default esp-idf secure boot configuration). The espsecure.py command line program can be used to sign app images & partition table data for secure boot, on a remote system.

To use remote signing, disable the option "Sign binaries during build". The private signing key does not need to be present on the build system.

After the app image and partition table are built, the build system will print signing steps using espsecure.py:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --version 2 --keyfile PRIVATE_SIGNING_KEY BINARY_FILE
```

The above command appends the image signature to the existing binary. You can use the *–output* argument to write the signed binary to a separate file:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --version 2 --keyfile PRIVATE_SIGNING_KEY --output SIGNED_
↪BINARY_FILE BINARY_FILE
```

4.22.12 Secure Boot Best Practices

- Generate the signing key on a system with a quality source of entropy.
- Keep the signing key private at all times. A leak of this key will compromise the secure boot system.
- Do not allow any third party to observe any aspects of the key generation or signing process using espsecure.py. Both processes are vulnerable to timing or other side-channel attacks.
- Enable all secure boot options in the Secure Boot Configuration. These include flash encryption, disabling of JTAG, disabling BASIC ROM interpeter, and disabling the UART bootloader encrypted flash access.
- Use secure boot in combination with *flash encryption* to prevent local readout of the flash contents.

4.22.13 Key Management

- Between 1 and 3 RSA-3072 public keypairs (Keys #0, #1, #2) should be computed independently and stored separately.
- The KEY_DIGEST efuses should be write protected after being programmed.
- The unused KEY_DIGEST slots must have their corresponding KEY_REVOKE efuse burned to permanently disable them. This must happen before the device leaves the factory.
- The eFuses can either be written by the software bootloader during during first boot after enabling "Secure Boot V2" from menuconfig or can be done using *espefuse.py* which communicates with the serial bootloader program in ROM.

- The KEY_DIGESTs should be numbered sequentially beginning at key digest #0. (ie if key digest #1 is used, key digest #0 should be used. If key digest #2 is used, key digest #0 & #1 must be used.)
- The software bootloader (non OTA upgradeable) is signed using at least one, possibly all three, private keys and flashed in the factory.
- Apps should only be signed with a single private key (the others being stored securely elsewhere), however they may be signed with multiple private keys if some are being revoked (see Key Revocation, below).

4.22.14 Multiple Keys

- The bootloader should be signed with all the private key(s) that are needed for the life of the device, before it is flashed.
- The build system can sign with at most one private key, user has to run manual commands to append more signatures if necessary.
- **You can use the append functionality of `espsecure.py`, this command would also printed at the end of the Secure B**
  espsecure.py sign_data -k secure_boot_signing_key2.pem -v 2 –append_signatures -o signed_bootloader.bin build/bootloader/bootloader.bin
- While signing with multiple private keys, it is recommended that the private keys be signed independently, if possible on different servers and stored separately.
- **You can check the signatures attached to a binary using -** espsecure.py signature_info_v2 datafile.bin

4.22.15 Key Revocation

- Keys are processed in a linear order. (key #0, key #1, key #2).
- Applications should be signed with only one key at a time, to minimise the exposure of unused private keys.
- The bootloader can be signed with multiple keys from the factory.

Assuming a trusted private key (N-1) has been compromised, to update to new keypair (N).

1. Server sends an OTA update with an application signed with the new private key (#N).
2. The new OTA update is written to an unused OTA app partition.
3. The new application's signature block is validated. The public keys are checked against the digests programmed in the eFuse & the application is verified using the verified public key.
4. The active partition is set to the new OTA application's partition.
5. Device resets, loads the bootloader (verified with key #N-1) which then boots new app (verified with key #N).
6. The new app verifies bootloader with key #N (as a final check) and then runs code to revoke key #N-1 (sets KEY_REVOKE efuse bit).
7. The API *esp_ota_revoke_secure_boot_public_key()* can be used to revoke the key #N-1.

- A similiar approach can also be used to physically reflash with a new key. For physical reflashing, the bootloader content can also be changed at the same time.

4.22.16 Technical Details

The following sections contain low-level reference descriptions of various secure boot elements:

Manual Commands

Secure boot is integrated into the esp-idf build system, so `make` or `idf.py build` will sign an app image and `idf.py bootloader` will produce a signed bootloader if secure signed binaries on build is enabled.

However, it is possible to use the `espsecure.py` tool to make standalone signatures and digests.

To sign a binary image:

```
espsecure.py sign_data --version 2 --keyfile ./my_signing_key.pem --output ./image_
↪signed.bin image-unsigned.bin
```

Keyfile is the PEM file containing an RSA-3072 private signing key.

4.22.17 Secure Boot & Flash Encryption

If secure boot is used without *Flash Encryption*, it is possible to launch "time-of-check to time-of-use" attack, where flash contents are swapped after the image is verified and running. Therefore, it is recommended to use both the features together.

4.22.18 Signed App Verification Without Hardware Secure Boot

The Secure Boot V2 signature of apps can be checked on OTA update, without enabling the hardware secure boot option. This option uses the same app signature scheme as Secure Boot V2, but unlike hardware secure boot it does not prevent an attacker who can write to flash from bypassing the signature protection.

This may be desirable in cases where the delay of Secure Boot verification on startup is unacceptable, and/or where the threat model does not include physical access or attackers writing to bootloader or app partitions in flash.

In this mode, any public key which is present in the signature block of the currently running app will be used to verify the signature of a newly updated app. (The signature on the running app isn't verified during the update process, it's assumed to be valid.) In this way the system creates a chain of trust from the running app to the newly updated app.

For this reason, it's essential that the initial app flashed to the device is also signed. A check is run on app startup and the app will abort if no signatures are found. This is to try and prevent a situation where no update is possible. The app should have only one valid signature block in the first position. Note again that, unlike hardware Secure Boot V2, the signature of the running app isn't verified on boot.The system only verifies a signature block in the first position and ignores the other (2) appended signatures.

Note: In general, it's recommended to use full hardware Secure Boot unless certain that this option is sufficient for application security needs

---

How To Enable Signed App Verification

1. Open *Project Configuration Menu* -> Security features
2. Ensure *App Signing Scheme* is *RSA*
3. Enable *CONFIG_SECURE_SIGNED_APPS_NO_SECURE_BOOT*
4. By default, "Sign binaries during build" will be enabled on selecting "Require signed app images" option, which will sign binary files as a part of build process. The file named in "Secure boot private signing key" will be used to sign the image.
5. If you disable "Sign binaries during build" option then all app binaries must be manually signed by following instructions in *Remote Signing of Images*.

Warning: It is very important that all apps flashed have been signed, either during the build or after the build.

4.22.19 Advanced Features

JTAG Debugging

By default, when Secure Boot is enabled then JTAG debugging is disabled via eFuse. The bootloader does this on first boot, at the same time it enables Secure Boot.

See *JTAG with Flash Encryption or Secure Boot* for more information about using JTAG Debugging with either Secure Boot or signed app verification enabled.

4.23 Thread Local Storage

4.23.1 Overview

Thread-local storage (TLS) is a mechanism by which variables are allocated such that there is one instance of the variable per extant thread. ESP-IDF provides three ways to make use of such variables:

- *FreeRTOS Native API*: ESP-IDF FreeRTOS native API.
- *Pthread API*: ESP-IDF's pthread API.
- *C11 Standard*: C11 standard introduces special keyword to declare variables as thread local.

4.23.2 FreeRTOS Native API

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS provides the following API to manage thread local variables:

- *vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer()*
- *pvTaskGetThreadLocalStoragePointer()*
- *vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback()*

In this case maximum number of variables that can be allocated is limited by `configNUM_THREAD_LOCAL_STORAGE_POINTERS` macro. Variables are kept in the task control block (TCB) and accessed by their index. Note that index 0 is reserved for ESP-IDF internal uses. Using that API user can allocate thread local variables of an arbitrary size and assign them to any number of tasks. Different tasks can have different sets of TLS variables. If size of the variable is more then 4 bytes then user is responsible for allocating/deallocating memory for it. Variable's deallocation is initiated by FreeRTOS when task is deleted, but user must provide function (callback) to do proper cleanup.

4.23.3 Pthread API

The ESP-IDF provides the following pthread API to manage thtread local variables:

- `pthread_key_create()`
- `pthread_key_delete()`
- `pthread_getspecific()`
- `pthread_setspecific()`

This API has all benefits of the one above, but eliminates some its limits. The number of variables is limited only by size of available memory on the heap. Due to the dynamic nature this API introduces additional performance overhead compared to the native one.

4.23.4 C11 Standard

The ESP-IDF FreeRTOS supports thread local variables according to C11 standard (ones specified with `__thread` keyword). For details on this GCC feature please see https://gcc.gnu.org/onlinedocs/gcc-5.5.0/gcc/Thread-Local.html#Thread-Local. Storage for that kind of variables is allocated on the task's stack. Note that area for all such variables in the program will be allocated on the stack of every task in the system even if that task does not use such variables at all. For example ESP-IDF system tasks (like `ipc`, `timer` tasks etc.) will also have that extra stack space allocated. So this feature should be used with care. There is a tradeoff: C11 thread local variables are quite handy to use in programming and can be accessed using just a few Xtensa instructions, but this benefit goes with the cost of additional stack usage for all tasks in the system. Due to static nature of variables allocation all tasks in the system have the same sets of C11 thread local variables.

4.24 Tools

4.24.1 Downloadable Tools

ESP-IDF build process relies on a number of tools: cross-compiler toolchains, CMake build system, and others.

Installing the tools using an OS-specific package manager (like apt, yum, brew, etc.) is the preferred method when the required version of the tool is available. This recommendation is reflected in the Getting Started guide. For example, on Linux and macOS it is recommended to install CMake using an OS package manager.

However, some of the tools are IDF-specific and are not available in OS package repositories. Furthermore, different versions of ESP-IDF require different versions of the tools to operate correctly. To solve these two problems, ESP-IDF provides a set of scripts for downloading and installing the correct versions of tools, and exposing them in the environment.

The rest of the document refers to these downloadable tools simply as "tools". Other kinds of tools used in ESP-IDF are:

- Python scripts bundled with ESP-IDF (such as `idf.py`)
- Python packages installed from PyPI.

The following sections explain the installation method, and provide the list of tools installed on each platform.

Note: This document is provided for advanced users who need to customize their installation, users who wish to understand the installation process, and ESP-IDF developers.

If you are looking for instructions on how to install the tools, see the *Getting Started Guide*.

Tools metadata file

The list of tools and tool versions required for each platform is located in tools/tools.json. The schema of this file is defined by tools/tools_schema.json.

This file is used by tools/idf_tools.py script when installing the tools or setting up the environment variables.

Tools installation directory

`IDF_TOOLS_PATH` environment variable specifies the location where the tools are to be downloaded and installed. If not set, `IDF_TOOLS_PATH` defaults to `HOME/.espressif` on Linux and macOS, and `%USER_PROFILE%\.espressif` on Windows.

Inside `IDF_TOOLS_PATH`, the scripts performing tools installation create the following directories:

- `dist` —where the archives of the tools are downloaded.
- `tools` —where the tools are extracted. The tools are extracted into subdirectories: `tools/TOOL_NAME/VERSION/`. This arrangement allows different versions of tools to be installed side by side.

GitHub Assets Mirror

Most of the tools downloaded by the tools installer are GitHub Release Assets, which are files attached to a software release on GitHub.

If GitHub downloads are inaccessible or slow to access, it's possible to configure a GitHub assets mirror.

To use Espressif's download server, set the environment variable `IDF_GITHUB_ASSETS` to `dl.espressif.com/github_assets`. When the install process is downloading a tool from `github.com`, the URL will be rewritten to use this server instead.

Any mirror server can be used provided the URL matches the `github.com` download URL format: the install process will replace `https://github.com` with `https://${IDF_GITHUB_ASSETS}` for any GitHub asset URL that it downloads.

Note: The Espressif download server doesn't currently mirror everything from GitHub, it only mirrors files attached as Assets to some releases as well as source archives for some releases.

`idf_tools.py` script

tools/idf_tools.py script bundled with ESP-IDF performs several functions:

- `install`: Download the tool into `${IDF_TOOLS_PATH}/dist` directory, extract it into `${IDF_TOOLS_PATH}/tools/TOOL_NAME/VERSION`.
  `install` command accepts the list of tools to install, in `TOOL_NAME` or `TOOL_NAME@VERSION` format. If `all` is given, all the tools (required and optional ones) are installed. If no argument or `required` is given, only the required tools are installed.
- `download`: Similar to `install` but doesn't extract the tools. An optional `--platform` argument may be used to download the tools for the specific platform.
- `export`: Lists the environment variables which need to be set to use the installed tools. For most of the tools, setting `PATH` environment variable is sufficient, but some tools require extra environment variables.
  The environment variables can be listed in either of `shell` or `key-value` formats, set by `--format` parameter:
  - `shell` produces output suitable for evaluation in the shell. For example,

    ```
    export PATH="/home/user/.espressif/tools/tool/v1.0.0/bin:$PATH"
    ```

    on Linux and macOS, and

    ```
    set "PATH=C:\Users\user\.espressif\tools\v1.0.0\bin;%PATH%"
    ```

    on Windows.

    Note: Exporting environment variables in Powershell format is not supported at the moment. `key-value` format may be used instead.

    The output of this command may be used to update the environment variables, if the shell supports this. For example:

    ```
    eval $($IDF_PATH/tools/idf_tools.py export)
    ```

  - `key-value` produces output in *VARIABLE=VALUE* format, suitable for parsing by other scripts:

    ```
    PATH=/home/user/.espressif/tools/tool/v1.0.0:$PATH
    ```

    Note that the script consuming this output has to perform expansion of `$VAR` or `%VAR%` patterns found in the output.
- `list`: Lists the known versions of the tools, and indicates which ones are installed.
- `check`: For each tool, checks whether the tool is available in the system path and in `IDF_TOOLS_PATH`.

Install scripts

Shell-specific user-facing scripts are provided in the root of ESP-IDF repository to facilitate tools installation. These are:

- `install.bat` for Windows Command Prompt
- `install.ps1` for Powershell
- `install.sh` for Bash

Aside from downloading and installing the tools into `IDF_TOOLS_PATH`, these scripts prepare a Python virtual environment, and install the required packages into that environment.

Export scripts

Since the installed tools are not permanently added into the user or system `PATH` environment variable, an extra step is required to use them in the command line. The following scripts modify the environment variables in the current shell to make the correct versions of the tools available:

- `export.bat` for Windows Command Prompt
- `export.ps1` for Powershell
- `export.sh` for Bash

Note: To modify the shell environment in Bash, `export.sh` must be "sourced" : `. ./export.sh` (note the leading dot and space).

`export.sh` may be used with shells other than Bash (such as zsh). However in this case the `IDF_PATH` environment variable must be set before running the script. When used in Bash, the script will guess the `IDF_PATH` value from its own location.

In addition to calling `idf_tools.py`, these scripts list the directories which have been added to the `PATH`.

Other installation methods

Depending on the environment, more user-friendly wrappers for `idf_tools.py` are provided:

- *IDF Tools installer for Windows* can download and install the tools. Internally the installer uses `idf_tools.py`.
- *Eclipse plugin for ESP-IDF* includes a menu item to set up the tools. Internally the plugin calls `idf_tools.py`.
- Visual Studio Code extension for ESP-IDF includes an onboarding flow. This flow helps setting up the tools. Although the extension does not rely on `idf_tools.py`, the same installation method is used.

Custom installation

Although the methods above are recommended for ESP-IDF users, they are not a must for building ESP-IDF applications. ESP-IDF build system expects that all the necessary tools are installed somewhere, and made available in the `PATH`.

List of IDF Tools

xtensa-esp32-elf Toolchain for Xtensa (ESP32) based on GCC

License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception

More info: https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-amd64.tar.gz SHA256: 674080a12f9c5ebe5a3a5ce51c6deaeffe6dfb06d6416233df86f25b574e9279
linux-armel	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-armel.tar.gz SHA256: 6771e011dffa2438ef84ff3474538b4a69df8f9d4cfae3b3707ca31c782ed7db
linux-i686	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-i686.tar.gz SHA256: 076b7e05304e26aa6ec105c9e0dc74addca079bc2cae6e42ee7575c5ded29877
macos	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-macos.tar.gz SHA256: 6845f786303b26c4a55ede57487ba65bd25737232fe6104be03f25bb62f4631c
win32	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win32.zip SHA256: 81cecd5493a3fcf2118977f3fd60bd0a13a4aeac8fe6760d912f96d2c34fab66
win64	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win64.zip SHA256: 58419852fefb7111fdec056ac2fd7c4bd09c1f4c17610a761a97b788413527cf

xtensa-esp32s2-elf Toolchain for Xtensa (ESP32-S2) based on GCC

License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception

More info: https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-amd64.tar.gz SHA256: 40fafa47045167feda0cd07827db5207ebfeb4a3b6b24475957a921bc92805ed
linux-armel	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-armel.tar.gz SHA256: 6c1efec4c7829202279388ccb388e8a17a34464bc351d677c4f04d95ea4b4ce0
linux-i686	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-i686.tar.gz SHA256: bd3a91166206a1a7ff7c572e15389e1938c3cdce588032a5e915be677a945638
macos	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-macos.tar.gz SHA256: fe19b0c873879d8d89ec040f4db04a3ab27d769d3fd5f55fe59a28b6b111d09c
win32	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win32.zip SHA256: d078d614ae864ae4a37fcb5b83323af0a5cfdbd8243607664becdd0f977a1e33
win64	required	https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG/releases/download/esp-2020r3/xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win64.zip SHA256: 6ea78b72ec52330b69af91dbe6c77c22bdc827817f044aa30306270453032bb4

xtensa-esp32s3-elf Toolchain for Xtensa (ESP32-S3) based on GCC

License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception

More info: https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-amd64.tar.gz SHA256: 22bf5e63baf3f3f5103ae21bcc35d80cd888d8032095e7b9e8f9631074ac462a
linux-armel	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-armel.tar.gz SHA256: 27f423af3cfb9d8ed7a02173ccd8dc3b0fd3b3e76a92e9ba507121e73bfa5df3
linux-i686	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-linux-i686.tar.gz SHA256: 479a71cfb4b0c0b36371a1aaed2e6095dfc3241937a54f60a1ba115da73ddec5
macos	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-macos.tar.gz SHA256: c09b8fcbb840540a3f59429b1bbfbe5abfcacccf7a8a955e4e01e3f50b53a079
win32	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win32.zip SHA256: 9591fc32896b13d7fe77310afbbff197cbbc20437d316e0e2460c5c50a10d7b5
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/xtensa-esp32s3-elf-gcc8_4_0-esp-2020r3-win64.zip SHA256: 1caf56e9588214d8f1bc17734680ebab2906da3b5f31095e60407dad170f1221

riscv32-esp-elf Toolchain for 32-bit RISC-V based on GCC

License: GPL-3.0-with-GCC-exception

More info: https://github.com/espressif/crosstool-NG

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/toolchains/preview/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-crosstool-ng-1.24.0-123-g64eb9ff-linux-amd64.tar.gz SHA256: 425454c5c4e2cde5dd2dd3a1d398befc70addf71547840fb6d0ec4b307b08894
linux-armel	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/toolchains/preview/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-crosstool-ng-1.24.0-123-g64eb9ff-linux-armel.tar.gz SHA256: 8ae098751b5196ca8a80d832cc9930bc4d639762a6cb22be3cfe0a8d71b2f230
macos	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/toolchains/preview/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-crosstool-ng-1.24.0-123-g64eb9ff-macos.tar.gz SHA256: 35b1aef85b7e6b4268774f627e8e835d087bcf8b9972cfb6436614aa2e40d4a9
win32	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/toolchains/preview/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-crosstool-ng-1.24.0-123-g64eb9ff-win32.zip SHA256: 4f576b08620f57c270ac677cc94dce2767fff72d27a539e348d448f63b480d1f
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/toolchains/preview/riscv32-esp-elf-gcc8_4_0-crosstool-ng-1.24.0-123-g64eb9ff-win64.zip SHA256: 51e392ed88498f3fc4ad07e9ff4b5225f6533b1c363ecd7dd67c10d8d31b6b23

esp32ulp-elf Toolchain for ESP32 ULP coprocessor

License: GPL-2.0-or-later

More info: https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-linux-amd64-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz SHA256: 3016c4fc551181175bd9979869bc1d1f28fa8efa25a0e29ad7f833fca4bc03d7
linux-armel	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-linux-armel-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz SHA256: 88967c086a6e71834282d9ae05841ee74dae1815f27807b25cdd3f7775a47101
macos	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-macos-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz SHA256: a35d9e7a0445247c7fc9dccd3fbc35682f0fafc28beeb10c94b59466317190c4
win32	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-win32-2.28.51-esp-20191205.zip SHA256: bade309353a9f0a4e5cc03bfe84845e33205f05502c4b199195e871ded271ab5
win64	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32ulp-win32-2.28.51-esp-20191205.zip SHA256: bade309353a9f0a4e5cc03bfe84845e33205f05502c4b199195e871ded271ab5

esp32s2ulp-elf Toolchain for ESP32-S2 ULP coprocessor

License: GPL-2.0-or-later

More info: https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-linux-amd64-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz SHA256: df7b2ff6c7c718a7cbe3b4b6dbcd68180d835d164d1913bc4698fd3781b9a466
linux-armel	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-linux-armel-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz SHA256: 893b213c8f716d455a6efb2b08b6cf1bc34d08b78ee19c31e82ac44b1b45417e
macos	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-macos-2.28.51-esp-20191205.tar.gz SHA256: 5a9bb678a5246638cbda303f523d9bb8121a9a24dc01ecb22c21c46c41184155
win32	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-win32-2.28.51-esp-20191205.zip SHA256: 587de59fbb469a39f96168ae3eaa9f06b2601e6e0543c87eaf1bd97f23e5c4ca
win64	required	https://github.com/espressif/binutils-esp32ulp/releases/download/v2.28.51-esp-20191205/binutils-esp32s2ulp-win32-2.28.51-esp-20191205.zip SHA256: 587de59fbb469a39f96168ae3eaa9f06b2601e6e0543c87eaf1bd97f23e5c4ca

cmake CMake build system

On Linux and macOS, it is recommended to install CMake using the OS-specific package manager (like apt, yum, brew, etc.). However, for convenience it is possible to install CMake using idf_tools.py along with the other tools.

License: BSD-3-Clause

More info: https://github.com/Kitware/CMake

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	optional	https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.16.4/cmake-3.16.4-Linux-x86_64.tar.gz SHA256: 12a577aa04b6639766ae908f33cf70baefc11ac4499b8b1c8812d99f05fb6a02
macos	optional	https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.16.4/cmake-3.16.4-Darwin-x86_64.tar.gz SHA256: f60e0ef96da48725cd8da7d6abe83cd9501167aa51625c90dd4d31081a631279
win32	required	https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.16.4/cmake-3.16.4-win64-x64.zip SHA256: f37963bcfcebdfe5864926a3623f6c21220c35790c39cd65e64bd521cbb39c55
win64	required	https://github.com/Kitware/CMake/releases/download/v3.16.4/cmake-3.16.4-win64-x64.zip SHA256: f37963bcfcebdfe5864926a3623f6c21220c35790c39cd65e64bd521cbb39c55

openocd-esp32 OpenOCD for ESP32

License: GPL-2.0-only

More info: https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	required	https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20200709/openocd-esp32-linux64-0.10.0-esp32-20200709.tar.gz SHA256: 77a232510625c23489d9bf1b17bdadf56e95acf8f50ef8ebff51477f23c21ef0
linux-armel	required	https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20200709/openocd-esp32-armel-0.10.0-esp32-20200709.tar.gz SHA256: b2cc6b7837f3cac23a752a8c43c6e0b19701ee0ec1eca4896833f0e82746062e
macos	required	https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20200709/openocd-esp32-macos-0.10.0-esp32-20200709.tar.gz SHA256: 97cf84dd3dfb129a7d4842599870a3b0dbb40b2713d3c5153738c44907e85d6e
win32	required	https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20200709/openocd-esp32-win32-0.10.0-esp32-20200709.zip SHA256: b96b95607ca0c5899427f5b88cda7389da11f53ac857d3d2fe467e571af5137e
win64	required	https://github.com/espressif/openocd-esp32/releases/download/v0.10.0-esp32-20200709/openocd-esp32-win32-0.10.0-esp32-20200709.zip SHA256: b96b95607ca0c5899427f5b88cda7389da11f53ac857d3d2fe467e571af5137e

ninja Ninja build system

On Linux and macOS, it is recommended to install ninja using the OS-specific package manager (like apt, yum, brew, etc.). However, for convenience it is possible to install ninja using idf_tools.py along with the other tools.

License: Apache-2.0

More info: https://github.com/ninja-build/ninja

Platform	Required	Download
linux-amd64	optional	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ninja-1.10.2-linux64.tar.gz SHA256: 32bb769de4d57aa7ee0e292cfcb7553e7cc8ea0961f7aa2b3aee60aa407c4033
macos	optional	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ninja-1.10.2-osx.tar.gz SHA256: 847bb1ca4bc16d8dba6aeed3ecb5055498b86bc68c364c37583eb5738bb440f1
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ninja-1.10.2-win64.zip SHA256: bbde850d247d2737c5764c927d1071cbb1f1957dcabda4a130fa8547c12c695f

idf-exe IDF wrapper tool for Windows

License: Apache-2.0

More info: tools/windows/idf_exe

Platform	Required	Download
win32	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/idf-exe-v1.0.1.zip SHA256: 53eb6aaaf034cc7ed1a97d5c577afa0f99815b7793905e9408e74012d357d04a
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/idf-exe-v1.0.1.zip SHA256: 53eb6aaaf034cc7ed1a97d5c577afa0f99815b7793905e9408e74012d357d04a

ccache Ccache (compiler cache)

License: GPL-3.0-or-later

More info: https://github.com/ccache/ccache

Platform	Required	Download
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/ccache-3.7-w64.zip SHA256: 37e833f3f354f1145503533e776c1bd44ec2e77ff8a2476a1d2039b0b10c78d6

dfu-util dfu-util (Device Firmware Upgrade Utilities)

License: GPL-2.0-only

More info: http://dfu-util.sourceforge.net/

Platform	Required	Download
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/dfu-util-0.9-win64.zip SHA256: 5816d7ec68ef3ac07b5ac9fb9837c57d2efe45b6a80a2f2bbe6b40b1c15c470e

idf-python Embeddable Python distribution

License: PSF License

More info: tools/windows/

Platform	Required	Download
win64	optional	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/idf-python/idf-python-3.8.7-embed-win64.zip SHA256: 5fdf20350e71570642377fc58e61138f407cf286a87f11416829d94c4d9f2019

idf-python-wheels Python Wheels distribution bundled for the specific version of IDF and Python

License: Open-source licenses

More info: tools/windows/

Platform	Required	Download
win64	required	https://dl.espressif.com/dl/idf-python-wheels/idf-python-wheels-3.8-2020-01-21-win64.zip SHA256: 0c2f40b615ce7a3d70c6690b44ef550c7c9fe4a480a92dfeb151ba4952e0212b

4.24.2 IDF Docker Image

IDF Docker image (`espressif/idf`) is intended for building applications and libraries with specific versions of ESP-IDF, when doing automated builds.

The image contains:

- Common utilities such as git, wget, curl, zip.
- Python 3.6 or newer.
- A copy of a specific version of ESP-IDF (see below for information about versions). `IDF_PATH` environment variable is set, and points to ESP-IDF location in the container.
- All the build tools required for the specific version of ESP-IDF: CMake, make, ninja, cross-compiler toolchains, etc.
- All Python packages required by ESP-IDF are installed in a virtual environment.

The image entrypoint sets up `PATH` environment variable to point to the correct version of tools, and activates the Python virtual environment. As a result, the environment is ready to use the ESP-IDF build system.

The image can also be used as a base for custom images, if additional utilities are required.

Tags

Multiple tags of this image are maintained:

- `latest`: tracks `master` branch of ESP-IDF
- `vX.Y`: corresponds to ESP-IDF release `vX.Y`
- `release-vX.Y`: tracks `release/vX.Y` branch of ESP-IDF

Note: Versions of ESP-IDF released before this feature was introduced do not have corresponding Docker image versions. You can check the up-to-date list of available tags at https://hub.docker.com/r/espressif/idf/tags.

Usage

Setting up Docker Before using the `espressif/idf` Docker image locally, make sure you have Docker installed. Follow the instructions at https://docs.docker.com/install/, if it is not installed yet.

If using the image in CI environment, consult the documentation of your CI service on how to specify the image used for the build process.

Building a project with CMake In the project directory, run:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project espressif/idf idf.py build
```

The above command explained:

- `docker run`: runs a Docker image. It is a shorter form of the command `docker container run`.
- `--rm`: removes the container when the build is finished
- `-v $PWD:/project`: mounts the current directory on the host (`$PWD`) as `/project` directory in the container
- `espressif/idf`: uses Docker image `espressif/idf` with tag `latest` (implicitly added by Docker when no tag is specified)
- `idf.py build`: runs this command inside the container

To build with a specific docker image tag, specify it as `espressif/idf:TAG`, for example:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project espressif/idf:release-v4.0 idf.py␣
↪build
```

You can check the up-to-date list of available tags at https://hub.docker.com/r/espressif/idf/tags.

Building a project with GNU Make Same as for CMake, except that the build command is different:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project espressif/idf make defconfig all -j4
```

Note: If the `sdkconfig` file does not exist, the default behavior of GNU Make build system is to open the menuconfig UI. This may be not desired in automated build environments. To ensure that the `sdkconfig` file exists, `defconfig` target is added before `all`.

If you intend to build the same project repeatedly, you may bind the `tools/kconfig` directory of ESP-IDF to a named volume. This will prevent Kconfig tools, located in ESP-IDF directory, from being rebuilt, causing a rebuild of the rest of the project:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -v kconfig:/opt/esp/idf/tools/kconfig -w /project␣
↪espressif/idf make defconfig all -j4
```

If you need clean up the `kconfig` volume, run `docker volume rm kconfig`.

Binding the `tools/kconfig` directory to a volume is not necessary when using the CMake build system.

Using the image interactively It is also possible to do builds interactively, to debug build issues or test the automated build scripts. Start the container with *-i -t* flags:

```
docker run --rm -v $PWD:/project -w /project -it espressif/idf
```

Then inside the container, use `idf.py` as usual:

```
idf.py menuconfig
idf.py build
```

Note: Commands which communicate with the development board, such as `idf.py flash` and `idf.py monitor` will not work in the container unless the serial port is passed through into the container. However currently this is not possible with Docker for Windows (https://github.com/docker/for-win/issues/1018) and Docker for Mac (https://github.com/docker/for-mac/issues/900).

4.24.3 IDF Windows Installer

Command-line parameters

Windows Installer *esp-idf-tools-setup* provides the following command-line parameters:

- `/CONFIG=[PATH]` - Path to `ini` configuration file to override default configuration of the installer. Default: `config.ini`.
- `/GITCLEAN=[yes|no]` - Perform git clean and remove untracked directories in Offline mode installation. Default: yes.
- `/GITRECURSIVE=[yes|no]` - Clone recursively all git repository submodules. Default: yes
- `/GITREPO=[URL|PATH]` - URL of repository to clone ESP-IDF. Default: https://github.com/espressif/esp-idf.git
- `/GITRESET=[yes|no]` - Enable/Disable git reset of repository during installation. Default: yes.
- `/HELP` - Display command line options provided by Inno Setup installer.
- `/IDFDIR=[PATH]` - Path to directory where it will be installed. Default: `{userdesktop}\esp-idf}`
- `/IDFVERSION=[v4.3|v4.1|master]` - Use specific IDF version. E.g. v4.1, v4.2, master. Default: empty, pick the first version in the list.
- `/IDFVERSIONSURL=[URL]` - Use URL to download list of IDF versions. Default: https://dl.espressif.com/dl/esp-idf/idf_versions.txt
- `/LOG=[PATH]` - Store installation log file in specific directory. Default: empty.
- `/OFFLINE=[yes|no]` - Execute installation of Python packages by PIP in offline mode. The same result can be achieved by setting the environment variable PIP_NO_INDEX. Default: no.
- `/USEEMBEDDEDPYTHON=[yes|no]` - Use Embedded Python version for the installation. Set to `no` to allow Python selection screen in the installer. Default: yes.

- `/PYTHONNOUSERSITE=[yes|no]` - Set PYTHONNOUSERSITE variable before launching any Python command to avoid loading Python packages from AppDataRoaming. Default: yes.
- `/PYTHONWHEELSURL=[URL]` - Specify URLs to PyPi repositories for resolving binary Python Wheel dependencies. The same result can be achieved by setting the environment variable PIP_EXTRA_INDEX_URL. Default: https://dl.espressif.com/pypi
- `/SKIPSYSTEMCHECK=[yes|no]` - Skip System Check page. Default: no.
- `/VERYSILENT /SUPPRESSMSGBOXES /SP- /NOCANCEL` - Perform silent installation.

Unattended installation

The unattended installation of IDF can be achieved by following command-line parameters:

```
esp-idf-tools-setup-x.x.exe /VERYSILENT /SUPPRESSMSGBOXES /SP- /NOCANCEL
```

The installer detaches its process from the command-line. Waiting for installation to finish could be achieved by following PowerShell script:

```
esp-idf-tools-setup-x.x.exe /VERYSILENT /SUPPRESSMSGBOXES /SP- /NOCANCEL
$InstallerProcess = Get-Process esp-idf-tools-setup
Wait-Process -Id $InstallerProcess.id
```

Custom Python and custom location of Python wheels

The IDF installer is using by default embedded Python with reference to Python Wheel mirror.

Following parameters allows to select custom Python and custom location of Python wheels:

```
esp-idf-tools-setup-x.x.exe /USEEMBEDDEDPYTHON=no /PYTHONWHEELSURL=https://pypi.
↪org/simple/
```

4.25 ULP Coprocessor programming

4.25.1 ESP32-S2 ULP coprocessor instruction set

This document provides details about the instructions used by ESP32-S2 ULP coprocessor assembler.

ULP coprocessor has 4 16-bit general purpose registers, labeled R0, R1, R2, R3. It also has an 8-bit counter register (stage_cnt) which can be used to implement loops. Stage count regiter is accessed using special instructions.

ULP coprocessor can access 8k bytes of RTC_SLOW_MEM memory region. Memory is addressed in 32-bit word units. It can also access peripheral registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, and SENS peripherals.

All instructions are 32-bit. Jump instructions, ALU instructions, peripheral register and memory access instructions are executed in 1 cycle. Instructions which work with peripherals (TSENS, ADC, I2C) take variable number of cycles, depending on peripheral operation.

The instruction syntax is case insensitive. Upper and lower case letters can be used and intermixed arbitrarily. This is true both for register names and instruction names.

Note about addressing

ESP32-S2 ULP coprocessor' s JUMP, ST, LD instructions which take register as an argument (jump address, store/load base address) expect the argument to be expressed in 32-bit words.

Consider the following example program:

```
entry:
        NOP
        NOP
        NOP
        NOP
loop:
        MOVE R1, loop
        JUMP R1
```

When this program is assembled and linked, address of label `loop` will be equal to 16 (expressed in bytes). However *JUMP* instruction expects the address stored in register to be expressed in 32-bit words. To account for this common use case, assembler will convert the address of label *loop* from bytes to words, when generating `MOVE` instruction, so the code generated code will be equivalent to:

```
0000    NOP
0004    NOP
0008    NOP
000c    NOP
0010    MOVE R1, 4
0014    JUMP R1
```

The other case is when the argument of `MOVE` instruction is not a label but a constant. In this case assembler will use the value as is, without any conversion:

```
.set        val, 0x10
MOVE        R1, val
```

In this case, value loaded into R1 will be `0x10`.

Similar considerations apply to `LD` and `ST` instructions. Consider the following code:

```
        .global array
array:  .long 0
        .long 0
        .long 0
        .long 0

        MOVE R1, array
        MOVE R2, 0x1234
        ST R2, R1, 0        // write value of R2 into the first array element,
                            // i.e. array[0]

        ST R2, R1, 4        // write value of R2 into the second array element
                            // (4 byte offset), i.e. array[1]

        ADD R1, R1, 2       // this increments address by 2 words (8 bytes)
        ST R2, R1, 0        // write value of R2 into the third array element,
                            // i.e. array[2]
```

Note about instruction execution time

ULP coprocessor is clocked from RTC_FAST_CLK, which is normally derived from the internal 8MHz oscillator. Applications which need to know exact ULP clock frequency can calibrate it against the main XTAL clock:

```
#include "soc/rtc.h"

// calibrate 8M/256 clock against XTAL, get 8M/256 clock period
uint32_t rtc_8md256_period = rtc_clk_cal(RTC_CAL_8MD256, 100);
uint32_t rtc_fast_freq_hz = 1000000ULL * (1 << RTC_CLK_CAL_FRACT) * 256 / rtc_
↪8md256_period;
```

ULP coprocessor needs certain number of clock cycles to fetch each instruction, plus certain number of cycles to execute it, depending on the instruction. See description of each instruction below for details on the execution time.

Instruction fetch time is:

- 2 clock cycles —for instructions following ALU and branch instructions.
- 4 clock cycles —in other cases.

Note that when accessing RTC memories and RTC registers, ULP coprocessor has lower priority than the main CPUs. This means that ULP coprocessor execution may be suspended while the main CPUs access same memory region as the ULP.

Difference between ESP32 ULP and ESP32-S2 ULP Instruction sets

Compare to the ESP32 ULP coprocessor, the ESP-S2 ULP coprocessor has extended instruction set. The ESP32-S2 ULP is not binary compatible with ESP32 ULP, but the assembled program that was written for the ESP32 ULP will also work on the ESP32-S2 ULP after rebuild. The list of the new instructions that was added to the ESP32-S2 ULP is: LDL, LDH, STO, ST32, STI32. The detailed description of these commands please see below.

NOP - no operation

Syntax **NOP**
Operands None
Cycles 2 cycle to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description No operation is performed. Only the PC is incremented.

Example:

```
1:    NOP
```

ADD - Add to register

Syntax **ADD** *Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2*
ADD *Rdst, Rsrc1, imm*
Operands

- *Rdst* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc1* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc2* - Register R[0..3]
- *Imm* - 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction adds source register to another source register or to a 16-bit signed value and stores result to the destination register.

Examples:

```
1:    ADD R1, R2, R3          //R1 = R2 + R3

2:    Add R1, R2, 0x1234      //R1 = R2 + 0x1234

3:    .set value1, 0x03       //constant value1=0x03
      Add R1, R2, value1      //R1 = R2 + value1


4:    .global label           //declaration of variable label
      Add R1, R2, label       //R1 = R2 + label
        ...
      label: nop              //definition of variable label
```

SUB - Subtract from register

Syntax **SUB** *Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2*
SUB *Rdst, Rsrc1, imm*

Operands

- *Rdst* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc1* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc2* - Register R[0..3]
- *Imm* - 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction subtracts the source register from another source register or subtracts 16-bit signed value from a source register, and stores result to the destination register.

Examples:

```
1:          SUB R1, R2, R3              //R1 = R2 - R3

2:          sub R1, R2, 0x1234          //R1 = R2 - 0x1234

3:          .set value1, 0x03           //constant value1=0x03
            SUB R1, R2, value1          //R1 = R2 - value1
4:          .global label               //declaration of variable label
            SUB R1, R2, label           //R1 = R2 - label
              ....
  label:    nop                         //definition of variable label
```

AND - Logical AND of two operands

Syntax **AND** *Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2*
AND *Rdst, Rsrc1, imm*

Operands

- *Rdst* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc1* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc2* - Register R[0..3]
- *Imm* - 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction does logical AND of a source register and another source register or 16-bit signed value and stores result to the destination register.

Examples:

```
1:          AND R1, R2, R3              //R1 = R2 & R3

2:          AND R1, R2, 0x1234          //R1 = R2 & 0x1234

3:          .set value1, 0x03           //constant value1=0x03
            AND R1, R2, value1          //R1 = R2 & value1

4:          .global label               //declaration of variable label
            AND R1, R2, label           //R1 = R2 & label
              ...
  label:    nop                         //definition of variable label
```

OR - Logical OR of two operands

Syntax **OR** *Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2*
OR *Rdst, Rsrc1, imm*

Operands

- *Rdst* - Register R[0..3]

- *Rsrc1* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc2* - Register R[0..3]
- *Imm* - 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction does logical OR of a source register and another source register or 16-bit signed value and stores result to the destination register.

Examples:

```
1:        OR R1, R2, R3             //R1 = R2 \| R3

2:        OR R1, R2, 0x1234         //R1 = R2 \| 0x1234

3:        .set value1, 0x03         //constant value1=0x03
          OR R1, R2, value1         //R1 = R2 \| value1

4:        .global label             //declaration of variable label
          OR R1, R2, label          //R1 = R2 \|label
          ...
  label: nop                        //definition of variable label
```

LSH - Logical Shift Left

Syntax **LSH** *Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2*
LSH *Rdst, Rsrc1, imm*

Operands

- *Rdst* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc1* - Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc2* - Register R[0..3]
- *Imm* - 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction does logical shift to left of source register to number of bits from another source register or 16-bit signed value and store result to the destination register.

Examples:

```
1:        LSH R1, R2, R3              //R1 = R2 << R3

2:        LSH R1, R2, 0x03            //R1 = R2 << 0x03

3:        .set value1, 0x03           //constant value1=0x03
          LSH R1, R2, value1          //R1 = R2 << value1

4:        .global label               //declaration of variable label
          LSH R1, R2, label           //R1 = R2 << label
          ...
  label:  nop                          //definition of variable label
```

RSH - Logical Shift Right

Syntax **RSH** *Rdst, Rsrc1, Rsrc2*
RSH *Rdst, Rsrc1, imm*

Operands *Rdst* - Register R[0..3] *Rsrc1* - Register R[0..3] *Rsrc2* - Register R[0..3] *Imm* - 16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction does logical shift to right of source register to number of bits from another source register or 16-bit signed value and store result to the destination register.

Examples:

```
1:        RSH R1, R2, R3              //R1 = R2 >> R3

2:        RSH R1, R2, 0x03            //R1 = R2 >> 0x03

3:        .set value1, 0x03           //constant value1=0x03
          RSH R1, R2, value1          //R1 = R2 >> value1

4:        .global label               //declaration of variable label
          RSH R1, R2, label           //R1 = R2 >> label
  label:  nop                         //definition of variable label
```

MOVE –Move to register

Syntax **MOVE** *Rdst, Rsrc*
MOVE *Rdst, imm*
Operands

- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3]
- *Rsrc* –Register R[0..3]
- *Imm* –16-bit signed value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction move to destination register value from source register or 16-bit signed value.
Note that when a label is used as an immediate, the address of the label will be converted from bytes to words. This is because LD, ST, and JUMP instructions expect the address register value to be expressed in words rather than bytes. To avoid using an extra instruction

Examples:

```
1:        MOVE       R1, R2           //R1 = R2

2:        MOVE       R1, 0x03         //R1 = 0x03

3:        .set       value1, 0x03     //constant value1=0x03
          MOVE       R1, value1       //R1 = value1

4:        .global     label           //declaration of label
          MOVE        R1, label       //R1 = address_of(label) / 4
          ...
  label:  nop                         //definition of label
```

STL/ST –Store data to the low 16 bits of 32-bits memory

Syntax **ST** *Rsrc, Rdst, offset, Label* **STL** *Rsrc, Rdst, offset, Label*
Operands

- *Rsrc* –Register R[0..3], holds the 16-bit value to store
- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], address of the destination, in 32-bit words
- *Offset* –11-bit signed value, offset in bytes
- *Label* –2-bit user defined unsigned value

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction stores the 16-bit value of Rsrc to the lower half-word of memory with address Rdst+offset:

```
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{15:0} = {Rsrc[15:0]}
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{15:0} = {Label[1:0],Rsrc[13:0]}
```

The ST command introduced to make compatibility with previous versions of UPL core. The application can use higher 16 bits to determine which instruction in the ULP program has written any particular word into memory.

Examples:

```
1:          STL   R1, R2, 0x12          //MEM[R2+0x12] = R1

2:          .data                       //Data section definition
  Addr1:    .word      123              // Define label Addr1 16 bit
            .set       offs, 0x00       // Define constant offs
            .text                       //Text section definition
            MOVE       R1, 1            // R1 = 1
            MOVE       R2, Addr1        // R2 = Addr1
            STL        R1, R2, offs     // MEM[R2 +  0] = R1
                                        // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'hxxxx0001
3:
            MOVE       R1, 1               // R1 = 1
            STL        R1, R2, 0x12,1      // MEM[R2+0x12] 0xxxxx4001
```

STH –Store data to the high 16 bits of 32-bits memory

Syntax STH *Rsrc, Rdst, offset, Label*
Operands

- *Rsrc* –Register R[0..3], holds the 16-bit value to store
- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], address of the destination, in 32-bit words
- *Offset* –11-bit signed value, offset in bytes
- *Label* –2-bit user defined unsigned value

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction stores the 16-bit value of Rsrc to the high half-word of memory with address Rdst+offset:

```
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{31:16} = {Rsrc[15:0]}
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{31:16} = {Label[1:0],Rsrc[13:0]}
```

Examples:

```
1:          STH   R1, R2, 0x12          //MEM[R2+0x12][31:16] = R1

2:          .data                       //Data section definition
  Addr1:    .word      123              // Define label Addr1 16 bit
            .set       offs, 0x00       // Define constant offs
            .text                       //Text section definition
            MOVE       R1, 1            // R1 = 1
            MOVE       R2, Addr1        // R2 = Addr1
            STH        R1, R2, offs     // MEM[R2 +  0] = R1
                                        // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'h0001xxxx
3:
            MOVE       R1, 1               // R1 = 1
            STH        R1, R2, 0x12, 1     //MEM[R2+0x12] 0x4001xxxx
```

STO –Set offset value for auto increment operation

Syntax STO *offset*
Operands

- *Offset* –11-bit signed value, offset in bytes

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction set 16-bit value to the offset register:

```
offset = value/ 4
```

Examples:

```
1:          STO   0x12                  // Offset = 0x12/4

2:          .data                       //Data section definition
  Addr1:    .word      123              // Define label Addr1 16 bit
            .set       offs, 0x00       // Define constant offs
            .text                       //Text section definition
            STO        offs             // Offset = 0x00
```

STI –Store data to the 32-bits memory with auto increment of predefined offset address

Syntax **STI** *Rsrc, Rdst, Label*

Operands

- *Rsrc* –Register R[0..3], holds the 16-bit value to store
- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], address of the destination, in 32-bit words
- *Label* –2-bit user defined unsigned value

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction stores the 16-bit value of Rsrc to the low and high half-word of memory with address Rdst+offset with auto increment of offset:

```
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{15:0/31:16} = {Rsrc[15:0]}
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{15:0/31:16} = {Label[1:0],Rsrc[13:0]}
```

Examples:

```
1:          STO   0                     // Set offset to 0
            STI   R1, R2, 0x12          //MEM[R2+0x12][15:0] = R1
            STI   R1, R2, 0x12          //MEM[R2+0x12][31:16] = R1

2:          .data                       //Data section definition
  Addr1:    .word      123              // Define label Addr1 16 bit
            .set       offs, 0x00       // Define constant offs
            .text                       //Text section definition
            STO        0                // Set offset to 0
            MOVE       R1, 1            // R1 = 1
            MOVE       R2, Addr1        // R2 = Addr1
            STI        R1, R2           // MEM[R2 +  0] = R1
                                        // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'hxxxx0001
            STIx        R1, R2           // MEM[R2 +  0] = R1
                                        // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'h00010001
3:
            STO        0                // Set offset to 0
            MOVE       R1, 1            // R1 = 1
            STI        R1, R2, 1        //MEM[R2+0x12] 0xxxxx4001
            STI        R1, R2, 1        //MEM[R2+0x12] 0x40014001
```

ST32 –Store 32-bits data to the 32-bits memory

Syntax **ST32** *Rsrc, Rdst, offset, Label*

Operands

- *Rsrc* –Register R[0..3], holds the 16-bit value to store
- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], address of the destination, in 32-bit words
- *Offset* –11-bit signed value, offset in bytes
- *Label* –2-bit user defined unsigned value

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction stores 11 bits of the PC value, label value and the 16-bit value of Rsrc to the 32-bits memory with address Rdst+offset:

```
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{31:0} = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],Rsrc[15:0]}
```

Examples:

```
1:        ST32  R1, R2, 0x12, 0   //MEM[R2+0x12][31:0] = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],
↪Label[1:0],Rsrc[15:0]}

2:        .data                   //Data section definition
  Addr1:  .word     123           // Define label Addr1 16 bit
          .set      offs, 0x00    // Define constant offs
          .text                   //Text section definition
          MOVE      R1, 1         // R1 = 1
          MOVE      R2, Addr1     // R2 = Addr1
          ST32      R1, R2, offs,1// MEM[R2 +  0] = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],
↪Rsrc[15:0]}
                                  // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'h00010001
```

STI32 –Store 32-bits data to the 32-bits memory with auto increment of adress offset

Syntax **STI32** *Rsrc, Rdst, Label*

Operands

- *Rsrc* –Register R[0..3], holds the 16-bit value to store
- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], address of the destination, in 32-bit words
- *Label* –2-bit user defined unsigned value

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction stores 11 bits of the PC value, label value and the 16-bit value of Rsrc to the 32-bits memory with address Rdst+offset:

```
Mem[Rdst + offset / 4]{31:0} = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],Rsrc[15:0]}
```

Where offset value set by STO instruction

Examples:

```
1:        STO    0x12
          STI32  R1, R2, 0   //MEM[R2+0x12][31:0] = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],
↪Rsrc[15:0]}
          STI32  R1, R2, 0   //MEM[R2+0x13][31:0] = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],
↪Rsrc[15:0]}

2:        .data                   //Data section definition
  Addr1:  .word     123           // Define label Addr1 16 bit
          .set      offs, 0x00    // Define constant offs
          .text                   //Text section definition
          MOVE      R1, 1         // R1 = 1
          MOVE      R2, Addr1     // R2 = Addr1
          STO       offs
          STI32     R1, R2, 1// MEM[R2 +  0] = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],
↪Rsrc[15:0]}
                                  // MEM[Addr1 + 0] will be 32'h00010001
          ST32      R1, R2, 1// MEM[R2 +  1] = {PC[10:0],0[2:0],Label[1:0],
↪Rsrc[15:0]}
                                  // MEM[Addr1 + 1] will be 32'h00010001
```

LDL/LD –Load data from low part of the 32-bits memory

Syntax **LD** *Rdst, Rsrc, offset* **LDL** *Rdst, Rsrc, offset*

Operands *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], destination

Rsrc –Register R[0..3], holds address of destination, in 32-bit words

Offset –13-bit signed value, offset in bytes

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction loads lower 16-bit half-word from memory with address Rsrc+offset into the destination register Rdst:

```
Rdst[15:0] = Mem[Rsrc + offset / 4][15:0]
```

The LD command do the same as LDL, and included for compatibility with previous versions of ULP core.

Examples:

```
1:          LDL   R1, R2, 0x12              //R1 = MEM[R2+0x12]

2:          .data                          //Data section definition
  Addr1:    .word      123                 // Define label Addr1 16 bit
            .set       offs, 0x00          // Define constant offs
            .text                          //Text section definition
            MOVE       R1, 1               // R1 = 1
            MOVE       R2, Addr1           // R2 = Addr1 / 4 (address of label is␣
↪converted into words)
            LDL        R1, R2, offs        // R1 = MEM[R2 +  0]
                                           // R1 will be 123
```

LDH –Load data from high part of the 32-bits memory

Syntax **LDH** *Rdst, Rsrc, offset*

Operands *Rdst* –Register R[0..3], destination

Rsrc –Register R[0..3], holds address of destination, in 32-bit words

Offset –13-bit signed value, offset in bytes

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction loads higher 16-bit half-word from memory with address Rsrc+offset into the destination register Rdst:

```
Rdst[15:0] = Mem[Rsrc + offset / 4][15:0]
```

The LD command do the same as LDL, and included for compatibility with previous versions of ULP core.

Examples:

```
1:          LDH   R1, R2, 0x12              //R1 = MEM[R2+0x12]

2:          .data                          //Data section definition
  Addr1:    .word      0x12345678                 // Define label Addr1 16 bit
            .set       offs, 0x00          // Define constant offs
            .text                          //Text section definition
            MOVE       R1, 1               // R1 = 1
            MOVE       R2, Addr1           // R2 = Addr1 / 4 (address of label is␣
↪converted into words)
            LDH        R1, R2, offs        // R1 = MEM[R2 +  0]
                                           // R1 will be 0x1234
```

JUMP –Jump to an absolute address

Syntax **JUMP** *Rdst*

JUMP *ImmAddr*

JUMP *Rdst, Condition*

JUMP *ImmAddr, Condition*

Operands

- *Rdst* –Register R[0..3] containing address to jump to (expressed in 32-bit words)
- *ImmAddr* –13 bits address (expressed in bytes), aligned to 4 bytes
- ***Condition*:**

- EQ –jump if last ALU operation result was zero
- OV –jump if last ALU has set overflow flag

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction makes jump to the specified address. Jump can be either unconditional or based on an ALU flag.

Examples:

```
1:        JUMP        R1              // Jump to address in R1 (address in R1 is in␣
↪32-bit words)

2:        JUMP        0x120, EQ       // Jump to address 0x120 (in bytes) if ALU␣
↪result is zero

3:        JUMP        label           // Jump to label
          ...
  label:  nop                         // Definition of label

4:        .global     label           // Declaration of global label

          MOVE        R1, label       // R1 = label (value loaded into R1 is in words)
          JUMP        R1              // Jump to label
          ...
  label:  nop                         // Definition of label
```

JUMPR –Jump to a relative offset (condition based on R0)

Syntax **JUMPR** *Step, Threshold, Condition*

Operands

- *Step* –relative shift from current position, in bytes
- *Threshold* –threshold value for branch condition
- ***Condition*:**
  - *EQ* (equal) –jump if value in R0 == threshold
  - *LT* (less than) –jump if value in R0 < threshold
  - *LE* (less or equal) –jump if value in R0 <= threshold
  - *GT* (greater than) –jump if value in R0 > threshold
  - *GE* (greater or equal) –jump if value in R0 >= threshold

Cycles Conditions *EQ*, *GT* and *LT*: 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction

Conditions *LE* and *GE* are implemented in the assembler using two **JUMPR** instructions:

```
// JUMPR target, threshold, LE is implemented as:

          JUMPR target, threshold, EQ
          JUMPR target, threshold, LT

// JUMPR target, threshold, GE is implemented as:

          JUMPR target, threshold, EQ
          JUMPR target, threshold, GT
```

Therefore the execution time will depend on the branches taken: either 2 cycles to execute + 2 cycles to fetch, or 4 cycles to execute + 4 cycles to fetch.

Description The instruction makes a jump to a relative address if condition is true. Condition is the result of comparison of R0 register value and the threshold value.

Examples:

```
1:pos:    JUMPR       16, 20, GE    // Jump to address (position + 16 bytes) if␣
↪value in R0 >= 20

2:        // Down counting loop using R0 register
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
          MOVE        R0, 16       // load 16 into R0
  label:  SUB         R0, R0, 1    // R0--
          NOP                      // do something
          JUMPR       label, 1, GE // jump to label if R0 >= 1
```

JUMPS –Jump to a relative address (condition based on stage count)

Syntax **JUMPS** *Step, Threshold, Condition*

Operands

- *Step* –relative shift from current position, in bytes
- *Threshold* –threshold value for branch condition
- ***Condition*:**
  - *EQ* (equal) –jump if value in stage_cnt == threshold
  - *LT* (less than) –jump if value in stage_cnt < threshold
  - *LE* (less or equal) - jump if value in stage_cnt <= threshold
  - *GT* (greater than) –jump if value in stage_cnt > threshold
  - *GE* (greater or equal) —jump if value in stage_cnt >= threshold

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 2 cycles to fetch next instruction:

```
// JUMPS target, threshold, EQ is implemented as:

          JUMPS next, threshold, LT
          JUMPS target, threshold, LE
next:

// JUMPS target, threshold, GT is implemented as:

          JUMPS next, threshold, LE
          JUMPS target, threshold, GE
next:
```

Therefore the execution time will depend on the branches taken: either 2 cycles to execute + 2 cycles to fetch, or 4 cycles to execute + 4 cycles to fetch.

Description The instruction makes a jump to a relative address if condition is true. Condition is the result of comparison of count register value and threshold value.

Examples:

```
1:pos:    JUMPS     16, 20, EQ     // Jump to (position + 16 bytes) if stage_cnt␣
↪== 20

2:        // Up counting loop using stage count register
          STAGE_RST                  // set stage_cnt to 0
  label:  STAGE_INC  1               // stage_cnt++
          NOP                        // do something
          JUMPS       label, 16, LT  // jump to label if stage_cnt < 16
```

STAGE_RST –Reset stage count register

Syntax **STAGE_RST**

Operands No operands

Description The instruction sets the stage count register to 0

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Examples:

```
1:        STAGE_RST      // Reset stage count register
```

STAGE_INC –Increment stage count register

Syntax **STAGE_INC** *Value*
Operands

- *Value* –8 bits value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction increments stage count register by given value.

Examples:

```
1:        STAGE_INC      10          // stage_cnt += 10

2:        // Up counting loop example:
          STAGE_RST                  // set stage_cnt to 0
  label:  STAGE_INC  1               // stage_cnt++
          NOP                        // do something
          JUMPS      label, 16, LT   // jump to label if stage_cnt < 16
```

STAGE_DEC –Decrement stage count register

Syntax **STAGE_DEC** *Value*
Operands

- *Value* –8 bits value

Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction decrements stage count register by given value.

Examples:

```
1:        STAGE_DEC      10        // stage_cnt -= 10;

2:        // Down counting loop exaple
          STAGE_RST                // set stage_cnt to 0
          STAGE_INC  16            // increment stage_cnt to 16
  label:  STAGE_DEC  1             // stage_cnt--;
          NOP                      // do something
          JUMPS      label, 0, GT  // jump to label if stage_cnt > 0
```

HALT –End the program

Syntax **HALT**
Operands No operands
Cycles 2 cycles to execute
Description The instruction halts the ULP coprocessor and restarts ULP wakeup timer, if it is enabled.

Examples:

```
1:       HALT      // Halt the coprocessor
```

WAKE –Wake up the chip

Syntax **WAKE**
Operands No operands
Cycles 2 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction sends an interrupt from ULP to RTC controller.

- If the SoC is in deep sleep mode, and ULP wakeup is enabled, this causes the SoC to wake up.
- If the SoC is not in deep sleep mode, and ULP interrupt bit (RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_INT_ENA) is set in RTC_CNTL_INT_ENA_REG register, RTC interrupt will be triggered.

Note that before using WAKE instruction, ULP program may needs to wait until RTC controller is ready to wake up the main CPU. This is indicated using RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP bit of RTC_CNTL_LOW_POWER_ST_REG register. If WAKE instruction is executed while RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP is zero, it has no effect (wake up does not occur).

Examples:

```
1: is_rdy_for_wakeup:                    // Read RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP bit
          READ_RTC_FIELD(RTC_CNTL_LOW_POWER_ST_REG, RTC_CNTL_RDY_FOR_WAKEUP)
          AND r0, r0, 1
          JUMP is_rdy_for_wakeup, eq     // Retry until the bit is set
          WAKE                           // Trigger wake up
          REG_WR 0x006, 24, 24, 0        // Stop ULP timer (clear RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_
↪SLP_TIMER_EN)
          HALT                           // Stop the ULP program
          // After these instructions, SoC will wake up,
          // and ULP will not run again until started by the main program.
```

WAIT –wait some number of cycles

Syntax **WAIT** *Cycles*
Operands

- *Cycles* –number of cycles for wait

Cycles 2 + *Cycles* cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction delays for given number of cycles.

Examples:

```
1:        WAIT     10          // Do nothing for 10 cycles

2:        .set  wait_cnt, 10   // Set a constant
          WAIT  wait_cnt       // wait for 10 cycles
```

TSENS –do measurement with temperature sensor

Syntax

- **TSENS** *Rdst, Wait_Delay*

Operands

- *Rdst* –Destination Register R[0..3], result will be stored to this register
- *Wait_Delay* –number of cycles used to perform the measurement

Cycles 2 + *Wait_Delay* + 3 * TSENS_CLK to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction
Description The instruction performs measurement using TSENS and stores the result into a general purpose register.

Examples:

```
1:        TSENS     R1, 1000     // Measure temperature sensor for 1000 cycles,
                                 // and store result to R1
```

ADC –do measurement with ADC

Syntax

- **ADC** *Rdst, Sar_sel, Mux*
- **ADC** *Rdst, Sar_sel, Mux, 0* —deprecated form

Operands

- *Rdst* –Destination Register R[0..3], result will be stored to this register
- *Sar_sel* –Select ADC: 0 = SARADC1, 1 = SARADC2

- *Mux* - selected PAD, SARADC Pad[Mux-1] is enabled. If the user passes Mux value 1, then ADC pad 0 gets used.

Cycles `23 + max(1, SAR_AMP_WAIT1) + max(1, SAR_AMP_WAIT2) + max(1, SAR_AMP_WAIT3) + SARx_SAMPLE_CYCLE + SARx_SAMPLE_BIT` cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction makes measurements from ADC.

Examples:

```
1:        ADC      R1, 0, 1      // Measure value using ADC1 pad 2 and store␣
↪result into R1
```

REG_RD –read from peripheral register

Syntax **REG_RD** *Addr, High, Low*

Operands

- *Addr* –Register address, in 32-bit words
- *High* –Register end bit number
- *Low* –Register start bit number

Cycles 4 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction reads up to 16 bits from a peripheral register into a general purpose register: `R0 = REG[Addr][High:Low]`.

This instruction can access registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, SENS, and RTC_I2C peripherals. Address of the the register, as seen from the ULP, can be calculated from the address of the same register on the PeriBUS1 as follows:

```
addr_ulp = (addr_peribus1 - DR_REG_RTCCNTL_BASE) / 4
```

Examples:

```
1:        REG_RD      0x120, 7, 4     // load 4 bits: R0 = {12'b0, REG[0x120][7:4]}
```

REG_WR –write to peripheral register

Syntax **REG_WR** *Addr, High, Low, Data*

Operands

- *Addr* –Register address, in 32-bit words.
- *High* –Register end bit number
- *Low* –Register start bit number
- *Data* –Value to write, 8 bits

Cycles 8 cycles to execute, 4 cycles to fetch next instruction

Description The instruction writes up to 8 bits from an immediate data value into a peripheral register: `REG[Addr][High:Low] = data`.

This instruction can access registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, SENS, and RTC_I2C peripherals. Address of the the register, as seen from the ULP, can be calculated from the address of the same register on the PeriBUS1 as follows:

```
addr_ulp = (addr_peribus1 - DR_REG_RTCCNTL_BASE) / 4
```

Examples:

```
1:        REG_WR      0x120, 7, 0, 0x10   // set 8 bits: REG[0x120][7:0] = 0x10
```

Convenience macros for peripheral registers access

ULP source files are passed through C preprocessor before the assembler. This allows certain macros to be used to facilitate access to peripheral registers.

Some existing macros are defined in `soc/soc_ulp.h` header file. These macros allow access to the fields of peripheral registers by their names. Peripheral registers names which can be used with these macros are the ones defined in `soc/rtc_cntl_reg.h`, `soc/rtc_io_reg.h`, `soc/sens_reg.h`, and `soc/rtc_i2c_reg.h`.

READ_RTC_REG(rtc_reg, low_bit, bit_width) Read up to 16 bits from rtc_reg[low_bit + bit_width - 1 : low_bit] into R0. For example:

```
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/rtc_cntl_reg.h"

/* Read 16 lower bits of RTC_CNTL_TIME0_REG into R0 */
READ_RTC_REG(RTC_CNTL_TIME0_REG, 0, 16)
```

READ_RTC_FIELD(rtc_reg, field) Read from a field in rtc_reg into R0, up to 16 bits. For example:

```
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/sens_reg.h"

/* Read 8-bit SENS_TSENS_OUT field of SENS_SAR_SLAVE_ADDR3_REG into R0 */
READ_RTC_FIELD(SENS_SAR_SLAVE_ADDR3_REG, SENS_TSENS_OUT)
```

WRITE_RTC_REG(rtc_reg, low_bit, bit_width, value) Write immediate value into rtc_reg[low_bit + bit_width - 1 : low_bit], bit_width <= 8. For example:

```
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/rtc_io_reg.h"

/* Set BIT(2) of RTC_GPIO_OUT_DATA_W1TS field in RTC_GPIO_OUT_W1TS_REG */
WRITE_RTC_REG(RTC_GPIO_OUT_W1TS_REG, RTC_GPIO_OUT_DATA_W1TS_S + 2, 1, 1)
```

WRITE_RTC_FIELD(rtc_reg, field, value) Write immediate value into a field in rtc_reg, up to 8 bits. For example:

```
#include "soc/soc_ulp.h"
#include "soc/rtc_cntl_reg.h"

/* Set RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN field of RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG to 0 */
WRITE_RTC_FIELD(RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG, RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN, 0)
```

4.25.2 Programming ULP coprocessor using C macros (legacy)

In addition to the existing binutils port for the ESP32 ULP coprocessor, it is possible to generate programs for the ULP by embedding assembly-like macros into an ESP32 application. Here is an example how this can be done:

```
const ulp_insn_t program[] = {
    I_MOVI(R3, 16),          // R3 <- 16
    I_LD(R0, R3, 0),         // R0 <- RTC_SLOW_MEM[R3 + 0]
    I_LD(R1, R3, 1),         // R1 <- RTC_SLOW_MEM[R3 + 1]
    I_ADDR(R2, R0, R1),      // R2 <- R0 + R1
    I_ST(R2, R3, 2),         // R2 -> RTC_SLOW_MEM[R2 + 2]
    I_HALT()
};
size_t load_addr = 0;
size_t size = sizeof(program)/sizeof(ulp_insn_t);
ulp_process_macros_and_load(load_addr, program, &size);
ulp_run(load_addr);
```

The `program` array is an array of `ulp_insn_t`, i.e. ULP coprocessor instructions. Each `I_XXX` preprocessor define translates into a single 32-bit instruction. Arguments of these preprocessor defines can be register numbers (`R0` —`R3`) and literal constants. See *ULP coprocessor instruction defines* section for descriptions of instructions and arguments they take.

Note: Because some of the instruction macros expand to inline function calls, defining such array in global scope will cause the compiler to produce an "initializer element is not constant" error. To fix this error, move the definition of instructions array into local scope.

Load and store instructions use addresses expressed in 32-bit words. Address 0 corresponds to the first word of `RTC_SLOW_MEM` (which is address 0x50000000 as seen by the main CPUs).

To generate branch instructions, special `M_` preprocessor defines are used. `M_LABEL` define can be used to define a branch target. Label identifier is a 16-bit integer. `M_Bxxx` defines can be used to generate branch instructions with target set to a particular label.

Implementation note: these `M_` preprocessor defines will be translated into two `ulp_insn_t` values: one is a token value which contains label number, and the other is the actual instruction. `ulp_process_macros_and_load` function resolves the label number to the address, modifies the branch instruction to use the correct address, and removes the the extra `ulp_insn_t` token which contains the label numer.

Here is an example of using labels and branches:

```
const ulp_insn_t program[] = {
    I_MOVI(R0, 34),          // R0 <- 34
    M_LABEL(1),              // label_1
    I_MOVI(R1, 32),          // R1 <- 32
    I_LD(R1, R1, 0),         // R1 <- RTC_SLOW_MEM[R1]
    I_MOVI(R2, 33),          // R2 <- 33
    I_LD(R2, R2, 0),         // R2 <- RTC_SLOW_MEM[R2]
    I_SUBR(R3, R1, R2),      // R3 <- R1 - R2
    I_ST(R3, R0, 0),         // R3 -> RTC_SLOW_MEM[R0 + 0]
    I_ADDI(R0, R0, 1),       // R0++
    M_BL(1, 64),             // if (R0 < 64) goto label_1
    I_HALT(),
};
RTC_SLOW_MEM[32] = 42;
RTC_SLOW_MEM[33] = 18;
size_t load_addr = 0;
size_t size = sizeof(program)/sizeof(ulp_insn_t);
ulp_process_macros_and_load(load_addr, program, &size);
ulp_run(load_addr);
```

Application Example

Demonstration of entering into deep sleep mode and waking up using several wake up sources: system/deep_sleep.

API Reference

Header File

- ulp/include/esp32s2/ulp.h

Functions

esp_err_t **ulp_process_macros_and_load**(uint32_t *load_addr*, **const** ulp_insn_t **program*, size_t **psize*)

Resolve all macro references in a program and load it into RTC memory.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_NO_MEM if auxiliary temporary structure can not be allocated
- one of ESP_ERR_ULP_xxx if program is not valid or can not be loaded

Parameters

- `load_addr`: address where the program should be loaded, expressed in 32-bit words
- `program`: ulp_insn_t array with the program
- `psize`: size of the program, expressed in 32-bit words

esp_err_t **ulp_run**(uint32_t *entry_point*)

Run the program loaded into RTC memory.

Return ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `entry_point`: entry point, expressed in 32-bit words

Error codes

ESP_ERR_ULP_BASE

Offset for ULP-related error codes

ESP_ERR_ULP_SIZE_TOO_BIG

Program doesn't fit into RTC memory reserved for the ULP

ESP_ERR_ULP_INVALID_LOAD_ADDR

Load address is outside of RTC memory reserved for the ULP

ESP_ERR_ULP_DUPLICATE_LABEL

More than one label with the same number was defined

ESP_ERR_ULP_UNDEFINED_LABEL

Branch instructions references an undefined label

ESP_ERR_ULP_BRANCH_OUT_OF_RANGE

Branch target is out of range of B instruction (try replacing with BX)

ULP coprocessor registers

ULP co-processor has 4 16-bit general purpose registers. All registers have same functionality, with one exception. R0 register is used by some of the compare-and-branch instructions as a source register.

These definitions can be used for all instructions which require a register.

R0

general purpose register 0

R1

general purpose register 1

R2

general purpose register 2

R3

general purpose register 3

ULP coprocessor instruction defines

I_DELAY(cycles_)

Delay (nop) for a given number of cycles

I_HALT()

Halt the coprocessor.

This instruction halts the coprocessor, but keeps ULP timer active. As such, ULP program will be restarted again by timer. To stop the program and prevent the timer from restarting the program, use I_END(0) instruction.

I_END()

Stop ULP program timer.

This is a convenience macro which disables the ULP program timer. Once this instruction is used, ULP program will not be restarted anymore until ulp_run function is called.

ULP program will continue running after this instruction. To stop the currently running program, use I_HALT().

I_ST (reg_val, reg_addr, offset_)
Store value from register reg_val into RTC memory.

The value is written to an offset calculated by adding value of reg_addr register and offset_ field (this offset is expressed in 32-bit words). 32 bits written to RTC memory are built as follows:

- bits [31:21] hold the PC of current instruction, expressed in 32-bit words
- bits [20:16] = 5' b1
- bits [15:0] are assigned the contents of reg_val

RTC_SLOW_MEM[addr + offset_] = { 5' b0, insn_PC[10:0], val[15:0] }

I_LD (reg_dest, reg_addr, offset_)
Load value from RTC memory into reg_dest register.

Loads 16 LSBs from RTC memory word given by the sum of value in reg_addr and value of offset_.

I_WR_REG (reg, low_bit, high_bit, val)
Write literal value to a peripheral register

reg[high_bit : low_bit] = val This instruction can access RTC_CNTL_, RTC_IO_, SENS_, and RTC_I2C peripheral registers.

I_RD_REG (reg, low_bit, high_bit)
Read from peripheral register into R0

R0 = reg[high_bit : low_bit] This instruction can access RTC_CNTL_, RTC_IO_, SENS_, and RTC_I2C peripheral registers.

I_BL (pc_offset, imm_value)
Branch relative if R0 less than immediate value.

pc_offset is expressed in words, and can be from -127 to 127 imm_value is a 16-bit value to compare R0 against

I_BGE (pc_offset, imm_value)
Branch relative if R0 greater or equal than immediate value.

pc_offset is expressed in words, and can be from -127 to 127 imm_value is a 16-bit value to compare R0 against

I_BXR (reg_pc)
Unconditional branch to absolute PC, address in register.

reg_pc is the register which contains address to jump to. Address is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXI (imm_pc)
Unconditional branch to absolute PC, immediate address.

Address imm_pc is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXZR (reg_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU result is zero, address in register.

reg_pc is the register which contains address to jump to. Address is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXZI (imm_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU result is zero, immediate address.

Address imm_pc is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXFR (reg_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU overflow, address in register

reg_pc is the register which contains address to jump to. Address is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_BXFI (imm_pc)
Branch to absolute PC if ALU overflow, immediate address

Address imm_pc is expressed in 32-bit words.

I_ADDR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Addition: dest = src1 + src2

I_SUBR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Subtraction: dest = src1 - src2

I_ANDR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Logical AND: dest = src1 & src2

I_ORR (reg_dest, reg_src1, reg_src2)
Logical OR: dest = src1 | src2

I_MOVR (reg_dest, reg_src)
Copy: dest = src

I_LSHR (reg_dest, reg_src, reg_shift)
Logical shift left: dest = src << shift

I_RSHR (reg_dest, reg_src, reg_shift)
Logical shift right: dest = src >> shift

I_ADDI (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)
Add register and an immediate value: dest = src1 + imm

I_SUBI (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)
Subtract register and an immediate value: dest = src - imm

I_ANDI (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)
Logical AND register and an immediate value: dest = src & imm

I_ORI (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)
Logical OR register and an immediate value: dest = src | imm

I_MOVI (reg_dest, imm_)
Copy an immediate value into register: dest = imm

I_LSHI (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)
Logical shift left register value by an immediate: dest = src << imm

I_RSHI (reg_dest, reg_src, imm_)
Logical shift right register value by an immediate: dest = val >> imm

M_LABEL (label_num)
Define a label with number label_num.

This is a macro which doesn't generate a real instruction. The token generated by this macro is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function. Label defined using this macro can be used in branch macros defined below.

M_BL (label_num, imm_value)
Macro: branch to label label_num if R0 is less than immediate value.

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

M_BGE (label_num, imm_value)
Macro: branch to label label_num if R0 is greater or equal than immediate value

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

M_BX (label_num)
Macro: unconditional branch to label

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

M_BXZ (label_num)
Macro: branch to label if ALU result is zero

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

M_BXF (label_num)
Macro: branch to label if ALU overflow

This macro generates two ulp_insn_t values separated by a comma, and should be used when defining contents of ulp_insn_t arrays. First value is not a real instruction; it is a token which is removed by ulp_process_macros_and_load function.

Defines

RTC_SLOW_MEM
RTC slow memory, 8k size

The ULP (Ultra Low Power) coprocessor is a simple FSM (Finite State Machine) which is designed to perform measurements using the ADC, temperature sensor, and external I2C sensors, while the main processors are in deep sleep mode. The ULP coprocessor can access the RTC_SLOW_MEM memory region, and registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, and SARADC peripherals. The ULP coprocessor uses fixed-width 32-bit instructions, 32-bit memory addressing, and has 4 general-purpose 16-bit registers.

4.25.3 Installing the Toolchain

The ULP coprocessor code is written in assembly and compiled using the binutils-esp32ulp toolchain.

If you have already set up ESP-IDF with CMake build system according to the *Getting Started Guide*, then the ULP toolchain will already be installed.

4.25.4 Compiling the ULP Code

To compile the ULP code as part of the component, the following steps must be taken:

1. The ULP code, written in assembly, must be added to one or more files with *.S* extension. These files must be placed into a separate directory inside the component directory, for instance *ulp/*.
2. Call `ulp_embed_binary` from the component CMakeLists.txt after registration. For example:

```
...
idf_component_register()

set(ulp_app_name ulp_${COMPONENT_NAME})
set(ulp_s_sources ulp/ulp_assembly_source_file.S)
set(ulp_exp_dep_srcs "ulp_c_source_file.c")

ulp_embed_binary(${ulp_app_name} "${ulp_s_sources}" "${ulp_exp_dep_srcs}")
```

The first argument to `ulp_embed_binary` specifies the ULP binary name. The name specified here will also be used by other generated artifacts such as the ELF file, map file, header file and linker export file. The second argument specifies the ULP assembly source files. Finally, the third argument specifies the list of component source files which include the header file to be generated. This list is needed to build the dependencies correctly and ensure that the generated header file will be created before any of these files are compiled. See section below for the concept of generated header files for ULP applications.

3. Build the application as usual (e.g. *idf.py app*)
   Inside, the build system will take the following steps to build ULP program:
   1. **Run each assembly file (foo.S) through the C preprocessor.** This step generates the preprocessed assembly files (foo.ulp.S) in the component build directory. This step also generates dependency files (foo.ulp.d).
   2. **Run preprocessed assembly sources through the assembler.** This produces object (foo.ulp.o) and listing (foo.ulp.lst) files. Listing files are generated for debugging purposes and are not used at later stages of the build process.
   3. **Run the linker script template through the C preprocessor.** The template is located in `components/ulp/ld` directory.
   4. **Link the object files into an output ELF file** (`ulp_app_name.elf`). The Map file (`ulp_app_name.map`) generated at this stage may be useful for debugging purposes.
   5. **Dump the contents of the ELF file into a binary** (`ulp_app_name.bin`) which can then be embedded into the application.
   6. **Generate a list of global symbols** (`ulp_app_name.sym`) in the ELF file using `esp32ulp-elf-nm`.
   7. **Create an LD export script and header file** (`ulp_app_name.ld` and `ulp_app_name.h`) containing the symbols from `ulp_app_name.sym`. This is done using the `esp32ulp_mapgen.py` utility.
   8. **Add the generated binary to the list of binary files** to be embedded into the application.

4.25.5 Accessing the ULP Program Variables

Global symbols defined in the ULP program may be used inside the main program.

For example, the ULP program may define a variable `measurement_count` which will define the number of ADC measurements the program needs to make before waking up the chip from deep sleep:

```
                        .global measurement_count
measurement_count:      .long 0

                        /* later, use measurement_count */
                        move r3, measurement_count
                        ld r3, r3, 0
```

The main program needs to initialize this variable before the ULP program is started. The build system makes this possible by generating the `${ULP_APP_NAME}.h` and `${ULP_APP_NAME}.ld` files which define the global symbols present in the ULP program. Each global symbol defined in the ULP program is included in these files and are prefixed with `ulp_`.

The header file contains the declaration of the symbol:

```
extern uint32_t ulp_measurement_count;
```

Note that all symbols (variables, arrays, functions) are declared as `uint32_t`. For functions and arrays, take the address of the symbol and cast it to the appropriate type.

The generated linker script file defines the locations of symbols in RTC_SLOW_MEM:

```
PROVIDE ( ulp_measurement_count = 0x50000060 );
```

To access the ULP program variables from the main program, the generated header file should be included using an `include` statement. This will allow the ULP program variables to be accessed as regular variables:

```
#include "ulp_app_name.h"

// later
void init_ulp_vars() {
    ulp_measurement_count = 64;
}
```

Note that the ULP program can only use lower 16 bits of each 32-bit word in RTC memory, because the registers are 16-bit, and there is no instruction to load from the high part of the word.

Likewise, the ULP store instruction writes register value into the lower 16 bits part of the 32-bit word. The upper 16 bits are written with a value which depends on the address of the store instruction, thus when reading variables written by the ULP, the main application needs to mask the upper 16 bits, e.g.:

```
printf("Last measurement value: %d\n", ulp_last_measurement & UINT16_MAX);
```

4.25.6 Starting the ULP Program

To run a ULP program, the main application needs to load the ULP program into RTC memory using the `ulp_load_binary` function, and then start it using the `ulp_run` function.

Note that "Enable Ultra Low Power (ULP) Coprocessor" option must be enabled in menuconfig to reserve memory for the ULP. "RTC slow memory reserved for coprocessor" option must be set to a value sufficient to store ULP code and data. If the application components contain multiple ULP programs, then the size of the RTC memory must be sufficient to hold the largest one.

Each ULP program is embedded into the ESP-IDF application as a binary blob. The application can reference this blob and load it in the following way (suppose ULP_APP_NAME was defined to `ulp_app_name`):

```
extern const uint8_t bin_start[] asm("_binary_ulp_app_name_bin_start");
extern const uint8_t bin_end[]   asm("_binary_ulp_app_name_bin_end");

void start_ulp_program() {
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( ulp_load_binary(
        0 /* load address, set to 0 when using default linker scripts */,
        bin_start,
        (bin_end - bin_start) / sizeof(uint32_t)) );
}
```

esp_err_t **ulp_load_binary**(uint32_t *load_addr*, **const** uint8_t **program_binary*, size_t *program_size*)

Load ULP program binary into RTC memory.

ULP program binary should have the following format (all values little-endian):

1. MAGIC, (value 0x00706c75, 4 bytes)
2. TEXT_OFFSET, offset of .text section from binary start (2 bytes)
3. TEXT_SIZE, size of .text section (2 bytes)
4. DATA_SIZE, size of .data section (2 bytes)
5. BSS_SIZE, size of .bss section (2 bytes)
6. (TEXT_OFFSET - 12) bytes of arbitrary data (will not be loaded into RTC memory)
7. .text section
8. .data section

Linker script in components/ulp/ld/esp32.ulp.ld produces ELF files which correspond to this format. This linker script produces binaries with load_addr == 0.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if load_addr is out of range
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if program_size doesn't match (TEXT_OFFSET + TEXT_SIZE + DATA_SIZE)
- ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED if the magic number is incorrect

Parameters

- `load_addr`: address where the program should be loaded, expressed in 32-bit words
- `program_binary`: pointer to program binary
- `program_size`: size of the program binary

Once the program is loaded into RTC memory, the application can start it, passing the address of the entry point to the `ulp_run` function:

```
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( ulp_run(&ulp_entry - RTC_SLOW_MEM) );
```

esp_err_t **ulp_run** (uint32_t *entry_point*)

Run the program loaded into RTC memory.

Return ESP_OK on success

Parameters

- `entry_point`: entry point, expressed in 32-bit words

Declaration of the entry point symbol comes from the generated header file mentioned above, `${ULP_APP_NAME}.h`. In the assembly source of the ULP application, this symbol must be marked as `.global`:

```
        .global entry
entry:
        /* code starts here */
```

4.25.7 ESP32-S2 ULP program flow

ESP32-S2 ULP coprocessor is started by a timer. The timer is started once `ulp_run` is called. The timer counts a number of RTC_SLOW_CLK ticks (by default, produced by an internal 90 kHz RC oscillator). The number of ticks is set using `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG` register.

The application can set ULP timer period values by `ulp_set_wakeup_period` function.

esp_err_t **ulp_set_wakeup_period** (size_t *period_index*, uint32_t *period_us*)

Set one of ULP wakeup period values.

ULP coprocessor starts running the program when the wakeup timer counts up to a given value (called period). There are 5 period values which can be programmed into SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG registers, x = 0..4 for ESP32, and one period value which can be programmed into RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG register for ESP32-S2. By default, for ESP32, wakeup timer will use the period set into SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYC0_REG, i.e. period number 0. ULP program code can use SLEEP instruction to select which of the SENS_ULP_CP_SLEEP_CYCx_REG should be used for subsequent wakeups.

However, please note that SLEEP instruction issued (from ULP program) while the system is in deep sleep mode does not have effect, and sleep cycle count 0 is used.

For ESP32-s2 the SLEEP instruction not exist. Instead a WAKE instruction will be used.

Note The ULP FSM requires two clock cycles to wakeup before being able to run the program. Then additional 16 cycles are reserved after wakeup waiting until the 8M clock is stable. The FSM also requires two more clock cycles to go to sleep after the program execution is halted. The minimum wakeup period that may be set up for the ULP is equal to the total number of cycles spent on the above internal tasks. For a default configuration of the ULP running at 150kHz it makes about 133us.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG if period_index is out of range

Parameters

- `period_index`: wakeup period setting number (0 - 4)
- `period_us`: wakeup period, us

Once the timer counts the number of ticks set in the selected `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG` register, ULP coprocessor powers up and starts running the program from the entry point set in the call to `ulp_run`.

The program runs until it encounters a `halt` instruction or an illegal instruction. Once the program halts, ULP coprocessor powers down, and the timer is started again.

To disable the timer (effectively preventing the ULP program from running again), clear the `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN` bit in the `RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG` register. This can be done both from ULP code and from the main program.

4.26 ULP-RISC-V Coprocessor programming

The ULP-RISC-V coprocessor is a variant of the ULP, present in ESP32-S2. Similar to ULP, ULP RISC-V coprocessor can perform tasks such as sensor readings while the main CPU stays in low power modes. The main difference from the FSM ULP is this variant can be programmed in C using standard GNU tools. The ULP-RISC-V coprocessor can access the RTC_SLOW_MEM memory region, and registers in RTC_CNTL, RTC_IO, and SARADC peripherals. The RISC-V processor is a 32-bit, fixed point machine. Its instruction set is based on RV32IMC which includes hardware multiplication and division, and compressed code.

4.26.1 Installing the ULP-RISC-V Toolchain

The ULP-RISC-V coprocessor code is written in C (assembly is also possible) and compiled using RISC-V toolchain based on GCC.

If you have already set up ESP-IDF with CMake build system according to the *Getting Started Guide*, then the toolchain should already be installed.

4.26.2 Compiling the ULP-RISC-V Code

To compile the ULP-RISC-V code as part of the component, the following steps must be taken:

1. The ULP-RISC-V code, written in C or assembly (must use the *.S* extension), must be placed into a separate directory inside the component directory, for instance *ulp/*.
2. Call `ulp_embed_binary` from the component CMakeLists.txt after registration. For example:

   ```
   ...
   idf_component_register()

   set(ulp_app_name ulp_${COMPONENT_NAME})
   set(ulp_sources "ulp/ulp_c_source_file.c" "ulp/ulp_assembly_source_file.S")
   set(ulp_exp_dep_srcs "ulp_c_source_file.c")

   ulp_embed_binary(${ulp_app_name} "${ulp_sources}" "${ulp_exp_dep_srcs}")
   ```

   The first argument to `ulp_embed_binary` specifies the ULP binary name. The name specified here will also be used by other generated artifacts such as the ELF file, map file, header file and linker export file. The second argument specifies the ULP source files. Finally, the third argument specifies the list of component source files which include the header file to be generated. This list is needed to build the dependencies correctly and ensure that the generated header file will be created before any of these files are compiled. See section below for the concept of generated header files for ULP applications.

3. Build the application as usual (e.g. *idf.py app*)
   Inside, the build system will take the following steps to build ULP program:
   1. **Run each source file through the C compiler and assembler.** This step generates the object files (.obj.c or .obj.S depending of source file processed) in the component build directory.
   2. **Run the linker script template through the C preprocessor.** The template is located in `components/ulp/ld` directory.
   4. **Link the object files into an output ELF file** (`ulp_app_name.elf`). The Map file (`ulp_app_name.map`) generated at this stage may be useful for debugging purposes.
   5. **Dump the contents of the ELF file into a binary** (`ulp_app_name.bin`) which can then be embedded into the application.

6. **Generate a list of global symbols** (`ulp_app_name.sym`) in the ELF file using `riscv32-esp-elf-nm`.
7. **Create an LD export script and header file** (`ulp_app_name.ld` and `ulp_app_name.h`) containing the symbols from `ulp_app_name.sym`. This is done using the `esp32ulp_mapgen.py` utility.
8. **Add the generated binary to the list of binary files** to be embedded into the application.

4.26.3 Accessing the ULP-RISC-V Program Variables

Global symbols defined in the ULP-RISC-V program may be used inside the main program.

For example, the ULP-RISC-V program may define a variable `measurement_count` which will define the number of ADC measurements the program needs to make before waking up the chip from deep sleep

```
volatile int measurement_count;

int some_function()
{
    //read the measurement count for use it later.
    int temp = measurement_count;

    ...do something.
}
```

The main program can access the global ULP-RISC-V program variables, the build system makes this possible by generating the `${ULP_APP_NAME}.h` and `${ULP_APP_NAME}.ld` files which define the global symbols present in the ULP program. Each global symbol defined in the ULP program is included in these files and are prefixed with `ulp_`.

The header file contains the declaration of the symbol

```
extern uint32_t ulp_measurement_count;
```

Note that all symbols (variables, arrays, functions) are declared as `uint32_t`. For functions and arrays, take the address of the symbol and cast it to the appropriate type.

The generated linker script file defines the locations of symbols in RTC_SLOW_MEM:

```
PROVIDE ( ulp_measurement_count = 0x50000060 );
```

To access the ULP-RISC-V program variables from the main program, the generated header file should be included using an `include` statement. This will allow the ULP program variables to be accessed as regular variables

```
#include "ulp_app_name.h"

void init_ulp_vars() {
    ulp_measurement_count = 64;
}
```

4.26.4 Starting the ULP-RISC-V Program

To run a ULP-RISC-V program, the main application needs to load the ULP program into RTC memory using the *`ulp_riscv_load_binary()`* function, and then start it using the *`ulp_riscv_run()`* function.

Note that *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_ENABLED* and *CONFIG_ESP32S2_ULP_COPROC_RISCV* options must be enabled in menuconfig to reserve memory for the ULP. "RTC slow memory reserved for coprocessor" option must be set to a value sufficient to store ULP code and data. If the application components contain multiple ULP programs, then the size of the RTC memory must be sufficient to hold the largest one.

Each ULP-RISC-V program is embedded into the ESP-IDF application as a binary blob. The application can reference this blob and load it in the following way (suppose ULP_APP_NAME was defined to `ulp_app_name`)

```
extern const uint8_t bin_start[] asm("_binary_ulp_app_name_bin_start");
extern const uint8_t bin_end[]   asm("_binary_ulp_app_name_bin_end");

void start_ulp_program() {
    ESP_ERROR_CHECK( ulp_riscv_load_binary( bin_start,
        (bin_end - bin_start)) );
}
```

esp_err_t **ulp_riscv_load_binary**(**const** uint8_t **program_binary*, size_t *program_size_bytes*)

Load ULP-RISC-V program binary into RTC memory.

Different than ULP FSM, the binary program has no special format, it is the ELF file generated by RISC-V toolchain converted to binary format using objcopy.

Linker script in components/ulp/ld/esp32s2.ulp.riscv.ld produces ELF files which correspond to this format. This linker script produces binaries with load_addr == 0.

Return

- ESP_OK on success
- ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE if program_size_bytes is more than 8KiB

Parameters

- `program_binary`: pointer to program binary
- `program_size_bytes`: size of the program binary

Once the program is loaded into RTC memory, the application can start it, calling the *`ulp_riscv_run()`* function

```
ESP_ERROR_CHECK( ulp_riscv_run() );
```

esp_err_t **ulp_riscv_run**(void)

Run the program loaded into RTC memory.

Return ESP_OK on success

4.26.5 ULP-RISC-V Program Flow

The ULP-RISC-V coprocessor is started by a timer. The timer is started once *`ulp_riscv_run()`* is called. The timer counts the number of RTC_SLOW_CLK ticks (by default, produced by an internal 90kHz RC oscillator). The number of ticks is set using `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG` register. When starting the ULP, `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG` will be used to set the number of timer ticks.

The application can set ULP timer period values (RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG) using the *`ulp_set_wakeup_period()`* function.

Once the timer counts the number of ticks set in the `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_TIMER_1_REG` register, the ULP coprocessor will power up and start running the program from the entry point set in the call to *`ulp_riscv_run()`*.

The program runs until the field `RTC_CNTL_COCPU_DONE` in register `RTC_CNTL_COCPU_CTRL_REG` gets written or when a trap occurs due to illegal processor state. Once the program halts, the ULP coprocessor will power down, and the timer will be started again.

To disable the timer (effectively preventing the ULP program from running again), please clear the `RTC_CNTL_ULP_CP_SLP_TIMER_EN` bit in the `RTC_CNTL_STATE0_REG` register. This can be done both from the ULP code and from the main program.

4.27 Unit Testing in ESP32-S2

ESP-IDF comes with a unit test application that is based on the Unity - unit test framework. Unit tests are integrated in the ESP-IDF repository and are placed in the `test` subdirectories of each component respectively.

4.27.1 Normal Test Cases

Unit tests are located in the `test` subdirectory of a component. Tests are written in C, and a single C source file can contain multiple test cases. Test files start with the word "test".

Each test file should include the `unity.h` header and the header for the C module to be tested.

Tests are added in a function in the C file as follows:

```
TEST_CASE("test name", "[module name]"
{
        // Add test here
}
```

- The first argument is a descriptive name for the test.
- The second argument is an identifier in square brackets. Identifiers are used to group related test, or tests with specific properties.

Note: There is no need to add a main function with `UNITY_BEGIN()` and `UNITY_END()` in each test case. `unity_platform.c` will run `UNITY_BEGIN()` autonomously, and run the test cases, then call `UNITY_END()`.

The `test` subdirectory should contain a *component CMakeLists.txt*, since they are themselves, components. ESP-IDF uses the `unity` test framework and should be specified as a requirement for the component. Normally, components *should list their sources manually*; for component tests however, this requirement is relaxed and the use of the `SRC_DIRS` argument in `idf_component_register` is advised.

Overall, the minimal `test` subdirectory `CMakeLists.txt` file should contain the following:

```
idf_component_register(SRC_DIRS "."
                       INCLUDE_DIRS "."
                       REQUIRES unity)
```

See http://www.throwtheswitch.org/unity for more information about writing tests in Unity.

4.27.2 Multi-device Test Cases

The normal test cases will be executed on one DUT (Device Under Test). However, components that require some form of communication (e.g., GPIO, SPI) require another device to communicate with, thus cannot be tested normal test cases. Multi-device test cases involve writing multiple test functions, and running them on multiple DUTs.

The following is an example of a multi-device test case:

```
void gpio_master_test()
{
    gpio_config_t slave_config = {
            .pin_bit_mask = 1 << MASTER_GPIO_PIN,
            .mode = GPIO_MODE_INPUT,
    };
    gpio_config(&slave_config);
    unity_wait_for_signal("output high level");
    TEST_ASSERT(gpio_get_level(MASTER_GPIO_PIN) == 1);
}

void gpio_slave_test()
{
    gpio_config_t master_config = {
            .pin_bit_mask = 1 << SLAVE_GPIO_PIN,
            .mode = GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT,
    };
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    gpio_config(&master_config);
    gpio_set_level(SLAVE_GPIO_PIN, 1);
    unity_send_signal("output high level");
}

TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_DEVICES("gpio multiple devices test example", "[driver]", gpio_
↪master_test, gpio_slave_test);
```

The macro `TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_DEVICES` is used to declare a multi-device test case.

- The first argument is test case name.
- The second argument is test case description.
- From the third argument, up to 5 test functions can be defined, each function will be the entry point of tests running on each DUT.

Running test cases from different DUTs could require synchronizing between DUTs. We provide `unity_wait_for_signal` and `unity_send_signal` to support synchronizing with UART. As the scenario in the above example, the slave should get GPIO level after master set level. DUT UART console will prompt and user interaction is required:

DUT1 (master) console:

```
Waiting for signal: [output high level]!
Please press "Enter" key to once any board send this signal.
```

DUT2 (slave) console:

```
Send signal: [output high level]!
```

Once the signal is sent from DUT2, you need to press "Enter" on DUT1, then DUT1 unblocks from `unity_wait_for_signal` and starts to change GPIO level.

4.27.3 Multi-stage Test Cases

The normal test cases are expected to finish without reset (or only need to check if reset happens). Sometimes we expect to run some specific tests after certain kinds of reset. For example, we expect to test if the reset reason is correct after a wakeup from deep sleep. We need to create a deep-sleep reset first and then check the reset reason. To support this, we can define multi-stage test cases, to group a set of test functions:

```
static void trigger_deepsleep(void)
{
    esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup(2000);
    esp_deep_sleep_start();
}

void check_deepsleep_reset_reason()
{
    RESET_REASON reason = rtc_get_reset_reason(0);
    TEST_ASSERT(reason == DEEPSLEEP_RESET);
}

TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_STAGES("reset reason check for deepsleep", "[esp32s2]", trigger_
↪deepsleep, check_deepsleep_reset_reason);
```

Multi-stage test cases present a group of test functions to users. It needs user interactions (select cases and select different stages) to run the case.

4.27.4 Tests For Different Targets

Some tests (especially those related to hardware) cannot run on all targets. Below is a guide how to make your unit tests run on only specified targets.

1. Wrap your test code by `!(TEMPORARY_)DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS()` macros and place them either in the original test file, or sepeprate the code into files grouped by functions, but make sure all these files will be processed by the compiler. E.g.

```
#if !TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP32, ESP8266)
TEST_CASE("a test that is not ready for esp32 and esp8266 yet", "[]")
{
}
#endif //!TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP32, ESP8266)
```

Once you need one of the tests to be compiled on a specified target, just modify the targets in the disabled list. It's more encouraged to use some general conception that can be described in `soc_caps.h` to control the disabling of tests. If this is done but some of the tests are not ready yet, use both of them (and remove `!(TEMPORARY_)DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS()` later). E.g.:

```
#if SOC_SDIO_SLAVE_SUPPORTED
#if !TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP64)
TEST_CASE("a sdio slave tests that is not ready for esp64 yet", "[sdio_slave]")
{
    //available for esp32 now, and will be available for esp64 in the future
}
#endif //!TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS(ESP64)
#endif //SOC_SDIO_SLAVE_SUPPORTED
```

2. For test code that you are 100% for sure that will not be supported (e.g. no peripheral at all), use `DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS`; for test code that should be disabled temporarily, or due to lack of runners, etc., use `TEMPORARY_DISABLED_FOR_TARGETS`.

Some old ways of disabling unit tests for targets, that have obvious disadvantages, are deprecated:

- DON'T put the test code under `test/target` folder and use CMakeLists.txt to choose one of the target folder. This is prevented because test code is more likely to be reused than the implementations. If you put something into `test/esp32` just to avoid building it on esp32s2, it's hard to make the code tidy if you want to enable the test again on esp32s3.
- DON'T use `CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx` macros to disable the test items any more. This makes it harder to track disabled tests and enable them again. Also, a black-list style `#if !disabled` is preferred to white-list style `#if CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx`, since you will not silently disable cases when new targets are added in the future. But for test implementations, it's allowed to use `#if CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_xxx` to pick one of the implementation code.
  - Test item: some items that will be performed on some targets, but skipped on other targets. E.g.
    There are three test items SD 1-bit, SD 4-bit and SDSPI. For ESP32-S2, which doesn't have SD host, among the tests only SDSPI is enabled on ESP32-S2.
  - Test implementation: some code will always happen, but in different ways. E.g.
    There is no SDIO PKT_LEN register on ESP8266. If you want to get the length from the slave as a step in the test process, you can have different implementation code protected by `#if CONFIG_IDF_TARGET_` reading in different ways.
    But please avoid using `#else` macro. When new target is added, the test case will fail at building stage, so that the maintainer will be aware of this, and choose one of the implementations explicitly.

4.27.5 Building Unit Test App

Follow the setup instructions in the top-level esp-idf README. Make sure that `IDF_PATH` environment variable is set to point to the path of esp-idf top-level directory.

Change into `tools/unit-test-app` directory to configure and build it:

- `idf.py menuconfig` - configure unit test app.
- `idf.py -T all build` - build unit test app with tests for each component having tests in the `test` subdirectory.
- `idf.py -T "xxx yyy" build` - build unit test app with tests for some space-separated specific components (For instance: `idf.py -T heap build` - build unit tests only for `heap` component directory).
- `idf.py -T all -E "xxx yyy" build` - build unit test app with all unit tests, except for unit tests of some components (For instance: `idf.py -T all -E "ulp mbedtls" build` - build all unit tests exludes `ulp` and `mbedtls` components).

Note: Due to inherent limitations of Windows command prompt, following syntax has to be used in order to build unit-test-app with multiple components: `idf.py -T xxx -T yyy build` or with escaped quoates: `idf.py -T \`"xxx yyy\`" build` in PowerShell or `idf.py -T \^"ssd1306 hts221\^" build` in Windows command prompt.

When the build finishes, it will print instructions for flashing the chip. You can simply run `idf.py flash` to flash all build output.

You can also run `idf.py -T all flash` or `idf.py -T xxx flash` to build and flash. Everything needed will be rebuilt automatically before flashing.

Use menuconfig to set the serial port for flashing.

4.27.6 Running Unit Tests

After flashing reset the ESP32-S2 and it will boot the unit test app.

When unit test app is idle, press "Enter" will make it print test menu with all available tests:

```
Here's the test menu, pick your combo:
(1)     "esp_ota_begin() verifies arguments" [ota]
(2)     "esp_ota_get_next_update_partition logic" [ota]
(3)     "Verify bootloader image in flash" [bootloader_support]
(4)     "Verify unit test app image" [bootloader_support]
(5)     "can use new and delete" [cxx]
(6)     "can call virtual functions" [cxx]
(7)     "can use static initializers for non-POD types" [cxx]
(8)     "can use std::vector" [cxx]
(9)     "static initialization guards work as expected" [cxx]
(10)    "global initializers run in the correct order" [cxx]
(11)    "before scheduler has started, static initializers work correctly" [cxx]
(12)    "adc2 work with wifi" [adc]
(13)    "gpio master/slave test example" [ignore][misc][test_env=UT_T2_1][multi_
↪device]
        (1)     "gpio_master_test"
        (2)     "gpio_slave_test"
(14)    "SPI Master clockdiv calculation routines" [spi]
(15)    "SPI Master test" [spi][ignore]
(16)    "SPI Master test, interaction of multiple devs" [spi][ignore]
(17)    "SPI Master no response when switch from host1 (SPI2) to host2 (SPI3)"␣
↪[spi]
(18)    "SPI Master DMA test, TX and RX in different regions" [spi]
(19)    "SPI Master DMA test: length, start, not aligned" [spi]
(20)    "reset reason check for deepsleep" [esp32s2][test_env=UT_T2_1][multi_stage]
        (1)     "trigger_deepsleep"
        (2)     "check_deepsleep_reset_reason"
```

The normal case will print the case name and description. Master-slave cases will also print the sub-menu (the registered test function names).

Test cases can be run by inputting one of the following:

- Test case name in quotation marks to run a single test case
- Test case index to run a single test case
- Module name in square brackets to run all test cases for a specific module
- An asterisk to run all test cases

`[multi_device]` and `[multi_stage]` tags tell the test runner whether a test case is a multiple devices or multiple stages of test case. These tags are automatically added by `` `TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_STAGES `` and `TEST_CASE_MULTIPLE_DEVICES` macros.

After you select a multi-device test case, it will print sub-menu:

```
Running gpio master/slave test example...
gpio master/slave test example
        (1)     "gpio_master_test"
        (2)     "gpio_slave_test"
```

You need to input a number to select the test running on the DUT.

Similar to multi-device test cases, multi-stage test cases will also print sub-menu:

```
Running reset reason check for deepsleep...
reset reason check for deepsleep
        (1)     "trigger_deepsleep"
        (2)     "check_deepsleep_reset_reason"
```

First time you execute this case, input `1` to run first stage (trigger deepsleep). After DUT is rebooted and able to run test cases, select this case again and input `2` to run the second stage. The case only passes if the last stage passes and all previous stages trigger reset.

4.27.7 Timing Code with Cache Compensated Timer

Instructions and data stored in external memory (e.g. SPI Flash and SPI RAM) are accessed through the CPU's unified instruction and data cache. When code or data is in cache, access is very fast (i.e., a cache hit).

However, if the instruction or data is not in cache, it needs to be fetched from external memory (i.e., a cache miss). Access to external memory is significantly slower, as the CPU must execute stall cycles whilst waiting for the instruction or data to be retrieved from external memory. This can cause the overall code execution speed to vary depending on the number of cache hits or misses.

Code and data placements can vary between builds, and some arrangements may be more favorable with regards to cache access (i.e., minimizing cache misses). This can technically affect execution speed, however these factors are usually irrelevant as their effect 'average out' over the device's operation.

The effect of the cache on execution speed, however, can be relevant in benchmarking scenarios (espcially microbenchmarks). There might be some variability in measured time between runs and between different builds. A technique for eliminating for some of the variability is to place code and data in instruction or data RAM (IRAM/DRAM), respectively. The CPU can access IRAM and DRAM directly, eliminating the cache out of the equation. However, this might not always be viable as the size of IRAM and DRAM is limited.

The cache compensated timer is an alternative to placing the code/data to be benchmarked in IRAM/DRAM. This timer uses the processor's internal event counters in order to determine the amount of time spent on waiting for code/data in case of a cache miss, then subtract that from the recorded wall time.

```
// Start the timer
ccomp_timer_start();

// Function to time
func_code_to_time();

// Stop the timer, and return the elapsed time in microseconds relative to
// ccomp_timer_start
int64_t t = ccomp_timer_stop();
```

One limitation of the cache compensated timer is that the task that benchmarked functions should be pinned to a core. This is due to each core having its own event counters that are independent of each other. For example, if `ccomp_timer_start` gets called on one core, put to sleep by the scheduler, wakes up, and gets rescheduled on the other core, then the corresponding `ccomp_timer_stop` will be invalid.

4.27.8 Mocks

ESP-IDF has a component which integrates the CMock mocking framework. CMock usually uses Unity as a submodule, but due to some Espressif-internal limitations with CI, we still have Unity as an ordinary module in ESP-IDF.

To use the IDF-supplied Unity component which isn't a submodule, the build system needs to pass an environment variable `UNITY_IDR` to CMock. This variable simply contains the path to the Unity directory in IDF, e.g. `export "UNITY_DIR=${IDF_PATH}/components/unity/unity"`.

Refer to cmock/CMock/lib/cmock_generator.rb to see how the Unity directory is determined in CMock.

An example cmake build command to create mocks of a component inside that component's CMakeLists.txt may look like this:

```
add_custom_command(
  OUTPUT ${MOCK_OUTPUT}
  COMMAND ruby ${CMOCK_DIR}/lib/cmock.rb -o${CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR}/mock/mock_
↪config.yaml ${MOCK_HEADERS}
  COMMAND ${CMAKE_COMMAND} -E env "UNITY_DIR=${IDF_PATH}/components/unity/unity"␣
↪ruby ${CMOCK_DIR}/lib/cmock.rb -o${CMAKE_CURRENT_SOURCE_DIR}/mock/mock_config.
↪yaml ${MOCK_HEADERS}
  )
```

${MOCK_OUTPUT} contains all CMock generated output files, ${MOCK_HEADERS} contains all headers to be mocked and ${CMOCK_DIR} needs to be set to CMock directory inside IDF. ${CMAKE_COMMAND} is automatically set.

Refer to cmock/CMock/docs/CMock_Summary.md for more details on how CMock works and how to create and use mocks.

4.28 USB Console

On chips with an integrated USB peripheral, it is possible to use USB Communication Device Class (CDC) to implement the serial console, instead of using UART with an external USB-UART bridge chip. ESP32-S2 ROM code contains a USB CDC implementation, which supports for some basic functionality without requiring the application to include the USB stack:

- Bidirectional serial console, which can be used with *IDF Monitor* or another serial monitor
- Flashing using `esptool.py` and `idf.py flash`.
- *Device Firmware Update (DFU)* interface for flashing the device using `dfu-util` and `idf.py dfu`.

Note: At the moment, this "USB Console" feature is incompatible with TinyUSB stack. However, if TinyUSB is used, it can provide its own CDC implementation.

4.28.1 Hardware Requirements

Connect ESP32-S2 to the USB port as follows

GPIO	USB
20	D+ (green)
19	D- (white)
GND	GND (black)
	+5V (red)

Some development boards may offer a USB connector for the internal USB peripheral —in that case, no extra connections are required.

4.28.2 Software Configuration

USB console feature can be enabled using `CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC` option in menuconfig tool (see *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_UART*).

Once the option is enabled, build the project as usual.

4.28.3 Uploading the Application

Initial Upload

If the ESP32-S2 is not yet flashed with a program which enables USB console, we can not use `idf.py flash` command with the USB CDC port. There are 3 alternative options to perform the initial upload listed below.

Once the initial upload is done, the application will start up and a USB CDC port will appear in the system.

Note: The port name may change after the initial upload, so check the port list again before running `idf.py monitor`.

Initial upload using the ROM download mode, over USB CDC

- Press ESP32-S2 into download mode. To do this, keep GPIO0 low while toggling reset. On many development boards, the "Boot" button is connected to GPIO0, and you can press "Reset" button while holding "Boot".
- A serial port will appear in the system. On most operating systems (Windows 8 and later, Linux, macOS) driver installation is not required. Find the port name using Device Manager (Windows) or by listing `/dev/ttyACM*` devices on Linux or `/dev/cu*` devices on macOS.
- Run `idf.py flash -p PORT` to upload the application, with `PORT` determined in the previous step

Initial upload using the ROM download mode, over USB DFU

- Press ESP32-S2 into download mode. To do this, keep GPIO0 low while toggling reset. On many development boards, the "Boot" button is connected to GPIO0, and you can press "Reset" button while holding "Boot".
- Run `idf.py dfu-flash`.

See *Flashing the Chip with the DFU Image* for details about DFU flashing.

Initial upload using UART On development boards with a USB-UART bridge, upload the application over UART: `idf.py flash -p PORT` where `PORT` is the name of the serial port provided by the USB-UART bridge.

Subsequent Usage

Once the application is uploaded for the first time, you can run `idf.py flash` and `idf.py monitor` as usual.

4.28.4 Limitations

There are several limitations to the USB console feature. These may or may not be significant, depending on the type of application being developed, and the development workflow. Most of these limitations stem from the fact that USB CDC is implemented in software, so the console working over USB CDC is more fragile and complex than a console working over UART.

1. If the application crashes, panic handler output may not be sent over USB CDC in some cases. If the memory used by the CDC driver is corrupted, or there is some other system-level issue, CDC may not work for sending panic handler messages over USB. This does work in many situations, but is not guaranteed to work as reliably as the UART output does. Similarly, if the application enters a boot loop before the USB CDC driver has a chance to start up, there will be no console output.
2. If the application accidentally reconfigures the USB peripheral pins, or disables the USB peripheral, USB CDC device will disappear from the system. After fixing the issue in the application, you will need to follow the *Initial Upload* process to flash the application again.
3. If the application enters light sleep (including automatic light sleep) or deep sleep mode, USB CDC device will disappear from the system.
4. USB CDC driver reserves some amount of RAM and increases application code size. Keep this in mind if trying to optimize application memory usage.
5. By default, the low-level `esp_rom_printf` feature and `ESP_EARLY_LOG` are disabled when USB CDC is used. These can be enabled using *CONFIG_ESP_CONSOLE_USB_CDC_SUPPORT_ETS_PRINTF* option. With this option enabled, `esp_rom_printf` can be used, at the expense of increased IRAM usage. Keep in mind that the cost of `esp_rom_printf` and `ESP_EARLY_LOG` over USB CDC is significantly higher than over UART. This makes these logging mechanisms much less suitable for "printf debugging", especially in the interrupt handlers.
6. If you are developing an application which uses the USB peripheral with the TinyUSB stack, this USB Console feature can not be used. This is mainly due to the following reasons:
   - This feature relies on a different USB CDC software stack in ESP32-S2 ROM.
   - USB descriptors used by the ROM CDC stack may be different from the descriptors used by TinyUSB.
   - When developing applications which use USB peripheral, it is very likely that USB functionality will not work or will not fully work at some moments during development. This can be due to misconfigured USB descriptors, errors in the USB stack usage, or other reasons. In this case, using the UART console for flashing and monitoring provides a much better development experience.
7. When debugging the application using JTAG, USB CDC may stop working if the CPU is stopped on a breakpoint. USB CDC operation relies on interrupts from the USB peripheral being serviced periodically. If the host computer doesn't receive valid responses from the USB device side for some time, it may decide to disconnect the device. The actual time depends on the OS and the driver, and ranges from a few hundred milliseconds to a few seconds.

4.29 Wi-Fi Driver

4.29.1 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Feature List

- Support Station-only mode, AP-only mode, Station/AP-coexistence mode
- Support IEEE 802.11B, IEEE 802.11G, IEEE 802.11N and APIs to configure the protocol mode
- Support WPA/WPA2/WPA2-Enterprise and WPS
- Support AMPDU, HT40, QoS and other key features
- Support Modem-sleep
- Support an Espressif-specific protocol which, in turn, supports up to **1 km** of data traffic
- Up to 20 MBit/s TCP throughput and 30 MBit/s UDP throughput over the air
- Support Sniffer
- Support both fast scan and all-channel scan
- Support multiple antennas
- Support channel state information

4.29.2 How To Write a Wi-Fi Application

Preparation

Generally, the most effective way to begin your own Wi-Fi application is to select an example which is similar to your own application, and port the useful part into your project. It is not a MUST but it is strongly recommended that you take some time to read this article first, especially if you want to program a robust Wi-Fi application. This article is supplementary to the Wi-Fi APIs/Examples. It describes the principles of using the Wi-Fi APIs, the limitations of the current Wi-Fi API implementation, and the most common pitfalls in using Wi-Fi. This article also reveals some design details of the Wi-Fi driver. We recommend you to select an example .

Setting Wi-Fi Compile-time Options

Refer to *Wi-Fi Menuconfig*.

Init Wi-Fi

Refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station General Scenario*, *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi AP General Scenario*.

Start/Connect Wi-Fi

Refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station General Scenario*, *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi AP General Scenario*.

Event-Handling

Generally, it is easy to write code in "sunny-day" scenarios, such as *WIFI_EVENT_STA_START*, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED* etc. The hard part is to write routines in "rainy-day" scenarios, such as *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* etc. Good handling of "rainy-day" scenarios is fundamental to robust Wi-Fi applications. Refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Event Description*, *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station General Scenario*, *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi AP General Scenario*. See also *an overview of event handling in ESP-IDF*.

Write Error-Recovery Routines Correctly at All Times

Just like the handling of "rainy-day" scenarios, a good error-recovery routine is also fundamental to robust Wi-Fi applications. Refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi API Error Code*.

4.29.3 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi API Error Code

All of the ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi APIs have well-defined return values, namely, the error code. The error code can be categorized into:

- No errors, e.g. ESP_OK means that the API returns successfully.
- Recoverable errors, such as ESP_ERR_NO_MEM, etc.
- Non-recoverable, non-critical errors.
- Non-recoverable, critical errors.

Whether the error is critical or not depends on the API and the application scenario, and it is defined by the API user.

The primary principle to write a robust application with Wi-Fi API is to always check the error code and write the error-handling code. Generally, the error-handling code can be used:

- for recoverable errors, in which case you can write a recoverable-error code. For example, when `esp_wifi_start()` returns ESP_ERR_NO_MEM, the recoverable-error code vTaskDelay can be called, in order to get a microseconds' delay for another try.

- for non-recoverable, yet non-critical, errors, in which case printing the error code is a good method for error handling.
- for non-recoverable, critical errors, in which case "assert" may be a good method for error handling. For example, if `esp_wifi_set_mode()` returns ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT, it means that the Wi-Fi driver is not initialized by `esp_wifi_init()` successfully. You can detect this kind of error very quickly in the application development phase.

In esp_err.h, ESP_ERROR_CHECK checks the return values. It is a rather commonplace error-handling code and can be used as the default error-handling code in the application development phase. However, we strongly recommend that API users write their own error-handling code.

4.29.4 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi API Parameter Initialization

When initializing struct parameters for the API, one of two approaches should be followed:

- explicitly set all fields of the parameter
- use get API to get current configuration first, then set application specific fields

Initializing or getting the entire structure is very important because most of the time the value 0 indicates the default value is used. More fields may be added to the struct in the future and initializing these to zero ensures the application will still work correctly after IDF is updated to a new release.

4.29.5 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Programming Model

The ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi programming model is depicted as follows:

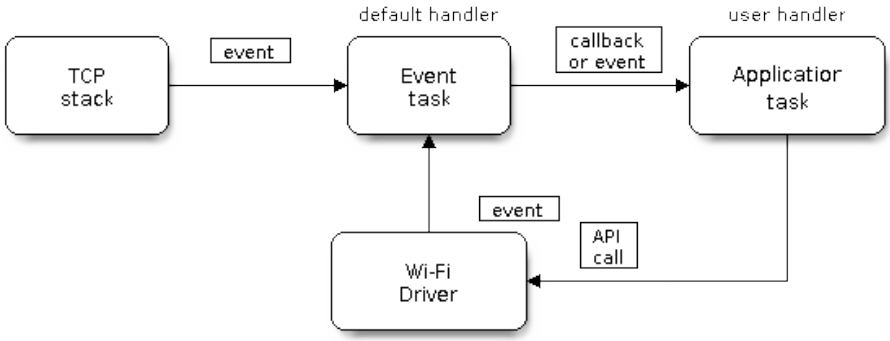


Fig. 41: Wi-Fi Programming Model

The Wi-Fi driver can be considered a black box that knows nothing about high-layer code, such as the TCP/IP stack, application task, event task, etc. The application task (code) generally calls *Wi-Fi driver APIs* to initialize Wi-Fi and handles Wi-Fi events when necessary. Wi-Fi driver receives API calls, handles them, and post events to the application.

Wi-Fi event handling is based on the *esp_event library*. Events are sent by the Wi-Fi driver to the *default event loop*. Application may handle these events in callbacks registered using `esp_event_handler_register()`. Wi-Fi events are also handled by *esp_netif component* to provide a set of default behaviors. For example, when Wi-Fi station connects to an AP, esp_netif will automatically start the DHCP client (by default).

4.29.6 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Event Description

WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY

The Wi-Fi driver will never generate this event, which, as a result, can be ignored by the application event callback. This event may be removed in future releases.

WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE

The scan-done event is triggered by `esp_wifi_scan_start()` and will arise in the following scenarios:

- The scan is completed, e.g., the target AP is found successfully, or all channels have been scanned.
- The scan is stopped by `esp_wifi_scan_stop()`.
- The `esp_wifi_scan_start()` is called before the scan is completed. A new scan will override the current scan and a scan-done event will be generated.

The scan-done event will not arise in the following scenarios:

- It is a blocked scan.
- The scan is caused by `esp_wifi_connect()`.

Upon receiving this event, the event task does nothing. The application event callback needs to call `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num()` and `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()` to fetch the scanned AP list and trigger the Wi-Fi driver to free the internal memory which is allocated during the scan **(do not forget to do this!)**. Refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Scan* for a more detailed description.

WIFI_EVENT_STA_START

If `esp_wifi_start()` returns ESP_OK and the current Wi-Fi mode is Station or AP+Station, then this event will arise. Upon receiving this event, the event task will initialize the LwIP network interface (netif). Generally, the application event callback needs to call `esp_wifi_connect()` to connect to the configured AP.

WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP

If `esp_wifi_stop()` returns ESP_OK and the current Wi-Fi mode is Station or AP+Station, then this event will arise. Upon receiving this event, the event task will release the station's IP address, stop the DHCP client, remove TCP/UDP-related connections and clear the LwIP station netif, etc. The application event callback generally does not need to do anything.

WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED

If `esp_wifi_connect()` returns ESP_OK and the station successfully connects to the target AP, the connection event will arise. Upon receiving this event, the event task starts the DHCP client and begins the DHCP process of getting the IP address. Then, the Wi-Fi driver is ready for sending and receiving data. This moment is good for beginning the application work, provided that the application does not depend on LwIP, namely the IP address. However, if the application is LwIP-based, then you need to wait until the *got ip* event comes in.

WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED

This event can be generated in the following scenarios:

- When `esp_wifi_disconnect()`, or `esp_wifi_stop()`, or `esp_wifi_deinit()` is called and the station is already connected to the AP.
- When `esp_wifi_connect()` is called, but the Wi-Fi driver fails to set up a connection with the AP due to certain reasons, e.g. the scan fails to find the target AP, authentication times out, etc. If there are more than one AP with the same SSID, the disconnected event is raised after the station fails to connect all of the found APs.
- When the Wi-Fi connection is disrupted because of specific reasons, e.g., the station continuously loses N beacons, the AP kicks off the station, the AP's authentication mode is changed, etc.

Upon receiving this event, the default behavior of the event task is:

- Shuts down the station's LwIP netif.
- Notifies the LwIP task to clear the UDP/TCP connections which cause the wrong status to all sockets. For socket-based applications, the application callback can choose to close all sockets and re-create them, if necessary, upon receiving this event.

The most common event handle code for this event in application is to call `esp_wifi_connect()` to reconnect the Wi-Fi. However, if the event is raised because `esp_wifi_disconnect()` is called, the application should not call `esp_wifi_connect()` to reconnect. It's application's responsibility to distinguish whether the event is caused by `esp_wifi_disconnect()` or other reasons. Sometimes a better reconnect strategy is required, refer to *Wi-Fi Reconnect* and *Scan When Wi-Fi Is Connecting*.

Another thing deserves our attention is that the default behavior of LwIP is to abort all TCP socket connections on receiving the disconnect. Most of time it is not a problem. However, for some special application, this may not be what they want, consider following scenarios:

- The application creates a TCP connection to maintain the application-level keep-alive data that is sent out every 60 seconds.
- Due to certain reasons, the Wi-Fi connection is cut off, and the *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* is raised. According to the current implementation, all TCP connections will be removed and the keep-alive socket will be in a wrong status. However, since the application designer believes that the network layer should NOT care about this error at the Wi-Fi layer, the application does not close the socket.
- Five seconds later, the Wi-Fi connection is restored because `esp_wifi_connect()` is called in the application event callback function. **Moreover, the station connects to the same AP and gets the same IPV4 address as before**.
- Sixty seconds later, when the application sends out data with the keep-alive socket, the socket returns an error and the application closes the socket and re-creates it when necessary.

In above scenarios, ideally, the application sockets and the network layer should not be affected, since the Wi-Fi connection only fails temporarily and recovers very quickly. The application can enable "Keep TCP connections when IP changed" via LwIP menuconfig.

IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP

This event arises when the DHCP client successfully gets the IPV4 address from the DHCP server, or when the IPV4 address is changed. The event means that everything is ready and the application can begin its tasks (e.g., creating sockets).

The IPV4 may be changed because of the following reasons:

- The DHCP client fails to renew/rebind the IPV4 address, and the station's IPV4 is reset to 0.
- The DHCP client rebinds to a different address.
- The static-configured IPV4 address is changed.

Whether the IPV4 address is changed or NOT is indicated by field `ip_change` of `ip_event_got_ip_t`.

The socket is based on the IPV4 address, which means that, if the IPV4 changes, all sockets relating to this IPV4 will become abnormal. Upon receiving this event, the application needs to close all sockets and recreate the application when the IPV4 changes to a valid one.

IP_EVENT_GOT_IP6

This event arises when the IPV6 SLAAC support auto-configures an address for the ESP32-S2, or when this address changes. The event means that everything is ready and the application can begin its tasks (e.g., creating sockets).

IP_STA_LOST_IP

This event arises when the IPV4 address become invalid.

IP_STA_LOST_IP doesn't arise immediately after the Wi-Fi disconnects, instead it starts an IPV4 address lost timer, if the IPV4 address is got before ip lost timer expires, IP_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP doesn't happen. Otherwise, the event arises when IPV4 address lost timer expires.

Generally the application don't need to care about this event, it is just a debug event to let the application know that the IPV4 address is lost.

WIFI_EVENT_AP_START

Similar to *WIFI_EVENT_STA_START*.

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP

Similar to *WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP*.

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED

Every time a station is connected to ESP32-S2 AP, the *WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED* will arise. Upon receiving this event, the event task will do nothing, and the application callback can also ignore it. However, you may want to do something, for example, to get the info of the connected STA, etc.

WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED

This event can happen in the following scenarios:

- The application calls `esp_wifi_disconnect()`, or esp_wifi_deauth_sta(), to manually disconnect the station.
- The Wi-Fi driver kicks off the station, e.g. because the AP has not received any packets in the past five minutes, etc. The time can be modified by `esp_wifi_set_inactive_time()`.
- The station kicks off the AP.

When this event happens, the event task will do nothing, but the application event callback needs to do something, e.g., close the socket which is related to this station, etc.

WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED

This event is disabled by default. The application can enable it via API `esp_wifi_set_event_mask()`. When this event is enabled, it will be raised each time the AP receives a probe request.

4.29.7 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station General Scenario

Below is a "big scenario" which describes some small scenarios in Station mode:

1. Wi-Fi/LwIP Init Phase

- s1.1: The main task calls `esp_netif_init()` to create an LwIP core task and initialize LwIP-related work.
- s1.2: The main task calls `esp_event_loop_create()` to create a system Event task and initialize an application event's callback function. In the scenario above, the application event's callback function does nothing but relaying the event to the application task.
- s1.3: The main task calls `esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap()` or `esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta()` to create default network interface instance binding station or AP with TCP/IP stack.
- s1.4: The main task calls `esp_wifi_init()` to create the Wi-Fi driver task and initialize the Wi-Fi driver.

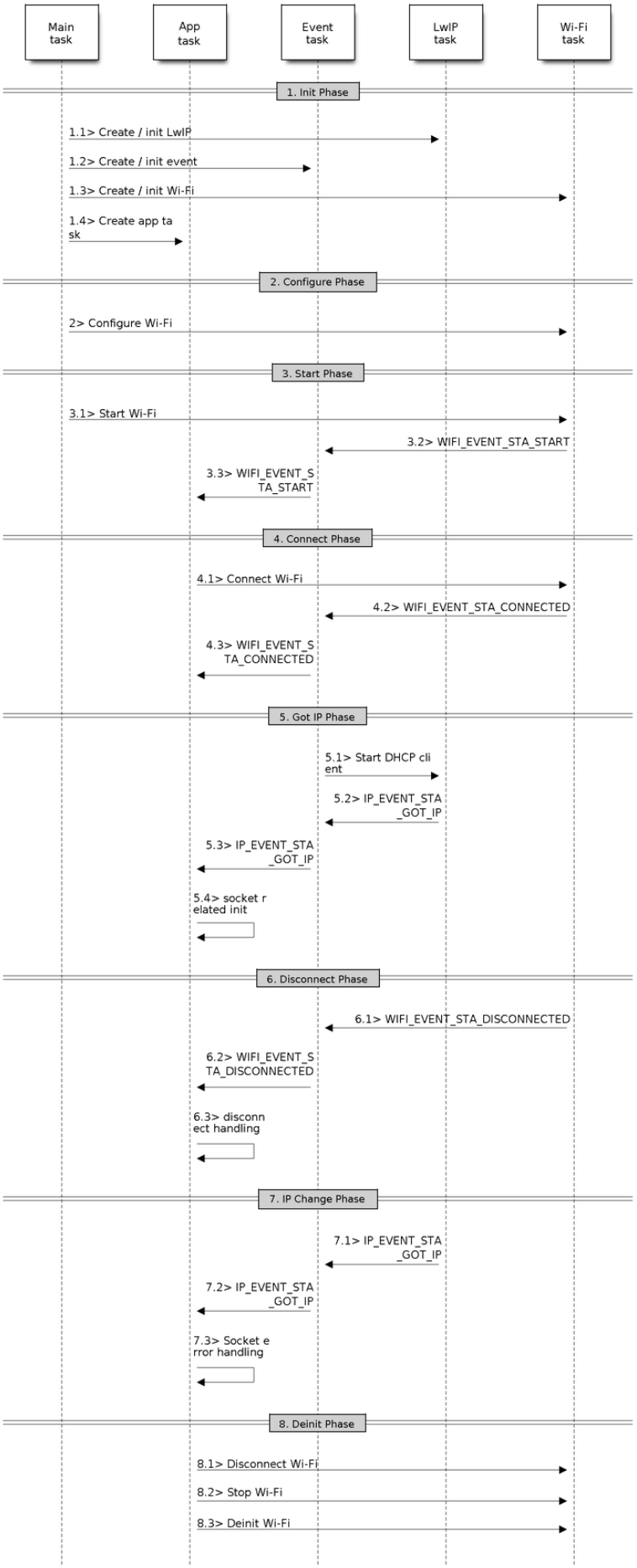


Fig. 42: Sample Wi-Fi Event Scenarios in Station Mode

- s1.5: The main task calls OS API to create the application task.

Step 1.1 ~ 1.5 is a recommended sequence that initializes a Wi-Fi-/LwIP-based application. However, it is **NOT** a must-follow sequence, which means that you can create the application task in step 1.1 and put all other initializations in the application task. Moreover, you may not want to create the application task in the initialization phase if the application task depends on the sockets. Rather, you can defer the task creation until the IP is obtained.

2. Wi-Fi Configuration Phase

Once the Wi-Fi driver is initialized, you can start configuring the Wi-Fi driver. In this scenario, the mode is Station, so you may need to call `esp_wifi_set_mode()` (WIFI_MODE_STA) to configure the Wi-Fi mode as Station. You can call other esp_wifi_set_xxx APIs to configure more settings, such as the protocol mode, country code, bandwidth, etc. Refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Configuration*.

Generally, we configure the Wi-Fi driver before setting up the Wi-Fi connection, but this is **NOT** mandatory, which means that you can configure the Wi-Fi connection anytime, provided that the Wi-Fi driver is initialized successfully. However, if the configuration does not need to change after the Wi-Fi connection is set up, you should configure the Wi-Fi driver at this stage, because the configuration APIs (such as `esp_wifi_set_protocol()`) will cause the Wi-Fi to reconnect, which may not be desirable.

If the Wi-Fi NVS flash is enabled by menuconfig, all Wi-Fi configuration in this phase, or later phases, will be stored into flash. When the board powers on/reboots, you do not need to configure the Wi-Fi driver from scratch. You only need to call esp_wifi_get_xxx APIs to fetch the configuration stored in flash previously. You can also configure the Wi-Fi driver if the previous configuration is not what you want.

3. Wi-Fi Start Phase

- s3.1: Call `esp_wifi_start()` to start the Wi-Fi driver.
- s3.2: The Wi-Fi driver posts *WIFI_EVENT_STA_START* to the event task; then, the event task will do some common things and will call the application event callback function.
- s3.3: The application event callback function relays the *WIFI_EVENT_STA_START* to the application task. We recommend that you call `esp_wifi_connect()`. However, you can also call `esp_wifi_connect()` in other phrases after the *WIFI_EVENT_STA_START* arises.

4. Wi-Fi Connect Phase

- s4.1: Once `esp_wifi_connect()` is called, the Wi-Fi driver will start the internal scan/connection process.
- s4.2: If the internal scan/connection process is successful, the *WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED* will be generated. In the event task, it starts the DHCP client, which will finally trigger the DHCP process.
- s4.3: In the above-mentioned scenario, the application event callback will relay the event to the application task. Generally, the application needs to do nothing, and you can do whatever you want, e.g., print a log, etc.

In step 4.2, the Wi-Fi connection may fail because, for example, the password is wrong, the AP is not found, etc. In a case like this, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise and the reason for such a failure will be provided. For handling events that disrupt Wi-Fi connection, please refer to phase 6.

5. Wi-Fi 'Got IP' Phase

- s5.1: Once the DHCP client is initialized in step 4.2, the *got IP* phase will begin.
- s5.2: If the IP address is successfully received from the DHCP server, then *IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP* will arise and the event task will perform common handling.
- s5.3: In the application event callback, *IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP* is relayed to the application task. For LwIP-based applications, this event is very special and means that everything is ready for the application to begin its tasks, e.g. creating the TCP/UDP socket, etc. A very common mistake is to initialize the socket before *IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP* is received. **DO NOT start the socket-related work before the IP is received.**

6. Wi-Fi Disconnect Phase

- s6.1: When the Wi-Fi connection is disrupted, e.g. because the AP is powered off, the RSSI is poor, etc., *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise. This event may also arise in phase 3. Here, the event task will notify the LwIP task to clear/remove all UDP/TCP connections. Then, all application sockets will be in a wrong status. In other words, no socket can work properly when this event happens.
- s6.2: In the scenario described above, the application event callback function relays *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* to the application task. We recommend that `esp_wifi_connect()` be called to reconnect the Wi-Fi, close all sockets and re-create them if necessary. Refer to *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED*.

7. Wi-Fi IP Change Phase

- s7.1: If the IP address is changed, the *IP_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP* will arise with "ip_change" set to true.
- s7.2: **This event is important to the application. When it occurs, the timing is good for closing all created sockets and recreating them.**

8. Wi-Fi Deinit Phase

- s8.1: Call `esp_wifi_disconnect()` to disconnect the Wi-Fi connectivity.
- s8.2: Call `esp_wifi_stop()` to stop the Wi-Fi driver.
- s8.3: Call `esp_wifi_deinit()` to unload the Wi-Fi driver.

4.29.8 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi AP General Scenario

Below is a "big scenario" which describes some small scenarios in AP mode:

4.29.9 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Scan

Currently, the `esp_wifi_scan_start()` API is supported only in Station or Station+AP mode.

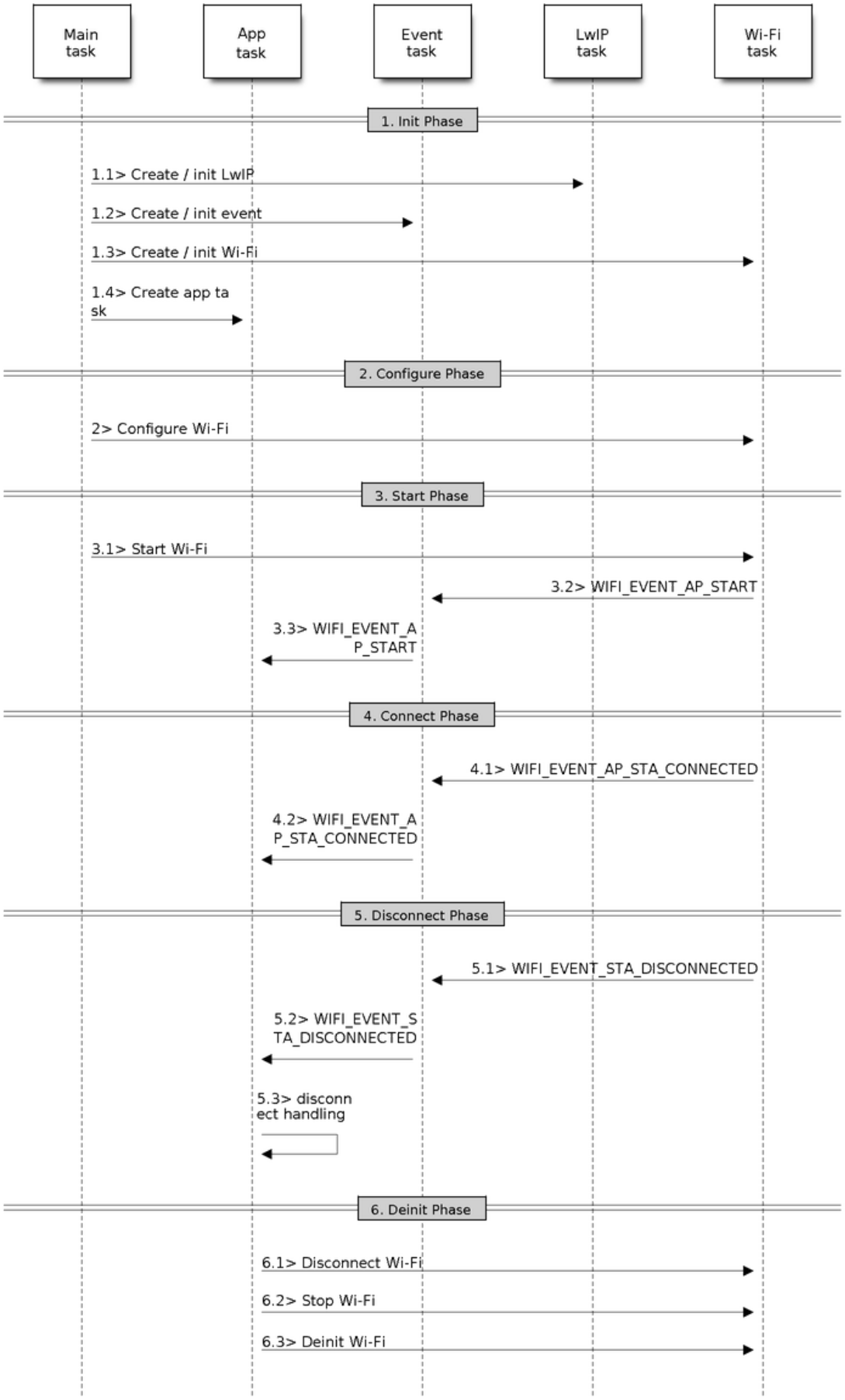


Fig. 43: Sample Wi-Fi Event Scenarios in AP Mode

Scan Type

Mode	Description
Active Scan	Scan by sending a probe request. The default scan is an active scan.
Passive Scan	No probe request is sent out. Just switch to the specific channel and wait for a beacon. Application can enable it via the scan_type field of wifi_scan_config_t.
Foreground Scan	This scan is applicable when there is no Wi-Fi connection in Station mode. Foreground or background scanning is controlled by the Wi-Fi driver and cannot be configured by the application.
Background Scan	This scan is applicable when there is a Wi-Fi connection in Station mode or in Station+AP mode. Whether it is a foreground scan or background scan depends on the Wi-Fi driver and cannot be configured by the application.
All-Channel Scan	It scans all of the channels. If the channel field of wifi_scan_config_t is set to 0, it is an all-channel scan.
Specific Channel Scan	It scans specific channels only. If the channel field of wifi_scan_config_t set to 1, it is a specific-channel scan.

The scan modes in above table can be combined arbitrarily, so we totally have 8 different scans:

- All-Channel Background Active Scan
- All-Channel Background Passive Scan
- All-Channel Foreground Active Scan
- All-Channel Foreground Passive Scan
- Specific-Channel Background Active Scan
- Specific-Channel Background Passive Scan
- Specific-Channel Foreground Active Scan
- Specific-Channel Foreground Passive Scan

Scan Configuration

The scan type and other per-scan attributes are configured by `esp_wifi_scan_start()`. The table below provides a detailed description of wifi_scan_config_t.

Field	Description
ssid	If the SSID is not NULL, it is only the AP with the same SSID that can be scanned.
bssid	If the BSSID is not NULL, it is only the AP with the same BSSID that can be scanned.
channel	If "channel" is 0, there will be an all-channel scan; otherwise, there will be a specific-channel scan.
show_hidden	If "show_hidden" is 0, the scan ignores the AP with a hidden SSID; otherwise, the scan considers the hidden AP a normal one.
scan_type	If "scan_type" is WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE, the scan is "active" ; otherwise, it is a "passive" one.
scan_time	This field is used to control how long the scan dwells on each channel. For passive scans, scan_time.passive designates the dwell time for each channel. For active scans, dwell times for each channel are listed in the table below. Here, min is short for scan time.active.min and max is short for scan_time.active.max. • min=0, max=0: scan dwells on each channel for 120 ms. • min>0, max=0: scan dwells on each channel for 120 ms. • min=0, max>0: scan dwells on each channel for `max` ms. • min>0, max>0: the minimum time the scan dwells on each channel is `min` ms. If no AP is found during this time frame, the scan switches to the next channel. Otherwise, the scan dwells on the channel for `max` ms. If you want to improve the performance of the the scan, you can try to modify these two parameters.

There are also some global scan attributes which are configured by API `esp_wifi_set_config()`, refer to *Station Basic Configuration*

Scan All APs on All Channels (Foreground)

Scenario:

The scenario above describes an all-channel, foreground scan. The foreground scan can only occur in Station mode where the station does not connect to any AP. Whether it is a foreground or background scan is totally determined by the Wi-Fi driver, and cannot be configured by the application.

Detailed scenario description:

Scan Configuration Phase

- s1.1: Call `esp_wifi_set_country()` to set the country info if the default country info is not what you want, refer to *Wi-Fi Country Code*.
- s1.2: Call `esp_wifi_scan_start()` to configure the scan. To do so, you can refer to *Scan Configuration*. Since this is an all-channel scan, just set the SSID/BSSID/channel to 0.

Wi-Fi Driver's Internal Scan Phase

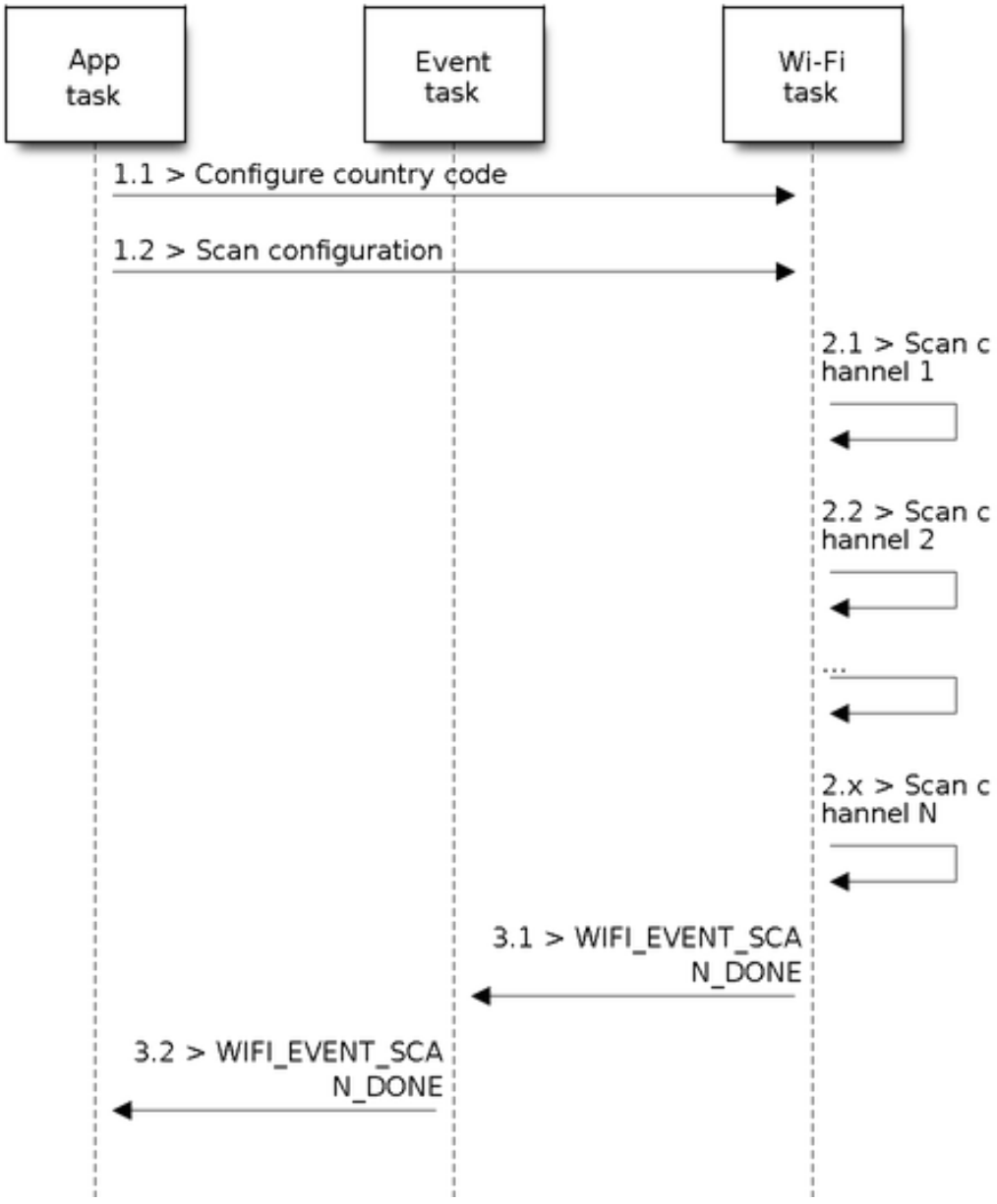


Fig. 44: Foreground Scan of all Wi-Fi Channels

- s2.1: The Wi-Fi driver switches to channel 1, in case the scan type is WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE, and broadcasts a probe request. Otherwise, the Wi-Fi will wait for a beacon from the APs. The Wi-Fi driver will stay in channel 1 for some time. The dwell time is configured in min/max time, with default value being 120 ms.
- s2.2: The Wi-Fi driver switches to channel 2 and performs the same operation as in step 2.1.
- s2.3: The Wi-Fi driver scans the last channel N, where N is determined by the country code which is configured in step 1.1.

Scan-Done Event Handling Phase

- s3.1: When all channels are scanned, *WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE* will arise.
- s3.2: The application's event callback function notifies the application task that *WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE* is received. `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num()` is called to get the number of APs that have been found in this scan. Then, it allocates enough entries and calls `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()` to get the AP records. Please note that the AP records in the Wi-Fi driver will be freed, once `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()` is called. Do not call `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()` twice for a single scan-done event. If `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()` is not called when the scan-done event occurs, the AP records allocated by the Wi-Fi driver will not be freed. So, make sure you call `esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records()`, yet only once.

Scan All APs on All Channels (Background)

Scenario:

The scenario above is an all-channel background scan. Compared to *Scan All APs on All Channels (Foreground)* , the difference in the all-channel background scan is that the Wi-Fi driver will scan the back-to-home channel for 30 ms before it switches to the next channel to give the Wi-Fi connection a chance to transmit/receive data.

Scan for Specific AP on All Channels

Scenario:

This scan is similar to *Scan All APs on All Channels (Foreground)*. The differences are:

- s1.1: In step 1.2, the target AP will be configured to SSID/BSSID.
- s2.1~s2.N: Each time the Wi-Fi driver scans an AP, it will check whether it is a target AP or not. If the scan is WIFI_FAST_SCAN scan and the target AP is found, then the scan-done event will arise and scanning will end; otherwise, the scan will continue. Please note that the first scanned channel may not be channel 1, because the Wi-Fi driver optimizes the scanning sequence.

If there are multiple APs which match the target AP info, for example, if we happen to scan two APs whose SSID is "ap". If the scan is WIFI_FAST_SCAN, then only the first scanned "ap" will be found, if the scan is WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN, both "ap" will be found and the station will connect the "ap" according to the configured strategy, refer to *Station Basic Configuration*.

You can scan a specific AP, or all of them, in any given channel. These two scenarios are very similar.

Scan in Wi-Fi Connect

When `esp_wifi_connect()` is called, the Wi-Fi driver will try to scan the configured AP first. The scan in "Wi-Fi Connect" is the same as *Scan for Specific AP On All Channels*, except that no scan-done event will be generated when the scan is completed. If the target AP is found, the Wi-Fi driver will start the Wi-Fi connection; otherwise, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will be generated. Refer to *Scan for Specific AP On All Channels*.

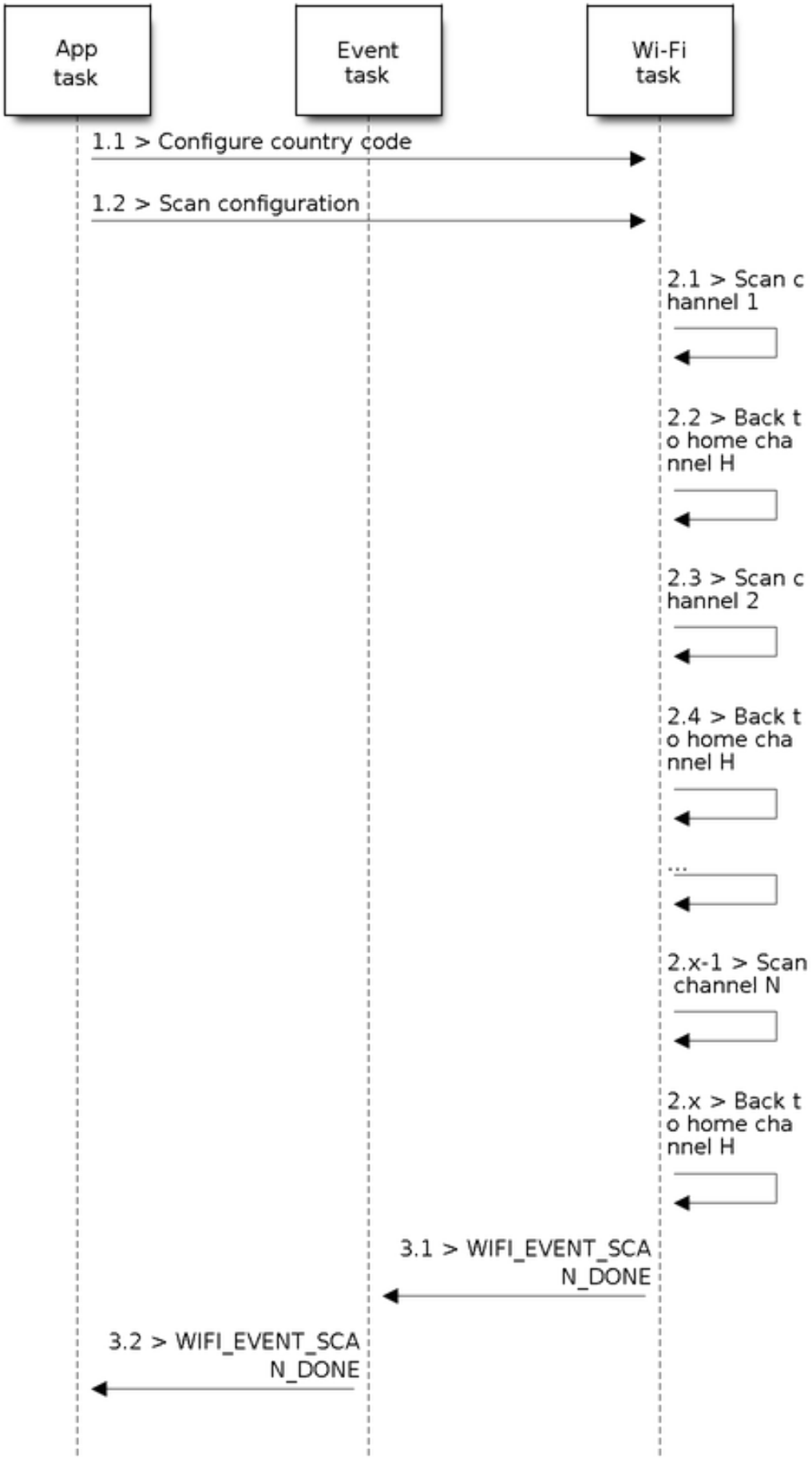


Fig. 45: Background Scan of all Wi-Fi Channels

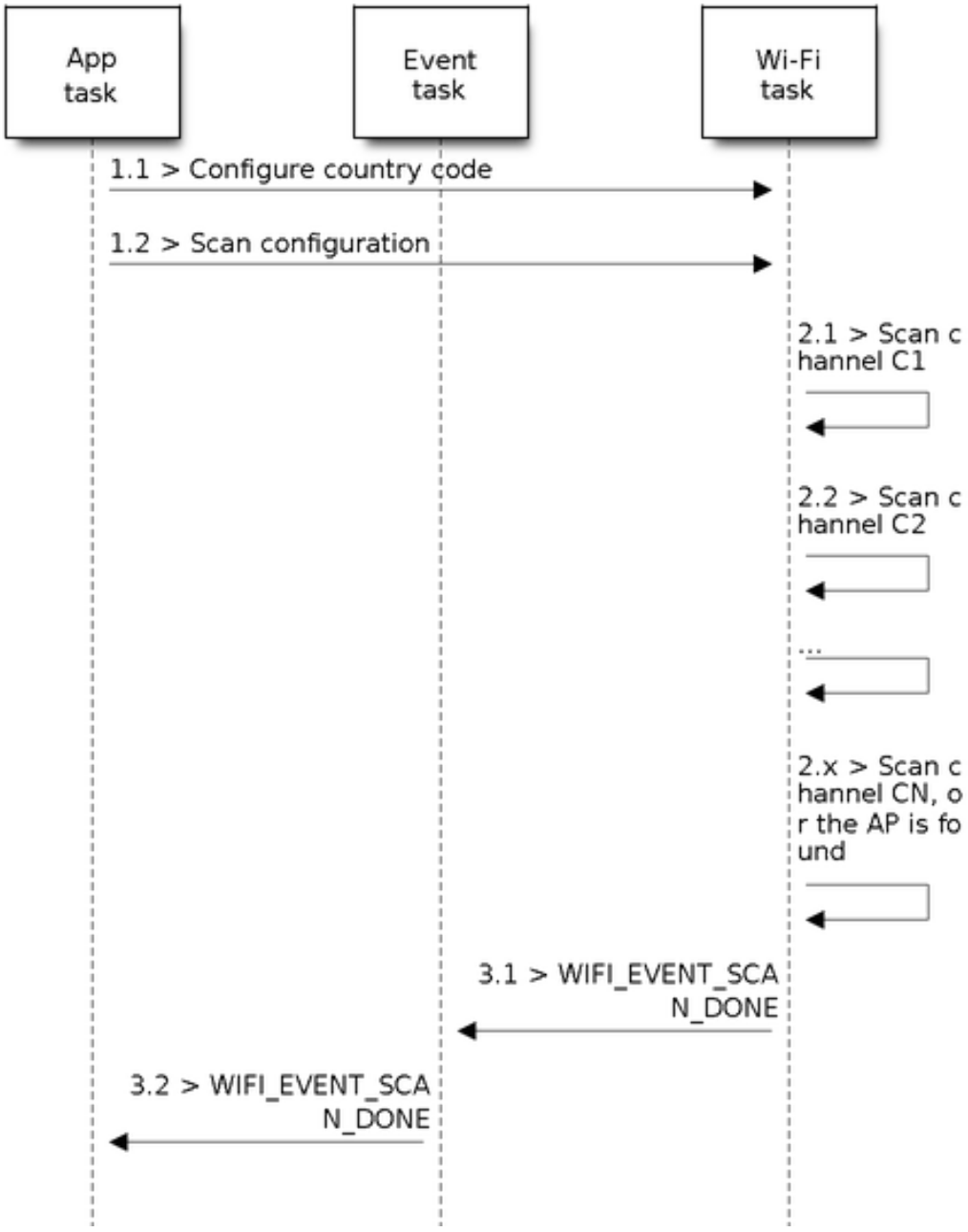


Fig. 46: Scan of specific Wi-Fi Channels

Scan In Blocked Mode

If the block parameter of `esp_wifi_scan_start()` is true, then the scan is a blocked one, and the application task will be blocked until the scan is done. The blocked scan is similar to an unblocked one, except that no scan-done event will arise when the blocked scan is completed.

Parallel Scan

Two application tasks may call `esp_wifi_scan_start()` at the same time, or the same application task calls `esp_wifi_scan_start()` before it gets a scan-done event. Both scenarios can happen. **However, the Wi-Fi driver does not support multiple concurrent scans adequately. As a result, concurrent scans should be avoided.** Support for concurrent scan will be enhanced in future releases, as the ESP32-S2' s Wi-Fi functionality improves continuously.

Scan When Wi-Fi is Connecting

The `esp_wifi_scan_start()` fails immediately if the Wi-Fi is in connecting process because the connecting has higher priority than the scan. If scan fails because of connecting, the recommended strategy is to delay sometime and retry scan again, the scan will succeed once the connecting is completed.

However, the retry/delay strategy may not work all the time. Considering following scenario:

- The station is connecting a non-existed AP or if the station connects the existed AP with a wrong password, it always raises the event *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED*.
- The application call `esp_wifi_connect()` to do reconnection on receiving the disconnect event.
- Another application task, e.g. the console task, call `esp_wifi_scan_start()` to do scan, the scan always fails immediately because the station is keeping connecting.
- When scan fails, the application simply delay sometime and retry the scan.

In above scenario the scan will never succeed because the connecting is in process. So if the application supports similar scenario, it needs to implement a better reconnect strategy. E.g.

- The application can choose to define a maximum continuous reconnect counter, stop reconnect once the reconnect reaches the max counter.
- The application can choose to do reconnect immediately in the first N continous reconnect, then give a delay sometime and reconnect again.

The application can define its own reconnect strategy to avoid the scan starve to death. Refer to <*Wi-Fi Reconnect*>.

4.29.10 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station Connecting Scenario

This scenario only depicts the case when there is only one target AP are found in scan phase, for the scenario that more than one AP with the same SSID are found, refer to *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station Connecting When Multiple APs Are Found*.

Generally, the application does not need to care about the connecting process. Below is a brief introduction to the process for those who are really interested.

Scenario:

Scan Phase

- s1.1, The Wi-Fi driver begins scanning in "Wi-Fi Connect". Refer to *Scan in Wi-Fi Connect* for more details.
- s1.2, If the scan fails to find the target AP, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise and the reason-code will be WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.

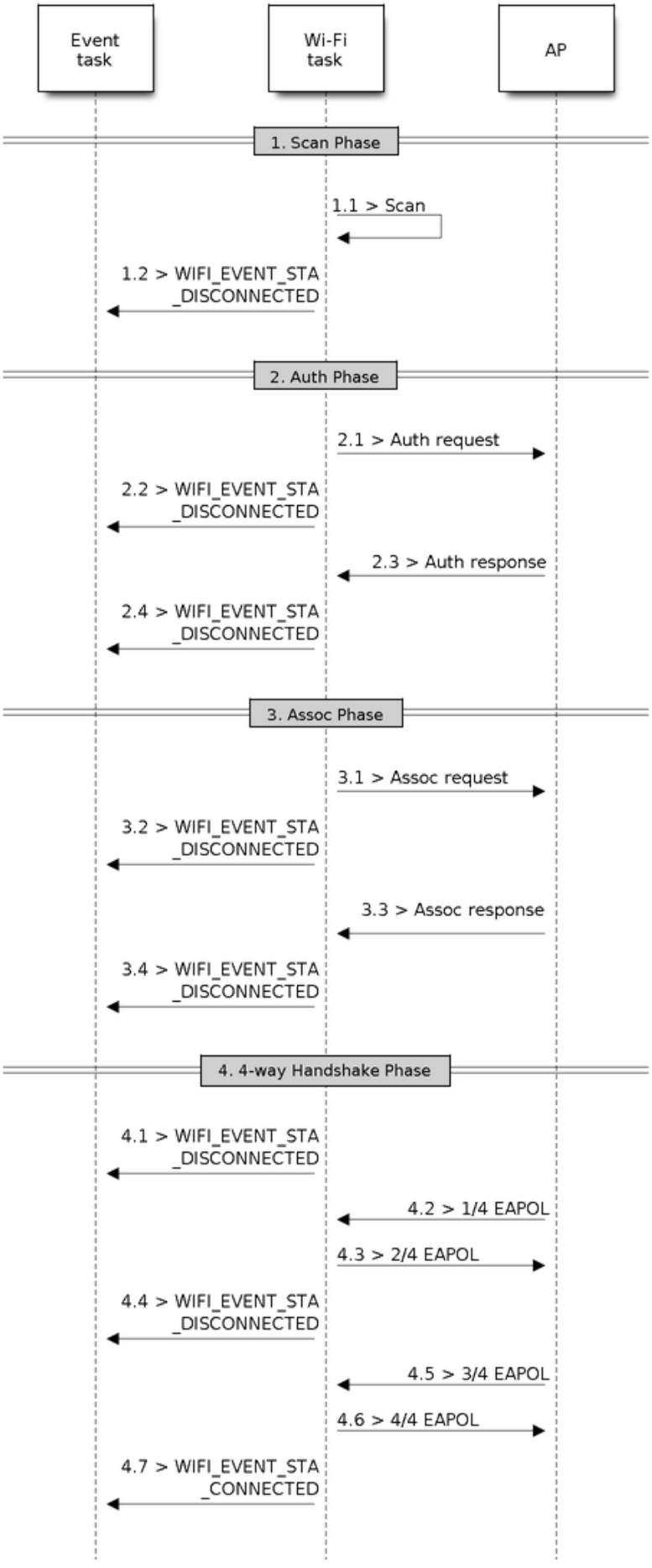


Fig. 47: Wi-Fi Station Connecting Process

Auth Phase

- s2.1, The authentication request packet is sent and the auth timer is enabled.
- s2.2, If the authentication response packet is not received before the authentication timer times out, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise and the reason-code will be WIFI_REASON_AUTH_EXPIRE. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.
- s2.3, The auth-response packet is received and the auth-timer is stopped.
- s2.4, The AP rejects authentication in the response and *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* arises, while the reason-code is WIFI_REASON_AUTH_FAIL or the reasons specified by the AP. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.

Association Phase

- s3.1, The association request is sent and the association timer is enabled.
- s3.2, If the association response is not received before the association timer times out, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise and the reason-code will be WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_EXPIRE. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.
- s3.3, The association response is received and the association timer is stopped.
- s3.4, The AP rejects the association in the response and *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* arises, while the reason-code is the one specified in the association response. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.

Four-way Handshake Phase

- s4.1, The handshake timer is enabled, the 1/4 EAPOL is not received before the handshake timer expires, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise and the reason-code will be WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.
- s4.2, The 1/4 EAPOL is received.
- s4.3, The STA replies 2/4 EAPOL.
- s4.4, If the 3/4 EAPOL is not received before the handshake timer expires, *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* will arise and the reason-code will be WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT. Refer to *Wi-Fi Reason Code*.
- s4.5, The 3/4 EAPOL is received.
- s4.6, The STA replies 4/4 EAPOL.
- s4.7, The STA raises *WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED*.

Wi-Fi Reason Code

The table below shows the reason-code defined in ESP32-S2. The first column is the macro name defined in esp_wifi_types.h. The common prefix *WIFI_REASON* is removed, which means that *UNSPECIFIED* actually stands for *WIFI_REASON_UNSPECIFIED* and so on. The second column is the value of the reason. The third column is the standard value to which this reason is mapped in section 8.4.1.7 of IEEE 802.11-2012. (For more information, refer to the standard mentioned above.) The last column is a description of the reason.

Reason code	Value	Mapped To	Description
UNSPECIFIED	1	1	Generally, it means an internal failure, e.g., the memory runs out, the internal TX fails, or the reason is received from the remote side, etc.
AUTH_EXPIRE	2	2	The previous authentication is no longer valid. For the ESP Station, this reason is reported when: • auth is timed out. • the reason is received from the AP. For the ESP AP, this reason is reported when: • the AP has not received any packets from the station in the past five minutes. • the AP is stopped by calling `esp_wifi_stop()`. • the station is deauthed by calling `esp_wifi_deauth_sta()`.
AUTH_LEAVE	3	3	De-authenticated, because the sending STA is leaving (or has left). For the ESP Station, this reason is reported when: • it is received from the AP.
ASSOC_EXPIRE	4	4	Disassociated due to inactivity. For the ESP Station, this reason is reported when: • it is received from the AP. For the ESP AP, this reason is reported when: • the AP has not received any packets from the station in the past five minutes. • the AP is stopped by calling `esp_wifi_stop()` • the station is deauthed by calling `esp_wifi_deauth_sta()`
ASSOC_TOOMANY	5	5	Disassociated, because the AP is unable to handle all currently associated STAs at the same time. For the ESP Station, this reason is reported when: • it is received from

4.29.11 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station Connecting When Multiple APs Are Found

This scenario is similar as *ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Station Connecting Scenario*, the difference is the station will not raise the event *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* unless it fails to connect all of the found APs.

4.29.12 Wi-Fi Reconnect

The station may disconnect due to many reasons, e.g. the connected AP is restarted etc. It's the application's responsibility to do the reconnect. The recommended reconnect strategy is to call `esp_wifi_connect()` on receiving event *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED*.

Sometimes the application needs more complex reconnect strategy:

- If the disconnect event is raised because the `esp_wifi_disconnect()` is called, the application may not want to do reconnect.
- If the `esp_wifi_scan_start()` may be called at anytime, a better reconnect strategy is necessary, refer to *Scan When Wi-Fi is Connecting*.

Another thing we need to consider is the reconnect may not connect the same AP if there are more than one APs with the same SSID. The reconnect always select current best APs to connect.

4.29.13 Wi-Fi Beacon Timeout

The beacon timeout mechanism is used by ESP32-S2 station to detect whether the AP is alive or not. If the station continuously loses 60 beacons of the connected AP, the beacon timeout happens.

After the beacon timeout happens, the station sends 5 probe requests to AP, it disconnects the AP and raises the event *WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED* if still no probe response or beacon is received from AP.

4.29.14 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Configuration

All configurations will be stored into flash when the Wi-Fi NVS is enabled; otherwise, refer to *Wi-Fi NVS Flash*.

Wi-Fi Mode

Call `esp_wifi_set_mode()` to set the Wi-Fi mode.

Mode	Description
WIFI_MODE_NULL	Null mode: in this mode, the internal data struct is not allocated to the station and the AP, while both the station and AP interfaces are not initialized for RX/TX Wi-Fi data. Generally, this mode is used for Sniffer, or when you only want to stop both the STA and the AP without calling `esp_wifi_deinit()` to unload the whole Wi-Fi driver.
WIFI_MODE_STA	Station mode: in this mode, `esp_wifi_start()` will init the internal station data, while the station's interface is ready for the RX and TX Wi-Fi data. After `esp_wifi_connect()` is called, the STA will connect to the target target AP.
WIFI_MODE_AP	AP mode: in this mode, `esp_wifi_start()` will init the internal AP data, while the AP's interface is ready for RX/TX Wi-Fi data. Then, the Wi-Fi driver starts broad- casting beacons, and the AP is ready to get connected to other stations.
WIFI_MODE_APSTA	Station-AP coexistence mode: in this mode, `esp_wifi_start()` will simultaneously init both the station and the AP.This is done in station mode and AP mode. Please note that the channel of the external AP, which the ESP Station is connected to, has higher priority over the ESP AP channel.

Station Basic Configuration

API esp_wifi_set_config() can be used to configure the station. The table below describes the fields in detail.

Field	Description
ssid	This is the SSID of the target AP, to which the station wants to connect to.
password	Password of the target AP.
scan_method	For WIFI_FAST_SCAN scan, the scan ends when the first matched AP is found, for WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN, the scan finds all matched APs on all channels. The default scan is WIFI_FAST_SCAN.
bssid_set	If bssid_set is 0, the station connects to the AP whose SSID is the same as the field "ssid", while the field "bssid" is ignored. In all other cases, the station connects to the AP whose SSID is the same as the "ssid" field, while its BSSID is the same the "bssid" field .
bssid	This is valid only when bssid_set is 1; see field "bssid_set".
channel	If the channel is 0, the station scans the channel 1 ~ N to search for the target AP; otherwise, the station starts by scanning the channel whose value is the same as that of the "channel" field, and then scans others to find the target AP. If you do not know which channel the target AP is running on, set it to 0.
sort_method	This field is only for WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN If the sort_method is WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SIGNAL, all matched APs are sorted by signal, for AP with best signal will be connected firstly. E.g. if the station want to connect AP whose ssid is "apxx", the scan finds two AP whose ssid equals to "apxx", the first AP's signal is -90 dBm, the second AP's signal is -30 dBm, the station connects the second AP firstly, it doesn't connect the first one unless it fails to connect the second one. If the sort_method is WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SECURITY, all matched APs are sorted by security. E.g. if the station wants to connect AP whose ssid is "apxx", the scan finds two AP whose ssid is "apxx", the security of the first found AP is open while the second one is WPA2, the stations connects to the second AP firstly, it doesn't connect the second one unless it fails to connect the first one.
threshold	The threshold is used to filter the found AP, if the RSSI or security mode is less than the configured threshold, the AP will be discard. If the RSSI set to 0, it means default threshold, the default RSSI threshold is -127 dBm. If the authmode threshold is set to 0, it means default threshold, the default authmode threshold is open.

Attention: WEP/WPA security modes are deprecated in IEEE 802.11-2016 specifications and are recommended not to be used. These modes can be rejected using authmode threshold by setting threshold as WPA2 by threshold.authmode as WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_PSK.

AP Basic Configuration

API esp_wifi_set_config() can be used to configure the AP. The table below describes the fields in detail.

Field	Description
ssid	SSID of AP; if the ssid[0] is 0xFF and ssid[1] is 0xFF, the AP defaults the SSID to ESP_aabbcc, where "aabbcc" is the last three bytes of the AP MAC.
password	Password of AP; if the auth mode is WIFI_AUTH_OPEN, this field will be ignored.
ssid_len	Length of SSID; if ssid_len is 0, check the SSID until there is a termination character. If ssid_len > 32, change it to 32; otherwise, set the SSID length according to ssid_len.
channel	Channel of AP; if the channel is out of range, the Wi-Fi driver defaults the channel to channel 1. So, please make sure the channel is within the required range. For more details, refer to *Wi-Fi Country Code*.
authmode	Auth mode of ESP AP; currently, ESP Wi-Fi does not support AUTH_WEP. If the authmode is an invalid value, AP defaults the value to WIFI_AUTH_OPEN.
ssid_hidden	If ssid_hidden is 1, AP does not broadcast the SSID; otherwise, it does broadcast the SSID.
max_connection	Currently, ESP Wi-Fi supports up to 10 Wi-Fi connections. If max_connection > 10, AP defaults the value to 10.
beacon_interval	Beacon interval; the value is 100 ~ 60000 ms, with default value being 100 ms. If the value is out of range, AP defaults it to 100 ms.

Wi-Fi Protocol Mode

Currently, the IDF supports the following protocol modes:

Protocol Mode	Description
802.11B	Call esp_wifi_set_protocol(ifx, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B) to set the station/AP to 802.11B-only mode.
802.11BG	Call esp_wifi_set_protocol(ifx, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B|WIFI_ PROTOCOL_11G) to set the station/AP to 802.11BG mode.
802.11BGN	Call esp_wifi_set_protocol(ifx, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B| WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N) to set the station/ AP to BGN mode.
802.11BGNLR	Call esp_wifi_set_protocol(ifx, WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B| WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G|WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N|WIFI_PROT to set the station/AP to BGN and the Espressif-specific mode.
802.11LR	Call esp_wifi_set_protocol (ifx, WIFI_PROTOCOL_LR) to set the station/AP only to the Espressif-specific mode. **This mode is an Espressif-patented mode which can achieve a one-kilometer line of sight range. Please, make sure both the station and the AP are connected to an ESP device**

Long Range (LR)

Long Range (LR) mode is an Espressif-patented Wi-Fi mode which can achieve a one-kilometer line of sight range. It has better reception sensitivity, stronger anti-interference ability and longer transmission distance than the traditional 802.11B mode.

LR Compatibility Since LR is Espressif unique Wi-Fi mode, only ESP32-S2 devices can transmit and receive the LR data. In other words, the ESP32-S2 device should NOT transmit the data in LR data rate if the connected device doesn't support LR. The application can achieve this by configuring suitable Wi-Fi mode. If the negotiated mode supports LR, the ESP32-S2 may transmit data in LR rate, otherwise, ESP32-S2 will transmit all data in traditional Wi-Fi data rate.

Following table depicts the Wi-Fi mode negotiation:

APSTA	BGN	BG	B	BGNLR	BGLR	BLR	LR
BGN	BGN	BG	B	BGN	BG	B	-
BG	BG	BG	B	BG	BG	B	-
B	B	B	B	B	B	B	-
BGNLR	-	-	-	BGNLR	BGLR	BLR	LR
BGLR	-	-	-	BGLR	BGLR	BLR	LR
BLR	-	-	-	BLR	BLR	BLR	LR
LR	-	-	-	LR	LR	LR	LR

In above table, the row is the Wi-Fi mode of AP and the column is the Wi-Fi mode of station. The "-" indicates Wi-Fi mode of the AP and station are not compatible.

According to the table, we can conclude that:

- For LR enabled in ESP32-S2 AP, it's incompatible with traditional 802.11 mode because the beacon is sent in LR mode.
- For LR enabled in ESP32-S2 station and the mode is NOT LR only mode, it's compatible with traditional 802.11 mode.
- If both station and AP are ESP32-S2 devices and both of them enable LR mode, the negotiated mode supports LR.

If the negotiated Wi-Fi mode supports both traditional 802.11 mode and LR mode, it's the Wi-Fi driver's responsibility to automatically select the best data rate in different Wi-Fi mode and the application don't need to care about it.

LR Impacts to Traditional Wi-Fi device The data transmission in LR rate has no impacts on the traditional Wi-Fi device because:

- The CCA and backoff process in LR mode are consistent with 802.11 specification.
- The traditional Wi-Fi device can detect the LR signal via CCA and do backoff.

In other words, the impact transmission in LR mode is similar as the impact in 802.11B mode.

LR Transmission Distance The reception sensitivity of LR has about 4 dB gain than the traditional 802.11B mode, theoretically the transmission distance is about 2 to 2.5 times the distance of 11B.

LR Throughput The LR rate has very limited throughput because the raw PHY data rate LR is 1/2 Mbits and 1/4 Mbits.

When to Use LR The general conditions for using LR are:

- Both the AP and station are devices.
- Long distance Wi-Fi connection and data transmission is required.
- Data throughput requirements are very small, such as remote device control, etc.

Wi-Fi Country Code

Call *esp_wifi_set_country()* to set the country info. The table below describes the fields in detail, please consult local 2.4 GHz RF operating regulations before configuring these fields.

Field	Description
cc[3]	Country code string, this attributes identify the country or noncountry entity in which the station/AP is operating. If it's a country, the first two octets of this string is the two character country info as described in document ISO/IEC3166-1. The third octect is one of the following: • an ASCII space character, if the regulations under which the station/AP is operating encompass all environments for the current frequency band in the country. • an ASCII 'O' character if the regulations under which the station/AP is operating are for an outdoor environment only. • an ASCII 'I' character if the regulations under which the station/AP is operating are for an indoor environment only. • an ASCII 'X' character if the station/AP is operating under a noncountry entity. The first two octets of the noncountry entity is two ASCII 'XX' characters. • the binary representation of the Operating Class table number currently in use. Refer to Annex E, IEEE Std 802.11-2012.
schan	Start channel, it's the minimum channel number of the regulations under which the station/AP can operate.
nchan	Total number of channels as per the regulations, e.g. if the schan=1, nchan=13, it means the station/AP can send data from channel 1 to 13.
policy	Country policy, this field control which country info will be used if the configured country info is conflict with the connected AP's. More description about policy is provided in following section.

The default country info is {.cc=" CN" , .schan=1, .nchan=13, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO}, if the Wi-Fi Mode is station/AP coexist mode, they share the same configured country info. Sometimes, the country info of AP, to which the station is connected, is different from the country info of configured. For example, the configured station has country info {.cc=" JP" , .schan=1, .nchan=14, policy=WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO}, but the connected AP has country info {.cc=" CN" , .schan=1, .nchan=13}, then country info of connected AP's is used. Following table depicts which country info is used in different Wi-Fi Mode and different country policy, also describe the impact to active scan.

WiFi Mode	Policy	Description
Station	WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO	If the connected AP has country IE in its beacon, the country info equals to the country info in beacon, otherwise, use default country info. For scan: **-If schan+nchan-1 >11 :** Use active scan from schan to 11 and use passive scan from 12 to schan+nchan-1. **-If schan+nchan-1 <= 11 :** Use active scan from schan to schan+nchan-1. Always keep in mind that if an AP with hidden SSID is set to a passive scan channel, the passive scan will not find it. In other words, if the application hopes to find the AP with hidden SSID in every channel, the policy of country info should be configured to WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL.
Station	WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL	Always use the configured country info. For scan, scans channel "schan" to "schan+nchan-1" with active scan.
AP	WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO	Always use the configured country info.
AP	WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL	Always use the configured country info.
Station/AP-coexistence	WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO	If the station doesn't connects to any AP, the AP use the configured country info. If the station connects to an AP, the AP has the same country info as the station. Same as station mode with policy WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO.

Home Channel In AP mode, the home channel is defined as the AP channel. In Station mode, home channel is defined as the channel of AP which the station is connected to. In Station/AP-coexistence mode, the home channel of AP and station must be the same, if they are different, the station's home channel is always in priority. Take the following as an example: the AP is on channel 6, and the station connects to an AP whose channel is 9. Since the station's home channel has higher priority, the AP needs to switch its channel from 6 to make sure that it has the same home channel as the station. While switching channel, the ESP32-S2 in SoftAP mode will notify the connected stations about the channel migration using a Channel Switch Announcement (CSA). Station that supports channel switching will transit without disconnecting and reconnecting to the SoftAP.

Wi-Fi Vendor IE Configuration

By default, all Wi-Fi management frames are processed by the Wi-Fi driver, and the application does not need to care about them. Some applications, however, may have to handle the beacon, probe request, probe response and other management frames. For example, if you insert some vendor-specific IE into the management frames,

it is only the management frames which contain this vendor-specific IE that will be processed. In ESP32-S2, `esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie()` and `esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb()` are responsible for this kind of tasks.

4.29.15 Wi-Fi Security

In addition to traditional security methods (WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-CCMP), ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi now supports state-of-the-art security protocols, namely Protected Management Frames based on 802.11w standard and Wi-Fi Protected Access 3 (WPA3-Personal). Together, PMF and WPA3 provide better privacy and robustness against known attacks in traditional modes.

Protected Management Frames (PMF)

In Wi-Fi, management frames such as beacons, probes, (de)authentication, (dis)association are used by non-AP stations to scan and connect to an AP. Unlike data frames, these frames are sent unencrypted. An attacker can use eavesdropping and packet injection to send spoofed (de)authentication/(dis)association frames at the right time, leading to following attacks in case of unprotected management frame exchanges.

- DOS attack on one or all clients in the range of the attacker.
- Tearing down existing association on AP side by sending association request.
- Forcing a client to perform 4-way handshake again in case PSK is compromised in order to get PTK.
- Getting SSID of hidden network from association request.
- Launching man-in-the-middle attack by forcing clients to deauth from legitimate AP and associating to a rogue one.

PMF provides protection against these attacks by encrypting unicast management frames and providing integrity checks for broadcast management frames. These include deauthentication, disassociation and robust management frames. It also provides Secure Association (SA) teardown mechanism to prevent spoofed association/authentication frames from disconnecting already connected clients.

ESP32-S2 supports the following three modes of operation with respect to PMF.

- PMF not supported: In this mode, ESP32-S2 indicates to AP that it is not capable of supporting management protection during association. In effect, security in this mode will be equivalent to that in traditional mode.
- PMF capable, but not required: In this mode, ESP32-S2 indicates to AP that it is capable of supporting PMF. The management protection will be used if AP mandates PMF or is at least capable of supporting PMF.
- PMF capable and required: In this mode, ESP32-S2 will only connect to AP, if AP supports PMF. If not, ESP32-S2 will refuse to connect to the AP.

`esp_wifi_set_config()` can be used to configure PMF mode by setting appropriate flags in *pmf_cfg* parameter. Currently, PMF is supported only in Station mode.

WPA3-Personal

Wi-Fi Protected Access-3 (WPA3) is a set of enhancements to Wi-Fi access security intended to replace the current WPA2 standard. In order to provide more robust authentication, WPA3 uses Simultaneous Authentication of Equals (SAE), which is password-authenticated key agreement method based on Diffie-Hellman key exchange. Unlike WPA2, the technology is resistant to offline-dictionary attack, where the attacker attempts to determine shared password based on captured 4-way handshake without any further network interaction. WPA3 also provides forward secrecy, which means the captured data cannot be decrypted even if password is compromised after data transmission. Please refer to Security section of Wi-Fi Alliance' s official website for further details.

In order to enable WPA3-Personal, "Enable WPA3-Personal" should be selected in menuconfig. If enabled, ESP32-S2 uses SAE for authentication if supported by the AP. Since PMF is a mandatory requirement for WPA3, PMF capability should be at least set to "PMF capable, but not required" for ESP32-S2 to use WPA3 mode. Application developers need not worry about the underlying security mode as highest available is chosen from security standpoint. Note that Wi-Fi stack size requirement will increase approximately by 3k when WPA3 is used. Currently, WPA3 is supported only in Station mode.

WPA2-Enterprise

WPA2-Enterprise is the secure authentication mechanism for enterprise wireless networks. It uses RADIUS server for authentication of network users before connecting to the Access Point. The authentication process is based on 802.1X policy and comes with different Extended Authentication Protocol (EAP) methods like TLS, TTLS, PEAP etc. RADIUS server authenticates the users based on their credentials (username and password), digital certificates or both. When ESP32-S2 in Station mode tries to connect to an AP in enterprise mode, it sends authentication request to AP which is sent to RADIUS server by AP for authenticating the Station. Based on different EAP methods, the parameters can be set in configuration which can be opened using `idf.py menuconfig`. WPA2_Enterprise is supported by ESP32-S2 only in Station mode.

For establishing a secure connection, AP and Station negotiate and agree on the best possible cipher suite to be used. ESP32-S2 supports 802.1X/EAP (WPA) method of AKM and Advanced encryption standard with Counter Mode Cipher Block Chaining Message Authentication protocol (AES-CCM) cipher suite. It also supports the cipher suites supported by mbedtls if *USE_MBEDTLS_CRYPTO* flag is set.

ESP32-S2 currently supports the following EAP methods:

- EAP-TLS: This is certificate based method and only requires SSID and EAP-IDF.
- PEAP: This is Protected EAP method. Username and Password are mandatory.
- **EAP-TTLS: This is credentials based method. Only server authentication is mandatory while user authentication**
  - PAP: Password Authentication Protocol.
  - CHAP: Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol.
  - MSCHAP and MSCHAP-V2.

Detailed information on creating certificates and how to run wpa2_enterprise example on ESP32-S2 can be found in wifi/wpa2_enterprise.

4.29.16 Wi-Fi Location

Wi-Fi Location will improve the accuracy of a device's location data beyond the Access Point, which will enable creation of new, feature-rich applications and services such as geo-fencing, network management, navigation and others. One of the protocols used to determine the device location with respect to the Access Point is Fine Timing Measurement which calculates Time-of-Flight of a WiFi frame.

Fine Timing Measurement (FTM)

FTM is used to measure Wi-Fi Round Trip Time (Wi-Fi RTT) which is the time a Wi-Fi signal takes to travel from a device to another device and back again. Using Wi-Fi RTT the distance between the devices can be calculated with a simple formula of *RTT * c / 2*, where c is the speed of light. FTM uses timestamps given by Wi-Fi interface hardware at the time of arrival or departure of frames exchanged between a pair of devices. One entity called FTM Initiator (mostly a Station device) discovers the FTM Responder (can be a Station or an Access Point) and negotiates to start an FTM procedure. The procedure uses multiple Action frames sent in bursts and its ACK's to gather the timestamps data. FTM Initiator gathers the data in the end to calculate an average Round-Trip-Time. ESP32-S2 supports FTM in below configuration:

- ESP32-S2 as FTM Initiator in Station mode.
- ESP32-S2 as FTM Responder in SoftAP mode.

Distance measurement using RTT is not accurate, factors such as RF interference, multi-path travel, antenna orientation and lack of calibration increase these inaccuracies. For better results it is suggested to perform FTM between two ESP32-S2 devices as Station and SoftAP. Refer to IDF example examples/wifi/ftm/README.md for steps on how to setup and perform FTM.

4.29.17 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Power-saving Mode

Station Sleep

Currently, ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi supports the Modem-sleep mode which refers to the legacy power-saving mode in the IEEE 802.11 protocol. Modem-sleep mode works in Station-only mode and the station must connect to the AP first. If the Modem-sleep mode is enabled, station will switch between active and sleep state periodically. In sleep state, RF, PHY and BB are turned off in order to reduce power consumption. Station can keep connection with AP in modem-sleep mode.

Modem-sleep mode includes minimum and maximum power save modes. In minimum power save mode, station wakes up every DTIM to receive beacon. Broadcast data will not be lost because it is transmitted after DTIM. However, it can not save much more power if DTIM is short for DTIM is determined by AP.

In maximum power save mode, station wakes up every listen interval to receive beacon. This listen interval can be set longer than the AP DTIM period. Broadcast data may be lost because station may be in sleep state at DTIM time. If listen interval is longer, more power is saved but broadcast data is more easy to lose. Listen interval can be configured by calling API *esp_wifi_set_config()* before connecting to AP.

Call `esp_wifi_set_ps(WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM)` to enable Modem-sleep minimum power save mode or `esp_wifi_set_ps(WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM)` to enable Modem-sleep maximum power save mode after calling *esp_wifi_init()*. When station connects to AP, Modem-sleep will start. When station disconnects from AP, Modem-sleep will stop.

Call `esp_wifi_set_ps(WIFI_PS_NONE)` to disable modem sleep entirely. This has much higher power consumption, but provides minimum latency for receiving Wi-Fi data in real time. When modem sleep is enabled, received Wi-Fi data can be delayed for as long as the DTIM period (minimum power save mode) or the listen interval (maximum power save mode). Disabling modem sleep entirely is not possible for Wi-Fi and Bluetooth coexist mode.

The default Modem-sleep mode is WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM.

AP Sleep

Currently ESP32-S2 AP doesn't support all of the power save feature defined in Wi-Fi specification. To be specific, the AP only caches unicast data for the stations connect to this AP, but doesn't cache the multicast data for the stations. If stations connected to the ESP32-S2 AP are power save enabled, they may experience multicast packet loss.

In the future, all power save features will be supported on ESP32-S2 AP.

4.29.18 ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi Throughput

The table below shows the best throughput results we got in Espressif's lab and in a shield box.

Type/Throughput	Air In Lab	Shield-box	Test Tool	IDF Version (commit ID)
Raw 802.11 Packet RX	N/A	**130 MBit/s**	Internal tool	NA
Raw 802.11 Packet TX	N/A	**130 MBit/s**	Internal tool	NA
UDP RX	30 MBit/s	90 MBit/s	iperf example	05838641
UDP TX	30 MBit/s	60 MBit/s	iperf example	05838641
TCP RX	20 MBit/s	50 MBit/s	iperf example	05838641
TCP TX	20 MBit/s	50 MBit/s	iperf example	05838641

When the throughput is tested by iperf example, the sdkconfig is examples/wifi/iperf/sdkconfig.ci.99.

4.29.19 Wi-Fi 80211 Packet Send

The *esp_wifi_80211_tx()* API can be used to:

- Send the beacon, probe request, probe response, action frame.

- Send the non-QoS data frame.

It cannot be used for sending encrypted or QoS frames.

Preconditions of Using `esp_wifi_80211_tx()`

- The Wi-Fi mode is Station, or AP, or Station+AP.
- Either esp_wifi_set_promiscuous(true), or *`esp_wifi_start()`*, or both of these APIs return ESP_OK. This is because we need to make sure that Wi-Fi hardware is initialized before *`esp_wifi_80211_tx()`* is called. In ESP32-S2, both esp_wifi_set_promiscuous(true) and *`esp_wifi_start()`* can trigger the initialization of Wi-Fi hardware.
- The parameters of *`esp_wifi_80211_tx()`* are hereby correctly provided.

Data rate

- If there is no Wi-Fi connection, the data rate is 1 Mbps.
- If there is Wi-Fi connection and the packet is from station to AP or from AP to station, the data rate is same as the Wi-Fi connection. Otherwise the data rate is 1 Mbps.

Side-Effects to Avoid in Different Scenarios

Theoretically, if we do not consider the side-effects the API imposes on the Wi-Fi driver or other stations/APs, we can send a raw 802.11 packet over the air, with any destination MAC, any source MAC, any BSSID, or any other type of packet. However,robust/useful applications should avoid such side-effects. The table below provides some tips/recommendations on how to avoid the side-effects of *`esp_wifi_80211_tx()`* in different scenarios.

Scenario	Description
No WiFi connection	In this scenario, no Wi-Fi connection is set up, so there are no side-effects on the Wi-Fi driver. If en_sys_seq==true, the Wi-Fi driver is responsible for the sequence control. If en_sys_seq==false, the application needs to ensure that the buffer has the correct sequence. Theoretically, the MAC address can be any address. However, this may impact other stations/APs with the same MAC/BSSID. Side-effect example#1 The application calls esp_wifi_80211_tx to send a beacon with BSSID == mac_x in AP mode, but the mac_x is not the MAC of the AP interface. Moreover, there is another AP, say "other-AP" , whose bssid is mac_x. If this happens, an "unexpected behavior" may occur, because the stations which connect to the "other-AP" cannot figure out whether the beacon is from the "other-AP" or the esp_wifi_80211_tx. To avoid the above-mentioned side-effects, we recommend that: • If esp_wifi_80211_tx is called in Station mode, the first MAC should be a multicast MAC or the exact target-device's MAC, while the second MAC should be that of the station interface. • If esp_wifi_80211_tx is called in AP mode, the first MAC should be a multicast MAC or the exact target-device's MAC, while the second MAC should be that of the AP interface. The recommendations above are only for avoiding side-effects and can be ignored when there are good reasons for doing this.
Have WiFi connection	When the Wi-Fi connection is already set up, and the sequence is controlled by the application, the latter may impact the sequence control of the Wi-Fi connection, as a whole. So, the en_sys_seq need to be true, otherwise ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG is returned. The MAC-address recommendations in the "No WiFi connection" scenario also apply to this scenario. If the WiFi mode is station mode and the MAC address1 is the MAC of AP to which the station is connected, the MAC address2 is the MAC of station interface, we say the packets is from the station to AP. On the other hand, if the WiFi mode is AP mode and the MAC address1 is the MAC of the station who connects to this AP, the MAC address2 is the MAC of AP interface, we say the packet is from the AP to station. To avoid conflicting with WiFi connections, the following checks are applied: • If the packet type is data and is from the station to AP, the ToDS bit in IEEE 80211 frame control should be 1, the FromDS bit should be 0, otherwise the packet will be discarded by WiFi driver. • If the packet type is data and is from the AP to station, the ToDS bit in IEEE 80211 frame control should be 0, the FromDS bit should be 1, otherwise the packet will be discarded by WiFi driver. • If the packet is from station to AP or from AP to station, the Power Management, More Data, Re-Transmission bits should be 0, otherwise the packet will be discarded by WiFi driver. ESP_ERR_WIFI_ARG is returned if any check fails.

4.29.20 Wi-Fi Sniffer Mode

The Wi-Fi sniffer mode can be enabled by esp_wifi_set_promiscuous(). If the sniffer mode is enabled, the following packets **can** be dumped to the application:

- 802.11 Management frame.
- 802.11 Data frame, including MPDU, AMPDU, AMSDU, etc.
- 802.11 MIMO frame, for MIMO frame, the sniffer only dumps the length of the frame.
- 802.11 Control frame.

The following packets will **NOT** be dumped to the application:

- 802.11 error frame, such as the frame with a CRC error, etc.

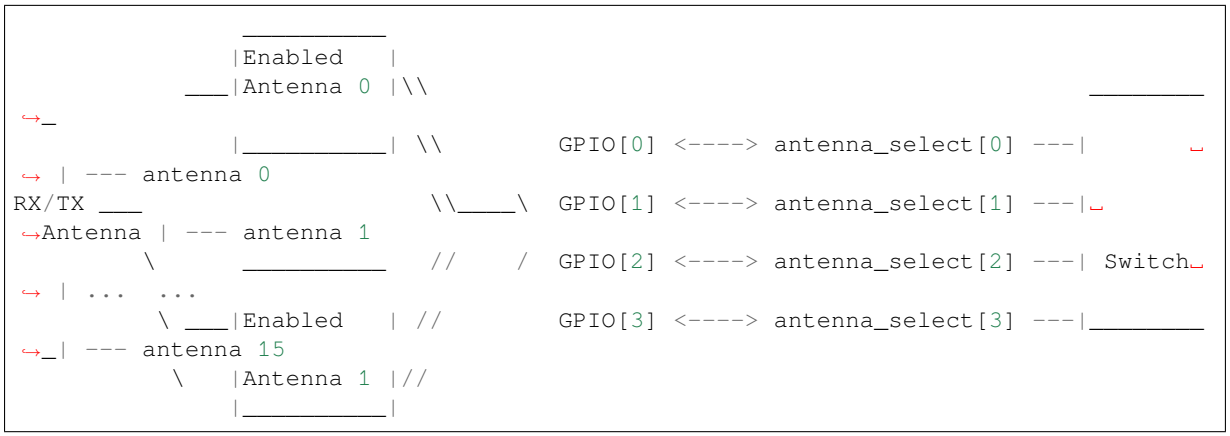
For frames that the sniffer **can** dump, the application can additionally decide which specific type of packets can be filtered to the application by using *esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_filter()* and *esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_ctrl_filter()*. By default, it will filter all 802.11 data and management frames to the application.

The Wi-Fi sniffer mode can be enabled in the Wi-Fi mode of WIFI_MODE_NULL, or WIFI_MODE_STA, or WIFI_MODE_AP, or WIFI_MODE_APSTA. In other words, the sniffer mode is active when the station is connected to the AP, or when the AP has a Wi-Fi connection. Please note that the sniffer has a **great impact** on the throughput of the station or AP Wi-Fi connection. Generally, we should **NOT** enable the sniffer, when the station/AP Wi-Fi connection experiences heavy traffic unless we have special reasons.

Another noteworthy issue about the sniffer is the callback wifi_promiscuous_cb_t. The callback will be called directly in the Wi-Fi driver task, so if the application has a lot of work to do for each filtered packet, the recommendation is to post an event to the application task in the callback and defer the real work to the application task.

4.29.21 Wi-Fi Multiple Antennas

The Wi-Fi multiple antennas selecting can be depicted as following picture:



ESP32-S2 supports up to sixteen antennas through external antenna switch. The antenna switch can be controlled by up to four address pins - antenna_select[0:3]. Different input value of antenna_select[0:3] means selecting different antenna. E.g. the value ‘0b1011’ means the antenna 11 is selected. The default value of antenna_select[3:0] is ‘0b0000’ , it means the antenna 0 is selected by default.

Up to four GPIOs are connected to the four active high antenna_select pins. ESP32-S2 can select the antenna by control the GPIO[0:3]. The API *esp_wifi_set_ant_gpio()* is used to configure which GPIOs are connected to antenna_selects. If GPIO[x] is connected to antenna_select[x], then gpio_config->gpio_cfg[x].gpio_select should be set to 1 and gpio_config->gpio_cfg[x].gpio_num should be provided.

Although up to sixteen anteenas are supported, only one or two antennas can be simultaneously enabled for RX/TX. The API *esp_wifi_set_ant()* is used to configure which antennas are enabled.

The enabled antennas selecting algorithm is also configured by *esp_wifi_set_ant()*. The RX/TX antenna mode can be WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0, WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1 or WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO. If the an-

tenna mode is WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0, the enabled antenna 0 is selected for RX/TX data. If the antenna mode is WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1, the enabled antenna 1 is selected for RX/TX data. Otherwise, Wi-Fi automatically selects the antenna that has better signal from the enabled antennas.

If the RX antenna mode is WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO, the default antenna mode also needs to be set. Because the RX antenna switching only happens when some conditions are met, e.g. the RX antenna starts to switch if the RSSI is lower than -65 dBm and if another antenna has better signal etc, RX uses the default antenna if the conditions are not met. If the default antenna mode is WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1, the enabled antenna 1 is used as the default RX antenna, otherwise the enabled antenna 0 is used as the default RX antenna.

Some limitations need to be considered:

- The TX antenna can be set to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO only if the RX antenna mode is WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO because TX antenna selecting algorithm is based on RX antenna in WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO type.
- Currently Bluetooth® doesn't support the multiple antennas feature, please don't use multiple antennas related APIs.

Following is the recommended scenarios to use the multiple antennas:

- In Wi-Fi mode WIFI_MODE_STA, both RX/TX antenna modes are configured to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO. The Wi-Fi driver selects the better RX/TX antenna automatically.
- The RX antenna mode is configured to WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO. The TX antenna mode is configured to WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0 or WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1. The applications can choose to always select a specified antenna for TX, or implement their own TX antenna selecting algorithm, e.g. selecting the TX antenna mode based on the channel switch information etc.
- Both RX/TX antenna modes are configured to WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0 or WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1.

Wi-Fi Multiple Antennas Configuration

Generally, following steps can be taken to configure the multiple antennas:

- Configure which GPIOs are connected to the antenna_selects, for example, if four antennas are supported and GPIO20/GPIO21 are connected to antenna_select[0]/antenna_select[1], the configurations look like:

```
wifi_ant_gpio_config_t config = {
    { .gpio_select = 1, .gpio_num = 20 },
    { .gpio_select = 1, .gpio_num = 21 }
};
```

- Configure which antennas are enabled and how RX/TX use the enabled antennas, for example, if antenna1 and antenna3 are enabled, the RX needs to select the better antenna automatically and uses antenna1 as its default antenna, the TX always selects the antenna3. The configuration looks like:

```
wifi_ant_config_t config = {
    .rx_ant_mode = WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO,
    .rx_ant_default = WIFI_ANT_ANT0,
    .tx_ant_mode = WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1,
    .enabled_ant0 = 1,
    .enabled_ant1 = 3
};
```

4.29.22 Wi-Fi Channel State Information

Channel state information (CSI) refers to the channel information of a Wi-Fi connection. In ESP32-S2, this information consists of channel frequency responses of sub-carriers and is estimated when packets are received from the transmitter. Each channel frequency response of sub-carrier is recorded by two bytes of signed characters. The first one is imaginary part and the second one is real part. There are up to three fields of channel frequency responses according to the type of received packet. They are legacy long training field (LLTF), high throughput LTF (HT-LTF) and space time block code HT-LTF (STBC-HT-LTF). For different types of packets which are received on channels with different state, the sub-carrier index and total bytes of signed characters of CSI is shown in the following table.

channel	secondary channel	none			below					above				
packet information	signal mode	non HT	HT		non HT	HT				non HT	HT			
	channel bandwidth	20 MHz	20 MHz		20 MHz	20 MHz		40 MHz		20 MHz	20 MHz		40 MHz	
	STBC	non STBC	non STBC	STBC	non STBC	non STBC	STBC	non STBC	STBC	non STBC	non STBC	STBC	non STBC	STBC
sub-carrier index	LLTF	0~31, -32~-1	0~31, -32~-1	0~31, -32~-1	0~63	0~63	0~63	0~63	0~63	-64~-1	-64~-1	-64~-1	-64~-1	-64~-1
	HT-LTF	•	0~31, -32~-1	0~31, -32~-1	•	0~63	0~62	0~63, -64~-1	0~60, -60~-1	•	-64~-1	-62~-1	0~63, -64~-1	0~60, -60~-1
	STBC-HT-LTF	•	•	0~31, -32~-1	•	•	0~62	•	0~60, -60~-1	•	•	-62~-1	•	0~60, -60~-1
total bytes		128	256	384	128	256	380	384	612	128	256	376	384	612

All of the information in the table can be found in the structure wifi_csi_info_t.

- Secondary channel refers to secondary_channel field of rx_ctrl field.
- Signal mode of packet refers to sig_mode field of rx_ctrl field.
- Channel bandwidth refers to cwb field of rx_ctrl field.
- STBC refers to stbc field of rx_ctrl field.
- Total bytes refers to len field.
- The CSI data corresponding to each Long Training Field(LTF) type is stored in a buffer starting from the buf field. Each item is stored as two bytes: imaginary part followed by real part. The order of each item is the same as the sub-carrier in the table. The order of LTF is: LLTF, HT-LTF, STBC-HT-LTF. However all 3 LTFs may not be present, depending on the channel and packet information (see above).
- If first_word_invalid field of wifi_csi_info_t is true, it means that the first four bytes of CSI data is invalid due to a hardware limitation in ESP32-S2.
- More information like RSSI, noise floor of RF, receiving time and antenna is in the rx_ctrl field.

Note:

- For STBC packet, CSI is provided for every space-time stream without CSD (cyclic shift delay). As each cyclic shift on the additional chains shall be -200 ns, only the CSD angle of first space-time stream is recorded in sub-carrier 0 of HT-LTF and STBC-HT-LTF for there is no channel frequency response in sub-carrier 0. CSD[10:0] is 11 bits, ranging from -pi to pi.
- If LLTF, HT-LTF or STBC-HT-LTF is not enabled by calling API `esp_wifi_set_csi_config()`, the total bytes of CSI data will be fewer than that in the table. For example, if LLTF and HT-LTF is not enabled and STBC-HT-LTF is enabled, when a packet is received with the condition above/HT/40MHz/STBC, the total bytes of CSI data is 244 ((61 + 60) * 2 + 2 = 244, the result is aligned to four bytes and the last two bytes is invalid).

4.29.23 Wi-Fi Channel State Information Configure

To use Wi-Fi CSI, the following steps need to be done.

- Select Wi-Fi CSI in menuconfig. It is "Menuconfig –> Components config –> Wi-Fi –> WiFi CSI(Channel State Information)".
- Set CSI receiving callback function by calling API `esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb()`.
- Configure CSI by calling API `esp_wifi_set_csi_config()`.
- Enable CSI by calling API `esp_wifi_set_csi()`.

The CSI receiving callback function runs from Wi-Fi task. So, do not do lengthy operations in the callback function. Instead, post necessary data to a queue and handle it from a lower priority task. Because station does not receive any packet when it is disconnected and only receives packets from AP when it is connected, it is suggested to enable sniffer mode to receive more CSI data by calling `esp_wifi_set_promiscuous()`.

4.29.24 Wi-Fi HT20/40

ESP32-S2 supports Wi-Fi bandwidth HT20 or HT40, it doesn't support HT20/40 coexist. `esp_wifi_set_bandwidth()` can be used to change the default bandwidth of station or AP. The default bandwidth for ESP32-S2 station and AP is HT40.

In station mode, the actual bandwidth is firstly negotiated during the Wi-Fi connection. It is HT40 only if both the station and the connected AP support HT40, otherwise it's HT20. If the bandwidth of connected AP is changes, the actual bandwidth is negotiated again without Wi-Fi disconnecting.

Similarly, in AP mode, the actual bandwidth is negotiated between AP and the stations that connect to the AP. It's HT40 if the AP and one of the stations support HT40, otherwise it's HT20.

In station/AP coexist mode, the station/AP can configure HT20/40 seperately. If both station and AP are negotiated to HT40, the HT40 channel should be the channel of station because the station always has higher priority than AP in ESP32-S2. E.g. the configured bandwidth of AP is HT40, the configured primary channel is 6 and the configured secondary channel is 10. The station is connected to an router whose primary channel is 6 and secondary channel is 2, then the actual channel of AP is changed to primary 6 and secondary 2 automatically.

Theoretically the HT40 can gain better throughput because the maximum raw physicial (PHY) data rate for HT40 is 150Mbps while it's 72Mbps for HT20. However, if the device is used in some special environment, e.g. there are too many other Wi-Fi devices around the ESP32-S2 device, the performance of HT40 may be degraded. So if the applications need to support same or similar scenarios, it's recommended that the bandwidth is always configured to HT20.

4.29.25 Wi-Fi QoS

ESP32-S2 supports all the mandatory features required in WFA Wi-Fi QoS Certification.

Four ACs(Access Category) are defined in Wi-Fi specification, each AC has a its own priority to access the Wi-Fi channel. Moreover a map rule is defined to map the QoS priority of other protocol, such as 802.11D or TCP/IP precedence to Wi-Fi AC.

Below is a table describes how the IP Precedences are mapped to Wi-Fi ACs in ESP32-S2, it also indicates whether the AMPDU is supported for this AC. The table is sorted with priority descending order, namely, the AC_VO has highest priority.

IP Precedence	Wi-Fi AC	Support AMPDU?
6, 7	AC_VO (Voice)	No
4, 5	AC_VI (Video)	Yes
3, 0	AC_BE (Best Effort)	Yes
1, 2	AC_BK (Background)	Yes

The application can make use of the QoS feature by configuring the IP precedence via socket option IP_TOS. Here is an example to make the socket to use VI queue:

```
const int ip_precedence_vi = 4;
const int ip_precedence_offset = 5;
int priority = (ip_precedence_vi << ip_precedence_offset);
setsockopt(socket_id, IPPROTO_IP, IP_TOS, &priority, sizeof(priority));
```

Theoretically the higher priority AC has better performance than the low priority AC, however, it's not always be true, here are some suggestions about how to use the Wi-Fi QoS:

- For some really important application traffic, can put it into AC_VO queue. Avoid sending big traffic via AC_VO queue. On one hand, the AC_VO queue doesn't support AMPDU and it can't get better performance than other queue if the traffic is big, on the other hand, it may impact the the management frames that also use AC_VO queue.
- Avoid using more than two different AMPDU supported precedences, e.g. socket A uses precedence 0, socket B uses precedence 1, socket C uses precedence 2, this is a bad design because it may need much more memory. To be detailed, the Wi-Fi driver may generate a Block Ack session for each precedence and it needs more memory if the Block Ack session is setup.

4.29.26 Wi-Fi AMSDU

ESP32-S2 supports receiving AMSDU but doesn't support transmitting AMSDU. The transmitting AMSDU is not necessary since ESP32-S2 has transmitting AMPDU.

4.29.27 Wi-Fi Fragment

ESP32-S2 supports Wi-Fi receiving fragment, but doesn't support Wi-Fi transmitting fragment. The Wi-Fi transmitting fragment will be supported in future release.

4.29.28 WPS Enrollee

ESP32-S2 supports WPS enrollee feature in Wi-Fi mode WIFI_MODE_STA or WIFI_MODE_APSTA. Currently ESP32-S2 supports WPS enrollee type PBC and PIN.

4.29.29 Wi-Fi Buffer Usage

This section is only about the dynamic buffer configuration.

Why Buffer Configuration Is Important

In order to get a , high-performance system, we need to consider the memory usage/configuration very carefully, because:

- the available memory in ESP32-S2 is limited.
- currently, the default type of buffer in LwIP and Wi-Fi drivers is "dynamic", **which means that both the LwIP and Wi-Fi share memory with the application**. Programmers should always keep this in mind; otherwise, they will face a memory issue, such as "running out of heap memory".
- it is very dangerous to run out of heap memory, as this will cause ESP32-S2 an "undefined behavior". Thus, enough heap memory should be reserved for the application, so that it never runs out of it.
- the Wi-Fi throughput heavily depends on memory-related configurations, such as the TCP window size, Wi-Fi RX/TX dynamic buffer number, etc.
- the peak heap memory that the ESP32-S2 LwIP/Wi-Fi may consume depends on a number of factors, such as the maximum TCP/UDP connections that the application may have, etc.
- the total memory that the application requires is also an important factor when considering memory configuration.

Due to these reasons, there is not a good-for-all application configuration. Rather, we have to consider memory configurations separately for every different application.

Dynamic vs. Static Buffer

The default type of buffer in Wi-Fi drivers is "dynamic". Most of the time the dynamic buffer can significantly save memory. However, it makes the application programming a little more difficult, because in this case the application needs to consider memory usage in Wi-Fi.

lwIP also allocates buffers at the TCP/IP layer, and this buffer allocation is also dynamic. See lwIP documentation section about memory use and performance.

Peak Wi-Fi Dynamic Buffer

The Wi-Fi driver supports several types of buffer (refer to *Wi-Fi Buffer Configure*). However, this section is about the usage of the dynamic Wi-Fi buffer only. The peak heap memory that Wi-Fi consumes is the **theoretically-maximum memory** that the Wi-Fi driver consumes. Generally, the peak memory depends on:

- the number of dynamic rx buffers that are configured: wifi_rx_dynamic_buf_num
- the number of dynamic tx buffers that are configured: wifi_tx_dynamic_buf_num
- the maximum packet size that the Wi-Fi driver can receive: wifi_rx_pkt_size_max
- the maximum packet size that the Wi-Fi driver can send: wifi_tx_pkt_size_max

So, the peak memory that the Wi-Fi driver consumes can be calculated with the following formula:

wifi_dynamic_peek_memory = (wifi_rx_dynamic_buf_num * wifi_rx_pkt_size_max) + (wifi_tx_dynamic_buf_num * wifi_tx_pkt_size_max)

Generally, we do not need to care about the dynamic tx long buffers and dynamic tx long long buffers, because they are management frames which only have a small impact on the system.

4.29.30 How to improve Wi-Fi performance

The performance of ESP32-S2 Wi-Fi is affected by many parameters, and there are mutual constraints between each parameter. A proper configuration can not only improve performance but also increase available memory for applications and improve stability.

In this section, we will briefly explain the operating mode of the Wi-Fi/LWIP protocol stack and explain the role of each parameter. We will give several recommended configuration ranks, user can choose the appropriate rank according to the usage scenario.

Protocol stack operation mode

The ESP32-S2 protocol stack is divided into four layers: Application, LWIP, Wi-Fi, and Hardware.

- During receiving, hardware puts the received packet into DMA buffer, and then transfers it into the RX buffer of Wi-Fi, LWIP in turn for related protocol processing, and finally to the application layer. The Wi-Fi RX buffer and the LWIP RX buffer shares the same buffer by default. In other words, the Wi-Fi forwards the packet to LWIP by reference by default.
- During sending, the application copies the messages to be sent into the TX buffer of the LWIP layer for TCP/IP encapsulation. The messages will then be passed to the TX buffer of the Wi-Fi layer for MAC encapsulation and wait to be sent.

Parameters

Increasing the size or number of the buffers mentioned above properly can improve Wi-Fi performance. Meanwhile, it will reduce available memory to the application. The following is an introduction to the parameters that users need to configure:

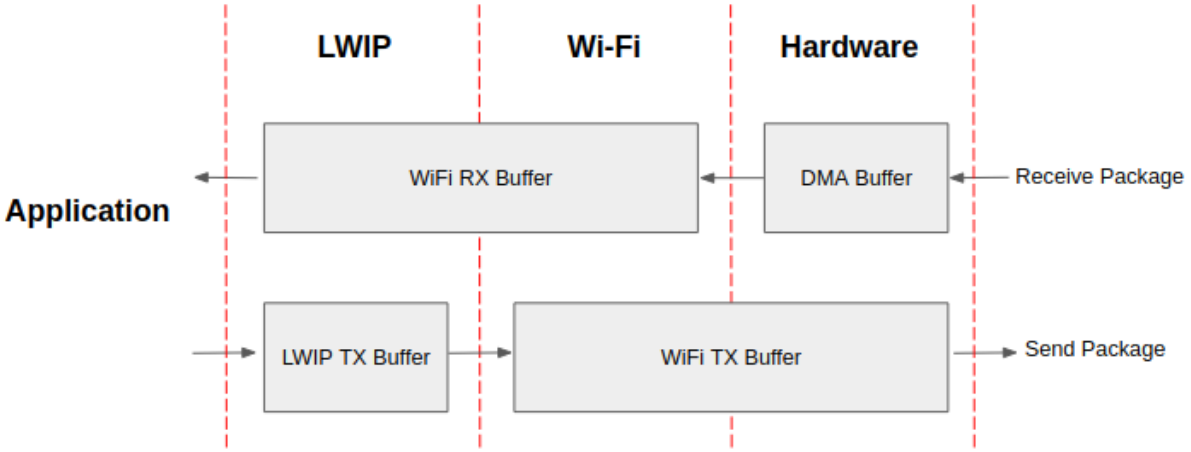


Fig. 48: ESP32-S2 datapath

RX direction:

- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM*** This parameter indicates the number of DMA buffer at the hardware layer. Increasing this parameter will increase the sender's one-time receiving throughput, thereby improving the Wi-Fi protocol stack ability to handle burst traffic.
- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM*** This parameter indicates the number of RX buffer in the Wi-Fi layer. Increasing this parameter will improve the performance of packet reception. This parameter needs to match the RX buffer size of the LWIP layer.
- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_BA_WIN*** This parameter indicates the size of the AMPDU BA Window at the receiving end. This parameter should be configured to the smaller value between twice of *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM* and *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM*.
- ***CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_WND_DEFAULT*** This parameter represents the RX buffer size of the LWIP layer for each TCP stream. Its value should be configured to the value of WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM(KB) to reach a high and stable performance. Meanwhile, in case of multiple streams, this value needs to be reduced proportionally.

TX direction:

- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM*** This parameter indicates the type of TX buffer, it is recommended to configure it as a dynamic buffer, which can make full use of memory.
- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM*** This parameter indicates the number of TX buffer on the Wi-Fi layer. Increasing this parameter will improve the performance of packet sending. The parameter value needs to match the TX buffer size of the LWIP layer.
- ***CONFIG_LWIP_TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT*** This parameter represents the TX buffer size of the LWIP layer for each TCP stream. Its value should be configured to the value of WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM(KB) to reach a high and stable performance. In case of multiple streams, this value needs to be reduced proportionally.

Throughput optimization by placing code in IRAM:

- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_IRAM_OPT*** If this option is enabled, some Wi-Fi functions are moved to IRAM, improving throughput. This increases IRAM usage by 15 kB.
- ***CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT*** If this option is enabled, some Wi-Fi RX functions are moved to IRAM, improving throughput. This increases IRAM usage by 16 kB.
- ***CONFIG_LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION*** If this option is enabled, some LWIP functions are moved to IRAM, improving throughput. This increases IRAM usage by 13 kB.

CACHE:

- ***CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_SIZE*** Configure the size of the instruction cache.
- ***CONFIG_ESP32S2_INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE_SIZE*** Configure the width of the instruction cache bus.

Note: The buffer size mentioned above is fixed as 1.6 KB.

How to configure parameters

ESP32-S2' s memory is shared by protocol stack and applications.

Here, we have given several configuration ranks. In most cases, the user should select a suitable rank for parameter configuration according to the size of the memory occupied by the application.

The parameters not mentioned in the following table should be set to the default.

Rank	Iperf	High-performance	Default	Memory saving	Minimum
Available memory(KB)	4.1	24.2	78.4	86.5	116.4
WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM	8	6	6	4	3
WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM	24	18	12	8	6
WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM	24	18	12	8	6
WIFI_RX_BA_WIN	12	9	6	4	3
TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT(KB)	24	18	12	8	6
TCP_WND_DEFAULT(KB)	24	18	12	8	6
WIFI_IRAM_OPT	15	15	15	15	0
WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT	16	16	16	0	0
LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION	13	13	0	0	0
INSTRUCTION_CACHE	16	16	16	16	8
INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE	16	16	16	16	16
TCP TX throughput	37.6	33.1	22.5	12.2	5.5
TCP RX throughput	31.5	28.1	20.1	13.1	7.2
UDP TX throughput	58.1	57.3	28.1	22.6	8.7
UDP RX throughput	78.1	66.7	65.3	53.8	28.5

Note: The result is tested with a single stream in a shielded box using an ASUS RT-N66U router. ESP32-S2' s CPU is dual core with 240 MHz, ESP32-S2' s flash is in QIO mode with 80 MHz.

Ranks:

- **Iperf rank** ESP32-S2 extreme performance rank used to test extreme performance.
- **High-performance rank** The ESP32-S2' s high-performance configuration rank, suitable for scenarios that the application occupies less memory and has high-performance requirements.
- **Default rank** ESP32-S2' s default configuration rank, the available memory, and performance are in balance.
- **Memory saving rank** This rank is suitable for scenarios where the application requires a large amount of memory, and the transceiver performance will be reduced in this rank.
- **Minimum rank** This is the minimum configuration rank of ESP32-S2. The protocol stack only uses the necessary memory for running. It is suitable for scenarios that have no requirement for performance and the application requires lots of space.

Using PSRAM

PSRAM is generally used when the application takes up a lot of memory. In this mode, the *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_TX_BUFFER* is forced to be static. *CONFIG_ESP32_WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM* indicates the number of DMA buffers at the hardware layer, increase this parameter can improve performance. The following are the recommended ranks for using PSRAM:

Rank	Iperf	Default	Memory saving	Minimum
Available memory(KB)	70.6	96.4	118.8	148.2
WIFI_STATIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM	8	8	6	4
WIFI_DYNAMIC_RX_BUFFER_NUM	64	64	64	64
WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM	16	8	6	4
WIFI_RX_BA_WIN	16	6	6	Disable
TCP_SND_BUF_DEFAULT(KB)	32	32	32	32
TCP_WND_DEFAULT(KB)	32	32	32	32
WIFI_IRAM_OPT	15	15	15	0
WIFI_RX_IRAM_OPT	16	16	0	0
LWIP_IRAM_OPTIMIZATION	13	0	0	0
INSTRUCTION_CACHE	16	16	16	8
INSTRUCTION_CACHE_LINE	16	16	16	16
DATA_CACHE	8	8	8	8
DATA_CACHE_LINE	32	32	32	32
TCP TX throughput	40.1	29.2	20.1	8.9
TCP RX throughput	21.9	16.8	14.8	9.6
UDP TX throughput	50.1	25.7	22.4	10.2
UDP RX throughput	45.3	43.1	28.5	15.1

Note: Reaching peak performance may cause task watchdog. It is a normal phenomenon considering the CPU may have no time for lower priority tasks.

4.29.31 Wi-Fi Menuconfig

Wi-Fi Buffer Configure

If you are going to modify the default number or type of buffer, it would be helpful to also have an overview of how the buffer is allocated/freed in the data path. The following diagram shows this process in the TX direction:

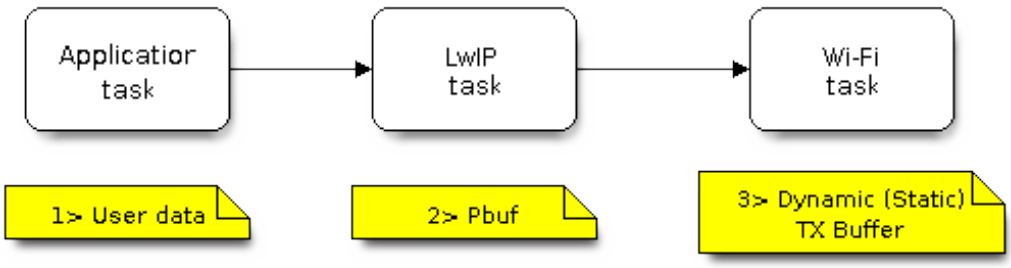


Fig. 49: TX Buffer Allocation

Description:

- The application allocates the data which needs to be sent out.
- The application calls TCPIP-/Socket-related APIs to send the user data. These APIs will allocate a PBUF used in LwIP, and make a copy of the user data.
- When LwIP calls a Wi-Fi API to send the PBUF, the Wi-Fi API will allocate a "Dynamic Tx Buffer" or "Static Tx Buffer" , make a copy of the LwIP PBUF, and finally send the data.

The following diagram shows how buffer is allocated/freed in the RX direction:

Description:

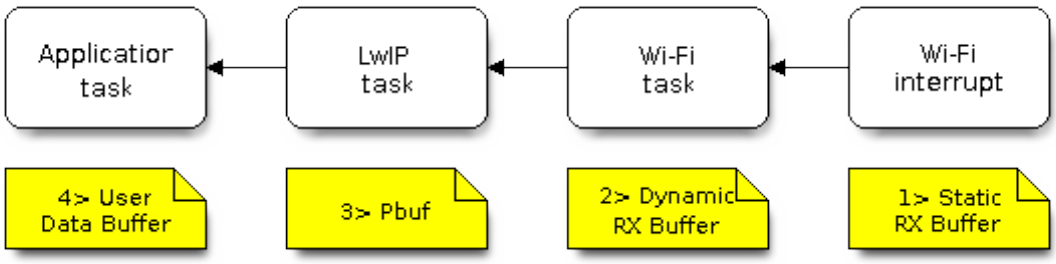


Fig. 50: RX Buffer Allocation

- The Wi-Fi hardware receives a packet over the air and puts the packet content to the "Static Rx Buffer", which is also called "RX DMA Buffer".
- The Wi-Fi driver allocates a "Dynamic Rx Buffer", makes a copy of the "Static Rx Buffer", and returns the "Static Rx Buffer" to hardware.
- The Wi-Fi driver delivers the packet to the upper-layer (LwIP), and allocates a PBUF for holding the "Dynamic Rx Buffer".
- The application receives data from LwIP.

The diagram shows the configuration of the Wi-Fi internal buffer.

Buffer Type	Alloc Type	Default	Configurable	Description
Static RX Buffer (Hardware RX Buffer)	Static	10 * 1600 Bytes	Yes	This is a kind of DMA memory. It is initialized in *esp_wifi_init()* and freed in *esp_wifi_deinit()*. The 'Static Rx Buffer' forms the hardware receiving list. Upon receiving a frame over the air, hardware writes the frame into the buffer and raises an interrupt to the CPU. Then, the Wi-Fi driver reads the content from the buffer and returns the buffer back to the list. If the application want to reduce the the memory statically allocated by Wi-Fi, they can reduce this value from 10 to 6 to save 6400 Bytes memory. It's not recommended to reduce the configuration to a value less than 6 unless the AMPDU feature is disabled.
Dynamic RX Buffer	Dynamic	32	Yes	The buffer length is variable and it depends on the received frames' length. When the Wi-Fi driver receives a frame from the 'Hardware Rx Buffer', the 'Dynamic Rx Buffer' needs to be allocated from the heap. The number of the Dynamic Rx Buffer, configured in the menuconfig, is used to limit the total un-freed Dynamic Rx Buffer number.
Dynamic TX Buffer	Dynamic	32	Yes	This is a kind of DMA memory. It is allocated to the heap. When the upper- layer (LwIP) sends packets to the Wi-Fi driver, it firstly allocates

Wi-Fi NVS Flash

If the Wi-Fi NVS flash is enabled, all Wi-Fi configurations set via the Wi-Fi APIs will be stored into flash, and the Wi-Fi driver will start up with these configurations next time it powers on/reboots. However, the application can choose to disable the Wi-Fi NVS flash if it does not need to store the configurations into persistent memory, or has its own persistent storage, or simply due to debugging reasons, etc.

Wi-Fi AMPDU

ESP32-S2 supports both receiving and transmitting AMPDU, the AMPDU can greatly improve the Wi-Fi throughput.

Generally, the AMPDU should be enabled. Disabling AMPDU is usually for debugging purposes.

4.29.32 Troubleshooting

Please refer to a separate document with *Espressif Wireshark User Guide*.

Espressif Wireshark User Guide

1. Overview

1.1 What is Wireshark? Wireshark (originally named "Ethereal") is a network packet analyzer that captures network packets and displays the packet data as detailed as possible. It uses WinPcap as its interface to directly capture network traffic going through a network interface controller (NIC).

You could think of a network packet analyzer as a measuring device used to examine what is going on inside a network cable, just like a voltmeter is used by an electrician to examine what is going on inside an electric cable.

In the past, such tools were either very expensive, proprietary, or both. However, with the advent of Wireshark, all that has changed.

Wireshark is released under the terms of the GNU General Public License, which means you can use the software and the source code free of charge. It also allows you to modify and customize the source code.

Wireshark is, perhaps, one of the best open source packet analyzers available today.

1.2 Some Intended Purposes Here are some examples of how Wireshark is typically used:

- Network administrators use it to troubleshoot network problems.
- Network security engineers use it to examine security problems.
- Developers use it to debug protocol implementations.
- People use it to learn more about network protocol internals.

Beside these examples, Wireshark can be used for many other purposes.

1.3 Features The main features of Wireshark are as follows:

- Available for UNIX and Windows
- Captures live packet data from a network interface
- Displays packets along with detailed protocol information
- Opens/saves the captured packet data
- Imports/exports packets into a number of file formats, supported by other capture programs
- Advanced packet filtering
- Searches for packets based on multiple criteria
- Colorizes packets according to display filters
- Calculates statistics
- ···and a lot more!

1.4 Wireshark Can or Can't Do

- **Live capture from different network media**.
  Wireshark can capture traffic from different network media, including wireless LAN.
- **Import files from many other capture programs**.
  Wireshark can import data from a large number of file formats, supported by other capture programs.
- **Export files for many other capture programs**.
  Wireshark can export data into a large number of file formats, supported by other capture programs.
- **Numerous protocol dissectors**.
  Wireshark can dissect, or decode, a large number of protocols.
- **Wireshark is not an intrusion detection system**.
  It will not warn you if there are any suspicious activities on your network. However, if strange things happen, Wireshark might help you figure out what is really going on.
- **Wireshark does not manipulate processes on the network, it can only perform "measurements" within it**.
  Wireshark does not send packets on the network or influence it in any other way, except for resolving names (converting numerical address values into a human readable format), but even that can be disabled.

2. Where to Get Wireshark You can get Wireshark from the official website: https://www.wireshark.org/download.html

Wireshark can run on various operating systems. Please download the correct version according to the operating system you are using.

3. Step-by-step Guide **This demonstration uses Wireshark 2.2.6 on Linux.**

a) Start Wireshark

On Linux, you can run the shell script provided below. It starts Wireshark, then configures NIC and the channel for packet capture.

```
ifconfig $1 down
iwconfig $1 mode monitor
iwconfig $1 channel $2
ifconfig $1 up
Wireshark&
```

In the above script, the parameter `$1` represents NIC and `$2` represents channel. For example, `wlan0` in `./xxx.sh wlan0 6`, specifies the NIC for packet capture, and `6` identifies the channel of an AP or Soft-AP.

b) Run the Shell Script to Open Wireshark and Display Capture Interface

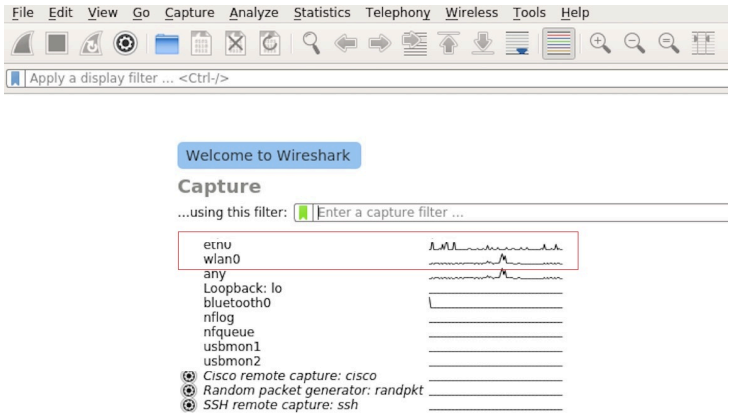


Fig. 51: Wireshark Capture Interface

c) Select the Interface to Start Packet Capture

As the red markup shows in the picture above, many interfaces are available. The first one is a local NIC and the second one is a wireless NIC.

Please select the NIC according to your requirements. This document will use the wireless NIC to demonstrate packet capture.

Double click *wlan0* to start packet capture.

d) Set up Filters

Since all packets in the channel will be captured, and many of them are not needed, you have to set up filters to get the packets that you need.

Please find the picture below with the red markup, indicating where the filters should be set up.

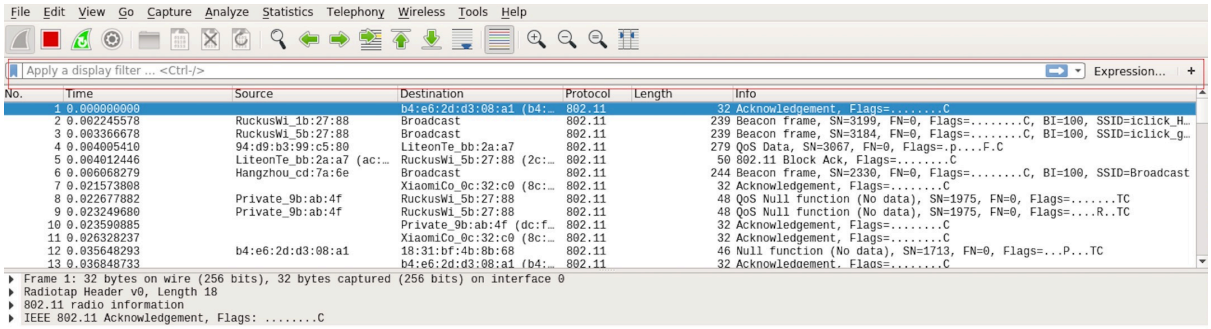


Fig. 52: Setting up Filters in Wireshark

Click *Filter*, the top left blue button in the picture below. The *display filter* dialogue box will appear.

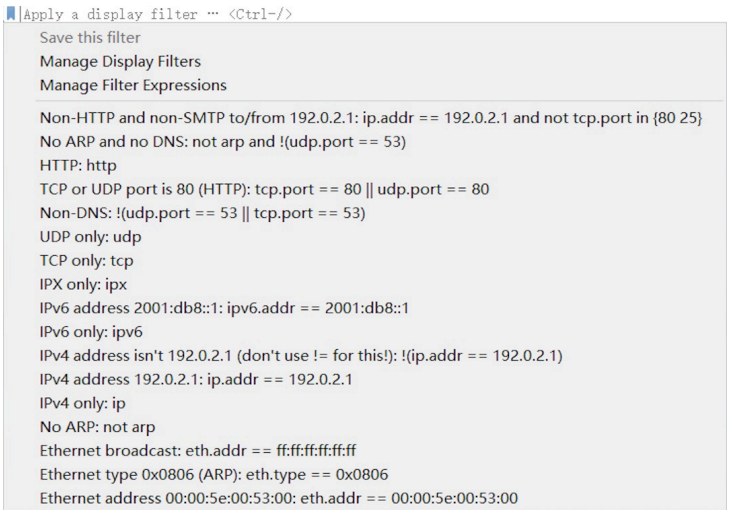


Fig. 53: *Display Filter* Dialogue Box

Click the *Expression* button to bring up the *Filter Expression* dialogue box and set the filter according to your requirements.

The quickest way: enter the filters directly in the toolbar.

Click on this area to enter or modify the filters. If you enter a wrong or unfinished filter, the built-in syntax check turns the background red. As soon as the correct expression is entered, the background becomes green.

The previously entered filters are automatically saved. You can access them anytime by opening the drop down list.

For example, as shown in the picture below, enter two MAC addresses as the filters and click *Apply* (the blue arrow). In this case, only the packet data transmitted between these two MAC addresses will be captured.

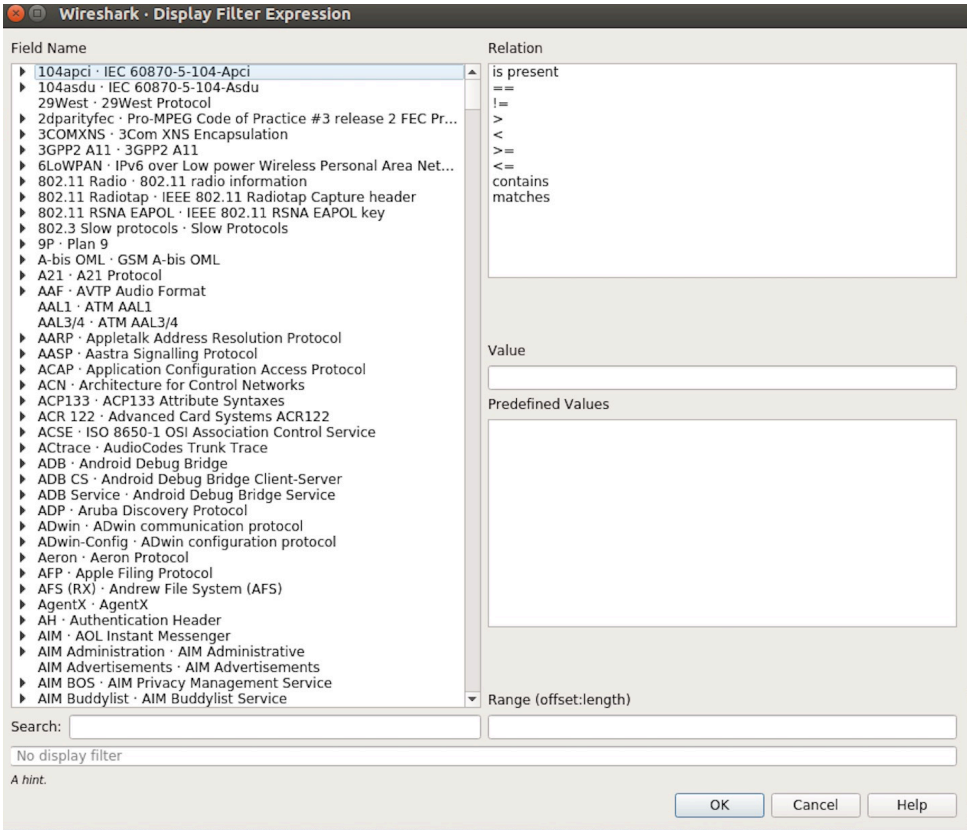


Fig. 54: *Filter Expression* Dialogue Box

Fig. 55: Filter Toolbar

Fig. 56: Example of MAC Addresses applied in the Filter Toolbar

e) Packet List

You can click any packet in the packet list and check the detailed information about it in the box below the list. For example, if you click the first packet, its details will appear in that box.

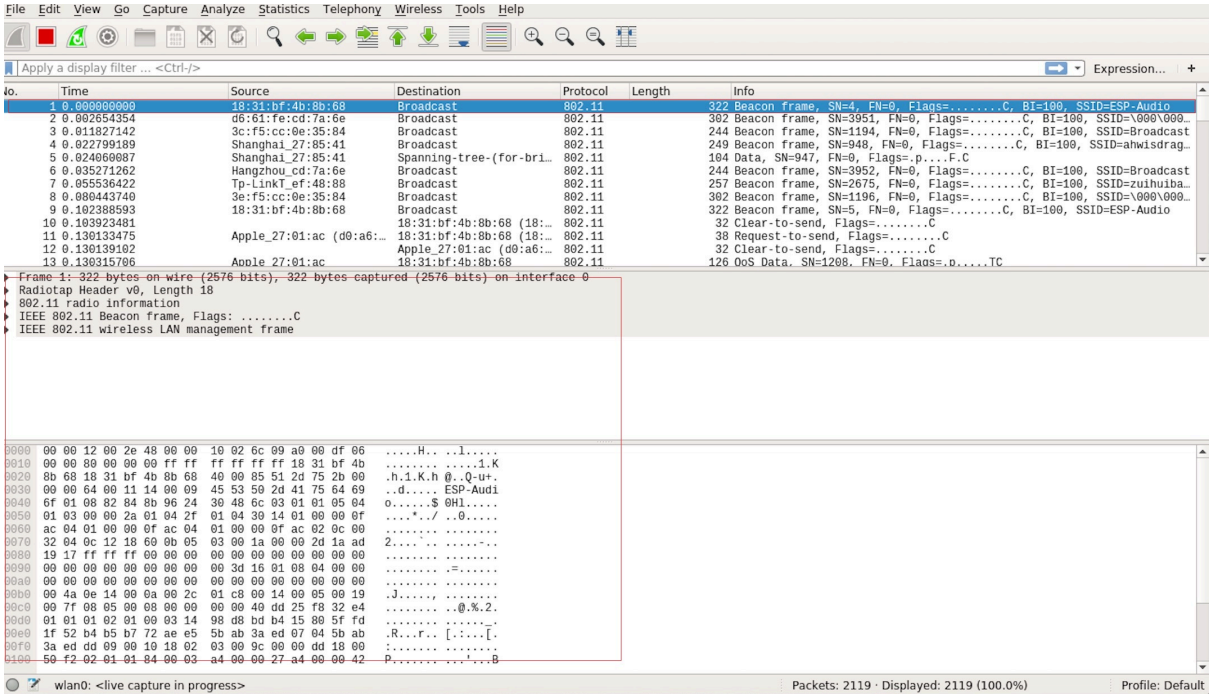


Fig. 57: Example of Packet List Details

f) Stop/Start Packet Capture

As shown in the picture below, click the red button to stop capturing the current packet.

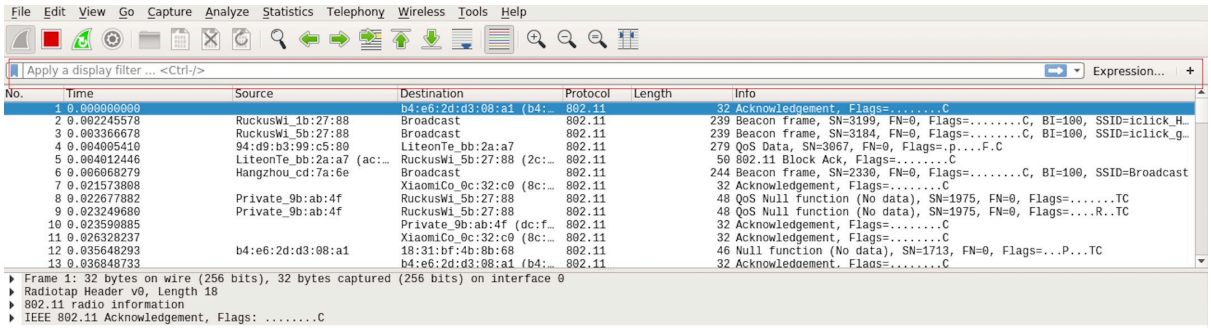


Fig. 58: Stopping Packet Capture

Click the top left blue button to start or resume packet capture.

g) Save the Current Packet

On Linux, go to *File -> Export Packet Dissections -> As Plain Text File* to save the packet.

Please note that *All packets*, *Displayed* and *All expanded* must be selected.

By default, Wireshark saves the captured packet in a libpcap file. You can also save the file in other formats, e.g. txt, to analyze it in other tools.

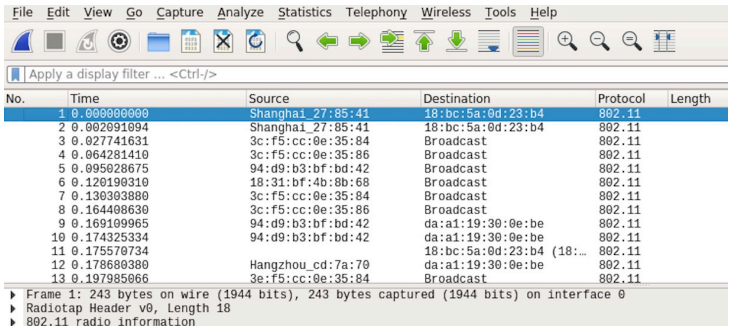


Fig. 59: Starting or Resuming the Packets Capture

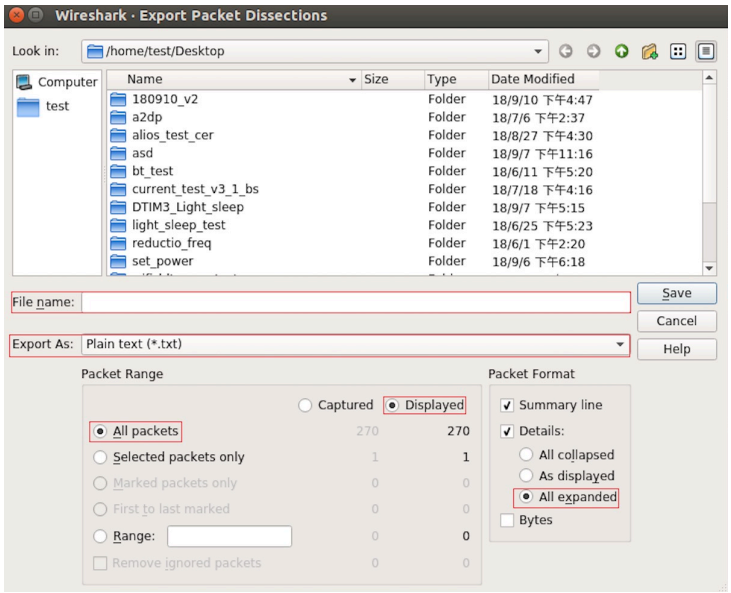


Fig. 60: Saving Captured Packets

Chapter 5

Libraries and Frameworks

5.1 Cloud Frameworks

ESP32-S2 supports multiple cloud frameworks using agents built on top of ESP-IDF. Here are the pointers to various supported cloud frameworks' agents and examples:

5.1.1 AWS IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-aws-iot is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Amazon Web Services' aws-iot-device-sdk-embedded-C.

5.1.2 Azure IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-azure is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Microsoft Azure's azure-iot-sdk-c SDK.

5.1.3 Google IoT Core

https://github.com/espressif/esp-google-iot is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Google's iot-device-sdk-embedded-c SDK.

5.1.4 Aliyun IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-aliyun is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Aliyun's iotkit-embedded SDK.

5.1.5 Joylink IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-joylink is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Joylink's joylink_dev_sdk SDK.

5.1.6 Tencent IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-welink is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Tencent's welink SDK.

5.1.7 Tencentyun IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-qcloud is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Tencentyun's qcloud-iot-sdk-embedded-c SDK.

5.1.8 Baidu IoT

https://github.com/espressif/esp-baidu-iot is an open source repository for ESP32-S2 based on Baidu's iot-sdk-c SDK.

Chapter 6

Contributions Guide

We welcome contributions to the esp-idf project!

6.1 How to Contribute

Contributions to esp-idf - fixing bugs, adding features, adding documentation - are welcome. We accept contributions via Github Pull Requests.

6.2 Before Contributing

Before sending us a Pull Request, please consider this list of points:

- Is the contribution entirely your own work, or already licensed under an Apache License 2.0 compatible Open Source License? If not then we unfortunately cannot accept it.
- Does any new code conform to the esp-idf *Style Guide*?
- Have you installed the *pre-commit hook* for esp-idf project?
- Does the code documentation follow requirements in *Documenting Code*?
- Is the code adequately commented for people to understand how it is structured?
- Is there documentation or examples that go with code contributions? There are additional suggestions for writing good examples in examples readme.
- Are comments and documentation written in clear English, with no spelling or grammar errors?
- Example contributions are also welcome. Please check the *Creating Examples* guide for these.
- If the contribution contains multiple commits, are they grouped together into logical changes (one major change per pull request)? Are any commits with names like "fixed typo" squashed into previous commits?
- If you're unsure about any of these points, please open the Pull Request anyhow and then ask us for feedback.

6.3 Pull Request Process

After you open the Pull Request, there will probably be some discussion in the comments field of the request itself.

Once the Pull Request is ready to merge, it will first be merged into our internal git system for in-house automated testing.

If this process passes, it will be merged onto the public github repository.

6.4 Legal Part

Before a contribution can be accepted, you will need to sign our *Contributor Agreement*. You will be prompted for this automatically as part of the Pull Request process.

6.5 Related Documents

6.5.1 Espressif IoT Development Framework Style Guide

About This Guide

Purpose of this style guide is to encourage use of common coding practices within the ESP-IDF.

Style guide is a set of rules which are aimed to help create readable, maintainable, and robust code. By writing code which looks the same way across the code base we help others read and comprehend the code. By using same conventions for spaces and newlines we reduce chances that future changes will produce huge unreadable diffs. By following common patterns for module structure and by using language features consistently we help others understand code behavior.

We try to keep rules simple enough, which means that they can not cover all potential cases. In some cases one has to bend these simple rules to achieve readability, maintainability, or robustness.

When doing modifications to third-party code used in ESP-IDF, follow the way that particular project is written. That will help propose useful changes for merging into upstream project.

C Code Formatting

Naming

- Any variable or function which is only used in a single source file should be declared `static`.
- Public names (non-static variables and functions) should be namespaced with a per-component or per-unit prefix, to avoid naming collisions. ie `esp_vfs_register()` or `esp_console_run()`. Starting the prefix with `esp_` for Espressif-specific names is optional, but should be consistent with any other names in the same component.
- Static variables should be prefixed with `s_` for easy identification. For example, `static bool s_invert`.
- Avoid unnecessary abbreviations (ie shortening `data` to `dat`), unless the resulting name would otherwise be very long.

Indentation Use 4 spaces for each indentation level. Don't use tabs for indentation. Configure the editor to emit 4 spaces each time you press tab key.

Vertical Space Place one empty line between functions. Don't begin or end a function with an empty line.

```
void function1()
{
    do_one_thing();
    do_another_thing();
                                    // INCORRECT, don't place empty line here
}
                                    // place empty line here
void function2()
{
                                    // INCORRECT, don't use an empty line here
    int var = 0;
    while (var < SOME_CONSTANT) {
        do_stuff(&var);
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    }
}
```

The maximum line length is 120 characters as long as it doesn't seriously affect the readability.

Horizontal Space Always add single space after conditional and loop keywords:

```
if (condition) {    // correct
    // ...
}

switch (n) {        // correct
    case 0:
        // ...
}

for(int i = 0; i < CONST; ++i) {    // INCORRECT
    // ...
}
```

Add single space around binary operators. No space is necessary for unary operators. It is okay to drop space around multiply and divide operators:

```
const int y = y0 + (x - x0) * (y1 - y0) / (x1 - x0);    // correct

const int y = y0 + (x - x0)*(y1 - y0)/(x1 - x0);        // also okay

int y_cur = -y;                                          // correct
++y_cur;

const int y = y0+(x-x0)*(y1-y0)/(x1-x0);                 // INCORRECT
```

No space is necessary around `.` and `->` operators.

Sometimes adding horizontal space within a line can help make code more readable. For example, you can add space to align function arguments:

```
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_D6,   I2S0I_DATA_IN14_IDX, false);
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_D7,   I2S0I_DATA_IN15_IDX, false);
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_HREF, I2S0I_H_ENABLE_IDX,  false);
esp_rom_gpio_connect_in_signal(PIN_CAM_PCLK, I2S0I_DATA_IN15_IDX, false);
```

Note however that if someone goes to add new line with a longer identifier as first argument (e.g. `PIN_CAM_VSYNC`), it will not fit. So other lines would have to be realigned, adding meaningless changes to the commit.

Therefore, use horizontal alignment sparingly, especially if you expect new lines to be added to the list later.

Never use TAB characters for horizontal alignment.

Never add trailing whitespace at the end of the line.

Braces

- Function definition should have a brace on a separate line:

```
// This is correct:
void function(int arg)
{

}
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// NOT like this:
void function(int arg) {

}
```

- Within a function, place opening brace on the same line with conditional and loop statements:

```
if (condition) {
    do_one();
} else if (other_condition) {
    do_two();
}
```

Comments Use `//` for single line comments. For multi-line comments it is okay to use either `//` on each line or a `/* */` block.

Although not directly related to formatting, here are a few notes about using comments effectively.

- Don't use single comments to disable some functionality:

```
void init_something()
{
    setup_dma();
    // load_resources();                // WHY is this thing commented, asks␣
↪the reader?
    start_timer();
}
```

- If some code is no longer required, remove it completely. If you need it you can always look it up in git history of this file. If you disable some call because of temporary reasons, with an intention to restore it in the future, add explanation on the adjacent line:

```
void init_something()
{
    setup_dma();
    // TODO: we should load resources here, but loader is not fully integrated␣
↪yet.
    // load_resources();
    start_timer();
}
```

- Same goes for `#if 0 ... #endif` blocks. Remove code block completely if it is not used. Otherwise, add comment explaining why the block is disabled. Don't use `#if 0 ... #endif` or comments to store code snippets which you may need in the future.
- Don't add trivial comments about authorship and change date. You can always look up who modified any given line using git. E.g. this comment adds clutter to the code without adding any useful information:

```
void init_something()
{
    setup_dma();
    // XXX add 2016-09-01
    init_dma_list();
    fill_dma_item(0);
    // end XXX add
    start_timer();
}
```

Line Endings Commits should only contain files with LF (Unix style) endings.

Windows users can configure git to check out CRLF (Windows style) endings locally and commit LF endings by setting the `core.autocrlf` setting. *Github has a document about setting this option <github-line-endings>*. However

because MSYS2 uses Unix-style line endings, it is often easier to configure your text editor to use LF (Unix style) endings when editing ESP-IDF source files.

If you accidentally have some commits in your branch that add LF endings, you can convert them to Unix by running this command in an MSYS2 or Unix terminal (change directory to the IDF working directory and check the correct branch is currently checked out, beforehand):

```
git rebase --exec 'git diff-tree --no-commit-id --name-only -r HEAD | xargs␣
↪dos2unix && git commit -a --amend --no-edit --allow-empty' master
```

(Note that this line rebases on master, change the branch name at the end to rebase on another branch.)

For updating a single commit, it's possible to run `dos2unix FILENAME` and then run `git commit --amend`

Formatting Your Code You can use `astyle` program to format your code according to the above recommendations.

If you are writing a file from scratch, or doing a complete rewrite, feel free to re-format the entire file. If you are changing a small portion of file, don't re-format the code you didn't change. This will help others when they review your changes.

To re-format a file, run:

```
tools/format.sh components/my_component/file.c
```

Type Definitions Should be snake_case, ending with _t suffix:

```
typedef int signed_32_bit_t;
```

Enum Enums should be defined through the *typedef* and be namespaced:

```
typedef enum
{
    MODULE_FOO_ONE,
    MODULE_FOO_TWO,
    MODULE_FOO_THREE
} module_foo_t;
```

Assertions The standard C `assert()` function, defined in `assert.h` should be used to check conditions that should be true in source code. In the default configuration, an assert condition that returns `false` or 0 will call `abort()` and trigger a *Fatal Error*.

`assert()` should only be used to detect unrecoverable errors due to a serious internal logic bug or corruption, where it's not possible for the program to continue. For recoverable errors, including errors that are possible due to invalid external input, an *error value should be returned*.

Note: When asserting a value of type `esp_err_t``is equal to ``ESP_OK`, use the *ESP_ERROR_CHECK macro* instead of an `assert()`.

It's possible to configure ESP-IDF projects with assertions disabled (see *CONFIG_COMPILER_OPTIMIZATION_ASSERTION_LEVEL*). Therefore, functions called in an `assert()` statement should not have side-effects.

It's also necessary to use particular techniques to avoid "variable set but not used" warnings when assertions are disabled, due to code patterns such as:

```
int res = do_something();
assert(res == 0);
```

Once the `assert` is optimized out, the `res` value is unused and the compiler will warn about this. However the function `do_something()` must still be called, even if assertions are disabled.

When the variable is declared and initialized in a single statement, a good strategy is to cast it to `void` on a new line. The compiler will not produce a warning, and the variable can still be optimized out of the final binary:

```
int res = do_something();
assert(res == 0);
(void)res;
```

If the variable is declared separately, for example if it is used for multiple assertions, then it can be declared with the GCC attribute `__attribute__((unused))`. The compiler will not produce any unused variable warnings, but the variable can still be optimized out:

```
int res __attribute__((unused));

res = do_something();
assert(res == 0);

res = do_something_else();
assert(res != 0);
```

C++ Code Formatting

The same rules as for C apply. Where they are not enough, apply the following rules.

File Naming C++ Header files have the extension `.hpp`. C++ source files have the extension `.cpp`. The latter is important for the compiler to distiguish them from normal C source files.

Naming

- **Class and struct** names shall be written in `CamelCase` with a capital letter as beginning. Member variables and methods shall be in `snake_case`.
- **Namespaces** shall be in lower `snake_case`.
- **Templates** are specified in the line above the function declaration.
- Interfaces in terms of Object-Oriented Programming shall be named without the suffix `...Interface`. Later, this makes it easier to extract interfaces from normal classes and vice versa without making a breaking change.

Member Order in Classes In order of precedence:

- First put the public members, then the protected, then private ones. Omit public, protected or private sections without any members.
- First put constructors/destructors, then member functions, then member variables.

For example:

```
class ForExample {
public:
    // first constructors, then default constructor, then destructor
    ForExample(double example_factor_arg);
    ForExample();
    ~ForExample();

    // then remaining pubic methods
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
    set_example_factor(double example_factor_arg);

    // then public member variables
    uint32_t public_data_member;

private:
    // first private methods
    void internal_method();

    // then private member variables
    double example_factor;
};
```

Spacing

- Don't indent inside namespaces.
- Put `public`, `protected` and `private` labels at the same indentation level as the corresponding `class` label.

Simple Example

```
// file spaceship.h
#ifndef SPACESHIP_H_
#define SPACESHIP_H_
#include <cstdlib>

namespace spaceships {

class SpaceShip {
public:
    SpaceShip(size_t crew);
    size_t get_crew_size() const;

private:
    const size_t crew;
};

class SpaceShuttle : public SpaceShip {
public:
    SpaceShuttle();
};

class Sojuz : public SpaceShip {
public:
    Sojuz();
};

template <typename T>
class CargoShip {
public:
    CargoShip(const T &cargo);

private:
    T cargo;
};

} // namespace spaceships

#endif // SPACESHIP_H_
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
// file spaceship.cpp
#include "spaceship.h"

namespace spaceships {

// Putting the curly braces in the same line for constructors is OK if it only␣
↪initializes
// values in the initializer list
SpaceShip::SpaceShip(size_t crew) : crew(crew) { }

size_t SpaceShip::get_crew_size() const
{
    return crew;
}

SpaceShuttle::SpaceShuttle() : SpaceShip(7)
{
    // doing further initialization
}

Sojuz::Sojuz() : SpaceShip(3)
{
    // doing further initialization
}

template <typename T>
CargoShip<T>::CargoShip(const T &cargo) : cargo(cargo) { }

} // namespace spaceships
```

CMake Code Style

- Indent with four spaces.
- Maximum line length 120 characters. When splitting lines, try to focus on readability where possible (for example, by pairing up keyword/argument pairs on individual lines).
- Don't put anything in the optional parentheses after `endforeach()`, `endif()`, etc.
- Use lowercase (`with_underscores`) for command, function, and macro names.
- For locally scoped variables, use lowercase (`with_underscores`).
- For globally scoped variables, use uppercase (`WITH_UNDERSCORES`).
- Otherwise follow the defaults of the cmake-lint project.

Configuring the Code Style for a Project Using EditorConfig

EditorConfig helps developers define and maintain consistent coding styles between different editors and IDEs. The EditorConfig project consists of a file format for defining coding styles and a collection of text editor plugins that enable editors to read the file format and adhere to defined styles. EditorConfig files are easily readable and they work nicely with version control systems.

For more information, see EditorConfig Website.

Documenting Code

Please see the guide here: *Documenting Code*.

Structure

To be written.

Language Features

To be written.

6.5.2 Install pre-commit Hook for ESP-IDF Project

Required Dependency

Python 3.6.1 or above. This is our recommendation python version for IDF developers.

If you still have versions not compatible, please do not install pre-commit hook and update your python versions.

Install pre-commit

Run `pip install pre-commit`

Install pre-commit hook

1. Go to the IDF Project Directory
2. Run `pre-commit install --allow-missing-config`. Install hook by this approach will let you commit successfully even in branches without the `.pre-commit-config.yaml`
3. pre-commit hook will run automatically when you're running `git commit` command

What's More?

For detailed usage, Please refer to the documentation of pre-commit.

Common Problems For Windows Users

1. `/usr/bin/env: python: Permission denied.`
   If you're in Git Bash or MSYS terminal, please check the python executable location by run `which python`. If the executable is under `~/AppData/Local/Microsoft/WindowsApps/`, then it's a link to Windows AppStore, not a real one.
   Please install python manually and update this in your `PATH` environment variable.

6.5.3 Documenting Code

The purpose of this description is to provide quick summary on documentation style used in espressif/esp-idf repository and how to add new documentation.

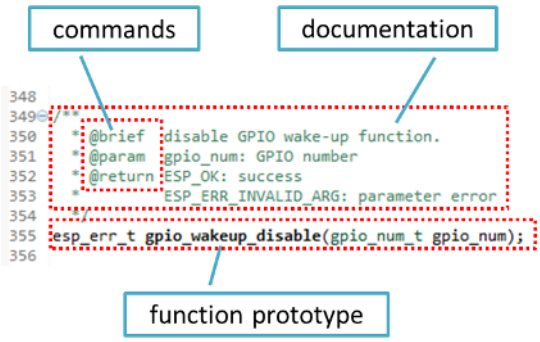
Introduction

When documenting code for this repository, please follow Doxygen style. You are doing it by inserting special commands, for instance `@param`, into standard comments blocks, for example:

```
/**
 * @param ratio this is oxygen to air ratio
 */
```

Doxygen is phrasing the code, extracting the commands together with subsequent text, and building documentation out of it.

Typical comment block, that contains documentation of a function, looks like below.

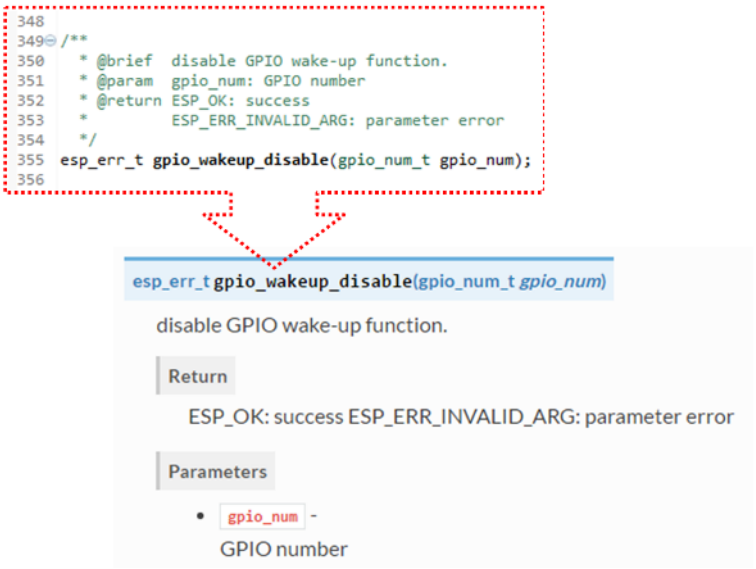


Doxygen supports couple of formatting styles. It also gives you great flexibility on level of details to include in documentation. To get familiar with available features, please check data rich and very well organized Doxygen Manual.

Why we need it?

The ultimate goal is to ensure that all the code is consistently documented, so we can use tools like Sphinx and Breathe to aid preparation and automatic updates of API documentation when the code changes.

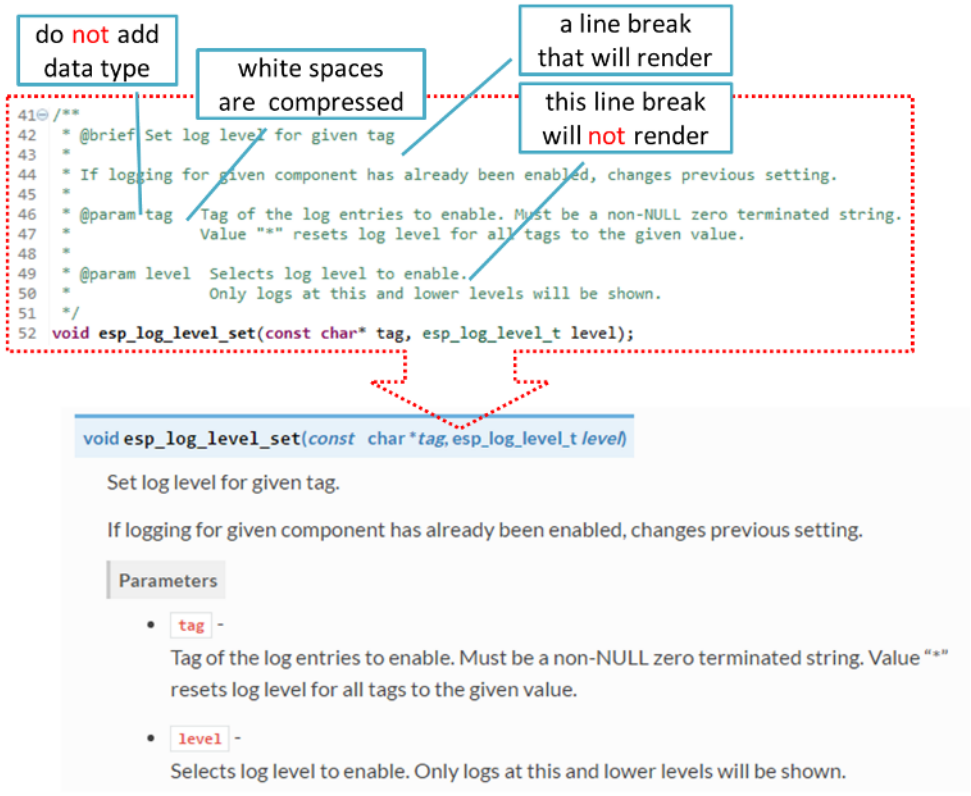
With these tools the above piece of code renders like below:



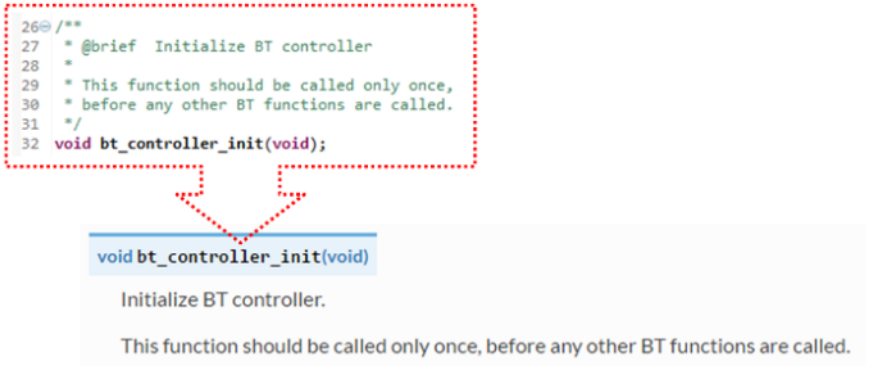
Go for it!

When writing code for this repository, please follow guidelines below.

1. Document all building blocks of code: functions, structs, typedefs, enums, macros, etc. Provide enough information on purpose, functionality and limitations of documented items, as you would like to see them documented when reading the code by others.
2. Documentation of function should describe what this function does. If it accepts input parameters and returns some value, all of them should be explained.
3. Do not add a data type before parameter or any other characters besides spaces. All spaces and line breaks are compressed into a single space. If you like to break a line, then break it twice.



4. If function has void input or does not return any value, then skip `@param` or `@return`



5. When documenting a `define` as well as members of a `struct` or `enum`, place specific comment like below after each member.

6. To provide well formatted lists, break the line after command (like `@return` in example below).

```
*
* @return
*     - ESP_OK if erase operation was successful
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
*     - ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE if handle has been closed or is NULL
*     - ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY if handle was opened as read only
*     - ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND if the requested key doesn't exist
*     - other error codes from the underlying storage driver
*
```

7. Overview of functionality of documented header file, or group of files that make a library, should be placed in the same directory in a separate `README.rst` file. If directory contains header files for different APIs, then the file name should be `apiname-readme.rst`.

Go one extra mile

There is couple of tips, how you can make your documentation even better and more useful to the reader.

1. Add code snippets to illustrate implementation. To do so, enclose snippet using `@code{c}` and `@endcode` commands.

```
*
* @code{c}
* // Example of using nvs_get_i32:
* int32_t max_buffer_size = 4096; // default value
* esp_err_t err = nvs_get_i32(my_handle, "max_buffer_size", &max_buffer_size);
* assert(err == ESP_OK || err == ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND);
* // if ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND was returned, max_buffer_size will still
* // have its default value.
* @endcode
*
```

   The code snippet should be enclosed in a comment block of the function that it illustrates.
2. To highlight some important information use command `@attention` or `@note`.

```
*
* @attention
*     1. This API only impact WIFI_MODE_STA or WIFI_MODE_APSTA mode
*     2. If the ESP32 is connected to an AP, call esp_wifi_disconnect to␣
↪disconnect.
*
```

   Above example also shows how to use a numbered list.
3. To provide common description to a group of similar functions, enclose them using `/**@{*/` and `/**@}*/` markup commands:

```
/**@{*/
/**
 * @brief common description of similar functions
 *
 */
void  first_similar_function (void);
void second_similar_function (void);
/**@}*/
```

   For practical example see nvs_flash/include/nvs.h.
4. You may want to go even further and skip some code like repetitive defines or enumerations. In such case, enclose the code within `/** @cond */` and `/** @endcond */` commands. Example of such implementation is provided in driver/include/driver/gpio.h.
5. Use markdown to make your documentation even more readable. You will add headers, links, tables and more.

```
*
* [ESP32-S2 Technical Reference Manual](https://www.espressif.com/sites/
↪default/files/documentation/esp32-s2_technical_reference_manual_en.pdf)
*
```

Note: Code snippets, notes, links, etc. will not make it to the documentation, if not enclosed in a comment block associated with one of documented objects.

6. Prepare one or more complete code examples together with description. Place description in a separate file `README.md` in specific folder of examples directory.

Linking Examples

When linking to examples on GitHub, do not use absolute/hardcoded URLs. Instead, use docutils custom roles that will generate links for you. These auto-generated links point to the tree or blob for the git commit ID (or tag) of the repository. This is needed to ensure that links do not get broken when files in master branch are moved around or deleted. The roles will transparently handle files that are located in submodules and will link to the submodule's repository with the correct commit ID.

The following roles are provided:

- `:idf:`path`` - points to directory inside ESP-IDF
- `:idf_file:`path`` - points to file inside ESP-IDF
- `:idf_raw:`path`` - points to raw view of the file inside ESP-IDF
- `:component:`path`` - points to directory inside ESP-IDF components dir
- `:component_file:`path`` - points to file inside ESP-IDF components dir
- `:component_raw:`path`` - points to raw view of the file inside ESP-IDF components dir
- `:example:`path`` - points to directory inside ESP-IDF examples dir
- `:example_file:`path`` - points to file inside ESP-IDF examples dir
- `:example_raw:`path`` - points to raw view of the file inside ESP-IDF examples dir

Example implementation:

```
* :example:`get-started/hello_world`
* :example:`Hello World! <get-started/hello_world>`
```

How it renders:

- get-started/hello_world
- Hello World!

A check is added to the CI build script, which searches RST files for presence of hard-coded links (identified by tree/master, blob/master, or raw/master part of the URL). This check can be run manually: `cd docs` and then `make gh-linkcheck`.

Linking Language Versions

Switching between documentation in different languages may be done using `:link_to_translation:` custom role. The role placed on a page of documentation provides a link to the same page in a language specified as a parameter. Examples below show how to enter links to Chinese and English versions of documentation:

```
:link_to_translation:`zh_CN: 中文版 `
:link_to_translation:`en:English`
```

The language is specified using standard abbreviations like `en` or `zh_CN`. The text after last semicolon is not standardized and may be entered depending on the context where the link is placed, e.g.:

```
:link_to_translation:`en:see description in English`
```

Add Illustrations

Consider adding diagrams and pictures to illustrate described concepts.

Sometimes it is better to add an illustration than writing a lengthy paragraph to describe a complex idea, a data structure or an algorithm. This repository is using blockdiag suite of tools to generate diagram images from simple text files.

The following types of diagrams are supported:

- Block diagram
- Sequence diagram
- Activity diagram
- Logical network diagram

With this suite of tools, it is possible to generate beautiful diagram images from simple text format (similar to graphviz's DOT format). The diagram elements are laid out automatically. The diagram code is then converted into ".png" graphics and integrated "behind the scenes" into **Sphinx** documents.

For the diagram preparation, you can use an on-line interactive shell that instantly shows the rendered image.

Below are couple of diagram examples:

- Simple **block diagram** / `blockdiag` - Wi-Fi Buffer Configuration
- Slightly more complicated **block diagram** - Wi-Fi programming model
- **Sequence diagram** / `seqdiag` - Scan for a Specific AP in All Channels
- **Packet diagram** / `packetdiag` - NVS Page Structure

Try them out by modifying the source code and see the diagram instantly rendering below.

Note: There may be slight differences in rendering of font used by the interactive shell compared to the font used in the esp-idf documentation.

Add Notes

Working on a document, you might need to:

- Place some suggestions on what should be added or modified in future.
- Leave a reminder for yourself or somebody else to follow up.

In this case, add a todo note to your reST file using the directive `.. todo::`. For example:

```
.. todo::

   Add a package diagram.
```

If you add `.. todolist::` to a reST file, the directive will be replaced by a list of all todo notes from the whole documentation.

By default, the directives `.. todo::` and `.. todolist::` are ignored by documentation builders. If you want the notes and the list of notes to be visible in your locally built documentation, do the following:

1. Open your local `conf_common.py` file.
2. Find the parameter `todo_include_todos`.
3. Change its value from `False` to `True`.

Before pushing your changes to origin, please set the value of `todo_include_todos` back to `False`.

For more details about the extension, see sphinx.ext.todo documentation.

Writing generic documentation for multiple chips

The documentation for all of Espressif's chips is built from the same files. To faciliate the writing of documents that can be re-used for multiple different chips (called below "targets"), we provide you with the following functionality:

Exclusion of content based on chip-target Occasionally there will be content that is only relevant for one of targets. When this is the case, you can exclude that content by using the ‘ .. only:: TAG’ ’ directive, where you replace ‘TAG’ with one of the following names:

Chip name:

- esp32
- esp32s2
- esp32c3

Define identifiers from ‘sdkconfig.h’ , generated by the default menuconfig settings for the target, e.g:

- CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

Define identifiers from the soc ‘*_caps’ headers, e.g:

- SOC_BT_SUPPORTED
- SOC_CAN_SUPPORTED

Example:

```
.. only:: esp32

    ESP32 specific content.
```

This directive also supports the boolean operators ‘and’ , ‘or’ and ‘not’ . Example:

```
.. only:: SOC_BT_SUPPORTED and CONFIG_FREERTOS_UNICORE

    BT specific content only relevant for single-core targets.
```

This functionality is provided by the Sphinx selective exclude extension.

A weakness in this extension is that it does not correctly handle the case where you exclude a section, that is directly followed by a labeled new section. In these cases everything will render correctly, but the label will not correctly link to the section that follows. A temporary work-around for the cases where this can’ t be avoided is the following:

```
.. only:: esp32

    .. _section_1_label:

    Section 1
    ^^^^^^^^^

    Section one content

    .. _section_2_label:

.. only:: not esp32

    .. _section_2_label:

Section 2
^^^^^^^^^
Section 2 content
```

The :TAG: role is used for excluding content from a table of content tree. For example:

```
.. toctree::
    :maxdepth: 1

    :esp32: configure-wrover
    configure-other-jtag
```

When building the documents, Sphinx will use the above mentioned directive and role to include or exclude content based on the target tag it was called with.

Note: If excluding an entire document from the toctree based on targets, it's necessary to also update the `exclude_patterns` list in docs/conf_common.py to exclude the file for other targets, or a Sphinx warning "WARNING: document isn't included in any toctree" will be generated..

The recommended way of doing it is adding the document to one of the list that gets included in `conditional_include_dict` in docs/conf_common.py, e.g. a document which should only be shown for BT capable targets should be added to `BT_DOCS`. docs/idf_extensions/exclude_docs.py will then take care of adding it to `exclude_patterns` if the corresponding tag is not set.

If you need to exclude content inside a list or bullet points, then this should be done by using the ":TAG:" role inside the ".. list::" directive.

```
.. list::

    :esp32: - ESP32 specific content
    :SOC_BT_SUPPORTED: - BT specific content
    - Common bullet point
    - Also common bullet point
```

Substitution macros When you need to refer to the chip's name, toolchain name, path or other common names that depend on the target type you can consider using the substitution macros supplied by docs/idf_extensions/format_idf_target.py.

For example, the following reStructuredText content:

> This is a {IDF_TARGET_NAME}, with /{IDF_TARGET_PATH_NAME}/soc.c, compiled with *{IDF_TARGET_TOOLCHAIN_PREFIX}-gcc* with *CONFIG_{IDF_TARGET_CFG_PREFIX}_MULTI_DOC*

Would render in the documentation as:

> This is a ESP32-S2, with /esp32s2/soc.c, compiled with *xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc* with *CONFIG_ESP32S2_MULTI_DOC*.

This extension also supports markup for defining local (within a single source file) substitutions. Place a definition like the following into a single line of the RST file:

> {IDF_TARGET_SUFFIX:default="DEFAULT_VALUE", esp32="ESP32_VALUE", esp32s2="ESP32S2_VALUE", esp32c3="ESP32C3_VALUE"}

This will define a target-dependent substitution of the tag {IDF_TARGET_SUFFIX} in the current RST file. For example:

> {IDF_TARGET_TX_PIN:default="IO3", esp32="IO4", esp32s2="IO5", esp32c3="IO6"}

Will define a substitution for the tag {IDF_TARGET_TX_PIN}, which would be replaced by the text IO5 if sphinx was called with the tag esp32s2.

Note: These single-file definitions can be placed anywhere in the .rst file (on their own line), but the name of the directive must start with `IDF_TARGET_`.

Put it all together

Once documentation is ready, follow instruction in *API Documentation Template* and create a single file, that will merge all individual pieces of prepared documentation. Finally add a link to this file to respective `.. toctree::` in `index.rst` file located in `/docs` folder or subfolders.

OK, but I am new to Sphinx!

1. No worries. All the software you need is well documented. It is also open source and free. Start by checking Sphinx documentation. If you are not clear how to write using rst markup language, see reStructuredText Primer. You can also use markdown (.md) files, and find out more about the specific markdown syntax that we use on Recommonmark parser's documentation page.
2. Check the source files of this documentation to understand what is behind of what you see now on the screen. Sources are maintained on GitHub in espressif/esp-idf repository in docs folder. You can go directly to the source file of this page by scrolling up and clicking the link in the top right corner. When on GitHub, see what's really inside, open source files by clicking `Raw` button.
3. You will likely want to see how documentation builds and looks like before posting it on the GitHub. There are two options to do so:
   - Install Sphinx, Breathe, Blockdiag and Doxygen to build it locally, see chapter below.
   - Set up an account on Read the Docs and build documentation in the cloud. Read the Docs provides document building and hosting for free and their service works really quick and great.
4. To preview documentation before building, use Sublime Text editor together with OmniMarkupPreviewer plugin.

Setup for building documentation locally

Install Dependencies You can setup environment to build documentation locally on your PC by installing:

1. Doxygen - http://doxygen.nl/
2. Sphinx - https://github.com/sphinx-doc/sphinx/#readme-for-sphinx
3. Breathe - https://github.com/michaeljones/breathe#breathe
4. Document theme "sphinx_idf_theme" - https://github.com/espressif/sphinx_idf_theme
5. Custom 404 page "sphinx-notfound-page" - https://github.com/readthedocs/sphinx-notfound-page
6. Blockdiag - http://blockdiag.com/en/index.html
7. Recommonmark - https://github.com/rtfd/recommonmark

The package "sphinx_idf_theme" is added to have the same "look and feel" of ESP-IDF Programming Guide.

Do not worry about being confronted with several packages to install. Besides Doxygen, all remaining packages are written in pure Python. Therefore installation of all of them is combined into one simple step.

Important: Docs building now supports Python 3 only. Python 2 installations will not work.

Doxygen Installation of Doxygen is OS dependent:

Linux

```
sudo apt-get install doxygen
```

Windows - install in MSYS2 console

```
pacman -S doxygen
```

MacOS

```
brew install doxygen
```

Note: If you are installing on Windows MSYS2 system (Linux and MacOS users should skip this note, Windows users who don't use MSYS2 will need to find other alternatives), **before** going further, execute two extra steps below. These steps are required to install dependencies of "blockdiag" discussed under *Add Illustrations*.

1. Update all the system packages:

```
$ pacman -Syu
```

This process will likely require restarting of the MSYS2 MINGW32 console and repeating above commands, until update is complete.

2. Install *pillow*, that is one of dependences of the *blockdiag*:

```
$ pacman -S mingw32/mingw-w64-i686-python-pillow
```

Check the log on the screen that `mingw-w64-i686-python-pillow-4.3.0-1` or newer is installed. Previous versions of *pillow* will not work.

A downside of Windows installation is that fonts of the *blockdiag pictures <add-illustrations>* do not render correctly, you will see some random characters instead. Until this issue is fixed, you can use the interactive shell to see how the complete picture looks like.

Remaining applications All remaining applications are Python packages and you can install them in one step as follows:

```
cd ~/esp/esp-idf/docs
pip install --user -r requirements.txt
```

Note: Installation steps assume that ESP-IDF is placed in `~/esp/esp-idf` directory, that is default location of ESP-IDF used in documentation.

Building Documentation

```
cd ~/esp/esp-idf/docs
```

Now you should be ready to build documentation by invoking:

```
./build_docs.py build
```

This will build docs for all supported ESP-IDF languages & targets. This can take some time, although jobs will run in parallel up to the number of CPU cores you have (can modify this with the `--sphinx-parallel-builds` option, see `./build_docs.py --help` for details).

To build for a single language and target combination only:

```
./build_docs.py -l en -t esp32 build
```

Choices for language (`-l`) are `en` and `zh_CN`. Choices for target (`-t`) are any supported ESP-IDF build system target (for example `esp32` and `esp32s2`).

Build documentation will be placed in `_build/<language>/<target>/html` folder. To see it, open the `index.html` inside this directory in a web browser.

Building a subset of the documentation Since building the full documentation can be quite slow, it might be useful to just build just the subset of the documentation you are interested in.

This can be achieved by listing the document you want to build:

```
./build_docs.py -l en -t esp32 -i api-reference/peripherals/can.rst build
```

Building multiple documents is also possible:

```
./build_docs.py -l en -t esp32 -i api-reference/peripherals/can.rst api-reference/
↪peripherals/adc.rst build
```

As well as wildcards:

```
./build_docs.py -l en -t esp32 -i api-reference/peripherals/* build
```

Note that this is a feature intended to simply testing and debugging during writing of documentation. The HTML output won't be perfect, i.e. it will not build a proper index that lists all the documents, and any references to documents that are not built will result in warnings.

Building PDF It is also possible to build latex files and a PDF of the documentation using `build_docs.py`. To do this the following Latex packages are required to be installed:

- latexmk
- texlive-latex-recommended
- texlive-fonts-recommended
- texlive-xetex

The following fonts are also required to be installed:

- Freefont Serif, Sans and Mono OpenType fonts, available as the package `fonts-freefont-otf` on Ubuntu
- Lmodern, available as the package `fonts-lmodern` on Ubuntu
- Fandol, can be downloaded from here

Now you can build the PDF for a target by invoking:

```
./build_docs.py -bs latex -l en -t esp32 build
```

Or alternatively build both html and PDF:

```
./build_docs.py -bs html latex -l en -t esp32 build
```

Latex files and the PDF will be placed in `_build/<language>/<target>/latex` folder.

Wrap up

We love good code that is doing cool things. We love it even better, if it is well documented, so we can quickly make it run and also do the cool things.

Go ahead, contribute your code and documentation!

Related Documents

- *API Documentation Template*
- *Documentation Add-ons and Extensions Reference*

6.5.4 Documentation Add-ons and Extensions Reference

This documentation is created using Sphinx application that renders text source files in reStructuredText (`.rst`) format located in docs directory. For some more details on that process, please refer to section *Documenting Code*.

Besides Sphinx, there are several other applications that help to provide nicely formatted and easy to navigate documentation. These applications are listed in section *Setup for building documentation locally* with the installed version numbers provided in file docs/requirements.txt.

We build ESP-IDF documentation for two languages (English, Simplified Chinese) and for multiple chips. Therefore we don't run `sphinx` directly, there is a wrapper Python program `build_docs.py` that runs Sphinx.

On top of that, we have created a couple of custom add-ons and extensions to help integrate documentation with underlining ESP-IDF repository and further improve navigation as well as maintenance of documentation.

The purpose of this section is to provide a quick reference to the add-ons and the extensions.

Documentation Folder Structure

- The ESP-IDF repository contains a dedicated documentation folder docs in the root.
- The `docs` folder contains localized documentation in docs/en (English) and docs/zh_CN (simplified Chinese) subfolders.
- Graphics files and fonts common to localized documentation are contained in docs/_static subfolder.
- Remaining files in the root of `docs` as well as `docs/en` and `docs/zh_CN` provide configuration and scripts used to automate documentation processing including the add-ons and extensions.
- Sphinx extensions are provided in two directories, `extensions` and `idf_extensions`.
- A `_build` directory is created in the `docs` folder by `build_docs.py`. This directory is not added to the ESP-IDF repository.

Add-ons and Extensions Reference

Config Files

docs/conf_common.py This file contains configuration common to each localized documentation (e.g. English, Chinese). The contents of this file is imported to standard Sphinx configuration file `conf.py` located in respective language folders (e.g. `docs/en`, `docs/zh_CN`) during build for each language.

docs/sphinx-known-warnings.txt There are couple of spurious Sphinx warnings that cannot be resolved without doing update to the Sphinx source code itself. For such specific cases, respective warnings are documented in `sphinx-known-warnings.txt` file, that is checked during documentation build, to ignore the spurious warnings.

Scripts docs/build_docs.py

Top-level executable program which runs a Sphinx build for one or more language/target combinations. Run `build_docs.py --help` for full command line options.

When `build_docs.py` runs Sphinx it sets the `idf_target` configuration variable, sets a Sphinx tag with the same name as the configuration variable, and uses some environment variables to communicate paths to *IDF-Specific Extensions*.

docs/check_lang_folder_sync.sh To reduce potential discrepancies when maintaining concurrent language version, the structure and filenames of language folders `docs/en` and `docs/zh_CN` folders should be kept identical. The script `check_lang_folder_sync.sh` is run on each documentation build to verify if this condition is met.

Note: If a new content is provided in e.g. English, and there is no any translation yet, then the corresponding file in `zh_CN` folder should contain an `.. include::` directive pointing to the source file in English. This will automatically include the English version visible to Chinese readers. For example if a file `docs/zh_CN/contribute/documenting-code.rst` does not have a Chinese translation, then it should contain `.. include:: ../../en/contribute/documenting-code.rst` instead.

Non-Docs Scripts These scripts are used to build docs but also used for other purposes:

tools/gen_esp_err_to_name.py This script is traversing the ESP-IDF directory structure looking for error codes and messages in source code header files to generate an `.inc` file to include in documentation under *Error Codes Reference*.

tools/kconfig_new/confgen.py Options to configure ESP-IDF's components are contained in `Kconfig` files located inside directories of individual components, e.g. components/bt/Kconfig. This script is traversing the `component` directories to collect configuration options and generate an `.inc` file to include in documentation under *Configuration Options Reference*.

Generic Extensions These are Sphinx extensions developed for IDF that don't rely on any IDF-docs-specific behaviour or configuration:

docs/extensions/toctree_filter.py Sphinx extensions overrides the `:toctree:` directive to allow filtering entries based on whether a tag is set, as `:tagname: toctree_entry`. See the Python file for a more complete description.

docs/extensions/list_filter.py Sphinx extensions that provides a `.. list::` directive that allows filtering of entries in lists based on whether a tag is set, as `:tagname: - list content`. See the Python file for a more complete description.

docs/extensions/html_redirects.py During documentation lifetime, some source files are moved between folders or renamed. This Sphinx extension adds a mechanism to redirect documentation pages that have changed URL by generating in the Sphinx output static HTML redirect pages. The script is used together with a redirection list `html_redirect_pages`. `conf_common.py` builds this list from docs/page_redirects.txt.

Third Party Extensions

- `sphinxcontrib` extensions for blockdiag, seqdiag, actdiag, nwdiag, rackdiag & packetdiag diagrams.
- Sphinx selective exclude `eager_only` extension.

IDF-Specific Extensions

Build System Integration docs/idf_extensions/build_system/

Python package implementing a Sphinx extension to pull IDF build system information into the docs build.

- Creates a dummy CMake IDF project and runs CMake to generate metadata.
- Registers some new configuration variables and emits a new Sphinx event, both for use by other extensions.

Configuration Variables

- `docs_root` - The absolute path of the $IDF_PATH/docs directory
- `idf_path` - The value of IDF_PATH variable, or the absolute path of IDF_PATH if environment unset
- `build_dir` - The build directory passed in by `build_docs.py`, default will be like `_build/<lang>/<target>`
- `idf_target` - The IDF_TARGET value. Expected that `build_docs.py` set this on the Sphinx command line

New Event `idf-info` event is emitted early in the build, after the dummy project CMake run is complete.

Arguments are `(app, project_description)`, where `project_description` is a dict containing the values parsed from `project_description.json` in the CMake build directory.

Other IDF-specific extensions subscribe to this event and use it to set up some docs parameters based on build system info.

Other Extensions

docs/idf_extensions/include_build_file.py The `include-build-file` directive is like the built-in `include-file` directive, but file path is evaluated relative to `build_dir`.

docs/idf_extensions/kconfig_reference.py Subscribes to `idf-info` event and uses confgen to generate `kconfig.inc` from the components included in the default project build. This file is then included into *Project Configuration*.

docs/idf_extensions/link_roles.py This is an implementation of a custom Sphinx Roles to help linking from documentation to specific files and folders in ESP-IDF. For description of implemented roles, please see *Linking Examples* and *Linking Language Versions*.

docs/idf_extensions/esp_err_definitions.py Small wrapper extension that calls `gen_esp_err_to_name.py` and updates the included .rst file if it has changed.

docs/idf_extensions/gen_toolchain_links.py There couple of places in documentation that provide links to download the toolchain. To provide one source of this information and reduce effort to manually update several files, this script generates toolchain download links and toolchain unpacking code snippets based on information found in tools/toolchain_versions.mk.

docs/idf_extensions/gen_version_specific_includes.py Another extension to automatically generate reStructuredText Text `.inc` snippets with version-based content for this ESP-IDF version.

docs/idf_extensions/util.py A collection of utility functions useful primarily when building documentation locally (see *Setup for building documentation locally*) to reduce the time to generate documentation on a second and subsequent builds.

docs/idf_extensions/format_idf_target.py An extension for replacing generic target related names with the idf_target passed to the Sphinx command line.

This is a {IDF_TARGET_NAME}, with /{IDF_TARGET_PATH_NAME}/soc.c, compiled with *{IDF_TARGET_TOOLCHAIN_PREFIX}-gcc* with *CONFIG_{IDF_TARGET_CFG_PREFIX}_MULTI_DOC* will, if the backspaces are removed, render as This is a ESP32-S2, with /esp32s2/soc.c, compiled with *xtensa-esp32s2-elf-gcc* with *CONFIG_ESP32S2_MULTI_DOC*.

Also supports markup for defining local (single .rst-file) substitions with the following syntax: {IDF_TARGET_TX_PIN:default=" IO3" ,esp32=" IO4" ,esp32s2=" IO5" }

This will define a replacement of the tag {IDF_TARGET_TX_PIN} in the current rst-file.

The extension also overrides the default `.. include::` directive in order to format any included content using the same rules.

These replacements cannot be used inside markup that rely on alignment of characters, e.g. tables.

docs/idf_extensions/latex_builder.py An extension for adding ESP-IDF specific functionality to the latex builder. Overrides the default Sphinx latex builder.

Creates and adds the espidf.sty latex package to the output directory, which contains some macros for run-time variables such as IDF-Target.

docs/idf_extensions/gen_defines.py Sphinx extension to integrate defines from IDF into the Sphinx build, runs after the IDF dummy project has been built.

Parses defines and adds them as sphinx tags.

Emits the new 'idf-defines-generated' event which has a dictionary of raw text define values that other extensions can use to generate relevant data.

docs/idf_extensions/exclude_docs.py Sphinx extension that updates the excluded documents according to the conditional_include_dict {tag:documents}. If the tag is set, then the list of documents will be included.

Also responsible for excluding documents when building with the config value `docs_to_build` set. In these cases all documents not listed in `docs_to_build` will be excluded.

Subscribes to `idf-defines-generated` as it relies on the sphinx tags to determine which documents to exclude

docs/idf_extensions/run_doxygen.py Subscribes to `idf-defines-generated` event and runs Doxygen (docs/doxygen/Doxyfile_common) to generate XML files describing key headers, and then runs Breathe to convert these to `.inc` files which can be included directly into API reference pages.

Pushes a number of target-specific custom environment variables into Doxygen, including all macros defined in the project's default `sdkconfig.h` file and all macros defined in all `soc` component `xxx_caps.h` headers. This means that public API headers can depend on target-specific configuration options or `soc` capabilities headers options as `#ifdef` & `#if` preprocessor selections in the header.

This means we can generate different Doxygen files, depending on the target we are building docs for.

Please refer to *Documenting Code* and *API Documentation Template*, section **API Reference** for additional details on this process.

Related Documents

- *Documenting Code*

6.5.5 Creating Examples

Each ESP-IDF example is a complete project that someone else can copy and adapt the code to solve their own problem. Examples should demonstrate ESP-IDF functionality, while keeping this purpose in mind.

Structure

- The `main` directory should contain a source file named `(something)_example_main.c` with the main functionality.
- If the example has additional functionality, split it logically into separate C or C++ source files under `main` and place a corresponding header file in the same directory.
- If the example has a lot of additional functionality, consider adding a `components` directory to the example project and make some example-specific components with library functionality. Only do this if the components are specific to the example, if they're generic or common functionality then they should be added to ESP-IDF itself.
- The example should have a `README.md` file. Use the template example README and adapt it for your particular example.
- Examples should have an `example_test.py` file for running an automated example test. If submitting a GitHub Pull Request which includes an example, it's OK not to include this file initially. The details can be discussed as part of the Pull Request.

General Guidelines

Example code should follow the *Espressif IoT Development Framework Style Guide*.

Checklist

Checklist before submitting a new example:

- Example project name (in `Makefile` and `README.md`) uses the word "example". Use "example" instead of "demo", "test" or similar words.
- Example does one distinct thing. If the example does more than one thing at a time, split it into two or more examples.
- Example has a `README.md` file which is similar to the template example README .
- Functions and variables in the example are named according to *naming section of the style guide*. (For non-static names which are only specific to the example's source files, you can use `example` or something similar as a prefix.)
- All code in the example is well structured and commented.
- Any unnecessary code (old debugging logs, commented-out code, etc.) is removed from the example.
- Options in the example (like network names, addresses, etc) are not hard-coded. Use configuration items if possible, or otherwise declare macros or constants)
- Configuration items are provided in a `KConfig.projbuild` file with a menu named "Example Configuration". See existing example projects to see how this is done.
- All original example code has a license header saying it is "in the public domain / CC0", and a warranty disclaimer clause. Alternatively, the example is licensed under Apache License 2.0. See existing examples for headers to adapt from.
- Any adapted or third party example code has the original license header on it. This code must be licensed compatible with Apache License 2.0.

6.5.6 API Documentation Template

Note: *INSTRUCTIONS*

1. Use this file (docs/en/api-reference/template.rst) as a template to document API.
2. Change the file name to the name of the header file that represents documented API.
3. Include respective files with descriptions from the API folder using `..include::`
   - README.rst
   - example.rst
   - ...
4. Optionally provide description right in this file.
5. Once done, remove all instructions like this one and any superfluous headers.

Overview

Note: *INSTRUCTIONS*

1. Provide overview where and how this API may be used.
2. Where applicable include code snippets to illustrate functionality of particular functions.
3. To distinguish between sections, use the following heading levels:
   - `#` with overline, for parts
   - `*` with overline, for chapters
   - `=`, for sections
   - `-`, for subsections
   - `^`, for subsubsections
   - `"`, for paragraphs

Application Example

Note: *INSTRUCTIONS*

1. Prepare one or more practical examples to demonstrate functionality of this API.
2. Each example should follow pattern of projects located in `esp-idf/examples/` folder.
3. Place example in this folder complete with `README.md` file.
4. Provide overview of demonstrated functionality in `README.md`.
5. With good overview reader should be able to understand what example does without opening the source code.
6. Depending on complexity of example, break down description of code into parts and provide overview of functionality of each part.
7. Include flow diagram and screenshots of application output if applicable.
8. Finally add in this section synopsis of each example together with link to respective folder in `esp-idf/examples/`.

API Reference

Note: *INSTRUCTIONS*

1. This repository provides for automatic update of API reference documentation using *code markup retrieved by Doxygen from header files*.

1. Update is done on each documentation build by invoking Sphinx extension docs/idf_extensions/run_doxygen.py for all header files listed in the `INPUT` statement of docs/doxygen/Doxyfile_common.

1. Each line of the `INPUT` statement (other than a comment that begins with `##`) contains a path to header file `*.h` that will be used to generate corresponding `*.inc` files:

```
##
## Wi-Fi - API Reference
##
../components/esp32/include/esp_wifi.h \
../components/esp32/include/esp_smartconfig.h \
```

1. When the headers are expanded, any macros defined by default in `sdkconfig.h` as well as any macros defined in SOC-specific `include/soc/*_caps.h` headers will be expanded. This allows the headers to include/exclude material based on the `IDF_TARGET` value.

1. The `*.inc` files contain formatted reference of API members generated automatically on each documentation build. All `*.inc` files are placed in Sphinx `_build` directory. To see directives generated for e.g. `esp_wifi.h`, run `python gen-dxd.py esp32/include/esp_wifi.h`.

1. To show contents of `*.inc` file in documentation, include it as follows:

```
.. include-build-file:: inc/esp_wifi.inc
```

   For example see docs/en/api-reference/network/esp_wifi.rst

1. Optionally, rather that using `*.inc` files, you may want to describe API in you own way. See docs/en/api-guides/ulp.rst for example.
   Below is the list of common `.. doxygen...::` directives:
   - Functions - `.. doxygenfunction:: name_of_function`
   - Unions - `.. doxygenunion:: name_of_union`
   - Structures - `.. doxygenstruct:: name_of_structure` together with `:members:`
   - Macros - `.. doxygendefine:: name_of_define`
   - Type Definitions - `.. doxygentypedef:: name_of_type`
   - Enumerations - `.. doxygenenum:: name_of_enumeration`

   See Breathe documentation for additional information.
   To provide a link to header file, use the *link custom role* as follows:

```
* :component_file:`path_to/header_file.h`
```

1. In any case, to generate API reference, the file docs/doxygen/Doxyfile_common should be updated with paths to `*.h` headers that are being documented.

1. When changes are committed and documentation is build, check how this section has been rendered. *Correct annotations* in respective header files, if required.

6.5.7 Contributor Agreement

Individual Contributor Non-Exclusive License Agreement

including the Traditional Patent License OPTION

Thank you for your interest in contributing to Espressif IoT Development Framework (esp-idf) ("We" or "Us").

The purpose of this contributor agreement ("Agreement") is to clarify and document the rights granted by contributors to Us. To make this document effective, please follow the instructions at CONTRIBUTING.rst

1. DEFINITIONS **"You"** means the Individual Copyright owner who submits a Contribution to Us. If You are an employee and submit the Contribution as part of your employment, You have had Your employer approve this Agreement or sign the Entity version of this document.

"Contribution" means any original work of authorship (software and/or documentation) including any modifications or additions to an existing work, Submitted by You to Us, in which You own the Copyright. If You do not own the Copyright in the entire work of authorship, please contact Us at angus@espressif.com.

"Copyright" means all rights protecting works of authorship owned or controlled by You, including copyright, moral and neighboring rights, as appropriate, for the full term of their existence including any extensions by You.

"Material" means the software or documentation made available by Us to third parties. When this Agreement covers more than one software project, the Material means the software or documentation to which the Contribution was Submitted. After You Submit the Contribution, it may be included in the Material.

"Submit" means any form of physical, electronic, or written communication sent to Us, including but not limited to electronic mailing lists, source code control systems, and issue tracking systems that are managed by, or on behalf of, Us, but excluding communication that is conspicuously marked or otherwise designated in writing by You as "Not a Contribution."

"Submission Date" means the date You Submit a Contribution to Us.

"Documentation" means any non-software portion of a Contribution.

2. LICENSE GRANT 2.1 Copyright License to Us

Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, You hereby grant to Us a worldwide, royalty-free, NON-exclusive, perpetual and irrevocable license, with the right to transfer an unlimited number of non-exclusive licenses or to grant sublicenses to third parties, under the Copyright covering the Contribution to use the Contribution by all means, including, but not limited to:

- to publish the Contribution,
- to modify the Contribution, to prepare derivative works based upon or containing the Contribution and to combine the Contribution with other software code,
- to reproduce the Contribution in original or modified form,
- to distribute, to make the Contribution available to the public, display and publicly perform the Contribution in original or modified form.

2.2 Moral Rights remain unaffected to the extent they are recognized and not waivable by applicable law. Notwithstanding, You may add your name in the header of the source code files of Your Contribution and We will respect this attribution when using Your Contribution.

3. PATENTS 3.1 Patent License

Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement You hereby grant to us a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual and irrevocable (except as stated in Section 3.2) patent license, with the right to transfer an unlimited number of non-exclusive licenses or to grant sublicenses to third parties, to make, have made, use, sell, offer for sale, import and otherwise transfer the Contribution and the Contribution in combination with the Material (and portions of such combination). This license applies to all patents owned or controlled by You, whether already acquired or hereafter acquired, that would be infringed by making, having made, using, selling, offering for sale, importing or otherwise transferring of Your Contribution(s) alone or by combination of Your Contribution(s) with the Material.

3.2 Revocation of Patent License

You reserve the right to revoke the patent license stated in section 3.1 if we make any infringement claim that is targeted at your Contribution and not asserted for a Defensive Purpose. An assertion of claims of the Patents shall be considered for a "Defensive Purpose" if the claims are asserted against an entity that has filed, maintained, threatened, or voluntarily participated in a patent infringement lawsuit against Us or any of Our licensees.

4. DISCLAIMER THE CONTRIBUTION IS PROVIDED "AS IS". MORE PARTICULARLY, ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT ARE EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMED BY YOU TO US AND BY US TO YOU. TO THE EXTENT THAT ANY SUCH WARRANTIES CANNOT BE DISCLAIMED, SUCH WARRANTY IS LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE MINIMUM PERIOD PERMITTED BY LAW.

5. Consequential Damage Waiver TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL YOU OR US BE LIABLE FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF ANTICIPATED SAVINGS, LOSS OF DATA, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL AND EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT REGARDLESS OF THE LEGAL OR EQUITABLE THEORY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) UPON WHICH THE CLAIM IS BASED.

6. Approximation of Disclaimer and Damage Waiver IF THE DISCLAIMER AND DAMAGE WAIVER MENTIONED IN SECTION 4 AND SECTION 5 CANNOT BE GIVEN LEGAL EFFECT UNDER APPLICABLE LOCAL LAW, REVIEWING COURTS SHALL APPLY LOCAL LAW THAT MOST CLOSELY APPROXIMATES AN ABSOLUTE WAIVER OF ALL CIVIL LIABILITY IN CONNECTION WITH THE CONTRIBUTION.

7. Term 7.1 This Agreement shall come into effect upon Your acceptance of the terms and conditions.

7.2 In the event of a termination of this Agreement Sections 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 shall survive such termination and shall remain in full force thereafter. For the avoidance of doubt, Contributions that are already licensed under a free and open source license at the date of the termination shall remain in full force after the termination of this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous 8.1 This Agreement and all disputes, claims, actions, suits or other proceedings arising out of this agreement or relating in any way to it shall be governed by the laws of People ' s Republic of China excluding its private international law provisions.

8.2 This Agreement sets out the entire agreement between You and Us for Your Contributions to Us and overrides all other agreements or understandings.

8.3 If any provision of this Agreement is found void and unenforceable, such provision will be replaced to the extent possible with a provision that comes closest to the meaning of the original provision and that is enforceable. The terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement shall apply notwithstanding any failure of essential purpose of this Agreement or any limited remedy to the maximum extent possible under law.

8.4 You agree to notify Us of any facts or circumstances of which you become aware that would make this Agreement inaccurate in any respect.

You

Date:	
Name:	
Title:	
Address:	

Us

Date:	
Name:	
Title:	
Address:	

Chapter 7

ESP-IDF Versions

The ESP-IDF GitHub repository is updated regularly, especially the master branch where new development takes place.

For production use, there are also stable releases available.

7.1 Releases

The documentation for the current stable release version can always be found at this URL:

https://docs.espressif.com/projects/esp-idf/en/stable/

Documentation for the latest version (master branch) can always be found at this URL:

https://docs.espressif.com/projects/esp-idf/en/latest/

The full history of releases can be found on the GitHub repository Releases page. There you can find release notes, links to each version of the documentation, and instructions for obtaining each version.

7.2 Which Version Should I Start With?

- For production purposes, use the current stable version. Stable versions have been manually tested, and are updated with "bugfix releases" which fix bugs without changing other functionality (see *Versioning Scheme* for more details). Every stable release version can be found on the Releases page.
- For prototyping, experimentation or for developing new ESP-IDF features, use the latest version (master branch in Git). The latest version in the master branch has all the latest features and has passed automated testing, but has not been completely manually tested ("bleeding edge").
- If a required feature is not yet available in a stable release, but you do not want to use the master branch, it is possible to check out a pre-release version or a release branch. It is recommended to start from a stable version and then follow the instructions for *Updating to a Pre-Release Version* or *Updating to a Release Branch*.

See *Updating ESP-IDF* if you already have a local copy of ESP-IDF and wish to update it.

7.3 Versioning Scheme

ESP-IDF uses Semantic Versioning. This means that:

- Major Releases, like `v3.0`, add new functionality and may change functionality. This includes removing deprecated functionality.

If updating to a new major release (for example, from `v2.1` to `v3.0`), some of your project's code may need updating and functionality may need to be re-tested. The release notes on the Releases page include lists of Breaking Changes to refer to.

- Minor Releases like `v3.1` add new functionality and fix bugs but will not change or remove documented functionality, or make incompatible changes to public APIs.
  If updating to a new minor release (for example, from `v3.0` to `v3.1`), your project's code does not require updating, but you should re-test your project. Pay particular attention to the items mentioned in the release notes on the Releases page.
- Bugfix Releases like `v3.0.1` only fix bugs and do not add new functionality.
  If updating to a new bugfix release (for example, from `v3.0` to `v3.0.1`), you do not need to change any code in your project, and you only need to re-test the functionality directly related to bugs listed in the release notes on the Releases page.

7.4 Support Periods

Each ESP-IDF major and minor release version has an associated support period. After this period, the release is End of Life and no longer supported.

The ESP-IDF Support Period Policy explains this in detail, and describes how the support periods for each release are determined.

Each release on the Releases page includes information about the support period for that particular release.

As a general guideline:

- If starting a new project, use the latest stable release.
- If you have a GitHub account, click the "Watch" button in the top-right of the Releases page and choose "Releases only". GitHub will notify you whenever a new release is available. Whenever a bug fix release is available for the version you are using, plan to update to it.
- If possible, periodically update the project to a new major or minor ESP-IDF version (for example, once a year.) The update process should be straightforward for Minor updates, but may require some planning and checking of the release notes for Major updates.
- Always plan to update to a newer release before the release you are using becomes End of Life.

Each ESP-IDF major and minor release (V4.1, V4.2, etc) is supported for 30 months after the initial stable release date.

Supported means that the ESP-IDF team will continue to apply bug fixes, security fixes, etc to the release branch on GitHub, and periodically make new bugfix releases as needed.

Support period is divided into "Service" and "Maintenance" period:

Period	Duration	Recommended for new projects?
Service	12 months	Yes
Maintenance	18 months	No

During the Service period, bugfixes releases are more frequent. In some cases, support for new features may be added during the Service period (this is reserved for features which are needed to meet particular regulatory requirements or standards for new products, and which carry a very low risk of introducing regressions.)

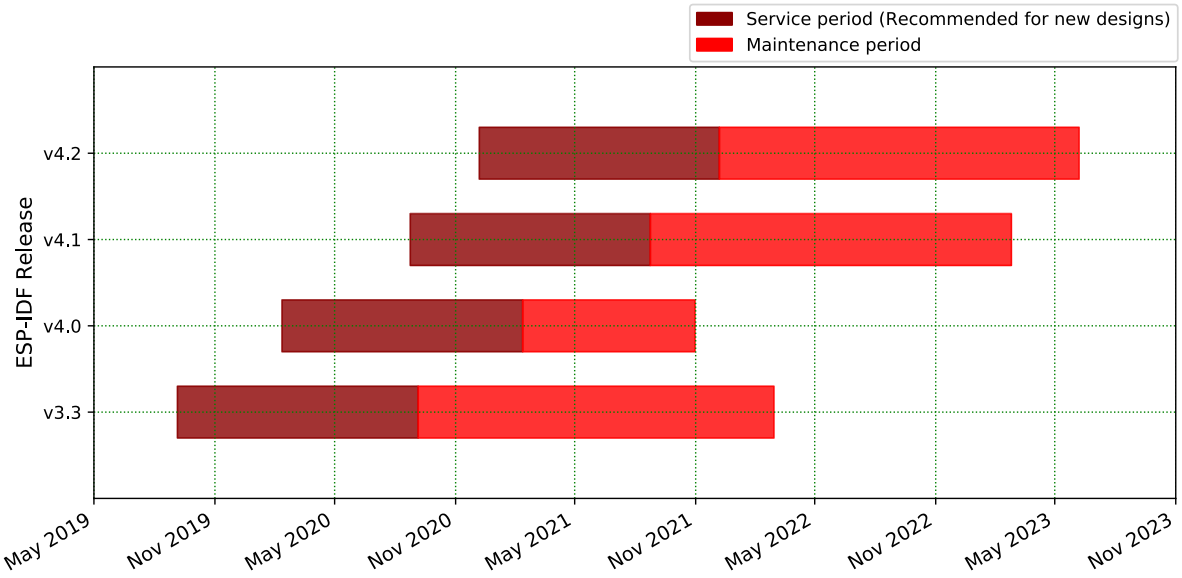
During the Maintenance period, the version is still supported but only bugfixes for high severity issues or security issues will be applied.

Using an "In Service" version is recommended when starting a new project.

Users are encouraged to upgrade all projects to a newer ESP-IDF release before the support period finishes and the release becomes End of Life (EOL). It is our policy to not continue fixing bugs in End of Life releases.

Pre-release versions (betas, previews, *-rc* and *-dev* versions, etc) are not covered by any support period. Sometimes a particular feature is marked as "Preview" in a release, which means it is also not covered by the support period.

The ESP-IDF Programming Guide has information about the different versions of ESP-IDF (major, minor, bugfix, etc).



7.5 Checking the Current Version

The local ESP-IDF version can be checked by using idf.py:

```
idf.py --version
```

The ESP-IDF version is also compiled into the firmware and can be accessed (as a string) via the macro `IDF_VER`. The default ESP-IDF bootloader will print the version on boot (the version information is not always updated if the code in the GitHub repo is updated, it only changes if there is a clean build or if that particular source file is recompiled).

If writing code that needs to support multiple ESP-IDF versions, the version can be checked at compile time using *compile-time macros*.

Examples of ESP-IDF versions:

Version String	Meaning
`v3.2-dev-306-gbeb3611ca`	Master branch pre-release. - `v3.2-dev` - in development for version 3.2. - `306` - number of commits after v3.2 development started. - `beb3611ca` - commit identifier.
`v3.0.2`	Stable release, tagged `v3.0.2`.
`v3.1-beta1-75-g346d6b0ea`	Beta version in development (on a *release branch*). - `v3.1-beta1` - pre-release tag. - `75` - number of commits after the pre-release beta tag was assigned. - `346d6b0ea` - commit identifier.
`v3.0.1-dirty`	Stable release, tagged `v3.0.1`. - `dirty` means that there are modifications in the local ESP-IDF directory.

7.6 Git Workflow

The development (Git) workflow of the Espressif ESP-IDF team is as follows:

- New work is always added on the master branch (latest version) first. The ESP-IDF version on `master` is always tagged with `-dev` (for "in development"), for example `v3.1-dev`.
- Changes are first added to an internal Git repository for code review and testing but are pushed to GitHub after automated testing passes.
- When a new version (developed on `master`) becomes feature complete and "beta" quality, a new branch is made for the release, for example `release/v3.1`. A pre-release tag is also created, for example `v3.1-beta1`. You can see a full list of branches and a list of tags on GitHub. Beta pre-releases have release notes which may include a significant number of Known Issues.
- As testing of the beta version progresses, bug fixes will be added to both the `master` branch and the release branch. New features for the next release may start being added to `master` at the same time.
- Once testing is nearly complete a new release candidate is tagged on the release branch, for example `v3.1-rc1`. This is still a pre-release version.
- If no more significant bugs are found or reported, then the final Major or Minor Version is tagged, for example `v3.1`. This version appears on the Releases page.
- As bugs are reported in released versions, the fixes will continue to be committed to the same release branch.
- Regular bugfix releases are made from the same release branch. After manual testing is complete, a bugfix release is tagged (i.e. `v3.1.1`) and appears on the Releases page.

7.7 Updating ESP-IDF

Updating ESP-IDF depends on which version(s) you wish to follow:

- *Updating to Stable Release* is recommended for production use.

- *Updating to Master Branch* is recommended for the latest features, development use, and testing.
- *Updating to a Release Branch* is a compromise between the first two.

Note: These guides assume that you already have a local copy of ESP-IDF cloned. To get one, check Step 2 in the *Getting Started* guide for any ESP-IDF version.

7.7.1 Updating to Stable Release

To update to a new ESP-IDF release (recommended for production use), this is the process to follow:

- Check the Releases page regularly for new releases.
- When a bugfix release for the version you are using is released (for example, if using `v3.0.1` and `v3.0.2` is released), check out the new bugfix version into the existing ESP-IDF directory:

```
cd $IDF_PATH
git fetch
git checkout vX.Y.Z
git submodule update --init --recursive
```

- When major or minor updates are released, check the Release Notes on the releases page and decide if you want to update or to stay with your current release. Updating is via the same Git commands shown above.

Note: If you installed the stable release via zip file instead of using git, it might not be possible to update versions using the commands. In this case, update by downloading a new zip file and replacing the entire `IDF_PATH` directory with its contents.

7.7.2 Updating to a Pre-Release Version

It is also possible to `git checkout` a tag corresponding to a pre-release version or release candidate, the process is the same as *Updating to Stable Release*.

Pre-release tags are not always found on the Releases page. Consult the list of tags on GitHub for a full list. Caveats for using a pre-release are similar to *Updating to a Release Branch*.

7.7.3 Updating to Master Branch

Note: Using Master branch means living "on the bleeding edge" with the latest ESP-IDF code.

To use the latest version on the ESP-IDF master branch, this is the process to follow:

- Check out the master branch locally:

```
cd $IDF_PATH
git checkout master
git pull
git submodule update --init --recursive
```

- Periodically, re-run `git pull` to pull the latest version of master. Note that you may need to change your project or report bugs after updating your master branch.
- To switch from master to a release branch or stable version, run `git checkout` as shown in the other sections.

Important: It is strongly recommended to regularly run `git pull` and then `git submodule update --init --recursive` so a local copy of master does not get too old. Arbitrary old master branch revisions are effectively unsupportable "snapshots" that may have undocumented bugs. For a semi-stable version, try *Updating to a Release Branch* instead.

7.7.4 Updating to a Release Branch

In terms of stability, using a release branch is part-way between using the master branch and only using stable releases. A release branch is always beta quality or better, and receives bug fixes before they appear in each stable release.

You can find a list of branches on GitHub.

For example, to follow the branch for ESP-IDF v3.1, including any bugfixes for future releases like `v3.1.1`, etc:

```
cd $IDF_PATH
git fetch
git checkout release/v3.1
git pull
git submodule update --init --recursive
```

Each time you `git pull` this branch, ESP-IDF will be updated with fixes for this release.

Note: There is no dedicated documentation for release branches. It is recommended to use the documentation for the closest version to the branch which is currently checked out.

Chapter 8

Resources

8.1 PlatformIO

- *What is PlatformIO?*
- *Installation*
- *Configuration*
- *Tutorials*
- *Project Examples*
- *Next Steps*

8.1.1 What is PlatformIO?

PlatformIO is a cross-platform embedded development environment with out-of-the-box support for ESP-IDF.

Since ESP-IDF support within PlatformIO is not maintained by the Espressif team, please report any issues with PlatformIO directly to its developers in the official PlatformIO repositories.

A detailed overview of the PlatformIO ecosystem and its philosophy can be found in the official PlatformIO documentation.

8.1.2 Installation

- PlatformIO IDE is a toolset for embedded C/C++ development available on Windows, macOS and Linux platforms
- PlatformIO Core (CLI) is a command-line tool that consists of multi-platform build system, platform and library managers and other integration components. It can be used with a variety of code development environments and allows integration with cloud platforms and web services

8.1.3 Configuration

Please go through the official PlatformIO configuration guide for ESP-IDF.

8.1.4 Tutorials

- ESP-IDF and ESP32-DevKitC: debugging, unit testing, project analysis

8.1.5 Project Examples

Please check ESP-IDF page in the official PlatformIO documentation

8.1.6 Next Steps

Here are some useful links for exploring the PlatformIO ecosystem:

- Learn more about integrations with other IDEs/Text Editors
- Get help from PlatformIO community

8.2 Useful Links

- The esp32.com forum is a place to ask questions and find community resources.
- Check the Issues section on GitHub if you find a bug or have a feature request. Please check existing Issues before opening a new one.
- A comprehensive collection of solutions, practical applications, components and drivers based on ESP-IDF is available in ESP IoT Solution repository. In most of cases descriptions are provided both in English and in 中文.
- To develop applications using Arduino platform, refer to Arduino core for ESP32 WiFi chip.
- Several books have been written about ESP32 and they are listed on Espressif web site.
- If you’ re interested in contributing to ESP-IDF, please check the *Contributions Guide*.
- For additional ESP32-S2 product related information, please refer to documentation section of Espressif site.
- Download latest and previous versions of this documentation in PDF and HTML format.

Chapter 9

Copyrights and Licenses

9.1 Software Copyrights

All original source code in this repository is Copyright (C) 2015-2019 Espressif Systems. This source code is licensed under the Apache License 2.0 as described in the file LICENSE.

Additional third party copyrighted code is included under the following licenses.

Where source code headers specify Copyright & License information, this information takes precedence over the summaries made here.

9.1.1 Firmware Components

These third party libraries can be included into the application (firmware) produced by ESP-IDF.

- Newlib is licensed under the BSD License and is Copyright of various parties, as described in COPYING.NEWLIB.
- Xtensa header files are Copyright (C) 2013 Tensilica Inc and are licensed under the MIT License as reproduced in the individual header files.
- Original parts of FreeRTOS (components/freertos) are Copyright (C) 2017 Amazon.com, Inc. or its affiliates are licensed under the MIT License, as described in license.txt.
- Original parts of LWIP (components/lwip) are Copyright (C) 2001, 2002 Swedish Institute of Computer Science and are licensed under the BSD License as described in COPYING file.
- wpa_supplicant Copyright (c) 2003-2005 Jouni Malinen and licensed under the BSD license.
- FreeBSD net80211 Copyright (c) 2004-2008 Sam Leffler, Errno Consulting and licensed under the BSD license.
- JSMN JSON Parser (components/jsmn) Copyright (c) 2010 Serge A. Zaitsev and licensed under the MIT license.
- argtable3 argument parsing library Copyright (C) 1998-2001,2003-2011,2013 Stewart Heitmann and licensed under 3-clause BSD license.
- linenoise line editing library Copyright (c) 2010-2014 Salvatore Sanfilippo, Copyright (c) 2010-2013 Pieter Noordhuis, licensed under 2-clause BSD license.
- libcoap COAP library Copyright (c) 2010-2017 Olaf Bergmann and others, is licensed under 2-clause BSD license as described in LICENSE file and COPYING file .
- libexpat XML parsing library Copyright (c) 1998-2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd and Clark Cooper, Copyright (c) 2001-2017 Expat maintainers, is licensed under MIT license as described in COPYING file .
- FatFS library, Copyright (C) 2017 ChaN, is licensed under a BSD-style license .
- cJSON library, Copyright (c) 2009-2017 Dave Gamble and cJSON contributors, is licensed under MIT license as described in LICENSE file .
- libsodium library, Copyright (c) 2013-2018 Frank Denis, is licensed under ISC license as described in LICENSE file .
- micro-ecc library, Copyright (c) 2014 Kenneth MacKay, is licensed under 2-clause BSD license.

- nghttp2 library, Copyright (c) 2012, 2014, 2015, 2016 Tatsuhiro Tsujikawa, Copyright (c) 2012, 2014, 2015, 2016 nghttp2 contributors, is licensed under MIT license as described in COPYING file .
- Mbed TLS library, Copyright (C) 2006-2018 ARM Limited, is licensed under Apache License 2.0 as described in LICENSE file .
- SPIFFS library, Copyright (c) 2013-2017 Peter Andersson, is licensed under MIT license as described in LICENSE file .
- TinyCBOR library, Copyright (c) 2017 Intel Corporation, is licensed under MIT License as described in LICENSE file .
- SD/MMC driver is derived from OpenBSD SD/MMC driver, Copyright (c) 2006 Uwe Stuehler, and is licensed under BSD license.
- Asio , Copyright (c) 2003-2018 Christopher M. Kohlhoff is licensed under the Boost Software License as described in COPYING file.
- ESP-MQTT MQTT Package (contiki-mqtt) - Copyright (c) 2014, Stephen Robinson, MQTT-ESP - Tuan PM <tuanpm at live dot com> is licensed under Apache License 2,0 as described in LICENSE file .
- BLE Mesh is adapted from Zephyr Project, Copyright (c) 2017-2018 Intel Corporation and licensed under Apache License 2.0
- mynewt-nimble Apache Mynewt NimBLE, Copyright 2015-2018, The Apache Software Foundation, is licensed under Apache License 2.0 as described in LICENSE file.
- cryptoauthlib Microchip CryptoAuthentication Library - Copyright (c) 2015 - 2018 Microchip Technology Inc, is licensed under common Microchip software License as described in LICENSE file
- :component_file:` TLSF allocator <heap/heap_tlsf.c>` Two Level Segregated Fit memory allocator, Copyright (c) 2006-2016, Matthew Conte, and licensed under the BSD license.
- qrcode QR Code generator library Copyright (c) Project Nayuki, is licensed under MIT license.
- openthread, Copyright (c) The OpenThread Authors, is licensed under Apache License 2.0 as described in LICENSE file.

9.1.2 Build Tools

This is the list of licenses for tools included in this repository, which are used to build applications. The tools do not become part of the application (firmware), so their license does not affect licensing of the application.

- esptool.py is Copyright (C) 2014-2016 Fredrik Ahlberg, Angus Gratton and is licensed under the GNU General Public License v2, as described in LICENSE file.
- KConfig is Copyright (C) 2002 Roman Zippel and others, and is licensed under the GNU General Public License V2.

9.1.3 Documentation

- HTML version of the ESP-IDF Programming Guide uses the Sphinx theme sphinx_idf_theme, which is Copyright (c) 2013-2020 Dave Snider, Read the Docs, Inc. & contributors, and Espressif Systems (Shanghai) CO., LTD. It is based on sphinx_rtd_theme. Both are licensed under MIT license.

9.2 ROM Source Code Copyrights

ESP32 mask ROM hardware includes binaries compiled from portions of the following third party software:

- Newlib , licensed under the BSD License and is Copyright of various parties, as described in COPYING.NEWLIB.
- Xtensa libhal, Copyright (c) Tensilica Inc and licensed under the MIT license (see below).
- TinyBasic Plus, Copyright Mike Field & Scott Lawrence and licensed under the MIT license (see below).
- miniz, by Rich Geldreich - placed into the public domain.
- wpa_supplicant Copyright (c) 2003-2005 Jouni Malinen and licensed under the BSD license.
- TJpgDec Copyright (C) 2011, ChaN, all right reserved. See below for license.

9.3 Xtensa libhal MIT License

Copyright (c) 2003, 2006, 2010 Tensilica Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

9.4 TinyBasic Plus MIT License

Copyright (c) 2012-2013

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

9.5 TJpgDec License

TJpgDec - Tiny JPEG Decompressor R0.01 (C)ChaN, 2011 The TJpgDec is a generic JPEG decompressor module for tiny embedded systems. This is a free software that opened for education, research and commercial developments under license policy of following terms.

Copyright (C) 2011, ChaN, all right reserved.

- The TJpgDec module is a free software and there is NO WARRANTY.
- No restriction on use. You can use, modify and redistribute it for personal, non-profit or commercial products UNDER YOUR RESPONSIBILITY.
- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice.

Chapter 10

About

This is documentation of ESP-IDF, the framework to develop applications for ESP32-S2.

The ESP32-S2 is a 2.4 GHz Wi-Fi module, which integrates a Xtensa® 32-bit LX7 CPU, with up to 600 DMIPS processing power.

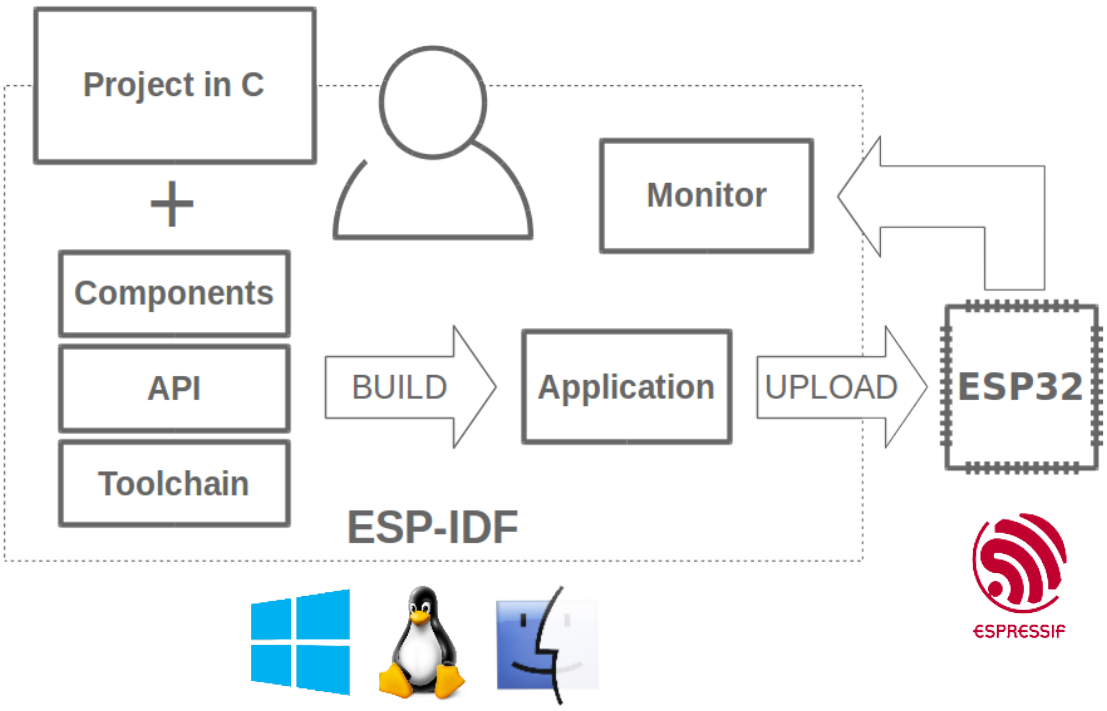


Fig. 1: Espressif IoT Integrated Development Framework

The ESP-IDF, Espressif IoT Development Framework, provides toolchain, API, components and workflows to develop applications for ESP32-S2 using Windows, Linux and Mac OS operating systems.

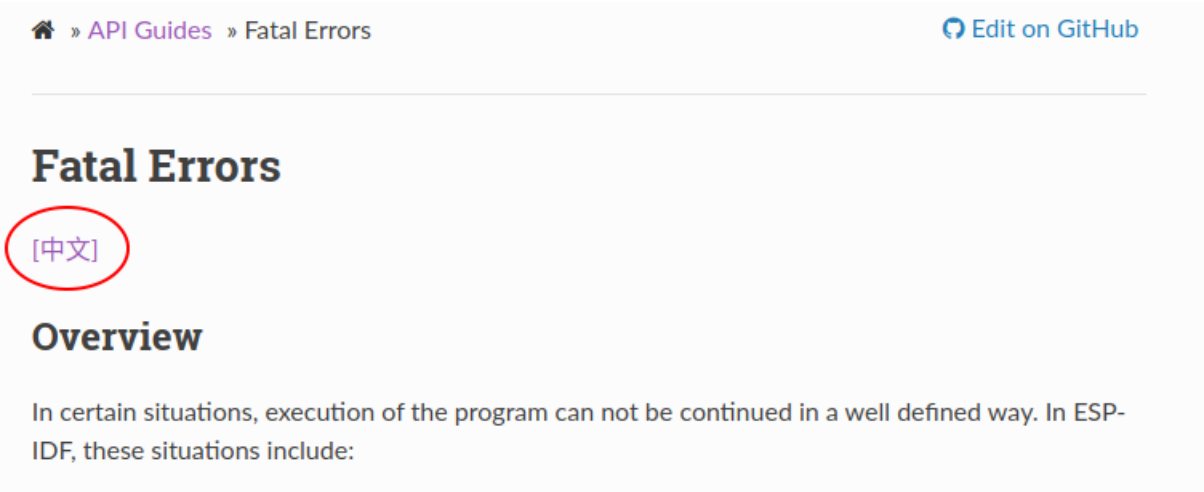
Chapter 11

Switch Between Languages

The ESP-IDF Programming Guide is now available in two languages. Please refer to the English version if there is any discrepancy.

- English
- Chinese

You can easily change from one language to another by clicking the language link you can find at the top of every document that has a translation.



- genindex

Index

Symbols

_ESP_NETIF_SUPPRESS_LEGACY_WARNING_ (*C macro*), 190

A

ADC1_CHANNEL_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 213
ADC1_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 213
ADC1_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 213
ADC1_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 213
ADC1_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC1_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_5 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC1_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_6 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC1_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_7 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC1_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC1_CHANNEL_8_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_9 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC1_CHANNEL_9_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 214
adc1_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 213
adc1_config_channel_atten (*C++ function*), 209
adc1_config_width (*C++ function*), 210
adc1_get_raw (*C++ function*), 210
ADC1_GPIO10_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO1_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO2_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO3_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO4_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO5_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO6_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO7_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO8_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC1_GPIO9_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
adc1_pad_get_io_num (*C++ function*), 209
adc1_ulp_enable (*C++ function*), 211
ADC2_CHANNEL_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_0_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_CHANNEL_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_CHANNEL_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_3_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_CHANNEL_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_4_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_CHANNEL_5 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_5_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_CHANNEL_6 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_6_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_CHANNEL_7 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_7_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_CHANNEL_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_8_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_CHANNEL_9 (*C++ enumerator*), 214
ADC2_CHANNEL_9_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 214
adc2_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 214
adc2_config_channel_atten (*C++ function*), 211
adc2_get_raw (*C++ function*), 212
ADC2_GPIO11_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_GPIO12_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_GPIO13_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_GPIO14_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_GPIO15_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 217
ADC2_GPIO16_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_GPIO17_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_GPIO18_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_GPIO19_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 218
ADC2_GPIO20_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 218
adc2_pad_get_io_num (*C++ function*), 211
adc2_vref_to_gpio (*C++ function*), 212
ADC_ARB_MODE_FIX (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_ARB_MODE_LOOP (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_ARB_MODE_SHIELD (*C++ enumerator*), 207
adc_arbiter_config (*C++ function*), 199
ADC_ARBITER_CONFIG_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 205
adc_arbiter_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 207
adc_arbiter_t (*C++ class*), 204
adc_arbiter_t::dig_pri (*C++ member*), 204
adc_arbiter_t::mode (*C++ member*), 204
adc_arbiter_t::pwdet_pri (*C++ member*), 204
adc_arbiter_t::rtc_pri (*C++ member*), 204
ADC_ATTEN_0db (*C macro*), 213
ADC_ATTEN_11db (*C macro*), 213

ADC_ATTEN_2_5db (*C macro*), 213
ADC_ATTEN_6db (*C macro*), 213
ADC_ATTEN_DB_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_ATTEN_DB_11 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_ATTEN_DB_2_5 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_ATTEN_DB_6 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_ATTEN_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 206
adc_atten_t (*C++ enum*), 206
adc_bits_width_t (*C++ enum*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 205
ADC_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 205
ADC_CHANNEL_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_5 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_6 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_7 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_9 (*C++ enumerator*), 206
ADC_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 206
adc_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 205
ADC_CONV_ALTER_UNIT (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_CONV_BOTH_UNIT (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_CONV_SINGLE_UNIT_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_CONV_UNIT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 207
adc_digi_clk_t (*C++ class*), 202
adc_digi_clk_t::div_a (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_clk_t::div_b (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_clk_t::div_num (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_clk_t::use_apll (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_config_t (*C++ class*), 203
adc_digi_config_t::adc1_pattern (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::adc1_pattern_len (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_config_t::adc2_pattern (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::adc2_pattern_len (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::conv_limit_en (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_config_t::conv_limit_num (*C++ member*), 203
adc_digi_config_t::conv_mode (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::dig_clk (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::dma_eof_num (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::format (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_config_t::interval (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_controller_config (*C++ function*), 213
adc_digi_convert_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 207
adc_digi_deinit (*C++ function*), 213
adc_digi_filter_enable (*C++ function*), 200
adc_digi_filter_get_config (*C++ function*), 200
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IDX0 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IDX1 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IDX_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 208
adc_digi_filter_idx_t (*C++ enum*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_16 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_64 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_FILTER_IIR_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 208
adc_digi_filter_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 208
adc_digi_filter_reset (*C++ function*), 199
adc_digi_filter_set_config (*C++ function*), 199
adc_digi_filter_t (*C++ class*), 204
adc_digi_filter_t::adc_unit (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_filter_t::channel (*C++ member*), 204
adc_digi_filter_t::mode (*C++ member*), 205
ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_11BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_12BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_DIGI_FORMAT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 207
adc_digi_init (*C++ function*), 213
adc_digi_intr_clear (*C++ function*), 201
adc_digi_intr_disable (*C++ function*), 200
adc_digi_intr_enable (*C++ function*), 200
adc_digi_intr_get_status (*C++ function*), 201
ADC_DIGI_INTR_MASK_ALL (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_DIGI_INTR_MASK_MEAS_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 207
ADC_DIGI_INTR_MASK_MONITOR (*C++ enumerator*), 207
adc_digi_intr_t (*C++ enum*), 207
adc_digi_isr_deregister (*C++ function*), 201
adc_digi_isr_register (*C++ function*), 201
adc_digi_monitor_enable (*C++ function*), 200
ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_HIGH (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_IDX0 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_IDX1 (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_IDX_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 208
adc_digi_monitor_idx_t (*C++ enum*), 208
ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_LOW (*C++ enumerator*), 208
ADC_DIGI_MONITOR_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 209
adc_digi_monitor_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 208

adc_digi_monitor_set_config (C++ function), 200
adc_digi_monitor_t (C++ class), 205
adc_digi_monitor_t::adc_unit (C++ member), 205
adc_digi_monitor_t::channel (C++ member), 205
adc_digi_monitor_t::mode (C++ member), 205
adc_digi_monitor_t::threshold (C++ member), 205
adc_digi_output_data_t (C++ class), 202
adc_digi_output_data_t::channel (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_output_data_t::data (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_output_data_t::type1 (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_output_data_t::type2 (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_output_data_t::unit (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_output_data_t::val (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_output_format_t (C++ enum), 207
adc_digi_pattern_table_t (C++ class), 202
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::atten (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::channel (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::reserved (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_pattern_table_t::val (C++ member), 202
adc_digi_start (C++ function), 199
adc_digi_stop (C++ function), 199
ADC_ENCODE_11BIT (C++ enumerator), 214
ADC_ENCODE_12BIT (C++ enumerator), 214
ADC_ENCODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 214
adc_gpio_init (C++ function), 209
ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_ADC (C++ enumerator), 206
ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_IO_SIG (C++ enumerator), 206
ADC_I2S_DATA_SRC_MAX (C++ enumerator), 206
adc_i2s_encode_t (C++ enum), 214
adc_i2s_mode_init (C++ function), 201
adc_i2s_source_t (C++ enum), 206
adc_power_acquire (C++ function), 209
adc_power_off (C++ function), 209
adc_power_on (C++ function), 209
adc_power_release (C++ function), 209
adc_set_clk_div (C++ function), 211
adc_set_data_inv (C++ function), 210
adc_set_data_width (C++ function), 211
adc_set_i2s_data_source (C++ function), 201
ADC_UNIT_1 (C++ enumerator), 205
ADC_UNIT_2 (C++ enumerator), 205
ADC_UNIT_ALTER (C++ enumerator), 205
ADC_UNIT_BOTH (C++ enumerator), 205
ADC_UNIT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 205
adc_unit_t (C++ enum), 205
adc_vref_to_gpio (C++ function), 212
ADC_WIDTH_10Bit (C macro), 213
ADC_WIDTH_11Bit (C macro), 213
ADC_WIDTH_12Bit (C macro), 213
ADC_WIDTH_9Bit (C macro), 213
ADC_WIDTH_BIT_13 (C++ enumerator), 206
ADC_WIDTH_BIT_DEFAULT (C macro), 213
ADC_WIDTH_MAX (C++ enumerator), 207
async_memcpy_config_t (C++ class), 711
async_memcpy_config_t::backlog (C++ member), 711
async_memcpy_config_t::flags (C++ member), 711
ASYNC_MEMCPY_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 711
async_memcpy_event_t (C++ class), 711
async_memcpy_event_t::data (C++ member), 711
async_memcpy_isr_cb_t (C++ type), 711
async_memcpy_t (C++ type), 711

B

BLE_UUID128_VAL_LENGTH (C macro), 593

C

CDC_EVENT_LINE_CODING_CHANGED (C++ enumerator), 451
CDC_EVENT_LINE_STATE_CHANGED (C++ enumerator), 451
CDC_EVENT_RX (C++ enumerator), 451
CDC_EVENT_RX_WANTED_CHAR (C++ enumerator), 451
cdcacm_event_line_coding_changed_data_t (C++ class), 450
cdcacm_event_line_coding_changed_data_t::p_line_c (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_line_state_changed_data_t (C++ class), 450
cdcacm_event_line_state_changed_data_t::dtr (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_line_state_changed_data_t::rts (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_rx_wanted_char_data_t (C++ class), 449
cdcacm_event_rx_wanted_char_data_t::wanted_char (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_t (C++ class), 450
cdcacm_event_t::line_coding_changed_data (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_t::line_state_changed_data (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_t::rx_wanted_char_data (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_t::type (C++ member), 450
cdcacm_event_type_t (C++ enum), 451

CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE, 659
CONFIG_FEATURE_CACHE_TX_BUF_BIT (*C macro*), 94
CONFIG_FEATURE_FTM_INITIATOR_BIT (*C macro*), 94
CONFIG_FEATURE_FTM_RESPONDER_BIT (*C macro*), 94
CONFIG_FEATURE_WPA3_SAE_BIT (*C macro*), 94
CONFIG_HEAP_TRACING_STACK_DEPTH (*C macro*), 893
CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL, 905
CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY, 947
CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT, 686

D

DAC_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 221
DAC_CHANNEL_1_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 220
DAC_CHANNEL_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 221
DAC_CHANNEL_2_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 220
DAC_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 221
dac_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 221
DAC_CONV_ALTER (*C++ enumerator*), 222
DAC_CONV_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 222
DAC_CONV_NORMAL (*C++ enumerator*), 222
dac_cw_config_t (*C++ class*), 221
dac_cw_config_t::en_ch (*C++ member*), 221
dac_cw_config_t::freq (*C++ member*), 221
dac_cw_config_t::offset (*C++ member*), 221
dac_cw_config_t::phase (*C++ member*), 221
dac_cw_config_t::scale (*C++ member*), 221
dac_cw_generator_config (*C++ function*), 220
dac_cw_generator_disable (*C++ function*), 220
dac_cw_generator_enable (*C++ function*), 220
DAC_CW_PHASE_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 222
DAC_CW_PHASE_180 (*C++ enumerator*), 222
dac_cw_phase_t (*C++ enum*), 222
DAC_CW_SCALE_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 221
DAC_CW_SCALE_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 221
DAC_CW_SCALE_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 221
DAC_CW_SCALE_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 222
dac_cw_scale_t (*C++ enum*), 221
dac_digi_config_t (*C++ class*), 221
dac_digi_config_t::dig_clk (*C++ member*), 221
dac_digi_config_t::interval (*C++ member*), 221
dac_digi_config_t::mode (*C++ member*), 221
dac_digi_controller_config (*C++ function*), 219
dac_digi_convert_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 222
dac_digi_deinit (*C++ function*), 219
dac_digi_fifo_reset (*C++ function*), 219
dac_digi_init (*C++ function*), 218
dac_digi_reset (*C++ function*), 219
dac_digi_start (*C++ function*), 219
dac_digi_stop (*C++ function*), 219
DAC_GPIO17_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 220
DAC_GPIO18_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 220
dac_output_disable (*C++ function*), 220
dac_output_enable (*C++ function*), 219
dac_output_voltage (*C++ function*), 219
dac_pad_get_io_num (*C++ function*), 219
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t (*C++ class*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::array_size (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::flags (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::gpio_array (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::in_en (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::in_invert (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::out_en (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_config_t::out_invert (*C++ member*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_handle_t (*C++ type*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_read_in (*C++ function*), 252
dedic_gpio_bundle_read_out (*C++ function*), 252
dedic_gpio_bundle_set_interrupt_and_callback (*C++ function*), 253
dedic_gpio_bundle_write (*C++ function*), 252
dedic_gpio_del_bundle (*C++ function*), 252
dedic_gpio_get_in_mask (*C++ function*), 252
dedic_gpio_get_out_mask (*C++ function*), 251
DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_BOTH_EDGE (*C++ enumerator*), 254
DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL (*C++ enumerator*), 254
DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL (*C++ enumerator*), 254
DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_NEG_EDGE (*C++ enumerator*), 254
DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_NONE (*C++ enumerator*), 254
DEDIC_GPIO_INTR_POS_EDGE (*C++ enumerator*), 254
dedic_gpio_intr_type_t (*C++ enum*), 254
dedic_gpio_isr_callback_t (*C++ type*), 254
dedic_gpio_new_bundle (*C++ function*), 252
DEFAULT_HTTP_BUF_SIZE (*C macro*), 512

E

eAbortSleep (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eBlocked (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eDeleted (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eIncrement (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eInvalid (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eNoAction (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eNoTasksWaitingTimeout (*C++ enumerator*), 785
eNotifyAction (*C++ enum*), 785

environment variable
CONFIG_ESPTOOLPY_FLASHSIZE, 659
CONFIG_LOG_DEFAULT_LEVEL, 905
CONFIG_LWIP_SNTP_UPDATE_DELAY, 947
CONFIG_LWIP_USE_ONLY_LWIP_SELECT, 686
eReady (C++ enumerator), 785
eRunning (C++ enumerator), 785
eSetBits (C++ enumerator), 785
eSetValueWithoutOverwrite (C++ enumerator), 785
eSetValueWithOverwrite (C++ enumerator), 785
eSleepModeStatus (C++ enum), 785
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t (C++ class), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::adc_num (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::atten (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::bit_width (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::coeff_a (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::coeff_b (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::high_curve (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::low_curve (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characteristics_t::vref (C++ member), 216
esp_adc_cal_characterize (C++ function), 215
esp_adc_cal_check_efuse (C++ function), 215
esp_adc_cal_get_voltage (C++ function), 215
esp_adc_cal_raw_to_voltage (C++ function), 215
ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_DEFAULT_VREF (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_TP (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_EFUSE_VREF (C++ enumerator), 216
ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 217
ESP_ADC_CAL_VAL_NOT_SUPPORTED (C++ enumerator), 217
esp_adc_cal_value_t (C++ enum), 216
esp_alloc_failed_hook_t (C++ type), 878
ESP_APP_DESC_MAGIC_WORD (C macro), 703
esp_app_desc_t (C++ class), 702
esp_app_desc_t::app_elf_sha256 (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::date (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::idf_ver (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::magic_word (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::project_name (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::reserv1 (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::reserv2 (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::secure_version (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::time (C++ member), 703
esp_app_desc_t::version (C++ member), 703
esp_apptrace_buffer_get (C++ function), 705
esp_apptrace_buffer_put (C++ function), 705
esp_apptrace_dest_t (C++ enum), 708
ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_TRAX (C++ enumerator), 708
ESP_APPTRACE_DEST_UART0 (C++ enumerator), 708
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_config (C++ function), 705
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_get (C++ function), 706
esp_apptrace_down_buffer_put (C++ function), 706
esp_apptrace_fclose (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_flush (C++ function), 706
esp_apptrace_flush_nolock (C++ function), 706
esp_apptrace_fopen (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_fread (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_fseek (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_fstop (C++ function), 708
esp_apptrace_ftell (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_fwrite (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_host_is_connected (C++ function), 707
esp_apptrace_init (C++ function), 705
esp_apptrace_read (C++ function), 706
esp_apptrace_vprintf (C++ function), 706
esp_apptrace_vprintf_to (C++ function), 705
esp_apptrace_write (C++ function), 705
esp_async_memcpy (C++ function), 710
esp_async_memcpy_install (C++ function), 710
esp_async_memcpy_uninstall (C++ function), 710
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32 (C++ enumerator), 703
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32C3 (C++ enumerator), 703
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S2 (C++ enumerator), 703
ESP_CHIP_ID_ESP32S3 (C++ enumerator), 703
ESP_CHIP_ID_INVALID (C++ enumerator), 703
esp_chip_id_t (C++ enum), 703
esp_console_cmd_func_t (C++ type), 719
esp_console_cmd_register (C++ function), 715
esp_console_cmd_t (C++ class), 718
esp_console_cmd_t::argtable (C++ member), 718
esp_console_cmd_t::command (C++ member), 718
esp_console_cmd_t::func (C++ member), 718
esp_console_cmd_t::help (C++ member), 718

esp_console_cmd_t::hint (C++ member), 718
ESP_CONSOLE_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 719
esp_console_config_t (C++ class), 717
esp_console_config_t::hint_bold (C++ member), 717
esp_console_config_t::hint_color (C++ member), 717
esp_console_config_t::max_cmdline_args (C++ member), 717
esp_console_config_t::max_cmdline_length (C++ member), 717
esp_console_deinit (C++ function), 715
ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_CDC_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 719
ESP_CONSOLE_DEV_UART_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 719
esp_console_dev_uart_config_t (C++ class), 717
esp_console_dev_uart_config_t::baud_rate (C++ member), 718
esp_console_dev_uart_config_t::channel (C++ member), 718
esp_console_dev_uart_config_t::rx_gpio_num (C++ member), 718
esp_console_dev_uart_config_t::tx_gpio_num (C++ member), 718
esp_console_dev_usb_cdc_config_t (C++ class), 718
esp_console_get_completion (C++ function), 716
esp_console_get_hint (C++ function), 716
esp_console_init (C++ function), 715
esp_console_new_repl_uart (C++ function), 716
esp_console_new_repl_usb_cdc (C++ function), 716
esp_console_register_help_command (C++ function), 716
ESP_CONSOLE_REPL_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 719
esp_console_repl_config_t (C++ class), 717
esp_console_repl_config_t::history_save_path (C++ member), 717
esp_console_repl_config_t::max_history_len (C++ member), 717
esp_console_repl_config_t::prompt (C++ member), 717
esp_console_repl_config_t::task_priority (C++ member), 717
esp_console_repl_config_t::task_stack_size (C++ member), 717
esp_console_repl_s (C++ class), 718
esp_console_repl_s::del (C++ member), 718
esp_console_repl_t (C++ type), 719
esp_console_run (C++ function), 715
esp_console_split_argv (C++ function), 715
esp_console_start_repl (C++ function), 717
esp_crt_bundle_attach (C++ function), 583
esp_crt_bundle_detach (C++ function), 583
esp_crt_bundle_set (C++ function), 583
esp_deep_sleep (C++ function), 939
esp_deep_sleep_disable_rom_logging (C++ function), 940
esp_deep_sleep_start (C++ function), 939
esp_deep_sleep_wake_stub_fn_t (C++ type), 940
esp_default_wake_deep_sleep (C++ function), 940
esp_deregister_freertos_idle_hook (C++ function), 871
esp_deregister_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu (C++ function), 871
esp_deregister_freertos_tick_hook (C++ function), 871
esp_deregister_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu (C++ function), 871
esp_digital_signature_data (C++ class), 261
esp_digital_signature_data::c (C++ member), 261
esp_digital_signature_data::iv (C++ member), 261
esp_digital_signature_data::rsa_length (C++ member), 261
esp_digital_signature_length_t (C++ enum), 262
ESP_DRAM_LOGD (C macro), 909
ESP_DRAM_LOGE (C macro), 909
ESP_DRAM_LOGI (C macro), 909
ESP_DRAM_LOGV (C macro), 909
ESP_DRAM_LOGW (C macro), 909
ESP_DS_C_LEN (C macro), 262
esp_ds_context_t (C++ type), 262
esp_ds_data_t (C++ type), 262
esp_ds_encrypt_params (C++ function), 260
esp_ds_finish_sign (C++ function), 260
esp_ds_is_busy (C++ function), 260
ESP_DS_IV_LEN (C macro), 262
esp_ds_p_data_t (C++ class), 261
esp_ds_p_data_t::length (C++ member), 261
esp_ds_p_data_t::M (C++ member), 261
esp_ds_p_data_t::M_prime (C++ member), 261
esp_ds_p_data_t::Rb (C++ member), 261
esp_ds_p_data_t::Y (C++ member), 261
ESP_DS_RSA_1024 (C++ enumerator), 262
ESP_DS_RSA_2048 (C++ enumerator), 262
ESP_DS_RSA_3072 (C++ enumerator), 262
ESP_DS_RSA_4096 (C++ enumerator), 262
esp_ds_sign (C++ function), 259
esp_ds_start_sign (C++ function), 260
ESP_EARLY_LOGD (C macro), 908
ESP_EARLY_LOGE (C macro), 908
ESP_EARLY_LOGI (C macro), 908
ESP_EARLY_LOGV (C macro), 909
ESP_EARLY_LOGW (C macro), 908

esp_efuse_batch_write_begin (*C++ function*), 733
esp_efuse_batch_write_cancel (*C++ function*), 734
esp_efuse_batch_write_commit (*C++ function*), 734
esp_efuse_block_is_empty (*C++ function*), 734
esp_efuse_burn_new_values (*C++ function*), 731
esp_efuse_check_secure_version (*C++ function*), 733
esp_efuse_count_unused_key_blocks (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_desc_t (*C++ class*), 738
esp_efuse_desc_t::bit_count (*C++ member*), 738
esp_efuse_desc_t::bit_start (*C++ member*), 738
esp_efuse_desc_t::efuse_block (*C++ member*), 738
esp_efuse_disable_rom_download_mode (*C++ function*), 732
esp_efuse_enable_rom_secure_download_mode (*C++ function*), 732
esp_efuse_find_purpose (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_find_unused_key_block (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_get_chip_ver (*C++ function*), 731
esp_efuse_get_coding_scheme (*C++ function*), 731
esp_efuse_get_digest_revoke (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_get_field_size (*C++ function*), 730
esp_efuse_get_key (*C++ function*), 735
esp_efuse_get_key_dis_read (*C++ function*), 734
esp_efuse_get_key_dis_write (*C++ function*), 735
esp_efuse_get_key_purpose (*C++ function*), 735
esp_efuse_get_keypurpose_dis_write (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_get_pkg_ver (*C++ function*), 731
esp_efuse_get_purpose_field (*C++ function*), 735
esp_efuse_get_write_protect_of_digest_revoke (*C++ function*), 737
esp_efuse_init (*C++ function*), 733
esp_efuse_key_block_unused (*C++ function*), 735
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_DOWN_ALL (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_DOWN_DIGITAL_SIGNATURE (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_DOWN_JTAG (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_HMAC_UP (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_RESERVED (*C++ enumerator*), 738
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST0 (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST1 (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_SECURE_BOOT_DIGEST2 (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_USER (*C++ enumerator*), 738
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_128_KEY (*C++ enumerator*), 739
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_256_KEY_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 738
ESP_EFUSE_KEY_PURPOSE_XTS_AES_256_KEY_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 739
esp_efuse_purpose_t (*C++ enum*), 738
esp_efuse_read_block (*C++ function*), 731
esp_efuse_read_field_bit (*C++ function*), 729
esp_efuse_read_field_blob (*C++ function*), 728
esp_efuse_read_field_cnt (*C++ function*), 729
esp_efuse_read_reg (*C++ function*), 730
esp_efuse_read_secure_version (*C++ function*), 733
esp_efuse_reset (*C++ function*), 732
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_OFF (*C++ enumerator*), 738
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ALWAYS_ON (*C++ enumerator*), 738
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_HIGH (*C++ enumerator*), 738
ESP_EFUSE_ROM_LOG_ON_GPIO_LOW (*C++ enumerator*), 738
esp_efuse_rom_log_scheme_t (*C++ enum*), 738
esp_efuse_set_digest_revoke (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_set_key_dis_read (*C++ function*), 734
esp_efuse_set_key_dis_write (*C++ function*), 735
esp_efuse_set_key_purpose (*C++ function*), 735
esp_efuse_set_keypurpose_dis_write (*C++ function*), 736
esp_efuse_set_read_protect (*C++ function*), 730
esp_efuse_set_rom_log_scheme (*C++ function*), 732
esp_efuse_set_write_protect (*C++ function*), 730

esp_efuse_set_write_protect_of_digest_revoke (C++ function), 737
esp_efuse_update_secure_version (C++ function), 733
esp_efuse_write_block (C++ function), 731
esp_efuse_write_field_bit (C++ function), 730
esp_efuse_write_field_blob (C++ function), 729
esp_efuse_write_field_cnt (C++ function), 729
esp_efuse_write_key (C++ function), 737
esp_efuse_write_keys (C++ function), 737
esp_efuse_write_random_key (C++ function), 732
esp_efuse_write_reg (C++ function), 730
ESP_ERR_CODING (C macro), 738
ESP_ERR_EFUSE (C macro), 738
ESP_ERR_EFUSE_CNT_IS_FULL (C macro), 738
ESP_ERR_EFUSE_REPEATED_PROG (C macro), 738
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_ARG (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_BASE (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_EXIST (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_FULL (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_IF (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_INTERNAL (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NO_MEM (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_FOUND (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_ESPNOW_NOT_INIT (C macro), 124
ESP_ERR_FLASH_BASE (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_HTTP_BASE (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECT (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_CONNECTING (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_EAGAIN (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_FETCH_HEADER (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_INVALID_TRANSPORT (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_MAX_REDIRECT (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTP_WRITE_DATA (C macro), 512
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_ALLOC_MEM (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_BASE (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLER_EXISTS (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_HANDLERS_FULL (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_INVALID_REQ (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_HDR (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESP_SEND (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_RESULT_TRUNC (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPD_TASK (C macro), 533
ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_BASE (C macro), 744
ESP_ERR_HTTPS_OTA_IN_PROGRESS (C macro), 744
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_BASE (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_HMAC_FAIL (C macro), 261
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_DIGEST (C macro), 261
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_KEY (C macro), 261
ESP_ERR_HW_CRYPTO_DS_INVALID_PADDING (C macro), 262
ESP_ERR_INVALID_ARG (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_INVALID_CRC (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_INVALID_MAC (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_INVALID_RESPONSE (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_INVALID_SIZE (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_INVALID_STATE (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_INVALID_VERSION (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_MESH_ARGUMENT (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_BASE (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCARD_DUPLICATE (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_DISCONNECTED (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_EXCEED_MTU (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_INTERFACE (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_MEMORY (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_PARENT_FOUND (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NO_ROUTE_FOUND (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_ALLOWED (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_CONFIG (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_INIT (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_START (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_NOT_SUPPORT (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_NULL (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_OPTION_UNKNOWN (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_PS (C macro), 153
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FAIL (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_FULL (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_QUEUE_READ (C macro), 153
ESP_ERR_MESH_RECV_RELEASE (C macro), 153
ESP_ERR_MESH_TIMEOUT (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_VOTING (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_WIFI_NOT_START (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_MESH_XMIT (C macro), 153
ESP_ERR_MESH_XON_NO_WINDOW (C macro), 152
ESP_ERR_NO_MEM (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_NOT_ENOUGH_UNUSED_KEY_BLOCKS (C macro), 738
ESP_ERR_NOT_FINISHED (C macro), 578
ESP_ERR_NOT_FOUND (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_NOT_SUPPORTED (C macro), 740
ESP_ERR_NVS_BASE (C macro), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_CONTENT_DIFFERS (C macro), 642
ESP_ERR_NVS_CORRUPT_KEY_PART (C macro), 642
ESP_ERR_NVS_ENCR_NOT_SUPPORTED (C macro), 641

ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_HANDLE (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_LENGTH (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_NAME (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_INVALID_STATE (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_KEY_TOO_LONG (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_KEYS_NOT_INITIALIZED (*C macro*), 642
ESP_ERR_NVS_NEW_VERSION_FOUND (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_NO_FREE_PAGES (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_ENOUGH_SPACE (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_FOUND (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_NOT_INITIALIZED (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_PAGE_FULL (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_PART_NOT_FOUND (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_READ_ONLY (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_REMOVE_FAILED (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_TYPE_MISMATCH (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_VALUE_TOO_LONG (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_WRONG_ENCRYPTION (*C macro*), 642
ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_FAILED (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_CFG_NOT_FOUND (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_DECR_FAILED (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_NVS_XTS_ENCR_FAILED (*C macro*), 641
ESP_ERR_OTA_BASE (*C macro*), 924
ESP_ERR_OTA_PARTITION_CONFLICT (*C macro*), 924
ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_FAILED (*C macro*), 924
ESP_ERR_OTA_ROLLBACK_INVALID_STATE (*C macro*), 924
ESP_ERR_OTA_SELECT_INFO_INVALID (*C macro*), 924
ESP_ERR_OTA_SMALL_SEC_VER (*C macro*), 924
ESP_ERR_OTA_VALIDATE_FAILED (*C macro*), 924
esp_err_t (*C++ type*), 740
ESP_ERR_TIMEOUT (*C macro*), 740
esp_err_to_name (*C++ function*), 739
esp_err_to_name_r (*C++ function*), 739
ESP_ERR_ULP_BASE (*C macro*), 1343
ESP_ERR_ULP_BRANCH_OUT_OF_RANGE (*C macro*), 1343
ESP_ERR_ULP_DUPLICATE_LABEL (*C macro*), 1343
ESP_ERR_ULP_INVALID_LOAD_ADDR (*C macro*), 1343
ESP_ERR_ULP_SIZE_TOO_BIG (*C macro*), 1343
ESP_ERR_ULP_UNDEFINED_LABEL (*C macro*), 1343
ESP_ERR_WIFI_BASE (*C macro*), 740
ESP_ERR_WIFI_CONN (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_IF (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_INIT_STATE (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_MAC (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_MODE (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_ASSOC (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_CONNECT (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_INIT (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STARTED (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NOT_STOPPED (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_NVS (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_PASSWORD (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_POST (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_SSID (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_STATE (*C macro*), 93
ESP_ERR_WIFI_STOP_STATE (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_TIMEOUT (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_TX_DISALLOW (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_WAKE_FAIL (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERR_WIFI_WOULD_BLOCK (*C macro*), 94
ESP_ERROR_CHECK (*C macro*), 740
ESP_ERROR_CHECK_WITHOUT_ABORT (*C macro*), 740
esp_esptouch_set_timeout (*C++ function*), 117
esp_eth_clear_default_handlers (*C++ function*), 178
esp_eth_config_t (*C++ class*), 166
esp_eth_config_t::check_link_period_ms (*C++ member*), 166
esp_eth_config_t::mac (*C++ member*), 166
esp_eth_config_t::on_lowlevel_deinit_done (*C++ member*), 167
esp_eth_config_t::on_lowlevel_init_done (*C++ member*), 167
esp_eth_config_t::phy (*C++ member*), 166
esp_eth_config_t::stack_input (*C++ member*), 166
esp_eth_decrease_reference (*C++ function*), 166
esp_eth_del_netif_glue (*C++ function*), 178
esp_eth_detect_phy_addr (*C++ function*), 167
esp_eth_driver_install (*C++ function*), 164
esp_eth_driver_uninstall (*C++ function*), 164
esp_eth_handle_t (*C++ type*), 167
esp_eth_increase_reference (*C++ function*), 166
esp_eth_io_cmd_t (*C++ enum*), 169
esp_eth_ioctl (*C++ function*), 166
esp_eth_mac_s (*C++ class*), 170
esp_eth_mac_s::deinit (*C++ member*), 171
esp_eth_mac_s::del (*C++ member*), 174
esp_eth_mac_s::enable_flow_ctrl (*C++ member*), 173
esp_eth_mac_s::get_addr (*C++ member*), 172
esp_eth_mac_s::init (*C++ member*), 171
esp_eth_mac_s::read_phy_reg (*C++ member*), 172

esp_eth_mac_s::receive (C++ member), 171
esp_eth_mac_s::set_addr (C++ member), 172
esp_eth_mac_s::set_duplex (C++ member), 173
esp_eth_mac_s::set_link (C++ member), 173
esp_eth_mac_s::set_mediator (C++ member), 170
esp_eth_mac_s::set_peer_pause_ability (C++ member), 173
esp_eth_mac_s::set_promiscuous (C++ member), 173
esp_eth_mac_s::set_speed (C++ member), 173
esp_eth_mac_s::start (C++ member), 171
esp_eth_mac_s::stop (C++ member), 171
esp_eth_mac_s::transmit (C++ member), 171
esp_eth_mac_s::write_phy_reg (C++ member), 172
esp_eth_mac_t (C++ type), 174
esp_eth_mediator_s (C++ class), 167
esp_eth_mediator_s::on_state_changed (C++ member), 168
esp_eth_mediator_s::phy_reg_read (C++ member), 168
esp_eth_mediator_s::phy_reg_write (C++ member), 168
esp_eth_mediator_s::stack_input (C++ member), 168
esp_eth_mediator_t (C++ type), 169
esp_eth_new_netif_glue (C++ function), 178
ESP_ETH_PHY_ADDR_AUTO (C macro), 177
esp_eth_phy_new_dp83848 (C++ function), 175
esp_eth_phy_new_ip101 (C++ function), 174
esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8041 (C++ function), 175
esp_eth_phy_new_ksz8081 (C++ function), 175
esp_eth_phy_new_lan8720 (C++ function), 175
esp_eth_phy_new_rtl8201 (C++ function), 174
esp_eth_phy_s (C++ class), 175
esp_eth_phy_s::advertise_pause_ability (C++ member), 177
esp_eth_phy_s::deinit (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::del (C++ member), 177
esp_eth_phy_s::get_addr (C++ member), 177
esp_eth_phy_s::get_link (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::init (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::negotiate (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::pwrctl (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::reset (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::reset_hw (C++ member), 176
esp_eth_phy_s::set_addr (C++ member), 177
esp_eth_phy_s::set_mediator (C++ member), 175
esp_eth_phy_t (C++ type), 178
esp_eth_receive (C++ function), 165
esp_eth_set_default_handlers (C++ function), 178
esp_eth_start (C++ function), 164
esp_eth_state_t (C++ enum), 169
esp_eth_stop (C++ function), 165
esp_eth_transmit (C++ function), 165
esp_eth_update_input_path (C++ function), 165
ESP_EVENT_ANY_BASE (C macro), 757
ESP_EVENT_ANY_ID (C macro), 757
esp_event_base_t (C++ type), 757
ESP_EVENT_DECLARE_BASE (C macro), 757
ESP_EVENT_DEFINE_BASE (C macro), 757
esp_event_dump (C++ function), 756
esp_event_handler_instance_register (C++ function), 753
esp_event_handler_instance_register_with (C++ function), 752
esp_event_handler_instance_t (C++ type), 757
esp_event_handler_instance_unregister (C++ function), 754
esp_event_handler_instance_unregister_with (C++ function), 754
esp_event_handler_register (C++ function), 751
esp_event_handler_register_with (C++ function), 751
esp_event_handler_t (C++ type), 757
esp_event_handler_unregister (C++ function), 753
esp_event_handler_unregister_with (C++ function), 753
esp_event_isr_post (C++ function), 755
esp_event_isr_post_to (C++ function), 756
esp_event_loop_args_t (C++ class), 757
esp_event_loop_args_t::queue_size (C++ member), 757
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_core_id (C++ member), 757
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_name (C++ member), 757
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_priority (C++ member), 757
esp_event_loop_args_t::task_stack_size (C++ member), 757
esp_event_loop_create (C++ function), 750
esp_event_loop_create_default (C++ function), 750
esp_event_loop_delete (C++ function), 750
esp_event_loop_delete_default (C++ function), 750
esp_event_loop_handle_t (C++ type), 757
esp_event_loop_init (C++ function), 758
esp_event_loop_run (C++ function), 750
esp_event_loop_set_cb (C++ function), 759
esp_event_post (C++ function), 755
esp_event_post_to (C++ function), 755
esp_event_process_default (C++ function), 758
esp_event_send (C++ function), 758

esp_event_send_internal (C++ function), 758
esp_event_set_default_eth_handlers (C++ function), 758
esp_event_set_default_wifi_handlers (C++ function), 758
ESP_EXECUTE_EXPRESSION_WITH_STACK (C macro), 899
esp_execute_shared_stack_function (C++ function), 899
ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ALL_LOW (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_EXT1_WAKEUP_ANY_HIGH (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_FAIL (C macro), 740
ESP_FLASH_10MHZ (C++ enumerator), 672
ESP_FLASH_20MHZ (C++ enumerator), 672
ESP_FLASH_26MHZ (C++ enumerator), 672
ESP_FLASH_40MHZ (C++ enumerator), 672
ESP_FLASH_5MHZ (C++ enumerator), 672
ESP_FLASH_80MHZ (C++ enumerator), 672
esp_flash_chip_driver_initialized (C++ function), 664
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DEVELOPMENT (C++ enumerator), 680
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_DISABLED (C++ enumerator), 680
ESP_FLASH_ENC_MODE_RELEASE (C++ enumerator), 680
esp_flash_enc_mode_t (C++ enum), 680
esp_flash_encrypt_check_and_update (C++ function), 679
esp_flash_encrypt_region (C++ function), 679
esp_flash_encryption_enabled (C++ function), 679
esp_flash_encryption_init_checks (C++ function), 680
esp_flash_erase_chip (C++ function), 665
esp_flash_erase_region (C++ function), 665
esp_flash_get_chip_write_protect (C++ function), 665
esp_flash_get_protectable_regions (C++ function), 665
esp_flash_get_protected_region (C++ function), 666
esp_flash_get_size (C++ function), 664
esp_flash_init (C++ function), 664
esp_flash_io_mode_t (C++ enum), 672
esp_flash_is_quad_mode (C++ function), 667
esp_flash_os_functions_t (C++ class), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::check_yield (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::delay_us (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::end (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::get_system_time (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::get_temp_buffer (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::region_protected (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::release_temp_buffer (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::start (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_os_functions_t::yield (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_read (C++ function), 666
esp_flash_read_encrypted (C++ function), 667
esp_flash_read_id (C++ function), 664
esp_flash_read_unique_chip_id (C++ function), 664
esp_flash_region_t (C++ class), 667
esp_flash_region_t::offset (C++ member), 667
esp_flash_region_t::size (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_set_chip_write_protect (C++ function), 665
esp_flash_set_protected_region (C++ function), 666
ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MAX (C++ enumerator), 672
ESP_FLASH_SPEED_MIN (C macro), 672
esp_flash_speed_t (C++ enum), 672
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t (C++ class), 663
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t::cs_id (C++ member), 664
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t::cs_io_num (C++ member), 663
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t::host_id (C++ member), 663
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t::input_delay_ns (C++ member), 663
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t::io_mode (C++ member), 663
esp_flash_spi_device_config_t::speed (C++ member), 663
esp_flash_t (C++ class), 668
esp_flash_t (C++ type), 669
esp_flash_t::busy (C++ member), 669
esp_flash_t::chip_drv (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_t::chip_id (C++ member), 669
esp_flash_t::host (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_t::os_func (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_t::os_func_data (C++ member), 668
esp_flash_t::read_mode (C++ member), 669
esp_flash_t::reserved_flags (C++ member), 669
esp_flash_t::size (C++ member), 669
esp_flash_write (C++ function), 666
esp_flash_write_encrypted (C++ function), 667

esp_flash_write_protect_crypt_cnt (C++ function), 680
esp_freertos_idle_cb_t (C++ type), 871
esp_freertos_tick_cb_t (C++ type), 871
esp_gcov_dump (C++ function), 708
esp_get_deep_sleep_wake_stub (C++ function), 940
esp_get_flash_encryption_mode (C++ function), 680
esp_get_free_heap_size (C++ function), 913
esp_get_free_internal_heap_size (C++ function), 913
esp_get_idf_version (C++ function), 914
esp_get_minimum_free_heap_size (C++ function), 913
esp_hmac_calculate (C++ function), 256
esp_hmac_jtag_disable (C++ function), 257
esp_hmac_jtag_enable (C++ function), 257
esp_http_client_add_auth (C++ function), 509
esp_http_client_auth_type_t (C++ enum), 514
esp_http_client_cleanup (C++ function), 508
esp_http_client_close (C++ function), 508
esp_http_client_config_t (C++ class), 510
esp_http_client_config_t::auth_type (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_config_t::buffer_size (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::buffer_size_tx (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::cert_len (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::cert_pem (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::client_cert_len (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::client_cert_pem (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::client_key_len (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::client_key_pem (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::crt_bundle_attach (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::disable_auto_redirect (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::event_handler (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::host (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_config_t::if_name (C++ member), 512
esp_http_client_config_t::is_async (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_count (C++ member), 512
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_enable (C++ member), 512
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_idle (C++ member), 512
esp_http_client_config_t::keep_alive_interval (C++ member), 512
esp_http_client_config_t::max_authorization_retri (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::max_redirection_count (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::method (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::password (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_config_t::path (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::port (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_config_t::query (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::skip_cert_common_name_c (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::timeout_ms (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::transport_type (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::url (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_config_t::use_global_ca_store (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::user_agent (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::user_data (C++ member), 511
esp_http_client_config_t::username (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_delete_header (C++ function), 507
esp_http_client_event (C++ class), 510
esp_http_client_event::client (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event::data (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event::data_len (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event::event_id (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event::header_key (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event::header_value (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event::user_data (C++ member), 510
esp_http_client_event_handle_t (C++ type), 512
esp_http_client_event_id_t (C++ enum), 512
esp_http_client_event_t (C++ type), 512
esp_http_client_fetch_headers (C++ func-

tion), 507
esp_http_client_flush_response (*C++ function*), 509
esp_http_client_get_chunk_length (*C++ function*), 510
esp_http_client_get_content_length (*C++ function*), 508
esp_http_client_get_header (*C++ function*), 506
esp_http_client_get_password (*C++ function*), 506
esp_http_client_get_post_field (*C++ function*), 505
esp_http_client_get_status_code (*C++ function*), 508
esp_http_client_get_transport_type (*C++ function*), 508
esp_http_client_get_url (*C++ function*), 509
esp_http_client_get_username (*C++ function*), 506
esp_http_client_handle_t (*C++ type*), 512
esp_http_client_init (*C++ function*), 504
esp_http_client_is_chunked_response (*C++ function*), 508
esp_http_client_is_complete_data_received (*C++ function*), 509
esp_http_client_method_t (*C++ enum*), 513
esp_http_client_open (*C++ function*), 507
esp_http_client_perform (*C++ function*), 504
esp_http_client_read (*C++ function*), 508
esp_http_client_read_response (*C++ function*), 509
esp_http_client_set_authtype (*C++ function*), 507
esp_http_client_set_header (*C++ function*), 505
esp_http_client_set_method (*C++ function*), 507
esp_http_client_set_password (*C++ function*), 506
esp_http_client_set_post_field (*C++ function*), 505
esp_http_client_set_redirection (*C++ function*), 509
esp_http_client_set_url (*C++ function*), 505
esp_http_client_set_username (*C++ function*), 506
esp_http_client_transport_t (*C++ enum*), 513
esp_http_client_write (*C++ function*), 507
esp_https_ota (*C++ function*), 741
esp_https_ota_abort (*C++ function*), 743
esp_https_ota_begin (*C++ function*), 742
esp_https_ota_config_t (*C++ class*), 744
esp_https_ota_config_t::bulk_flash_erase (*C++ member*), 744
esp_https_ota_config_t::http_client_init_cb (*C++ member*), 744
esp_https_ota_config_t::http_config (*C++ member*), 744
esp_https_ota_config_t::max_http_request_size (*C++ member*), 744
esp_https_ota_config_t::partial_http_download (*C++ member*), 744
esp_https_ota_finish (*C++ function*), 743
esp_https_ota_get_image_len_read (*C++ function*), 743
esp_https_ota_get_img_desc (*C++ function*), 743
esp_https_ota_handle_t (*C++ type*), 744
esp_https_ota_is_complete_data_received (*C++ function*), 742
esp_https_ota_perform (*C++ function*), 742
ESP_IDF_VERSION (*C macro*), 915
ESP_IDF_VERSION_MAJOR (*C macro*), 915
ESP_IDF_VERSION_MINOR (*C macro*), 915
ESP_IDF_VERSION_PATCH (*C macro*), 915
ESP_IDF_VERSION_VAL (*C macro*), 915
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_16MB (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_1MB (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_2MB (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_4MB (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_8MB (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_FLASH_SIZE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 704
esp_image_flash_size_t (*C++ enum*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_HEADER_MAGIC (*C macro*), 703
esp_image_header_t (*C++ class*), 702
esp_image_header_t::chip_id (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::entry_addr (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::hash_appended (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::magic (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::min_chip_rev (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::reserved (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::segment_count (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::spi_mode (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::spi_pin_drv (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::spi_size (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::spi_speed (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_header_t::wp_pin (*C++ member*),

702
ESP_IMAGE_MAX_SEGMENTS (*C macro*), 703
esp_image_segment_header_t (*C++ class*), 702
esp_image_segment_header_t::data_len (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_segment_header_t::load_addr (*C++ member*), 702
esp_image_spi_freq_t (*C++ enum*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_DIO (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_DOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_FAST_READ (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_QIO (*C++ enumerator*), 703
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_QOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_MODE_SLOW_READ (*C++ enumerator*), 704
esp_image_spi_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 703
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_20M (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_26M (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_40M (*C++ enumerator*), 704
ESP_IMAGE_SPI_SPEED_80M (*C++ enumerator*), 704
esp_int_wdt_init (*C++ function*), 943
esp_intr_alloc (*C++ function*), 901
esp_intr_alloc_intrstatus (*C++ function*), 902
ESP_INTR_DISABLE (*C macro*), 905
esp_intr_disable (*C++ function*), 903
esp_intr_disable_source (*C++ function*), 903
ESP_INTR_ENABLE (*C macro*), 905
esp_intr_enable (*C++ function*), 903
esp_intr_enable_source (*C++ function*), 903
ESP_INTR_FLAG_EDGE (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_HIGH (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_INTRDISABLED (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_IRAM (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL1 (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL2 (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL3 (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL4 (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL5 (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVEL6 (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LEVELMASK (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_LOWMED (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_NMI (*C macro*), 904
ESP_INTR_FLAG_SHARED (*C macro*), 904
esp_intr_flags_to_level (*C++ function*), 903
esp_intr_free (*C++ function*), 902
esp_intr_get_cpu (*C++ function*), 902
esp_intr_get_intno (*C++ function*), 903
esp_intr_mark_shared (*C++ function*), 901
esp_intr_noniram_disable (*C++ function*), 903
esp_intr_noniram_enable (*C++ function*), 903
esp_intr_reserve (*C++ function*), 901
esp_intr_set_in_iram (*C++ function*), 903
esp_ip4addr_aton (*C++ function*), 188
esp_ip4addr_ntoa (*C++ function*), 188
esp_light_sleep_start (*C++ function*), 939
esp_local_ctrl_add_property (*C++ function*), 546
esp_local_ctrl_config (*C++ class*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_config::handlers (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_config::max_properties (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_config::transport (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_config::transport_config (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_config_t (*C++ type*), 550
esp_local_ctrl_get_property (*C++ function*), 547
esp_local_ctrl_get_transport_ble (*C++ function*), 546
esp_local_ctrl_get_transport_httpd (*C++ function*), 546
esp_local_ctrl_handlers (*C++ class*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_handlers::get_prop_values (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_handlers::set_prop_values (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_handlers::usr_ctx (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_handlers::usr_ctx_free_fn (*C++ member*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_handlers_t (*C++ type*), 550
esp_local_ctrl_prop (*C++ class*), 547
esp_local_ctrl_prop::ctx (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop::ctx_free_fn (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop::flags (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop::name (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop::size (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop::type (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop_t (*C++ type*), 550
esp_local_ctrl_prop_val (*C++ class*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop_val::data (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop_val::free_fn (*C++ member*), 548
esp_local_ctrl_prop_val::size (*C++ member*), 548

esp_local_ctrl_prop_val_t (*C++ type*), 550
esp_local_ctrl_remove_property (*C++ function*), 546
esp_local_ctrl_set_handler (*C++ function*), 547
esp_local_ctrl_start (*C++ function*), 546
esp_local_ctrl_stop (*C++ function*), 546
ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_BLE (*C macro*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_ble_t (*C++ type*), 550
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_httpd_t (*C++ type*), 550
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t (*C++ union*), 547
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t::ble (*C++ member*), 547
esp_local_ctrl_transport_config_t::httpd (*C++ member*), 547
ESP_LOCAL_CTRL_TRANSPORT_HTTPD (*C macro*), 549
esp_local_ctrl_transport_t (*C++ type*), 550
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR (*C macro*), 908
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_CHAR_LEVEL (*C macro*), 908
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX (*C macro*), 908
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEX_LEVEL (*C macro*), 907
ESP_LOG_BUFFER_HEXDUMP (*C macro*), 908
ESP_LOG_DEBUG (*C++ enumerator*), 910
ESP_LOG_EARLY_IMPL (*C macro*), 909
esp_log_early_timestamp (*C++ function*), 907
ESP_LOG_ERROR (*C++ enumerator*), 910
ESP_LOG_INFO (*C++ enumerator*), 910
ESP_LOG_LEVEL (*C macro*), 909
ESP_LOG_LEVEL_LOCAL (*C macro*), 909
esp_log_level_set (*C++ function*), 906
esp_log_level_t (*C++ enum*), 910
ESP_LOG_NONE (*C++ enumerator*), 910
esp_log_set_vprintf (*C++ function*), 907
esp_log_system_timestamp (*C++ function*), 907
esp_log_timestamp (*C++ function*), 907
ESP_LOG_VERBOSE (*C++ enumerator*), 910
ESP_LOG_WARN (*C++ enumerator*), 910
esp_log_write (*C++ function*), 907
esp_log_writev (*C++ function*), 907
ESP_LOGD (*C macro*), 909
ESP_LOGE (*C macro*), 909
ESP_LOGI (*C macro*), 909
ESP_LOGV (*C macro*), 909
ESP_LOGW (*C macro*), 909
esp_mesh_allow_root_conflicts (*C++ function*), 139
esp_mesh_available_txupQ_num (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_connect (*C++ function*), 142
esp_mesh_deinit (*C++ function*), 131
esp_mesh_delete_group_id (*C++ function*), 139
esp_mesh_disable_ps (*C++ function*), 143
esp_mesh_disconnect (*C++ function*), 142
esp_mesh_enable_ps (*C++ function*), 143
esp_mesh_fix_root (*C++ function*), 140
esp_mesh_flush_scan_result (*C++ function*), 142
esp_mesh_flush_upstream_packets (*C++ function*), 142
esp_mesh_get_active_duty_cycle (*C++ function*), 144
esp_mesh_get_ap_assoc_expire (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_get_ap_authmode (*C++ function*), 136
esp_mesh_get_ap_connections (*C++ function*), 136
esp_mesh_get_capacity_num (*C++ function*), 140
esp_mesh_get_config (*C++ function*), 134
esp_mesh_get_group_list (*C++ function*), 139
esp_mesh_get_group_num (*C++ function*), 139
esp_mesh_get_id (*C++ function*), 135
esp_mesh_get_ie_crypto_key (*C++ function*), 140
esp_mesh_get_layer (*C++ function*), 136
esp_mesh_get_max_layer (*C++ function*), 135
esp_mesh_get_network_duty_cycle (*C++ function*), 145
esp_mesh_get_parent_bssid (*C++ function*), 136
esp_mesh_get_root_healing_delay (*C++ function*), 140
esp_mesh_get_router (*C++ function*), 134
esp_mesh_get_router_bssid (*C++ function*), 143
esp_mesh_get_routing_table (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_get_routing_table_size (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_get_running_active_duty_cycle (*C++ function*), 145
esp_mesh_get_rx_pending (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_get_self_organized (*C++ function*), 137
esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_list (*C++ function*), 142
esp_mesh_get_subnet_nodes_num (*C++ function*), 142
esp_mesh_get_topology (*C++ function*), 143
esp_mesh_get_total_node_num (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_get_tsf_time (*C++ function*), 143
esp_mesh_get_tx_pending (*C++ function*), 138
esp_mesh_get_type (*C++ function*), 135
esp_mesh_get_vote_percentage (*C++ function*), 137
esp_mesh_get_xon_qsize (*C++ function*), 139
esp_mesh_init (*C++ function*), 131

esp_mesh_is_device_active (C++ function), 143
esp_mesh_is_my_group (C++ function), 140
esp_mesh_is_ps_enabled (C++ function), 143
esp_mesh_is_root (C++ function), 136
esp_mesh_is_root_conflicts_allowed (C++ function), 139
esp_mesh_is_root_fixed (C++ function), 141
esp_mesh_post_toDS_state (C++ function), 138
esp_mesh_ps_duty_signaling (C++ function), 145
esp_mesh_recv (C++ function), 132
esp_mesh_recv_toDS (C++ function), 133
esp_mesh_scan_get_ap_ie_len (C++ function), 141
esp_mesh_scan_get_ap_record (C++ function), 141
esp_mesh_send (C++ function), 131
esp_mesh_set_active_duty_cycle (C++ function), 143
esp_mesh_set_ap_assoc_expire (C++ function), 137
esp_mesh_set_ap_authmode (C++ function), 135
esp_mesh_set_ap_connections (C++ function), 136
esp_mesh_set_ap_password (C++ function), 135
esp_mesh_set_capacity_num (C++ function), 140
esp_mesh_set_config (C++ function), 133
esp_mesh_set_group_id (C++ function), 139
esp_mesh_set_id (C++ function), 134
esp_mesh_set_ie_crypto_funcs (C++ function), 140
esp_mesh_set_ie_crypto_key (C++ function), 140
esp_mesh_set_max_layer (C++ function), 135
esp_mesh_set_network_duty_cycle (C++ function), 144
esp_mesh_set_parent (C++ function), 141
esp_mesh_set_root_healing_delay (C++ function), 140
esp_mesh_set_router (C++ function), 134
esp_mesh_set_self_organized (C++ function), 136
esp_mesh_set_topology (C++ function), 143
esp_mesh_set_type (C++ function), 135
esp_mesh_set_vote_percentage (C++ function), 137
esp_mesh_set_xon_qsize (C++ function), 139
esp_mesh_start (C++ function), 131
esp_mesh_stop (C++ function), 131
esp_mesh_switch_channel (C++ function), 142
esp_mesh_topology_t (C++ enum), 157
esp_mesh_waive_root (C++ function), 137
esp_mqtt_client_config_t (C++ class), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::alpn_protos (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::buffer_size (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::cert_len (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::cert_pem (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::client_cert_len (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::client_cert_pem (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::client_id (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::client_key_len (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::client_key_pem (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::clientkey_password (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::clientkey_password_len (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::disable_auto_reconnect (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::disable_clean_session (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::disable_keepalive (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::ds_data (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::event_handle (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::event_loop_handle (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::host (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::keepalive (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::lwt_msg (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::lwt_msg_len (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::lwt_qos (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::lwt_retain (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::lwt_topic (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::network_timeout_ms (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::out_buffer_size (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::password (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::port (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::protocol_ver (C++ member), 461

esp_mqtt_client_config_t::psk_hint_key (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::reconnect_timeout_ms (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::refresh_connection_after_ms (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::skip_cert_common_name_check (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::task_prio (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::task_stack (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::transport (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::uri (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::use_global_ca_store (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::use_secure_element (C++ member), 461
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::user_context (C++ member), 460
esp_mqtt_client_config_t::username (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_client_destroy (C++ function), 457
esp_mqtt_client_disconnect (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_enqueue (C++ function), 457
esp_mqtt_client_get_outbox_size (C++ function), 458
esp_mqtt_client_handle_t (C++ type), 461
esp_mqtt_client_init (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_publish (C++ function), 457
esp_mqtt_client_reconnect (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_register_event (C++ function), 458
esp_mqtt_client_set_uri (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_start (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_stop (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_subscribe (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_client_unsubscribe (C++ function), 456
esp_mqtt_connect_return_code_t (C++ enum), 463
esp_mqtt_error_codes (C++ class), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes::connect_return_code (C++ member), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes::error_type (C++ member), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_tls_cert_verify_flags (C++ member), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_tls_last_esp_err (C++ member), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_tls_stack_err (C++ member), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes::esp_transport_sock_errno (C++ member), 458
esp_mqtt_error_codes_t (C++ type), 461
esp_mqtt_error_type_t (C++ enum), 463
esp_mqtt_event_handle_t (C++ type), 462
esp_mqtt_event_id_t (C++ enum), 462
esp_mqtt_event_t (C++ class), 458
esp_mqtt_event_t::client (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::current_data_offset (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::data (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::data_len (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::error_handle (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::event_id (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::msg_id (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::session_present (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::topic (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::topic_len (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::total_data_len (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_event_t::user_context (C++ member), 459
esp_mqtt_protocol_ver_t (C++ enum), 463
esp_mqtt_set_config (C++ function), 457
esp_mqtt_transport_t (C++ enum), 463
esp_netif_action_connected (C++ function), 182
esp_netif_action_disconnected (C++ function), 182
esp_netif_action_got_ip (C++ function), 183
esp_netif_action_start (C++ function), 182
esp_netif_action_stop (C++ function), 182
esp_netif_attach (C++ function), 181
esp_netif_attach_wifi_ap (C++ function), 190
esp_netif_attach_wifi_station (C++ function), 190
esp_netif_create_default_wifi_ap (C++ function), 191
esp_netif_create_default_wifi_mesh_netifs (C++ function), 191
esp_netif_create_default_wifi_sta (C++ function), 191
esp_netif_create_ip6_linklocal (C++ function), 187
esp_netif_create_wifi (C++ function), 191
esp_netif_deinit (C++ function), 181
esp_netif_destroy (C++ function), 181
esp_netif_dhcpc_get_status (C++ function), 186
esp_netif_dhcpc_option (C++ function), 185
esp_netif_dhcpc_start (C++ function), 186

esp_netif_dhcpc_stop (*C++ function*), 186
esp_netif_dhcps_get_status (*C++ function*), 186
esp_netif_dhcps_option (*C++ function*), 185
esp_netif_dhcps_start (*C++ function*), 186
esp_netif_dhcps_stop (*C++ function*), 186
esp_netif_free_rx_buffer (*C++ function*), 194
esp_netif_get_all_ip6 (*C++ function*), 188
esp_netif_get_desc (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_get_dns_info (*C++ function*), 187
esp_netif_get_event_id (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_get_flags (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_get_handle_from_ifkey (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_get_handle_from_netif_impl (*C++ function*), 194
esp_netif_get_hostname (*C++ function*), 183
esp_netif_get_ifkey (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_get_io_driver (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_get_ip6_global (*C++ function*), 188
esp_netif_get_ip6_linklocal (*C++ function*), 187
esp_netif_get_ip_info (*C++ function*), 184
esp_netif_get_mac (*C++ function*), 183
esp_netif_get_netif_impl (*C++ function*), 194
esp_netif_get_netif_impl_index (*C++ function*), 185
esp_netif_get_netif_impl_name (*C++ function*), 185
esp_netif_get_nr_of_ifs (*C++ function*), 190
esp_netif_get_old_ip_info (*C++ function*), 184
esp_netif_get_route_prio (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_init (*C++ function*), 181
esp_netif_is_netif_up (*C++ function*), 184
esp_netif_netstack_buf_free (*C++ function*), 190
esp_netif_netstack_buf_ref (*C++ function*), 190
esp_netif_new (*C++ function*), 181
esp_netif_next (*C++ function*), 190
esp_netif_receive (*C++ function*), 182
esp_netif_set_dns_info (*C++ function*), 187
esp_netif_set_driver_config (*C++ function*), 181
esp_netif_set_hostname (*C++ function*), 183
esp_netif_set_ip4_addr (*C++ function*), 188
esp_netif_set_ip_info (*C++ function*), 184
esp_netif_set_mac (*C++ function*), 183
esp_netif_set_old_ip_info (*C++ function*), 184
esp_netif_str_to_ip4 (*C++ function*), 188
esp_netif_str_to_ip6 (*C++ function*), 189
esp_netif_transmit (*C++ function*), 194
esp_netif_transmit_wrap (*C++ function*), 194
esp_now_add_peer (*C++ function*), 122
esp_now_deinit (*C++ function*), 121
esp_now_del_peer (*C++ function*), 122
ESP_NOW_ETH_ALEN (*C macro*), 124
esp_now_fetch_peer (*C++ function*), 122
esp_now_get_peer (*C++ function*), 122
esp_now_get_peer_num (*C++ function*), 123
esp_now_get_version (*C++ function*), 121
esp_now_init (*C++ function*), 120
esp_now_is_peer_exist (*C++ function*), 123
ESP_NOW_KEY_LEN (*C macro*), 124
ESP_NOW_MAX_DATA_LEN (*C macro*), 124
ESP_NOW_MAX_ENCRYPT_PEER_NUM (*C macro*), 124
ESP_NOW_MAX_TOTAL_PEER_NUM (*C macro*), 124
esp_now_mod_peer (*C++ function*), 122
esp_now_peer_info (*C++ class*), 123
esp_now_peer_info::channel (*C++ member*), 124
esp_now_peer_info::encrypt (*C++ member*), 124
esp_now_peer_info::ifidx (*C++ member*), 124
esp_now_peer_info::lmk (*C++ member*), 123
esp_now_peer_info::peer_addr (*C++ member*), 123
esp_now_peer_info::priv (*C++ member*), 124
esp_now_peer_info_t (*C++ type*), 125
esp_now_peer_num (*C++ class*), 124
esp_now_peer_num::encrypt_num (*C++ member*), 124
esp_now_peer_num::total_num (*C++ member*), 124
esp_now_peer_num_t (*C++ type*), 125
esp_now_recv_cb_t (*C++ type*), 125
esp_now_register_recv_cb (*C++ function*), 121
esp_now_register_send_cb (*C++ function*), 121
esp_now_send (*C++ function*), 121
esp_now_send_cb_t (*C++ type*), 125
ESP_NOW_SEND_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 125
esp_now_send_status_t (*C++ enum*), 125
ESP_NOW_SEND_SUCCESS (*C++ enumerator*), 125
esp_now_set_pmk (*C++ function*), 123
esp_now_set_wake_window (*C++ function*), 123
esp_now_unregister_recv_cb (*C++ function*), 121
esp_now_unregister_send_cb (*C++ function*), 121
ESP_OK (*C macro*), 740
ESP_OK_EFUSE_CNT (*C macro*), 738
esp_ota_abort (*C++ function*), 922
esp_ota_begin (*C++ function*), 920
esp_ota_check_rollback_is_possible (*C++ function*), 924
esp_ota_end (*C++ function*), 922

esp_ota_erase_last_boot_app_partition (C++ function), 924
esp_ota_get_app_description (C++ function), 920
esp_ota_get_app_elf_sha256 (C++ function), 920
esp_ota_get_boot_partition (C++ function), 922
esp_ota_get_last_invalid_partition (C++ function), 923
esp_ota_get_next_update_partition (C++ function), 923
esp_ota_get_partition_description (C++ function), 923
esp_ota_get_running_partition (C++ function), 923
esp_ota_get_state_partition (C++ function), 924
esp_ota_handle_t (C++ type), 925
esp_ota_mark_app_invalid_rollback_and_reboot (C++ function), 923
esp_ota_mark_app_valid_cancel_rollback (C++ function), 923
esp_ota_set_boot_partition (C++ function), 922
esp_ota_write (C++ function), 921
esp_ota_write_with_offset (C++ function), 921
esp_partition_check_identity (C++ function), 676
esp_partition_deregister_external (C++ function), 677
esp_partition_erase_range (C++ function), 675
esp_partition_find (C++ function), 673
esp_partition_find_first (C++ function), 673
esp_partition_get (C++ function), 673
esp_partition_get_sha256 (C++ function), 676
esp_partition_iterator_release (C++ function), 673
esp_partition_iterator_t (C++ type), 677
esp_partition_mmap (C++ function), 675
esp_partition_next (C++ function), 673
esp_partition_read (C++ function), 674
esp_partition_read_raw (C++ function), 674
esp_partition_register_external (C++ function), 676
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_ANY (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_FACTORY (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_0 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_1 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_10 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_11 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_12 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_13 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_14 (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_15 (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_2 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_3 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_4 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_5 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_6 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_7 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_8 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_9 (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MAX (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_OTA_MIN (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_APP_TEST (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_COREDUMP (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_EFUSE_EM (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_ESPHTTPD (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_FAT (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_NVS_KEYS (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_OTA (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_PHY (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_DATA_SPIFFS (C++ enumerator), 679
ESP_PARTITION_SUBTYPE_OTA (C macro), 677
esp_partition_subtype_t (C++ enum), 678
esp_partition_t (C++ class), 677
esp_partition_t::address (C++ member), 677
esp_partition_t::encrypted (C++ member), 677

esp_partition_t::flash_chip (C++ member), 677
esp_partition_t::label (C++ member), 677
esp_partition_t::size (C++ member), 677
esp_partition_t::subtype (C++ member), 677
esp_partition_t::type (C++ member), 677
ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_APP (C++ enumerator), 678
ESP_PARTITION_TYPE_DATA (C++ enumerator), 678
esp_partition_type_t (C++ enum), 678
esp_partition_verify (C++ function), 674
esp_partition_write (C++ function), 674
esp_partition_write_raw (C++ function), 675
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_CPU (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_MAX (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_FAST_MEM (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_PERIPH (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_RTC_SLOW_MEM (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_VDDSDIO (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_DOMAIN_XTAL (C++ enumerator), 940
ESP_PD_OPTION_AUTO (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_PD_OPTION_OFF (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_PD_OPTION_ON (C++ enumerator), 941
esp_ping_callbacks_t (C++ class), 541
esp_ping_callbacks_t::cb_args (C++ member), 541
esp_ping_callbacks_t::on_ping_end (C++ member), 541
esp_ping_callbacks_t::on_ping_success (C++ member), 541
esp_ping_callbacks_t::on_ping_timeout (C++ member), 541
esp_ping_config_t (C++ class), 541
esp_ping_config_t::count (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::data_size (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::interface (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::interval_ms (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::target_addr (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::task_prio (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::task_stack_size (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::timeout_ms (C++ member), 542
esp_ping_config_t::tos (C++ member), 542
ESP_PING_COUNT_INFINITE (C macro), 542
ESP_PING_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 542
esp_ping_delete_session (C++ function), 540
esp_ping_get_profile (C++ function), 541
esp_ping_handle_t (C++ type), 542
esp_ping_new_session (C++ function), 540
ESP_PING_PROF_DURATION (C++ enumerator), 543
ESP_PING_PROF_IPADDR (C++ enumerator), 542
ESP_PING_PROF_REPLY (C++ enumerator), 542
ESP_PING_PROF_REQUEST (C++ enumerator), 542
ESP_PING_PROF_SEQNO (C++ enumerator), 542
ESP_PING_PROF_SIZE (C++ enumerator), 542
ESP_PING_PROF_TIMEGAP (C++ enumerator), 542
ESP_PING_PROF_TTL (C++ enumerator), 542
esp_ping_profile_t (C++ enum), 542
esp_ping_start (C++ function), 541
esp_ping_stop (C++ function), 541
ESP_PM_APB_FREQ_MAX (C++ enumerator), 932
esp_pm_config_esp32s2_t (C++ class), 932
esp_pm_config_esp32s2_t::light_sleep_enable (C++ member), 932
esp_pm_config_esp32s2_t::max_freq_mhz (C++ member), 932
esp_pm_config_esp32s2_t::min_freq_mhz (C++ member), 932
esp_pm_configure (C++ function), 930
ESP_PM_CPU_FREQ_MAX (C++ enumerator), 932
esp_pm_dump_locks (C++ function), 931
esp_pm_get_configuration (C++ function), 930
esp_pm_lock_acquire (C++ function), 931
esp_pm_lock_create (C++ function), 930
esp_pm_lock_delete (C++ function), 931
esp_pm_lock_handle_t (C++ type), 932
esp_pm_lock_release (C++ function), 931
esp_pm_lock_type_t (C++ enum), 932
ESP_PM_NO_LIGHT_SLEEP (C++ enumerator), 932
esp_pthread_cfg_t (C++ class), 746
esp_pthread_cfg_t::inherit_cfg (C++ member), 746
esp_pthread_cfg_t::pin_to_core (C++ member), 746
esp_pthread_cfg_t::prio (C++ member), 746
esp_pthread_cfg_t::stack_size (C++ member), 746
esp_pthread_cfg_t::thread_name (C++ member), 746
esp_pthread_get_cfg (C++ function), 746
esp_pthread_get_default_config (C++ function), 745
esp_pthread_init (C++ function), 746
esp_pthread_set_cfg (C++ function), 745
esp_register_freertos_idle_hook (C++ function), 870
esp_register_freertos_idle_hook_for_cpu (C++ function), 870
esp_register_freertos_tick_hook (C++ function), 871
esp_register_freertos_tick_hook_for_cpu (C++ function), 871

esp_register_shutdown_handler (C++ function), 913
esp_reset_reason (C++ function), 913
esp_reset_reason_t (C++ enum), 914
esp_restart (C++ function), 913
esp_rom_delay_us (C++ function), 949
esp_rom_install_channel_putc (C++ function), 949
esp_rom_install_uart_printf (C++ function), 949
esp_rom_printf (C++ function), 949
ESP_RST_BROWNOUT (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_DEEPSLEEP (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_EXT (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_INT_WDT (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_PANIC (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_POWERON (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_SDIO (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_SW (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_TASK_WDT (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 914
ESP_RST_WDT (C++ enumerator), 914
esp_set_deep_sleep_wake_stub (C++ function), 939
esp_sleep_config_gpio_isolate (C++ function), 940
esp_sleep_disable_wakeup_source (C++ function), 936
esp_sleep_enable_ext0_wakeup (C++ function), 937
esp_sleep_enable_ext1_wakeup (C++ function), 937
esp_sleep_enable_gpio_switch (C++ function), 940
esp_sleep_enable_gpio_wakeup (C++ function), 938
esp_sleep_enable_timer_wakeup (C++ function), 937
esp_sleep_enable_touchpad_wakeup (C++ function), 937
esp_sleep_enable_uart_wakeup (C++ function), 938
esp_sleep_enable_ulp_wakeup (C++ function), 936
esp_sleep_enable_wifi_wakeup (C++ function), 938
esp_sleep_ext1_wakeup_mode_t (C++ enum), 940
esp_sleep_get_ext1_wakeup_status (C++ function), 938
esp_sleep_get_touchpad_wakeup_status (C++ function), 937
esp_sleep_get_wakeup_cause (C++ function), 939
esp_sleep_is_valid_wakeup_gpio (C++ function), 937
esp_sleep_pd_config (C++ function), 939
esp_sleep_pd_domain_t (C++ enum), 940
esp_sleep_pd_option_t (C++ enum), 941
esp_sleep_source_t (C++ enum), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ALL (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_BT (C++ enumerator), 941
esp_sleep_wakeup_cause_t (C++ type), 940
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_COCPU_TRAP_TRIG (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT0 (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_EXT1 (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_GPIO (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TIMER (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_TOUCHPAD (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UART (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_ULP (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_UNDEFINED (C++ enumerator), 941
ESP_SLEEP_WAKEUP_WIFI (C++ enumerator), 941
esp_smartconfig_fast_mode (C++ function), 117
esp_smartconfig_get_rvd_data (C++ function), 117
esp_smartconfig_get_version (C++ function), 117
esp_smartconfig_set_type (C++ function), 117
esp_smartconfig_start (C++ function), 117
esp_smartconfig_stop (C++ function), 117
esp_spiffs_format (C++ function), 683
esp_spiffs_info (C++ function), 683
esp_spiffs_mounted (C++ function), 683
esp_system_abort (C++ function), 913
esp_sysview_flush (C++ function), 708
esp_sysview_heap_trace_alloc (C++ function), 708
esp_sysview_heap_trace_free (C++ function), 709
esp_sysview_heap_trace_start (C++ function), 708
esp_sysview_heap_trace_stop (C++ function), 708
esp_sysview_vprintf (C++ function), 708
esp_task_wdt_add (C++ function), 944
esp_task_wdt_deinit (C++ function), 944
esp_task_wdt_delete (C++ function), 944
esp_task_wdt_init (C++ function), 943
esp_task_wdt_reset (C++ function), 944
esp_task_wdt_status (C++ function), 944
esp_timer_cb_t (C++ type), 898
esp_timer_create (C++ function), 896
esp_timer_create_args_t (C++ class), 897
esp_timer_create_args_t::arg (C++ member), 897
esp_timer_create_args_t::callback (C++ member), 897

esp_timer_create_args_t::dispatch_method (*C++ member*), 897
esp_timer_create_args_t::name (*C++ member*), 897
esp_timer_create_args_t::skip_unhandled_events (*C++ member*), 897
esp_timer_deinit (*C++ function*), 895
esp_timer_delete (*C++ function*), 896
esp_timer_dispatch_t (*C++ enum*), 898
esp_timer_dump (*C++ function*), 897
esp_timer_get_next_alarm (*C++ function*), 897
esp_timer_get_time (*C++ function*), 897
esp_timer_handle_t (*C++ type*), 898
esp_timer_init (*C++ function*), 895
ESP_TIMER_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 898
esp_timer_start_once (*C++ function*), 896
esp_timer_start_periodic (*C++ function*), 896
esp_timer_stop (*C++ function*), 896
ESP_TIMER_TASK (*C++ enumerator*), 898
esp_tls (*C++ class*), 472
esp_tls::cacert (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::cacert_ptr (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::clientcert (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::clientkey (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::conf (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::conn_state (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::ctr_drbg (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::entropy (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::error_handle (*C++ member*), 473
esp_tls::is_tls (*C++ member*), 473
esp_tls::read (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::role (*C++ member*), 473
esp_tls::rset (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::server_fd (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::sockfd (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::ssl (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::write (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls::wset (*C++ member*), 473
esp_tls_cfg (*C++ class*), 470
esp_tls_cfg::alpn_protos (*C++ member*), 470
esp_tls_cfg::cacert_buf (*C++ member*), 470
esp_tls_cfg::cacert_bytes (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::cacert_pem_buf (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::cacert_pem_bytes (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientcert_buf (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientcert_bytes (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientcert_pem_buf (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientcert_pem_bytes (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientkey_buf (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientkey_bytes (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientkey_password (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientkey_password_len (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientkey_pem_buf (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::clientkey_pem_bytes (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::common_name (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::crt_bundle_attach (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls_cfg::ds_data (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls_cfg::if_name (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls_cfg::is_plain_tcp (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls_cfg::keep_alive_cfg (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::non_block (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::psk_hint_key (*C++ member*), 472
esp_tls_cfg::skip_common_name (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::timeout_ms (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::use_global_ca_store (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg::use_secure_element (*C++ member*), 471
esp_tls_cfg_t (*C++ type*), 473
ESP_TLS_CLIENT (*C++ enumerator*), 473
esp_tls_conn_delete (*C++ function*), 468
esp_tls_conn_destroy (*C++ function*), 468
esp_tls_conn_http_new (*C++ function*), 467
esp_tls_conn_http_new_async (*C++ function*), 467
esp_tls_conn_new (*C++ function*), 466
esp_tls_conn_new_async (*C++ function*), 467
esp_tls_conn_new_sync (*C++ function*), 466
esp_tls_conn_read (*C++ function*), 468
esp_tls_conn_state (*C++ enum*), 473
esp_tls_conn_state_t (*C++ type*), 473
esp_tls_conn_write (*C++ function*), 467
ESP_TLS_CONNECTING (*C++ enumerator*), 473
ESP_TLS_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 473
ESP_TLS_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 473
esp_tls_free_global_ca_store (*C++ function*), 469
esp_tls_get_and_clear_error_type (*C++ function*), 469
esp_tls_get_and_clear_last_error (*C++ function*), 469
esp_tls_get_bytes_avail (*C++ function*), 468
esp_tls_get_conn_sockfd (*C++ function*), 468
esp_tls_get_global_ca_store (*C++ func-*

tion), 469
ESP_TLS_HANDSHAKE (C++ enumerator), 473
ESP_TLS_INIT (C++ enumerator), 473
esp_tls_init (C++ function), 466
esp_tls_init_global_ca_store (C++ function), 468
esp_tls_role (C++ enum), 473
esp_tls_role_t (C++ type), 473
ESP_TLS_SERVER (C++ enumerator), 473
esp_tls_set_global_ca_store (C++ function), 469
esp_tls_t (C++ type), 473
esp_tusb_deinit_console (C++ function), 451
esp_tusb_init_console (C++ function), 451
esp_unregister_shutdown_handler (C++ function), 913
esp_vendor_ie_cb_t (C++ type), 95
esp_vfs_close (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_rx_line_endings (C++ function), 695
esp_vfs_dev_uart_port_set_tx_line_endings (C++ function), 695
esp_vfs_dev_uart_register (C++ function), 695
esp_vfs_dev_uart_set_rx_line_endings (C++ function), 695
esp_vfs_dev_uart_set_tx_line_endings (C++ function), 695
esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_driver (C++ function), 696
esp_vfs_dev_uart_use_nonblocking (C++ function), 695
esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t (C++ class), 616, 697
esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t::allocation_unit_size (C++ member), 616, 697
esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t::format_if_mount_failed (C++ member), 616, 697
esp_vfs_fat_mount_config_t::max_files (C++ member), 616, 697
esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_mount (C++ function), 617
esp_vfs_fat_rawflash_unmount (C++ function), 617
esp_vfs_fat_register (C++ function), 614
esp_vfs_fat_sdcard_unmount (C++ function), 616
esp_vfs_fat_sdmmc_mount (C++ function), 615
esp_vfs_fat_sdspi_mount (C++ function), 615
esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_mount (C++ function), 697
esp_vfs_fat_spiflash_unmount (C++ function), 698
esp_vfs_fat_unregister_path (C++ function), 614
ESP_VFS_FLAG_CONTEXT_PTR (C macro), 694
ESP_VFS_FLAG_DEFAULT (C macro), 694
esp_vfs_fstat (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_id_t (C++ type), 694
esp_vfs_link (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_lseek (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_open (C++ function), 688
ESP_VFS_PATH_MAX (C macro), 694
esp_vfs_pread (C++ function), 690
esp_vfs_pwrite (C++ function), 690
esp_vfs_read (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_register (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_register_fd (C++ function), 689
esp_vfs_register_fd_range (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_register_with_id (C++ function), 689
esp_vfs_rename (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_select (C++ function), 689
esp_vfs_select_sem_t (C++ class), 690
esp_vfs_select_sem_t::is_sem_local (C++ member), 690
esp_vfs_select_sem_t::sem (C++ member), 690
esp_vfs_select_triggered (C++ function), 690
esp_vfs_select_triggered_isr (C++ function), 690
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t (C++ class), 684
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::base_path (C++ member), 684
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::format_if_mount_failed (C++ member), 684
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::max_files (C++ member), 684
esp_vfs_spiffs_conf_t::partition_label (C++ member), 684
esp_vfs_spiffs_register (C++ function), 683
esp_vfs_spiffs_unregister (C++ function), 683
esp_vfs_stat (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_t (C++ class), 691
esp_vfs_t::access (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::access_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::close (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::close_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::closedir (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::closedir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::end_select (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::fcntl (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::fcntl_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::flags (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::fstat (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::fstat_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::fsync (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::fsync_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::get_socket_select_semaphore (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::ioctl (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::ioctl_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::link (C++ member), 692

esp_vfs_t::link_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::lseek (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::lseek_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::mkdir (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::mkdir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::open (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::open_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::opendir (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::opendir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::pread (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::pread_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::pwrite (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::pwrite_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::read (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::read_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::readdir (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::readdir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::readdir_r (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::readdir_r_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::rename (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::rename_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::rmdir (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::rmdir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::seekdir (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::seekdir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::socket_select (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::start_select (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::stat (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::stat_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::stop_socket_select (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::stop_socket_select_isr (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::tcdrain (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcdrain_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcflow (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcflow_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcflush (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcflush_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcgetattr (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcgetattr_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcgetsid (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::tcgetsid_p (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::tcsendbreak (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::tcsendbreak_p (C++ member), 694
esp_vfs_t::tcsetattr (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::tcsetattr_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::telldir (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::telldir_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::truncate (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::truncate_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::unlink (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::unlink_p (C++ member), 692
esp_vfs_t::utime (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::utime_p (C++ member), 693
esp_vfs_t::write (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_t::write_p (C++ member), 691
esp_vfs_tusb_cdc_register (C++ function), 452
esp_vfs_tusb_cdc_unregister (C++ function), 452
esp_vfs_unlink (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_unregister (C++ function), 689
esp_vfs_unregister_fd (C++ function), 689
esp_vfs_utime (C++ function), 688
esp_vfs_write (C++ function), 688
esp_wake_deep_sleep (C++ function), 939
esp_websocket_client_close (C++ function), 567
esp_websocket_client_close_with_code (C++ function), 568
esp_websocket_client_config_t (C++ class), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::buffer_size (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::cert_len (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::cert_pem (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::client_cert (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::client_cert_len (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::client_key (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::client_key_len (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::disable_auto_recon (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::disable_pingpong_d (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::headers (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::host (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::if_name (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::keep_alive_count (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::keep_alive_enable (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::keep_alive_idle (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::keep_alive_interva (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::password (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::path (C++ member), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::ping_interval_sec (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::pingpong_timeout_s (C++ member), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::port

(C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::skip_cert_common_name_check (C++ *member*), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::subprotocol (C++ *member*), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::task_prio (C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::task_stack (C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::transport (C++ *member*), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::uri (C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::use_global_ca_store (C++ *member*), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::user_agent (C++ *member*), 570
esp_websocket_client_config_t::user_context (C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_client_config_t::username (C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_client_destroy (C++ *function*), 566
esp_websocket_client_handle_t (C++ *type*), 570
esp_websocket_client_init (C++ *function*), 566
esp_websocket_client_is_connected (C++ *function*), 568
esp_websocket_client_send (C++ *function*), 567
esp_websocket_client_send_bin (C++ *function*), 567
esp_websocket_client_send_text (C++ *function*), 567
esp_websocket_client_set_uri (C++ *function*), 566
esp_websocket_client_start (C++ *function*), 566
esp_websocket_client_stop (C++ *function*), 566
esp_websocket_event_data_t (C++ *class*), 568
esp_websocket_event_data_t::client (C++ *member*), 568
esp_websocket_event_data_t::data_len (C++ *member*), 568
esp_websocket_event_data_t::data_ptr (C++ *member*), 568
esp_websocket_event_data_t::op_code (C++ *member*), 568
esp_websocket_event_data_t::payload_len (C++ *member*), 568
esp_websocket_event_data_t::payload_offset (C++ *member*), 569
esp_websocket_event_data_t::user_context (C++ *member*), 568
esp_websocket_event_id_t (C++ *enum*), 570
esp_websocket_register_events (C++ *function*), 568
esp_websocket_transport_t (C++ *enum*), 571
esp_wifi_80211_tx (C++ *function*), 89
esp_wifi_ap_get_sta_aid (C++ *function*), 87
esp_wifi_ap_get_sta_list (C++ *function*), 87
esp_wifi_clear_default_wifi_driver_and_handlers (C++ *function*), 191
esp_wifi_clear_fast_connect (C++ *function*), 81
esp_wifi_config_11b_rate (C++ *function*), 91
esp_wifi_config_espnow_rate (C++ *function*), 92
esp_wifi_connect (C++ *function*), 81
esp_wifi_deauth_sta (C++ *function*), 81
esp_wifi_deinit (C++ *function*), 80
esp_wifi_disconnect (C++ *function*), 81
esp_wifi_ftm_initiate_session (C++ *function*), 91
esp_wifi_get_ant (C++ *function*), 90
esp_wifi_get_ant_gpio (C++ *function*), 90
esp_wifi_get_bandwidth (C++ *function*), 83
esp_wifi_get_channel (C++ *function*), 84
esp_wifi_get_config (C++ *function*), 87
esp_wifi_get_country (C++ *function*), 84
esp_wifi_get_event_mask (C++ *function*), 89
esp_wifi_get_inactive_time (C++ *function*), 91
esp_wifi_get_mac (C++ *function*), 85
esp_wifi_get_max_tx_power (C++ *function*), 88
esp_wifi_get_mode (C++ *function*), 80
esp_wifi_get_promiscuous (C++ *function*), 85
esp_wifi_get_promiscuous_ctrl_filter (C++ *function*), 86
esp_wifi_get_promiscuous_filter (C++ *function*), 86
esp_wifi_get_protocol (C++ *function*), 83
esp_wifi_get_ps (C++ *function*), 83
esp_wifi_get_tsf_time (C++ *function*), 90
esp_wifi_init (C++ *function*), 79
ESP_WIFI_MAX_CONN_NUM (C *macro*), 107
esp_wifi_restore (C++ *function*), 80
esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_num (C++ *function*), 82
esp_wifi_scan_get_ap_records (C++ *function*), 82
esp_wifi_scan_start (C++ *function*), 81
esp_wifi_scan_stop (C++ *function*), 82
esp_wifi_set_ant (C++ *function*), 90
esp_wifi_set_ant_gpio (C++ *function*), 90
esp_wifi_set_bandwidth (C++ *function*), 83
esp_wifi_set_channel (C++ *function*), 84
esp_wifi_set_config (C++ *function*), 86
esp_wifi_set_connectionless_wake_interval (C++ *function*), 92
esp_wifi_set_country (C++ *function*), 84
esp_wifi_set_csi (C++ *function*), 90
esp_wifi_set_csi_config (C++ *function*), 89

esp_wifi_set_csi_rx_cb (C++ function), 89
esp_wifi_set_default_wifi_ap_handlers (C++ function), 190
esp_wifi_set_default_wifi_sta_handlers (C++ function), 190
esp_wifi_set_event_mask (C++ function), 88
esp_wifi_set_inactive_time (C++ function), 90
esp_wifi_set_mac (C++ function), 85
esp_wifi_set_max_tx_power (C++ function), 88
esp_wifi_set_mode (C++ function), 80
esp_wifi_set_promiscuous (C++ function), 85
esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_ctrl_filter (C++ function), 86
esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_filter (C++ function), 86
esp_wifi_set_promiscuous_rx_cb (C++ function), 85
esp_wifi_set_protocol (C++ function), 83
esp_wifi_set_ps (C++ function), 82
esp_wifi_set_rssi_threshold (C++ function), 91
esp_wifi_set_storage (C++ function), 87
esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie (C++ function), 87
esp_wifi_set_vendor_ie_cb (C++ function), 88
esp_wifi_sta_get_ap_info (C++ function), 82
esp_wifi_start (C++ function), 80
esp_wifi_statis_dump (C++ function), 91
esp_wifi_stop (C++ function), 80
essl_clear_intr (C++ function), 577
essl_get_intr (C++ function), 578
essl_get_intr_ena (C++ function), 578
essl_get_packet (C++ function), 577
essl_get_rx_data_size (C++ function), 576
essl_get_tx_buffer_num (C++ function), 576
essl_handle_t (C++ type), 579
essl_init (C++ function), 576
essl_read_reg (C++ function), 577
essl_reset_cnt (C++ function), 576
essl_sdio_config_t (C++ class), 579
essl_sdio_config_t::card (C++ member), 579
essl_sdio_config_t::recv_buffer_size (C++ member), 579
essl_sdio_deinit_dev (C++ function), 579
essl_sdio_init_dev (C++ function), 579
essl_send_packet (C++ function), 576
essl_send_slave_intr (C++ function), 578
essl_set_intr_ena (C++ function), 578
essl_spi_rdbuf (C++ function), 579
essl_spi_rddma (C++ function), 580
essl_spi_rddma_done (C++ function), 580
essl_spi_rddma_seg (C++ function), 580
essl_spi_wrbuf (C++ function), 580
essl_spi_wrdma (C++ function), 580
essl_spi_wrdma_done (C++ function), 581
essl_spi_wrdma_seg (C++ function), 581
essl_wait_for_ready (C++ function), 576
essl_wait_int (C++ function), 577
essl_write_reg (C++ function), 577
eStandardSleep (C++ enumerator), 785
eSuspended (C++ enumerator), 785
eTaskGetState (C++ function), 769
eTaskState (C++ enum), 785
ETH_CMD_G_DUPLEX_MODE (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_G_MAC_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_G_PHY_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_G_SPEED (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_S_FLOW_CTRL (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_S_MAC_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_S_PHY_ADDR (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CMD_S_PROMISCUOUS (C++ enumerator), 169
ETH_CRC_LEN (C macro), 168
ETH_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 167
ETH_DUPLEX_FULL (C++ enumerator), 170
ETH_DUPLEX_HALF (C++ enumerator), 170
eth_duplex_t (C++ enum), 170
eth_event_t (C++ enum), 170
ETH_HEADER_LEN (C macro), 168
ETH_JUMBO_FRAME_PAYLOAD_LEN (C macro), 169
ETH_LINK_DOWN (C++ enumerator), 170
eth_link_t (C++ enum), 170
ETH_LINK_UP (C++ enumerator), 170
eth_mac_config_t (C++ class), 174
eth_mac_config_t::flags (C++ member), 174
eth_mac_config_t::rx_task_prio (C++ member), 174
eth_mac_config_t::rx_task_stack_size (C++ member), 174
eth_mac_config_t::smi_mdc_gpio_num (C++ member), 174
eth_mac_config_t::smi_mdio_gpio_num (C++ member), 174
eth_mac_config_t::sw_reset_timeout_ms (C++ member), 174
ETH_MAC_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 174
ETH_MAC_FLAG_PIN_TO_CORE (C macro), 174
ETH_MAC_FLAG_WORK_WITH_CACHE_DISABLE (C macro), 174
ETH_MAX_PACKET_SIZE (C macro), 169
ETH_MAX_PAYLOAD_LEN (C macro), 168
ETH_MIN_PACKET_SIZE (C macro), 169
ETH_MIN_PAYLOAD_LEN (C macro), 168
eth_phy_config_t (C++ class), 177
eth_phy_config_t::autonego_timeout_ms (C++ member), 177
eth_phy_config_t::phy_addr (C++ member), 177
eth_phy_config_t::reset_gpio_num (C++ member), 177
eth_phy_config_t::reset_timeout_ms (C++ member), 177
ETH_PHY_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 177

ETH_SPEED_100M (*C++ enumerator*), 170
ETH_SPEED_10M (*C++ enumerator*), 170
eth_speed_t (*C++ enum*), 170
ETH_STATE_DEINIT (*C++ enumerator*), 169
ETH_STATE_DUPLEX (*C++ enumerator*), 169
ETH_STATE_LINK (*C++ enumerator*), 169
ETH_STATE_LLINIT (*C++ enumerator*), 169
ETH_STATE_PAUSE (*C++ enumerator*), 169
ETH_STATE_SPEED (*C++ enumerator*), 169
ETH_VLAN_TAG_LEN (*C macro*), 168
ETHERNET_EVENT_CONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 170
ETHERNET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 170
ETHERNET_EVENT_START (*C++ enumerator*), 170
ETHERNET_EVENT_STOP (*C++ enumerator*), 170
ETS_INTERNAL_INTR_SOURCE_OFF (*C macro*), 904
ETS_INTERNAL_PROFILING_INTR_SOURCE (*C macro*), 904
ETS_INTERNAL_SW0_INTR_SOURCE (*C macro*), 904
ETS_INTERNAL_SW1_INTR_SOURCE (*C macro*), 904
ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER0_INTR_SOURCE (*C macro*), 904
ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER1_INTR_SOURCE (*C macro*), 904
ETS_INTERNAL_TIMER2_INTR_SOURCE (*C macro*), 904
EventBits_t (*C++ type*), 840
EventGroupHandle_t (*C++ type*), 840

F

ff_diskio_impl_t (*C++ class*), 618
ff_diskio_impl_t::init (*C++ member*), 618
ff_diskio_impl_t::ioctl (*C++ member*), 618
ff_diskio_impl_t::read (*C++ member*), 618
ff_diskio_impl_t::status (*C++ member*), 618
ff_diskio_impl_t::write (*C++ member*), 618
ff_diskio_register (*C++ function*), 617
ff_diskio_register_raw_partition (*C++ function*), 618
ff_diskio_register_sdmmc (*C++ function*), 618
ff_diskio_register_wl_partition (*C++ function*), 618
FTM_STATUS_CONF_REJECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 116
FTM_STATUS_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 116
FTM_STATUS_NO_RESPONSE (*C++ enumerator*), 116
FTM_STATUS_SUCCESS (*C++ enumerator*), 116
FTM_STATUS_UNSUPPORTED (*C++ enumerator*), 116

G

gpio_config (*C++ function*), 232
gpio_config_t (*C++ class*), 238
gpio_config_t::intr_type (*C++ member*), 239
gpio_config_t::mode (*C++ member*), 238
gpio_config_t::pin_bit_mask (*C++ member*), 238
gpio_config_t::pull_down_en (*C++ member*), 238
gpio_config_t::pull_up_en (*C++ member*), 238
gpio_deep_sleep_hold_dis (*C++ function*), 237
gpio_deep_sleep_hold_en (*C++ function*), 237
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_DEFAULT (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_DRIVE_CAP_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 245
gpio_drive_cap_t (*C++ enum*), 245
GPIO_FLOATING (*C++ enumerator*), 245
gpio_force_hold_all (*C++ function*), 237
gpio_force_unhold_all (*C++ function*), 237
gpio_get_drive_capability (*C++ function*), 236
gpio_get_level (*C++ function*), 233
gpio_hold_dis (*C++ function*), 236
gpio_hold_en (*C++ function*), 236
gpio_install_isr_service (*C++ function*), 235
gpio_int_type_t (*C++ enum*), 244
GPIO_INTR_ANYEDGE (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_INTR_DISABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 244
gpio_intr_disable (*C++ function*), 233
gpio_intr_enable (*C++ function*), 233
GPIO_INTR_HIGH_LEVEL (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_INTR_LOW_LEVEL (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_INTR_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_INTR_NEGEDGE (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_INTR_POSEDGE (*C++ enumerator*), 244
gpio_iomux_in (*C++ function*), 237
gpio_iomux_out (*C++ function*), 237
GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO (*C macro*), 238
GPIO_IS_VALID_OUTPUT_GPIO (*C macro*), 238
gpio_isr_handle_t (*C++ type*), 238
gpio_isr_handler_add (*C++ function*), 235
gpio_isr_handler_remove (*C++ function*), 236
gpio_isr_register (*C++ function*), 234
gpio_isr_t (*C++ type*), 242
GPIO_MODE_DISABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_MODE_INPUT (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD (*C++ enumerator*), 244

GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD (*C++ enumerator*), 244
gpio_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 244
GPIO_NUM_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_10 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_11 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_12 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_13 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_14 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_15 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_16 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_17 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_18 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_19 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_20 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_21 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_26 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_27 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_28 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_29 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_30 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_31 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_32 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_33 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_34 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_35 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_36 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_37 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_38 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_39 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_40 (*C++ enumerator*), 243
GPIO_NUM_41 (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_42 (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_43 (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_44 (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_45 (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_46 (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_5 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_6 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_7 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_9 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_NUM_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 244
GPIO_NUM_NC (*C++ enumerator*), 242
gpio_num_t (*C++ enum*), 242
GPIO_PIN_COUNT (*C macro*), 238
GPIO_PIN_REG_0 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_PIN_REG_1 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_10 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_11 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_12 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_13 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_14 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_15 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_16 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_17 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_18 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_19 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_2 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_20 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_21 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_22 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_23 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_24 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_25 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_26 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_27 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_28 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_29 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_3 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_30 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_31 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_32 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_33 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_34 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_35 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_36 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_37 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_38 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_39 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_4 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_40 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_41 (*C macro*), 242
GPIO_PIN_REG_42 (*C macro*), 242
GPIO_PIN_REG_43 (*C macro*), 242
GPIO_PIN_REG_44 (*C macro*), 242
GPIO_PIN_REG_45 (*C macro*), 242
GPIO_PIN_REG_46 (*C macro*), 242
GPIO_PIN_REG_5 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_6 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_7 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_8 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PIN_REG_9 (*C macro*), 241
GPIO_PORT_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 242
GPIO_PORT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 242
gpio_port_t (*C++ enum*), 242
gpio_pull_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 245
gpio_pulldown_dis (*C++ function*), 235
GPIO_PULLDOWN_DISABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 245
gpio_pulldown_en (*C++ function*), 235
GPIO_PULLDOWN_ENABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_PULLDOWN_ONLY (*C++ enumerator*), 245
gpio_pulldown_t (*C++ enum*), 245
gpio_pullup_dis (*C++ function*), 235
GPIO_PULLUP_DISABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 244
gpio_pullup_en (*C++ function*), 235
GPIO_PULLUP_ENABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_PULLUP_ONLY (*C++ enumerator*), 245
GPIO_PULLUP_PULLDOWN (*C++ enumerator*), 245
gpio_pullup_t (*C++ enum*), 244
gpio_reset_pin (*C++ function*), 232
GPIO_SEL_0 (*C macro*), 239

GPIO_SEL_1 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_10 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_11 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_12 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_13 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_14 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_15 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_16 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_17 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_18 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_19 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_2 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_20 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_21 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_26 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_27 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_28 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_29 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_3 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_30 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_31 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_32 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_33 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_34 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_35 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_36 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_37 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_38 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_39 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_4 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_40 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_41 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_42 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_43 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_44 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_45 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_46 (*C macro*), 240
GPIO_SEL_5 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_6 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_7 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_8 (*C macro*), 239
GPIO_SEL_9 (*C macro*), 239
gpio_set_direction (*C++ function*), 233
gpio_set_drive_capability (*C++ function*), 236
gpio_set_intr_type (*C++ function*), 233
gpio_set_level (*C++ function*), 233
gpio_set_pull_mode (*C++ function*), 234
gpio_sleep_sel_dis (*C++ function*), 237
gpio_sleep_sel_en (*C++ function*), 237
gpio_sleep_set_direction (*C++ function*), 238
gpio_sleep_set_pull_mode (*C++ function*), 238
gpio_uninstall_isr_service (*C++ function*), 235
gpio_wakeup_disable (*C++ function*), 234
gpio_wakeup_enable (*C++ function*), 234

H

heap_caps_add_region (*C++ function*), 879
heap_caps_add_region_with_caps (*C++ function*), 879
heap_caps_aligned_alloc (*C++ function*), 874
heap_caps_aligned_calloc (*C++ function*), 874
heap_caps_aligned_free (*C++ function*), 874
heap_caps_calloc (*C++ function*), 875
heap_caps_calloc_prefer (*C++ function*), 877
heap_caps_check_integrity (*C++ function*), 876
heap_caps_check_integrity_addr (*C++ function*), 876
heap_caps_check_integrity_all (*C++ function*), 876
heap_caps_dump (*C++ function*), 877
heap_caps_dump_all (*C++ function*), 877
heap_caps_enable_nonos_stack_heaps (*C++ function*), 879
heap_caps_free (*C++ function*), 874
heap_caps_get_allocated_size (*C++ function*), 877
heap_caps_get_free_size (*C++ function*), 875
heap_caps_get_info (*C++ function*), 875
heap_caps_get_largest_free_block (*C++ function*), 875
heap_caps_get_minimum_free_size (*C++ function*), 875
heap_caps_get_total_size (*C++ function*), 875
heap_caps_init (*C++ function*), 879
heap_caps_malloc (*C++ function*), 873
heap_caps_malloc_extmem_enable (*C++ function*), 876
heap_caps_malloc_prefer (*C++ function*), 876
heap_caps_print_heap_info (*C++ function*), 876
heap_caps_realloc (*C++ function*), 874
heap_caps_realloc_prefer (*C++ function*), 877
heap_caps_register_failed_alloc_callback (*C++ function*), 873
HEAP_TRACE_ALL (*C++ enumerator*), 893
heap_trace_dump (*C++ function*), 893
heap_trace_get (*C++ function*), 892
heap_trace_get_count (*C++ function*), 892
heap_trace_init_standalone (*C++ function*), 891
heap_trace_init_tohost (*C++ function*), 892
HEAP_TRACE_LEAKS (*C++ enumerator*), 893
heap_trace_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 893
heap_trace_record_t (*C++ class*), 893
heap_trace_record_t::address (*C++ member*), 893
heap_trace_record_t::alloced_by (*C++ member*), 893

heap_trace_record_t::ccount (*C++ member*), 893
heap_trace_record_t::freed_by (*C++ member*), 893
heap_trace_record_t::size (*C++ member*), 893
heap_trace_resume (*C++ function*), 892
heap_trace_start (*C++ function*), 892
heap_trace_stop (*C++ function*), 892
HMAC_KEY0 (*C++ enumerator*), 257
HMAC_KEY1 (*C++ enumerator*), 257
HMAC_KEY2 (*C++ enumerator*), 257
HMAC_KEY3 (*C++ enumerator*), 257
HMAC_KEY4 (*C++ enumerator*), 257
HMAC_KEY5 (*C++ enumerator*), 257
hmac_key_id_t (*C++ enum*), 257
HMAC_KEY_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 257
HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_BASIC (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_DIGEST (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_AUTH_TYPE_NONE (*C++ enumerator*), 514
http_client_init_cb_t (*C++ type*), 744
HTTP_EVENT_DISCONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_EVENT_ERROR (*C++ enumerator*), 512
http_event_handle_cb (*C++ type*), 512
HTTP_EVENT_HEADER_SENT (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_EVENT_HEADERS_SENT (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_EVENT_ON_CONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 512
HTTP_EVENT_ON_DATA (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_EVENT_ON_FINISH (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_EVENT_ON_HEADER (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_COPY (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_DELETE (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_GET (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_HEAD (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_LOCK (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_METHOD_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_METHOD_MKCOL (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_METHOD_MOVE (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_NOTIFY (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_OPTIONS (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_PATCH (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_POST (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_PROPFIND (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_METHOD_PROPPATCH (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_METHOD_PUT (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_SUBSCRIBE (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_METHOD_UNLOCK (*C++ enumerator*), 514
HTTP_METHOD_UNSUBSCRIBE (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTP_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN (*C++ enumerator*), 513
HTTPD_200 (*C macro*), 532
HTTPD_204 (*C macro*), 532
HTTPD_207 (*C macro*), 532
HTTPD_400 (*C macro*), 532
HTTPD_400_BAD_REQUEST (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_401_UNAUTHORIZED (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_403_FORBIDDEN (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_404 (*C macro*), 532
HTTPD_404_NOT_FOUND (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_405_METHOD_NOT_ALLOWED (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_408 (*C macro*), 533
HTTPD_408_REQ_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_411_LENGTH_REQUIRED (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_414_URI_TOO_LONG (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_431_REQ_HDR_FIELDS_TOO_LARGE (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_500 (*C macro*), 533
HTTPD_500_INTERNAL_SERVER_ERROR (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_501_METHOD_NOT_IMPLEMENTED (*C++ enumerator*), 536
HTTPD_505_VERSION_NOT_SUPPORTED (*C++ enumerator*), 536
httpd_close_func_t (*C++ type*), 535
httpd_config (*C++ class*), 530
httpd_config::backlog_conn (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::close_fn (*C++ member*), 531
httpd_config::core_id (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::ctrl_port (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::global_transport_ctx (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::global_transport_ctx_free_fn (*C++ member*), 531
httpd_config::global_user_ctx (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::global_user_ctx_free_fn (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::lru_purge_enable (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::max_open_sockets (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::max_resp_headers (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::max_uri_handlers (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::open_fn (*C++ member*), 531
httpd_config::recv_wait_timeout (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::send_wait_timeout (*C++ member*), 530
httpd_config::server_port (*C++ member*),

530
httpd_config::stack_size (C++ member), 530
httpd_config::task_priority (C++ member), 530
httpd_config::uri_match_fn (C++ member), 531
httpd_config_t (C++ type), 535
HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 533
HTTPD_ERR_CODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 536
httpd_err_code_t (C++ enum), 535
httpd_err_handler_func_t (C++ type), 534
httpd_free_ctx_fn_t (C++ type), 535
httpd_get_client_list (C++ function), 529
httpd_get_global_transport_ctx (C++ function), 529
httpd_get_global_user_ctx (C++ function), 529
httpd_handle_t (C++ type), 535
HTTPD_MAX_REQ_HDR_LEN (C macro), 532
HTTPD_MAX_URI_LEN (C macro), 532
httpd_method_t (C++ type), 535
httpd_open_func_t (C++ type), 535
httpd_pending_func_t (C++ type), 534
httpd_query_key_value (C++ function), 521
httpd_queue_work (C++ function), 528
httpd_recv_func_t (C++ type), 534
httpd_register_err_handler (C++ function), 526
httpd_register_uri_handler (C++ function), 517
httpd_req (C++ class), 531
httpd_req::aux (C++ member), 531
httpd_req::content_len (C++ member), 531
httpd_req::free_ctx (C++ member), 532
httpd_req::handle (C++ member), 531
httpd_req::ignore_sess_ctx_changes (C++ member), 532
httpd_req::method (C++ member), 531
httpd_req::sess_ctx (C++ member), 531
httpd_req::uri (C++ member), 531
httpd_req::user_ctx (C++ member), 531
httpd_req_get_hdr_value_len (C++ function), 520
httpd_req_get_hdr_value_str (C++ function), 520
httpd_req_get_url_query_len (C++ function), 520
httpd_req_get_url_query_str (C++ function), 521
httpd_req_recv (C++ function), 519
httpd_req_t (C++ type), 533
httpd_req_to_sockfd (C++ function), 519
httpd_resp_send (C++ function), 522
httpd_resp_send_404 (C++ function), 524
httpd_resp_send_408 (C++ function), 525
httpd_resp_send_500 (C++ function), 525
httpd_resp_send_chunk (C++ function), 522
httpd_resp_send_err (C++ function), 524
httpd_resp_sendstr (C++ function), 523
httpd_resp_sendstr_chunk (C++ function), 523
httpd_resp_set_hdr (C++ function), 524
httpd_resp_set_status (C++ function), 523
httpd_resp_set_type (C++ function), 523
HTTPD_RESP_USE_STRLEN (C macro), 533
httpd_send (C++ function), 525
httpd_send_func_t (C++ type), 533
httpd_sess_get_ctx (C++ function), 528
httpd_sess_get_transport_ctx (C++ function), 528
httpd_sess_set_ctx (C++ function), 528
httpd_sess_set_pending_override (C++ function), 519
httpd_sess_set_recv_override (C++ function), 518
httpd_sess_set_send_override (C++ function), 519
httpd_sess_set_transport_ctx (C++ function), 528
httpd_sess_trigger_close (C++ function), 529
httpd_sess_update_lru_counter (C++ function), 529
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_FAIL (C macro), 532
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_INVALID (C macro), 532
HTTPD_SOCK_ERR_TIMEOUT (C macro), 532
httpd_socket_recv (C++ function), 526
httpd_socket_send (C++ function), 526
httpd_ssl_config (C++ class), 537
httpd_ssl_config::cacert_len (C++ member), 537
httpd_ssl_config::cacert_pem (C++ member), 537
httpd_ssl_config::client_verify_cert_len (C++ member), 537
httpd_ssl_config::client_verify_cert_pem (C++ member), 537
httpd_ssl_config::httpd (C++ member), 537
httpd_ssl_config::port_insecure (C++ member), 538
httpd_ssl_config::port_secure (C++ member), 538
httpd_ssl_config::prvtkey_len (C++ member), 538
httpd_ssl_config::prvtkey_pem (C++ member), 537
httpd_ssl_config::transport_mode (C++ member), 538
HTTPD_SSL_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 538
httpd_ssl_config_t (C++ type), 538
httpd_ssl_start (C++ function), 537
httpd_ssl_stop (C++ function), 537
HTTPD_SSL_TRANSPORT_INSECURE (C++ enumerator), 538
httpd_ssl_transport_mode_t (C++ enum),

538
HTTPD_SSL_TRANSPORT_SECURE (C++ enumerator), 538
httpd_start (C++ function), 527
httpd_stop (C++ function), 527
HTTPD_TYPE_JSON (C macro), 533
HTTPD_TYPE_OCTET (C macro), 533
HTTPD_TYPE_TEXT (C macro), 533
httpd_unregister_uri (C++ function), 518
httpd_unregister_uri_handler (C++ function), 518
httpd_uri (C++ class), 532
httpd_uri::handler (C++ member), 532
httpd_uri::method (C++ member), 532
httpd_uri::uri (C++ member), 532
httpd_uri::user_ctx (C++ member), 532
httpd_uri_match_func_t (C++ type), 535
httpd_uri_match_wildcard (C++ function), 521
httpd_uri_t (C++ type), 533
httpd_work_fn_t (C++ type), 535
HttpStatus_Code (C++ enum), 514
HttpStatus_Forbidden (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_Found (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_InternalError (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_MovedPermanently (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_MultipleChoices (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_NotFound (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_Ok (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_TemporaryRedirect (C++ enumerator), 514
HttpStatus_Unauthorized (C++ enumerator), 514

I

i2c_ack_type_t (C++ enum), 276
I2C_ADDR_BIT_10 (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_ADDR_BIT_7 (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_ADDR_BIT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 276
i2c_addr_mode_t (C++ enum), 276
I2C_APB_CLK_FREQ (C macro), 274
I2C_CLK_FREQ_MAX (C macro), 275
i2c_cmd_handle_t (C++ type), 275
i2c_cmd_link_create (C++ function), 269
i2c_cmd_link_delete (C++ function), 269
i2c_config_t (C++ class), 274
i2c_config_t::addr_10bit_en (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::clk_flags (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::clk_speed (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::master (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::mode (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::scl_io_num (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::scl_pullup_en (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::sda_io_num (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::sda_pullup_en (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::slave (C++ member), 274
i2c_config_t::slave_addr (C++ member), 274
I2C_DATA_MODE_LSB_FIRST (C++ enumerator), 275
I2C_DATA_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 275
I2C_DATA_MODE_MSB_FIRST (C++ enumerator), 275
i2c_driver_delete (C++ function), 268
i2c_driver_install (C++ function), 267
i2c_filter_disable (C++ function), 272
i2c_filter_enable (C++ function), 272
i2c_get_data_mode (C++ function), 274
i2c_get_data_timing (C++ function), 273
i2c_get_period (C++ function), 271
i2c_get_start_timing (C++ function), 272
i2c_get_stop_timing (C++ function), 273
i2c_get_timeout (C++ function), 273
i2c_isr_free (C++ function), 269
i2c_isr_register (C++ function), 268
I2C_MASTER_ACK (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_MASTER_ACK_MAX (C++ enumerator), 276
i2c_master_cmd_begin (C++ function), 271
I2C_MASTER_LAST_NACK (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_MASTER_NACK (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_MASTER_READ (C++ enumerator), 275
i2c_master_read (C++ function), 270
i2c_master_read_byte (C++ function), 270
i2c_master_start (C++ function), 269
i2c_master_stop (C++ function), 270
I2C_MASTER_WRITE (C++ enumerator), 275
i2c_master_write (C++ function), 270
i2c_master_write_byte (C++ function), 269
I2C_MODE_MASTER (C++ enumerator), 275
I2C_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 275
I2C_MODE_SLAVE (C++ enumerator), 275
i2c_mode_t (C++ enum), 275
I2C_NUM_0 (C macro), 275
I2C_NUM_1 (C macro), 275
I2C_NUM_MAX (C macro), 275
i2c_param_config (C++ function), 268
i2c_port_t (C++ type), 275
i2c_reset_rx_fifo (C++ function), 268
i2c_reset_tx_fifo (C++ function), 268
i2c_rw_t (C++ enum), 275
I2C_SCLK_APB (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_SCLK_DEFAULT (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_SCLK_MAX (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_SCLK_REF_TICK (C++ enumerator), 276
I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_AWARE_DFS (C macro), 275

I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_FOR_NOMAL (*C macro*), 275
I2C_SCLK_SRC_FLAG_LIGHT_SLEEP (*C macro*), 275
i2c_sclk_t (*C++ enum*), 276
i2c_set_data_mode (*C++ function*), 273
i2c_set_data_timing (*C++ function*), 273
i2c_set_period (*C++ function*), 271
i2c_set_pin (*C++ function*), 269
i2c_set_start_timing (*C++ function*), 272
i2c_set_stop_timing (*C++ function*), 272
i2c_set_timeout (*C++ function*), 273
i2c_slave_read_buffer (*C++ function*), 271
i2c_slave_write_buffer (*C++ function*), 271
i2c_trans_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 275
I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_16BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_24BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_32BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_BITS_PER_SAMPLE_8BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 284
i2s_bits_per_sample_t (*C++ enum*), 284
I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ALL_LEFT (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ALL_RIGHT (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ONLY_LEFT (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_ONLY_RIGHT (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_CHANNEL_FMT_RIGHT_LEFT (*C++ enumerator*), 285
i2s_channel_fmt_t (*C++ enum*), 285
I2S_CHANNEL_MONO (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_CHANNEL_STEREO (*C++ enumerator*), 284
i2s_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 284
I2S_CLK_APLL (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_CLK_D2CLK (*C++ enumerator*), 285
i2s_clock_src_t (*C++ enum*), 285
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_LSB (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_I2S_MSB (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_LONG (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_PCM_SHORT (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_I2S (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_MSB (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_LONG (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_COMM_FORMAT_STAND_PCM_SHORT (*C++ enumerator*), 284
i2s_comm_format_t (*C++ enum*), 284
i2s_config_t (*C++ class*), 283
i2s_config_t::bits_per_sample (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::channel_format (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::communication_format (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::dma_buf_count (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::dma_buf_len (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::fixed_mclk (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::intr_alloc_flags (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::mode (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::sample_rate (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::tx_desc_auto_clear (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_config_t::use_apll (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_driver_install (*C++ function*), 280
i2s_driver_uninstall (*C++ function*), 280
I2S_EVENT_DMA_ERROR (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_EVENT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 286
I2S_EVENT_RX_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 286
i2s_event_t (*C++ class*), 283
i2s_event_t::size (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_event_t::type (*C++ member*), 283
I2S_EVENT_TX_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 285
i2s_event_type_t (*C++ enum*), 285
i2s_get_clk (*C++ function*), 282
i2s_isr_handle_t (*C++ type*), 282
I2S_MODE_MASTER (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_MODE_RX (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_MODE_SLAVE (*C++ enumerator*), 285
i2s_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 285
I2S_MODE_TX (*C++ enumerator*), 285
I2S_NUM_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 284
I2S_NUM_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 284
i2s_pin_config_t (*C++ class*), 283
i2s_pin_config_t::bck_io_num (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_pin_config_t::data_in_num (*C++ member*), 284
i2s_pin_config_t::data_out_num (*C++ member*), 283
i2s_pin_config_t::ws_io_num (*C++ member*), 283
I2S_PIN_NO_CHANGE (*C macro*), 282
i2s_port_t (*C++ enum*), 284
i2s_read (*C++ function*), 281
i2s_set_clk (*C++ function*), 282
i2s_set_pin (*C++ function*), 279

i2s_set_sample_rates (*C++ function*), 281
i2s_start (*C++ function*), 282
i2s_stop (*C++ function*), 281
i2s_write (*C++ function*), 280
i2s_write_expand (*C++ function*), 280
i2s_zero_dma_buffer (*C++ function*), 282
I_ADDI (*C macro*), 1345
I_ADDR (*C macro*), 1345
I_ANDI (*C macro*), 1345
I_ANDR (*C macro*), 1345
I_BGE (*C macro*), 1344
I_BL (*C macro*), 1344
I_BXFI (*C macro*), 1344
I_BXFR (*C macro*), 1344
I_BXI (*C macro*), 1344
I_BXR (*C macro*), 1344
I_BXZI (*C macro*), 1344
I_BXZR (*C macro*), 1344
I_DELAY (*C macro*), 1343
I_END (*C macro*), 1343
I_HALT (*C macro*), 1343
I_LD (*C macro*), 1344
I_LSHI (*C macro*), 1345
I_LSHR (*C macro*), 1345
I_MOVI (*C macro*), 1345
I_MOVR (*C macro*), 1345
I_ORI (*C macro*), 1345
I_ORR (*C macro*), 1345
I_RD_REG (*C macro*), 1344
I_RSHI (*C macro*), 1345
I_RSHR (*C macro*), 1345
I_ST (*C macro*), 1344
I_SUBI (*C macro*), 1345
I_SUBR (*C macro*), 1345
I_WR_REG (*C macro*), 1344
intr_handle_data_t (*C++ type*), 905
intr_handle_t (*C++ type*), 905
intr_handler_t (*C++ type*), 905

L

LEDC_APB_CLK (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_APB_CLK_HZ (*C macro*), 295
LEDC_AUTO_CLK (*C++ enumerator*), 296
ledc_bind_channel_timer (*C++ function*), 292
LEDC_CHANNEL_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_5 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_6 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_CHANNEL_7 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
ledc_channel_config (*C++ function*), 289
ledc_channel_config_t (*C++ class*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::channel (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::duty (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::gpio_num (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::hpoint (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::intr_type (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::speed_mode (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_channel_config_t::timer_sel (*C++ member*), 295
LEDC_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 297
ledc_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 297
ledc_clk_cfg_t (*C++ enum*), 296
ledc_clk_src_t (*C++ enum*), 297
LEDC_DUTY_DIR_DECREASE (*C++ enumerator*), 296
LEDC_DUTY_DIR_INCREASE (*C++ enumerator*), 296
LEDC_DUTY_DIR_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 296
ledc_duty_direction_t (*C++ enum*), 296
LEDC_ERR_DUTY (*C macro*), 295
LEDC_ERR_VAL (*C macro*), 295
ledc_fade_func_install (*C++ function*), 293
ledc_fade_func_uninstall (*C++ function*), 293
LEDC_FADE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 298
ledc_fade_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 298
LEDC_FADE_NO_WAIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
ledc_fade_start (*C++ function*), 293
LEDC_FADE_WAIT_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 298
ledc_get_duty (*C++ function*), 291
ledc_get_freq (*C++ function*), 290
ledc_get_hpoint (*C++ function*), 290
LEDC_INTR_DISABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 296
LEDC_INTR_FADE_END (*C++ enumerator*), 296
LEDC_INTR_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 296
ledc_intr_type_t (*C++ enum*), 296
ledc_isr_handle_t (*C++ type*), 295
ledc_isr_register (*C++ function*), 291
LEDC_LOW_SPEED_MODE (*C++ enumerator*), 296
ledc_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 296
LEDC_REF_CLK_HZ (*C macro*), 295
LEDC_REF_TICK (*C++ enumerator*), 297
ledc_set_duty (*C++ function*), 290
ledc_set_duty_and_update (*C++ function*), 294
ledc_set_duty_with_hpoint (*C++ function*), 290
ledc_set_fade (*C++ function*), 291
ledc_set_fade_step_and_start (*C++ function*), 294
ledc_set_fade_time_and_start (*C++ function*), 294
ledc_set_fade_with_step (*C++ function*), 292
ledc_set_fade_with_time (*C++ function*), 293
ledc_set_freq (*C++ function*), 290
ledc_set_pin (*C++ function*), 289
LEDC_SLOW_CLK_APB (*C++ enumerator*), 296

LEDC_SLOW_CLK_RTC8M (*C++ enumerator*), 296
ledc_slow_clk_sel_t (*C++ enum*), 296
LEDC_SLOW_CLK_XTAL (*C++ enumerator*), 296
LEDC_SPEED_MODE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 296
ledc_stop (*C++ function*), 289
LEDC_TIMER_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_TIMER_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_TIMER_10_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_11_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_12_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_13_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_14_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_1_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_TIMER_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_TIMER_2_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_TIMER_3_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_4_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_5_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_6_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_7_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_8_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_9_BIT (*C++ enumerator*), 298
LEDC_TIMER_BIT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 298
ledc_timer_bit_t (*C++ enum*), 297
ledc_timer_config (*C++ function*), 289
ledc_timer_config_t (*C++ class*), 295
ledc_timer_config_t::bit_num (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_timer_config_t::clk_cfg (*C++ member*), 296
ledc_timer_config_t::duty_resolution (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_timer_config_t::freq_hz (*C++ member*), 296
ledc_timer_config_t::speed_mode (*C++ member*), 295
ledc_timer_config_t::timer_num (*C++ member*), 296
LEDC_TIMER_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 297
ledc_timer_pause (*C++ function*), 292
ledc_timer_resume (*C++ function*), 292
ledc_timer_rst (*C++ function*), 292
ledc_timer_set (*C++ function*), 291
ledc_timer_t (*C++ enum*), 297
ledc_update_duty (*C++ function*), 289
LEDC_USE_APB_CLK (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_USE_REF_TICK (*C++ enumerator*), 296
LEDC_USE_RTC8M_CLK (*C++ enumerator*), 297
LEDC_USE_XTAL_CLK (*C++ enumerator*), 297
linenoiseCompletions (*C++ type*), 719

M

M_BGE (*C macro*), 1345
M_BL (*C macro*), 1345
M_BX (*C macro*), 1345
M_BXF (*C macro*), 1346
M_BXZ (*C macro*), 1346
M_LABEL (*C macro*), 1345
MALLOC_CAP_32BIT (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_8BIT (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_DMA (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_EXEC (*C macro*), 877
MALLOC_CAP_INTERNAL (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_INVALID (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_IRAM_8BIT (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_PID2 (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_PID3 (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_PID4 (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_PID5 (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_PID6 (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_PID7 (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_RETENTION (*C macro*), 878
MALLOC_CAP_SPIRAM (*C macro*), 878
MAX_BLE_DEVNAME_LEN (*C macro*), 593
MAX_FDS (*C macro*), 694
MAX_PASSPHRASE_LEN (*C macro*), 108
MAX_SSID_LEN (*C macro*), 108
MAX_WPS_AP_CRED (*C macro*), 108
mbc_master_destroy (*C++ function*), 561
mbc_master_get_cid_info (*C++ function*), 562
mbc_master_get_parameter (*C++ function*), 563
mbc_master_init (*C++ function*), 559
mbc_master_init_tcp (*C++ function*), 560
mbc_master_send_request (*C++ function*), 562
mbc_master_set_descriptor (*C++ function*), 562
mbc_master_set_parameter (*C++ function*), 563
mbc_master_setup (*C++ function*), 560
mbc_master_start (*C++ function*), 560
mbc_slave_check_event (*C++ function*), 561
mbc_slave_destroy (*C++ function*), 561
mbc_slave_get_param_info (*C++ function*), 561
mbc_slave_init (*C++ function*), 559
mbc_slave_init_tcp (*C++ function*), 560
mbc_slave_set_descriptor (*C++ function*), 561
mbc_slave_setup (*C++ function*), 560
mbc_slave_start (*C++ function*), 560
mdns_free (*C++ function*), 553
mdns_handle_system_event (*C++ function*), 557
mdns_hostname_set (*C++ function*), 553
MDNS_IF_AP (*C++ enumerator*), 559
MDNS_IF_ETH (*C++ enumerator*), 559
mdns_if_internal (*C++ enum*), 559
MDNS_IF_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 559
MDNS_IF_STA (*C++ enumerator*), 559
mdns_if_t (*C++ type*), 558
mdns_init (*C++ function*), 553
mdns_instance_name_set (*C++ function*), 553
mdns_ip_addr_s (*C++ class*), 557

mdns_ip_addr_s::addr (C++ member), 557
mdns_ip_addr_s::next (C++ member), 557
mdns_ip_addr_t (C++ type), 558
MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 558
mdns_ip_protocol_t (C++ enum), 558
MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_V4 (C++ enumerator), 558
MDNS_IP_PROTOCOL_V6 (C++ enumerator), 558
mdns_query (C++ function), 555
mdns_query_a (C++ function), 556
mdns_query_aaaa (C++ function), 557
mdns_query_ptr (C++ function), 556
mdns_query_results_free (C++ function), 556
mdns_query_srv (C++ function), 556
mdns_query_txt (C++ function), 556
mdns_result_s (C++ class), 557
mdns_result_s::addr (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::hostname (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::instance_name (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::ip_protocol (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::next (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::port (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::tcpip_if (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::txt (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_s::txt_count (C++ member), 558
mdns_result_t (C++ type), 558
mdns_service_add (C++ function), 554
mdns_service_instance_name_set (C++ function), 554
mdns_service_port_set (C++ function), 554
mdns_service_remove (C++ function), 554
mdns_service_remove_all (C++ function), 555
mdns_service_txt_item_remove (C++ function), 555
mdns_service_txt_item_set (C++ function), 555
mdns_service_txt_set (C++ function), 554
mdns_txt_item_t (C++ class), 557
mdns_txt_item_t::key (C++ member), 557
mdns_txt_item_t::value (C++ member), 557
MDNS_TYPE_A (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_AAAA (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_ANY (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_NSEC (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_OPT (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_PTR (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_SRV (C macro), 558
MDNS_TYPE_TXT (C macro), 558
mesh_addr_t (C++ union), 145
mesh_addr_t::addr (C++ member), 145
mesh_addr_t::mip (C++ member), 145
mesh_ap_cfg_t (C++ class), 150
mesh_ap_cfg_t::max_connection (C++ member), 150
mesh_ap_cfg_t::password (C++ member), 150
MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_NETWORK_FREE (C macro), 153
MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_ROOT_FIXED (C macro), 153
MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_ROOTS_FOUND (C macro), 153
MESH_ASSOC_FLAG_VOTE_IN_PROGRESS (C macro), 153
mesh_cfg_t (C++ class), 150
mesh_cfg_t::allow_channel_switch (C++ member), 150
mesh_cfg_t::channel (C++ member), 150
mesh_cfg_t::crypto_funcs (C++ member), 151
mesh_cfg_t::mesh_ap (C++ member), 150
mesh_cfg_t::mesh_id (C++ member), 150
mesh_cfg_t::router (C++ member), 150
MESH_DATA_DROP (C macro), 153
MESH_DATA_ENC (C macro), 153
MESH_DATA_FROMDS (C macro), 153
MESH_DATA_GROUP (C macro), 153
MESH_DATA_NONBLOCK (C macro), 153
MESH_DATA_P2P (C macro), 153
mesh_data_t (C++ class), 149
mesh_data_t::data (C++ member), 149
mesh_data_t::proto (C++ member), 150
mesh_data_t::size (C++ member), 149
mesh_data_t::tos (C++ member), 150
MESH_DATA_TODS (C macro), 153
mesh_disconnect_reason_t (C++ enum), 156
MESH_EVENT_CHANNEL_SWITCH (C++ enumerator), 154
mesh_event_channel_switch_t (C++ class), 147
mesh_event_channel_switch_t::channel (C++ member), 147
MESH_EVENT_CHILD_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 154
mesh_event_child_connected_t (C++ type), 154
MESH_EVENT_CHILD_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 154
mesh_event_child_disconnected_t (C++ type), 154
mesh_event_connected_t (C++ class), 147
mesh_event_connected_t::connected (C++ member), 147
mesh_event_connected_t::duty (C++ member), 147
mesh_event_connected_t::self_layer (C++ member), 147
mesh_event_disconnected_t (C++ type), 154
MESH_EVENT_FIND_NETWORK (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_find_network_t (C++ class), 148
mesh_event_find_network_t::channel (C++ member), 148
mesh_event_find_network_t::router_bssid (C++ member), 148

mesh_event_id_t (C++ enum), 154
mesh_event_info_t (C++ union), 145
mesh_event_info_t::channel_switch (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::child_connected (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::child_disconnected (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::connected (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::disconnected (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::find_network (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::layer_change (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::network_state (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::no_parent (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::ps_duty (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::root_addr (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::root_conflict (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::root_fixed (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::router_switch (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::routing_table (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::scan_done (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::switch_req (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::toDS_state (C++ member), 146
mesh_event_info_t::vote_started (C++ member), 146
MESH_EVENT_LAYER_CHANGE (C++ enumerator), 154
mesh_event_layer_change_t (C++ class), 147
mesh_event_layer_change_t::new_layer (C++ member), 147
MESH_EVENT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 155
MESH_EVENT_NETWORK_STATE (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_network_state_t (C++ class), 149
mesh_event_network_state_t::is_rootless (C++ member), 149
MESH_EVENT_NO_PARENT_FOUND (C++ enumerator), 154
mesh_event_no_parent_found_t (C++ class), 147
mesh_event_no_parent_found_t::scan_times (C++ member), 147
MESH_EVENT_PARENT_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 154
MESH_EVENT_PARENT_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 154
MESH_EVENT_PS_CHILD_DUTY (C++ enumerator), 155
MESH_EVENT_PS_DEVICE_DUTY (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_ps_duty_t (C++ class), 149
mesh_event_ps_duty_t::child_connected (C++ member), 149
mesh_event_ps_duty_t::duty (C++ member), 149
MESH_EVENT_PS_PARENT_DUTY (C++ enumerator), 155
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_ADDRESS (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_root_address_t (C++ type), 154
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_ASKED_YIELD (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_root_conflict_t (C++ class), 148
mesh_event_root_conflict_t::addr (C++ member), 148
mesh_event_root_conflict_t::capacity (C++ member), 148
mesh_event_root_conflict_t::rssi (C++ member), 148
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_FIXED (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_root_fixed_t (C++ class), 148
mesh_event_root_fixed_t::is_fixed (C++ member), 149
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_ACK (C++ enumerator), 155
MESH_EVENT_ROOT_SWITCH_REQ (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_root_switch_req_t (C++ class), 148
mesh_event_root_switch_req_t::rc_addr (C++ member), 148
mesh_event_root_switch_req_t::reason (C++ member), 148
MESH_EVENT_ROUTER_SWITCH (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_router_switch_t (C++ type), 154
MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_ADD (C++ enumerator), 154
mesh_event_routing_table_change_t (C++ class), 148
mesh_event_routing_table_change_t::rt_size_change (C++ member), 148
mesh_event_routing_table_change_t::rt_size_new (C++ member), 148
MESH_EVENT_ROUTING_TABLE_REMOVE (C++ enumerator), 154
MESH_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ enumerator), 155
mesh_event_scan_done_t (C++ class), 149
mesh_event_scan_done_t::number (C++

member), 149
MESH_EVENT_STARTED (*C++ enumerator*), 154
MESH_EVENT_STOP_RECONNECTION (*C++ enumerator*), 155
MESH_EVENT_STOPPED (*C++ enumerator*), 154
MESH_EVENT_TODS_STATE (*C++ enumerator*), 154
mesh_event_toDS_state_t (*C++ enum*), 157
MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STARTED (*C++ enumerator*), 154
mesh_event_vote_started_t (*C++ class*), 147
mesh_event_vote_started_t::attempts (*C++ member*), 148
mesh_event_vote_started_t::rc_addr (*C++ member*), 148
mesh_event_vote_started_t::reason (*C++ member*), 148
MESH_EVENT_VOTE_STOPPED (*C++ enumerator*), 154
MESH_IDLE (*C++ enumerator*), 155
MESH_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 154
MESH_LEAF (*C++ enumerator*), 155
MESH_MPS (*C macro*), 151
MESH_MTU (*C macro*), 151
MESH_NODE (*C++ enumerator*), 155
MESH_OPT_RECV_DS_ADDR (*C macro*), 153
MESH_OPT_SEND_GROUP (*C macro*), 153
mesh_opt_t (*C++ class*), 149
mesh_opt_t::len (*C++ member*), 149
mesh_opt_t::type (*C++ member*), 149
mesh_opt_t::val (*C++ member*), 149
MESH_PROTO_AP (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_PROTO_BIN (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_PROTO_HTTP (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_PROTO_JSON (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_PROTO_MQTT (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_PROTO_STA (*C++ enumerator*), 156
mesh_proto_t (*C++ enum*), 156
MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_DEMAND (*C macro*), 153
MESH_PS_DEVICE_DUTY_REQUEST (*C macro*), 153
MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_ENTIRE (*C macro*), 153
MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_APPLIED_UPLINK (*C macro*), 154
MESH_PS_NETWORK_DUTY_MASTER (*C macro*), 153
mesh_rc_config_t (*C++ union*), 146
mesh_rc_config_t::attempts (*C++ member*), 147
mesh_rc_config_t::rc_addr (*C++ member*), 147
MESH_REASON_CYCLIC (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_REASON_DIFF_ID (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_REASON_EMPTY_PASSWORD (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_REASON_IE_UNKNOWN (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_REASON_LEAF (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_REASON_PARENT_IDLE (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_REASON_PARENT_STOPPED (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_REASON_PARENT_UNENCRYPTED (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_REASON_PARENT_WORSE (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_REASON_ROOTS (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_REASON_SCAN_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_REASON_WAIVE_ROOT (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_ROOT (*C++ enumerator*), 155
MESH_ROOT_LAYER (*C macro*), 151
mesh_router_t (*C++ class*), 150
mesh_router_t::allow_router_switch (*C++ member*), 150
mesh_router_t::bssid (*C++ member*), 150
mesh_router_t::password (*C++ member*), 150
mesh_router_t::ssid (*C++ member*), 150
mesh_router_t::ssid_len (*C++ member*), 150
mesh_rx_pending_t (*C++ class*), 151
mesh_rx_pending_t::toDS (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_rx_pending_t::toSelf (*C++ member*), 151
MESH_STA (*C++ enumerator*), 155
MESH_TODS_REACHABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_TODS_UNREACHABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_TOPO_CHAIN (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_TOPO_TREE (*C++ enumerator*), 157
MESH_TOS_DEF (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_TOS_E2E (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_TOS_P2P (*C++ enumerator*), 156
mesh_tos_t (*C++ enum*), 156
mesh_tx_pending_t (*C++ class*), 151
mesh_tx_pending_t::broadcast (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_tx_pending_t::mgmt (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_tx_pending_t::to_child (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_tx_pending_t::to_child_p2p (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_tx_pending_t::to_parent (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_tx_pending_t::to_parent_p2p (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_type_t (*C++ enum*), 155
MESH_VOTE_REASON_CHILD_INITIATED (*C++ enumerator*), 156
MESH_VOTE_REASON_ROOT_INITIATED (*C++ enumerator*), 156
mesh_vote_reason_t (*C++ enum*), 156
mesh_vote_t (*C++ class*), 151
mesh_vote_t::config (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_vote_t::is_rc_specified (*C++ member*), 151
mesh_vote_t::percentage (*C++ member*), 151
MessageBufferHandle_t (*C++ type*), 855

mip_t (*C++ class*), 147
mip_t::ip4 (*C++ member*), 147
mip_t::port (*C++ member*), 147
MQTT_CONNECTION_ACCEPTED (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_BAD_USERNAME (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_ID_REJECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_NOT_AUTHORIZED (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_PROTOCOL (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_CONNECTION_REFUSE_SERVER_UNAVAILABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_CONNECTION_REFUSED (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_ESP_TLS (*C macro*), 461
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_NONE (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_ERROR_TYPE_TCP_TRANSPORT (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_EVENT_ANY (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_BEFORE_CONNECT (*C++ enumerator*), 462
mqtt_event_callback_t (*C++ type*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_CONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_DATA (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_DELETED (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_DISCONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_ERROR (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_PUBLISHED (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_SUBSCRIBED (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_EVENT_UNSUBSCRIBED (*C++ enumerator*), 462
MQTT_PROTOCOL_UNDEFINED (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_PROTOCOL_V_3_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_PROTOCOL_V_3_1_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_WS (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_TRANSPORT_OVER_WSS (*C++ enumerator*), 463
MQTT_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN (*C++ enumerator*), 463
multi_heap_aligned_alloc (*C++ function*), 880
multi_heap_aligned_free (*C++ function*), 880
multi_heap_check (*C++ function*), 882
multi_heap_dump (*C++ function*), 881
multi_heap_free (*C++ function*), 880
multi_heap_free_size (*C++ function*), 882
multi_heap_get_allocated_size (*C++ function*), 881
multi_heap_get_info (*C++ function*), 882
multi_heap_handle_t (*C++ type*), 883
multi_heap_info_t (*C++ class*), 882
multi_heap_info_t::allocated_blocks (*C++ member*), 882
multi_heap_info_t::free_blocks (*C++ member*), 883
multi_heap_info_t::largest_free_block (*C++ member*), 882
multi_heap_info_t::minimum_free_bytes (*C++ member*), 882
multi_heap_info_t::total_allocated_bytes (*C++ member*), 882
multi_heap_info_t::total_blocks (*C++ member*), 883
multi_heap_info_t::total_free_bytes (*C++ member*), 882
multi_heap_malloc (*C++ function*), 880
multi_heap_minimum_free_size (*C++ function*), 882
multi_heap_realloc (*C++ function*), 881
multi_heap_register (*C++ function*), 881
multi_heap_set_lock (*C++ function*), 881

N

name_uuid (*C++ class*), 593
name_uuid::name (*C++ member*), 593
name_uuid::uuid (*C++ member*), 593
nvs_close (*C++ function*), 638
nvs_commit (*C++ function*), 638
NVS_DEFAULT_PART_NAME (*C macro*), 642
nvs_entry_find (*C++ function*), 639
nvs_entry_info (*C++ function*), 640
nvs_entry_info_t (*C++ class*), 640
nvs_entry_info_t::key (*C++ member*), 640
nvs_entry_info_t::namespace_name (*C++ member*), 640
nvs_entry_info_t::type (*C++ member*), 640
nvs_entry_next (*C++ function*), 640
nvs_erase_all (*C++ function*), 638
nvs_erase_key (*C++ function*), 637
nvs_flash_deinit (*C++ function*), 631
nvs_flash_deinit_partition (*C++ function*), 631
nvs_flash_erase (*C++ function*), 631
nvs_flash_erase_partition (*C++ function*), 631
nvs_flash_erase_partition_ptr (*C++ function*), 632
nvs_flash_generate_keys (*C++ function*), 632
nvs_flash_init (*C++ function*), 630
nvs_flash_init_partition (*C++ function*), 631
nvs_flash_init_partition_ptr (*C++ function*), 631
nvs_flash_read_security_cfg (*C++ function*), 633
nvs_flash_secure_init (*C++ function*), 632

nvs_flash_secure_init_partition (*C++ function*), 632
nvs_get_blob (*C++ function*), 636
nvs_get_i16 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_i32 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_i64 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_i8 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_get_stats (*C++ function*), 638
nvs_get_str (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_u16 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_u32 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_u64 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_u8 (*C++ function*), 635
nvs_get_used_entry_count (*C++ function*), 639
nvs_handle (*C++ type*), 642
nvs_handle_t (*C++ type*), 642
nvs_iterator_t (*C++ type*), 642
NVS_KEY_NAME_MAX_SIZE (*C macro*), 642
NVS_KEY_SIZE (*C macro*), 633
nvs_open (*C++ function*), 636
nvs_open_from_partition (*C++ function*), 637
nvs_open_mode (*C++ type*), 642
nvs_open_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 642
NVS_PART_NAME_MAX_SIZE (*C macro*), 642
NVS_READONLY (*C++ enumerator*), 642
NVS_READWRITE (*C++ enumerator*), 642
nvs_release_iterator (*C++ function*), 640
nvs_sec_cfg_t (*C++ class*), 633
nvs_sec_cfg_t::eky (*C++ member*), 633
nvs_sec_cfg_t::tky (*C++ member*), 633
nvs_set_blob (*C++ function*), 637
nvs_set_i16 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_i32 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_i64 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_i8 (*C++ function*), 633
nvs_set_str (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_u16 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_u32 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_u64 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_set_u8 (*C++ function*), 634
nvs_stats_t (*C++ class*), 640
nvs_stats_t::free_entries (*C++ member*), 640
nvs_stats_t::namespace_count (*C++ member*), 640
nvs_stats_t::total_entries (*C++ member*), 640
nvs_stats_t::used_entries (*C++ member*), 640
NVS_TYPE_ANY (*C++ enumerator*), 643
NVS_TYPE_BLOB (*C++ enumerator*), 643
NVS_TYPE_I16 (*C++ enumerator*), 642
NVS_TYPE_I32 (*C++ enumerator*), 642
NVS_TYPE_I64 (*C++ enumerator*), 643
NVS_TYPE_I8 (*C++ enumerator*), 642
NVS_TYPE_STR (*C++ enumerator*), 643
nvs_type_t (*C++ enum*), 642
NVS_TYPE_U16 (*C++ enumerator*), 642
NVS_TYPE_U32 (*C++ enumerator*), 642
NVS_TYPE_U64 (*C++ enumerator*), 643
NVS_TYPE_U8 (*C++ enumerator*), 642

O

OTA_SIZE_UNKNOWN (*C macro*), 924
OTA_WITH_SEQUENTIAL_WRITES (*C macro*), 924

P

PCNT_CHANNEL_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 307
PCNT_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 307
pcnt_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 306
pcnt_config_t (*C++ class*), 305
pcnt_config_t::channel (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::counter_h_lim (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::counter_l_lim (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::ctrl_gpio_num (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::hctrl_mode (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::lctrl_mode (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::neg_mode (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::pos_mode (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::pulse_gpio_num (*C++ member*), 305
pcnt_config_t::unit (*C++ member*), 305
PCNT_COUNT_DEC (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_COUNT_DIS (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_COUNT_INC (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_COUNT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 306
pcnt_count_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 306
pcnt_counter_clear (*C++ function*), 301
pcnt_counter_pause (*C++ function*), 300
pcnt_counter_resume (*C++ function*), 301
pcnt_ctrl_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 306
pcnt_event_disable (*C++ function*), 301
pcnt_event_enable (*C++ function*), 301
PCNT_EVT_H_LIM (*C++ enumerator*), 307
PCNT_EVT_L_LIM (*C++ enumerator*), 307
PCNT_EVT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 307
PCNT_EVT_THRES_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 307
PCNT_EVT_THRES_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 307
pcnt_evt_type_t (*C++ enum*), 307
PCNT_EVT_ZERO (*C++ enumerator*), 307
pcnt_filter_disable (*C++ function*), 303
pcnt_filter_enable (*C++ function*), 303
pcnt_get_counter_value (*C++ function*), 300
pcnt_get_event_status (*C++ function*), 302
pcnt_get_event_value (*C++ function*), 302
pcnt_get_filter_value (*C++ function*), 303
pcnt_intr_disable (*C++ function*), 301
pcnt_intr_enable (*C++ function*), 301
pcnt_isr_handle_t (*C++ type*), 305

pcnt_isr_handler_add (*C++ function*), 304
pcnt_isr_handler_remove (*C++ function*), 304
pcnt_isr_register (*C++ function*), 302
pcnt_isr_service_install (*C++ function*), 304
pcnt_isr_service_uninstall (*C++ function*), 304
pcnt_isr_unregister (*C++ function*), 302
PCNT_MODE_DISABLE (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_MODE_KEEP (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_MODE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_MODE_REVERSE (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_PIN_NOT_USED (*C macro*), 305
PCNT_PORT_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_PORT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 306
pcnt_port_t (*C++ enum*), 306
pcnt_set_event_value (*C++ function*), 302
pcnt_set_filter_value (*C++ function*), 303
pcnt_set_mode (*C++ function*), 304
pcnt_set_pin (*C++ function*), 303
PCNT_UNIT_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_UNIT_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_UNIT_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 306
PCNT_UNIT_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 306
pcnt_unit_config (*C++ function*), 300
PCNT_UNIT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 306
pcnt_unit_t (*C++ enum*), 306
pcQueueGetName (*C++ function*), 792
pcTaskGetName (*C++ function*), 773
pcTimerGetName (*C++ function*), 822
PendedFunction_t (*C++ type*), 832
protocomm_add_endpoint (*C++ function*), 587
protocomm_ble_config (*C++ class*), 593
protocomm_ble_config::device_name (*C++ member*), 593
protocomm_ble_config::nu_lookup (*C++ member*), 593
protocomm_ble_config::nu_lookup_count (*C++ member*), 593
protocomm_ble_config::service_uuid (*C++ member*), 593
protocomm_ble_config_t (*C++ type*), 593
protocomm_ble_name_uuid_t (*C++ type*), 593
protocomm_ble_start (*C++ function*), 592
protocomm_ble_stop (*C++ function*), 592
protocomm_close_session (*C++ function*), 588
protocomm_delete (*C++ function*), 587
protocomm_http_server_config_t (*C++ class*), 591
protocomm_http_server_config_t::port (*C++ member*), 592
protocomm_http_server_config_t::stack_size (*C++ member*), 592
protocomm_http_server_config_t::task_priority (*C++ member*), 592
protocomm_httpd_config_data_t (*C++ union*), 591
protocomm_httpd_config_data_t::config (*C++ member*), 591
protocomm_httpd_config_data_t::handle (*C++ member*), 591
protocomm_httpd_config_t (*C++ class*), 592
protocomm_httpd_config_t::data (*C++ member*), 592
protocomm_httpd_config_t::ext_handle_provided (*C++ member*), 592
PROTOCOMM_HTTPD_DEFAULT_CONFIG (*C macro*), 592
protocomm_httpd_start (*C++ function*), 591
protocomm_httpd_stop (*C++ function*), 591
protocomm_new (*C++ function*), 586
protocomm_open_session (*C++ function*), 587
protocomm_remove_endpoint (*C++ function*), 587
protocomm_req_handle (*C++ function*), 588
protocomm_req_handler_t (*C++ type*), 589
protocomm_security (*C++ class*), 590
protocomm_security::cleanup (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::close_transport_session (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::decrypt (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::encrypt (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::init (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::new_transport_session (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::security_req_handler (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security::ver (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security_handle_t (*C++ type*), 590
protocomm_security_pop (*C++ class*), 590
protocomm_security_pop::data (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security_pop::len (*C++ member*), 590
protocomm_security_pop_t (*C++ type*), 590
protocomm_security_t (*C++ type*), 590
protocomm_set_security (*C++ function*), 588
protocomm_set_version (*C++ function*), 589
protocomm_t (*C++ type*), 589
protocomm_unset_security (*C++ function*), 588
protocomm_unset_version (*C++ function*), 589
psk_hint_key_t (*C++ type*), 473
psk_key_hint (*C++ class*), 470
psk_key_hint::hint (*C++ member*), 470
psk_key_hint::key (*C++ member*), 470
psk_key_hint::key_size (*C++ member*), 470
PTHREAD_STACK_MIN (*C macro*), 746
pvTaskGetThreadLocalStoragePointer (*C++ function*), 775

pvTimerGetTimerID (*C++ function*), 820
pxTaskGetStackStart (*C++ function*), 774

Q

QueueHandle_t (*C++ type*), 803
QueueSetHandle_t (*C++ type*), 803
QueueSetMemberHandle_t (*C++ type*), 803

R

R0 (*C macro*), 1343
R1 (*C macro*), 1343
R2 (*C macro*), 1343
R3 (*C macro*), 1343
RINGBUF_TYPE_ALLOWSPLIT (*C++ enumerator*), 869
RINGBUF_TYPE_BYTEBUF (*C++ enumerator*), 869
RINGBUF_TYPE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 869
RINGBUF_TYPE_NOSPLIT (*C++ enumerator*), 869
RingbufferType_t (*C++ enum*), 869
RingbufHandle_t (*C++ type*), 869
rmt_add_channel_to_group (*C++ function*), 320
RMT_BASECLK_APB (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_BASECLK_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_BASECLK_REF (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_HIGH (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_LOW (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_CARRIER_LEVEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 325
rmt_carrier_level_t (*C++ enum*), 325
RMT_CHANNEL_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_CHANNEL_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_CHANNEL_2 (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_CHANNEL_3 (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_CHANNEL_BUSY (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_AWARE_DFS (*C macro*), 323
RMT_CHANNEL_FLAGS_INVERT_SIG (*C macro*), 323
RMT_CHANNEL_IDLE (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_CHANNEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
rmt_channel_status_result_t (*C++ class*), 323
rmt_channel_status_result_t::status (*C++ member*), 324
rmt_channel_status_t (*C++ enum*), 325
rmt_channel_t (*C++ enum*), 324
RMT_CHANNEL_UNINIT (*C++ enumerator*), 325
rmt_clr_intr_enable_mask (*C++ function*), 321
rmt_config (*C++ function*), 317
rmt_config_t (*C++ class*), 322
rmt_config_t::channel (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::clk_div (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::flags (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::gpio_num (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::mem_block_num (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::rmt_mode (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::rx_config (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_config_t::tx_config (*C++ member*), 322
RMT_DATA_MODE_FIFO (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_DATA_MODE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_DATA_MODE_MEM (*C++ enumerator*), 324
rmt_data_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 324
RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_RX (*C macro*), 323
RMT_DEFAULT_CONFIG_TX (*C macro*), 323
rmt_driver_install (*C++ function*), 318
rmt_driver_uninstall (*C++ function*), 318
rmt_fill_tx_items (*C++ function*), 317
rmt_get_channel_status (*C++ function*), 318
rmt_get_clk_div (*C++ function*), 312
rmt_get_counter_clock (*C++ function*), 318
rmt_get_idle_level (*C++ function*), 316
rmt_get_mem_block_num (*C++ function*), 312
rmt_get_mem_pd (*C++ function*), 313
rmt_get_memory_owner (*C++ function*), 314
rmt_get_ringbuf_handle (*C++ function*), 319
rmt_get_rx_idle_thresh (*C++ function*), 312
rmt_get_source_clk (*C++ function*), 315
rmt_get_status (*C++ function*), 316
rmt_get_tx_loop_mode (*C++ function*), 315
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_HIGH (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_LOW (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_IDLE_LEVEL_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 325
rmt_idle_level_t (*C++ enum*), 325
rmt_isr_deregister (*C++ function*), 317
rmt_isr_handle_t (*C++ type*), 323
rmt_isr_register (*C++ function*), 317
RMT_MEM_ITEM_NUM (*C macro*), 323
RMT_MEM_OWNER_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
RMT_MEM_OWNER_RX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
rmt_mem_owner_t (*C++ enum*), 324
RMT_MEM_OWNER_TX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
rmt_memory_rw_rst (*C++ function*), 321
RMT_MODE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 325
RMT_MODE_RX (*C++ enumerator*), 325
rmt_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 324
RMT_MODE_TX (*C++ enumerator*), 324
rmt_register_tx_end_callback (*C++ function*), 320
rmt_remove_channel_from_group (*C++ function*), 320
rmt_rx_config_t (*C++ class*), 322
rmt_rx_config_t::carrier_duty_percent (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_rx_config_t::carrier_freq_hz (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_rx_config_t::carrier_level (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_rx_config_t::filter_en (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_rx_config_t::filter_ticks_thresh (*C++ member*), 322
rmt_rx_config_t::idle_threshold (*C++ member*), 322

rmt_rx_config_t::rm_carrier (C++ member), 322
rmt_rx_memory_reset (C++ function), 314
rmt_rx_start (C++ function), 314
rmt_rx_stop (C++ function), 314
rmt_set_clk_div (C++ function), 311
rmt_set_err_intr_en (C++ function), 316
rmt_set_gpio (C++ function), 317
rmt_set_idle_level (C++ function), 315
rmt_set_intr_enable_mask (C++ function), 321
rmt_set_mem_block_num (C++ function), 312
rmt_set_mem_pd (C++ function), 313
rmt_set_memory_owner (C++ function), 314
rmt_set_pin (C++ function), 321
rmt_set_rx_filter (C++ function), 315
rmt_set_rx_idle_thresh (C++ function), 312
rmt_set_rx_intr_en (C++ function), 316
rmt_set_rx_thr_intr_en (C++ function), 320
rmt_set_source_clk (C++ function), 315
rmt_set_tx_carrier (C++ function), 313
rmt_set_tx_intr_en (C++ function), 316
rmt_set_tx_loop_count (C++ function), 320
rmt_set_tx_loop_mode (C++ function), 314
rmt_set_tx_thr_intr_en (C++ function), 316
rmt_source_clk_t (C++ enum), 324
rmt_translator_get_context (C++ function), 319
rmt_translator_init (C++ function), 319
rmt_translator_set_context (C++ function), 319
rmt_tx_config_t (C++ class), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::carrier_duty_percent (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::carrier_en (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::carrier_freq_hz (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::carrier_level (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::idle_level (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::idle_output_en (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::loop_count (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_config_t::loop_en (C++ member), 321
rmt_tx_end_callback_t (C++ class), 322
rmt_tx_end_callback_t::arg (C++ member), 323
rmt_tx_end_callback_t::function (C++ member), 323
rmt_tx_end_fn_t (C++ type), 323
rmt_tx_memory_reset (C++ function), 314
rmt_tx_start (C++ function), 313
rmt_tx_stop (C++ function), 313
rmt_wait_tx_done (C++ function), 319
rmt_write_items (C++ function), 318
rmt_write_sample (C++ function), 320
rtc_gpio_deinit (C++ function), 246
rtc_gpio_force_hold_all (C++ function), 248
rtc_gpio_force_hold_dis_all (C++ function), 248
rtc_gpio_get_drive_capability (C++ function), 247
rtc_gpio_get_level (C++ function), 246
rtc_gpio_hold_dis (C++ function), 248
rtc_gpio_hold_en (C++ function), 248
rtc_gpio_init (C++ function), 246
RTC_GPIO_IS_VALID_GPIO (C macro), 249
rtc_gpio_is_valid_gpio (C++ function), 245
rtc_gpio_isolate (C++ function), 248
RTC_GPIO_MODE_DISABLED (C++ enumerator), 249
RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_ONLY (C++ enumerator), 249
RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT (C++ enumerator), 249
RTC_GPIO_MODE_INPUT_OUTPUT_OD (C++ enumerator), 249
RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_OD (C++ enumerator), 249
RTC_GPIO_MODE_OUTPUT_ONLY (C++ enumerator), 249
rtc_gpio_mode_t (C++ enum), 249
rtc_gpio_pulldown_dis (C++ function), 247
rtc_gpio_pulldown_en (C++ function), 247
rtc_gpio_pullup_dis (C++ function), 247
rtc_gpio_pullup_en (C++ function), 247
rtc_gpio_set_direction (C++ function), 246
rtc_gpio_set_direction_in_sleep (C++ function), 246
rtc_gpio_set_drive_capability (C++ function), 247
rtc_gpio_set_level (C++ function), 246
rtc_gpio_wakeup_disable (C++ function), 249
rtc_gpio_wakeup_enable (C++ function), 248
rtc_io_number_get (C++ function), 245
RTC_SLOW_MEM (C macro), 1346

S

sample_to_rmt_t (C++ type), 323
SC_EVENT_FOUND_CHANNEL (C++ enumerator), 119
SC_EVENT_GOT_SSID_PSWD (C++ enumerator), 119
SC_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ enumerator), 119
SC_EVENT_SEND_ACK_DONE (C++ enumerator), 119
SC_TYPE_AIRKISS (C++ enumerator), 118
SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH (C++ enumerator), 118
SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH_AIRKISS (C++ enumerator), 118
SC_TYPE_ESPTOUCH_V2 (C++ enumerator), 118
sdmmc_card_init (C++ function), 651

sdmmc_card_print_info (*C++ function*), 651
sdmmc_card_t (*C++ class*), 656
sdmmc_card_t::cid (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::csd (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::ext_csd (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::host (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::is_ddr (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::is_mem (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::is_mmc (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::is_sdio (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::log_bus_width (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::max_freq_khz (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::num_io_functions (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::ocr (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::raw_cid (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::rca (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::reserved (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_card_t::scr (*C++ member*), 657
sdmmc_cid_t (*C++ class*), 654
sdmmc_cid_t::date (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_cid_t::mfg_id (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_cid_t::name (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_cid_t::oem_id (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_cid_t::revision (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_cid_t::serial (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t (*C++ class*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::arg (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::blklen (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::data (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::datalen (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::error (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_command_t::flags (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::opcode (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::response (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_command_t::timeout_ms (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_csd_t (*C++ class*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::capacity (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::card_command_class (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::csd_ver (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::mmc_ver (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::read_block_len (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::sector_size (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_csd_t::tr_speed (*C++ member*), 654
sdmmc_ext_csd_t (*C++ class*), 655
sdmmc_ext_csd_t::power_class (*C++ member*), 655
SDMMC_FREQ_26M (*C macro*), 658
SDMMC_FREQ_52M (*C macro*), 658
SDMMC_FREQ_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 657
SDMMC_FREQ_HIGHSPEED (*C macro*), 658
SDMMC_FREQ_PROBING (*C macro*), 658
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_1BIT (*C macro*), 657
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_4BIT (*C macro*), 657
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_8BIT (*C macro*), 657
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DDR (*C macro*), 657
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_DEINIT_ARG (*C macro*), 657
SDMMC_HOST_FLAG_SPI (*C macro*), 657
sdmmc_host_t (*C++ class*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::command_timeout_ms (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::deinit (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::deinit_p (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::do_transaction (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::flags (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::get_bus_width (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::init (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::io_int_enable (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::io_int_wait (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::io_voltage (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::max_freq_khz (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::set_bus_ddr_mode (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::set_bus_width (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::set_card_clk (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_host_t::slot (*C++ member*), 656
sdmmc_io_enable_int (*C++ function*), 653
sdmmc_io_get_cis_data (*C++ function*), 653
sdmmc_io_print_cis_info (*C++ function*), 654
sdmmc_io_read_blocks (*C++ function*), 652
sdmmc_io_read_byte (*C++ function*), 651
sdmmc_io_read_bytes (*C++ function*), 652
sdmmc_io_wait_int (*C++ function*), 653
sdmmc_io_write_blocks (*C++ function*), 653
sdmmc_io_write_byte (*C++ function*), 651
sdmmc_io_write_bytes (*C++ function*), 652
sdmmc_read_sectors (*C++ function*), 651
sdmmc_response_t (*C++ type*), 658
sdmmc_scr_t (*C++ class*), 655
sdmmc_scr_t::bus_width (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_scr_t::sd_spec (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_switch_func_rsp_t (*C++ class*), 655
sdmmc_switch_func_rsp_t::data (*C++ member*), 655
sdmmc_write_sectors (*C++ function*), 651
SDSPI_DEFAULT_HOST (*C macro*), 329
sdspi_dev_handle_t (*C++ type*), 329
SDSPI_DEVICE_CONFIG_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 329
sdspi_device_config_t (*C++ class*), 328

sdspi_device_config_t::gpio_cd (C++ member), 328
sdspi_device_config_t::gpio_cs (C++ member), 328
sdspi_device_config_t::gpio_int (C++ member), 328
sdspi_device_config_t::gpio_wp (C++ member), 328
sdspi_device_config_t::host_id (C++ member), 328
SDSPI_HOST_DEFAULT (C macro), 329
sdspi_host_deinit (C++ function), 327
sdspi_host_do_transaction (C++ function), 327
sdspi_host_init (C++ function), 326
sdspi_host_init_device (C++ function), 326
sdspi_host_init_slot (C++ function), 327
sdspi_host_io_int_enable (C++ function), 327
sdspi_host_io_int_wait (C++ function), 327
sdspi_host_remove_device (C++ function), 327
sdspi_host_set_card_clk (C++ function), 327
SDSPI_SLOT_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 329
sdspi_slot_config_t (C++ class), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::dma_channel (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_cd (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_cs (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_int (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_miso (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_mosi (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_sck (C++ member), 328
sdspi_slot_config_t::gpio_wp (C++ member), 328
SDSPI_SLOT_NO_CD (C macro), 329
SDSPI_SLOT_NO_INT (C macro), 329
SDSPI_SLOT_NO_WP (C macro), 329
SemaphoreHandle_t (C++ type), 816
semBINARY_SEMAPHORE_QUEUE_LENGTH (C macro), 803
semGIVE_BLOCK_TIME (C macro), 803
semSEMAPHORE_QUEUE_ITEM_LENGTH (C macro), 803
shared_stack_function (C++ type), 899
shutdown_handler_t (C++ type), 914
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_0 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_1 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_2 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_3 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_4 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_5 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_6 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_7 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_CHANNEL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 332
sigmadelta_channel_t (C++ enum), 332
sigmadelta_config (C++ function), 330
sigmadelta_config_t (C++ class), 331
sigmadelta_config_t::channel (C++ member), 331
sigmadelta_config_t::sigmadelta_duty (C++ member), 331
sigmadelta_config_t::sigmadelta_gpio (C++ member), 331
sigmadelta_config_t::sigmadelta_prescale (C++ member), 331
SIGMADELTA_PORT_0 (C++ enumerator), 332
SIGMADELTA_PORT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 332
sigmadelta_port_t (C++ enum), 332
sigmadelta_set_duty (C++ function), 330
sigmadelta_set_pin (C++ function), 331
sigmadelta_set_prescale (C++ function), 331
slave_cb_t (C++ type), 360
slave_transaction_cb_t (C++ type), 354
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t (C++ class), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::bssid (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::bssid_set (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::cellphone_ip (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::password (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::ssid (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::token (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_got_ssid_pswd_t::type (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_event_t (C++ enum), 119
SMARTCONFIG_START_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 118
smartconfig_start_config_t (C++ class), 118
smartconfig_start_config_t::enable_log (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_start_config_t::esp_touch_v2_enable_c (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_start_config_t::esp_touch_v2_key (C++ member), 118
smartconfig_type_t (C++ enum), 118
sntp_get_sync_interval (C++ function), 948
sntp_get_sync_mode (C++ function), 947
sntp_get_sync_status (C++ function), 947
sntp_restart (C++ function), 948
sntp_set_sync_interval (C++ function), 948
sntp_set_sync_mode (C++ function), 947
sntp_set_sync_status (C++ function), 948

sntp_set_time_sync_notification_cb (C++ function), 948
SNTP_SYNC_MODE_IMMED (C++ enumerator), 948
SNTP_SYNC_MODE_SMOOTH (C++ enumerator), 948
sntp_sync_mode_t (C++ enum), 948
SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_COMPLETED (C++ enumerator), 949
SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_IN_PROGRESS (C++ enumerator), 949
SNTP_SYNC_STATUS_RESET (C++ enumerator), 949
sntp_sync_status_t (C++ enum), 949
sntp_sync_time (C++ function), 947
sntp_sync_time_cb_t (C++ type), 948
SPI1_HOST (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI2_HOST (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI3_HOST (C++ enumerator), 338
spi_bus_add_device (C++ function), 341
spi_bus_add_flash_device (C++ function), 663
spi_bus_config_t (C++ class), 339
spi_bus_config_t::flags (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_config_t::intr_flags (C++ member), 340
spi_bus_config_t::max_transfer_sz (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_config_t::miso_io_num (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_config_t::mosi_io_num (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_config_t::quadhd_io_num (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_config_t::quadwp_io_num (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_config_t::sclk_io_num (C++ member), 339
spi_bus_free (C++ function), 339
spi_bus_initialize (C++ function), 338
spi_bus_remove_device (C++ function), 341
spi_bus_remove_flash_device (C++ function), 663
spi_cal_clock (C++ function), 343
spi_common_dma_t (C++ enum), 341
SPI_DEVICE_3WIRE (C macro), 347
spi_device_acquire_bus (C++ function), 343
SPI_DEVICE_BIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 347
SPI_DEVICE_CLK_AS_CS (C macro), 347
SPI_DEVICE_DDRCLK (C macro), 347
spi_device_get_trans_result (C++ function), 342
SPI_DEVICE_HALFDUPLEX (C macro), 347
spi_device_handle_t (C++ type), 348
spi_device_interface_config_t (C++ class), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::address_bits (C++ member), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::clock_speed_hz (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::command_bits (C++ member), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::cs_ena_posttrans (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::cs_ena_pretrans (C++ member), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::dummy_bits (C++ member), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::duty_cycle_pos (C++ member), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::flags (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::input_delay_ns (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::mode (C++ member), 344
spi_device_interface_config_t::post_cb (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::pre_cb (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::queue_size (C++ member), 345
spi_device_interface_config_t::spics_io_num (C++ member), 345
SPI_DEVICE_NO_DUMMY (C macro), 347
spi_device_polling_end (C++ function), 343
spi_device_polling_start (C++ function), 342
spi_device_polling_transmit (C++ function), 343
SPI_DEVICE_POSITIVE_CS (C macro), 347
spi_device_queue_trans (C++ function), 341
spi_device_release_bus (C++ function), 343
SPI_DEVICE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 347
spi_device_transmit (C++ function), 342
SPI_DEVICE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 347
SPI_DMA_CH_AUTO (C++ enumerator), 341
spi_dma_chan_t (C++ type), 341
SPI_DMA_DISABLED (C++ enumerator), 341
SPI_EV_BUF_RX (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI_EV_BUF_TX (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI_EV_CMD9 (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI_EV_CMDA (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI_EV_RECV (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI_EV_SEND (C++ enumerator), 338
SPI_EV_TRANS (C++ enumerator), 338
spi_event_t (C++ enum), 338
spi_flash_chip_t (C++ type), 669
SPI_FLASH_CONFIG_CONF_BITS (C macro), 672
SPI_FLASH_DIO (C++ enumerator), 672
SPI_FLASH_DOUT (C++ enumerator), 672
SPI_FLASH_FASTRD (C++ enumerator), 672
spi_flash_host_driver_s (C++ class), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::check_suspend (C++ member), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::common_command (C++ member), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::configure_host_io_mode

(C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::dev_config (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::erase_block (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::erase_chip (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::erase_sector (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::flush_cache (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::host_status (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::poll_cmd_done (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::program_page (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::read (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::read_data_slicer (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::read_id (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::read_status (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::resume (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::set_write_protect (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_host_driver_s::supports_direct_read (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::supports_direct_write (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::sus_setup (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::suspend (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_s::write_data_slicer (C++ *member*), 671
spi_flash_host_driver_t (C++ *type*), 672
spi_flash_host_inst_t (C++ *class*), 670
spi_flash_host_inst_t::driver (C++ *member*), 670
SPI_FLASH_QIO (C++ *enumerator*), 673
SPI_FLASH_QOUT (C++ *enumerator*), 673
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_MAX (C++ *enumerator*), 673
SPI_FLASH_READ_MODE_MIN (C *macro*), 672
SPI_FLASH_SLOWRD (C++ *enumerator*), 672
spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf (C++ *class*), 670
spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf::cmd_rdsr (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf::res_cmd (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf::reserved (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf::sus_cmd (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_sus_cmd_conf::sus_mask (C++ *member*), 670
SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_BYTE_SWAP (C *macro*), 672
SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_CMD16 (C *macro*), 671
SPI_FLASH_TRANS_FLAG_IGNORE_BASEIO (C *macro*), 672
spi_flash_trans_t (C++ *class*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::address (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::address_bitlen (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::command (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::dummy_bitlen (C++ *member*), 670
spi_flash_trans_t::flags (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::miso_data (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::miso_len (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::mosi_data (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::mosi_len (C++ *member*), 669
spi_flash_trans_t::reserved (C++ *member*), 669
SPI_FLASH_YIELD_REQ_SUSPEND (C *macro*), 669
SPI_FLASH_YIELD_REQ_YIELD (C *macro*), 669
SPI_FLASH_YIELD_STA_RESUME (C *macro*), 669
spi_get_actual_clock (C++ *function*), 343
spi_get_freq_limit (C++ *function*), 344
spi_get_timing (C++ *function*), 344
spi_host_device_t (C++ *enum*), 338
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_10M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_11M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_13M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_16M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_20M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_26M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_40M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_80M (C *macro*), 347
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_8M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MASTER_FREQ_9M (C *macro*), 346
SPI_MAX_DMA_LEN (C *macro*), 340
SPI_SLAVE_BIT_LSBFIRST (C *macro*), 353
SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_RX (C++ *enumerator*), 360
spi_slave_chan_t (C++ *enum*), 360
SPI_SLAVE_CHAN_TX (C++ *enumerator*), 360
spi_slave_free (C++ *function*), 351
spi_slave_get_trans_result (C++ *function*), 352
SPI_SLAVE_HD_APPEND_MODE (C *macro*), 360
spi_slave_hd_append_trans (C++ *function*), 357
SPI_SLAVE_HD_BIT_LSBFIRST (C *macro*), 360

spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t (C++ class), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::arg (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::cb_buffer_rx (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::cb_buffer_tx (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::cb_cmd9 (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::cb_cmdA (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::cb_recv (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_callback_config_t::cb_sent (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_data_t (C++ class), 358
spi_slave_hd_data_t::arg (C++ member), 358
spi_slave_hd_data_t::data (C++ member), 358
spi_slave_hd_data_t::len (C++ member), 358
spi_slave_hd_data_t::trans_len (C++ member), 358
spi_slave_hd_deinit (C++ function), 356
spi_slave_hd_event_t (C++ class), 358
spi_slave_hd_event_t::event (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_event_t::trans (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_get_append_trans_res (C++ function), 358
spi_slave_hd_get_trans_res (C++ function), 357
spi_slave_hd_init (C++ function), 356
spi_slave_hd_queue_trans (C++ function), 357
spi_slave_hd_read_buffer (C++ function), 357
SPI_SLAVE_HD_RXBIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 360
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t (C++ class), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::address_bits (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::cb_config (C++ member), 360
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::command_bits (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::dma_chan (C++ member), 360
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::dummy_bits (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::flags (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::mode (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::queue_size (C++ member), 359
spi_slave_hd_slot_config_t::spics_io_num (C++ member), 359
SPI_SLAVE_HD_TXBIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 360
spi_slave_hd_write_buffer (C++ function), 357
spi_slave_initialize (C++ function), 351
spi_slave_interface_config_t (C++ class), 352
spi_slave_interface_config_t::flags (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_interface_config_t::mode (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_interface_config_t::post_setup_cb (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_interface_config_t::post_trans_cb (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_interface_config_t::queue_size (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_interface_config_t::spics_io_num (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_queue_trans (C++ function), 352
SPI_SLAVE_RXBIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 353
spi_slave_transaction_t (C++ class), 353
spi_slave_transaction_t (C++ type), 354
spi_slave_transaction_t::length (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_transaction_t::rx_buffer (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_transaction_t::trans_len (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_transaction_t::tx_buffer (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_transaction_t::user (C++ member), 353
spi_slave_transmit (C++ function), 352
SPI_SLAVE_TXBIT_LSBFIRST (C macro), 353
SPI_SWAP_DATA_RX (C macro), 340
SPI_SWAP_DATA_TX (C macro), 340
SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIO (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_MODE_DIOQIO_ADDR (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_MODE_QIO (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_SET_CD (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_USE_RXDATA (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_USE_TXDATA (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_ADDR (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_CMD (C macro), 347
SPI_TRANS_VARIABLE_DUMMY (C macro), 347
spi_transaction_ext_t (C++ class), 346
spi_transaction_ext_t::address_bits (C++ member), 346
spi_transaction_ext_t::base (C++ member), 346
spi_transaction_ext_t::command_bits (C++ member), 346
spi_transaction_ext_t::dummy_bits

(C++ *member*), 346
spi_transaction_t (C++ *class*), 345
spi_transaction_t (C++ *type*), 348
spi_transaction_t::addr (C++ *member*), 345
spi_transaction_t::cmd (C++ *member*), 345
spi_transaction_t::flags (C++ *member*), 345
spi_transaction_t::length (C++ *member*), 345
spi_transaction_t::rx_buffer (C++ *member*), 346
spi_transaction_t::rx_data (C++ *member*), 346
spi_transaction_t::rxlength (C++ *member*), 346
spi_transaction_t::tx_buffer (C++ *member*), 346
spi_transaction_t::tx_data (C++ *member*), 346
spi_transaction_t::user (C++ *member*), 346
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_DUAL (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_GPIO_PINS (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_IOMUX_PINS (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MASTER (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MISO (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_MOSI (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_NATIVE_PINS (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_QUAD (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SCLK (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_SLAVE (C *macro*), 340
SPICOMMON_BUSFLAG_WPHD (C *macro*), 340
StaticRingbuffer_t (C++ *type*), 869
StreamBufferHandle_t (C++ *type*), 847
SYSTEM_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t (C++ *type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STA_GOT_IP6 (C *macro*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_ap_staconnected_t (C++ *type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_ap_stadisconnected_t (C++ *type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STAIPASSIGNED (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_ap_staipassigned_t (C++ *type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_START (C++ *enumerator*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_AP_STOP (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_cb_t (C++ *type*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_CONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_DISCONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_GOT_IP (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_START (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_ETH_STOP (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_FTM_REPORT (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_ftm_report_t (C++ *type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_GOT_IP6 (C++ *enumerator*), 762
system_event_got_ip6_t (C++ *type*), 760
system_event_handler_t (C++ *type*), 760
system_event_id_t (C++ *enum*), 761
system_event_info_t (C++ *union*), 759
system_event_info_t::ap_probereqrecved (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::ap_staipassigned (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::auth_change (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::connected (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::disconnected (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::ftm_report (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::got_ip (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::got_ip6 (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::scan_done (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::sta_connected (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::sta_disconnected (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::sta_er_fail_reason (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::sta_er_pin (C++ *member*), 759
system_event_info_t::sta_er_success (C++ *member*), 759
SYSTEM_EVENT_MAX (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_ROC_DONE (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ *enumerator*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE (C++ *enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_authmode_change_t (C++ *type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BEACON_TIMEOUT (C++ *enumerator*), 762
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW (C++ *enumerator*), 761

SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_connected_t (*C++ type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_disconnected_t (*C++ type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_GOT_IP (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_got_ip_t (*C++ type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_LOST_IP (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_scan_done_t (*C++ type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_START (*C++ enumerator*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_STOP (*C++ enumerator*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED (*C++ enumerator*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PBC_OVERLAP (*C++ enumerator*), 761
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t (*C++ type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_wps_er_success_t (*C++ type*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 761
system_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t (*C++ type*), 760
system_event_t (*C++ class*), 760
system_event_t::event_id (*C++ member*), 760
system_event_t::event_info (*C++ member*), 760
SYSTEM_EVENT_WIFI_READY (*C++ enumerator*), 761

T

taskDISABLE_INTERRUPTS (*C macro*), 784
taskENABLE_INTERRUPTS (*C macro*), 784
taskENTER_CRITICAL (*C macro*), 783
taskENTER_CRITICAL_FROM_ISR (*C macro*), 783
taskENTER_CRITICAL_ISR (*C macro*), 783
taskEXIT_CRITICAL (*C macro*), 783
taskEXIT_CRITICAL_FROM_ISR (*C macro*), 783
taskEXIT_CRITICAL_ISR (*C macro*), 783
TaskHandle_t (*C++ type*), 784
TaskHookFunction_t (*C++ type*), 784
taskSCHEDULER_NOT_STARTED (*C macro*), 784
taskSCHEDULER_RUNNING (*C macro*), 784
taskSCHEDULER_SUSPENDED (*C macro*), 784
taskYIELD (*C macro*), 783
temp_sensor_config_t (*C++ class*), 361
temp_sensor_config_t::clk_div (*C++ member*), 362
temp_sensor_config_t::dac_offset (*C++ member*), 362
temp_sensor_dac_offset_t (*C++ enum*), 362
temp_sensor_get_config (*C++ function*), 361
temp_sensor_read_celsius (*C++ function*), 361
temp_sensor_read_raw (*C++ function*), 361
temp_sensor_set_config (*C++ function*), 361
temp_sensor_start (*C++ function*), 361
temp_sensor_stop (*C++ function*), 361
TIMER_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 230
TIMER_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 230
TIMER_ALARM_DIS (*C++ enumerator*), 231
TIMER_ALARM_EN (*C++ enumerator*), 231
TIMER_ALARM_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 231
timer_alarm_t (*C++ enum*), 231
TIMER_AUTORELOAD_DIS (*C++ enumerator*), 231
TIMER_AUTORELOAD_EN (*C++ enumerator*), 232
TIMER_AUTORELOAD_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 232
timer_autoreload_t (*C++ enum*), 231
TIMER_BASE_CLK (*C macro*), 229
timer_config_t (*C++ class*), 230
timer_config_t::alarm_en (*C++ member*), 230
timer_config_t::auto_reload (*C++ member*), 230
timer_config_t::clk_src (*C++ member*), 230
timer_config_t::counter_dir (*C++ member*), 230
timer_config_t::counter_en (*C++ member*), 230
timer_config_t::divider (*C++ member*), 230
timer_config_t::intr_type (*C++ member*), 230
timer_count_dir_t (*C++ enum*), 231
TIMER_COUNT_DOWN (*C++ enumerator*), 231
TIMER_COUNT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 231
TIMER_COUNT_UP (*C++ enumerator*), 231
timer_deinit (*C++ function*), 227
timer_disable_intr (*C++ function*), 228
timer_enable_intr (*C++ function*), 227
timer_get_alarm_value (*C++ function*), 225
timer_get_config (*C++ function*), 227
timer_get_counter_time_sec (*C++ function*), 224
timer_get_counter_value (*C++ function*), 224
TIMER_GROUP_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 230
TIMER_GROUP_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 230
timer_group_clr_intr_sta_in_isr (*C++ function*), 229
timer_group_clr_intr_status_in_isr (*C++ function*), 228
timer_group_enable_alarm_in_isr (*C++ function*), 228

timer_group_get_auto_reload_in_isr (C++ function), 229
timer_group_get_counter_value_in_isr (C++ function), 228
timer_group_get_intr_status_in_isr (C++ function), 229
timer_group_intr_clr_in_isr (C++ function), 228
timer_group_intr_disable (C++ function), 227
timer_group_intr_enable (C++ function), 227
timer_group_intr_get_in_isr (C++ function), 229
TIMER_GROUP_MAX (C++ enumerator), 230
timer_group_set_alarm_value_in_isr (C++ function), 228
timer_group_set_counter_enable_in_isr (C++ function), 228
timer_group_t (C++ enum), 230
timer_idx_t (C++ enum), 230
timer_init (C++ function), 227
TIMER_INTR_LEVEL (C++ enumerator), 231
TIMER_INTR_MAX (C++ enumerator), 231
timer_intr_mode_t (C++ enum), 231
TIMER_INTR_NONE (C++ enumerator), 231
timer_intr_t (C++ enum), 231
TIMER_INTR_T0 (C++ enumerator), 231
TIMER_INTR_T1 (C++ enumerator), 231
TIMER_INTR_WDT (C++ enumerator), 231
timer_isr_callback_add (C++ function), 226
timer_isr_callback_remove (C++ function), 226
timer_isr_handle_t (C++ type), 230
timer_isr_register (C++ function), 226
timer_isr_t (C++ type), 229
TIMER_MAX (C++ enumerator), 231
TIMER_PAUSE (C++ enumerator), 231
timer_pause (C++ function), 224
timer_set_alarm (C++ function), 225
timer_set_alarm_value (C++ function), 225
timer_set_auto_reload (C++ function), 225
timer_set_counter_mode (C++ function), 225
timer_set_counter_value (C++ function), 224
timer_set_divider (C++ function), 225
timer_spinlock_give (C++ function), 229
timer_spinlock_take (C++ function), 229
TIMER_SRC_CLK_APB (C++ enumerator), 232
timer_src_clk_t (C++ enum), 232
TIMER_SRC_CLK_XTAL (C++ enumerator), 232
TIMER_START (C++ enumerator), 231
timer_start (C++ function), 224
timer_start_t (C++ enum), 231
TimerCallbackFunction_t (C++ type), 832
TimerHandle_t (C++ type), 832
TINYUSB_CDC_ACM_0 (C++ enumerator), 451
tinyusb_cdcacm_itf_t (C++ enum), 451
tinyusb_cdcacm_read (C++ function), 449
tinyusb_cdcacm_register_callback (C++ function), 448
tinyusb_cdcacm_unregister_callback (C++ function), 448
tinyusb_cdcacm_write_flush (C++ function), 449
tinyusb_cdcacm_write_queue (C++ function), 449
tinyusb_cdcacm_write_queue_char (C++ function), 449
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t (C++ class), 450
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::callback_line_coding_cha (C++ member), 451
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::callback_line_state_chan (C++ member), 450
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::callback_rx (C++ member), 450
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::callback_rx_wanted_char (C++ member), 450
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::cdc_port (C++ member), 450
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::rx_unread_buf_sz (C++ member), 450
tinyusb_config_cdcacm_t::usb_dev (C++ member), 450
tinyusb_config_t (C++ class), 448
tinyusb_config_t::descriptor (C++ member), 448
tinyusb_config_t::external_phy (C++ member), 448
tinyusb_config_t::string_descriptor (C++ member), 448
tinyusb_driver_install (C++ function), 448
TINYUSB_USBDEV_0 (C++ enumerator), 448
tinyusb_usbdev_t (C++ enum), 448
tls_keep_alive_cfg (C++ class), 470
tls_keep_alive_cfg::keep_alive_count (C++ member), 470
tls_keep_alive_cfg::keep_alive_enable (C++ member), 470
tls_keep_alive_cfg::keep_alive_idle (C++ member), 470
tls_keep_alive_cfg::keep_alive_interval (C++ member), 470
tls_keep_alive_cfg_t (C++ type), 473
TlsDeleteCallbackFunction_t (C++ type), 784
tmrCOMMAND_CHANGE_PERIOD (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_CHANGE_PERIOD_FROM_ISR (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_DELETE (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_EXECUTE_CALLBACK (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_EXECUTE_CALLBACK_FROM_ISR (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_RESET (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_RESET_FROM_ISR (C macro), 823
tmrCOMMAND_START (C macro), 823

tmrCOMMAND_START_DONT_TRACE (*C macro*), 823
tmrCOMMAND_START_FROM_ISR (*C macro*), 823
tmrCOMMAND_STOP (*C macro*), 823
tmrCOMMAND_STOP_FROM_ISR (*C macro*), 823
tmrFIRST_FROM_ISR_COMMAND (*C macro*), 823
touch_button_callback_t (*C++ type*), 400
touch_button_config_t (*C++ class*), 400
touch_button_config_t::channel_num (*C++ member*), 400
touch_button_config_t::channel_sens (*C++ member*), 400
touch_button_create (*C++ function*), 398
touch_button_delete (*C++ function*), 398
touch_button_event_t (*C++ enum*), 401
TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 401
TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_ON_LONGPRESS (*C++ enumerator*), 401
TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_ON_PRESS (*C++ enumerator*), 401
TOUCH_BUTTON_EVT_ON_RELEASE (*C++ enumerator*), 401
touch_button_get_message (*C++ function*), 400
touch_button_global_config_t (*C++ class*), 400
touch_button_global_config_t::default_longtouch_time (*C++ member*), 400
touch_button_global_config_t::threshold_divider (*C++ member*), 400
TOUCH_BUTTON_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG (*C macro*), 400
touch_button_handle_t (*C++ type*), 400
touch_button_install (*C++ function*), 398
touch_button_message_t (*C++ class*), 400
touch_button_message_t::event (*C++ member*), 400
touch_button_set_callback (*C++ function*), 399
touch_button_set_dispatch_method (*C++ function*), 399
touch_button_set_longpress (*C++ function*), 399
touch_button_subscribe_event (*C++ function*), 398
touch_button_uninstall (*C++ function*), 398
touch_cnt_slope_t (*C++ enum*), 380
TOUCH_DEBOUNCE_CNT_MAX (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_CALLBACK (*C++ enumerator*), 398
TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_EVENT (*C++ enumerator*), 398
TOUCH_ELEM_DISP_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 398
touch_elem_dispatch_t (*C++ enum*), 398
TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_NONE (*C macro*), 397
TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_CALCULATION (*C macro*), 397
TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_LONGPRESS (*C macro*), 397
TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_PRESS (*C macro*), 397
TOUCH_ELEM_EVENT_ON_RELEASE (*C macro*), 397
touch_elem_event_t (*C++ type*), 397
touch_elem_global_config_t (*C++ class*), 396
touch_elem_global_config_t::hardware (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_global_config_t::software (*C++ member*), 396
TOUCH_ELEM_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG (*C macro*), 397
touch_elem_handle_t (*C++ type*), 397
touch_elem_hw_config_t (*C++ class*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::benchmark_calibration_thr (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::benchmark_debounce_count (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::benchmark_filter_mode (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::benchmark_jitter_step (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::denoise_equivalent_cap (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::denoise_level (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::lower_voltage (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::sample_count (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::sleep_cycle (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::smooth_filter_mode (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::suspend_channel_polarity (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::upper_voltage (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_hw_config_t::voltage_attenuation (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_message_t (*C++ class*), 397
touch_elem_message_t::arg (*C++ member*), 397
touch_elem_message_t::child_msg (*C++ member*), 397
touch_elem_message_t::element_type (*C++ member*), 397
touch_elem_message_t::handle (*C++ member*), 397
touch_elem_sw_config_t (*C++ class*), 395
touch_elem_sw_config_t::event_message_size (*C++ member*), 396
touch_elem_sw_config_t::intr_message_size (*C++ member*), 395
touch_elem_sw_config_t::processing_period (*C++ member*), 395
touch_elem_sw_config_t::waterproof_threshold_divi (*C++ member*), 395

TOUCH_ELEM_TYPE_BUTTON (C++ enumerator), 397
TOUCH_ELEM_TYPE_MATRIX (C++ enumerator), 397
TOUCH_ELEM_TYPE_SLIDER (C++ enumerator), 397
touch_elem_type_t (C++ enum), 397
touch_elem_waterproof_config_t (C++ class), 396
touch_elem_waterproof_config_t::guard_channel (C++ member), 397
touch_elem_waterproof_config_t::guard_sensitivity (C++ member), 397
touch_element_install (C++ function), 394
touch_element_message_receive (C++ function), 394
touch_element_start (C++ function), 394
touch_element_stop (C++ function), 394
touch_element_uninstall (C++ function), 394
touch_element_waterproof_add (C++ function), 395
touch_element_waterproof_install (C++ function), 394
touch_element_waterproof_remove (C++ function), 395
touch_element_waterproof_uninstall (C++ function), 395
touch_filter_config (C++ class), 377
touch_filter_config::debounce_cnt (C++ member), 377
touch_filter_config::jitter_step (C++ member), 377
touch_filter_config::mode (C++ member), 377
touch_filter_config::noise_thr (C++ member), 377
touch_filter_config::smh_lvl (C++ member), 377
touch_filter_config_t (C++ type), 378
touch_filter_mode_t (C++ enum), 383
TOUCH_FSM_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 381
TOUCH_FSM_MODE_SW (C++ enumerator), 381
touch_fsm_mode_t (C++ enum), 381
TOUCH_FSM_MODE_TIMER (C++ enumerator), 381
touch_high_volt_t (C++ enum), 379
TOUCH_HVOLT_2V4 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_HVOLT_2V5 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_HVOLT_2V6 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_HVOLT_2V7 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_0V (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_0V5 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_1V (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_1V5 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_KEEP (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_HVOLT_ATTEN_MAX (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_HVOLT_KEEP (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_HVOLT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_JITTER_STEP_MAX (C macro), 378
touch_low_volt_t (C++ enum), 379
TOUCH_LVOLT_0V5 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_LVOLT_0V6 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_LVOLT_0V7 (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_LVOLT_0V8 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_LVOLT_KEEP (C++ enumerator), 379
TOUCH_LVOLT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 380
touch_matrix_callback_t (C++ type), 407
touch_matrix_config_t (C++ class), 406
touch_matrix_config_t::x_channel_array (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_config_t::x_channel_num (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_config_t::x_sensitivity_array (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_config_t::y_channel_array (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_config_t::y_channel_num (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_config_t::y_sensitivity_array (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_create (C++ function), 404
touch_matrix_delete (C++ function), 405
touch_matrix_event_t (C++ enum), 407
TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 407
TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_ON_LONGPRESS (C++ enumerator), 407
TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_ON_PRESS (C++ enumerator), 407
TOUCH_MATRIX_EVT_ON_RELEASE (C++ enumerator), 407
touch_matrix_get_message (C++ function), 406
touch_matrix_global_config_t (C++ class), 406
touch_matrix_global_config_t::default_lp_time (C++ member), 406
touch_matrix_global_config_t::threshold_divider (C++ member), 406
TOUCH_MATRIX_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 407
touch_matrix_handle_t (C++ type), 407
touch_matrix_install (C++ function), 404
touch_matrix_message_t (C++ class), 407
touch_matrix_message_t::event (C++ member), 407
touch_matrix_message_t::position (C++ member), 407
touch_matrix_position_t (C++ class), 407
touch_matrix_position_t::index (C++ member), 407
touch_matrix_position_t::x_axis (C++ member), 407
touch_matrix_position_t::y_axis (C++ member), 407
touch_matrix_set_callback (C++ function), 405

touch_matrix_set_dispatch_method (*C++ function*), 405
touch_matrix_set_longpress (*C++ function*), 406
touch_matrix_subscribe_event (*C++ function*), 405
touch_matrix_uninstall (*C++ function*), 404
TOUCH_NOISE_THR_MAX (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_ATTEN_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_BIT_MASK_ALL (*C macro*), 377
TOUCH_PAD_BIT_MASK_MAX (*C macro*), 378
touch_pad_clear_channel_mask (*C++ function*), 367
touch_pad_clear_status (*C++ function*), 375
touch_pad_config (*C++ function*), 367
TOUCH_PAD_CONN_GND (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_CONN_HIGHZ (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_CONN_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 382
touch_pad_conn_type_t (*C++ enum*), 382
touch_pad_deinit (*C++ function*), 373
touch_pad_denoise (*C++ class*), 376
touch_pad_denoise::cap_level (*C++ member*), 376
touch_pad_denoise::grade (*C++ member*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT10 (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT12 (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT4 (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_BIT8 (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L0 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L1 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L2 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L3 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L4 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L5 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L6 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_L7 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_CAP_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 382
touch_pad_denoise_cap_t (*C++ enum*), 382
touch_pad_denoise_disable (*C++ function*), 370
touch_pad_denoise_enable (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_denoise_get_config (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_denoise_grade_t (*C++ enum*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_DENOISE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 381
touch_pad_denoise_read_data (*C++ function*), 370
touch_pad_denoise_set_config (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_denoise_t (*C++ type*), 378
touch_pad_filter_disable (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_filter_enable (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_filter_get_config (*C++ function*), 369
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_128 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_16 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_256 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_32 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_4 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_64 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_IIR_8 (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_JITTER (*C++ enumerator*), 383
TOUCH_PAD_FILTER_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 383
touch_pad_filter_read_smooth (*C++ function*), 368
touch_pad_filter_set_config (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_fsm_start (*C++ function*), 365
touch_pad_fsm_stop (*C++ function*), 365
touch_pad_get_channel_mask (*C++ function*), 366
touch_pad_get_cnt_mode (*C++ function*), 374
touch_pad_get_current_meas_channel (*C++ function*), 367
touch_pad_get_fsm_mode (*C++ function*), 375
touch_pad_get_idle_channel_connect (*C++ function*), 366
touch_pad_get_meas_time (*C++ function*), 365
touch_pad_get_status (*C++ function*), 375
touch_pad_get_thresh (*C++ function*), 366
touch_pad_get_voltage (*C++ function*), 374
touch_pad_get_wakeup_status (*C++ function*), 375
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO10_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO11_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO12_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO13_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO14_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO1_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO2_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO3_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376

TOUCH_PAD_GPIO4_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO5_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO6_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO7_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO8_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_GPIO9_CHANNEL (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_HIGH_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_IDLE_CH_CONNECT_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 378
touch_pad_init (*C++ function*), 373
touch_pad_intr_clear (*C++ function*), 367
touch_pad_intr_disable (*C++ function*), 367
touch_pad_intr_enable (*C++ function*), 367
TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_ACTIVE (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_ALL (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_INACTIVE (*C++ enumerator*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_SCAN_DONE (*C++ enumerator*), 381
touch_pad_intr_mask_t (*C++ enum*), 381
TOUCH_PAD_INTR_MASK_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 381
touch_pad_io_init (*C++ function*), 374
touch_pad_isr_deregister (*C++ function*), 374
touch_pad_isr_register (*C++ function*), 368
TOUCH_PAD_LOW_VOLTAGE_THRESHOLD (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 379
touch_pad_meas_is_done (*C++ function*), 375
TOUCH_PAD_MEASURE_CYCLE_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_NUM0 (*C++ enumerator*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_NUM1 (*C++ enumerator*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_NUM10 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM10_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM11 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM11_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM12 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM12_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM13 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM13_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM14 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM14_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM1_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM2 (*C++ enumerator*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_NUM2_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM3 (*C++ enumerator*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_NUM3_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM4 (*C++ enumerator*), 378
TOUCH_PAD_NUM4_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM5 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM5_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM6 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM6_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM7 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM7_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM8 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM8_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
TOUCH_PAD_NUM9 (*C++ enumerator*), 379
TOUCH_PAD_NUM9_GPIO_NUM (*C macro*), 376
touch_pad_proximity_enable (*C++ function*), 370
touch_pad_proximity_get_count (*C++ function*), 371
touch_pad_proximity_get_data (*C++ function*), 371
touch_pad_proximity_set_count (*C++ function*), 370
touch_pad_read_benchmark (*C++ function*), 368
touch_pad_read_intr_status_mask (*C++ function*), 367
touch_pad_read_raw_data (*C++ function*), 368
touch_pad_reset (*C++ function*), 367
touch_pad_reset_benchmark (*C++ function*), 369
touch_pad_set_channel_mask (*C++ function*), 366
touch_pad_set_cnt_mode (*C++ function*), 374
touch_pad_set_fsm_mode (*C++ function*), 375
touch_pad_set_idle_channel_connect (*C++ function*), 365
touch_pad_set_meas_time (*C++ function*), 365
touch_pad_set_thresh (*C++ function*), 366
touch_pad_set_voltage (*C++ function*), 374
touch_pad_shield_driver_t (*C++ enum*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L0 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L1 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L2 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L3 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L4 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L5 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L6 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_L7 (*C++ enumerator*), 382
TOUCH_PAD_SHIELD_DRV_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 382
touch_pad_sleep_channel_enable (*C++ function*), 371
touch_pad_sleep_channel_enable_proximity (*C++ function*), 371
touch_pad_sleep_channel_get_info (*C++ function*), 371
touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_benchmark

(C++ function), 372
touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_data (C++ function), 372
touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_proximity_cnt (C++ function), 373
touch_pad_sleep_channel_read_smooth (C++ function), 372
touch_pad_sleep_channel_reset_benchmark (C++ function), 373
touch_pad_sleep_channel_set_work_time (C++ function), 373
touch_pad_sleep_channel_t (C++ class), 377
touch_pad_sleep_channel_t::en_proximity (C++ member), 377
touch_pad_sleep_channel_t::touch_num (C++ member), 377
TOUCH_PAD_SLEEP_CYCLE_DEFAULT (C macro), 378
touch_pad_sleep_get_threshold (C++ function), 372
touch_pad_sleep_set_threshold (C++ function), 372
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_0 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_1 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_2 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_3 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_4 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_5 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_6 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_7 (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_DEFAULT (C macro), 377
TOUCH_PAD_SLOPE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_IIR_2 (C++ enumerator), 383
TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_IIR_4 (C++ enumerator), 383
TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_IIR_8 (C++ enumerator), 383
TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_MAX (C++ enumerator), 383
TOUCH_PAD_SMOOTH_OFF (C++ enumerator), 383
touch_pad_sw_start (C++ function), 365
touch_pad_t (C++ enum), 378
TOUCH_PAD_THRESHOLD_MAX (C macro), 378
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_DEFAULT (C macro), 377
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_HIGH (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_LOW (C++ enumerator), 380
TOUCH_PAD_TIE_OPT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 381
touch_pad_timeout_resume (C++ function), 368
touch_pad_timeout_set (C++ function), 368
touch_pad_waterproof (C++ class), 377
touch_pad_waterproof::guard_ring_pad (C++ member), 377
touch_pad_waterproof::shield_driver (C++ member), 377
touch_pad_waterproof_disable (C++ function), 370
touch_pad_waterproof_enable (C++ function), 370
touch_pad_waterproof_get_config (C++ function), 370
touch_pad_waterproof_set_config (C++ function), 370
touch_pad_waterproof_t (C++ type), 378
TOUCH_PROXIMITY_MEAS_NUM_MAX (C macro), 378
touch_slider_callback_t (C++ type), 404
touch_slider_config_t (C++ class), 403
touch_slider_config_t::channel_array (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_config_t::channel_num (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_config_t::position_range (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_config_t::sensitivity_array (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_create (C++ function), 401
touch_slider_delete (C++ function), 401
touch_slider_event_t (C++ enum), 404
TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 404
TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_ON_CALCULATION (C++ enumerator), 404
TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_ON_PRESS (C++ enumerator), 404
TOUCH_SLIDER_EVT_ON_RELEASE (C++ enumerator), 404
touch_slider_get_message (C++ function), 402
touch_slider_global_config_t (C++ class), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::benchmark_update_ti (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::calculate_channel_c (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::filter_reset_time (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::position_filter_fac (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::position_filter_siz (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::quantify_lower_thre (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_global_config_t::threshold_divider (C++ member), 403
TOUCH_SLIDER_GLOBAL_DEFAULT_CONFIG (C macro), 403
touch_slider_handle_t (C++ type), 404
touch_slider_install (C++ function), 401
touch_slider_message_t (C++ class), 403
touch_slider_message_t::event (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_message_t::position (C++ member), 403
touch_slider_position_t (C++ type), 404
touch_slider_set_callback (C++ function),

402
touch_slider_set_dispatch_method (C++ function), 402
touch_slider_subscribe_event (C++ function), 402
touch_slider_uninstall (C++ function), 401
touch_smooth_mode_t (C++ enum), 383
touch_tie_opt_t (C++ enum), 380
TOUCH_TRIGGER_ABOVE (C++ enumerator), 381
TOUCH_TRIGGER_BELOW (C++ enumerator), 381
TOUCH_TRIGGER_MAX (C++ enumerator), 381
touch_trigger_mode_t (C++ enum), 381
TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_BOTH (C++ enumerator), 381
TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 381
TOUCH_TRIGGER_SOURCE_SET1 (C++ enumerator), 381
touch_trigger_src_t (C++ enum), 381
touch_volt_atten_t (C++ enum), 380
TOUCH_WATERPROOF_GUARD_NOUSE (C macro), 397
transaction_cb_t (C++ type), 348
TSENS_CONFIG_DEFAULT (C macro), 362
TSENS_DAC_DEFAULT (C++ enumerator), 362
TSENS_DAC_L0 (C++ enumerator), 362
TSENS_DAC_L1 (C++ enumerator), 362
TSENS_DAC_L2 (C++ enumerator), 362
TSENS_DAC_L3 (C++ enumerator), 362
TSENS_DAC_L4 (C++ enumerator), 362
TSENS_DAC_MAX (C++ enumerator), 362
tskIDLE_PRIORITY (C macro), 783
tskKERNEL_VERSION_BUILD (C macro), 783
tskKERNEL_VERSION_MAJOR (C macro), 783
tskKERNEL_VERSION_MINOR (C macro), 783
tskKERNEL_VERSION_NUMBER (C macro), 783
tskMPU_REGION_DEVICE_MEMORY (C macro), 783
tskMPU_REGION_EXECUTE_NEVER (C macro), 783
tskMPU_REGION_NORMAL_MEMORY (C macro), 783
tskMPU_REGION_READ_ONLY (C macro), 783
tskMPU_REGION_READ_WRITE (C macro), 783
tskNO_AFFINITY (C macro), 783
tusb_cdc_acm_init (C++ function), 448
tusb_cdc_acm_initialized (C++ function), 449
tusb_cdcacm_callback_t (C++ type), 451
tusb_desc_strarray_device_t (C++ type), 448
tusb_run_task (C++ function), 451
tusb_stop_task (C++ function), 451
twai_clear_receive_queue (C++ function), 421
twai_clear_transmit_queue (C++ function), 421
twai_driver_install (C++ function), 419
twai_driver_uninstall (C++ function), 419
TWAI_ERR_PASS_THRESH (C macro), 418
TWAI_EXTD_ID_MASK (C macro), 418
twai_filter_config_t (C++ class), 418
twai_filter_config_t::acceptance_code (C++ member), 418
twai_filter_config_t::acceptance_mask (C++ member), 418
twai_filter_config_t::single_filter (C++ member), 418
TWAI_FRAME_EXTD_ID_LEN_BYTES (C macro), 418
TWAI_FRAME_MAX_DLC (C macro), 418
TWAI_FRAME_STD_ID_LEN_BYTES (C macro), 418
twai_general_config_t (C++ class), 421
twai_general_config_t::alerts_enabled (C++ member), 422
twai_general_config_t::bus_off_io (C++ member), 422
twai_general_config_t::clkout_divider (C++ member), 422
twai_general_config_t::clkout_io (C++ member), 421
twai_general_config_t::intr_flags (C++ member), 422
twai_general_config_t::mode (C++ member), 421
twai_general_config_t::rx_io (C++ member), 421
twai_general_config_t::rx_queue_len (C++ member), 422
twai_general_config_t::tx_io (C++ member), 421
twai_general_config_t::tx_queue_len (C++ member), 422
twai_get_status_info (C++ function), 421
twai_initiate_recovery (C++ function), 421
TWAI_IO_UNUSED (C macro), 422
twai_message_t (C++ class), 417
twai_message_t::data (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::data_length_code (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::dlc_non_comp (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::extd (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::flags (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::identifier (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::reserved (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::rtr (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::self (C++ member), 417
twai_message_t::ss (C++ member), 417
TWAI_MODE_LISTEN_ONLY (C++ enumerator), 418
TWAI_MODE_NO_ACK (C++ enumerator), 418
TWAI_MODE_NORMAL (C++ enumerator), 418
twai_mode_t (C++ enum), 418

twai_read_alerts (C++ function), 420
twai_receive (C++ function), 420
twai_reconfigure_alerts (C++ function), 420
twai_start (C++ function), 419
TWAI_STATE_BUS_OFF (C++ enumerator), 423
TWAI_STATE_RECOVERING (C++ enumerator), 423
TWAI_STATE_RUNNING (C++ enumerator), 423
TWAI_STATE_STOPPED (C++ enumerator), 423
twai_state_t (C++ enum), 422
twai_status_info_t (C++ class), 422
twai_status_info_t::arb_lost_count (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::bus_error_count (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::msgs_to_rx (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::msgs_to_tx (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::rx_error_counter (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::rx_missed_count (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::rx_overrun_count (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::state (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::tx_error_counter (C++ member), 422
twai_status_info_t::tx_failed_count (C++ member), 422
TWAI_STD_ID_MASK (C macro), 418
twai_stop (C++ function), 419
twai_timing_config_t (C++ class), 417
twai_timing_config_t::brp (C++ member), 417
twai_timing_config_t::sjw (C++ member), 417
twai_timing_config_t::triple_sampling (C++ member), 417
twai_timing_config_t::tseg_1 (C++ member), 417
twai_timing_config_t::tseg_2 (C++ member), 417
twai_transmit (C++ function), 419

U

uart_at_cmd_t (C++ class), 441
uart_at_cmd_t::char_num (C++ member), 441
uart_at_cmd_t::cmd_char (C++ member), 441
uart_at_cmd_t::gap_tout (C++ member), 441
uart_at_cmd_t::post_idle (C++ member), 441
uart_at_cmd_t::pre_idle (C++ member), 441
UART_BITRATE_MAX (C macro), 440
UART_BREAK (C++ enumerator), 440
UART_BUFFER_FULL (C++ enumerator), 440
uart_clear_intr_status (C++ function), 432
uart_config_t (C++ class), 441
uart_config_t::baud_rate (C++ member), 441
uart_config_t::data_bits (C++ member), 441
uart_config_t::flow_ctrl (C++ member), 442
uart_config_t::parity (C++ member), 441
uart_config_t::rx_flow_ctrl_thresh (C++ member), 442
uart_config_t::source_clk (C++ member), 442
uart_config_t::stop_bits (C++ member), 441
uart_config_t::use_ref_tick (C++ member), 442
UART_CTS_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_CTS_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_CTS_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_DATA (C++ enumerator), 440
UART_DATA_5_BITS (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_DATA_6_BITS (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_DATA_7_BITS (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_DATA_8_BITS (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_DATA_BITS_MAX (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_DATA_BREAK (C++ enumerator), 440
uart_disable_intr_mask (C++ function), 432
uart_disable_pattern_det_intr (C++ function), 436
uart_disable_rx_intr (C++ function), 432
uart_disable_tx_intr (C++ function), 432
uart_driver_delete (C++ function), 429
uart_driver_install (C++ function), 429
uart_enable_intr_mask (C++ function), 432
uart_enable_pattern_det_baud_intr (C++ function), 436
uart_enable_rx_intr (C++ function), 432
uart_enable_tx_intr (C++ function), 432
UART_EVENT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 440
uart_event_t (C++ class), 439
uart_event_t::size (C++ member), 440
uart_event_t::timeout_flag (C++ member), 440
uart_event_t::type (C++ member), 440
uart_event_type_t (C++ enum), 440
UART_FIFO_LEN (C macro), 440
UART_FIFO_OVF (C++ enumerator), 440
uart_flush (C++ function), 435
uart_flush_input (C++ function), 435
UART_FRAME_ERR (C++ enumerator), 440
uart_get_baudrate (C++ function), 431
uart_get_buffered_data_len (C++ function), 436
uart_get_collision_flag (C++ function), 438
uart_get_hw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 431
uart_get_parity (C++ function), 430

uart_get_stop_bits (C++ function), 430
uart_get_wakeup_threshold (C++ function), 438
uart_get_word_length (C++ function), 430
UART_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_GPIO19_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_GPIO6_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_GPIO8_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
uart_hw_flowcontrol_t (C++ enum), 443
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_CTS_RTS (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_MAX (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_HW_FLOWCTRL_RTS (C++ enumerator), 443
uart_intr_config (C++ function), 434
uart_intr_config_t (C++ class), 439
uart_intr_config_t::intr_enable_mask (C++ member), 439
uart_intr_config_t::rx_timeout_thresh (C++ member), 439
uart_intr_config_t::rxfifo_full_thresh (C++ member), 439
uart_intr_config_t::txfifo_empty_intr_thresh (C++ member), 439
uart_is_driver_installed (C++ function), 429
uart_isr_free (C++ function), 433
uart_isr_handle_t (C++ type), 440
uart_isr_register (C++ function), 433
UART_MODE_IRDA (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_MODE_RS485_APP_CTRL (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_MODE_RS485_COLLISION_DETECT (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_MODE_RS485_HALF_DUPLEX (C++ enumerator), 442
uart_mode_t (C++ enum), 442
UART_MODE_UART (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_NUM_0 (C macro), 440
UART_NUM_0_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 444
UART_NUM_0_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 444
UART_NUM_0_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 444
UART_NUM_0_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 444
UART_NUM_1 (C macro), 440
UART_NUM_1_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_1_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_1_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_1_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 444
UART_NUM_2_CTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_2_RTS_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_2_RXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_2_TXD_DIRECT_GPIO_NUM (C macro), 445
UART_NUM_MAX (C macro), 440
uart_param_config (C++ function), 434
UART_PARITY_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_PARITY_ERR (C++ enumerator), 440
UART_PARITY_EVEN (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_PARITY_ODD (C++ enumerator), 443
uart_parity_t (C++ enum), 443
UART_PATTERN_DET (C++ enumerator), 440
uart_pattern_get_pos (C++ function), 437
uart_pattern_pop_pos (C++ function), 436
uart_pattern_queue_reset (C++ function), 437
UART_PIN_NO_CHANGE (C macro), 440
uart_port_t (C++ type), 442
uart_read_bytes (C++ function), 435
UART_RTS_GPIO11_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_RTS_GPIO22_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_RTS_GPIO7_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_RXD_GPIO16_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_RXD_GPIO3_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
UART_RXD_GPIO9_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_SCLK_APB (C++ enumerator), 444
UART_SCLK_REF_TICK (C++ enumerator), 444
uart_sclk_t (C++ enum), 444
uart_set_always_rx_timeout (C++ function), 439
uart_set_baudrate (C++ function), 431
uart_set_dtr (C++ function), 433
uart_set_hw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 431
uart_set_line_inverse (C++ function), 431
uart_set_loop_back (C++ function), 439
uart_set_mode (C++ function), 437
uart_set_parity (C++ function), 430
uart_set_pin (C++ function), 433
uart_set_rts (C++ function), 433
uart_set_rx_full_threshold (C++ function),

437
uart_set_rx_timeout (C++ function), 438
uart_set_stop_bits (C++ function), 430
uart_set_sw_flow_ctrl (C++ function), 431
uart_set_tx_empty_threshold (C++ function), 437
uart_set_tx_idle_num (C++ function), 434
uart_set_wakeup_threshold (C++ function), 438
uart_set_word_length (C++ function), 430
UART_SIGNAL_CTS_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_DSR_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_DTR_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_INV_DISABLE (C++ enumerator), 443
uart_signal_inv_t (C++ enum), 443
UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_RX_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_IRDA_TX_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_RTS_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_RXD_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_SIGNAL_TXD_INV (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_STOP_BITS_1 (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_STOP_BITS_1_5 (C++ enumerator), 442
UART_STOP_BITS_2 (C++ enumerator), 443
UART_STOP_BITS_MAX (C++ enumerator), 443
uart_stop_bits_t (C++ enum), 442
uart_sw_flowctrl_t (C++ class), 441
uart_sw_flowctrl_t::xoff_char (C++ member), 441
uart_sw_flowctrl_t::xoff_thrd (C++ member), 441
uart_sw_flowctrl_t::xon_char (C++ member), 441
uart_sw_flowctrl_t::xon_thrd (C++ member), 441
uart_tx_chars (C++ function), 434
UART_TXD_GPIO10_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_TXD_GPIO17_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 445
UART_TXD_GPIO1_DIRECT_CHANNEL (C macro), 444
uart_wait_tx_done (C++ function), 434
uart_wait_tx_idle_polling (C++ function), 439
uart_word_length_t (C++ enum), 442
uart_write_bytes (C++ function), 434
uart_write_bytes_with_break (C++ function), 435
ulp_load_binary (C++ function), 1348
ulp_process_macros_and_load (C++ function), 1342
ulp_riscv_load_binary (C++ function), 1352
ulp_riscv_run (C++ function), 1352
ulp_run (C++ function), 1343, 1349
ulp_set_wakeup_period (C++ function), 1349
ulTaskGetIdleRunTimeCounter (C++ function), 778
ulTaskNotifyTake (C++ function), 782
USB_ESPRESSIF_VID (C macro), 448
USB_STRING_DESCRIPTOR_ARRAY_SIZE (C macro), 448
uxQueueMessagesWaiting (C++ function), 790
uxQueueMessagesWaitingFromISR (C++ function), 791
uxQueueSpacesAvailable (C++ function), 790
uxSemaphoreGetCount (C macro), 815
uxTaskGetNumberOfTasks (C++ function), 773
uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark (C++ function), 774
uxTaskGetStackHighWaterMark2 (C++ function), 774
uxTaskGetSystemState (C++ function), 776
uxTaskPriorityGet (C++ function), 768
uxTaskPriorityGetFromISR (C++ function), 769

V

vendor_ie_data_t (C++ class), 100
vendor_ie_data_t::element_id (C++ member), 100
vendor_ie_data_t::length (C++ member), 100
vendor_ie_data_t::payload (C++ member), 100
vendor_ie_data_t::vendor_oui (C++ member), 100
vendor_ie_data_t::vendor_oui_type (C++ member), 100
vEventGroupDelete (C++ function), 838
vMessageBufferDelete (C macro), 853
vprintf_like_t (C++ type), 910
vQueueAddToRegistry (C++ function), 791
vQueueDelete (C++ function), 790
vQueueUnregisterQueue (C++ function), 792
vRingbufferDelete (C++ function), 867
vRingbufferGetInfo (C++ function), 869
vRingbufferReturnItem (C++ function), 867
vRingbufferReturnItemFromISR (C++ function), 867
vSemaphoreDelete (C macro), 815
vStreamBufferDelete (C++ function), 844
vTaskAllocateMPURegions (C++ function), 766
vTaskDelay (C++ function), 767
vTaskDelayUntil (C++ function), 767
vTaskDelete (C++ function), 766
vTaskGetInfo (C++ function), 769
vTaskGetRunTimeStats (C++ function), 778
vTaskList (C++ function), 777
vTaskNotifyGiveFromISR (C++ function), 781
vTaskPrioritySet (C++ function), 770
vTaskResume (C++ function), 771
vTaskSetApplicationTaskTag (C++ function), 774

vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointer (C++ function), 775
vTaskSetThreadLocalStoragePointerAndDelCallback (C++ function), 775
vTaskSuspend (C++ function), 770
vTaskSuspendAll (C++ function), 772
vTimerSetReloadMode (C++ function), 822
vTimerSetTimerID (C++ function), 820

W

WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ANY (C++ enumerator), 570
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CLOSED (C++ enumerator), 570
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_CONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 570
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DATA (C++ enumerator), 570
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_DISCONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 570
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_ERROR (C++ enumerator), 570
WEBSOCKET_EVENT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 571
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_SSL (C++ enumerator), 571
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_OVER_TCP (C++ enumerator), 571
WEBSOCKET_TRANSPORT_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 571
wifi_action_rx_cb_t (C++ type), 109
wifi_action_tx_req_t (C++ class), 103
wifi_action_tx_req_t::data (C++ member), 103
wifi_action_tx_req_t::data_len (C++ member), 103
wifi_action_tx_req_t::dest_mac (C++ member), 103
wifi_action_tx_req_t::ifx (C++ member), 103
wifi_action_tx_req_t::no_ack (C++ member), 103
wifi_action_tx_req_t::rx_cb (C++ member), 103
wifi_active_scan_time_t (C++ class), 96
wifi_active_scan_time_t::max (C++ member), 96
wifi_active_scan_time_t::min (C++ member), 96
WIFI_ALL_CHANNEL_SCAN (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_AMPDU_RX_ENABLED (C macro), 94
WIFI_AMPDU_TX_ENABLED (C macro), 94
WIFI_AMSDU_TX_ENABLED (C macro), 94
WIFI_ANT_ANT0 (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_ANT_ANT1 (C++ enumerator), 111
wifi_ant_config_t (C++ class), 103
wifi_ant_config_t::enabled_ant0 (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_config_t::enabled_ant1 (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_config_t::rx_ant_default (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_config_t::rx_ant_mode (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_config_t::tx_ant_mode (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_gpio_config_t (C++ class), 103
wifi_ant_gpio_config_t::gpio_cfg (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_gpio_t (C++ class), 103
wifi_ant_gpio_t::gpio_num (C++ member), 103
wifi_ant_gpio_t::gpio_select (C++ member), 103
WIFI_ANT_MAX (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT0 (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_ANT_MODE_ANT1 (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_ANT_MODE_AUTO (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_ANT_MODE_MAX (C++ enumerator), 113
wifi_ant_mode_t (C++ enum), 113
wifi_ant_t (C++ enum), 111
wifi_ap_config_t (C++ class), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::authmode (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::beacon_interval (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::channel (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::max_connection (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::pairwise_cipher (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::password (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::ssid (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::ssid_hidden (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_config_t::ssid_len (C++ member), 98
wifi_ap_record_t (C++ class), 96
wifi_ap_record_t::ant (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::authmode (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::bssid (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::country (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::ftm_initiator (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::ftm_responder (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::group_cipher (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::pairwise_cipher (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_11b (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_11g (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::phy_11n (C++ member), 97

wifi_ap_record_t::phy_lr (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::primary (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::reserved (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::rssi (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::second (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::ssid (C++ member), 97
wifi_ap_record_t::wps (C++ member), 97
WIFI_AUTH_MAX (C++ enumerator), 110
wifi_auth_mode_t (C++ enum), 109
WIFI_AUTH_OPEN (C++ enumerator), 109
WIFI_AUTH_WAPI_PSK (C++ enumerator), 110
WIFI_AUTH_WEP (C++ enumerator), 109
WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_ENTERPRISE (C++ enumerator), 110
WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_PSK (C++ enumerator), 109
WIFI_AUTH_WPA2_WPA3_PSK (C++ enumerator), 110
WIFI_AUTH_WPA3_PSK (C++ enumerator), 110
WIFI_AUTH_WPA_PSK (C++ enumerator), 109
WIFI_AUTH_WPA_WPA2_PSK (C++ enumerator), 109
wifi_bandwidth_t (C++ enum), 112
WIFI_BW_HT20 (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_BW_HT40 (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_CACHE_TX_BUFFER_NUM (C macro), 94
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_AES_CMAC128 (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_CCMP (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_NONE (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_SMS4 (C++ enumerator), 111
wifi_cipher_type_t (C++ enum), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_TKIP_CCMP (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_UNKNOWN (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_WEP104 (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_CIPHER_TYPE_WEP40 (C++ enumerator), 111
wifi_config_t (C++ union), 95
wifi_config_t::ap (C++ member), 95
wifi_config_t::sta (C++ member), 95
WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SECURITY (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_CONNECT_AP_BY_SIGNAL (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_AUTO (C++ enumerator), 109
WIFI_COUNTRY_POLICY_MANUAL (C++ enumerator), 109
wifi_country_policy_t (C++ enum), 109
wifi_country_t (C++ class), 95
wifi_country_t::cc (C++ member), 95
wifi_country_t::max_tx_power (C++ member), 96
wifi_country_t::nchan (C++ member), 96
wifi_country_t::policy (C++ member), 96
wifi_country_t::schan (C++ member), 95
wifi_csi_cb_t (C++ type), 95
wifi_csi_config_t (C++ class), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::channel_filter_en (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::htltf_en (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::lltf_en (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::ltf_merge_en (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::manu_scale (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::shift (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_config_t::stbc_htltf2_en (C++ member), 102
WIFI_CSI_ENABLED (C macro), 94
wifi_csi_info_t (C++ class), 102
wifi_csi_info_t::buf (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_info_t::first_word_invalid (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_info_t::len (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_info_t::mac (C++ member), 102
wifi_csi_info_t::rx_ctrl (C++ member), 102
WIFI_DEFAULT_RX_BA_WIN (C macro), 94
WIFI_DYNAMIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM (C macro), 94
wifi_err_reason_t (C++ enum), 110
WIFI_EVENT_ACTION_TX_STATUS (C++ enumerator), 115
wifi_event_action_tx_status_t (C++ class), 107
wifi_event_action_tx_status_t::context (C++ member), 107
wifi_event_action_tx_status_t::da (C++ member), 107
wifi_event_action_tx_status_t::ifx (C++ member), 107
wifi_event_action_tx_status_t::status (C++ member), 107
wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t (C++ class), 106
wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t::mac (C++ member), 106
wifi_event_ap_probe_req_rx_t::rssi (C++ member), 106
WIFI_EVENT_AP_PROBEREQRECVED (C++ enumerator), 115
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STACONNECTED (C++ enumerator), 115
wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t (C++ class), 105
wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t::aid (C++ member), 105
wifi_event_ap_staconnected_t::mac

(C++ *member*), 105
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STADISCONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t (C++ *class*), 105
wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t::aid (C++ *member*), 106
wifi_event_ap_stadisconnected_t::mac (C++ *member*), 106
WIFI_EVENT_AP_START (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_AP_STOP (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_bss_rssi_low_t (C++ *class*), 106
wifi_event_bss_rssi_low_t::rssi (C++ *member*), 106
WIFI_EVENT_FTM_REPORT (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_ftm_report_t (C++ *class*), 106
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::dist_est (C++ *member*), 107
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::ftm_report_data (C++ *member*), 107
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::ftm_report_num_entries (C++ *member*), 107
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::peer_mac (C++ *member*), 106
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::rtt_est (C++ *member*), 107
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::rtt_raw (C++ *member*), 107
wifi_event_ftm_report_t::status (C++ *member*), 106
WIFI_EVENT_MASK_ALL (C *macro*), 108
WIFI_EVENT_MASK_AP_PROBEREQRECVED (C *macro*), 108
WIFI_EVENT_MASK_NONE (C *macro*), 108
WIFI_EVENT_MAX (C++ *enumerator*), 116
WIFI_EVENT_ROC_DONE (C++ *enumerator*), 116
wifi_event_roc_done_t (C++ *class*), 107
wifi_event_roc_done_t::context (C++ *member*), 107
WIFI_EVENT_SCAN_DONE (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_STA_AUTHMODE_CHANGE (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t (C++ *class*), 105
wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t::new_mode (C++ *member*), 105
wifi_event_sta_authmode_change_t::old_mode (C++ *member*), 105
WIFI_EVENT_STA_BEACON_TIMEOUT (C++ *enumerator*), 116
WIFI_EVENT_STA_BSS_RSSI_LOW (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_STA_CONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_sta_connected_t (C++ *class*), 104
wifi_event_sta_connected_t::authmode (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_connected_t::bssid (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_connected_t::channel (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_connected_t::ssid (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_connected_t::ssid_len (C++ *member*), 104
WIFI_EVENT_STA_DISCONNECTED (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t (C++ *class*), 104
wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t::bssid (C++ *member*), 105
wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t::reason (C++ *member*), 105
wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t::ssid (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_disconnected_t::ssid_len (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t (C++ *class*), 104
wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t::number (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t::scan_id (C++ *member*), 104
wifi_event_sta_scan_done_t::status (C++ *member*), 104
WIFI_EVENT_STA_START (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_STA_STOP (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_FAILED (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PBC_OVERLAP (C++ *enumerator*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_PIN (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t (C++ *class*), 105
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_pin_t::pin_code (C++ *member*), 105
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_SUCCESS (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t (C++ *class*), 105
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t::ap_cred (C++ *member*), 105
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t::ap_cred_cnt (C++ *member*), 105
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t::passphrase (C++ *member*), 105
wifi_event_sta_wps_er_success_t::ssid (C++ *member*), 105
WIFI_EVENT_STA_WPS_ER_TIMEOUT (C++ *enumerator*), 115
wifi_event_sta_wps_fail_reason_t (C++ *enum*), 116
wifi_event_t (C++ *enum*), 115
WIFI_EVENT_WIFI_READY (C++ *enumerator*), 115

WIFI_FAST_SCAN (*C++ enumerator*), 112
wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t (*C++ class*), 104
wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t::burst_period (*C++ member*), 104
wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t::channel (*C++ member*), 104
wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t::frm_count (*C++ member*), 104
wifi_ftm_initiator_cfg_t::resp_mac (*C++ member*), 104
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t (*C++ class*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::dlog_token (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::rssi (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::rtt (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::t1 (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::t2 (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::t3 (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_report_entry_t::t4 (*C++ member*), 106
wifi_ftm_status_t (*C++ enum*), 116
WIFI_IF_AP (*C++ enumerator*), 109
WIFI_IF_STA (*C++ enumerator*), 109
WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_DEFAULT (*C macro*), 94
WIFI_INIT_CONFIG_MAGIC (*C macro*), 94
wifi_init_config_t (*C++ class*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::ampdu_rx_enable (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::ampdu_tx_enable (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::amsdu_tx_enable (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::beacon_max_len (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::cache_tx_buf_num (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::csi_enable (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::dynamic_rx_buf_num (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::dynamic_tx_buf_num (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::event_handler (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::feature_caps (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::magic (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::mgmt_sbuf_num (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::nano_enable (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::nvs_enable (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::osi_funcs (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::rx_ba_win (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::sta_disconnected_pm (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::static_rx_buf_num (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::static_tx_buf_num (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::tx_buf_type (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_init_config_t::wifi_task_core_id (*C++ member*), 93
wifi_init_config_t::wpa_crypto_funcs (*C++ member*), 92
wifi_interface_t (*C++ enum*), 109
WIFI_MGMT_SBUF_NUM (*C macro*), 94
WIFI_MODE_AP (*C++ enumerator*), 109
WIFI_MODE_APSTA (*C++ enumerator*), 109
WIFI_MODE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 109
WIFI_MODE_NULL (*C++ enumerator*), 109
WIFI_MODE_STA (*C++ enumerator*), 109
wifi_mode_t (*C++ enum*), 109
WIFI_NANO_FORMAT_ENABLED (*C macro*), 94
WIFI_NVS_ENABLED (*C macro*), 94
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_CANCEL (*C macro*), 107
WIFI_OFFCHAN_TX_REQ (*C macro*), 107
WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_L (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_11M_S (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_12M (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_18M (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_1M_L (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_24M (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_L (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_2M_S (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_36M (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_48M (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_54M (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_L (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_5M_S (*C++ enumerator*), 113
WIFI_PHY_RATE_6M (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_9M (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_250K (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_LORA_500K (*C++ enumerator*), 115
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MAX (*C++ enumerator*), 115
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_LGI (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS0_SGI (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_LGI (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS1_SGI (*C++ enumerator*), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_LGI (*C++ enumerator*),

114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS2_SGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_LGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS3_SGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_LGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS4_SGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_LGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS5_SGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_LGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS6_SGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_LGI (C++ enumerator), 114
WIFI_PHY_RATE_MCS7_SGI (C++ enumerator), 114
wifi_phy_rate_t (C++ enum), 113
WIFI_PKT_CTRL (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_PKT_DATA (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_PKT_MGMT (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_PKT_MISC (C++ enumerator), 113
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t (C++ class), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad0__ (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad10__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad1__ (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad2__ (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad3__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad4__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad5__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad6__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad7__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad8__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::__pad9__ (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::aggregation (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::ampdu_cnt (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::ant (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::channel (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::cwb (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::fec_coding (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::mcs (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::noise_floor (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::not_sounding (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::rate (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::rssi (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::rx_state (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::secondary_channel (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::sgi (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::sig_len (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::sig_mode (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::smoothing (C++ member), 100
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::stbc (C++ member), 101
wifi_pkt_rx_ctrl_t::timestamp (C++ member), 101
wifi_pmf_config_t (C++ class), 97
wifi_pmf_config_t::capable (C++ member), 98
wifi_pmf_config_t::required (C++ member), 98
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ACK (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_ALL (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BA (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_BAR (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFEND (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CFENDACK (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_CTS (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_PSPOLL (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_RTS (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_CTRL_FILTER_MASK_WRAPPER (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_ALL (C macro), 107
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_CTRL (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA (C macro), 108

WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_AMPDU (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_DATA_MPDU (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_FCSFAIL (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MGMT (C macro), 108
WIFI_PROMIS_FILTER_MASK_MISC (C macro), 108
wifi_promiscuous_cb_t (C++ type), 95
wifi_promiscuous_filter_t (C++ class), 102
wifi_promiscuous_filter_t::filter_mask (C++ member), 102
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t (C++ class), 101
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t::payload (C++ member), 102
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_t::rx_ctrl (C++ member), 102
wifi_promiscuous_pkt_type_t (C++ enum), 113
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11B (C macro), 107
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11G (C macro), 107
WIFI_PROTOCOL_11N (C macro), 107
WIFI_PROTOCOL_LR (C macro), 107
wifi_prov_cb_event_t (C++ enum), 610
wifi_prov_cb_func_t (C++ type), 609
wifi_prov_config_data_handler (C++ function), 611
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t (C++ class), 612
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t::conn_info (C++ member), 612
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t::fail_reason (C++ member), 612
wifi_prov_config_get_data_t::wifi_state (C++ member), 612
wifi_prov_config_handlers (C++ class), 612
wifi_prov_config_handlers::apply_config_handler (C++ member), 613
wifi_prov_config_handlers::ctx (C++ member), 613
wifi_prov_config_handlers::get_status_handler (C++ member), 613
wifi_prov_config_handlers::set_config_handler (C++ member), 613
wifi_prov_config_handlers_t (C++ type), 613
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t (C++ class), 612
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::bssid (C++ member), 612
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::channel (C++ member), 612
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::password (C++ member), 612
wifi_prov_config_set_data_t::ssid (C++ member), 612
WIFI_PROV_CRED_FAIL (C++ enumerator), 610
WIFI_PROV_CRED_RECV (C++ enumerator), 610
WIFI_PROV_CRED_SUCCESS (C++ enumerator), 610
wifi_prov_ctx_t (C++ type), 613
WIFI_PROV_DEINIT (C++ enumerator), 610
WIFI_PROV_END (C++ enumerator), 610
WIFI_PROV_EVENT_HANDLER_NONE (C macro), 609
wifi_prov_event_handler_t (C++ class), 608
wifi_prov_event_handler_t::event_cb (C++ member), 608
wifi_prov_event_handler_t::user_data (C++ member), 608
WIFI_PROV_INIT (C++ enumerator), 610
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t (C++ class), 609
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t::app_event_handler (C++ member), 609
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t::scheme (C++ member), 609
wifi_prov_mgr_config_t::scheme_event_handler (C++ member), 609
wifi_prov_mgr_configure_sta (C++ function), 608
wifi_prov_mgr_deinit (C++ function), 604
wifi_prov_mgr_disable_auto_stop (C++ function), 606
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_create (C++ function), 606
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_register (C++ function), 607
wifi_prov_mgr_endpoint_unregister (C++ function), 607
wifi_prov_mgr_event_handler (C++ function), 607
wifi_prov_mgr_get_wifi_disconnect_reason (C++ function), 607
wifi_prov_mgr_get_wifi_state (C++ function), 607
wifi_prov_mgr_init (C++ function), 604
wifi_prov_mgr_is_provisioned (C++ function), 604
wifi_prov_mgr_reset_provisioning (C++ function), 608
wifi_prov_mgr_set_app_info (C++ function), 606
wifi_prov_mgr_start_provisioning (C++ function), 605
wifi_prov_mgr_stop_provisioning (C++ function), 605
wifi_prov_mgr_wait (C++ function), 605
wifi_prov_scheme (C++ class), 608
wifi_prov_scheme::delete_config (C++ member), 609
wifi_prov_scheme::new_config (C++ member), 608
wifi_prov_scheme::prov_start (C++ member), 608

wifi_prov_scheme::prov_stop (*C++ member*), 608
wifi_prov_scheme::set_config_endpoint (*C++ member*), 609
wifi_prov_scheme::set_config_service (*C++ member*), 609
wifi_prov_scheme::wifi_mode (*C++ member*), 609
wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_ble (*C++ function*), 610
wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_bt (*C++ function*), 610
wifi_prov_scheme_ble_event_cb_free_btdm (*C++ function*), 610
WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BLE (*C macro*), 611
WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BT (*C macro*), 611
WIFI_PROV_SCHEME_BLE_EVENT_HANDLER_FREE_BTDM (*C macro*), 611
wifi_prov_scheme_ble_set_service_uuid (*C++ function*), 611
wifi_prov_scheme_softap_set_httpd_handle (*C++ function*), 611
wifi_prov_scheme_t (*C++ type*), 609
wifi_prov_security (*C++ enum*), 610
WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_0 (*C++ enumerator*), 610
WIFI_PROV_SECURITY_1 (*C++ enumerator*), 610
wifi_prov_security_t (*C++ type*), 610
WIFI_PROV_STA_AP_NOT_FOUND (*C++ enumerator*), 613
WIFI_PROV_STA_AUTH_ERROR (*C++ enumerator*), 613
wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t (*C++ class*), 612
wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t::auth_mode (*C++ member*), 612
wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t::bssid (*C++ member*), 612
wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t::channel (*C++ member*), 612
wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t::ip_addr (*C++ member*), 612
wifi_prov_sta_conn_info_t::ssid (*C++ member*), 612
WIFI_PROV_STA_CONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 613
WIFI_PROV_STA_CONNECTING (*C++ enumerator*), 613
WIFI_PROV_STA_DISCONNECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 613
wifi_prov_sta_fail_reason_t (*C++ enum*), 613
wifi_prov_sta_state_t (*C++ enum*), 613
WIFI_PROV_START (*C++ enumerator*), 610
WIFI_PS_MAX_MODEM (*C++ enumerator*), 112
WIFI_PS_MIN_MODEM (*C++ enumerator*), 112
WIFI_PS_NONE (*C++ enumerator*), 112
wifi_ps_type_t (*C++ enum*), 112
WIFI_REASON_4WAY_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_802_1X_AUTH_FAILED (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_AKMP_INVALID (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_AP_TSF_RESET (*C++ enumerator*), 111
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_EXPIRE (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_LEAVE (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_NOT_AUTHED (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_ASSOC_TOOMANY (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_AUTH_EXPIRE (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_AUTH_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_AUTH_LEAVE (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_BEACON_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_CIPHER_SUITE_REJECTED (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_CONNECTION_FAIL (*C++ enumerator*), 111
WIFI_REASON_DISASSOC_PWRCAP_BAD (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_DISASSOC_SUPCHAN_BAD (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_GROUP_CIPHER_INVALID (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_GROUP_KEY_UPDATE_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_HANDSHAKE_TIMEOUT (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_IE_IN_4WAY_DIFFERS (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_IE_INVALID (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_INVALID_PMKID (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_INVALID_RSN_IE_CAP (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_MIC_FAILURE (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_NO_AP_FOUND (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_NOT_ASSOCED (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_NOT_AUTHED (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_PAIRWISE_CIPHER_INVALID (*C++ enumerator*), 110
WIFI_REASON_ROAMING (*C++ enumerator*), 111

WIFI_REASON_UNSPECIFIED (C++ enumerator), 110
WIFI_REASON_UNSUPP_RSN_IE_VERSION (C++ enumerator), 110
WIFI_ROC_CANCEL (C macro), 107
WIFI_ROC_REQ (C macro), 107
wifi_scan_config_t (C++ class), 96
wifi_scan_config_t::bssid (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_config_t::channel (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_config_t::scan_time (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_config_t::scan_type (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_config_t::show_hidden (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_config_t::ssid (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_method_t (C++ enum), 112
wifi_scan_threshold_t (C++ class), 97
wifi_scan_threshold_t::authmode (C++ member), 97
wifi_scan_threshold_t::rssi (C++ member), 97
wifi_scan_time_t (C++ class), 96
wifi_scan_time_t::active (C++ member), 96
wifi_scan_time_t::passive (C++ member), 96
WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_ACTIVE (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_SCAN_TYPE_PASSIVE (C++ enumerator), 111
wifi_scan_type_t (C++ enum), 111
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_ABOVE (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_BELOW (C++ enumerator), 111
WIFI_SECOND_CHAN_NONE (C++ enumerator), 111
wifi_second_chan_t (C++ enum), 111
WIFI_SOFTAP_BEACON_MAX_LEN (C macro), 94
wifi_sort_method_t (C++ enum), 112
wifi_sta_config_t (C++ class), 98
wifi_sta_config_t::bssid (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::bssid_set (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::btm_enabled (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::channel (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::listen_interval (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::password (C++ member), 98
wifi_sta_config_t::pmf_cfg (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::reserved (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::rm_enabled (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::scan_method (C++ member), 98
wifi_sta_config_t::sort_method (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_config_t::ssid (C++ member), 98
wifi_sta_config_t::threshold (C++ member), 99
WIFI_STA_DISCONNECTED_PM_ENABLED (C macro), 94
wifi_sta_info_t (C++ class), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::mac (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_11b (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_11g (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_11n (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::phy_lr (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::reserved (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_info_t::rssi (C++ member), 99
wifi_sta_list_t (C++ class), 99
wifi_sta_list_t::num (C++ member), 100
wifi_sta_list_t::sta (C++ member), 100
WIFI_STATIC_TX_BUFFER_NUM (C macro), 94
WIFI_STATIS_ALL (C macro), 109
WIFI_STATIS_BUFFER (C macro), 108
WIFI_STATIS_DIAG (C macro), 109
WIFI_STATIS_HW (C macro), 109
WIFI_STATIS_PS (C macro), 109
WIFI_STATIS_RXTX (C macro), 108
WIFI_STORAGE_FLASH (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_STORAGE_RAM (C++ enumerator), 112
wifi_storage_t (C++ enum), 112
WIFI_TASK_CORE_ID (C macro), 94
WIFI_VENDOR_IE_ELEMENT_ID (C macro), 107
wifi_vendor_ie_id_t (C++ enum), 112
wifi_vendor_ie_type_t (C++ enum), 112
WIFI_VND_IE_ID_0 (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_VND_IE_ID_1 (C++ enumerator), 113
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_REQ (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_ASSOC_RESP (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_BEACON (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_REQ (C++ enumerator), 112
WIFI_VND_IE_TYPE_PROBE_RESP (C++ enumerator), 112
wl_erase_range (C++ function), 698
wl_handle_t (C++ type), 699
WL_INVALID_HANDLE (C macro), 699
wl_mount (C++ function), 698
wl_read (C++ function), 699
wl_sector_size (C++ function), 699
wl_size (C++ function), 699
wl_unmount (C++ function), 698
wl_write (C++ function), 698
WPS_FAIL_REASON_MAX (C++ enumerator), 116

WPS_FAIL_REASON_NORMAL (C++ enumerator), 116
WPS_FAIL_REASON_RECV_M2D (C++ enumerator), 116

X

xEventGroupClearBits (C++ function), 834
xEventGroupClearBitsFromISR (C macro), 838
xEventGroupCreate (C++ function), 832
xEventGroupCreateStatic (C++ function), 833
xEventGroupGetBits (C macro), 839
xEventGroupGetBitsFromISR (C++ function), 838
xEventGroupSetBits (C++ function), 835
xEventGroupSetBitsFromISR (C macro), 839
xEventGroupSync (C++ function), 836
xEventGroupWaitBits (C++ function), 833
xMessageBufferCreate (C macro), 848
xMessageBufferCreateStatic (C macro), 848
xMessageBufferIsEmpty (C macro), 854
xMessageBufferIsFull (C macro), 854
xMessageBufferNextLengthBytes (C macro), 854
xMessageBufferReceive (C macro), 851
xMessageBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR (C macro), 855
xMessageBufferReceiveFromISR (C macro), 852
xMessageBufferReset (C macro), 854
xMessageBufferSend (C macro), 849
xMessageBufferSendCompletedFromISR (C macro), 854
xMessageBufferSendFromISR (C macro), 850
xMessageBufferSpaceAvailable (C macro), 854
xMessageBufferSpacesAvailable (C macro), 854
xQueueAddToSet (C++ function), 793
xQueueCreate (C macro), 794
xQueueCreateSet (C++ function), 792
xQueueCreateStatic (C macro), 794
xQueueGenericCreate (C++ function), 792
xQueueGenericCreateStatic (C++ function), 792
xQueueGenericSend (C++ function), 786
xQueueGenericSendFromISR (C++ function), 785
xQueueGiveFromISR (C++ function), 786
xQueueIsQueueEmptyFromISR (C++ function), 791
xQueueIsQueueFullFromISR (C++ function), 791
xQueueOverwrite (C macro), 798
xQueueOverwriteFromISR (C macro), 801
xQueuePeek (C++ function), 787
xQueuePeekFromISR (C++ function), 788
xQueueReceive (C++ function), 789
xQueueReceiveFromISR (C++ function), 790
xQueueRemoveFromSet (C++ function), 793
xQueueReset (C macro), 803
xQueueSelectFromSet (C++ function), 793
xQueueSelectFromSetFromISR (C++ function), 794
xQueueSend (C macro), 797
xQueueSendFromISR (C macro), 802
xQueueSendToBack (C macro), 796
xQueueSendToBackFromISR (C macro), 800
xQueueSendToFront (C macro), 795
xQueueSendToFrontFromISR (C macro), 799
xRingbufferAddToQueueSetRead (C++ function), 868
xRingbufferCanRead (C++ function), 868
xRingbufferCreate (C++ function), 864
xRingbufferCreateNoSplit (C++ function), 864
xRingbufferCreateStatic (C++ function), 864
xRingbufferGetCurFreeSize (C++ function), 868
xRingbufferGetMaxItemSize (C++ function), 867
xRingbufferPrintInfo (C++ function), 869
xRingbufferReceive (C++ function), 865
xRingbufferReceiveFromISR (C++ function), 866
xRingbufferReceiveSplit (C++ function), 866
xRingbufferReceiveSplitFromISR (C++ function), 866
xRingbufferReceiveUpTo (C++ function), 866
xRingbufferReceiveUpToFromISR (C++ function), 867
xRingbufferRemoveFromQueueSetRead (C++ function), 868
xRingbufferSend (C++ function), 864
xRingbufferSendAcquire (C++ function), 865
xRingbufferSendComplete (C++ function), 865
xRingbufferSendFromISR (C++ function), 864
xSemaphoreCreateBinary (C macro), 803
xSemaphoreCreateBinaryStatic (C macro), 804
xSemaphoreCreateCounting (C macro), 813
xSemaphoreCreateCountingStatic (C macro), 814
xSemaphoreCreateMutex (C macro), 810
xSemaphoreCreateMutexStatic (C macro), 811
xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutex (C macro), 812
xSemaphoreCreateRecursiveMutexStatic (C macro), 812
xSemaphoreGetMutexHolder (C macro), 815
xSemaphoreGetMutexHolderFromISR (C macro), 815
xSemaphoreGive (C macro), 807
xSemaphoreGiveFromISR (C macro), 809
xSemaphoreGiveRecursive (C macro), 808

xSemaphoreTake (*C macro*), 805
xSemaphoreTakeFromISR (*C macro*), 810
xSemaphoreTakeRecursive (*C macro*), 806
xSTATIC_RINGBUFFER (*C++ class*), 869
xStreamBufferBytesAvailable (*C++ function*), 845
xStreamBufferCreate (*C macro*), 846
xStreamBufferCreateStatic (*C macro*), 846
xStreamBufferIsEmpty (*C++ function*), 844
xStreamBufferIsFull (*C++ function*), 844
xStreamBufferReceive (*C++ function*), 842
xStreamBufferReceiveCompletedFromISR (*C++ function*), 845
xStreamBufferReceiveFromISR (*C++ function*), 843
xStreamBufferReset (*C++ function*), 844
xStreamBufferSend (*C++ function*), 840
xStreamBufferSendCompletedFromISR (*C++ function*), 845
xStreamBufferSendFromISR (*C++ function*), 841
xStreamBufferSetTriggerLevel (*C++ function*), 845
xStreamBufferSpacesAvailable (*C++ function*), 845
xTaskAbortDelay (*C++ function*), 768
xTaskCallApplicationTaskHook (*C++ function*), 775
xTaskCreate (*C++ function*), 763
xTaskCreatePinnedToCore (*C++ function*), 763
xTaskCreateStatic (*C++ function*), 765
xTaskCreateStaticPinnedToCore (*C++ function*), 764
xTaskGenericNotify (*C++ function*), 779
xTaskGenericNotifyFromISR (*C++ function*), 779
xTaskGetApplicationTaskTag (*C++ function*), 775
xTaskGetApplicationTaskTagFromISR (*C++ function*), 775
xTaskGetHandle (*C++ function*), 774
xTaskGetIdleTaskHandle (*C++ function*), 776
xTaskGetTickCount (*C++ function*), 773
xTaskGetTickCountFromISR (*C++ function*), 773
xTaskNotify (*C macro*), 784
xTaskNotifyAndQuery (*C macro*), 784
xTaskNotifyAndQueryFromISR (*C macro*), 784
xTaskNotifyFromISR (*C macro*), 784
xTaskNotifyGive (*C macro*), 784
xTaskNotifyStateClear (*C++ function*), 783
xTaskNotifyWait (*C++ function*), 781
xTaskResumeAll (*C++ function*), 772
xTaskResumeFromISR (*C++ function*), 772
xtensa_perfmon_config (*C++ class*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::call_function (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::call_params (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::callback (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::callback_params (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::counters_size (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::max_deviation (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::repeat_count (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::select_mask (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config::tracelevel (*C++ member*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_config_t (*C++ type*), 927
xtensa_perfmon_dump (*C++ function*), 926
xtensa_perfmon_exec (*C++ function*), 926
xtensa_perfmon_init (*C++ function*), 925
xtensa_perfmon_overflow (*C++ function*), 926
xtensa_perfmon_reset (*C++ function*), 925
xtensa_perfmon_start (*C++ function*), 925
xtensa_perfmon_stop (*C++ function*), 925
xtensa_perfmon_value (*C++ function*), 926
xtensa_perfmon_view_cb (*C++ function*), 926
xTimerChangePeriod (*C macro*), 824
xTimerChangePeriodFromISR (*C macro*), 830
xTimerCreate (*C++ function*), 816
xTimerCreateStatic (*C++ function*), 818
xTimerDelete (*C macro*), 825
xTimerGetExpiryTime (*C++ function*), 823
xTimerGetPeriod (*C++ function*), 823
xTimerGetTimerDaemonTaskHandle (*C++ function*), 821
xTimerIsTimerActive (*C++ function*), 820
xTimerPendFunctionCall (*C++ function*), 822
xTimerPendFunctionCallFromISR (*C++ function*), 821
xTimerReset (*C macro*), 826
xTimerResetFromISR (*C macro*), 830
xTimerStart (*C macro*), 823
xTimerStartFromISR (*C macro*), 828
xTimerStop (*C macro*), 824
xTimerStopFromISR (*C macro*), 829